THE PRINCIPALL NAVIGATIONS, VOIAGES AND DISCOVERIES OF THE Englisn nation, made by Sea or ouer Land,

to the most remote and farthest distant Quarters of the earth at any time within the compasse *of these 1500. yeeres: Deuided into three* seuerall parts, according to the positions of the Regions whereunto they were directed.

***

The first, conteining the personall trauels of the Englisn vnto *Iudea, Syria, Arabia*, the riuer *Euphrates, Babylon, Balsara*, the *Persian* Gulfe, *Ormuz, Chaul, Goa, India*, and many Islands adioyning to the South parts of *Asia*: together with the like vnto *Egypt*, the chiefest ports and places of *Africa* within and without the Streight of *Gibraltar*, and about the famous Promontorie of *Buona Esperanza*.

The second, comprehending the worthy discoueries of the Englisn towards the North and Northeast by Sea, as of *Lapland, Scrikfinia, Corelia*, the Baie of *S. Nicholas*, the Isles of *Colgoicue, Vaigats*, and *Noua Zembla* toward the great riuer *Ob*, with the mightie Empire of *Russia*, the *Caspian* Sea, *Georgia, Armenia, Media, Persia, Boghar* in *Bactria*, & diuers kingdoms of *Tartaria*.

The third and last, including the Englisn valiant attempts in searching almost all the corners of the vaste and new world of *America*, from 73. degrees of Northerly latitude Southward, to *Meta Incognita, Newfoundland*, the maine of *Virginia*, the point of *Florida*, the Baie of *Mexico*, all the Inland of *Noua Hispania*, the coast of *Terra firma, Brasill*, the riuer of *Plate*, to the Streight of *Magellan*: and through it, and from it in the South Sea to *Chili, Peru, Xalisco*, the Gulfe of *California, Noua Albion* vpon the backside of *Canada*, further then euer any Christian hitherto hath pierced.

Whereunto is added the last most renowmed Englisn Nauigation, round about the whole Globe of the Earth.

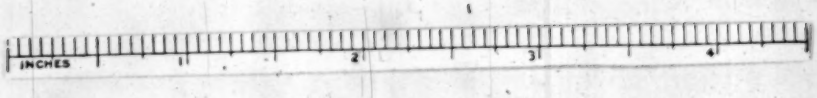
By Richard Hakluyt *Master of Artes, and Student sometime* of Christ-church in Oxford.



Imprinted at London by GEORGE BISHOP and RALPH NEWBERIE, Deputies to CHRISTOPHER BARKER, Printer to the Queenes most excellent Maiestie.

1589.

THIS VOLUME IS REPRODUCED BY CONSENT OF THE HENRY E. HUNTINGTON LIBRARY AND ART GALLERY AND MAY NOT BE REPRODUCED BY OTHERS WITHOUT FORMAL WRITTEN CONSENT FROM THAT INSTITUTION.



THE PRINCIPALL NAVIGATIONS, VOIAGES AND DISCOVERIES OF THE English nation, made by Sea or ouer Land,

to the most remote and farthest distant Quarters of the earth at any time within the compasse *of these 1500. yeeres: Deuided into three* seuerall parts, according to the positions of the Regions whereunto they were directed.

***

The first, conteining the personall trauels of the English vnto *Iudea, Syria, Arabia*, the riuer *Euphrates, Babylon, Balsara*, the *Persian* Gulfe, *Ormuz, Chaul, Goa, India*, and many Islands adioyning to the South parts of *Asia*: together with the like vnto *Egypt*, the chiefest ports and places of *Africa* within and without the Streight of *Gibraltar*, and about the famous Promontorie of *Buona Esperanza*.

The second, comprehending the worthy discoueries of the English towards the North and Northeast by Sea, as of *Lapland, Scrikfinia, Corelia*, the Baie of *S. Nicholas*, the Isles of *Colgoicue, Vaigats*, and *Noua Zembla* toward the great riuer *Ob*, with the mightie Empire of *Russia*, the *Caspian* Sea, *Georgia, Armenia, Media, Persia, Boghar* in *Bactria*, & diuers kingdoms of *Tartaria*.

The third and last, including the English valiant attempts in searching almost all the corners of the vaste and new world of *America*, from 73. degrees of Northerly latitude Southward, to *Meta Incognita, Newfoundland*, the maine of *Virginia*, the point of *Florida*, the Baie of *Mexico*, all the Inland of *Noua Hispania*, the coast of *Terra firma, Brasill*, the riuer of *Plate*, to the Streight of *Magellan*: and through it, and from it in the South Sea to *Chili, Peru, Xalisco*, the Gulfe of *California, Noua Albion* vpon the backside of *Canada*, further then euer any Christian hitherto hath pierced.

Whereunto is added the last most renowmed English Nauigation, round about the whole Globe of the Earth.

By Richard Hakluyt Master of Artes, and Student sometime of Christ-church in Oxford.

Imprinted at London by GEORGE BISHOP and RALPH NEWBERIE, Deputies to CHRISTOPHER BARKER, Printer to the Queenes most excellent Maiestie.

1589.

TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE SIR FRANCIS WALSINGHAM

Knight, Principall Secretarie to her Maieſtie, Chancellor *of the Duchie of Lancaſter, and one of her Maieſties moſt honourable Priuie Councell.*



IGHT Honorable, I do remember that being a youth, and one of her Maieſties ſcholars at Weſtminſter that fruitfull nurſerie, it was my happe to viſit the chamber of M. *Richard Hakluyt* my coſin, a Gentleman of the Middle Temple, well knowen vnto you, at a time when I found lying open vpon his boord certeine bookes of Coſmographie, with an vniuerſall Mappe: he ſeeing me ſomewhat curious in the view therof, began to inſtruct my ignorance, by ſhewing me the diuiſion of the earth into three parts after the olde account, and then according to the latter, & better diſtribution, into more: he pointed with his wand to all the knowen Seas, Gulfs, Bayes, Straights, Capes, Riuers, Empires, Kingdomes, Dukedomes, and Territories of ech part, with declaration alſo of their ſpeciall commodities, & particular wants, which by the benefit of traffike, & entercourſe of merchants, are plentifully ſupplied. From the Mappe he brought me to the Bible, and turning to the 107 Pſalme, directed mee to the 23 & 24 verſes, where I read, that they which go downe to the ſea in ſhips, and occupy by the great waters, they ſee the works of the Lord, and his woonders in the deepe, &c. Which words of the Prophet together with my couſins diſcourſe (things of high and rare delight to my yong nature) tooke in me ſo deepe an impreſſion, that I conſtantly reſolued, if euer I were preferred to the Vniuerſity, where better time, and more conuenient place might be miniſtred for theſe ſtudies, I would by Gods aſſiſtance proſecute that knowledge and kinde of literature, the doores whereof (after a ſort) were ſo happily opened before me.

According to which my reſolution, when, not long after, I was remoued to Chriſt-church in Oxford, my exerciſes of duety firſt performed, I fell to my intended courſe, and by degrees read ouer whatſoeuer printed or written diſcoueries and voyages I found extant either in the Greeke, Latine, Italian, Spaniſh, Portugall, French, or Engliſh languages, and in my publike lectures was the firſt, that produced and ſhewed both the olde imperfectly compoſed, and the new lately reformed Mappes, Globes, Spheares, and other inſtruments of this Art for demonſtration in the common ſchooles, to the ſingular pleaſure, and generall contentment of my auditory. In continuance of time, and by reaſon principally of my inſight in this ſtudy, I grew familiarly acquainted with the chiefeſt Captaines at ſea, the greateſt Merchants, and the beſt Mariners of our nation: by which meanes hauing gotten ſomewhat more then common knowledge, I paſſed at length the narrow ſeas into France with ſir *Edward Staffford*, her Maieſties carefull and diſcreet Ligier, where during my fiue yeeres aboad with him in his dangerous and charg eable reſidencie in her Highnes ſeruice, I both heard in ſpeech, and read in books other nations miraculouſly extolled for their diſcoueries and notable enterpriſes by ſea, but the Engliſh of all others for their ſluggiſh ſecurity, and continuall neglect of the like attempts e-

ſpecially in ſo long and happy a time of peace, either ignominiouſly reported, or exceedingly condemned: which ſingular opportunity, if ſome other people our neighbors had beene bleſſed with, their proteſtations are often and vehement, they would farre otherwiſe haue vſed. And that the trueth and euidence heerof may better appeare, theſe are the very words of *Popiliniere* in his booke called *L'Admiral de France*, and printed at Paris. *Fol. 73. pag. 1,2.* The occaſion of his ſpeech is the commendation of the Rhodians, who being (as we are) Iſlanders, were excellent in nauigation, whereupon he woondereth much that the Engliſh ſhould not ſurpaſſe in that qualitie, in this ſort: *Ce qui m'a fait autreſſois rechercher les occaſions, qui empeſchent, que les Anglois, qui ont d'eſprit, de moyens, & valeur aſſez, pour s'aquerir vn grand hõneur parmi tous les Chreſtiens, ne ſe font plus valoir ſur l'element qui leur eſt, & doit eſtre plus naturel qu'à autres peuples: qui leur doiuent ceder en la ſtructure, accommodement & police de nauires: comme i'ay veu en pluſieurs endroits parmi eux.* Thus both hearing, and reading the obloquie of our nation, and finding few or none of our owne men able to replie heerin: and further, not ſeeing any man to haue care to recõmend to the world, the induſtrious labors, and painefull trauels of our countrey men: for ſtopping the mouthes of the reprochers, my ſelfe being the laſt winter returned from France with the honorable the Lady Sheffield, for her paſſing good behauior highly eſteemed in all the French court, determined notwithſtanding all difficulties, to vndertake the burden of that worke wherin all others pretended either ignorance, or lacke of leaſure, or want of ſufficient argument, whereas (to ſpeake truely) the huge toile, and the ſmall profit to inſue, were the chiefe cauſes of the refuſall. I call the worke a burden, in conſideration that theſe voyages lay ſo diſperſed, ſcattered, and hidden in ſeuerall huckſters hands, that I now woonder at my ſelfe, to ſee how I was able to endure the delayes, curioſity, and backwardneſſe of many from whom I was to receiue my originals: ſo that I haue iuſt cauſe to make that complaint of the maliciouſnes of diuers in our time, which Plinie made of the men of his age: *At nos elaborata ijs abſcondere atq; ſupprimere cupimus, & fraudare vitam etiam alienis bonis, &c.*

Plinius. lib. 25. cap. 1. Naturalis hiſtoriæ.

To harpe no longer vpon this ſtring, & to ſpeake a word of that iuſt commendation which our nation doe indeed deſerue: it can not be denied, but as in all former ages, they haue bene men full of actiuity, ſtirrers abroad, and ſearchers of the remote parts of the world, ſo in this moſt famous and peerleſſe gouernement of her moſt excellent Maieſty, her ſubiects through the ſpeciall aſſiſtance, and bleſſing of God, in ſearching the moſt oppoſite corners and quarters of the world, and to ſpeake plainly, in compaſſing the vaſte globe of the earth more then once, haue excelled all the nations and people of the earth. For, which of the kings of this land before her Maieſty, had theyr banners euer ſeene in the Caſpian ſea? which of them hath euer dealt with the Emperor of Perſia, as her Maieſty hath done, and obteined for her merchants large & louing priuileges? who euer ſaw before this regiment, an Engliſh Ligier in the ſtately porch of the Grand Signor at Conſtantinople? who euer found Engliſh Conſuls & Agents at Tripolis in Syria, at Aleppo, at Babylon, at Balſara, and which is more, who euer heard of Engliſhman at Goa before now? what Engliſh ſhippes did heeretofore euer anker in the mighty riuer of Plate? paſſe and repaſſe the vnpaſſable (in former opinion) ſtraight of Magellan, range along the coaſt of Chili, Peru, and all the backſide of Noua Hiſpania, further then any Chriſtian euer paſſed, trauers the mighty bredth of the South ſea, land vpon the Luzones in deſpight of the enemy, enter into alliance, amity, and traffike with the princes of the Moluccaes, & the Iſle of Iaua, double the famous Cape of Bona Speranza, ariue at the Iſle of Santa Helena, & laſt of al returne home moſt richly ladẽ with the cõmodities

modities of China, as the subiects of this now florishing monarchy haue done?

Lucius Florus in the very end of his historie *de gestis Romanorum* recordeth as a wonderfull miracle, that the *Seres*, (which I take to be the people of *Cathay*, or *China*) sent Ambassadors to Rome, to intreate kindship, as moued with the fame of the maiesty of the Romane Empire. And haue not we as good cause to admire, that the Kings of the *Moluccaes*, and *Iaua maior*, haue desired the fauour of her maiestie, and the commerce & traffike of her people? Is it not as strage that the borne naturalles of *Japan*, and the *Philippinaes* are here to be seene, agreeing with our climate, speaking our language, and informing vs of the state of their Easterne habitations? For mine owne part, I take it as a pledge of Gods further fauour both vnto vs and them: to them especially, vnto whose doores I doubt not in time shalbe by vs caried the incomparable treasure of the trueth of Christianity, and of the Gospell, vvhile vve vse and exercise common trade with their marchants. I must confesse to haue read in the excellent history intituled *Origines* of *Ioannes Goropius*, a testimonie of king *Henrie* the viij. a prince of noble memory, vvhose intention vvas once, if death had not preuented him, to haue done some singular thing in this case: vvhose vvords speaking of his dealing to that end with himselfe, he being a stranger, & his history rare, I thought good in this place verbatim to record: *Ante viginti & plus eo annos ab Henrico Kneuetto Equite Anglo nomine Regis Henrici arram accepi, qua conuenerat, Regio sumptu me totam Asiam, quoad Turcorum & Persarum Regum commendationes, & legationes admitterentur, peragraturum. Ab his enim duobus Asiæ principibus facile se impetraturum sperabat, vt non solum tutò mihi per ipsorum fines liceret ire, sed vt commendatione etiam ipsorum ad confinia quoque daretur penetrare. Sumptus quidem non exiguus erat futurus, sed tanta erat principi cognoscendi auiditas, vt nullis pecunijs ad hoc iter necessarijs se diceret parsurum. O Dignum Regia Maiestate animum, O me fœlicem, si Deus non ante & Kneuettum & Regem abstulisset, quam reuersus ab hac peregrinatione fuissem, &c.* But as the purpose of Dauid the king to builde a house and temple to God was accepted, although Salomon performed it: so I make no question, but that the zeale in this matter of the aforesaid most renowmed prince may seeme no lesse worthy (in his kinde) of acceptation, although reserued for the person of our Salomon her gratious Maiesty, whome I feare not to pronounce to haue receiued the same Heroicall spirit, and most honorable disposition, as an inheritance from her famous father.

Ioa. Goropij Becani origines lib. 5. pag. 494.

Now wheras I haue alwayes noted your wisdome to haue had a speciall care of the honor of her Maiesty, the good reputation of our country, & the aduancing of nauigation, the very walles of this our Island, as the oracle is reported to haue spoken of the sea forces of Athens: and whereas I acknowledge in all dutifull sort how honorably both by your letter and speech I haue bene animated in this and other my trauels, I see my selfe bound to make presentment of this worke to your selfe, as the fruits of your owne incouragements, & the manifestation both of my vnfained seruice to my prince and country, and of my particular duty to your honour: which I haue done with the lesse suspition either of not satisfying the world, or of not answering your owne expectation, in that according to your order, it hath passed the sight, and partly also the censure of the learned phisitian M. Doctor Iames, a man many wayes very notably qualified.

Plutarch in the life of Themistocles.

And thus beseeching God, the giuer of all true honor & wisdome to increase both these blessings in you, with continuance of health, strength, happinesse, and whatsoeuer good thing els your selfe can wish, I humbly take my leaue. London the 17 of Nouember.

Your honors most humble alwayes to be commanded RICHARD HAKLVYT.

Richard Hakluyt to the fauourable Reader.

I Haue thought it very requisite for thy further instruction and direction in this historie (Good Reader) to acquaint thee briefly with the Methode and order which I haue vsed in the whole course thereof: and by the way also to let thee vnderstand by whose friendly aide in this my trauell I haue bene furthered: acknowledging that ancient speach to be no lesse true then ingenuous, that the offence is great, Non agnoscere per quos profeceris, not to speake of them by whom a man in his indeuours is assisted.

Concerning my proceeding therefore in this present worke, it hath bene this. Whatsoeuer testimonie I haue found in any authour of authoritie appertaining to my argument, either stranger or naturall, I haue recorded the same word for word, with his particular name and page of booke where it is extant. If the same were not reduced into our common language, I haue first expressed it in the same termes wherein it is originally written, whether it were a Latine, Italian, Spanish or Portingall discourse, or whatsoeuer els, and thereunto in the next roome haue annexed the signification and translation of the wordes in English. And to the ende that those men which were the paynefull and personall trauellers might reape that good opinion and iust commendation which they haue deserued, and further, that euery man might answere for himselfe, iustifie his reports, and stand accountable for his owne doings, I haue referred euery voyage to his Author, which both in person hath performed, and in writing hath left the same: for I am not ignorant of Ptolomies assertion, that Peregrinationis historia, and not those wearie volumes bearing the titles of vniuersall Cosmographie which some me that I could name haue published as their owne, beyng in deed most vntruly and vnprofitablie ramassed and hurled together, is that which must bring vs to the certayne and full discouerie of the world.

Moreouer, I meddle in this worke with the Nauigations onely of our owne nation: And albeit I alleage in a few places (as the matter and occasion required) some strangers as witnesses of the things done, yet are they none but such as either faythfully remember, or sufficiently confirme the trauels of our owne people: of whom (to speake trueth) I haue receiued more light in some respects, then all our owne Historians could afoord me in this case, Bale, Foxe, and Eden onely excepted.

And it is a thing withall principally to be considered, that I stand not vpon any action performed neere home, nor in any part of Europe commonly frequented by our shipping, as for example: Not vpon that victorious exploit not long since atchieued in our narow Seas against that monstrous Spanish army vnder the valiant and prouident conduct of the right honourable the lord Charles Howard high Admirall of England: Not vpon the good seruices of our two woorthie Generals in their late Portugall expedition: Not vpon the two most fortunate attempts of our famous Chieftaine Sir Frauncis Drake, the one in the Baie of Cales vpon a great part of the enimies chiefest shippes, the other neere the Islands vpon the great Carrack of the East India, the first (though peraduenture not the last) of that imployment, that euer discharged Molucca spices in English portes: these (albeit singular and happy voyages of our renowmed countrymen) I omit, as things distinct and without the compasse of my prescribed limites, beyng neither of remote length and spaciousnesse, neither of search and discouerie of strange coasts, the chiefe subiect of this my labour.

Thus much in breuitie shall serue thee for the generall order. Particularlie I haue disposed and digested the whole worke into 3. partes, or as it were Classes, not without my reasons. In the first I haue martialled all our voyages of any moment that haue bene performed to the South and Southeast parts of the world, by which I chiefly meane that part of Asia which is neerest, and of the rest hithermost towards vs: For I find that the oldest trauels as well of the ancient Britains, as of the English, were ordinarie to Iudea which is in Asia, termed by them the Holy land, principally for deuotions sake according to the time, although I read in Ioseph Bengorion a very authenticall Hebrew author, a testimonie of the passing of 20000. Britains valiant souldiours, to the siege and fearefull sacking of Ierusalem vnder the conduct of Vespasian and Titus the Romane Emperour, a thing in deed of all the rest most ancient. But of latter dayes I see our men haue pierced further into the East, haue passed downe the mightie riuer Euphrates, haue sayled from Balsara through the Persian gulfe to the Citie of Ormuz, and from thence to Chaul and Goa in the East India, which passages written by the parties themselues are herein to be read. To these I haue added the Nauigations of the English made for the parts of Africa, and either within or without the streights of Gibraltar: within, to Constantinople in Romania, to Alexandria, and Cayro in Egypt, to Tunez, to Goletta, to Malta, to Algier, and to Tripolis in Barbary: without, to Santa Cruz, to Asafi, to the citie of Marocco, to the Riuer of Senega, to the Isles of

Cape

Cape Verde, to Guinea, to Benyn, and round about the dreadfull Cape of Bona Speranza, as farre as Goa.

The north, and Northeasterne voyages of our nation I haue produced in the second place, because our accesse to those quarters of the world is later and not so auncient as the former: and yet some of our trauailes that way be of more antiquitie by many hundred yeeres, then those that haue bene made to the westerne coastes of America. Vnder this title thou shalt first finde the old northerne Nauigations of our Brittish Kings, as of Arthur, of Malgo, of Edgar Pacificus the Saxon Monarch, with that also of Nicholaus de Linna vnder the north pole: next to them in consequence, the discoueries of the bay of Saint Nicholas, of Colgoiene, of Pechora, of the Isles of Vaigats, of Noua Zembla, and of the Sea eastwards towardes the riuer of Ob: after this, the opening by sea of the great Dukedome, and Empire of Russia, with the notable and strange iourney of Master Ienkinson to Beghar in Bactria. Whereunto thou maist adde sixe of our voyages eleuen hundred verstes vp against the streame of Dwina to the towne of Vologda: thence one hundred, and foure score verstes by land to Teraslaue standing vpon the mighty riuer of Volga: there hence aboue two thousand and fiue hundred verstes downe the streame to the ancient marte Towne of Astracan, and so to the manifolde mouthes of Volga, and from thence also by ship ouer the Caspian sea into Media, and further then that also with Camels vnto Georgia, Armenia, Hyrcania, Gillan, and the cheefest Cities of the Empire of Persia: wherein the Companie of Moscouie Marchants to the perpetuall honor of their Citie, and societie, haue performed more then any one, yea then all the nations of Europe besides: which thing is also acknowledged by the most learned Cosmographers, and Historiographers of Christendome, with whose honorable testimonies of the action, not many for number, but sufficient for authoritie I haue concluded this second part.

Touching the westerne Nauigations, and trauailes of ours, they succeede naturallie in the third and last roome, forasmuch as in order and course those coastes, and quarters came last of all to our knowledge and experience. Herein thou shalt reade the attempt by Sea of the sonne of one of the Princes of Northwales, in sayling and searching towards the west more then 400. yeeres since: the offer made by Christopher Columbus that renowned Genouoys to the most sage Prince of noble memorie King Henrie the 7. with his prompt and cheerefull acceptation thereof, and the occasion whereupon it became fruitlesse, and at that time of no great effect to this kingdome: then followe the letters Patentes of the foresaid noble Prince giuen to Iohn Cabot a Venetian and his 3. sonnes, to discouer & conquer in his name, and vnder his Banners vnknowen Regions: who with that royall incouragement & contribution of the king himselfe, and some assistance in charges of English Marchants departed ‖ with 5. sailes from the Port of Bristoll accompained with 300. Englishmen, and first of any Christians found out that mightie and large tract of lande and Sea, from the circle Arcticke as farre as Florida, as appeareth in the discourse thereof. The triumphant raigne of King Henry the 8. yelded some prosecution of this discouerie: for the 3. voyages performed, and the 4. intended for all Asia by his Maiesties selfe, do approoue and confirme the same. Then in processe of yeeres ariseth the first English trade to Brasill, the first passing of some of our nation in the ordinarie Spanish fleetes to the west Indies, and the huge Citie of Mexico in Noua Hispania. Then immediatlye ensue 3. voyages made by M. Iohn Hawkins now Knight, then Esquire, to Hispaniola, and the gulfe of Mexico: vpon which depende sixe verie excellent discourses of our men, whereof some for 1 yeer 16. whole yeeres inhabited in New Spaine, and ranged the whole Countrie, wherein are disclosed the cheefest secretes of the west India, which may in time turne to our no smal aduantage. The next leaues thou turnest, do yeelde thee the first valiant enterprise of Sir Francis Drake vpon Nombre de Dios, the mules laden with treasure which he surprised, and the house called the Cruzes, which his fire consumed: and therewith is ioyned an action more venterous then happie of Iohn Oxnam of Plimmouth written, and confessed by a Spanyard, which with his companie passed ouer the streight Isthme of Darien, and building certaine pinnesses on the west shoare, was the first Englishman that entered the South sea. To passe ouer Master Frobisher and his actions, which I haue also newly though briefely printed, and as it were reuiued, whatsoeuer Master Iohn Danis hath performed in continuing that discouery, which Master Frobisher began for the nothwest passage, I haue faithfully at large communicated it with thee, that so the great good hope, & singular probabilities & almost certaintie therof, which by his industry haue risen, may be knowen generally of all men, that some may yet still prosecute so noble an action. Sir Humfrey Gilbert, that courageous Knight, and very expert in the mysteries of Nauigation amongst the rest is not forgotten: his learned reasons & arguments for the proofe of the passage before named, together with his last more commendable resolution then fortunate successe, are here both to be read. The continuance of the historie, produceth the beginnings, and proceedings of the two English Colonies planted in Virginia at the charges of sir Walter Raleigh, whose entrance vpon those newe inhabitations had bene happie, if it had ben as seriously followed, as it was cheerefully vndertaken. I could not omit in this parte

Robert Fabian.

the two voyages made not long since to the Southwest, whereof I thinke the Spanyard hath had some knowledge, and felt some blowes: the one of Master Edward Fenton, and his consort Master Luke Warde: the other of Master Robert Withrington, and his hardie consort Master Christopher Lister as farre as 44. degrees of southerly latitude, set out at the direction and charge of the right honorable the Earle of Cumberland, both which in diuers respectes may yelde both profite and pleasure to the reader, being carefully perused.

For the conclusion of all, the memorable voyage of Master Thomas Candish into the South sea, and from thence about the globe of the earth doth satisfie mee, and I doubt not but will fully content thee: which as in time it is later then that of Sir Frauncis Drake, so in relation of the Philippinaes, Iapan, China, and the Isle of S. Helena it is more particular, and exact: and therfore the want of the first made by Sir Frauncis Drake will be the lesse: wherein I must confesse to haue taken more then ordinarie paines, meaning to haue inserted it in this worke: but being of late (contrary to my expectation) seriously delt withall, not to anticipate or preuent another mans paines and charge in drawing all the seruices of that worthie Knight into one volume, I haue yeelded vnto those my freindes which pressed me in the matter, referring the further knowledge of his proceedinges, to those intended discourses.

Now for the other part of my promise, I must craue thy further patience frendly reader, and some longer sustence from the worke it selfe, in acquainting thee with those vertuous gentlemen, and others which partly for their priuate affection to my selfe, but chiefely for their deuotion to the furtherance of this my trauaile, haue yelded me their seuerall good assistances: for I accompt him vnworthy of future fauours, that is not thankefull for former benefites. In respect of a generall incouragement in this laborious trauaile, it were grosse ingratitude in mee to forget, and wilfull malicious nes not to confesse that man, whose onely name doth carrie with it sufficient estimation and loue, and that is Master Edward Dier, of whom I will speake thus much in few wordes, that both my selfe and my intentions herein by his frendly meanes haue bene made knowne to those, who in sundrie particulars haue much steeded me. More specially in my first part, Master Richard Staper Marchant of London, hath furnished me with diuers thinges touching the trade of Turkie, and other places in the East. Master William Burrough, Clarke of her Maiesties nauie, and Master Anthonie Ienkinson, both gentlemen of great experience, and obseruations in the north Regions, haue much pleasured me in the second part. In the third and last besides myne owne extreeme trauaile in the histories of the Spanyards, my cheefest light hath bene receiued from Sir Iohn Hawkins, Sir Walter Raleigh, and my kinseman Master Richard Hakluyt of the middle Temple.

And whereas in the course of this history often mention is made of many beastes, birds, fishes, serpents, plants, fruits, hearkes, rootes, apparell, armour, boates, and such other rare and strange curiosities, which wise men take great pleasure to reade of, but much more contentment to see: herein I my selfe to my singuler delight haue bene as it were rauished in beholding all the premisses gathered together with no small cost, and preserued with no litle diligence, in the excellent Cabinets of my very worshipfull and learned friends M. Richard Garthe, one of the Clearkes of the pettie Bags, and M. William Cope Gentleman Vssier to the right Honourable and most prudent Counseller (the Seneca of our common wealth,) the Lord Burleigh, high Treasourer of England.

Nowe, because peraduenture it would bee expected as necessarie, that the descriptions of so many parts of the world would farre more easily be conceiued of the Readers, by adding Geographicall, and Hydrographicall tables thereunto, thou art by the way to be admonished that I haue contented my selfe with inserting into the worke one of the best generall mappes of the world onely, vntill the comming out of a very large and most exact terrestriall Globe, collected and reformed according to the newest, secretest, and latest discoueries, both Spanish, Portugall, and English, composed by M. Emmerie Mollineux of Lambeth, a rare Gentleman in his profession, being therein for diuers yeeres, greatly supported by the purse and liberalitie of the worshipfull marchant M. William Sanderson.

The excellent newe Globe of M. Mullineux.

This being the summe of those things which I thought good to admonish thee of (good Reader) it remaineth that thou take the profite and pleasure of the worke: which I wish to bee as great to thee, as my paines and labour haue bene in bringing these rawe fruits vnto this ripenesse, and in reducing these loose papers into this order. Farewell.

ΕΙΣ Α'ΠΟΔΗΜΙΑΣ ΒΡΕΤΤΑΝΩ'Ν ΠΟ'ΝΗΜΑ
Ριχάρδ᾽ τῦ Ἀκλούτ, Υἱοῦ Βενχθανίς.

Ὅσσα γαῖα ἔχυσε θρεπτὰ ἐπὶ εὐρέσματι
αἰεὶ κλυτὰ ἐξῆν ὕδατι χάλκεα φύτα.
Ὅτ᾽ ἐξ ὅ᾽ ἀλίπλαγκτε μετηλάθεν ὕδατα πλεῖστα,
ἔμπεσε μιμαίζουσ᾽ ἀξιάγαστε ἔργα.
Ἔσχε Βρεττανὸ σ᾽ κλυτὰ χειδίντες ἔρετμαι,
ἐσ μέγαν ἀλλοδαπὴν φῶλα φιλυπτερύγα.
Υἱὸς ἰαπετείδε ἠὲ σύες, Αἰθίοπάς τε,
ἠὲ Μόχους, ἠὲ πάντ᾽ ἐρετόωντα γένη.
Τόσσον σ᾽ ἔμ μέλισσε κλυτὰ, κλυτὸς Ἀκλούτ
γράψει ἀοιδοσόφους, μοῦσά μοι ἀσύφηλον.

DI MARC' ANTONIO PIGAFETA GENTIL'HVOMO VICENTINO.

IGnota mi starei, con poco honore
Sepolta nell' oscure, antiche carte,
S'alcun de figli miei con ſtesa et arte
Non hauesse hor scoperto il mio splendore.
Ramusio pria pieno d'ardente amore
Manifesto le mie piu riche parte,
Che son là doue il Maragnon diparte,
E doue il Negro allaga, e'l Gange scorre.
Hakluyto poi senza verun riſguardo
Di fatica o di danno accalt' hà insieme,
Ciò c' hà potuto hauer da Typhi Ingleſi.
Onde vedraſſi e doue bella ſguardo,
V la Duuina agghiaccia, e l'Obi freme,
Et altri membri miei non ben paleſi.

In eximium opus R. Hakluyti de Anglorum ad diſiunctiſſimas regiones nauigationibus Guilielmi Camdeni Hexaſtichon.

ANglia quæ penitus toto diſcluditur orbe,
Angulus orbis erat, paruus & orbis erat.
Nunc cùm ſepoſitos alios detexerit orbes,
Maximus orbis honos, Orbis & orbis erit.
At quid Haklute tibi monſtranti hæc debeat orbis?
Laus tua, crede mihi, non erit orbe minor.

In pulcherrimam & præſtantiſsimam nauigationum Anglorum σύναξιν, *D. Richardi Hakluyti ſummo ſtudio & fide elaboratam*, Philippi Ioneſij *Epigramma.*

HIſtorias veterum celebres ætate ruentes,
Suppoſitis fulcit viribus Aſinius:
Nempè vt ſalua forent tot priſca volumina, Romæ
Inſtruitur ſumptu Bibliotheca ſuo.
Aſinium Conſul ſequitur poſt Appius, annis
Impar, par ſtudijs ingenióq; fuit:
Martia Romulidûm Bellonæ ancilia dicat:
Sic vixiſſe putes quos perijſſe priùs.
Approbat hunc illúmq; pij cenſura Senatus:
Laus ſua ſors illi eſt, Appie palma tibi.
Scilicet ingenia amplecti non vltima virtus:
At magnum eſt vrbem quicquid honeſtat opus.
Eccè alio tandem ſimilis contingere viſa eſt
Nomine materies, iudiciúmq; ſubit.
Quæ feciſſe olim conſtat, benè fecit Edenus:
Vtilis illa Decas proſtat vbíq; ſua:
Splendida magnanimûm profert incepta virorum
Occiduis nacti qui ſibi nomen aquis.
Illáq; dum profert peccat: námq; extera profert:
Externúmq; decus prædicat illa Decas.
Hinc Haklute tuus ſurgit doctiſſime maior
Splendor, quo patrij eſt maior honoris amor.
Centurias nobis Neptunia facta: Britanni
Illa quidem noſtri ſoláq; facta ſoli.
Quæq; diù ſqualidis latuere occluſa tenebris
Lumine fœlici tota recluſa patent.
Quæq; diu folijs manſere inſcripta ſolutis,
In proprias claſſes tota coacta placent.
Tota coacta placent, quid torue ſuperbis Ibere,
Improba vicinis gens macerata bonis?
Intrepidæ Anglorum claſſis quæ nauita, Dúxq;
Præſtitit, hic oculis ſunt manifeſta tuis.
Quæ quoque facturos iterúmq; iterúmq; lubentes,
In promptu præſens vaticinatur opus.
Commoda prætereo: ſenſatus ſingula lector
Sentiet: atque vltrà quicquid ineſt placidi.
Denique de lectis ſit iudex æquus: Edenus
Præmia, ſed primas Hakluyt iſte feret.

Eiuſdem diſtichon.

ILle modò Hiſpanus tumidus qui tempſerit Anglos,
Anglorum attonitus nunc videt iſtud opus.

The order of all the voyages compriſed in this whole worke in *generall, together with the names of the perſons, the Authours of them,* and the annotations of the courſe of yeeres and quarters of the worlde, wherein they were perfourmed.

The voyages of the firſt part made to the South and Southeaſt regions.

1 THe voyage of Helena, the Empreſſe, daughter of Coelus King of Britaine, and mother of Conſtantine the great, to Ieruſalem. Anno 337. Pagina 1.2

2 The voyage of Conſtantine the great, Emperour and King of Britaine, into Greece, Egypt, Perſia, and Aſia. An. 339. 2.3

3 The voyage of Pelagius Cambrius vnder Maximus King of the Britaines into Egypt, and Syria. An. 390. 3.4

4 The voyage of Iohn Erigen vnder Alphred to Athens. An. 858. 4

5 The voyage of Andrew Whiteman, alias Leucander, vnder Canutus the Dane to Paleſtina. An. 1020. 5

6 The voyage of Athelarde of Bathe vnder H. the firſt to Egypt, & Arabia. An. 1130. 5

7 The voyage of William Archbiſhoppe of Tyre, vnder Henrie the firſt to Hieruſalem, and the cittie of Tyre in Phœnice. An. 1132. 5.6

8 The voyage of Robert Ketenenſis vnder King Steuen, to Dalmatia, Greece, and Aſia. An. 1143. 6

9 The voyage of Richard the firſt King of England into Aſia for the recouerie of Ieruſalem out of the hands of the Sarracens. Anno. 1190. 6

10 The voyage of Baldwine Archbiſhop of Canterburie, into Syria and Paleſtina with king Richard. An. 1190. 14

11 The voyage of Richard ſurnamed *Canonicus*, vnder king Richard into Syria and Paleſtina. An. 1190. 15

12 The voyage of *Guilhelmus* ſurnamed *Peregrinus*, vnder king Richard alſo into Paleſtina. An. 1190. 15

13 The voyage of Hubert Walter, biſhop of Sarum, vnder king Richard alſo into Syria An. 1190. 16

14 The voyage of Robert Curſon a noble man of England, and cardinall, vnder Henry the third to Damiata in Aegypt. An. 1218. 17

15 The voyage of Rainulfe Glanuill a valiant noble man, and Earle of Cheſter, vnder Henrie the third to Damiata in Aegypt alſo. An. 1218. 17

16 The voyage of William Longeſpee, in Engliſh Longſword, a noble man of England into Aegypt and Aſia, with Lewes the French king. An. 1248. 17.18

17 The voyage of prince Edward, the ſonne of king Henrie the third into Aſia. An. 1270. 20

18 The voyage of Robert Turneham, vnder ỳ ſayd Prince Edward into Syria. An. 1270. 23

19 The voyage of Iohn Mandeuil knight in Latin, begun in the raigne of Edwarde the 2. Anno. 1322. continued for the ſpace of 33. yeeres, and ended in the raigne of Edward the 3. from England to Iudea, and from thence to India, China, Tartaria, and as farre as 33. degrees to the ſouth of the AEquinoctiall. 25

20 The voyage of Macham, the firſt diſcouerer of the Iſland of Madera, vnder Edward the third. An. 1344. 80

21 The voyage of Thomas Windam vnder Edward the 6. to Guinea, and the kingdome of Benin. An. 1553. 83

22 The voyage of Robert Gaynſh vnder Queene Mary to Guinea. An. 1554. 89

23 The voyage of William Towerſon marchant of London, vnder Queene Mary to Guinea. An. 1555. 98

24 The voyage of William Towerſon aforeſaid, the ſecond time to Guinea, and the Caſtle of Mina. An. 1556. 112

25 The voyage of William Towerſon aforeſayd, the third time to the coaſte of Guinea, and the riuer of Seſtos. An. 1557. 120

26 The firſt voyage of Robert Baker to Guinea. An. 1562. 130

27 The voyage of the ſayd Robert Baker to Guinea the ſecond time. An. 1563. 135

28 The

28 The voyage of George Fenner, to Guinie, & to the Islands of Cape Verde. An. 1566. 142
29 The voyage of Thomas Steeuens, round about the Cape of *Bona Speranza*, to *Goa* in the East India. An. 1579. 160
30 The voyage of Laurence Aldersey, to the cities of Ierusalem & Tripolis. An. 1581. 177
31 The voyage of William Huddie, to Rio Grande in Guinie, set out by Edward Cotton of Southhamton. An. 1583. 187
32 The voyage of Zacheus Hellier, in the Iesus of London to Tripolis in Barbarie. An. 1584. 192
33 The voyage of Iohn Newberie, and Ralfe Fitche, to Tripolis in Syria, Aleppo, Babylon, Balsara, Ormuz, Goa. An. 1583. 208
34 The voyage of Iohn Eldred, to Tripolis in Syria by sea, and from thence by lande and riuer to Babylon, and Balsara. An. 1583. 231
38 The late voyage of Anthonie Ingram and his companie, to the kingdome and cittie of Benyn in Africa. An. 1588. 818.

The Ambassages, Letters, Priuileges, and other necessarie matters of circumstance appertaining to the voyages of the first part.

1 AN annotation concerning the voyage of Baldwine Archbishop of Canterburie, taken out of *Giraldus Cambrensis* in his *Itinerarium Cambriæ*. Pag. 14
2 The life of Sir Iohn Mandeuil knight, written by M. Bale. 23
3 The tombe and Epitaph of Sir Iohn Mandeuill in the citie of Liege noted by Ortelius in his *Itinerarium Belgij*. 24
4 The dedication of his voyage to king Edward the 3. 25
5 An admonition of Richard Hakluyt touching the new impression and purgation of Mandeuil. 77
6 Certaine places alleaged out of the naturall historie of Plinie agreeing with Mandeuil in his reports of the diuers shapes of men. 77
7 A note concerning the aide and assistance of English merchants giuen to king Iohn the first of Portugall for the winning of Ceut in Barbarie. 79
8 The ambassage of Iohn the 2. of Portugall sent to Edward the 4. king of England, to stay Iohn Tintam and William Fabian Englishmen, preparing for a voyage to Guinie. 81
9 The maner of entring of Soliman the great Turke, with his armie into Aleppo in Syria, marching into Persia against the great Sophie. 81
10 The presents giuen to the great Turke at that time by his Bashaes, and the Venetian Consul in Tripolis. 82
11 The safe conduct giuen by the great Turke to Anthonie Ienkinson at Aleppo in Syria. 82
12 A briefe description of Africa. 84
13 The commodities and wares that are most desired in Guinie betwixt Sierra Leona, and the furthest place of the Mine. 130
14 The woorthie enterprise of Iohn Foxe, in deliuering 266. Christians out of the captiuitie of the Turkes at Alexandria. 150
15 The Ambassage of Edmund Hogan merchant of London and sworne Esquier of her Maiesties person, from her highnesse to Mully Abdelmelek Emperour of Marocco, and king of Fez and Sus. 156
16 The letters of the great Turke sent to the Queenes most excellent Maiestie from Constantinople. 163
17 The letters of the Queenes Maiestie to the great Turke in answere of his letters. 164
18 The large priuileges of the great Turke granted to the English merchants trading in his dominions. 166. 168
19 The second letters of her Maiestie to the great Turke, promising a redresse of the disorders of Peter Baker of Ratcliffe committed in the Leuant. 171
20 The letters patents granted by her Maiestie to Sir Edward Osborne, M. Richard Staper, and certaine other merchants of London for their trade into the dominions of the great Turke. 172
21 Her Maiesties commission vnder her great seale to M. William Harebrowne, authorizing him her Ambassadour in Turkie. 176
22 The third letters of her Maiestie to the great Turke, in commendation of M. Harebrowne. 183
23 The passeport made by the great master of Malta to certayne Englishmen of the barke Reinolds. 185
24 A passeport in Italian giuen by the king of Algier to Thomas Shingleton. 189
25 A letter written in Spanish by Sir Edward Osborne to the king of Algier, in the behalfe of certayne English captiues there detained. 189
26 Notes concerning the trade of Algier. 190
27 Notes concerning the trade of Alexandria. 191
28 The 4. letter of her Maiestie to the great Turke for the restitution of an English ship called the Iesus, and the English captiues detayned in Tripolis in Barbarie. 199
29 The commandement of the great Turke obtained by M. Harbrowne for the quiet passing of English merchants

chants to and from his dominions. 200
30 The great Turkes letters to the king of Tripolis in Barbarie, commaunding the reſtitution of the Engliſh ſhip called the Ieſus with the men and goods. 201
31 A letter of Maſter Harebrowne, written to the foreſaid king of Tripolis, to the ſame purpoſe. 202
32 A note of the yeerely totall ſumme allowed by the great Turke, out of his treaſurie, to the officers of his Seraglio or Court. 203
33 The Great Turke his chiefe officers. 205
34 The Great Turkes yeerely reuenue. 206
35 The allowances of the Great Turke to Chriſtian Ambaſſadors, reſident at Conſtantinople. 207
36 A letter of the Queenes Maieſtie, written to Yeladin el Kubar, king of Cambaia. 207
37 A letter written by her Maieſtie, to the king of China. 207
38 A letter of Iohn Newberie, written from Aleppo in Syria, to Richard Hakluyt of Oxford. 208
39 A letter of Iohn Newberie, written to Leonard Poore of London, from Aleppo. 208
40 A letter written by Iohn Newberie to Leonard Poore, from Babylon. 209
41 His letter written from Ormuz, to Iohn Eldred, and William Shals, at Balſara. 210
42 His third letter written to Leonard Poore, from Goa, conteining a large deſcription of his voyage, trouble and cauſe thereof. 210
43 A letter written by Ralfe Fitche to Leonard Poore, from Goa. 212
44 The money, weights, meaſures, and cuſtomes, vſed in Babylon, Balſara, Ormuz, Goa, Cochin, and Malacha. 213
45 The charge of a iourney by land and riuer, from Aleppo in Syria, to Goa in the Eaſt India. 218
46 A declaration of all the places from whence each particular commoditie of the Eaſt India commeth. 218
47 The times or ſeaſonable windes, called monſons, wherein the ſhippes depart from place to place in the Eaſt Indias. 219
48 The deſcription of the Iſland of Sancta Helena, frequented by the Portingals, in their returne from the Eaſt India. 222
49 The valiant fight performed in the voyage from Turkie, by 5. ſhips of London, againſt 11. gallies, and two frigats of the king of Spaines at Pantalarea in the Leuant. 227
50 The letters patents granted by her Maieſtie to certaine noble men, and marchants of London, for a trade to Barbarie. 234
51 The ambaſſage of Henrie Roberts, ſworne Eſquire of her Maieſties perſon, from her Highnes to Mully Hamet, Emperour of Marocco, king of Fes and Sus. 237
52 The edict of the Emperour of Marocco, in fauour of all Engliſh men trading in his dominions. 231
53 A letter of the ſaid Emperour written to the Earle of Leceſter. 238
54 A letter of the Queenes Maieſtie, written to the ſaid Emperour of Marocco. 239
55 The letters patents granted by her Maieſtie, to certaine marchants of Exceter, and others of the Weſt parts, and of London, for a trade to the riuers of Senega, and Gambia in Guinie. 241

The voyages of the ſecond part made to the North and Northeaſt quarters.

1 THe voyage of Arthur king of Britaine to Iſland, and the moſt northeaſterne partes of Europe. Anno. 517. Pag. 243. 244
2 The voyage of Malgo king of Britaine, to Iſland, Gotland, Orkney, Denmarke and Norway. An. 580. 244
3 The voyage of king Edgar with 4000. ſhips round about his large Monarchie. Anno 973. 245
4 The voyage of Nicholaus de Linna a Franciſcan Frier, and an excellent Mathematician of Oxford, to all the regions ſituate vnder the North pole. An. 1360. 248
5 The voyage of Sir Hugh Willoughbie knight wherein he vnfortunately periſhed at Arzina reca in Lapland. An. 1553. 265
6 The voyage of Richard Chanceler Pilot Maior the firſt diſcouerer by ſea of the kingdome of Moſcouia. An. 1553. 280
7 The voyage of Steuen Burrough towarde the riuer Ob intending the diſcouerie of the northeaſt paſſage. An. 1556. 311
8 The voyage of the foreſaid Steuen Burrough from Colmogro in Ruſſia to Wardhouſe in ſerch of certaine Engliſh ſhips not hard of the yeere before. An. 1557. 326
9 The voyage of Anthony Ienkinſon into Ruſſia, wherin Oſep Napea firſt Ambaſſador from the Emperor of Moſcouia to Q. Marie was tranſported into his countrie. An. 1557. 333
10 The voyage of Anthony Ienkinſon from the Citie of Moſco in Ruſſia, to Boghar in Batria. An. 1558. 347
11 The voyage of Anthonie Ienkinſon through Ruſſia, and ouer the Caſpian ſea into Perſia. An. 1561. 365
12 The voyage of Thomas Alcocke, George Wrenne, and Richard Cheiny ſeruantes to the Company of Moſcouie Marchants in London, into Perſia. An. 1563. 374

13 The

13 The voyage of Richard Iohnſon, Alexander Kytchin, and Arthur Edwardes ſeruants to the foreſaid companie into Perſia. An. 1565. 367
14 The voyage of Thomas Southam, and Iohn Sparke by land and riuer from Colmogro to Nouogorode in Ruſſia. An. 1566. 390
15 The voyage of Anthony Ienkinſon into Ruſſia the third time. An. 1566. 397
16 The voyage of Arthur Edwards Agent for the Moſcouie Company, Iohn Sparke, Laurence Chapman, Chriſtopher Fawcet, and Richard Pingle ſeruants into Perſia. 1568. 413
17 The voyage of Thomas Baniſter, & Geofferie Ducket Agents for the Moſcouie company into Perſia the fift time. An. 1569. 419
18 The voyage of William Burrough captaine of 13. Engliſh ſhips to the Narue in Lifeland. An. 1570. 425
19 The voyage of Anthony Ienkinſon into Ruſſia the 4. time. An. 1571. 426
20 The voyage of Chriſtopher Burrough into Perſia the 6. time. An. 1579. 440
21 The voyage of Arthur Pet, and Charles Iackman ſent to diſcouer the Northeaſt ſeas, beyond the Iland of Vaigats. An. 1580. 566
22 The voyage of Ierom Horſey ouer land from Moſco in Ruſſia to England. 1584. 822

The Ambaſſages, Treatiſes, Priuileges, Letters, and other obſeruations depending vpon the voyages of the ſecond part.

1 TWo teſtimonies of Galfridus Monumetenſis, in his hiſtorie of the kings of Britaine, concerning the conqueſts of king Arthur. 243. 244.
2 A teſtimonie of Maſter Lambard in his *Archaionomia* touching the right and appendances of the crowne of the kingdome of Britane. 244
3 A teſtimonie of Maſter Iohn Dee touching the voyage of *Nicholaus de Linna* to the North pole. 249
4 A perſwaſion of Robert Thorne Marchant of Briſtoll, and dwelling long in Siuil in Spaine, to king Henry the eight of noble memorie, to ſet out and further Diſcoueries towards the North. 250
5 The diſcourſe of the foreſayd Robert Thorne, written to Doctor Leigh the kings Ambaſſadour in Spaine, touching that matter. 252
6 The excellent orders and inſtructions of Sebaſtian Cabot, giuen to Sir Hugh Willoughbie and his Fleete in their voyage intended for Cathay. 259
7 The names of the twelue Counſaylors appoynted in Sir Hugh Willoughbyes voyage. 263
8 The names of the ſhips, captaines, mariners, and other officers of that firſt worthy enterpriſe. 265
9 The letters of king Edward the ſixt written at that time to all the Kings, Princes, and other Potentates of the Northeaſt. 264
10 The othe miniſtred to the Captayne of the Fleete. 266
11 The othe miniſtred to the Maſters of the ſhips. 267
12 A teſtimonie of Richard Eden concerning Clement Adams, the authour of Richard Chanceler his Diſcouerie, written in Latine. 270
13 The Letters of the Emperour of Ruſſia ſent to king Edward the ſixt, by Richard Chanceler. 292
14 The coynes, weights, and meaſures vſed in Ruſſia. 293
15 The Commiſſion giuen to the Marchants Agents, reſiant in Ruſſia. 295
16 The othe miniſtred to the ſeruants of the Moſcouie company. 299
17 The Letter of George Killingworth the firſt Agent in Ruſſia, written to the companie. 299
18 The firſt Priuileges graunted by the Emperour of Ruſſia to the Engliſh marchants. 302
19 The Charter of the marchants of the Moſcouie companie, graunted by Queene Marie. 304
20 Inſtructions giuen to the Purſers of the Moſcouie voyages. 309
21 A diſcourſe of the honourable receiuing into England of the firſt Ambaſſadour from the Emperour of Ruſſia. 321
22 The deſcription of Ruſſia with the cuſtomes and maners of the Inhabitants. 339
23 The letters of the Queenes Maieſtie written to the Emperour of Ruſſia, requeſting licence and ſafe conduct for Anthonie Ienkinſon to paſſe through his Dominions into Perſia. 359
24 The letter of the Queenes Maieſtie to the great Sophie of Perſia, ſent by Anthonie Ienkinſon. 361
25 The priuileges giuen by Obdolowcan king of Hircania, to the companie of Engliſh marchants trading in Ruſſia obteined by Anthonie Ienkinſon. 374
26 Certaine letters of Arthur Edwards written out of Ruſſia, Media, and Perſia, to the companie of Moſcouie marchants in London. 376. 377. 380. 384
27 The diſtances of diuers places in Ruſſia. 385
28 The way and diſtances from Saint Nicholas in Ruſſia to the Caſpian Sea. 386
29 Notes and obſeruations gathered by Richard Iohnſon of the ſeuerall wayes from Ruſſia to Cathay ouer land. 388
30 An Act for the Corporation of marchants Aduenturers for the diſcouering of newe trades, made in the eight yeere of the Queenes Maieſtie. 394
31 The priuileges graunted by the Emperour of Ruſſia to the Engliſh marchants obteined by Anthonie Ienkinſon. 397

32 The Ambaſſage of Thomas Randolfe Eſquire from the Queenes Maieſtie to the Emperour of Ruſſia. 399
33 The priuileges graunted to the Engliſh marchants at M. Randolfe his ſute. 402
34 A commiſſion graunted by M. Randolfe for a diſcouerie to the Northeaſt by Sea. 406
35 Inſtructions giuen to the diſcouerers in that action. 407
36 Certaine letters in verſe writ out of Moſcouia by George Turberuil, Secretarie to M. Randolfe, touching the ſtate of the countrey and manners of the people. 408.409
37 Notes concerning the fourth Engliſh voyage into Perſia. 416
38 Obſeruations of the Sophie of Perſia, and of the religion of the Perſians. 422
49 The Ambaſſage of Anthonie Ienkinſon from the Queenes Maieſtie to the Emperour of Ruſſia in the yeere 1571. 426
40 A briefe rehearſall of all the trauailes of Anthonie Ienkinſon. 436
41 A note of all the neceſſarie inſtruments and appurtenances belonging to the killing of the Whale. 437
42 The depoſition of William Burrowgh to certaine interrogatories mooued vnto him concerning the Narue and Kegor. 438
43 The reaſons of William Burrowgh, to diſſwade the vſe of a trade to the Narue by way through Sweden. 439
44 The latitudes and Meridian altitudes of diuers places in Ruſſia from the North to the South. 453
45 Directions giuen by Richard Hakluyt Eſquire to Morgan Hubblethorne Dyer, ſent into Perſia. 454
46 A commiſſion giuen by Sir Rowland Hayward Knight, and George Barne Aldermen, and Gouernour of the Moſcouie companie, to Arthur Pet, and Charles Iackman, for the diſcouerie by Sea towards Cathay. 455
47 Rules, and orders giuen to be obſerued by them in that diſcouerie. 458
48 Breefe aduiſes giuen them by M. Iohn Dee, to that purpoſe. 459
49 Inſtructions giuen them by Richard Hakluit Eſquire to that purpoſe alſo. 460
50 A Iornall of their diſcouerie written by Nicholas Chaunceller. 476
51 The letter of Gerrardus Mercator, to Richard Hakluyt of Oxeford touching that diſcouerie. 483
52 The opinion of William Burrough ſent to a friend requiring his iudgement, for the fitteſt time of the departure of our ſhips towardes Saint Nicholas in Ruſſia. 487
53 The Queenes Maieſties Commiſſion giuen to Sir Ierom Bowes, authoriſing him her highneſſe Ambaſſador with the Emperour of Moſcouie. 487
54 The Queenes Maieſties letters written to the Emperour by Sir Ierom Bowes, in his commendation. 489
55 The diſcourſe of the Ambaſſage of Sir Ierom Bowes, to the foreſayd Emperour. 491
56 The manner of preferring of ſutes in Ruſſia. 490
57 A letter of Henry Lane, to William Sanderſon marchant of London, contayning a briefe diſcourſe of all things paſſed in our Northerne diſcoueries for the ſpace of 33. yeres. 500
58 The late Ambaſſage of Giles Fletcher Doctor of the Ciuil lawe from her Maieſtie to the Emperour of Ruſſia. 502
59 The moſt ſolemne and magnificent Coronation of Pheodore Iuanowich the New Emperour of Ruſſia obſerued by Ierom Horſey. 819
60 The priuiledges graunted by the newe Emperour to the Engliſh marchants, and obtained by the foreſaide Ierom Horſey. 823
61 The honorable teſtimonies of diuers ſtrangers, touching the notable diſcoueries of the Engliſh made in the Northeaſt parts. 504

The voyages of the third and laſt part, made to the West, Southweſt, and Northweſt regions.

1 THe voyage of Madoc the ſonne of Owen Gwinned prince of Northwales to the Weſt Indies. Anno 1170. Pagina 506.
2 The voyage of Sebaſtian Cabot, borne in the citie of Briſtol, wherein hee diſcouered a mightie tracte of land from the circle Arctike to Florida. An. 1494. 512.
3 The voyage of Sir Thomas Pert knight, and Sebaſtian Cabot to Braſil, Saint Domingo, and Saint Iohn de Porto Ricco. An. 1516. 515.
4 The voyage of the two ſhips, whereof one was called the *Dominus Vobiſcum*, for diſcouerie of the North partes. An. 1527. 517.
5 The voyage of Maſter Hore, and diuers other gentlemen, to Newfound land, and Cape Briton. An. 1526. And in the 28. yere of king Henry the eight. 517.
6 The voyage made by William Hawkins, father to Sir Iohn Hawkins to Braſil. Anno 1530. 520.
7 The voyage of Sir Iohn Hawkins to the Weſt Indies. An. 1562. 521.
8 The voyage of Roger Bodenham to Saint Iohn de Vlua in the Bay of Mexico. Anno 1564. 522.
9 The ſecond voyage of Sir Iohn Hawkins to the coaſt of Guinea firſt, and then to Noua Hiſpania. An. 1564. 523
10 The third voyage of Sir Iohn Hawkins made with the Ieſus of Lubecke, one of her Maieſties Ships to the Weſt India. An. 1567. 553.

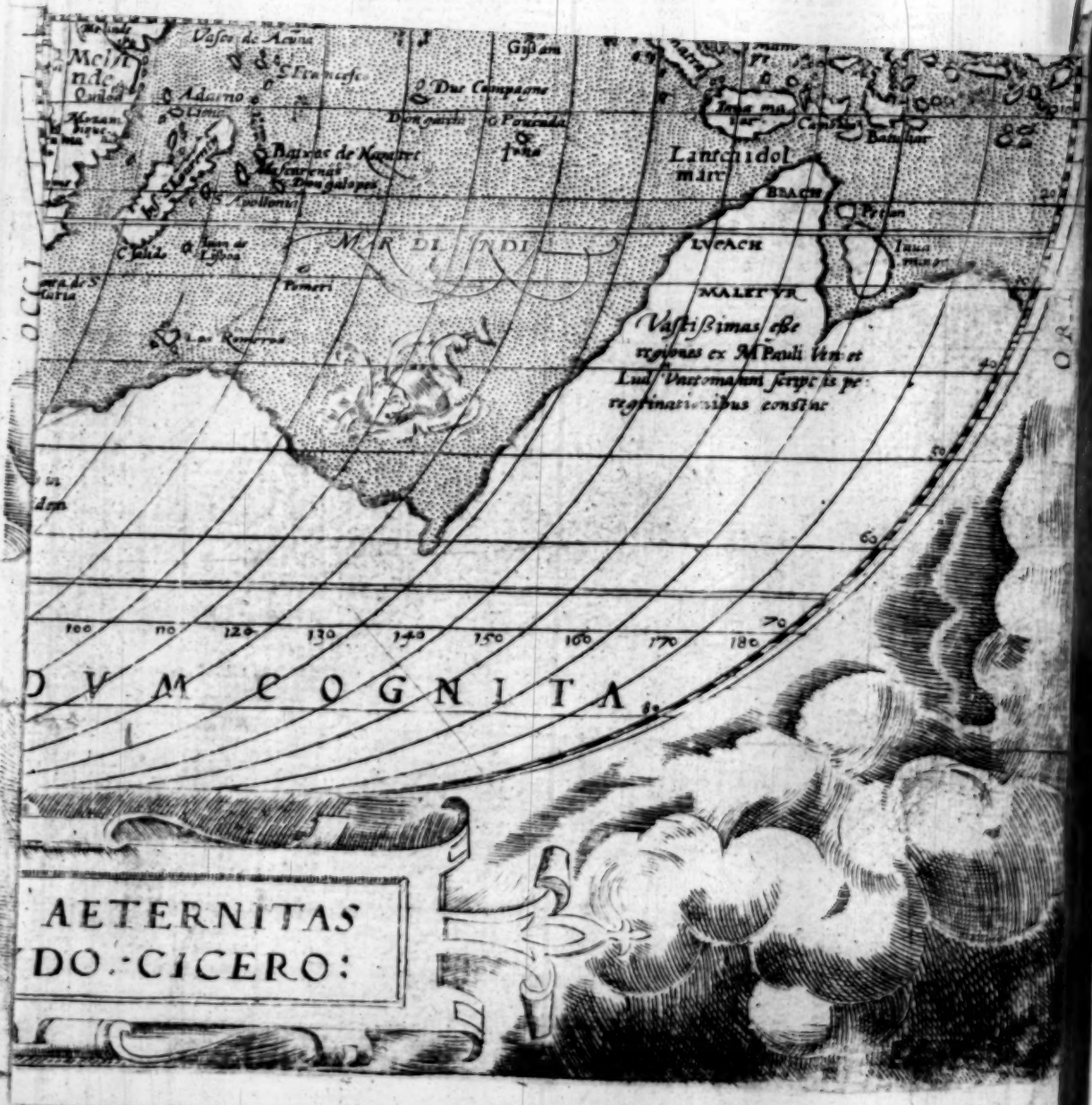
11 The

11 The voyage of Dauid Ingram from the bay of Mexico ouer land neere to the Cape Briton. An.1561. 557.
12 The voyage of Robert Tomſon marchant into Noua Hiſpania out of Spaine. An.1555. 580.
13 The voyage of Iohn Chilton into the Weſt India, with many memorable things concerning the ſtate thereof. An.1568. 588.
14 The voyage of Sir Francis Drake to *Nombre de Dios*, and *Dariene*. An.1572. 594.
15 The voyage of Iohn Oxnam of Plymmouth to the Weſt India, and ouer the ſtreight of Dariene into the South ſea. An.1575. 595.
16 The firſt voyage of Sir Martin Frobiſher to the North weſt. An.1576. 615.
17 The ſecond voyage of Sir Martin Frobiſher to the ſame coaſtes. An.1577. 622.
18 The third and laſt voyage of Sir Martin Frobiſher, to Meta Incognita. An.1578. 630.
19 The voyage of Chriſtopher Hare, with the Minion of London to Braſil. An.1580. 641.
20 The voyage of Edward Fenton, and Luke Warde, as farre as 34 degrees of Southerlie latitude. An.1582. 647.
21 The voyage of Iohn Drake, after his ſeparation from Maſter Fenton, at the Iland of Sancta Catelina, to the ryuer of Plate. An.1583. 639.
22 The voyage of Sir Humfrie Gilbert knight, to the coaſtes of America. An.1583. 679.
23 The voyage of Philip Amadas, and Arthur Barlowe to Virginia, at the charge, and direction of Sir Walter Raleigh. An.1584. 728.
24 The voyage of Sir Richard Greenuile to Virginia, for Sir Walter Raleigh. Anno 1585. 733.
25 The voyage made at the direction of Sir Walter Raleigh, the third time to Virginia. An. 1586. 147.
26 The voyage of Edward Stafford, and Iohn White, ſet out by the aforeſaid Sir Walter Raleigh the fourth time to Virginia. An.1587. 764.
27 The voyage of Iohn Dauis, for the diſcouerie of the Northweſt paſſage. An.1585. 776.
28 The ſecond voyage of Iohn Dauis in the foreſaid attempt. An.1586. 781.
29 The voyage of Richard Pope maſter of the Barke called the Sunne-ſhine ſent another way for the diſcouerie of the paſſage by Iohn Dauis in his ſecond voyage. An.1586. 787.
30 The third voyage of Iohn Dauis in his former enterpriſe, wherein hee diſcouered 200. leagues more to the North-weſt, then maſter Frobiſher. An.1587. 789.
31 The voyage of Robert Withrington, and Chriſtopher Liſter, as farre as 44. degrees to the South of the Equinoctiall, ſet out by the right honorable the Earle of Cumberland. An. 1586. 793.
32 The famous voyage of M. Thomas Candiſh Eſquire round about the globe of the earth, in the ſpace of two yeeres and leſſe then two moneths begunne in the yeere 1586. 809.
33 The voyage of William Michelſon, and William Mace, with a ſhip called the Dogge, to the bay of Mexico. An.1589. 817.

¶ *The diſcourſes, letters, priuiledges, relations and other materiall circumſtances incident to the voyages of the third part.*

1 THe offer of the diſcouerie of the Weſt Indies by Chriſtopher Columbus, to king Henry the ſeuenth, and the kings acceptation of the offer. Pag.507.508
2 A teſtimonie of Ferdinando Columbus, touching the ſame offer. 509
3 The letters patents of king Henry the ſeuenth, graunted vnto Iohn Cabot, and his 3. ſonnes, Lewes, Sebaſtian, and Santius, for diſcouerie of newe lands. 509
4 A record of the Rolles touching the voyage of Iohn Cabot, and Sebaſtian his ſonne. 511
5 A teſtimonie of Sebaſtian Cabot his diſcouerie of the Weſt India, in his mappe cut by Clement Adams, and to be ſeene in her Maieſties priuie gallerie at Weſtminſter. 511
6 A teſtimonie of Baptiſta Ramuſius, Secretarie to the eſtate of Venice, touching Sebaſtian Cabot. 513
7 A teſtimonie of Sebaſtian Cabot his voyage in the 6. chap. of the 3. Decade of Peter Martyr of Angleria. 513
8 The confeſſion of Francis Lopez *de Gomara* a Spaniard, touching the diſcouerie of a great part of the Weſt India by the Engliſh. 514
9 A record of Robert Fabian in his Chronicle not yet printed, of Sebaſtian Cabots firſt diſcouerie. 515
10 Another record of the ſaid Robert Fabian, concerning 3. Sauages brought into England, and preſented to the King by Sebaſtian Cabot. 515
11 The large penſion graunted by king Edward the ſixt, to Sebaſtian Cabot, conſtituting him graund Pilot of England. 159
12 An acte againſt the exaction of money or any other thing, by any officer for licence to traffike into Iſeland, and

and Newe found land,made in Anno 2. Edward 6. 521
13 The arriuall and curteſie of ſyr Iohn Hawkins to the diſtreſſed French men in Florida,cõfeſſed by Laudoniere the French captaine in the diſcourſe of his voyage. 543
14 A relation of the commodities of Noua Hiſpania, & the maners of the Inhabitants,written by Henry Hawkes marchant,who liued 5.yeeres in the countrie. 545
15 The relation of Dauid Ingram concerning his trauaile in the countrie of America. 557
16 The diſcourſe of Miles Philips, one of ſyr Iohn Hawkins companie, ſet on ſhore in the bay of Mexico, concerning the bloodie and moſt tyrannous cruelties of the Spaniards, vſed againſt him and his fellowe Engliſhmen at Mexico. 562
17 The diſcourſe of ſyr Humfrie Gilbert knight,to prooue a paſſage by the Northweſt to Cathaya, and the Eaſt Indies. 597
18 The diſcourſe of Richard Willes to the ſame purpoſe. 630
19 The relation of Thomas Wiars,concerning ỹ diſcouerie of a great Iland,ſituate in 57.degrees of latitude.634
20 The notes of Richard Hakluyt Eſquire, deliuered for inſtruction to certaine gentlemen of maſter Frobiſhers companie. 636
21 A letter written to maſter Richard Staper merchant of London, by Iohn Whithall, dwelling at Santos in Braſill. 638
22 The ſame letter anſwered by diuers merchants of London, and ſent to him in the Minion of London. 640
23 Inſtructions giuen by the right honorable the Lords of the Counſel to Edward Fenton,for the order to be obſerued in the voyage recommended vnto him. 644
24 A letter written to Richard Hakluyt Eſquire, of the middle temple,by Anthonie Parkhurſt,conteyning a true report of the ſtate and commodities of Newe found land. 674
25 The letters patents graunted by her Maieſtie to ſyr Humfrie Gilbert knight, for the inhabiting and planting of America. 677
26 The letters of Stephanus Parmenius a learned Hungarian, to Richard Hakluyt of Oxford from Newfound land touching the ſtate of that Countrie. 697
27 The confeſſion of Richard Clarke of Weymouth Maſter of the Admiral ſhip of Sir Humfrey Gilberts fleete, written in excuſe of that fault of caſting away the ſhip and men,imputed to his ouerſight. 700
28 The diſcourſe of Sir George Peccham Knight touching the poſſeſsion of the Newfound landes taken in the right of the Crowne of England,of her Maieſties lawfull title thereunto, and of the commodities that would inſue to this Realme by planting in them. 701
29 A letter of Thomas Aldworth Marchant,and then Maior of Briſtoll to the right honorable Sir Francis Walſingham,touching a voyage intended for weſterne diſcoueries. 718
30 The diſcourſe of Maſter Chriſtopher Carlile to ſatisfie and incourage our Marchants,and people in general about the action of planting in America. 718
31 The letters Patents granted by the Queenes Maieſtie to Sir Walter Raleigh Knight for the diſcouering, and inhabiting of new Countries,to continue the ſpace onely of 6.yeres and no more. 725
32 An accompt of the particularities of the imployment of the Engliſh men left in Virginia vnder the charge and gouernement of Ralfe Lane, written by him ſelfe. 737
33 The diſcourſe of Thomas Harriots,touching Virginia. 748
34 The letters Patents of the Queens Maieſtie granted to Adrian Gilbert and others for the ſearch of the northweſt paſſage. 774
35 A letter of Iohn Dauis written to William Sanderſon touching his 2.voyage of diſcouerie. 786
36 His 2.letter written to the foreſaid William Sanderſon touching the diſcouerie of his third attempt. 792
37 The letter of Ralfe Lane written from Virginia to Richard Hakluyt of the Temple, concerning the ſtate thereof. 793
38 A verie exact and perfect deſcription of the diſtances from place to place from the riuer of Plate till you come to the end of the Streight of Magelan, and againe from the riuer of Plate to Petre Guarras northward. 803
39 A letter of Maſter Thomas Candiſh to the right honorable the Lord Chamberlaine touching the ſucceſſe of his voyage about the world. 808
40 The names of the Kings or Princes of Iaua at the time of our Engliſhmens being there. 813
41 Certaine wordes of the naturall language of Iaua learned and obſerued by our men there. 813
42 Certaine notes,and references taken out of the large Mappe of China brought home by Maſter Thomas Candiſh. 813
43 An aſſignement from Sir Walter Raleigh to diuers gentlemen,and Marchants of London,for continuing the inhabitations of the Engliſh in Virginia. 815


Vasco de Acuna
Gusam
Mcl/l
nde
Adarno
Duc Campagne
Pouruda
Lantchidol
mar
Batalur
Pytan
MAR DI INDI
LVCACH
MALEIVR
Vastissimas esse
regiones ex M. Pauli Ven. et
Lud. Vartomanni scriptis pe
regrinationibus constat
OCCI
ORI
100
110
120
130
140
150
160
170
180
DVM COGNITA
AETERNITAS
DO. CICERO:

THE FIRST PART OF THE principall voyages, trauailes and diſcoueries of the Engliſh nation, made to the South and *Southeaſt quarters of the world, with the letters, priuiledges, diſcourſes and treatiſes appertaining thereunto.*

THE trauaile of Helena.



HELENA Flauia Auguſta, ſereniſsimi Coeli Britannici Regis Hæres, & vnica filia, Magni Cõſtantini Cæſaris mater, incomparabili decõre, fide, religione, bonitate, ac magnificentiâ piâ, Euſebio etiam teſte, per totum reſplenduit orbem: Inter omnes ætatis ſuæ fœminas, nulla inueniebatur eâ in liberalibus artib[illegible] doctior, nulla in inſtrumentis muſicis peritior, aut in linguis nationum copioſior. Innatam habebat ingenij claritudinem, oris facundiam, ac morum ornatiſſimam compoſitionem: Hebraicè, Græcè, & Latinè erudita. Carnerat pater alia ſobole (inquit Virumnius) quę Regni ſolio potiretur. Illam propterea his inſtrui fecit per optimos præceptores, vt cò commodius Regni tractaret negotia. Vnde ob incredibilem eius pulchritudinem, atque alias eximias animi & corporis dotes, Conſtantius Clorus Cæſar illam duxit in vxorem, atque ex eâ filium in Britanniâ genuit Conſtantinum Magnum. Sed eo tandem Eboraci defuncto, cum Annâ illâ Euangelicâ, in ſanctâ viduitate perdurauit ad vltimum vitę diem, tota Chriſtianę Religioni dedita. Sunt enim Authores, qui narrent per iſtam, ceſſante perſecutione, pacem Eccleſijs datam: Ad tantam cœleſtis Philoſophiæ cognitionem eam ferunt poſt agnitum Euangelium peruenisſe, vt olim multos ediderit libros, & carmina quædam Græca, quæ hucuſque à Pontico ſupereſſe perhibentur. Viſionibus admonita Hieroſolymam petijt, & omnia ſaluatoris loca perluſtrauit. Romæ tandem octogenaria fœliciter in Chriſto quieuit. 15. Calendas Septembris, filio adhuc ſuperſtite, Anno ſalutis humanæ 337. Regnante apud Britannos Octauio. Huius corpus non minimâ nunc curâ venetijs ſeruatur.

¶ *The ſame in Engliſh.*

HElena Flauia Auguſta, the heire and onely daughter of Coelus ſometime the moſt excellent king of Britaine, the mother of the Emperour Conſtantine the great, by reaſon of her ſingular beautie, faith, religion, gyftes & godly Paietie (according to the teſtimonie of Euſebius) was famous in all the world. Amongſt all the women of her time, there was none either in the liberal Arts more learned, or in inſtruments of muſicke more ſkilfull, or in the diuers languages of nations more abundant then herſelfe. She had a naturall quickues or excellencie of wit, eloquence of ſpeach, and a moſt notable grace in all her behauiour. She was ſeene in the Hebrue, Greeke and Latine tongues.

Her father (as Virumnius reporteth) had no other childe to ſucceede in the kingdome after him but her, and therefore cauſed her to be inſtructed in theſe things by the beſt teachers, that thereby ſhee might the better in time gouerne the Realme: ſo that by reaſon of her paſſing beautie, and other her excellent gifts of body and minde, Conſtantius Chlorus the Emperour married her,

and had by her a sonne called Constantine the great, while hee remained in Britaine. Who at length deceasing at Yorke, this Helena (no otherwise then Anna of whome mention is made in the newe Testament) continued a vertuous, and holy widow to the ende of her life.

There are some writers which doe affirme, that persecution ceased, and peace was graunted to the Christian Churches by her good meanes.

After the light and knowledge of the Gospel, she grewe so skilfull in diuinitie, that shee wrote and composed diuers bookes, and certaine Greeke verses also, which (as Ponticus reporteth) are yet extant. Being warned by some visions shee went to Ierusalem, and visited all the places there, which Christ had frequented. She liued to the age of fourescore yeeres, and then died at Rome the 15. day of August, in the yeere of our redemption 337. Octauius being then King of Britaine, and her sonne Constantine the Emperour then also liuing, and her body is to this day very carefully preserued at Venice.

The life and trauels of Constantine the great, Emperour and King of Britaine.

FLauius Constantinus cognomento Magnus post Genitorem Cõstantium Britannorum Rex, ac Romanorum Cæsar Augustus, ex Britannica matre in Britannia natus, & in Britannia creatus Imperator, patriam natalem magnificæ suæ gloriæ participem fecit. Profligatis Alemanis, Hispanis, & Francis, eorumque Regibus pro spectaculo bestijs obiectis, Galliam subiectam tenuit: Tres Helenæ matris auunculos Britannos, Leolinum, Traherum, & Marium, quos cæteris semper fidentiores habuerat in suis fortunis, Italis à Maxentij tyrannide fœlicitèr liberatis, in Senatorũ ordinem Romæ promouit. Innumeræ in eo (vt Eutropius habet) claruêre tam animi, quam corporis virtutes, dum appetentissimus esset gloriæ militaris, successu semper in bellis prospero. Inter literas tam Græcas quàm Latinas, à Christianissima matre Helena Christi fidem edoctus, eos honorabat præcipuè, qui in Philosophia Christiana vitam reclinassent. Vnde ab Oceani finibus nempè Britannis incipiens, ope fretus diuina, Religionis curam in medijs superstitionum tenebris cœpit, ab Occiduis ad Indos, innumeras ad æternæ spem vitæ erigens gentes. Animum diuinis exercendo studijs, noctes trahebat insomnes, & quæsita scribendi diuerticula per otium frequentabat: Imperium oratione, ac Sanctis operationibus continendum ratus, Egregius Christianæ disciplinæ præco, filios ac proceres docuit, pietatem diuitijs omnibus, atque adeò ipsi anteferre totius mundi Monarchiæ. Falsorum Deorum euersor, Imaginum cultus per Græciam, ℰ Ægyptum, Persiam, Asiam, & vniuersam ditionẽ Romanam, repetitis abrogat legibus, iubens per edicta Christũ coli, Euangelium prædicari sacrum, Ministris honores, & alimenta dari, atque idolorum vbique destrui templa. Et vt fidei forma cunctis videretur, Euangelium Iesu Christi ante se semper ferri fecit, & Biblia sacra ad omnes prouincias destinari, diademaque Monarchicum primus Britannis Regibus dedit: Ecclesijs infinita præstitit, agros, annonam, stipem egenis, ægris, viduis, ac orphanis, pro quibusque vt pater sollicitus. Eusebium, Lactantium, & similes, familiarissimos habuit, & hanc ad Deum orationem indies ipsis in eius vita testibus fudit. Vnum te Deum esse nouimus, vnum te Regem intelligimus, appellamus adiutorem, nobis abs te victoria cecidit, ex te Aduersarium fudimus, &c. Pro delicijs habuit, vt Sextus Aurelianus tradit, literarum studia colere, bonas artes fouere, legere, scribere, meditari: composuit Græcè & Latinè multos libros & Epistolas. E vita Nicomediæ discessit Senex, ætatis suæ Anno 66. & Imperij 32. à Christi verò incarnatione 339. Constantinopoli sepultus, Octauio in Britannijs regnante. Eius vitam in quatuor libris Eusebius Cæsarienſis Græcè scripsit, & Ioannes Portesius Gallus in Latinum transtulit sermonem.

¶ The same in English.

FLauius Constantine, synamed the great, King of the Britaines after his father, and Emperour of the Romanes, borne in Britaine of Helena his mother, and there created Emperour, made his natiue countrie partaker of his singular glorie, and renoume.

Hauing conquered and put to slight the Almanes, Spaniards, Frenchmen, and their Kings for a spectacle throwne out to wilde beastes, he held France it selfe as subiect vnto him: and hauing happily deliuered the Italians from the tyrannie of Maxentius, hee preferred 3. of his mothers vncles, all Britaines, namely Leoline, Trahere, and Marius, whom in all his actions he had found more faithfull vnto him then any others, to be of the order of the Romane Senators.

Eutropius reporteth, that he infinitely excelled in the vertues both of the minde and body also, and that hauing a pleasure in the practise of warre, and in the iust commendation of Martiall prowesse,

proweſſe, he neuer pitched fielde but his ſucceſſe in the battell was alwayes victorious. His mother Helena hauing inſtructed him in the faith of Chriſt, although hee made much of all men that were learned in the Greeke and Latine tongues, yet he perfourmed ſpeciall honor to thoſe that ſpent their time in the ſtudie of Diuinitie, which he called Chriſtian Philoſophie: ſo that beginning at the furtheſt part of the Ocean ſea, which then was taken to be his owne natiue ſoyle of Britaine, and truſting in the aſſiſtance of God, when the darkenes of ſuperſtition was moſt thicke, then hee vndertooke a care of Religion, ſtirring vp innumerable nations from the Weſt as farre as India it ſelfe, to the hope of eternall life.

Hee paſſed many nightes without ſleepe, hauing his minde occupied in diuine ſtudies: and whenſoeuer his leaſure from greater affaires did permit him, his vacant times ſhould be ſpent in the vſe of writing & other good exerciſes, aſſuring himſelfe that his kingdoms & Empire were to be continued & ſtrengthened to him by prayer and holy workes: and oftentimes taking vpon him as it were ỳ perſon of a notable preacher of Chriſtian diſcipline, he would teach his children and nobilitie, that godlines was to be preferred before riches, yea, before ỳ Monarchie of all ỳ world.

He ouerthrew the falſe gods of the Heathens, and by many lawes often reuiued, he abrogated the worſhipping of Images in all the countreis of Greece, Ægypt, Perſia, Aſia, and the whole Romane Empire, commanding Chriſt onely by his Edicts to be worſhipped, the ſacred Goſpell to be preached, the Miniſters thereof to be honoured and relieued, and the temples of Idoles euery where to be deſtroyed.

Whitherſoeuer he went hee cauſed the booke of the Goſpell of Chriſt to be ſtill caried before him, that thereby it might appeare to be a forme of faith to all men, and to apperteine generally to all nations.

He was the firſt that appointed an Imperiall Diademe, or Crowne to the Kings of Britaine.

He was moſt beneficiall to all Churches, beſtowing vpon them lands and fields, and vpon the poore, ſicke perſons, widowes and orphanes, corne and wood, being as carefull of them as if hee had bene their naturall father.

He vſed learned men moſt familiarly, as Euſebius, Lactantius and others, and they are witneſſes that this was his vſuall prayer to God. O Lord we know thee to be the onely God, we are ſure that thou art the onely King, and we call vpon thee as our helper: through thee we haue gotten the victorie, and by thee we haue ouerthrowen the enemie.

Sextus Aurelius reporteth, that it was his greateſt delight to imbrace the ſtudie of learning, to fauour good Arts, to reade, write and meditate, and that he compoſed many bookes, and Epiſtles both in the Greeke and Latine tongues.

He died at Nicomedia, being then 66. yeres of age, in the 32 yere of his reigne, and in the 339. yeere after the Incarnation of Chriſt, and was buried at Conſtantinople, Octauius being then King of Britaine: whoſe life Euſebius biſhop of Cæſarea hath written in Greeke in 4. bookes, which afterwards were tranſlated into the Latine tongue by Iohn Portes a French man.

The life and trauailes of Pelagius, borne in Wales.

PElagius Cambrius ex ea Britanniæ parte oriundus, famati illius Collegij Bannochorenſis a Ceſtria non procul, præpoſitus erat, in quo Chriſtianorum philoſophorum, duo millia ac centum, ad plebis in Chriſto cõmoditatem militabant, manuum ſuarum laboribus, iuxta Pauli doctrinam victitantes. Poſtquam plures exhibitos, pro Chriſtiana Repub. labores, vir eruditione inſignis, & tum Græcè, tum Latinè peritus, vt Tertullianus alter, quorundam Clericorum laceſſitus iniurijs, grauatim tulit, ac tandem a fide defecit.

Peragratis igitur deinceps Gallijs, in Aegyptum, & Syriam aliaſque orientis Regiones demum peruenit. Vbi ex earum partiũ Monacho præſul ordinatus, ſui nominis hæreſim fabricabat: aſſerens hominem ſine peccato naſci, ac ſolo voluntatis imperio ſine gratia ſaluari poſſe, vt ita nefarius baptiſmum ac fidem tolleret. Cum his & conſimilibus impoſtricis doctrinæ fecibus in patriam ſuam reuerſus, omnem illam Regionem, Iuliano & Cæleſtino Pſeudoepiſcopis fautoribus, conſpurcabat. Verum ante lapſum ſuum ſtudia tractabat honeſtiſſima, vt poſt Gennadium Bedam, & honorium alij ferunt authores, compoſuitque multos libros ad Chriſtianam vtilitatem. At poſtquam eſt Hereticus publicatus, multo plures edidit hæreſi ſuccurrentes, & ex diametro cum vera pietate pugnantes, vnde erat a ſuis Britannis in exilium pulſus, vt in Epiſtola ad Martinum quintum Valdenus habet. Claruit anno poſt Chriſtum incarnatum, 390. ſub Maximo Britannorum Rege.

¶ *The same in English.*

PElagius, borne in that part of Britaine which is called Wales, was head or gouernour of the famous Colledge of Bangor, not farre from Chester, wherein liued a Societie of 2100. Diuines, or Students of Christian philosophie, applying themselues to the profite of the Christian people, and liuing by the labours of their owne handes, according to Pauls doctrine. He was a man excellently learned, and skilfull both in the Greeke and Latine tongues, and as it were another Tertullian, after his long and great trauailes for the good of the Christian Common wealth, seeing himselfe abused, and iniuriously dealt withall by some of the Clergie of that time, he tooke the matter so grieuously, that at the last he relapsed from the faith.

Whereupon he left Wales, and went into France, and hauing gone through France, he went therehence into Egypt, Syria, & other Countries of the East, and being made Priest by a certaine Bonke of those partes, he there hatched his heresie, which according to his name was called the heresie of the Pelagians: which was, that man was borne without sinne, and might be saued by the power of his owne wil without grace, that so the miserable man might take away faith and baptisme. With this and the like dregges of false doctrine, he returned againe into Wales, and there by the meanes of the two false Prelates Iulian and Celestine, who fauoured his heresie, hee infected the whole Countrey with it. But before his fall and Apostasie from the faith, he exercised himselfe in the best studies, as Gennadius, Beda, Honorius, and other authours doe report him, and wrote many bookes seruing not a little to Christian vtilitie: but being once fallen into his heresie, he wrote many more erroneous bookes, then he did before honest, and sincere: whereupon at the last his owne Countreymen banished him, as Walden testifieth in his Epistle to Pope Martin the fift. He florished in the yeere after the Incarnation, 390. Maximus being then King of Britane.

The life and trauailes of Iohn Erigena.

IOannes Erigena Britannus natione, in Meneuia vrbe, seu ad fanum Dauidis, & patricio genitore natus, dum Anglos Daci crudeles bellis ac rapinis molestarent, ac omnia illic essent tumultibus plena, longam ipse peregrinationem Athenas vsq; suscepit, annosq; quamplures, literis Græcis, Chaldaicis, & Arabicis insudauit: omnia illic inuisit Philosophorum loca, ac studia, imo & ipsum oraculum Solis, quod Aesculapius sibi construxerat. Inueniens tandem quod longo quæsierat labore in Italiam & Galliam est reuersus vbi ob insignem eruditionem, Carolo Caluo, & postea Ludouico Balbo acceptus, Dionisij Areopagitæ libros de cœlesti Hierarchia, ex Constantinopoli tunc missos Latinos fecit, Anno. Dom. 858. Profectus postea in Britanniam, Alphredi Anglorum Regis, & suorum liberorum factus est præceptor, atque ipso mox ad hortante, inter ocia literaria e Græco transtulit in tres linguas, scilicet Chaldaicam, Arabicam, & Latinam, Aristotelis moralia, de secretis secretorum, seu recto regimine Principum, opus certe exquisitum. In Malmsburiensi cœnobio tandem, quo recreationis gratia se contulerat, inter legendum a quibusdam discipulis maleuolis interimebatur, An. Christi, 884.

¶ *The same in English.*

IOhn Erigene a Britane, descended of honourable parents, and borne in the Towne of S. Dauid in Wales, seeing the Englishmen to be oppressed with the warres and rapines of the cruel Danes, and all the land in a hurlie burlie, he in the meane time vndertooke a long iourney, euen as farre as Athens, and there spent many yeeres in the studie of the Greeke, Chaldie, and Arabian tongues: he there frequented all the places and schooles of the Philosophers, and the oracle also of the Sunne, which Æsculapius had built vnto him selfe. And hauing found at length that which he had with long trauell searched, he returned againe into Italie, and France, where for his singuler learning, he was much fauoured of the two Kings Charles and Lewes, and in his being there, he translated into Latine the bookes of Dionysius Areopagita concerning the Heauenly Hierarchie, which were sent from Constantinople in the yeere 858. After this he came backe againe into his owne Countrey, and was schoolemaster vnto Alphred then King of England, and to his sonnes: and vpon his request, at his times of leasure, he translated Aristotles Morales of the Secrets of Secrets, or of the right gouernement of Princes, out of Greeke into these three tongues, Chaldie, Arabian, and Latine, which he did very exquisitely. At the last, being in the Abbie of Malmsburie, whither he went for his recreation, and there according to his manner disputing, and reading to the Students, some of them misliking and hating him, rose against him, and slue him in the yeere of Christ, 884.

The

The trauailes of Andrewe Whiteman, alias *Leucander, Centur.* 2.

ANdræas Leucander alias Whiteman (iuxta Lelandum) Monachus, & Abbas Rameſienſis Cœnobij tertius fuit. Hic bonis artibus ſtudio quodam incredibili noctes atque dies inuigilabat, & operæ præcium ingens inde retulit. Acceſſit præterea & ardens quoddam deſiderium, ea proprijs & apertis oculis videndi loca, in quibus Seruator Chriſtus redemptionis noſtri miſteria omnia conſummauit, quorum prius ſola nomina ex ſcripturarum lectione nouerat: vnde & ſacram Hieroſolymorum vrbem, miraculorum, prædicationis, ac paſsionis eius teſtem inuiſit, atque domum rediens factus eſt Abbas. Claruiſſe fertur anno nati Seruatoris, 1020. ſub Canuto Dano.

¶ *The ſame in Engliſh.*

ANdrewe Leucander, otherwiſe called Whiteman (as Leland reporteth) was by profeſſion a Monke, and the third Abbat of the Abbie of Ramſie: he was exceedingly giuen to the ſtudie of good artes, taking paines therein day & night, and profited greatly thereby. And amongſt all other things, he had an incredible deſire to ſee thoſe places with his eyes, wherein Chriſt our Sauiour perfourmed and wrought all the myſteries of our Redemption, the names of whiche places he onely knewe before by the reading of the Scriptures. Whereupon he began his iourney, and went to Jeruſalem a witneſſe of the miracles, preaching and paſſion of Chriſt, and being againe returned into his Countrey, he was made the aforeſaide Abbat. He floriſhed in the yeere of Chriſt, 1020. vnder Canutus the Dane.

The trauailes of one Athelarde an Engliſhman, *recorded by maſter Bale. Centur.* 2.

AThelardus Bathonienſis Cœnobij monachus, naturalium rerum miſteria, & cauſas omnes, diligentiâ tam vndecunque exquiſitâ perſcrutatus eſt, vt cum aliquibus veteris ſeculi philoſophis non indignè conferri poſsit. Hic olim ſpectatæ indolis Adoleſcens, vt virente adhuc ætate iuuenile ingenium fœcundaret, atque ad res magnas pararet, relicta dulci patria longinquas petijt regiones. Cum verò Aegyptum & Arabiam peragrans, plura inueniſſet, quæ eius deſiderabat animus, cum magno laborum, ac literarum lucro in Angliam tum demum reuertebatur. Claruit anno virginei partus, 1130. Henrico primo regnante.

¶ *The ſame in Engliſh.*

AThelard a Monke of the Abbie of Bathe, was ſo diligent a ſearcher of the ſecretes, and cauſes of naturall things, that he deſerueth worthely to be compared with ſome of the auncient Philoſophers. This man although young, yet being of a good wit, and being deſirous to increaſe and enriche the ſame with the beſt things, and to prepare himſelfe as it were for greater matters, left his Countrey for a time, and trauailed into forreine Regions. He went through Egypt, and Arabia, and found out many things which he deſired to his owne priuate contentmẽt, and the profite of good letters generally, and ſo being ſatisfied, returned againe into his Countrey: he floriſhed in the yeere 1130. Henry the firſt being then King of England.

The life and trauailes of one William of Tyre, *an Engliſhman. Centur.* 13.

GVlielmus, Eccleſiæ Dominici ſepulchri Hieroſolymæ Regularium Canonicorum prior, natione Anglicus vir vita & moribus cõmendabilis, Anno. Dom. 1128. poſtquam Tyrorum Ciuitas fidei Chriſtianæ reſtituta eſt a Guimundo Hyeroſolymorũ patriarcha, eidem vrbi primus Archiepiſcopus præficiebatur. Eſt autem Tyrus Ciuitas Antiquiſsima, Phenicię vniuerſæ Metropolis, quæ inter Syriæ prouincias, & bonorum omnium penè cõmoditate, & incolarum frequentia primum ſemper obtinuit locum: poſt conſcripta quædam opuſcula, & Epiſtolas, ad Dominum migrauit, An. Chriſti 1130. quum duobus tantum ſediſſet annis, & in Tyrenſi Eccleſia ſepelitur.

Hic etiam Guilielmus Tyrenſis claruit ſub Henrico primo.

¶ *The ſame in Engliſh.*

WIlliam the Prior of the Canons Regular in the Church of Jeruſalem, called the Lords Sepulchre, was an Engliſhman borne, and of a vertuous and good behauiour.

After that the Citie of Tyre was restored againe to the Christian faith, Guimunde the Patriarke of Ierusalem made him the first Archbishop of Tyre, in the yeere 1128. Which Tyre is a very ancient Citie, the Metropolis of all Phenicia, and hath bene accompted the chiefest Prouince of Syria, both for fruitfull commodities and multitude of inhabitants. This William hauing in his life written many Bookes and Epistles, died at last in the yeere 1130. hauing bene Archebishop the space of two yeeres, and was buried in the Church of Tyre.

The trauailes of a certaine Englishman, whom *master Bale remembreth in his 2. Centurie, and calleth him* Robertus Ketenensis.

RObertus Ketenensis natione & cognomine Anglus, degustatis primùm per Anglorum gymnasia humanarum artium elementis literarijs, vltramarinas statim visitare prouincias, in animo constituit: Peragratis ergò Gallijs, Italia, Dalmatia, & Græcia, tum demum peruenit in Asiam, vbi non paruo labore, ac vitæ suæ periculo inter Sarracenos truculentissimum hominum genus, Arabicam linguam ad amussim didicit. In Hispaniam postea nauigio traductus, circa fluuium Hiberum Astrologicæ artis studio, cum Hermanno quodam Dalmata, magni sui itineris comite se totum dedit. Claruit anno seruatoris nostri, 1143 Stephano regnante, & Papilonæ sepelitur.

Claruit sub Stephano.

¶ *The same in English.*

THis Robert Ketenensis, was called an Englishman by syname, as he was by birth: who after some time spent in the foundacions of humanitie, and in the elements of good Artes in the Uniuersities of England, determined to trauaile to the partes beyond sea: and so trauayled through France, Italie, Dalmatia, and Greece, and came at last into Asia, where her liued in great danger of his life among the cruell Sarracens, but yet learned perfectly the Arabian tongue. Afterwards he returned by sea into Spaine, and there about the riuer Iberus, gaue him self wholy to the studie of Astrologie, with one Hermannus a Dalmatian, who had accompanied him in his long voyage. He flourished in the yeere 1143 Steuen being then King of England, and was buried at Papilona.

The worthy voyage of Richard the first, King of England *into Asia, for the recouery of Ierusalem out of the handes of the* Saracens, drawen out of the booke of Actes and Monuments of the Church of England, written by M. Iohn Foxe.

KIng Richard the first of that name, for his great valoure and courage synamed Cœur de Lion, the sõne of Henry the second, after the death of his father remembring the rebellions that he had vnduetifully raised against him, sought for absolution of his trespasse, and in part of satisfaction for the same, agreed with Philip the French King to take his voyage with him for the recouerie of Christes patrimonie, which they called the Holy land: wherevpon the said King Richard immediatly after his Coronation, to prepare himselfe the better towardes his iourney, vsed diuers meanes to take vp sommes of money, and exacted a tenth of the whole Realme, the Christians to make threescore and ten thousand poundes, and the Iewes which then dwelt in the Realme threescore thousand.

Hauing thus gotten sufficient money for the exploit, hee sent certaine Earles and Barons to Philip the French king in the time of his Parliament at S. Denis, to put him in minde of his promise made for the recouerie of Christs holy patrimonie out of the Saracens hands: To whome he sent word againe in the moneth of December, that he had bound himselfe by solemne othe, deposing vpon the Euangelists, that he the yeere next following, about the time of Easter, had certainely prefixed to addresse himselfe toward that iourney, requiring him likewise not to faile, but to be ready at the terme aboue limitted, appointing also the place where both the Kings shoulde meete together.

In the yere therefore 1190. King Richard hauing committed the gouernment of this Realme in his absence to the bishop of Elye then Chancelour of England, aduaunced forwarde his iourney, and came to Turon to meete with Philip the French king, and after that went to Vizeliace,

where

where the French king & he ioyning together, for the more continuance of their iourney, assured themselues by solemne othe, swearing fidelitie one to the other: the forme of whose oth was this.

That either of them should defend and maintaine the honour of the other, and beare true fidelitie vnto him, of life, members & worldly honour, and that neither of them should faile one the other in their affaires: but the French king should ayde the King of England in defending his lande and dominions, as he would himselfe defend his owne Citie of Paris if it were besieged: and that Richard King of England likewise should ayde the French king in defending his land and Dominions, no otherwise then he would defend his owne Citie of Roan if it were besieged, &c.

¶ The othe of fidelitie betwixt King Richard, and the French king.

Concerning the lawes and ordinances appointed by King Richarde for his Nauie, the forme thereof was this.

The discipline and orders of the king.

1. That whoso killed any person on shipboard, should be tyed with him that was slaine, and throwen into the sea.

2. And if he killed him on the land, he should in like maner be tyed with the partie slaine, and be buried with him in the earth.

3. He that shalbe conuicted by lawfull witnes to draw out his knife or weapon to the intent to strike any man, or that hath striken any to the drawing of blood, shall loose his hand.

4. Also he that striketh any person with his hand without effusion of blood, shalbe plunged three times in the sea.

5. Item, who so speaketh any opprobrious or contumelious wordes in reuiling or cursing one another, for so oftentimes as he hath reuiled, shall pay so many ounces of siluer.

6. Item, a thiefe or felon that hath stollen being lawfully cõuicted, shal haue his head shorne, and boyling pitch powred vpon his head, and feathers of downe strawed vpon the same, whereby he may be knowen, and so at the first landing place they shall come to, there to be cast vp.

These things thus ordered, King Richard sending his Nauie by the Spanish seas, and by the Streits of Gibraltare, betweene Spaine and Africa, to meete him at Marsilia, hee himselfe went as is said to Vizeliace to the French king. Which two kings from thence went to Lions, where the bridge ouer the flood Rhodanus for presse of people brake, and many both men and women were drowned: by occasion whereof the two kings for the combiance of their traines, were constrained to dilleuer themselues for time of their iourney, appointing both to meete together in Sicily: and so Philip the French king tooke his way to Genua, and king Richard to Marsilia, where he remained 8. dayes, appointing there his Nauie to meete him. From thence crossing ouer to Genua where the French king was, passed forward by the coastes of Italy, and entred into Tiber not farre from Rome.

King Richard staying in Marsilia 8. dayes for his Nauie which came not, hee there hired 20. Gallies, and 10. great barkes to shippe ouer his men, and so came to Naples, and so partly by horse and wagon, & partly by the sea, passing to Falernum, came to Calabria, where after that he had heard that his ships were arriued at Messana in Sicily, he made the more speed, and so the 23. of September entred Messana with such a noyse of Trumpets and Shalmes, with such a route and shewe, that it was to the great wonderment and terrour both of the Frenchmen, and of all other that did heare and behold the sight.

To the said towne of Messana the French king was come before the 16. of the same moneth of September, and had taken vp the Pallace of Tancredus king of Sicily for his lodging: to whom king Richard after his arriuall eftsoones resorted, and when the two kings had communed together, immediatly the French king tooke shipping and entred the seas, thinking to saile towardes the land of Ierusalem: but after he was out of the hauen, the winde rising contrary against him, returned him backe againe to Messana. Then king Richard (whose lodging was prepared in the suburbs without the Citie) after he had resorted againe and talked with the French king, and also had sent to Tancredus king of Sicily for deliuerance of Ioane his sister (who had bene sometimes Queene of Sicily, and had obtained her to be sent vnto him, the last day of September passed ouer the flood del Fare, and there getting a strong hold called de la Baguare, or le Bamare, and there placing his sister with a sufficient garrison, he returned againe to Messana.

The 2. of October king Richard wan an other strong hold called Monasterium Griffonum, situated in the midst of the riuer del Fare, betweene Messana & Calabria, from whence the Monks being expulsed, he reposed there all his store and prouision of victuals, which came from England or other places.

The Citizens of Messana seeing that the king of England had wonne the castle and Iland de la Baguare, and also the Monasterie of the Griffons, and doubting least the king would extende

his power further to inuade their Citie, & get if he could the whole Isle of Sicily, began to stirre against the Kings armie, and to shut the Englishmen out of the gates, and kept their walles against them. The Englishmen seeing that, made to the gates, and by force would haue broken them open, insomuch that the King riding amongst them with his staffe, and breaking diuers of their heads, could not asswage their fiercenes, such was the rage of the Englishmen against the citizens of Messana. The King seeing the furie of his people to be such, that he could not stay them, tooke boate, and went to the pallace of King Tancred, to talke of the matter with the French King, in which meane time the matter was so taken vp by the wise handling of the auncients of the citie, that both parts laying downe their armour, went home in peace.

The fourth day of the saide moneth of October, came to King Richard the Archbishop of Messana with two other Archbishops also with the French King, and sundry other Earles, Barons, and Bishops, to intreate of peace, who as they were together consulting, and had almost concluded vpon the peace, the citizens of Messana issuing out of the towne, some went vp vpon ỹ mountaines, some with open force inuaded ỹ mansion or lodging of Hugh Brune an English Captaine. The noice whereof comming to the eares of the King, he suddenly breaking off talke with the French King and the rest, departed from them, and comming to his men, commaunded them forthwith to arme themselus. Who then with certaine of his souldiers making vp to the toppe of the mountaine (which seemed to passe their power to climbe) there put the Citizens to flight, chasing them downe the mountaines, vnto the very gates of the citie, whom also certaine of the Kings seruants pursued into the citie, of whome fiue valiant souldiers & twentie of the Kings seruants were slaine, the French King looking vpon, and not once willing to rescue them, contrary to his othe, and league before made with the King of England: for the French King with his men being there present, rode in the middest of them safely, and without any harme to and fro, and might well haue eased the Kings partie, more then he, if it had so liked him.

This being knowen to the English host howe their fellowes were slaine, and the Frenchmen permitted in the citie, and that they were excluded and the gates barred against them, being also stopped from buying of victuall, & other things, they vpon great indignation gathered themselues in armes, hast open the gates, and scaled the wals, and so winning the citie, set vp their flags with the English armes vpon the wals: which when the French King did see, he was mightely offended, requiring the King of England that the Armes of France might also be set vp, & ioyned with his: but King Richard to that would in no case agree, notwithstanding to satisfie his minde, he was contented to take downe his Armes, and to commit the custodie of the citie to the Hospitallaries and Templaries of Ierusalem, til the time that Tancred king of Sicily and he should agree together vpon conditions.

Messina won by the English

These things being done the fift and sixt day of October, it followed then vpon the eight day of the same, that peace was concluded among the kings. In which peace, first king Richard, & Philip the French king renewed againe their othe and league before made, concerning their mutuall aide and societie, during the time of that peregrination.

Secondly, peace also was concluded betweene king Richard and Tancred king of Sicily aforesaid, with conditions, that the daughter of Tancrede in case king Richard should die without issue, should be maried to Arthur Duke of Britaine the kings nephew & next heire to his crown, whereof a formall charte was drawen, and letters sent thereof to Pope Clement being dated the ninth of Nouember.

From this time vntill Februarie the next yeere, these two kings kept still at Messana, either for lacke of winde and weather, or for the repairing of their shippes. And in the aforesayde Februarie, in the yeere 1191. King Richard sent ouer his gallies to Naples, there to meete his mother Elinore, and Berengaria the daughter of Zanctius king of Nauarre, whome he was purposed to marry, who by that time were come to Brundusium, vnder the conduct of Philip Earle of Flanders, and so proceeding vnto Naples, they founde the kings shippes wherein they sayled to Messana.

In this meane space, king Richard shewed himselfe exceeding bounteous and liberall to all men: to the French king first he gaue diuers shippes, vpon others likewise he bestowed riche rewardes, and of his treasure and goods, he distributed largely to his souldiers and seruants about him, of whome it was reported, that he distributed more in one moneth, then any of his predecessors did in a whole yeere: by reason whereof he purchased great loue and fauour, which not onely redounded to the aduancement of his fame, but also to his singular vse and profite, as the sequele afterward proued.

The first day of March following, he left the Citie of Messana, where the French King was,

and

and went to Cathneia, a Citie where Tancredus king of Sicily then lay, where he was honorably receiued, and there remained with king Tancredus three dayes and three nightes. On the fourth day when he ſhould depart, the aforeſaid Tancredus offred him many rich preſents in gold and ſiluer, and precious ſilkes, whereof king Richard would receiue nothing, but one little ring for a token of his good will: for the which king Richard gaue againe vnto him a riche ſword. At length when king Richard ſhould take his leaue, king Tancred would not let him ſo depart, but needes would giue him 4. great ſhippes, and 15. gallies, and furthermore he himſelfe would needes accompanie him the ſpace of two dayes iourney, to a place called Tauernium.

Then the next morning when they ſhould take their leaue, Tancredus declared vnto him the meſſage, which the French King a little before had ſent vnto him by the Duke of Burgundie, the contents whereof was this: That the King of England was a falſe Traytour, and would neuer keepe the peace that was betweene them: and if the ſaid Tancredus would warre againſt him, or ſecretly by night would inuade him, he with all his power would aſſiſt him, to the deſtruction of him and all his armie. To whom Richard the King proteſted againe, that he was no traytour, nor neuer was: and as touching the peace begunne betwixt them, the ſame ſhould neuer be broken through him: neither could he beleeue that the French King being his good lord, and his ſworne Compartner in that voyage, would vtter any ſuch wordes by him. Which when Tancredus heard, he bringeth forth the letters of the French King, ſent to him by the Duke of Burgundie, affirming moreouer, that if the Duke of Burgundie would denie the bringing of the ſaid letters, he was ready to trye it with him by any of his Dukes. King Richard receauing the letters, and muſing not a little vpon the ſame, returneth againe to Meſſana. The ſame day that King Richard departed, the French king came to Tauernium to ſpeake with Tancred, and there abode with him that night, and on the morrowe returned to Meſſana againe.

From that time King Richard moued in ſtomacke againſt King Philip, neuer ſhewed any gentle countenance of peace & amitie, as he before was wont: whereat the French king greatly marueiling, and enquiring earneſtly what ſhould be the cauſe thereof, word was ſent him againe by Philip Earle of Flanders from King Richard, what wordes he had ſent to the king of Sicily, and for teſtimonie thereof the letters were ſhewed, which he wrote by the Duke of Burgundie to the King of Sicily: which when the French King vnderſtood, firſt he helde his peace as guilty in his conſcience, not knowing well what to anſwere. At length turning his tale to another matter, he began to quarrell with King Richard, pretending as though he ſought cauſes to breake with him, and to maligne him: and therefore he forged (ſaid he) theſe lies vpon him, and all becauſe he by that meanes would auoide to marrie with Aliſe his ſiſter, according as he had promiſed. Adding moreouer that if he would ſo doe, and would not marrie the ſaid Aliſe his ſiſter according to his othe, he would be an enemie to him, and to his, while he liued.

To this King Richard ſaid againe, that he could by no meanes marry that woman, forſomuch as his father had carnall copulation with her, and alſo had by her a ſonne: for proofe whereof he had there preſently to bring forth diuers & ſundry witneſſes to the Kings face, to teſtifie with him.

In concluſion, though counſell and perſwaſion of diuers about the French King, agreement at laſt was made, ſo that King Philip did acquite King Richard from this bond of marrying his ſiſter, and King Richard againe ſhould be bound to pay to him euery yeere for the ſpace of fiue yeeres, two thouſand markes, with certaine other conditions beſides, not greatly materiall for this place. And thus peace being betweene them concluded the 28. day of the ſaide moneth of March, the French King launching out of the Hauen of Meſſana, the 22. day after in the Eaſter weeke, came with his armie to the ſiege of Achon.

After the departure of the French King from Meſſana, King Richard with his armie yet remaining behind, arriued Queene Alinor the Kings mother, bringing with her Bernegera the king of Nauars daughter, to be eſpouſed to King Richard: which being done, King Richard in Aprill following, about the 10. day of the ſaid moneth, departed from the Hauen of Meſſana with 150. great ſhippes, and 53. great gallies well manned and appointed, tooke his iourney toward Achon: who being vpon the Seas on good Friday about the 9. houre, roſe a mightie South-winde with a tempeſt, which diſſeuered and ſcattered all his Nauie, ſome to one place, and ſome to another. The King with a fewe ſhippes was driuen to the Ile of Creta, and there before the Hauen of Rhodes caſt anker. The ſhippes that caried the Kings ſiſter, Queene of Sicily, and Bernegera the king of Nauars daughter, with 2. ſhippes were driuen to the Ile of Cyprus.

The Nauie of King Richard.

The king making great mone for the ſhippes of his ſiſter, and Bernegera his wife that ſhould be, not knowing where they were become, after the tempeſt was ouerblowen, ſent forth his Gallies diligently to ſeeke the reſt of his Nauie diſperſed, but eſpecially the ſhippe wherein his ſiſter

sister was, and the mayden whom he should marrie, who at length were found safe and merrie at the porte of Lymsem in the Ile of Cyprus, notwithstanding the two other shippes, which were in their companie before in the same hauen, were drowned with diuers of the Kings seruants and men of worship, among whom was M. Roger, called Malus Catulus, the Kings Vicechancelour, who was found with the Kings seale hanging about his necke.

The king of Cyprus, was then Isakius (called also the Emperour of the Gryffons) who tooke and imprisoned all Englishmen, which by shipwracke were cast vpon his land, also inueigled into his hands the goods and prises of them which were found drowned about his coastes, neither would suffer the shippes wherein the two Ladies were to enter within the porte.

The tydings of this being brought to King Richard, he in great wrath gathering his galleies and shippes together, boordeth the land of Cyprus, where he first in gentle wise signifieth to king Isakius, how he with his Englishmen, comming as strangers to the supportation of the holy land, were by distresse of weather driuen vpon his bounds, and therefore with all humble petition besought him in Gods behalfe, and for reuerence of the holy Crosse, to let goe such prisoners of his as he had in captiuitie, & to restore againe ỹ goods of them that were drowned, which he detayned in his hands, to be employed for the behoofe of their soules. And this the king once, twise, and thrise desired of the Emperour: but he proudly answering againe, sent the king worde, that he neither would let the captiues goe, nor render the goods of them which were drowned.

When king Richard heard this, how light the Emperour Isakius made of his so humble and honest petition, and howe that nothing could be gotten without violent force, eftsoones giueth commandement throughout all his hoste to put themselues in armour and followe him, to reuenge the iniuries receiued of that proude and cruell king of Cyprus, willing them to put their trust in God, and not to misdoubt but that the Lorde would stand with them, and giue them the victorie. The Emperour in the meane time with his people stood warding the Sea coastes, where the Englishmen should arriue, with swordes, billes, and launces, and such other weapons as they had, setting boordes, stooles, and chestes before them as a wall: few of them were harnessed, and for the most part all vnexpert and vnskilfull in the feates of warre.

Then king Richard with his souldiers issuing out of their ships, first set his bowe men before, who with their shot made a way for others to followe. The Englishmen thus winning the land vpon them, so fiercely prested vpon the Gryffons, that after long fighting and many blowes, at last the Emperour was put to flight, whom king Richard valiantly pursued, and slue many, and diuers he tooke aliue, and had gone neere also to take the Emperour, had not the night come on and parted the battell. And thus king Richard with much spoile, and great victorie, returning to the porte Towne of Lymsem, which the Townes men had left for feare, found there great abundance of corne, wine, oyle and victuals.

The day after the victorie gotten, Ioanna the Kings sister, and Bernegera the mayden, entred the Porte and Towne of Lymsem, with 50. great ships, and 14. galliots: so that all the whole Nauie there meeting together, were 254. tall shippes, and aboue three score galliots. Then Isakius the Emperour, seeing no way for him to escape by Sea, the same night pitched his tents fiue miles off from the English army, sweating that the third day after, he would surely giue battell to king Richard: but he preuenting him before, suddenly the same morning before the day of battell should be, setteth vpon the tentes of the Gryffons early in the morning, they being vnawares and a sleepe, and made of them a great slaughter, insomuch that the Emperour was faine to runne away naked, leauing his tents and pauilions to the Englishmen, full of horses and riche treasure, also with the Imperiall standerd, the lower part whereof with a costly streamer was couered, and wrought all with gold.

King Richard returning with victorie and triumph to his sister, and Bernegera shortly after in the moneth of May next following, and the 12. day of the said moneth, married the said Bernegera daughter of Rancon, king of Nauarre, in the yle of Cyprus at Lymsem.

The king of Cyprus seeing himselfe outmatched, was driuen at length to yeelde himselfe with conditions to giue king Richard 20000. markes in gold for amends of such spoyles as he had gotten of them that were drowned, also to restore all the captiues againe to the King: and furthermore, he in his owne person to attende vpon the King to the land of Ierusalem in Gods seruice and his, with 400. horsemen, and 500. footemen: in pledge whereof he would giue to his hands his castles, and his onely daughter, and would hold his kingdome of him.

This done, and the Emperour sweating fidelitie to king Richard before Guido king of Ierusalem, and the prince of Antioche (who were come thither to king Richard a little before) peace was taken, and Isakius committed to the warde of certaine keepers. Notwithstanding shortly after

ter

ter he breaking from his keepers, was againe at defiance with the King: whereupon king Richard besetting the Iland of Cyprus round about with shippes and gallies, did in such sort preuaile, that the Subiects of the land were constrained to yeelde themselues to the King, and at last the daughter of the Emperour, and the Emperour himselfe, whom king Richard caused to be kept in fetters of gold and siluer, and to be sent to the citie of Tripolis.

These things thus done, and all set in order touching the possession of the Ile of Cyprus, the keeping whereof he committed to Radulphe sonne of Godfrye Lord Chamberlaine, being then the first day of June vpon the sift of the saide moneth, king Richard departed from the Ile of Cyprus, with his shippes and gallies toward the siege of Achon, and on the next morowe came to Tyrus, where by procurement of the French King he was restrained by the Citizens to enter. The next day after, which was the sixt day of June, crossing the seas, he met with a great barke fraught with souldiers and men of warre to the number of a thousand and fiue hundred, which pretending to be Frenchmen, and setting foorth their flagge with the French Armes, were in deede Sarracens, secretly sent with wilde fire and certaine barrels of vnknowen serpents to the defense of the towne of Achon, which King Richard at length perceiuing, eftsoones set vpon them and so vanquished them, of whome the most were drowned and some taken aliue: which being once knowen in the citie of Achon, as it was a great discomfort to them, so it was a great helpe to the Christians for winning the citie.

The Lorde Chamberlaine of King Richard, left gouernour of Cyprus.

A great ship of Saracens taken by King Richard.

The next day after which was the seuenth of June, King Richard came to Achon, which at that time had bene long besieged by the Christians. After whose comming it was not long, but the Pagans within the citie, seeing their wals to be vndermined and towers ouerthrowen, were driuen by composition to escape with life and limme, to surrender the citie to the two kings.

K. Richard arriued at Achon.

Another great helpe to the Christians in winning the citie, was this. In the said city of Achon there was a secrete Christian among the Sarracens, who in time of the siege thereof, vsed at sundry times to cast ouer the wals into the campe of the Christians, certaine bils written in Hebrue, Greeke, and Latine, wherein he disclosed to the Christians from time to time, the doings and counsels of the enemies, aduertising them how and what way they should worke, and what to beware, and alwaies his letters began thus. In nomine Patris, & Filij, & Spiritus sancti, Amen. By reason whereof the Christians were much aduantaged in their proceedings: but this was a great heauines vnto them, that neither he would vtter his name, nor when the citie was got did they euer vnderstand who he was.

To make of a long siege a short narration. Vpon the twelfth day of July the yeere aforesaid, the Princes and Captaines of the Pagans, vpon agreement resorted to the tent of the Templaries to commune with the two kings touching peace, and giuing vp of their citie: the forme of which peace was thus.

The forme of peace concluded betweene the Kings and the Princes of Achon.

1 That the Kings should haue the citie of Achon freely and fully deliuered vnto them, with all which was therein.

2 That 500. captiues of the Christians should be restored to them, which were in Achon.

3 That the holy crosse should be to them rendred, and a thousand Christian captiues with two hundreth horsemen, whosoeuer they themselues would chose out of all them which were in the power of the Saladine.

4 That they would giue vnto the Kings two hundreth thousand Bysants, so that they themselues should remaine as pledges in the Kings hands, for the performance hereof, that if in fortie daies the aforesaide couenantes were not accomplished, they shoulde abide the Kings mercie touching life and limme.

These couenantes being agreed vpon, the Kings sent their souldiers and seruants into the citie to take a hundreth of the richest and best of the citie, to close them vp in towers vnder strong keeping, and the residue they committed to be kept in houses and in streetes, ministring vnto them according to their necessities: to whome notwithstanding this they permitted, that so many of them as would be baptized and receiue the faith of Christ, should be free to goe whither they would: whereupon many there were of the Pagans, which for feare of death pretended to be baptized, but afterward so soone as they could, reuolted againe to the Saladine: for the which it was afterward commanded by the Kings, that none of them should be baptized against their wils.

The thirteenth day of the saide moneth of July, King Philip of France, and King Richard, after they had obtained the possession of Achon, deuided betweene them all things therein contained as well the people as golde and siluer, with all other furniture whatsoeuer was remaining in the citie: who in deuiding the spoile, were so good caruers to themselues that the Knights and Barons had but litle to their share, whereupon they began to shewe themselues somewhat discontented

ted, which being knowen of the Kings they sent them answere that their wils should be satisfied.

The twentieth day of July, King Richard speaking with the French King, desired him that they two with their armies, would binde themselues by othe to remaine there still in the land of Ierusalem the space of 3. yeeres, for the winning and recouering againe of those countreys: but hee said he would sweare no such othe, and so the next day after King Richard with his wife and sister entreth into the Citie of Achon, and there placed himselfe in the Kings pallace: The French king remayning in the houses of the Templaries, where he continued till the ende of that moneth.

About the beginning of the moneth of August, Philip the French king after that hee and King Richard had made agreement betweene Guido and Conradus the Marques, about the kingdome of Ierusalem, went from Achon to Tyrus, notwithstanding king Richard and all the Princes of the Christian armie with great intreatie desired him to tary, shewing what a shame it were for him to come so farre, and now to leaue vndone that for which he came, and on the 3. day of August departed from Tyrus, leauing the halfe part of the Citie of Achon, in the hands of the aforesaide Conradus Marques.

The French Kings shamefull returne home.

After his departure the Pagans refused to keepe their couenants made, who neither would restore the holy Crosse nor the money, nor their captiues, sending word to King Richard, that if he beheaded the pledges left with him at Achon, they would choppe off the heads of such captiues of the Christians as were in their handes.

Shortly after this the Saladine sending great gifts to king Richard, requested the time limitted for beheading of the captiues to be proroged, but the king refused to take his gifts, and to graunt his request, whereupon the Saladine caused all the Christian captiues within his possession forthwith to beheaded, which was the 28. of August: which albeit king Richard vnderstoode, yet would not be preuent the time before limitted for the execution of his prisoners, being the 20. day of August: vpon which day hee caused the prisoners of the Saracens openly in the sight of the Saladines armie to loose their heads: the number of whom came to two thousand and fiue hundreth, saue only that certaine of the principall of them hee reserued for purposes and considerations, especially to make exchange for the holy Crosse, and certaine other of the Christian captiues.

The captiues of the Sarracens slaine by King Richard.

After this king Richard purposed to besiege the Citie of Ioppe, where by the way betweene Achon and Ioppe, neere to a towne called Assur, Saladine with a great multitude of his Saracens came fiercely against the kings rereward, but though Gods mercifull grace in the same battail, the kings warriers acquited themselues so well, that the Saladine was put to flight, whome the Christians pursued the space of 3. miles, and lost that same day many of his Nobles & Captaines, in such sort (as it was thought) that the Saladine was not put to such confusion 40. yeeres before, and but one Christian Captaine called Iames Auernus in that conflict was ouerthrowen.

A notable victory against the Saladine.

From thence king Richard proceeding further went to Ioppe, and then to Ascalon, where hee found first the Citie of Ioppe forsaken of the Saracens, who durst not abide the kings comming: Ascalon, the Saladine threw downe to the ground, & likewise forsooke the whole lande of Syria, through all which land the King had free passage without resistance: neither durst the Saracene Prince encounter after that with K. Richard. Of all which his atcheuances the said K. Richard sent his letters of certificate as wel into England, as also to the Abbot of Clara valle in France, well hoping ỳ he God willing should be able to make his repaire againe to them by Easter next.

King Richard in possession of Syria.

Many other famous acts were done in this voyage by these two Kings, and moe should haue bene, had not they falling into discorde disseuered themselues, by reason whereof Philip the French king returned home againe within short space: who being returned againe eftsoones inuaded the Countrey of Normandie, exciting also John the brother of king Richard, to take on him the kingdome of England in his brothers absence: who then made league vpon the same with the French king, and did homage vnto him, which was about the fourth yeere of king Richarde. Who then being in Syria, and hearing thereof, made peace with the Turkes for three yeeres: and not long after, king Richard the next spring following returned also, who in his returne driuen by distresse of weather about the parts of Histria, in a towne called Synaca, was there taken by Lympold, Duke of the same countrey, and so solde to the Emperour for sixtie thousand Markes: who for no small ioy thereof, writeth to Philip the French king, these letters here following.

1193.

King Richard returneth from Palestina.

The letter of the Emperour to Philip the French king, concerning the taking of King Richard.

HEnricus Dei gratiâ Romanorum Imperator, & semper Augustus. Dilecto & speciali amico suo, Philippo illustri Francorum Regi salutem, & sinceræ dilectionis affectum. Quoniam Imperatoria

toria Celsitudo non dubitat Regalem Magnificentiam tuam latiorem effici, de vniuersis quibus omnipotentia creatoris nostri nos ipsos, & Romanum Imperium honorauerit, & exaltauerit nobilitati tuæ tenore præsentium declarare duximus, quod inimicus Imperij nostri, & turbator Regni tui Rex Angliæ, quum esset in transeundo mare ad partes suas reuersurus, accidit vt ventus rupta naui sua, in qua ipse erat, induceret eum in partes Histriæ ad locum qui est inter Aquileiam, & Venetias. Vbi Rex, Dei permissione passus naufragium cum paucis euasit.

Quidam itaque fidelis noster Comes, Maynardus de Grooxce, & populus regionis illius, audito quod in terra erat, & considerato diligentius, qualem, Nominatus Rex in terra promissionis, proditionem & traditionem, & perditionis suæ cumulum exercuerat, insecuti sunt, intendentes eum captiuare. Ipso autem Rege in fugam conuerso, ceperunt de suis octo milites: Postmodum processit Rex ad Burgum in Archiepiscopatu Salseburgensi, qui vocatur Frisorum, vbi Fridericus de Betesow, Rege cum tribus tantum versus Austriam properante, noctu sex milites de suis cœpit: Dilectus autem Consanguineus noster Lympoldus Dux Austriæ, obseruata strata sæpè, dictum Regem iuxta Denam in villa vicinori, in domo despecta captiuauit.

Cum itaq; in nostra nunc habeatur Potestate, & ipse semper tua molestauit, & turbationis operam præstiterit, ea quæ præmisimus, nobilitati tuæ insinuare curauimus: scientes ea dilectioni tuæ beneplacita existere, animo tuo vberrimam importare lætitiam. Datum apud Ritheountum 5. Kalendas Ianua.

King Richard being thus traiterously taken, and sold to the Emperour by the Duke of Austridge for 60000. markes, was there kept in custodie a yeere and 3. moneths.

In some stories it is affirmed, that King Richard returning out of Asia, came to Italy with prosperous winde, where he desired of the Pope to be absolued of an othe made against his will and could not obteine it: and so setting out from thence towards England, passing by the Countrey of Conradus the Marques, whose death (he being slaine a litle before) was falsly imputed by the French King to the King of Englande, there traiterously was taken (as is aforesaide) by Limpoldus duke of Austridge.

Albeit in another storie I finde the matter more credibly set forth: which saith thus. That king Richard slewe the brother of this Limpoldus, playing with him at Chesse in the French Kings Court: and Limpoldus taking his vantage, was more cruel against him and deliuered him (as is saide) to the Emperour. In whose custodie he was detcined during the time aboue mentioned, a yeere & 3. moneths. During which time of the Kings endurance, the French King in the meane season stirred warre in Normandie: and Earle John the Kings brother, made stirre and inuaded England, but the Barons and bishops of the land mightily withstood him.

At length it was so agreed and concluded with the Emperour, that King Richard should be released for a hundreth and foure thousand pound: of which money part should remaine to the Duke of Austridge, the rest should be the Emperours. The summe of which money was here gathered and made in England of Chalices, Crosses, shrines, candlesticks and other Church plate, also with publike contribution of Friers, Abbots, and other subiects of the Realme: whereof part was presently paid, and for the residue remayning, hostages and pledges were taken, which was about the fift yeere of his reigne: and then it was obteined of the Pope, that Priestes might celebrate with Chalices of latten and tinne.

At what time this aforesaide money was payd, and the hostages giuen for the ransome of the King, I haue an olde historie which saith, that the aforesaid Duke of Austridge was shortly after plagued by God, with 5. sundry plagues. The first iudgment of God vpon the Duke of Austria.

First, with the burning of his chiefe Townes.

2. With drowning of tenne thousand of his men in a floud happening no man can tell how.

3. By turning all the eares of his corne fielde into wormes.

4. By taking away almost all the Nobles of his land by death.

5. By breaking his owne legge falling from his horse, which legge hee was compelled to cut off with his owne hands, and afterwardes died of the same: who then at his death is reported to forgiue King Richard 50000. marks, and sent home the hostages that were with him. And further a certaine booke intituled Eulogium, declareth that ꝑ said Limpoldus duke of Austridge fell in displeasure with the bishop of Rome and died excommunicate the next yeere after, Anno 1196.

But thus as you haue heard, Richard the King was ransomed & deliuered from the courtous captiuitie of the Emperour, and returning home made an ende of his voyage for Asia, which was both honourable to himselfe and to all Christian States, but to the Sarracens the enemies of Christianitie, terrible and dishonourable.

This Historie of King Richards voyage to Ierusalem, is very excellently and largely written in Latine by Guilielmus Neobrigensis our owne countreyman.

The life and trauailes of Baldwinus Deuonius, sometime *Archbishop of Canterburie.*

BAldwinus Deuonius, tenui loco Excestriæ natus, vir ore facundus, exactus Philosophus, & ad omne studiorum genus per illos dies aptissimus inueniebatur, Scholarum rector primùm erat: tum postea Archidiaconus, eruditione ac sapientia in omni negotio celebris: fuit præterea Cistercienſis Monachus, & Abbas Fordensis Cœnobij, magnus suorum æstimatione, ac vniuersæ eorum societati quasi Antesignanus: fuit deinde Wigornienſis præsul, fuit & mortuo demum Richardo Cantuariorum Archiepiscopus, ac totius Angliæ primas. Cui muneri Baldwinus sollicitè inuigilans, egregium se pastorem exhibuit, dominicum semen, quantum patiebatur eius temporis iniquitas, vbique locorum spargens. Richardus Anglorum Rex, acceptis tunc Regni insignijs, summo studio classem, ac omnia ad Hierosolymitarum bellum gerendum necessaria parauit. Secutus est illico Regem in Syriam, & Palestinam vsque Baldwinus, vt esset in tam Sancto (vt ipse putabat itinere) laborum, dolorum, ac periculorum particeps. Præfuit Cantuariensi Ecclesiæ ferè 6. annis, & Richardum Regem in Syriam secutus, anno Salutis nostræ 1190. Tyri vitam finiuit, vbi & sepultus est.

¶ *The same in English.*

BAldwine a Deuonshire man borne in Exeter of meane parentage, was a very eloquent man, an exact Philosopher, and in those dayes very excellent in all kinde of studies. He was first of all a Scholemaster: afterwards he became an Archdeacon, very famous for his learning & wisedome in all his doings. He was also a Cistercian Monke and Abbot of Foorde Monasterie, and the chiefe of all those that were of his order: he grewe after this to be bishop of Worcester, and at last after the death of King Richard he was promoted and made Archebishop of Canterburie, and Primate of all England. In the discharge of which place hee being very vigilant, shewed himselfe a worthy Pastor, sowing the seede of Gods word in euery place as farre foorth as the iniquitie of that time permitted. In his time King Richard with all indeuour prepared a Fleete and all things necessarie for waging of warre against the Infidels at Ierusalem, taking with him the Standerd and Ensignes of the kingdome. This Baldwine eftsoones followed the King into Syria and Palestina, as one desirous to be partaker of his trauailes, paines, and perils in so holy a voyage. He was Archbishop of Canterburie almost sixe yeeres: but hauing followed the King into Syria, in the yeere 1190. he died at Tyre where he was also buried.

An annotation concerning the trauailes of the said *Baldwine, taken out of Ponticus Virunnius, in his Itinerarium* Cambriæ, lib. 2. Cap. 14. Fol. 229.

INter primos Thomæ Becketi, successor hic secundus, audita saluatoris & salutiferæ Crucis iniuria nostris (proh dolor) diebus per Saladinum irrogata, cruce signatus, in eiusdem obsequijs, tam remotis finibus quam propinquis, prædicationis officium viriliter assumpsit. Et postmodum iter accipiens, nauigioque fungens apud Marsiliam, transcurso tandem Pelagi profundo, in portu Tyrensi incolumis applicuit: & inde ad exercitum nostrum obsidentem pariter & obsessum Aconem transiuit: vbi multos ex nostris inueniens, & ferè cunctos principum defectu, in summa desolatione iam positos, & desperatione, alios quidem longa expectatione fatigatos, alios fame & inopia grauiter afflictos, quosdam verò aeris inclementia distemperatos, diem fœlicitèr in terra sacra clausurus extremum, singulos pro posse vinculo charitatis amplectens, sumptibus & impensis, verbis, & vitæ meritis confirmauit.

¶ *The same in English.*

THis Baldwine being the second successour vnto Thomas Becket, after he had hard the wrong which was done to our Sauiour, and the signe of the Crosse by Saladine the Sultan of Egypt, taking vpon him the Lords Character, hee couragiously perfourmed his office of preaching in the obedience thereof, as well in farre distant Countreis as at home. And afterwardes taking his iourney and imbarking himselfe at Marsillis, hauing at length passed the Leuant Sea arriued safely in the Hauen of Tyrus, and from thence went ouer to Achon vnto our armie, besieging the Towne, and yet (as it were) besieged it selfe. Where finding many of our Countreymen, and almost all men remayning in wonderfull pensiuenes, and dispaire through the withdrawing of the

the Princes, ſome of them tired with long expectation, others grieuouſly afflicted with hunger and pouertie, and others diſtempered with the heate of the weather, being ready happily to ende his dayes in the Holy land, embracing euery one accoꝛding to his abilitie in the bond of loue, hee ayded them at his coſtes and charges, and ſtrengthened them with his woꝛdes and good examples of life.

The trauailes of one Richard ſyrnamed *Canonicus.*

RIchardus Canonicus ad Trinitatis fanum Londini Regularis, ab ipſa pueritia, bonarum artium literas impenſè amauit, excoluit, ac didicit. Qui ex continuo labore atque exercitatione longa, talis tandem euaſit orator, & Poeta, quales ea ætas rariſſimos nutriebat. Obid Richardo Anglorum tunc Regi charus, longam cum eo peregrinationem, in Paleſtinam ac Syriam, dum expugnaret Turcas, ſuſcepit. Vnde in Angliam tum demum reuerſus, omnia quæ præſens vidit in vrbibus, agris, ac militum caſtris, fideli narratione, tam carmine quam proſa deſcripſit. Neque interim omiſit eiuſdem Regis mores, & formam, per omnia corporis liniamenta deſignare, addiditque præclaro ſuo operi, hoc aptiſſimum pro titulo nomen, ſcilicet, Itinerarium Regis Richardi. Claruit anno redemptionis noſtræ 1200. ſub Ioanne Anglorum Rege.

¶ *The ſame in Engliſh.*

RIchard ſyrnamed Canonicus an obſeruant Frier of Trinitie Church in London, was in great loue with the ſtudies of good Arts and tooke paines in them and learned them. And at laſt by his continuall endeuour and long exerciſe therein, he grew to be ſuch an Oratour and Poet, as few were in that age liuing, by reaſon whereof he grew in fauour with Richard then King of England, and vndertooke that long voyage with him into Paleſtina & Syria againſt the Turkes. From whence being returned againe into England, hee faithfully deſcribed both in Verſe and proſe all ſuch things as he had ſeene in the Cities, fields and tents of the ſouldiers, where he was preſent, and omitted not to note the behauiour, forme, and proportion of body in the foreſaid King, giuing to his notable worke this moſt apt name for the title, The Iournall of King Richard. Hee flouriſhed in the yeere of our Redemption 1200. vnder Iohn King of England.

The trauailes of Guilielmus Peregrinus.

GVilielmus Peregrinus, Poeta quidam per eam etatem excellens, genere Anglus florebat, literarum, vt multi tunc erant, amator maximus, & qui bona tempora melioribus impenderat ſtudijs. Hic cum accepiſſet, expeditionem in Sarracenos per Regem Richardum parari, accinxit ſe ad iter illud, non tantum vt miles, ſed etiam Peregrinus. Vidit ea quæ in Mari Hiſpanico fiebant, vidit quæ in Syria & Paleſtina commiſſa fuerunt, in Sultanum Babiloniæ Regem, ac perfidos Sarracenos. Omnia hæc ſcripſit, & viuis depinxit coloribus, ita vt quaſi præ oculis, totum poneret negotium, idemque Argumentum cum Richardo Canonico non infœliciter, Heroico pertractauit carmine, opuſque iam abſolutum, Huberto Cantuariorum Archiepiſcopo, & Stephano Turnhamo Capitaneo rerum bellicarum expertiſſimo dedicauit, addito hoc titulo Odeporicon Richardi Regis. Multaque alia edidiſſe Poetam talem non dubito, ſed num extent illa eius ſcripta, mihi non conſtat. Hoc tamen ſatis conſtat, eum fuiſſe in pretio, Anno à ſalutifero virginis partu 1200. ſub Anglorum Rege Ioanne.

¶ *The ſame in Engliſh.*

WIlliam the Pilgrime, a very excellent Poet in thoſe dayes and an Engliſhman borne, was of great fame, being much giuen to good letters, (as many then were) and beſtowed his good time in the beſt kinde of ſtudies. Hee vnderſtanding of the preparation of King Richarde againſt the Sarracens, prepared himſelfe alſo for the ſame voyage, not onely as a Souldiour, but as a Pilgrime alſo. He ſawe thoſe things which happened in the Spaniſh ſeas, and which were done in Syria and Paleſtina againſt the Sultan the King of Babylon, and the treacherous Sarracens. All which things he wrote and expreſſed them as it were in liuely colours, as if they had bene ſtill in doing before his eyes: And handled the ſame Argument in Heroical verſe

which the forenamed Richard Canonicus did. And hauing finished his worke he dedicated it to Hubert Archbishop of Canterburie, and to Stephen Turneham a most expert Captaine of the warres, giuing it this Title, The Expedition of King Richard. And I doubt not but that so good a Poet as hee was published many other things, but whether they be extant yea or no, I know not: but this I know, that he was a man well accompted of, and flourished in the yeere after the birth of Christ 1200. vnder King John.

The trauailes of Hubert Walter Bishop of *Sarisburie.*

HVbertus Walterus Sarisburiensis Episcopus, vir probus, ingenioque ac pietate clarus, inter præcipuos vnus eorum erat, qui post Richardum Regem expugnandorum Saracenorum gratia in Syriam proficiscebantur. Cum ex Palestina rediens, audiret in Sicilia, quod idem Richardus in inimicorũ manus incidisset, omisso itinere incepto, ad eum cursim diuertebat: Quem & ille statim, in Angliam misit, vt illic Regij Senatus authoritate, indicto pro eius redemptione tributo pecuniam colligeret, quod & industrius fecit ac Regem liberauit. Inde Cantuariorum Archiepiscopus factus, post eius mortem Ioanni illius fratri ac successori, paria fidelitatis officia præstitit. Longa enim oratione, toti Anglorum nationi persuasit, quod vir prouidus, præstans, fortis, genere nobilissimus, & imperio dignissimus esset: quo salutatus a populo fuit, atque in Regem coronatus. Composuit quædam opuscula, & ex immenso animi dolore demum obijsse fertur, Anno salutis humanæ 1205. cum sedisset annos 11. Menses octo, & dies sex. Quum vidisset, ex intestinis odijs, omnia in transmarinis regionibus pessum ire, regnante Ioanne.

¶ *The same in English.*

HVbert Walter bishop of Sarisburie a vertuous man, and famous for his good wit and pietie, was one of the chiefest of them that followed King Richard into Syria going against the Sarracens. As he returned from Palestina & came in his iourney into Silicia, he there hard of the ill fortune of the King being fallen into his enemies handes, and thereupon leauing his iourney homewards, he went presently and in all haste to the place where the King was captiued, whom the King immediatly vpon his comming sent into England, that by the authoritie of the Council, a tribute might be collected for his redemption: which this Hubert performed with great diligence, and deliuered the King. After this hee was made Archbishop of Canterburie, and after the death of King Richard he shewed the like dueties of fidelitie and trust to his brother Iohn that succeeded him. For by a long Oration he perswaded the whole Nation of the Englishmen, that he was a very circumspect man, vertuous, valiant, borne of Noble parentage, and most worthy of the Crowne. Whereupon he was so receiued of all the people and crowned King. He wrote certaine bookes, and died at the last with very great griefe of minde, in the yeere 1205. hauing bene Archbishop the space of 11. yeeres 8. moneths and fiue dayes, by reason of the ciuill discords abroade, whereby all things went topsie turuie, and in the raigne of King Iohn.

The trauailes of Robert Curson.

RObertus Curson ex nobili quodam Anglorum ortus genere, disciplinis tum prophanis, tum sacris studiosus incubuit, idque (quantum ex coniecturis colligo) in celebratissima Oxonij Academia. Præstantissimis illic institutoribus vsus, ex summa circa ingenuas artes industria, & assiduo literarum labore, famam sibi inter suos celeberrimam comparauit. Ampliora deinde meditatus Parisiorum Lutetiam, atque Romam ipsam petijt, illic Theologus Doctor, hic verò Cardinalis effectus. Vnde vterque Matthæus, Parisius, ac Westmonasterius, hoc de ipso testimonium adferunt: hic libro 2. ille 8. suorum Chronicorum. Anno Domini 1218. (inquiunt) in captione Damiatæ Ægypti vrbis, sub Ioanne Brenno Hierosolymorum Rege, fuit cum Pelagio Albanensi Magister Robertus de Curson, Anglus, Clericus celeberrimus, genere nobilis, ac Romanæ Ecclesiæ Cardinalis, &c. Bostonus Buriensis in suo Catalogo Cursonum aliquos libros composuisse narrat. Claruit Anno superius numerato per prædictos testes, in Anglia regnante Henrico 3. Ioannis Regis filio: fuitque hic diebus Honorij tertij Romani pontificis in Angliam, Bostono teste, legatus.

¶ The

¶ The ſame in Engliſh.

RObert Curſon deſcended of a noble familie in England, vſed great diligence as well in pro-phane as in diuine ſtudies in the famous Vniuerſitie of Oxforde (as I coniecture.) Hee had there the beſt ſcholemaſters that were to be gotten, and was moſt induſtrious in the Arts and continuall exerciſes of learning: by meanes whereof he grew to be of great renowne where he liued. Afterward thinking of greater matters he went to Paris and thence to Rome it ſelfe, and at Paris he proceeded doctor of Diuinitie, at Rome he was made Cardinal: whereupon both Matthew Paris and Matthew of Weſtminſter, produce this teſtimonie of him, The one in his 2. booke, the other in his 8. booke of Chronicles. In the yeere of our Lorde (ſay they) 1218. at the taking of Damiata a Citie of Egypt vnder Iohn Brenne King of Ieruſalem, M. Robert Curſon an Engliſhman, a moſt famous clearke of noble parentage and Cardinall of the Church of Rome, was there with Pelagius Albanenſis, &c. Boſton of Burie in Norfolke in his Catalogue reporteth, that he wrote diuers bookes. He flouriſhed in the yere aforeſaid by the witneſſes aforeſaid. Henry the thirde the ſonne of King Iohn being then King of England: and by the further teſtimonie of Boſton this Curſon was Legate into England in ỳ dayes of Honorius the third biſhop of Rome.

The trauailes of Raynulphe Glanuile Earle of Cheſter.

RAnulphus Glanuile Ceſtriæ Comes, vir nobiliſſimi generis, & in vtroque iure eruditus, in albo illuſtrium virorum à me merito ponendus venit. Ita probè omnes Adoleſcentiæ ſuæ annos, legibus tum humanis, tum diuinis conſecrauit, vt non prius in hominem per ætatem euaſerit, quàm nomen decuſque ab inſigni eruditione ſibi comparauerit. Cum profecti eſſent Francorum Heroes Ptolomaydem, inito cum Ioanne Brenno Hieroſolymorum Rege conſilio, Damiatam Ægypti vrbem obſidendam conſtituebant, anno Salutis humanæ 1218. Miſit illuc Henricus Rex, ab Honorio 3. Rom. Pontifice rogatus, cum magna armatorum manu Ranulphum, ad rem Chriſtianam iuuandam. Cuius virtus Polydoro teſte, in eo bello miris omnium laudibus celebrata fuit. Quo confecto negotio, Ranulphus in patriam reuerſus, ſcripſit, De legibus Angliæ librum vnum. Fertur præterea, & alia quædam ſcripſiſſe, ſed tempus edax rerum, ea nobis abſtulit. Claruit anno à Seruatoris noſtri natiuitate 1230 confectus ſenio, dum Henricus tertius ſub Antichriſti tyrannide in Anglia regnaret.

¶ The ſame in Engliſh.

RAynulph Glanuile Earle of Cheſter, a man of a very noble houſe and learned in both the Lawes, deſerues of duetie to be here placed by me in the Catalogue of worthy and notable men. He applied ſo well all the yeeres of his youth to the ſtudie of humane and diuine Lawes, that he came not ſo ſoone to the age of a man, as he had purchaſed to himſelfe by reaſon of his ſinguler learning, renowne and honour. When the noble men of Fraunce went to Ptolomais, vpon the counſell of Iohn Brenne King of Ieruſalem, they reſolued to beſiege Damiata a Citie of Egypt, in the yeere 1218. And then Henry the King vpon the motion of Honorius the 3. biſhop of Rome, ſent thither this Earle Raynulph with a great power of armed ſouldiers, to further the enterpriſe of the Chriſtians: whoſe valure in that warre (by the teſtimonie of Polidor Virgil) was marueilouſly commended of all men. After the ende of which buſines, he being returned into his countrey, wrote a booke of the Lawes of England. It is alſo reported that hee wrote other bookes, but time the deſtroyer of many memorials, hath taken them from vs. He flouriſhed in the yeere after the natiuitie of Chriſt 1230. being very aged, and in the raigne of K. Henry the 3.

The voyage of William" Longeſpee, a notable and valiant Gentleman of England into Aſia, in the yeere 1248. and in the 32. yeere of the raigne of Henrie the 3. King of England.

"Or, long-ſword.

LEwes the French King being recouered of his ſickenes which hee fell into, in the yeere 1244. vowed thereupon for a free will ſacrifice to God, that he (if the Counſell of his Realme would ſuffer him,) would in his owne perſon viſite the Holy land: which matter was opened and debated in the Parliament of France holde in the yeere 1247. Where at length it was concluded, that the King according to his vowe ſhould take his iourney into Aſia, and the time thereof was

also prefixed, which should be after the feast of S. Iohn Baptist the next yeere ensuing.

At which time William Longespee a worthie warriour, with the bishop of Worcester and certaine other great men in the Realme of England (mooued with the example of the French men) prepared themselues likewise to the same iourney.

It fell out in this enterprise, that about the beginning of October the French king assaulted and tooke Damiata, being the principall fort or hold of the Sarracens in all Egypt, Anno 1249. and hauing fortified the Citie with an able garrison left with the Duke of Burgundie, he remooued his tents from thence to goe Eastward. In whose armie followed William Longespee, accompanied with a piked number of English warriours retayning vnto him. But such was the disdaine of the Frenchmen against this William Longespee & the Englishmen that they could not abide them, but flouted them after an opprobrious maner with English tailes, insomuch that the French king himselfe had much adoe to keepe peace betweene them.

A fort wonne by the Englishmen.

The originall cause of this grudge betweene them beganne thus. There was not farre from Alexandria in Egypt a strong fort or castle replenished with great Ladies and riche treasure of the Sarracens: which holde it chanced the saide William Longespee with his companie of English souldiers to get, more by politique dexteritie then by open force of armes, wherewith hee and his retinue were greatly enriched. When the Frenchmen had knowledge hereof (they not being made priuie hereto) began to conceiue an heart burning against the English souldiers, and could not speake well of them after that.

A rich bootie also gotten by the Englishmen.

It happened againe not long after, that the saide William had intelligence of a companie of riche marchants among the Sarracens going to a certaine Faire about the parts of Alexandria, hauing their camels, asses and mules, richly loden with silkes, precious iewels, spices, golde, and siluer, with Cart loads of other wares, beside victuall and other furniture, whereof the souldiers then stood in great neede: he hauing secret knowledge hereof, gathered all the power of Englishmen vnto him that he could, and so by night falling vpon the Marchants, some he slew with their guides and conducters, some he tooke, some he put to flight: the Carts with the driuers, and with the oxen, camels, asses, and mules, with the whole cariage and victuals he tooke and brought with him, loosing in all the skirmish but one souldier and 8. of his seruitors: of whom notwithstanding some he brought home wounded to be cured.

The enuie of the Frenchmen to our English.

This being knowen in the Campe, forth came the French men which all this while loytered in their pauillions, and meeting this cariage by the way, tooke all the foresaide praye whole to themselues, rating the said William and the Englishmen for aduenturing and plluing out of the Campe without leaue or knowledge of their Generall, contrary to the discipline of warre. William said againe he had done nothing but he would answere to it, whose purpose was to haue the spoyle deuided to the behoofe of the whole armie.

William Longespee iustly forsaketh the French King.

When this would not serue, hee being sore grieued in his minde so cowardly to be spoyled of that, which hee so aduenturously had trauailed for, went to the King to complaine: But when no reason nor complaint would serue by reason of the proude Earle of Artoys the kings brother, which vpon spight and disdaine stoode against him, he bidding the King farewell saide hee would serue him no longer: and so William de Longespee with the rest of his companie breaking from the French hoste went to Achon. Vpon whose departure the Earle of Artoys saide, Now is the armie of Frenchmen wel ridde of these tailed people, which words spoken in great despight were ill taken of many good men that heard them.

But not long after when the keeper of Cayro and Babylonia, bearing a good mind to the Christian Religion, and being offended also with the Soldan, promised to deliuer the same to the French King, instructing him what course was best for him to take to accomplish it, the King hereupon in all haste sent for Willam Longespee, promising him a full redresse of all his iniuries before receiued: who at the Kings request came to him againe, and so ioyned with the French power.

After this it happened that the French King passing with his armie towardes Cayro aforesayde came to the great riuer Nilus, on the further part whereof the Soldan had pitched himselfe to withstand his comming ouer: there was at this time a Sarracen lately conuerted to Christ, seruing the Earle Robert the French Kings brother, who told him of the absence of the Soldan from his tents, and of a shallow foord in the riuer where they might easily passe ouer. Whereupon the saide Earle Robert & the Master of the Temple with a great power, esteemed to the third part of the Armie passed ouer the Riuer, after whom followed W. Longespee with his band of English souldiers. These being ioyned together on y other side of the water, encountred the same day with the Sarracens remaining in the tents & put them to the worst. Which victory being gotten, the

French

French Earle ſurpriſed with pride and triumph, as though he had conquered the whole earth, would needes forward, deuiding himſelfe from the maine hoſte, thinking to winne the ſpurres alone. To whome certaine ſage men of the Temple, giuing him contrary counſell, aduiſed him not to doe ſo, but rather to returne and take their whole company with them, and ſo ſhould they be more ſure againſt all deceites and dangers, which might be layd priuily for them. The maner of that people (they ſayd) they better knewe, and had more experience thereof then he: alleaging moreouer their wearied bodies, their tired horſes, their famiſhed ſouldiers, and the inſufficiencie alſo of their number, which was not able to withſtand the multitude of the enemies, eſpecially at this preſent hunt, in which the aduerſaries did well ſee the whole ſtate of their dominion now to conſiſt either in winning all, or loſing all.

Which when the proude Earle did heare, being inflated with no leſſe arrogancie then ignorance, with opprobrious taunts reuiled them, calling them cowardly baſtards, and betrayers of the whole countrey, obiecting vnto them the common report of many, which ſayd, that the land of the holy croſſe might ſoone be wonne to Chriſtendome, were it not for rebellious Templaries, with the Hoſpitalaries, and their followers.

To theſe contumelious rebukes, when the maſter of the Temple anſwered againe for him and his fellowes, bidding them diſplay his enſigne when he would, and where he durſt, they were as ready to follow him, as he to goe before them, then began William de Longeſpee the worthy knight to ſpeake, deſiring the Earle to giue eare to thoſe men of experience, who had better knowledge of thoſe countries and people then had he, commending alſo their counſell to be diſcreete and wholeſome, and ſo turning to the maſter of the Temple, began with gentle words to mitigate him likewiſe. The knight had not halfe ended his talke, when the Earle taking his words out of his mouth, began to fume and ſweare, crying out of thoſe cowardly Engliſhmen with tailes: What a pure armie (ſayd he) ſhould we haue here, if theſe tailes and tailed people were purged from it, with other like words of villany, and much diſdayne: whereunto the Engliſh knight anſwering againe, well, Earle Robert (ſayd he) whereſoeuer you dare ſet your foote, my ſtep ſhall goe as farre as yours, and (as I beleeue) we goe this day where you ſhall not dare to come neere the taile of my horſe, as in deede in the euent it prooued true: for Earle Robert would needes ſet forward, weening to get all the glory to himſelfe before the comming of the hoſte, and firſt inuaded a litle village or caſtle, which was not farre of, called Manſor. The countrey Boores and Pagans in the villages, ſeeing the Chriſtians comming, ranne out with ſuch a maine crye and howte, that it came to the Soldans hearing, who was neerer then our men did thinke. In the meane time, the Chriſtians inuading and entring into the munition incircumſpectly, were pelted and paſhed with ſtones by them which ſtood aboue, whereby a great number of our men were loſt, and the armie ſore maymed, and almoſt in deſpaire.

The worthy anſwere of William Longeſpee to Earle Robert.

Then immediatly vpon the ſame, commeth the Soldan with all his maine power, which ſeeing the Chriſtian armie to be deuided, and the brother ſeparated from the brother, had that which he long wiſhed for, and ſo incloſing them round about, that none ſhould eſcape, had with them a cruell fight.

Then the earle began to repent him of his heady raſhnes, but it was too late, who then ſeeing William the Engliſh knight doughtily fighting in the chief hunt of the enemies, cried vnto him moſt cowardly to flie, ſeeing God (ſaith he) doth fight againſt vs: To whome the Knight anſwering againe, God forbid (ſayth he) that my fathers ſonne ſhould runne away from the face of a Sarracen. The Earle then turning his horſe, fled away, thinking to auoid by the ſwiftnes of his horſe, and ſo taking the riuer Thafnis, oppreſſed with harneſſe, was there ſunken and drowned.

The cowardly fight of Earle Robert.

Thus the Earle being gone the Frenchmen began to diſpaire and ſcatter. Then William de Longeſpee bearing all the force of the enemies, ſtoode againſt them as long as he could, wounding and ſlaying many a Sarracen, till at length his horſe being killed, and his legges maimed, he could no longer ſtande, who yet notwithſtanding as he was downe, mangled their feete and legges, and did the Sarracens much ſorrow, till at laſt after many blowes & wounds, being ſtoned of the Sarracens, he yeelded his life. And after the death of him, the Sarracens ſetting vpon the reſidue of the armie, whome they had compaſſed on euery ſide, deuoured and deſtroied them all, inſomuch that ſcarſe one man remained aliue, ſauing two Templaries, one Hoſpitaler, and one poore raſcall ſouldier, which brought tidings hereof to the King.

The valiant ende of William Longeſpee.

And thus by the impudent and fooliſh hardines of that French Earle, the Frenchmen were diſcomfited, and that valiant Engliſh Knight ouermatched, to the griefe of all Chriſtian people, the glorie of the Sarracens, and the vtter deſtruction and ruine of the whole French armie, as afterwards it appeared.

The

The voyage of Prince Edward the sonne of King Henry *the third into Asia, in the yeere* 1270.

ABout the yeere of our Lord, 1267. Octobonus the Popes Legat being in England, prince Edward the sonne of King Henry, and diuers other Noble men of England tooke vpon them the crosse vpon S. Iohns day the Baptist, by the said Legates hands at Northhampton, to the reliefe of the Holy lande, and the subuersion of the enemies of the crosse of Christ. For which purpose, and for the better furnishing of the prince towards the iourney, there was granted him a subsidie throughout all the Realme, and in the moneth of May, in the yeere of our Lord, 1270. he began to set forward.

At Michelmas following, he with his companie came to Eguemortes, which is from Marsillia eight leagues westward, and there taking ship againe (hauing a merrie & prosperous wind) within ten daies arriued at Tunez, where he was with great ioy welcommed, and intertained of the Christian princes that there were to this purpose assembled, as of Philip the French King, whose father Lodouicus died a litle before, of Carolus the King of Sicilia, and the two Kings of Nauarre, and Arragon, and as this Lord Edward came thither for his father the King of England, thither came also Henry the sonne of the King of Almaine for his father, who at his returne from the voyage, was slaine in a Chappell at Viterbium.

When prince Edward demaunded of these Kings and princes what was to be done, they answered him againe, and said, the prince of this citie and the prouince adioyning to the same, hath bene accustomed to pay tribute vnto the king of Sicily euery yeere: and now for that the same hath bene for the space of seuen yeeres vnpaied and more, therefore we thought good to make inuasion vpon him. But the King knowing the same tribute to be but iustly demanded, hath now according to our owne desire satisfied for the time past, and also paid his tribute before hand.

Then said he, My Lords, what is this to the purpose? are we not here all assembled, and haue take vpon vs the Lords Character to fight against the infidels & enemies of Christ: what meane you then to conclude a peace with them. God forbid we should do so, for now ꝑ land is plaine and hard, so that we may approch ꝑ holy city Ierusalem. Then said they, now haue we made a league with them, neither is it lawful for vs to breake the same. But let vs returne againe to Sicilia, and when the winter is past we may well take shipping to Acra. But this counsel nothing at all liked him, neither did he shewe himselfe wel pleased therewith: but after he had made them a princely banket, he went into his closet or priuy chamber from amongst them, neither would be partaker of any of that wicked money which they had taken. They notwithstanding continuing their purpose, at the next merry wind tooke shipping, and for want of ships left 200. of their men a shoare, crying out, and piteously lamenting for the peril and hazard of death that they were in: wherewith prince Edward being somewhat mooued to compassion, came backe againe to the land, and receiued and stowed them in his owne ships, being the last that went aboord.

Within seuen daies after, they arriued in the kingdome of Sicilia, ouer against the citie Trapes, casting their ankers a league from thence within the sea, for that their shippes were of great burden, and throughly fraught: and from the hauen of the citie, they sent out barges and boates to receiue and bring such of the Nobilitie to land as would, but their horses for the most part, and all their armour they kept still within boord.

At length towards the euening, the sea began to be rough, & increased to a great tempest and a mighty: insomuch that their ships were beaten one against anothers sides, and drowned there was of them at that tempest lying at anker more then 120. with all their armour and munition, with innumerable soules besides, and that wicked money also which they had taken before, likewise perished, and was lost.

But the tempest hurt not so much as one ship of prince Edwards, who had in number 13. nor yet had one man lost thereby, for that (as it may be presupposed) he consented not to the wicked counsell of the rest.

When in the morning the princes and kings came to the sea side, and saw al their ships drowned, and saw their men and horses in great number cast vpon the land drowned, they had ful heauie hearts, as well they might, for of all their ships and mariners, which were in number 1500. besides the common souldiers, there was no more saued then the mariners of one onely ship, and they in this wise.

There was in that ship a good and wise Matrone, a Countesse or an Earles wife, perceiuing the tempest to grow, & fearing her selfe, called to her the M. of the ship, & asked him whether in attempting

tempting to the ſhoare it were not poſſible to ſaue themſelues: he anſwered, þ to ſaue þ ſhip it was impoſſible, howbeit þ men that were therin by Gods helpe he doubted not. Then ſaid the Counteſſe, for the ſhippe force no whit, ſaue the ſoules therein, and haue to thee double the value of the ſhippe: who immediatly hoyſing the ſailes with all force, ranne the ſhippe aground ſo neere the ſhoare as was poſſible, ſo that with the vehemencie of the weather and force he came withall, braſt the ſhip and ſaued all that was within the ſame, as the Maſter had ſhewed, and ſayd before.

Then the Kings and Princes (altering their purpoſe after this ſo great a ſhipwracke) returned home againe euery one vnto their owne lands. Onely Edward the ſonne of the King of England, remained behind with his men and ſhips, which the Lord had ſaued and preſerued.

Then Prince Edwarde renouating his purpoſe, tooke ſhipping againe, and within fifteene dayes after Eaſter arriued he at Acra, and went aland, taking with him a thouſand of the beſt ſouldiers and moſt expert, and taried there a whole moneth, refreſhing both his men and horſes, and that in this ſpace he might learne and knowe the ſecrets of the land. After this he tooke with him ſixe or ſeuen thouſand ſouldiers, and marched forward twentye miles from Acra, and tooke Nazareth, and thoſe that he founde there he ſlewe, and afterward returned againe to Acra. But their enemies following after them, thinking to haue ſet vpon them at ſome ſtreight or other aduantage, were eſpied by the Prince, and returning againe vpon them gaue a charge, and ſlewe many of them, and the reſt they put to flight.

The arriuall of Prince Edward at Acra.

Nazareth taken by the Prince.

After this, about Midſommer when the Prince had vnderſtanding that the Sarracens began to gather at Cakowe which was forty miles from Acra, he marching thither ſet vpon them very earely in the morning, and ſlewe of them more then a thouſand, the reſt he put to flight, and tooke riche ſpoiles, marching forward till they came to a Caſtle named Caſtrum peregrinorum, ſituate vpon the ſea coaſt, & taried there that night, & the next day they returned againe toward Acra.

A victorie againſt the Sarracens, wherein 1000. of them were ſlaine.

In the meane ſeaſon the King of Ieruſalem ſent vnto the Noble men of Cyprus, deſiring them to come with ſpeede to ayde the Chriſtians, but they would not come, ſaying they would keepe their owne land, and goe no further. Then Prince Edward ſent vnto them, deſiring that at his requeſt they would come and ioyne in ayde with him: who immediatly thereupon came vnto him with great preparation and furniture for the warres, ſaying, that at his commandement they were bound to doe no leſſe, for that his predeceſſors were ſometimes the gouernours of that their land, and that they ought alwaies to ſhewe their fidelitie to the Kings of England.

The Princes of Cyprus acknowledge obedience to the kings of England.

Then the Chriſtians being herewith animated, made a thirde voyage or roade, and came as farre as the forte called Vincula ſancti Petri, and to S. Georgius, and when they had ſlaine certaine there, not finding any to make reſiſtance againſt them, they retired againe from whence they came: when thus the fame of Prince Edward grewe amongſt his enemies, and that they began to ſtand in doubt of him, they deuiſed among themſelues how by ſome pollicie they might circumuent him and betray him. Whereupon the great Prince and Admirall of Ioppa ſent vnto him, faining himſelfe vnder great deceite willing to become a Chriſtian, and that he would draw with him a great number beſides, ſo that they might be honourably intertained and vſed of the Chriſtians. This talke pleaſed the Prince well, and perſwaded him to finiſh the thing he had ſo well begun by writing againe, who alſo by the ſame meſſenger ſent and wrote backe vnto him diuers times about the ſame matter, whereby no miſtruſt ſhould ſpring.

This meſſenger (ſayth mine Author) was one ex caute nutritis, one of the ſtonie hearted, that neither feared God, nor dreaded death.

The fift time when this meſſenger came, and was of the Princes ſeruants ſearched according to the manner and cuſtome what weapon and armour he had about him, as alſo his purſe, that not ſo much as a knife could be ſeene about him, he was had vp into the Princes chamber, & after his reuerence done, he pulled out certaine letters, which he deliuered the Prince from his lorde, as he had done others before. This was about eight daies after Whitſontide, vpon a Tueſday, ſomewhat before night, at which time the Prince was layd vpon his bed bare headed, in his Jerkin, for the great heate and intemperature of the weather.

When the Prince had read the letters, it appeared by them that vpon the Saterday next following, his lorde would be there ready to accompliſh all that he had written and promiſed. The report of theſe newes by the Prince to the ſtanders by, liked them well, who drewe ſomewhat backe to conſult thereof amongeſt themſelues. In the meane time, the Meſſenger kneeling, and making his obeiſance to the Prince (queſtioning further with him) put his hand to his belt, as though he would haue pulled out ſome ſecrete letters, and ſuddenly he pulled out an inuenomed knife, thinking to haue ſtroken the Prince into the belly therwith as he laye: but the Prince lifting vp his hand to defend the blowe, was ſtriken a great wound into the arme, and being about

to

Prince Edward traitrously wounded.

to fetch another stroke at him, the prince againe with his foote tooke him such a blowe, that he felde him to the ground: with that the prince gate him by the hand, and with such violence wasted the knife from him, that he hurt himselfe there with on the forehead, and immediatly thrust the same into the belly of the Messenger and striker, and slew him.

The princes seruants being in the next chamber not farre off, hearing the buskling, came with great haste running in, and finding the Messenger lying dead in the floore, one of them tooke vp a stoole, and beate out his braines: whereat the prince was wroth for that he stroke a dead man, and one that was killed before.

But the rumour of this accident as it was strange, so it went soone thorowout all the Court, and from thence among the common people, for which they were very heauy, and greatly discouraged. To him came also the Captaine of the Temple, and brought him a costly and precious drinke against poison, least the venome of the knife should penetrate the liuely bloode, and in blaming wise sayde vnto him: did I not tell your Grace before, of the deceite and subtiltie of this people? Notwithstanding, sayde he, let your Grace take a good heart, you shall not die of this wound, my life for yours. But straight way the Surgions and Physitions were sent for, and the prince was dressed, and within fewe dayes after, the wound began to putrifie, and the flesh to looke dead and blacke: whereupon they that were about the prince, began to mutter among themselues, and were very sad and heauy.

Which thing he himself perceiuing, said vnto them: why mutter you thus among your selues? what see you in me, can I not be healed? tell me the trueth, be ye not afraid. Whereupon one said vnto him, and like your Grace you may be healed, we mistrust not, but yet it will be very painefull for you to suffer. May suffering (sayd he againe) restore health? yea sayth the other, on paine of loosing my heade. Then sayd the prince, I commit my selfe vnto you, doe with me what you thinke good.

Then sayd one of the Physitians, is there any of your Nobles in whome your Grace reposeth speciall trust? to whome the prince answered yea, naming certaine of the Noble men that stoode about him. Then said the Physitian to the two, whome the prince first named, the Lorde Edmund, and the Lord Iohn Voysye. And doe you also faithfully loue your Lorde and Prince? Who answered both, yea vndoubtedly. Then sayth he, take you away this Gentlewoman and Ladie (meaning his wife) and let her not see her Lorde and husband, till such time as I will you thereunto. Whereupon they tooke her from the princes presence, crying out, and wringing her hands. Then sayd they vnto her, be you contented good Ladie and Madame, it is better that one woman should weepe a little while, then that all the Realme of England should weepe a great season.

Then on the morrow they cut out all the dead and inuenomed flesh out of the princes arme, and threw it from them, and said vnto him: how cheereth your Grace, we promise you within these fifteene dayes you shall shew your selfe abroad (if God permit) vpon your horsebacke, whole and well as euer you were. And according to the promise he made the prince, it came to passe, to the no little comfort and admiration of all his subiects.

When the great Souldan heard hereof, and that the prince was yet aliue, he could scarsely beleeue the same, and sending vnto him three of his Nobles and princes, excused himselfe by them, calling his gods to witnes that the same was done neither by him nor his consent. Which princes and Messengers standing a loofe off from the Kings sonne, worshipping him, fell flat vpon the ground: you (sayd the prince) doe reuerence me, but yet you loue me not. But they vnderstood him not, because he spake in English vnto them, speaking by an Interpretor: neuertheless he honorably intertained them, and sent them away in peace.

Thus when prince Edward had beene eighteene monethes in Acra, he tooke shipping about the Assumption of our Lady, as we call it, returning homeward, and after seuen weekes he arriued in Sicilia at Trapes, and from thence traueled through the mids of Apulia, till he came to Rome, where he was of the Pope honorably intertained.

From thence he came into France, whose fame and noble prowes was there much buted among the common people, and enuied of the Nobilitie, especially of the Earle of Chalons, who thought to haue intrapped him and his companye, as may appeare in the storie: but prince Edward continued foorth his iourney to Paris, and was there of the French King honorably intertained: and after certaine daies he went thence into Gascoyne, where he taried till that he heard of the death of the King his father, at which time he came home, and was crowned King of England, in the yeere of our Lord, 1274.

The

The trauaile of Robert Turneham.

RObertus Turnehã Franciſcanus, Theologiæ profeſſor inſignis, Lynnæ celebri Irenorum ad ripas Iſidis emporio, collegio ſuorum fratrum magnificè præfuit. Edwardus Princeps, cognomento Longus, Henrici tertij filius, bellicam expeditionem contra Sarracenos Aſſyriam incolentes, anno Dom. 1268. parabat. Ad quam profectionem quæſitus quoque Orator vehemens, qui plebis in cauſa relligionis animos excitaret. Turnehamus principi viſus vel digniſſimus eſt, qui munus hoc obiret. Sic tanquam ſignifer conſtitutus Aſſyrios vna cum Anglico exercitu petijt, ac ſuum non ſine laude præſtitit officium. Claruit anno ſalutiferi partus, 1280. varia componens, ſub eodem Edwardo eius nominis primo poſt Conqueſtum.

¶ *The ſame in Engliſh.*

RObert Turneham Franciſcan, a notable profeſſor of Diuinitie, was with great dignitie Prior of the College of his Order in the famous Mart Towne of Lynne, ſituate vpon the riuer of Iſis in Norfolke. Prince Edward ſurnamed the Long, the ſonne of Henrie the third, prepared his warlike voyage againſt the Sarracens dwelling in Syria, in the yeere of our Lorde, 1268. For the which expedition ſome earneſt preacher was ſought to ſtirre vp ꝑ peoples mindes in the cauſe of religion. And this Turneham ſeemed to the Prince moſt worthy to performe that office: ſo that he being appointed as it were a ſtandard bearer, went into Syria with the Engliſh armie, and performed his duetie with good commendation. He floriſhed in the yeere of Chriſt 1280. ſetting forth diuers workes vnder the ſame King Edward the firſt of that name after the Conqueſt.

The life of Syr Iohn Mandeuill Knight, written by *Maſter Bale. Centur. 6.*

IOannes Mandeuil, vir equeſtris ordinis, ex fano Albini oriundus, ita à teneris vt aiunt, vnguiculis literarum ſtudijs aſſueuerat, vt in illis bonam fœlicitatis ſuæ partem poneret. Nam generis ſui ſtemmata illuſtria, nulli vſui futura ducebat, niſi illa clariora doctis artibus redderet. Quare cum animum Euangelica lectione ritè inſtituiſſet, tranſtulit ſua ſtudia ad rem Medicam, artem inprimis liberali ingénio dignam. Sed inter alia, ingens quædam cupido videndi Africam, & Aſiam, vaſtioris orbis partes, eius animum inuaſerat. Comparato igitur amplo viatico, peregrè profectus eſt, anno à Chriſto nato, 1332. & domum tanquam alter Vlyſſes, poſt 34. annos rediens, à pauciſsimis quidem cognitus fuit. Interim Scythiam, Armeniam Maiorem & Minorem, Aegyptum, vtramque Lybiam, Arabiam, Syriam, Mediam, Meſopotamiam, Perſiam, Chaldæam, Græciam, Illyrium, Tartariam, & alia ſpacioſi orbis regna, laborioſo itinere viſitauit. Denique linguarum cognitione præditus, ne tot ac tantarum rerum varietates, & miracula quæ oculatus teſtis viderat, memoriæque mandauerat, obliuione præmerentur, in tribus linguis, Anglica, Gallica, & Latina, graphicè ſcripſit Itinerarium 33. annorum. Reuerſus in Angliam, ac viſis ſui ſeculi malis, vir pius dicebat, noſtris temporibus iam verius quàm olim dici poteſt, virtus ceſſat, Eccleſia calcatur, Clerus errat, dæmon regnat, ſimonia dominatur, &c. Leodij tandem obijt, anno Domini 1372. die 17. Nouembris, apud Guilielmitas ſepultus.

¶ *The ſame in Engliſh.*

IOhn Mandeuil Knight, borne in the towne of S. Albons, was ſo well giuen to the ſtudie of learning from his childhood, that he ſeemed to plant a good part of his felicitie in the ſame: for he ſuppoſed that the bondue of his birth would nothing auaile him, except he could render the ſame more honourable by his knowledge in good letters. Hauing therefore well grounded him ſelfe in religion by reading the Scriptures, he applied his ſtudies to the arte of Phyſicke, a profeſſion worthy a noble wit: but amongſt other things, he was rauiſhed with a mightie deſire to ſee the greater partes of the world, as Aſia and Africa. Hauing therefore prouided all things neceſſarie for his iourney, he departed from his countrey in the yeere of Chriſt, 1332, and as another Vlyſſes returned home, after the ſpace of 34. yeeres, and was then knowen to a very fewe. In the time of his trauaile he was in Scythia, the greater and leſſe Armenia, Egypt, both Lybias, Arabia, Syria, Media, Meſopotamia, Perſia, Chaldæa, Greece, Illyrium, Tartarie, and diuers other kingdomes

kingdomes of the world: and hauing gotten by this meanes the knowledge of the languages, least so many and great varieties, and things miraculous, whereof himselfe had bene an eie witnes, should perish in obliuion, he committed his whole trauell of 33. yeeres to writing in three diuers tongues, English, French and Latine. Being arriued againe in England, and hauing seene the wickednes of that age, he gaue out this speach: In our time (sayd he) it may be spoken more truely then of olde, that vertue is gone, the Church is vnder foote, the Clergie is in errour, the deuill raigneth, and Simonie beareth the sway, &c.

He died at Leege, in the yeere 1372. the 17. day of Nouember, being there buried in the Abbie of the Order of the Guilielmites.

The Tombe and Epitaph of Sir Iohn Mandeuil, in the citie of Leege, spoken of by Ortelius, in his booke called Itinerarium Belgiæ, in this sort.

Fol. 15. 16. MAgna & populosa Leodij suburbia, ad collium radices, in quorum iugis multa sunt, & pulcherrima monasteria, inter quæ magnificum illud, ac nobile D. Laurentio dicatum, ab Raginardo Episcopo. Est in hac quoque regione, vel suburbijs Leodij, Guilielmitarum Cœnobium, in quo Epitaphium hoc Ioannis à Mandeuille, excepimus.

Epitaphium. Hic iacet vir nobilis, D. Ioannes de Mandeuille, aliter dictus ad Barbam, Miles, Dominus de Campdi, natus de Anglia, Medicinæ professor, deuotissimus, orator, & bonorum largissimus pauperibus erogator, qui toto quasi orbe lustrato, Leodij diem vitæ suæ clausit extremum. Anno Dom. 1371. Mensis Nouembris, Die 17.

Hæc in lapide: in quo cælata viri armati imago, Leonem calcantis, barba bifurcata, ad caput manus benedicens, & vernacula hæc verba: *Vos qui passez sor mi, pour l'amour deix prayes por mi.* Clipeus erat vacuus, in quo olim fuisse dicebant laminam æream, & eius in ea itidem cælata insignia, Leonem videlicet argenteum, cui ad pectus lunula rubea in campo cæruleo, quem Limbus ambiret denticulatus ex auro. Eius nobis ostendebant, & cultros, ephipiáque, & calcaria quibus vsum fuisse asserebant, in peragrando toto ferè terrarum orbe, vt clarius testatur eius Itinerarium, quod typis etiam excusum passim habetur.

TABVLA PRAESENTIS LIBRI IOANNIS MANDEVIL, SINGVLA PER ORdinem capitula, & in eorum quolibet quid agitur, notificat euidenter.

CAPVT. I.

COmmendatio breuis terræ Hierosolymitanæ.

2 Iter ab Anglia tam per terras quam per aquas, vsque in Constantinopolim.

3 De vrbe Constantinopoli, & reliquijs ibidem contentis.

4 Via tam per terras quàm per aquas, à Constantinopoli vsque Acharon, vel Accon.

5 Via à Francia & Flandria, per solas terras vsque in Hierusalem.

6 Via de Cypro vel de Hierusalem, vsque in Babyloniam Egypti.

7 De Pallatio Soldani, & nominibus praeteritorum Soldanorum.

8 De Campo Balsami in Egypto.

9 De Nilo fluuio, & Egypti territorio.

10 De conductu Soldani.

11 De Monasterio Sinay.

12 Iter per desertum Sinay, vsque in Iudeam.

13 De ciuitate Bethleem, & semita, vsque in Ierusalem.

14 De Ecclesia gloriosi sepulchri Domini in vrbe Ierusalem.

15 De tribus alijs Ecclesijs, & specialiter de Templo Domini.

16 De pluribus locis sacris extra vrbem.

17 De sacris locis extra muros ciuitatis.

18 De alijs locis notabilibus.

19 De Nazareth & Samaria.

20 De Territorio Galileæ & Samariæ.

21 De secta detestabili Sarracenorum.

22 De vita Mahometi.

23 De colloquio Autboris cum Soldano.

24 Persuasio ad non credentes terrarum diuersitates per orbem terræ.

25 De Armenia, & Persia.

26 De Ethiopia & diamantibus, ac de insula & media India.

27 De foresto piperis.

28 De Ecclesia beati Thomæ Apostoli.

29 De quibusdam meridionalibus insulis, & farina

farina & melle.
30 De Regno Cynocephalorum, & aliis Inſulis.
31 De multis aliis inſulis Meridionalibus.
32 De bona regione Mangi.
33 De Pygmeis, & itinere vſq; prouinciã Cathay.
34 De pallacio Imperatoris magni Chan.
35 De quatuor ſolemnitatibus, quas magnus Chan celebrat in Anno. (ris.
36 De præſtigijs in feſto, & de comitatu Imperato:
37 Qua de cauſa dicitur magnus Chan.
38 De territorio Cathay, & moribus Tartarorum.
39 De ſepultura Imperatoris magni Chan, & de creatione ſucceſſoris.
40 De multis regionibus Imperio Tartariæ ſubiectis.
41 De magnificentia Imperatoris Indiæ.
42 De frequentia Palatij, & comitatu Imperatoris præsbiteri Ioannis.
43 De quibuſdam miris per Regiones Imperij Indiæ.
44 De loco & diſpoſitione Vallis infauſtæ.
45 De quibuſdam aliis admirandis, per Indorum inſulas.
46 De periculis & tormentis in valle infauſta.
47 De Bragmannorum inſulis, & aliorum.
48 Aliquid de loco Paradiſi terreſtris per auditum.
49 In reuertendo de Regnis Caſſam, & Riboth, de Diuite Epulone, vel conſimili.
50 De compoſitione huius tractatus in Ciuitate Leodienſi.

LIBER PRÆSENS, CVIVS AVTHOR EST IOANNES MANDEVILL militaris ordinis, agit de *diuerſis patrijs, Regionibus, Prouincijs, & inſulis, Turcia, Armenia* maiore & minore, Ægypto, Lybia baſſa & alta, Syria, Arabia, Perſia, Chaldæa, Tartaria, India, & de infinitis inſulis, Ciuitatibus, villis, caſtris, & locis, quæ gentes, legum, morum, ac rituum inhabitant diuerſorum.

DEDICATIO LIBRI.

PRincipi excellentiſſimo, præ cunctis mortalibus præcipuè venerando, Domino Edwardo eius nominis tertio, diuina prouidentia, Francorum & Anglorum Regi Sereniſſimo, Hiberniæ Domino, Aquitaniæ Duci, mari ac eius inſulis occidentalibus dominanti, Chriſtianorum encomio & ornatui, vniuerſorumque arma gerentium Tutori, ac Probitatis & ſtrenuitatis exemplo, principi quoque inuicto, mirabilis Alexandri Sequaci, ac vniuerſo orbi tremẽdo, cum reuerentia non qua decet, cum ad talem, & tantam reuerentiam minùs ſufficientes extiterint, ſed qua paruitas, & poſſibilitas mittentis ac offerentis ſe extẽdunt, contenta tradantur.

Pars prima, continens Capita 23.

CAPVT. I.

Commendatio breuis terræ Hieroſolimitanæ.

CVm terra Hieroſolimitana, terra promiſſionis filiorũ Dei, dignior cũctis mundi terris ſit habẽda multis ex cauſis, & præcipuè illâ, quod Deus conditor cœli & mundi, ipſam tanti dignatus fuit æſtimare, vt in eo proprium filium ſaluatorem mundi Chriſtum exhibuerit generi humano per incarnationem ex intemerata Virgine, & per eius conuerſationem humillimã in eadem, ac per doloroſam mortis ſuæ conſummationem ibidem, atque indè per eius admirandam reſurrectionem, ac aſcenſionem in cœlum, & poſtremò quia creditur illic in fine ſeculi reuerſurus, & omnia iudicaturus: certum eſt, quòd ab omnibus qui Chriſtiano nomine à Chriſto dicuntur, ſit tanquam à ſuis proprijs hæredibus diligenda, & pro cuiuſque poteſtate ac modulo honoranda. A principibus quidem, & potentibus vt ipſam conentur de infidelium manibus recuperare, qui eam iam pridem à nobis, noſtris exigentibus meritis, abſtulerunt, & per annos heu plurimos poſſederunt: a mediocribus autem & valentibus, vt per peregrinationem deuotam loca tam pia, & veſtigia Chriſti ac diſcipulorum tam Sancta, principaliter in remiſſionem viſitent delictorum. Ab impotentibus verò, & impeditis, quatenus ſupradictos vel hortentur, vel in aliquo modo iuuent, ſeu certè fideles fundant orationes. Verum quia iam noſtris temporibus verius quàm olim dici poteſt, Loquitur ſecundum tempora in quibus vixit.

Virtus, Eccleſia, Clerus, damon, ſymonia,
Ceſſat, calcatur, errat, regnat, dominatur,

ecce iuſto Dei iudicio, credita eſt terra tam inclyta, & ſacroſancta impiorum manibus Saracenorũ, quod non eſt abſq; dolore pijs mentibus audiendum, & recolendum. EGO Ioannes Mandeuill militaris ordinis ſaltem gerens nomen, natus & educatus in terra Angliæ, in villa

sancti Albani,ducebar in Addolescentia mea tali inspiratione,vt quamuis non per potentiam, nec per vires proprias poslem prælatam terram suis hæredibus recuperare, item tamen per aliquod temporis spacium peregrinari ibidem, & salutarem aliquantulum de propinquo. Vnde in anno ab Incarnatione Domini 1322. imposui me nauigationi Marsilienſis maris & vsque in hoc temporis, Anni 1355. scilicet,per 33.annos in transmarinis partibus mansi, peregrinatus sum,ambulaui,& circuiui multas,ac diuersas patrias, regiones,prouincias,& insulas, Turciam, Armeniam maiorem,& minorem,Ægyptum,Lybiam bassam & altam,Syriam,Arabiam,Persiam,Chaldeam,Æthiopię partem magnam,Tartariam, Amazoniã,Indiam minorem, & mediam,ac partem magnam de maiori, & in istis, & circum istas regiones,multas insulas,Ciuitates,vrbes,castra,villas,& loca,vbi habitant variæ gentes, aspectuum, morum,legum, ac rituum diuersorum : Attamen quia summo desiderio in terra promissionis eram,ipsam diligentius per loca vestigiorum filij Dei perlustrare curaui,& diutius in illa steti. Quapropter & in hac prima parte huius operis iter tam peregrinandi, quam nauigandi,à partibus Angliæ ad ipsam describo,& loca notabiliter sancta, quæ intra eandem sunt breuiter cõmemoro & diligenter, quatenus peregrinis tam in itinere quam in prouentione valeat hæc descriptio in aliquo deseruire.

Ioannis Mandiuilli peregrinatio,per tres & triginta annos continuata.

Caput. 2.

Iter ab Anglia tam per terras quam per aquas vsq; in Constantinopolim.

QVi de Hybernia,Anglia,Scotia, Noruegia, aut Gallia iter arripit ad partes Hierosolymitanas potest saltem vsq; ad Imperialem Græciæ Ciuitatem Cõstantinopolim eligere sibi modum proficiscendi,siue per terras,siue per aquas. Et si peregrinando eligit transigere viam, tendat per Coloniam Agrippinam, & sic per Almaniam in Hungariam ad Montlusant Ciuitatem,sedem Regni Hungariæ.Et est Rex Hungarię multum potẽs istis temporibus.Nam tenet & Sclauoniam,& magnam partem Regni Comannorum, & Hungariam,& partem Regni Russiæ. Oportet vt peregrinus in finibus Hungariæ transeat magnum Danubij flumen, & vadat in Belgradum; Hoc flumen oritur inter Montana Almaniæ, & currens versus Orientem, recipit in se 40. flumina antequam finiatur in mare. De Belgrade intratur terra Bulgariæ,& transitur per Pontem petrinum fluuij Marroy,& per terram Pyncenars, & tunc intratur Græcia,in Ciuitates,Sternes,Asmopapc,& Andrinopolis,& sic in Constantinopolim, vbi communiter est sedes Imperatoris Græciæ. Qui autem viam eligit per aquas versus Constantinopolim nauigare, accipiat sibi portum, prout voluerit, propinquum siue remotum, Marsiliæ, Pisi, Ianuæ,Venetijs,Romæ,Neapoli,vel alibi : sicque transeat Tusciam, Campaniam,Italiam,Corsicam, Sardiniam,vsque in Siciliam,quæ diuiditur ab Italia per brachium maris non magnum. In Sicilia est mons Ætna iugiter ardens,qui ibidem appellatur Mons Gibelle, & præter illum habentur ibi loca Golthan vbi sunt septem leucæ quasi semper ignem spirantes: secundum diuersitatem colorum harum flammarum estimant Incolæ annum fertilem fore, vel sterilem, siccum vel humidum, calidum, vel frigidum : hæc loca vocant caminos Infernales, & à finibus Italiæ vsque ad ista loca sunt 25.miliaria. Sunt autem in Sicilia aliqua Pomeria in quibus inueniuntur frondes, flores, & fructus per totum annum, etiam in profunda hyeme. Regnum Siciliæ est bona, & grandis insula habens in circuitu ferè leucas 300. Et ne quis erret, vel de facili reprehendat quoties scribo leucam, intelligendum est de leuca Lombardica,quæ aliquantò maior est Geometrica; & quoties pono numerum,sub intelligatur fere,vel circiter,siue citra, & dietam intendo ponere,de 10. Lombardicis leucis : Geometrica autem leuca describitur,vt notum est, per hos versus.

Regis Hungariæ olim potentia.

Mons Aetna.

Aeolides insulæ.

Temperies Siciliæ Insulæ.

Leuca Lombardica.

Quid sit dieta.

Quinq; pedes passum faciunt,passus quoq; centum
Viginti quinque stadium, si millia des que
Octo facis stadia,duplicatum dat tibi leuca.

Postquam ita que peregrinus se credidit Deo & mari, si prospera sibi fuerit nauigatio, non ascendet in terram, donec intret aliquem portum Græciæ, scilicet, Myrroyt, Valonæ, Durasse, siue alium prout Diuinæ placuerit voluntati, & exhinc ibit Constantinopolim prædictam, quæ olim Bysantium,vel Vesaton dicebatur. Hic autem notãdum est,quòd a portu Venetię,vsq; ad Cõstantinopolim directè per mare octingentæ leucæ, & 80. communiter computantur ibi contentæ.

Portus Græciæ.

Caput. 3.

De vrbe Constantinopoli,& reliquijs ibidem contentis.

COnstantinopolis pulchra est Ciuitas, & nobilis, triangularis in forma, firmiterque murata,cuius duę partes includũtur mari Hellesponto,quòd plurimi modò appellant brachium

sancti

ſancti Georgij,& aliqui Buke,Troia vetus.Verſus locum vbi hoc brachium exit de mari eſt lata terræ planities,in quà antiquitus ſtetit Troia Ciuitas de qua apud Poetas mira leguntur,ſed nunc valdè modica apparent veſtigia Ciuitatis. In Conſtantinopoli habentur multa mirabilia, ac inſuper multæ ſanctorum venerandæ relliquię, ac ſuper omnia, precioſiſſima Crux Chriſti, ſeu maior pars illius,& tunica inconſutilis, cum ſpongia & arundine,& vno clauorum,& dimidia parte coronæ ſpineæ,cuius altera medietas ſeruatur in Capella Regis Franciæ,Pariſijs.Nam & ego indignus diligenter pluribus vicibus reſpexi partem vtramque : dabatur quoque mihi de illa Pariſijs vnica ſpina, quam vſque nunc precioſe conſeruo, & eſt ipſa ſpina non lignea ſed velut de iuncis marinis rigida,& pũgitiua. Eccleſia Cõſtantinopolitana in honorem ſanctę Sophiæ,id eſt,ineffabilis Dei ſapientiæ dedicata dicitur,& nobiliſſima vniuerſarum mundi Eccleſiarum,tam in ſchemate artificioſi operis,quàm in ſeruatis ibi ſacroſanctis Relliquijs : nam & continet corpus ſanctæ Annæ matris noſtræ Dominæ tranſlatum illuc per Reginam Helenam ab Hieroſolymis: & corpus S.Lucæ Euangeliſtæ tranſlatum de Bethania Iudeæ; Et Corpus beati Ioannis Chryſoſtomi ipſius Ciuitatis Epiſcopi, cum multis alijs relıquijs precioſis; quoniam eſt ibi vas grande cum huiuſmodi reliquijs velut marmoreum de Petra Enhydros; quod iugiter de ſeipſo defudans aquam, ſemel in anno inuenitur ſuo ſudore repletum. Ante hanc Eccleſiam, ſuper columnam marmoream habetur de ære aurato opere fuſorio, magna imago Iuſtiniani quondam Imperatoris ſuper equum ſedentis : fuit autem primitus in manu imaginis fabricata ſphæra rotunda,quæ iam diu è manu ſua ſibi cecidit,in ſignum quòd Imperator multarum terrarum dominium perdidit. Namque ſolebat eſſe Dominus, Romanorum, Gtæcorum,Aſiæ,Syrię,Iudeæ,Ægypti,Arabiæ,& Perſiæ,at nunc ſolum retinet Cręciam,cum aliquibus terris Greciæ adiacentibus, ſicut Caliſtrum, Cholchos, Ortigo, Tylbriam, Minos, Flexon,Melos,Carpates, Lemnon, Thraciam,& Macedoniam totam : Suntq; ſub eo Caypoplij,& alti Pyntenardi,ac maxima pars Commannorum. Porrò imago tenet manum eleuatam & extentam in orientem,velut in ſignum cominationis ad Orientales infideles. De prædicta terra Thraciæ fuit Philoſophus Ariſtoteles oriundus in Ciuitate Stageres, & eſt ibi in loco tumba eius velut altare, vbi & ſingulis annis certo diè celebratur à populo feſtum illius, ac ſi fuiſſet ſanctus.Temporibus ergò magnorum conſiliorum conueniunt illuc ſapientes terræ,reputantes ſibi per inſpirationem immitti conſilium optimum de agendis. Item ad diuiſionem Thraciæ & Macedoniæ ſunt duo mirabiliter alti montes,vnus Olympus, alter Athos,cuius vltimi vmbra oriente ſole apparet ad 76. miliaria, vſque in inſulam Lemnon. In horum cacumine montium ventus non currit, nec aer mouetur, quod frequentèr probatum eſt per ingenium Aſtronomorum, qui quandoque aſcendentes ſcripſerunt literas in puluere,quas ſequenti anno inuenerunt quaſi recentèr ſcriptas, & quia eſt ibi purus aer ſine mixtione elementi aquæ,neceſſe eſt vt aſcendentes habeant ſecum ſpongias aquæ plenas pro anhelitus reſpiratione : In prædicta autem ſanctæ ſophiæ Eccleſia, (ſicut ibidem dicitur,) voluit olim quidam Imperator corpus cuiuſdam ſui defuncti ſepelire cognati: cuius cum foderetur ſepulchrum, ventum eſt ad mauſoleum antiquum in quo ſuper incineratum corpus iacebat diſcus auri puri,& erat ſculptum in eo literis Græcis, Hebraicis, & Latinis ſic. Ieſus Chriſtus naſcetur de Virgine, & ego credo in eum. Et erat ſimul inſcripta data defuncti ſecundum modum illius temporis, quæ continebat duo millia annorum ante incarnationem ipſius Chriſti de Maria Virgine. Seruatur quoque hodierno tempore eadem patina in Theſaurario eiuſdem Eccleſiæ, & dicitur illud corpus fuiſſe Hermetis ſapientis. Omnes quidem,terrarum,regionum,& inſularum homines, qui iſti Greco obediunt Imperatori ſunt Chriſtiani, & baptizati, tamen variant ſinguli in aliquo articulo fidem ſuam a noſtra vera fide Catholica & diuerſificant in multis ſuos ritus à ritibus Romanæ Eccleſiæ, quia iamdiu omiſerunt obedire Pontifici Romano, dicentes,quoniam beatus Petrus Apoſtolus habuit ſedem in Antiochia, quamuis paſſus fuit in Roma : Idcirco patriarcha Antiochenus habet in illis Orientalibus partibus ſimilem poteſtatem,quàm Pontifex Romanus in iſtis Occidentalibus. Imperator etiam Conſtantinopolitanus creat eorum patriarcham, & inſtituit pro ſua voluntate Archiepiſcopos, & Epiſcopos, & confert dignitates,& beneficia, ſimiliter inuenta occaſione deſtituit,deponit,& priuat.

Eccleſia ſanctæ Sophiæ.

Regina Helena Britanna.

Imago Iuſtiniani.

Patriarchæ Antiocheni authoritas.

Caput. 4.

Via tam per terras quam per aquas à Conſtantinopoli vſque "*Acharon.*

"Vel Achon.

A Conſtantinopoli qui voluerit ire pedes, tranſibit ſtatim nauigio Brachium Sancti Georgij quod ſatis eſt ſtrictum, ibique ad Ruphinal quod eſt forte caſtrum, inde ad Puluereal,& hinc ad caſtrũ Synopolũ. Ex tunc intrat Capadociam, terram latam ſed plenam altis

montibus, deinde Turciam ad portum Theueron, & ad Ciuitatem ita dictam, nunc munitam firmis turribus, ac muris, per quam transit fluuius Reglay. Postea transitur sub Alpibus Noyremont, & per valles de Mallenbrinis in districto Rupium, ac per villam Doronarum, & alias villas adiacentes flluuijs Reglay, & Granconiæ, sicque peruenitur ad Antiochiam minorem super Reglay, quæ vocatur nobilior Ciuitas Syriæ: Notandum autem quòd Regnum olim dictum Syria, modò communiter vocatur Suria. Ista verò Antiochia, est magna, pulchra, ac firma, licet quandoque maior, pulchrior, ac firmior fuerit. Tunc autem transitur per Ciuitates Laonsam, Gibellam, Tortusiam, Toruplam, & Berythum super mare vbi sanctus Georgius fertur occidisse Draconem. Hinc pergitur in Ciuitatem nunc dictam Acon, quondam Ptolomaidem, antiquitùs Acharon, quæ tempore quo eam vltimò Christiani tenebant circa annũ incarnationis Domini 1280. erat Ciuitas valdè fortis, sed modò apparent eius magnæ ruinæ. Porrò a Constantinopoli poterit peregrinus faciliùs versus Hierosolymorũ partes per mare nauigare quã per terras peregrinare prædictas, si deus illi propitius fuerit, & mare fidẽ cõseruauerit. Qui ergò a Cõstantinopoli iter trãsire nauigando disponit, tendat ad Ciuitatem "Myrnam vbi nunc ossa Sancti Nicholai venerantur, & sic procedendo per multa maritima loca veniet ad Insulam Sio vbi crescit gummi mastix lucidum: Inde ad Insulam Pathmos Sancti Ioannis Euangelistæ, & ad Ephesum vbi idem noscitur sepultus: hanc totam minorem Asiam tenent nunc pessimi Turci, & eam appellant minorem Turciam. Post Ephesum nauigatur per plures Insulas vsq; Pateram Ciuitatem, vndè oriundus fuit beatus Nicholaus, ac per Myrrheam vbi stetit Ephesus, vbi nascuntur fortia vina valdè, deinde ad Insulam Cretæ, hinc Coos postea Lango, vndè Hypocrates Medicus dicitur natus: tuncq; ad grandem Insulam Rhodum: & sciendũ quod a Constantinopoli vsq; Rhodũ, per mare dicuntur ducẽtæ octuaginta leucæ. Hanc insulam totam tenent, & gubernant Christiani Hospitalarij nunc tẽporis, quæ quondam Colosse dicebatur: nam & multi Saracenorum adhuc eam sic appellant, vnde & Epistola, quam beatus Paulus ad habitatores huius Insulæ scripsit, intitulabatur ad Colossenses. Ab hoc loco nauigando in Cyprum, aspicitur absorptio Ciuitatis Sathaliæ, quæ sicut olim Sodoma dicitur perijsse, propter vnicum crimen contra naturam a quodam Iuuene petulante commissum. Sciendum quod a Rhodo ad Cyprum feruntur plenè quingentæ quinquaginta leucæ: Cyprus magna, & pulchra est Insula habeus Archiepiscopatũ, cum quinque Episcopatibus suffraganeis: Illuc Famogosta, est vnus de principalibus portibus mundi, in quo ferè omnium mercatores conueniunt nationum, tam Christianorum, quam multorum Paganorum, & similiter apud portum Limechon. Est ibi & Abbatia ordinis sancti Benedicti, in monte sanctæ Crucis, vbi dicitur saluati latronis seruari crux, qui in eadem cruce audiuit à Christo, Hodiè mecum eris in Paradiso. Corpus etiam sancti Hylarionis seruatur ibi, in castro Damers quod Rex Cypri facit diligentissimè custodiri: Vltrà modum fortia vina nascuntur in Cypro, quæ primo rubra, post annum albescunt, & quo vetustiora, eo albiora, ac magis odorifera, ac fortia efficiuntur. Vlteriùs pauciſſimæ villæ, aut Ciuitates sunt Christianorum, sed ferè omnia Saraceni possident infideles: et proh dolor, ab Anno 1200. incarnationis Domini aut circà, pacificè tenuerunt. Qui autem a Cypro prosperè legit spacia maris, poterit in duobus naturalibus diebus peruenire in portum Ioppæ, qui Iaffe nunc nuncupatur, & proximus est a Ierusalem, distans 16, tantum leucas, hoc est dieta cum dimidia. Et sciendum quod circa medium, inter Cyprum, & Iaffe est portus Tyri quondam munitissimæ Ciuitatis, hanc dum vltimo Saraceni à Christianis ceperunt turpissimè destruxerunt, custodientes iam curiosè portum, timore Christianorum. Iste portus non vocatur modò Tyrus, sed Sur, Nam & ab illa parte est ibi introitus terræ Suriæ. Ante istam Ciuitatem Tyrum habetur quidam lapis, super quem dominus noster Iesus Christus sedendo suis discipulis vel populis prædicauit. Vnde, & Christiani olim super hunc locum constructerunt Ecclesiam in nomine Saluatoris. Peregrinus vero qui ab hoc loco vult peregrinari, morosè sciat, quod ad octo leucas à Tyro in orientem est Sarepta Sydoniorum, vbi olim Elias Propheta filium viduæ suscitauit a morte. Itemq; sciat, quod a Tyro in vnica dieta pergere potest in Achon, siue Acharon supra scripta. Circa Acon versùs mare, ad 120. stadia, quorum 16. leucam constituunt, est mons Carmeli, vbi morabatur præfatus Elias, & super alium montem Villa Saffra vbi sanctus Iacobus, & Ioannes germani Apostoli nascebantur, & in quorum natiuitatis loco pulchra habetur Ecclesia. Item propè Acon ad ripam dictam Beleon, est fossa multum vtilis, & mirabilis quæ dicitur fossa Mennon, hæc est rotunda circumferentia, cuius diameter continet prope 100. cubitos, plena alba & resplendente arena, & munda ex qua conficitur mundum & perlucidum vitrum. Pro hac arena venitur per aquas, & per terras, & exportatur manibus & vehiculis propè & procul, & quantumcunque de die exhauritur, repleta manè altero reperitur: Et est in fossa ventus grandis & iugis, qui mirabiliter arenam commouere videtur. Si quis autem vitrum de hac arena

Antiochia.

Vel Smyrnam.

Sio.

Rhodus Insula.

Cyprus Insula.

Fortia Cypri vina.

Ioppa, vel Iaffe.

Portus Tyri, aliàs Sur.

Achon, olim Acharon.

Mons Carmeli.

Fossa Beleon.

arena factum in foſſa reponeret, conuerteretur iterum in arenam, & qui imponeret fruſtum metalli, verteretur in vitrum: nonnulli reputant hanc foſſam eſſe ſpiraculum maris arenoſi, de qno mari aliquid locuturus ſum in ſequentibus. Ab Acon via verſus Ieruſalem bifurcatur: nam qui tenèt vnum latus poteſt ire ſecus Iordanem fluuium, in Ciuitatem Damaſcum, qui verò aliud, ibit in tribus aut quatuor dietis Gazam, de qua olim fortis Samſon aſportauit nocte fores portarum: deinde in Cęſaream Philippi, & Aſcalonem, & Ioppam portum ſupradictum, Hincque in Rama, & Caſtellum Emaus, & ſic in Ieruſalem vrbem ſacroſanctum.

Caput. 5.

Via à Francia aut Flandria per ſolas terras vſque Ieruſalem.

ITineribus, quæ per terras, & per mare a noſtris partibus ducunt in terram promiſſionis deſcriptis, reſtat breuiter dicendum de alia via, per quam omnino mare tranſeundum non eſt, videlicet per Almaniam, per Bohemiam, per Ptuſſiam, & hinc per terram Paganorum regni Lituaniæ, & ſic per longam, & peſſimam terram primę Tartariæ vſque in Indiam: Dico autem Tartariæ primę, quoniam de hac exijt primus Imperator totius Tartariæ, qui ſemper vocatur Grand Can, quo vix maiorem mundus habet terrenum Dominum, excepto Imperatore ſuperioris Indiæ, de quibus in ſecunda & tertia huius tractatus partibus, aliquanto eſt diffuſius narrandum. Cuncti principes huius primæ Tartariæ, quorum ſummus ſemper vocatur Bachu, & moratur in Ciuitate Horda, reddunt Imperatori Grand Can, magna tributa. Eſt autem hæc prima Tartaria terra miſera & fabuloſa, & infructuoſa: hoc enim ſcio, quòd per aliquod tempus ſteti in ea, & perambulaui Inſulas, regiones, & terras circumiacentes, ſcilicet, Ruſſię, Inflau, Craco, Latton, Reſtau, & alias nonnullas: creſcunt namque in iſta Tartaria modica blada, pauca vina, & fructuum, ac frugum parua copia, exceptis herbis pro paſtu Beſtiarum, quarum ibi eſt abundantia: nam carnibus illarum veſcuntur pro omnibus cibarijs, ius earum ſorbentes, & pro potu bibentes lac de omni genere beſtiarum. Quin etiam pauperiores manducant canes, lupos, catos, ratos, talpas, ac mures, ac huiuſmodi beſtiolas omnes: ſed nec aliquis Princeps aut prælatus comedit vltra ſemel in diè, & hoc parcè, vel parciſſimè: & ſunt homines valdè immundi, quia non niſi benè diuites vtuntur mappis, linteaminibus, aut lineis indumentis: ſed nec habent copiam lignorum, vnde & fimum boum, ac omnium beſtiarum deficcatum ad ſolem accipiunt pro ignis materia, vbi ſe calefaciunt, & coquendo coquunt. Aeſtiuo tempore, cadunt ibi frequenter tempeſtates tonitruorum, fulminũ, & grandinum, quibus domus, arbores, beſtiæ, & homines, comburuntur, euelluntur, & occiduntur. Nam & quandoque ſubrepentè oritur ibi calor immoderatus, & improuiſo frigus immoderatum. Deinque cum terra illa, ſe multum inclinet ad polum Septentrionalem, fortius ibi gelare ſolet, & frequentius, ac diutius quàm ad partes noſtras, vnde & quaſi omnes habent ibi ſtupas, in quibus manducant, & operantur. Nec valet à noſtris partibus ingredi ad illam niſi tempore gelicidij, quod ad introitum eius ſunt tres dietæ, de via molli, aquatica, & profunda, in qua dum viator putaret ſe ſtare ſecurum, profunderetur in lutum ad tibias, ad genua, ad femora vel ad renes: hoc ergo ſciendum quòd pauciſſimi tendunt per hanc terram in viam promiſſionis: Nam iter eſt graue, diſtortum, longum, & periculoſum ſicut audiſtis, imò periculoſius quàm ſcribo.

Horda eſt multitudo viuens in agris.

Mores Tartarorum.

Hyeme præcipue iter faciunt per terram.

Caput. 6.

Via de Cypro vel Ieruſalem vſque in Babyloniam Ægypti.

DEſcripto ſicut potui triplicitèr itinere in terram ſanctam, reſtat videre de duabus alijs vijs, quæ incidenter ſolent contingere peregrinis: Multi namque illorum ex ſpeciali deuotione deſiderant viſitare oſſa beatiſſimæ Virginis Catharinæ in monte Sinay: Cum igitur ipſis ſit neceſſarius Soldani Babyloniæ conductus eo quod Imperator ſit, & dominus omnium illarum terrarum, quidam poſtquam perueniunt in Cyprũ tenduut primò in Babyloniam Ægypti, pro impetrando conductu ſecuro, atque indè pergentes in Sinay vadunt in Ieruſalem. Quidam verò poſtquam perfecerunt peregrinationem Hieroſolymitanam, pergunt per terras ad Soldanum pro conductu, & tum in Sinay, propter quòd vtramque viam breuiter deſcribo. De Cypro in Ægyptum itur per mare relinquendo Hieroſolymorum terram ad manum ſiniſtram, & accipitur primus portus Ægypti, dictus Damaiata: ibi quondam fuit Ciuitas valdè munita, ſed quod Chriſtiani illam, prima & altera vice ceperunt, Sarraceni vltimò deſtruxerunt, & aliam remotius à mari eiuſdem nominis Ciuitatem ædificauerunt: Hinc venitur in portum Alexandriæ Ægypti, quæ eſt Ciuitas magna, pulchra, & fortis valde, ſed abſq; aquis potabilibus. Adducit tamen ſibi per longos ductus aquam Nili fluminis in ciſternis ad potandum. Alexandria nobilis 30. ſtadia habet longitudinis decemque inlatum. In ea reſtant adhuc

Babylonia Aegypti.

Damiata portus Aegypti.

Alexandria.

plures Ecclesiæ à tempore Christianorum, sed Sarraceni non sustinentes picturas Sanctorum omnes parietes albauerunt. De Alexandria per terras venitur in Babyloniam Ægypti, quæ etiã fundata iacet supra prædictum Nilum fluuium: Dicitur autem hæc Babylonia minor ad differentiam magnæ Babyloniæ, siue Babel, vbi Deus linguas confudit olim, quæ tendendo inter Orientem & Septentrionem distat ab ista dictas circiter 40. nec est sub potestate Soldani, sed Imperatoris Persarum, qui illam tenet in homagio ab Imperatore Cathay, dicto, Grand Can. Hęc autem Babylonia Ægypti est Ciuitas grãdis & fortis, tamen valdè prope eam est alia maior dicta Cayr, in qua vt sæpiùs residet Soldanus, quanquam Babylonia nomen per seculum diffusius est cognitum. Altera autem via peregrinorum de Hierosolymis pro conductu tendentium ad Soldanum talis esse potest. Primò tendant de Ierusalem in suprà dictam Gazam Palestinorum, inde ad Castellum Dayre, atque ex tunc exitur de terra Syriæ, & intratur à superiori parte in desertum longum arenosum, & sterile, propè ad septem dietas, quod lingua eorum vocatur Abilech: tamen per illud inueniantur plura hospitia, vbi haberi possunt ad victum necessaria. Et qui in eundo rectum iter tenet, veniet in Ciuitatem dictam, Balbes, quæ est ad finem Regni Halapiæ: Sicque expleto Deserto, intratur terra Ægypti, quam ipsi Canopat vocant, & aliqui Mersur, atque ex tunc in Babyloniam, & Cayr prætatam: In ista verò Babylonia habetur pulchra Ecclesia Mariæ virginis, in loco vbi morabatur cum filio suo, & Ioseph tempore suæ fugæ, & creditur ibi contineri corpus Virginis Barbaræ.

Cayr ciuitas.

Abilech desertum.

CAPVT. 7.

De Pallatio Soldani, ac numero, & nominibus præteritorum Soldanorum.

CAyr ciuitas Imperialis & Regalis est valdè munita, & grandis, decorata sede propria Sarracenorum Regni, vbi Dominus eorum Soldanus cõmuniter residere solet, in suo Calabelick, id est, castro forti, & lato, ac in euecta rupe statuto. Siquidem Soldanus eorum lingua sonat nomen similis maiestatis, quo nos in Latino dicimus Cæsarem, aut Imperatorem. Pro custodia huius Castri sunt ibidem omni tempore morantes sex millia personarũ, & pro seruiendo, dum ibi residet, ipsi Soldano, qui omnes de Curia eadem accipiunt necessaria, & donatiua. Iste Imperator Soldanus, est Rex, Dominusque quinque Regnorum magnorum: Canopat, hoc est, Ægypti; totius Iudeæ, sicut olim Dauid, & Salomon; Halapiæ, in terra Machsyriæ, cuius ciuitas Damascus olim erat principalis; Arabiæ, quod est regnum valdè protensum, & cum his possidet dominatus omnium Caliphorum: ad quod sciendum, quòd quandoque fuerunt tres Caliphorum dominatus: Ex quibus primus Caliphus qui dicebatur Chaldęorum, & Arabum, erat sedes in Ciuitate Baldac. Alter Barbarorum & Affricorum, cuius erat sedes in Maroco super Mare Hispaniæ. Tertius Aegypti: Est autem Caliphus inter eos, velut inter nos Imperator, & Papa simul, scilicet, Dominus Temporalium, & spiritualium. Exactis igitur Caliphis circa annum incarnationis Christi 1150, primus Soldanorum fuit nominatus Saracon: secundus filius eius, Saladin, qui Anno 1190. cum Turcis totam ferè terram promissionis abstulit à Christianis. Et sub quo Richardus Rex Anglię cum alijs principibus Christianis custodiebat passum Rupium, ne ille sicut proposuerat transire, profecisset vltra. Tertius Melachsala, à quo sanctus Ludouicus rex Franciæ captiuabatur in bello. Quartus Turquenã, qui Regem prædictũ redimi dimisit pro pecunia. Quintus Meleth. Sextus Melethemes. Septimus Melec dayr, sub quo Edwardus Rex Angliæ intrauit cum nostris Syriam, damnificans plurimum Sarracenos. Octauus Melec salle. Nonus Elphi, qui Anno Incarnationis Domini 1289. destruxit in illis partibus enormiter Christianos, & penitus omnes inde fugauit, atque recepit Tripolim Ciuitatem. Decimus Melethasseras: hic cepit Anno Domini 1291. in octaua paschæ Accharon, fugatis vel occisis ex ea omnibus Christianis. Exinde amissis succedentium nominibus, sextus decimus dicebatur vel dicitur Melec Mandibron: sub isto steti ego per aliquod tempus stipendiarius in guerris suis contra Bedones, qui ei tunc temporis rebellabant. Horum etiam mores, & continentiam populorum, in sequentibus declarabo: sicut veraciter fateri possum, ipse ad filiam cuiusdam sui Principis me obtulit vxorare, & magnis dotare possessionibus, dummodò Christianitati resignassem: Eumque dimisi Soldanum, quando de partibus illis recessi. Soldanus præter homines ad sua castra seruanda deputatos, potest educere quoties velit in exercitum de hominibus de ipsius stipendijs viuentibus, & ad eius iugitèr mandata paratis, 20. millia armatorum, ex sola Ægypto: Et ex Syria, & Turcia, & alijs terris, 50. millia exceptis ruralibus, & Ciuitatum comitatibus, qui sunt velut innumerabiles. Miles quidem stipendiarius recipit de Curia pro anni Tempore 121. aureos, & sub tali stipendio seruit, cum tribus equis & vno Camelo. Quadringenti, vel Quingenti horum militum ordinati sunt sub vno rectore, qui vocatur Admirabilis: Et ille solus recipit de Curia tantum, sicut omnes sibi subditi: Notandum quod nunquam extraneus Nuncius ire permittitur ad Soldanum nisi auratis indutus vestibus,

Caliphus quid sit.

Series Soldanorũ Aegypti.

Richardus Rex Angliæ.

Edwardus princeps Angliæ, Regis Henr. 3. filius.

Dominus Mandeuil stipendiarius Soldani contra Arabes.

Potentia Soldani Aegypti.

vel

vel panno Tartarico, aut camoleoto ad modum nobilium Sarracenorum: & oportet vt vbicũque primum nuncius Soldanum aſpiciat, ſiue ad feneſtras, ſiue alibi, vt cadat ad genua, vel protinus oſculetur terram, quia talem reuerentiam facere, ſignum eſt quòd ille deſiderat ei loqui. Quamdiu autem tales loquuntur ſibi, aut literas oſtendunt, circumſtant Apparitores extenſis brachijs, leuatos tenentes mucrones, gladios, gezas, & mackas ad feriendum, & occidẽdum, ſi quid dictum vel nunciatum fuerit, quod Imperatori diſpliceat, quàm citò ille ſignauerit trucidari. Veruntamen ſciendum eſt, quòd nullius hominis perſonaliter ab ipſo quidquam petentis conſueuit repellere preces rationabiles, & contra eorum leges aut mores non venientes. Porrò ego in Curia manens, vidi circa Soldanum vnum venerabilem, & expertum medicum, de noſtris partibus oriundum: ſolet namque circa ſe retinere diuerſarum medicos nationum, & quos nominandæ audierit eſſe famæ: Nos tamen rarò inuicem conuenimus ad colloquium, eò quòd meum ſeruitium cum ſuo modicum congruebat: longo autem poſteà tempore, & ab illo loco remotè, videlicet in Leodij ciuitate, compoſui hortatu & adiutorio eiuſdem venerabilis viri hunc tractatum, ſicut in fine operis totius enarrabo. Itémque in Cayr ciuitate ducuntur ad forum communiter tam viri quàm mulieres aliarum legum, & nationum venales, & ad modum beſtiarum venduntur pro pecunia ad ſeruiendum in ſuis artificijs. Habetur quoque ibi domus plena furnis paruis, in quibus per cuſtodes domus tam hyeme quàm æſtate fouentur oua gallinarum, anatum, aucarum, & columbarum, vſque ad procreationem ſuorum pullorum, & hijs intendunt, pro certo pretio accipiendo à mulierculis illic oua ferentibus.

Reuerentia exhibita Soldano.

Cuius nomen erat M. Ioannes ad Barbam.

Mos oua furnis fouendi.

CAPVT 8.

De Campo Balſami in Egypto.

EXtra hanc ciuitatem Cayr, eſt campus ſeu ager Balſami: circa quod ſciendum, quòd optimum totius mundi Balſamum in magno creſcit Indiæ deſerto, vbi Alexander Magnus dicitur quondam locutus fuiſſe arboribus Solis & Lunæ, de quo in ſequentibus aliquid eſt ſcribendum. Illo itaque Indiæ Balſamo duntaxat excepto, non eſt liquor in vniuerſo orbe, qui huic creditur comparari. Has arbores ſeu arbuſta Balſami fecit quondã quidam de Caliphis Aegypti de loco Engaddi inter mare mortuum, & Ierico, vbi Domino volente excreuerat, eradicari, & in agro prædicto plantari: Eſt tamen hoc mirandum, quod vbicunque alibi ſiue propè, ſiue remotè plantantur, quamuis fortè virent, & exurgant, non tamen fructificant. Et è contrario apparet hoc miraculoſum, quod in hoc agro Cayr non ſe permittunt coli per Sarracenos, ſed ſolummodò per Chriſtianos, vel aliter non fructificarent: Et dicunt ipſi Sarraceni hoc ſæpiùs ſe tentaſſe: ſunt autem arbuſta trium vel quatuor pedum altitudinis, velut vſque ad renes hominis, & lignum eorum aſpiciendum, ſicut vitis ſylueſtris. Folia non marceſcunt, quin priùs marceſcant fructus, cernitur ad formam Cubebæ, & gummi eorum eſt Balſamum. Ipſi appellant arbores, Enochkalſe, fructum Abebifau, & liquorem gribalſe. Extrahitur verò gummi de arbuſculis per hunc modum: De lapide acuto, vel de oſſe fracto dant ſciſſuras per cortices in ligno, & ex vulneribus Balſamum lachrymatur, quod in vaſculis ſuſcipiunt, cauentes quoutpoſſunt, ne quid de illo labatur in terram. Nam ſi de ferro, vel alio metallo fieret inciſſura, liquor Balſami corrumperetur à ſua virtute. Veri Balſami virtutes ſunt magnæ quidem, & innumeroſæ: nam vix aliquis mortalium ſcire potuit omnes, quamuis inter Phyſicos quinquaginta ſcribantur. Rarò vtique Sarraceni vendunt Chriſtianis purum & verum Balſamum, quin priùs commiſceant, & falſificant ſicut ego ipſe frequenter vidi. Nam aliqui tertiam, ſeu quartam partem immiſcent terrebynthinę. Alii ramuſculos arbuſtarum, & fructus eorum coquunt in oleo, quod vendunt pro Balſamo: & quidam (quod peſſimum eſt) nil Balſami habentes, diſtillant oleum, per clauos gariophillos, & ſpicum nardum, & ſimiles odoriferas ſpecies, hoc pro Balſamo exponentes, atque aliis pluribus modis deludunt ementes. Sed & Mercatores inuicem nonnunquam ſophiſticant altera vice: probatio autem veri Balſami poteſt haberi pluribus modis, quorum aliquos hìc deſcribo. Eſt enim Citrini coloris, valdè clarum, & purum, & fortiſſimum in odoris fragrantia: ſi ergò apparet alterius quàm Citrini coloris, ſciatur non ſimplicis, ſed cuiuſcunque commixtæ ſubſtantiæ, vel ita ſpiſſum, vt non poſſit fluere, ſcitote ſophiſticatum. Item ſi poſueris modicum veri Balſami in manus palma, non poteris ſuſtinere eam linialiter in feruore ſplendentis Solis ad ſpacium recitandæ Dominicæ orationis. Item ſi in clara flamma ignis vel candelæ cereæ miſeris punctum cultelli cum gutta puri Balſami, ipſa gutta de facilè comburetur. Item ſi in ſcutella munda cum puro lacte caprino poſueris modicum veri Balſami, ſtatim miſcebit ſe, & vnietur cum lacte, ita vt Balſamum non cognoſcetur. Item è contrà, ſi poſueris verum Balſamum cum aqua Lympida, nunquam miſcebit ſe aquæ, etiamſi aquam moueris vehementer, imò Balſamum ſemper tendit ad fundum vaſis, nam eſt in ſui quanti-

Balſamum.

Virtutes veri Balſami.

Sophiſticationes Balſami.

Probatio veri Balſami.

quantitate valdè ponderosum,& iuxta quod minus ponderosum inueneris,ampliùs falsificatum noueris.

Caput. 9.

De Nilo fluuio,& Aegypti territorio.

Nilus suprà dictus fluuius Aegypti appellatus est alio nomine Gyon, cuius origo est à Paradiso terrestri. Hic venit currens per deserta Indiæ Maioris, hincque per meatus subterraneos transit plures terras: exiens sub Monte Aloth, inter Indiam, & Aethiopiam, & Mauritaniam intra deserta Aegypti, irrigans totam longitudinem Aegypti vsque ad Alexandriam, ibique se perdit in mare. Sole intrante signum Cancri omni anno, hoc est, ad quindenam ante Festum Natiuitatis Ioannis Baptistæ incipit paulatim fluuius crescerè, & inundare, quousque sol intret Virginem, quod est circa Festum Laurentij, atque ex tunc decrescere, & minui, donec Sole veniente in Lybram intra suos alueos se conseruet: Dúmque per inundationem nimis effluit, damnificat terræ culturas, & fit Charistia in Aegypto. Et similiter dum parùm exundat, ingruit esuries, quoniam in Aegypto rarissimè pluit, aut apparent nubes, quoniam si quandoque pluerit in æstate, terra muribus adimpletur. Terra Aegypti continet in longitudine dietas quindecim, in latitudine ferè tres, & habet triginta dietas deserti: à finibus Aegypti vsque Nubiam, duodecim sunt dietæ. Hi Nubij sunt Christiani, sed nigri, velut Aethiopes, vel Mauri.

Inundatio Nili.

Raro in Aegypto pluuia.

Nubia.

Phœnix auis, de qua dicitur, quod semper vnica sit in mundo, viuens per annos quingentos, quæ & seipsam comburit, ac de cineribus eius, siue per naturam, siue per miraculum alia creatur, hæc interdum apparet in Aegypto, & sicut mihi monstrabatur, vidi duabus vicibus. Modicùm est maior Aquila, cristam in capite maiorem pauonis, collum habens croceum, dorsum Indicum, alas purpureas, caudam duobus coloribus, per transuersum croceo & rubeo regulatam, qui singuli colores sunt ad splendorem Solis delectabiliter videntibus resplendentes. In Aegypto multæ habentur arbores, sexcies aut septies in anno fructificantes, ibique frequenter inueniuntur in terra Smaragdi, & circa oram Nili alij lapides pretiosi. A Babylonia Aegypti, vsque ad ciuitatem Meccam, (quam Pagani ibidem appellant Iacrib, & est in magnis desertis Arabiæ) sunt triginta duæ dietę. In ea veneratur detestandum cadauer Machon siue Machometi honorabiliter & reuerenter in Templo eius, quod ibi vocatur Musket, de cuius vita aliquid infrà narrabo. Per prædicta itaque apparet, quod Imperator Sarracenorum Soldanus Babyloniæ, valdè potens est Dominus.

Phœnix visa a Mandeuillo.

Mecha.

Caput 10.

De conductu Soldani,& via vsque in Sinay.

Prius dictum est de reuerentia Soldani, quando ad ipsum intratur exhibenda. Sciendum ergò, cùm ab eo petitur securus conductus, nemini denegare consueuit, sed datur petentibus communiter sigillum eius, in appenditione absque literis: hoc sigillum, pro vexillo in virga aut hasta dum peregrini ferunt, omnes Sarraceni videntes illud flexis genibus in terram se reuerenter inclinant, & portantibus omnem exhibent humanitatem. Verumtamen satis maior fit reuerentia literis Soldani sigillatis, quod & Admirabiles, & quicunque alij Domini, quando eis monstrantur, antequam recipiant, se multùm inclinant: Deinde ambabus manibus eas capientes ponunt super propria capita, posteà osculantur, & tandem legunt inclinati cum magna veneratione, quibus semel aut bis perlectis, offerunt se promptos ad explendum quicquid ibi iubetur, ac insuper exhibent deferenti, quicquid possint commodi, vel honoris: sed talem conductum per literas Soldani vix quisquam peregrinorum accipit, qui non in Curia illius stetit, vel notitiam apud illum habuerit. *Ego autem habui in recessu meo, in quibus etiam continebatur ad omnes sibi subiectos speciale mandatum, vt me permitterent intrare, & respicere singula loca, pro mea placito voluntatis, & mihi exponerent quorumcunque locorum mysteria distincte & absque vllo velamine veritatis, ac me cum omni sodalitate mea benignè reciperent, & in cunctis rationalibus audirent, requisiti autem si necesse foret de ciuitate conducerent in ciuitatem.* Habito itaque peregrinis conductu, ad Montem Sinay potest à Cayr vnam duarum incipere semitarum, vsque vallem Helim, vbi adhuc sunt duodecim fontes aquarum. Nam vna viarum est, vt pertranseat passagium maris rubri, non longè ab eodem loco, vbi olim populus Israel Duce Mose, Deo iubente, siccis pedibus transijt idem mare. Quod quidem, licèt aqua sit satis clara, dicitur ibi Rubrum propter lapillos, & arenas subrusi coloris: & continet ibi nunc temporis passus maris

Literæ Soldani in gratiam Mandeuilli concessæ.

Ratio, cur Rubrum mare sic appellatur.

ris in latitudine ferè ſex leucas. Tranſmiſſoque mari, ibit ſuper hanc longè ab oris eiuſdem per dietas quatuor, atque ex tunc relinquens mare, tendit per deſerta ſex aut ſeptem dierum, vſque in vallem præfatam. Alia eſt autem via, vt de Babylonia intret Dyrcen deſerta, tendens ad quendam fontem, quem dicitur Moſes feciſſe: & hinc ad riuulum Marach, qui quondam, Moſe imponente lignum, ab amaritudine dulceſcebat, & ſic tandem in præmiſſam vallem perueniant. Et reſtat via grandis dietæ ad Montem Sinay ab hac valle. Nam à Babylonia vſque in Sinay, æſtimatur eſſe via duodecim dietarum, quamuis nonnulli citiùs perueniunt. Hoc verè ſciendum, neminem peregrinorum per hæc deſerta ſine ductore poſſe tendere, cui notæ ſunt viæ, ſed nec equi valent tranſire, præcipuè quòd non inuenirent in deſertis quid bibere. Aliquo tamen modo tranſitur per Camelos, eò quòd ſe continere poſſunt de potu duobus aut tribus diebus: Et oportet vt itinerantes ferant ſecum per viam neceſſaria ad victum proprium, & Camelorum, niſi quòd interdum fortè Cameli aliquid ſibi abrodere poſſunt circa cortices arbuſtorum, & folia ramuſculorum.

Vel Maſſa.

Abſtinentia Camelorum ab aquis.

CAPVT. II.

De Monaſterio Sinay, & reliquijs beatæ Catherinæ.

MOns Sinay appellatur ibi deſertum Syn: quaſi in radice montis iſtius habetur Cœnobium Monachorum pergrande, cuius clauſura in circuitu eſt firmata muris altis, & portis ferreis, pro metu beſtiarum deſerti. Hi Monachi ſunt Arabes, & Græci, & in magno conuentu, multùm Deo deuoti: viuunt in magna abſtinentia, vtentes ſimplicibus cibariis, de lotis & dactylis, & huiuſmodi, nec vinum potantes, feſtis exceptis. Illic in Eccleſia Beatæ Virginis & matris Catherinæ ſemper lampades plurimæ ſunt ardentes, nam habetur ibi plena copia olei oliuarum. A poſteriori parte magni altaris monſtratur locus, vbi Moyſi apparuit Dominus in rubo ardente, ipſum rubum adhuc ſeruans, quem dum Monachi intrant, ſemper ſe diſcalceant gratia illius verbi, quo Deus iuſsit Moyſi ibidem, Solue calciamentum de pedibus tuis, locus enim in quo ſtas, terra ſancta eſt: hunc locum appellant Bezeleel, id eſt, vmbra Dei. Et propè altare tribus gradibus in altitudine, habetur capſa, ſeu Tumba Alabaſtri, ſanctiſsima continens oſſa Virginis. Chriſtiani qui ibidem morantur, cum magna reuerentia aduenientibus peregrinis, à Monachorum prælato, ſeu ab alio in hoc inſtituto, excipiuntur. Is quodam inſtrumento argenteo conſueuit oſſa defricare, ſiue linire, vt ex iis exeat modicũ olei, velut parumper ſudoris, quod tamen non apparet in colore ſui tanquam olei ſeu Balſami, ſed aliquantulum pluris magnitudinis. Et ex iſto traditur interdum aliquid petentibus peregrinis, ſed parùm, quia nec multùm exudat. Oſtendere ſolent & caput ipſius Catherinæ cum inuolumento ſanguinolento, & multas prætereà ſanctas, & venerabiles reliquias, quæ omnia intuitus ſum diligenter & ſæpè, oculis indignis. Habent quoque in iſta Eccleſia propriam Lampadem quilibet Monachorum, quæ imminente illius diſceſſu lumen per diuinum miraculum variat vel extinguit. Ego etiam curioſiùs ſuper vno dubio quod priùs audieram, plures interrogationes feci ab aliquibus Monachorum, vtrum ſcilicet prælato eorum decedente ſemper ſucceſſor per diuinum ſignum eligeretur: & vix tandem ab eis recepi reſponſum, quòd per vnum iſtorum miraculorum habetur ſucceſſor, videlicet in miſſa ſepulturæ defuncti omnibus Monachorum lampadibus extinctis, illius ſola Dei nutu reaccenditur, quem fieri vult prælatum, vel de cœlo inuenitur miſſus breuiculus ſuper altare, inſcriptum habens nomen prælati futuri. Intra hanc Eccleſiam nunquam muſca, vel aranea, aut huiuſmodi immundi vermiculi naſcuntur, quod ſimiliter per diuinum accidit miraculum: nam antè replebatur Eccleſia talibus immunditiis, & totus conuentus recederet ad conſtruendam Eccleſiam in alio loco. Et ecce Dei genetrix virgo beata eis viſibiliter obuiauit, iubens reuerti, & dicens nunquam Eccleſiam ſimilibus infeſtari. In cuius obuiationis loco, in aſcenſu procliuo huius montis per multos gradus conſtruxerunt Eccleſiam, ædificium excellens, in honorem eiuſdem virginis. Et aliquantò altiùs, per eiuſdem montis aſcenſum eſt vetus Capella, quam vocant Eliæ Prophetæ, & locum ſpecialiter appellant Horeb. A cuius latere in montis appendentia colitur vinea, quam nominant Ioſuæ ſchophis, de qua quidam putare volunt, quod Sanctus Ioannes Euangeliſta eam primò plantauit. In ſuperiori verò montis vertice, eſt Capella, quam dicunt Moyſis, & illic rupis ſeruans adhuc corporis eius formam impreſſam dum ſe abſcondit, veritus dominum reſpicere in facie. Locus quoq; ibi oſtenditur, in quo Deus tradidit ei decem mandata, ſiue legem proprio digito ſcriptam, & ſub rupe cauerna, in qua manſit ieiunus diebus 40. Ab hoc monte qui vocatur Moſi, reſtat via producta ad quartam Leucæ, vſque in montem qui dicitur Sanctæ Catherinæ per vallem ſpecioſam, ac multùm frigidam. Circa eius medium habetur Eccleſia, nomine 40. Martyrum conſtructa, vbi interdum veniunt Monachi cantare miſſam. Hic mons eſt

Monachorum ſophiſmata.

ſatis

satis altior Monte Moysis, in cuius vertice Angeli Dei piè creduntur attulisse, & sepeliisse corpus sanctissimæ Martyris Catharinæ cum inuolumento capitis suprà dicto. Attamen in ipso certo sepulturæ loco, licèt quandoque stetit Capella, modò non est habitaculum, sed modicus aceruus petrarum. Notandum, quòd vterque horum montium potest vocari mons Sinay, eò quòd totus circumiacens locus deserti Sin appellatur. Sur desertum inter mare Rubrum, & solitudinem Sinay. desertum Sur idem Scriptura quod & Cades. Visitatis igitur à peregrinis his sacrosanctis memorijs, & valefacto Monachis, recommendant se eorum orationibus, & meritis: túncque solet aliquid victualium offerri peregrinis, pro inchoanda via deserti Syriæ versus Ierusalem. Et sicut dixi de priori deserto, sic nec istud securè est peragrandum absque Drogemijs, id est, semitarum ductoribus, propter vastitudinem deserti.

CAPVT. 12.

Iter à deserto Sinay vsque ad Iudæam.

PEr istud latum & longum desertum, moratur vel potiùs vagatur maxima multitudo malorum, & incompositorum hominum, qui non manent in domibus, sed sub pellium tabernaculis, quemadmodum & olim filij Israel in eodem deserto ambulauerunt, quoniam aquæ non manent ibi diu in locis certis: & ideò mutant tabernacula sequentes aquas: non colunt terras, rarò manducant panem, sed tantùm carnes bestiarum deserti quas venantur, coquentes super petras calefactas ad Solem: fortes sunt & feroces, & velut desperati de vita propria non curantes, qui licèt non habeant arma præter lanceam, & tarchiam, & caput grandi albo linteolo inuolutum, tamen non verentur exercere guerras, & inire prœlia contra Dominum suum Soldanum: nam & ego stipendiarius in expeditione Soldani contra eos sæpiùs fui. Isti sunt quidem Arabes, sed notiori nomine appellantur Bedoyns & Acopars, & quamuis plurima mala agunt per desertum, rarò tamen nocent peregrinis beatæ Virginis Catharinæ. Itaque peregrinus qui debitum tenuit iter, veniat à finibus deserti in primam ciuitatem Iudeæ, quæ dicitur Bersebe: est vicus grandis Hebron inde miliario vergens ad Austrum: Hieronymus. Notandum, Theros Mons Dei in regione Maglaw iuxta Montem. Notandum similiter, Arabiam in deserto esse, cui iungitur Mons, & desertum Sarracenorum, quod vocatur Phaaran. Mihi autem videtur, quod duplici nomine, nunc Mons Sinay, nunc Oreb vocatur. Hieronymus. Phaaran nunc oppidum trans Oreb, iam iunctum Sarracenis, qui in solitudine vagi pererrant. Hos interfecerunt filij Israel, cùm de Monte Sinay castra mouissent. Est ergo, vt dixi, trans Iordanem contra Austrálem plagam, & distat ab Helyn, contra Orientem, itinere dierum trium. In deserto autem Phaaran, Scriptura commemorat habitasse Ismaelem, vnde & Ismaelitæ, qui nunc Sarraceni. Legimus quo que Chederlaomer percussisse eos qui erant in deserto Phaaran quod nunc dicitur Ascalon, & circa eam Regio Palestinorum. Hieronymus. Hæc Bersheba erat bona & spectabilis, vltimo tempore Christianorum, & adhuc ibi restant nonnullæ Ecclesiæ.

Ioannes Mandeuil militans contra Arabes.

Beersheba.

Hinc ad Leucas duas venitur in ciuitatem Hebron, & Hebron ab Helyn distat ad Meridianam plagam millibus circiter 39. de qua legitur, quòd primis temporibus fuerit habitatio maximorum Gigantium, Regúmque, postea à Dauidis. In hac est illa spelunca duplex, quæ seruat ossa sanctorum Patriarcharum, Abrahæ, Isaac, & Iacob, Saræ, & Rebeccæ, consistítque ad radicem montis, & habetur super istam cum propugnaculis ad modum castri constructa pulchra Ecclesia. Sarraceni appellant istam speluncam Kariackaba, custodientes locum diligenter ac reuerenter propter honorem Patriarcharum, & non permittentes quenquam Christianorum aut Iudæorum ingredi, nisi ostenderit super hæc specialem gratiam à Soldano. Nam ipsi communiter reputant tam Christianos quàm Iudæos pro canibus, & quando despectiuè eos volunt appellare, dicunt Kylp, id est, canis.

Ciuitas Hebron.

Ab Hebron incipit vallis Mambrę, quæ protenditur ferè vsq; Ierusalem: haud remotè ad Hebron est mons Mambre, & in ipso monte arbor quercus aridæ, quæ pro antiquitate sui, speciale sibi nomen meruit in mundo vniuerso, vt vocetur arbor ficca: Sarraceni autem eam dicunt Dirp: hæc creditur stetisse ante tempora Abrahæ, tamen quidam volunt putare à mundi initio, virens donec passionis Christi tempore siccaretur. Hoc autem certum est, haberi eam ab omnibus nationibus in veneratione.

Vallis Mambræ.

Quercus arida.

In quodam loco præfatæ vallis est planicies, vbi per plures fossas effodiunt homines Gambil, quod comeditur loco specierum aromaticarum, & per villas defertur venale. Sed & hoc audiui, quòd nulla ibi fossa ita valet exhauriri, si dimittatur per annum, quin inueniatur de prædicta Gambil impleta.

Gambil species Aromatis.

Ad duas leucas de Hebron, monstratur sepultura Loth filii fratris Abrahã. Itẽ de ciuitate Hebrõ per quinque leucas amoeni itineris, hoc est, in media die, venitur in Bethleem Iudeæ. Notandũ,

Arbe,

Arbe,id est,quatuor,primùm dicam de eo quod ibi tres Patriarchæ Abraham,Isac,& Iacob sepulti sunt,& Adam magnus,vt in Iudæorum libro scriptum est, licèt eum quidam conditum in loco Caluariæ suspicentur. Corruptè in nostris codicibus Arboth scribitur, alibi erat arbor cùm in Hebræis legatur Arbe,hæc est autem eadem Hebron olim Metropolis Philistinorum, ab vno filiorum Caleb sortita vocabulum. Kiriath-Arbe.

Caput 13.

De ciuitate Bethleem,& semita vsque in Ierusalem.

Bethleem Ciuitas longa sed parua, firmata est vndique fossatis fortibus: cuius modò habitatores quasi omnes sunt Christiani.In illa ad orientem honesta,& placida habetur Ecclesia: (nescio an aliquam eiusdem quantitatis viderim placentiorem,)extrinsecus habens turres saltaturas,pinnacula,& propugnacula nobili artificio fabricata,& intrinsecus 44. de marmore decoro columnas.Ad principalis autem turris dextram in descensu 16.graduum,est diuersorij locus,vbi ex intacta & benedicta Virgine nascebatur Christus homo Deus. Hic locus est multùm artificiosè operatus marmore,& generosè depictus auro & argento, varióque colore, cui propè ad tres passus est præsepe in quo reclinabatur natus Dominus, ibíque videtur puteus quidam,in quo aliqui putare volunt cecidisse stellam ductricem trium Magorum, post eius peractum officium.

Est etiam ante præsepe Domini,tumba beati Interpretis Hieronymi,& extra Ecclesiam mõstratur cathedra,in qua residere solebat.Sub clausura huius ecclesiæ ad dextram,per 18.gradus apparet fossa, quæ dicitur ossium innocentium causa Christi ab Herode impio occisorum. Hinc ad quingentos,vel citra pedes habetur alia Ecclesia nomine Sancti Nicholai, in quo scilicet loco,post recessum Magorum beata Virgo tempus sui puerperij obseruauit.Ibíque monstrantur rubra saxa albis respersa maculis, quòd simpliciores narrant saxis eueniisse de abundantia lactis virginis ab vberibus eiecti.In via Bethleem ab Helya miliario contra meridianam plagam iuxta viam quæ ducit Ebron, Christiani de Bethleem colunt circa ciuitatem multam copiam vinearum,ad potum sui ipsorum.Nam Sarraceni non colunt vineas, nec vina vendunt neque in manifesto bibunt,eò quòd liber legis Mahomet,facit super hoc prohibitionem,& interpretatur maledictionem. Taxat simplicitatem vulgi. Sarraceni non bibunt vinum in manifesto.

De Bethleem in Austrum duabus leucis habetur claustrum Sanctæ Charitatis, ibidem suo tempore Abbatissæ.A Bethleem tendendo Ierusalem inuenitur ad dimidiam leucam Ecclesia, in cuius loco Angelus dixit pastoribus,Annuncio vobis gaudium magnum, quod natus est nobis Saluator qui est Christus Dominus.Est & tumba Rachel Patriarchæ, vbi etiam coaceruata iacent 12.saxa magna,quæ quidam autumant illic tumulasse Iacob, eò quòd Beniamin duodecimus sibi filius nascebatur ibidem.Sícque venitur in Sanctam Ciuitatem Ierusalem.Notandum,Bethel vicus est 12.ab Helya ad dextram euntibus Neapoli, quæ primùm Luza vocabatur.Sed ex eo tempore quo ibat ad Ieroboam filium Nebat,vituli aurei fabricati sunt, & à decem tribubus adorata,vocata est Bethauen, id est, Domus Idoli, quæ antè vocabatur Domus Dei.Ieronymus.Sed & Ecclesia ædificata est vbi dormiuit Iacob,pergẽs Mesopotamiam,vbi & ipsi loco Bethel,id est,domus Dei nomen imposuit. Sancta Charitas. Bethel.

Caput 14.

De Ecclesia glorioſi Sepulchri Domini in vrbe Ierusalem.

Ierusalem cum tota terra promissionis,est quasi vna de quinque prouincijs vel pluribus, quibus Regnum Syriæ distinguitur.Iungitur autem Iudæa ad Orientem Regno Arabiæ, ad meridiem Aegypto,ad Occidentem mari magno,& ad Aquilonem Regno Syriæ.Iudeæ terra per diuersa tempora à diuersis possessa fuit nationibus,Cananæorum,Iudæorum,Assyriorum, Persarum,Medorum, Macedonum,Græcorum,Romanorum,Christianorum,Sarracenorum,Barbarorum,Turcorum,& Tartarorum.Cuius rei causa meritò potest æstimari,quod non sustinuit Deus magnos peccatores longo tempore permanere in terra sibi tam placita,& tam sancta.

Itaque peregrinus veniens in Ierusalem primò expleat suam peregrinationem, ad reuerendum & sacrosanctum Domini nostri Iesu Christi sepulchrum: cuius Ecclesia est in vltima ciuitatis extremitate,ad partem aquilonarem,cum proprio sui ambitus muro ipsi ciuitati adiuncto.Ipsa verò Ecclesia est pulchra & rotundæ formæ cooperta desuper cum tegulis plumbeis, habens in Occidente turrim altam & firmam,in pauimenti Ecclesiæ medio ad figuram dimidij compassi habetur nobili opere Latonico ædificatum paruum Tabernaculum quasi 15. pedum tam longitudinis quàm latitudinis, & altitudinis miro artificio intus extráque compositum,ac multùm diligenter diuersis coloribus ornatum. Hoc itaque in Tabernaculo seu Capella, Templum Sepulchri.

la, ad latus dextrum, continetur incomparabilis thesaurus glorioſiſsimi ſepulchri, habentis octo pedes longitudinis, & quinque latitudinis. Et quoniam in toto habitaculo nulla eſt apertura præter paruum oſtium, illuſtratur accedentibus peregrinis pluribus lampadibus, (quarum ad minus vna coram ſepulchro iugiter ardere ſolet) ingreſſus.

Melech Mandybron Soldanus.

Sciendum, quòd ante breue tempus ſolebat ſepulchrum eſſe ingreſsis peregrinis acceſsibile, ad tangendum & oſculandum, ſed quia multi vel effringebant, vel conabantur ſibi effringere aliquid de petra ſepulchri, iſte Soldanus Melech Mandybron fecit illud confabricari, vt nec oſculari valeat, nec adiri, ſed tantummodo intueri. Et ob illam cauſam in ſiniſtro pariete in altitudine quinque pedum immurari effracturam petræ ſepulchri ad quantitatem capitis humani, quod tanquam pro ſepulchro ibi ab omnibus veneratur, tangitur, & oſculatur.

Mandeuillus de hoc dubitat.

Dicitur ibi quoque communiter præfatam lampadem coram ſepulchro ſingulis annis in die Sanctæ Paraſcheues, hora nona extingui, & in media nocte Paſchæ ſine humano ſtudio reaccendi. Quod (ſi ita eſt) euidens diuini beneficii miraculum eſt. Et quamuis id plurimi Chriſtiani ſimpliciter in magno pietatis merito credant, pleriſque tamen eſt in ſuſpicione. Fortè talia Sarraceni cuſtodes ſepulchri fingentes diuulgauerunt, pro augendo emolumenta tributi, quod inde reſultaret, ſeu oblationum quæ dantur.

Singulis autem annis in die cœnæ Domini in Paraſcheue, & in vigilia Paſchæ, tribus bis diebus manet Tabernaculum hoc apertum continuè, & patet omnibus Chriſtianis gentibus acceſſus, aliàs verò non per annum ſine redditione tributi. Intra Eccleſiam, propè parietem dextrum, eſt Caluariæ locus, vbi crucifixus pependit Chriſtus Dominus. Per gradus aſcenditur in hunc locum, & eſt rupis velut albi coloris, cum aliqua rubedine per loca commixta, habens ſciſſuram, quam dicunt Golgotha, in qua maior pars preciosi ſanguinis Chriſti dicitur influxiſſe: vbi & habetur altare conſtructum, ante quod conſiſtunt tumbæ Godefridi de Bullion, & aliorum Regum Chriſtianorum, qui circa annum incarnationis Domini, 1100. debellauerunt & obtinuerunt ſanctam vrbem cum tota patria ex manibus Sarracenorum, & per hoc conquiſierunt ſibi magnum nomen, vſque in finem ſæculi duraturum. Propè ipſius crucifixionis locum continetur literis Græcis hoc ſcriptum: ὁ Θεὸς βασιλεὺς ἡμῶν πρὸ αἰῶνος εἰργάσατο σωτηρίαν ἐν μέσῳ τῆς γῆς. hoc eſt dicere, Deus Rex noſter ante ſecula operatus eſt ſalutem in medio terræ. Item directè in loco, vbi crux ſancta ſtetit cum Chriſto rupi infixa, habetur hoc exaratum in ſaxo rupis: ὧδε βάσις τῆ ἁγίας τοῦ κόσμου, hoc eſt, quod vides fundamentum eſt fidei mundi.

Tumba Godefridi de Bollion.

Pſal. 74. 12.

Haud remotè ab hoc Caluariæ monte, habetur & aliud altare, vbi iacet columna flagellationis Domini, cui ſtant de propinquo & aliæ columnæ quatuor de Marmore aquam iugiter reſudantes, & (ſecundùm opinionem ſimplicium) paſſionem innocentem Chriſti deflentes. Eſt ſub iſto altari crypta, 42. graduum profunda, vbi ſancta Helena Regina reperit tres cruces, videlicet Chriſti, & latronum cum eo crucifixorũ, ac etiam clauos crucis Domini in cryptæ pariete.

Iterum taxat ignorantiam vulgi.

Regina Helena Angla.

In medio autem chori huius Eccleſiæ, eſt locus pauimenti ſtratus mirè & pulchrè, ad integrã cõpaſsi figuram, vbi depoſitũ corpus Chriſti de cruce Ioſeph ab Aramathia cum ſuis adiutoribus lauit & cõdiuit aromatibus. Itẽ infra Eccleſiam à ſeptentrionali parte oſtenditur locus, vbi Chriſtus Magdalenæ apparuit poſt ſuam reſurrectionẽ, quando eum credidit hortulanum.

Indorum Capella ſiue ſubditorum præſbiteri Ioannis.

A dextro autem latere ad ingreſſum Eccleſiæ, habentur gradus 18. ſub quibus eſt Capella Indorum, vbi ſoli peregrini de India per ſacerdotes ſuos cantant iuxta ritum ſuum Miſſas, celebrántque diuina. Miſſam faciunt quidem breuiſsimam, conficientes in principio verbis debitis ſactamentum corporis & ſanguinis Chriſti de pane & vino, ac poſteà paucis orationibus additis, totum oratione Dominica concludunt officium. Hoc autem verum eſt, quod cum maxima attentione, reuerentia, humilitate, & deuotione ſe gerunt, & continent diuinis.

An Ieruſalem ſit in medio mundi.

Porrò illud, quod quidam peruulgauerunt, aut opinati ſunt, Iudæam aut Ieruſalem, vel Eccleſiam iſtam conſiſtere in medio totius mundi, propter prædictam ſcripturam, (in medio terræ) hoc intelligi non poteſt localiter ad menſuram corporis terræ: Nam ſi ad terræ latitudinem, quam æſtimant inter duos polos, reſpiciamus, certum eſt Iudæam non eſſe in medio, quod tunc eſſet ſub circulo Aequatoris, & eſſet ibi ſemper æquinoctium, & vtrumq; polorum ſtaret iis in horizõte. Quod vtiq; nõ eſt ita, quod exiſtẽtibus in Iudea eleuatur multùm polus arcticus.

Rurſus ſi ad terræ longitudinem ſpectemus, quæ æſtimari poteſt à Paradiſo terreſtri, ſcilicet à digniori & latiori terræ loco, verſus eius Nadir, ſcilicet, verſus locum ſibi in Sphæra terræ oppoſitum, tunc Iudæa eſſet ad Antipodes paradiſi, quod apparet ita non eſſe, quod tunc eſſet viatori de Iudæa ad Paradiſum tendentis æqua itineris menſura, ſiue tenderet verſus Orientem, ſiue verſus Occidentem. Sed hoc non eſt veriſimile nec verum, ſicut probatum conſtat per experientiam multorum. Mihi autem videtur, quod præfata Prophetæ ſcriptura, poteſt exponi, in medio terræ, id eſt, circa medium noſtri habitabilis, videlicet vt Iudæa ſit circa medium inter

Paradiſum

Paradiſum & Antipodes Paradiſi, diſtans tantum ab ipſo Paradiſo in oriente 96. gradibus, prout ego ipſe per viam orientalem tentaui: quanquam de hoc non videtur de facili plena certitudo haberi, eo quòd in longitudine cœli nullæ ſtellæ manent immobiles, ſicut in latitudine manent poli ſempèr fixi. Vel poteſt ita exponi, quòd Dauid qui erat Rex Iudeę, dixit in medio terræ, hoc eſt, in principali ciuitate terræ ſuæ Ieruſalem, quæ erat ciuitas regalis, ſiue ſacerdotalis terrę Iudeæ: vel fortè ſpiritus ſanctus, qui loquebatur per os prophetę in hoc verbo vult intelligi non corporeum aut locale, ſed totum ſpirituale, de quo intuitu nihil ad præſens eſt ſcribendum.

Caput. 15.

De tribus alijs Eccleſijs, & ſpecialiter de templo Domini.

VLtrà duo ſtadia ab Eccleſia ad Meridiem ſancti ſepulchri habetur magnũ hoſpitale ſancti Ioannis Hieroſolymitani, qui caput & fundamentum eſſe dignoſcitur ordinis hoſpitaliorum modò tenentium Rhodum inſulam: in quo recipi poſſunt omnes Chriſtiani peregrini cuiuſcunque ſint conditionis, ſeu ſtatus, vel dignitatis. Nam Saraceni pro leui cura anxij rumoris, prohibent ne apud quenquam ſuorum Chriſtianus pernoctet. Ad ſuſtentationem ædificij huius hoſpitalis, habentur in eo 124. columnæ marmoreę, & in parietibus diſtincti 54. pilarij. Satis propè hunc locum in orientem, eſt Eccleſia quę dicitur, de Domina noſtra magna: & indè non remotè alia, quæ dicitur noſtrę Dominę latinorũ, ędificata ſuper locum, vbi Maria Magdalene, & Maria Cleophę cum alijs pluribus, dum Chriſtus cruci affigebatur, flebant & dolores lamentabiles exercebant.

Item ab Eccleſia Sancti Sepulchri in orientem ad ſtadium cum dimidio habetur ædificium mirabile, ac pulchrum valdè, quod templum Domini nominatur, quod conſtructum eſt in forma rotunda, cuius circumferentiæ diameter habet 64 cubitos, & altitudo eius 126, & intrinſecus pro ſuſtentatione ædificij, multi pilarij. In medio autem templi eſt locus altior 14. gradibus, qui & ipſe columnis vndiq; eſt ſtipatus: & ſecundum quatuor mundi plagas habet templum quatuor introitus per portas Cypreſſinas artificioſè compoſitas, nobiliterq; ſculptas, & exciſas. Et ante portam aquilónarem intra templum fontem aquæ mundæ, qui quamuis olim exundabat, tamen nunc minimè fluit. In toto circuitu ædificij extrinſecus eſt valdè pro atrio latum ſpacium loci, ſtratum per totum pauimentum marmoribus. Hoc templum non ducitur ſtare in eodem loco vbi templum Dei ſtetit in tempore Chriſti, quo poſt reſurrectionem a Romanis deſtructo, iſtud longo poſt tempore Adrianus Imperator extruxit, ſed non ad formam templi prioris: prædictum tamen excelſum in medio templi locum vocant Iudæi ſanctum ſanctorum.

Sciatis itaq; quòd Sarraceni magnam exhibent huic templo reuerentiam, & honorem, ſæpius illud diſcalceati intrantes, & poſitis genibus deuotè Deum omnipotentem exorantes, nulla enim ibidem habetur imago, ſed multæ lampades relucentes. Neminem Chriſtianorum ſeu Iudæorum ingredi ſinunt hoc templum, reputantes eos indignos ad hoc, & nimium immundos, vndè niſi virtute literarũ quas habui a Soldano, nec ego fuiſſem ingreſſus. Ingrediens autem cum meis ſodalibus depoſuimus calciamenta, recogitantes cum multa cordis deuotione, nos magis id facere debere, quàm incredulos Sarracenos.

Literæ Soldani traditæ Mandeuillo.

Et verè meritò eſt iſte locus in magna reuerentia habendus: dum enim Rex Salomon primùm in illo templo per Dei iuſſionem, & Dauidis patris ſui commiſſionem ędificaſſet, exorauit præſente cuncto populo Iſrael, vt quicunque illic Deum pro iuſta cauſa rogaret audiretur; & Dominus monſtrauit ex auditionis ſignum per nebulam de cœlo emiſſam, prout narrat hiſtoria veritatis 3. Regum libro.

Porrò in eo loco vbi ſtatuerat idem Rex ante templum altare holocauſti, videlicet extra portam templi occidentalem, habetur & nunc altare, ſed non ad inſtar, nec ad vſum primi: Nam Saraceni, quaſi nihil curantes, traxerunt in eo lineas tanquam in aſtrolabio figentes in linearum centro batellum, ad cuius vmbram per lineas diſcernuntur diei horę.

Etiam in hac atrij parte apparent adhuc veſtigia portę ſpecioſę, vbi Petrus Apoſtolus, cum Euangeliſta Ioanne dixit contracto, In nomine Chriſti Ieſu Nazareni ſurge, & ſtatim conſolidabantur illi plantę.

Caput. 16.

De pluribus locis ſacris intra vrbem.

VIaturo ad dextram ſatis de propinquo habetur & alia Eccleſia, quę nunc appellatur ſchola Salomonis: rurſuſq; ad Meridiem eſt & aliud templum ſiue Eccleſia, quę vocatur Templum Salomonis, quòd olim fuit caput, & fundamentum totius ordinis Templariorum.

Templarij à templo Salomonis dicti.

A clauſtro huius tẽpli extrinſecus in Aquilonem habetur decora Eccleſia beatę Annę, in cuius

loco creditur virgo Maria in eiusdem matris suę vtero fuisse genita, & concepta, parentũq; illius, scilicet, Ioachim & Annę, tumba saxea mõstratur in descensu Ecclesię, per 22. gradus, vbi & adhuc patris eius ossa putantur quiescere, sublato inde per reginam Helenam corpore sanctæ Annæ, & recondito (vt prædictum est) in Ecclesia Constantinopoli sanctæ Sophiæ.

Regina Helena, Angla.

Est & intra hanc Ecclesiam probatica piscina, vbi quondam post motionem Angeli omnes accedentes primi, a quocunq; languore sanabantur infirmi, quę tamen nunc temporis ita neglecta iacet, & deformata, vt videtur immunda cistrina. Habetur & ante Ecclesiam arbor grandis & antiqua, de qua nonnulli fabulantur, quod ad beatæ Mariæ natiuitatem principium accepit, & ortum.

Probatica piscina.

Mons Sion est excelsior locus in vrbe ad cuius radicem, est castrũ spectabile constructum per aliquem Soldanorum. In montis autem cacumine videntur multę sepulturę regum Iudeæ, videlicet Dauid, Salomonis, & quorundam de successoribus suis. Ad introitum montis habetur capella, & in illa lapis monumenti quem Ioseph de Arimathea obuoluit ad ostiũ sepulchri est valde magnus, & est ibidem aliqua pars columnæ flagellationis, ac pars mensę super quam Dominus vltimò cænauit cum Apostolis, & instituit noui Testamenti sacramentũ sui venerandi corporis, & sanguinis. Sub hac capella ad aliquos gradus monstratur locus eiusdem cęnationis, videlicet cęnaculi magni, & in eo vas aquarũ, in quo Christus lauabat pedes Apostolorum: iuxta quod vas, a Gamaliele, & alijs viris timoratis primus sepultus fuit protoMartyr Stephanus.

Mons Sion.

In eo quoq; loco intrauit post resurrectionẽ suam Dominus ianuis clausis ad discipulos dicens pax vobis, & agens alia, quę plenius Euãgelica pandit Historia, ac tandẽ in die Pentecostes ijsdem spiritũ sanctũ, in linguis igneis misit ibidem. Ab hoc mõte Sion versus ciuitatem habetur Ecclesia dedicata sancto saluatori, in quo nunc dicuntur seruari ossa S. Stephani supradicti, & sinistrũ brachium S. Ioannis Chrisostomi, cuius corpus vt dictũ est requiescit Constantinopoli.

Item ab hoc monte versus Austrum ab oppositio plateæ, est pulchra Ecclesia nostræ Domine, in cuius loco diu morabatur post ascensionem filij sui, quamuis pro parte eiusdem temporis in valle Iosaphat manserit: nam in ista defungebatur, & in illo ab Apostolis honorificè sepulta fuit. Itemque ab hoc monte in vico eundo versus vallem Iosaphat inuenitur fons aquæ dictus Natatoria Siloe, vbi cęcus natus à Christo missus lauabat oculos, & regressus est videns. Et dicunt quidam ibidem sepultum Isaiam Prophetam.

Natatoria Siloe.

Porro mons olim dictus Moria, de quo loquitur Scriptura sacra, est rupis haud longè a supradicto templo Domini in ipsius meridiè, in cuius rupis loco excelso velut eminenti sed edito Dominus noster Iesus Christus frequenter instruebat suos discipulos, & populos, magnaque miracula exhibebat, atque deprehensæ mulieri in adulterio omnia peccata dimittebat.

Iohn. 8.

Ab oppositio autem prędicti fontis natatorij habetur imago lapidea, rudi & vetusto opere sculpta, deformitèrque detrita, quæ manus Absalon nuncupatur, cuius ratio lib. 2. Regum monstratur. Vbi de propè vidi Arborem Sambucum, ad quam vel citrà cuius locum (vt dicitur) Iudas traditor per se suspensus crepuit medius, & diffusa sunt viscera eius.

Præterea à monte Sion versus Meridiem vltrà vallem ad iactum lapidis est locus Aceldema, in quo emptus ager 30. denarijs proditionis est, Et in quo sunt plures sepulturæ peregrinorum, & vestigia cellularum, de quondam illic commorantibus Heremitis.

CAPVT. 17.

De sacris locis extra muros Ciuitatis.

Vallis Iosaphat.

EXtra muros ciuitatis Ierusalem ad plagam orientalem, est vallis Iosaphat cõtigua, ac si esset fossata muris ipsius ciuitatis, & Ecclesia vbi sanctus Stephanus lapidabatur, & obdormiuit in Domino. Hinc non longè est porta ciuitatis, quę dicitur aurea, quę nunc semper obfirmata seruatur. Per hanc intrauit Christus sedens asino, & adhuc ostenditur rupis seruare vestigia animalis in tribus aut pluribus sui locis. Statim vltrà vallem Iosaphat aspicitur mons Olueti, sic dictus à pluribus, quia ibi sũt oliuarum Arbores. In planicie huius vallis decurrit riuulus dictus torrens Cedron, secus quem habetur pulchra, & honorificata Ecclesia sacrosanctę sepulturę beatę, & glorioſę matris Christi: descenditur autem in Ecclesiam per gradus 44. quòd extrinsecus est vallis inculta per fluxum fortassè torrentis, seu per alios euentus propter Antiquitatem temporis. Ibique monstratur sepulchrum eius vacuum. Habentur iuxta sepulchrum duo altaria, sub vno est fons Aquæ quę putatur exire de vno Paradisi flumine.

Mons oliuarum.

Torrens Cedron.

Satis propè ab hac Ecclesia ad rupem Gethsemane habetur capella, vbi scilicet Iudęis traditus fuit Christus à Iuda. In ipsa quoque rupe ostendebatur mihi figura impressę manus ad digitorum extensionem, quæ artificiosius humano studio sculpi non posset, quam referunt Christũ sua venerabili manu inclinando ad rupem efficisse, dum Iudæi impuras manus ad capiendum iniecerunt in eum. Hic ad iactum lapidis in meridie orauit ad suum patrem, & pro vehementi

orationis

orationis intentione ſanguineum exûdauit ſudorem: atque ibi non remotè videtur tumba regis Iudeæ Ioſaphat, à quo & vallis ſibi nomen aſſumpſit: & credimus in hanc vallem Chriſtum venturum ad nouiſſimum, & generaliſſimum iudicium, vbi (Iohele propheta teſtante) diſceptabit de omni actione mortaliũ. Ad tractum ſagittę de hac tumba, eſt Eccleſia vbi ſanctus Iacobus maior Apoſtolus primò poſt martyrium fuit ſepultus, cuius modò ſacrata oſſa veneran- S. Iacobi ſepultura.
tur Compoſtellæ in Galizia.

Vltra vallem in ſupremo montis Oliueti apice diſcipulis cernentibus, Dominus noſter Ieſus Chriſtus eleuatis manibus aſcendit in cœlum, & ſuper eundem locum digna habetur Eccleſia, in qua eiuſdem Aſcenſione tale ſeruatur in rupe pauimenti indiciũ, quod ſiniſtri pedis Chriſti videtur vltimum veſtigium.

Hinc ſatis propè habetur & capella medio montis, vbi Chriſtus ſedens prædicauit octo beatitudines, vbi & creditur docuiſſe diſcipulos orationem Dominicam, ſcilicet, *Pater noſter, &c.* Ab eo quoq; loco non diſtat multum Eccleſia beatæ Marię Ægyptiacæ, in qua & eius tumba videtur: & haud procul inde eſt vicus Bethphage, vbi Chriſtus miſit ante paſſionis ſuæ tempus duos de diſcipulis pro aſina & pullo eius. In cliuo verò huius mõtis Oliueti verſus ciuitatem, monſtratur locus, de quo videns Dominus Ieruſalem, fleuit ſuper illam, dicens, quòd ſi cognouiſſes & tu, &c. Atq; vltrà montem in diſcenſu eius in orientem eſt villa ſiue caſtellum Bethanię, diſtans quaſi ad leucam ab vrbe vbi in domo cuiuſdam Symonis inuitatus Chriſtus condonauit omnia peccata Mariæ Magdalenę. Et in ipſo caſtello, quòd erat ſororis Marthæ, & Mariæ reſuſcitauit fratrem earum Lazarum quatriduanum mortuum. Bethania.

De Bethania in Ierico ſunt 5. leucæ, quę quondam fuit ciuitas ſpecioſa ſed iam eſt villa modica: ibi Diues Zacheus aſcendit in arborem Sycomorum, vt videret tranſeuntem Dominum, & reſtituens fraudata quadruplum, obtinuit peccatorum remiſſionem omnium. Ierico.

Item de Bethania ad flumen Iordanis eſt iter ferè octo leucarum, per montes, ac valles deuios, & deſertos. Porrò de Bethania in orientem ad 6. leucas venitur in montem magnum, vbi Chriſtus expleto 40. dierum, ac noctium ieiunio temptatus eſt à diabolo, fuitq; in eodem loco quandoq; Eccleſia, ſed modo habeturibi quaſi cœnobiũ quorũdam Chriſtianorum, qui Georgici vocantur. Sciendum enim eſt, quod vbiq; intra terrain Saracenorum, & ſimiliter multorum Paganorum inueniuntur Chriſtiani diſperſi, habitantes ſub tributo, qui licet ſint baptizati omnes, & beatiſsmam Trinitatem credentes, diuerſificantur tamen nominibus, moribus, ritibus, fide, & opinionibus: ita vt ſemper vel in multis vel in aliquibus diſſentiant à Romanæ Eccleſiæ conſuetudinibus. Chriſtiani Georgici.

Aliqui namq; eorũ dicuntur Chriſtiani Iacobitę: hij errant circa peccatorum remiſſionem, dicentes, non debere confiteri homini ſed ſoli Deo. Alij Syrij, Iſti in fermentato pane conficiunt Sacramentum altaris ritu Græcorum. Alij Georgici, hi omnes ferunt in capite tonſuras: clerici rotundas, laici quadratas, ſequentes etiam in multis mores Græcorum. Alij Cordelarij eo quod ſe cingunt deſuper corde. Alij Indi, Nubij, Neſtorini, & Arriani. Iacobitæ. Syrij. Georgici. Cordelarij. Indi. Nubij. Neſtorini. Arriani.

Præfatus autem mons magnus, vocatur hortus Abrahæ, ex eo quod Abraham patriarcha ibi dicitur commoratus, & currit propè montem riuulus, in cuius aqua vel fonte Deus ſal per Helizeũ prophetam mitti iuſſit, vt ſanaretur ſterilitas, id eſt, amaritudo aquæ. Nec diſtat hic mons à Ierico vltra grandem leucam.

Caput. 18.

De notabilibus aliis locis, & mari mortuo.

RVrſum de ciuitate ſanctę Ieruſalem verſus Occidentem itinere leucę, habetur pulchra ſatis Eccleſia, in loco vbi dicitur creuiſſe arbor crucis ſalutiferę. Arbor excelſa, digno ſtipite ſacra Chriſti mẽbra tangere. Tenetur iſtud quidẽ pro certa veritate: nam & hoc ſatis teſtatur conſtructio tãtæ, & talis Eccleſię, quãuis multa aliena, & incerta ſcripta de crucis arbore ferãtur per orbẽ. Hinc ad duas leucas eſt & alia Eccleſia, vbi obuiauerũt ſibi Maria virgo, & Elizabeth eius cognata, & ad ſalutationem Marię Chriſti baiulę exultauit Ioannes in vtero Elizabeth grauidæ. Nota.

De iſto quoque ad leucam eſt Emaus caſtellum, diſtans in ſpacio ſtadiorũ 60. ab Ieruſalem, vbi diſcipuli in cœna die reſurrectionis Domini cognouerant eum in fractione panis. Porrò ab Ieruſalem ad alium exitum, ad duo ſtadia videtur ſpelunca grandis de qua dicitur quòd tempore Coſdri Imperatoris Perſarum, fuerunt circa Ieruſalem 12. mille martyrum occiſi, quorum omnium corpora leo habitans in ſpelunca congregauit ibidem voluntate diuina, tanquam pro ſingulorum ſepultura obſequioſa. Emaus caſtellum. Coſdrus Imperator.

Item ab vrbe ad leucas duas habetur in monte tumba ſepulturæ ſancti Samuelis prophetæ, qui mons nunc vocatur exultationis vel lęticię, eò quod peregrinis ab illa parte intrãtibus reddit primum ſanctę ciuitatis aſpectum. Ab oppido autem Ierico in 30. ſtadiorum ſpacio venitur Mons exultationis.

ad Iordanis fluuij locum, vbi beatus Ioannes Baptista Christum sacri baptismatis merebatur tingere lymphis. Et in cuius reuerendi mysterij venerationem habetur ad dimidiam leucam à fluuio ædificium honestæ Ecclesiæ consecratum in nomine eiusdem venerabilis baptistæ ministri. Ab hac Ecclesia de propè vidi domum de qua patiebar mihi narrari, quòd in eodem loco olim fuerit Ieremiæ sancti habitatio prophetæ.

Iordanis descriptio.

Notandum est. Iordanis fluuius quamuis grandis non sit, bonorum tamen piscium copiam nutrit, ortum accipiens sub monte Libanon ex duobus fontibus, scilicet Ior, & Dan, quæ nomina simul mixta nomen Iordanis efficiunt. Decurrit autem per quendam locum dictum Maron, ac secus stagnum quod dicitur Mare Tyberiadis, ac subter montes Gylboe per amœnissima loca, atque in subterraneis meatibus per longum spacium se occultans tandem exit in planitie, quæ dicitur Meldam, id est, forum, quod certis temporibus ibi Nundinę exercentur, & ad extremum se iactat in mare mortuum.

Mare mortuum.

Hoc stagnum quod vocatur mare mortuũ habet longitudinis 600. ferè stadia, & latitudinis 150. & appropinquat aliqua pars huius maris ad quatuor leucas propè Ierico, videlicet ad latus camporum Engadi, ex quibus (vt suprà dictum est) eradicatæ fuerunt arbores Balsami, quæ modò sunt in agro Cayr Ægypti. Istud mare dicitur mortuum,

Nota.

Cur mare mortuum dicatur.

Primò quidem quòd non viuidè currit, sed est quasi lacus.

Secundò quod amara est eius aqua, & fœtidum reddit odorem.

Tertiò quòd propter eius amaritudinem terra adiacens littori nil viride profert.

Quartò (prout dicitur) si cadat in ea bestia, vel aliud quid viuens, vix poterit plenè mori siue submergi in octo diebus, nec nutrit in se pisces aut quid simile:

Littora quoque sua variant quam sepè colorem, & sine vlla agitatione ventorum eijcit in quibusdam locis se aqua, extra proprios terminos. Per huiusmodi aquam dicitur Deus pro indicibili vitio Pentapolim submersisse, Sodomam, Gomorram, Adaman., Seboim, & Segor.

Quidam vocant hoc mare lacũ Asphaltidis, alij fluuium Dæmonũ, aut flumen Putre. Quod autem olim propheta interpretans dixit, montes Gilboe, nec ros nec pluuia veniat super vos, magis spiritualitèr quàm literalitèr videtur intelligendum. Nam ibi crescunt altissimi cedri, & arbores poma ferentes, ad capitis quantitatem humani, ex quibus valdè saporosus fit potus.

Nota.

Mare istud mortuum determinat fines terræ promissionis, & Arabiæ, Ideoq; vltra ipsum mare condidit quondam, vnus successorum Godfridi de Bollion forte & spectabile castrum, ponens illic copiosam Christianorum militiam ad terram promissionis custodiendum. Nunc verò temporis, est Soldani, & appellatur Caruth, id est mons Regalis. Sub hoc monte est villa dicta Sobal: habitat in illis partibus magna Christianorum multitudo.

Caput. 19.

De Nazareth, & Samaria.

NAzareth in prouincia Galileæ in qua nutritus, & de qua cognominatus est Dominus vniuersorum, distans ab Hierosolymis ad tres circiter dietas, erat quondã ciuitas, quæ nunc est dispersa, & rara domorum, quod vix villæ sibi competit nomen: & in loco Annunciationis, vbi Angelus ad Mariam dixit, *Aue gratia plena, Dominus tecum*, habebatur olim bona Ecclesia, pro qua paruum Saraceni restituerunt habitaculum, in colligendas peregrinorum offerendas.

A Nazareth redeundo per terram Galileę, transitur per Ramathaym Sophim, vbi nascebatur fidelis Samuel propheta Domini, & per Sylo, vbi locus orationis erat antequam in Ierusalem: & per Sichem magnæ vbertatis vallem, itur in prouinciam Samariæ, vbi habetur & bona ciuitas nunc dicta Neapolis, distans à sancta vrbe spacio solius dietæ, ac per fontem Iacob, super quem Iesus fatigatus ab itinere colloquebatur Samaritanæ, vbi & apparet ruina destructæ Ecclesiæ quondam illic habitæ. Et est ibi villa adhuc vocata Sychem, & in eo est mausoleum Ioseph patriarchæ filij Iacob: ad cuius ossa visitanda sub deuotione non minus peregrini Iudæi aduenerunt, quàm Christiani.

Samaria, nunc Sebaste.

Hinc satis propè est mons Garizin cum vetusto templo orationis Samaritanorum: extunc intratur Samaria, quę modò appellatur Sebaste, & est illius principalis ciuitas prouincię. In qua fuit primum terræ mandatum corpus beati Ioannis Baptistæ, inter sacra corpora Helizæi, & Abdiæ Prophetarum, vt quorum assimilibatur virtutibus in vita, corporibus iungeretur in sepultura. Hæc quoque distat ab Hierosolymis, fortassis 2. dietas.

Habetur & alius puteus aut fons intra illa montana, quem plerique similiter fontem Iacob appellant, cuius aqua secundum quatuor anni tempora variatur à suo colore, vt sit quandoq; clara, quandoque turbida, nunc viridis, & nunc rubra. Certum est autem tempore Apostolorũ, cum Samaria recepisset verbum Dei, illos fuisse conuersos, & baptizatos, in nomine Domini

Nota.

Iesu,

Ieſu,& tamen poſtea per quendam Caliphorum peruerſos,Ogerus dux Danorum per Templariorũ virtutem rurſum ſubiugauit Chriſtianitati:ſicq; poſt plures euentus,& variationes,illi qui nũc ſunt Samaritę,finxerunt ſibi hæreſim propriam,& ritũ ab omnibus nationibus ſingularem. Ogerus Dux Danus.

Fatentur autem ſe credere in Deum,qui cuncta creauit: recipiuntque pentateucum ſcripturæ,cum Pſalterio Dauidis, acerrimè contendentes,ſe ſolos dilectiſſimos Dei filios: qui etiam pro nobili differentia inuoluunt capita linteo rubeo, Saraceni autem albo,Indi croceo,& Chriſtiani ibi manentes Indico,hoc eſt,aereo,ſeu hiacynthino. Tegumenti capitis differentia.

Porro à Nazareth quatuor leucis, eſt ciuitas olim dicta Naym, in 2.miliario Thabor montis contra Meridiem iuxta Endor. Ieronimus. Ante cuius portam reſuſcitauit Chriſtus defunctum filium vnicum matris ſuæ,præſentibus duabus turmis hominum copioſorum. Hinc quoque ad leucas duas,eſt ciuitas Iſrael, vbi olim morabatur peſſima regina Iezabel, quam Dei iudicio equorum vngulis conculcatam,canes ferè vſque ad caluariam comederunt.

CAPVT. 20.

De territorio Galileæ,& Samariæ,& de villa Sardenay.

ITem à Nazareth ad leucæ dimidium, monſtrantur in rupe veſtigia pedum,quæ dicuntur eſſe Domini noſtri Ieſu Chriſti vbi de manibus Iudæorum, ipſum de alta rupe præcipitare volentium deſiluit in iſtam. De quo ſaltu quidam intelligunt illud ſcriptum Euangelicum,Ieſus autem tranſiens per medium illorum ibat.

Ad quatuor autem leucas de Nazareth,eſt Cana Galileæ, vbi Chriſtus ad vrbanas matris preces,mutauit vndam in vinum optimum.

Ad diſtantiam quatuor leucarum à Nazareth,venitur in Thabor,montẽ ſpectabilẽ,vbi tranſfigurabatur Chriſtus, coram quibuſdam ſuis Apoſtolis, apparentibus ibidem, Moſe, & Helia, prophetis,voceq; dilapſa à magnifica Patris gloria, & videbatur Petro bonum ibi eſſe: quondam in hoc monte habebatur ciuitas, cum pluribus Eccleſijs, quarum nunc ſola reſtant veſtigia,excepto quod ille locus tranſſigurationis eſt inhabitatus, qui eſt Schola Dei nominatus. Notandum, Thabor eſt in medio Galileæ,campus mira iucunditate ſublimis, diſtans à "Diotesaria 3. milliaribus contra Orientem. Mons Thabor obſeruetur.

Item de Nazareth in tres leucas eſt villa, ſeu caſtrum Zaffara, de quo recolo me ſupradixiſſe capitè 4. Et inde venitur in Mare Galileæ,quod quamuis dicatur mare,eſt lacus aquæ dulcis longus.

Vltra centum 60.forſitan ſtadia eſt lacus,bonorum piſcium ferax & vber, qui etiam in alio loco ſui vocatur mare Tyberiadis,& in alio mare Genezareth, varians ſibi nomen,ſecundum ciuitates,& terras propinquas. Circa hoc mare Chriſtus frequentèr,& libentèr ambulaſſe videtur: hic vocauit ad ſui diſcipulatum, Petrũ,& Andream,Iacobum,& Ioannem: hic ſuper vndã ſiccis ambulabat veſtigijs, & præcipitem Petrũ filiũ tentantem, verbo increpationis releuat ne mergatur, hîc denique rediuiuus à morte repleuit diſcipulorum rete magnis piſcibus 153. Mare Tyberiadis.

Item in ciuitate Tiberiade,quæ eſt propè hoc mare habetur in veneratione menſa illius cœnæ, quam in Emaus caſtello Chriſtus cænauit, cum ab oculis commenſalium euanuit. Hic de propè monſtratur mons ille fertilis,mons ille pinguis, in quo de paucis panibus,& de pauciorib piſcibus iuſsu Chriſti fuerunt ſaturati, quinque milla hominum.

Ad initium autem prædicti maris iuxta villam Capernaum habetur fortius caſtrum totius terræ promiſſionis,in quo dicitur nata fuiſſe ſancta Anna mater virginis Mariæ.

Prædictis itaq; Chriſti veſtigijs,& terræ ſanctę locis à peregrino cum deuotione cordis & reuerentia debita viſitatis, ſi deſiderat reuerti, poſſit illud facere per Damaſcum, quæ eſt ciuitas longa,nobilis,& grandis,ac plena omnium rerum mercimonijs, cum tamen diſſat à portu maris tribus plenè dietis, per quod ſpacium itineris, cuncta traijciuntur à ſuis equis Dromedarijs, & Camelis: & putatur à pleriſque narrantibus fundata in loco vbi Cain protoplaſtorum filius Abel fratrem ſuum occidit. Damaſcus.

A Damaſco de propinquo eſt mons Seyr, ciuitas grandis firmata duplicibus muris ac populoſa nimis,in qua ſunt multi in arte Phyſica famoſi profeſſi. Item à Damaſco haud remotè diſtat caſtrum ſatis munitum,& firmum,quod Derces eſt nominatum. Habent autem in illis,& vlterioribus partibus hunc vſum: ſi quando caſtrum ab hoſtibus fuerit ſic obſeſſum, quòd Dominus eius non poſſit emittere nuncium amico ſuo remotè moranti, recipit columbam olim in caſtro, vel domo amici natam,vel educatam, quam hic ſibi per certam prouiſionem allatam detinuit incaueatam,& ſcriptas quas vult literas alligans collo columbæ, dimittit liberam volare, quæ protinus feſtinat ad locum propriæ natiuitatis. Sicque videtur cognoſci in illo caſtro quid agatur in iſto.

Cęterum peregrinus à Damaſco reuertendo, in quinque leucis venit Sardenay,quæ eſt villa

Villa Sardenay.

in alta rupe, cum multis Ecclesijs religiosorum Monachorum, & sanctarũ monialiũ fidei Christianæ. In quarum vna coram maiori altari in tabula lignea erat olim imago beatissimę virginis Marię non sculpta sed depicta in plano spacio. Ex hoc reditur per valles Bokar fertiles, & pro pascendis pecorum gregibus exuberantes: & intratur in montana vbi copiositas est fontium qui efluunt impetu de Libano. Ibique decurrit fluuius Sabbatayr, sic dictus quod diebus Sabbatis euidenter rapidius transit, quàm alijs sex diebus.

Peruenitur hinc ad satis altum montem, propè Tripolim ciuitatem, in qua ad præsens plures Christiani Catholicæ fidei habitant iugo infideliũ nimis oppressi. Ex hoc loco sibi deliberet peregrinus, quem sibi maris portũ accipiat ad repatriandũ, videlicet Beruth, an Sur vel Tyrũ.

Sur, vel Tyrus.

Postremò sciendum, quod terra promissionis in totali longitudine sui à Dan qui est sub Libano vsq; ad Berseba in Austrum continet circiter centum, & 80. leucas Lombardicas, & ab Hierico in totali latitudine circiter 60. Notandum, Dan est viculus in quarto à Penneade Miliario euntibus, contra Septentrionem: vsque hodiè sic vocatur terminus Iudeæ, contra Septentrionem: est etiam & fons Ior, de quo & Iordanis fluuius erumpens alterũ sortitus nomen Ior. Termini Iudeæ terræ à Bersabe incipiunt vsque ad Dan, qui vsque Peneaden terminatur, Ieronimus.

CAPVT. 21.

De secta detestabili Saracenorum, & eorum fide.

Diligentia Mandeuilli.

IAm restat vt de secta Saracenorũ aliquid scribam vel compendiosè, secundum quòd cum ijs frequenter cõlloquendo audiui, & liber Mahometi, quem Alcaron, vel Mesahaf, vel Harmè vocant, ijs præcipit, sicut illum sæpè inspexi, & studiosè perlegi.

Fides Saracenorum.

Credunt itaq; Saraceni in Deũ creatorem cœli & terræ qui fecit omnia in ijs contenta, & sine quo nihil est factum. Et expectant diem nouissimum iudicij, in quo mali cum corpore & anima descensuri sunt in infernũ perpetuò cruciandi, & boni equidem cum anima & corporè intraturi Paradisum fœlicitatis æternæ. Et hęc quidẽ fides pœnè inest omniũ mortaliũ nationibus, lingua & ratione vtentibus. Verumtamèn de qualitate Paradisi est magna diuersitas inter credentes.

Nam & Saraceni & Pagani, & omnes sectæ præter Iudæos & baptizatos Christianos sentiunt bonorum Paradisum fore terrestrem illum de quo fuit expulsus Adam propter inobedientiam protoplaustus: qui (vt putant) fluit, vel tunc fluet pluribus riuis lactis & mellis, & vbi in domibus & mansionibus nobiliter iuxta meritum vniuscuiusq; ædificatur auro, & argento & gemmis, perfruentur omnibus corporalibus delicijs, in oblectatione animę æternaliter sine fine. Illi ergò qui fide sanctæ Trinitatis carent, & Christum qui est vera lux ignorant, in tenebris ambulant. Iudęi verò & omnes baptizati rectè sentiunt Paradisum cœlestem & spiritualem, vbi quilibet secundum meritum Diuinitati vnietur, per cognitionem, & amorem. Attamen Iudæi quod contra Scripturas suas sanctæ Trinitati contradicunt, & Christo obloquuntur, qui est vera via, nesciunt quo vadunt. De baptizatis autẽ, qui firmitèr fidẽ Catholicam in humilitate cordis sub Ecclesię præceptis seruauerunt, hi soli filij sunt lucis, & in via veniendi ad cœlestẽ Pardisum quẽ Christus verbo prędicauit, & ad quẽ corpore & anima, videntibus discipulis, de facto cõscendit.

Credunt etiam Saraceni, omnia esse vera, quę Deus ore prophetarum est locutus, sed in diuersitate, quia nesciunt specificari, imò specificanti contradicerent defacili, vel negarent. Inter omnes prophetas ponunt quatuor excellentiores, quorum supremum & excellentissimũ fatentur Iesum Mariæ Virginis filiũ, quem & asserunt, sermonẽ, vel loquelam, vel spiritũ Dei, & pronunciatorẽ sententiarũ Dei, in iudicio generali futuro, & missũ à Deo ad Christianos docendos.

Secundo loco Abrahamum dicunt fuisse verum Dei cultorem, & amicum.

Tertium dant Mosi locum tanquam prolocutori Dei Misso specialiter, ad instruendos Iudęos.

Quartum volunt esse Mahomet, sanctum, & verum Dei nuncium ad seipsos missum, cum lege diuina in dicto libro plene contenta. Tenent itaq; indubitatè, quod beata Maria Iesum peperit, & cõcepit virgo manens intacta, ac libẽtèr loqui audiunt de incarnatione in ipsa facta per annunciationem Gabrielis Archangeli. Nam & Alcharõ eorum dicit, ad salutationem Angeli virginem expauisse, quòd tunc erat in partibus Galileæ incantator, Turquis nomine, qui per susceptam sibiformam Angeli plures virgines defloraverat, & beatam Virginem conueniisse Angelum, an esset Turquis. Refert quoq; eam peperisse sub palma Arbore, vbi habebatur præsepe bouis, & asinæ, & illic præ confusione puerperij, & verecundia ac dolore, fuisse in proximò desperatam, & infantulum in consolationem matris dixisse, mater ne timeas, Deus in te effudit secreta ad saluationem Mundi. Hæc & his similia multa ibi scribuntur figmenta, & isti plura inter se narrando componunt, quę hoc loco ventilanda non sunt.

Et dicit liber Iesum sanctissimum omnium Prophetarum fuisse veracem in dictis & factis, benignum, pium, iustum, & ab omni vitio penitus alienum: Sanctum quoque Ioannem Euangelistam post prædictos Prophetas fuisse alijs Sanctiorem, cuius & Euangelium fatentur

tur eſſe plenum ſalutari, ac veraci doctrina, & ipſum Sanctum Ioannem illuminaſſe cæcos, leproſos mundaſſe, ſuſcitaſſe mortuos, & in cælum volaſſe viuentem. Erat enim (prout dicit) plus quàm Propheta, & abſque omni peccato, contradicente eodem de ſeipſo, ſi dixerimus quòd peccatum non habemus, veritas in nobis non eſt: vnde & ſi quando Sarraceni tenent ſcriptum Euangelij Sancti Ioannis, aut illud beati Lucæ, miſſus eſt Angelus Gabriel, eleuant ambabus manibus pro reuerentia ſuper caput & ſuper oculos id ponentes, & oſculantur quàm ſæpè cum ſumma deuotione. Nonnulli etiam eorum in Græco, aut Latino literati conſueueuerunt cum deuotione cordis id lectitare.

Idem liber dicit Iudæos perfidos fuiſſe, quòd Ieſu eis primùm miſſo à Deo, & multa miracula facienti credere noluerunt, quódque per ipſum tota gens Iudæorum fuit dignè decepta, & meritò illuſa hoc modo. Ieſus in hora dum Iudas eum pro ſigno traditionis oſculabatur, poſuit per Metamorphoſin figuram ſuam, in ipſum Iudam, ſicque Iudæi in ambiguo lumine nocturni temporis, pro Ieſu Iudam capientes, ligantes, trahentes, deridentes, in fine crucifixerunt, putantes ſe omnia facere Ieſu, qui protinus capto & ligato Iuda, viuus aſcendit in cælum, deſcenſurus iterum viuus ad iudicium in die finali.

Et addit, Iudæos falſiſſimè vſque hodie nos Chriſtianos ſuo mendacio decipere, quo dicunt ſe Ieſu crucifixiſſe, quem non tetegerunt. Hinc errorem tenent Sarraceni obſtinati: & quoddam argumentum inire conantur. Nam ſi Deus (aiunt) permiſiſſet Ieſum, innocentem, & iuſtum ita miſerabiliter occidi, cenſuram ſuæ ſummæ iuſtitiæ minuiſſet. Sed cùm ipſi, vt ſupradictum eſt, in tenebris ambulant, idcircò ignorantes Dei iuſtitiam, ſtatuere volunt iuſtitiam, imò iniuſtitiam quam fabricant in corde ſuo, quia nos de cruce Chriſti ſcriptum nouimus, benedictum eſt lignum per quod ſit iuſtitia. Iſti tamen quod in aliquibus appropinquant veræ fidei, multi quandoque eorum inuenti ſunt conuerſi, & plures adhuc de facili conuerterentur, ſi haberent prædicatores, ſincerè eis verbum tractantes, quippe cùm iam fateantur legem Mahometi quandoque defecturam, ſicut nunc perijt lex Iudæorum, & legem Chriſtianorum vſque in finem ſeculi permanſuram.

Conuerſio Saracenorum non deſperanda.

CAPVT 22.

De vita, & nomine Mahometi.

PRomiſi in ſuperioribus aliquid narrare de vita Mahometi legiſlatoris Sarracenorum, prout vidi in ſcriptis, vel audiui in partibus illis. Itaque Macho, ſiue Machon, vtrum in ſecunda ſyllaba ſcribatur N, litera, vel non idem refert: & ſi tertia ſyllaba addatur, & dicatur Machomet, vel etiam quarta, Machometus, nihil differt, quòd ſemper idem nomen repreſentat. Ipſi tamen illum ſæpius nominant Machon. Putatur autem iſtum Mahomet habuiſſe generationis ortum de Iſmael Abrahæ filio naturali de concubina Agar, vnde & vſque hodie quidam Sarracenorum dicuntur Iſmaelitæ, alij Agareni: ſed & quidam Moabitæ, & Ammonitæ, à duobus Loth filijs Moab & Amon, genitis per inceſtum de proprijs filiabus.

Hic verò Machon, circa annum incarnationis Domini ſexcenteſimum natus, in Arabia pauper erat gratis paſcens camelos, & interdum ſequens Mercatores in Aegyptum fordellos illorum proprio collo deferens pro mercede. Et quoniam tunc temporis tota Aegyptus erat Chriſtianæ fidei, didicit aliquid de fide noſtra, quòd diuertere ſolebat ad cellulam Heremitæ commorantis in deſerto. Et quodammodo fabulantur Sarraceni, quod illo quandoque ingrediente cellulam, cellulæ oſtium mutatum in ianuam valdè patentem, velut ante palatium, & gloriantur hoc primum miraculum. Qui ex tunc conquerendo ſibi pecunias, & diſcendo ſeculi actus dies eſt effectus, & prudens ab omnibus reputatus, in tantum, vt poſtmodum in terræ gubernatorem Corrozaen, (quæ eſt vna prouinciarum regni Arabiæ) aſſumeretur, ac deinde defuncto principe Codige per coniugium illius relictæ in eiuſdem prouinciæ principem eleuaretur. Erat autem ſatis formoſus, & valens, & vltra modum in verbis & factis maturus, & principalis, & ſatis diligebatur à ſuis, magis tamen metuebatur, & erat epilepticus, nemine tamen ſciente. Sed tandem ab vxore comperto contriſtabatur, ſe tali morbido nuptam, qui verſutus fefellit, & conſolabatur mœſtam figmento mendacij excogitati, dicens ſanctum Dei Archangelum Gabrielem ad colloquendum & inſpirandum ſibi, quædam arcana & diuina interdum venire, & pro virtute aut claritate veniente ſe ſubitò cadere & iacere ad intendendum inſpirationem.

Tempus Natiuitatis Mahometi.

Fabulæ Saracenorum.

Poſt hoc autem, mortuo etiam Rege Arabiæ, tanta egit per ſimulationem ſanctitatis, per donorum effuſionem, & copiam promiſsionum, quod electus eſt & aſſumptus, in totius Arabiæ Regem.

Incrementum authoritatis Mahometi.

Confirmato igitur Mahometo in regnationis ſuæ maieſtate ſuprema, tranſactis à conceptione Domini noſtri Ieſu Chriſti annis ſolaribus 612. in die Iouis feria quinta Hebdomadæ promulga-

Tempus promulgationis Alcharani.

mulgauit præfatum detestandæ legis suæ librum, plenum perfidiæ & erroris,& à subditis tempore vitæ suæ seruari coegit,qui & vsque hodie in tanto æuo, & tot populis non sine iusto Dei iudicio colitur & seruatur, quamuis miserabile, & miserandum videtur, quòd tot animæ in illo perduntur.Erat quoque tempore regni eius,& alius Heremita in deserto Arabiæ, quem etiam quasi pro deuotione frequentare solebat, ducens secum aliquos de principibus & familia.Super quo plures eorum attendiati tractabant occidere Heremitam.Accidit tandem vna noctium, vt rex Heremitam & seipsum inebriaret, & inter loquendum ambo consopiti dormirent.Et ecce habita occasione comites gladio de latere Regis clàm extracto Heremitam interfecerunt, iterum clàm condentes cruentum gladium in vagina : ac ille euigilans virum videns occisum, magno furore succensus imposuit familiæ factum, volens omnes per iustitiam condemnari ad mortem.Cúmque coram iudicibus & sapientibus ageretur, hi omnes pari concordia,simili voce,& vno ore testabantur tam diuisim quàm coniunctim, Regem in ebrietate sua hominem occidisse,quamuis fortasis esset facti oblitus. Et in plenariam rei probationem,dixerunt ipsum reposuisse mucronem in loculo nudum intersum, sed calido cruore madentem. Quo ita inuento, ac tantis rex obrutus testificationibus, nimiùm erubuit,plenè obmutuit,& confusus recesit. Et ob hoc omnibus diebus suis vina bibere renunciauit : & in lege sua à cunctis bibi vetuit,ac vniuersis bibẽtibus,colentibus,& vendentibus maledixit.Cuius maledictio cõuertatur in caput eius,& in verticẽ ipsius iniquitas eius descẽdat,cùm de vino scriptum cõstet,quòd Deum & homines lętificet.Igitur de eo Sarraceni in sua superstitione deuoti vinum non bibunt,quanquam plures eorum quòd timent in publico non verentur in secreto.

Occasio vina interdicendi Sarracenis.

Est autem communis potus eorum dulcis,delectabilis, & nutritiuus de Casaniel confectus, de qua & Saccarum fieri solet.

Potus Sarracenorum.

Mahometus iste post mortem suam pessimam (mors enim peccatorum pesima) conditus fuit honorificè in capsa,ditissimo auro,& argento,& saxis perornata in vna ciuitate regni sui Arabiæ,vbi & pro sancto,& vero Dei nuncio incepit deuotè coli à suis per annos ducentos sexaginta,atque ex tunc circa annum Domini nongentisimum cum veneratione multa cadauer eius translatum est, in digniorem ciuitatem dictam Merchuel Iachrib, vbi iam longè latéque pro maximo sanctorum, à cordibus à diabolica fraude deceptis colitur,requiritur & adoratur.

Aliàs Mecca.

In ipsius translatione ipsa ciuitas restaurabatur,& firmabatur multò honorificentiùs,& fortiùs destructione sua,quæ per Carolum magnum Regem Francię anteà fuit plenè annihilata, dũ Ogerus dux Danorum præfatus in ea tenebatur captiuus,quem Templarij ad filios Brehir Regis Sarracenorum cum traditione vendiderant, eò quòd ipse Ogerus dictum Brehir in prœlio occiderat,iuxta Lugdunum Franciæ ciuitatem. Et si quando nationis alterius quis ad legem conuertitur Sarracenorum,dum à flamine eorum recipiendus est,dicit & facit eum Dei nuncium,& repetit sic : *Lacllech ella alla Mahomet zoyzel alla beth :* quod valet tantum: Non est Deus nisi vnus,& Mahomet fuit eius nuncius.

Ogerus a Templariis proditus.

Caput 23. *De colloquio Authoris cum Soldano.*

Finaliter Sarraceni ponunt Iudæos malos,eò quòd legem Dei violauerunt sibi missam,& cõmissam per Mosem.Et à simili probant Christianos malos,quòd non seruant legẽ Euãgelij Christi,quam seruandam susceperint.Inest enim ijs falsa persuasio ita vt putent vnũquemq; in ea qua natus est secta posse beari,si susceptam seruauerit illibatè : ideóq; probant ab opposito se esse bonos,quia,sicut dicunt, obseruant scripta legis præcepta & ceremonias sancti libri sui à Deo sibi transmissi per beatũ nunciũ suũ Mahomet.Vnde & ego non tacebo quid mihi cõtigit.

Error eorum qui putant vnumquemque in sua religione posse beari.

Dominus Soldanus quodam die in castro,expulsis omnibus de camera sua,me solùm retinuit secum tanquam pro secreto habẽdo colloquio.Consuetũ enim est ijs eijcere omnes tẽpore secretorum: qui diligenter à me intetrogauit qualis esset gubernatio vitæ in terra nostra,breuiter respondebã,bona,per Dei gratiam,qui recepto hoc verbo dixit ita non esse.*Sacerdotes*(inquit) *vestri,qui seipsos exhibere deberent alijs in exemplũ,in malis iacent actibus, parùm curant de Templi seruitio:habitu & studijs se conformant mundo: se inebriant vino,continentiã infringentes,cum fraude negotiantes,ac prana principibus consilia ingerentes.Cõmunis quoq; populus,dum festis diebus intẽdere deberent deuotioni in templo,currit in hortis,in spectaculis,in tabernis vsq; ad crapulam,& ebrietatem,& pinguia manducans & bibens, ac in bestiarum morem,luxuriam pranam exercens. Inusura, dolo, rapina, furto, detractione, mendacio & periurio viuunt plures eorum euidenter, ac si qui talia non agant, vt fatui reputantur, & pro nimia cordis superbia nesciunt ad libitum excogitare,qualiter se velint habere,mutando sibi indumenta, nunc longa,nunc curta nimis,quandoq; ampla,quandoq; stricta vltra modum,vt in his singulis appareant deriſi potius quàm vestiti: pileos quoque, calceos,caligas,corrigias sibi fabricant exquisitas,cum etiam è contra deberent secundùm Christi sui doctrinam simplices,Deo deuoti,humiles,veraces,inuicem diligentes,inuicẽ concordantes,& iniuriam*

Colloquium Soldani cum Mandeuillo.

Reprehensio Sacerdotum.

Reprehensio vulgi iustissima.

Vestimentorum varietas reprehensa.

de

de facili remittentes. Scimus etiam eos propter peccata ſua perdidiſſe hanc terr am optimam quam tenemus, nec timemus eam amittere, quamdiu ſe taliter gubernant. Attamen non dubitamus, quin in futurum per meliorem vitæ conuerſationem merebuntur de noſtris eam manibus recuperare.

Ad hoc ego vltra confuſus & ſtupefactus, nequiui inuenire reſponſum; verebar enim obloqui veritati, quamuis ab Infidelis ore prolatæ, & vultu præ rubore demiſſo percunctatus ſum, Domine, ſalua reuerentia, qualiter poteſtis ita plenè hoc noſcere? De hominibus (ait) meis interdum mitto ad modum Mercatorũ per terras, & regiones Chriſtianorũ, cum Balſamo, gemmis, ſericis, ac aromatibus, ac per illos ſingula exploro, tam de ſtatu Imperatoris, ac Põtificum, Principum, ac Sacerdotum, quàm Prælatorum, nec non æquora, prouincias, ac diſtinctiones earum.

Igitur peracta collocutione noſtra ſatis producta, egreſſos principes in cameram reuocauit, ex quibus quatuor de maioribus iuxta nos aduocans, fecit eos expreſſè ac debitè, per ſingulas diuiſiones in lingua Gallicana deſtinguere per partes, & ſingularum nomina partium, omnem regionem terræ Angliæ, ac alias Chriſtianorum terras multas, acſi inter noſtros fuiſſent nati, vel multo tempore conuerſati.

Nam & ipſum Soldanum audiui cum ijs bene & directè loquentem idioma Francorum. Itaque in omnibus his mente conſternatus obmutui, cogitans, & dolens de peccatis ſingulis, rem taliter ſe habere.

Nunc piè igitur (rogo) conſideremus, & corde attendamus, quantæ ſit confuſionis, & qualis opprobrij, dum Chriſtiani nominis inimici nobis noſtra exprobrant crimina. Et ſtudeat quilibet in melius emendare, quatenus (Deo propitio) poſſit in breui tempore, hæc de qua loquimur, terra Deo delecta, hæc ſacroſancta terra, hæc filijs Dei promiſſa, nobis Dei adoptiuis reſtituì: vel certè, quod magis exorandum eſt, ipſi Sarraceni ad fidem Catholicam, & Chriſtianam obedientiam, Eccleſiæ filijs aggregari, vt ſimul omnes per Dominum noſtrum Ieſum Chriſtum conſubſtantialem Dei filium perueniamus ad cæleſtem Paradiſum.

Infignis Mandeuilli peroratio.

Explicit prima pars huius operis.

Secunda pars.

CAPVT. 24.

Perſuaſio ad non credentes terrarum diuerſitates per orbem terræ.

MIrabilis Deus mirabililia propter ſemetipſum creauit, vt ſcilicet ab intellectualibus creaturis ſuis intelligeretur, & per hoc diligeretur, atque in hoc ipſe creator, & creatura ſe mutuò fruerentur. Mirabilis eſt ergo Deus maximè in illo, quòd ipſe ſolus ſufficit ſibi: & mirabilis in altis Dominus, hoc eſt, in cælo & in cæleſtibus: ſed & mirabilis in terris, & in terreſtribus: tamen ſi verum iudicauerimus, nihil eſt mirabile, quod mirũ videri non debet, ſi ille qui omnipotens eſt, fecit quæcunque voluit in cælo & in terra. Sed ecce dum nobis contingit videre rem quam priùs non vidimus, miratur noſter animus, non quòd ſimpliciter mirum eſt, ſed quod nobis id mirum & nouum. Deus vnus, ſimplex quidem eſt, vt creaturæ cæleſtes quò Deo magis de propinquo ſunt eò ſimpliciores exiſtunt. Terreſtres autem quòd in ſitu remotiori ſint, idcircò magis diuerſæ, magis contrariæ inter ſe ſunt.

Ergo quicunque ſapiens eſt non ſtupet animo, dum in terrenis reſpicit res varias, & diuerſas, vel dum diuerſa contingunt, ſeu inueniuntur in partibus terræ diuerſis: ſed qui intellectum ſuper ſenſum non eleuant, & magis credunt oculo ſuo corporeo, quàm ſpirituali, & qui nunquam à natiuitatis ſuę loco receſſerunt, iſti vix volunt credere, ſeu poſſunt alijs vera narrantibus de mundi diuerſitatibus.

Reprehenſio incredulorũ, qui nihil credunt, niſi quod domi viderint.

Attamen tales, ſi vellent, de facili videre poſſint ſuum errorem. Quia quicunque natus in vna ciuitate, vel patria, ſi tantummodò moueat ſe ad proximam ciuitatem, inueniet ibi procul dubio aliquam differentiam, vel diuerſitatem in idiomate linguæ, vel in modo loquendi, in moribus hominum, in occupationibus, in legibus, in conſuetudinibus, vel etiam in agrorum fructibus, in arborum frugibus, ſeu in his quæ gignuntur in terra, in aere, & in aquis.

Si ergo aliqualiter inueniri poſsit differentia in proximo, quantò maior ſit diſtantia, tantò maior differentia æſtimanda eſt in remoto, vel in remotiori, ſeu remotiſsimo loco. Vnde ego, quia in præcedente parte tractatus narrare cœpi aliqua, quæ in his, & in peregrinatione mea vſque in terram promiſsionis ſanctam vidi, de quibus etiam poteſt, & poterit conſtare multis, qui

qui in partibus nostris eadem peregrinatione me præcesserunt, & secuti sunt, procedam in describendo aliqua illorum, quæ vidi & percepi in deambulatione mea, qua per graui multas alias terras, & perlegi multas vndas, vsque in multorum hoc tempus annorum, & propter insipientes, & discredentes non tacebo. Sed nec propter credentes nec sapientes satis mouebor; tamen vt diuersa Dei opera qui respicere non possunt oculo, saltem legant, vel audiant ex hoc scripto. Pauca vtique vidi horum quæ sunt, sed pauca horum quæ vidi, narrabo.

CAPVT. 25. *De Armenia, Persia, & Amazonia.*

DE regionibus quæ Iudeæ contiguantur, scilicet Arabia, Aegypto & Syria, statui modicum vltra narrare, relinquens hunc locum narrandi alijs peregrinis. Et festinans ad terras remotiores, Armeniam minorem, non per singulas ciuitates, sed celeriter transiens, vidi à remotis amplum castrum vocatum Del espoyer, de quo mihi sustinui dici, quod sit vastum, & à nemine habitatum, nisi à fantastica quadam Domina, seruante in medio maioris aulæ super perticam, volucrem rapacem, quæ dicitur Latinè accipiter, vel huiusmodi: quam auem, si aliquis hominum ingrediens se custodire peruigil absq; vlla somnolentia per septem continuos dies & noctes posset, ipsa Domina in fine facti apparens concederet illi quantamcunque faceret petitionem terræ, commodi, vel honoris, sed si obdormiret, periret. Huic tamen dicto parùm curaui accommodare aurem, nisi quòd communiter dicebatur, in bene transacto tempore prædicta fuisse tentata per duas personas, vnum Regem, & alterum Pastorem. Et Regi quidem quod indebitam fecit petitionem, vile successit negotium, pastori peroptimè successit negotium.

Mandeuillus nihili facit has fabulas.

In Armenia maiori, est magna & bona ciuitas Artyron ad dietam propè fluuium Euphratem. Et sunt ibi duo montes euecti valdè, vnus Sabissatele, alter Ararath, quorum vltimus habet per anfractus, & periodos per ascẽsum viæ, ferè 7. leucas, & quasi omni tẽpore est plenus niue.

Artyron ciuitas.
Sabisatelle.
Ararath.

In illo loco fertur quieuisse Arca diluuij, cuius vnicus asser mõstratur, in Ecclesia Monachorũ ad montis pedẽ habitantiũ: attamẽ nullus hominũ pro frigore nimio attẽtare præsumit ascensũ.

Est autem & ibi ciuitas Landania, de qua nonnulli dicunt quòd Noe illam fundauerat, & ciuitas magna Hany, in qua, tempore Christianorum mille habebantur Ecclesiæ.

Landania.
Hany magna ciuitas.

In illa Armenia sub Imperio Persiæ est famosa ciuitas Tauris, vbi de mercimonijs ponderalibus fit inestimabilis mercatura. Hinc ad decem dietas ad Orientem habetur ciuitas Zadona, in ea Imperator Persarum moratur, & est in eodem imperio ciuitas valdè magna Cassach, quæ recto itinere dicitur stare ab Hierosolymis 55. dietis. Geth ciuitas imperialis, & melior totius Persiæ in hâcterra noscitur esse, cùm tamen Carnaa sit satis maior.

Tauriza ciuitas famosa.
Zadone ciuitas.
Cassach.
Geth.
Carnaa.

Circa fines Persiæ in terra "Sennaar, est illa quæ olim dicebatur Babylonia, nec apparet ibi aliquid, quàm ruinæ grandis & vetustæ ciuitatis, quæ ab hominibus est deserta, sed à Draconibus inhabitata, & alijs animalibus, & volucribus venenosis. Hanc terram tenet Imperator Persarum, vt suprà dixi. Etiam intra fines Persiæ, est terra, vbi sanctus Iob patiens morabatur, quæ modò dicitur terra Sues, in cuius montanis inuenitur Manna, quod venditur in Apothecis. Huic terræ Sues contiguatur Chaldæa, quæ non est magna, quamuis nobilis regio habeatur. Et ab ista intratur Amazonia.

"Vel Sinar.
Ruinæ antiquæ Babyloniæ.
Manna Apothecariorum
Chaldæa.

Amazonia est modica insula, quam absque viris solæ regunt & inhabitant mulieres: cuius rei prima causa hæc fuit.

Amazonia insula.

Olim cum insula communiter à viris, & mulieribus habitabatur, Rex eius dictus Colopius cum omnibus nobilibus suis in bello contra Regnum Scithiæ occisus fuit. Audientes igitur nobilium vxores ipsius insulæ se viduatas, super his, in doloroso furore animi ad plures congressiones occiderũt & fugauerunt omnes aliarum mulierum maritos, ne scilicet sua ingenuitas subiaceret voluntati, & potestati plebis. Et tandem post reformatam inter se pacem mulieres inito consilio statuerunt se solas absque viris dominari in terra, atque ex tunc sumi sibi regimen per certam electionis formam, quæ robusta, agilis, sapiens, iuuenis, ac valens apparet in armis.

Sciendũ tamen est, extra hanc insulam flumen esse, & alias modicas insulas, quarũ vna dicitur Carmagite, de quibus licitum est ijs accersire viros, & amasios bis in anno, ita vt nulla moram trahat septem dierum naturaliũ sub pœna indubitata occisionis. Infantem masculũ nutrire licet quoadusq; per se comedat & gradiatur, tunc transmittendus est in domũ paternam. Generosæ natæ puellæ aufertur ignito cultro vber sinistrum pro scuto gerendo, degeneri dextrum, ad sagittandum de arcu Turco.

Regina cum consiliaribus & officialibus suis regit sapientèr & benè terram, & seruat omnes sibi sub districta obedientia, per leges, & pœnas, & amendas conscriptas. Et cùm circumiacentium insularum Reges contra se ad inuicem prœliari solent, tunc Regina Amazoniæ cum suis Nobilibus ab vna parte pro magno stipendio vocari solet in adiutoriũ, vbi & inuẽtæ sunt sapiẽtes in consilijs, probæ in armis, acres in conflictibus, & in omnibus Curiæ actibus bene valẽtes.

CAP.

Caput 26.

De Aethiopia, & Diamantibus, & de infima India.

Aethiopia consistit à terra Chaldæorum in Austrum, quæ distinguitur in Orientalem Aethiopiam, & Meridionalem, quarum prima in illis partibus vocatur Cush, propter hominum nigredinem, altera Mauritania. Et est ibi Regnum Saba, de quo legitur, quod Regi Salomoni Reges Arabum, & Saba, dona & tributa adduxerunt. Eóque Regina Saba venit à finibus, hoc est, à longinquis terræ partibus audire sapientiam Salomonis. Omnes in Aethiopia aquę in fluuijs & riparijs, & fontibus sapiunt Sal, propter nimium calorem. Est ibi vnus aquæ fons ita de nocte calidus, vt nemo in eo sustineat manum, & ita de die frigidus, vt bibi vix possit.

Mauritania.

Regnum Saba

Plinius.

Generaliter isti de Mauritania Aethiopes comedunt parùm, de facili inebriantur, fluxum ventris patiuntur, nec diu viuunt.

De Aethiopia intratur in Indiam mediam, nam triplex est, videlicet infima, quæ in quibusdam suis partibus est nimis frigida ad inhabitandum: Media quæ satis temperata est, & superior, quæ nimis calida. In India infima propter continuum & graue frigus generatur christallum de aqua per gelu, sicut quidam asserunt. Sed certum est ibi haberi rupes christalli, & in illis gigni optimos Diamantes, quos lingua illius vocant Hamesht.

India triplex.

Diamantes.

Est autem diamas paruus præciosus lapis, magnæ virtutis, sicut plenius describitur in lapidariis. Quidam inueniuntur in magnitudine pisi, vel etiam piso minores: alii ad quantitatem fabæ, sed nullus maior auellana, vel nuce. Et dicitur de eo in partibus illis, quod si hic qui portat sit continens, & sobrius reddit illum magnanimum & audacem, & iuuat in causis iustis certantem, conseruat substantias corporales, aufert praua somnia, depellit prauorum spirituum illusiones, sortilegia, & incantationes, ac valet contra lunaticam passionem, & dæmonis obsessionem, & venenosum quod illi appropinquauerit exsudat, & exhumescit.

Optimi Diamantes de India assimulantur in colore multùm christallo, sed sunt aliquantulum magis citrini, & pro sui duritie poliri non possunt. Inueniuntur autem ibi nonnulli subnigri ad colorem violę: Alii nascuntur in Arabia nigri, & tenuiores prædictis, alii in Macedonia, & quidam in Cypro, sed in mineriis auri, dum prima massa in minutias confringitur, interdum reperiuntur. Sciendum enim est, sæpè plures simul crescere, nec non generant, & concipiunt inuicem de rore cæli, quemadmodum & Margaritæ: quod ego pluries tentans, accepi de rupe cespitem cum diamante masculo, & femella, plantans in pratello, & frequentans, focillans madefeci de rore Maii. Et ecce in breui, paruulus ex iis gignebatur, nascebatur, & adolescebat ad debitam quantitatem: fiunt verò omnes per naturam cum pluribus angulis vt trium vel quatuor, aut quinque laterum, & nonnulli cum lateribus senis. E contra, omnes margaritæ nascuntur in forma sphærica, seu rotunda.

Experientia Mandeuilli in diamantibus.

Et notandum quòd mercatores, pro diamantibus, frequenter aliud vendunt: Nam solet commixtio fieri de christallo Crechee, de Saphiro, de Lonpes Citrino, de lapide Yri, & de paruis petris ex murium nidis. Probatio veri diamantis haberi potest his modis.

Diamantum sophisticatio.

Probatio veri diamantis.

Primò, si ita inuenitur tener, vt se poliri dimittat, non est verus.

Item si de eo non potest scindi vitrum cristallum, non est verus.

Item accipe paruum quantitatis lapidem Adamantem, qui solet sibi attrahere acum & ferrum, & pone verum diamantem super adamantem, tùncque si ministraueris adamanti acum, videbis adamantem operari nihil, vero diamante præsente, dum tamen adamas non sit diamante maior.

Item si cultellum laminæ tenuis, habentem in manubrio inclusum vel alligatum verum diamantem in mensa vel assere erexeris, protinus vt ipsi venenum appropinquabit, stabit tremulans atque sudans. Et notandum, quòd per luxuriosum, seu gulosum qui ferret diamantem amitteret virtutem ad tempus.

Terra Indiæ appellatur ab Indo ibi currente fluuio, cuius anguillæ inueniuntur quandoque vltra 20. pedes in longitudine. In media India transitur per multas insulas vsque ad mare Oceanum, in insulam Ormuz, vbi Mercatores Venetiæ sæpè tendunt; sed viri, qui assueti non sunt tantum sustinere calorem, ne exeant perpendicula de corporibus propè ad genua, ibi se contra hoc debitè inuoluunt, & ligant, nec audent ibi transire nauibus ferrum continentibus, ne teneantur de rupibus adamantum.

Terra Indiæ vnde dicta.

Insula Ormuz

A Balsara per sinum Persicũ ad Ormusium nauigantes, talibus hodie vtuntur nauigijs, sine ferreis clauis.

Hic in aliquibus Aethiopiæ partibus habitant publicè, inhonestorum vtriusque sexus hominum consuetudinem inhonestam gerentes, & in æstu meridiano refrigerandi causa exeunt circà ciuitatem ad riparias lacere, & discurrere nudis prorsus corporibus omni pudore reiecto, ex quo procul dubio inhonesta vitia sequuntur.

Est

Insula Chaua, vel Chaul forte.

Est & non longè ab ista insula regio seu insula Caua vel Chaua, quæ à primo statu multùm est minorata per mare. Hi sunt infidelissimi Paganorum. Nam quidam adorant Solem, alij Lunam, ignem, aquam, & terram, arborem, vel serpentem, vel cui de manè primò obuiant. Ibi magni mures, quos nos dicimus rattas, sunt in quantitate paruorum canum. Et quoniam per cattos capi non possunt, capiuntur per canes maiores.

Corpora mortuorum non sepeliuntur ibi, nec cadauera quælibet bestiarum operiuntur, quòd ad aeris æstum carnes in breui tempore consumuntur, nam & tota insula consistit sub zona torrida. Inde transiri potest per mare in Indiam superiorem, siue maiorem, videlicet Imperium Presbyteri Ioannis ad portum ciuitatis Zarke, quæ est elegans & bona satis. In ea habitãt plurimi Catholicæ fidei Christiani: & habentur plurimæ Abbatiæ religiosorum, quas olim Dux Danorum Ogerus constituit, vnde & vsque nunc dicuntur Ecclesiæ Dani, atque ex hoc nauigari potest in terram Lombe.

Zarke, vel Zarchia.

Terra Lombe.

Caput 27.

De foresto Piperis, & fonte iuuentutis.

Regio seu insula dicta Lombe, spatiosa quidem est, continens forestum dictum aliàs Tombar, longũ per dietas 18. In orbe vniuersõ nõ noscimus crescere piper, præterquàm in hoc foresto. In quo & habẽtur duæ ciuitates, vna Flandrina, (& illa ciuitas inhabitata est à Iudæis, & Christianis, inter quos sæpè magna seditio oritur) altera Singlant: quas quondam Danus fertur fundasse Ogerus, vocans vnam Flandrinam, nomine auiæ suæ ex parte patris sui, alteram Florentam nomine auiæ ex parte matris suæ, quæ mutato nomine nunc vocatur Singlant.

Flandrina.

Singlant.

Sciendum est autem, piper ibi crescere in hunc modum: sicut nos plantamus vites aut quercus arbores robustas, vt vitis cum fructibus se spargat, vt supportetur per ramos, sic coluntur arbusta piperis ad arbores foresti, & sparguntur per ramos, & dependent fructus vt botri. Et venit in eodem arbusto triplex piper in anno.

Piper quomodo crescat.

Primum est quod vocatur longum piper, & venit priusquam nascuntur folia in arbustis, quemadmodum nos in arbore videmus corylo in hyeme ante folia præcedere quasdam caudulas longas, quo circa initium vindemiato, nascuntur cum folijs botri piperis viridis ad similitudinem paruarum vuarum. Quod quidem circa tempus Iulii in eadem viriditate vindemiatum in æstu feruido siccatur ad Solem, vt accipiat nigredinem, & rugarum contractionem.

Piper longum

Postea exurgit piper album in granis minoribus, & in abundantia satis minori, quo tanquam pretiosiori vtuntur in partibus illis, & rarò vendunt ad partes istas.

Piper album.

Primum piper appellatur Sorbotyn, secundum Fulful, tertium verò Bauos.

Sunt autem per nemus istud fera animalia, & venenosa, sicut parui serpentes, colubri, & huiusmodi, de quibus nescio quis famam diffundit per nostras partes, quòd vindemiatores piperis tales vermes fugant per ignem: sed non est ita, imò vngunt brachia, manus, tibias, & pedes cum quodam succo herbæ dictæ Limonse, à quo citò diffugit omne venenum.

In huius foresti capite sub monte Polembo, est ciuitas dicta Polemba, & sub eodem monte fons qui dicitur Iuuentutis. Aqua huius fontis reddit odorem, & saporem quasi de omni genere aromatum, nam singulis penè horis immutat odorem, & saporem. Et quisquis per aliquos dies potat ieiuno stomacho sanatur in breui tempore, à quacunque interiori infirmitate, languore duntaxat mortis excepto: & sanè illorum qui propè sunt, & frequenter bibunt apparet per totum vitæ tempus mira iuuentus. Ego autem ter vel quater bibi, quamobrem & vsque hodiè arbitror potiùs me corporaliter valere. Putatur enim fons ille immediatè per poros subterraneos eliquari de fonte paradisi terrestris, ita quòd nulla via decurrentium super terram fluentium vitietur. In ista etiam regione, & in insulis circumquaque crescit gingiber valdè bonum, vnde & mercatores sæpè ibi tendunt de Venetia pro emendo pipere & gingibere. Gentes verò huius insulæ peruersę & stolidissimæ sunt superstitionis adorantes bouem tanquam animal beatissimum, propter eius simplicitatem mansuetudinem, patientiam, & vtilitatem.

Mons Polembus.

Ciuitas Polemba.

Fons Iuuentutis.

Nota.

Gingiber.

Multitudo cuiuslibet ciuitatis vel villæ vnum specialem nutrit bouem, quem postquam laborauit in aratro per sex annos immolant manducantes pariter cum maxima solemnitate. Et quicunque inde minimam minutiam comedit, reputat se sanctificatum totum.

Porrò apud Regem tenetur bos singularis, cuius custos diligentissimè vrinam in vase aureo accipit simpliciter, & de fimo in vase consimili: & quotidiè venit summus eorum prælatus, quem dicunt Archiprotoplaustum, offert personaliter in prædictis pretiosis vasis, Domino Regi de bouis vrina & fimo, atque in vrina, quam appellant Gaul, tingens manus, defricat, & perungit Regis pectus & frontem, deinde similiter de fimo in multa cordis attentione, ad finem vt

Archiprotoplaustus.

Gaul.

possint

poſſint aſſequi quatuor virtutes bouis præfati.

Poſt regem cùm reuerentia accedunt, & vnguntur Barones, principes, & poſt ipſos cæteri ordinati quicunque attingere poſſint, putantes ſe ſanctificari per rem penitus non valentem, imò nimis fœtidam, & inhoneſtam.

Præterea populi iſti colunt Idola facta ad medium in forma humana, & ad medium in forma bouis. In quibus permiſſione Dei per eorum perfidiam maligni ſpiritus habitant dantes de interrogatis reſponſa. Et hijs Idolis offerunt infinita donaria quandoq;, & ſacrificant interdum proprios infantes, ipſorum ſanguine Idola reſpergentes.

Dum hic maritus moritur, vxor comburitur cum marito, niſi de illo habeat ſobolem cum quo viuere ſolet, & velit. Quæ ſibi eligit cum prole ſuperuiuere, non habebitur de cætero fide digna. Vxor cum marito combuſta.

Attamen in ſimili cauſa, ſi vir non vult cremari cum vxore mortua, non minuit ei honorem.

Et forte vinum naſcitur ibi: quòd mulieres bibunt, & non viri, vt ſic mulieribus creſcant barbæ, ſed mulieribus raduntur, & viris minimè.

Caput. 28.

De Eccleſia & corpore Sancti Thomæ Apoſtoli.

HInc in Meridiem pluribus exactis Inſulis per viam decem dietarum venitur in Regnum Mabron. Illic in ciuitate Calamiæ, ſeruatur in magno templo corpus beatiſſimi Thomæ Apoſtoli Domini noſter Ieſu Chriſti in capſa honorificata. In quo loco & martirizatus fuit, licet dicunt quidam, quod in Ediſſa ciuitate. Iſte populus non eſt multum tempus tranſactum, quin fuit totus in fidei relligione, ſed nunc eſt ad peſſimos Gentilium ritus peruerſus, nec attendit, nec veneratur relliquias ſancti corporis Apoſtoli ibidem contentas, quamuis ijs euidens, ac vtile, & mirificum præſtare ſolebat beneficium, quod infra narrabo. Regio Mabrò, vel malaber. Calamia, vel Calumè. Thomæ Apoſtoli ſepultura.

Per certas hiſtorias habetur Ducem Danorum Ogerum conquiſiuiſſe has terras, & in exaltatione ſanctarum Apoſtoli relliquiarum feciſſe fieri præfatam ſpectactilem Eccleſiam, ac intra eum reponi in nobiliſſimo loculo, gemmis, auro, argentoque decenter ornato Sanctum corpus, ac deinde poſt annorum tempus trecentorum Aſſyrios abſtuliſſe feretrum cum ipſo corpore ſancto in Ediſſam ciuitatem Meſopotamiæ, in qua & fuit martyrizatus ſecundum quoſdam, rurſumq; poſt ſexaginta & tres annos recuperatũ corpus in ſuam fuiſſe Eccleſiam reſtitutum, videlicet in Calamia, atque in eiuſdem recuperationis ſignum certum dimiſerunt iſti, & dimittunt extra ferretri loculum dependere brachium dextrum, cum manu quæ tetigiſſe creditur pia reſurgentis vulnera Chriſti. Quærendum eſt quæ ſint iſtæ hiſtoriæ.

Eadem quoque manus ſolet vſque hodie ſuæ veræ pœnitentiæ tale manifeſtare miraculum vt dum partes quælibet litigantes velint vtræque ſuas cauſas iuramento confirmare, conſcriptis hinc indè cauſis ponantur ambæ cartulæ in Apoſtoli manu. Quæ cunctis ‖ exeuntibus Eccleſiam, protinus ſub vnius horæ tempore reiecta longius falſitate, veritatem ſibi reſeruat: ſed nunc ſicut dicere cœpi iſti populi huic beneficio Dei ingrati, & diabolica illuſione excæcati mirabilitèr paganizant. ‖Interea dum exirẽt, Monachi ſuos dolos potuerunt exercere.

Nam & in hac ipſa beati Thomæ Eccleſia ſtatuerunt multa miræ magnitudinis ſimulachra, ex quibus vnum quòd maius eſt multò alijs apparet ſedens homo in alto ſolio adoperto aureis ſericis, & lapidibus præcioſis, habenſque ad collum ſuſpenſa pro ornatu multa cinctoria præcioſè gemmis, & auro contexta. Ad hoc autem Idolum adorandum confluunt peregrini à remotis partibus, & propinguis, in ſatis maiori copia, & valdè feruentiori deuotione quàm Chriſtiani, ad ſanctuum Iacobum in Galizia, quia multi eorum per totum peregrinationis iter, non audent erigere palpebras oculorum, ne fortè propter hoc deuotio intermittatur. Idolum in templo ſancti Apoſtoli erectum.

Alij de propè venientes ſuperaddunt labori itinerandi, vt ad tertium vel ad quartum paſſum ſemper cadant in genibus. Nonnulli quoque demoniaca inſpiratione ſemetipſos per viam peregrinationis lanceolis, & cultellis nunc minoribus, nunc maioribus ſauciant vulneribus per ſingula corporis loca, & dum ante Idolum perueniunt, exciſum fruſtum de carne propria proijciunt ad Idolum pro offerenda, ac plagis durioribus ſe caſtigant, & quandoque ſponteneè penitus ſe occidunt: in ſolemnitatibus verò, ſicut in dedicatione, & ſicut in thronizatione ſimulachrorum, fit conuentus populi, quaſi totius Regni. Et ducitur cum proceſſione maius Idolum per circuitum ciuitatis, in curru precioſiſſimo, modis omnibus perornato, & præcedunt in numero magno puellæ cantantes binæ, & binæ ordinatiſſimè, ſucceditque pluralitas Muſicorum cum inſtrumentis varijs ſimphonizantes, quos continuè ſubſequitur currus, cuius lateribus coniungit ſe peregrinorum exercitus, qui & venerunt de remotis.

Ibique cernitur miserabilis actus vltra modum. Nam aliqui victi vltrà modum diabolica deuotione proijciunt se sub rotis currus præcedentis, vt frangantur sibi crura, brachia, latera, dorsa, nec non & colla in reuerentiam Dei sui (vt dicunt) à quo remunerationem sperant, venire ad Paradisum terrestrem.

Occidunt se in honorem Idoli.

Et post processionem postquàm statuerunt Idolum in templo suo loco, multiplicatur coram simulachris numerus sæpè plangentium, & occidentium vltrà quam credi sit facile. Ita quod quandoque in illa vnica solemnitate inueniuntur ducenta corpora, vel plura occisorum. Et assistantes propinqui amici talium diaboli martyrum, cum magna musicorum melodia decantantes in sua lingua offerunt Idolis corpora, ac demum accenso rogo omnia corpora comburunt in honorem Idolorum, assumentes sibi singuli aliquid de ossibus aut cineribus pro reliquijs, quas putant sibi valituras contra quælibet infortunia, & tempestates. Et habetur ante templum aquæ lacus, velut seruatorium piscium, in quo proijcit populus largissimè suas oblationes, argentũ, aurũ, gemmas, cyphos, & similia, quibus ministri certis temporibus exhibentes prouident Ecclesię, ac simulachro, ac sibi ipsis abundanter. Quoddam fabulosum scriptum exiuit per partes nostras, quod in prędicta processione circumferatur cum pheretro corpus beati Thomæ, qui & in fine processionis populo communicaret proprijs manibus de Eucharistiæ sacramento, sed non est ita, & nunquam fuit.

Reprehendit fabulas vulgi.

Caput. 29.

De Iaua, *& quibusdam alijs meridionalibus Insulis, & de farina, melle & piscibus Ogeri Ducis Danorum.*

Processio 52. diætarum in Austrum.

INde vlterius procedendo in Austrum per multas & mirabiles terras quinquaginta duarum diętarum spacio, habetur magna Insula Lamori. Illic omnes nudi incedũt, & ferè omnia sunt singulis communia, nec vtuntur priuatis clauibus siue seris, imo & omnes mulieres sunt communes omnibus & singulis viris, dummodo violentia non inferatur: sed & peior est ijs consuetudo, quod libentèr comedunt teneras carnes humanas; vnde & negotiatores adferunt eis crassos infantes venales: quod si non satis pingues afferuntur, eos saginant sicut nos vitulum, siue porcum.

Humanis carnibus vescentes, seu ἀνθρωποφάγοι.

Hic apparet in bona altitudine polus Antarcticus, & incipit modò apparere in alta Lybia, ita quod in alta Æthiopia eleuatur octodecim gradibus, prout ipse probaui Astrolabio.

Mandeuillus vsus astrolabio.

Ad meridiem terræ Lamori est Insula bona, ‖Sumebor, cuius gentes reputant se nobiliores alijs, signantes se in facie certo caûterio. Isti semper guerras gerunt contra præfatas gentes nudas de Lamory.

Insula Rotonigo.

Ad modicam indè destantiam habetur Insula Rotonigo abundans in bonis pluribus: sed & in Austrum sequuntur aliæ plures regiones & Insulæ, de quibus prolixum narrare fuisset.

Iaua Insula, grandis.

Et est valde grandis regio Iaua, habens in circuitu ambitum leucarum duarum millium. Huius rex est valde potens, & imperans septem insularum vicinarum regibus. Terra ista est populosa valdè, & crescunt in ea species, & abundantia gingiberis, canella, gariofoli, nuces muscatæ, & mastix, cum aromatibus multis. Sed & quod ibi nascatur vinum, non habent: aurum & argentum est ibi in copia immensa, quòd patet in regis Iauæ palatio, cuius palatij nobilitas non est facilè scribenda.

Multa aromata in Iaua.

Cuncti gradus ascendentes ad palatij aulas, & aularum cameras, & ad thalamos Camerarum sunt solidi de argento vel auro, sed & omnis stratura pauimentorum in alijs habetur ad similitudinem scacarij, vnam quadratam argenti, alteram auri, laminis valdè crassis, & in ipsis pauimentis, sunt exsculpta gesta, & historiæ diuersæ. In principali verò aula, est plenariè expressa Dani Ducis Ogeri historia, à natiuitate ipsius, quousque in Franciam fantasticè dicatur reuersus, cum tempore Caroli magni regis Franciæ, ipse Ogerus armata manu conquisiuit Christianitati ferè omnes partes transmarinas à Ierosolymis vsque ad arbores solis & Lunæ, ac propè paradisum terrestrem.

Victoriæ Ogeri Ducis Dani.

Pro hac Regione Iaua, (quæ tangit fines Imperij Tartarię) sibi subiuganda, Imperator Grand Can multoties pugnauit, sed nunquam valuit expugnare. Hinc per mare venitur ad regnum ‖Thalamassæ, quód & ‖Panchon dicitur, in quo habetur magnus numerus bonarum ciuitatum. Intra hanc Insulam, quatuor sunt genera arborum, de quarum vna accipitur farina ad panem, de secunda mel, de tertia vinum, & de quarta pessimum venenum. Extrahitur autem farina de suis arboribus isto modò.

Hinc patet quod Imperium Grand Can ad Austrũ valdè olim protẽdebatur.

‖Vel Tholomassi.

‖Vel Paten.

Certo tempore anni percutitur stipes arboris vndique propè terram cum securi, & cortex in locis pluribus vulneratur, de quibus recipitur liquor spissus, qui desiccatus ad solis æstum & contritus

contritus reddit farinam albam, ac ſi de frumento eſſet cõfectus, attamen hic panis non eſt tricei ſaporis, ſed alterius valdè boni. Farina ex arbore.

Simili modo de ſuis arboribus mel elicitur, & vinum liquitur: excepto quod illa non ſicut gramina prima deficcantur. Fertur quoque ibidem, extractionem huius farinæ, mellis, & vini, per Angelum primitus fuiſſe oſtenſam prædicto Danorum Duci, illic fame cum ſuo exercitu laboranti. Contra venenum quod de quarto arboris genere ſtillat, ſolum eſt intoxicato remedium, vt de proprio ſimo per puram aquam diſtemperato bibat.

Et eſt in hac Inſula quoddam mare mortuum, velut lacus fœtidus, cuius in pleriſq; locis fundus humano ingenio non valet attingi: miræ magnitudinis arundines creſcunt ſuper hunc lacum, in altitudine cedrorum aut abietum pedum ducentorum, ita vt viginti ſocij mecum nequiuimus vnius caput iacentis arundinis ſubleuare de terra. Minores etiam arundines naſcuntur ad fluuii ripam, habentes in terra radices longitudinis trecentorum cubitorum aut plurium, Ad quarum nodos radicum, inueniuntur geminę precioſę, de quibus expertum eſt, ſiquis vnam habuerit in pugno ſuo, ferrum corpori ſuo non nocebit: vnde ſi quis ibi pugnans, putat aduerſarium, ac inimicum hac gemina munitum aggreditur eum cum fuſtibus non ferratis. Immenſæ molis arundines. Sunt quidam lapides qui ſanguinem ſiſtunt: de quibus etiam

De hac intratur in Inſulam ‖Calanoch, magnam & refertam bonorum omnium. Rex eius potens eſt multum, & licitum eſt ei, quandocunque, & quibuslibet in regno vti mulieribus, de quibus interdum magnum numerum tenet puerorum. Mille quadringẽtos habere ſolet ad prę liandum eliphantes, quos ſibi nutriunt villani per regnum. Elephantes vocant verkes. Oſorius. ‖ Vel Alenak. Elephantes.

In littore maris miraculoſè veniunt ibi ſemel in anno, per tres continuos dies, quaſi de omni genere piſcium marinorum, in maxima abundantia: & præbent ſe omnibus liberè capiendos ad manum. Nam & ego ipſe cepi quamplures. Vnde notandum, quod eodem tempore anni quo ſuper dicta extrahitur farina, mel, & vinum, conueniunt in hoc iſti piſces: quæ ambo mirabilia fecit vno tempore Deus olim producere ſuo Ogero, quæ & in memoria illius, vſque nunc, ſingulis annis innouantur. Experientia Mandeuilli.

Et ſunt in hoc territorio teſtudines terribilis quantitatis, fitque de maioribus Regi ac nobilibus delicatus ac precioſus cibus: mentior, ſi non quaſdam ibidem viderim teſtudinum conchas, in quarum vna ſe tres homines occultarent, ſuntque omnes multum albi coloris. Teſtudines grandiſſimæ.

Si hic vir vxoratus moritur, ſepelitur & vxor vna cum eo, quatenus, ſicut ibi credunt, habeant eam ſtatim ſociam in ſeculo altero.

Caput. 30.

De Regnis Cynocephalorum, & alijs Inſulis.

PEr mare oceanum poteſt hinc veniri in Inſulam ‖Kaffa: quicunque ibi infirmari videtur ad mortem, ſuſpenditur ad arborem, antequam moriatur, vt non ab immundis terræ vermibus, ſed a cœli auibus, quas reputant Dei Angelos, comedatur. ‖Vel Caffeles.

In alia Inſula faciunt ſuos infirmos ante mortem ab eductis in hoc magnis canibus ſtrangulari, manducantes in conuiuio carnes pro optimo ferculo venationis.

Interpoſitis quoque multis Inſulis, de quibus ſubticeo gratia breuitatis, habetur Inſula ‖Mylke, & hij videntur omnium hominum crudeliſſimi; Nam quilibet particulariter pro leui & modica ſtimulatione, vulnerat, ſauciat, & occidit, proximum, vicinum & amicum: Et ſi quando diſſidentes contigerit concordari, non habebitur pax rata, niſi quiſque de alterius ſanguine biberit bonum hauſtum. ‖Vel Mekke.

Hinc nauigando per multas & diuerſas Inſulas, qui in ſingulas intrare, & moram trahere voluerit, ſtupenda multa videbit, & poterit venire in Inſulam ‖Tracoide. ‖Vel Traceda.

Illic ſunt homines abſque vllo ingenio penitus beſtiales, ſerpentibus, vermibuſque veſcentes, nec inuicem loquentes, ſed conceptus ſuos ſignis & indicijs oſtendentes. Diligunt precioſos lapides tantummodo pulchritudinis gratia, non cauſa virtutis: & ſuper omnes vnum diligunt lapidem habentem 60. colorum varietates, qui & Tracoides vocatur propter ipſos.

Intratur hinc per Oceanum in regionem Niconoram, vel Nacumeram, habentem in circuitu ſpacium mille leucarum: omnes ibi geniti homines habent capita ad formam canum, vnde & in Græco Cynocephali dicuntur. Iſti etiam incedunt nudis corporibus, excepto parui panniculi operimento, ſecretiora loca & poſteriora retro tegente. Rationabiles tamen multum ſunt hij, & plurimum virtuoſi, ac de omni forefacto rigidam iuſtitiam exercentes. Sunt ſtatura elegantes, robuſti corpore, in prælijs lanceam cum tergia lata gerentes, viriliterque, & prudenter pugnantes. Omnes pro deo adorant bouem, vnde & quilibet in fronte argenteam ſeu auream ſimilitudinem bouis defert, & ſi quem viuum in prælio ceperint, ſine vlla miſeratione manducant. Inſula Nicomora, vel Nacumera. Bouis adoratores.

Rex multum est diues & potens, ac deuotus in superstitione. Nam circa collum gestat trecẽtas orientales margaritas, quibus quotidiè antè cõmestionem orationes suas colligit, quemadmodum nos colligimus, Pater noster,&c. Ac præterea portat ad collum ‖ rubetum orientalem,nobilem,purum,pulchrum,resplendentem, & summe precioſum, ad longitudinem pedis humani,quem habet diligenter seruare,quod dum eo caret non tenetur pro Rege.

‖Siue carbunculum.

Pro isto carbunculo Grand Can Imperator, per ingenium, per insidias, per precium, & per pręliũ sæpè laborauit, sed nihil profecit. Post istam apparet insula Syllan,habens leucas de circuitu 80.quæ paucos habet homines propter multitudinem draconum,serpentum, crocodilorum in ea. Sunt autem crocodili speciales serpentes,coloris virgulati de croceo & nigro, cum quatuor cruribus, & tibijs & latis pedum vngulis. Aliqui horum habent longitudinem quinq; tensarum,aut citrà, qui dum tendunt per arenosa relinquunt signum semitæ,acsi sit ibi tractus grandis arboris truncus.

Alijs fortè Zeilan.

Crocodili.

Item in hac insula habetur mons altus, & in sui vertice satis altus & distentus & magnus aquæ lacus, de quo & stulti homines fabulantur,quòd primi parentes post eiectionem suam,illam aquam primò lacrymauerunt.In huius fundo lacus nascuntur margaritæ,& habentur semper lapides precioſi. Solentque pauperes terræ,accepta à Rege licentia,semel in anno ingredi, ac piscari gemmas,qui intrantes vngunt se succo Lymonsæ,contra hirũdines, colubros,& serpentes. Sed & de lacu effluit riuulus per montis descensum, in quo nonnunquam margaritę inueniunnur,& gemmæ: dicunt etiam ibi nullum venenatum animal nocere aduenis.

Ibi videntur leones albi in mira magnitudine boum nostrorum,& multæ diuersæ bestiæ, & aues,bestiolæ, & auiculæ aliarum specierum quàm in partibus istis. Nam ibi & in nonnullis alijs insulis vidi vnum mirum,de quo prius vix credidissem narranti, videlicet anates cum duobus capitibus.

Et sciatis quòd tam hic quam alibi mare apparet satis altius suo littore, imo qui à remotis aspicit videt suspensum quasi ad nubes. Et de hoc admiratus fuissem, nisi quod scriptum sciui mirabiles elationes maris.

Caput. 31.

De multis alijs Insulis Meridionalibus, de quibus & Plinius, & Munsterus.

‖Vel Doudeia.

VErsus meridiem hinc legendo per mare,inuenitur regio specioſa nomine ‖ Doudin: cuius rex imperat seu principatur 54.regibus in circuitu insularum.

Dum quis hic infirmatur tendit proximus ad Idolum sciscitans an morietur, & si respondit non, addit & dicere medicinam qua curabitur: si autem responderit moriturum,statim conuocatis amicis occiditur, & cum symphonia, & solemnitate comedunt eius carnes, ossa tantummodò sepelientes. In Insulis verò circumiacentibus, habentur incredibiliter diuersæ gentes.

Monophtholmoi.

Nam vna habet homines enormis magnitudinis, cum solo in medio frontis oculo,qui absque vllo condimento manducant carnes & pisces.

Ἀκέφαλοι.

Alia Insula habet homines aspectu deformes,nihil autem colli aut capitis ostendentes,vnde & Acephali nuncupantur: oculos autem habent ante ad scapulas, & in loco pectoris os apertum ad formam ferri,quo nostri caballi frænantur.

In alia Insula sunt gentes planis faciebus absque eleuatione nasorum, & palpebrarum cum paruis foraminibus oculorum,& sciſſura modica oris.Et in alia gentes cum superiore oris labio ita lato & amplo,vt,dum velint,totam faciem de illo tegant.

Alia generat homines paruæ staturę cum oris foramine sic paruo,vt per fistulas alimentum, & potum sumant,& quoniam carent lingua & dentibus,monstrant per naturalia signa conceptus. Et aliqui sunt homines debitæ quidem staturæ, & formæ, nisi quòd habent pedes equinos, quibus ita sunt præpetes, vt syluestres bestias capiant, quas comedunt, & manducant.

In alia homines sunt toti pilosi & hispidi,vsu simiarum manibus & pedibus ambulantes,& ad arbores reptantes, qui quamuis non loquuntur, apparent rationabiles, quia regem habent, & rectores.

Hermaphroditæ.

Et in alia omnes sunt claudi,qui quamuis pedes habeant,tamen ambulant super genua multum ridiculosè,imò miserabiliter, vt de passu in passum videantur casuri in terram. Et in quadam,sexum tam masculinum, quàm fœmininum habentes, qui dum masculino vtuntur generant,dum fœminino,impregnantur & pariunt. Atq;,vt in compendio multa concludam,in singulis 54.insularum inueniuntur homines,forma,statura,actibus & moribus singulis ab inuicem differentes,de quibus potest fieri descriptio, quam pertranseo gratia breuitatis, & causa incredulitatis fortè quorundam audientium.

Nota.

In

In iſtis autem meridionalibus partibus apparebat mihi eleuatio poli Antarctici 33. graduũ, cũ 16.minutis. Et ſciendũ quod in Bohemia, ſimilitèr & in Anglia eleuatur polus Arcticus 52. gradibus vel citra: Et in partibus magis ſeptentrionalibus, vbi ſunt Scoti 62.gradibus cum quatuor minutis. Ex quo patet reſpiciendo ad latitudinem cœli, quæ eſt de polo ad polum, quod itineratio mea fuit per quartum Horizontis ſpheræ terræ & vltra, per quinque gradus, cum 20.minutis. Cum ergò ſecundum Aſtrologos, totus terræ circuitus ſit 31500.milliarium, octo ſtadijs pro milliario computatis, & ſeptinginta ſtadia reſpondeant ad vnum gradum, quod patet ad latitudinem terræ, perambulaui 66733. ſtadia cum vno tertio, quę faciunt 4170. leucas Geometricas cum dimidia vel propè.

Auſtralis latitudo 33. graduum 16. minutorum.

Hæc erat Eratoſthenis cõputatio.

Caput. 32.

De bona Regione ‖ Manchus.

‖Mangi.

CVm igitur tot & talia in iſtis Inſulis vidimus monſtra (quæ ſi explicarem ſcribendo vix à legentibus omnia crederentur) non curauimus vlterius procedere ſub polo auſtrali, ne in maiora pericula incideremus: ſed propter auditam & inuiſam nobis famoſitatem potentiæ, nobilitatis, & glorię Imperatoris Tartarorum, vertebam faciem cum ſocijs nauigare magis verſus Orientem. Cumque per multas diætas ſuſtinuiſſemus multa pericula maris, peruenimus in Regnum ‖ Manchus, quod eſt in confinibus ſuperioris Indiæ, & iungitur ab vna parte Tartarię. Hæc Regio Manchus, pro ſui quantitate reputatur melior, delectabilior, & omnium bonorum abundantior de cunctis ibi propè Regionibus. Nam & homines, beſtiæ, & volucres maiores & corpulentiores ſunt alijs, & præ vbertate vix inuenirentur in vna ciuitate decem mendici. Formoſi ſunt viri, ſed feminæ formoſiores. Sed viri loco barbę, habent perpaucos pilos, rigidos, & longos ab vtraque oris parte, quemadmodum noſtros videmus cattos habere.

Taxat incredulitatem hominum.

‖Vel Mangi. Deſcriptio Mangi uel Chinæ.

Pauci in China mendici.

Chinenſes rarò piloſi in barbis.

Prima quam ingrediebamur ciuitas eſt ‖ Lachori, diſtans vna dieta à mari, & mirabamur, & gauiſi ſumus nos inueniſſe integram ciuitatem Chriſtianæ fidei. Nam & maior pars Regni credit in Chriſtum.

‖Siue Lateryn.

Chinenſes olim Chriſtiani.

Ibi habetur in leui precio copia rerum omnium, & præcipuè victualium: vnum genus eſt ibi ſerpentum in abundantia quod manducant ad omne conuiuium, & niſi pro finali ferculo miniſtraretur de illis ſerpentibus, conuiuium quàm modicum diceretur.

Suntque per hoc regnum plerę; ciuitates & Eccleſię, & relligiones, quas inſtituit dux Ogerus, quia hoc eſt vnum de quindecim regnis quæ quæſiuit, ſicut infrà dicetur.

Illic ſunt elegantes albæ gallinæ, quę non veſtiuntur plumis vt noſtræ, ſed optima lana. ‖ Canes aquatici, quos nos lutras nominamus, ſunt ibi multi edomiti, quòd quoties mittuntur in flumen, exportant domino piſcem.

Sunt huiuſmodi etiam canes in India occidentali, teſte Petro Martyre in Decadibus.

Ab hoc loco per aliquas diætas, venitur ad huius regionis maximam vrbem Canſay, hoc eſt dicere ciuitatem cœli, imo de vniuerſo orbe terrarum putatur hæc maxima Ciuitatum; nam eius circuitus 50. leucis eſt menſus, nec eſt facile dicere, quàm compreſſè a quamplurimus populis inhabitatur. Hæc ſedet in lacu maris, quemadmodum, & Venetiæ: & habentur in ea plures quàm mille ducenti pontes, & in quolibet turres miræ magnitudinis, ac fortitudinis, munitæ peruigili cuſtodia, & pro vrbe tuenda contra Imperatorem Grand Can.

Canſay, vel Quinſay, & eius deſcriptio.

Multi ſunt ibi Chriſtiani, & multę Relligiones Chriſtianorum, ſed & de ordinibus Minorum, & prædicatorum, qui tamen ibi non mendicant; eſt magna pluralitas ex diuerſis nationibus Mercatorum. Per Regionem naſcitur vinum valdè bonum, quod appellatur Bigon. Et ad leucã extra ciuitatem, Abbatia magna eſt, non de relligione Chriſtiana ſed Pagana: & in ea foreſtum, ſiue hortus magnus vndique circumcluſus, conſitus arboribus, & arbuſtis, in cuius etiam medio mons, altus ſimul & latus, habens hortum vbi ſolum inhabitant beſtiolę mirabiles, ſicut Simiæ, marmotæ, Lanbon, papiones, foreti & huiuſmodi ad varia & multa genera, & ad numerum infinitum.

Vinum Chinenſe appellatum Bigon.

Omni autem die poſt refectionem conuentus Abbatię, qui eſt valdè monachoſus, deferuntur reliquiæ ciborum cum magno additamento, in vaſis auro lucentibus ad hunc hortum: & ad ſonitum campanæ argenteæ, quam Eleemoſynarius manu geſtat deſcendentes, & occurrentes de beſtiolis duo millia aut plures ſeſe componunt reſidere ad circulum more pauperum mendicorum, & traditur ſingulis per ſeruos aliquid de his cibarijs, ac denuò audita campana ſegregando recurrunt: Cumque nos tanquam redarguentes, diceremus, cur hæc non darentur egenis, reſponderunt, illic pauperes non habentur, quod ſi inuenirentur, potius tamen dari deberent beſtiolis. Habet enim eorum perfidia, & Paganiſsimus, animas

Falsa opinio de animarum tranſmigratione.

nobilium hominum poſt mortem ingredi corpora nobilium beſtiarum, & animas ignobilium corpora beſtiarum ignobilium & vilium, ad luenda videlicet crimina, donec peracta pœnitentia trãſeant in Paradiſum: ideoque nutriunt, prout dicunt, has nobiliores beſtias, ſiue beſtiolas, quòd a quibuſdam nobilibus fundabatur in principio hæc Abbatia. Multa ſunt alia mira in hac ciuitate, de quibus ſciatis, quod non omnia vobis recitabo.

CAPVT. 33.

De Pygmæis, & de itinere vsque in prouinciam Cathay.

‖Vel Chezolo. ‖Vel Miliariu-um.

EVndo per Regionem eandem à dicta ciuitate Canſay, ad ſex dietas venitur ad nobilem vrbem ‖Tylenſo, cuius muri per circuitum tenduntur ad ſpacium 20. ‖leucarum: & ſunt 60. petrini pontes, quibus nullos memini pulchriores.

In iſta fuit prima ſedes regni Mangi, nec immeritò, cum ſit munita, delectabilis, & abundans omnibus bonis, ac deinde in prędicta Canſay, nunc autem tenetur in quadam alia ciuitate.

Tributum Chinenſium.

Nota, quilibet ignis ſoluit quolibet anno vnum balis pro tributo, quod valet vnum florenum cum dimidio, ſed omnes famuli de domo vna pro vno igne computantur: ſumma ignium tributalium, octies centum millia. Reliqui verò Chriſtiani mercatores, in iſto vico non computantur. Copia eſt ibi victualium.

Copia victualium in China.

Quatuor fratres minores vnum potentem conuertebant apud quem hoſpitabar, & qui duxit me ad Abbatiam iſtam, ibi vidi ſcilicet quod hic narratur.

Hoſpitium Mandeuilli in China.

Ad fines itaque regni Mangi tranſitur grandis fluuius de ‖Dylay, maius flumen mundi, vbi ſtrictius eſt continet ſeptem miliaria. Odericus: cuius alueus in loco diſtrictiori continet quatuor leucas. Et ex hoc in breui temporis ſpacio intratur Imperium Tartarorum, ſequendo fluuium vſque in terram Pygmęorum, per cuius medium tranſit.

‖Vel de Delay.

Pygmæi.

Hij Pygmęi ſunt homines ſtatura breues ad longitudinem noſtri brachij, ſeu trium manuum expanſarum. Tam mares quam feminæ formoſæ, & gratioſæ, & viuunt cõmuniter ad annos ſex vel ſeptem: ſi qui pertingunt ad octo, mirę putantur ſenectutis. Ad dimidiam anni ętatem nubere poſſunt, in ſecundo anno parturiunt: rationales ſunt, & ſenſati iuxta ætatem puſillam, ac ſatis ingenioſi ad opera de ſerico, & de lana arboris. Frequentèr præliantur contra aues grandes patriæ, exercitibus congregatis hinc inde, & fit ſtrages vtrimque. Hæc gens tam parua optimè operatur ſericum & bombycem. Iſti Pygmęi venerunt mihi obuiam chorizãdo. Non laborant terram, prędia, ſeu vineas, ſed morantur inter eos noſtrę quantitatis homines, qui eos incolunt, ſicut ſerui, quos & Pygmæi ſæpè deriſent, quia ſunt ipſis maiores: & quod ipſe non ceſſo mirari dum dicti homines in illa terra generant vel pariunt, non creſcit proles ſupra Pygmæi ſtaturam: Inſula non eſt protenſa, ſed fortè 12. ciuitatum. Quarum vna eſt grandis, & bene munita, & quam Grand Can facit cum fortibus armaturis curioſè ſeruari, contra regem Mangi.

Miraculum.

Imperium Tartarorum duodecim prouincijs diſtinctum.

Hinc proceditur per Imperium Grand Can, ad multas ciuitates, & villas morum mirabiliter diuerſorum, vſque in regnum Iamchan, quod eſt vnum de 12. prouincijs maximis, quibus diſtinguitur totum Imperium Tartarorum.

Iamchan Ciuitas nobilis.

Nobilior ciuitas huius Regni ſeu Prouinciæ dicitur Iamchan, abundans mercimonijs, & diuitijs infinitis, & multa præſtans proprio Regi tributa, quoniam ſicut illi de ciuitate fatentur, valet annuè regi quinquaginta milia cuman florenorum auri.

Nota. In Iamchan ciuitate eſt conuentus fratrum minorum: in hac ſunt tres Eccleſiæ Monaſteriorum: reditus ſimul aſcendit ad 12. cuman. Odericus, Vnus cuman eſt decem millium.

Summa tributi vnius Ciuitatis.

Summa tributi annui, quinquaginta millia millium Florenorum. In illis namque partibus magnas numerorum ſummas eſtimant per cuman, numerum 10. millium qui & in Flamingo dicitur laſte.

Ciuitas Meke. Maximæ naues.

Ad quinque leucas ab hac ciuitate eſt alia dicta Meke, in qua fiunt de quodam albiſſimi genere ligni naues maximæ cum aulis & thalamis, ac multis ædificijs, tanquam Palatium tellure fundatum.

‖Siue Lanterin. ‖Vel Caremoron.

Inde per idem regnum ad viam octo dietarum per aquam dulcem, multas per ciuitates, & bonas villas, venimus ‖ Laucherim, (Odericus appellat Leuyim,) vrbem formoſam opumque magnarum, ſitam ſuper flumen magnum ‖ Cacameran. Hoc flumen tranſit per medium Cathay, cui aqua infert damnum, quando nimis inundat, ſicut palus in Ferraria, Mogus in Herbipoli: & illud ſequentes intrauimus principalem prouinciam Imperij Tartariæ, dictam Cathay Calay: & iſta prouincia eſt multum diſtenta, ac plena ciuitatibus, & oppidis bonis, & magnis omnibuſque referta mercimonijs, maximè ſericoſis operibus, & aromaticis ſpeciebus.

Cathay Calay principalis prouincia.

Nauigando

Nauigando per dictum flumen verſus Orientem, & itinerando per hanc Cathay prouinciam ad multas dietas per plurimas vrbes & villas, venitur in ciuitatem "Sugarmago, abundantiorem omnibus in mercemoniis antedictis, quando ſericum eſt hic viliſsimum: quadragintæ libræ habentur ibi pro decem florenis. "Engarmago. Vilitas ſerici.

Ab hac ciuitate, multis ciuitatibus peragratis verſus Orientem, veni ad ciuitatem Cambalu, quæ eſt antiqua in prouincia Cathay: Hanc poſtquam Tartari ceperunt, ad dimidium miliare fecerunt vnam ciuitatem nomine Caydo, & habet duodecim portas, & à porta in portam duo ſunt groſſa miliaria Lombardica, ſpacium inter medium iſtarum ciuitatum habitatoribus plenum eſt, & circuitus cuiuſlibet iſtarum ambit 60. miliaria Lombardica, quæ faciunt octo Teutonica. Vel Cambaleck.

In hac ciuitate Cambalu reſidet Imperator Magnus Can, Rex Regum terreſtrium, & Dominus Dominorum terreſtrium. Atque indè vlteriùs in Orientem intratur vetus vrbs Caydo, vbi communiter tenet ſuam ſedem Imperialem Grand Can in ſuo palatio. Ambitus autem vrbis Caydo, eſt viginti ferè leucarum, duodecim habens portas à ſe diſtantes ampliùs quàm ſtadia 24. Caydo ciuitas.

CAPVT 34.

De palatio Imperatoris Grand Can.

PAlatium Imperatoris Grand Can, quod eſt in Caydo ciuitate, continet in circuitu proprij muralis vltrà duas leucas, & ſunt in eo aulæ quàm plures, in forma nobiles, & in materia nobiliores. Aula autem ſedis, quæ eſt maxima cæterarum, habet intrinſecus pro ſui ſuſtentatione 24. æreas columnas factas opere fuſorio, de auro puro, & omnes parietes ab intus opertas pellibus quorundam animalium, quæ vocantur Pantheres: hæ ſanguinei ſunt coloris, & ita remicantes, vt Sole deſuper relucente, vix oculus valeat humanus ſufferre ſplendorem, tantæque fragrantiæ, vt illi approximare non poſſet aer infectus, vnde & iſta opertura parietum appreciatur ſuper tegmen aurearum laminarum. Palatij Imperatoris Grand Can deſcriptio.

Namque ſtultorum aliqui Paganorum huiuſmodi adorant animalia propter colorum, odorúmque virtutem. Propoſui retrahere calamum à deſcribenda nobilitate, gubernatione, & miniſtrantiũ frequentia, atque Imperatoris magnificentia: attamen quia cœpi ego, propter incredulos, & neſcios, ac inerudibiles, non dimittam in toto. Quicunque enim nihil credunt, nihil ſciunt, neque erudiri poſſunt, Scriptura teſtante, ſi non crediderit non intelligetis. Dico ergo, & verè dico, quòd in huius aulæ capite ſit thronus, vel ſedes Imperialis, excelſus, & eminens in aſcenſu graduum quamplurium, in quo reſidere ſolet in plenaria maieſtate, in cuius throni toto corpore nihil apparet minùs nobile, auro, margaritis, gemmis, & lapidibus precioſis. Singuli gradus ſunt de ſingulis, ac inter ſe diuerſis magnis lapidibus, vtpote primus de Hæmatiſto, alius de Sardio, & alius de Chryſolito, & ſic vſque ad ſupremum gradum, qui ſinguli ad formam cuiuſque gradus ſunt circumfuſi, & cluſorio opere firmati, auro ſolido, & nihilominús per ſuperficiem auri, diſtinctè ſeminati, firmitérque incluſi lapilli cari, cum orientalibus Margaritis, ſummitas autem cum ferculo reſidentiæ in nobilitate exciſionis, & fabrifactura operis tam diuerſa eſt, & mira, vt paruitatem mei ingenij excedat, quamobrem & ei cedo, vlteriúſque procedo. Inuehitur in incredulos.

Ad Imperatoris ſiniſtram gradu vno baſsior, eſt ſedes ſuæ primæ coniugis, tota de iaſpidibus auro circumfuſis, & in ſuperficie aulæ diſtinctæ gemmulę cum granellis eodẽ ſchemate, & ſimiliter de iaſpide. Sed adhuc ſubmiſſior vno gradu eſt ſedes coniugis ſecundæ, nec non & ſub illa vxoris tertiæ. Nam tres proprias ſecum habet vxores, Odericus dicit, iſtas duas concubinas. Itèmque reſident ſub tertia coniuge nobiles mulieres de Imperatoris progenie, iuxta illuſtriam vniuſcuiuſque. Sedes primæ coniugis Imperatoris. Sedes coniugis ſecundæ.

Et notandum, quòd per totam patriam ſingulæ mulieres maritatæ, vt intelligantur maritis ſubiectæ, & vt diſcernantur à ſolutis, geſtant in capitis ſummitate ſimilitudinem pedis viri, longitudinis brachij & dimidij, quadam leui materia operatam: videlicet nobiles de ſericoſis operibus pannorum, ſeu alijs raris & pulchris pannis, & precioſis lapillis, & ignobiles iuxta ſtatum ſuum de materia communiori. Signum ſubiectionis vxorum ſuis maritis.

Ad dextram verò ſedentis Imperatoris vno gradu ſubmiſſus reſidet primogenitus eius filius, & ſub ipſo ordinatè in conſimilibus ſedibus nobiles proximi de cognitione Imperiali. Primogeniti Imperatoris filij ſedes.

Item ſuper thronum & deſuper ante ipſius throni locum, tanquam pro celato ſeu operimento in throno reſidentium, & eorum miniſtrantium, eſt extenſa ſimilitudo vitis operata in palmitibus, & pampinis, de auro puro ad extenſionem cubitorum quadraginta, per quadrum, atque per eam dependentes botri vuarum de gemmis, & granellis quinque colorum, quorum albi

bi sunt de christallo & beryllo,& irisi crocei de topazio & fuluo christallo, rubei de rubetorum granis,corallo,& alibandinis,virides de Smaragdis,pyropis, & chrysolytis, nigri, de onichinis, gagetis,& gerateris.

Tempore prandij in hac aula,Imperator & Imperatrices,& quisq; de prædictis, habet mensam sibi solam,quarum vilior præualet thesauro grandi.

In solennitatibus ponitur mensa Imperatori de exquisito electro,seu de auro examinato,distincta diamantibus,& nobis ignotis incomparabilibus gemmis, quandóque de christallo perspicuo,seu croceo, circumclusa auro cum gemmis: quandóque de Hæmatisto, quandóque de ebore candido,vel rubicundo: interdum de ligno artificiosè combinato, quod descendit per flumina de Paradiso.Idem dicit Odericus.

His mensis astant Barones, & Principes pro vasallis attentè in suis officijs ministrantes,quorum nec vnus emittere verbum aliqua presumit audacia,nisi Imperatore annuente,vel ad illum loquente,illis dūtaxat exceptis,qui certis interspatijs canunt, aut recitant de principum gestis.

Et notandum,quando in hoc solio Maiestatis diebus solennibus residet Imperator,subsidere ad pedes eius notarios quatuor, qui omne quod Dominus loquitur,singuli ponunt in scriptis: nam quodcunque tunc ex ore illius egreditur, necesse est esse, vel effici,nec valet item ipse verbum suum mutare,nec reuocare,nisi magno consilio conuocato.

Vniuersa vtensilia quibus in solennitate ad has seruitur mensas, sunt de nobilibus petris auro reclusis,Cyphi de Smaragdis,vel Saphyris,topasijs, pyropis, siue gryophis: & priuatioribus diebus,de auro probato etiam in cameris,& cubiculis, nec reputatur ibi claritas argenti, nisi pro pilarijs,columnis,gradibus, & pauimentis.

Istius autem ostia aulæ, dum in ea residet, aut deambulat Imperator, multi Barones ingressum seruant intentè,& ne limen tangatur,quod hoc haberent pro augurio, & benè verberaretur,quia Imperatore præsente, nemo nisi adductus in quacunque camera, vel habitatione intromittitur,donec interrogatus iusserit Imperator.

Mandeuillus suis pedibus mensurauit aulam Imperatoris.

Latitudinem huius Basilicę æstimo ad spatium de meis pedibus centum, & longitudinem vltrà quatuor centum.In cubiculo autem Regis dormitorio,constat vnus pillarius,seu columna de auro solido & carbunculus conclusus in illo longitudinis pedis vnius, totum habitaculum de nocte perfundens lumine claro.Hic prout ego notaui, non est plenè rubeus,sed subrufus,quasi coloris Hæmatistini.Porrò in vna aularum, circà medium palatii, est alius excelsus ascensus,Oderictus dicit pigma,super quem dum placet,stat,vel residet Imperator, ditissimè etiam operatus,ex auro,gemmis,baccis,margaritis,& lapidibus raris,& in quatuor angulis,imagines quatuor serpentum de auro puro.

Carbunculus resplendens.

Huius per tria latera dependent retia seu cortinæ de cordulis sericis, in quibus ad singulos nodos,grossa margarita habetur innexa,quibus cortinis tegitur officina:in eius concauitate tenetur tumba quadrata,in qua conueniunt conductus omnium potuum, qui bibuntur in Curia, & innumera vasorum genera,quibus potus omnibus ministratur.

Præterea,iuxta palatii ambitum,habetur grandis parci spaciamentum, diuersi generis arboribus repletum,fructus ferentibus varios,& nobis inuisos, & in parte media, aula super excelsum collem de tam mira & pulchra structura, vt eius nobilitas de facili ad præsens, non possit describi.Et vndique,per collis gyrum aquæ fossatum profundum, & latum vltrà quod pons vnicus ducit ad collem.Atque ex duobus montis lateribus, stagnum cum diuersorum copia piscium, & volucrum indomitarum, vt aucarum, annatum, cignorum, ciconiarum, ardearum,& collectorum in magna pluralitate, nec non & per parcum, multæ syluestres bestiæ,& bestiolæ quatenùs per aulæ fenestras possit Dominus pro solatio respicere volucrum aucupationes, bestiarum venationes,& piscium captiones.

Palatium instar magni oppidi.

Et hoc proculdubio sciendum,quòd in nostris partibus rara sint oppida cum pluribus mansionibus,quàm in isto palatio continentur.

Tota æstate moratur in India terra frigidissima,in hyeme in Cambalu.Odericus.

Pro India intelligit Septentrionalem Asiæ partem.

Præter palatium hoc in Caydo,habet Imperator similitèr tria: vnum in ciuitate Sadus, versus Septentrionem,vbi competens est frigus, ibi moratur in æstate. Cambalu,vbi competens calor,ibi moratur hyeme.Tertium in ciuitate Iongh, in quo & in isto Caydo, vt sæpiùs seruat sedem, eò quòd in istis est aer magis temperatus,quamuis semper calidus videtur Nostratibus.

Sadus.

CAPVT 35.

De quatuor solennitatibus,quas Magnus Can celebrat in anno.

SCiatis quòd ego,mesque sodales, pro fama magnificentiæ huius Imperatoris, tradidimus nos stipendiarios esse in guerris, contra Regem Mangi prænominatum. Et fuimus

apud

apud ipſum 15. menſibus, & certè inuenimus multò maiorem partem hominum, in mediam partem nobis non fuiſſe relatam: hominum (exceptis cuſtodibus beſtiarum & volucrum,) qui intra palatium certa gerunt miniſteria eſt numerus decem cuman.

Mandeuillus per ſpacium 15. menſium militauit Grand Can.

Nota. Traxi moram in Cambalu tribus annis: fratres noſtri locum habent in Curia ſua ſpecialiter, & feſtis diebus ſtatutis dant benedictionem, Odericus. Et quoniam Imperator habet ſatis plures quàm decem mille Elephantes edomitos, & velut vltrà numerum alias beſtias, (quarũ quædam tenentur in caueis, ſtabulis mirabilibus, vel catenis,) nec nõ & aues rapaces, & accipitres, falcones, oſtrones, gryfandos gentiles, Laueroys, & Satyros, ſed & auiculas loquentes, & papingos, & ſimiles, aliáſque cantantes: reputatur numerus hominum de iſtis curam & laborem gerentium, vltrà ſex cuman, & prætereà iugiter ad Curiam equites cum plenarijs armaturis, quinque cuman, & de peditibus cum prœliandi armaturis, cuman decem. Sed & omnes de natione quacunque mundi venientes, qui petunt deſcribi pro Curia recipiuntur. Sic enim iuſſit Imperator.

Vixit in Cambalu tribus annis.

Sex cuman famulorum.
Quinque Cuman equitum.
Decem Cuman peditum.

Habet & medicos Paganos viginti, & totidem Phyſicos, atque ſine his Medicos Chriſtianos ducentos, & totidem Phyſicos, quoniam iſte Grand Can maiorem gerit confidentiam in Medicis Chriſtianis, quàm in ſuæ propriæ nationis medicis.

Medici Chriſtiani 200. in aula Grand Can.

Hoc ergò firmiter ſcias, quod de Curia Regis accipiunt neceſſaria ſua iugitèr vltrà triginta cuman hominum, præter expenſas animalium & volucrum, cùm tamen in feſtis maioribus ſint homines propè in duplo tanti. Nec valet hic Dominus defectum vllum pati pecuniæ, eò quòd in terra ſua non currit moneta de argento, vel auro, alióue metallo, ſed tantùm de corio vel papyro: horum enim forma denariorum ſigno Imperatoris impreſſorum preciatur minoris aut maioris valoris, ſecundùm diuerſitatem impreſſionis, qui per viſitationem, detriti vel rupti, cùm ad Regis theſaurarios deferuntur, protinùs dantur pro illis noui.

Vnus Cuman continet decem millia, vt in cap. 33.
Moneta de corio vel papyro.

Quatèr in anno celebrat Imperator feſtiuitates ſolennes.

Quatuor feſta.

Primam de die propriæ Natiuitatis.

Secundam de die ſuæ primæ præſentationis in eorum Templo, quod appellant Moſeath, vbi & fit ijs, neſcio quod genus circumciſionis.

Circumciſio quædam.

Tertiam in thronizatione ſui Idoli in Templo.

Quartam de die quo Idolum cœpit dare reſponſum, ſeu facere diabolica mira. Plures enim in anno non tenet ſolennitates, niſi ſi quando nuptias filij aut filiæ celebrat.

Itaque in iſtis ſolennitatibus eſt populi multitudo abſque numero, omnes tamen in ordine debito, & ſinguli intendentes proprio miniſterio: nam ad hoc ordinandum, & diſponendum, electa ſunt quatuor Baronum nobilium genera, ex quibus nonnulli ſunt Reges, & alij Equites potentes, Duces, & Marchiones, omnes induti holoſericis, quibus inſerti cũ certa diſſeminatione ſunt vbique precioſi lapides, miræ virtutis, & aurifigia ſpecioſa, vt ſi quis in his partibus vnum de talibus haberet mutatorijs, dici non poſſet pauper imò prædiues. Et habet quodlibet millenariorum in his veſtibus colorem ſibi proprium: primum viridem, ſecundum vermiculum, tertium croceum, quartum purpureum, ſeu indicum. Ergo in die ſolenni, dum de mane Maieſtatis thronum conſcenderit, veniunt ſe præſentare hoc modo Regi.

Deſcriptio pomparum ſolennium.

Ante primum millenarium procedit copioſa ſymphonia dulcis chordarum, ſicut de violis, cytharis, lyris, & pſalterijs, non autem de tubis aut tympanis: & præcedunt Barones per tranſuerſum Aulæ coram reſidente Domino ordinatè bini, & bini ſub ſilentio, ferentes ambabus manibus ante pectus tabulam de Iaſpide, ebore, chriſtallo, pyropo, vel Hæmatiſto, & ante faciem throni inclinant ſe Imperatori profundè.

Illiſque pertranſeuntibus, ſuccedit ſimili modo millenarius ſecundus, & tertius, atque quartus, nec auditur à quoquam vnicum verbum. Hac præſentatione cum debita maturitate perfecta, reſident in baſſo à latere throni ad proprias menſas, multi Philoſophi, ſeu Artiſtæ, ſicut de Aſtronomia, Geomantia, Pyromantia, Hydromantia, Chiromantia, Necromantia, auguriis, ac aruſpiciis, & huiuſmodi, tenentes coram inſtrumenta ſuæ artis, alii Aſtrolabium, & Sphæras de auro, alii in aureis vaſis arenam, prunas ardentes, aquam, vinum, oleum, & caluarias mortuorum, loquentes & reſpondentes, nec non de auro horologia ad minùs duo: & ad cunctas horas ſecundum curſum horrologiorum innuunt Philoſophi ſeruis ſibi ad hoc deputatis, vt faciant præſtari auditum per aulam, quorum vnus aut duo conſcendentes ſcallum, alta voce proclamant, audite, auſcultate, & omnibus intendentibus dicit Philoſophorum vnus: Quilibet nunc faciat reuerentiam Imperatori, qui eſt filius Dei excelſi, Dominus & ſuperior omnium Dominorum mundi, quia ecce hæc eſt hora. Et mox ſinguli in aula inclinato corpore & capite ſe inclinant maieſtati manẽtes accliui, donec idem Philoſophus dicat, leuate. Atque protinùs ſuper hoc factum, Muſici ſuis inſtrumentis, ſuauem perſonant melodiam.

Poſteà

Posteà ad aliquantam moram simili modo dicit alius Philosophorum, minimus digitus in aure: & ecce hoc omnes faciunt, donec dicat, sufficit: sic in aliam horam, seu moram dicit, manus vestra super os, & posteà manus super caput. Atque in hunc modum iuxta temporis cursum imponunt facienda signa diuersa. hinuunt in eis latère magna mysteria, & quodlibet horum factorum melodia terminat Musicorum. Et sciatis me quandoque in tempore opportuno ab eis interrogasse de his signis, qui responderunt quòd inclinare caput Domino ad illius horæ momentum, foret confirmatio omnibus diebus vitæ suæ, ad obediendum ipsi & fidelitatem obseruandam imperio, nec posse corrumpi promissionibus siue donis, quódque digitum in auricula imponere, obturatio est auditus contra omnia Imperatori, & Imperio contraria. Et sic de singulis factis singula mysteria confingentes decipiunt audientes: horum itaque fraudulento ingenio, iste Grand Can festiuatus, non nisi ad talium iudicium parari permittit cibaria, aut fieri indumenta pro suo corpore.

Mandeuilli interrogatio.

Dum autem est visum Curiæ gubernatoribus satis de prædictis auditum, faciunt proclamatores silentium imperari, & incipit fieri offerenda Imperatori hoc modo. Intrant omnes qui sunt de cognatione Imperatoris Barones adornati nobilissimè pro cuiusque decentia balteis, & indumentis, quorum primus cum resonante symphonia præmittit ad oblationem quotquot valet de dextrarijs albis, & inclinans ante thronum pertransit, atque per eundem modum singuli Baronum offerentes aliquid dignum iocale inclinant transeuntes, silentio firmè seruato.

Offerēda Imperatori facta.

Post hos intrantes simili modo prælati & Abbates, de iurisdictionibus & religionibus Paganorum offerunt singuli pro suo statu se reuerenter inclinantes maiestati, & maior prælatorum benedicit Regi, & suis ac Curiæ quadam suæ legis oratione.

Benedictio prælati.

Deinde introducuntur elephantes, leones, pardi, simiæ, marmotæ, & diuersę bestiæ, quarum ductores singuli transeuntes inclinant reuerenter, & intentè. Postremò afferuntur aquilæ, struthiones, gryphandi, accipitres, & papingi, cum diuersis auibus & auiculis, nec non serpentes ac pisces, quorum portitores inclinant profundè, quoniam dicunt omnes terrenas creaturas debere adorationem Imperatori Grand Can filio Dei excelsi: & his perfectis,

Musicæ Camenæ persoluunt debita plenè.

Deplorat Paganorum tenebras.

Nos igitur intendamus hoc loco quæso quomodo veraciter Pagani in tenebris ambulant: diabolica inuolutione mens eorum obtenebrata non videt quomodò, cùm Imperator sit homo mortalis nuper natus, & similiter sicut illi infirmitate circundatus, atque in breui cum ipsis moriturus, quem etiam non dubitant sub Deo, clamant eum non Deum, sed Dei filium, vbi vtique prorsus ignorant illū non esse laudandū, nec adorandū, sed eum non intēdunt alium filium, filium increatum & connaturalem, qui & ipsos & eum creauit, solum superlaudabilem in secula.

Infignis Mandeuilli pietas, & desiderium conuersionis Paganorum.

Et hoc alto corde considerantes, laudemus, adoremus, glorificemus & superexaltemus totis viribus Deum, qui nos filios lucis esse voluit, & salutis, nasci, baptizari, educari, erudiri sub sinceritate fidei Christianæ, excluso schismate & errore, atque sub instituto sacrosanctæ matris Ecclesiæ, in qua sola penè ab omni circumferentia orbis terra fides, quæ saluat, & per dilectionem operatur nunc remansit.

Et oremus instantèr pro ipsis Paganis, vt agnita veritatis luce videre possint quò ambulant, vt perueniant ad Iesum Christum coæqualem Dei filium, atque in ipso, & per ipsum laudare & adorare solum vnum verum Deum.

Caput 36.

De ludis & præstigijs in suo festo, & de suo comitatu.

Semel in die comedunt.

CElebrato post hoc prandio satis morosè, quia nunquam est vltrà semel edendum in die, de quo & eius administratione nunc longum est scribere, adsunt gesticulatores, mira visu, suauiáq; auditu pedibus, manibus, brachijs, humeris, capitibus, & toto corpore, ac ad singulos gestus, correspōdētes debito vocis sono. Et semper finē horū mirabiliū cantilena subsequitur musicorū. Ex hoc ioculatores præstò sunt, & Magi, qui suis incantationibus prēstāt prēstigia multa.

Magi insignes

Inprimis faciunt videri Solem & Lunam, oriendo, descendendo consuetum diei intra Basilicam peragere cursum, cum tanta nimierate splendoris, vt vix se inuicem homines valeant recognoscere præfulgore, dicentes & mentientes, Solem & Lunam cæli hanc mittere reuerentiam Imperatori.

Hinc pari ludo comparent speciosæ puellæ ducere semitas & choreas, nobili gestu nobilissimum ferre poculum lactis equarum in aureis vasis, de quo, ponentes se in genibus, tradunt potum dominis & dominabus.

Tunc portantur & milites in equis, & armis quoq; pleni atque parati, qui feruentibus sonipedibus se inuicem cuspidibus ad fragorem magnum configentes lanceas comminuunt, & fragmenta per mensas, & pauimenta discurrunt. Ac deindè fantasticè venantur per aulam, cum

canibus

canibus & papionibus, ad ceruos, lupos, vrſos, & apros, ad lepores, & marmotas. Quæ ſingula cùm ad horam paſcant vana delectatione ſenſus corporeos, miſeriam tamen inferunt piæ menti, quòd tot & tanti homines, neglecta prorſus animi ſalute, his diabolicis operationibus ſe dederunt in toto. Nam certò non ita ſine dæmonum conſolatione & familiaritate præmiſſa confingi dicerem.

Nota: à Cambalu ad viginti dietas, eſt pulchrum nemus girans octo dietas in circuitu, in quo ſunt omnia genera animalium: cuſtodes habet circa eum. Triennio vel quadriennio viſitat illud Imperator, & cum multa gente nemus circumdat, canes emittuntur & aues, cum multo clamore, & feras congregant in medio nemoris, ad planiciem ſibi ſitam. Tunc Imperator priùs iacit quinque ſagittas, poſteà alij: tunc Imperator dicit, Eya, hoc eſt, mina beſtijs, & ſicut quilibet capit ſagittam ſuam ſignatam, percuſſam, aliis recedentibus ad ſua loca. Odericus. Pulchrum nemus octo dietarum in circuitu.

Prætereà ante Imperatoris menſam eriguntur latæ tabulæ aureæ cum ſculptis, ac ſi viuerent, imaginibus gallorum, pauonum ac diuerſarum volucrum artificioſè, quas præſtigiator facit pro libitu ſine apprehenſione manus ire, tripudiare, chorizare, tremere, compugnare, bibere, manducare, ſed & cantare: quod quidem inter cætera mihi videbatur mirabilius & aſpectu delectabilius. Nullus iſtud plenè intueri potuit, niſi qui erat in throno vel circà: & me oportet hoc loco fateri ſtultitiam propriam, quòd hac delectatione tractus, magnam adhibui apud Artiſtam diligentiam, verbis blandis, & quibuſcunque munuſculis, ac melioribus promiſsis, quod de tali mihi traderet artem, qui ſagax ſimul & fallax inprimis, ſpem meam trahebat ſponſionum funibus: ſed ad vltimum penitùs abſcindebat, dicens ſe vouiſſe Deo immortali, ne cuiquam doceret niſi proprio filio ſeniori, ac per hoc me Deus ab illo malo conſeruauit inuitum, & gratias nunc reddentem. Mandeuilli curioſitas.

Certum eſt illic homines eſſe ſubtiles ad quaſdam humanas artes, & ingenioſos ad fraudes ſuper omnes, quas noui mundi partes, vnde & inter ſe dicunt prouerbium, ſe ſolos videre duobus oculis, & Chriſtianos vno, cæteros autem homines cæcos: ſed mentitur iniquitas ſibi, quoniam ipſi vident ſolo oculo terrena & tranſitoria, & nos Chriſtiani duobus, quia cum terrenis videmus ſpiritualia, & manſura: percuſſit enim "Naas, id eſt, humani generis hoſtis cum illis fœdus, vt erueret omnibus oculos dextros, ſcilicet ſpirituales. Hoc eorum dictum in nouis Chinæ hiſtoriis refertur. Inſignis ſententia. "1. Sam. 11. 2.

Cùm itaque narrata de præmiſsis debeant ſufficere, quando Imperator Grand Can de vno quatuor palatiorum ad aliud tranſire velit, vel fortè gratia viſitationis aut ardui negotii per Imperium de Regno ad Regnum tendit per comitatus, quatuor exercitibus antè & retrò, & ex ambobus lateribus.

Primus exercitus præcedit perſonam Regis per vnam de ſuis dietis, vt ſemper in hoſpitium, de quo receſsit exercitus Rex intret nocte ſequenti, & eſt hic primus comitatus deſcriptus, & ſtatutus de numero quinquaginta cuman virorum, hoc eſt, quingentorum millium, ſempérque præuiſum, & prouiſum eſt, vt inueniant neceſſaria in locis, vbi habent quieſcere, vel tardare ſiue in hoſpitiis, ſiue in tentoriis.

Secundus & tertius comitatus ſunt eiuſdem numeri virorum cum primo, quorum vnus ad dextram tendit Imperatoris, alius ad ſiniſtram in diſtantia ab ipſo ad trium vel duarum leucarum.

Quartus autem qui maior eſt omnibus, ſubſequitur Imperatorem quaſi ad ſpatium iactus baliſtæ. Et adhuc ſciendum eſt, quòd perſonę horum comitatuum ſunt ſigillatim, & ſummatim omnes deſcriptæ, vt dum vna moritur vel recedit, protinùs alia inſcribatur, & numerus non minuatur. Ipſe verò Imperator tendit reſidens in cella ſeu camera ædificata ſuper currum grandem forma, fortem robore, nobilem in ſtructura, eſt cella de ligno Aloes optimi odoris, & parietes cellæ operti in quibuſdam locis laminis aureis, quæ & ipſæ diſtinguuntur gemmis variis, & margaritis. Cella ſeu camera ædificata ſuper currum.

Eſt autem currus quatuor rotarum duntaxat, quem trahunt quatuor Elephantes ad hoc curioſè inſtructi, cum quatuor hippis albis equæ doctis & ipſi cooperti ditiſsimis tegumentis, ac præter aurigas nobiliter indutos, qui currum cautiſsimè ducunt, adſunt & quatuor de maioribus palatij Dominis, indè ad vehiculum habentes ingem curam, de minatione eius, & ne vltimo exercitu appropriet infra iactum (vt dixi) ſagittæ. Ipſe autem interdum pro ſodalitate iubet ſecum aſcendere quam vult perſonam, ſed minimè vltrà duos. In cellæ quoque culmine, quod aperiri valet & claudi, aſtant in pertica quatuor grifandi, vel oſtiones. Odericus: duodecim Girfalcones, vt ſi fortè Imperator in aere aquilam, vulturum, ardeam, vel collectorem cerneret, citò dimitteret iſtorum duas aut plures ad aucupandum. Quatuor Elephantes & quatuor equæ albæ trahentes currum Imperatoris.

Nota, per Dromedarios, & curſores, & veloces, qui de hoſpitio ad hoſpitium permutantur, ſcit de remotis noua. Curſor enim appropinquans cornu ſonat, & tunc alius præparat, & vlteriùs Hæc hodiè vſque narrantur in hiſtorijs Chinarum.

ùs currit. Odericus. Sciendúmque tam primogenitum Regis, quàm singulas de tribus vxoribus ducere similem apparatum in itinerando post ipsum, scilicet cum quatuor comitatibus, antè, & retrò, & à lateribus, sed in valdè minori numero personarum pro placito, & in singulis curribus sequentibus se inuicem per vnam dietam.

Præmissa omnia sic fiunt, dum Imperatori tendendum est remotè, aliàs autem minuuntur, & distinguuntur comitatus, iuxta quod decet, vt nonnunquam omnes Imperatores etiam cum filio simul tendant, cum vna comitatuum distinctione. Transeunte autem sic Imperatore per ciuitates & villas quilibet ante fores proprias præparato igne iactat puluerem aromata redolentem, stans genibus flexis ad reuerentiam illi. Et sciatis vbi propè transitum illius habentur Christianæ Abbatiæ, quas olim constituit Dux Ogerus, exeunt obuiam illi in processione cum vexillis, & sancta cruce, & aqua benedicta, & thuribulo, hymnum, Veni Creator spiritus, decantantes.

Nota: Ego semel cum Episcopo nostro, & alijs fratribus, iuimus obuiam per duas dietas, & portaui thuribulum. Odericus. quos ipse à remotis videns, consueuit ad se appellare, & ad crucem suum galeatum deponere, ac reuerenter nudo capite inclinare: & prælatus dicens super eum aliquam orationem signat cruce, & aqua benedicta aspergit. Et quoniam necesse est, vt quisque extraneus ante Regem apparens, offerat ei aliquid, prælatus in disco præsentat ei fructus, & poma, vel pyra, & hoc in numero nouenario, (ratio ponitur primo capitulo proximo, quod iste numerus est plus cęteris acceptus,) de quibus Imperator vnum sibi sumens, reliqua tradit Dominis præsentibus: quo facto habent relligiosi recedere citò, ne opprimantur multitudine populi subsequentis.

Præfatum Domini galeatum, est ita intextum auro, diamantibus, gemmunculis, & orientalibus margaritis, granellis, & dubletis, & prædiues in materia & artificio, vt ei non sit æquandus magni in partibus istis Regis thesaurus. Item sicut hæc fiunt transeunti Imperatori, fiunt & Imperatricibus, & filio seniori.

Caput. 37.

Qua de causa dicitur Grand Can.

SI placet audire, dicam cur hic Imperator sit appellatus Grand Can. Audieram ego in partibus Ierosolymorum hunc esse sic dictum, à filio Noe, Cham: sed in terra Cathay accepi & aliam, & meram huius rei veritatem. Nam & scribendo hæc duo nomina habent differentiam, quòd filius Noe Cham scribitur quatuor elementis, quorum vltimum est M. & iste Can tribus tantùm, quorum vltimum est N.

Vera ratio huius nominis Can.

Post annos Christi 1100. illa prima Tartaria (de qua suprà scripsi in prima parte, capitulo quinto) fuit nimis oppressa seruitute sub Regibus circumiacentium sibi nationum. Quandò autem Deo placuit, maiores illius Tartariæ eleuauerunt de seipsis sibi Regem dictum Guis Can, cui & promiserunt subiectissimam obedientiam.

Guis Can.

Idem cùm esset prudens & strenuus 12. viriles habens filios, debellauit cum ijs & populo suo, & vicit, ac subiecit cunctos in circuitu Reges, quibus terra indebitè diù subiacuerat. Quin etiam apparente sibi in visione Angelo Dei velut milite in albo equo, & candidis armis, & hortante se, vt transiret Alpes, per montem "Beliam, & per brachium maris, ad terram Cathay, & ad alias illic plurimas regiones transiuit, & cœpit cum filijs suis aliquas ex illis debellare, & subijcere, Deo in omnibus adiuuante patenter. Et quoniam in equo albo ei Angelus apparuit, qui etiam antè passum prædicti maris nouem orationes Deo facere iussit, ideò successores vsq; hodiè diligunt equos albos, & nouenarium numerum habent præ cæteris in gratia. Dúmque Guis Can morti præ senio appropinquaret, conuocatos ante se filios hortabatur, & mouebat exemplo 12. telorum in simul colligatorum, quæ à nullo filiorum pariter frangi potuerant, sed dissoluta vnumquodque per se facilè frangebatur, sic filij (inquit) dilectissimi, si per concordiam vos inuicèm dilexeritis, & vixeritis seniori fratri obedientes, confido in Deo iuxtà promissionem mihi ab Angelo factam, quòd omnem latissimam istam terram, & optimam illius imperio subijcietis, quod & pòst patris discessum strenuissimè, ac fidelissimè (Deo sibi prosperante) perfecerunt. Et quia cum propriis nominibus habebant cognomen Can, primogenitus pro differentia obtinuit nomen Grand Can, id est, Magnus Can, videlicet suprà cæteros fratres, qui sibi in omnibus obediebant.

"Vel Belgiam

Cur albi equi, & nouenarius numerus Tartaris sint in pretio.

Grand Can.

Ochoto Can.

Itaque iste secundus Imperator vocabatur Ochoto Can.

Gui Can.

Post quem filius eius regnauit dictus Guican.

Mango Can.

Quartus autem, qui Mango Can baptizabatur, permansitque fidelis Christianus, qui etiam misso magno exercitu cum fratre suo Hallaon in partes Arabiæ & Aegypti mandauit destrui in toto Mahometi superstitionem, & terram poni in manibus Christianorum. Et frater

cum

procedente, accepit rumores de fratris sui Imperatoris morte inopinata, quapropter & redijt negotio imperfecto.

Quintus Cobilacan, qui etiam fuit Christianus, & regnauit 42. annis, & ædificauit magnam ciuitatem long, maiorem satis vrbe Roma, in qua & continetur valdè nobile palatium Imperiale. Hinc vsque hodie omnes successores paganismo fœdantur. Cobilacan.

Tempore autem meo erat nomẽ Imperatoris Echiant Can, & primogenitus eius Cosuecan præter quem & alios filios habuit 12. de quorũ nominibus conscribendis non est cure presentis. Echiant Can, Imperator Tartarorum tempore Mandeuilli.

Prima vxorum suorum vocabatur Serochan, quæ & est filia Præsbyteri Ioannis scilicet Imperatoris Indiæ. Serochan vxor Grãd Can.

Secunda Verouchan.

Tertia Caranthean.

Istis duobus Imperatoribus non creditur inueniri maior Dominus sub firmamento Cœli.

In literis quę huius Imperatoris Tartariæ scribuntur nomine ponitur semper iste Titulus. Can filius Dei excelsi, omnium vniuersam terram colentium summus Imperator, & Dominus Dominantium omnium.

Circumferentia magni sui sigilli, continet hoc scriptum.

Deus in Cælo, Can super terram, eius fortitudo. Omnium hominum Imperatoris sigillum.

Sciendum quoque quod quamuis populi ibi dicuntur, & sunt Pagani, tamen & rex & omnes credunt in Deum immortalem, & omnipotentem, & iurant per ipsum appellantes, Yroga, id est, Deum Naturæ. Sed nihilominus colunt & adorant idola, & simulachra aurea, & argentea, lapidea, lignea, filtria, lanea, & linea. Yroga, Deus Naturæ.

CAPVT. 38.

De territorio Cathay, & moribus Tartarorum.

TOtum Imperium Imperatoris Grand Can distinctum est in 12. magnas prouincias, iuxta numerum duodecim filiorum primi Genitoris Can, quarum quelibet in se continet circiter 6. millia ciuitatum, præter villas non numeratas quæ sunt velut absque numero. Habent & singulæ prouinciæ regem principalem, hoc est 12. reges prouinciales, & horum quisque sub se reges Insularum plurimos, alij 50. alij cẽtum, alij plures, qui omnes & singuli subiectissimè obediunt Grand Can Imperatori. Harũ prouinciarũ maior, & nobilior dicitur Cathay, quę consistit in Asia profunda. Tres enim sunt Asię, scilicet quæ profunda dicitur, & Asia dicta maior quæ nobis est satis propinquior & tertia minor intra quam est Ephesus beati Ioannis Euangelistę sepultura, de qua habes in præcedentibus. Audistis statum magnatum & nobilium esse permagnificũ, & gloriosum, sed sciatis longè secus esse apud communes & priuatos homines tam in ciuitatibus quam in forensibus totius Tartariæ. In prouincijs autem Cathay habetur tantum de mercimonijs specierum, & de operibus sericosis, quòd multis facilius acquirere esset prætiosum indumentum, quam camisium de lino. Vnde & quicunq; sunt alicuius honestatis non carent desuper precioso vestimento. 12. Prouinciæ Chinæ. Numerus ciuitatum. Cathay. Abundantia serici in Cathay.

Omnes tam viri quam feminæ similibus in forma vestibus inducuntur, videlicet valdè latis, & breuibus vsque ad genua cum apertura in lateribus quam firmant (dum volunt) ansis quibusdam, nam vterque sexus est brachijs seu femoralibus plenè tectus. Nunquam vtuntur toga aut collobio, sed nec caputio, vndè nec per aspectum indumentorum potest haberi differentia inter virum & mulierem innuptam. Sed nupta (vt supra dictum est) gestat per aliquod tegumentum in capite formam pedis viri. Vestitus Tartarorum.

Nubit illic vir quotquot placet mulieribus, vt nonnulli habeant decem vel duodecim vxores aut plures, Nam quisque maritus iungitur licenter cuilibet mulieri, exceptis matre, & amita, sorore, & filia. Sicut viri equitant, tendunt, & currunt per patriã pro negotijs sic & mulieres, quoniam & ipsę operantur omnia ferè artificia mechanica sicut pannos & quicquid efficitur de pãno, corio, sericoq;, minantq; carrucas, & vehicula, sed viri fabricant de ferro et de omni metallo lapidibus atq; ligno, nec vir nec mulier nobilis aut degener comedit vltra semel in die communiter. Multa nutriunt pecora sed nullos porcos, parum comeditur ibi de pane exceptis magnatibus & diuitibus, sed carnes edunt peconum, bestiarum, & bestiolarum vtpote bouũ, ouium, caprarum, equorum, asinorum, canum, cattorum, murium, & rattorum, ius carnium sorbentes, & omnis generis lac bibentes. Tartari lac equarum bibunt.

Nobiles autẽ bibunt lac equarũ, seu iumentorũ, pro nobilissimo potu & pauperes aquã bullitã cũ modico mellis, quia nec vinũ ibi habetur, nec ceruisia cõficitur: & multi ac plurimi fontes cõsiliunt in sua siti, per villas, & rura. Domus, & habitacula rotundę sunt formę, compositæ & cõtextę panis ligneis, & flexilibus virgulis, ad modũ cauearũ quas nos facimus pro auiculis, habẽtes Appellatur Medo. Formæ domorum.

Formæ domorum. Tartari Hamaxouij, i. in plaustris viuentes.

rotundam in culmine aperturã præstantem duo beneficia habitationi, quoniam & ignis quem in medio domus cõstituunt fumum emittit, & pro aspiciendo lumen immittit. Intrinsecus sunt parietes vndiq; de filtro, sed & tectum filtreũ est: has domus, dum locum habitandi mutare volunt, vel dum in diutina expeditione procedunt, ducunt secum in plaustris quasi tentoria.

Multas superuacuas obseruant ceremonias, quia respiciunt in vanitates & insanias falsas: solem & lunam præcipuè adorant, eisque frequentèr genua curuant, & ad nouilunium, quicquid est magni estimant inchoandum.

Nullus omnino vtitur calcaribus in equitãdo, sed cogunt equum flagello scorpione, reputantes peccatum non leue, si quis ad hoc flagellum appodiat, aut iumentum percuteret suo freno, pleraq; similia, quę parũ aut nihil nocent, põderant vt grauia, sicut imponere cultellum in igne, os osse confringere, lac seu aliud potabile in terram effundere, nec non & huiusmodi multa.

Nouilunium in precio. Ceremoniæ Tartarorum.

Mingere intra domum peccatũ capitale.

Sed super hęc, tenẽt pro grauiori admisso mingere intra domũ quę inhabitatur, & qui de tanto crimine proclamaretur assuetus, mitteretur ad mortem. Et de singulis necesse est vt confiteatur peccator Flaminj suę legis, & soluat summã pecuniarũ delicti. Et si peccatũ deturpationis habitaculi venerit in publicum, oportebit reconciliari domũ per sacerdotem, priusquã vllus audeat intrare. Insuper & peccatorem necesse erit pertransire ignem, semel, bis, aut ter iuxta iudicium Flaminis, quatenus per ignis acrimoniam purgetur à tanti inquinatione peccati.

Neminem hominum probibent inter se habitare, sed indifferentèr receptant, Iudæos, Christianos, Saracenos, & homines cuiuscunque nationis, vel legis, dicentes se satis putare suum ritum non ita securũ ad salutem, nisi quandoq; traherentur ad ritũ magis salutarem, quem tamen determinate nunc ignorant, imò multi de nobilibus sunt iam in Christianitate baptizati.

Attamen qui illorum sunt curiales Imperatoris non vellent in palatio publicari.

Pœnè oblitus eram, quod nunc hic dico notandum, quia dum ab extra Imperium, quis veniens nuntius aut legatus cupit tradere proprijs manibus literas Imperatori, vel deponere coram illo mandata, non permittur, donec prius in puris transeat lineis ad vnũ ad minus regum prosii purgatione, ne quid forsitan afferat cuius visu, vel odoratu seu tactu rex possit grauari.

‖Seu Gubernatorum. Arma Tartarorum.

Porrò Tartari in præcincto expeditionis habent singuli duos arcus, cum magna pluralitate telorum: Nam omnes sunt sagittarij ad manum & cum rigida & longa lancea. Nobiles autem in equis preciosè phaleratis ferunt gladios, vel spatas breues & latas, scindentes pro vno latere, & in capitibus galeas de corio cocto, non altas, sed ad capitis formam depressas.

Quicunq; de suis fugerit de prælio, ipso facto conscriptus est, vt siquãdo inuentus fuerit occidatur. Si castrũ vel ciuitas obsessa se illis reddere voluerit, nullam acceptant cõditionẽ nisi cum morte omnium inimicorum, vel si quis homo singularis se dederit victum nihilominus absque vlla miseratione occidunt, detruncantes illi protinus aures, quas postea coquentes, & in acetum (dum habuerint) ponentes mittunt inuicem ad conuiuia pro extremo ferculo: dumque ipsi in bellis arte fugam simulant, periculosum est eos insequi, quoniam iaciunt sagittas à tergo, quibus equos & homines occidere norunt. Et quando in prima acie comparant ad bellandum, mirabilitèr sese constringunt, vt media pars numeri eorum vix credatur.

Tartari retro sagittantes.

Tartari habent paruos oculos & raram barbam.

Generalitèr noueritis, omnes Tartaros habere paruos oculos, & modicam vel raram barbam. In proprijs locis rarò inter se litigant, contendunt, aut pugnant, timentes legũ pergraues emendas. Et inuenitur ibi rarius vilipilio, latro, fur, homicida, iniurias, adulter, aut fornicarius, quia tales criminatores inuestigatione sollicita requiruntur, & sine redemptione aliqua perimuntur.

Mos sepulturæ.

Dũ quis decumbit infirmus figitur lancea iuxta illum in terra, & cũ appropinquauerit mori, nullus remanet iuxta ipsum, cũ verò mortuus esse scitur, confestim in campis, & cum lancea sepelitur.

Caput. 39.

De sepultura Imperatoris Grand Can, & creatione successoris.

Imperator Grand Can postquam eius cognita fuerit defunctio, defertur mox à paucis viris in parco palatij, ad præuisum locũ vbi debeat sepeliri. Et nudato prius toto illo loco à graminibus cum cespite figitur ibi tentorium, in quo velut in solio regali de ligno corpus defuncti residens collocatur, paraturq; mensa plena coram eo cibarijs præciosis, & potu de lacte iumentorum. Instabulatur ibi & equa cum suo pullo, sed & ipse albus, nobilitèr phaleratus, & onustatus cotto pondere auri & argenti. Et est totum Tentorij pauimentum de mundo stramine stratum.

Tuncque effodiunt in circuitu fossam latam valdè, & profundam vt totum tentorium cum omnibus contentis descendat in illam. Eoq; facto ita equalitèr terram planificantes adoperiunt graminibus, vt in omni tempore locus sepulturę non valeat rpparere. Et quoniam ignorantiæ nubilo turpiter extręcati putant in alio seculo homines delectationibus frui, dicunt quòd tentoriũ erit ei pro hospitio, cibi ad edendũ, lac ad potandum, equus ad equitandum, aurum & argentũ ad respiciendũ, sed & equa lac semper præstabit, & pullos equinos successiue generabit.

Post

Poſt has itaq; Imperatoris defuncti miſeras exequias, nullus omnino audebit de ipſo loqui coram vxoribus & filijs,& propinquis, ſed nec nominare, quia per hoc puratent derogari paci,& quieti illius,qua non dubitant eum dominari, in maiori ſatis gloria Paradiſi quã hic ſtetit.

Igitur Imperatore Grand Can ſepulto obliuioni tradito, conueniunt quàm citò nobiles de ſeptem tribubus prouinciæ Cathay,& cui Imperium ex propinquitate competit,dicunt ſic.

Ecce volumus,ordinamus, atque precamur,vt ſis noſter Dominus & Imperator.

Qui reſpondet.

Si vultis me ſuper vos,ſicut & iueris mei eſt, imperare,oportebit vos fore mihi obedientes tam ad mortem quàm ad vitam.

Et reſpondentes dicunt.

Nos faciemus quicquid preceperitis.

Tuncque Imperator addit hæc verba: Ergo ſcitote, quod ex nunc verbum meum acutum & ſcindens erit vt meus enſis: Pergit quoq; ſeſſum in ſuo ‖Philtro nigro ſuper pauimentũ in conſpectu throni expanſo, & cum ipſo Philtro eleuatur ab omnibus, & inferur Imperij ſolio, ac coronatur diademate precedentis Imperatoris. i.cathedra.

Deinde ſinguli principes,& ſingulæ ciuitates, oppida, & villæ per vniuerſum imperium mittunt ei munera iocalia,vaſa,pannos,equos,elephantes, aurum, argentum, & lapides precioſos, quorum,qualium,& quantorum vix vel in numero haberi poteſt æſtimatio.

CAPVT. 40.

De multis regionibus Imperio Tartariæ ſubiectis.

BReuitèr & nunc intendo curſum deſcribere aliquarum magnarum regionum & Inſularum Imperij Tartariæ. Et primò illas quæ deſcendunt à prouincia Cathay per ſeptentrionalem plagám,vſque ad fines Chriſtianitatis Pruſſiæ,& Ruſſiæ.

Ergò prouincia Cathay deſcendens in ſui oriente à regno Tharſis iungitur ab occidente regno ‖Turqueſcen,in quo & ſunt plurimæ ciuitates, quarũ formoſior dicitur Octopar. Ipſum autem Turqueſcen regnũ iungitur ad occidentem ſui regno ſeu Imperio Perſiæ, & ad ſeptentrionem regno Coraſinę, quod ſpacioſum eſt valde, habens verſus orientem ſui vltra centum dietas deſerti: hoc regnũ eſt multis bonis abundans,& appellatur eius melior ciuitas etiam Coraſine. Turqueſtan. Octopar. Coraſine. Regnum Cõmanorum.

Iſti quoq; regno iungitur in occidente verſus partes noſtras regnum Commanorum, quod & ſimiliter longum eſt,& latum,ſed in paucis ſui locis inhabitatum: Nam in quibuſdam eſt frigus nimium,in alijs nimius calor, & in nonnullis nimia muſcarum multitudo.

De iſtis Communis venit olim fugata quædam pluralitas populi vſque in terram Ægypti quæ ibidem ſuccreta nunc ita inualuit, vt ſuppreſſis indigenis videatur regnare: Nam & de ſeipſis conſtituerunt hunc,qui modo eſt Soldanus, Melech Mandibron. Per Commanorum regnum decurrit Grandis fluuius ‖Echil, qui omni hyemali tempore in magna ſpiſſitudine gelatur: in ſuperiori quoq; parte huius regni inter duo freta Caſpię, & Oceani, mons ſublimis eſt valde ‖Chocas. Nota quod à noſtris partibus non poſſit vſque in Indiam ſuperiorem duci magnus exercitus per terras, niſi per tres tantummodo tranſitus, quorum iſte eſt vnus, qui tamen non valet tranſiri niſi tempore glaciei,& hic appellatus eſt Lodekonc. Id eſt Volga. ‖Vel Caucaſus. Iter faciendũ tempore glaciei.

Alter per Turqueſcen,& per Perſiam,tamen ibi ſunt deſerta plurium dietarum,in quibus niſi eſſet exercitus bene prouiſus, poſſet perire.

Tertius ad primos fines regni Commanorum,tranſſretando tamen mare vſque in regnum Abchaz: principalis ciuitas Commanorum dicitur Sarach. Sarach.

Ab hoc regno verſus partes noſtras inuenitur regio Laiton quæ eſt vltima paganiſmi,iungitur iſte finis terræ Chriſtianitatis regno Pruſſiæ,& Ruſſiæ. Laiton,vel Lituania.

Poſt poteſtatem Imperij Tartariæ deſcendendo à prouincia Cathay in Auſtralem plagam venitur verſus Perſiam,Syriam,& Greciam. Verſus terram Chriſtianorum poſſum aliqualiter in ſumma(quantum conuenit huic ſctipto)cõnotare. Dixi ſupra iam prouinciam Cathay iungi regno Turqueſcen ad occidentem, & illud quoq; iungi regno ſeu Imperio Perſiæ. Adquod ſciendum,quamuis rex Perſiæ habet etiam ab olim nomen Imperatoris; quia(cũ tenet aliquas terras ſui Imperij ab Imperatore Tartarorum)neceſſe eſt vt in tanto ſubiectus ſit illi.

Sunt autem in Perſia duæ regiones: vna altæ Perſiæ,quę à regno Turqueſcen deſcẽdens,iungitur ad occidentem ſui fluuio ‖Pyſon.In iſta habẽtur renominatę ciuitates,quarũ meliores duę dicuntur Bocura & Seonargant, quam aliqui appellant Samarkand: Et altera Regio baſſæ Perſiæ, deſcendens à flumine Pyſon, qui ad ſui occidentem iungitur regno Mediæ, & terræ minoris Armeniæ,& ad Aquilonem mari Caſpio,& ad Auſtrum terræ minoris Indiæ. Id eſt,Euſtrate. Bocura,vel Bohare. Samarkand. ‖Seu Neſſabó. ‖Seu Sarmaſane.

In hac baſſa Perſia tres principaliores ciuitates ſunt ‖Aeſſabor, Saphaon, ‖Sarmaſaule.In terra autẽ maioris Armeniæ quondã habebantur quatuor regna, quę nunc dicuntur ſubeſſe Imperio Perſarum Maior Armenia.

Perſarum, habetque famam terræ nobilis, & ad occidentem ſui iungitur Regno Turciæ.

Maior Armenia.

Hęc Armenia multas valdè bonas continet ciuitates, quarũ famoſior eſt Tauriſa, Regnũ Mediæ quod ſubeſt Regi Perſarum quamuis non latum eſt, tamen longũ eſt, & ad occidentem ſui regno Chaldeę coniunctum. In Media meliores duæ ciuitates ſunt, Seras, & Keremen.

Tauriſa.

Regnum Mediæ.

Hinc ad occidentẽ ſui, iuncta eſt regio Georgiæ, quę modo conſtat diuiſa in duo regna: Nam pars ſuperior, quę iungitur Medię, reſeruauit ſibi nomen Georgię, ſed inferior pars dicitur regnũ Abchaz. Ambo hęc regna, & reges eorũ, ſunt de fide Chriſtiana, & homines ita deuoti vt ad minus ſemel in hebdomada cõmunicent ſacramentis, iuxta ritũ Grecorum confectis. Et quidem regnum Georgię ſubiacet imperio Grand Can: ſed Abchaz nunquam ab ipſo Imperatore Tartariæ, neque Perſarum, neq; Medorum domino ſubdi potuit, eo quòd munitum eſt aquis & rupibus & aljs prouiſionibus contra impugnationes hoſtiles.

Georgia.

Abchas, aliàs Alchaz.

In parte regni Georgiæ ſunt tenebræ.

Iuxta hoc regnũ Abchaz habetur vnũ mirum & mirabile, nam magnus eſt territorij locus dictus Hamſon, & continens in circuitu ſpacium vię quatuor dietarũ: videtur ſemper opertus tenebris denſis vt nemo audeat illic intrare profundè, quoniam ſi qui præſumpſerint, non ſunt viſi reuerti. Attamen fatentur vicini ſub illis ſe tenebris audiſſe nonnunquã clamores hominũ, hinnitus, mugitus, rugitus, & boatus pecudum, & beſtiarum, ſed & cantus gallorum, vt per hęc & alia ſigna conſtet ibi habitare gentes: nam & fluuius decurrens monſtrat ſigna ſępè certiſſima in ſuo exitu: ignoratur tamen ſi tenebræ per totum territorium ſint eiuſdem denſitatis, an ſint in circuitu per aliquod ſpacium, & intrinſecus plus luminoſum.

Dicuntur autem tenebrę iſtę olim per diuinum miraculum adueniſſe. Saboere enim Imperatore Perſarum, circa annum Gratię ducenteſſimum quinquageſſimũ in perſecutione Chriſtianorũ tendente cum pleno exercitu per hunc locum, & Chriſtianis tyrannidem eius fugientibus, contigit ex improuiſo eos ità arctari, vt ſe effugere deſperarent, quapropter ſtatim ad orationis refugium omnes ſe ſternentes clamauerunt ad Chriſtum auxiliatorem ſuum: Et deus, qui puro corde Chriſtianos ad ſe orantes ſemper exaudit, expleuit illic literam vaticinij Iſaiæ: quia ecce tenebræ operient terrã & caligo populos, monſtrans per tenebram terrenam, quam eis ſuperduxit, quas paſſuri eſſent inimici nominis Chriſti tenebras infernales, indicansque per temporalem vitam, quam ſibi fidelibus conſeruauit, eam quam poſſeſſuri ſunt viri Chriſtiani vitam perpetuam, & cœleſtem.

Itaq; hoc regnum Abchaz ad occidentem ſui iungitur regno Turciæ, quod in longo & lato valdè extẽſum multas cõtinet prouincias ſcilicet Iconię, Cappadocię, Saure, Brike, Beticon, Patan, & Gennoch; hij omnes Turci, cum tota Syria & Arabia vſq; ad Galliziam Hiſpanię, ſubſunt Imperatori Babylonię Soldano, & ſunt in ſingulis prouinciis & regionibus ciuitates magnę, & multę nimis. Conſequẽtèr huic regno Turcię ad Occidentem ſui in ciuitate ‖Cathaſa iungitur per mare Grecię ſuperior pars poteſtatis Imperatoris Conſtantinopolitani, & quaſi ad Aquilonem contiguatur regno Syrię: cuius vna prouincia eſt terra promiſſionis, prout hoc ſacis dictum eſt ſuprà. Sunt & alię terrę, & Inſulę, & patrię latę, & ſpatioſę, continentes in ſe multa regna, & reges, & gentes diuerſas, de quibus nunc per ſingula pertractare non eſt conſilij.

‖Vel Sathata.

Ad ſupradictã Chaldeã iungitur Meſopotamia, & minor Armenia, & velut ad Auſtrum eius Æthiopia, Mauritania, Lybia alta & baſſa, & Nubia. Excepto ergò duntaxat diſtrictu Imperij Perſię & poteſtate Soldani, omnes ſępè pertractatę terræ, regiones, regna & Inſulę deſcendendo tam per Aquilonem, quã ad Auſtrum à prouincia Cathay, vſq; ad Chriſtianitatem ſunt de Imperio Tartariæ Grand Can. Et notandum de ſpacio diſtantiæ, quod inſtitores de Roma, vel Venetia feſtinantes tam per terras, quàm per mare, expendunt de tempore 11. menſes, & quandoque duodecim, priuſquam in Cathay valeant peruenire.

Extenſio Imperij Grand. Can.

Diſtantia à Roma ad Cathayam per Inſtitores.

Hijs itaq; viſis deſcribam ſaltem aliquas à prouincia Cathay in oriẽtem terras Imperij Tartarorum. Illic habetur regio Cadilla ſpacioſa multũ, ſimul & ſpecioſa: creſcunt namq; in ea fructus ad quantitatẽ magnorũ Cawardorũ, in quibus inuenitur vna beſtiola, in carne & ſanguine ad formam agnelli abſq; lana, & manducatur totus fructus cũ beſtiola. Sunt & alij plures diuerſi fructus, quorũ penes nos non eſt reſpectus nec vſus. Nam & ſunt ibi nonnullæ ſpeciales vites ferentes botros incredibiliter magnos, quorum vnum vix virilis vir valet in haſta portare.

Cadilla Regio orientalior Cathaya.

Angli noſtri hanc beſtiolam nuper viderunt in Perſia.

Et deinde in meridiem per aliquas dietas, poteſt peruenire ad primas Caſpiæ alpes, quę deſcendendo deſcendunt vſque ad Amazoniam, inſulam mulierũ, de qua tractatum eſt. Inter has Alpes retinetur maxima multitudo Iudæorum decem tribuũ Iſrael, per Dei voluntatem ita incluſa, vt in copioſa numeroſitate non poſſint à noſtra parte exire, quamuis aliqui pauci nonnunquam ſunt viſi tranſiſſe. Haberent autem competentem exitum circa inſulam Amazonię, ſed illum diligenter regina obſeruat.

Bacchariæ Regnum vel Boghariæ.

Porrò de regione Cadilla in orientem venitur ad regnum Backariæ, in qua mali & multum

crudeles

crudeles habitant homines, nec eſt ſecurum itinerare per illam, quòd ad modicam occaſionem (ſi Deus non conſeruaret) occiderent viatorem & manducarent. Illic ſunt arbores ferentes lanam velut ouium, ex qua texunt pannos ad veſtimenta. Hyppocentauri ſunt ibi pro media ſuperiori parte in forma humana, & pro inferiori figura equorum, ſeu taurorum, venantes in terris, & piſcantes in aquis quod comedunt, & ſuper omnia carnes hominũ, quos capere poſſunt. Arbor Lanifera.

Nec non & gryphi illic apparent pro media poſteriori parte in forma leonis, pro anteriori in forma aquilę. Sed ſciatis, corpus magni gryphi maius eſſe octo leonibus de partibus iſtis. Nam poſtquã equum, bouem vel hominem, etiam aſinum occiderit, leuat & aſportat pleno volatu: tanquã cornua bouis aut vaccę ſunt illi vngulæ, de quibus etiam fieri ſolent ciphi ad bibendum, qui plurimùm reputantur precioſi. Fiunt quoq; de pennis alarum eius arcus rigidi, & fortes, ad iaciendum miſſilia & ſagittas. Ad iſtius regni Baccarię extremitates in Orientem finitur terra poteſtatis Grand Can: Et iungitur ei terra poteſtatis magni Imperatoris Indiæ, qui ſemper vocatur Prębyter Ioannes. Notandum, quoties per prouincias totius Imperij Grand Can, quicquam accidit, quod Imperatorẽ non oportet latere, confeſtim mittuntur per reges aut barones nuncij in dromedarijs aut equis, qui celerrimè feſtinant ad certa hoſpitia, ad hoc ipſum, velut abſque numero per imperium inſtituta: Iſque nuncius hoſpitio appropinquans, & cornu reſonans, dum auditur paratur nuncius alter, qui de manu ſuſcipiens literas, per recentem dromedarium feſtinat ad aliud hoſpitium, & ſic in breui tempore perferuntur rumores ad curiæ aures. Similiq́ue modo nuncij pedites permutantur de hoſpitio in hoſpitium, vt citiùs percipiatur negocium huius nuncij: appellantur ſua lingua Chidibo. Gryphones, de quibus Paulus Venetus. Curſores, Chidibo Tartaricè dicti.

Ergò per prędmiſſa ſatis elucet magnam eſſe nobilitatem, poteſtatem, reuerentiam, & dominationẽ Imperatoris Tartarię Grand Can de Cathay, & quòd nullus ab iſta parte Imperator, nec Perſię, nec Babylonię, nec Grecię, ſed nec Romę eſt illi comparandus. Vndè & multũ miſerandũ eſt, quia ipſe cùm toto Imperio nec eſt fide Catholica illuſtratus, nec ſalutari lauachro regeneratus: & hoc oremus vt in breui eueniat, per Ieſum Chriſtum Dominum noſtrum. Charitas Mandeuilli.

Explicit pars ſecunda huius operis.

¶ Tertia pars.

Caput. 41. *De magnificentia Imperatoris Indiæ & precioſitate Palatij.*

QVm in præcedentibus Imperator Indiæ dictus ſit magnus, reſtat de illius magnificentia aliquid poni hoc loco: cuius vtiq; gloria, nobilitas, & poteſtas, dici non habetur minor, quàm dicti Imperatoris de Cathay: nam etſi in aliquibus videatur forſitan minor, eſt tamen in aliquibus ſatis maior, quia omne ęquale nõ eſt idem cum illo cui ęquatur: itaq; à finibus regni Bachariæ ſupradicti vbi contiguatur Imperio Indię, eundo per multas dietas intratur in regnum ‖ Pentoxyrię quod eſt magnę latitudinis, & abundantię in multis bonis: huius nominatior ciuitas, dicitur Nyſe, & in ea habet Imperator palatiũ Imperiale, in quo reſidet dum ſibi placet. Imperator iſte ſemper vocitatus eſt Prębyter Ioannes, cuius nominis cauſam audieram quandoq; non veram: ſed in illis partibus accepi rationem indubitatã, quam breuiter hîc enarro. Circa annũ ab incarnatione Domini octingenteſſimũ, dux Ogerus de Danemarchia, cum quindecim cognationis ſuę baronibus, & armatis viginti milibus tranſiuit mare Grecię, & fauente ſibi Deo conquiſiuit Chriſtianitati per multa prędia penè omnes terras, regiones, & inſulas, quas eſſe de poteſtate Grãd Can prędixi, nec non & omnes, quę ſunt de poteſtate Imperij huius Imperatoris Indię. Eratq; inter Barones vnus denominatus Ioannes filius Goudebucf, regis Friſonũ: qui dictus Ioãnes Deo deuotus fuit, & dũ licuit Eccleſiarũ limina iniuit, vnde & barones ei dabant quaſi per iocum Prębyter Ioannes vocabulum. Dum ergo Ogerus dictas regiones expugnatas diuideret in hijs quindecim ſuis cognatis, & quemlibet eorũ in ſuo loco cõſtitueret regem, quatenus Chriſtiana religio in illa orbis ſuperficie ſemper ſtabilis permaneret, tradidit iſti Prębytero Ioanni ſuperiorẽ Indiam, cũ 4000. inſulis, regionibus, & ipſũ prębfecit Imperatorẽ ſuper reliquos cognatos, vt ei certa tributa impenderent, & in omnibus obedirent, atq; ex tunc omnes ſucceſſores Indiæ ſunt vocati Prębyter Ioannes, & vſq; in hodiernũ tempus boni mãſerunt Chriſtiani, & religionis æmulatores. Interim cum cauſa matrimoniorum aut procurationis filiorum diſperſa eſt primi Imperij integritas, & multę de inſulis conuerſę vel potius peruerſę retroceſſerunt ad vetuſtum ſqualorem paganiſmi primi. Nota. Recedens à Cambalu verſus orientem poſt 50. dietas ad terram Prębyteri Ioannis, principalis ciuitas terrę vocatur Coſan, ſatis parua ſicut Vincentia: habet etiam ſub ſe multas alias ciuitates. Ex pacto ſemper habet in vxorem vnam de filiabus Grand Can. Narratio de rebus geſtis Ogeri Ducis Daniæ. Vndè Presbyter Ioannes ſit dictus. 4000. Inſulæ. Coſan ciuitas.

Per multas peruenitur ad prouinciam Caſan, quę eſt ſecunda melior de mundo, vbi ſubtilior eſt, habet dietas 50. longior, 60. & eſt vna de duodecim partibus Imperij Grand Can. Oderi- Caſan.

Thebeth.

cus. Vide infra capitulo 49. de Cassan, & de Epulone. Deinde venitur in Thebeth prouinciam, quæ Indiæ est confinis. Itaque Rex & Imperator iste tenet spatiosissimum Imperium plenum valdè multis Regionibus & Insulis amplis, diuisum inter quatuor flumina magna de Paradiso terrestri descendentia, Pyson, Gyon, Tygrim, & Euphratem. Nam vltra fines orientales eius Imperij, & terrestrem Paradisum, nullus hominum habitat vel dominatur.

Insulæ Orientales.

Præterea imperat multis alijs regionibus & Insulis quæ distinguntur per brachia maris Oceani, & in quibus singulis continetur grandis numerositas ciuitatum ac villarum, & multitudo innumera populorum præ abundantia & præciositate omnium terrenorum bonorum.

Imperium Indiæ habetur famosum per vniuersum orbem. Sed & famosius haberetur si mercatores mundi communitèr possint & auderent adire sicut Cathay. Nostratibus enim perrarus est illic accessus, tam præ longinquitate, quàm præ marinis periculis. Nam exceptis alijs sunt ibi quamplures Adamantini colles, ad oram maris, & intra mare, qui sua virtute attrahunt sibi naues ferrum continentes. Quoniam & mihi nauiganti mõstrabatur per nautas à remotis quasi paruula Insula in mari, quam asserebant totalitèr ab antiquis temporibus paulatim ibi cumulatam de nauibus per Adamantes retentis.

Latitudo Imperij præsbyteri Ioannis est 4. mẽsium iter.

Estimatur autem latitudo huius Imperij per dietas quatuor mensium, sed longitudini non datur estimatio, eo quòd tenditur vsque Paradisum vbi nullus accedit.

Duodecim reges prouinciales.

Distinctum est Imperium per duodecim prouincias, quibus totidem præsunt reges principales seu prouinciales, & quorum singuli habent sub se Reges, Duces, Marchiones, & Barones, præstantes atque reddentes presbytero Ioanni promptam obedientiam, & certa tributa. Sæpius & cõmunitèr tenet sedem Imperator in palatio vrbis Imperialis Suse. Hoc autem Palatium tale & tantum est, vt per me non credatur debite estimandum. Istud tamen dico audentèr in summà, quòd grandius, nobilius, preciosius, & placidius est, in auro, gemmis, structuris, & schemate supra descripto palatio Grand Can in Caydo.

Suse sedes Imperialis.

Et ex speciali sciatis, istius palatij principales portas esse de Sardonico, vndiq; in ebore circumcluso: sed & transuersæ lineæ sunt omnes Eburneæ, aularum & cubiculorum seneſtræ christallinæ. Mensarum quædam Smaragdinę, aliquæ Hęmatistinæ, cæterorumq; lapidum preciosorum per aurum sibimet coniunctorum. Et nonnullæ in toto aureæ vel gemmunculis disseminatæ, & vnaquæque de mensis cum stabilimento proprij generis. De throni quoque preciositate, quia meæ demonstrationis excellit modũ, solummodo dico, singulos ascensionis gradus esse singulorum lapidum preciosorum: Primum onychis, secundum christalli, tertium iaspidis, quartum hęmatisti, quintum sardij, sextum cornelij. Et septimus qui est sub sedentis Imperatoris pedibus, ipse est, chrysolitus, omnes circumfusi, & incluſoria arte formati, auro splẽdido relucentes. Sed & ambo throni reclinatoria ex smaragdis auro combinatis, eoque distincto nobilissimis granis, & gemmis: cuncti pilarij in camera Regis dormitoria cõsistunt de auro fuluo, disseminati baccis, & quampluribus carbunculorum rubetis, totum de nocte habitaculum illustrantibus.

Magnificentia palatij presbiteri Ioannis.

Et nihilominus in ea christallina lampas plena balsamo pistico sed ardens & lucens, tam pro augendo lumine, quàm pro corrigendo aere, tamen etiam pro ministrando optimo odore.

Forma lecti Imperatoris compacta est de puris & nobilissimis Saphyris, concluſi vtiq; aureis vel ebumeis ligaturis, vt virtute lapidũ capiat suauem somnũ, motusq; carnis inhonesti stimuli, in eo refrenentur. Nunquã enim iungitur mulieri nisi soli coniugi propriæ, sed nec illi nisi quatuor quindenis anni videlicet in capite hyemis, veris, æstatis, & autumni causa sobolis generãdæ.

Vtq; breuitèr transeam de multa huius palatij nobilitate, mirabile hoc solummodò præmissis super addo. Quia circa medium illius in summo apice turris maioris, duo sunt nodi seu pomella de decoctissimi auri metallo miræ magnitudinis, & serenę resplendentiæ, & in ipsis formati duo carbunculi grandes, & lati, sua virtute tenebras effugantes, & velut splendorem plenilunij nocturno tempore mentientes.

CAPVT. 42.

De frequentia palatij & comitatu Imperatoris.

SEruiunt & prestò sunt iugitèr Domino Imperatori septem reges, qui in capite singulorum mensiũ, alijs septem regibus pro illis palatiũ ingredientibus recedunt ad propria, donec reuoluatur eis tempus statutum. Hij curam habent de gubernatione administrationũ in aula maiori per subiectos eis 72. duces, & 300. & 63. comites seu barones, quorum vnusquisque optimè nouit & diligentèr intendit proprio ministerio.

Nam isti sunt Imperatoris Cubicularij, isti Camerarij, isti scindunt Regi morsellos: alij de apponendis curam gerunt ferculis & deponendis, deafferendis, de asportandis, alij pincernæ, Archimandritæ, ostiarij, & sic de singulis.

Nec

Nec non absque iam dictis, manducant omni die in aula coràm Imperatore, duodecim Archiepiscopi, 220. Episcopi, quibus etiam alij totidem certis temporibus succedunt per vices. Verumtamen ad quotidianas expensas vsque præmissas, veniunt de Curia 300. millia personarum, sed non ampliùs: sed sicut prædixi de Curia præcedentis Imperatoris, sic nullus hîc, cuiuscũq; sit status, aut sexus, comedit vltrà semel in die, & hoc ipsum sobriè satis: quoniam prout æstimare possum, expensæ duodecim hominum de nostris communitèr compensarent triginta hominum in partibus illis. Taxat gulositatem Europæorum.

Dum Ioannem Presbyterum contingit procedere cum exercitu in plena exhibitione, non deferuntur vexilla, sed tredecim cruces magnæ altitudinis, & grossitudinis, de auro distincto pretiosissimis petris, in honorem Christi & suorum Apostolorum duodecim. Hæ vectantur in singulis curribus, & singularum ad hoc maximis curribus cum custodia cuiuscunque crucis, decem mille equitum, & centum mille peditum, nec tamen hic numerus auget vel minuit principalem exercitum Paganorum.

Tempore pacis per terras proprias de palatio ad palatium, aut de regno ad regnum, dum tendere ei placèt, comitatur vtique magna multitudine hominum antè & retrò, & ex vtroque laterum.

Túncque portantur coràm eo tria valdè notabilia, quæ tam illi quàm omnibus ea dignè notantibus esse possunt salutaria. Præcedit enim eum in spatio circiter octodecim passuum discus onustus velut omni genere pretiosorum vasorum auri & argenti, gemmarum, & inæstimabilis artificij. Illúmque discum subsequitur propinquiùs Imperatori ad spatium centum passuum, alia crux lignea nullo penitùs auro, nulloue colore aut preciositate artificialis operis adornata.

Dehinc ad sex passuum succedit ibidem propinquans Imperatori discus aureus terra nigerrima plenus. Sunt enim prædicti comitatus in custodiam & honorem personę Imperatoris, discus vasorum in ostensionem diuitiarum, & maiestatis Imperialis. Crux in recordatione passionis & mortis, quam in cruce ligni simplice Christus passus est pro nobis. Et terra nigra in memoriam diræ mortis, qua caro ipsius Imperatoris, quæ terra est, in terram ibit corruptionis.

Caput 43.

De quibusdam miris per regiones India.

Licèt plurima mira habeantur in terra Imperij Presbyteri Ioannis, ne materia operis nimiùm proteletur, multa tego silentio: & solùm de quibusdam in principalibus Insulis narro.

Ergò inprimis dico vidisse me magnum mare arenosum, quod de solùm minuta arena sine vlla aqua cum lapillorum granellis currit, & fluit per altas eleuationes, & depressiones ad similitudinem maris aquæ, nec vnquam quiescit: & quòd ipse non cesso stupere, inueniuntur pisces ad littus proiecti, qui cum sint alterius formæ & speciei, quàm de nostro mari, videntur tamen gustui in edendo delicatiores. Nullo tamen humano ingenio videtur hoc mare transuadari, aut nauigari, aut illo piscari, sed nec propter sui longitudinem, & plura impedimenta de propè circuiri. Magnum mare arenosum. In orientali India vsque hodie venti anniuersarij, arenis ostia fluminum suffocant.

Item ab hoc latere maris per tres dietas habentur magnæ montium alpes, inter quas venit quasi oriens de Paradiso fluuius decurrentibus petris, nihil penitùs habens aquę, in quibus æstimandæ sunt plurimum magnarum esse virtutum, quamuis de singulis humanę scientiæ constare non potest.

Hic petrarum fluuius currit ad interciſum tempus, quasi in tribus septimanę diebus, per spatium deserti Indiæ plurium dietarum, velut fluuius, quousque tandem se perdat in mare arenosum prædictum, atque ex tunc ipsi lapides penitùs non comparent. Tempore autem sui cursus nullus appropinquare præsumit, præ strepitu eius & motu: sed tempore quietis aditur sine periculo vitæ.

In Orientem versus fluuij originem ad ingressum deserti magni inter quosdam de montibus, cernitur grandis terræ planicies tanquam spatiosi campi totalitèr arenosi, in quo videntur ad Solis ortum exurgere de arena, & secundùm eleuationem Solis excrescere quædam virgulta, atque in feruore meridiei producere fructum. Ac de illo in Solis declino fructus cum arbustulis paulatim minui, & in occasu penitùs deperire, vnde & nullus hominum audet illorum vti fructibus, ne sit quid fantasticum & nociuum.

In huius deserti interioribus, vidi homines in toto syluestres, qui etsi in superioribus formam prætendere videantur humanam, descendunt in subterioribus ad formam bestiæ alicuius.

Horum quidam frontes gerunt cornibus asperatas, grinientes vt ferę vel apri: alij nonnulla vti videntur loquela, quam nemo rationalium nouit, & quibusdam signis concepta depromunt. Et est illic pluralitas syluestrium canum, qui dicuntur papiones, quibus postquam edomiti,

Papagalli. miti,& ad venandum instructi fuerint,valent capi multæ bestiæ per desertum. Est & copiosita papingonum auium viridium in colore quas appellant phicake,& quarum diuersa sunt genera, nobiliores habent latas in rostro linguas, & in vtroque pede digitos duos. Et quædam ex istis naturaliter loquuntur verba aut prouerbia,seu salutationes,in patriæ idiomate, vt euidenter salutes concedant,& reddant viatoribus,& nonnunquam debitum iter errantibus per desertum ostendant.Minus autem nobiles non loquuntur ex natura, sed si latas habent linguas, & non sunt vltrà duorum annorum ætatis,possunt per assiduitatem instrui ad loquelam.

Aliæ nec loquuntur,nec erudiuntur,sed solùm clamitant pro voce milui, & nisi tres digitos habent in pede.

Nota: in quarta orientali Deus dedit fratribus minoribus magnam gratiam,vnde in magna Tartaria ita expellunt ab obsessis dæmones,sicut de domo canes: vnde quandoque per decem dietas ad eos adducuntur dæmoniaci alligati,& statim fratribus præcipientibus in nomine Iesu Christi, exeunt,& liberati baptizantur,& comburunt idola, & plures credunt, & quandoque exeunt idola de igne, & fratres proijciunt aquam benedictam, & clamat dæmon, Vide,de meo habitaculo expellor propter fratres nunores. Ita multi credunt, & baptizantur. Odericus.

Melescorde Regio. Item nota:dum recederem de terra Præsbyteri Ioannis versus occidentem,applicui ad contratam vnam, quæ dicitur Melescorde,quę pulchra est, & multùm fertilis: inter montes duos huius "Vel regionis. "contratę fecerat quidam murum circundantem mõtem,& in eo fontes nobilissimos,& omne delectabile.Et hunc locum dicebant paradisum,sicut hîc ferè continetur.Ideò Odericus, qui posteà narrat de valle infausta,in hoc se terminat.

Ad supradictum Indiæ regnum Pentexoriæ satis propè, & lata est & longa Insula, Mischorach,bonis copioſè referta,de qua vnum scribo præteritum mirum. Mischorach.

Ante paucos hos annos, villanus ditissimus, sibi valdè preciosum construxerat palatium, quasi pro Paradiso terrestri,circundatum, munitum fortalitijs, ac repletum omnibus corporalibus delicijs.

Illic areæ,turres,cameræ,cubicula,cum alijs ædificijs,in multo numero,& gloria permagnifica,ac historiarum picturis,inter quas,nonnunquam prodigioso artificio bestiæ & bestiolæ,aues & auiculæ discurrebant,volitabant,& per pugnas,garritus,collusiones,mẽtiebantur viuere.

Illic prata, & pometa,& seruatoria circà delicioſi collis congestum, distincta velut omni genere florum, arborum, & herbarum, cum multis fontibus & riuulis, quorum perspicuitas,& fluxus in glaris suauem & auditui præstabant refectionem, & super aliquos fuerunt exceptioris artificij, circumstructi auro,& argento,& gemmis, & tres principales fontes emittentes ad palatium Domini per occultas conductas,riuulos vini,lactis,& mellis. Ditissimi villani paradisus factitius.

Copiosus quoque numerus formosorum puerorum,& puellarum, ætatis inter decem & sex decem annos,indutorum torquibus,& cycladibus exauratis,exercentium inter iocos cantus & spectacula,ac seruientium suo Domino prope nutum.Audiebantur ex turrium costodibus, nec non videbantur dulcisonæ symphoniæ,generum diuersorum,vt certissimè putares, non hominum,sed Angelorum: & in istis,ac similibus,deliciebatur iste villanus.

Sed & aurum liuido nil iuuat,imò nocet:quia enim hic inuidiæ & otij facibus super ingenuitatem mentis omnium generaliter nobilium principum verebatur in corde: (ingenuitas enim, & rusticitas nunquam cohabitãt in cordis vno domicilio) Composuerat ista sibi in hunc finem, vt per se singulos aduocaret aliquos vasallos corpore robustos,mentéq; audaces atq;,ad omnẽ proteruiam benè procliues:& cuilibet pro placitis muneribus commisit vt illum seu illum principem seu Baronem,quem dicebat sibi aduersariũ,clàm per insidias vel impetũ occideret,promittens quenquam post factum ad se recepturum perpetuò in hunc locum: sed & velut vaticinans pseudopredicauit,si quem illorum pro his flagitijs contigeret corporaliter tradi morti,nihilominùs animam eius in hunc amœnum Paradisum recipi, & viuere in æternum.

Mandeuillus oculatus testis Per hunc igitur modum nonnullis nobilibus occisis, & interfectis,tandem nudabatur eius nequitia tanta,& congregati regionis Barones miserum occiderunt,eius opera destruentes.Ipse ego inibi ductus, vidi fontium loca,& multa rei vestigia.

Caput 44.

De loco & dispositione vallis infaustæ.

HVius ad insulæ extremitates non procul à fluuio Pyson, habetur locus mirabilis pariter & terribilis,vltrà omne mundanũ,penè & procul:de euentibus,ac laboribus infinitis,quæ mihi meisque in tempore itinerationis acciderunt hucusque subticui,cùm iam vnum de maioribus ecce narro.

Est

Eſt illic in alpibus vallis infauſta, quatuor fermè leucarum: longitudo vallis, quaſi ad quatuor milliaria Lombardica, appellata vallis incantationis, ſeu periculoſa, ſeu propriùs dæmonioſa: intrà quam diebus ac noctibus reſonant boatus & tumultus tonitruorum, tempeſtatum, clamorum, & ſtridorum, diuerſique generis ſonituum terribilium, quos illic exercet multitudo ſpirituum malignorum.

Propè ad vallis medium ſub vna rupium, apparet omni tempore viſibiliter integrũ ac maximum caput dæmonis vſque ad humeros tantùm, cuius ſpeciem præ horrore nullus pleno intuitu humanus audet diu oculus ſuſtinere: nam reſpicientes contrà aſpicit truculentèr, agitans oculos minacitèr, tanquam ex palpebris eiecturus (quæ & ſcintillant) flammas in altum. Totúmque caput ſeſe rotat ad minas, & variat terribiliter modum & continentiam ſub repentè diuerſis maneriebus. Exítque de illo per totum ignis obſcuratus fumo, & fœtor tantus, quòd per magnum ſpatium viæ peſſimam vallem infectat.

Ingredi autem volentibus, apparet ſemper ad introitum vallis, magna copia auri, argenti, vaſorum, veſtium, & rerum pretioſarum, quas proculdubio ibi dæmones confingunt, quibus & ab olim multi inſipientium hominum concupiſcentia tracti intrarunt, & vſque nunc intrant pro colligendo theſauro: ſed de Infidelibus pauciſſimi reuertuntur, imò nec de Chriſtianis, qui auaritiæ cauſa ingrediuntur: per vallis autem ſemitam, quæ inter montes & monticulos, tortuoſa & aſpera eſt, gradientes vident, & audiunt, dæmoniacos ſpiritus multos volutantes, & imaginibus corporum viſibilium, ſerpentum, volucrum, vlularum, lamiarum, & huiuſmodi ſpecierum horribilium dentibus minitantes, vngulas erigentes, incognitos ſibilos ſpirantes propè ſuper capita ad aures tranſgredientium. Sempérque minuitur lumen aeris, donec ventum fuerit ad terribiliſſimum locum capitis antedicti.

Si quis autem ſincerę fidei Chriſtianus per contritionẽ verã & confeſsionẽ, ſe poſuerit in ſtatu ſaluationis, munitus corporis Chriſti myſterijs, ac ſigno crucis, cum intentione ibidem agendi pœnitentiam de admiſsis, & cauendi de admittendis, putatur poſſe hanc tranſire vallem ſecurus quidem à morte, non tamen liber à laboribus, horroribus, & tormentis, & exire, de omnibus culpis præteritis corruptis, ac de futuris magis ſolito cautus, ſicut ſcriptum eſt, territi purgabuntur.

Nota aliud mirabile magnum. Vidi cùm irem per vnam vallem poſitam iuxta flumen quod egreditur de paradiſo, vidi in ea multa corpora mortuorum, in qua etiam audiui multa genera Muſicorum, qui ibi mirabilitèr pulſabant: tantus erat ibi tinnitus Muſicorum, quòd incuſsit mihi timorem horribilem.

Eſt autem longitudo illius vallis quaſi ad quatuor milliaria Lombardica, in qua ſi vnus Infidelis intrat, nunquam egreditur, ſed ſine mora moritur: Et licet ſciui, quòd intrantes moriuntur, tamen acceptaui intrare, vt viderem quid ibi eſſet. Dum intraſſem tot humana cadauera ibi vidi, quod niſi quis videret, credere non poſſet.

In hac valle, ab vno eius latere, vidi faciem hominis valdè horribilem, qui tantum horrorem mihi incuſsit, quòd putaui me ſpiritum exhalare, propter quod ſæpè repetij verbum vitæ, ſcilicet, verbum Caro factum eſt.

Ad illam faciem non audebam accedere, niſi ad diſtantiam octo paſſuum: poſteà iui ad caput vallis, & aſcendi ſuper montem arenoſum, in quo vndique circumſpiciens, nihil videbam, niſi inſtrumenta muſicalia, quæ audiebam fortitèr pulſare. Cùm fuiſſem in capite montis, reperi multum argentum congregatum ibi in ſimilitudinem ſquammarum piſcium, vnde poſui in gremio, ſed quod de ipſo non curabam, dimiſi illud, & ſic illæſus tranſiui Deo concedente.

Sarraceni cùm hoc ſcirent, reuerebantur me eſſe baptizatum, & ſanctum: mortuos nunc in valle dicebant, homines infernales.

Odericus ad literam hic terminat ſuum librum: non fuit tot perpeſſus in valle, ſicut ego. Anno Domini 1331. Ianuarij nono, migrauit ad Chriſtum, in conuentu Minorum: cuius vitam ſtatim in fine, & vſque nunc claris miraculis diuina prouidentia approbat, & commendat, prout continebatur in quaterno, à quo concordantias hic ſuperſeminaui.

Caput 45.

De periculo & tormentis in valle eadem.

ITaque dico vobis, cùm ego cum ſodalibus, qui ſimul eramus, quatuordecim diuerſarum nationum ante ingreſſum huius tanti periculi peruenisſemus, nos tractatu longo, & deliberatione acuta conſiliabamur, vtrùmnam ingredi deberemus, & quidam affirmabant, alii verò negabant. Erat autem in numero duo deuoti fratres, de religione beati Franciſci, natione Lombardi, qui videbantur pro ſeipſis non multum curare ingreſſum, niſi quia noluerunt nos animare ad ingreſſum,

ingressum, dicentes, si qui nostrum per confessionem, & Eucharistiæ susceptionem se ibidem præmunirent, ingrederentur cum illis: quo, ab omnibus mediante debita prouisione, quam ipsi fratres penes se gerebant peracto, parauimus mentes nostras cum pedibus ad intrandum.

Sed ecce quinque de nobis, duo Græci & tres Hispani, semetipsos ab alijs segregantes, visi sunt alium requirere introitum nos precedere cupientes, & certè nos illos exinde non vidimus, & quid eis acciderit an periculum subierint, vel ne ignoramus.

Nos autem nouem per vallem processimus in silentio, & cum cordis ea deuotione, quam quisque sibi potuerit obtinere: & ecce in breui transacto spatio apparuerunt cumuli massarum auri & argenti, & precioſorum copia vasorum. Sed dico vobis pro parte mea, quia nihil horum tetigi, reputans id fallaciam dæmonum confinxisse ad mittendum concupiscentiam in cor nostrum, imò sine intermissione conabar cor meum custodire ad deuotionem inceptam.

Procedentibus igitur nobis lux cæli minuebatur paulatim & augebatur horror, quoniam propè nos vndique etiam sub pedibus nostris apparebant iacere cadauera mortuorum hominum penitùs defuncta: alia adhuc spirantia, & nonnulla semiuiua, super quæ dum nos aliquando calcare contingeret, conquerebantur, ac doloroſè submurmurabant.

Et licèt non certum id habebam, æstimaui hoc fieri in parte vel in toto fictione dæmonum, reputans in breui tempore tantam multitudinem hominum spontaneè vallem intrasse, & sic à longo tempore in ea perijssent putrefactos fuisse.

Ergò in initio nostri processus quasi propè leucam inuenitur iter sub pedibus satis promptum, sed lumine tanquam ad medium nobis sufficiente, via torquebatur nimis, & asperabatur: & ecce figuræ dæmonum, circum & suprá in aere se ferentium, ad imagines horribilium luporum, leonum, laruarum, megerarum, iuxtà cuiuscunque genus, vlulantium, rugentium, stridentium, gannientium, hiantes ore, intentantes dentibus, rostris, ac vnguibus, nos terrere, mordere, discerpere, deglutire.

Quapropter pro breui interdum soluto silentio nos inuicèm hortabamur, ne quis pro pusillanimitate terrori cederet, & tanto deficeret in agone. Hoc igitur modo per secundam leucam expirante nobis vsque ad tenebras lumine, quousque quis vix vmbram proximi agnoscere posſit, præter prædicta in aere tormenta, incurrebant nobis ad tibias, & pedes pluralitas quasi porcorum, vrsorum, & caprarum grinnientium, & impellentium nos ad lapsum, quod vel ad tertium, vel quartum, aut sextum passum solatenus cadebamus in palmas, seu genua, vel prosternebamur in faciem, aut supini.

Ac superuenere præter hoc ventorum turbines, fulgurum coruscationes, tonitruorum boatus, grandinum casus & exundatio pluuiarum, quantas & quales nunquam accepimus in hoc mundo, quibus iactabamur, ruebamus, quassabamur, & periclitati fuimus extrà narrandum.

Interdum quoque sensimus tanquam graues baculorum ictus, per humeros, dorsa, latera, & ad renes, alij quidem grauiores, alij vt puta secundum demeritum vniuscuiusque. Et certè dum per tanta tormẽta, quasi exhaustis totis viribus, iam propè medium locum vallis erat ventum, accidit repentè, sub vnico instanti temporis, quibusdam nostrum expalmatio ita dura, vt omnes paritèr collisi, & prostrati iaceremus in extasi per vnam vel duas forsitan horas.

Et isto defectu vidit quilibet suo modo spiritualem visionem supermirabilem, & excedentem omne dictum, & scriptum.

Ego verò de visione mea nihil ausus sum scribere, vel loqui, quia & fratres singuli inhibuerunt, nisi de his, quæ corporalitèr intuebamur, & passi sumus.

Grauissimum singuli sustinuimus ictum per corporis loca diuersa, vnus in facie, alius in pectore, ad costas, in dorso, vel ad humerum, & mansit cuique signum percussuræ nigerrimum, ad formam virilis manus humanæ:

Mirabilis ictus

Ictum autem meum in colli ceruice tali ac tanta passione, vt putabam caput abscissum de corpore auolare: & hinc ad octodecimũ annum mansit mihi in prima magnitudine signum: sed & vsque nunc variato colore locus ille demonstrat plenissimè cicatricem, donec cum cadauere tota mutabitur in sepulchro: porrò vbi nos ab extasi in his tenebris separauimus singuli per diuinam gratiam respirando, loquendo, palpando, erigendo nos ipsos mutua humanitate, vt potuimus, recollegimus, & cohortabamur, cùm subitò nobis apparuit sub tenebroso lumine, vel potiùs fumosa caligine, locus ille spatiosus mediæ vallis, continens antedictum horribile caput dæmonis, plenus fœtore inæstimabili, & iugi occupatus exercitatione innumerorum spirituum malignorum.

Hunc ergò locum ineptũ cùm vitare vellemus, in toto nequiuimus extremitatem eius, quocunque girantes, nullus nostrorum perfecto aspectu audebat respicere quę gerebantur ibidem,

quia

quia inuadens tremor ſtatuebat horripilationem, extrahebat ſudorem, & pudorem omnes extinguere videbantur. Nec tamen potuit eſſe conſilium de reuertendo, ne propter immutatum propoſitum confeſtim à dæmonibus ſtrangularemur.

Tranſiuimus, Dei gratia nobis opitulante, ſed non ſine maximo horroris, fœtoriſque tormento: rurſùmque ex tunc procedentes nos apprehendebat tenebroſa, validáque tempeſtas, ventorum, coruſcationum, tonitruum, grandinum, & pluuiarum, cuius quaſſatione collabebabamur in facies, & in dorſo dextrorſum, & ſiniſtrorum, interuoluente ad tibias, ſicut priùs multitudine grinnienſium beſtiarum, nec dubito ſcribere quoque ampliùs, quàm 500. vicibus per hanc vallem quiſque noſtrum ſternebatur ad terram.

Poſt verò exactam tertiam leucam, cœpit nobis augeri lux aeris, ex quo animoſiores effecti, in vno tranquilliori loco nos parùm pauſantes, gratias Deo palmis extenſis in cælum, reddidimus immenſas, & præcipuè quòd nullus deeſſet de nouenario numero ſociorum.

Nihilominùs tamen ſpiritus in aere nobis minari non ceſſabant, prætendentes in deriſionem ſua pudenda ſimul, & fœda virilia & poſteriora.

Pro certo ergò habeatis de his quæ vidi, & ſenſi, nullam poſſum vobis tradere æquipollentiam verborum, cùm quia grauiſſima erant, tum quia ſingulis ne mihi deuotionem minueret non attendebam, tum etiam, quod præ horrore, labore, & dolore multa memoriæ non commendabam.

Per quartam autem leucam (ductrice gratia) leuiùs tranſeuntes, ſuſtinuimus tamen ſub pedibus hominum cadauera mortuorum, propè vallis exitum rerum tentamina precioſarum.

Nunc itaque obſecro magno cordis affectu, hæc legentes & audientes ego, qui in illa hora quid erga me agebat miſericordiſsimi Dei pietas ignorabam, vt velitis pro me, ſimul & mecum ex mentis intimo collaudare ipſum Dominum, qui tunc de poteſtate tenebrarum illarum eripuit me indignum, & prout confido, à delictis iuuentutis me purgauit, quatenùs de poſteà commiſsis, & committendis, mihi propitius fore dignetur, cùm iam ſenior ſim effectus. Quoniam etſi ex tunc propoſui mores corrigere, ex nunc ſtatuo in melius emendare, per filium eius Ieſum Chriſtum Dominum noſtrum.

Ad hoc, addo breuiter, quòd non auderem hortari quenquam, me conſulentem, vt ſponte neè ingrederetur hanc vallem infauſtam, quamuis ego curioſus intrauí. Venientes poſthac ad proximas habitationes, neceſſe fuit nobis intendere ad recreandum corpora cibarijs, & balneis, & ad medendum vulneribus, & quaſſaturis, donec per aliquod tempus vnuſquiſque acciperet deliberationem ſuper ſuo futuro.

CAPVT. 46.

De quibuſdam alijs admirandis per Indorum inſulas.

VT modò procedam in tractatu. Sciatis ad paucas inde dietas grandem inſulam haberi gigantium, ad ſtaturam altitudinis viginti quinque pedum noſtrorum, de quibus ipſe vidi nonnullos, ſed extrà terram eorum, & audiuimus eſſe intrinſecùs quoſdam triginta pedum, & vltrà: hi operiuntur non veſtibus, ſed beſtiarum pellibus vtcunque ſibi appenſis, comedentes animalium carnes crudas, & lac pro potu ſorbentes, atque appetentes ſuper omnem eſum carnes humanas. Gigantes Anthropophagi.

Iſtorum non curaui intrare inſulam: nam & audiui quòd ad maris littus ſolent inſidiari nauigantibus, nauéſque ſubmergere, niſi interdum redimantur tribus aut quatuor per ſortem hominibus ſibi datis.

Verſus Auſtrum hinc in mari Oceano, habetur inter alias inſulas, vna, vbi crudelibus quibuſdam mulieribus naſcitur in oculis lapis rarus, & malus, qnę ſi per iram reſpexerint hominem, more Baſiliſci interficiunt ſolo viſu. Lætiferi aſpectus mulierum

Et vltrà hanc inſulam alia maior & populoſior, vbi cùm multi ſint vſus nobis inſueti, vnum deſcribo.

Dum deſponſauerit vir puellam, virginem, mandat hominem incompoſitum, velut ribaldum, qui ſua idonea claue per expertos ſuper hoc diligenter conſiderata, ſi reputatur idonea referet & veſtiget ſub nocte vnica virginalem conclauem, pro mercede ſibi tradita competenti. Et ſi poſtera nocte accedens ſponſus ita non inuenerit, poterit, & conſueuit hominem impetere ad mortis iudicium indeclinabile. Cúmque huius moris diſcere voluiſſem cauſam, accepi reſponſum, pro certis temporibus apud eos, virgines habuiſſe in matricibus paruos ſerpentes, quibus nocebantur primi ad illas intrantes. Inſula vbi virgines vitiantur antequam nubant

Ideóq; & viri, qui pro mercede tantum ſubeunt periculum, vocant ſua loquela cadibrum, eſt, ſtultos deſperatos.

Ex

Ex hac, apparet Insula in qua inter alios vsus, peruersæ sunt matres contra naturam & scripturã, cum peperierint contristantur, & dum proles moritur iocũdantur, iactantes in magno igne cum conuiuio & exultatione, dumque maritus ante vxorem decedit, patebit vxoris plena dilectio, si cum corpore mariti, quod rogo traditur se iactat cremandam, vt quia in isto seculo steterunt amoris vinculo colligati, non sint alio separati.

Nec tamen intelligunt illud seculum, nisi quod sibi confingunt terrestem Paradisum. Puerum aut minorẽ annis, trahet mater secum si placet, sed ætatis puer perfectæ, eliget pro proprio placito viuere superstes, aut mori iuxta parentes.

Hic etiam non succedunt Reges per generationem sed per electionem, vt assumatur non nobilior, aut fortior, sed morigerator, & iustior, 50 ad minus annorum, nullam habens sobolem aut vxorem, seruatúrque illic iusticiæ rigor in plena censura, in omnibus & contra omnes, etiamsi forefecerit ipse Rex, qui nec eximitur a traditis legibus pro concupiscentia vel contemptione quarumlibet personarum.

Veruntamen Rex si peccauerit non occiditur ob reuerentiam, sed quòd sub pœna mortis, publicè inhibetur, ne quispiam in Regione ei verbo vel vllo facto communicet, & quoniam sui loco alter rex constituitur, necesse est illi breui vita degere vel perpetuò exulare.

Constat post ipsam, & alia Insula multis bonis locuples, & hominibus populosa, de qua recolo scribendum, quod nulla occasione comedunt tria genera carnium, gallinarum, leporum, & aucarum, quas etsi nutriant in copijs, vtuntur duntaxat pellibus aut plumis.

Cæterarum verò bestiarum & animalium licitè vescuntur carnibus pro victu, & lacte pro potu. Ibi quisq; vir licitè potest coniungi cuique mulieri, quantumcúnque propinquet, exceptis progenitoribus, patre & matre. Nam cohabitatio, & commixtio omnium virorum ad singulas mulieres apparet ibi communis, vnde mater natum paruulum suum, adicit pro sui placito cuicúnque viro, qui circa generationis tempus secum dormierit, nec valet vllus virorum esse certus de proprio generato, quem modum exlegem arbitror & turpem.

Sicut ergò præfatus sum, multa mira videntur per Regiones Indorum, mira quidẽ nobis, sed illis assueta, quibus si nostra recitarentur assueta, audirent pro miris. Nam & dum quibusdam dixi aucas viuas apud nos nasci in arboribus, admirati sunt satis. In multis locis seminatur singulis annis sementum de ‖ Cothon, quod nos dicimus lanam arboream, exurgunt ei modici arbusta, vel potius arbustula de quibus talis lana habetur: est arbor Iuniperus, de cuius ligno desiccato, si carbones viuos sub proprijs cineribus tenueris diligenter opertos, igniti seruabuntur ad annum.

‖ Vel Cotton.

Descriptio arboris Bombasum ferentis.

Est & genus Nucum incredibilis magnitudinis ad quantitatem magni capitis: & bestia vocata, oraflans, vel serfans, corpore in nostrorum altitudine caballorum, & collo in 20 longitudine cubitorum ad prospiciendum vltra domos & muros, quorum posteriora apparent vt hinniculi siue lemi.

Nux Indica. Oraflans bestia.

Genus est etiam Camelionum ad formam hynnulorum, qui semper patulo tendunt ore, vel nil manducantes. Viuunt de aere, quæ etiam ad suum libitum videntur sibi variare colorem, exceptis (vt dicitur) albo vel rubeo.

Camelliones.

Maximi quoq; serpentes, inuicem qualitate, & genere differentes atq; colore.

Aliqui cristam in capite gerunt, quidam more hominum ad duos pedes erecti incedunt, & nonnulli qui dicuntur Reguli, venenum per ora distillare non cessant, nec non quam plures cocodrilli, de quibus aliquid in præcedentibus retuli: & apri in nostrorum magnitudine boum, spinosi ericij, in quantitate porcorum, leones albi in altitudine dextrariorum. Louheraus, seu Edouches per Indiam habentur, quod ferarum genus fatis est maius nostris communibus equis, gerens in fronte tetri capitis tria longa cornua, ad formam pugionis, ex vtráque parte scindentia, vt eis nonnunquam interficiant Elephantes.

Apri ingentes. Leones albi. Louheraus.

Aliæ quoq; bestiæ crudeles vt vrsi cum capitibus ferè aprorum & habentes pedes senos, qui finduntur latis vngulis bis acutis, & cum caudis leonum siue pardorum.

Et quod vix credetur, mures pro quantitate, 10, aut 12. nostrorum & vespertiliones ad modum coruorum.

Sed & aucæ in triplo maiores nostris, plumis indutæ rubris, nisi quod in pectore & collo apparet nigredo.

Et breuiter tam ibi quàm alibi, habentur pisces, bestiæ, volucres, aut vermes diuersorum generum, aut specierum, de quibus hoc loco, vel inutilis, vel prolixa posset fieri narratio, quod nec illis qui nunquam propria exierunt, credibilis videretur.

CAPVT

Caput. 47.

De Bracmannorum & aliorum Inſulis.

BRacmannorum Inſula quaſi ad medium Imperij cõſiſtit Preſbyteri Ioannis. Hij licet Chriſtiani non ſunt, viuunt tamen naturali optimo more. Rudes enim & incomparati, ſimplices, & inſcij omnis artis apparent. Non cupidi, ſuperbi, inuidi, iracundi, guloſi, aut luxurioſi nec iurant, fraudant, aut mentiuntur. Laborant corpore, ſed intendunt animo implere quoad valent naturale mandatum, hoc facias alijs quod tibi vis fieri: credentes & adorantes omnium creatorem Deum, & ſperantes ab ipſo ſimpliciter Paradiſum.

Sobrij quoque ſunt, quapropter & longo tempore viuunt: & ſi quis ab eorum moribus degenerat, proſcribitur perpetuò ſine mora, omnibus nulla poſita differentia perſonarum, vnde & in iuſto Dei iudicio, quòd naturalem exercere iuſtitiam contendunt, Elementa eis naturaliter obſequuntur, & rarò eos tangit tempeſtas, aut fames, peſtilentia aut gladius.

Magna riparia dicta Chene currit per Inſulam, miniſtrans piſcium & aquarum copiam: Iſtos olim Alexander rex Grecorum debellare cupiens, miſit eis literas comminationis, cui inter cætera notabilia remandauerunt, nihil ſe habere curioſi, quod Rex tantus deberet concupiſcere, nihilque ita ſe timere perdituros ſicut pacem bonam, quam hactenus habuerunt inconfuſam: ſicque diuino nutu eſt actum vt Rex truculentus ad alia ſe verteret, atque in breui poſtmòdum caderet, quia diſſipat Dominus eos, qui bella volunt, & iſtis manet pax multa diligentibus eam. Flumen Chene.

Pytan Inſula breuis continet paucos & breues habitatores, Pygmæis modico longiores, qui decoris vultibus nullo vnquam cibo veſcentes, ſpecialis pomi quod ſecum portant ſuſtẽtantur odore, quo ſi carerent ad parum, color in vultu marceſceret, & die tertia vita periret. Pytan.

Diſcretio & rationabilitas ijs adeſt modica, nec enim habent laborare niſi pro veſtitu, quem ſibi circa arbuſta colligunt: Et conficit vnuſquiſq; pro 12. annis vitę ſuæ.

Vltra hanc Inſulam ſilueſtres, & fortes habentur homines, ſed beſtiales, veſtiti per totum corpus proprijs capillis & pilis, exceptis palmis, & faciebus, qui videntur penitus gubernatione & politia carere: vesantur carnes per ſiluas, & diſcurrunt piſcantes in aquis, omnia cruda vorantes.

Huius ad terræ metas manat fluuius Briemer latitudinis duarum leucarum, & ſemis, quem nos tranſire nequiuimus, nec auſi fuimus. Quoniam illo tranſmiſſo inſtant deſerta 15. aut plurium diætarum inhabitata nũc temporis (prout audieramus) diuerſis & nobis ignotis generibus beſtiarum, ſerpentum, draconum, gryphiũ, aſpidum, dypſarum, & colubrorũ in multitudine tanta, vt centum millia armatorum ſimul pertingere vſquè ad arbores, quæ ibi dicuntur ſolis & lunæ, vix poſſent. Attamen ſuo tempore Alexander magnus ſcribitur pertigiſſe, & quædam ab arboribus fictitia ſuccepiſſe reſponſa. Fluuius Briemer.

Circa has arbores excolitur Balſamum, cuius liquoris comparatio nuſquam ſcitur contineri ſub cœlo. Nam ibidem homines, de iſtarum arborum fructibus & Balſamo vtentes dicuntur illorum virtute quadringentis aut pluribus annis viuere. Balſamum indicum.

Peruenit autem & Dux Danus Ogerus, ac manducauit de illis, vnde & nonnulli præ ſenſus ſtoliditate vel fidei leuitate putant ipſum adhuc alibi viuere in terris. Ego autem quia tantum pro dilatanda Chriſtianitate laborauit arbitror magis, eum regnare cum Chriſto in cœlis.

Verſus orientales partes Indorum conſiſtit magna regio Taprobane exuberans optimis terrenorum bonorum, in quam nauigio intrauimus in octo vel circa dietis per aquam ſatis tenuem, haud profundam. Ibi, ſicut & in alijs multis Inſulis, rex non naſcitur ſed eligitur per partes terrę: & eſt hæc vna de quindecim nominatis Regionibus conquiſitionis Ogeri. Iſta, cum modicum declinet à circulo terræ ſub Æquatore, patitur in anno duas æſtates, & duas hyemes, ſi tamen hyems aliqua dici debeat, & non magis æſtas, quia nullus hîc dies anni caret fructu, flore, germine. Taprobana Inſula, & eius deſcriptio.

Habitatores ſunt diſcreti, & honeſti, vnde & mercatores, de remotis partibus libenter cum ijs communicant: & ſparſim per regionem habitant plurimi diuites Chriſtiani.

Hijs iunguntur duę inſulę (quas nos vocamus, Orilla, & Argita,) quanquam illa lingua aliter nominentur. In quarum prima ſunt multę mineriæ auri, in ſecunda argenti, & propter quandam craſſitudinem aeris continuam, perpauca apparent ſydera, præter vnum quod dicunt Canopũ, quod æſtimo planetam Veneris. Et quod mirum eſt valdè, de omni lunatione ijs apparet niſi 2. quarta. Cuius rei probabilis ratio effugit etiam Aſtronomos valdè peritos. Atque per has Inſulas quoddam rubrum mare à mari Oceano ſegregatur. Orilla. Argita. Hunc locum notat Gerardus Mercator in ſua charta generali.

Itaq; in Orilla in locis multis effoditur, colligitur, & conflatur optimum auri metallum, per viros, mulieres, & paruulos in hoc inſtructos, ſed & in nonnullis ibi montibus monſtrantur

congregationes bestiolarum in quantitate nostrorum carulorum, in formicarum forma ac natura totali: qui pro suis viribus effodiunt, purificant,& colligunt cum intenta occupatione auri minutias,eas reponentes,& repositas retrahentes de cauernis & specubus in cauernas & specus. Et in conseruando sunt diligentes & acres, vt nemo audeat de facili propinquare,nisi quod interdum ab illis pausantibus, seu ab æstu se occultantibus, aliqui non sine periculo in dromedarijs & veredarijs rapiunt,vel furantur.

Solet etiam ab eis obtineri,quòd excogitato ingenio super equam quæ nuper fœtum ædiderit,imponentes homines duas de ligno cistulas seu cophinos nouos, vacuos, & apertos à lateribus dependentes propè terram: hanc famelicam dimittunt vt se pascat ad herbas in montem: Quam formicæ videntes solam, salientes & iocantes, colludunt ad eam & ad eius confines pro nouitate: & quoniam eis est naturale, vt circa se omne vacuum implere conentur comportant certatim aurum suum in vasculis suis mundis, Cumque homines a remotis tempus obseruauerint, emittunt pullum equæ vt videat matrem, cuius aspectu iam diu stetit priuatus, ad cuius hinnitum protinus equa reuertitur onusta de auro. Hijs ergò & similibus modis homines aurum diripiunt à formicis.

Caput. 48.

Aliquid de loco Paradisi terrestris per auditum.

A Finibus Imperij Indiæ recta linea in orientem nihil est habitatum vel habitabile, propter rupium,& montium altitudinem,& asperitatem,& propter aeris inter Alpes diuersitatem: nam in multis locis, licet quandoque aer sit serenus, nunc fit spissus nunc fumosus, vel venenosus,& frequenter die medio tenebrosus. Durantque aut potius aggrauescunt huiusmodi difficultates,vsque ad illum amænissimum Paradisi locum, quem protoplausti per inobedientiam sibi & posteris perdidisse noscuntur, quod spacium si metiri posset, est multarum vtique diætarum. Quia iam non vlterius processi, nec procedere quiui,pauca duntaxat de illo loco referam verisimilia, quæ didici per auditum.

Descriptio Paradisi.

Paradisus terrestris dicitur locus spacioſus ad amplitudinem quasi quinq; Insularum nostrarum,Angliæ,Normanniæ, Hiberniæ, Scotiæ,& Norvegiæ, aut forsan satis plurium. Cuius situs est pertingens in altitudine ad aeris supremam superficiem, eò quod illic terra vel terræ orbis sit multum spissior quàm alibi per modum excentricum à vero centro mundi, nec valet hoc deinde ab aliquo experto refelli, scriptura veritatis clamante, quòd ibi sit fons irrigans vniuersam superficiem terræ: aquæ enim est natura semper fluere ad ima.

Exeunt autem ab illo fonte versus nostri partes hemispherij,hoc est nobis de illo loco in occidentem quatuor flumina, Pyson,Gyon,Tygris, & Euphrates, ab ista dimidia parte terræ circa Æquatoris circulum terræ influentes, quapropter & merito credendum videtur, exire de eodem fonte & alia quatuor flumina irrigantia terram oppositam, quæ est circa alteram dimidiam partem circuli Æquatoris,quamuis nos eorum fluminum loca,virtutes,& nomina ignoramus,quòd homines habitant ab alia parte Æquinoctij.

Gentes ad austrum Aequatoris.

Hoc tamen volo sciri pro verò & audiui, illic terræ faciem inhabitatam in maxima multitudine ciuitatum,vrbium,& regionum,quoniam & eorum institores Indiam frequentant,& nunciant sibi inuicem gentes & principes per literas, ac alijs modis destinare sunt visi.

Ganges fluuius.

Vnus nostrorum fluuiorum Pyson currit per Indiam, & per eius deserta quandoque sub terra,sed sæpius supra, qui & Ganges illic appellatus est, ab illo vltimo Paganitatis rege,quem Dux Ogerus deiectum cùm baptizari renueret in ipso flumine proiectum submersit.

Ad littus huius reperiuntur multi lapides præciositatis immensæ & metalli grana carissimi, nec non & auri mineriæ, multumque descendit in eo natans lignum Aloes ex Paradiso, quod rebus nitræ virtutis inserit Salomon in Canticis.

Hinc secundus fluuius Gyon,currit per Aethiopiam,vnde dum venit in Ægyptũ,accipit nomen Nilus. Tertius Tygris veniens per Assyriam influit maiorem Armeniam & Persiam:tandemq; fluuij singuli per loca singula se iactant in mare per quod defluunt vsq; ad Nador,id est, ad oppositum diametrum paradisi: Ideoq; merito æstimantur omnes vniuerso orbe aquę dulces originẽ capere, à supradicto paradisi fonte,quamuis secundũ distãtiam maiorem vel minorem, & secundum naturas rerum per quas meant diuersos habere inueniuntur sapores, atq; virtutes.

Porrò ipsum Paradisi locum audiui à tribus plagis, orientali, meridionali, & septentrionali, inaccessibilem tam hominibus quàm bestijs, eo quòd apparet ripis perpendiculariter abscisis, tanquam inestimabilis altitudinis. Et ab occidente idest nostra parte tanquam super omnium humanorum intuitum rogus ardẽs,qui in scripturis rumphea flammea appellatur,vt nulli creaturę terrenę ascẽsus in eũ credatur nisi quibusdam volatilibus,prout decreuit iusti iudicij Deus.

Ambu-

Ambulantibus enim illuc ſiue repentibus hominibus obſtarent tenebræ imo rupes, aër infeſtus, beſtiæ, ſerpentes, frigus, & cauma. Nauigare autem contra ictum fluminis nitentes impediret intrinſecus recurſus, ac impetuoſus & quandoque ſubterraneus aquæ curſus deſcendentis cum vehementia ab euectiſſimo, vt dictum eſt, loco, qui ſuo quoque ſtrepitu, per petras atq; ſtrictos alioſque diuerſos cadens gurgites, efficeret ſurdos, & aeris mutatio cæcos, vnde & multi tam nobiles quàm ignobiles, fatua eſe audacia in iſto ponẽtes periculo perierunt, alijs excæcatis, alijs abſurdatis, & nonnullis in ipſo acceſſu ſubitanea morte peremptis. Ex quo nimirum credi habetur iſtum Deo diſplicere conatum.

Quapropter & ego in illo loco ſtatui animum ad repatriandum, quatenus Deo propitio, Anglia quæ me produxit ſeculo viuentem, ſuſciperet morientem.

CAPVT. 49.

In reuertendo de Caſſan, & Riboth, & de diuite Epulone.

EXhinc de illis quæ in reuertendo vidi ſcribo curſim panca, ne modum excedere videatur materia, Reuertebar itaque quaſi per Aquilonare latus Imperij Presbyteri Ioannis, & nunc terræ, non mari nos commendantes, tranſiuimus Deo Ductore, multas Inſulas in multis diætis, & peruenimus ad regionem magnam Caſſan: hæc cum ſit vna de quindecim habens longitudinem diætarum 60. & latitudinem propè 30. poſſet eſſe nominatior omnibus ibi circa prouincijs, ſi a noſtris frequentaretur.

Via per quam Mandeuillus redijt in Angliam.

Caſſan.

Notandum. Caſſan (ſecundum Odericum) eſt melior prouincia de mundo, vbi ſtrictior eſt, habet diætas 50. vbi longior 60. & eſt vna de 12. prouincijs Imperij Grand Can. eſt iſta populoſa, diſtincta ciuitatibus, vt quiſque à quacunque plaga de vna exeat ciuitate nouerit aliam in media diæta propinquam. Tenetque iſtam regionem Caſſan rex diues & potens, pro parte de Imperio Præsbyteri Ioannis, & pro parte de Imperio Grand Can.

Riboth.

De iſta in reuerſione noſtra venimus ad regnum Riboth, quod ſimiliter eſt vnum de quindecim, latum, & ſpecioſum, in quo de multis bonis, habetur plena copia. Hoc tenetur in toto de Imperio Tartarorum.

Labaſſi, ſummus idolorum pontifex.

Vna eſt ibi inter & ſuper omnes ciuitas Sacerdotalis, & Regia, in qua Rex habet ſuum magnificum palatium, & ſummus idolorum Pontifex quem Labaſſi appellant, cui omnes Regni obediunt, & populi ſicut Domino Papæ nos Chriſtiani, quoniam & iubet, & benedicit, ac confert ſacerdotibus beneficia idolorum.

Ciuitatis vndique muri ſunt compacti albis & nigris lapidibus conquadratis ad modum ſcakarij, omnesque contractæ ſimili pauimento ſunt, ſtratæ. Tanta eſt illic reuerentia ſacrificiorum vt ſi quis vel in modica quantitate, ſanguinem hominis, ſeu immolaticię pecudis fudiſſe deprehenſus fuerit, nequaquam iudicium mortis euadet. Et inter innumeras ſuperſtitiones eſt illic vna talis.

Hæres cuius pater defungitur, ſi alicuius vult eſſe reputationis, mandat cognatos, amicos, Relligioſos, & ſacerdotes pro poſſe, qui certo Die conuenientes ſub magno Symphoniæ feſto, comportant defuncti cadauer, in montis ſublime cacumen. Ibi accedens dignior Prælatorum, funeris caput abſcindit, tradens hæredi in aureo diſco decãtanti ſub deuotione ſuas orationes cum ſuis in propria lingua. Atque interim aues regionis rapaces, & immundæ, vt corui, vultures, & aquilæ, quæ pro conſuetudine optimè morem norunt, aduolant magno numero in aëre: Tuncque Relligioſi cum ſacerdotibus detruncant corpus in fruſta velut in macello, proijcientes pecias in altum auibus, ac decãtantes certam ad hoc compoſitam orationem, tanquam ſi noſtri ſacerdotes cantarent. Subuenite ſancti Dei. &c.

Et habet eorum oratio, hunc ſenſum in ſua lingua. Reſpice quàm iuſtus & ſanctus extitit homo iſte, quem Angeli Dei coueniunt accipere & in Paradiſum deferre. Talique diabolico errore deluſi, putant filius, & amici, quod defunctus ſit in Paradiſum tranſlatus, viuat illic ſempiterne beatus, quoniam, vbi plures conuenere volucrum, ibi maiorem lætantur & iactant fuiſſe numerum Angelorum.

Hinc deinde reuertentes, cum choris, & reſonantia Muſicorum, filius paratum præſtat omnibus conuiuium, in cuius fine pro extremo ferculo, tradit ſingulis particulam, de patris capite ſumma cum deuotione. Hanc etiam capitis caluariam filius facit poſtmodum debitè formari & poliri ſibi pro cypho, in quo bibit in conuiuijs, ob recordationem amantiſſimi patris.

Ab hoc Regno decem dietis per poteſtatem Imperatoris Grand Can, inuenitur Inſula delectabilis, & ſpecioſa ſatis: cuius Rex eſt præpotens in gloria, & in diuitijs ſuperabundans, & de multis quæ illic geruntur admirandis vnum recito ſolum.

Diues Epulo.

Quòd est ibi homo quidam ditissimus nullius dignitatis nomine honoratus, sed byssio, ac serico adornatus, & splendide omni tempore epulatus: non ergo vult dici princeps, Dux, comes, miles, aut huiusmodi, licet superioritatem habeat super marchiones aliquos & barones.

Eius possessionis valor æstimatur in anno 30. cumandefinarijs bladi, & risi, nec quærit nisi delitiosè viuere in isto seculo, vt cum diuite Epulone sepeliatur in inferno. Cum etiam sibi derelictus sit, iste viuendi modus a retrogenitoribus, eum & ipse posteris derelinquet. Hic tanquam Imperiali residet palatio, cuius muri ambitus ad tractum leucæ tenditur, continens nemusta, vineta, riuulos, fontes & stagna, aulas, & cubicula auro strata depictaque mirè, & sculpta artificiosè, vltra quam vales explicare, & inter omnia ad medium palatium in celso vertice atrium amænum, valdè tamen modico, sed cunctis præciosius, ædificio, quasi ad scemata nostrarum Ecclesiarum, cum turribus, pilarijs, & columnis, in quibus nihil prominet indignius auro. Nunquam vel rarò hîc exit de suo palatio cum solis pulchris quos sibi conuocat & conuiriat paruis pueris & puellis, non excedentibus 16. annos ætatis. Tendit dum libet pedibus, quandoque vectatur equo, interdum ducitur vehiculo, nonnunquam vult ferri gestatorio, vel certè puellaribus brachijs, & visitat sæpissimè præfatum præciosius ædificium: atque hijs & modis alijs excogitat delectare visum pulchris, auditum suauibus, olfactum redolentibus, tactum lenibus, & gustum pascere delicatis. Electas semper habet præsto 50. puellas ei, & de proximo exquisitissimè ministrantes tam ad mensam quàm ad cubiculum, & ad omne libitum.

Hæ ad prandium recumbenti afferunt processionis more pro singulo ferculo semper 5. genera dapum nobilium cum dulcisonæ resonantia camtilenæ, quarum aliquæ ei singulos detruncant genu flexo morsellos, aliquæ ponunt in ore, mundis tergentes comedentis labia mappis.

Versus.

Nam ipse quidem in mensa continet iacentes manus puras & quietas. Post deseruitionem ferculi primi, seruitur pro secundo in 5. alijs dapum generibus modo quo supra, & renouatur in apponendo cantus suauior melodia.

Ista absque vlla Domini cura per ministros quotidiè reparantur, etiam in maiori satis quàm effor nobilitate, nisi dum ipse pro placito iusserit, quandoque temperari.

Delicioſius igitur quo vult deducit animam, non curans animam, sed nec probitatem curans terrenam, pascit sterilem, & viduæ non benefacit. Et

Quia vnus sicut porcus,
Morientem suscipit orcus.

Longitudo vngium. Vtuntur etiam in Florida principes longis vnguibus. Noua historia Chinensis hoc testatur.

Porrò quod eum dixi manus tenere quietas, noueritis nimirum nil posse manibus capere vel tenere, propter longitudinem, & recurui tatem vnguium in digitis, qui sibi nullo tempore præscinduntur. Seruatur enim hoc pro nobili more patriæ, & viri diuites delicati, qui proprios possunt habere ministros nũquàm sibi dimittunt vngues resecare, vnde & nonnullis circumdantur vndique manus, acsi uiderentur armatæ.

Fœminarum autem mos est nobilis si habeant paruos pedes, vnde & generosarum in cunis strictissimè obuoluntur, vt vix ad medium debitæ quantitatis excrescere possint.

Caput. 50.

De compositione huius tractatus in nobili ciuitate Leodiensi.

IN reuertendo igitur venitur ab hac insula per prouincias magnas Imperij Tartarorum, in quibus semper noua, semper mira, imo nonnunquam incredibilia viator potest videre, percipere, & audire.

Et Noueritis, vt prædixi, me pauca eorum vidisse, quæ in terris sunt mirabilium, sed nec hic scripsisse centesimam partem eorum quæ vidi, quod nec omnia memoriæ commendare potui, & de commendatis multa subticui, propter modestiam, quam decet omnibus actibus addi.

Idcirco vt & alijs, qui vel antè mein partibus illis steterunt, vel iturí sunt, maneat locus narrandi siue scribendi, modum huius pono tractatus, potius decurtans, quàm complens, quoniam aliàs loquendi non esset finis, nec aures implerentur auditu.

Concludit opus suum.

Itaque anno à natiuitate Domini nostri Iesu Christi 1355. in patriando, cum ad nobilem Legiæ, seu Leodij ciuitatem peruenissem, & præ grandeuitate ac artericis guttis illic decumberem in vico qui dicitur, Bassestanemi, consului causa conualescendi aliquos medicos ciuitatis: Et accidit, Dei nutu, vnum intrare physicum super alios ætate simul & canicie venerandum, ac in sua arte euidenter expertum, qui ibidem dicebatur communiter, Magister Ioannes ad barbam.

Is, dum paritèr colloqueremur, interseruit aliquid dictis, per quod tandem nostra inuicem renouabatur

renouabatur antiqua notitia, quam quondam habueramus in Cayr Aegypti apud Melech Mādibron Soldanum, prout ſuprà tetigi in 7. capitulo libri.

Qui cum in me experientiam artis ſuæ excellenter monſtraſſet, adhortabatur ac præcabatur inſtanter, vt de hijs quæ videram tempore peregrinationis, & itinerationis meæ per mundum, aliquid digererem in ſcriptis ad legendum, & audiendum pro vtilitate.

Sicque tandem illius monitu & adiutorio, compoſitus eſt iſte tractatus, de quo certè nil ſcribere propoſueram, donec ſaltem ad partes proprias in Anglia peruenijſſem. Et credo præmiſſa circa me, per prouidentiam & gratiam Dei contigiſſe, quoniam à tempore quo receſſi, duo reges noſtri ‖ Angliæ, & Franciæ, non ceſſauerunt inuicem exercere deſtructiones, deprædationes, inſidias, & interfectiones, inter quas, niſi à Domino cuſtoditus, non tranſiſſem ſine morte, vel mortis periculo, & ſine criminum grandi cumulo. Et ecce nunc egreſſionis meæ anno 33. conſtitutus in Leodij ciuitate, quæ à mari Anglię diſtat ſolum per duas diætas, audio dictas Dominorum inimicitias, per gratiam Dei conſopitas: quapropter & ſpero, ac propono de reliquo ſecundum maturiorem ætatem me poſſe in propriis, intendere corporis quieti, animęq; ſaluti. Edwardus tertius.

Hic itaque finis ſit ſcripti, in nomine Patris, & Filij, & ſpiritus ſancti, AMEN.

Explicit itinerarium à terra Angliæ, in partes Hieroſolimitanas, & in vlteriores tranſmarinas, editum primò in lingua Gallicana, à Domino Ioanne Mandeuille milite, ſuo authore, Anno incarnationis Domini 1355. in Ciuitate Leodienſi: Et paulò poſt in eadem ciuitate, tranſlatum in dictam formam Latinam.

Richardi Hakluyti breuis admonitio ad Lectorem.

IOannem Mandeuillum noſtratem, eruditum & inſignem Authorem (Balæo, Mercatore, Ortelio, & alijs teſtibus) ab innumeris Scribarum & Typographorum mendis repurgando, ex multorum, eorumque optimorum exemplarium collatione, quid præſtiterim, virorum doctorum, & eorum præcipuè, qui Geographia, & Antiquitatis periti ſunt, eſto iudicium. Quæ autem habet de monſtriferis hominum formis itinerarij ſui præcedentis capitibus trigeſſimo, trigeſſimo primo, trigeſſimo tertio, & ſparſim in ſequentibus, quanquam non negem ab illo fortaſſe quædam eorum alicubi viſa fuiſſe, maiori tamen ex parte, ex Caio Plinio ſecundo hauſta videntur, vt facile patebit ea cum his Plinianis, hic ideo à me appoſitis, collatura, quæ idem Plinius, ſingulis ſuis authoribus ſingula refert, in eorum pleriſque fidem ſuam minimè obſtringens. Vale, atque aut meliora dato, aut his vtere mecum.

Ex libro ſexto Naturalis hiſtoriæ C. Plinij ſecundi, *Cap. 30.*

VNiuerſa verò gens Ætheria appellata eſt, deinde Atlantia, mox à Vulcani filio Æthiope Æthiopia. Animalium hominumque effigies monſtriferas circa extremitates eius gigni minimè mirum, artifici ad formanda corpora effigiéſque cælandas mobilitate ignea. Ferunt certè ab Orientis parte intima gentes eſſe ſine naribus, æquali totius oris planitie. Alias ſuperiore labro orbas, alias ſine linguis. Pars etiam ore concreto & naribus carens, vno tantùm foramine ſpirat, potúmque calamis auenæ trahit, & grana eiuſdem auenæ, ſponte prouenientis ad veſcendum. Quibuſdam pro ſermone nutus motúſque membrorum eſt. &c.

Ex libro eiuſdem Plinij ſeptimo, CAP. 2. cui titulus eſt, *De Scythis, & aliarum diuerſitate gentium.*

ESſe Scytharum genera, & quidem plura, quæ corporibus humanis veſcerentur, indicauimus. Idipſum incredibile fortaſſe, ni cogitemus in medio orbe terrarum, ac Sicilia & Italia fuiſſe gentes huius monſtri, Cyclopas & Læſtrigonas, & nuperrimè trans Alpes hominem immolari gentium earū more ſolitum: quod paulum à mandendo abeſt. Sed & iuxta eos, qui ſunt ad Septentrionem verſi, haud procul ab ipſo Aquilonis exortu, ſpecúque eius dicto, quem locū Geſelitron appellant, produntur Arimaſpi, duos diximus, vno oculo in fronte media inſignes: quibus aſſiduè bellum eſſe circa metalla cum gryphis, ferarum volucri genere, quale vulgò traditur, eruente ex cuniculis auruni, mira cupiditate & feris cuſtodientibus, & Arimaſpis rapientibus, multi, ſed maximè illuſtres Herodotus, & Ariſteas Proconneſius ſcribunt. Super alios

alios autem Anthropophagos Scythas, in quadam conualle magna Imai montis, regio est, quæ vocatur Abarimon, in qua syluestres viuunt homines, auersis post crura plantis, eximiæ velocitatis, passim cum feris vagantes. Hos in alio non spirare cœlo, ideóque ad finitimos reges non pertrahi, neque ad Alexandrum magnum pertractos, Beton itinerum eius mensor prodidit. Priores Anthropophagos, quos ad Septentrionem esse diximus decem dierum itinere supra Borysthenem amnem, ossibus humanorum capitum bibere, cutibúsque cum capillo pro mantelibus ante pectora vti, Isigonus Nicæensis. Idem in Albania gigni quosdam glauca oculorum acie, à puertia statim canos, qui noctu plusquàm interdiu cernant. Idem itinere dierum x. supra Borysthenem, Sauromatas tertio die cibum capere semper. Crates Pergamenus in Hellesponto circa Parium, genus hominum fuisse tradit, quos Ophiogenes vocat serpentum ictus contactu leuare solitos, & manu imposita venena extrahere corpori. Varro etiam nunc esse paucos ibi, quorum saliuæ contra ictus serpentum medeantur. Similis & in Africa gens Psyllorum fuit, vt Agatharchides scribit, à Psyllo rege dicta, cuius sepulchrum in parte Syrtium maiorum est. Horum corpori ingenitum fuit virus exitiale serpentibus, vt cuius odore sopirent eas. Mos verò, liberos genitos protinus obijciendi sæuissimis earum, eóque genere pudicitiam coniugum experiendi, non profugientibus adulterino sanguine natos serpentibus. Hæc gens ipsa quidem prope internicione sublata est à Nasamonibus, qui nunc eas tenent sedes: genus tamen hominii ex his qui profugerant, aut cùm pugnatum est, abfuerant, hodiéque remanent in paucis. Simile & in Italia Marsorum gentis durat, quos à Circes filio ortos seruant, & ideo inesse ijs vim naturalem eam. Et tamen omnibus hominibus contra serpentes inest venenum: ferúntque ictas saliua, vt feruentis aquæ contactũ fugere. Quòd si in fauces penetrauerit, etiam mori: idq; maximè humani ieiuni oris. Supra Nasamonas confinésque illis Machlyas, Androginos esse vtriusq; naturæ, inter se vicibus coëuntes, Calliphanes tradit. Aristoteles adijcit, dextram mammam ijs virilem, læuam muliebrem esse. In eadem Africa familias quasdam effascinantium, Isigonus & Nymphodorus tradunt quarum laudatione intereant probata, arescant arbores, emoriantur infantes. Esse eiusdem generis in Triballis & Illyrijs, adijcit Isigonus, qui visu quoque effascinent, interimántque quos diutius intueãtur. Iratis præcipuè oculis: quod eorum malum facilius sentire puberes. Notabilius esse quòd pupillas binas in oculis singulis habeant. Huius generis & fœminas in Sythia, quæ vocantur Bithyæ, prodit Apollonides. Philarchus & in Ponto Thibiorum genus, multósque alios eiusdem naturæ: quorum notas tradit in altero oculo geminã pupillam, in altero equi effigiem. Eosdem præterea non posse mergi, ne veste quidem degrauatos. Haud dissimile ijs genus Pharnacum in Æthiopia prodidit Damon, quorum sudor tabem cõtactis corporibus afferat. Fœminas quidem omnes vbique visu nocere, quæ duplices pupillas habeant, Cicero quoque apud nos autor est. Adeò naturę, cùm ferarum morem vescendi humanis visceribus in homine genuisset, gignere etiam in toto corpore & in quorundam oculis quoque venena placuit: ne quid vsquã mali esset, quod in homine non esset. Haud procul vrbe Roma in Falisc orum agro familiæ sunt paucæ, quæ vocantur Hirpię: quæ sacrificio annuo, quod fit ad montem Soractem Apollini, super ambustam ligni struem ambulantes non aduruntur. Et ob id perpetuo senatusconsulto militiæ omniúmq; aliorũ numerum vacationem habent. Quorundam corpore partes nascuntur ad aliqua mirabiles sicut Pyrrho regi pollex in dextero pede: cuius tactu lienosis medebatur. Hunc cremari cum reliquo corpore non potuisse tradunt, conditúmque loculo in templo. Præcipuè India Æthiopúmq; tractus, miraculis scatent. Maxima in India gignuntur animalia, Indicio sunt canes grandiores cæteris. Arbores quidem tantæ proceritatis tradũtur, vt sagittis superari nequeant. Hæc facit vbertas soli, temperies cœli, aquarum abundantia (si libeat credere) vt sub vna ficu turmæ condantur equitum. Arundines verò tantę proceritatis, vt singula internodia alueo nauigabili ternos interdum homines ferant. Multos ibi quina cubita constat longitudine excedere: non expuere: non capitis, aut dentium, aut oculorum vllo dolore affici, raro aliarum corporis partium: tam moderato Solis vapore durari. Philosophos eorum quos Gymnosophystas vocant, ab exortu ad Occasum præstare, conuentes Solem immobilibus oculis: feruentibus harenis toto die alternis pedibus insistere. In monte cui nomen est Milo, homines esse auersis plantis, octonos digitos in singulis pedibus habentes, autor est Megasthenes. In multis autem montibus genus hominum capitibus caninis, ferarum pellibus velari, pro voce latratum edere, vnguibus armatum venatu & aucupio vesci. Horum supra centum viginti millia fuisse prodente se, Ctesias scribit: & in quadam gente Indiæ, fœminas semel in vita parere, genitósque confestim canescere. Item hominum genus, qui Monosceli vocarentur, singulis cruribus, mirę pernicitatis ad saltum: eosdemque Sciopodas vocari, quòd in maiori æstu humi iacentes resupini, vmbra se pedum protegant, non longè eos à Troglodytis abesse. Rursúsque ab his Occidentem versus

quos-

quoſdam ſine ceruice,oculos in humeris habentes. Sunt & Satyri ſubſolanis Indorum montibus (Cartadulorum dicitur Regio)perniciſſimum animal,tum quadrupedes,tum rectè currentes humana effigie propter velocitatem,niſi ſenes aut ægri, non capiuntur. Choromandarum gentem vocat Tauron ſilueſtrem ſine voce,ſtridoris horrendi,hirtis corporibus,oculis glaucis, dentibus caninis.Eudoxus in meridianis Indiæ viris plantas eſſe cubitales, fœminis adeò paruas,vt Struthopodes appellentur.Megaſtenes gentem inter Nomadas Indos narium loco foramina tantùm habentem,anguium modo loripedem,vocari Syrictas. Ad extremos fines Indiæ ab Oriente,circa fontem Gangis,Aſtomorum gentem ſine ore, corpore toto hirtam veſtiri frondium lanugine,halitu tantùm viuentem,& odore quem naribus trahant: nullum illis cibum,nullúmque potum: tantum radicum florúmque varios odores & ſylueſtrium malorum, quæ ſecum portant longiore itinere,ne deſit olfactus,grauiore paulò odore haud difficulter exanimari. Supra hos extrema in parte montium Spithamæi Pygmæi narrantur,ternas ſpithamas longitudine,hoc eſt,ternos dodrantes non excedentes,ſalubri cælo,ſempérque vernante,montibus ab Aquilone oppoſitis,quos à gruibus infeſtari Homerus quoq; prodidit: Fama eſt,inſidentes arietum,caprarúmque dorſis,armatos ſagittis,veris tempore, vniuerſo agmine ad mare deſcendere, & oua, pullóſque earum alitum conſumere, ternis expeditionem eam menſibus confici,aliter futuris gregibus non reſiſti.Caſas eorum luto, pennísque, & ouorum putaminibus conſtrui.Ariſtoteles in cauernis viuere Pygmæos tradit. Cætera de his,vt reliqui. Cyrnos Indorum genus Iſigonus annis centenis quadragenis viuere.Item AethiopasMacrobios,& Seras exiſtimat, & qui Athon montem incolant: hos quidem quia viperinis carnibus alantur, itaque nec capiti,nec veſtibus eorum noxia corpori ineſſe animalia. Oneſicritus,quibus in locis Indiæ vmbræ non ſint,corpora hominum cubitorum quinum, & binorum palmorum exiſtere, & viuere annos centum triginta,nec ſeneſcere,ſed vt medio æuo mori.Crates Pergamenus Indos,qui centenos annos excedant Gymnætas appellat,non pauci Macrobios. Cteſias gentem ex his,quæ appellatur Pandore,in conuallibus ſitam,annos ducenos viuere, in iuuenta candido capillo,qui in ſenectute nigreſcat.Contra alios quadragenos non excedere annos,iunctos Macrobijs,quorum fœminæ ſemel pariant: ídque & Agatharchides tradit, prętereà locuſtis eos ali,& eſſe pernices.Mandrorum nomen ijs dedit Clitarchus & Megaſtenes, trecentóſque eorum vicos annumerat. Fœminas ſeptimo ætatis anno parere, ſenectam quadrageſimo anno accedere. Artemidorus, in Taprobana inſula longiſsimam vitam ſine vllo corporis languore traduci.Duris,Indorum quoſdam cum feris coire,miſtóſque & ſemiferos eſſe partus.In Calingis eiuſdem Indiæ gente quinquennes concipere fœminas,octauum vitæ annum non excedere,& alibi cauda villoſa homines naſci pernicitatis eximiæ,alios auribus totos contegi. Oritas ab Indis Arbis fluuius diſterminat. Ii nullum alium cibum nouere,quàm piſcium,quos vnguibus diſſectos ſole torreant, atque ita panem ex his faciunt,vt refert Clitarchus. Troglodytas ſuper Aethiopiam velociores eſſe equis, Pergamenus Crates. Item Aethiopas octona cubita longitudine excedere.Syrbotas vocari gentem eam Nomadum Aethiopum,ſecundùm flumen Aſtapum ad Septentrionem ‖vregentium.Gens Meniſminorum appellata,abeſt ab oceano dierum itinere viginti,animalium,quę Cynocephalos vocamus,lacte viuit,quorum armenta paſcit maribus interemptis,præterquam ſobolis cauſa.In Africæ ſolitudinibus hominum ſpecies obuiæ ſubinde fiunt,momentóque euaneſcunt. Hæc atque talia, ex hominum genere ludibria ſibi,nobis miracula, ingenioſa fecit natura: & ſingula quidem,quæ facit indies,ac propè horas, quis enumerare valeat? Ad detegendam eius potentiam,ſatis ſit inter prodigia poſuiſſe gentes.

‖vel,vergentiũ

This note following,concerning the aide and aſsiſtance of the *Engliſh Marchants, giuen to King Iohn the firſt of Portugal, for the* winning of Ceut in Barbarie, which was the firſt occaſion of all the Portugall diſcoueries,*is taken out of Thomas Walſinghams Latine Chronicle. Anno 1415.*

HOc anno, Ioannes primus Rex Portugalliæ,fretus auxilio Mercatorum Angliæ quàm maximè,& Alemannorum, vicit Agarenos in terra Regis Betinarinorum,multis eorum millibus ad generum Cereris deſtinatis: cepítque ciuitatem eorum quàm ampliſsimam ſupra mare ſitam,vocatam Ceut eorum lingua.

¶ *The ſame in Engliſh.*

THis yeere Iohn the firſt king of Portugal,being principally aſſiſted by the help of the Engliſh Marchants,and Almaines,ouercame the Pagyes in the dominion of the King of Barbarie, 1415.

barie, putting many thousands of them to the swoyde, and he tooke their Citie which was very mightie, seated vpon the sea, which is called Ceut in their language.

The voyage of Macham an Englishman, wherein he first of any man, discouered the Iland of Madera, recorded verbatim in the Portugall historie, written by Anthonio Galuano.

Madera first discouered by one Macham an Englishman.

IN the yeere 1344. King Peter the fourth of that name, raigning in Arragon, the Chronicles of his age, write, that about this time the Iland of Madera, standing in 32. degrees, was discouered by an Englishman, which was named Macham, who sayling out of England into Spaine, with a woman that he had stolne, arriued by tempest in that Iland, and did cast anker in that hauen or baye, which now is called Machico, after the name of Macham. And because his louer was sea sicke, he went on land with some of his companie, and the shippe with a good winde made saile away, and the woman died for thought. Macham, which loued her decrely, built a chappell, or heremitage, to bury her in, calling it by the name of Iesus, and caused his name and hers to be written or grauen vpon the stone of her tombe, and the occasion of their arriuall there: And afterward he ordained a boate made of one tree, (for there be trees of a great compasse about) and went to sea in it, with those men that he had, and were left behinde with him, and came vpon the coast of Affricke, without saile or oare. And the Moores which sawe it, tooke it to be a marueilous thing, and presented him vnto the King of that Countrey for a wonder, and that king also sent him and his companions for a miracle vnto the King of Castile.

Macham made there a chappell, naming it Iesus Chappell.

In the yeere 1395. King Henry the third of that name, raigning in Castile, by the information which Macham gaue of this Iland, and also the shippe of his companie, mooued many of France and Castile to goe and to discouer it, and also the great Canaria, &c.

In the yeere 1417. King Iohn the second, raigning in Castile, and his mother Ladie Katherine being Regent, one Monsieur Ruben of Bracamont, which was Admirall of France, demaunding the conquest of the Ilands of the Canaries, with the title of King, for a kinsman of his named Monsieur Iohn Betancourt, after that the Quene had giuen him them, and holpen him, he departed from Stuyl with a good armie. And they affirme also, that the principal cause which moued him to this, was to discouer the Iland of Madera, which Macham had founde, &c. ibidem pag. 2. of Anthonio Galuano.

Confirmatio treugarum inter Regem Anglię Eduardum quartum, & Ioannem secundum Regem Portugalliæ, datarum in oppido montis Maioris 8. Februarij, & apud Westmonasterium 13. Septembris, 1482. anno regni 22. Regis Eduardi quarti, lingua Lusitanica ex opere sequenti excerpta.

LIBRO DAS OBRAS DE GARCIA DE RESENDE,

que tracta da vida è feitos del Rey dom Ioham secundo.

Embaxada que el Rey mandou à el Rey D'Inglaterra. Cap. 33.

EDaqui de Monte Mor mandou el Rey por embaixadores à el rey dom Duarte de Inglaterra Ruy de Sousa pessoa principal è de muyto boa saber è credito, de que el Rey muyto confiana: è ho doutor Ioam d'Elnas, è fernam de Pina por secretario. E foram por mar muy honradamente com muy boa companhia: hos quaes foram em nome del rey confirmar as ligas antiquas com Inglaterra, que polla condiçan dellas ho nono Rey de hum reyno è do outro era obrigado à mandar confirmar: è tambien pera mostrarem ho titolo que el rey tinha no senhorio de Guinee, pera que depois de vysta el rey D'inglaterra defendesse em todos seus reynos, que ninguen armasse nem podesse mandar à Guinee: è assi mandasse de fazer huna armada que pera laa faziam, per mandado do Duque de Medina Sidonia, hum Ioam Tintam è hum Guilherme fabiam Ingreses. Com ha qual embaixada el rey D'Inglaterra mostrou receber grande contentamento: è foy delle com muyta honra recebida, è em tudo fez inteiramente ho que pellos embaixadores lhe foy requerido: de que elles trouxeran autenticas escrituras das diligencias que com publicos pregones fizeram: è assi as prouisones das apronaçones que eram necessarias: è com tudo muyto ben acabado, è ha vontade del rey se vieram.

‖ These writings are in the Tower.

The

The Ambaſſage which King Iohn the ſecond, King of Portugall ſent to Edward the fourth King of England, which in part was to ſtay one Iohn Tintam, and one William Fabian Engliſhmen, from proceeding in a voyage which they were preparing for Ginnee, 1481. Taken out of the Booke of the workes of Garcias de Reſende, which intreateth of the life and acts of Don Iohn the ſecond King of Portugal. Chap. 33.

AND afterwards the king ſent as ambaſſadours from the towne of Montemaior to king Edward the fourth of England, Ruy de Souſa, a principall perſon, and a man of great wiſedome, and eſtimation, and in whome the King repoſed great truſt, with Doctor Iohn Deluas, and Ferdinand de Pina, as Secretarie. And they made their voyage by ſea very honorably, being very well accompanied. Theſe men were ſent on the behalfe of their King, to confirme the auncient leagues with England, wherein it was conditioned, that the new king of the one and of the other kingdome, ſhould be bound to ſend to confirme the olde leagues. And likewiſe they had order to ſhewe and make him acquainted with the title which the King held in the ſegneurie of Ginnee, to the intent that after the King of England had ſeene the ſame, he ſhould giue charge throughout all his kingdoms, that no man ſhould arme or ſet foorth ſhips to Ginnee: and alſo to requeſt him, that it would pleaſe him to giue commandement to diſſolue a certaine fleete, which one Iohn Tintam, and one William Fabian, Engliſhmen, were making, by commandement of the Duke of Medina Sidonia, to goe to the aforeſaid partes of Ginnee. With which ambaſſage the King of England ſeemed to be very well pleaſed, and they were receiued of him with very great honour, and he condeſcended vnto all that the Embaſſadours required of him, at whoſe hands they receaued authenticall writings of the diligence which they had performed, with publication thereof by the Heralds: and alſo promiſes of thoſe confirmations which were neceſſarie. And hauing diſpatched all things well, and with the Kings good will, they returned home into their countrey.

The firſt cauſe of this ambaſſage.

The ſecond cauſe.

The third cauſe.

The manner of the entring of Solyman the Great Turke, with his armie into Aleppo in Syria, marching toward Perſia againſt the Great Sophie, the fourth day of Nouember, 1553, noted by Maſter Anthonie Ienkinſon, preſent at that time.

THere marched before the Grand Signior, otherwiſe called the Great Turke, 6000. Eſperes, otherwiſe called light horſemen very braue, clothed all in ſcarlet.

After, marched 10000. men, called Nortans, which be tributaries to ꝑ Great Turk, clothed all in yellow veluet, and hats of the ſame, of the Tartarie faſhion, two foote long, with a great role of the ſame colour about their foreheads, richly decked, with their bowes in their hands, of the Turkiſh faſhion.

After them marched foure Captaines, men of armes, called in Turkiſh Saniaques, clothed all foure in crimſon veluet, euery one hauing vnder his banner twelue thouſand men of armes well armed with their morrions vpon their heads, marching in good order, with a ſhort weapon by their ſides, called in their language, Suniterro.

After came 16000. Ianizaries, called the ſlaues of the Grand Signior, all afoote, euery one hauing his harquebuſhe, who be his gard, al clothed in violet ſilke, and apparelled vpon their heads with a ſtrange forme, called Cuocullucia, faſhioned in this ſort: the entring in of the forehead is like a ſkull made of white veluet, & hath a traine hanging downe behinde, in manner of a French hoode, of the ſame colour, and vpon the forepart of the ſaide ſkull, ſtuft in the middes of his forehead there is ſtanding bolt vpright like a trunke of a foote long of ſiluer, garniſhed moſt richely with Goldſmiths worke, and pretious ſtones, and in the toppe of the ſaide trunke, a great buſh of feathers, which wauereth vp and downe moſt braucly when he marcheth.

After this, there came 1000. pages of honour, all clothed in cloth of golde, the halfe of them carying harquebuſhes, and the other halfe Turkiſh bowes, with their quilles of arrowes, marching in good order.

Then came three men of armes well armed, and vpon their harneſſe coates of the Turkes faſhion, of Libard ſkinnes, and murrions vpon their heads, their ſpeares charged, and at the ende of their ſtaffe hard by the head of ꝑ ſpeare, a horſe taile died in a bloody colour, which is their enſigne: they be the challengers for the Turkes owne perſon.

After them came ſeuen pages of honour in cloth of ſiluer, vpon ſeuen white horſes, which hor-

ſes

ses were couered with cloth of siluer, all embyodered and garnished with pretious stones, emeraulds, diamonds, and rubies most richly.

After them also came six more pages of honour, clothed in cloth of golde, euery one hauing his bowe in his hand, and his fawchine of the Turks fashion by his side.

Immediatly after them came the Great Turke himselfe with great pompe, & magnificence, shining in his countenance and gesture a wonderfull Maiestie, hauing onely on each side of his person one page clothed with cloth of golde: he himselfe was mounted vpon a goodly white horse, adorned with a robe of cloth of golde, embyodered moste richly with the most pretious stones, and vpon his head a goodly white tuck, containing in length by estimation fifteene yards, which was of silke and linnen wouen together, resembling something Callicut cloth, but is much more fine and rich, and in the toppe of his crowne, a litle pinnach of white Ostrich feathers, and his horse most richly apparelled in all points correspondent to the same.

After him followed six goodly young Ladies, mounted vpon fine white hackneis, clothed in cloth of siluer, which were of the fashion of mens garments, embyodered very richly with pearle, and pretious stones, and had vpon their heades caps of Goldsmiths worke, hauing great flackets of heare hanging out on each side, died as red as blood, and the nailes of their fingers died of the same colour, euery of them hauing two eunuches on each side, and litle bowes in their hands, after an Antike fashion.

After marched the Great Basha, cheefe conductor of the whole armie, clothed with a robe of Dollymant crimson, and vpon the same another short garment very rich, and about him fiftie Janizaries afoote, of his owne gard, all clothed in crimson veluet, being armed as the Great Turks owne Janizaries.

Then after ensued three other Bashas, with slaues about them, being afoote, to the numbers of three thousand men.

After came a companie of horsemen very braue, and in all pointes well armed, to the number of foure thousand.

All this aforesaid armie, most pompous to behold, which was in number foure score and eight thousand men, encamped about the citie of Aleppo, and the Grand Signior himselfe was lodged within the towne, in a goodly castle, situated vpon a high mountaine: at the foote whereof runneth a goodly riuer, which is a branch of that famous riuer Euphrates.

The rest of his armie passed ouer the mountaines of Armenia, called nowe the mountaines of Camarye, which are foure daies iourney from Aleppo, appointed there to tarie the comming of the Grand Signior, with the rest of his armie, intending to march into Persia, to giue battell to the Great Sophie. So the whole armie of the Grand Signior, containing as well those that went by the mountaines, as also those that came to Aleppo, in companie with him, with horsemen and footemen, and the conductors of the camels and victuals, were the number of 300000. men.

The camels which caried munition and victuals for the said armie, were in number 200000.

A note of the presents that were giuen at the same time in Aleppo, to the Grand Signior, and the names of the presentors.

FIrst the Basha of Aleppo, which is as a Viceroy, presented 100. garments of cloth of golde, and 25. horses.

The Basha of Damasco, presented 100. garments of cloth of golde, and twentie horses, with diuers sortes of comfits, in great quantitie.

The Basha of Amante, presented 100. garments of cloth of gold, 20. horses, and a cup of gold, with two thousand duckets.

The Saniaque of Tripolis, presented six camels, charged all with silkes, 20. horses, and a litle clocke of golde, garnished with pretious stones, esteemed worth two hundred duckets.

The Consul of the companie of the Venetians in Tripolis, came to kisse the Grand Signiors hand, and presented him a great basen of golde, and therein 4000. duckets Venetians.

The safe conduct or priuiledge, giuen by Sultan Solyman the *Great Turke, to Master Anthony Ienkinson at Aleppo in Syria, in* the yeere, 1553.

SVltan Solyman, &c. to all Viceroyes, Saniaques, Cadiz, and other our Iustices, Officers, and Subiects of Tripolis in Syria, Constantinople, Alexandria in Egypt, and of all other Townes, and Cities, vnder our Dominion, and turisdic

iuriſdiction: we will and commaund you, that when you ſhall ſee Anthony Ienkinſon, bearer of theſe preſent letters, marchant of London in England, or his factor, or any other, bearing the ſaid letters for him, arriue in our ports and hauens, with his ſhippe or ſhippes, or other veſſels whatſoeuer, that you ſuffer him to lade or vnlade his marchandiſe whereſoeuer it ſhal ſeeme good vnto him, trafficking for him ſelfe in all our countries and dominions, without hindring or any way diſturbing of him, his ſhippe, his people, or marchandiſe, and without enforcing him to pay any other cuſtome or tole whatſoeuer, in any ſort, or to any perſons whoſoeuer they be, ſaue onely our ordinary duties, contayned in our cuſtome houſes, which when he hath paide, we will that he be franke, and free, as well for himſelfe, as for his people, marchandiſe, ſhippe, or ſhippes, and all other veſſels whatſoeuer, and in ſo doing that he may trafficke, bargaine, ſell, and buy, lade, and vnlade, in all our foreſaide Countries, landes, and dominions, in like ſorte, and with the like liberties and priuiledges, as the Frenchmen and Venetians vſe, and inioy, and more if it be poſſible, without the hinderance or impeachment of any man. And furthermore we charge and commaunde all Viceroyes, and Conſuls of the French nation, and of the Venetians, and all other Conſuls reſident in our Countreys, in what port or prouince ſoeuer they be, not to conſtraine, or cauſe to conſtraine by them, or the ſayde Miniſters and Officers whatſoeuer they be, the ſayde Anthony Ienkinſon, or his factor, or his ſeruants, or deputies, by his marchandiſe, to pay any kinde of conſullage, or other right whatſoeuer, or to intermeddle or hinder his affaires, and not to moleſt nor trouble him any manner of way, becauſe our will and pleaſure is, that he ſhall not pay in all our Countries, any other then our ordinarie cuſtome. And in caſe any man hinder, and impeach him aboue and beſides theſe our preſent letters, we charge you moſt expreſſly to defende, and aſſiſt him againſt the ſayde Conſuls, and if they will not obey our preſent commaundement, that you aduertiſe vs thereof, that we may take ſuch order for the ſame, that others may take example thereby. Moreouer, wee commaunde all our Captaines of our Gallies, and their Lieutenants, be they Foyſtes, or other veſſels, that when they ſhall finde the ſayde Ienkinſon, or his factor, his ſhippe or ſhippes, with his ſeruants, and marchandiſe, that they hurt him not, neyther in bodie nor goods, but that rather they aſſiſt, and defend him againſt all ſuch as ſeeke to doe him wrong, and that they ayde and helpe him with victuals, according to his want, and that whoſoeuer ſhall ſee theſe preſents, obey the ſame, as they will auoide the penaltie in doing the contrarie: Made in Aleppo of Syria, the yeere 961. of our holy Prophet Mahomet, & in the yeere of Ieſus, 1553: ſigned with the ſcepter and ſignet of the Grand Signior, with his owne proper hande.

The very originall hereof was deliuered me Rich. Hakl. by Maſter Ienkinſon in the Turkiſh and French tongues.

A voyage made out of England into Guinea in Affricke, at the charges of certaine Merchants aduenturers of the Citie of London, in the yeere of our Lorde. 1553.

BEing deſired by certaine of my friends, to make ſome mention of this voyage, that ſome memorie thereof might remaine to our poſteritie, if either iniquitie of time, conſuming all things, or ignorance creeping in by barbaroufines and contempt of knowledge, ſhould hereafter bury in obliuion ſo worthy attempts, ſo much the greatlier to be eſteemed, as before neuer enterpriſed by Engliſh men, or at the leaſt ſo frequented, as at this preſent they are, and may be, to the great commoditie of our Merchants, if the ſame be not hindred by the ambition of ſuch, as for the conquering of 40. or 50. miles here and there, and erecting of certaine fortreſſes, thinke to be Lords of halfe the world, enuying that other ſhould enioy the commodities, which they themſelues can not wholy poſſeſſe. And although ſuch as haue bene at charges in the diſcouering & conquering of ſuch landes, ought by good reaſon to haue certaine priuiledges, preheminences, and tributes for the ſame, yet (to ſpeake vnder correction) it may ſeeme ſomewhat rigorous, and againſt good reaſon and conſcience, or rather againſt the charitie that ought to be among Chriſtian men, that ſuch as violently inuade the dominions of other, ſhould not permit other friendly to vſe the trade of merchandiſe, in places neuer, or ſeldome frequented of them, whereby their trade is not hindred in ſuch places, where they themſelues haue at their owne election appointed the martes of their trafficke. But foraſmuch as at this preſent, it is not my intent to accuſe or defend, approoue or improoue

Ambition.

proue, I will cease to speake any further hereof, and proceede to the description of the first voyage, as briefly and faithfully as I was aduertised of the same, by the information of such credible persons, as made diligent inquisition to knowe the trueth hereof, as much as shall be requisite, omitting to speake of many particular thinges, not greatly necessarie to be knowen: which neuertheless, with also the exact course of the nauigation, shall be more fully declared in the second voyage. And if herein fauour or friendship shall perhaps cause some to thinke that some haue bene sharpely touched, let them lay apart fauour and friendship, and giue place to trueth, that honest men may receiue praise for well doing, and leude persons reproch, as the iust stipend of their euil deserts, whereby other may be deterred to doe the like, and vertuous men encouraged to proceede in honest attempts.

Affrica. The coast of Guinea.

But that these voyages may be more plainely vnderstoode of all men, I haue thought good for this purpose, before I intreate hereof, to make a briefe description of Affrica, being the great parte of the worlde, on whose West side beginneth the coast of Guinea at Cabo Verde, about twelue degrees in latitude, on this side the Equinoctiall line, and two degrees in longitude from the measuring line, so running from the North to the South, and by East in some places, within fiue, foure, and three degrees and a halfe vnto the Equinoctiall, and so forth in manner directly East and by North, for the space of thirtie six degrees, or there about, in longitude from the West to the East, as shall more plainely appeare in the description of the seconde voyage.

A briefe description of Affrike, gathered by Richard Eden.

Tunes. Bugia. Tripoli. Numidia.

IN Affrica the lesse are these kingdomes: the kingdome of Tunes and Constantina, which is at this day vnder Tunes, and also the region of Bugia, Tripoli, and Ezzah. This part of Affrike is very barren by reason of the great deserts, as the deserts of Numidia and Barcha. The principall portes of the kingdome of Tunes, are these: Goletta, Bizerta, Potofarnia, Boua, and Stora. The chiefe cities of Tunes, are Constantina, and Boua, with diuers other. Vnder this kingdome are

Ilandes of Tunes. Malta.

many Ilands, as Zerbi, Lampadola, Pantalarea, Limoso, Beit, Gamelaro, and Malta, where at this present is the great Master of the Rhodes. Vnder the South of this kingdome, are the great

The deserts of Libia. Barbarie.

deserts of Lybia. All the nations in this Affrica the lesse, are of the secte of Mahomet, and a rude and barbarous people, liuing scattered in villages. The best of this part of Affrike, is Barbaria, lying on the coast of the sea Mediterraneum.

Mauritania. The kingdoms of Fes and Marrocco

Mauritania (now called Barbaria) is diuided into two partes, as Mauritania Tingitana, and Cesarienſis. Mauritania Tingitana, is nowe called the kingdome of Fes, and the kingdome of Marrocco. The principall citie of Fes, is called Fessa: and the chiefe citie of Marrocco, is named Marrocco.

Tremisen. Oram. Massaquiber. Salla.

Mauritania Cesarienſis, is at this day called the kingdome of Tremisen, with also the citie called Tremisen or Telensin. This region is full of deserts, and reacheth to the sea Mediterraneum, to the citie of Oram, with the port of Massaquiber. The kingdome of Fes reacheth vnto the Ocean sea, from the West to the citie of Argilla: and the port of the sayde kingdome is called Salla.

Azamor.

The kingdome of Marrocco is also extended aboue the Ocean sea, vnto the citie of Azamor and Azafi, which are aboue the Ocean sea, towarde the West of the saide kingdome. In Mauritania Tingitana (that is to say, in the two kingdomes of Fes, and Marrocco) are in the sea, the

The Ilands of Canarie. Guinea. Aethiopians.

Ilands of Canarie, called in olde time, the fortunate Ilandes. Toward the South of this region, is the kingdome of Guinea, with Senega, Ialofo, Gambra, and many other regions of the blacke people, called Aethiopians, or Negros, all which are watered with the riuer Negro, called in olde time Niger. In the said regions are no cities, but onely certaine lowe cottages made of boughes of trees, plastered with chauke, and couered with strawe. In these regions are also very great deserts.

Marrocco. Fes. Tremisen. Guinea.

The kingdome of Marrocco hath vnder it these seuen kingdomes: Hea, Sus, Guzula, the territorie of Marrocco, Duchala, Hazchora, and Telde. The kingdome of Fes hath as many: as Fes, Temesne, Azgar, Elabath, Errifi, Garet, and Elcauz. The kingdome of Tremisen hath these regions: Tremisen, Tenez, and Elgazaet, all which are Machometistes. But all the regions of Guinea are pure Gentiles, and idolatrous, without profession of any religion, or other knowledge of God, then by the lawe of nature.

Affrica

Africa the great, is one of the three partes of the world, knowen in olde time, and ſeuered from Aſia, on the Eaſt by the riuer Nilus, on the Weſt, from Europe by the pillers of Hercules. The hither part is now called Barbarie, and the people Moores. The inner part is called Libya and Ethiopia. Afrike the leſſe, is in this wiſe bounded: On the Weſt it hath Numidia: On the Eaſt Cyrenaica: On the North, the ſea called Mediterraneum. In this countrey was the noble citie of Carthage. Africa the great. Africke the leſſe. Carthage.

In the Eaſt ſide of Africke, beneath the red ſea, dwelleth the great and mightie Emperour and Chriſtian king Preſter John, well knowen to the Portingals in their voyages to Calicut. His dominions reach very farre on euery ſide: and hath vnder him many other kinges both Chriſtian and heathen that pay him tribute. This mightie prince is called Dauid the Emperour of Ethiopia. Some write, that the king of Portingall ſendeth him yeerely eight ſhippes laden with marchandize. His kingdome confineth with the red ſea, and reacheth farre into Afrike toward Egypt and Barbarie. Southward it confineth with the ſea toward the Cape de Bona Speranza: and on the other ſide with the ſea of ſand, called Mare de Sabione, a very dangerous ſea, lying betweene the great citie of Alcayer, or Cairo in Egypt, and the countrey of Ethiopia: In the which way are many vnhabitable deſarts, continuing for the ſpace of fiue dayes iourney. And they affirme, that if the ſaid Chriſtian Emperour were not hindered by thoſe deſarts (in the which is great lacke of victuals, and eſpecially of water) he would or now haue inuaded the kingdome of Egypt, and the citie of Alcayer. The chiefe citie of Ethiopia, where this great Emperour is reſident, is called Amacaiz, being a faire citie, whoſe inhabitants are of the colour of an Oliue. There are alſo many other cities, as the citie of Saua vpon the riuer of Nilus, where the Emperour is accuſtomed to remaine in the Sommer ſeaſon. There is likewiſe a great citie named Barbaregaf, and Aſcon, from whence it is ſaid that the Queene of Saba came to Hieruſalem to heare the wiſedome of Salomon. This citie is but little, yet very faire, and one of the chiefe cities in Ethiope. In the ſaid kingdome is a prouince called Manicongo, whoſe king is a Moore, and tributarie to the Emperour of Ethiope. In this prouince are manie exceeding high mountaines, vpon the which is ſaid to be the earthly Paradiſe: and ſome ſay that there are the trees of the Sunne and Moone, whereof the antiquitie maketh mention: yet that none can paſſe thither, by reaſon of great deſarts of a hundred dayes iourney. Also beyond theſe mountaines, is the cape of Bona Speranza. And to haue ſaid thus much of Afrike it may ſuffice. Cape de Bona Speranza. The ſea of ſand. Alcair. Amacaiz. From whence the Queene of Saba came. Manicongo. The earthly Paradiſe. The trees of the Sunne and Moone.

The firſt voyage to Guinea, and Benin.

IN the yeere of our Lord 1553. the twelfth day of Auguſt, ſailed from Portſmouth two goodly ſhippes, the Primroſe and the Lion, with a pinneſſe called the Moone, being all well furniſhed aſwel with men of the luſtieſt ſort, to the number of ſeuen ſcore, as alſo with ordinance and victuals, requiſite to ſuch a voyage: hauing alſo two captaines, the one a ſtranger, called Antony Anus Pinteado, a Portingall, borne in a towne named the Port of Portingall, a wiſe, diſcreet, and ſober man, who for his cunning in ſailing, being aſwell an expert pilot as a politike captaine, was ſometime in great fauour with the king of Portingall, and to whom the coaſtes of Byaſſie and Guinea, were committed to be kept from the Frenchmen, to whom he was a terror on the ſea in thoſe parts, and was furthermore a gentleman of the king his maiſters houſe. But as fortune in maner neuer fauoreth but flattereth, neuer promiſeth but deceiueth, neuer raiſeth but caſteth downe againe: and as great wealth and fauor hath alwayes companions emulation and enuie, he was after many aduerſities and quarels made againſt him, inforced to come into England: where in this golden voyage he was euill matched with an vnequall companion, and vnlike match of moſt ſundrie qualities & conditions, with vertues few or none adorned. Thus departed theſe noble ſhippes vnder ſaile on their voyage: But firſt captaine Windam, putting foorth of his ſhip at Portſmouth a kinſeman of one of the head merchants, and ſhewing therein a muſter of the tragicall partes he had conceiued in his braine, and with ſuch ſmall beginnings nouriſhed ſo monſtrous a byrth, that more happie, yea and bleſſed was that young man being left behinde, then if he had beene taken with them, as ſome doe wiſh he had done the like by theirs. Thus ſailed they on their voyage, vntill they came to the Ilands of Madera, where they tooke in certaine wines for the ſtore of their ſhippes, and paid for them as they agreed of the price. At theſe Ilands they met with a great Galion of the king of Portingall, full of men and ordinance: yet ſuch as could not haue preuailed if it had attempted to withſtand or reſiſt our ſhippes, for the which cauſe it was ſet foorth, not onely to let and interrupt the ſe our ſhippes of their purpoſed voyage, but all other that ſhould attempt the like: yet chiefly to fruſtrate our voyage. For the king of Portingall was ſhutterly informed, that our ſhippes were armed to his caſtell of Mina in theſe parties, whereas nothing leſſe was ment. The Primroſe. The Lion. The Moone. Pinteado. Byaſſie. Guinea. The flattering of fortune. The Ilands of Madera. A galeon of the king of Portingall. The caſtell of Mina.

After that our ships departed from the Iland of Madera forward on their voyage, began this woorthy captaine Pinteados sorow, as a man tormented with the company of a terrible Hydra, who hitherto flattered with him, & made him a faire countenance and shew of loue. Then did he take vpon him to command all alone, setting nought both by captaine Pinteado, and the rest of the merchant factors: sometimes with opprobrious wordes, and sometimes with threatnings, most shamefully abusing them, taking from Pinteado the seruice of the boies and certaine mariners that were assigned him by the order and direction of the worshipful merchants, and leauing him as a common mariner, which is the greatest despite and griefe that can be to a Portingale or Spaniard, to bee diminished their honour, which they esteeme about all riches. Thus sailing forward on their voiage, they came to the Ilands of Canarie, continuing their course frō thence vntill they arriued at the Iland of S. Nicholas, where they victualed thēselues with fresh meate, of the flesh of wild goates, whereof is great plentie in that Iland, and in maner of nothing els. From hence following on their course and tarying here and there at the desart Ilands in the way, because they would not come to timely to the countrey of Guinea for the heate, and tarying somewhat too long (for what can be well ministred in a common wealth, where inequalitie with tyrannie will rule alone) they came at the length to the first land of the countrey of Guinea, where they fell with the great riuer of Sesto, where they might for their merchandizes haue laden their ships with the graines of that countrey, which is a very hote fruite, and much like vnto a fig as it groweth on the tree. For as the figs are full of small seedes, so is the said fruit full of graines, which are loose within the cod, hauing in the midst thereof a hole on euery side. This kind of spice is much vsed in cold countreis, & may there be sold for great aduantage, for exchange of other wares. But our men by the perswasion or rather inforcement of this tragicall Captaine, not regarding and setting light by that commoditie, in comparison of the fine gold they thirsted, sailed an hundred leagues further, vntil they came to the golden land: where not attempting to come neere the Castell pertaining to the king of Portingall, which was within the riuer of Mina, made sale of their ware onely on this side and beyond it, for the gold of that countrey, to the quantitie of an hundred and fiftie pounds waight, there being in case that they might haue dispatched all their ware for golde, if the vntame hayne of Wyndam had, or could haue giuen eare to the counsell and experience of Pinteado. For when that Wyndam not satisfied with the gold which he had (and more might haue had if he had taried about the Mina) commanding the said Pinteado (for so he tooke vpon him) to lead the ships to Benin, being vnder the Equinoctiall line, and an hundred and fiftie leagues beyond the Mina, where he looked to haue their ships laden with pepper: and being counselled of the said Pinteado, considering the late time of the yeere, for that time to goe no further, but to make sale of their wares such as they had for gold, whereby they might haue bene great gainers: Wyndam not assenting hereunto, fell into a sudden rage, reuiling the said Pinteado, calling him Iew, with other opprobrious wordes, saying, This whoreson Iew hath promised to bring vs to such places as are not, or as he cannot bring vs vnto: but if he doe not, I will cut off his eares, and naile them to the maste. Pinteado gaue the foresaid counsell to goe no further for the safegard of the men and their liues, which they should put in danger if they came too late, for the rossia which is their Winter, not for cold, but for smothering heate, with close and cloudie ayre, and stormie weather, of such putrifying qualitie, that it rotted the coates off their backs: or els for comming too soone for the scorching heate of the sunne, which caused them to linger in the way. But of force and not of will, brought he the shippes before the riuer of Benin, where riding at an Anker, sent their pinnesse vp into the riuer fiftie or threescore leagues, frō whence certaine of the merchants with Captaine Pinteado, Francisco a Portingale, Nicholas Lambert gentleman, and other merchants, were conducted to the court where the king remained, ten leagues from ꝑ riuer side: whither when they came, they were brought with a great company to the presence of the king, who being a black Moore (although not so black as ꝑ rest) sate in a great huge hall, long & wide, ꝑ wals made of earth, without windowes, ꝑ roofe of thin boords, opē in sundry places, like vnto louers to let in ꝑ aire.

And here to speake of the great reuerence they giue to their king, it is such, that if wee would giue as much to our Sauiour Christ, we should remoone from our heads many plagues which we daily deserue for our contempt and impietie.

So it is therefore, that when his noble men are in his presence, they neuer looke him in the face, but sit cowring, as we vpon our knees, so they vpon their buttockes, with their elbowes vpon their knees, and their hands before their faces, not looking vp vntill the king commaund them. And when they are comming toward the king, as far as they doe see him, doe they shew such reuerence, sitting on the ground with their faces couered as before. Likewise when they depart from him, they turne not their backs toward him, but goe creeping backward with like reuerence.

And now to speake somewhat of the communication that was betweene the King and our men,

you

The Ilands of Canarie.
The Iland of S. Nicolas.
Guinea.
The riuer of Sesto.
Graines.
The thirst of gold.
The Castle of Mina.
The quantitie of gold.
Benin.
Pepper.
Furie admitteth no counsaile.
The Rossia.
Rotting heate.
Scorching heate.
Benin.
Francisco.
Nicolas Lambert.
The king of Benin his court.
Reuerence toward the king.

you ſhall firſt vnderſtand that he himſelfe could ſpeake the Portuguſe tongue, which he had learned of a childe. Therefore after he had commaunded our men to ſtand vp, and demaunded of them the cauſe of their comming into that countrey, they anſwered by Pinteado, that they were merchants, trauelling into thoſe parties for the commodities of his countrey, for exchange of wares which they had brought from their countreys, being ſuch as ſhould be no leſſe commodious for him and his people. The King then hauing of olde lying in a certaine ſtore houſe thirtie or fourtie kintals of pepper (euery kintall beyng an hundred weighte) willed them to looke vpon the ſame, and agayne to bring him a ſlight of ſuch merchandizes as they had brought with them. And thereupon ſent with the Captaine and the merchants, certaine of his men to conduct them to the waters ſide, with other to bring the ware from the pinneſſe to the court. Who when they were returned and the wares ſeene, the king grew to this ende with the merchants, to prouide in thirtie dayes the lading of all their ſhips with pepper. And in caſe their merchandizes would not extend to the value of ſo much pepper, hee promiſed to credite them to their next returne: and thereupon ſent the countrey round about to gather pepper, cauſing the ſame to be brought to the court: So that within the ſpace of thirtie dayes they had gathered foureſcore tunne of pepper.

The communication betweene the king of Benin and our men.

Pepper.

The kings gentleneſſe toward our men.

In the meane ſeaſon, our men partly hauing no rule of themſelues, but eating without meaſure of the fruites of the countrey, and drinking the wine of the Palme trees that droppeth in the night from the cut of the branches of the ſame, and in ſuch extreame heate running continually into the water, not vſed before to ſuch ſudden and vehement alterations (then the which nothing is more dangerous) were thereby brought into ſwellings and agues: inſomuch that the later time of the yeere comming on, cauſed them to die ſometimes three, and ſometimes foure or fiue in a day. Then Windam perceiuing the time of the thirtie dayes to be expired, and his men dying ſo faſt, ſent to the court in poſte to captaine Pinteado, and the reſt, to come away and to tary no longer. But Pinteado with the reſt, wrote backe to him againe, certifying him of the great quantitie of pepper they had already gathered, and looked daily for much more: deſiring him furthermore to remember the great prayſe and name they ſhould winne, if they came home proſperouſly, and what ſhame of the contrary. With which anſwere Windam not ſatisfied, and many of their men dying daily, willed and commanded them agayne either to come away forthwith, or els threatned to leaue them behind. Whē Pinteado heard this anſwer, thinking to perſwade him with reaſon, he tooke his way from the court toward the ſhips, being conducted thither with men by the kings commandement.

The diſorder and death of our men.

In the meane ſeaſon Windam all raging, brake vp Pinteados Cabin, brake open his cheſtes, ſpoiled ſuch prouiſion of cold ſtilled waters and ſuckets as he had prouided for his health, and left him nothing, neither of his inſtrumentes to ſaile by, nor yet of his apparell: and in the meane tyme falling ſicke himſelfe, died alſo. Whoſe death Pinteado comming aboord, lamented as much as if he had beene the deareſt friend he had in the world. But certaine of the mariners and other officers did ſpet in his face, ſome calling him Jewe, ſaying that he had brought them thither to kill them: and ſome drawing their ſwordes at him, making a ſhew to ſlay him. Then he perceiuing that they would needes away, deſired them to tary that he might fetch the reſt of the merchants that were left at the court, but they would not graunt his requeſt. Then deſired he them to giue him the ſhip boate, with as much of an olde ſaile as might ſerue for the ſame, promiſing them therewith to bring Nicholas Lambert and the reſt into England, but all was in vaine. Then wrote he a letter to the court to the merchants, informing them of all the matter, and promiſing them if God would lend him life, to returne with all haſt to fetch them. And thus was Pinteado kept a boordſhip againſt his will, thruſt among the boyes of the ſhip, not vſed like a man, nor yet like an honeſt boy, but glad to find fauour at the cookes hand. Then departed they, leauing one of their ſhips behind them, which they ſunke for lacke of men to cary her. After this, within ſixe or ſeuen dayes ſayling, died alſo Pinteado for very penſiuneſſe and thought, that ſtroke him to the heart: A man worthy to ſerue any Prince, and moſt vilely vſed. And of ſeuen ſcore men came home to Plimmouth ſcarcely fortie, and of them many died. And that no man ſhould ſuſpect theſe wordes which I haue ſaid in commendation of Pinteado, to be ſpoken vpon fauour otherwiſe then trueth, I haue thought good to adde hereunto the copie of the letters which the king of Portingale and the infant his brother wrote vnto him to reconcile him, at ſuch time as vpon the king his maiſters diſpleaſure (and not for any other crime or offence, as may appeare by the ſayd letters) he was onely for pouertie induced to come into England, where he firſt perſwaded our merchants to attempte the ſayd voiages to Guinea. But as the king of Portingall too late repented him that he had ſo puniſhed Pinteado, vpon malicious informations of ſuch as enuied the mans good fortune: euen ſo may it hereby appeare, that in ſome caſes, euen Lions themſelues, may either be hindered by the contempt, or aided by the helpe of the poore mill, according vnto the fable of Eſope.

The death of Windam. Pinteado ſlaine by the mariners.

This Lambert was a Londoner borne, whoſe father had bene Lord maior of London.

The death of Pinteado.

Pinteado firſt perſwaded our men to the voyage of Guinea.

The copie of Anthonie Anes Pinteado his letters patents, wherby *the king of Portingall made him knight of his house, after all his troubles and* imprisonment, which, by wrong information made to the king, he had susteined of long time, being at the last deliuered, his cause knowen and manifested to the king by a gray frier the kings Confessor.

I The king do giue you to vnderstand lord Frances Desseosa, one of my counsell, and secretary of my house, that in consideration of the good seruice which Antonie Anes Pinteado, the sonne of John Anes, dwelling in the towne called the Port, hath done vnto me, my will and pleasure is, to make him knight of my house, allowing to him in pension seuen hundred reis monethly, and euery day one alcayre of barly, as long as he kepeth a horse, and to be paid according to the ordinance of my house, prouiding alwayes that he shall receiue but one marriage gift: And this also in such condition, that the time which is excepted in our ordinance, forbidding such men to marry for getting such children as might succeed them in this allowance, which is sixe yeeres after the making of this patent, shalbe first expired before he do marry. I therefore command you to cause this to be entred in the booke called the Matricula of our houshold, vnder the title of knights. And when it is so entred, let the clarke of the Matricula, for the certeintie thereof, write on the backeside of this Aluala, or patent, the number of the leafe wherein this our grant is entred. Which done, let him returne this writing vnto the said Anthonie Anes Pinteado for his warrant.

Seuen hundred reis are ten shillings. Alcayre is halfe a bushell.

I Diego Henriques haue written this in Almarin the twentie and two day of September, in the yeere of our Lord 1551. And this benevolence the king gaue vnto Anthonie Anes Pinteado the twentie and fiue day of July this present yeere.

Rey.

The secretaries declaration written vnder the *kings grant.*

YOur Maiestie hath vouchsafed, in respect and consideration of the good seruice of Anthonie Anes Pinteado, dwelling in the port, and sonne of Iohn Anes, to make him knight of your house, with ordinarie allowance, of seuen hundred reis pension by the moneth, and one alcayre of barly by the day, as long as he keepeth a horse: and to be paid according to the ordinance of your house, with condition that he shall haue but one marriage gift: and that not within the space of sixe yeeres after the making of these letters patents. The secretaries note. Entred in the booke of the Matricula. Fol. 683.

Francisco de Siquera.

The copie of the letter of *Don Lewes* the infant, and brother to the *king of Portingall, sent into England to* Anthonie Anes Pinteado.

ANthonie Anes Pinteado, I the infant brother to the king, haue me heartily commended vnto you. Peter Gonsalues is gone to seeke you, desiring to bring you home againe into your countrey. And for that purpose, hath with him a safe conduct for you, granted by the king, that thereby you may freely and without all feare come home. And although the weather be foule and stormie, yet faile not to come: for in the time that his Maiestie hath giuen you, you may do many thinges to your commendation and gratifying the king, whereof I would be right glad: and to bring the same to passe, will do all that lieth in me for your profite. But forasmuch as Peter Gonsalues will make further declaration hereof vnto you, I say no more at this present. Written in Lisbone the eight day of December. Ann. 1552.

The infant Don Lewes.

ALl these foresaid writings I saw vnder seale, in the house of my friend Nicholas Liell, with whom Pinteado left them, at his vnfortunate departing to Guinea. But notwithstanding all these friendly letters and faire promises, Pinteado durst not attempte to goe home, neither to keepe company with the Portingals his countrey men, without the presence of other: forasmuch as he had secret admonitions that they entended to slay him, if time and place might haue serued their wicked intent.

The

The ſecond voyage to *Guinea*, ſet out by Sir *George Barne*, Sir *Iohn Yorke*, *Thomas Locke*, and *Edward Caſtelyn*, in the yeere 1554.

AS in the firſt voyage I haue declared rather the order of the hyſtorie, then the courſe of the nauigation, whereof at that time I could haue no perfect information: ſo in the diſcription of this ſecond voyage, my cheefe intent hath beene to ſhew the courſe of the ſame, according to the obſeruation and ordinary cuſtome of the Mariners, and as I receiued it at the hands of an expert Pilot, being one of the chiefe in this voyage, who alſo with his owne hands wrote a briefe declaration of the ſame, as he found and tried all things, not by coniecture, but by the art of ſailing, and inſtruments pertaining to the mariners facultie. Not therefore aſſuming to my ſelfe the commendations due vnto other, neither ſo bolde as in any part to change or otherwiſe diſpoſe the order of this voyage, ſo well obſerued by art and experience, I haue thought good to ſet forth the ſame, in ſuch ſort and phraſe of ſpeech as is commonly vſed among them, and as I receiued it of the ſaid Pilot, as I haue ſaid. Take it therefore as followeth.

In the yeere of our Lord 1554. the eleuenth day of October, we departed the riuer of Thames with three goodly ſhippes, the one called the Trinitie, a ſhip of the burden of ſeuenſcore tunne, the other called the Bartholomew, a ſhippe of the burden of ninetie, the third was the Iohn Euangeliſt, a ſhip of ſeuen ſcore tunne. With the ſaid ſhippes and two pinneſſes (whereof the one was drowned on the coaſt of England) we went forward on our voyage, and ſtaid at Douer fourteene dayes. We ſtaid alſo at Rie three or foure dayes. Moreouer laſt of all we touched at Dartmouth. Robert Gainſh was maſter of the Iohn Euangeliſt.

The firſt day of Nouember at nine of the clocke at night, departing from the coaſt of England, we ſet of the Start, bearing Southweſt all that night in the ſea, and the next day all day, and the next night after, vntil the third day of the ſaid moneth about noone, making our way good, did runne three-ſcore leagues.

Item from twelue of the clocke the third day, till twelue of the clocke the fourth day of the ſayd moneth, making our way good Southeaſt, did runne euery three houres two leagues, which amounteth to ſixteene leagues the whole.

Item frō twelue of the clocke the fourth day, to twelue of the clocke the fift day, running Southweſt in the ſea, did runne twelue leagues.

Item from twelue of the clocke the fift day, vntill twelue of the clocke the ſixt day, running Southeaſt, did runne eighteene leagues.

And ſo from twelue of the clocke the ſixt day, vntill twelue of the clocke the ſeuenth day, running Southſouthweſt, did run euery houre two leagues, which amount to eighteene leagues the whole.

Item from twelue of the clocke the ſeuenth day, till three of the clocke the eight day, Southſouthweſt running in the ſea, did runne thirtie leagues.

Item from three of the clocke the eight day, vntill three of the clocke the ninth day, running Southſouthweſt, did runne thirtie leagues.

Item frō three of the clocke the ninth day, till three of the clocke the tenth day, in running Southſoutheaſt in the ſea, did run the ſumme of foure and twentie leagues.

Alſo from three of the clocke the tenth day, vntill twelue of the clocke the eleuenth day, did runne Southſouthweſt the ſumme of twelue leagues, & from twelue of the clocke, till ſixe of the ſaid day, did runne ſixe leagues.

Running South and by weſt in the ſea, from ſixe of the clocke the eleuenth, till ſixe of the clocke the twelft day, did runne ſixe and thirtie leagues.

From ſixe of the clocke at after noone the twelft day, till ſixe of the clocke the thirteenth day at after noone, did runne thirteene leagues.

Item from ſixe of the clocke the thirteenth day, til ſixe of the clocke the fourteenth day after noone, we were becalmed, that we could lie Southweſt with a ſaile. And the fifteenth day in the morning, the winde came to the Eaſt and Eaſtnortheaſt.

The ſeuenteenth day in the morning, we had ſight of the ile of Madera, which doth riſe to him that commeth in the Northnortheaſt part vpright land in the weſt part of it, and very high: and to the Southſoutheaſt a low long land, and a long point, with a ſaddle therow the middeſt of it, ſtanding in two and thirtie degrees: and in the Weſt part, many ſpringes of water running downe from the mountaine, and many white fieldes like vnto corne fieldes, and ſome white houſes to the Southeaſt part of it: and the toppe of the mountaine ſheweth very ragged, if you may ſee it, and in the Northeaſt part there is a bight or bay as though it were a harborow: Alſo in the ſaid part, The ile of Madera.

there is a rocke a litle distance from the shore, and ouer the said bight, you shall see a great gap in the mountaine.

The ile of Palmes. Teneriffa. The Canaries.

The ninteenth day at twelue of the clocke, we had sight of the ile of Palmes and Teneriffa and the Canaries. The ile of Palme riseth round, and lieth Southeast and Northwest, and the North west part is lowest. In the South, is a round hill ouer the head land, and an other round hill aboue that in the land. There are betweene the Southeast part of the ile of Madera and the Northwest part of the ile of Palme seuen and fiftie leagues. This ile of Palme lieth in nine and twentie degrees. And our course from Madera to the ile of Palme was South, and South and by West, & that we had sight of Teneriffa and of the Canaries. The Southeast part of the ile of Palme, & the Northnortheast of Teneriffa, lieth Southeast & Northwest, & betweene them are twentie leagues.

From Madera to the ile of Palmes.

Grancanaria. Fortenentura. The iland of Gomera.

Teneriffa and the great Canarie, called Grancanaria, and the West part of Forteuentura, standeth in seuen and twentie degrees and a halfe. Gomera, is a faire iland but very ragged, & lieth Westsouthwest off Teneriffa. And whosoeuer will come betweene them two ilands, must come South and by East, and in the South part of Gomera is a towne and a good rode in the said part of the iland: and it standeth in twentie and seuen degrees and three terces. Teneriffa is an high land, and a great high pike, like a suger loafe: and vpon the said pike is snow throughout all the whole yeere. And by reason of that picke it may be knowen aboue all other ilands, and there we were becalmed the twentith day of November, from fiue of the clocke in the morning, vntill foure of the clocke after noone.

Teneriffa. Snowe.

The two and twentith day of November, vnder the Tropike of Cancer, the Sunne goeth downe West and by South. Vpon the coast of Barbarie fiue and twentie leagues by North Cape blanke at three leagues off the maine, there are fifteene fadomes, and good shelly ground, and sand among, and no streames, and two small ilands standing in the two and twentie degrees and a terce.

The coast of Barbarie. Cape blanke.

From Gomera to Cape de las Barbas is an hundred leagues, and our course was South and by East. The said Cape standeth in two and twentie and a halfe: and all that coast is sand, fifteene or seuentene fadome deepe. Seuen or eight leagues off from the riuer de Oro to Cape de las Barbas, there vse many Spanyardes and Portingals to trade for fishing, during the moneth of November: and all that coast is very low lands. Also we went from Cape de las Barbas Southsouthwest, and Southwest and by South, till we brought our selues in twentie degrees and a halfe, reckoning our selues seuen leagues off: and that was the least sholes of Cape Blanke.

The riuer de Oro.

Then we went South, vntill we brought our selues in thirteene degrees, reckoning our selues twentie and fiue leagues off. And in fifteene degrees, we did reare the Crossiers, and we might haue reared them sooner if we had looked for them. They are not right a crosse in the moneth of November, by reason that the nights are short there. Neuertheless we had the sight of them the nine & twentith day of the said moneth at night.

The crossiers or crosse stars.

The first of December being in thirteene degrees, we set our course South and by East, vntill the fourth day of December at twelue of the clocke the same day. Then we were in nine degrees & a terce, reckoning our selues thirty leages of the sholes of the riuer called Rio Grande, being Westsouthwest of them: the which sholes be thirtie leagues long.

Rio Grande.

The fourth of December, we began to set our course Southeast, we being in fiue degrees and a halfe.

The ninth day of December we set our course Eastsoutheast: the foureteenth day of the said moneth, we set our course East, we being in fiue degrees and a halfe, reckoning our selues thirtie and fiue leagues from the coast of Guinea.

The nineteenth of the said moneth, we set our course East and by North, reckoning our selues seuenteene leagues distant from Cape Mensurado, the said Cape being Eastnortheast of vs, and the riuer of Sesto being East.

Cape Mensurado. The riuer of Sesto.

The one and twentith day of the said moneth, we fell with Cape Mensurado to the Southeast, about two leagues off. This Cape may be easily knowen, by reason the rising of it is like a Bey pose head. Also toward the Southeast there are three trees, whereof the Easternmost tree is the highest, and the middlemost is like a hie stacke, & the Southernmost like vnto a gibet: and vpon the maine, are foure or fiue high hilles rising one after another like round hommockes or billocks. And the Southeast of the three trees, hyandiern wise: and all the coast along is white sand. The said Cape standeth within a litle in fiue degrees.

The two and twentith of December, we came to the riuer of Sesto, and remained there vntill the nine and twentith day of the said moneth. Here we thought it best to send before vs the pinnesse

to

to the riuer Dulce, called Rio Dulce, that they might haue the beginning of the market before the comming of the Iohn Euangeliſt.

At the riuer of Seſto, we had a tunne of graines. This riuer ſtandeth in ſixe degrees, lacking a terce. From the riuer of Seſto to Rio Dulce, are fiue and twentie leagues. Rio Dulce ſtandeth in fiue degrees and a halfe. The riuer of Seſto is eaſie to be knowen, by reaſon there is a ledge of rockes on the Southeaſt part of the Rode. And at the entring into the hauen, are fiue or ſixe trees that beare no leaues. This is a good harborow, but very narow at the entrance into the riuer. There is alſo a rocke in the hauens mouth right as you enter. And all that coaſt betweene Cape de Monte, and cape de las Palmas, lieth Southeaſt and by Eaſt, Northweſt & by Weſt, being three leagues off the ſhore. And you ſhall haue in ſome places rocks two leagus off: and that betweene the riuer of Seſto and cape de las Palmas. The riuer of Seſto. Rio Dulce. Cape de monte. Cape de las Palmas.

Betweene the riuer of Seſto and the riuer Dulce are fiue and twenty leagues: and the high land that is betweene them both, is called Cakeado, being eight leagues from the riuer of Seſto. And to the Southeaſtward of it, is a place called Shawgro, and an other called Shyawe or Shauo, where you may get freſh water. Off this Shyawe lieth a ledge of rocks: and to the Southeaſtward, lieth a hedland called Croke. Betweene Cakeado and Croke, are nine or ten leagues. To the Southeaſtward off, is a harborow called ſaint Vincent: Right ouer againſt ſaint Vincent, is a rocke vnder the water, two leagues and a halfe off the ſhore. To the Southeaſtward of that rocke you ſhall ſee an iſland about three or foure leagues off: this iſland is not paſt a league off the ſhore. To the Eaſtſoutheaſt of the iſland, is a rocke that lieth aboue the water, and by that rocke goeth in the riuer Dulce, which you ſhall know by the ſaid riuer and rocke. The Northweſt ſide of the hauen, is flat ſand, and the Southeaſt ſide therof, is like an iſland, and a bare plat without any trees, and ſo is it not in any other place. The land of Cakeado. Shauo. Croke. Saint Vincents harborow. The riuer Dulce.

In the Rode, you ſhall ride in thirteene or foureteene fadomes, good owes & ſand, being the marks of the Rode to bring the iſland and the Northeaſt land together, and here we ankered the laſt of December.

The third day of Januarie, we came from the riuer Dulce.

Note that cape de las Palmas, is a faire high land, but ſome low places thereof by the water ſide looke like red cliffes with white ſtrakes like lie wayes, a cable length a piece, and this is to the Eaſt part of the cape. This cape is the Southermoſt land in all the coaſt of Guinea, & ſtandeth in foure degrees and a terce. Cape de las Palmas. The coaſt of Guinea.

The coaſt from Cape de las Palmas to Cape Trepoyntes, or Tres Puntas, is faire and cleare without rocke or other danger.

Twentie and fiue leagues from Cape de las Palmas, the land is higher then in any place, vntill we come to Cape Trepoyntes. And about ten leagues before you come to Cape Trepoyntes, the land riſeth ſtill higher and higher, vntill you come to Cape Trepoyntes. Alſo before you come to the ſaid Cape, after other fiue leagues to the Northweſt part of it, there is certaine broken ground, with two great rockes, and within them in the bight of a bay, is a caſtell called Arra, pertaining to the king of Portingall. You ſhall know it by the ſaid rockes that lie off it: for there is none ſuch from Cape de las Palmas to Cape Trepoyntes. This coaſt lieth Eaſt and by North, Weſt and by South. From Cape de las Palmas to the ſaid caſtell, is foureſcore and fifteene leagues. And the coaſt lieth from the ſaid caſtell to the Weſtermoſt point of Trepoyntes, Southeaſt and by South, Northweſt and by North. Alſo the Weſtermoſt point of Trepoyntes, is a low land, lying halfe a mile out in the ſea: and vpon the innermoſt necke to the land ward, is a tuft of trees, and there we arriued the eleuenth day of January. The caſtell of Arra.

The twelfth day of January, we came to a towne called Samma or Samua, being eight leagues from Cape Trepoyntes toward Eaſtnortheaſt. Betweene Cape Trepoyntes and the towne of Samua, is a great ledge of rockes a great way out in the ſea. We continued foure dayes at that towne, and the captaine thereof would needes haue a pledge a ſhore. But when they receiued the pledge, they kept him ſtill and would trafficke no more, but ſhot off their ordinance at vs. They haue two or three pieces of ordinance and no more. The towne of Samma. The pledge was ſir Iohn Yorke his nephew.

The ſixteenth day of the ſaid moneth, we made reckoning to come to a place called Cape Corea, where captaine Don Iohn dwelleth, whoſe men entertained vs friendly. This Cape Corea is foure leagues Eaſtward of the caſtell of Mina, otherwiſe called La mina, or Caſtello de mina, where we arriued the eighteenth day of the moneth. Heere we made ſale of all our cloth, ſaue two or three packes. Cape Corea. The caſtell of Mina pertaining to the king of Portingall.

The ſixe and twentith day of the ſame moneth we weighed anker, and departed from thence to the Trinitie, which was ſeuen leagues Eaſtward of vs, where ſhe ſolde her wares. Then they of the

Trinitie

Perecow. Perecow grande. Monte Rodondo.

Trinitie willed vs to go Eastward of that eight or nine leagues, to sell part of their wares, in a place called Perecow, and another place named Perecow Grande, being the Easternmost place of both these, which you shal know by a great round hil neere vnto it, named Monte Rodondo, lying West-ward from it, and by the water side are many high palme trees. From hence did we set forth homeward the thirteenth day of February, & plied vp alongst till we came within seuen or eight leagues to Cape Trepointes. About eight of the clocke the fifteenth day at afternoone, we did cast about to seaward: and beware of the currants, for they will deceiue you sore. Whosoeuer shall come from the coast of Mina homeward, let him be sure to make his way good West, vntill he reckon himselfe as farre as Cape de las Palmas, where the currant setteth alwayes to the Eastward. And within twentie leagues Eastwarde of Cape de las Palmas, is a riuer called De los Potos, where you may haue fresh water and balast enough, and plentie of iuory or Elephants teeth. This riuer standeth in foure degrees, and almost two terces. And when you reckon your selfe as farre shot as Cape de las Palmas, being in a degree, or a degree and a halfe, you may go West, and West by North, vntill you come in three degrees: and then you may go Westnorthwest, and Northwest and by West, vntill you come in fiue degrees, and then Northwest. And in sixe degrees, we met Northerly windes, and great ruffling of tides. And as we could iudge, the currants went to the Northnorthwest. Furthermore betweene Cape de Monte, and Cape verde, go great currants which deceiue many men.

The currants. From Mina homeward. Rio de los Potos. Iuory. Cabo de las Palmas. Currants.

The two and twentith day of April, we were in eight degrees and two terces: and so we ranne to the Northwest, hauing the winde at Northeast and Eastnortheast, and sometimes at East, vntil we were at eighteene degrees and a terce, which was on May day. And so from eighteene and two terces, we had the winde at East and Eastnortheast, and sometimes at Eastsoutheast: and then we reckoned the islands of Cape verde Eastsoutheast of vs, we iudging our selues to be eight and fortie leagues off. And in twentie and one and twentie degrees, we had the winde more Easterly to the Southward then before. And so we ran to the Northwest and Northnorthwest, and sometimes North and by West and North, vntill we came into one and thirtie degrees, where we reckoned our selues a hundred and fourescore leagues Southwest, and by South of the island de Flore, or de los Flores, and there we met with the winde at Southsoutheast, and set our course Northeast.

The Ile de Flores.

In three and twentie degrees, we had the winde at the South and Southwest, and then we set our course North northeast, and so we ran to fortie degrees, and then we set our course Northeast, the wind being at the Southwest, and hauing the Ile de Flores East of vs, and xvii. leagues of.

In the one and fortie degrees, we met with the wind at Northeast, and so we ran Northwestward, then we met with the winde West northwest, & at the West within sixe leagues, running toward the Northwest, and then we cast about, and lay Northeast, vntill we came in two and fortie degrees, where we set our course East northeast, iudging the Ile of Coruo South and by West of vs, and sixe and thirtie leagues distant from vs.

The Ile of Coruo.

A remembrance, that the one and twentie day of May we communed with Iohn Rafe, and he thought it best to goe Northeast, and iudged himselfe fiue and twentie leagues Eastward to the Ile de Flores, and in nine and thirtie degrees and a halfe.

Where they lost the sight of the North starre.

Note, that on the fourth day of September, vnder nine degrees, we lost the sight of the North starre.

How the compasse varieth.

Note also, that in fiue and fortie degrees, the compasse is varied eight degrees to the West.

Item, in fortie degrees, the compasse did varie fifteene degrees in the whole.

Item, in thirtie degrees and a halfe, the compasse is varied fiue degrees to the West.

Be it also in memory, that two or three dayes before we came to Cape Troispoints, the pinnesse went alongst the shore, thinking to sell some of our wares, and so we came to anker three or foure leagues West and by South of the Cape Troispoints, where we left the Trinitie.

Then our pinnesse came aboord with all our men, the pinnesse also tooke in more wares. They told me moreouer that they would goe to a place where the Primrole was, and had receiued much gold at the first voiage to these parties, and told me furthermore that it was a good place: but I fearing a brigantine that was then vpon the coast, did wey and folow them, and left the Trinitie about foure leagues off from vs, and there we rode against that towne foure dayes: so that Martine by his owne desire, and assent of some of the Commissioners that were in the pinnesse, went a shore to the towne, and there Iohn Berin went to traffique from vs, being three miles off trafiquing at an other towne. The towne is called Samma or Samua, for Samma and Sammatera, are the names of the two first townes, where we did traffique for gold, to the Northeast of Cape Troispoints.

The Primrole.

The townes of Samma. Gold.

Hitherto continueth the course of the voiage, as it was described by the said Pilot. Now hereafter

I will

I will ſpeake ſomewhat of the countrey & people, and of ſuch things as are brought from thence.

They brought from thence at the laſt voyage, foure hundred pound weight and odde of golde, of two and twentie carrats and one graine in fineneſſe: alſo ſixe & thirtie butts of graines, and about two hundred and fiftie Elephants teeth of all quantities. Of theſe I ſaw & meaſured ſome of nine ſpannes in length, as they were crooked. Some of them were as bigge as a mans thigh aboue the knee, and weyed about foureſcore and ten pound weight a piece. They ſay that ſome one hath beene ſeene of an hundred and fiue and twentie pound weight. Other there were which they call the teeth of calues, of one or two or three yeeres, whereof ſome were a foot and a halfe, foure two foot, & ſome three, or more, according to the age of the beaſt. Theſe great teeth or tuſks, grow in the vpper iaw downewards, and not in the nether iaw vpward, wherein the Painters and Arras workers are deceiued. At this laſt voyage was brought from Guinea the head of an Elephant, of ſuch huge bignes, that onely the bones or crane in the roof, beſide the nether iaw and great tuſks, weighed about two hundred weight, and was as much as I could well lift from the ground: inſomuch that conſidering alſo herewith the weight of two ſuch great teeth, the nether iaw with the leſſe teeth, the tongue, the great hanging eares, the bigge and long ſnout or troonke, with all the fleſh, braines, and ſkinne, with all other parts belonging to the whole head, in my iudgement it could weigh little leſſe then fiue hundred weight. This head diuers haue ſeene in the houſe of the worſhipfull merchant ſir Andrew Iudde, where alſo I ſaw it, and beheld it, not onely with my bodily eyes, but much more with the eyes of my minde and ſpirit, conſidered by the worke, the cunning and wiſedome of the workemaiſter: without which conſideration, the ſight of ſuch ſtrange and woonderfull things may rather ſeeme curioſities then profitable contemplations.

Golde foure hundred weight.
Graines.
Elephants teeth.
The head of an Elephant.
Sir Andrew Iudde.
The contemplations of Gods works.

The Elephant (which ſome call an Oliphant) is the biggeſt of all foure footed beaſts, his foreleggs are longer then his hinder. He hath ancles in the lower part of his hinder leggs, and fiue toes on his feet vndiuided. His ſnout or troonke is ſo long, & in ſuch ſorte, that it is to him in ſtead of a hand: for he neither eateth nor drinketh but by bringing his troonke to his mouth, therewith he helpeth vp his maiſter or keeper, therewith he ouerthroweth trees. Beſide his two great tuſks, he hath on euery ſide of his mouth foure teeth, wherewith he eateth and grindeth his meat: either of theſe teeth, are almoſt a ſpanne in length, as they grow along in the iaw, and are about two inches in height, and almoſt as much in thickneſſe. The tuſkes of the male are greater then of the female: his tongue is very litle, and ſo farre in his mouth, that it cannot be ſeene: of all beaſts they are moſt gentle and tractable, for by many ſundry wayes they are taught, and doe vnderſtand: inſomuch that they learne to doe due honor to a king, and are of quicke ſenſe and ſharpeneſſe of witte. When the male hath once ſeaſoned the female, he neuer after toucheth her. The male Elephant liueth two hundred yeeres, or at the leaſt one hundred and twentie: the female almoſt as long, but the floure of their age, is but threeſcore yeeres, as ſome write. They cannot ſuffer winter or colde: they loue riuers, and will often goe into them vp to the ſnout, wherewith they blow and ſnuffe, and play in the water: but ſwimme they cannot, for the weight of their bodies. Plinie and Soline write, that they vſe none aduouterie. If they happen to meet with a man in wildernes being out of the way, gently they will goe before him, and bring him into the plaine way. Ioined in battell they haue no ſmall reſpect vnto them that be wounded: for they bring them that are hurt or weary into the middle of the army to be defended: they are made tame by drinking the iuice of barley. They haue continuall warre againſt Dragons, which deſire their blood, becauſe it is very colde: and therefore the Dragon lying a wait as the Elephant paſſeth by, windeth his taile (being of exceeding length) about the hinder leggs of the Elephant, & ſo ſtaying him, thruſteth his head into his troonke and ſtoppeth his breath, or elſe biteth him in the eare, whereunto he cannot reach with his troonke, and when the Elephant waxeth faint, he falleth to wreſt on the ſerpent, being now ſo full of blood, and with the poiſe of his body breaketh him: ſo that his owne blood with the blood of the Elephant, runneth out of him mingled together, which being colde, is congealed into that ſubſtance which the Apothecaries call Sanguis Draconis, (that is) Dragons blood, otherwiſe called Cinnabaris, although there be an other kinde of Cinnabaris, commonly called cinoper or vermilion, which the painters vſe in certeine colours.

The life of the Elephant & the Dragon.
Sanguis Draconis.
Cinnabaris.

They are alſo of three kindes, as of the marſhes, the plaines, and the mountaines, no leſſe differing in conditions. Philoſtratus writeth, that as much as the Elephant of Libya in bigneſſe paſſeth the horſe of Nyſea, ſo much doe the Elephants of India exceede them of Libya: for of the Elephants of India, ſome haue beene ſeene of the height of nine cubites: the other doe ſo greatly feare theſe, that they dare not abide the ſight of them. Of the Indian Elephants, onely the males haue tuſkes, but of them of Ethiopia and Libya, both kindes are tuſked: they are of diuers heights, as of twelue, thirteene, and fourteene cubants, euery cubiant being a meaſure of nine inches. Some

Their kindes of Elephants.

write

wute that an Elephant is bigger then three wilde Oxen or Buffes. They of India are blacke, or of the colour of a mouse, but they of Ethiope or Guinea, are browne: the hide or skinne of them all is very hard, and without haire or bristles: their eares are two cubyants broad, and their eyes very little. Our men saw one drinking at a riuer in Guinea, as they sailed into the land.

Of other properties and conditions of the Elephant, as of their maruellous docilitie, of their fight and vse in the warres, of their generation and chastitie, when they were first seene in the theaters and triumphes of the Romans, how they are taken and tamed, and when they cast their tusks, with the vse of the same in medicine, who so desireth to know, let him reade Plinie, in the eight booke of his naturall historie. He also writeth in his twelft booke, that in olde time they made many goodly workes of iuory or Elephants teeth: as tables, trellis, postes of houses, valles, lattesses for windowes, images of their gods, and diuers other things of iuory, both coloured and vncoloured, and intermixt with sundry kindes of precious woods, as at this day are made certaine chaires, lutes, and virginalles. They had such plentie thereof in olde time, that (as far as I remember) Iosephus writeth, that one of the gates of Hierusalem was called Porta Eburnea, (that is) the Iuory gate. The whitenesse thereof was so much esteemed, that it was thought to represent the naturall fairenesse of mans skinne: insomuch that such as went about to set forth (or rather corrupt) naturall beautie with colours and painting, were reproued by this prouerbe, Ebur atramento candefacere, that is, To make iuory white with inke. The poets also, describing the faire necks of beautifull virgins, call them Eburnea colla, that is, Iuory necks. And to haue said thus much of Elephants and iuory, it may suffice.

Workes of iuory.

The people of Africa.

Now therefore I will speake somewhat of the people and their maners, and maner of liuing, with an other briefe description of Africa also. It is to be vnderstood, that the people which now inhabite the regions of the coast of Guinea, and the mid parts of Africa, as Libya the inner, and Nubia, with diuers other great and large regions about the same, were in olde time called Ethiopes & Nigritæ, which we now call Moores, Moyens, or Negroes, a people of beastly liuing, without a God, law, religion, or common wealth, and so scorched and vexed with the heat of the sunne, that in many places they curse it when it riseth. Of the regions and people about the inner Libya (called Libya Interior) Gemma Phrysius writeth thus.

Libya Interior.

Libya Interior, is very large and desolate, in the which are many horrible wildernesses & mountaines, replenished with diuers kindes of wilde and monstrous beasts and serpents. First from Mauritania or Barbarie toward the South is Getulia, a rough and saluage region, whose inhabitants are wilde and wandering people. After these follow the people called Melanogetuli and Pharusij, which wander in the wildernesse, carrying with them great gourdes of water. The Ethiopians, called Nigritæ, occupie a great part of Africa, and are extended to the West Ocean. Southward also they reach to the riuer Nigritis, whose nature agreeth with the riuer of Nilus, so much as it is increased and diminished at the same time, and bringeth forth the like beastes as the Crocodile. By reason whereof, I thinke this to be the same riuer which the Portingals call Senega: For this riuer is also of the same nature. It is furthermore maruellous and very strange that is said of this riuer: And this is, that on the one side thereof, the inhabitants are of high stature and blacke, and on the other side, of browne or tawnie colour, and low stature, which thing also our men confirme to be true.

Getulia.

Ethiopes. Nigritæ.

The riuer Nigritis or Senega.

A strange thing.

There are also other people of Libya called Garamantes, whose women are common: for they contract no matrimonie, neither haue respect to chastitie. After these are the nations of the people called Pyrei, Sathiodaphnitæ, Odrangi, Mimaces, Lynxamatæ, Dolopes, Aganginæ, Leuci Ethiopes, Xilicei Ethiopes, Calcei Ethiopes, and Nubi. These haue the same situation in Ptolomie that they now giue to the kingdome of Nubia. Heere are certaine Christians vnder the dominion of the great Emperour of Ethiopia, called Prester John. From these toward the West, is a great nation of people called Aphricerones, whose region (as farre as may be gathered by coniecture) is the same that is now called Regnum Orguene, confining vpon the East parts of Guinea. From hence Westward, and somewhat toward the North, are the kingdomes of Gambra and Bodomel, not farre from the riuer of Senega. And from hence toward the inland regions, and along by the sea coast, are the regions of Ginoia or Guinea, which we commonly call Ginnee. On the West side of these regions toward the Ocean, is the cape or point called Cabo verde, or Caput viride (that is) The greene cape, to the which the Portingals first direct their course when they sail to America, or the land of Brasile. Then departing from hence, they turne to the right hand toward the quarter of the winde called Garbino, which is betweene the West and the South. But to speake somewhat more of Ethiopia: although there are many nations of people so named, yet is Ethiopia chiefly diuided into two parts, whereof the one is called Ethiopia vnder Egypt, a great

Garamantes.

People of Libya.

Prester Iohn.

Regnum Orguene. Gambra.

Guinea or Cap. Verde. The Portingals nauigations to Brasile.

Ethiopia.

and

and rich region. To this pertcineth the iland Meroe, imbraced round about with the streames of the riuer Nilus. In this iland women reigned in olde time. Iosephus writeth, that it was some-time called Saba: and that the queene of Saba came from thence to Hierusalem, to heare the wise-dome of Salomon. From hence toward the East, reigneth the said Christian Emperour Prester John, whom some call Papa Iohannes, and other say that he is called Pean Iuan (that is) great John, whose Empire reacheth farre beyond Nilus, and is extended to the coastes of the red sea and Indian sea. The middle of the region is almost in three score and sixe degrees of longitude, & twelue degrees of latitude. About this region inhabite the people called Clodi, Risophagi, Babylonij, Axiunitæ, Molili, and Molibæ. After these is the region called Troglodytica, whose inhabitants dwell in caues and dennes: for these are their houses, and the flesh of serpents their meat, as writeth Plinie, and Diodorus Siculus. They haue no speech, but rather a grinning and chattering. There are also people without heades, called Blemmies, hauing their eyes and mouth in their brest. Likewise Strucophagi, and naked Ganphasantes: Satyrs also, which haue nothing of men but onely shape. Moreouer Oripei, great hunters. Mennones also, and the region of Smyrnophora, which bringeth forth myrrh. After these is the region of Azania, in the which many Elephants are found. A great part of the other regions of Affrike that are beyond the Equinoctiall line, are now ascribed to the kingdome of Melinde, whose inhabitantes are accustomed to traffike with the nations of Arabie, and their king is ioyned in friendship with the king of Portingall & payeth tribute to Prester John.

The iland of Meroe.

The queene of Saba.

Prester John Emperour of Ethiopia.

People of the East side of Africa.

People without heads.

Myrrh.

Azania.

Regnum Melinde.

The other Ethiope, called Ethiopia Interior (that is) the inner Ethiope, is not yet knowne for the greatnesse thereof, but onely by the sea coastes: yet is it described in this maner. First from the Equinoctiall toward the South, is a great region of Ethiopians, which bringeth forth white Elephants, Tygers, and the beastes called Rhinocerontes. Also a region that bringeth foorth plentie of cynamome, lying betweene the branches of Nilus. Also the kingdome of Habech or Habasia, a region of Christian men, lying both on this side and beyond Nilus. Here are also the Ethiopians, called Ichthiophagi (that is) such as liue onely by fish, and were sometimes subdued by the warres of great Alexander. Furthermore the Ethiopians called Rhaphij, and Anthropophagi, that are accustomed to eate flesh, inhabite the regions neere vnto the mountaines called Montes Lunæ (that is) the mountaines of the Moone. Gazacia is vnder the Tropike of Capricorne. After this, followeth the front of Affrike, the Cape of Buena Speranza, or Caput Bonæ Spei, (that is) the Cape of good hope, by the which they passe that saile from Spaine to Calicut. But by what names the Capes and gulfes are called, forasmuch as the same are in euery globe and card, it were here superfluous to rehearse them.

Ethiopia Interior.

White Elephants.

Habasia.

Ichthiophagi.

Anthropophagi.

Montes Lunæ.

Gazacia.

Cape bonæ Spei.

Some write that Affrica was so named by the Grecians, because it is without colde. For the Greeke letter Alpha or A, signifieth priuation, void, or without: and Phrice, signifieth colde. For in deed although in the stead of Winter, they haue a cloudie and tempestuous season, yet is it not colde, but rather smothering hotte, with hotte showres of raine also, and some where such scorching windes, that what by one meanes and other, they seeme at certeine times to liue as it were in furnaces, and in maner already halfe way in Purgatorie or hell. Gemma Phrisius writeth, that in certeine partes of Affrica, as in Atlas the greater, the ayre in the night season is seene shining, with many strange fires and flames rising in maner as high as the Moone: and that in the element are sometime heard as it were the sound of pipes, trumpets and drummes: which noises may perhaps be caused by the vehement and sundry motions of such firie exhalations in the ayre, as we see the like in many experiences wrought by fire, ayre, & winde. The hollownesse also, and diuers reflexions and breaking of the clouds, may be great causes hereof, beside the vehement colde of the middle region of the ayre, whereby the said firie exhalations, ascending thither, are suddenly stricken backe with great force: for euen common and dayly experience teacheth vs, by the whistling of a burning torch, what noise fire maketh in the ayre, and much more where it striueth when it is inclosed with ayre, as appeareth in gunnes, and as the like is seene in only aire inclosed, as in Organ pipes, and such other instruments that go by winde. For winde (as say the Philosophers) is none other then ayre vehemently moued, as we see in a paire of bellowes, and such other.

Africa without colde.

The winter of Africa.

Flames of fire & noise in the aire.

The middle region of the aire is colde.

The strife of elements.

Winde.

Some of our men of good credit that were in this last voyage to Guinea, affirme earnestly that in the night season they felt a sensible heat to come from the beames of the moone. The which thing, although it be strange and insensible to vs that inhabite colde regions, yet doth it stand with good reason that it may so be, forasmuch as the nature of starres and planets (as writeth Plinie) consisteth of fire, and containeth in it a spirit of life, which cannot be without heat.

The heat of the Moone.

The nature of the Starres.

And that the Moone giueth heate vpon the earth, the Prophet Dauid seemeth to confirme in his 121 Psalme, where speaking of such men as are defended from euils by Gods protection,

he

he saith thus: Per diem Sol non exuret te, nec Luna per noctem. That is to say, In the day the Sunne shall not burne thee, nor the Moone by night.

Spoutes of water falling out of the aire.

They say furthermore that in certaine places of the sea, they saw certaine streames of water, which they call spouts, falling out of the aire into the sea, and that some of these are as bigge as the great pillers of Churches: insomuch that sometimes they fall into shippes, and put them in great danger of drowning. Some faine that these should be the Cataracts of heauen, which were all opened at Noes flood. But I thinke them rather to be such fluxions and eruptions as Aristotle in his booke de Mundo saith, to chance in the sea. For speaking of such strange things as are seene often times in the sea, he writeth thus. Oftentimes also euen in the sea are seene euaporations of fire, and such eruptions and breaking foorth of springs, that the mouthes of riuers are opened, Whirlepooles, and fluxions are caused of such other vehement motions, not onely in the middest of the sea, but also in creekes and streights. At certaine times also, a great quantitie of water is suddenly lifted vp and carried about with the Moone, &c. By which wordes of Aristotle it doth appeare that such waters be lifted vp in one place at one time, and suddenly fall downe in an other place at another time. And hereunto perhaps pertaineth it that Richard Chancellor tolde me that he heard Sebastian Cabot report, that (as farre as I remember) either about the coastes of Brasile or Rio de Plata, his shippe or pinnesse was suddenly lifted from the sea, and cast vpon land, I wot not howe farre. The which thing, and such other like wonderfull and strange workes of nature while I consider, and call to remembrance the narrownesse of mans vnderstanding and knowledge, in comparison of her mightie power, I can but cease to maruell and confesse with Plinie, that nothing is to her impossible, the least part of whose power is not yet knowen to men. Many thinges more our men saw and considered in this voyage, worthie to be noted, whereof I haue thought good to put some in memorie, that the reader may as well take pleasure in the varietie of things, as knowledge of the hystorie. Among other thinges therefore touching the maners and nature of the people, this may seeme strange, that their princes and noble men vse to pounce and rase their skinnes with prettie knots in diuers formes, as it were branched damaske, thinking that to be a decent ornament. And albeit they goe in maner all naked, yet are many of them, and especially their women, in maner laden with collars, braslets, hoopes, and chaines, either of golde, copper, or iuory. I my selfe haue one of their braslets of iuory, weighing two pound and fiue ounces of Troy weight, which make eight and thirtie ounces: this one of their women did weare vpon her arme. It is made of one whole piece of the biggest part of the tooth, turned and somewhat carued, with a hole in the middest, wherein they put their hands to weare it on their arme. Some haue of euery arme one, and as many on their legs, where with some of them are so galled, that although they are in maner made lame thereby, yet will they by no meanes leaue them off. Some weare also on their legs great shackles of bright copper, which they thinke to be no lesse comely. They weare also collars, braslets, garlands, and girdles, of certaine blew stones like beades. Likewise some of their women weare on their bare armes certaine foresleeues, made of the plates of beaten golde. On their fingers also they weare rings, made of golden wires, with a knot or wreath, like vnto that which children make in a ring of a rush. Among other thinges of golde that our men bought of them for exchange of their wares, were certaine dogs chaines and collers.

Vehement motions in the sea.

A strange thing.

The power of nature.

They raise their skinnes.

Fine iewels.

A braslet.

Shackles.

Rings.

Dogs chaines of golde.

They are very warie people in their bargaining, and will not lose one sparke of golde of any value. They vse weights and measures, and are very circumspect in occupying the same. They that shall haue to do with them, must vse them gently: for they wil not traffike or bring in any wares if they be euill vsed. At the first voyage that our men had into these parties, it so chanced, that at their departure from the first place where they did traffike, one of them either stole a muske catte, or tooke her away by force, not mistrusting that that should haue hindred their bargaining in another place whither they intended to go. But for all the haste they could make with full sailes, the fame of their misusage so preuented them, that the people of that place also, offended thereby, would bring in no wares: insomuch that they were inforced either to restore the cat, or pay for her at their price, before they could traffike there.

A muske cat.

Their houses.

Their feeding.

Fleeing fishes.

A strange thing.

Their houses are made of foure postes or trees, and couered with boughes.

Their common feeding is of roots, and such fishes as they take, whereof they haue great plentie. There are also such fleeing fishes as are seene in the sea of the West Indies. Our men salted of their fishes, hoping to prouide store thereof: but they would take no salt, and must therefore be eaten forthwith as some say. Howbeit, other affirme that if they be salted immediatly after they be taken, they will last vncorrupted ten or twelue dayes. But this is more strange, that part of such fish as they caried with them out of England, and putrified there, became sweet againe at their returne to the clime of temperate regions.

They

They vse also a strange making of bread, in this maner. They grinde betweene two stones with their handes as much corne as they thinke may suffice their family, & when they haue thus brought it to floure, they put thereto a certaine quantitie of water, and make therof very thinne dough, which they sticke vpō some post of their houses, where it is baked by the heat of the sunne: so that when the master of the house or any of his family wil eat therof, they take it downe & eat it. Their bread.

They haue very faire wheate, the eare whereof is two handfuls in length, and as bigge as a great Bulrush, and almost foure inches about where it is biggest. The stemme or straw seemeth to be almost as bigge as the litle finger of a mans hand, or litle lesse. The graines of this wheate are as big as our pease, round also, and very white, and somewhat shining, like pearles that haue lost their colour. Almost al the substance of them turneth into floure, & maketh litle branne or none. I told in one eare two hundred & threescore graines. The eare is inclosed in three blades longer then it selfe, & of two ynches broad a piece. And by this fruitfulnes the Sunne seemeth partly to recompence such griefes and molestations as they otherwise receiue by the feruent heate thereof. It is doubtlesse a worthy contemplation to consider the cōtrary effects of the Sunne: or rather the contrary passions of such things as receiue the influence of his beames, either to their hurt or benefite. Their wheate. The Sunne.

Their drinke is either water, or the iuise that droppeth from the cut branches of the barren Date trees, called Palmites. For either they hang great gourdes at the said branches euery euening, and let them so hang all night, or els they set them on the ground vnder the trees, that the droppes may fall therein. They say that this kinde of drinke is in taste much like vnto whey, but somewhat sweeter, and more pleasant. They cut the branches euery euening, because they are seared vp in the day by the heate of the Sunne. They haue also great Beanes as bigge as chestnuts, and very hard with a shell in the stead of a huske. Their drinke.

Many thinges more might be saide of the maners of the people, and of the wonders and monstrous things that are engendred in Africke. But it shall suffice to haue saide thus much of such things as our men partly sawe, and partly brought with them.

And whereas before speaking of the fruite of graines, I described the same to haue holes by the side (as in deede it is, as it is brought hither) yet was I afterwarde enformed, that those holes were made to put stringes or twigges through the fruite, thereby to hang them vp to dry at the Sunne. They grow not past a foote and a halfe, or two foote from the ground, and are as redde as blood when they are gathered. The graines themselues are called of ỹ Physitiōs Grana Paradisi. Graines.

At their comming home, the keeles of their shippes were maruellously ouergrowne with certaine shelles of two inches length and more, as thicke as they could stande, and of such bignesse that a man might put his thumme in the mouthes of them. They certainely affirme that in these there groweth a certaine slimie substance, which at the length slipping out of the shell and falling in the sea, becommeth those foules which we call Barnacles. The like shelles haue bene seene in shippes returning from Iseland, but these shels were not past halfe an inch in length. Of the other that came from Guinea, I sawe the Pymrole lying in the Docke, and in maner couered with the said shelles, which in my iudgement should greatly hinder her sayling. Their shippes were also in many places eaten with the wormes called Bromas or Bissas, whereof mention is made in the Decades. These creepe betweene the plankes, which they eate through in many places. Shelles that cleane to ships. Barnacles. Bromas. A secret.

Among other things that chaūced to them in this voyage, this is worthy to be noted, that whereas they sailed thither in seuen weekes, they could returne in no lesse space then twentie weekes. The cause whereof they say to be this: That about the coast of Cabo Verde, the winde is euer at the East, by reason whereof they were enforced to saile farre out of their course into the maine Ocean, to finde the winde at the West to bring them home. There died of our men at this last voyage about twentie and foure, whereof many died at their returne into the clyme of the colde regions, as betweene the Ilands of Azores and England. They brought with them certaine blacke slaues, whereof same were tall and strong men, and could wel agree with our meates and drinkes. The colde and moyst ayre doth somewhat offend them. Yet doubtlesse men that are borne in hotte Regions, may better abide colde, then men that are borne in colde Regions may abide heate, forasmuch as vehement heate resolueth the radicall moysture of mens bodies, as colde constraineth and preserueth the same. The death of our men. 5. Blacke Moores brought into England. Colde may be better abiden then heate.

This is also to be considered as a secret worke of nature, that throughout al Affricke vnder the Equinoctiall line, and neere about the same on both sides, the regions are extreeme hotte, and the people very blacke. Whereas contrarily such regions of the West Indies as are vnder the same line, are very temperate, and the people neither blacke, nor with curlde and short woll on their heads, as haue they of Affrike, but of the colour of an Olive, with long and blacke heare on their heads: the cause of which varietie is declared in diuers places in the Decades.

It is also worthy to be noted that some of them that were at this voyage tolde me: That is, that they ouertooke the course of the Sunne, so that they had it North from them at noone, the xiii. day of March. And to haue said thus much of these voyages, it may suffice.

The first voyage made by M. William Towrson Marchant of London, to the coast of Guinea, with two Shippes, in the yeere 1555.

September. Vpon munday the 30. day of September we departed from the Isle of Wight, out of the hauen of Neuport with 2. good shippes, the one called the Hart the other the Hinde, both of London, and the Masters of them were John Ralphe, and William Carter, for a voyage to be made vnto the Riuer de Sestos in Guinea, and to other hauens there about.

October. It fell out by the varietie of windes, that it was the 14. day of October before we could fetch Dartmouth: and being there arriued wee continued in that roade fiue dayes, and the 20. of October we warpt out of the hauen, & set saile directing our course towards the Southwest, and the next morning we were runne by estimation 30. leagues.

The 21. we suppose we ranne 36. leagues, the 22. 40. leagues, the 23. 20. leagues, the 24. but 12. by reason of the foule weather, and change of windes.

The 25. day wee ranne about 20. leagues, the 26. about 12. and all the night laye at trie with much raine and foule weather.

The 27. the windes and seas were high, yet we made some way.

The 28. day the Hindes poope brake with a sea somewhat aboue the helme, whereupon William Carter & Richard Gresham with their marchants agreed to set saile, and go backe againe for England, and for that purpose hoysed vp their saile, and we seeing it shotte off a peece to cause them to tary for vs, and hoysed our foresaile and went to them: and they tolde vs that they would not keepe the seas, and required mee to agree that they might returne, and we also with them to amende the fault, whereunto I would not agree, seeing the fault to bee no worse then it was, and our Master Iohn Ralphe offered them that hee himselfe would goe in her, which thing they hearing saide that they were as able to keepe her as hee, and William Carter made answere, that as long as the company would continue with him, he would not refuse the voyage: so we lay at hull about an houre after, and then it pleased God to sende vs a faire winde at North and by East, and we ranne our course that day by estimation 25. leagues.

The 29. day wee ranne about 40. leagues, the 30. about 50. and the 31. and last of October about 40.

November. The first of November we found our selues to be in 31. degrees of latitude by the reckoning of our Master. This day we ranne about 40. leagues also.

The 2. day we ranne 36. leagues.

Porto Sancto. The 3. day we had sight of Porto Sancto, which is a small Island lying in the sea, about three leagues long, and a league & a halfe broad, & is possessed by Portingals. It riseth as we came from the North Northwest like two small hilles neere together. The East ende of the same Island is a high land like a sadle with a valley, which makes it to beare that forme. The west ende of it is lower with certaine small round hillockes. This Island lyeth in thirtie and three degrees. The

Madera. same day at 11. of the clocke wee raysed the Isle of Madera, which lyeth 12. leagues from Porto Sancto, towards the Southwest: that Island is a faire Islande and fruitfull, and is inhabited by Portingals, it riseth afarre off like a great whole lande and high. By three of the clocke this day at after noone we were thwart of Porto Sancto, and wee set our course Southwest, to leaue the Isle of Madera to the Eastward, as we did Porto Sancto. These two Islands were the first land that we sawe since wee left the coast of England. About 3. of the clocke after midnight we were thwart of Madera, within three leagues of the West ende of it, and by meanes of the high hilles there, we were becalmed: We suppose we ranne this day and night 30. leagues.

The fourth day wee laye becalmed vnder the Isle of Madera, vntill one of the clocke at afternoone, and then the winde comming into the East, wee went our course, and ranne that day 15. leagues.

The 5. day we ranne 15. leagues more.

Tenerif. The 6. day in the morning we raysed the Isle of Tenerif, otherwise called the Pike, because it is a very high Island with a pike vpon the toppe like a loafe of Suger. The same night we rai-

Palma. sed the Isle of Palma, which is a high land also, and to the Westward of the Isle of Tenerif.

The

The 7. day we perceiued the Iſle of Gomera, which is an Iſland ſtanding betwixt Tenerif and Palma, about 12. leagues Eaſtward from Palma, and 8. leagues Weſtwarde from Tenerif: and for feare of being becalmed with the Iſle of Tenerif, we left both it, and Gomera to the Eaſtward of vs, and went betwixt Palma and Gomera. We ranne this day and night 30. leagues. Gomera.

Note that theſe Iſlands be 60. leagues from Madera, and that there are 3. Iſlands more to the Weſtward of Tenerif, named the Grand Canaria, Forteventura, & Lancerot, of which Iſlands we came not in ſight: they be inhabited by Spaniards.

This day alſo we had ſight of the Iſle of Ferro, which is to the Southwards 13. leagues from the other Iſlands, and is poſſeſſed by Spaniards. All this day and night by reaſon of the winde wee coulde not double the point of the Iſle of Ferro, except wee would haue gone to the Weſtward of it which had bene much out of our courſe: therefore we kept about, and ranne backe fiue houres Eaſt Northeaſt to the ende we might double it vpon the next boorde, the winde continuing Southeaſt, which hath not bene often ſeene vpon that coaſt by any trauailers: for the winde continueth there for the moſt part Northeaſt, and Eaſt Northeaſt: ſo vpon the other boorde by the next morning we were in a maner with the Iſland, and had roome ynough to double the ſame. Ferro.

The 8. day we kept our courſe as neere the winde as we coulde, becauſe that our due courſe to fetch the coaſt of Barbary, was Southeaſt and by Eaſt, but by the ſcant winde we coulde not goe our due courſe, but went as neere it as we could, and ranne this day and night 25. leagues.

The 9. day we ranne 30. leagues, the 10. 25. leagues, the 11. 24.

The 12. day we ſaw a ſaile vnder our Lee, which was as we thought a fiſherman, ſo that we went roome to haue ſpoken with him, but within one houre there fell ſuch a fogge, that we coulde not ſee the ſhippe nor one of vs the other: we ſhot off diuers pieces to the Hinde, but ſhe hard them not: at after noone ſhe ſhot off a piece which wee hard, and made her anſwere with another: and within one halfe houre after the fogge brake vp, and we were within 4. leagues of the ſhoare vpon the coaſt of Barbarie, and wee ſounded and had 14. fadom water. The Barke alſo came roome with vs and there ancred by reaſon of the contrary winde. When we fell with the lande, we could not iudge iuſtly what part of the land it was, becauſe the moſt part of that coaſt is lowe land, and no part to be iudged of it but the forepart of the ſhoare, which is white like chalke or ſande, and very deepe vnto the hard ſhoare: there immediatly wee beganne to fiſh, and founde great ſtore of a kinde of fiſh which the Portingals commonly fiſh for vpon that coaſt, which they call Pergoſſes, the Frenchmen call them Saders, and our men, ſalt water breames. Before the clearing vp of the fogge, the ſhippe which we followed ſhaped vs ſuch a courſe that wee coulde ſee her no more, by reaſon of our ſhooting off to finde the Hinde againe. This part of the coaſt of Barbarie, by our Pilots reckoning is about 16. leagues to the Eaſtwards of the riuer del Oro. Riuer del Oro.

The 13. day in the after noone wee eſpyed a ſaile comming towardes vs, which wee iudged to be the ſaile that wee ſawe the day before, and as ſoone as wee eſpyed him we cauſed the Hinde to way her ancre and to goe towardes him, and manned out our Skiffe in like caſe to laye him aboorde, or to diſcerne what hee was, and we our ſelues within halfe an houre after wayed alſo: but after the ſaile had eſpyed vs, he kept about, and turned backe againe, and ſhortly after there fell ſuch another fogge, that wee coulde not ſee him: which fogges continued all that night, ſo that wee were conſtrained to leaue the chaſe. This after noone the winde came about, and wee went our courſe Southweſt, and by Weſt, to goe cleare off the coaſt, and we ranne that night 16. leagues.

The foureteenth day in the morning was very foggie: but about twelue a clocke wee eſpyed a Caruell of 60. tunne which was fiſhing, and wee ſent our Skiffe to him with fiue men, and all without any weapon ſauing their Dares. The Caruell for haſte let ſlippe her ancre, and ſet ſaile, and they ſeeing that, fearing that they ſhould not fetch her, woulde tarry for no weapons, and in the ende ouertooke the Caruell, and made her to ſtrike ſaile, and brought her away, although they had foureteene or fifteene men aboord, & euery man his weapon, but they had not the hearts to reſiſt our men. After they were come to vs, they let fall their ancre, for wee had caſt ancre becauſe the winde was not good: I cauſed then the Skiffe to come for mee, and I went aboorde of them to ſee that no harme ſhoulde bee done to them, nor to take any thing but that which they might ſpare vs for our money. So we tooke of them three Tapnets of figges, two ſmall pots of oyle, 2. pipes of water, foure hogeſheads of ſalt fiſh which they had taken vpon the coaſt, and certaine freſh fiſh which they did not eſteeme, becauſe there is ſuch ſtore vpon that coaſt, that in an houre and ſometime leſſe, a man may take as much fiſh as will ſerue twentie men a day. For theſe things, and for ſome wine which wee dranke aboorde of them, and three or foure great cannes which they ſent aboorde of our Shippes, I payed them twentie and ſeuen Piſtolets, A Caruell taken. Great ſtore of fiſh vpon the coaſt of Barbarie.

which was twise as much as they willingly would haue taken: and so let them goe to their ancre and cable which they had let slippe, and got it againe by our helpe. After this we set saile, but the wind caused vs to ancre againe about 12. leagues off the riuer Del oro, as the Portingals tolde vs. There were 5. Caruels more in this place, but when they sawe vs, they made all away for feare for vs.

The 15. day we ridde still because of the winde.

The Tropike of Cancer in 23. and a halfe. The 16. day we set saile and ranne our course 40. leagues. This day by the reckoning of our Pilots, we were right vnder the Tropike of Cancer. The 17. day we ranne 25. leagues within sight for the most part of the coast of Barbarie.

The 18. day we ranne 30. leagues, and at 12. of the clocke by the reckoning of our Pilots we were thwart of of Cape Blanke. Cape Blanko.

The 19. day we ranne our course 30. leagues.

The 20. day we ranne 36. leagues, the 21. 34 leagues, and the 22. 30 leagues. And this 22. day our Pilots reckoned vs to be thwart of Cape Verde. Cape Verde.

The 23. day we ranne our course 28. leagues, the 24. 25. leagues, the 25. 12. leagues, the 26. 12. leagues, the 27. 15. leagues, the 28. by reason we were becalmed, but 3. leagues, the 29. 25. leagues, the 30. 8. leagues: and this day at 12. of the clocke, we found our selues to be in 8. degrees and a halfe of latitude. 8. Degrees and a halfe.

December. The first of December we ranne 20. leagues, the 2. day being becalmed, but 4. leagues, the 3. day 16. leagues.

The 4. day we had terrible thunder and lightning, with exceeding great gusts of raine called Ternados, which continued not aboue halfe an houre: we ranne our course 18. leagues.

The 5. day we ranne 20. leagues, the 6. day 8. leagues by reason of variable windes, the 7. day but 4. leagues.

The 8. day we had more thunder and lightning, and we ranne about 6. leagues.

The 9. day we ranne 8. leagues, the 10. day 10. leagues, the 11. day 12. leagues.

The coast of Guinea. The 12. day we had sight of the land of Guinea, which as soone as we sawe we hailed into the lande Northeast, and about 12. of the clocke at night we were neere the shoare within lesse then 2. leagues: and then we kept about and sounded, and found 18. fadom water. Afterwards we saw a light towards the shoare, which we thought to haue bene a shippe, and thereby iudged it to be the riuer de Sestos, which light as soone as we espied, wee came to an ancre and armed our toppes, and made al things readie to fight, because we doubted that it might be some Portingal or French man: this night we remained at an ancre, but in the morning we saw no man, onely we espied 4. rockes about 2. English miles from vs, one great rocke, and the three other small ones, which when we sawe, we supposed that the light came from the shore, and so waied and set saile East Southeast along the shoare, because the Master did not well know the place, but thought that we were not so farre to the East as the riuer de Sestos.

This land all along is a low land, and full of very high trees all along the shoare, so that it is not possible to know the place that a man doeth fall withall, except it be by the latitude: In these 24. houres I thinke we ranne 16. leagues, for all the night we had a great gale as we were vnder saile, and had withall store of thunder and lightnings.

The 13. day for the most part we ranne East Southeast all along the shoare, within 2. leagues alwayes of the same, and founde the land all as at the first, full of woods and great rockes hard aboorde the shoare, and the billowe beating so sore, that the seas brake vpon the shoare as white as snowe, and the water mounted so high that a man might easily discerne it foure leagues off in such wise that no boate could land there. Thus wee ranne vntill twelue of the clocke, and then they tooke ẏ sunne & after iudged themselues to be 24. leagues past the riuer de Sestos to the Eastwards, by reason whereof we hailed into the shoare within two English miles, and there ancred and found fifteene fadom water, and all off from the shoare the sea so smooth, that wee might well haue ridde by an Hawser: All that after noone we trimmed our boate and made her a saile, to the ende that she might goe along by the shoare to seeke some place to water in: for we could not goe backe againe to the riuer de Sestos, because the winde blowes alwayes contrary, and the current runneth alwayes to the Eastwards, which was also against vs. The Currant setting East-ward.

The fourteenth day we set saile and went backe againe along the coast, and sent our boats hard aboorde the shoare to seeke a watering place, which they founde about twelue of the clocke, and we being farre into the sea, mette with diuers boates of the Countrey, small, long and narrowe, and in euery boat one man and no more: we gaue them bread which they did eate, and were very glad of it. About foure of the clocke our boates came to vs with fresh water: and this night we

we ancred againſt a Riuer.

The 15. day wee waied and ſet ſaile to goe neere the ſhoare, and with our leade wee ſounded all the way, and found ſometimes rockes, and ſometimes faire grounde, and at the ſhalloweſt found ſeuen fadoms alwayes at the leaſt. So in fine we founde 7. fadom and a halfe within an Engliſh mile of the ſhoare, and there wee ancred, in a maner before the mouth of the Riuer, and then we ſent our boates into the Riuer for water, which went about a mile within the Riuer, where they had very good water. This Riuer lyeth by eſtimation eight leagues beyond the Riuer de Seſtos, and is called in the Carde, Riuer S. Vincent, but it is ſo harde to finde, that a boate being within halfe a mile of it, ſhall not be able to diſcerne that it is a Riuer: by reaſon that directly before the mouth of it, there lyeth a ledge of rockes, which is much broader then the Riuer, ſo that a boate muſt runne in along the ſhoare a good way betwixt the rockes, and the ſhoare before it come to the mouth of the Riuer, and being within it, it is a great Riuer and diuers other Riuers falls into it: The going into it is ſomewhat ill, becauſe that at the entring, the ſeas doe goe ſomewhat high, but being once within it, it is as calme as the Thames. Riuer S. Vincent.

There are neere to the ſea vpon this Riuer diuers inhabitants, which are mightie bigge men and goe all naked except ſome thing before their priuie partes, which is like a cloute about a quarter of a yarde long made of the barke of trees, and yet it is like a clothe: for the barke is of that nature, that it will ſpinne ſmall after the maner of linnen. Some of them alſo weare the like vpon their heades being painted with diuers coulers, but the moſt part of them goe bare headed, and their heades are clipped and ſhorne of diuers ſortes, and the moſt part of them haue their ſkinne of their bodies raced with diuers workes, in maner of a leather Jerkin. The men and women goe ſo alike, that one cannot knowe a man from a woman but by their breaſtes, which in the moſt part be very foule and long, hanging downe lowe like the vdder of a goate. Cloth made of the barke of trees. The Negroes race their ſkinnes.

This ſame morning we went into the Riuer with our Skiffe, and carried certaine baſons, manels, &c. And there we tooke that day one hogſhead and 100. li. waight of graines, and two Elephants teeth at a reaſonable good reckoning; We ſolde them both baſons, and Manellios, and Margerets, but they deſired moſt to haue baſons: For the moſt part of our baſons we had by eſtimation about 30. li. for a piece, and for an Oliphants tooth of 30. li. waight, we gaue them 6. Graines of Guinea. Oliphants teeth.

The 16. day in the morning we went into the Riuer with our Skiffe, and tooke ſome of euery ſort of our Marchandize with vs, and ſhewed it to the Negroes, but they eſteemed it not, but made light of it, and alſo of the baſons, Manellios and Margarets, which yeſterday they did buy: howbeit for the baſons they would haue giuen vs ſome graines, but to no purpoſe, ſo that this day we tooke not by eſtimation aboue one hundreth pound waight of graines, by meanes of their Captaine, who would ſuffer no man to ſell any thing but through his handes, and at his priſe: hee was ſo ſubtile, that for a baſon hee would not giue 15. pounde waight of graines, and ſometimes would offer vs ſmall diſhfuls, whereas before wee had baſkets full, and when hee ſawe that wee would not take them in contentment, the Captaine departed, and cauſed all the reſt of the boates to depart, thinking belike that we would haue followed them, and haue giuen them their owne askings. But after that we perceiued their fetche, we waied our Grapnel and went away, and then we went on lande in a ſmall Towne to ſee the faſhions of the Countrey, and there came a threeſcore of them about vs, and at the firſt they were afraide of vs, but in the ende perceiuing that wee did no hurt, they would come to vs and take vs by the hande and bee familiar with vs, and then we went into their Townes, which were like to twentie ſmall houels, all couered ouer with great leaues and baggage, and all the ſides open, and a ſcaffolde vnder the houſe about a yarde high, where they worke many prettie thinges of the barkes of trees, and there they lye alſo. In ſome of their houſes they worke yron and make faire dartes, and diuers other thinges to woorke their boates, and other things withall, and the women worke as well as the men. But when we were there diuers of the women to ſhewe vs pleaſure daunced and ſung after their maner, full ill to our eares. Their ſong was thus: The deſcription of their Townes and houſes.

Sakere, ſakere, ho, ho. Sakere, ſakere, ho, ho.

And with theſe wordes they leape and daunce and clappe their handes. Beaſtes wee coulde ſee none that they had, but two goates, ſmall dogges, and ſmall hennes: other beaſtes wee ſawe none. After that wee had well marked all things we departed and went aboorde our ſhippes: which thing the Captaine of the other towne perceiuing, ſent 2. of his ſeruants in a boate with a baſket of graines, and made vs ſignes that if when we had ſlept we would come againe into their Riuer, we ſhould haue ſtore of graines, and ſo ſhewed vs his graines and departed.

The 17. day in the morning becauſe we thought that the Negroes would haue done ſomething becauſe the captaine ſent for vs, I required the Maſter to goe on ſhoare, and ſent the reſt of our

marchants with him, and taried abooꝛde my ſelfe by reaſon that the laſt day hee eſteemed our things ſo litle: ſo when the Maſter & the reſt came into the riuer, the Captaine with diuers others came to them, and bꝛought graines with them, and after that hee ſawe that I was not there, hee made ſignes to know where I was, and they made ſignes to him againe that I was in the ſhips: and then he made ſignes to know who was Captaine by the name of Diago, foꝛ ſo they call their Captaine, and they pointed to the Maſter of the ſhippe: then hee beganne to ſhewe his graines, but he held them ſo vnreaſonably, that there was no pꝛofite to be made of them: which things the Maſter perceiuing, and ſeeing that they had no ſtoꝛe of graines, came away, and tooke not aboue 50. pound waight of graines. Then hee went a ſhoare to the litle towne where we were the day befoꝛe, and one of them pluckt a gowꝛd, wherewith the Negroes were offended and came many of them to our men with their darts and great targets, and made ſignes to them to depart: which our men did, hauing but one bowe and 2. oꝛ 3. ſwoꝛdes, and went abooꝛd the boate and came away from them: and aſſoone as they were come abooꝛd we wayed & ſet ſaile, but the winde was off the ſea, ſo that we could not get out cleare of certaine rocks, & therefoꝛe we came to an ancre againe.

Diago the name of a Captaine.

The latitude of S. Vincents riuer is 4. degrees and a halfe.

This riuer is called Riuer S. Vincent, ſtanding in 4. degrees and a halfe, & it ebbeth and floweth there euery 12. houres, but not much water when it ebbeth the moſt: while we were there, it ebbed 1. fadome and a halfe of water.

Leaues of exceeding length.

This countrey as farre as we could perceiue is altogether woody, and al ſtrange trees, whereof we knewe none, and they were of many ſoꝛtes, with great leaues like great dockes, which bee higher then any man is able to reach the toppe of them.

Long peaſe ſtalkes.

There are certaine peaſon by the ſea ſide, which growe vpon great and very long ſtalkes, one of the ſtalkes I meaſured and found it 27. paces long, and doeth grow vpon the ſand like to trees, and that ſo neere the ſea, that ſometimes the ſea floweth into the woods as wee might perceiue by the water markes.

Long womens breaſts.

The trees and all things in this place grow cõtinually greene. Diuers of the women haue ſuch exceeding long bꝛeaſtes, that ſome of them wil lay the ſame vpon the grounde and lie downe by them, but all the women haue not ſuch bꝛeaſtes.

At this place all the day the winde bloweth off the ſea, and all the night off the lande, but wee found it to differ ſometimes, which our Maſter marueyled at.

This night at 9. of the clocke the winde came vp at the Eaſt, which oꝛdinarily about that time was wont to come out of the Noꝛth Noꝛthweſt off the ſhoare: yet we wayed and halled off South with that winde all night into the ſea, but the next moꝛning we halled in againe to the lande, and tooke in 6. Tunnes of water foꝛ our ſhippe, and I thinke the Hinde tooke in as much.

I could not perceiue that here was any golde, oꝛ any other good thing: foꝛ ẏ people be ſo wilde and idle, that they giue themſelues to ſeeke out nothing: if they would take paines they might gather great ſtoꝛe of graines, but in this place I could not perceiue 2. tunne.

There are many foules in the countrey, but the people will not take the paines to take them.

I obſerued ſome of their woꝛds of ſpeach, which I thought good here to ſet downe.

The language about the Riuer of S. Vincent.

Bezow, bezow,	Is their ſalutation.
Manegete afoye,	Graines pnough.
Crocow afoye,	Hennes pnough.
Zeramme afoye,	Haue you pnough?
Begge ſacke,	Giue me a knife.
Begge come,	Giue me bꝛead.
Borke,	Holde your peace.
Coutrecke,	Ye lye.
Veede,	Put foꝛth, oꝛ emptie.
Brekeke,	Rowe.
Diago,	Their Captaine, and ſome cal him Dabo.

Theſe and other woꝛdes they ſpeake very thicke, and oftentimes recite one woꝛd three times together, and at the laſt time longer then at the two firſt.

The 18. day towards night, as we were ſayling along the coaſt, we met with certaine boats in the ſea, & the men ſhewed vs that there was a riuer thwart of vs, where there were graines to be ſold, but we thought it not good to tarie there, leaſt the other ſhips ſhould get befoꝛe vs. This riuer hath lying befoꝛe it 3. great rocks, and 5. ſmal rocks, one great tree, and a litle tree right by the riuer, which in height exceeded all the reſt: we halled this night along the coaſt 10. leagues.

The 19. day as we coaſted the ſhoare, about twelue of the clocke there came out to vs 3. boates to tell vs that they had graines, & bꝛought ſome with them foꝛ a ſhew, but we could not tarie there.

We

We proceeded along the coaſt, & ancred by the ſhoze all the night, and ran this day 10. leagues.

The twentie day the Hinde hauing ankered by vs amongeſt rockes, and foule ground, loſt a ſmall anker. At noone, as we paſſed along the coaſt, there came foorth a Negro to vs, making ſignes, that if we would goe a ſhoare, wee ſhould haue graines, and where we ankered at night, there came another to vs, and brought graines, and ſhewed vs them, and made ſignes that wee ſhould tary, and made a fire vpon the land in the night, meaning thereby to tel vs where we ſhould land, and ſo they did in diuers other places vpon the coaſt, where they ſawe vs to anker.

In all the pl[ace] that we haue ankered ſince we came from our watring place, we haue found the tide alwaies [run]ning to the Weſtwardes, and all along the coaſt many rockes hard aboard the ſhoare, and m[any] of them a league of the ſhoare or moze, we ran this day twelue leagues. The tides and nature of the ſhoare.

The 21. day, [wi]th we ranne all day with a good gale of winde, yet the tides came ſo ſoze out of the coa[ſt] were not able to runne aboue ſix leagues: and this day there came ſome Negroes to vs, a[s] had done other times.

The 22. we ranne all day and night, to double a point, called Dos palmas, and ranne ſirteene leagues. The point of Palmas.

The 23. day, about three of the clocke, we were thwart of the point, and before we came to the weſtermoſt part of it, we ſawe a great ledge of rockes, which lie weſt from the Cape, about three leagues, and a league or moze from the land. Shortly after, we had ſight of the Eaſtermoſt part of the Cape, which lieth foure leagues from the Weſtermoſt part, and vpon the very corner thereof, lie two greene places, as it were cloſes, and to the weſtwards of the Cape, the land parted from the Cape, as it were a Baye, whereby it may well be knowen. Foure leagues moze beyond that, there lieth a head land in the ſea, and about two leagues beyond the head lande, there goeth in a great Bay, as it were a riuer, before which place we ankered all that night, which we did, leaſt in the night we ſhould ouerrunne a riuer, where the "laſt pere, they had all their Elephants teeth. "That was the yeere 1554.

This Cape Dos palmas, lieth vnder foure degrees and a halfe, and betwixt the ſaid Cape, and the riuer de Seſtos, is the greateſt ſtoze of graines to be had, and being paſt the ſaid Cape, there is no great ſtoze els where.

Where we ankered this night, we found that the tide, which before ranne alwaies to the weſtward, from this Cape runneth all to the Eaſtward: this day we ranne ſome 16. leagues. The tides running eaſtward.

The 24. day running our courſe, about eight of the clocke there came foorth to vs certaine boates, which brought with them ſmall egges, which were ſoft without ſhels, and they made vs ſignes, that there was within the land freſh water, and Goates: and the Maſter thinking that it was the riuer which we ſought, caſt anker, and ſent the boate on ſhoare, with one that knewe the riuer, and comming neere the ſhoare, he perceiued that it was not the riuer, and ſo came backe againe, and went along the ſhoare, with their oares and ſaile, and wee waied, and ranne along the ſhoare alſo: and being thirteene leagues beyond the Cape, the Maſter perceiued a place, which he iudged to be the riuer, when we were in deede two miles ſhot paſt it: yet the boate came from the ſhoare, and they that were in her, ſaid, that there was no riuer: notwithſtanding we came to an anker, and the Maſter and I tooke fiue men with vs in the boate, and when he came neere the ſhoare, he perceiued that it was the ſame riuer which he did ſeeke: ſo we rowed in, and found the entrance very ill, by reaſon that the ſea goeth ſo high: and being entred, diuers boates came to vs, and ſhewed vs that they had Elephants teeth, and they brought vs one about eight pound, and a litle one of a pound, which we bought: then they brought certaine teeth to the riuer ſide, making ſignes, that if the next day we would come againe, they would ſell vs them: ſo we gaue vnto two Captaines, to either of them a manillio, and ſo we departed, and came aboard, and ſent out the other boate to another place, where certaine boates that came into the ſea, made vs ſignes that there was freſh water: and being come thither, they found a towne, but no riuer, yet the people brought them freſh water, and ſhewed them an Elephants tooth, making ſignes that the next day they would ſell them teeth, and ſo they came aboard. A towne.

This riuer lieth by the Carde thirteene leagues from the Cape Dos palmas, and there lieth to the weſtwards of the ſame, a rocke about a league in the ſea, and the riuer it ſelfe hath a point of land comming out into the ſea, whereupon groweth fiue trees, which may well be diſcerned two or three leagues of, comming from the weſtward, but the riuer can not be perceiued vntill ſuch time, as a man be hard by it, and then a man may perceiue a litle towne on each ſide the riuer, and to each towne there belongeth a Capitaine. The riuer is but ſmall, but the water is good and freſh.

Two miles beyond the riuer, where the other towne is, there lieth another point into the ſea, which is greene like a cloſe, and not aboue fiue trees vpon it, which growe one of them from the other,

other, whereby the coast may well be knowne: for along all the coast that we haue hitherto sailed by, I haue not seene so much bare land.

In this place, and three or foure leagues to the westward of it, al along the shoare, there grow many Palme trees, whereof they make their wine De Palma. These trees may easily be knowne almost two leagues of, for they be very high, and white bodied, and streight, and be biggest in the middes: they haue no boughes, but onely a round bush in the toppe of them: and at the toppe of the same trees, they boare a hole, and there they hang a bottell, and the ioyce of the tree runneth out of the said hole into the bottle, and that is their wine.

Many Palme trees.

From the Cape Dos palmas, to the Cape Tres puntas, there are 100. leagues: and to the port where we purpose to make sales of our cloth beyond the Cape Tres puntas, fortie leagues.

Cape Tres Puntas.

Note: that betwixt the riuer De Sestos, and the Cape Dos palmas, is the place where all the graines be gathered.

The language of the people of this place, as farre as I could perceiue, differeth not much from the language of those, which dwel where we watered before: but the people of this place be more gentle in nature then ỳ other, & goodlier men: their building & apparel is all one with the others.

Their desire in this place was most of all to haue Mamillios and Margarets, as for the rest of our things, they did litle esteeme them.

The 25. day, being the day of the nativitie of Christ, we sent our boates and skiffes for water for our shippes, which that day filled as much water, as we had caskes emptie, which was about two tunnes for vs, and one tunne for the Hinde.

About nine of the clocke, there came boates to vs forth, from both of the places aforesaide, and brought with them certaine teeth, and after they had caused me to sweare by the water of the sea, that I would not hurt them, they came aboord our shippe three or foure of them, and we gaue them to eate of all such things as we had, and they did eate and drinke of all things, as well as we our selues. Afterwardes we bought all their teeth, which were in number foureteene, and of those foureteene there were ten small: afterwards, they departed, making vs signes, that the next day we should come to their townes.

Their manner of sweating by the water of the sea.

The 26. day, because we would not trifle long at this place, I required the Master to goe vnto one of the townes, and to take two of our marchants with him, and I my selfe went to the other, and tooke one with me, because these two townes stand three miles asunder. To these places we caried some what of euery kind of marchandize that we had: and he had at the one towne, nine teeth, which were but small, and at the other towne where I was, I had eleuen, which were also not bigge, and we left aboord with the Master, certaine mamillios, wherewith he bought twelue teeth aboord the shippe in our absence: and hauing bought these of them, we perceiued that they had no more teeth: so in the place where I was, one brought to me a smal goate, which I bought, and to the Master of the other place, they brought fiue small hennes, which he bought also, and after that, we sawe there was nothing els to be had, we departed, and by one of the clocke, we met aboord, and then waied, and went East our course eighteene leagues still within sight of land.

Two townes.

The 27. day we ranne twentie leagues.

The 28. the wind varied, and we ranne into the sea, and the wind comming againe off the sea, we fell with the land againe, and the first of the land which we raised, shewed as a great red cliffe round, but not very high, and to the Eastward of that, another smaller red cliffe, and right about that into the land a round hammoke, and greene, which we tooke to be trees. We ranne in these 24. houres, not aboue foure leagues.

The 29. day comming neere to the shoare, we perceiued the red cliffe aforesaide, to haue right vpon the top of it a great heape of trees, and all to the westwards of it full of red cliffes, as farre as we could see, and all along the shoare, as well vpon the cliffes, as otherwise, full of wood: within a mile of the said great cliffe, there is a riuer to the Eastwards, and no cliffes, that we could see, except one small cliffe, which is hard by it. We ranne this day and night, twelue leagues.

The winds that we had in this place, by the reportes of the people, and of those that haue bene there, haue not bene seene often, but in the night, at North off the land, & in the day South off the sea, and most commonly Northwest, and Southwest.

The 30. day, we made our way twentie leagues.

The 31. day, we went our course by the shoare Northwards: this land is all along a low shoare, and full of wood, as all the coast is, for the most part, and no rockes. This morning came out many boates, which went a fishing, which be greater boates then those which we sawe before, so that in some of them there sate fiue men, but the fashion of the boates is all one. In the afternoone about three of the clocke, we had sight of a towne hard by the sea side, which our Pilots iudged to be 25.

leagues

leagues to the weſtwards of the Cape, Tres puntas. About foure of the clocke we met with many ſilher boates, but none of them would come neere to vs, ſauing two, of whome we bought certaine ſilhe.

Betwixt theſe two Capes, we haue found the wind freſheſt in the day, and ſpecially about ten of the clocke, with great gales: the nights we found calmeſt. In theſe 24. houres we made way twentie leagues.

The firſt day of Januarie in the morning, we perceiued the lande to riſe higher then it did before, which our Pilots iudged to be the Cape, and hailed in as neere to the land as they could: we ranne this day twenty leagues. January.

The ſecond day in the morning, when we were come neere to the place, our Pilots perceiued that it was not the Cape, as they thought it had bene: we made way this day but eight leagues.

The third day in the morning, we fell with the Cape Tres puntas, and in the night paſſed, as our Pilots ſaid, by one of the Portingals caſtles, which is eight leagues to the weſtwards of the Cape: vpon the firſt ſight of the Cape, we diſcerned it a very high land, and all growen ouer with trees, and comming neere to it, we perceiued two head lands, as it were two Bayes betwixt them, which opened right to the weſtward, and the vttermoſt of them is the Eaſterne Cape, there we perceiued the middle Cape, and the Eaſtermoſt Cape: the middle Cape ſtandeth not aboue a league from the weſt Cape, although the Carde ſheweth them to be three leagues one from the other: and that middle Cape hath right before the point of it, a ſmall rocke ſo neere to it, that it can not be diſcerned from the Cape, except a man be neere to the ſhoare, and vpon the ſame Cape ſtandeth a great heape of trees, and when a man is thwart the ſame Cape, to the Eaſtward, there riſeth hard by it a round greene hommoke, which commeth out of the maine. Cape Tres Puntas.

The third Cape is about a league beyond the middle Cape, and is a high land like to the other Capes, and betwixt the middle, and the third commeth out a litle head or point of a land out of the maine, and diuers rocks hard aboard the ſhoare.

Before we came to the Capes, being about eight leagues off them, we had the lande South-eaſt, and by Eaſt, and being paſt the Capes, the land runneth in againe Eaſt Northeaſt.

About two leagues beyond the farthеſt Cape, there is a low glade about two miles long, and then the land riſeth high againe, and diuers head lands riſe one beyond another, and diuers rocks lie at the point of the firſt head land. The middeſt of theſe Capes, is the neereſt to the Southwards, I meane further into the ſea, then any of the other, ſo that being to the Eaſtward of it, it may be diſcerned farre off, and being ſo to the Eaſtward, it riſeth with two ſmall rockes.

This day we ankered for feare of ouerſhooting a towne, called S. Iohns. We ranne this day not aboue eight leagues. In the afternoone this day, there came a boate of the countrey from the ſhoare, with fiue men in her, and went along by vs, as we thought, to diſcerne our flaggs, but they would not come neere vs, and when they had well looked vpon vs, they departed.

The fourth day in the morning, ſailing by the coaſt, we eſpied a ledge of rockes by the ſhoare, and to the weſtwards of them two great greene hils ioyning together, ſo that betweene them it was hollowe, like a ſaddle, and within the ſaid rockes, the Maſter thought the aforenamed towne had ſtoode, and therefore we manned our boates, and tooke with vs cloth, and other marchandize, and rowed a ſhoare, but going along by the coaſt, we ſawe that there was no towne, therefore we went aboord againe.

From theſe two hils aforeſaid, about two leagues to the Eaſtward, lie out into the ſea almoſt two miles, a ledge of rockes, and beyond that a great Bay, which runneth into the North North-weſtward, and the land in this place lieth North Northeaſt along the ſhoare: but the vttermoſt point of the land in that place that we could ſee, lay Northeaſt, and by Eaſt from vs.

After that we were with a ſmall gale of wind runne paſt that vttermoſt head land, we ſawe a great red cliffe, which the Maſter againe iudged to be the towne of S. Iohns, and then we tooke our boate with marchandize, and went thither, and when we came thither, we perceiued that there was a towne vpon the toppe of the hill, and ſo we went toward it, and when we were hard by it, the people of the towne came together a great ſort of them, and waued vs to come in with a peece of cloth, and ſo we went into a very faire Baye, which lieth to the Eaſtward of the cliffe, whereupon the towne ſtandeth, and being within the cliffe, we let fall our grapnell, and after that we had tarried there a good ſpace, they ſent a boate aboord of vs, to ſhewe vs that they had golde, and they ſhewed vs a peece about halfe a crowne weight, and required to knowe our meaſure, & our weight, that they might ſhew their Captaine thereof: and wee gaue them a meaſure of two elles, and a waight of two Angels to ſhew vnto him, which they tooke, and went on ſhoare, and ſhewed it vnto their Captaine, and then they brought vs a meaſure of two elles, one quarter and a halfe, and

one

one crusado weight of golde, making vs signes that so much they would giue, for the like measure, and lesse they would not haue. After this, we taried there about an howre, and when we saw that they would doe no otherwise, and withall vnderstoode, that all the best places were before vs, we departed to our shippes, and waied, and ranne along the shoare, & went before with our boate, and hauing sailed about a league, we came to a point, where there lay foorth a ledge of rockes, like to the others before spoken of, and being past that people, the Master spied a place, which he said plainly was the towne of Don Iohn: & the night was come vpon vs, so that we could not well discerne it, but we ankered as neere vnto the place as we could.

The towne of Don Iohn.

The fift day in the morning, we perceiued it to be the same towne in deede, and we manned our boates, and went thither, and because that the last yeere the Portingals at that place tooke away a man from them, and after shot at them with great bases, and did beate them from the place, wee let fall our grapnell almost a base shot of the shoare, and there we laye about two howres, and no boates came to vs. Then certaine of our men, with the Hindes boate, went into a Baye, which lieth to the Eastward of the Towne, and within that Baye, they found a goodly fresh riuer, and afterwards they came, and waued to vs also to come in, because they perceiued the Negroes to come downe to that place, which we did: and immediatly the Negroes came to vs, and made vs signes that they had golde, but none of them would come aboord our boates, neither could we perceiue any boates that they had to come withall, so that we iudged that the Portingals had spoiled their boates, because we saw halfe of their towne destroied.

Wee hauing staied there a good space, and seeing that they woulde not come to vs, thrust our boates heades a shoare, being both well appointed, and then the Capitaine of the Towne came downe, being a graue man: and he came with his dart in his hand, and sixe tall men after him, euery one with his dart, and his target, and their darts were all of yron, faire and sharpe, and there came another after them, which caried the Capitaines stoole: we saluted him, and put off our caps, and bowed our selues, and he like one that thought well of himselfe, did not moue his cappe, nor scant bowed his body, and sate him downe very solemnly vpon his stoole: but all his men put off their caps to vs, and bowed downe themselues.

He was clothed from the loines downe, with a cloth of that Countrey making, wrapped about him, and made fast about his loines with a girdle, and his cap of a certaine cloth of the Countrey also, and bare legged, and bare footed, and all bare aboue the loines, except his head.

His seruants, some of them had cloth about their loines, and some nothing but a cloth betwixt their legges, and made fast before, and behind, to their girdles, and caps of their owne making, some like a basket, and some like a great wide purse of beastes skinne.

All their cloth, cordes, girdles, fishing lines, and all such like things which they haue, they make of the barke of certaine trees, and thereof they can worke things very prettily, and yron worke they can make very fine, of all such things as they doe occupy, as darts, fishookes, hooking yrons, yron heades, and great daggers, some of them as long as a wood knife, which be of both sides exceeding sharpe, and bended after the manner of Turkie blades, and the most part of them haue hanging at their left side one of those great daggers.

Their weapõs

Their targets be made of such pils as their cloth is made of, and very closely wrought, and they be in forme foure square, and very great, and somewhat longer then they be broad, so that kneeling downe, they make their targets to couer their whole body. Their bowes be short, and of a prettie strength, as much as a man is able to drawe with one of his fingers, and the stringe is of the barke of a tree, made flat, and about a quarter of an yncbe broad: as for their arrowes, I haue not as yet seene any of them, for they had wrapped them vp close, and because I was busie, I coulde not stande about it, to haue them open them. Their golde also they worke very well.

When the Capitaine was set, I sent him two elles of cloth, and two basons, and gaue them vnto him, and he sent againe for a waight of the same measure, and I sent him a weight of two Angels, which he would not take, neither would he sufferthe towne to buy any thing, but the basons of brasse: so that we solde that day 74. basons, vnto the men of the towne, for about halfe an Angel weight, one with another, and nine white basons, which we solde for a quarter of an Angel a peece, or thereabouts.

We shewed them all our other thinges which we had, but they did not esteeme them.

About two of the clocke, the Captaine, who did depart in the morning from vs, came again, and brought with him to present me withall, a henne, and two great rootes, which I receiued, and after made me signes, that the countrey would come to his towne that night, and bring great store of gold, which in deed about 4. of the clocke they did: for there came about 100. men vnder 3.

Captaines,

Captaines, well appointed with their darts, and bowes, and when they came to vs, euery man ſticked downe his dart vpon the ſhoare, and the Captaines had ſtooles brought them, and they ſate downe, and ſent a young man aboord of vs, which brought a meaſure with him of an ell, and one fourth part, and one ſixteene part, and he would haue that foure times for a waight of one Angell, and twelue graines: I offered him two elles, as I had done before for two Angels weight, which he eſteemed nothing, but ſtill ſtucke at his foure meaſures aforeſaid: yet in the ende, when it grew very late, and I made him ſignes that I would depart, he came to foure elles, for the weight aboueſaid, and other wiſe he would not deale, and ſo we departed. This day we tooke for baſons ſixe ounces and a halfe, and one eight part.

The ſixt day in the morning, we manned our boates, and the ſkiffe well, for feare of the Portingals, which the laſt yeere had taken away a man from the other ſhippes, and went on ſhoare, and landed, becauſe they had no boates to come to vs, and ſo the young man which was with vs the night before, was ſent aboord, who ſeemed to haue dealt and bargained before with the Portingals, for he could ſpeake a litle Portuguiſe, and was perfect in weights, and meaſures: at his comming, he offered vs as he had done before, one Angell, and twelue graines, for foure elles, and more he would not giue, and made ſignes, that if we would not take that, we ſhould depart, which we did: but before we did in deede depart, I offered him of ſome rotten cloth three elles for his waight of an Angell, and twelue graines, which he would not take, and then we departed, making ſignes to him that we would goe away, as in deed we would haue done, rather then haue giuen that meaſure, although the cloth was ill, ſeeing we were ſo neere to the places, which we iudged to be better for ſale. Then we went aboord our ſhippes, which lay about a league of, and came backe againe to the ſhoare for ſande, and balaſte: and then the Captaine perceiuing that the boates had brought no marchandiſe, but came onely for water, and ſand, and ſeeing that we would depart, came vnto them, making ſignes againe, to know whether wee would not giue the foure elles, and they made ſignes againe, that we would giue them but three, and when they ſawe that the boates were ready to depart, they came vnto them, and gaue them the weight of one Angell, and twelue graines, which we required before, and made ſignes, that if we would come againe, they would take three elles. So when the boates came aboord, we laied wares in them both, and for the ſpeedier diſpatch, I and Iohn Sauill went in one boate, and the Maſter Iohn Makeworth, and Richard Curligin, in the other, and went on ſhoare, and that night I tooke for my part, fiftie and two ounces, and in the other boate they tooke eight ounces and a quarter, all by one weight, and meaſure, and ſo being very late, we departed, and went aboord, and tooke in all this day three pound.

The ſeuenth day we went a ſhoare againe, and that day I tooke in our boate three pound, 19. ounces, ſo that we diſpatched almoſt all the cloth that we caried with vs, before noone, and then many of the people were departed, & thoſe that remained, had litle golde, yet they made vs ſignes to fetch them ſome latten baſons, which I would not, becauſe I purpoſed not to trifle out the time, but goe thence with ſpeede to Don Iohns towne. But Iohn Sauill, and Iohn Makeworth, were deſirous to goe againe: and I, loth to hinder them of any profite, conſented, but went not my ſelfe: ſo they tooke eighteene ounces of gold, and came away, ſeeing that the people at a certaine crie made, were departed.

While they were at the ſhoare, there came a young fellow, which could ſpeake a litle Portuguiſe, with three more with him, and to him I ſolde 39. baſons, and two ſmall white ſawcers, for three ounces, &c. which was the beſt reckoning that we did make of any baſons: and in the forenoone, when I was at the ſhoare, the Maſter ſolde fiue baſons vnto the ſame fellow, for halfe an ounce of golde.

This fellow, as farre as we could perceiue, had bene taken into the Caſtle by the Portingals, and was gotten away from them, for he told vs, that the Portugals were bad men, and that they made them ſlaues, if they could take them, and would put yrons vpon their legges, and beſides he told vs, that as many Frenchmen, or Engliſhmen, as they could take (for he could name theſe two very well.) they would hang them: he told vs further, that there were 60. men in the caſtle, and that euery yeere there came thither two ſhippes, one great, and one ſmall caruell, and further, that Don Iohn, had warres with the Portingals, which gaue me the better courage to goe to his towne, which lieth but foure leagues from the Caſtle, where hence our men were beaten the laſt yeere.

60. Portingals in the caſtle of Mina.

This fellow came aboord our ſhippe without feare, and aſſone as he came, he demanded, why we had not brought againe their men, which the laſt yeere we tooke away, and could tell vs, that there were fiue taken away by Engliſhmen: we made him anſwere, that they were in England well

The Engliſh in anno 1554. tooke away 5. Negroes.

well vsed, and were there kept till they could speake the language, & then they should be brought againe, to be a helpe to Englishmen in this Countrey: and then he spake no more of that matter.

Our boates being come aboord, we waied, and set saile, and a litle after spied a great fire vpon the shoare, and by the light of the fire we might discerne a white thing, which they tooke to be the Castle, and for feare of ouershooting the towne of Don Iohn, we there ankered, two leagues of the shoare, for it is hard to fetch vpp a towne here, if a shippe ouer shoote it. This day we tooke seuen pound, and fiue ounces of golde.

This towne lieth in a great Baye, which is very deepe.

The people in this place desired most to haue basons, and cloth. They would bie some of them also, many trifles, as kniues, horsetailes, hornes: and some of our men going a shoare, sould a cappe, a dagger, a hat, &c.

They shewed vs a certaine course cloth, which I thinke to be made in France: for it was course wooll, and a small threed, and as thicke as wosted, and stripped with strippes of greene, white, yellow, &c. Diuers of the people did weare about their neckes great beades of glasse of diuers colours. Here also I learned some of their language, as followeth:

This language seemeth partly to be corrupt.

Mattea, mattea,	Is their salutation.
Dassee, dassee,	I thanke you.
Sheke,	Golde.
Cowrte,	Cut.
Cracca,	Kniues.
Bassina,	Basons.
Foco, foco,	Cloth.
Molta,	Much, or great store.

Sight of the castle of Coma.

The eight day in the morning, we had sight of the Castle, but by reason of a mist that then fell, we could not haue the perfect sight of it, till we were almost at the towne of Don Iohn, and then it cleered vp, and we saw it, and a white house, as it were a Chappell vpon the hill about it: then we hailed into the shoare, within two English miles of Don Iohns towne, and there ankered in seuen fadom water. Here, as in many other places before, we perceiued that the currant went with the winde.

The land here is in some places lowe, and in some high, and full of wood altogether.

Don Iohns towne described.

The towne of Don Iohn is but litle, of about twentie houses, and the most part of the towne is walled in with a wall of a mans height, made with reede or sedge, or some such thing. Here we staied two or three howres after we had ankered, to see if any man would come vnto vs: and seeing that none did come, we manned our boates, and put in marchandize, and went, and ankered with our boates neere to the shoare: then they sent out a man to vs, who made vs signes, that that was the towne of Don Iohn, and that he himselfe was in the Countrey, and would be at home at the going downe of the Sunne, and when he had done, he required a reward, as the most part of them will doe, which come first aboord, and I gaue him one ell of cloth, and he departed, and that night we heard no more of him.

The ninth day in the morning, we went againe with our boates to the shoare, and there came foorth a boate to vs, who made signes that Don Iohn was not come home, but would be at home this day: and to that place also came another boate from the other towne, a mile from this, which is called Don Deuis, and brought with him gold, to shew vs, making signes that we should come thether. I then left in this place Iohn Sauill, and Iohn Makeworth, and tooke the Hinde, and went to the other towne, and there ankered, and tooke cloth, and went to shoare with the boate, and by and by the boates came to vs, and brought a measure of foure yards long & a halfe, and shewed vs a weight of an Angell, and twelue graines, which they would giue for so much, and not otherwise: so I staied, and made no bargaine. And all this day the barke lay at Don Iohns towne, and did nothing, hauing answer that he was not come home.

The tenth day we went againe to the shoare, and there came out a boate with good store of gold, and hauing driuen the matter off a long time, and hauing brought the measure to a naile lesse then three elles, and their weight to an Angell and twentie graines, and could not bring them to more, I did conclude with them and solde, and within one quarter of an howre, I tooke one pound and a quarter of an ounce of gold: and then they made me signes to tary, til they had parted their cloth vpon the shoare, as their manner is, and they would come againe, and so they went away, and layd the cloth all abroad vpon the land, peece by peece, and by and by one came running downe from the towne to them, and spake vnto them, & foorthwith euery man made as much haste as he could away, and went into the woods, to hide his golde, and his cloth: we mistrusted some knaue

&

rie, and being waued by them to come a ſhoare, yet we would not but went aboord the Hinde, and perceiued vpon the hill 30. men which we iudged to be Portingals: and they went vp to the toppe of the hill and there muſtered, and ſhewed themſelues, hauing a flagge with them. Then I being deſirous to know what the Hart did, tooke the Hindes boate and went towardes her, and when I came neere to them, they ſhot off two pieces of ordinance which I marueiled at: I made as much haſte as I could to her, and met her boate & Skiffe comming from the ſhoare in all haſte, and wee met aboord together. They ſhewed me that they had bene a ſhoare all that day, and had giuen to the 2. ſonnes of Don Iohn, to either of them 3. yardes and a halfe of cloth, and 3. baſons bet wixt them, and had deliuered him more 3. yards of cloth and the waight of an Angel and 12. graines, and being on land did tarie for his anſwere, and in the meane time the Portingals came running from the hill vpon them, whereof the Negroes a litle before had giuen them warning, and bad them to goe away but they perceiued it not. The ſonne of Don Iohn conſpired with the Portingals againſt them, ſo that they were almoſt vpon them, but yet they recouered their boate and ſet off from the ſhoare, and the Portingals ſhot their caleeuers at them, but hurt no man, and then the ſhippe perceiuing it, ſhot off the 2. pieces aforeſaid among them. Hereupon, we layed baſes in both the boates, and in the Skiffe and manned them well, and went a ſhoare againe, but becauſe of the winde we could not land, but lay off in the ſea about 10. ſcore and ſhot at them, but the hill ſuccoured them, and they from the rocks and from the hilles ſhot at vs with their halfe hakes, & the Negroes more for feare then for loue ſtood by them to helpe them, and when we ſawe that the Negroes were in ſuch ſubiection vnto them that they durſt not ſell vs any thing for feare of them we went aboorde, and that night ꝑ winde kept at the Eaſt, ſo that we could not with our ſhip fetch the Hinde, but I tooke the boate in the night and went aboord the barke to ſee what was there to be done, and in the morning we perceiued the towne to be in like caſe layd with Portingals, ſo wee waued & went along the coaſt. This towne of Iohn de Viſo ſtandeth vpon an hill like the towne of Don Iohn, but it hath bene burned, ſo that there are not paſſing 6. houſes in it: the moſt part of the golde that comes thither comes out of the countrey, & no doubt if the people durſt for feare of ꝑ Portingals bring forth their gold, there would be had good ſtore: but they dare not ſel any thing, their ſubiection is ſo great to the Portingals. The 11. day riming by the ſhoare we had ſight of a litle towne 4. leagues frō the laſt towne that we came from, & about halfe a league from that of another towne vpō a hil, & halfe a league from that alſo of another great towne vpō the ſhoare: whither we went to ſee what could there be done: if we could doe nothing, then to returne to the other towne, becauſe wee thought that the Portingals would leaue the towne vpon our departure. Here grew ſome contention about one Greſham aboorde the Hinde, who refuſed to vndertake further paines without further wages: but the matter was quieted, for Packman tooke the charge which he refuſed, and ſo wee went towards the ſhoare, but the winde ſcanted ſo that we could not doe it. Along from the caſtle vnto this place are very high hilles which may be ſeene aboue all other hilles, but they are full of wood, & great red cliffes by the ſea ſide. The boates of theſe places are ſome what large & bigge, for one of them will carry 12. men, but their forme is alike with the former boats of the coaſt. There are about theſe townes few riuers: their lāguage differeth not frō the language vſed at Don Iohns towne: but euery one can ſpeake 3. or 4. words of Portuguiſe, which they vſed altogether to vs.

The Portingals of the Caſtle of Mina inuaded our men.

The towne of Don Iohn de Viſo.

We ſaw this night about 5. of the clocke 22. boats running along the ſhoare to the Weſtward, whereupon we ſuſpected ſome knauerie intended againſt vs. The 12. day therefore we ſet ſaile and went further along the coaſt, & deſcried more townes, wherin were greater houſes then in the other townes, & the people came out of the townes to looke vpon vs, but we could ſee no boates. Two mile beyond the Eaſtermoſt towne are blacke rocks, which black rocks continue to ꝑ vttermoſt cape of the land, which is about a league off, & then ꝑ land runnes in Eaſt northeaſt, & a ſandy ſhoare againe; vpon theſe black rocks came downe certaine Negroes, which waued vs w̄ a white flag, but we perceiuing ꝑ principal place to be neere, would not ſtay, but bare ſtill along the ſhoare: and as ſoone as we had opened ꝑ point of the land, we raiſed another head land about a league of the point, which had a rocke lying off it into the ſea, & that they thought to be the place which we ſought. When we came almoſt thwart the place they knew it, & we put wares into our boat, & the ſhip being within halfe a mile of the place ancred in 5. fadom water, and faire ground. We went on ſhoare with our boate, and ancred about 10. of the clocke in the forenoone: we ſaw many boates lying vpon the ſhoare, and diuers came by vs, but none of them would come neere vs, being as we iudged afrayed of vs: becauſe that foure men were taken perforce the laſt yeere from this place, ſo that no man came to vs, whereupon we went aboorde againe, and thought here to haue made no ſale: yet towardes night a great lord came downe to the water ſide, and waued vs on ſhoare with a white flagge, and afterwards their Captaine came downe and many men with him,

Foure men taken away by the Engliſh.

and sate him downe by the shoare vnder a tree: which when I perceiued, I tooke things with me to giue him: at last he sent a boat to call to vs, which would not come neere vs, but made vs signes to come againe the next day: but in fine, I got them to come aboord in offering them things to giue to their captaine, which were two elles of cloth, one latton bason, one white bason, a bottle, a great piece of beefe, & 6. bisket cakes, which they receiued making vs signes to come againe the next day, saying, that their Captaine was Grand Capitane as appeared by those that attended vpon him with their darts, and targets, and other weapons.

This towne is very great and stands vpon a hill among trees, so that it cannot well be seene except a man be neere it: to the Eastward of it vpon the hil hard by the towne stand two high trees, which is a good marke to knowe the towne. And vnder the towne lieth another hill lower then it, whereupon the sea beates: and that ende next the sea is all great blacke rockes, and beyond the towne in a bay lieth a nother small towne.

The 13. day in the morning wee tooke our boate and went to shoare, and stayed till tenne a clocke and no man came to vs: wee went about therefore to returne aboorde, and when the Negroes sawe that, they came running downe with a flagge to waue vs againe, so wee ancred againe, and then one shewed vs that the Captaine would come downe by and by: wee sawe a saile in the meane time passe by vs, but it was small, and wee regarded it not. Being on shoare wee made a Tilt with our Oares and saile, and then there came a boate to vs with fiue men in her, who brought vs againe our bottle, and brought me a henne, making signes by the sunne, that within 2. houres the marchants of the countrey would come downe and buye all that wee had: so I gaue them 6. Manillios to carry to their Captaine, and they made signes to haue a pledge of vs, and they would leaue vs another man: and we willing to doe so, put one of our men in their boate, but they would not giue vs one of theirs, so wee tooke our man againe, and there tarried for the marchants: and shortly after one came downe arayed like their Captaine, with a great traine after him, who saluted vs friendly, and one of the chiefest of them went & sate downe vnder a tree, where the last yere the Captaine was wont to sit: and at last we perceiued a great many of them to stand at the ende of a hollow way, & behinde them the Portingals had planted a base, who suddenly shot at vs, but ouershot vs, and yet we were in a maner hard by them, and they shot at vs againe before we could ship our oares to get away, but did no hurt. Then the Negroes came to the rocks hard by vs, and discharged Caleuers at vs, and againe the Portingals shotte off their base twise more, and then our ship shot at them, but the rockes and hilles defended them.

M. Robert Gainshers voyage to Guinea in Anno 1554.

Then we went aboord to goe from this place, seeing the Negroes bent against vs, because that the last yeere M. Gainsh did take away the Captaines sonne, and 3. others from this place with their gold, and all that they had about them: which was the cause that they became friendes with the Portingals, whom before they hated as did appeare the last yeere by the courteous intertainement which the Trinitie had there, when the Captaine came aboorde the ship, and brought them to his towne, and offered them ground to build a castle in, and there they had good sales.

The 14. day we waied & plyed backe againe to seeke the Hinde, which in ỳ morning we met, and so we turned both backe to ỳ Eastwards to see what we could do at that place where the Trinitie did sel her 8. frises the last yeere. The Hinde had taken 18. ounces & a halfe more of golde of other Negroes, the day after that we left them. This day about 1. of the clocke we espied certaine boates vpon the sand & men by them, and went to them with marchandises, and tooke 3. ounces of gold for 18. fusts of cloth, euery fusse 3. yardes & a halfe after one Angel, and 12. graines the fusse, and then they made me signes that the next day I should haue golde ynough: so the Master tooke the Hind with Iohn Sauil, and Iohn Makeworth, & went to seeke the place afore said, & I with Richard Pakeman remained in this place, to see what we could doe the next day: and when the Negroes perceiued our ship to go away, they feared that the other would follow, & so sent forth 2. boats to vs with 4. men in them, requiring vs to tary, & to giue them one man for a pledge, and 2. of them should tary with vs for him, so Edward M. Morleis seruant seeing these men so earnest therein offred himselfe to be pledge, & we let him go for 2. of them, one whereof had his waighes and scales, and a chaine of golde about his necke, and another about his arme. They did eate of such things as we had and were wel contented. In the night the Negroes kept a light vpon the shoare thwart of vs, & about 1. of the clocke we hard & saw the light of a base which shot off twise at the said light, and by & by discharged 2. caleuers, which in the end we perceiued to be ỳ Portingals Brigandine which followed vs frō place to place, to giue warning to the people of the countrey, that they should not deale with vs. The 15. day in the morning the captaine came downe with 100. men with him, and brought his wife, & many others brought their wiues also, because their towne was 8. mile within the Countrey, and they determined to lie by the sea side till they had bought what they would.

A Portingals Brigandine.

Then

When he was come he ſent our man aboord, and required to haue two men pledges, and he himſelfe would come aboord, and I ſent him 2. of whome he tooke but one, and ſo came aboord vs, hee and his wife, with diuers of his friends, & brought me a goate, and two great rootes, & I gaue him againe a latton baſon, a white baſon, 6. mantillios, and a bottel of Malmeſie, and to his wife a ſmal caſket. After this we began to make our meaſure and weight: and hee had a waight of his owne which held one Angel and 14. graines, and required a meaſure of 4. elles and a halfe. In fine we concluded the 8. part for one Angel, and 20. graines, and before wee had done, they tooke mine owne weight and meaſure.

The 16. day I tooke 8. li. 1. ounce of gold: and ſince ꝑ departure of the Hinde I hard not of her, but when our pledge went into the countrey the firſt night, he ſaid he ſaw her caſt ancre aboue fiue leagues from this place. The 17. day I ſold about 17. pieces of cloth, and tooke 4. li. 4. ounces and a halfe of gold. The 18. day the captaine deſired to haue ſome of our wine, and offered halfe a ducket of gold for a bottel: but I gaue it him freely, and made him and his traine drinke beſides. And this day alſo I tooke 5. li. 5. ounces of gold. The 19. day we ſold about 18. clothes, and tooke 4. li. 4. ounces and one quarter of golde.

The 20. day we tooke 3. li. 6. ounces and a quarter of gold. The 21. we tooke 8. li. 7. ounces and a quarter. The 22. 3. li. 8. ounces & a quarter. And this night about 4. of the clocke the captaine who had layen all this while vpon the ſhoare, went away with all the reſt of the people with him.

The 23. day we were waued a ſhoare by other Negroes, and ſolde them cloth, caſkets, knues, and a dozen of bels, and tooke 1. li. 10. ounces of gold. The 24. likewiſe we ſold bels, ſheetes, and thimbles, and tooke 2. li. 1. ounce, and a quarter of golde. The 25. day we ſold 7. dozen of ſmal bels, and other things, and then perceiuing their gold to be done, we waued & ſet ſaile and went to leeward to ſeeke the Hinde, and about 5. of the clocke at night we had ſight of her, and bare with her, and vnderſtood that ſhe had made ſome ſales. The 26. day we receiued out of the Hinde 48. li. 3. ounces, & 1. eight part of gold, which they had taken in the time that we were from them. And this day vpon the requeſt of a Negro that came vnto vs from a captaine, we went to ſhoare with our marchandiſe, and tooke 7. li. and 1. ounce of gold. At this place they required no gages of vs, but at night they ſent a man aboord vs, which lay with vs all night, becauſe we might know we that they would alſo come to vs the next day. The 27. day in both our ſhippes we tooke 8. li. 1. ounce, three quarters and halfe a quarter of golde. The 28. wee made ſales for the companie, and tooke 1. li. and halfe an ounce of golde. The 29. day in the morning we heard 2. caleeuers ſhot off vpon the ſhoare, which we iudged to be either by the Portingals, or by the Negroes of the Portingals: we manned our boates and armed our ſelues and went to ſhoare, but could finde nothing: for they were gone. The 30. day we made more ſales for the companie, and for the Maſters.

The 31. we ſent our boate to ſhoare to take in ſand for balaſt, and there our men mette the Negroes, with whom they had made ſale the day before a fiſhing, which did helpe them to fill ſande, and hauing no gold, ſold fiſh to our men for their handkerchiefs, and nightkerchiefs.

The 1. day of Febuarie we waued and went to another place, and tooke 1. li. 9. ounces 3. quarters of gold. Febuarie.

The 2. day we made more ſales: but hauing viewed our victuals, we determined to tarie no long time vpon the coaſt, becauſe the moſt part of our drinke was ſpent, and that which remained grew ſowre. The 3. and 4. dayes we made ſome ſales, though not greatly, and finding the winde this 4. day to come off the ſhoare, wee ſet ſaile & ranne along the ſhoare to the Weſtwards: vpō this coaſt we found by experience, that ordinarily about 2. of the clocke in the night the winde coms off the ſhoare at Northnortheaſt, and ſo continueth vntill 8. of the clocke in the morning: and al the reſt of the day and night it comes out of the Southweſt: and as for the tide or currant vpon this ſhoare, it goeth continually with the winde. The 5. day we continued ſayling, and thought to haue met with ſome Engliſh ſhips, but found none. They returne for England.

The 6. day we went our courſe Southweſt to fetch vnder the line, and ranne by eſtimation 24. leagues. The 7. day we ranne about 20. leagues, the 8. day, 12. leagues, the 9. day, 16. leagues, the 10. day, 18. leagues, the 11. day, 16. leagues, and ſo many more the 12. day.

The 13. day we thought our ſelues by our reckoning to be cleare of the Cape dos Palmas, and ranne 12. leagues.

The 14. day we ranne 16. leagues, the 15. 20. leagues, and ſo many more the 16. day.

The 17. day in the after noone the winde came vp at the Northweſt with a Ternado, and foule weather continued all day and night, with thunder & lightning: we ranne this day not aboue 4. leagues. The 18. day we had another Ternado, the winde being at Northweſt, and by Weſt: we ranne this day 12. leagues. The 19. day we ranne 10. leagues. The 20. day not aboue 5. leagues, by reaſon of the great change of windes, and foule weather.

The 21. we ranne our course with a good gale 25. leagues.

The 22. day Christopher Rawlinson our Cooper, who had bene sicke for the space of one moneth before, died about 8. of the clocke at night, whose will I made before his death. This night we descried two saile of tal ships, but were content to passe quietly, and therefore went not roome with them. This day by our reckoning we were thwart of the Cape de Monte, which is to the Westward of the Riuer de Sestos, about 30. leagues.

Cape de Monte.

The 23. day we receiued William Iobber for our Cooke, perceiuing that the Cooke himselfe was weake and not able to doe that seruice for which he was shipped.

The 24. day we ranne about 20. leagues, the 25. day 25. leagues, the 26. day 16. leagues.

The 27. day we had a great Ternado out of the Southeast with much raine, which continued not aboue one houre, and then the winde came againe to the Southwest with a good gale: and we made way this day 12. leagues.

The 28. day we had another Ternado out of the North, and Northnorthwest, but continued not long, and so became calme againe presently.

The 29. day we ranne (because of the varietie of windes,) not aboue 7. leagues.

March. The first day of March in a Ternado we lost the Hinde, whereupon we set vp a light, and shot off a piece but could not heare of her, so that then we strooke our saile and taried for her, and in the morning had sight of her againe, 3. leagues a sterne of vs. We ranne as we accompted this day 6. leagues.

The 2. day we ranne 16. leagues, the 3. 20. leagues, the 4. 20. leagues more.

The 5. day we had sight of a Caruel of about 100. tunnes to the windewards of vs, and when she was thwart of vs we cast about and gaue her the chase vntill 4. of the clocke, but could not fetche her.

Cape Verde in latitude 14. degrees and a halfe. From this day till the 22. of this moneth wee went our course directly. Upon which 22. day we found our selues to be in the height of Cape Verde, which standes in 14. degrees, and a halfe.

From this day till the 29. day we continued our course, and then we found our selues to be in 22. degrees. This day one of our men called William King, who had bene long sicke, died in his sleepe, his apparell was distributed to those that lackt it, and his money was kept for his friendes, to be deliuered them at our comming home.

The 30. day we founde our selues to be vnder the Tropike.

The 31. day we went our course, and made way 18. leagues.

April. From the 1. day of April to the 20. we went our course, and then found our selues to be in the height of the Açores.

May. The seuenth day of May wee fell with the South part of Irelande, and going on shoare with our boate had fresh drinke, and two sheepe of the countrey people, which were wilde Kernes, and we gaue them golde for them, and bought further such other victuals as wee had neede of, and thought would serue vs till we arriued in England.

The 12. of May we fell with the Isle of Lundy in the Channel of Bristoll, which lyeth about 5. leagues from the maine land of England.

The 13. day wee came betwixt the flat Holmes and the steepe Holmes, which are about 7. leagues from Bristoll.

Their arrival at Bristow. The 14. day with the afternoone tide we went into the Port of Bristoll called Hungrode, and there ancred in safetie, and gaue thankes to God for our safe arriuall.

The second voyage made by M. William Towrson to *the coast of Guinea, and the Castle of Mina, in the yere* 1556.

with the Tiger of London, a shippe of 120. tunnes, the Hart of London of 60. tunnes, and a Pinnesse of 16. tunnes.

THe 14. day of September, the yeere aboue said, at 8. of the clocke in the morning wee departed from Harwiche, and directed our course for the Isle of Sillye, to meete there with the Hart and Pinnesse, which were rigged and victualled at Bristoll, but arriuing there the 28. day wee founde them not, and therefore after long lying at hull to tarrie for them, but not espying them, wee turned backe to Plimmouth the 12. day of October, and being there, the Hart and the Pinnesse

November. came to vs; so that the 15. of Nouember we all departed together from Plimmouth at one of the clocke

clocke in the afternoone, and the 28. day we had ſight of the Iſle of Porto Sancto, and the next day in the morning of Madera.

The 3. day of December we fell with the Iſle of Palma, and the 9. we were thwart of the Cape Blanke, and found there certaine Caruels fiſhing for Pargoes. December.

The 19. we found our ſelues in the height of Sierra Leona, and all this day wee ranne thwart of certaine Currants, which did ſet to the Weſt Southweſtward ſo faſt as if it had bene the ouerfall of a ſand, making a great noyſe like vnto a ſtreame or tyde gate when the water is ſhoale: and to proue whether we coulde finde ground in this place, we ſounded and had 150. fadom, and no ground, and ſo departed. Sierra Leona.

The 30. of December we fell with the coaſt of Guinea, and had firſt ſight of it about 4. leagues off. The beſt marke that wee could take of the place to knowe it, was three hilles, which laye Northeaſt and by Eaſt from vs: betwixt the Northermoſt two hilles, there are two high and great trees ſtanding in ſight as it were a ſailes breadth one from another, and a litle more to the Northweſtwards are certaine hommocks. Hauing ſailed ſomewhat into the ſhoare, wee tooke our ſelues to be ſhotte ſomewhat paſt the Riuer de Seſtos, ſo that we kept about to fetche it. And a litle after wee had ſight of three ſailes of ſhippes, and two pinneſſes which were in the weather of vs. and hauing ſight of them, we made our ſelues readie to meete them, and halled off our ſhips to fetche the winde as neere as wee coulde: and hauing ſayled about an houre or two, they alſo went about, and went as wee went to make themſelues readie, and when wee had them in chace, they went away from vs: but when they had made themſelues readie, they kept about againe, and came with vs very finely appointed with their ſtreamers, and pendants and enſignes, and noyſe of trumpets very brauely: ſo when we met, they had the weather of vs, and wee being determined to fight if they had bene Portingals, waued them to come vnder our lee, which they denied ſtoutly: then we demaunded of them whence they were, and they ſaide of Fraunce, we tolde them againe that we were of London in England. They aſked of vs what Portingals wee had ſeene, wee anſwered, none but fiſhermen: then they tolde vs that there were certaine Portingall ſhippes gone to the Mina to defende it, and that they mette with another at the Riuer de Seſtos, which was a ſhippe of two hundreth, which they had burned, and had ſaued none but the Maſter and two or three Negroes, and certaine others which were ſore burned, which they left a ſhoare there. Then they deſired to come aboorde of vs with their boates to talke with vs, and wee gaue them leaue. Then the Captaine of the Admirall and diuers others came aboorde very friendly, deſiring vs to keepe them company becauſe of the Portingals, and to goe to the Mina with them: wee tolde them that we had not watered, and that we were but nowe fallen with the coaſt, and they ſhewed vs that we were fiftie leagues paſt the Riuer de Seſtos: notwithſtanding there was water ynough to bee had, and they would helpe vs to water with their owne boates, becauſe they would haue our companie. And tolde vs further, that they had bene ſixe weekes vpon the coaſt, and had gotten but three tunne of graines amongſt them all: and when wee had heard them, we made our reckoning that although the Mine were cleare, yet if they did goe before vs they would marre our market; and if it were not cleare, then if the Portingals were there and did take them, they would vnderſtande that wee were behinde, and ſo woulde waite for vs. And further wee made accompt, that if wee went with them wee ſhould doe as well as they if the coaſt were cleare: if it were not cleare, then by them, wee were aſſured to be the ſtronger. Therefore hauing conſidered thus much of their gentle offers, wee tolde them that the next day wee would conferre more largely of the matter. Whereupon they deſired mee to come the next day to dinner to them, and to bring the Maſters of our ſhippes with mee, and ſuch marchants as I thought good, promiſing to giue vs water out of their owne ſhippes if we would take it, or els to tarie with vs, and helpe vs to water with their owne boates and Pinneſſes. They admit certaine Frenchmen into their companie.

The one and thirtieth day in the morning, the Admirall ſent his boate aboorde for mee, and I tooke our Maſters and certaine of our Marchants and went to him, who had prouided a notable banquet for vs, and intreated vs very friendly, deſiring vs ſtill to keepe his companie, promiſing that what victuals were in his ſhippes, or other thinges that might doe vs pleaſure vntill the ende, wee ſhould haue the one halfe of it, offering vs, if wee woulde, to furle his Flagges, and to be at our commaundement in all things.

In the ende we agreed to come to an ancre, and to ſende our boate on ſhoare with the Admirals boate, and one of his Pinneſſes, and an Almaine which they had brought out of France, to ſeeke water, as for our Pinneſſe ſhe came to an ancre to ſea ward of vs al, and would not come at vs. All this night the boates continued on ſhoare.

The firſt day of January our boats came to vs againe and had found no riuer. Whereupon we waied January.

waued and set saile, and ancred againe at another Riuer.

The 2. day we went into the Riuer and bargained, and tooke 5. small Eliphants teeth.

The 3. day we tooke 5. more.

An assault vpon Eliphants. The 4. day the French Admirall and we tooke 15. small teeth. This day we tooke 30. men with vs & went to seeke Eliphants, our men being all well armed with harquebusses, pikes, long bowes, crossebowes, partizans, long swords, and swordes and bucklers: we founde 2. Eliphants which we strooke diuers times with harquebusses and long bowes, but they went away from vs and hurt one of our men. The 5. day we set saile and ranne along the coast.

The Riuer of S. Andros. The 6. day we fell with the Riuer of S. Andros, at which place the lande is somewhat high to the Westward of the Riuer, and a faire bay also to the Westward of it: but to the Eastwarde of it, it is lowe land.

The 7. day we went into the Riuer and found no village, but certaine wilde Negroes not accustomed to trade. It is a very great Riuer, and 7. fadom water in some places at the entring: here we filled water, and after set saile.

The 8. day we sailed along the shore and came to the red cliffes, and went forwarde in sayling the 9. day also.

Captaine Blundel the French Admirall. The 10. day we came together to confer with Captaine Blundel Admiral of the French ships, Ierom Baudet his vice Admiral, and Iohn de Orleans master of a ship of 70. tunne, and with their marchants, and agreed that when God should sende vs to any place where we might make sale, that we should be of one accord and not one of vs hurt the market of the other, but certaine of our boates to make the price for all the rest, and then one boate to make sale for euery shippe. This night our boates going to the shoare met with certaine Negroes, who said that they had gold, and therefore we here cast ancre.

Allowe. The 11. day all the day we tooke but one halfe Angel waight of 4. graines, which we tooke by hand. for the people of this place had no waight: the Negroes called this place Allowe.

The 12. day we ranne along the coast and found but one towne, but no boates would come out to vs, and therefore we went our course.

The 13. day I tooke my boate and went along the shoare, & passed by diuers small townes, and was waued to come on shoare at 3. places, but the sea went so high vpon the shoare, that it was not possible for vs to land, neither could they come to vs if they had had boates, as I could see none but at one place, where there was one that would haue come vnto vs, but the land wash went so fore, that it ouerthrew his boate, and one of the men was drowned, which the people lamented, and cried so fore, that we might easily heare them, and they got his body out of the sea, and caried it amongst them to their towne.

Dondowe, a great towne. The 14. day we came within Saker shot of the castle, & straight way they set forth an Almade to descrie vs, and when they perceiued that we were no Portingals, they ran within the towne againe: for there is a great towne by the castle, which is called by the Negroes, Dondow. Without this there lie two great rocks like Islands, and the castle standeth vpon a point which sheweth almost like an Island. Before we came at this castle, we found the land for 5. or 6. leagues to bee high land, and about 7. leagues before we came to the castle, low land vntill we came at the castel, and then we found ꝑ land high againe. This castle standeth about 5. leagues on this side the Cape Trois points. Here I tooke the boate with our Negroes and ranne alongst the shoare, till I came to the Cape & found two small townes, but no boates at them, neither any traffique to be had. At these places our Negroes did vnderstand them well, and one of them went a shoare at all the places, and was well receiued of them: this night we ancred at the Cape Trois points.

The castel of Myna.

Cape Trois points. The 15. day I tooke our boate & went along the shoare, & about 3. leagues beyond the Eastermost part of the Cape we found a faire bay where we ran in, and found a small towne, and certaine boates which belonged to the same towne, but the Negroes in a long time would not come to vs, but at the last by the perswasion of our owne Negroes one boat came to vs, and with him we sent George our Negro a shoare, and after he had talked with them, they came aboord our boats without feare, & I gaue to their captaine a bason, & two strings of Margarets, & they shewed vs about 5. duckets waight of golde, but they required so much for it that we would not take it, because the Frenchmen and we had agreed to make price of our goods all in one boat, & the price being made then euery man to sell in his owne boate, and no man to giue more then the price which should be set by vs all. This place is called Bulle, & here the Negroes were very glad of our Negroes and shewed them all the friendship they could, when they had tolde them that they were the men that were taken away, being now againe brought by vs.

Bulle.

The Negroes here shewed vs, that a moneth since there were 3. ships that fought together, & the

two

two ſhippes put the other to flight, and before that at the caſtle of Mina there were 4. ſhippes of the Portingals, which met with one French man, which Frenchman cauſed them all to flee, which ſhippe we tooke to be the Roebarge: for the Frenchmen of our company iudged her to be there about that time, with her pinnaſſe alſo: and further, that after her went a ſhippe of twelue ſcore, named the Shawdet, all alone, and after her a ſhippe of foure ſcore, and both for the Mina. And there were two others alſo which they left, one at Cape Verde, called the Leuriere of Diepe, and another at the riuer De Seſtos, beſides theſe three, which all this time be in our companie, whoſe names be theſe:

The Eſpoyer of Hableneff, which is the Admirall, whoſe Captaine is Denys Blundell.
The Leuriere of Roan Viceadmirall, whoſe Maſter is Ierom Bawdet.
The other is of Hunfleur, whoſe Maſter is called Iohn de Orleance.

The ſixteene day, I went along the ſhoare, with two pinneſſes of the Frenchmens, and found a Baye, and a freſh riuer, and after that went to a towne called Hanta, twelue leagues beyond the Cape. At this towne our Negroes were well knowen, and the men of the towne wept for ioy, when they ſaw them, and demaunded of them where Anthony, and Binne had bene: and they told them, that they had bene at London in England, and ſhould be brought home the next voyage. So, after this, our Negroes came aboord, with other Negroes, which brought a weight with them, which was ſo ſmall, that we coulde not giue them the halfe of that which they demaunded for it. Hanta.

The Negroes here told vs, that there were fiue Portingall ſhippes at the Caſtle, and one pinneſſe, and that the Portingals did much harme to their Countrey, and that they liued in feare of them, and we told them againe, that we would defend them from the Portingals, whereof they were very glad.

The 17. day we went a ſhoare, and the Frenchmen with vs, but did no great good, the Negroes were ſo vnreaſonable, we ſolde foure ſcore Manellios for one ounce of golde.

Then we departed, and went to Shamma, and went into the riuer, with fiue boates well appointed with men and ordinance, and with our noiſes of trumpets, and drummes, for we thought here to to haue found ſome Portingals, but there were none: ſo we ſent our Negroes a ſhoare, and after them went diuers of vs, and were very well receiued, and the people were very glad of our Negroes, ſpecially one of their brothers wiues, and one of their aunts, which receiued them with much ioy, and ſo did all the reſt of the people, as if they had bene their naturall brethren: we comforted the Captaine, and tolde him, that he ſhould not feare the Portingals, for we would defende him from them: whereupon we cauſed our boates to ſhoote off their baſes, and harquebuſſes, and cauſed our men to come on ſhoare with their long bowes, and they ſhot before the captaine, which he, with all the reſt of the people, wondred much at, ſpecially to ſee them ſhoote ſo farre as they did, and aſſaied to draw their bowes, but could not. When it grew to be late, we departed to our ſhips, for we looked euery howre for the Portingals. " And here the Negroes ſhewed vs, that there was an Engliſh ſhippe at the Mina, which had brought one of the Negroes againe, which Robert Gaynſh tooke away. Shamma. The Negroes brought home by our men. " Note.

The 18. day we went into the riuer, with no leſſe ſtrength then before, and concluded with the Negroes to giue them for euery fuffe two yardes and three nailes of cloth, and to take for it one Angell Ducket: ſo that we tooke in all 70. Duckets, whereof the Frenchmen had fortie, and we thirtie.

The 19. day we went a ſhoare, euery man for himſelfe, and tooke a good quantitie of golde, and I for my part tooke foure pound and two ounces and a halfe of golde, and our Parts boate tooke 21. ounces. At night, the Negroes ſhewed vs, that the next day the Portingals would be with vs, by land or by ſea: and when we were ready to depart, we heard diuers harquebuſſes ſhoote off in the woods by vs, which we knew to be Portingals, which durſt come no neerer to vs, but ſhot off in the woods, to ſee if they could feare vs, and ſo make vs to leaue our traffike.

The 20. day, we manned our fiue boates, and alſo a great boate of the Frenchmens, with our men, and the Admirals, twelue of them in their murrions, and coſſets, and the reſt all well appointed, with foure trumpets, a drumme, and a fife, and the boate all hanged with ſtreamers of ſilke, and pendants very faire, and went into the riuer, and traffiked, our man of warre lying off, and on in the riuer to waft vs, but we heard no more of the Portingals. This day the Negroes told vs, that there were certaine ſhippes come into Hanta, which towne is about two leagues to the weſtward of this place.

The 21. day we manned our boates againe, and went to a place a league from this, to the weſtwards, and there found many Negroes, with another Captaine, and ſolde at the ſame rate that

that we had done with the others.

The 22. day, we went a shoare againe, and trafficked in like sort quietly, and I tooke fourr pound and fiue ounces of golde.

The 23. day, about night, the Negroes with their Captaine, came to vs, and tolde vs that the king of Portingals shippes were departed from the Castle, meaning the next day to plye to the windward, to come to vs, giuing vs warning to take heede to our selues: we told them againe, that we were very glad of their comming, and would be ready at all times to meete them: and to assure them that we were glad of it, we sounded our trumpets, and shot off certaine bases, whereof the Negroes were very glad, and requested vs, that if the Portingals sought to hinder our traffike, to shew them all the extremitie that we could, promising vs, that if they came by land, they would aduertise vs thereof.

The 24. we went a shoare with our trumpets, and drummes, and trafficked, and I had the Captaine of the towne to dinner.

Fiue saile of Portingals descried.

The 25. day, we being a shoare, our ships had descried fiue sayles of the King of the Portingals, and our shippes shotte off ordinance to call vs away, and we there we euery man his caske a shoare for water, and went to our shippes, and by that time we had waied, and giuen order one to another what to doe, it was night, so that that night nothing was done: we set sayle, and lay close all night, to get the winde if we could: we were neere some of them, and one shotte off a peece, which we iudged to be the Admirall of the Portingals, to cause the rest to come and speake with him: so all this night we made our selues ready for fight.

The 26. we came in with the shoare, and had sight of the Portingals, where they rid at anker, and we bare with them, and we gaue all our men white scarffs, to the ende that the Frenchmen might knowe one the other, if we came to boording: but the night came vpon vs, that we could not fetch them, but we ankered within Demy culuering shot of them.

The 27. day we waied, and so did the Portingals, and about eleuen of the clocke, we had the winde of them, and then we went roome with them, which when they perceiued, they kept about to the shoare againe, and we after them, and when they were so neere the shoare, that they could not well runne any further on that boord, they kept about againe, and lay to the seaward, and then we kept about with them, and were a head of them, and tooke in our topsailes, and caried for them, and the first that came vp, was a small barke, which sailed so well, that she cared not for any of vs, and caried good ordinance, and assoone as she came vp, she shot at vs, and ouershot vs, and then she

The fight with the Portingals.

shot at the Admiral of the Frenchmen, and shot him through in two or three places, and went forth a head of vs, because we were in our fighting sailes: then came vp another caruell vnder our lee in like case, which shotte at vs, and at the Frenchman, and hurt two of his men, and shot him thorough the mayne maste. And after them came vp the Admirall vnder our Lee also, but he was not able to doe vs so much harme as the small shippes, because he caried ordinance higher then they, neither were we able to make a good shot at any of them, because our shippe was so weake in the side, that she laide all her ordinance in the sea: wherefore we thought to lay the great shippe aboord, and assoone as the French Admiral went roome with him, he fell a sterne, & could not fetch him, and after he fel a sterne of two caruels more, and could fetch none of them, but fell to leeward of them all: and when he was to leeward, he kept about to the shoare ward, and left vs, and then we put out our topsailes, and gaue them chase, and both the other Frenchmen kept the wind, and would not come neere vs, and our owne shippe was a sterne, so that she could not come to vs: and after we had followed them about two howres to the seaward, they kept about againe towards the shoare, thinking to pay vs as they went along by, & to haue the wind of the French Admirall, which before ran in towards the shoare, & we kept about with them, and kept still the wind of them, thinking that our Viceadmiral, and the other, would haue followed vs, as we willed them to doe: but after that the Portingall was past by them, and euery one had shot at vs & our Viceadmirall, both our Viceadmiral, and the two Frenchmen, and our owne pinnesse, left vs in the lapse, and ran to seaward, and we ran still along, and kept the wind of them, to succour the French Admiral, who was vnder all of their lees, and when they met with him, euery one went roome with him, & gaue him the broad side, and after they cast about againe, and durst not boord him, because they saw vs in the weather of them, or els without doubt they had taken or sunke them: for three of them which were the smallest, went so fast, that it was not possible for a ship to boord them, and caried such ordinance, that if they had had the weather of vs, they would haue troubled three of the best ships that we had, and as for their Admirall, and Viceadmirall, they were both notably appointed.

The French forsake our men.

When the Frenchman was cleare of them, he laye as neere the winde as he could, and wee followed them still towardes the shoare, and then the Admirall ranne to Sea after the

rest,

reſt, and left vs all alone: and when the Portingals perceiued that we were alone, and gaue them chaſe, they kept about with vs, and we with them, to keepe the wind of them, and we ranne ſtill within base ſhot of them, but they ſhot not at vs, becauſe we had the weather of them, and ſaw that they could doe vs no hurt: and thus we followed one another vntill night, and in the night we loſt them, but as for all the reſt of our ſhippes, they packed on all the ſailes that they could, and ranne to ſea, and, as they themſelues confeſſe, they prayed for vs, but as for helpe at their hands we could haue none.

The 28. day we met with our Viceadmirall, our pinneſſe, and two of the French men, and the third was fled, which was a ſhippe of foure ſcore tunne, and belonged to Roan: and when I had the ſight of the reſt of our ſhippes, I tooke our ſkiffe, and went to them, to knowe, why they loſt vs in ſuch a caſe, and Iohn Kire made me anſwere, that his ſhippe would neither reare nor ſteere, and as for the pinneſſe, Iohn Daueis made me anſwer, that ſhe would doe nothing, and that he coulde carry her no further, for her rudder was broken, ſo that the Hart was glad to towe her. Then I went to the French Admirall, and found himſelfe to be a man of good ſtomake, but the one halfe of his men were ſicke, and dead, and then I talked with the ſmaller French man, and he made me anſwer, that he could doe nothing, ſaying, that his ſhippe would beare no ſaile, and had ſixteene alſo of his men dead, and ſicke, ſo he made vs plaine anſwer, that he was able to doe nothing. After this, the Frenchmen durſt not anker for feare of the Portingals.

The 29. day, the Maſter of the pinneſſe came to vs, and ſaide, that they were not able to keepe her any longer, and then we viewed her, and ſeeing that there was no remedie, her rudder with all the yron worke being broken both aloft and belowe, we agreed to breake her vp, and to put the men into the Hart. So we tooke out of her foure baſes, one anker, and certaine fire wood, and ſet her on fire, and afterwards ranne along the coaſt. The Engliſh pinneſſe burnt vp.

The thirtie day, we went into the ſhoare, and ſpake with certaine Negroes, who tolde vs, that ſome French ſhippes had bene there, but we could not bargaine with them, they were ſo vnreaſonable.

The 31. day, I went to ſhoare, but did not traffike.

The firſt day of February we waied, ſeeing we could not bring the Negroes to any reaſon, and came to another place, which ſtandeth vpon a hill. February.

The ſecond day we waied hence, and had ſight of a ſaile, which departed from the place aforeſaid, and ſhot off two peeces for his pinneſſe, which was a ſhoare: then I tooke our boate, and the Frenchmen tooke theirs, and went with the ſaile to deſcry him, and when we had rowed about a league, we had ſight of the pinneſſe: the ſhippe was gone ſo farre, that we could not reach her: but the pinneſſe we found to be the French men, which ranne away from vs, when we were in fight with the Portingals. After this, we went to the ſhoare, and found the Negroes vnreaſonable in their prices, and deale not with them.

The third day, I went to a towne foure leagues from vs, and ſhot off two peeces, and the Captaine came to vs, and I ſent Thomas Rippen a land, who knewe the Captaine, and alſoone as he came a ſhoare, the Captaine knew him, and diuers of the Negroes, who then began to aſke for me, and hauing told the Captaine that I was in the boate, he made no longer tarying, but by and by cauſed two boates to be put to the ſea, and came to me himſelfe, and when he ſawe me, he cried to me, before he came to the boate, and ſeemed to be the gladdeſt man aliue, and ſo did all the companie that knew me, and I gaue him a reward, as the manner of the Countrey is, and cauſed the Frenchmen to giue another, promiſing the next day to giue him wine: and that night, becauſe it was late, he would not talke of any price, but left me a pledge, and tooke another of me, and ſo departed.

The fourth day, going on ſhoare, I found that the ſhippes of France, which had bene there, had done much hurt to our markets, but yet I tooke fiue ounces and a halfe of gold.

The fift day I tooke eight ounces and one eight part of golde: but I ſawe that the Negroes perceiued the difference in cloth, betwixt ours and that which the Frenchmen had, which was better, and broader then ours: and then I told Captaine Blundel, that I would goe to the Leeward, becauſe I perceiued, that being there where his cloth was ſolde, I ſhould doe no good, whereof he was ſorie.

The ſixt day there came an Almade, and Negroes aboord me, requeſting me to come to their towne, for they had much golde, and many marchants: and ſo I went, and found their olde Captaine gone, and another in his place: but this night we did no good, becauſe the marchants were not come downe: ſo he required a pledge, which I let him haue, and tooke another of him.

The ſeuenth day, George our Negro came to vs, who had followed vs at the leaſt thirtie leagues, George the Negro.

leagues in a small boate, and when he came, the Negroes and we soone concluded of price. I tooke this day fiue pound and one ounce, & three quarters of gold. This Negro we had left at Shamma, at the time of the fight, who said, that he sawe the fight being a shoare, and that when we were gone from the Portingals, the Portingals came into their riuer, and tolde them, that the Englishmen had slaine two Portingals with a peece, which was in deede out of our shippe, and they required harbour there, but the Captaine of Shamma would not suffer them.

Two Portingals slaine by the English.

The eight day, we tooke nineteene pound, three ounces and a halfe.

The ninth day, we tooke two pound, sixe ounces, and a halfe.

The tenth day, three pound.

The 11. day, came to vs Ierome Bawder, the Viceadmirall of the French men, and his pinnesse, and he shewed vs, that where we left them, there was no good to be done, and said, he would goe to the Eastward, but we tolde him he should not: and thereupon commaunded him to goe to his companie, which he was appointed to be with, which he refused to doe, vntil we had shot three or foure peeces at their pinnesse, and when the ship saw that, she kept about, and ranne to seaward, & durst come no neerer to vs, so the pinnesse went after her. We tooke this day 1. pound, 5. ounces.

The French men diuided by the English.

The 12. day, there came one of the French mens pinnesse to vs, laden with cloth, and would haue made sale: but I would not suffer him, and therefore tooke him, and sent him aboord of our shippe, and caused him to ride there all day. We tooke fiue pound, sixe ounces, and a halfe.

The 13. day, we tooke in sande to balaste our shippe.

The 14. day, we tooke of some Negroes foure ounces of golde.

The 15. we ranne farther along the shoare.

The 16. we came to another towne.

The 17. day, I went a shoare, and vnderstoode that three of the Portingall ships were at the castle, and the other two at Shamma. The Captaine of this towne was gone to the principal towne, to speake with their King, and would returne shortly as they tolde me, and so he did, and brought me a weight and measure, and I sent a man to see that principall towne, and their King. The Portingall shippes rid so neere vs, that within three howres they might be with vs, yet we were all contented to tary for sales.

The 18. day, certaine of the Kings seruants came to vs, and we tooke one pound, two ounces, and one eight part of gold.

The 19. day, we tooke fiue pound, and one ounce.

The 20. day, one pound and foure ounces.

The 21. I tooke foure pound and one ounce, and the Negroes enquired for fine cloth, and I opened two peeces, which were not fine enough, as they said, but seeing that we had no other, they bought of them. At night I prouided a gift, or present, and sent one merchant, and a marriner with it to the King, to certifie him of our want of victuals, by reason whereof, we could not stay long: for in deede we searched our shippe, and the most part of our beere was leaked out of all our barrels.

The 22. day, we tooke three ounces and a halfe.

King Ebaane.

The 23. our men came from the King Ebaane, and tolde vs, that he had receiued them very friendly, but he had litle golde, but promised, if we would tary, to sende into all his countrey, for gold for vs, and he willed our men at their comming home, to speake to our king, to send men and prouision into his countrey, to build a Castle, and to bring Tailers with them, to make them apparell, and good wares, and they should be sure to sell them: but for that present, the Frenchmen had filled them full of cloth.

The offer of the king to the English.

This towne standeth about foure leagues vp in the land, and is, by the estimation of our men, as bigge in circuite as London, but the building is like to the rest of the countrey. They haue about this towne, great store of the wheate of the Countrey, and they iudge, that on one side of the towne, there were 1000. rikes of wheate, and another sort of corne, which is called mill, which is much vsed in Spaine. About this towne, they keepe good watch euery night, and haue to warne the watchmen certaine cords made fast ouer their waies, which leade into the towne, and certaine bels vpon them, so that if any man touch the cordes, the bels ring, and then the watchmen runne foorth of their watch houses, to see what they be: and if they be enemies, if they passe the cord, they haue prouision with certaine nets hanged ouer the waies, where they must passe, to let fall vpon them, and so take them, & otherwise then by the waies it is not possible to enter the towne, by reason of the thickets, and bushes, which are about the same, and the towne is also walled round about with long cords, and bound together with sedge, and certaine barkes of trees.

A towne in circuite as big as London.

A prettie deuise to deceyue the enemie.

When our men came to the towne, it was about fiue of the clocke in the morning, for there they

craued

trauell alwaies in the night, by reaſon of the heate of the day: and about nine of the clocke, the King ſent for them, for there may no man come to him, before he be ſent for, and then they would haue caried their preſent with them: but the Negroes told them, that they muſt be three times brought before him, before they might offer their gift: and when they came to him, he talked with them, and receiued them very friendly, and kept them about halfe an howre, and then they departed, and after that, ſent for them againe three times, and laſt of all, they brought him their preſent, which he receiued thankefully, and then cauſed a pot of wine of Palme to be brought forth, and made them drinke, and before they drinke, both here, and in all the Countrey, they vſe certaine ceremonies. The Kings friendly intertainment of our men.

First, they bring forth their pot of drinke, and then they make a hole in the ground, and put ſome of the drinke into it, and they caſt the earth vpon it, which they digged forth before, and then they ſet the pot vpon the ſame, then they take a litle thing made of a gourd, and with that they take out of the ſame drinke, and put it vpon the ground in three places, and in diuers places they haue certaine bunches of the pils of Palme trees, ſet in the ground before them, and there they put in ſome drinke, doing great reuerence in all places to the ſame Palme trees. Their ceremonies in drinking.

All theſe ceremonies firſt done, the King tooke a cup of golde, and they put him in wine, and he dranke of it, and when he dranke, the people cried all with one voice, Abaan, Abaan, with certaine other wordes, like as they cry commonly in Flanders, vpon the Twelfe night, the kinning drinkes: and when he had drunke, then they gaue drinke to euery one, and that done, the King licenſed them to depart, and euery one that departeth from him, boweth three times towards him, and waueth with both hands together, as they bowe, and then doe depart. The King hath commonly ſitting by him, eight or ten ancient men, with gray beards.

This day we tooke one pound and ten ounces of golde.

The 24. day, we tooke three pound and ſeuen ounces.

The 25. we tooke three ounces, and three quarters.

The 26. we tooke two pound and ten ounces.

The 27. two pound and fiue ounces.

The 28. foure pound, and then ſeeing that there was no more golde to be had, we waied, and went forth.

The firſt day of March, we came to a towne called Mowre, but we found no boates nor people there: but being ready to depart, there came two Almades to vs from another towne, of whome we tooke two ounces and a halfe of golde: and they tolde vs that the Negroes that dwelled at Mowre, were gone to dwell at Lagwaa. March. Mowre. Lagwaa.

The ſecond day, we came thwart of the Caſtle, and about two leagues off, and there ſawe all the fiue Portingall ſhippes at anker, and this day by night, we fetched Shamma. They returne.

The third day, we had ſight of one tall ſhippe, of about two hundreth tunne in the weather of vs, and within leſſe then two leagues of our ſhippes, and then we ſawe two more a sterne of her, the one a ſhippe of fiue hundreth or more, and the other a pinneſſe, and theſe were a newe fleete at that preſent arriued out of Portingall. Whereupon we waied, and made ſhift to double out of the land, and then the winde comming to the South ſouthweſt, the Hart going roome with them, fell three leagues to the leewards of vs. Theſe Portingals gaue vs the chaſe from nine of the clocke in the morning, till fiue at night, but did no good againſt vs. At laſt, we perceiuing the Admiral to be farre a sterne of his companie, becauſe his maine toppemaſt was ſpent, determined to caſte about with them againe, becauſe we were ſure to weather them, and the winde being as it was, it was our beſt courſe: but the Hart was ſo farre to the leeward, that we could not doe it, except we would looſe her companie, ſo that we tooke in ſome of our ſailes, and went roome with him: which when he perceiued, he loffed too, and was able to lie as neere as he did before. At night, when we came to him, he would not ſpeake to vs: then we aſked of his companie, why he went ſo roome, and they made excuſe that they were able to beare no ſaile by, for feare of bearing their fortoppmaſt ouer boord: but this was a ſimple excuſe.

The fourth day, being put from our watring place, we began to ſeeth our meate in ſalt water, and to rebate our allowance of drinke, to make it indure the longer: and ſo concluded to ſet our courſe thence, for our owne countrey.

The twelfe of March, I found my ſelfe thwart of Cape Dos palmas.

The 16. day, we fell with the land, which we iudged to be the Cape Miſerado, about which place, is very much high land. Cape Miſerado.

The 17. we lay South ſouthweſt, with a prettie gale.

The 18. day, we loſt ſight of the Hart, and I thinke the wilfull Maſter ranne in with the ſhoare

shoare of purpose to loose vs, being offended that I told him of his owne folly.

The 19. day, we bare a small saile, to tary for the Hart, but could not descry her.

Two smal Ilands by Sierra Leona. Note.

The 27. day, we fell in sight of two small Islands, which lye by our reckoning fiue leagues off the headlande of Sierra Leona: and before we came in sight of the same Islands, we made our reckoning to be foxtie or thirtie leagues at the least off them. Therefore all they that saile this way, are to regarde the currants, which sette North Northwest, or els they may be much deceiued.

Aprill.

The 14. of Aprill, we met with two great shippes of Portingall, which although they were in the weather of vs, yet came not roome with vs, whereby we iudged that they were bounde for Callicut.

The 18. day, we were in the heigth of Cape De Verde.

The 23. one of our companie, called Edmond Perkine, deceased.

The 24. we were directly vnder the Tropike of Cancer.

May.

The first day of May, Henrie Wilson our Steward died: and the next day died Iohn Vnderwood.

The fift day, we were in the height of S. Michael.

The 9. day, we met with two tall shippes, bound for New found lande, as we iudged, being Biskaines, but as it well fel out, we had the weather of them, so that they were able to doe nothing to vs.

The 20. day, we met with a shippe of 60. tunne, and we thought it had bene the Hart, but it was not, we iudged it to be an English shippe.

The 22. we met with the same shippe againe, but she was in the weather of vs, and so kept the wind still.

A French brauado.

The 23. we had sight of a shippe in the weather of vs, which was a Frenchman, of 90. tunne, who came with vs as stoutly and as desperately as might be, and comming neere vs, perceiued that we had bene vpon a long voyage, and iudging vs to be weake, as in deede we were, came neerer vs, and thought to haue laide vs aboord, and there kept vp some of his men in armour, and commaunded vs to strike saile: whereupon we sent them some of our stuffe, crosse barres, and chaine shot, and arrowes, so thicke, that it made the vpper worke of their shippe flee about their eares, and we spoiled with all his men, and toare his shippe miserably with our great ordinance, and then he beganne to fall a sterne of vs, and to packe on his sailes, and to get away: and we hearing that, gaue him foure or fiue good peeces more for his farewell, and thus we were rid of this Frenchman, who did vs no harme at all. We had aboord vs a Frenchman a Trumpetter, who being sicke, and lying in his bed, tooke his trumpet notwithstanding, and blewe, till he could blow no more, and so died.

The 26. we had sight of another saile, & we went roome to haue spoken with her, but could not.

The 28. we conferred together, and agreed to goe into Seuerne, and so to Bristol, but the same night we had sight of the Lizard, and by reason of the winde, we were not able to double the lands end, to goe into Seuerne, but were forced to beare in with the Lizard.

The 29. day, about nine of the clocke in the morning, we arriued safely in Plymmouth, and praised God for our good arriuall.

The third and last voyage of Maister William Towrson, to the *coast of Guinie, and the Castle de Mina, in the yeere,* 1557.

THe 30. day of January, the yeere aboue sayd, we departed out of the Sounde of Plymmouth, with three shippes, and a pinnesse, whereof the names were these:

1. The Minion, Admirall of the fleete.
2. The Chrystopher, Viceadmirall.
3. The Tyger.
4. A pinnesse, called the Vnicorne: being all bound for the Canaries, and from thence, by the grace of God, to the coast of Guinie.

It is to be vnderstood, that at this time, there was warre betwixt England and France.

The next day, being the last of this moneth, in the afternoone, we mette with two Hulkes of Dantzick, the one called the Rose, a shippe of 400. tunnes, and the other called the Vnicorne of 150. tunnes, the Master of the Rose was called Nicholas Masse, and the Master of the Vnicorne, Melchior White, both laden at Bourdeaux, and for the most part, with wines. When we came to them, we caused them to hoise foorth their boates, and to come, and speak with vs, and we examined euery one of them a part, what Frenchmens goods they had in their shippes, and they said, they

they had none: but by the contrarieties of their tales, and by the ſuſpition which wee gathered of their falſe charter parties, we perceiued that they had French mens goods in them: we therefore cauſed one of them to fetche vs his bils of lading, and becauſe hee denied that he had any, wee ſent certaine with him, who cauſed him to goe to the place where hee had hid them, and by the differences of his billes of lading, and his talke, we gathered as before, that they had Frenchmens goods. Whereupon wee examined them ſtraightly, and firſt the purſer of the Vnicorne which was the ſmaller ſhippe: he confeſſed that they had 32. tunnes and a hogſhead of a Frenchmans. Then we examined the Maſter in like caſe, and he acknowledged the ſame to be true. Then wee examined alſo the Maſter of the great ſhippe, and he confeſſed that hee had 128. tunnes of the ſame Frenchmans, and more they would not confeſſe, but ſaide that all the reſt was laden by one Peter Lewgues of Hamburge, to bee deliuered to one Henry Summer of Camphire, notwithſtanding all their letters were directed to Hamburge, and written in Dutch without, and within in French.

When they had confeſſed that they had thus much French mens goods within their ſhippes, we conferred together what was beſt to be done with them. William Cretton and Edward Selman were of the opinion, that it ſhould bee good either to carie them into Spaine, and there to make ſale of the goods, or els into Ireland, or to returne backe againe into Englande with them if the winde would permit it. But I, waying what charge we had of our Maſters, firſt by mouth, and afterwards by writing, that for no ſuch matter wee ſhoulde in any caſe prolong the time, for feare of looſing the voyage, and conſidering that the time of the peere was very farre ſpent, and the money that wee ſhould make of the wines not very much, in reſpect of the commoditie which wee hoped for by the voyage, perſwaded them that to goe into Ireland the winde being Eaſterly as it was, might be an occaſion that wee ſhould be locked in there with that winde, and ſo looſe our voyage, and to carie them into Spaine (ſeeing they ſailed ſo ill that hauing all their ſailes abroade, we kept them companie onely with our foreſailes, and without any toppe ſailes abroade, ſo that in euery two dayes ſayling, they would haue hindered vs more then one, and beſides that the winde being Eaſterly) we ſhould not be able to leaze the coaſt with them: beſides all this the loſſe of time when we came thither was to be conſidered, wherupon I thought it not good to carie them any further.

And as for carying them into England, although the winde had bene good as ... as not, conſidering what charge we had of our Maſters, to ſhift vs out of the way for feare of ... by reaſon of the warres, I held it not in any wiſe conuenient.

But notwithſtanding al this, certaine of our companie not being herewith ſatiſfied, went to our Maſter to know his opinion therein, who made them a plaine anſwere, that to carry them into any place, it was not the beſt way nor the profite of their Maſters. And he tolde them further, that if the time were prolonged one moneth longer before they paſſed the Cape, but a fewe men would goe the voyage. All theſe things conſidered, we all pauſed, and determined at the laſt, that euery man ſhould take out of the hulks ſo much as he could wel beſtow for neceſſaries, and the next morning to conclude what ſhould be further done with them. So we tooke out of them for vs 14. tunnes and a halfe of wine, and one tunne we put into the pinneſſe.

The Frenchmens goods ſeazed, in the time of the warre vpon the loſſe of Calis.

More we tooke out one hogſhead of Aquauitæ.

Sixe cakes of roſſen.

A ſmall haller for tyes: and certaine cheſſenuts.

The Chriſtopher tooke out,

Ten tunnes of wine, and one hogſhead.

A quantitie of Aquauitæ.

Shall lines.

Cheſſenuts.

Sixe double baſes with their chambers. And their men broke vp the hulks cheſtes, and tooke out their Compaſſes, and running glaſſes, the ſounding leade and line, and candles: and caſt ſome of their beefe ouer boord, and ſpoiled them ſo much, that of very pitie we gaue them a Compaſſe, a running glaſſe, a lead and a line, certaine bread and candles, and what apparell of theirs we could finde in their ſhip, we gaue them againe, and ſome money alſo of that which William Crompton tooke for the ranſome of a poore Frenchman, who being their Pilot downe the Riuer of Bourdeux, they were not able to ſet him aſhoare againe by reaſon of the foule weather.

The Tyger alſo tooke out of the ſmaller hulke, 6. or 7. tunnes of wine, one hogſhead of Aquauitæ; and certaine roſſen, and two Baſes he tooke out of the great hulke.

The 1. day of Febuarie in the morning, we all came together againe ſauing W. Crompton, who ſent vs word that he was contented to agree to that order which we ſhould take. *Febuarie.*

Now Edward Selman was of this opinion, that it was not best to let the ships depart, but put men into them to carrie them into England, which thing neither wee nor our Master would agree vnto, because we thought it not good to vnman our ships going outward, considering how dangerous the time was: so that in fine we agreed to let them depart, and giue them the rest of the wine which they had in their ships of the Frenchmens for the fraight of that which we had taken, and for their ordinance, rossen, Aquauitæ, chessenuts, and other things which the company had taken from them. So we receiued a bil of their hands, that they confessed how much Frenchmens goods they had, and then we let them depart.

The 3. day in the morning we found a great leake in the sternme of our ship, and in one houre pumped 400. strokes, and besides we found that our boltsprete and foremaste were both sprung, that wee coulde not well beare any sailes vpon them, and finding our selues to be 24. leagues or thereabout North from Cape finister, wee bare with the Tyger and shewed the Master that wee would runne South to runne vnder the Cape to stoppe our leake, and fish our masts, which Richard Packman agreed vnto: then we bare with the Christopher, and shewed them therof in like case, but the Master answered nothing thereto. Yet thinking that hee knowing our necessitie would haue followed vs, we ranne South to haue the Cape aboorde, and so did the Tyger, but the Christopher kept her course South and by West, and would not come neere vs, so that in the afternoone we were forced to goe roome with him againe, and refuse the going with the Cape, putting both our mast and ship in great danger, which with the helpe of the carpenters in 3. houres in smooth water might haue bene mended.

The 4. day in the morning the Tyger sprong the woolings of her boltsprete, and so was forced to take in her topsailes and mainesaile, and with her foresaile lay to the Westwarde to mende the same againe, and we followed her, but the Christopher did not.

The 5. day we reckoned our selues to be in the height of Cape S. Vincent.

The 7. day we met with the winde at South with gusts of raine, lightning, and thunder, and so continued all night following the winde, sometimes South, and sometimes Southsouth west: but alwayes as soone as the gusts were done, the winde came againe to the Northeast. This night we were in the height of Porto Sancto.

The 10. day we reckoned our selues to be 25. leagues from the Grand Canarie, and this day about 9. of the clocke our pinnesse brake her rudder, so that we were forced to towe her at the sterne of the Minion, which we were able to doe, and yet kept company with the rest of our ships. About 11. of the clocke this day we had sight of the Grand Canarie.

The 11. day when we came to the Iland we perceiued that it was the Ile of Tenerif, and then in deede we had sight of the Grand Canarie, which lieth 12. leagues to the Eastwards of Tenerif: and because the road of Tenerif is foule ground, and nothing was there to be gotten for the helping of our pinnesse, hauing the winde large, we agreed to goe with the Grand Canarie.

The 12. day we came into the roade of the towne of Canarie, which lyeth one league from the same towne. And after we had shot off diuers pieces of ordinance to salute the towne and the castle, the gouernour and captaines of the Iland sent to vs which were the captaines of the shippes, requiring vs to come a shoare. And when we came to them they receiued vs very friendly, offering vs their owne Iennets to ride to the towne, and what other friendship they could shew vs: and we went to the towne with two English Marchants which lay there, and remained in their house that day. The second day following we came aboorde to deliuer our marchandise, and to get our pinnesse mended.

Two English Marchants Ligers in the Grand Canarie.

The 14. day came into the roade the Spanish fleete which was bounde to the Emperours Indies, which were in nomber nineteene saile, whereof 6. were shippes of 400. and 500. a piece, the rest were of 200. 150. and of 100. When they were come to an ancre they saluted vs with ordinance, and so wee did them in like case. And afterwards the Admirall (who was a knight) sent his pinnesse to desire me to come to him, and when I came to him hee receiued mee friendly, and was desirous to heare somewhat of the state of England and Flanders. And after he had made me a banquet I departed, and I being gone vnto the boate, hee caused one of his gentlemen to desire Francisco the Portingale which was my interpreter, to require mee to furle my flagge, declaring that he was Generall of the Emperours fleete. Which thing (being come aboord) Francisco shewed me: and because I refused to furle it, but kept it footh still, certaine of the souldiers in the shippes, shotte diuers harquebush shotte about the shippe, and ouer the flagge: and at the same time there came certaine gentlemen aboorde our shippe to see her: to whome I said, that if they would not cause those their men to leaue shooting, I would shoote the best ordinance I had through their sides. And when they perceiued that I was offended they departed, and caused their men of warre

The Spanish West Indian fleete of 19. saile.

and

and ſouldiers to ſhoote no more, and afterwards they came to mee againe, and tolde me that they had puniſhed their men. That done, I ſhewed them the ſhippe and made them ſuch cheere as I coulde, which they receiued very thankfully: and the day following they ſent for mee to dine with them, and ſent me word that their General was very ſorie that any man ſhould require me to ſtrike my flagge, and that it was without his conſent: and therefore hee requeſted mee not to thinke any vngentilenes to be in him, promiſing that no man of his ſhould miſdemeane himſelfe.

The 17. day we ſet ſaile in the roade of Grand Canarie, and proceeded on our voyage.

The 20. in the morning we had ſight of the coaſt of Barbarie, and running along the ſhoare we had ſight of the riuer del Oro, which lieth almoſt vnder the tropike of Cancer. *Riuer del Oro.*

The 21. day we found our ſelues to be in 20. degrees and a halfe, which is the height of Cape Blanke. The 25. we had ſight of the land in the bay to the Northward of Cape Verde.

The 26. I tooke Franciſco and Francis Caſtelin with mee, and went into the pinneſſe, and ſo went to the Tiger which was neerer the ſhoare then the other ſhips, and went aboord her, and with her and the other ſhippes we ranne Weſt and by South, and Weſt Southweſt, vntill about 4. of the clocke, at which time we were hard aboorde the Cape, and then we ranne in Southweſt, and beyond the Cape about 4. leagues we found a faire Iſland, and beſides that 2. or 3. Iſlands, which were of very high rocks, being full of diuers ſorts of ſea foule, and of pigeons, with other ſorts of land foules, and ſo many, that the whole Iſland was couered with the dunge thereof, and ſeemed ſo white as if the whole Iſland had bene of chalke, and within thoſe Iſlands was a very faire bay, and hard aboord the rocks 18. fadom water, and faire ground. And when we perceiued the baye, and vnderſtanding that the Frenchmen had a great trade there, which we were deſirous to know, wee came to an ancre with the Tyger. And after that the Minion and the Chriſtopher ancred in like caſe: then we cauſed the pinneſſe to runne beyonde another Cape of land, to ſee if there were any place to trade in there. *Frances Caſtelme.* *4. Iſlands.* *A great trade of the Frenchmen at Cape Verde.*

It being neere night I tooke our cocke and the Tygers ſkiffe, and went to the Iſland, where we got certaine foules like vnto Gannards: and then I came aboorde againe and tooke two of the Gannards which we had taken, and caried them to the Captaine of the Chriſtopher, and when I had talked with him, I founde him not willing to tarie there, neither was I deſirous to ſpend any long time there, but onely to attempt what was to be done. The Maſter of the Chriſtopher tolde me he would not tarie, being not bound for that place.

The 27. the Captaine of the Tyger and Edwarde Selman came to me, and Iohn Makeworth from the Chriſtopher, and then we agreed to take the pinneſſe, & to come along the ſhoare, becauſe that where we ridde no Negroes came to vs, and the night before our pinneſſe brought vs worde, that there was a very faire Iſland. And when I came beyond the point I found it ſo, and withal a goodly Bay, and we ſawe vpon the maine certaine Negroes which waued vs on ſhoare, and then we came to an ancre with the pinneſſe, & went a ſhoare with our cocke, and they ſhewed vs where their trade was, and that they had Elephants teeth, muſke, and hides, and offered vs to fetch downe their captaine, if we would ſend a man with them, and they would leaue a pledge for him: then we aſked them when any ſhippe had bene there, and ſome of them ſaid not in 8. moneths, others, in 6. moneths, and others in 4. and that they were Frenchmen. *A faire Iſland where the French trade.* *Elephants teeth, muſke, and hides.*

Then we perceiuing the Chriſtopher not willing to tarie, departed from them, & ſet ſaile with the pinneſſe & went aboord the Tyger. And I vnderſtoode of ſome contention betwixt the Maſter of the Minion, and the captaine of the Chriſtopner not worth the reporting.

The 10. day of March we fell with the coaſt of Guinea, 5. leagues to the Eaſtward of Cape de Monte, beſide a riuer called Rio de palmas. *March.*

The 11. we went to the ſhoare, & found one man that could ſpeake ſome Porteguiſe, who told vs that there were 3. French ſhips paſſed by: one of them 2. moneths paſt, & the other 1. moneth paſt. At this place I receiued 19. Elephants teeth, and 2. ounces and halfe a quarter of gold.

The 12. we ſet ſaile to goe to the riuer de Seſtos. *The Riuer de Seſtos.*

The 13. at night we fell with the ſame riuer.

The 14. day we ſent in our boates to take water, and tomaged our ſhippes, and deliuered ſuch wares to the Chriſtopher and Tyger, as they had neede of.

The 15. we came together, and agreed to ſend the Tyger to another riuer to take in her water, and to ſee what ſhe could do for graines. After that we tooke marchandize with vs, and went into the riuer, and there we found a Negro which was borne in Lisbone, left there by a ſhip of Portingale which was burned the laſt yeere at this riuer in fighting with 3. Frenchmen: and hee tolde vs further, that two moneths paſt there were 3. Frenchmen at this place, and 6. weekes paſt there were two French ſhippes at the riuer, and 15. dayes paſt there was one. All which ſhippes were

gone towards the Mine. This day we tooke but fewe graines.

The 19. day considering that the Frenchmen were gone before vs, and that by reason of the vnwholsome ayres of this place 14. of our men in the Minion were fallen sicke, wee determined to depart, and with all speede to goe to the Mina.

The 21. wee came to the riuer de Potos, where some of our boates went in for water, and I went in with our cocke, and tooke 12. small Elephants teeth.

The 23. day, after wee had taken as many teeth as we could get, about 9. of the clocke wee set saile to goe towards the Mina.

The 27. day being by my reckoning 20. leagues from the Cape Trespoints, our pinnesse broke one of the gudgions of her rudder, so that we were forced to tow her. This day also we called the Botelwaine before vs, and layd to his charge certaine matters, wherein he had misdemeaned himselfe: but vpon his submission & intreatie of pardon, and promise of better behauiour, we (desirous of peace and quietnes) forgaue him.

The 28. we mended our pinnesses rudder.

The 29. we ranne along the coast.

The 31. we came to Hanta, and made sale of certaine Manillios.

Aprill 1558. The first of April we had sight of fiue saile of Portingals, whereupon we set saile and went off to sea to get the winde of them, which wee shoulde haue had if the winde had kept his ordinary course, which is all the day at the Southwest, and West Southwest: but this day with a flawe it kept all the day at the East, and East Southeast, so that the Portingals had the winde of vs, and came roome with the Tyger and vs vntill night, and brought themselues all saue one, which sailed not so well as the rest, within shotte of vs: then it fell calme, and the winde came vp to the South west, howbeit it was neere night, and the Christopher by meanes of her boate, was about foure leagues to the leewards of vs. We tacked and ranne into the weather of the Admirall, and three more of his companie, and when we were neere him, we spake to him, but he would not answere: then we cast about and lay in the weather of him; and casting about hee shotte at vs, and then we shot at him, and shotte him foure or fiue times through. They shot diuers times through our sailes, but hurt no man. The Tyger and the pinnesse because it was night, kept out their sailes and would not meddle with them: after wee had thus fought together two houres or more, and would not lay him aboorde because it was night, we left shooting one at the other, and kept still the weather of them. Then the Tiger and the pinnesse kept about and came to vs, and afterwards being neere the shoare, we 3. kept about and lay to the sea, and shotte off a piece to giue warning to the Christopher.

They discrie fiue saile of the Portingals.

The fight.

This night about twelue of the clocke being very little winde, and the Master of the Tiger a sleepe, by the euill worke of his men the shippe fell aboorde of vs, and with her sheare hookes ouer our maine saile, and her boate being betwixt vs was broken and sunke, with certaine Marchandise in her, and the shippes wailes were broken with her outleger: yet in the ende we cleared her without any more hurt, but she was in hazard to be broken downe to the water.

The second day we had sight of the Christopher, and were neere vnto her, so that I tooke our boate and went to her. And when I came thither, they shewed mee, that after the Portingals had left vs, they went all roome with him, and about twelue a clocke at night mette him, and shot at him, and hee at them, and they shotte him though the sailes in diuers places, and did no other great hurt. And when wee had vnderstoode that they had bene with him as well as with vs, we agreed altogether to seeke them (if wee might finde them,) and keepe a weather our places of trafique.

The 3. we ranne all day to the Southwest wards to seeke the Portingals, but coulde haue no sight of them, and halled into the shoare.

The fourth day when we had sight of land, we found that the currant had set vs thirtie leagues to the Eastwards of our reckoning, which we wondered at: for the first lande wee made, was Lagua. Then I caused our boate to be manned, and the Christophers also, and went to the shoare and tooke our Negro with vs. And on shoare wee learned that there were foure French shippes vpon the coast; one at Perinnen, which is sixe leagues to the Westwarde of Lagua: another at Weamba, which is foure leagues to the Eastward of Lagua: a third at Perecow, which is foure leagues to the Eastward of Weamba: and the fourth at Egrand, which is foure leagues to the Eastward of Perecow.

Lagua. Perinnen. Weamba, Perecow. Egrand.

When we had intelligence of these newes, we agreed to goe to ꝑ Eastwards with the Frenchmen to put them from their trafique, and shotte off two or three pieces in our boates to cause the shippes to way: and hauing bene about one houre vnder saile, we had sight of one of the French men

men vnderſaile, halling off from Weamba to whome wee gaue chaſe, and agreed in the night for feare of ouerſhooting them, that the Minion ſhould firſt come to ancre, & after that about 3. houres, the Tyger and the Chriſtopher to beare along all night.

The 5. day we found 3. of the French ſhips at ancre: one called La foye de Honfleur, a ſhippe of 220. tunnes, another called the Ventereuſe or ſmal Roebarge of Honfleur, of 100. tunnes, both appertayning to Shawdet of Honfleur, the 3. was called the Mulet de Batville a ſhippe of 120. tunnes, and this ſhippe belonged to certaine Marchants of Roan.

When we came to them we determined to lay the Admiral aboorde, the Chriſtopher the Vice-admiral, and the Tyger the ſmalleſt: but when we came neere them they wayed, and the Chriſtopher being the headmoſt & the weathermoſt man, went roome with the Admirall: the Roeberge went ſo faſt that we coulde not fetche her. The firſt that wee came to was the Mulet, and her wee layd aboorde and entred our men, and tooke her, which ſhippe was the richeſt except the Admirall. For the Admirall had taken about 80. li. of gold, and the Roeberge had taken but 22. pound, and all this we learned of the Frenchmen, who knewe it very well: for they were all in conſort together and had bene vpon the coaſt of Mina 2. moneths and odde dayes: howbeit the Roeberge had bene there before them with another ſhip of Diepe, and a Caruell which had beaten all the coaſt, and was departed one moneth before our arriuing there, & they 3. had taken about 700. li. of gold. The English boorde the Frenchmen.

As ſoone as we had layd the ſhip aboorde, and left certaine men in her to keepe her, we ſet ſaile and gaue chaſe to the other 2. ſhips, & chaſed them al day and night, & the next day vntil 3. a clocke in the afternoone, but we could not fetch them: and therefore ſeeing that we brought our ſelues very farre to leeward of our place, we left the chace, & kept about againe to goe with the ſhoare.

The 7. day I ſent for the captaine, marchants & maſters of the other ſhips, and when they came we wayed the gold which we had from the Frenchmen, which waped 50. li. and 5. ounces of gold, this done we agreed to put men out of euery ſhip into the priſe to keepe her. 50. pound of golde taken in the French priſe.

The 12. day we came to the further place of the Mine called Egrand, and being come to an ancre diſcharged all the marchants goods out of the priſe, and would haue ſold the ſhip with the victuals to the Frenchmen, but becauſe ſhe was leake they would not take her, but deſired vs to ſaue their liues in taking them into our owne ſhips: then we agreed to take out the victuals and ſinke the ſhippe, and deuide the men among our ſhips.

The 14. at night wee made an ende of diſcharging the priſe, and deuided all the Frenchmen except 4. which were ſicke and not able to helpe themſelues, which 4. both the Chriſtopher and the Tyger refuſed to take, leauing them in their ſhip alone in the night, ſo that about midnight I was forced to fetch them into our ſhip.

The 15. of April, mouing our companie for the voyage of Binnie, the moſt part of them all refuſed it. The 16. ſeeing the vnwillingnes of the companie to goe thither, we determined to ſpend as much time vpon the coaſt as we could, to the end we might make our voyage, & agreed to leaue the Minion here at Egrand, the Tyger to go to Pericow which is 4. leagues off, & the Chriſtopher to goe to Weamba, which is 10. leagues to the wetherward of this place: and if any of them both ſhould haue ſight of more ſailes then they thought good to meddle withall, to come roome to their felowes, to wit, firſt the Chriſtopher to come with the Tyger, and then both they to come with vs. Binnie.

We remained in this place called Egrand vntil the laſt day of April, in which time many of our men fel ſicke, and 6. of them died. And here we could haue no trafique with the Negroes but 3. or 4. dayes in the weeke, and all the reſt of the weeke they would not come at vs. We here loſt one ancre and broke a cable, and in the waying of another ancre ſome of our men were hurt. Our men die of ſickenes.

The 3. of May not hauing the pinneſſe ſent vs with cloth from the other ſhips as they promiſed, we ſold French cloth, and gaue but 3. yards thereof to euery fuſſe. May.

The 5. day the Negroes departed, and tolde vs they would come to vs againe within 4. dayes, which we determined there to tarie, although we had diuers of our men ſicke.

The 8. day al our cloth in the Minion being ſold, I called the company together, to know whether they would tarie the ſale of the cloth taken in the priſe at this place or no: they anſwered, that in reſpect of the death of ſome of their men, and the preſent ſicknes of 20. more, they would not tarry, but repaire to the other ſhips, of whome they had heard nothing ſince the 27. of April: and yet they had our pinneſſe with them, onely to carry newes from one to another. Sickneſſe.

The 9. day we determined to depart heuce to our felowes, to ſee what they had done, and to attempt what was to be done at the towne of Don Iohn.

The 10. day in the morning we ſet ſaile to ſeeke the Chriſtopher and the Tyger.

The 11. day the captaine of the Chriſtopher came to vs, and told vs that they could finde ſmall doings at the places where they had bene.

The 12. William Crompton and I in our small pinnesse went to the Tyger and the Christopher at Perenine.

The 13. we sent away the Tyger to Egrande, because we founde nothing to doe at Perenine, worth the tarying for.

The 14. our great pinnesse came to vs, and presently we put cloth into her, and sent her backe to Weamba where she had bene before, and had taken there 10. li. of golde.

The 15. the Minion came to vs, and the next day we went a shoare with our boates, and tooke but one ounce of golde.

Mowre. The 19. day hauing set saile we came to an ancre before Mowre, and there we taried 2. dayes, but tooke not an ounce of golde.

The 21. we came to an ancre before Don Iohns towne.

The 22. we manned our boats and went to shoare, but the Negroes would not come at vs: then the Captaine of the Christopher and I, tooke a Skiffe and 8. men with vs, and went and talked with the Negroes, and they said that they would send a man to the great towne, where Don Iohn himselfe laye, to aduertise him of our comming.

The great towne of Don Iohn.

The 23. we went a shoare againe, & the Negroes told vs that this day the marchants of Don Iohn would come downe: so we taried there vntill night, and no man would come to vs: but diuers of the Negroes made vs signes to depart.

The 24. the captaine of the Christopher tooke his boate & went to Mowre, and when he came thither certaine Negroes came to him to know the price of his wares, but in the end there came an Almade, which he iudged came from the castle, & caused all the Negroes to depart from him: and when he saw they would come no more to him, he went a shoare and tooke certaine men with him, and then the Negroes cast stones at them, & would not suffer them to come vp to their towne. And when they saw that, they tooke certaine of their Almades, & put them to the sea, & afterwards departed. The same morning I went a shoare at Don Iohns towne & tooke a white flag with me, but none of the Negroes coulde come to me, which caused vs to iudge that the Portingals were in the towne. After this our boate came to vs well manned, and I sent one man vp to the towne with a white flagge in his hand, but when he was come thither all the Negroes went away and would not speake with him. Then I sent one alone into the woods after them, but they in no case would come to vs. When we saw that, we tooke 12. goates and 14. hennes, which we found in the towne, and went aboord without doing any further hurt to the towne: and when I came aboord, I found our pinnesse come frō Cormatin, which had taken there 2. li. 5. ounces of gold. Then after much a doe with the froward Mariners, we went thitherwards with our ship, & the Christopher went to Mowre. The 25. day the Master of the Christopher sent his boate to the shoare for balaste, and the Negroes would haue beaten the companie from the shoare, whereupon the companie resisted them, and slewe and hurt diuers of them, and hauing put them to flight, burned their towne and brake all their boates. The 26. day our pinnesse came to vs from Cormatin, and had taken 2. li. 11. ounces of gold: and Iohn Shirife told vs that the Negroes of that place were very desirous to haue a ship come backe againe to their towne. The 27. we wayed and went to Cormatin.

Cormatin.

A fight with the Negroes.

The 28. the Christopher came to vs from Mowre, and tarried there two dayes.

June. The second day of June the Tiger came to vs from Egrande, and the pinnesse from Weamba, and they two had taken about 50. li. of golde since they departed from vs.

The 4. day we departed from Cormatin to ply vp to Shamma, being not able to tarrie any longer vpon the coast for lacke of victuals, and specially of drinke.

The 7. day we had sight of 5. of the king of Portingals ships, which came to an ancre beside the Castle.

The 8. day George and Binny came to vs, and brought with them about 2. li. of golde. This night the Christopher and the pinnesse came vp to vs, which had bene 3. dayes a sterne of vs, and the Master of the pinnesse tolde vs their extremitie for want of victuall, and therefore they desired to be taken out of the pinnesse, but we intreated them to goe to the pinnesse againe, and gaue them beere, bread, porke and stockfish to victual them vntill such time as we came to Shamma, that we might send her away with some of our Frenchmen.

The 10. day in the morning I tooke our small pinnesse, and the Captaine of the Christopher with me, and manned her well and went to the castle to viewe the Portingals ships, and there we found one ship of about 300. tunne, and 4. caruels: when we had well viewed them, we returned backe againe to our ships which we found 7. leagues at sea.

The 11. day in the morning we found our selues wel shot toward Shamma, and the Tiger with vs, but the Minion & the pinnesse had not wayed that night, so that we were out of sight of them

and

and hauing brought our ſelues in the wether of the Portingals ſhips, we came to an anker to tarie for the Minion, or els we might haue ketched Shamma. At night the Minion, and the pinneſſe came vp to vs, but could not fetch ſo farre to the weatherward as we, and therefore they ankered about a league a wether the caſtle, and we waied in the Chriſtopher, and went roome with her.

The 12. day the Tyger came roome with vs, and she and the Chriſtopher finding themſelues to ſtand in great need of victuals, would haue gone with the Portingals ſhippes to haue fetched ſome of them forth: but our maiſter and companie would in no caſe conſent to goe with them, for feare of hanging when we came home: and the other two ſhips being fully minded to haue gone, and fearing that their owne company would accuſe them, durſt not goe to them.

After this, by reaſon of the want of victuals in the pinneſſe, which could receiue no victuals from the other ſhips, but from vs onely, we tooke out all our men, and put 12. French men into her, and gaue them victuals to bring them to Shamma.

The 19. day the Tiger and Minion arriued at Shamma, and the Chriſtopher within two leagues off them, but could not fetch the winde by reaſon of the ſcantneſſe of the winde, which hath bene ſo ſcant, that in fifteene dayes we haue plied to the windewards but twelue leagues, which before we did in one day and a night. Note.

The 20. day I tooke our pinneſſe, and went to the towne of Shamma to ſpeake with the captaine, and he tolde me that there was no golde there to be had, nor ſo much as a hen to be bought, and all by reaſon of the accord which he had made with the Portingals, and I ſeeing that, departed peaceably from him.

The 21. I put ſuch things as we had into our ſmall pinneſſe, and tooke one merchant of our ſhip, and another of the Tyger, and ſent her to Hanta, to attempt, if ſhe could doe any thing there: that night they could do nothing but were promiſed to haue ſome golde the next day.

The next day (which was the 22.) being come, we ſent our pinneſſe to Hanta againe, but there neither the captaine nor the Negroes durſt traffike with vs, but intiſed vs from place to place, and all to no purpoſe.

This day we put away our pinneſſe, with fiue and twentie Frenchmen in her, and gaue them for their victuals, They put the French men with victuals into the pinneſſe.

2. Quiefats of bread.
2. Tunne of beere and ſyder.
1. Hogſhead of wine.
15. Hogſheads of water.
1. Hogſhead of beefe.
2. Firkins of butter.
75. Stockefiſh.
1. Barrell of hony.

Of theſe 25. men, we ſet 15. at their raunſome, which 15. were taken in the Mulet: the others, ſome came to vs in a pinneſſe, and ſome from the ſhoare, and therefore we put them at no raunſome.

The pinneſſe with two baſes, and all her apparell, we ſet at fortie crownes. The names of the Frenchmen, which we put in her, were theſe, being all of them raunſomed.

Out of the Chriſtopher, we ſet theſe men.

Peter Huguille, of Battuille.
Robert Hauerte, of Roan.
Stephen Bennet, of Honfleur.
Michael Haguille, of Batuille.
Iohn Chapon, of Battuile.
Legier le Feuer, of Honfleur.
Barnardine Adam, of Blankuiſte.

Out of the Tyger, theſe.

Ricard de Mont, of Roan.
Peter Nefew, of Honfleur.

Out of the Minion, theſe.

Oliuer Bowchet, of Honfleur.
Thomas D'Orleance, of Honfleur.
Hubert Colyn, of Battuille.
Michael Vacree, of Honfleur.
Martyn le Buc, of Honfleur.

Martyn

Martyn Osseraye. All which were equally ransomed for sixe crownes a peece.

The 23. of June, our pinnesse came to vs from Hanta, and told vs, that the Negroes had dealt very ill with them, and would not traffike with them to any purpose.

Shamma burnt by the English.

The 24. we tooke our boate, and pinnesse, and manned them well, and went to the towne of Shamma, and because the Captaine thereof was become subiect to the Portingals, we burned the towne, and our men seeking the spoile of such trifles as were there, found a Portingals chest, wherein was some of his apparell, and his weights, and one letter sent to him from the Castle, whereby we gathered, that the Portingall had bene there of a long time.

Then returne homeward.

The 25. day, about three of the clocke at afternoone, we set saile, and put into the sea, for our returne to England.

The last day of this moneth, wee fell with the shoare againe, and made our reckoning to be eighteene leagues to the weatherward of the place where we set off. When we came to make the land, we found our selues to be eighteene leagues to the leeward of the place, where we set off, which came to passe, by reason of the extreame currant that runneth to the Eastward: when we perceiued our selues so abused, we agreed to cast about againe, and to lye as neere the winde as we could, to fetch the line.

The currant.

July.

S. Thomas Iland.

The seuenth of July, we had sight of the Isle of S. Thomas, and thought to haue sought the roade, to haue ankered there: but the next morning the winde came about, and wee kept our course.

The ninth, the winde varying, we kept about againe, and fell with the Iland of S. Thomas, and seeking the roade, were becalmed neere the Iland, and with the currant were put neere the shoare, but could haue noe ground to anker: so that we were forced to hoise out our pinnesse, and the other shippes their skiffes to towe from the Iland, which did little good, but in the ende the winde put vs three leagues off the shoare.

The tenth day, the Christopher, and the Tyger, cast about, whereby we iudged them to haue agreed together, to goe seeke some shippes in the roade, and to leaue vs: our men were not willing to goe after them, for feare of running in with the Iland againe, and of putting our selues into the same danger that we were in the night before: but we shot off a peece, and put out two lights, and they answered vs with lights againe: whereupon we kept our course, & thought that they had followed vs, but in the morning we could not see them, so that they left vs willingly, and we determined to follow them no more.

But the 11. day, we altered our opinion, and course, and consented to cast about againe for the Iland to seeke our shippes, and about foure of the clocke in the afternoone, we met with them.

Our men vnder the line.

The 13. we fell againe with the Iland of S. Thomas, and the same night we found our selues directly vnder the line.

This Iland is a very high Iland, and being vpon the west side of it, you shall see a very high picke, which is very small, and streight, as it were the steeple of a Church, which picke lieth directly vnder the line, and at the same South ende of the Iland, to the westward thereof, lieth a small Iland, about a mile from the great Iland.

August.

The third of August, we departed from the Isle of S. Thomas, and met the winde at the south west.

The sixt day, we found our selues in eight degrees.

The 12. day, we were in the height of Cape Verde.

The Iland of Salt.

The 22. day, we fell with one of the Isles of Cape Verde, called the Isle of Salt, and being informed by a Scottish man, that we tooke among the French men vpon the coast, that there were fresh victuals to be had, we came to an anker there.

The 23. day, in the morning, we manned our skiffe, and went a shoare, and found no houses, but we sawe foure men, which kept themselues alwaies farre from vs, as for cattell, we could finde none, but great store of goates, and they were so wild, that we could not take aboue three or foure of them: but there we had good store of fishe, and vpon a small Iland, which lay by the same, we had great store of sea birds.

At night, the Christopher brake her cable, and lost an anker, so that she could tary no longer, so we all waied, and set saile. Vpon the same Iland, we left the Scottish man, which was the occasion of our going aland at that place, but how he was left, we could not tell: but as we iudged, the people of the Iland found him sleeping, and so caried him away: for at night I went my selfe to the Iland to seeke him, but could heare nothing of him.

The 24. day, the Master of the Tyger came aboord vs, & told vs that his men were so weake, and the shippe so leake, that he was not able to keepe her aboue the water, and therefore requested vs

vs to goe backe againe to the Iſland, that we might diſcharge her, and giue her vp: but we intreated him to take paine with her a while, and we put a French Carpenter into her, to ſee if he could finde the leake. This day we tooke a view of all our men, both thoſe that were whole, and the ſicke alſo, and we found that in all the three ſhippes, were not aboue thirtie ſound men.

The great inconuenience by late ſtaying vpon the coaſt of Guinie.

The 25. we had ſight of the Iſle of S. Nicholas, and the day following, of the other Iſles, S. Lucia, S. Vincent, and S. Anthony, which foure Iſles lye the one from the other, Northweſt, and by Weſt, Southeaſt, and by Eaſt.

The 26. we came againe with the Iſland of S. Anthony, and could not double the Cape. This day, Philip Iones, the Maſter of the Chriſtopher, came aboord vs, who had bene aboord the Tyger, and tolde vs that they were not able to keepe the Tyger, becauſe ſhe was leake, and the Maſter very weake, and ſaid further, he had agreed with the Maſter and the company, that if the next day we could double the Iſland, we ſhould runne to the leeward of it, and there diſcharge her: but if we could not double it, then to put in betwixt the Iſland of S. Vincent, and S. Anthonie, to ſee if we could diſcharge her.

The 27. ſeeing we could not double the Iſland, we put in betweene the foreſaid Iſlands, and went through them, but found no roade, and therefore taried for our fellowes, and by and by it fell calme, ſo that we were in hazard to fall aboord one of another, but God ſent vs a ſmall gale of wind, and we went before them, and left them a sterne.

The 28. we were out of ſight of our company: but we kept about, and ſaw them againe, for they were becalmed vnder the Iland all night.

The third day of September, I went aboord the Tyger, with the Maſter, and merchants with me, to view the ſhippe, and men: and we found the ſhippe very leake, and onely ſix labouring men in her, whereof one was the Maſter Gunner: ſo that we ſeeing that they were not able to keepe the ſhippe, agreed to take in the men, and of the goods what we could ſaue, and then to put the ſhip away. September.

The fift day, we went to diſcharge the Tyger.

The eight day, hauing taken out the artillerie, goods, victuals, and gold of the Tyger, we gaue her vp, 25. degrees by North the line. The Tyger giuen vp.

The 27. we had ſight of two of the Iſles of the Azores, S. Marie, and S. Michael.

The 28. day, running along by S. Michael, we had ſight of diuers ſmall caruels, but we could ſpeake with none of them. In the night, about twelue of the clocke, we ſaw a ſhippe, but ſhe would not come roome with vs.

The third day of October, we had ſight of another ſaile, and bare roome with her, to haue knowen ſome newes of England: but the weakenes of our ſhippe, and men, cauſed vs to leaue her, and keepe our courſe. October.

The fourth of October, we found our ſelues to be 41. degrees and a halfe from the line.

The fift day, the weather was very foule with winde, and raine.

The ſixt day, the Chriſtopher came to vs, and willed vs to put with the Cape, for they alſo were ſo weake, that they were not able to keepe the ſea, and we being weak alſo, we agreed to go for Vigo, being a place which many Engliſh men frequent.

The 10. day, the Chriſtopher went roome with the Cape, but we hauing a merrie winde for England, and fearing the danger of enemies, which ordinarily lye about the Cape: beſides, not knowing the ſtate of our Countrey, and Spaine, and although it were peace, yet there was litle hope of friendſhip at their hands, conſidering the voyage that we had made, and we alſo being ſo weake, that by force and violence, we could come by nothing, and doubting alſo that the King of Portingall knowing of our being there, might worke ſome way with the counſell of Spayne, to trouble vs: and further, conſidering that if we did put in with any harbour, we ſhould not be able to come out againe, til we ſent for more men into England, which would be a great charge, and loſſe of time, and meanes of many dangers: All theſe things pondered, we agreed to ſhoote off two peeces of ordinance, to warne the Chriſtopher, and then we went our courſe for England: ſhe hearing our peeces, followed vs, and we carried a light for her, but the next day in the morning, it was thicke, and we could not ſee her in the afternoone nether, ſo that we ſuſpected, that either ſhe was gone with Spayne, or els that ſhe had put foorth more ſailes then we in the night, and was ſhot a head of vs, ſo that then we put foorth our topſailes, and went our courſe with England.

At the time when the Chriſtopher left vs, we were within 120. leagues of England, and 45. leagues Northweſt, and by Weſt, from Cape Finiſter: and at the ſame time, in our ſhips we had not aboue ſixe marriners, and ſixe merchants in health, which was but a weake companie for ſuch a ſhippe, to ſeeke a forren harbor.

The

Extreame weakenes of our men.

The 16. day, about sixe of the clocke at night, we met with a great storme at the Westsouth west, and west, and our men being weake, and not able to handle our sailes, we lost the same night our maine saile, foresaile, and spreetsaile, & were forced to lye a hulling, vntil the eighteeneth day, and then we made ready an olde course of a foresaile, and put it to the yarde, and therewith finding our selues far shot into the Sleeue, we bare with our owne coast, but that foresaile continued not aboue two howres, before it was blowen from the yarde with a freat, and then we were forced to lie a hull againe, vntill the nineteenth day of October, in the morning, and then we put an olde bonnet to our foreyard, which, by the good blessing and prouidence of God, brought vs to the Ile of Wight, where we arriued the 20. of October, in the afternoone.

The commodities and wares, that are most desired in *Guinie, betwixt Sierra Liona, and the furthest* place of the Myne.

Manils of brasse, and some of leade.
Basons of diuers sortes, but the most latton.
Pots of course tinne, of a quarte, and more.
Some coines of yron.
Margarets, and certaine other sleight beades.
Some blewe Corrall.
Some horse tailes.
Linnen cloth principally.
Basons of Flanders.
Some redde cloth of a lowe price, and some kersie.
Kettels of Dutchland with brasen handles.
Some great brasse basons grauen, such as in Flanders they set vpon their cupboords.
Some great basons of pewter, and ewres grauen.
Some lauers, such as be for water.
Great knues of a lowe price.
Sleight Flanders caskets.
Chests of Roan of a lowe price, or any other chests.
Great pinnes.
Course French coueringes.
Packing sheetes good store.
Swordes, daggers, frise mantels, and gownes, clokes, hats, red caps, Spanish blankets, axe heads, hammers, short peeces of yron, sleight bels, gloues of a lowe price, leather bags, and what other trifles you will.

The first voyage of Robert Baker to Guinie, with the Minion, *and Primrose, set out in October, 1562. by Sir William Garrard,*

Sir William Chester, M. Thomas Lodge, Anthony Hickman, & Edward Castelin.

As men whose heades be fraught
with care, haue seldom rest:
(For through the head the body strait
with sorowes is oppresst:)
So I that late on bed
lay wake, for that the watch
Pursued mine eye, and causde my hed
no sleepe at all to catch:
To thinke vpon my chaunce
which hath me now betide,
To lie a prisoner here in France,
for raunsome where I bide:
And feeling still such thoughts
so thicke in head to runne,
As in the sommer day the moats
doe fall into the Sunne,
To walke then vp I rose,
fansie to put to flight:
And thus a while I doe purpose
to passe away the night.
Morpheus I perceiu'd — The God of sleepe.
had small regarde of me,
Therefore I should be but deceiu'd
on bed longer to lie.
And thus without delay
rising as voide of sleepe,
I hoyned Cynthia sawe streight way — The Moone.
in at my grate to peepe:
Who passing on her way,
eke knowing well my case,
How I in darke dungeon there lay
alwaies looking for grace:

To

To me then walking tho
in darke without en light,
She wipte her face, and straight did show
the best countnance she might:
Astonneth eke my head
and senses for a space,
And olde fansies away now fled
she pattetly new in place.
Then leaning in my grate
wherein full bright she shinde,
And viewing her thus on her gate
she mazeth streight my minde:
And makes me thinke anon
how oft in Ginnie lande
She was my frend, when I haue gone
all night vpon the sande,
Walking and watching ete
least any boate or ship
At any time, while we had slept
perhaps by vs might slip.
And streight with ardent fire
my head inflameth shee,
Eke me inspires with whole desire
to put in memorie,
Those daungers I haue bid
and Laberinth that I
Haue past without the clue of threede,
eke harder ieopardie.
I then gin take in hand
straight way to put in rime,
Such trauell, as in Ginnie lande
I haue past in my time.
But hauing writte a while
I fall faint by the way,
And eke at night I lothe that stile
which I haue writte that day.
And thinke my doings then
vnworthy sure, to be
Set forth in print before all men,
for euery one to see.
Eke with dispaire therefore
my pen I cast away,
And did intende this neuer more
hereafterto assay.
My fellow prisoner then
sir Edward Gages sonne
Willes me to take againe my pen
and ende that I begonne.
By this our friends (sayth he)
shall right well understande
And knowe the great trauels that we
haue past in Heathen lande.
Take pen therefore againe
in hande, I you require,
And thinke (saith he) therein no paine
to graunt this my desire.
Then once againe my hed
my hand a worke doth finde:

Sir Edward Gages sonne, whose name was George Gage.

But first I fall vpon my bed
and there deepe sighes I fette,
To see that this to talke
is giuen me silly wight:
And of Minerua helpe I aske
that she me teach aright.
Helpe now without delay,
helpe, helpe, ye Muses nine,
O Cleo, and Calliope,
shewe me how to define
In condigne stile and phrase
eche thing in euery line,
To you I giue loe all the praise
the trauell only mine.
Giue eare then ye that long
to know of my estate,
Which am in France in prison strong
as I wrote home of late:
Against all lawe or right
as I doe thinke in deede,
Sith that the warre is ended quite,
and peace is well agreed.
The warre at Newe hauen.
Yet least perchaunce you might
much maruell, how that I
Into a Frenchmans powre should light
in prison here to lie:
Giue nowe attentiue heede,
a straunge tale gin I tell,
How I this yeare haue bene besteede,
scaping the gates of hell,
More harde I thinke truly,
in more daunger of life,
Than olde Orpheus did when he
through hell did seeke his wife,
Whose musike so did sounde
in pleasant play of string,
That Cerberus that hellish hounde
(who as the Poets sing
Hauing three huge heads great,
which doe continually
Still breath out firy flames of heate
most horrible to see)
Did giue him leaue to passe
in at the gates of Hell:
Of which gate he chiefe porter was
the Poets thus me tell.
And how he past alone
through great king Plutos Court
Yea ferried ouer with Charon
and yet he did no hurt.
Caron passeth ger of Hell.
Well to my purpose now,
in Hell what hurt had hee?
Perchance he might strange sights inow
and vgly spirits there see:
Perhaps eke Tantalus,
there making of his mone,
Who staru'd always: and Syphus
still rolling vp the stone,

Yet

Yet Orpheus passed by,
and went still on his way,
There was no torment came him nigh
or heate to make him stay.
And I a Gods name would
at hazarde play my life
In Guinie lande, to seeke for golde,
as Orpheus sought his wife.
At which saide lande of Guinie
I was eke once before,
And scapt the death as narowly
as Orpheus did and more.
Which first ill lucke will I
recite, then iudge you plaine,
If Ioue plagued me not now rightly
this yeare to goe againe.
The other yeere before
when Neptune vs had brought
Safely vnto that burning shore,
for which so long we sought,
One day when shippe was fast
in sea at anker holde,
The sailes vpfitted, all busmesse past
the boteswaine then I tolde,
That he forthwith should see
the small pinnesse well manne,
Eke all things therin prest to be
that we should haue a lande,
And gunner see that ye
want not bowe, pike, or bill,
Your ordinance well primed be
with lintstocks burning still.
With merchandize a shore,
we hied to traffike then,
Making the sea some vs before,
by force of nine good men.
And rowing long, at last
a riuer we espie,
In at the which we bare full fast
to see what there might be.
And entring in, we see
a number of blacke soules,
Whose likelinesse seem'd men to be,
but all as blacke as coles.
Their Captaine comes to me
as naked as my naile,
Not hauing witte or honestie
to couer once his taile.
By which I doe here gesse
and gather by the way,
That he from man and manlinesse
was voide and cleane astray.
And sitting in a trough,
a boate made of a logge,
The very same wherein you know
we vse to serue a hogge,
Aloofe he staide at first,
put water to his cheeke,

His first voyage 1562.

A signe that he would not vs trust
vnlesse we did the like.
That signe we did likewise,
to put him out of feare,
And shewd him much braue marchandise
to make him come vs neare.
The wilde man then did come,
by signes nowe crieth the fiend
Of those gay things to giue him some
and I should be his friend.
I traffikt there that time
for such things as they had,
At night to ship I caried him,
where I with clothes him clad,
Yea, made him there good cheere,
and he by signes againe
Tolde vs that he would fraight vs then
after a day or twaine.
And eene thus as we were
in talke, looking about,
Our boate he sawe with wares that there
was tied at sterne without:
Which boate he viewing still,
as then well stuft with ware,
We thinking he had ment no ill,
had thereof little care.
And the next morne again
we caried him a shore,
Eke barred there that day with them
as we had done before.
But when Phœbus began
somewhat for to draw neare
To Icarus his Court, the sonne
of Dedalus most deare,
(Whose chaunce it is to dwell
amids the Ocean flood,
Because that he obseru'd not well
his fathers counsell good)
We then with saile and oare
to ship began to hie,
That we might fetch aboorde, before
the day had lost his eye.
To ship we come at last
which rid foure leagues from shore
Refresht vs after trauaile past,
taken that day before.
Then, as it was our guise,
our boate at sterne we tie,
Eke therein leaue our marchandise,
as they were wont to be.
With troughes then two or three
this Captaine comes by night
Aboord our boate, where he with wares
himselfe now fraighteth quight.
The watch nowe hearing this,
the boate they hal'd vp fast:
But gone was all the marchandise,
and they escapte and past.

The theft of the Negros.

The

The next morne then by day
againe we went to shore,
Amends to haue for that which they
had stolne the night before.
But all in vaine was it,
our signes were now too bad,
They would not vnderstand a whit
of any thing they had.
A conflict betweene the Negros & our men.
But as though they had wrong
for to reuenged be,
As we row'd downe the streame along
after comes hee and hee.
A hundred boats come fro
the sternemost towne I say,
At least meets vs as many mo
before, to make vs stay.
In euery boat two men,
and great long targets twaine:
Most of their darts had long strings then
to picke and pull againe.
Now gunners to your charge,
giue fier all arow,
Ech slaue for feare forsakes his barge,
and ducks in water low.
We downe the streame amaine
do row to get the sea,
They ouertake vs soone againe,
and let vs of our way.
Then did the slaues draw neere,
with dart and target thicke,
With diuelish fired eyes they peere
where they their darts may sticke.
Now Mariners do push
with right good will the pike,
The hailshot of the harquebush
the naked slaue doth strike.
Through targe and body right
that downe he falleth dead
His fellow then in heauie plight,
doth swimme away afraid,
To bathe in brutish bloud,
then fleeth the graygoose wing,
The halberders at hand be good,
and hew that all doth ring.
Yet gunner play thy part,
make hailshot walke againe,
And fellowes row with like good heart
that we may get the maine.
Our arrowes all now spent,
the Negros gan approch:
But pikes in hand already hent
the blacke beast fast doth broch.
Their captaine being wood,
a villaine long ond large,
With poisned dart in hand doth shroud
himselfe vnder his targe.
And hard aboord he comes
to enter in our boat,
Our maisters mate, his pike eftsoones
strikes through his targe and throat.
The captaine now past charge
of this brutish blacke gard,
His pike he halde backe which in targe
alas was fixed hard:
And wresting it with might,
to pull it forth in hast,
A deadly dart strikes him too right
and in his flesh sticks fast,
He stands still like a man,
and shrinkes not once therfore,
But strikes him with his owne dart then
which shot at him before.
Then presse they on, and shake
their darts on euery side,
Which in our flesh doth light, and make
both deadly wounds and wide.
The gunner in that stound
with two darts strooke at last,
Shrinks not yet though the double wound
with streames of bloud out brast.
And eke the maisters mate,
of stomacke bolde and stout,
For all his wound receiu'd of late,
yet stirred not a foot.
But kept his standing still,
till that a deathfull dart
Did strike him through the ribs so ill,
that scarce it mist his hart.
The dart out hal'd quickly,
his guts came out withall,
And so great streames of bloud that he
for faintnesse downe gan fall.
The Negros seeing this,
how he for dead doth lie,
Who erst so valiant prou'd i wis,
they gladly shout and crie:
And then do minde as there
to enter in his place,
They thinke so many wounded were
the rest would yeld for grace.
We then stand by the pike,
and foure row on our boat,
Their darts among vs fast they strike
that few were free I wot.
In legge and eke in thigh,
some wounded eke in th'arme,
Yea many darts stucke vs hard by,
that mist and did no harme.
By little thus at last,
in great danger of life
We got the sea, and almost past
the danger erst so rife.
Then gin they all retire
sith all their darts were spent
They had nought to reuenge their ire,
and thus away they went.

Our boat to ship doth roe,
where two oares make soft way
Sixe of our men wounded
Sixe of vs nine were wounded so,
the seuenth for dead there lay.
Lo,heare howcruelly
the fiends ment vs to kill,
Causeleſſe you see,if they truly
on vs might had their will.
And yet we gaue before
much merchandise away,
Among those slaues,thinking therfore
to haue friendship for aye.
And Orpheus past I wot
the passage quietly,
Among the soules in Charons boat,
and yet to say truly
I neuer read that he
paid for his passage there,
Who past and repast for to see
if that his wife there were.
Nor yet that he paid ought,
or any bribe there gaue
To any office,while he sought
his wife againe to haue.
Whereby I surely gesse
these men with whom that we
Haue had to do,are fiends more fierce
then those in hell that be.
Well we now scaping thus
the danger I haue tolde,
Aboord we come,where few of vs
could stand now being colde.
Our wounds now being dreſt,
to meat went they that list,
But I desired rather rest,
for this in minde I wist.
That if I might get once
a sleepe that were full sound,
I should not feele my weary bones
nor yet my smarting wound.
And lying long aloft
vpon my bed in paine,
Vnto Morpheus call'd I oft
that he would not disdaine
To heare me then poore wight,
but send me helpe with speed
That I might haue good rest this night
of which I had great need.
Me thought then by and by,
there hung a heauie waight,
At ech eye lid,which clos'd mine eye,
and eke my head was straight.
And being streight a sleepe,
I fell into a sweauen,
That of my wound I tooke no keepe
I dreamd'd I was in heauen.
Where as me thought I see
god Mars in armor bright,
His arming sword naked holdes he
in hand,ready to fight.
Castor and Pollux there
all complet stand him by,
Least if that Mars conuinced were
they might reuenged be.
Then came marching along
the great blacke smith Vulcan,
Hauing a staffe of yron strong,
and thus at last began:
O Mars,thou God of might,
what is the cause that thou
Hast chaleng'd me with thee to fight:
lo present am I now.
Wherfore if that thou hast
any great grudge to me,
Before this day be spent and past
it shall reuenged be.
Then spake god Mars and said,
for that thou churlish wight,
Thy brutish blacke people hast made
with those white men to fight
Which cal'd on me for aid,
I bid thee warre for this.
Then answered Vulcan straight and said
that that coast sure was his.
And therefore he would still
his blacke burnt men defend,
And if he might, all other kill
which to that coast did wend,
Yea thus (said he) in boast
that we his men had slaine,
And ere that we should passe this coast
he would vs kill againe.
Now marcheth Mars amaine
and fiercely gins to fight,
The sturdie smith strikes free againe
whose blowes dint where they light.
But Iupiter that sat
in his great royall throne
Hearing this noise maruell'd thereat,
and streight way sendeth one
To know the cause thereof:
but hearing them in fight,
Commandeth them for to leaue off
by vertue of his might,
And of Vulcan demands
the cause: then answered he,
O mightie Ioue whose power commands
and rules all things that be,
Who at a word hast power
all things to destroy cleane,
And in the moment of an houre,
canst them restore againe,
The same God licence me
to speake now here my minde:
It is not,Ioue,vnknowne to thee,
how that I was assign'd,

And

And pointed king of most
of all the Ginnie land,
A people lo is on my coast
which doth me now withstand,
They do my people strike,
they do this day them kill,
To whom I minde to do the like
if I may haue my will.
Then Iupiter bespake:
O Vulcan then said he,
Let this thy rage and anger slake
for this time presently,
But if at any time
these men chance there againe,
Doe as thou list, the charge is thine
I will not meddle then.
I know them well (said he)
these men need not to seeke,
They haue so fruitfull a countrey
that there is none the like.
But if they can not be
therewith content, but still
Will seeke for golde so couetously,
worke then with them thy will.
And therewith straight doth send
a pursiuant in post,
To whom (saith he) see that thou wend
vnto the windie coast,
To Eolus, the king
command him thus from me,
That he straight way without lingring
do set at libertie,
His seruant Zephirus,
which now is lockt so low,
Eke that he do command him thus,
that he straight way do go
To Vulcans coast in hast, One shippe.
a ship where he shall finde,
Which ship he must with gentle blast
and eke with moderate winde,
Conduct safe to that coast
which Albion was highte,
And that no stormes do them withstand
by day or eke by night.
I sleeping all this space,
as it were in a trance,
The noise of them that hal'd apace
did waken me by chance.
Then looking out to know
what winde did blow in skie,
The maister straight came to me tho
and thus said by and by.
All our ill lucke is past,
we haue a merie winde,
I hope England, if this winde last,
yet once againe to finde.
When this I vnderstand,
to Ioue I vowed then,
For swearing cleane the Ginnie land
for comming there againe.
And passing on in post
with fauorable windes,
We all arriu'd on Englands coast
with passing cheerefull mindes.

The second voyage to Guinie, and the riuer of Selto, set out *in the Moneth of Nouember 1563, by Sir William Gerrard, Sir* William Chester, Sir Thomas Lodge, Maister Beniamin Goston, Maister William Winter, Maister Lionell Ducket, Anthonie Hickman, and Edward Castelin, with two ships, the one called the Iohn Baptist, wherein went for Maister, Laurence Rondell: and the other the Marlin, wherein went also for Maister, Robert Reuell, hauing for Factors, Robert Baker, Iustinian Goodwine, Iames Gleidell, and George Gage: and written in verse by the foresaid Robert Baker.

YOu heard before, that home I got
from Ginnie at the last,
But by and by, I quite forgot
the sorowes I had past.
And ships rigged also,
with speed to ship againe,
I being then requir'd to go,
did not denie them plaine,
But granted them to go,
vnhappie foolish wight,
When they command, eke there to do
the best seruice I might.
In fine, to go our way
now serueth time and tide,
We hauing nothing vs to stay,
what should we longer bide?
The hempen band with helpe
of Mariners doth threat
To wey and reare that slouthfull whelpe The anker.
vp from his mothers teat.
The Maister then gan cheere
with siluer whistle blast
His Mariners, which at the Ieere
are laboring wondrous fast.
Some other then againe,
the maine yard vp to hoise,
The hard haler doth haile a maine,
while other at a trice
Cut saile without delay:
the rest that be below,
Both sheats abaft do hale straitway
and bolins all let go.

The Helme a Mariner
in hand then strait way tooke,
The Pilot eke what course to stir
within his card did looke.
Againe with siluer blast,
the Maister doth not faile,
To cause his mates forthwith in hast
abroad to put more saile.
We then lanch from the shore,
sith warre we knew it right,
And kept in sea aloofe therefore
two dayes and eke a night.
And, as it is the guise,
to toppe a man we send,
Who straight a saile or two espies,
with whom we then do wend.
Aloofe would some with one,
and roomeward would the rest:
But with the tallest ship we gone,
whom we thinke to be best.
At last, in comming neere
as captaines vse to do,
I hale them, and of whence they were
I did desire to know:
Of France when they had said,
we weaued them a maine,
But they nothing therewith dismaid
did like to vs againe.
We then our selues aduant
through hope of purchase here,
Amaine say we, ye iolly gallant
or you shall buie it dere.
To arme the maine top tho
the boatswaine goeth eke,
His mate to the foretop also
makes hast to do the like.
To top both stones and darts
good fellowes hoise apace:
The quarter maisters with glad hearts
do know eche one his place.
Our topsailes strike we tho
and fit our sailes to fight,
Our bulwarke at maine mast also
is made likewise aright.
Upon our poope eke then
right subtilly we lay
Pouder, to blow vp all such men,
as enter theraway.
Our Trumpetter aloft
now sounds the feats of war,
The brasen pieces roring oft
fling forth both chaine and bar.
Some on the pardes againe
do weaue with naked swoord,
And crying loud to them amaine
they bid vs come aboord.
To bath hir feet in bloud
the graigoose fleeth in hast:
And Marmers as Lions wood,
do crie aboord as fast.
Now firie Faulkons flie
right greedie of their pray,
And kils at first stone dead truely
eche thing within their way.
Alarme ye now my mates I say,
see that ye nothing lacke,
At euery loope then gins straightway
a harquebush to cracke.
Their saile to burne, we shoot
our arrowes of wilde fire,
And pikes burning therewith about
lads tosse with like desire.
Eke straightway forth for wine
the steward call I then,
With fiery spice enough therein
I drinke vnto my men,
And then euen with a woord
our lime pot prest to fall,
This iolly gallant we clap aboord
and enter him withall.
Their nettings now gan teare
with dint of heauie stone,
And some mens heads witnesse did beare
who neuer could make mone.
The harquebush acroke
which hie on top doth lie,
Discharg'd full of haileshot doth smoke
to kill his enemie.
Which in his enemies top
doth light, there it to keepe,
Yet he at last a deadly lope
is made from thence to lepe.
Then entreth one withall
into this Frenchmans top,
Who cuts eche rope, and makes to fall
his pard, withouten stop.
Then Mariners belowe,
as carelesse of the pike,
Do hew, and kill still as they goe,
and force not where they strike.
And still the trumpets sound
with pleasant blast doth cheare
Eche Mariner, so in that stound
that they nothing did feare.
The Maister then also,
his mates to cheare in fight,
His Whistle chearefully doth blow,
whereby strait euery wight
So fierce begins to be,
that Frenchmen gin to stoe,
And English men as right worthy
do catch for pillage tho.
What would you more I say
but tell the truth alway:
We vide our matters so this day
we caried him away,

Unto

Unto a Port in Spaine,
which sure is call'd the Groine,
Whereas we for French lading plaine
receiued readie coine.
Well thus this good lucke past,
we through salt Seas did scoure,
To Ginney coast eke come at last,
O that vnhappie houre.
My hand alas for feare
now shakes, of this to write,
Mine eye almost full fraught with teare,
eke lets me to indite.
What should I here recite
the miserie I had,
When none of you will scarce credit
that ere it was so bad?
Well, yet I would assay
to tell it, if I might,
But O Minerua, helpe me aye,
my wits astond be quite.
Yea helpe, ye muses nine,
let no thought me withstand,
Aid me this thing well to define,
which here I take in hand.
Well, thus it fortuned tho,
in Ginney now arriu'd,
Nine men in boat to shore we go,
where we traffike espide,
And parting at midday
from ship, on good intent
In hope of traffike there I lay
to shore away we went.
Our ships then riding fast
in sea at anker bight,
We minded to dispatch in hast,
eke to returne that night.
But being hard by land,
there suddenly doth rise
A mightie winde, where with it raind
and thundred, in such wise,
That we by shore did ride,
where we best Port might finde,
Our ships we thinke from anker slide,
a trice before the winde.
This night Vulcan begins
on vs reueng'd to be,
And thunderbolts about he flings
most terrible to see,
Admixt with fierie flame
which cracks about our eares,
And thus gins he to play his game,
as now to him appeares.
Ye Eolus hath feed
herein to be his friend,
And all the whirling windes with speed
among vs doth he send.
Thus hard by shore we lay,
this wet and weary night,
But on next morne and all the day
of ship we had no sight.
For Vulcan all this night
from fierie forge so fast
Sent thunder bolts with such great light,
that when the night was past,
The next day there remaind
so great smoke all about,
Much like a mist, eke there with raine,
that we were wet throughout.
And thus in smoke minded he
to part vs from our ship:
Thus nere a one ech other see,
and so haue we the slip.
Our ships then backe againe,
thinking we were behinde,
Do saile by shore a day or twaine
in hope there vs to finde.
And we the contrary,
do row along the shore
Forward, thinking our ships to be
still sailing vs before.
They sailing thus two dayes or three,
and could not finde vs than,
Do thinke that in that foule night we
were drowned euery man.
Our ship then newes doth beare,
when she to England wends
That we nine surely drowned were,
and thus doth tell our frends:
While we thus being lost,
alive in miserie
Do row in hope yet on this coast,
our ships to finde truly.
Well thus one day we spent,
the next and third likewise,
But all in vaine was our intent,
no man a saile espies:
Three dayes be now cleane past
since any of vs nine,
Of any kinde of food hath tast,
and thus gan we to pine,
Till at the last bare need
bids vs hale in with land,
That we might get some root or weed
our hunger to withstand:
And being come to shore,
with Negros we intreat,
That for our wares which we had there
they would giue vs to eat.
Then fetch they vs of roots,
and such things as they had,
We gaue to them our wares to boote
and were thereof right glad.
To sea go we againe,
in hope along the shore
To finde our ships, yet thinking plaine
that they had beene before.

And thus with saile and oze
twelue dayes we went hard by
The strange vncomfortable shoze
where we nothing espie,
But all thicke woods and bush
and mightie wildernesse,
Out of the which oft times do rush
strange beasts both wilde and fierse,
Whereof oft times we see,
at going downe of Sunne,
Diuers descend in companie,
and to the sea they come.
Where as vpon the sand
they lie, and chew the cud:
Sometime in water eke they stand
and wallow in the floud.
The Elephant we see,
a great vnweldie beast,
With water fils his troonke right hie
and blowes it on the rest.
The Hart I saw likewise
delighted in the soile,
The wilde Boze eke after his guise
with snout in earth doth moile.
A great strange beast also,
the Antelope I weene
I there did see, and many mo,
which erst I haue not seene.
And oftentimes we see
a man a shoze or twaine,
Who strait brings out his Almadie
and rowes to vs a maine.
Here let we anker fall,
of wares a shew we make,
We bid him choose among them all,
what wares that he will take
To bring to vs some fish,
and fresh water therefoze,
Oz else of meat some daintie dish,
which their cookes dresse a shoze.
They bring vs by and by
great roots and beries rke,
Which grow vpon the high palme tree,
such meat as they do like.
We drinke eke of their wine
much like our whey to see:
Which is the sappe as I haue seene
that runnes out of a tree.
Thus do they bring ech thing
which they thinke to be good,
Sometime wilde hony combes they bring
which they finde in the wood,
With roots and baggage eke
our cozps we thus sustaine
From famine, though it be so weake,
that death was figurde plaine
In euery ioynt, foz lacke
of sustenance and rest,
That still we thinke our hearts would
with sozowes so oppest. (breake
We now alongst the coast
haue saild so many a mile,
That sure we be our ships be lost,
what should we do this while?
In Heathen land we be,
impossible it is
That we should fetch our owne countrey
in such a boat as this.
We now gan to perceiue
that we had ouerpast
The Melegete coast so much,
that we were come at last
Unto the coast of Myne,
foz Niegros came abooz
With weights to poise their golde so fine,
yea speaking euery wooz
In Portugesse right well
demanding traffike there,
If we had any wares to sell,
and where our ships then were?
We answered them againe, Two ships.
we had two ships at sea,
The which would come traffike with thē
we thought within a day.
The cause why we thus said,
was hope to be well vsde:
But seeing this, as men dismaid
away we went, and musde
Whither our ships were gone,
what way were best foz vs:
Shall we here perish now saith one?
no, let vs not do thus:
We see all hope is past
our ships to finde againe,
And here our liues do shozten fast
in miserie and paine:
Foz why the raging heat
of Sunne, being so extreme,
Consumes our flesh away in sweat,
as dayly it is seene.
The Ternados againe
so often in a weeke,
With great lightnings, thunder and raine
with such abundance eke,
Doe so beat vs by night,
that we sleepe not at all,
Whereby our strength is vaded quite,
no man an oze can hale.
How hard liue we, alas?
three whole dayes oft be past,
Ere we pooze men (a heauy case)
of any thing doe tast.
These twentie dayes ye see,
we haue sit still ech one,
Which we do of necessitie,
foz place to walke is none.

Our

Our legs now vs deceiue,
ſwolne euery ioint withall,
With this diſeaſe, which, by your leaue,
the Scruuie men doe call.
We cannot long endure
in this caſe as we be,
To leaue our boat I am right ſure,
compeld we muſt agree.
Three wayes for vs there is,
and this is my requeſt,
That we may of theſe three deuiſe,
to chooſe thereof the beſt.
The Caſtle of the Mine
is not farre hence, we know,
To morrow morne we there may be,
if thither you will goe.
There Portingals do lie,
and chriſtened men they be:
If we dare truſt their curteſie,
the worſt is hanging glee.
Our miſerie may make
them pitie vs the more,
Mine ſuch yong men great pains would
for life to hale an ore. (take
Their Gallies may perhaps
lacke ſuch yong men as we,
And thus it may fall in our laps,
all Galeyſlaues to be,
During our life, and this
we ſhall be ſure to haue,
Although we row, ſuch meate as is
the allowance of a ſlaue.
But here we rowe and ſterue,
our miſery is ſo ſore:
The ſlaue with meat inough they ſerue,
that he may teare his ore.
If this you will not like,
the next way is to goe:
Vnto the Negros, and to ſeeke
what friendſhip they will ſhew.
But what fauour would ye
of theſe men looke to haue:
Who beaſtly ſauage people be,
farre worſe then any ſlaue?
If Cannibals they be
in kind, we doe not know,
But if they be, then welcome we,
to pot ſtraight way we goe.
They naked goe likewiſe,
for ſhame we cannot ſo:
We cannot liue after their guiſe,
thus naked for to go.
By rootes and leaues they liue,
as beaſts doe in the wood:
Among theſe heathen who can thriue,
with this ſo wilde a food?
The piercing heate againe,
that ſcorcheth with ſuch ſtrength,
Piercing our naked fleſh with paine,
will vs conſume at length.
The third and laſt is this,
(if thoſe two you refuſe)
To die in miſerable wiſe,
here in the boate you chuſe.
And this iudge by the way,
more truſt is to be giuen,
Vnto the Portingals alway,
ſith they be chriſtned men,
Then to theſe bruttiſh ſort,
which beaſtly are ye ſee:
Who of our death will make a ſport,
if Canibals they be.
We all with one conſent,
now death deſpiſing plaine:
(Sith if we die as innocent,
the more it is our gaine)
Our ſayle we hoyſe in haſt,
with ſpeed we mind to go
Vnto the caſtell, now not paſt
a twentie leagues vs fro.
And ſayling all this day,
we ſpied late in the night,
As we paſt by thus on our way,
vpon the ſhore a light.
Then ſayd our Boateſwaine thus,
by this great light a ſhore,
Trafique there ſeemes, will you let vs
anker this night therefore,
And trie if we may get,
this next morning by day,
Some kind of food for vs to eate,
and then to goe our way?
We anker there that night,
the next morning to ſhore:
And in the place, where we the light
did ſee the night before,
A watch houſe now there ſtood,
vpon a rocke without:
Hard by a great blacke croſſe of wood,
which putteth vs in doubt,
What place that this ſhould be,
and looking to the ſhore,
A Caſtell there we gan eſpie,
this made vs doubt the more.
Wherein we ſaw did ſtand
a Portingall or twaine:
Who held a white flag in his hand,
and waued vs amaine.
Our fleſh as fraile now ſhakes,
whereby we gan retire,
And he at vs a ſhot then makes,
a Negro giuing fire.
A piece diſcharged thus,
the killing pellet lighes,
I thinke within a yard of vs,
but none of vs it hits.

We

We wisht then we had there
a good ship, eke ov t'waine,
But helpleſſe now, we rowe a ſhoꝛe
to know th'end of our paine.
The neerer that we went
to them vnto the ſhoꝛe,
To yeld our ſelues, as firſt we ment
they ſtill did ſhoot the moꝛe.
Now Canons loud gan roꝛe,
and Culuerins now crackt,
The Caſtell eke it thundꝛed ſoꝛe,
as though the wals weere ſackt.
Some ſhot doth light hard by,
ſome ouer vs againe:
But though the ſhot ſo thicke doth flie,
yet rowe we in a maine,
That now ſo neere we be
vnto the caſtell wall,
That none of them at vs we ſee,
can make a ſhot at all.
We ment a land to goe,
their curteſie to trie:
But from the wal great ſtones they thꝛow,
and therewith by and by,
The Negros marching downe,
in battell ray do come,
With dart and target from the towne,
and follow all a ꝛomme.
A bowe in hand ſome hent,
with poiſned arrow preſt,
To ſtrike therewith they be full bent,
a pined Engliſh breſt.
But ſtones come downe ſo faſt
on vs on euery ſide,
We thinke our boats bottom would hꝛaſt
if long we thus abide.
And arrowes flie ſo thicke,
hiſſing at euery eare,
Which both in clothes and fleſh do sticke,
that we, as men paſt feare,
Cry now, Launch, launch in haſt,
hale of the boate a maine:
Foure men in banke let them ſit faſt
and rowe to ſea againe.
The other fiue like men,
do manfully in hand,
Take vp each kind of weapon then,
theſe wolues here to withſtand.
A harquebuſh takes one,
another bends his bowe,
Among the ſlaues then downe fals one,
and other hurt I trowe.
At thoſe Portingals then ſhoot we,
vpon the Foꝛt which ſtand,
In long fine white ſhirts as we ſee,
and lintſtocks in their hand.
And of theſe ſhirts ſo white
we painted ſome full red,
Striking their open coꝛps in ſight,
with dint of arrow head.
Foꝛ we ſawe they had there
no Gallies vs to take,
Where theatnings th' could vs not feare
oꝛ make vs once to ſhake.
Then Canons loud gan roꝛe,
and pellets flie about,
And each man haleth hard his oꝛe
and mooued not a foote.
Yea, though the poulder ſent
the pellets thicke away,
Yet ſpite of them cleane though we went
at laſt, and got the ſea.
And pieces charging faſt,
they ſhot after vs ſo,
That wonder was it how we paſt
the furie of our foe.
The pined arme felt not
as now, the heauie oꝛe:
With foure ſuch oꝛes was neuer boat,
I thinke, rowd ſo beforꝛe.
To ſeaward ſcaping ſo,
three Negroes we ſee there,
Came rowing after vs to know,
what countrey men we were:
We anſwered Engliſhmen,
and that thither we came,
With wares to trafique there with them,
if they had meant the ſame.
They Portuguſe doe ſpeake
right naturall twis:
And of our ſhip to know they ſeeke,
how big and where ſhe is.
We anſwered them againe
we had two ſhips at ſea,
Right well appointed full of men,
that ſtreight would take their way
Along the coaſt foꝛ gold,
they tary but foꝛ vs,
Which came with wares there to haue ſold
but that they vſ'd vs thus.
Then gan they vs to pray,
if we lackt any thing,
To anker there all that whole day,
and they to vs would bring
All things that we doe want,
they ſoꝛy ſay they be:
But we their words yet trulling ſcant,
refuſe their curteſie.
We aſke them of this hold
what place that it ſhould be,
Then they againe thus ſtraight vs told
that Portingals there lie.
And how that point they ſayd,
which there hard by we ſee,
Was one of Cape three points, that lay
the Weſterumoſt of three. Cape three points.

Without en

Without further ſpeech,
we hoiſe our ſaile to ſea:
Minding a friendlier place to ſeech,
and thus we part our way.
We mind truly to prooue
the Portingals no more:
But now t'aſſay rather what loue
Negros will ſhew a ſhore.
We then with ſaile and ore,
went backe againe in haſt:
A thirtie leagues I thinke, and more
from thence where we were chaſt.
And here we anker fall,
aboord the Negros come:
We gaue gay things vnto them all,
and thus their hearts we wonne.
At laſt aboord comes one,
that was the Kings chiefe ſonne:
To whom by ſignes I made great mone,
how that I was vndone,
Had loſt our ſhips, and eke
were almoſt ſtaru'd for meate,
And knew not where our ſhips to ſeeke,
or any thing to eate.
I offred him our wares,
and bid him take them all:
But he perceiuing now the teares,
which from our eyes did fall,
Had great pitie on vs,
and ſayd he would haue nought,
But ſtreight by ſignes he will'd vs then,
that we ſhould take no thought.
As one whom God had ſent,
and kept for vs in ſtore,
To know in haſt away he went,
the Kings pleaſure on ſhore.
And came foorthwith againe,
yea, bade vs come a land:
Whereof God knowes we were full faine,
when this we vnderſtand.
Each man bankes to his ore,
to hale the boate a land:
Where as we ſee vpon the ſhore,
fiue hundred Negros ſtand.
Our men rowing in a maine,
the billow went ſo hie,
That ſtraight a waue ouerwhelms vs (cleane
and there in ſea we lie.
The Negros by and by,
came ſwimming vs to ſaue:
And brought vs all to land quickly,
not one durſt play the knaue.
The Kings ſonne after this,
a ſtout and baliant man,
In whom I thinke Nature t'wis,
hath wrought all that ſhe can,
He then I ſay commaunds
them ſtraight to ſaue our boate,
To worke forthwith goe many hands,
and bring the ſame a floate.
Some ſwimme to ſaue an ore,
ſome diue for things be loſt:
I thinke there helpt to hale a ſhore,
fiue hundred men almoſt.
Our boate thus halde vp drie,
all things ſtreight way were brought
The which we miſt or could eſpie,
no man that durſt keepe ought.
Then vs they led away,
knowing we wanted meate,
And gaue to vs, euen ſuch as they
themſelues do daily eate.
Was neuer Owle in wood
halfe ſo much wondered at,
As we were then poore men, alas,
which there among them ſat.
We feared yet our part,
and wiſht a moneth were paſt,
For each man there went with his dart,
which made vs oft agaſt.
We lay vpon the ground,
with them there all that night:
But fearing ſtill a deadly wound,
we could not ſleepe a whit.
Two dayes thus paſt we well,
no man vs offred wrong:
The cauſe thereof I gin you tell,
they thought this them among:
Our ſhips had bene at ſea,
and would come there before
Two dayes, to fetch vs thence away,
and giue them wares good ſtore.
But when they thus heare tell
how that our ſhips be loſt,
And that we know not very well,
when ſhips will come to coaſt:
They then waxe wearie ſtreight,
and they which did before
At ſundry times giue vs to eate,
did giue vs now no more.
Our lowance wart ſo ſmall,
that neuer nine I geſſe,
Were ſeru'd the like, yet ſtill withall,
it waxed leſſe and leſſe.
Some run now in the wood,
and there for rootes do ſeeke,
Baſe meat would here be counted good,
too bad that we miſlike.
Our clothes now rot with ſweat,
and from our backs do fall,
Saue that whom nature wils for ſhame,
we couer nought at all.
One runs to ſeeke for clay
to faſhion ſtraight a pot,
And hardens it in Sunne all day:
another faſteth not

To

To fetch home wood to night,
and eke for fire sought,
That we our roots and things seeth might
if any home were brought.
The rest the wood doth seeke,
eke euery bush and tree
For berries and such baggage like,
which should seeme meate to bee.
Our fingers serue in steed,
both of pickaxe and spade,
To dig and pull vp euery weed,
that grew within the shade.
Eke digd for rootes the ground,
and searcht on euery hier
For berries, which if we had found,
then streight way to the fire:
Where we rost some of those,
the rest seeth in a pot,
And of this banket nought we lose,
nor fragment resteth not.
The night as beasts we lie
the bare hard earth vpon,
And round by vs a great fire light
to keepe wild beasts vs from.
But what shou'd I recite,
or couet to declare
My sorowes past, or eke t'endite
of my hard Ginnie fare:
I cease here to enlarge
my miserie in that land,
A toy in head doth now me charge,
as here to hold my hand.
In fine, what would ye more,
the heat did so exceed,
That wanting cloths it scorcht so sore,
no man could it abide.
The countrey eke so wilde,
and vnhealthfull withall,
That hungry stomacks neuer fill'd,
doth cause faint bodies fall.
Our men fall sicke apace,
and cherishing haue none:
That now of nine, within short space
we be left three alone.
Alas, what great agast
to vs three liuing yet,
Was it to see, that death so fast
away our fellowes fet:
And then to loue on hie
we call for helpe and grace,
And him beseech vnfainedly,
to fetch vs from this place.
From this wild heathen land,
to Christendome againe,
Or else to lay on vs his hand,
and rid vs from our paine.
Least that we ouerpest
with too much miserie,
Perhaps as weake breake our behest
which we owe God on high.
And least we liuing here
among this heathen, might
Perchance for need do that which were
right hainous in his sight.
Well, to my purpose then,
when we to loue thus crie,
To helpe vs hence poore silly men
from this our miserie.
He hearing vs at length,
how we to him doe call,
He helps vs with his wonted strength,
and straight thither withall,
A French ship sends at last,
with whom we three go hence:
But six in earth there lie full fast,
and neuer like come thence.
This Frenchman as I say,
through salt and surging seas,
Vs brought from Ginnie land, away
to France, the Lord we praise.
And warre he proues it plaine
when we entred his ship,
A prisner therefore I remaine,
and hence I cannot slip
Till that my ransome be
agreed vpon, and paid,
Which being leuied yet so hie,
no agreement can be made.
And such is so my chance,
the meane time to abide
A prisner for ransome in France,
till God send time and tide.
From whence this idle rime
to England I doe send:
And thus till I haue further time,
this Tragedie I end. R. Baker.

The voyage of M. George Fenner to Guinie, and the Islands of Cape Verde, in the yeere 1566. with three ships, to wit, the Admirall, called the Castel of Comfort, the May Flower, and the George, and a Pinnesse also. Written by Walter Wren.

THe 10. day of December in the yeere aboue sayd, we departed from Plimmouth and the 12. day we were thwart of Vsham.

The 15. day in the morning being Sunday, we had sight of Cape Finister, and the same night we lost the company of our Admirall, wherefore we sayled along the coast of Portingall, hoping that our Admirall had bene before vs.

Ye

The 18. day we met with a French ſhip, of whom we made inquirie for our Admirall, but he could not tell vs newes of him: ſo we followed our courſe to the Iſlands of the Canaries.

The 25. day in the morning we fell with a ſmal Iſland called Porto Santo, and within 3. houres we had ſight of another Iſland called Madera, which is 6. leagues from Porto Santo.

The ſaid 25. day being the day of the Natiuitie, we hoiſed out our boate, and ſet Maiſter Edward Fenner Captaine of the May Flower aboord vs being in the George, with the Maiſter whoſe name was Robert Courtiſe, and others of the ſayd ſhip, and feaſted them with ſuch cheere as God had ſent vs.

The 28. day we fell with an Iſland called Tenerif, which is 27. leagues from the ſaid Iſland, and on the Eaſt ſide thereof we came to an anker in fortie fadome water, within a baſe ſhotte of the ſhore, in a little Baie, wherein were three or foure ſmall houſes: which Baie and houſes were diſtant from a little Towne called Santa Cruz, a league or thereabout, and as we road in the ſayd Baie, we might ſee an Iſland called the grand Canarie, which was 6. or 7. leagues from vs.

The 29. day the May Flower for that ſhe could not get into the road where we were at an anker, by reaſon the wind was off the ſhore, & becauſe ſhe bare roomer from the land then we did, in the morning came bearing in with the towne of Santa Cruz, thinking to come to an anker in the road againſt the towne, and before ſhe came within the reach of any of their ordinance, they ſhot at her foure pieces, which cauſed her to come roome with vs, and came at laſt to an anker by vs. And about one of the clocke in the after noone, the forenamed Captaine of the May Flower, wrote a letter a ſhore, directing it to the head officer of the towne of Santa Cruz, to the intent to vnderſtand the pretence of the ſhooting of the ſayd ordinance.

The letter being written, Robert Courtiſe maſter of the May Flower, and Walter Wren, were appointed to deliuer the ſame a land at the three or foure houſes, to be conueied to the foreſayd towne, and ſo went with ſixe men in the boate, and rowed to the ſhore as neere as they might, for ſetting the boate on ground, for the ſea went cruelly at the ſhore.

The people ſtood in number 30. perſons, with ſuch armour as they had: the foreſayd Wren called to them in Spaniſh, declaring to them that they had a letter, which they would very gladly haue conueied vnto the towne, ſhewing that they would traffique with them as merchants, deſiring their helpe for the conueiance of the ſame letter. With that one of the Spaniards willed vs to come on land, & we ſhould be welcome, but doubting the worſt, the ſayd Walter anſwered them, that they would not come a land, vntil they had anſwere of their letter which they had brought.

Whereupon one of the Spaniards vnraied himſelfe, and lept into the water, and ſwamme to the boate, whom we receiued. And he ſaluted vs, and demaunded what our requeſt was: we made him anſwere, that by miſfortune we loſt the companie of our Admirall, and being bound to this Iſland to traffique for wines and other things neceſſarie for vs, doe heare mind to ſtay vntill ſhe come.

Concerning our letter, he made vs anſwere that he would with all diligence cary it, and deliuer it according to the direction, and ſo the ſayd Walter knit the letter in a bladder, and deliuered it vnto him, and alſo gaue him foure royals of Spaniſh money for his paines: and promiſing that we ſhould haue anſwere of it, he tooke his leaue, and ſwamme againe a ſhore, where the people ſtood ready to receiue him. And after that they had talked with him, and vnderſtood our meaning, ſome of them threw vp their hats, and the other put them off holding them in their hands, and made vs very curteous ſignes, alwayes deſiring that the boate would come a land, but we refuſing the rowed backe againe aboord.

The 30. day the Gouernours brother of Santa Cruz, came aboord the May Flower, with ſixe or ſeuen Spaniards with him, who concluded with the Captaine that we might come a ſhore and traffique with them, but that day we did not, for we had no ſufficient pledge of theirs for our aſſurance. Our Captaine intertained them well, and at their departure gaue them foure pieces of ordinance for a farewell, and beſtowed vpon them two cheeſes with other things.

The ſayd Gouernours brother promiſed our Capitaine that he ſhould haue ſufficient pledges the morow following, which was not done, whereupon we grew ſuſpicious, and went not that day a ſhore.

The firſt day of Januarie, our Captaine ſent Nicholas Day, and Iohn Sumpter a ſhore, who were very well entertained with as many of our company as went after them. Januarie.

In the ſayd Iſland is a marueilous high hill called the Pike, which is a farre off more like a cloud in the aire, then any other thing: the hill is round and ſomewhat ſmall at the top, it hath not beene knowen that euer any man could go vp to the top thereof. And although it ſtand in 28. degrees which is as hote in Januarie, as it is in England at Midſommer, yet is the top of the ſaid hill Winter, and Sommer ſeldome without ſnow.

In

In this Iland about two leagues from the said Santa Cruz, is a citie called Anagona.

The third day we departed about the Westerne point of the Iland, about 12. or 14. leagues from Santa Cruz, into a Baie which is right against the house of one Petro de Souses, in which Baie we came to an anker the 5. day, where we heard that our Admirall had bene there at an anker 3. dayes before vs, and was gone thence to an Iland called Gomera, whereupon we set sayle presently to seeke him.

They meete their Admirall againe.

The 6. day we came to an anker against the towne of Gomera, where we finde our Admirall, which was very joyfull of our comming, and we also of his sight.

In the sayd roade we found Edward Cooke in a tall ship, and a ship of the Coppersmiths of London, which the Portingals had trecherously surprised in the Baie of Santa Cruz, vpon the coast of Barbarie, which ship we left there all spoiled.

Our Generall and merchants bought in the said towne for our prouision, 14. buts of wine, which cost 15. ducats a butt, which were offered vs at Santa Cruz in Tenerif, for 8, 9. and 10. ducats.

The 9. day we departed from this road to an other Baie, about 3. leagues off, and there tooke in fresh water; and so the 10. day we set saile towards Cape Blanke, which is on the coast of Ginnie.

The 12. day we fell into a Baie to the Eastward of Cape Pargos, which is 35. leagues from Cape Blanke. But hauing no knowledge of that coast, we went with Cape Blanke, and at the fall of the land we sounded, and had 16. fadome water two leagues from the shore. The land is very lowe, and white sand. Upon the fall of the sayd coast, beware how you bozow in 12. or 10. fadome, for within 2. or 3. casts of the lead you may be on ground.

A good caueat.

The 17. day, we set sayle from Cape Blanke, directing our course South and by East, and South among, and so fell into a Baie to the Eastward of Cape Verde, about 16. leagues, and about 6. leagues from the shore. The sayd land seemed vnto vs as if it had bene a great number of ships vnder sayle, being in deed nothing els but the land which was full of Hammoks, some high some lowe, with high trees on them. We bare with the sayd land till we were within 3. leagues of the shore, and then we sounded and found 28. fadome water, black oase. This day we saw much fish in sundry scules swimming with their noses with the brimme of the water.

Cape Verde.

Passing along this coast, we might see two small round hils, seeming to vs about a league one from the other, which is the Cape, and betweene them are great store of trees, and in all our dayes sailing we saw no land so high, as the said two hils.

The 19. day we came to an anker at the Cape, in a road fast by the Westermost side of two hils, in 10. fadome of water, where you may ride in fiue or sixe fadome, for the ground is faire, and alwayes you shall haue the wind off the shore. And as soone as we were all at an anker, our Generall came aboord vs, and with him the master of the Admirall, whose name was William Bats, and with them the Captaine of the Viceadmirall, whose name was master Edward Fenner, and Robert Curtise the master, and dined aboord of vs, being in the George, wherein was Captaine Iohn Heywood, and Iohn Smith of Hampton master, and there we concluded to goe aland, which was halfe a mile from vs: and by the counsell of William Bats, both Captaine and merchants and diuers of the company went without armour: for he sayd, that although the people were blacke and naked, yet they were ciuill: so that he would needes giue the venter, without the consent of the rest, to go without weapon. Thus they rowed to shore, where, we being in the ship might see a great company of Negroes naked, walking to and fro by the sea side where the landing place was, waiting for the comming of our men, who came too soone, and landed to their losse as fell out afterwards.

The foolish rashnesse of Wil. Bats, perswading the company to land vnarmed.

There went a shore the Admirals skiffe, and the May Flowers boate, and in them the number of 20. persons or thereabouts, as master George Fenner the Generall, his brother master Edward Fenner, Thomas Valentine, Iohn Worme and Francis Leigh marchants, Iohn Haward, William Bats, Nicholas Day, Iohn Tomson, and others.

At their comming to the shore there were 100. Negroes or vpward, with their bowes and arrowes: our Captaines and merchants talked with them, and according to the vse of the countrey, the one demanded pledges of the other, and they were content to deliuer 3. of their Negros for 5. of our men. Our 5. mens names were these, Iohn Haward, Wil. Bats, Nich. Day, Ioh. Tomson, and Ioh. Curtise: these were deliuered them, and we receiued 3. Negroes into our Admirals skiffe.

Our men being a shore among the Negroes, beganne to talke with them, declaring what ware and merchandize we had, as woollen cloth, linnen cloth, iron, cheese and other things. The Negroes answered againe, they had cyuet, muske, gold and graines, which pleased our captaines and marchants very well. Then the Negroes desired to haue a sight of some of our wares, to the which our merchants were content, and foorthwith sent aboord one of the boates for part of their marchandize, and

Cyuet, muske, gold & graines, the commodities of Cape Verde.

and in the meane time while the boate went to the ſhip, our fiue men were walking on the ſhoare with the Negroes, and our Generall and Marchants ſtayed in the other boate by the ſea ſide, hauing the 3. Negroes with them.

Our boate then came againe, and brought vpon and other marchandize, with bread, wine, and cheeſe, which they gaue vnto them. Then two of the Negroes (which were the pledges) made themſelues licke, deſiring to goe aſhoare, promiſing to ſende other two for them. Captaine Hayward perceiuing that our men had let the Negroes come a ſhoare, aſked what they meant, (and doubting the worſt) began to draw toward the boate, and two or three of the Negroes followed him. And when he came to the boate they begamne to ſtay him, and he made ſignes vnto them that he would fetche them more drinke and bread: notwithſtanding, when hee was entring into the boate, one of them caught him by the breeches, and would haue ſtayed him, but hee ſprange from him and leapt into the boate. And as ſoone as hee was in, one of the Negroes a ſhoare began to blowe a pipe, and preſently the other Negro that was in our boate, ſitting on the boates ſide, and Maſter Wormes ſword by him, ſuddenly drewe the ſworde out of the ſcaberde and caſt himſelfe into the ſea, and ſwomme a ſhoare: and preſently the Negroes layde handes on our men that were on ſhoare, and tooke three of them with great violence, and toare all their apparell from their backes, and left them nothing to couer them, and many of them ſhotte ſo thicke at our men in our boates, that they coulde ſcarſe ſet hande to any Oare to rowe from the ſhoare, yet (by the helpe of God) they got from them with their boates, although many of them were hurt with their poyſoned arrowes: and the poyſon is vncurable if the arrowe enter within the ſkinne and drawe bloud, and except the poyſon be preſently ſuckt out, or the place where any man is hurt, be furthwith cut away, hee dieth within foure dayes, and within three houres after they be hurt or pricked, whereſoeuer it be, although but at the litle toe, yet it ſtriketh vp to the heart, and taketh away the ſtomacke, and cauſeth the partie marueilouſly to vomit, being able to brooke neither meate nor drinke. The Negroes treacherie.

The Negroes hauing vſed our men with ſuch cruelty, whoſe names were Nicholas Day, William Bats, and Iohn Tomſon, ledde them away to a towne which was within a mile of the water ſide or there about.

The 20. day we ſent too lande a boate or ſkiffe wherein were eight perſons, and one of them was the foreſaid Iohn Tomſon and our interpreter, which was a Frenchman, (for there was one of the Negroes which ſpake good French:) they carried with them two harquebuſſes, two targets, and a mantell.

The cauſe of ſending them was to learne what raunſome they demaunded for Batts and Day, whome they detained. And when they came to the ſhoare, and tolde the Negroes what they deſired, they went and fetched them from among the trees, and brought them looſe amongſt fourtie or fiftie of them. And being come within a ſtones caſt of the ſea ſide, William Batts brake from them, and ranne as faſt as hee coulde into the ſea towardes the boate, and hee was not ſo ſoone in the water but hee fell downe, either being out of breath or his footing fayling him in the ſande being ſoft: ſo that the Negroes came and fell on him and tooke him, and halled him, that wee thoughte they had torne him in pieces. For they toare againe all the apparell from his backe, ſo that ſome of them caried our men againe to the towne, and the reſt ſhotte at vs with their poyſoned arrowes, and hurt one of our men called Androwes in the ſmall of the legge, who being come aboorde, (for all that our Surgeons coulde doe) wee thought hee would haue died. The danger of poyſoned arrowes.

Our Generall (notwithſtanding all this villanie,) ſent againe to them, and offered them any thing that they deſired for the raunſome of our men, but they would not deliuer them: giuing vs this anſwere, That there was in the foreſayde roade three weekes before wee came, an Engliſh ſhippe which had taken three of their people, and vntill wee did bring or ſende them againe, wee ſhoulde not haue our men, although wee would giue our three ſhippes with their furniture. The anſwere of the Negroes.

The 21. day a French ſhippe of the burden of foureſcore tunnes, (or there abouts,) came to the place where we were, being bounde to traffique at the Cape: we tolde them of the detayning of our two men by the Negroes: and ſeeing that theſe Frenchmen were very well welcome to the Negroes, we wiſhed them to ſee whether they coulde procure them againe of the Negroes, and bring them along with them, and our Generall promiſed the Frenchmen 100. li. to obtaine them. So we committed the matter to the Frenchmen and departed.

Of our men that were hurt by the Negroes arrowes, foure died, and one to ſaue his life, had his arme cut off. Androwes that was laſt of all hurt, laye lame not able to helpe himſelfe:

onely two recouered of their hurts. So we placed other men in the roomes of those that wee lost, and set saile.

The 26. day betweene Cape Verde, and Bona vista, we saw many flying fishes of the bignes of herrings, whereof two flew into our boate, which we towed at our sterne.

Bona vista. The 28. day we fel with an Iland called Bona vista, which is from Cape Verde 86. leagues. The Northside of the saide Islande is full of white sandie hilles, and dales, and somewhat high lande.

The saide day we came to an ancre within the Westermost point, about a league within the point, and found in our sounding faire sande in tenne foote water, but you may goe neere till you be in fiue or sixe fadom, for the ground is faire.

As soone as we were at an ancre, our Generall sent his pinnesse a land, and founde fiue or six small houses, but the people were fledde into the mountaines: and the next day hee sent a shoare againe, and mette with 2. Portingals, who willingly went aboorde with his men, and at their comming he welcommed them, although they were but poore and simple, & gaue eche of them a paire of shoes, and so set them a shoare againe.

The 30. day we waied and sailed into a bay within a small Iland about a league from vs, and tooke plentie of diuers sorts of fish. The foresaide Islande lyeth in sixteene degrees. And if you meane to ancre in the said bay, you may borrow in foure or fiue fadome of the Southermost point of the saide Island, which you may see when you ride in the roade. But beware of the middest of the bay, for there lyeth a ledge of rocks, which at a lowe water breaketh, yet there is three fadom water ouer them.

A good admonition.

The last day of Januarie our Generall with certaine of his men went a shoare in the bay to the houses, where he found twelue Portingals. In all the Iland there were not aboue 30. persons, which were banished men for a time, some for more yeeres, some for lesse, and amongst them there was one simple man which was their captaine.

Banished Portingals.

They liue vpon goates flesh, cockes, hennes, and fresh water: other victuals they haue none, sauing fish, which they esteeme not, neither haue they any boates to take them.

They reported that this Islande was giuen by the king of Portingall, to one of his Gentlemen, who hath let it foorth to rent for one hundreth ducates a yeere, which rent is reared onely in goates skinnes. For by their speaches there hath bene sent foorth of the saide Iland into Portingale 40000. skinnes in one yeere.

Great store of goates.

We were to these men marueilously welcome, and to their powers very well intertained, and they gaue vs the flesh of as many bee-goates as wee would haue, and tooke much paines for vs in taking them, and bringing them from the mountaines vpon their asses.

They haue there great store of the oyle of Toxoyses, which Toxoyse is a fish which swimmeth in the sea, with a shell on his backe as broade as a target. It raineth not in this Iland but in three moneths of the yeere, from the middest of July to the middest of October, and it is here alwayes very hotte. Kine haue bene brought hither, but by reason of the heate and drought they haue died.

Febuarie. The 3. of Febuarie wee departed from this Iland, and the same day fell with another Iland

The Isle of Maiyo. called the Isle of Maiyo, which is 14. leagues from the other Iland: there is in the middest of the way betweene these 2. Islands a danger which is alwayes to be seene.

Wee ancred in the Northwest side of the saide Isle in a faire bay, of eight fadoms water and faire sande, but here wee staied not, but the fourth day waied and sailed to another Iland called

S. Iago. S. Iago, which lyeth off the said Islande of Maiyo East and by South, and about fiue leagues off from the other. Being come within the Westermost point, wee saw a faire roade, and a small towne by the water side, and also a fort or platforme by it: there wee purposed to come to ancre, and our Marchants to make some sale. But before we came within their shotte, they let flie at vs two pieces, whereupon wee went roomer and sailed along the shoare two or three leagues from the roade, where we found a small bay and two or three small houses, where we came to an ancre in 14. fadom faire ground.

Within an houre after we had ancred, we might see diuers horsemen and footemen on the land right against vs riding, and running to and fro.

The next day being the fift of Febuarie, a great companie of their horsemen and footemen appeared on the shoare side, vnto whome our Generall sent, to vnderstande whether they would quietly traffique with them: And they sent him worde againe, desiring that they might speake with him, promising that if he came to traffique as a marchant, he should be welcome, and also that he should haue any thing that he or the marchant would with reason demaunde.

Wher

When this anſwere was brought vnto our Generall, he was very glad thereof, and the whole companie, and preſently (with as much ſpeede as he could) hee cauſed his boates to be made readie: but doubting the villanie of the Portingals, armed his boates, putting a double baſe in the head of his pinneſſe, and two ſingle baſes in the head of his Skiffe, and ſo ſent to the May floure and the George, and willed them in like ſort to man their two boates.

Theſe boates being thus manned and well appointed, our Generall entred into his ſkiffe, and with the reſt rowed to the ſhoare where were threeſcore horſemen or more, and two hundreth footemen readie to receiue them. Our Generall marueiled that they came in ſo great a nomber and all armed, and therefore with a flagge of truce ſent to them to knowe their pleaſure: and they anſwered them with many faire promiſes and othes, that their pretence was all true, and that they meant like Gentlemen and Marchants to trafique with him, declaring alſo that their Captaine was comming to ſpeake with him; and therefore deſired our Generall to come and ſpeake with him himſelfe.

With this anſwere the boate returned, and then our Generall cauſed his pinneſſe to rowe to them, and as he came neere the ſhoare, they came in a great companie with much obeyſance, opening their handes, and armes abroade, bowing themſelues with their bonnets off, with as much humble ſalutations outwardly as they might: earneſtly deſiring our Generall and Marchants to come a lande to them, whereunto hee would not agree, without ſufficient gages of Gentlemen and Marchants. At length they promiſed to ſende two gages to our Generals contentment, promiſing freſh water, victuall, money, or Negroes for ware, if it were ſuch as they liked: and therefore deſired our Generall and Marchants to ſende them a ſhoare in writing, the quantitie of their wares, and the names of them: all which our Generall departed to performe, looking for their anſwere the morowe following. And being gone a litle from the ſhoare, hee cauſed his baſes, curriers, and harquabuſſes to be ſhotte off, and our ſhippes in like caſe ſhotte off fiue or ſixe pieces of great ordinance, and ſo came aboorde to prepare the note. The Portingals moſt of them departed, ſauing thoſe that were left to watch and to receiue the note, which about foure or fiue a clocke in the after noone was ſent, and it was receiued. But all the purpoſes of the Portingals, were villanouſly to betray vs (as ſhall appeare hereafter,) although we meant in trueth and honeſtie, friendly to trafique with them.

The treaſon of the Portingals in S. Iago to our men.

There was to the Weſtwards of vs, and about two leagues from vs, a towne behinde a point laſt by the ſea ſide, where they had certaine Caruels or ſhippes, and alſo two Brigandines, whereof they (with all the ſpeede that they might) made readie foure Caruels, and both the Brigandines which were like two Gallies, and furniſhed them both with men and ordinance, as much as they could carrie, and as ſoone as it was night, they came rowing and falling towards vs: ſo that the land being high, and the weather ſomewhat cloudie or myſtie, and they comming all the way cloſe vnder the ſhoare, wee could not ſee them till they were right againſt one of our ſhippes called the May floure.

By this time it was about one or two of the clocke in the morning, and the May floure roade neerer them then the other two by a baſe ſhotte, ſo that they made a ſure accompt either to haue taken her or burnt her. In the meane time our men that had the watche (litle thinking of ſuch villanous treacheries after ſo many faire wordes,) were ſinging and playing one with the other, and made ſuch a noyſe, that (being but a ſmall gale of winde, and riding neere the lande) they might heare vs from the ſhoare: ſo that we ſuppoſed that they made accompt that wee had eſpied them, which in deede we had not, neither had any one piece of ordinance primed, or any other thing in a readineſſe.

They came ſo neere vs that they were within gunſhot of vs, & then one of our men chanced to ſee a light, & then looking out eſpied the 4. ſhips, and ſuddenly cried out, Gallies, gallies, at which cry we were all amazed, and forthwith they ſhotte at vs all the great ordinance that they had, and their harquebuſſes, and curriers, and ſo lighted certaine tronks or pieces of wilde fire, and all of them with one voyce (as well they on the ſhoare as they in the ſhippes) gaue a great ſhoute, and ſo continued hallowing with great noyces, ſtill approching neerer and neerer vnto the May-floure. Wee (with all the ſpeede that wee might) made readie one piece of ordinance and ſhotte at them, which cauſed them ſomewhat to ſtaye, ſo they recharged their ordinance and ſhotte at vs freſhly againe, and while they ſhotte this ſecond time at vs, wee had made readie three pieces which wee ſhotte at them, but they approched ſtill ſo neere, that at laſt wee might haue ſhotte a ſheaffe arrowe to them. Whereupon wee hauing a gale of winde off the ſhoare, hoyſed our foreſayle, and cut our cable at the hawſe, and went towarde our Admirall, and they continued following and ſhooting at vs, and ſometime at our Admirall, but our Admirall ſhotte

one such piece at them that it made them to retire, and at length to warpe away like traiterous villaines, and although they thus suddenly shot all their shot at vs, yet they hurt neither man nor boy of ours, but what we did to them we know not.

The Isle of Fuego.

But seeing the villanie of these men, we thought it best to stay there no longer, but immediately set saile towards an Iland called Fuego, 12. leagues from the saide Iland of S. Iago. At which Iland of Fuego we came to an ancre the 11. day of this moneth, against a white chappell in the West ende of the said Iland, within halfe a league of a litle towne, and within a league or thereabout of the vttermost point of the said Iland.

In this Iland is a marueilous high hill which doth burne continually, and the inhabitants reported that about 3. yeeres past, the whole Iland was like to be burned with the abundance of fire that came out of it.

Mille.

About a league from the said chappel to the Westward, is a goodly spring of fresh water, where we had as much as wee would. Wheate they haue none growing here, but a certaine seede that they call Mill, and certaine pease like Guinie pease, which Mill maketh good bread, but they haue here good store of rother beastes and goates. Their marchandize is cotton which groweth there.

Cotton in Fuego.

The inhabitants are Portingals, which haue commandement frō the king to traffique neither with Englishmen nor Frenchmen for victual or any other thing, except they be forced so to doe.

The Isle of Bzana.

There lieth off this Iland, another called Ilha Braua, which is not passing two leagues ouer, it hath good store of goates and many trees, but there are not passing three or foure persons dwelling in it.

They returne. March.

The 25. day of Februarie we departed towards the Ilands of Azores, and on the 23. day of March we had sight of one of them called Flores, and then wee might see another Iland to the Northward of it called Cueruo, lying 2. leagues or thereabouts off the other.

The 27. we came to an ancre in Cueruo ouer against a village of about twelue simple houses: but in the night by a gale of winde, which caused vs to drawe our ancre after vs, we hoysed saile and went to the aforesaid Iland of Flores, where wee sawe strange streames of water running downe from the high cliffes by reason of the great abundance of raine that had suddenly fallen.

The 29. day we came againe to Cueruo and cast ancre, but a storme arose and continued seuen or eight houres together, so that wee let slippe a cable and ancre, and after the storme was alayed wee came againe thinking to haue recouered the same, but the Portingals had either taken it, or spoiled it: the cable was new and neuer wet before, and both the cable and ancre was better worth then 40. li. So that we accompt our selues much beholding to the honest Portingals.

April.

The 18. day of April wee tooke in water at the Iland of Flores, and hauing ancred, our cable was fretted in sunder with a rocke and so burst, where wee lost that cable and ancre also, and so departed to our coast.

Then wee set saile to an Iland named Faiall, about the which lie three other Ilands, the one called Pico, the other S. George, and the other Graciosa, which wee had sight of on the 28. day.

The 29. we came to an ancre in the Southwest side of Fayal in a faire bay, and 22. fadom water gainst a litle towne, where we had both fresh water and fresh victual. In this Iland by the report of the inhabitants, there groweth certaine greene woad, which by their speaches is farre better then the woade of S. Michael, or of Terçera.

Woade.

May.

The eight day of May we came to Tercera, where we mette with a Portingal shippe, and being destitute of a cable and ancre, our Generall caused vs to keepe her companie, to see if her could conueniently spare vs any. The next morning we might see bearing with vs a great shippe and two Caruels, which wee iudged to bee of the king of Portingals Armado, and so they were, whereupon wee prepared our selues for our defence. The saide shippe was one of the kings Gallias-ses, about the burden of foure hundreth tunnes, with about three hundreth men in her, the shippe being well appointed with brasse pieces both great and small, and some of them so bigge, that their shotte was as great as a mans head, the other two Caruels were also very warlike and well appointed, both with men and munition.

A Portingal Galiasse of 400. tunnes.

A fight betweene one English ship, and 7. Portingals.

As soone as they were within shotte of vs, they waued vs amaine with their swords, wee keeping our course, the greatest shippe shot at vs freely, and the caruell also, and wee prepared our selues, and made all things cleare for our safegard as neere as we could. Then the great shippe shot at vs all her broad side, & her foure greatest pieces that laye in her sterne, and therewith hurt some of our men, and wee did the best wee could with our shotte to requite it. At last two other

Caruels

Caruels came off the ſhoare, and two other pinneſſes full of men, and deliuered them abooꝛde the great ſhippe, and ſo went backe againe with two men in a piece of them. The ſhippe and the Caruels gaue vs the firſt day three fights, and when the night was come, they left off ſhooting, yet notwithſtanding kept hard by vs all the night. In the meane time wee had as much as wee coulde doe all the night to mende our ropes, and to ſtrengthen our bulwarkes, putting our truſt in God, and reſoluing our ſelues rather to die in our defenſe, then to bee taken by ſuch wretches.

The next day being the 10. of May in the morning, there were come to ayde the ſaide Portingals, 4. great Armados oꝛ Caruels moꝛe which made ſeuen, of which 4. three of them were at the leaſt 100. tunnes apiece, the other not ſo bigge, but all well appointed and full of men. All theſe together came bearing with vs being in our Admirall, and one of the great Caruels came to lay vs abooꝛde (as we iudged) foꝛ they had prepared their falſe nettings, and all things foꝛ that purpoſe, ſo that the Gallias came vp in our larbooꝛd ſide, and the Caruel in our ſtarbooꝛd ſide.

Our Captaine and Maſter perceiuing their pretence, cauſed our gunners to make all our oꝛdinance readie with croſſebarres, chaineſhotte, and haileſhot: ſo the ſhippe and Caruell came vp, and as ſoone as they were right in our ſides, they ſhotte at vs as much oꝛdinance as they coulde, thinking to haue layde vs preſently abooꝛde: whereupon wee gaue them ſuch a heate with both our ſides, that they were both glad to fall aſterne vs, and ſo pauſed the ſpace of two oꝛ three houres being a very ſmall gale of winde.

Then came vp the other fiue and ſhot all at vs, and ſo fel all aſterne vs, and then went to counſell together.

Then our ſmall barke named the George came to vs, and wee conferred together a great ſpace. And as the Portingall ſhippes and Caruels were comming to vs againe, our barke minding to fall aſterne of vs, and ſo to come vp againe, fell quickly vpon the lee, and by reaſon of the litle winde, it was ſo long before ſhe could fill her ſailes againe, that both the ſhippe and Caruels were come vp to vs, and ſhe falling in among them, made reaſonable ſhift with them, but they got a head of her, ſo that ſhe could not fetch vs: then 5. of the Caruels folowed her, but we ſawe ſhee defended her ſelfe againſt them all.

Then came the great ſhippe and the Caruell to vs, and fought with vs all that day with their oꝛdinance.

The May floure our other conſoꝛt, being very good by the winde, tooke the benefite thereof, and halde all that day cloſe by the winde, but coulde not come neere vs. So when night againe was come, they gaue ouer their fight and followed vs all the night.

In theſe many fights it coulde not otherwiſe bee, but needes ſome of our men muſt be ſlaine, (as they were indeede) and diuers hurt, and our tackle much ſpoyled: yet foꝛ all this wee did our beſt indeuour to repaire all things, and to ſtand to it to the death, with our aſſured truſt in the mercie and helpe of God.

This night the May floure came vp to vs, and our Captaine tolde them his harmes and ſpoyles, and wiſhed them if they coulde ſpare halfe a doſen freſh men, to hoyſe out their boate and ſende them to him, but they coulde not ſpare any, and ſo bare away againe. Which when our enemies ſawe in the next morning, that we were one from another, they came vp to vs againe and gaue vs a great fight with much hallowing and hooping, making accompt either to booꝛde vs oꝛ els to ſinke vs: but although our companie was but ſmall, yet leaſt they ſhoulde ſee vs any whit diſmayde, when they hallowed wee hallowed alſo as faſt as they, and waued to them to come and booꝛde vs if they durſt, but that they woulde not, ſeeing vs ſtill ſo couragious, and hauing giuen vs that day 4. fights, at night they foꝛſooke vs with ſhame, as they came to vs at the firſt with pride.

The 7. Portingals depart with ſhame from one English ſhipp.

They had made in our ſhippe ſome leakes with their ſhotte which we againe ſtopped with all ſpeede, and that being done, we tooke ſome reſt after our long labour and trouble.

The next day in the morning the May floure came to vs, and brought vs ſixe men in her boate, which did vs much pleaſure, and we ſent to them ſome of our hurt men.

Then we directed our courſe foꝛ our owne countrey, and by the ſecond day of June wee were neere to our owne coaſt, and ſounded being thwart the Lyzard. June.

The thirde day we had ſight of a ſhippe which was a Portingall, who bare with vs, and at his comming to vs (the weather being calme,) our Captaine cauſed him to hoyſe foorth his boate to come abooꝛde to ſpeake with him, and at their comming our Captaine and Marchants demaunded of them what ware they had, and whither they were bounde, and they made anſwere that their lading was Suger and cotton. Then our Captaine and Marchants ſhewed

them 5. Negroes that wee had, and asked them whether they would buy them, which they were very desirous to doe, and agreed to giue for them 40. chestes of Suger, which chestes were small hauing not aboue 26. loaues in a piece: so they with their boate did fetch fiue of the chests, and so deliuered them, and went for more, and when they had laden their boate and were come againe, we might see bearing with vs, a great shippe and a small, which our Captaine supposed to be men of warre or Rouers, and then willed the Portingals to carie their suger to their shippe againe, purposing to make our selues readie for our defence. But the Portingals earnestly intreated our Captaine not so to forsake them, and promised him (if he would safegard them.) to giue him aboue the bargaine 10. chests of suger: whereupon our Captaine was content, and the Portingal not being good of saile, we spared our topsailes for her; so at last the foresaide ship bare with vs, and (seeing that we did not feare them) gaue vs ouer. And the next morning came two others bearing with vs, and seeing vs not about to flie a iot from them, forsooke vs also.

A Portingal ship (notwithstanding all their villanies) defended by our men from Rouers.

The 5. day of June wee had sight of the Start, and about noone wee were thwart of the bay of Lime, and so sounded, and had 35. fadom water.

The sixt day wee came in at the Needles, and so came to an ancre vnder the Ile of Wight at a place called Meadhole, and from thence sailed to Southhampton, where wee made an ende of this voyage.

The worthie enterprise of Iohn Fox an Englishman in deliuering 266. Christians out of the captiuitie of the Turkes at Alexandria, the 3. of Ianuarie 1577.

AMong our Marchants here in England it is a common voyage, to trafique into Spaine: whereunto a shippe, being called The three halfe Moones, manned with eight and thirtie men, and well fensed with Munitions, the better to encounter their enemies withal, & hauing winde & tide, set from Portsmouth 1563. and bended her iourney towarde Siuill a Citie in Spaine, intending there to trafique with them. And falling neere the Streights, they perceiued themselues to be beset round about with eight Gallies of the Turks, in such wise, that there was no way for them to flie or escape away, but that either they must yeelde or else bee sunke. Which the owner perceiuing, manfully encouraged his companie, exhorting them valiantly to shewe their manhoode, shewing them that God was their God, and not their enemies, requesting them also not to faint in seeing such a heape of their enemies readie to deuoure them; putting them in minde also, that if it were Gods pleasure to giue them into their enemies handes, it was not they, that ought to shewe one displeasant looke or countenance there against; but to take it patiently, and not to prescribe a day and time for their deliuerance, as the Citizens of Bethulia did, but to put themselues vnder his mercie. And againe, if it were his minde and good will to shewe his mightie power by them, if their enemies were tenne times so many, they were not able to stande in their handes; putting them likewise in minde of the olde and auncient worthinesse of their Countreymen, who in the hardest extremities haue alwayes most preuailed and gone away conquerours, yea, and where it hath bene almost impossible. Such (quoth he) hath bene the valiantnesse of our countrymen; and such hath bene the mightie power of our God.

With such other like incouragements, exhorting them to behaue themselues manfully, they fell all on their knees making their Prayers briefly vnto God: who being all risen vp againe, perceiued their enemies by their signes and defiances bent to the spoyle, whose mercie was no thing else but crueltie; wherupon euery man tooke him to his weapon.

Then stoode vp one Groue the Master, being a comely man, with his sworde and targe, bolding them vp in defiance against his enemies. So likewise stoode vp the owner, the Masters mate, Boteswaine, Purser and euery man well appointed. Nowe likewise sounded vp the drummes, trumpets and flutes, which would haue incouraged any man, had hee neuer so little heart or courage in him.

Then taketh him to his charge Iohn Fox the gunner in the disposing of his pieces in order to the best effect; and sending his bullets towards the Turkes, who likewise bestowed their pieces thyse as fast toward the Christians. But shortly they drewe neere, so that the bowmen fell to their charge in sending forth their arrowes so thicke amongst the Gallies, & also in doubling their shot so sore vpon the Gallies, that there were twise so many of the Turkes slaine, as the number of the Christians were in all. But the Turkes discharged twise as fast against the Christians, & so long, that

that the ſhip was very ſore ſtriken & bruiſed vnder water. Which the Turkes perceiuing, made the more haſte to come aboord the ſhippe: which ere they could doe, many a Turke bought it deerely with the loſſe of their liues. Yet was all in vaine, and boorded they were, where they found ſo hot a ſkirmiſh, that it had bene better they had not medled with the feat. For the Engliſhmen ſhewed themſelues men in deede, in working manfully with their browne bils, and holbards: where the owner, maſter, boteſwaine, and their company ſtoode to it ſo luſtily, that the Turkes were halfe diſmaied. But chiefly the boateſwaine ſhewed himſelf valiant aboue the reſt: for he fared amongſt the Turkes like a wood Lyon: for there was none of them that either could or durſt ſtand in his face: till at the laſt there came a ſhot from the Turkes, which brake his whiſtle a ſunder, and ſmote him on the breaſt, ſo that he fell downe, bidding them farewell, & to be of good comfort, incouraging them likewiſe to winne praiſe by death, rather then to liue captiues in miſerie and ſhame. Which they hearing, in deede intended to haue done, as it appeared by their ſkirmiſh: but the preaſe and ſtore of the Turkes was ſo great, that they were not able long to endure, but were ſo ouerpreſſed, that they could not weild their weapons: by reaſon whereof, they muſt needs be taken, which none of them intended to haue bene, but rather to haue died: except onely the Maſters mate, who ſhunke from the ſkirmiſh, like a notable coward, eſteeming neither the valure of his name, nor accounting of the preſent example of his fellowes, nor hauing reſpect to the miſeries, whereunto he ſhould be put. But in fine, ſo it was, that the Turks were victors, wherof they had no great cauſe to reioyce, or triumph. Then would it haue grieued any hard heart to ſee theſe Infidels ſo violently intreating the Chriſtians, not hauing any reſpect of their manhood which they had taſted of, nor yet reſpecting their owne ſtate, how they might haue met with ſuch a booty, as might haue giuen them the ouerthrow: but no remorſe hereof, or any thing els doth bridle their fierce and tyrannous dealing, but that the Chriſtians muſt needes to the gallies, to ſerue in newe offices: and they were no ſooner in them, but their garments were pulled ouer their eares, and torne from their backes, and they ſet to the oares.

The valour & death of their Boatſwaine.

I will make no mention of their miſeries, being now vnder their enemies raging ſtripes. I thinke there is no man wil iudge their fare good, or their bodies vnloden of ſtripes, and not pelted with too much heate, and alſo with too much cold: but I will goe to my purpoſe, which is, to ſhew the ende of thoſe, being in meere miſerie, which continually doe call on God with a ſtedfaſt hope, that he will deliuer them, and with a ſure faith, that he can doe it.

Nigh to the citie of Alexandria, being a hauen towne, and vnder the dominion of the Turkes, there is a roade, being made very ſenſible with ſtrong wals, whereinto the Turkes doe cuſtomably bring their gallies on ſhoare euery yeere, in the winter ſeaſon, and there doe trimme them, and lay them vp againſt the ſpring time. In which roade there is a priſon, wherein the captiues & ſuch priſoners as ſerue in the gallies, are put for all that time, vntill the ſeas be calme and paſſable for the gallies, euery priſoner being moſt grieuouſly laden with yrons on their legges, to their great paine, and ſore diſabling of them to any labour taking. Into which priſon were theſe Chriſtians put, and faſt warded all the winter ſeaſon. But ere it was long, the Maſter and the owner, by meanes of friends, were redeemed: the reſt abiding ſtill by the miſerie, while that they were all, through reaſon of their ill vſage and worſe fare, miſerably ſtarued: ſauing one Iohn Fox, who (as ſome men can abide harder and more miſerie, the nother ſome can, ſo can ſome likewiſe make more ſhift, and worke more deuiſes to helpe their ſtate and liuing, then other ſome can doe) being ſomewhat ſkilfull in the craft of a Barbour, by reaſon thereof made great ſhift in helping his fare now and then with a good meale. Inſomuch, till at the laſt, God ſent him fauour in the ſight of the keeper of the priſon, ſo that he had leaue to goe in and out to the roade, at his pleaſure, paying a certaine ſtipend vnto the keeper, and wearing a locke about his legge: which libertie likewiſe, ſire more had vpon like ſufferance: who by reaſon of their long impriſonment, not being feared or ſuſpected to ſtart aſide, or that they would worke the Turkes any miſchiefe, had libertie to goe in and out at the ſaid roade, in ſuch manner, as this Iohn Fox did, with yrons on their legges, and to returne againe at night.

The Engliſh men carried priſoners vnto an Hauen neere Alexandria.

In the yeere of our Lord 1577. in the winter ſeaſon, the Gallies happily comming to their accuſtomed harborow, and being diſcharged of all their maſtes, ſailes, and other ſuch furnitures as vnto gallies doe appertaine, and all the Maiſters and mariners of them being then neſted in their owne homes: there remained in the priſon of the ſaid road two hundred threeſcore and eight Chriſtian priſoners, who had beene taken by the Turkes force, and were of ſixteene ſundry nations. Among which there were three Engliſhmen, whereof one was named Iohn Fox of Woodbridge in Suffolke, the other William Wickney of Portſmouth in the Countie of Southampton, and the third Robert Moore of Harwich in the Countie of Eſſex. Which Iohn Fox

hauing

hauing bene thirteene or foureteene yeeres vnder their gentle entreatance, & being too too weary thereof, minding his escape, weied with himselfe by what meanes it might be brought to passe: and continually pondering with himselfe thereof, tooke a good heart vnto him, in hope that God would not be alwaies scourging his children, and neuer ceassing to pray him to further his pretended enterprise, if that it should redound to his glory.

Not farre from the roade, and somewhat from thence, at one side of the Citie, there was a certaine Victualing house, which one Peter Vnticaro had hired, paying also a certaine fee vnto the keeper of the roade. This Peter Vnticaro was a Spaniard borne, and a Christian, and had bene prisoner aboue thirtie yeeres, and neuer practised any meanes to escape, but kept himselfe quiet without touch or suspect of any conspiracie: vntill that nowe this Iohn Foxe vsing much thither, they brake one to another their minds, concerning the restraint of their libertie and imprisonment. So that this Iohn Fox at length opening vnto this Vnticaro the deuise which he would faine put in practise, made priuie one more to this their intent. Which three debated of this matter, at such times as they could compasse to meete together: insomuch, that at seuen weekes ende they had sufficiently concluded howe the matter should be, if it pleased God to further them thereto: who making fiue more priuie to this their deuise, whome they thought that they might safely trust, determined in three nights after to accomplish their deliberate purpose. Whereupon the same Iohn Fox, and Peter Vnticaro, and the other fiue, appointed to meete all together in the prison the next day, being the last day of December: where this Iohn Fox certified the rest of the prisoners, what their intent and deuise was, and howe and when they minded to bring their purpose to passe: who thereunto perswaded them without much a doe to further their deuise. Which the same Iohn Fox seeing, deliuered vnto them a sort of files, which he had gathered together for this purpose, by the meanes of Peter Vnticaro, charging them that euery man should be ready discharged of his yrons by eight of the clocke on the next day at night.

The last of December.

On the next day at night, this saide Iohn Fox, and his fiue other companions, being all come to the house of Peter Vnticaro, passing the time away in mirth for feare of suspect, till the night came on, so that it was time for them to put in practise their deuise, sent Peter Vnticaro to the master of the roade, in the name of one of the Maisters of the citie, with whome this keeper was acquainted, and at whose request he also would come at the first: who desired him to take the paines to meete him there, promising him, that he would bring him backe againe. The keeper agreed to goe with him, willing the warders not to barre the gate, saying, that he would not stay long, but would come againe with all speede.

Ianuarie.

In the meane season, the other seuen had prouided them of such weapons, as they could get in that house: and Iohn Fox tooke him to an olde rustie sword blade, without either hilt or pomell, which he made to serue his turne, in bending the hand ende of the sword, in steede of a pomell, and the other had got such spits and glaiues as they found in the house.

The keeper now being come vnto the house, and perceiuing no light, nor hearing any noyse, straightway suspected the matter: and returning backe ward, Iohn Fox standing behind the corner of the house, stepped foorth vnto him: who perceiuing it to be Iohn Fox, sayde, O Fox, what haue I deserued of thee, that thou shouldest seeke my death? Thou villaine (quoth Fox) hast bene a bloodsucker of many a Christians blood, and nowe thou shalt knowe what thou hast deserued at my handes: where with he lift vp his bright shining sword of ten yeeres rust, and stroke him so maine a blowe, as therewithall his head claue asunder, so that he fell starke dead to the ground. Whereupon Peter Vnticaro went in, and certified the rest howe the case stoode with the keeper: who came presently foorth, and some with their spits ranne him through, and the other with their glaiues hewed him in sunder, cut off his head, and mangled him so, that no man should discerne what he was.

Then marched they toward the roade, whereinto they entered softly, where were fiue warders, whom one of them asked, saying, who was there? quoth Fox & his company, all friends. Which when they were all within, prooued contrary: for quoth Fox, my maisters, here is not to euery man a man, wherefore looke you play your parts. Who so behaued themselues in deede, that they had dispatched these fiue quickly. Then Iohn Fox, intending not to be barred of his enterprise, and minding to worke surely in that which he went about, barred the gate surely, and planted a Canon against it.

Then entred they into the Gailers lodge, where they found the keies of the fortresse and prison by his bed side, and there had they all better weapons. In this chamber was a chest, wherein was a rich treasure, and all in duckets, which this Peter Vnticaro, and two more, opening, stuffed themselues so full as they could, betweene their shirts and their skinne: which Iohn Fox would not

once touch, and ſaide, that it was his and their libertie which he ſought for, to the honour of his God, and not to make a marte of the wicked treaſure of the Infidels. Yet did theſe words ſinke nothing into their ſtomakes, they did it for a good intent: ſo did Saule ſaue the fatteſt Oxen, to offer vnto the Lord, and they to ſerue their owne turne. But neither did Saule ſcape the wrath of God therefore, neither had theſe that thing which they deſired ſo, and did thirſt after. Such is Gods iuſtice. He that they put their truſt in, to deliuer them from the tyrannous hands of their enemies, (he I ſay) could ſupply their want of neceſſaries.

Nowe theſe eight, being armed with ſuch weapons, as they thought well of, thinking themſelues ſufficient champions to encounter a ſtronger enemie, and comming vnto the priſon, Fox opened the gates and doores thereof, and called foorth all the priſoners, whom he ſet, ſome to ramming vp the gate, ſome to the dreſſing vp of a certaine gallie, which was the beſt in all the roade, and was called the captaine of Alexandria, whereinto ſome caried maſtes, ſailes, oares, and other ſuch furniture, as doth belong vnto a gallie.

At the priſon were certaine warders, whome Iohn Fox and his company ſlewe: in the killing of whome, there were eight more of the Turkes, which perceiued them, and got them to the toppe of the priſon: vnto whome Iohn Fox, and his company, were faine to come by ladders, where they found a hot ſkirmiſh. For ſome of them were there ſlaine, ſome wounded, and ſome but ſcarred, and not hurt. As Iohn Fox was thriſe ſhot through his apparell, and not hurt, Peter Vnticaro, and the other two, that had armed them with the buckets, were ſlaine, as not able to weild themſelues, being ſo peſtered with the weight and vneaſie carying of the wicked and prophane treaſure: and alſo diuers Chriſtians were aſwell hurt about that ſkirmiſh, as Turkes ſlaine.

Amongſt the Turkes was one thruſt thorowe, who (let vs not ſay that it was ill fortune) fell off from the toppe of the priſon wall, and made ſuch a lowing, that the inhabitants thereabout (as here and there ſcattering ſtoode a houſe or two) came and dawed him, ſo that they vnderſtoode the caſe, how that the priſoners were paying their ranſomes: wherewith they raiſed both Alexandria, which lay on the weſt ſide of the roade, and a Caſtle which was at the Cities end, nere to the roade, and alſo an other Fortreſſe which lay on the North ſide of the roade: ſo that nowe they had no way to eſcape, but one, which by mans reaſon (the two holdes lying ſo vpon the mouth of the roade) might ſeeme impoſſible to be a way for them. So was the red ſea impoſſible for the Iſraelites to paſſe through, the hils and rockes lay ſo on the one ſide, and their enemies compaſſed them on the other. So was it impoſſible, that the wals of Iericho ſhould fall downe, being neither vndermined, nor yet rammed at with engines, nor yet any mans wiſedome, pollicie, or helpe ſet or put thereunto. Such impoſſibilities can our God make poſſible. He that helde the Lyons iawes from renting Daniel aſunder, yea, or yet from once touching him to his hurt: can not he hold ẏ roring canons of this helliſh force? He that kept the fiers rage in the hot burning Ouen, from the three children, that praiſed his name, can not he keepe the fiers flaming blaſtes from among his elect?

Now is the roade fraught with luſtie ſouldiers, labourers, and mariners, who are faine to ſtand to their tackling, in ſetting to euery man his hand, ſome to the carying in of victuals, ſome munitions, ſome oares, and ſome one thing, ſome another, but moſt are keeping their enemie from the wall of the roade. But to be ſhort, there was no time miſpent, no man idle, nor any mans labour ill beſtowed, or in vaine. So that in ſhort time, this gally was ready trimmed vp. Whereinto euery man leaped in all haſte, hoyſſing vp the ſailes luſtily, yeelding themſelues to his mercie and grace, in whoſe hands is both winde and weather.

Now is this gally on flote, and out of the ſafetie of the roade: nowe haue the two Caſtles full power vpon the gally, now is there no remedie but ſinke: how can it be auoided? the canons let flee from both ſides, and the gally is euen in the middeſt, and betweene them both. What man can deuiſe to ſaue it? there is no man, but would thinke it muſt needes be ſunke.

There was not one of them that feared the ſhotte, which went thundring round about their eares, nor yet were once ſcarred or touched, with fiue and fortie ſhot, which came from the Caſtles. Here did God hold foorth his buckler, he ſhieldeth now this gally, and hath tried their faith to the vttermoſt. Now commeth his ſpeciall helpe: yea, euen when man thinks them paſt all helpe, then commeth he himſelfe downe from heauen with his mightie power, then is his preſent remedie moſt ready preſt. For they ſaile away, being not once touched with the glaunce of a ſhot, and are quickly out of the Turkiſh canons reach. Then might they ſee them comming downe by heapes to the water ſide, in companies like vnto ſwarmes of bees, making ſhew to come after them with gallies, in buſtling themſelues to dreſſe vp the gallies, which would be a ſwift peece of worke for them to doe, for that they had neither oares, maſtes, ſailes, gables, nor any thing els ready in

any

any gally. But yet they are carying them into them, some into one gally, and some into an other, so that, being such a confusion amongst them, without any certaine guide, it were a thing impossible to ouertake them: beside that, there was no man that would take charge of a gally, the weather was so rough, and there was such an amasednes amongst them. And verely I thinke their God was amased thereat: it could not be but he must blush for shame, he can speake neuer a word for dulnes, much lesse can he helpe them in such an extremitie. Well, howsoeuer it is, he is very much to blame, to suffer them to receiue such a gibe. But howsoeuer their God behaued himselfe, our God shewed himselfe a God in deede, and that he was the onely liuing God: for the seas were swift vnder his faithfull, which made the enemies agast to behold them, a skilfuller Pylot leades them, and their mariners bestirre them luskily: but the Turkes had neither mariners, Pylote, nor any skilfull Master, that was in a readinesse at this pinch.

When the Christians were safe out of the enemies coast, Iohn Fox called to them all, willing them to be thankfull vnto almightie God for their deliuerie, and most humbly to fall downe vpon their knees, beseeching him to aide them vnto their friends land, and not to bring them into an other daunger, sithe hee had moste mightily deliuered them from so great a thraldome and bondage.

Thus when euery man had made his petition, they fell straight way to their labour with the oares, in helping one another, when they were wearied, and with great labour striuing to come to some Christian land, as neere as they could gesse by the starres. But the windes were so diuers, one while driuing them this way, an other while that way, so that they were now in a newe mase, thinking that God had forsaken them, and left them to a greater danger. And forasmuch as there were no victuals nowe left in the gallie, it might haue bene a cause to them, (if they had bene the Israelites) to haue murmured against their God: but they knew how that their God, who had deliuered them out of Ægypt, was such a louing and mercifull God, as that he would not suffer them to be confounded, in whome he had wrought so great a wonder: but what calamitie soeuer they sustained, they knew it was but for their farther triall, and also (in putting them in minde of their farther miserie) to cause them not to triumph and glory in themselues therefore. Hauing (I say) no victuals in the gally, it might seeme, one miserie continually to fal vpon an others necke: but to be briefe, the famine grew to be so great, that in 28. daies, wherein they were on the sea, there died eight persons, to the astonishment of all the rest.

Extremitie of famine.

So it fell out, that vpon the 29. day, after they set from Alexandria, they fell on the Isle of Candie, and landed at Gallipoli, where they were made much of by the Abbot and Monks there, who caused them to stay there, while they were well refreshed and eased. They kept there the sworde, where with Iohn Fox had killed the keeper, esteeming it as a most precious iewell, and hung it vp for a monument.

Iohn Fox his sword kept as a monument in Gallipoli.

When they thought good, hauing leaue to depart from thence, they sailed along the coast, till they arriued at Tarento, where they solde their gallie, and deuided it, euery man hauing a part thereof. The Turkes receiuing so shamefull a foile at their hand, pursued the Christians, and scoured the seas, where they could imagine that they had bent their course. And the Christians had departed from thence on the one day in the morning, and seuen gallies of the Turkes came thither that night, as it was certified by those who followed Fox, and his companie, fearing least they should haue bene met with. And then they came a foote to Naples, where they departed asunder, euery man taking him to his next way home. From whence Iohn Fox tooke his iourney vnto Rome, where he was well entertained of an Englishman, who presented his worthy deede vnto the Pope, who rewarded him liberally, and gaue him his letters vnto the king of Spaine, where he was very well entertained of him there, who for this his moste worthy enterprise, gaue him in fee twenty pence a day. From whence, being desirous to come into his owne countrey, he came thither at such time as he conueniently could, which was in the yeere of our Lorde God, 1579. Who being come into England, went vnto the Court, and shewed all his trauell vnto the Councell: who considering of the state of this man, in that he had spent and lost a great part of his youth, in thraldome and bondage, extended to him their liberalitie, to helpe to maintaine him now in age, to their right honour, and to the incouragement of all true hearted Christians.

The copie of the certificate for Iohn Fox, and his companie, made *by the Prior, and the brethren of Gallipoli, where they first landed.*

WE the Prior, & Fathers of the Couēt of the Amerciates, of the city of Gallipoli, of the order of Preachers do testifie, that vpon ỳ 29. of Ianuary last past, 1577. there came in to

to the ſaid citie a certaine gallie from Alexandria,taken from the Turkes, with two hundreth fiftie and eight Chriſtians,whereof was principal,Maſter Iohn Fox,an Engliſh man,a gunner, and one of the chiefeſt that did accompliſh that great worke, whereby ſo many Chriſtians haue recouered their liberties.In token and remembrance whereof, vpon our earneſt requeſt to the ſame Iohn Fox,he hath left here an olde ſword, wherewith he ſlewe the keeper of the priſon: which ſword we doe as a monument and memoriall of ſo worthie a deede,hang vp in the chiefe place of our Couent houſe.And for becauſe all things aforeſaid, are ſuch as we will teſtifie to be true,as they are orderly paſſed, and haue therefore good credite,that ſo much as is aboue expreſſed is true,and for the more faith thereof, we the Prior, and Fathers aforeſaid, haue ratified and ſubſcribed theſe preſents.Yeuen in Gallipoly,the third of Feb.1577.

I Frier Vincent Barba, Prior of the ſame place,confirme the premiſes, as they are aboue written.
I Frier Albert Damaro, of Gallipoly,Subprior,confirme as much.
I Frier Anthony Celleler of Galli, confirme as aforeſaid.
I Frier Bartlemew of Gallipoly, confirme as aboue ſaid.
I Frier Frauncis of Gallipoly, confirme as much.

The Biſhop of Rome his letters,in the behalfe of *Iohn Fox.*

BE it knowen vnto all men,to whome this writing ſhal come,that the bringer hereof Iohn Fox Engliſhman,a Gunner,after he had ſerued captiue in the Turks gallies,by the ſpace of foureteene yeeres,at length,thorow God his helpe,taking good opportunitie, the third of Ianuarie laſt paſt,ſlew the keeper of the priſon,(whom he firſt ſtroke on the face)together with foure and twentie other Turkes,by the aſſiſtance of his fellow priſoners: and with 266. Chriſtians,(of whoſe libertie he was the author) launched from Alexandria, and from thence, arriued firſt at Gallipoly in Candie,and afterwards at Tarento in Apulia: the written teſtimony and credite of which things,as alſo of others, the ſame Iohn Fox hath in publike tables from Naples.

Vpon Eaſter eue,he came to Rome,and is now determined to take his iourney to the Spaniſh Court,hoping there to obtaine ſome reliefe toward his liuing: wherefore the poore diſtreſſed man humbly beſeecheth,and we in his behalfe,do in the bowels of Chriſt,deſire you, that taking compaſſion of his former captiuitie,and preſent penurie, you doe not onely ſuffer him freely to paſſe throughout all your cities and townes,but alſo ſuccour him with your charitable almes,the reward whereof, you ſhall hereafter moſt aſſuredly receiue,which we hope you will affoord to him, whome with tender affection of pitie, wee commend vnto you. At Rome,the xx. of Aprill. 1577.

Thomas Grolos Engliſhman,Biſhop of Aſtraphen.
Richard Sillem Prior Anglia.
Andreas Ludouicus,Regiſter to our Soueraigne Lord the Pope, which for the greater credite of the premiſes,haue ſet my ſeale to theſe preſents. At Rome,the day and yeere aboue written.
Mauricius Clement,the gouernour and keeper of the Engliſh Hoſpitall in the citie.

The King of Spaine his letters to the Lieutenant, for the *placing of Iohn Fox in the office of a Gunner,&c.*

TO the illuſtrious Prince,Veſpaſian Gonſaga Colonna,our Lieutenant and Captaine Generall of our Realme of Valentia,hauing conſideration, that Iohn Fox Engliſhman,hath ſerued vs,and was one of the moſt principall, which tooke away from the Turkes a certaine gallie,which they haue brought to Tarento,wherein were two hundred,fiftie and eight Chriſtian captiues.We licence him to practiſe,and giue him the office of a Gunner, and haue ordained,that he goe to our ſaid Realme,there to ſerue in the ſaid office in the Gallies,which by our commaundement are lately made. And we doe commaund,that you cauſe to be paied to him eight duckets pay a moneth,for the time that he ſhall ſerue in the ſaide Gallies as a Gunner,or till we can otherwiſe prouide for him, the ſaid eight duckets monethly of the money which

which is already of our prouision, present and to come, and to haue regarde of those which come with him. From Escuriall the tenth of August, 1577.

I the King.

Iuan del Gado.

And vnder that a confirmation of the Councel.

Verses written by A. M. to the curteous Readers, who was present at Rome, when Iohn Fox receiued his letters of the Pope.

Leauing at large all fables vainely vsde,
all trifling toyes that doe no truthe import:
Loe here how the'nd (at length) though long de-
vnfoldeth plaine a true and rare report: (fusd
To glad those minds, who seek their countries welth
by profered paines t'enlarge his happy helth.
At Rome I was, when Fox did there arine:
therefore I may sufficiently expresse
What gallant ioy his deedes did there reuiue
in the harts of those which heard his valiantnes.
And how the Pope did recompence his paines,
and letters gaue to moue his greater gaines.

I was at Rome in the English house, when Fox was there, and receiued his letters.

But yet I know that many doe misdoubt,
that those his paines are fables and vntrue:
Not onely I in this will beare him out,
but diuerse more that did his pattents view.
And vnto those so boldely I dare say: (wo
that naught but trueth Iohn Fox doth here bring.
Besides heer's one was slaue with him in thrall,
lately returnd into our native land:
This witnes can this matter perfect all,
what needeth more? for witnes he may stand.
And thus I ende, vnfolding what I knowe:
the other man more larger proofe can show.

Honos alit artes. A. M.

The ambassage of Master Edmund Hogan, one of the sworne *Esquires of her Maesties person, from her Highnes, to Mully Abdelmelech*, Emperour of Maroccus, and King of Fes, and Sus: in the yeere 1577. written by himselfe.

May.

Master Hogan his arriuall at Asafi in Barbarie.

I Edmund Hogan, being appointed Ambassadour from the Queenes Maiestie, to the aboue named Emperour and King Mully Abdelmelech, departed with my companie, and seruants from London, the two and twentie day of April, 1577. being imbarked in the good shippe, called the Gallion of London, and arriued in Asafi, a port of Barbarie, the one and twentie day of May, next following. Immediately I sent Leonell Edgerton a shoare, with my letters, directed to Iohn Williams, and Iohn Bampton, who dispatched a Trottero to Maroccus, to know the kings pleasure for my repaire to the Court, which letters came to their hands on the Thursday night.

They with all speede, gaue the King vnderstanding of it, who being glad thereof, speeded the next day certaine Captaines, with souldiers, and tents, with other prouision, to Asafi: so that vpon Whitsonday at night, the said Captaines, with Iohn Bampton, Robert Washborne, and Robert Lyon, and the kings officers, came late to Asafi.

In the meane time, I remained a boord, & caused some of the goods to be discharged for lightning of the shippe, and I wrote in my letters, that I would not lande, till I knewe the Kings pleasure.

The 22. day, being Saturday, the Make speede arriued into the roade about two of the clocke in the afternoone.

The 27. day, being Whitsonday, came aboord the Gallion Iohn Bampton, and others, giuing me to vnderstand, how much the King reioyced of my safe arriuall, comming from the Queenes Maiestie, and how that for my safe conduite to the Court he had sent foure Captaines, and 100. souldiers well appointed, with a horse furnished, which he vsed himselfe to ride on, with al other furniture accordingly: they wished me also to come on land, in ꝑ best order I could, as well for my selfe, as my men, which I did, hauing to the number of 10. men, whereof three were trumpetters.

The

The ſhips being foure, appointed themſelues in the beſt order they could, for the beſt ſhew, and ſhot off all their ordinance, to the value of twentie Markes in powder.

At my comming a ſhoare, I found all the ſouldiers well appointed on horſebacke, the Captaines, and the Gouernour of the towne ſtanding as neere the water ſide as they could, with a Jennet of the kings, and receiued me from the boate, declaring how glad his maieſtie was of my ſafe arriuall, comming from the Queenes maieſtie my maiſtreſſe, and that he had ſent them to attend vpon me, being his pleaſure that I ſhould tary there on ſhore, fiue or ſixe dayes for my refreſhing.

So being mounted vpon the Jennet, they conducted mee through the towne into a faire fielde vpon the Sea ſide, where was a tent prouided for me, and all the ground ſpread with Turkie carpets, and the Caſtle diſcharged a peale of ordinaunce, and all things neceſſarie were brought into my tent, where I both tooke my table, and lodged, and had other conuenient tentes for my ſeruaunts.

The ſouldiors enuironed the tents, and watched about vs day and night as long as I lay there, although I ſought my ſpeedier diſpatch.

On the Wedneſday towardes night, I tooke my horſe and trauailed ten miles to the firſt place of water that we could finde, and there pitched our tents till the next morning, and ſo trauailed till ten of the clocke, and then pitched our tents till 4. and ſo trauailed as long as day light would ſuffer, about 26. miles that day. *In Barbarie they haue no Innes, but they lodge in open fieldes where they can find water.*

The next day being Friday, I trauailed in like order, but eight and twentie miles at the leaſt, and by a Riuer beyng about ſixe miles within ſight of the Citie of Moroccus wee pitched our tents.

Immediately after came all our Engliſh merchaunts, and the French on horſebacke to meete me, and before night there came an Alcayde from the king with fiftie men, and diuers mules laden with victuall and banket, for my ſupper, declaring vnto me how glad the king ſhewed himſelfe to heare of the Queenes maieſtie, and that his pleaſure was I ſhould be receiued into his countrey as neuer any Chriſtian the like: and deſired to knowe what time the next day I would come into his citie, becauſe he would that all the Chriſtians, as alſo his nobilitie, ſhould meete me, and willed Iohn Bampton to be with him early in the morning, which he did. *The ſingular humanitie of the king to our Ambaſſador.*

About ſeuen of the clocke being accompanied with the French and Engliſh merchants, and a great number of ſouldiours, I paſſed towardes the Citie, and by that time I had trauailed two miles, there met me all the Chriſtians of the Spaniardes and Portingals to receiue me, which I knowe was more by the kings commaundement, then of any good wils of themſelues: for ſome of them although they ſpeake me faire, hung downe their heads like dogs, and eſpecially the Portingals, and I countenanced them accordingly. *The Spaniards and Portingals were commanded by the king in pain of death, to meete the Engliſh Ambaſſador.*

So I paſſed on till I came within two Engliſh miles of the Citie, and then Iohn Bampton returned, ſhewing mee that the king was ſo glad of my comming, that hee could not deuiſe to doe too much, to ſhewe the good will that hee did owe to the Queenes Maieſtie, and her Realme.

His counſailers mette me without the gates, and at the entrie of the gates, his footemen and guard were placed on both ſides of my horſe, and ſo brought me to the kings palace.

The king ſate in his chaire with his counſaile about him, as well the Moores as the Elchies, and, according to his order giuen vnto mee before, I there declared my meſſage in Spaniſh, and made deliuerie of the Queenes Maieſties letters, and all that I ſpake at that preſent in Spaniſhe, hee cauſed one of his Elchies to declare the ſame to the Moores preſent in the Larbe tongue.

Which done, he anſwered me againe in Spaniſh, yeelding to the Queenes Maieſtie great thankes, and offering himſelfe and his countrey to bee at her Graces commaundement, and then commaunded certayne of his Counſailers to conduct mee to my lodging, not beyng farre from the Court.

The houſe was faire after the faſhion of that countrey, being daily well furniſhed with all kind of victuall at the kings charge.

The ſame night hee ſent for mee to the Court, and I had conference with him aboue the ſpace of two howers, where I thoughly declared the charge committed vnto mee from her Maieſtie, finding him conformable, willing to pleaſure, and not to vrge her Maieſtie with any demaundes, more then conueniently ſhee might willingly conſent vnto, hee knowyng that out of his countrey, the Realme of England might be better ſerued with lackes, then hee in compariſon from vs.

The king of Spain sought to disgrace the Queene and her Ambassadour.

Further he gaue mee to vnderstand, that the king of Spaine had sent vnto him for a licence, that an Ambassadour of his might come into his countrey, and had made great meanes that if the Queenes Maiestie of England sent any vnto him, that he would not giue any credite or intertainment, albeit (sayd he) I know what the king of Spaine is, and what the Queene of England and her Realme is: for I neither like of him nor of his religion, being so gouerned by the Inquisition, that he can doe nothing of himselfe.

Therefore when he commeth vpon the licence which I haue granted, he shall well see how little account I will make of him and Spaine, and how greatly I will extoll you for the Queenes maiestie of England.

Hee shall not come to my presence as you haue done, and shall daily: for I minde to accept of you, as my companion, and one of my house, whereas he shall attend twentie dayes after hee hath done his message.

After the end of this speach, I deliuered Sir Thomas Gresham's letters, when as hee tooke me by the hand, and led me downe a long court, to a palace, where there ranne a faire fountaine of water, and there sitting himselfe in a chaire, he commanded me to sit downe in another, and there called for such simple Musicians as he had.

The king of Barbarie sent into England for Musicians.

Then I presented him with a great base Lute, which he most thankefully accepted, and then he was desirous to heare of the Musicians, and I tolde him that there was great care had to prouide them, and that I did not doubt, but vpon my returne they should come with the first ship. He is willing to giue them good entertainment with prouision of victuall, and to liue according to their law and conscience, wherein he vseth none to the contrary.

I find him to be one that liueth greatly in the feare of God, being well exercised in the Scriptures, as well in the olde Testament, as also in the New, and he beareth a greater affection to our Nation then to others, because of our religion, which forbiddeth worship of idoles, and the Moores called him the Christian king.

A rich gift bestowed vpon our Ambassadour.

The same night being the first of June, I continued with him till twelue of the clocke, and he seemed to haue so good liking of me, ỳ he tooke from his girdle, a short dagger, being set with 200. stones, rubies, and turkies, and did bestow it vpon me, and so I being conducted, returned to my lodging for that time.

The next day because he knew it to be Sunday and our Sabboth day he did let me rest. But on the Munday in the afternoone he sent for me, and I had conference with him againe, & Musike.

Likewise on the Tuesday by three of the clocke he sent for me into his garden, finding him layd vpon a silke bed, complaining of a sore leg: yet after long conference hee walked into an other Orchard, whereas hauing a faire banketting house, and a great water, and a new gallie in it, he went aboord the gallie, and tooke me with him, and passed the space of two or three howers, shewing the great experience he had in Gallies, wherein (as he sayd) he had exercised himselfe eighteene yeeres in his youth.

After supper he shewed me his horses and other commodities that he had about his house, and since that night I haue not seene him, for that he hath kept in with his sore legge, but he hath sent to me daily.

June. The 13. of June at six of the clocke at night, I had againe audience with the king, and I continued with him till midnight, hauing debated as well for the Queenes commission, as for the well dealing with her merchants for their traffique here in these partes, saying, he would do much more for the Queenes maiestie and the Realme, offering that all English ships with her subiects may with good securitie enter into his portes and dominions, as well in trade of merchaundise, as for victuall & water, as also in time of warre with any her enemies, to bring in prises, and to make sales as occasion should serue, or els to depart againe with them at their pleasure.

The offers of the king to our English merchants.

Likewise for all English shippes that shall passe along his coast of Barbarie, and thorow the Secrets into the Leuant seas, that he would graunt safe conduct that the said ships and merchants with their goods, might passe into the Leuant seas, and so to the Turkes dominions, and the king of Argiers, as his owne, and that he would write to the Turke, and to the king of Argier his letters for the well vsing of our ships and goods.

Also that hereafter no Englishmen, that by any meanes may be taken captiues, shall bee sold within any of his dominions: whereupon I declared that the Queenes maiestie accepting of these his offers, was pleased to confirme the intercourse, and trade of our merchants within this his countrey, as also to pleasure him with such commodities as he should haue need of, to furnish the necessities and wants of his countrey in trade of merchandize, so as he required nothing contrary to her honour and law, and the breach of league with the christian princes her neighbors.

A good prouiso.

The

The ſame night I preſented the king with the caſe of combes, and deſired his maieſtie to haue ſpeciall regard that the ſhips might be laden backe againe, for that I found litle ſtore of Salt peter in readineſſe in Iohn Bamptons hands. He anſwered me that I ſhould haue all the aſſiſtance therein that he could, but that in Sus he thought to haue ſome ſtore in his houſe there, as alſo that the Mountayners had made much in a readineſſe: I requeſted that he would ſend downe, which he promiſed to doe.

The eighteene day I was with him againe, and ſo continued there till night, and he ſhewed me his houſe with paſtime in ducking with water Spaniels, and baiting buls with his Engliſh dogges.

At this time I mooued him againe for the ſending downe to Sus, which he graunted to doe, and the 24. day there departed Alcayde Mammie, with Lionell Edgerton, and Rowland Guy to Sus, and caried with them for our accompts and his company, the kings letters to his brother Muly Hammet, and Alcayde Shauan, and the Vicetroy.

The 23. day the king ſent me out of Morocco to his garden called Shersbonare, with his gard, and Alcayde Mamoute, and the 24. at night I came to the court to ſee a Moris dance, and a play of his Elchies. He promiſed me audience the next day being Tueſday, but he put it off till Thurſday: and the Thurſday at night I was ſent for to the king after ſupper, and then he ſent Alcayde Rodwan, and Alcayde Gowry to conferre with me, but after a litle talke I deſired to be brought to the king for my diſpatch. And being brought to him, I preferred two bils of Iohn Bamptons which he had made for proviſion of Salt peter, alſo two bils for the quiet traffique of our Engliſh merchants, and bils for ſugers to be made by the Iewes, as well for the debts paſt, as hereafter, and for good order in the Ingenios. Alſo I mooued him againe for the Salpeter, and other diſpatches, which he referred to be agreed vpon by the two Alcaydes. But the Friday being the 20. the Alcaydes could not intend it, and vpon Saturday Alcayde Rodwan fell ſicke, ſo on Sunday we made meanes to the king, and that afternoone I was ſent for to conferre vpon the bargaine, with the Alcaydes and others, but did not agree.

Vpon Tueſday I wrote a letter to the king for my diſpatch, and the ſame afternoone I was called againe to the court, and referred all things to the king, accepting his offer of Salt peter.

That night againe the king had me into his gallie, and the Spaniels did hunt the ducke.

The Thurſday I was appointed to way the 300. kintals groſſe of Salt peter, and that afternoone the Tabybe came vnto me to my lodging, ſhewing me that the king was offended with Iohn Bampton for diuers cauſes.

The Sunday night late, being the 7. of July, I got the king to forgiue all to Iohn Bampton, July.
and the king promiſed me to ſpeake againe with me vpon Munday.

Vpon Tueſday I wrote to him againe for my diſpatch, and then he ſent Fray Lewes to me, and ſayd that he had order to write.

Vpon Wedneſday I wrote againe, and hee ſent mee worde that vpon Thurſday I ſhould come and bee diſpatched, ſo that I ſhould depart vpon Friday without faile, being the twelfth of July.

So the Friday after according to the kings order and appointment, I went to court, and whereas motion and petition was made for the confirmation of the demands which I had preferred, they were all graunted, and likewiſe the priuiledges which were on the behalfe of our Engliſh merchants requeſted, were with great fauour and readineſſe yeelded vnto. And whereas the Iewes there reſident, were to our men in certaine round ſummes indebted, the Emperors pleaſure and commaundement was, that they ſhould without further excuſe or delay, pay and diſcharge the ſame. And thus at length I was diſmiſſed with great honor and ſpeciall countenance, ſuch as hath not ordinarily bene ſhewed to other Ambaſſadors of the Chriſtians.

And touching the priuate affaires intreated vpon betwixt her Maieſtie and the Emperor, I had letters from him to ſatiſfie her highneſſe therein. So to conclude, hauing receiued the like honourable conduct from his courte, as I had for my repaire at my firſt landing, I embarked my ſelfe with my forelayde company, and arriuing not long after in England, I repaired to her maieſties Courte, and ended my Ambaſſage to her highneſſe good liking, with relation of my ſeruice performed.

A Letter written from Goa, the principall Citie of all the East Indies, by one Thomas Steuens an Englishman, and sent to his father, M. Thomas Steuens, An. 1579.

AFter most humble commendations: These shall be to craue your daily blessing, with like commendations vnto my mother, and with all, to certifie you of my being, according to your will and my dutie. I wrote vnto you taking my iourney from Italie to Portingall, which letters I thinke are come to your handes, so that presuming thereupon, I thinke I haue the lesse need at this time to tell you the cause of my departing, which neuertheless in one word I may conclude, if I doe but name, obedience. I came to Lisbone toward the ende of March, eight dayes before the departure of the ships, so late that if they had not bene stayed about some weightie matters, they had bene long gone before our comming: in so much that there were others ordained to goe in our places, that the kings prouision and ours also might not be in vayne. Neuertheless, our sudden comming tooke place, and the 4. of Aprill, fiue shippes departed for Goa, wherein besides shipmen and souldiours, there were a great number of children which in the seas beare out better then men, and no maruell, when that many women also passe very well. The setting forth from the porte, I neede not to tell how solemne it is with trumpets, and shooting of ordinaunce, you may easily imagine it, considering that they goe in the maner of warre. The tenth of the foresayd moneth, we came to the sight of Porto Sancto neere vnto Madera, where an English ship set vpon ours, (which was then also alone) with a few shots, which did no harme, but after that our ships had laied out her greatest ordinance, they straight departed as they came. The English ship was very faire and great, which I was sory to see so ill occupied, for she went rouing about, so that wee sawe her againe at the Canarian Isles, vnto the which we came the 13. of the said moneth, and good laisure wee had to wonder at the high mountaine of the Island Tenerif, for wee wandered betweene that and great Canaria foure dayes by reason of contrary windes: and briefly, such euill weather wee had vntill the 14. of May, that they dispaired to compasse the Cape of Good Hope that peere. Neuertheless, taking our voiage betweene Guinea, and the Islands of Capo Verde, without seeing of any land at all, we arriued at length vnto the coast of Guinie, which the Portingals so call, chiefly that part of the burning Zone, which is from the 6. degree vnto the Equinoctiall, in which partes they suffered so many inconueniences of heates, and lacke of windes, that they thinke themselues happy when they haue passed it: for sometimes the ship standeth there almost by the space of many dayes, sometime she goeth but in such order that it were almost as good to stand still. And the greatest part of this coast not cleare, but thicke and cloudie, full of thunder and lightning, and raine so vnwholesome, that if the water stand a little while, all is full of wormes, and falling on the meate which is hanged vp, it maketh it straight full of wormes. Along all that coast we oftentimes saw a thing swimming vpon the water like a cockes combe (which they call a ship of Guinea) but the coulour much fairer which combe standeth vpon a thing almost like the swimmer of a fish in coulour and bignesse, and beareth vnderneath in the water, strings, which sauеth it from turning ouer. This thing is so poisonous, that a man cannot touch it without great perill. In this coast, that is to say, from the 6. degree vnto the Equinoctiall, we spent no lesse then 30. dayes, partly with contrary windes, partly with calme. The 30. of May we passed the Equinoctiall with contentation, directing our course as wel as we could to passe the promontorie, but in all that gulfe, and in all the way beside, we found so often calmes, that the expertest mariners wondred at it. And in places where are alwayes wont to be most horrible tempests, we found most quiet calmes which was very troublesome to those ships which be the greatest of all other, and cannot goe without good windes. Insomuch, that when it is tempest almost intollerable for other ships, and maketh them maine all their sailes, these hold vp, and saile excellent well, vnlesse the waters be too too furious, which seldome happened in our nauigation. You shall vnderstand, that being passed the line, they cannot straightway goe the next way to the promontorie: but according to the wind, they draw alwaies as neere South as they can to put themselues in the latitude of the point, which is 35. degrees and an halfe, and then they take their course towards the East, and so compasse the point. But the wind serued vs so, that at 30. degrees we did direct our course toward the point or promontorie of Good Hope.

You know that it is hard to saile from East to West, or contrary, because there is no fixed point in all the skie, whereby they may direct their course, wherefore I shall tell you what helpes God prouided for these men. There is not a fowle that appeareth, or signe in the aire, or in the sea, which they haue not written, which haue made the voyages heretofore. Wherfore, partly by their owne experience, & pondering withal what space the ship is able to make with such a wind, & such direction,

and

and partly by the experience of others, whose bookes and naugations they haue, they geese where abours they be, touching degrees of longitude, for of latitude they be alwayes sure: but the greatest and best industrie of all, is to marke the variation of the needle or compasse, which in the Meridian of the Island of S. Michael, which is one of the Asores in the latitude of Lisbone is iust North, and thence swarueth towards the East so much, that betwixt the Meridian aforesaid, and the point of Affrica it carieth 3. or 4. quarters of 32. And againe in ỳ point of Affrike, a little beyond the point that is called Cape das Agulias (in English the needles) it returneth againe vnto the North, and that place passed, it swarueth againe toward the West, as it did before proportionally. As touching our first sigues, the neerer we came to the people of Affrike, the more strange kindes of Fowles appeared, insomuch that when we came within no lesse then 30. leagues (almost an 100. miles) and 600. miles as we thought from any Island, as good as 3000. fowles of sundry kindes followed our ship: some of them so great that their wings being opened from one point to the other, contained 7. spans, as the mariners said. A maruelous thing to see how God prouided, so ỳ in so wide a sea these fowles are all fat, & nothing wanteth them. The Portingals haue named thē all according to some propriete which they haue: some they cal Rushtailes, because their tailes be not proportionable to their bodies, but long & smal like a rush, some forked tailes because they be very broad and forked, some veluet sleeues, because they haue wings of the colour of veluet, & boweth them as a man boweth his elbow. This bird is alwaies welcome, for he appeareth neerest the Cape. I should neuer make an end if I should tell all particulars: but it shal suffise briefly to touch a few, which yet shalbe sufficient, if you marke them, to giue occasion to glorifie almightie God in his wonderful works, and such varietie in his creatures. And to speake some what of fishes in all places of calme, especially in the burning zone, neere ỳ line (for without we neuer saw any) there waited on our ship fishes as long as a man, which they cal Tuberones, they come to eate such things as from the ship fall into the sea, not refusing men themselues if they light vpon them. And if they find any meat tied in the sea, they take it for theirs. These haue waiting on them 6. or 7. final fishes (which neuer depart) with gardes blew and greene round about their bodies, like comely seruing men: and they go two or three before him, and some on euery side. Moreouer, they haue other fishes which cleaue alwayes vnto their bodie, and seeme to take such superfluities as grow about them, and they are said to enter into their bodies also to purge them if they needs. The mariners in time past haue eaten of them, but since they haue seene them eate men, their stomacks abhorre them. Neuertheless, they draw thē vp with great hookes, and kil of them as many as they can, thinking that they haue made a great reuenge. There is another kind of fish as big almost as a herring, which hath wings and flieth, and they are together in great number. These haue two enemies, the one in the sea, the other in the aire. In the sea the fish which is called Albocore, as big as a Salmon followeth them with great swiftnes to take them. This poore fish not being able to swim fast, for he hath no finnes, but swimmeth with mouing of his taile, shutting his wings, lifteth himselfe aboue the water, and flieth not very high: The Albocore seeing that, although he haue no wings, yet giueth he a great leape out of the water, and sometimes catcheth him, or els he keepeth himselfe vnder the water going that way on as fast as he flieth. And when the fish being wearie of the aire, or thinking himself out of danger, returneth into the water, the Albocore meeteth with him: but sometimes his other enemie the sea Crow, catcheth him before he falleth. With these and like sights, but alwayes making our supplications to God for good weather and saluation of the ship, we came at length vnto the point, so famous and feared of all mē: but we found there no tempest, only great waues, where our Pilot was a little ouerseene: for whereas commonly all other neuer come within sight of land, but seeing signs ordinarie, and finding bottome, go their way sure and safe, he thinking himselfe to haue wind at will, shot so nigh the land, that the wind turning into the South, and the waues being exceeding great, rolled vs so neere the land, that the ship stood in lesse then 14. fadoms of water, no more then fiue miles from the Cape, which is called Las Agulias, and there we stoode as vtterly cast away: for vnder vs were rockes of maine stone so sharpe, and cutting, that no anker could hold the ship, the shore so euill that nothing could take land, and the land it selfe so full of Tigers, and people that are sauage, and killers of all strangers, that we had no hope of like nor comfort, but onely in God and a good conscience. Notwithstanding, after we had lost ankers, hoising vp the sailes for to get the ship a coast in some safer place, or when it should please God, it pleased his mercy suddenly, where no man looked for helpe, to fill our sailes with winde from the land, and so we escaped thanks be to God. And the day following, being in the place where they are alwayes woont to catch fish, we also fell a fishing, and so many they tooke, that they serued all the ship for that day, and part of the next. And one of them pulled vp a currall of great bignesse and price. For there they say (as we sawe by experience) that the currals doe grow in the maner of stalkes vpon the rockes in the bottome, and waxe hard and red. The

The variation of the compasse.

Signes about the Cape of Bona Speranza.

Fishes on the sea coast of Affrica.

Note.

Curran.

day of perill was the 29. of July. And you shall vnderstand that the Cape passed, there bee two wayes to India: one within the Isle of S. Laurence, which they take willingly, because they refresh themselues at Mosambique a fortnight or a moneth, not without great need, and thence in a moneth more, land in Goa. The other is without the Isle S. Laurence, which they take when they set sooth so late, and come so late to the point, that they haue no time to take the foresayd Mosambique, and then they goe beauly, because in this way they take no port. And by reason of the long nauigation, and want of food and water, they fall into sundry diseases, their gummes ware great and swell, and they are faine to cut them away, their legs swell, and all the body becommeth sore, and so benummed, that they cannot stirre hand nor foote, and so they die for weakenesse, others fall into flures and agues, and die thereby. And this way it was our chaunce to make: yet though we had more then one hundred and fiftie sicke, there died not past 27. which losse they esteemed not much in respect of other times. Though some of ours were diseased in this sort, yet thankes be to God, I had my health all the way, contrary to the expectation of many: God send me my health so well in the land, if it may be, to his honour and seruice. This way is full of priuie rocks and quick sandes, so that sometimes we durst not saile by night, but by the prouidence of God we saw nothing, nor neuer found botome vntill we came to the coast of India. When we had passed againe the line, and were come to the third degree, or somewhat more, we sawe crabs swimming on the water that were red as though they had bene sodden, but this was no signe of land. After, about the 11. degree, the space of many dayes, more then ten thousand fishes by estimation followed round about our ship, whereof wee caught so many, that for fifteene dayes we did eate nothing els, and they serued our turne very well: for at this time we had neither meate nor almost any thing els to eate, our nauigation growing so long that it drewe neere to seuen monethes, where as commonly they goe it in fiue, I meane when they saile the inner way. But these fishes were not signe of land, but rather of deepe sea. At length we tooke a couple of birdes, which were a kind of Hawkes, wherein they ioyed much, thinking that they had bene of India, but in deede they were of Arabia, as wee found afterward. And we that thought we had bene neere India, were in the same latitude neere Zocotera, an Isle in the mouth of the red sea. But there God sent vs great winds from the North east or Northnortheast, whereupon vnwillingly they bare vp toward the East, and thus we went ten dayes without seeing signe of land, whereby they perceiued their errour: for they had directed their course before, alwayes Northeast, coucting to multiplie degrees of latitude, but partly the difference of the Needle, and most of all the running seas, which at that time ran Northwest, had drawen vs to this other danger, had not God sent vs this wind, which at length waxed larger, and restored vs to our right course. These running seas be so perillous that they deceiue the most part of the gouernours, and some be so litle curious, contenting themselues with ordinarie experience, that they care not to seeke out any meanes to know when they swarue, neither by the compasse, nor by any other triall. The first signe of land, were certaine fowles which they knew to bee of India: the second, boughes of palmes & sedges: the third, snakes swimming on the water, and substance which they call by ꝑ name of a coine of mony, as broad, and as round as a groat, wonderfully printed and stamped of nature, like vnto some coine. And these two last signes be so certaine, that the next day after, if the winde serue, they see land, which we did to our great ioy, when all our water (for you know they make no beere in those partes) and victuals began to fayle vs. And in Goa we came the 24. of October, there being receiued with passing great charitie. The people be tawnie, but not disfigured in their lippes and noses, as the Moores and Cafres of Ethiopia. They that be not of reputation, or at least the most part, go naked, sauing an apron of a spanne long, and as much in breedth before them, and a lace two fingers broad before them, girded about with a string and no more: and thus they thinke themselues as well as we with all our trimming. Of the fruits and trees that be here, I cannot now speake, for I should make another letter as long as this. For hitherto I haue not seene tree here, whose like I haue seene in Europe, the vine excepted, which neuertheless here is to no purpose, so that all the wines are brought out of Portingall. The drinke of this countrey is good water, or wine of the Palme tree, or of a fruite called Cocos. And this shall suffise for this time. If God send me my health, I shall haue opportunitie to write to you once againe. Now the length of my letter compelleth me to take my leaue, and thus I wish your most prosperous health. From Goa the 10. of November. 1579.

Two wayes beyond the Cape of Good Hope.

They commonly saile from Lisbone to Goa in fiue moneths.

Running seas very dangerous.

Certaine signs of land.

They arriued at Goa the 24. of October.

Your louing Sonne

Thomas Steuens.

The

The letters ſent from the Imperiall Muſulmanlike highneſſe *of Zuldan Murad Chan, to the ſacred regall Maieſtie of Elizabeth* Queene of England, the fifteenth of March 1579, conteining the grant of the firſt priuileges.

IN greatneſſe and glorie moſt renowmed Elizabeth, moſt ſacred Queene, and noble prince of the moſt mightie worſhippers of Jeſus, moſt wiſe gouernor of the cauſes and affaires of the people and familie of Nazareth, cloud of moſt pleaſant raine, and ſweeteſt fountaine of nobleneſſe and vertue, ladie and heire of the perpetuall happineſſe and glorie of the noble Realme of England, (whom all ſorres ſeeke vnto and ſubmit themſelues) we wiſh moſt proſperous ſucceſſe and happie ends to all your actions, and doe offer vnto you ſuch pleaſures and curteſies as are worthy of our mutuall and eternall familiaritie: thus ending (as beſt beſeemeth vs) our former ſalutations.

In moſt friendly maner we giue you to vnderſtand, that a certeine man hath come vnto vs in the name of your moſt excellent Regall Maieſtie, commending vnto vs from you all kindneſſe, curteſie and friendly offices on your part, and did humbly require that our Imperiall highneſſe would vouchſafe to giue leaue and libertie to him and vnto ‖ two other merchants of your kingdome to reſort hither and returne againe, and that by way of traffike they might be ſuffered to trade hither with their goods and merchandizes to our Imperiall dominions, and in like ſort to make their returne.

‖ Theſe two were Sir Edward Oſborne and maiſter Ruth. Draper.

Our ſtately Court and Countrey hath beene euer open for the acceſſe both of our enemies and friends. But becauſe we are informed that your moſt excellent Regall Maieſtie doth abound with good will, humanitie, & all kinde of louing affection towards vs, ſo much the rather ſhall the ſame our Countrey be alwayes open to ſuch of your ſubiects, as by way of merchandize ſhall trade hither: and we will neuer faile to aid and ſuccor any of them that are or ſhall be willing to eſteeme of our friendſhip, fauor, and aſſiſtance: but will reckon it ſome part of our duetie to gratifie them by all good meanes. And foraſmuch as our Imperiall highneſſe is giuen to vnderſtand that your moſt excellent Regall Maieſtie doth excell in bountie and curteſie, we therefore haue ſent out our Imperiall commandement to all our kings, iudges, and trauellers by ſea, to all our Captaines and voluntarie ſeafaring men, all condemned perſons, and officers of Ports and cuſtomes, ſtraightly charging and commanding them, that ſuch foreſaid perſons as ſhall reſort hither by ſea from the Realme of England, either with great or ſmall veſſels to trade by way of merchandize, may lawfully come to our Imperiall dominions, and freely returne home againe, and that no man ſhall dare to moleſt or trouble them. And if in like ſort they ſhall come into our dominions by land, either on foote or on horſebacke, no man ſhall at any time withſtand or hinder them: but as our familiars and confederates, the French, Uenetians, Polonians, and the ‖ king of Germanie, with diuers other our neighbours about vs, haue libertie to come hither, and to returne againe into their owne countries, in like ſort the merchants of your moſt excellent Regall Maieſties kingdome, ſhall haue ſafe conduct and leaue to repaire hither to our Imperiall dominions, and ſo to returne againe into their owne Country: ſtreightly charging that they be ſuffered to vſe and trade all kinde of merchandize as any other Chriſtians do, without let or diſturbance of any.

‖ He calleth the Germaine emperor but king of Germanie.

Therefore when theſe our Imperiall letters ſhall be brought to your moſt excellent Regal Maieſtie, it ſhall be meet, according to our beneuolence, humanitie and familiaritie towards your moſt excellent Maieſtie, that you likewiſe bethinke your ſelfe of your like beneuolence, humanitie and friendſhippe towardes vs, to open the gate thereof vnto vs, and to nourish by all good meanes this kindneſſe and friendſhip: and that like libertie may be granted by your highneſſe to our ſubiects and merchants to come with their merchandizes to your dominions, either by ſea with their ſhips, or by land with their wagons or horſes, and to returne home againe: and that your moſt excellent Regall Maieſtie do alwayes declare your humanitie, good will, and friendſhip towards vs, and alwayes keepe open the doze thereof vnto vs.

The Turke demaundeth like priuileges for his ſubiects in the Queenes dominions.

Giuen at our citie of Conſtantinople the fifteenth day of March, and in the yeere of our moſt holy prophet Mahomet ‖ 937.

‖ With vs the yeere 1579.

The

The answere of her Maiestie to the aforesaid Letters of the Great Turke, sent the 25 of October 1579, in the Prudence of London by Maister Richard Stanley.

ELIZABETHA Dei ter maximi, & vnici cœli, terræq; Conditoris gratia, Angliæ, Franciæ & Hiberniæ regina, fidei Christianæ contra omnes omnium inter Christianos degentium, & Christi nomen falsò profitentium Idololatrias inuictissima & potentissima Defensatrix, augustissimo, inuictissimóque principi Sultan Murad Chan, Turcici regni dominatori potentissimo, Imperijq; orientis Monarchę supra omnes soli & supremo, salutem, & multos cum rerum optimarũ affluentia fœlices, & fortunatos annos. Augustissime & inuictissime Cæsar, accepimus inuictissimæ Cæsareæ vestræ celsitudinis literas, die decimo quinto Martij currentis anni ad nos scriptas Constantinopoli, ex quibus intelligimus quàm benignè quàmq; clementer, literæ supplices quæ Cæsareæ vestræ celsitudini, a quodam subdito nostro Guilielmo Harebrowno in Imperiali Celsitudinis vestræ ciuitate Constantinopoli commorante offerebantur, literæ profectionis pro se & socijs eius duobus hominibus mercatoribus subditis nostris cum mercibus suis ad terras ditionesq; Imperio vestro subiectas tam per mare quàm per terras, indeq; reuersionis veniæ potestatisq; humillimam complexæ petitionem, ab inuictissima vestra Cæsarea celsitudine, acceptæ fuerunt. Neq; id solùm, sed quàm mira cum facilitate, dignaq; augustissima Cæsarea clementia, quod erat in dictis literis supplicibus positum, ei socijsq; suis donatum & concessum fuit, pro ea, vti videtur, solùm opinione, quam de nobis, & nostra amicitia vestra celsitudo concepit. Quod singulare beneficium in dictos subditos nostros collatum tam gratè tamq; beneuolè accepimus (maximas celsitudini vestræ propterea & agentes, & habentes gratias) nullo vt vnquam patiemur tempore, pro facultatum nostrarum ratione, proq; ea quam nobis inseuit ter maximus mundi monarcha Deus (per quem & cuius auspicijs regnamus) naturæ bonitate, qua remotissimas nos esse voluit, & abhorrentes ab ingratitudinis omni vel minima suspitione, docuitq; nullorum vnquam vt principum, vllis in nos meritis nos sineremus vinci, aut superari, vt apud ingratam principem tantum beneficium deposuisse, se vestra Celsitudo existimet. Propterea q; animum nostrum in præsentiarum, vestræ celsitudini emetimur, benè sentiendo & prædicando, quantopere nos obstrictas beneficij huius in subditos nostros collati putemus memoriâ sempiternâ: longè vberiorem, & ampliorem gratitudinis erga vestram celsitudinem nostræ testificationem daturæ, cum tempora incident vt possimus, & à nobis desiderabitur. Quoniam autem quæ nostris paucis subditis, eaq; suis ipsorum precibus, sine vlla intercessione nostra concessa donatio est, in æquè libera potestate sita est ad omnes terras ditionesq; Imperio vestro subiectas, cum mercibus suis tam per mare quàm per terras, eundi & redeundi, atq; inuictissimæ Cæsareæ vestræ celsitudinis confœderatis, Gallis, Polonis, Venetis, atq; adeo regis Romanorum subditis largita vnquam aut donata fuit, celsitudinem vestram rogamus ne tam singularis beneficentiæ laus in tam angustis terminis duorum aut trium hominum concludatur, sed ad vniuersos subditos nostros diffusa, propagataque, celsitudinis vestræ beneficium eò reddat augustius, quò eiusdem donatio latiùs patebit, & ad plures pertinebit. Cuius tam singularis in nos beneficij meritum, eò erit celsitudini vestræ minùs pœnitendum, quò sunt merces illæ, quibus regna nostra abundant, & aliorum principũ ditiones egent, tam humanis vsibus commodæ tamq; necessarię, nulla gens vt sit, quæ eis carere queat, propterea q; longissimis, difficillimisq; itineribus conquisitis non vehementer gaudeat. Carius autem distrahunt alijs, quo ex labore suo quisq; victũ & quæstũ quæritat, adeo vt in earũ acquisitione vtilitas, in emptione autem ab alijs onus sit. Vtilitas celsitudinis vestræ subditis augebitur liberâ hac paucorum nostrorum hominum ad terras vestras profectione: onus minuetur, profectionis quorumcunq; subditorum nostrorum donatione. Accedet præterea quæ à nobis in celsitudinis vestræ subditos proficiscetur, par, æquaq; mercium exercendarum libertas, quoties & quando voluerint, ad regna dominiaq; nostra mercaturæ gratia accedere. Quam celsitudini vestræ pollicemur, tam amplam lateq; patentem fore, quàm est vlla à confœderatorum vestrorum vllis principibus antedictis, regibus videlicet, Romanorum, Gallorum, Pollonorum, ac republica Veneta, celsitudinis vestræ subditis vllo vnquam tempore concessa & donata. Qua in re si honestæ petitioni nostræ inuictissima Cæsarea vestra celsitudo dignabitur auscultare, facietq; vt acceptis nostris literis intelligamus gratum nè habitura sit quod ab ea contendimus & rogamus, ea proposita præstitaq; securitate, quæ subditos nostros quoscunq; ad dominia sua, terra, mariq; proficiscentes, indeq; reuertentes tutos & securos reddat ab omni quorumcúnque subditorum suorum iniuria, efficiemus vt qui

Deus

Deus opt. max. in regna dominiaq; noſtra contulit commoda (quæ tam ſingularia ſunt, omnium vt principum animos pelliceant ad amicitiam, ſummęq; neceſſitudinis coniunctionem vobiſcum contrahendam, ſtabiliendámque quo liberius tantis ſummi Dei beneficijs fruantur, quibus carere nequeunt) noſtri ſubditi ad regna dominiáque Celſitudinis veſtræ aduehant tã affluenter tamq; cumulate, vt vtriq; incommodo prædicto neceſſitatis & oneris pleniſſumè ſuccurratur. Facit præterea ſingularis iſta Celſitudinis veſtrę in nos Gentémque noſtram ſummæ beneuolentiæ ſignificatio ac fides, vt eandem in cauſam quorundam ſubditorum noſtrorum, qui captiui triremibus veſtris detinentur, interpellemus, rogemúſque, vt quoniam nullo in celſitudinem veſtram peccato ſuo, ſiuè arma in eam ferendo, ſiuè iniquiùs præter fas & ius gentium ſe gerendo in ſuos ſubditos, in hanc calamitatem inciderint, ſoluti vinculis, & libertate donati, nobis pro ſua fide & obſequio inſeruientes, cauſam vberiorem præbeant veſtræ Celſitudinis in nos humanitatem prædicandi: & Deum illum, qui ſolus, & ſupra omnia & omnes eſt acetrimus idololatriæ vindicator, ſuíque honoris contra Gentium & aliorum falſos Deos Zelotes, præcabimur, vt veſtram inuictiſſimam Cæſaream Celſitudinem, omni beatitate eorum donorum fortunet, quæ ſola & ſummè iure merito habentur deſideratiſſima.

Datæ è Regia noſtra Grenouici, prope ciuitatem noſtram Londinum, quintodecimo Menſis Octobris, Anno Ieſu Chriſti Saluatoris noſtri 1579, Regni verò noſtri viceſimo primo.

¶ *The ſame in Engliſh.*

ELizabeth by the grace of the moſt mightie God, and onely Creatour of heauen and earth, of England, Frame and Ireland Queene, the moſt inuincible and moſt mightie defender of the Chriſtian faith againſt all kinde of idolatries, of all that liue among the Chriſtians, and falſlie profeſſe the name of Chriſt, vnto the moſt Imperiall and moſt inuincible prince, Zuldan Murad Chan, the moſt mightie ruler of the kingdome of Turkie, ſole and aboue all, and moſt ſouereigne Monarch of the Eaſt Empyre, greeting, and many happy and fortunate yeeres, with abundance of the beſt things.

Moſt Imperiall and moſt inuincible Emperor, we haue receiued the letters of your mightie highneſſe written to vs from Conſtantinople the fifteenth day of March this preſent yeere, whereby we vnderſtand how gratiouſly, and how fauorably the humble petitions of one William Harebowne a ſubiect of ours, reſident in the Imperiall citie of your highneſſe preſented vnto your Maieſtie for the obteining of acceſſe for him and two other merchants more of his company our ſubiects alſo, to come with merchandizes both by ſea & land, to the countries and territories ſubiect to your gouernement, and from thence againe to returne home with good leaue and libertie, were accepted of your moſt inuincible Imperiall highneſſe, and not that onelie, but with an extraordinarie ſpeed and worthie your Imperiall grace, that which was craued by petition was granted to him, and his companie in regard onely (as it ſeemeth) of that opinion which your highneſſe conceiued of vs and our amitie: which ſingular benefit done to our aforeſaid ſubiects, we take ſo thankefully, and in ſo good part (yeelding for the ſame our greateſt thankes to your highneſſe) that we will neuer giue occaſion to your ſaid highneſſe (according as time, and the reſpect of our affayres will permit) once to thinke ſo great a pleaſure beſtowed vpon an vngratefull prince. For the almighty God, by whō, and by whoſe grace we reigne, hath planted in vs this goodneſſe of nature, that we deteſt & abhorre the leaſt ſuſpition of ingratitude, & hath taught vs not to ſuffer our ſelues to be outermatched with the good demerits of other princes. And therefore at this time we do extend our good minde vnto your highnes, by well conceiuing, and publiſhing alſo abroad, how much we repute our ſelfe bound in an euerlaſting remembrance for this good pleaſure to our ſubiects, meaning to yeeld a much more large and plentifull teſtification of our thankefulneſſe, when time conuenient ſhall fall out, and the ſame ſhall be looked for at our hands.

But whereas that grant which was giuen to a few of our ſubiects, and at their onelie requeſt without any interceſſion of ours, ſtandeth in as free a libertie of comming and going to and from all the lands and kingdomes ſubiect to your maieſtie, both by land and ſea with merchandizes, as euer was granted to any of your imperiall highneſſe confederates, as namelie to the French, the Polonians, the Venetians, as alſo to the ſubiectes of the king of the Romans, we deſire of your highneſſe that the commendation of ſuch ſingular curteſie may not be ſo narrowlie reſtrained to two or three men onely, but may be inlarged to all our ſubiects in generall, that thereby your highneſſe goodneſſe may appeare the more notable, by reaſon of the granting of the ſame to a greater number of perſons. The beſtowing of which ſo ſingular a benefit your highneſſe ſhall ſo much the leſſe repent you of, by how much the more fit & neceſſarie for the vſe of man thoſe commodities are,

wherewith

where with our kingdoms do abound, and the kingdomes of other princes do want, so there is no nation that can be without them, but are glad to come by them, although by very long and difficult trauels: and when they haue them, they sell them much deerer to others, because euery man seeketh to make profit by his labor: so that in the getting of them there is profit, but in the buying of them from others there is losse. But this profit wilbe increased to the subiects of your highnesse by this free accesse of a few of our subiectes to your dominions, as also the losse and burden walbe eased, by the permission of generall accesse to all our people. And furthermore we will grant as equall and as free a libertie to the subiects of your highnesse with vs for the vse of traffike, when they will, and as often as they will, to come, and go to and from vs and our kingdoms. Which libertie we promise to your highnesse shalbe as ample, and as large as any was euer giuen or granted to your subiects by the aforesaid princes your confederates, as namely the king of the Romans, of France, of Poleland, and the common wealth of Uenice. In which matter, if your most inuincible imperiall highnesse shall vouchsafe to incline to our reasonable request, and shall giue order vpon these our letters, that we may haue knowledge how the same is accepted of you, and whether it wilbe granted, with sufficient securitie for our subiects to go, and returne safe and secure from all violences and iniuries of your people, we on the other side will giue order, that those commodities which almightie God hath bestowed vpon our kingdoms (which are in deed so excellent, that by reason of them all princes are drawen to enter, and confirme leagues of amitie & good neighborhood with vs, by that meanes to inioy these so great blessings of God, which we haue, and they can in no case want) our subiects shall bring them so abundantly and plentifully to the kingdoms and dominions of your highnesse, that both the former inconueniences of necessitie, and losse, shall most sufficiently be taken away.

Moreouer the signification and assurance of your highnesse great affection to vs and our nation, doth cause vs also to intreat and vse mediation on the behalfe of certeine of our subiects, who are detained as slaues and captiues in your gallies, for whome we craue, that forasmuch as they are fallen into that miserie, not by any offence of theirs, by bearing of armes against your highnesse, or in behauing of themselues contrary to honestie, and to the law of nations, they may be deliuered from their bondage, and restored to libertie, for their seruice towards vs, according to their ductie: which thing shall yeeld much more abundant cause to vs of commending your clemencie, and of beseeching that God (who onely is aboue all things, and all men, and is a most seuere reuenger of all idolatrie, and is ielous of his honor against the false gods of the nations) to adorne your most inuincible imperiall highnesse with all the blessings of those gifts, which onely & deseruedly are accounted most worthie of asking.

Giuen at our palace of Greenwich, neere to our citie of London, the fiue and twentith day of October, in the yeere of Iesus Christ our Sauior 1579, and of our reigne the one and twentith.

The charter of the priuileges granted to the English, and *league of the Great Turke with the Queenes Maiestie in respect* of traffike, dated in Iune 1580.

IMmensa & maxima ex potestate potentissimi, terribilibúsque verbis & nunquam finienda, innumerabiliue clementia & ineffabili auxilio sanctissimi & pura mente colendissimi tremendissimique vniuersitatum creatoris, princeps temporum præsentium, vnicus modernæ ætatis monarcha, totius orbis terrarum potentibus sceptra diuidere potens, clementiæ, gratiæq; diuinæ vmbra, regnorum, prouinciarumue & vrbium ciuitatumue distributor permultarum: Nos sacratissimus Cæsar Muzulmanicus, Mecchæ, id est domus diuinæ, Medinæ, glorioßissimæ & beatissimæ Ierusalem, Aegypti fertilissimæ, Iemen & Zouan, Eden & Canan, Sami paciferæ & Hebes, Iabza & Pazra, Zeruzub & Halepiæ, Caramariæ & Diabekiruan & Dulkadiriæ, Babyloniæ, & totius triplicis Arabiæ, Euzorum & Georgianorum, Cypri diuitis, & regnorum Asiæ, Ozakior, Camporum Maris albi & nigri, Græciæ & Mesopotamiæ, Affricæ & Goletæ, Algeris & Tripolis occidentalis, selectissimæué Europæ, Budæ, & Temesnar, & regnorum transalpinorum & his similium permultorum princeps Cæsarué sacerrimus, potentissimus Murad Chan, filius principis Zelim Chan, qui fuit Zoleiman Chan, qui fuit Zelim Chan, qui fuit Paiezid Chan, qui fuit Mehemed Chan, &c.

Nos princeps potentissimus Murad Chan, hoc in signum nostræ Cæsareæ amicitiæ significamus & manifestamus, quòd in temporibus modernis Regina Angliæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ Elizabetha in Christianitate honoratissima Regina (cuius mercatorum exitus sit fœliciſſimus)

ad

ad noſtrã excelſam,& iuſtitiæ plenã,fulgidiſſimámue portã,quę omnibus principibus mũdi eſt refugium & requies,per egregium Gulielmũ Harebronũ literas miſit ſuas,quibus ſua maieſtas ſignificauit,quod tempore præterito,quidã ſubditi ſui veniſſent ad noſtrã portam excelſam,& ſuam obedientiã erga eam demonſtrauiſſent,& ob eam cauſam illis quoq; ad noſtras ditiones mercandi gratia venire & redire poſcerẽt, venia & poteſtas fuiſſet data:& quòd in locis & hoſpitijs eorũ per mare & terrã nemo auderet impedire & illis damnũ facere, mandatũ Cęſareum fuiſſet datũ : & quòd hanc noſtrã gratiã,quã paucis hominibus ſuæ maieſtatis demonſtrauiſſemus,vniuerſis ſuis ſubditis concederemus,petebat. Quare,quemadmodum cũ ſereniſſimis beneuolentiã & obedientiã,ſeruitiáue ſua demóſtrantibus erga noſtrã portã excelſam regibus & principibus confœderatis (vt ſunt rex Gallorũ, Veneti,& rex Polonorũ & cæteri) pacẽ & fœdus ſanctiſſimũ pepigimus:ſic etiã cũ præfata Regina amicitiã cuſtodiendã,pacẽ & fœdus cõiunximus. Illius igitur homines,& vniuerſi mercatores,ſine aliquo impedimento cũ ſuis mercibus & oneribus cunctis ad noſtras ditiones Cæſareas pacificè & ſecurè veniant,& ſuã exerceant mercaturã,maneant in ſuis ſtatibus,& ſecũdũ ſuos mores negocientur. Et adhęc,ſua maieſtas ſignificabat ex hominibus ſuis aliquos iamdudũ captos fuiſſe, & in captiuitate detineri,& quòd hi dimitterentur petebat,& quòd ſicut alijs principibus nobiſcũ confœderatis priuilegia & mandata Cæſarea ſuper fœdus ſanctiſſimũ dediſſemus,ſic præfatæ quoq; Reginę priuilegiũ & mandata Cæſarea vt daremus,noſtrę Cęſareę celcitudini placeret. Quare ſecundùm noſtram beneuolentiam & gratiam innatam, optata ſuæ maieſtatis apud nos grata fuere: Et hoc noſtrũ priuilegium iuſtitijs plenum dedimus maieſtati ſuæ: Et Beglerbegis,Zanziacbegis famulis noſtris,& Kazijs,id eſt,iudicibus,& omnibus teloniatoribus omnium locorum,portuũ,& vadorũ firmiter mandamus, vt donec ex parte præfatæ reginæ fœdus,& pax,& eorũ conditiones articuliq́;(vt conuenit) cuſtodiuntur & ſeruãtur,noſtrę quoq́; Cæſareæ celſitudinis mandata ſunt:

Fœdus Turcici Imperatoris cum Regina initum.

Articuli huius priuilegij.

1 Vt præfatę Reginę homines,& ſubditi eius quibuſuis rebus & mercibus,oneribus & ſuppellectilibus per mare in magnis & paruis nauibus, per terram autem homines cum oneribus & pecoribus, ſecurè & pacificè ad noſtras ditiones Cæſareas veniant, & nemo illis noceat, ſed ſecurè & ſine aliquo impedimẽto negocientur,& in ſuis ſtatibus & conditionibus permaneant.

2 Item,ſi præfati homines & mercatores in ſuis rectis vijs & negociationibus aliquo modo caperentur,ſine aliqua tergiuerſatione dimittantur,liberentúrque.

3 Item, ſi naues eorum ad aliquos portus & loca venire voluerint, pacificè omni in tempore,& ſine impedimento veniant,& diſcedant in ſua loca.

4 Item, ſi in tempeſtatibus maris naues eorum eſſent in periculo & auxilio opus eſſet illis, naues noſtræ Cæſareæ celſitudinis, earúmque homines, & aliorum naues hominéſque ſtatim auxilium & opem ferant illis,mandamus. (emant.

5 Item,ſi edulia ſuis pecunijs emere voluerint,nemo reſiſtat illis,ſed ſine impedimento edulia

6 Itẽ,ſi infortuniũ maris naues eorũ in terrã proiecerit,Begi & iudices,& cæteri noſtri ſubditi ſint auxilio illis,merces & res eorũ quę remanſerint iterũ reddãtur illis,& nemo impediat illos.

7 Item,ſi præfatæ reginæ homines,eorũ interpretes,& mercatores,ſiue per terram,ſiue per mare mercandi gratiã ad noſtras ditiones venire velint, legitimo telonio, & vectigali reddito, pacificè vagentur, capitanei & reges maris & nauium, & aliud genus hominum per mare vagantium in perſonis,& rebus eorum,pecoribúſque,ne noceant illis.

8 Item,ſi aliquis ex Anglis debitor, aut ære alieno eſſet obſtrictus, inueneríque non poſſit, ratione debitorum alterius nullius niſi eſſet fideiuſſor, capiatur aut impediatur.

9 Item,ſi Anglus teſtamẽtum fecerit, & ſua bona cuicunq́; legauerit,illi dentur bona illius, & ſi ſine teſtamento moreretur, conſul eorum cuicunq́; ſociorum mortui hominis dixerit debere dari,illi dentur bona mortui hominis.

10 Item,ſi Angli,& ad Angliam pertinentium locorũ mercatores & interpretes,in vendendis & emendis mercibus fideiuſſionibus & rebus aliquid negocij habuerint, ad iudicẽ veniant, & in librum inſcribi faciant negotium, & ſi voluerint, literas quoq́; accepiant à iudice, propterea quòd ſi aliquid inciderit, videant librum & literas, & ſecundùm tenorẽ eorũ perficiantur negocia eorũ ſuſpecta : ſi autem neq́; in librũ inſcriberentur, neq́; literas haberent, iudex falſa teſtimonia non admittat,ſed ſecundùm iuſtitiam legem adminiſtrans non ſinat illos impediri.

11 Item, ſi aliquis diceret quod iſti Chriſtiani noſtræ fidei Muzulmanicæ maledixerint, & eam vituperijs affecerint,in hoc negotio etiam & alijs, teſtes falſi minimè admittantur.

12 Item,ſi aliquis eorum aliquod facinus patraret,& fugiens non poſſit inueniri,nullus niſi eſſet fideiuſſor pro alterius facto retineatur.

13 Item,ſi aliquod mancipium Anglicum inueniretur, & conſul eorũ peteret illud,examinetur diligenter mancipium,& ſi inuentum fuerit Anglicum,accipiatur,& reddatur Anglis.

14 Item

14 Item, si aliquis ex Anglis huc venerit habitandi aut mercandi gratiâ, siue sit vxoratus, siue sit sine vxore, non soluat censum.

15 Item, si in Alexandria, in Damasco, in Samia, in Tunis, in Tripoli occidentali, in Aegypti portubus & in alijs omnibus locis, vbicunq; voluerint facere Consules, faciant: Et iterũ si voluerint eos mutare, & in loca priorũ consulum alios locare, liberè faciant, & nemo illis resistat.

16 Item, si illorum interpres in arduis negotijs occupatus abesset, donec veniret interpres, expectetur, & interim nemo illos impediat.

17 Item, si Angli inter se aliquam litem haberent & vellent ad suos consules ire, nemo resistat illis, sed liberè veniant ad Consules suos, vt secundùm mores eorum finiatur lis orta.

18 Item, si post tempus aut datum huius priuilegij, piratæ, aut alij aliqui liberi gubernatores nauium per mare vagantes, aliquem ex Anglis ceperint, & trans mare vel cis mare venderint, secundùm iustitiam examinetur: & si Anglus inuentus fuerit, & religionem Muzulmanicam assumpserit, liberè dimittatur: si autem adhuc esset Christianus, Anglis reddatur, & emptores suam pecuniam ab illo petant, à quo emerant.

19 Item, si nostræ Cæsareæ Celsitudinis naues armatæ exiuerint ad mare, & ibi inuenerint naues Anglicas merces portantes, nemo impediat illas, imò amicè tractentur, & nullum damnum faciant illis: Quemadmodum Gallis, Venetis, & cæteris nobiscum confœderatis regibus, & principibus priuilegium, & articulos priuilegijs dedimus, & concessimus, simili modo his quóque Anglis priuilegium & articulos priuilegijs dedimus & concessimus, & contra legem diuinam, & hoc priuilegium, nemo vnquam aliquid audeat facere.

20 Item, si naues magnæ, & paruæ in itinere & loco vbi stant detinebuntur, nemo illos audeat impedire, sed potiùs auxilio sint illis.

21 Item, si latrones & fures vi raperent naues illorum, nauiúmque merces, magna diligentia quærantur latrones & fures, & seuerissimè puniantur.

22 Ad extremum, Beglerbegij, & Zanziarbegi, Capitanei nostri, Mancipia, & per mare nauigantes serui Capitaneorum, & Iudices, & Teloniatores, & Gubernatores nauium Reiz dicti, & liberi Reiz, omnes isti præfati, secundùm tenorem huius priuilegij, tenorémue articulorum eius, omnia facere teneantur, & debeant. Et donec hoc in priuilegio descriptum fœdus, & pax illius Maiestatis ex parte sanctè seruabitur, & custodietur, ex parte etiam nostra Cæsarea custodiri, & obseruari mandamus.

Datum Constantinopoli, anno nostri prophetæ Sanctissimi 988, in principio mensis Iunij, anno autem Iesu 1580.

The interpretation of the letters, or priuilege of the most mightie *and Musulmanlike Emperour Zuldan Murad Chan, granted at the request* of Elizabeth by the grace of the most mightie God, and only Creator of heauen & earth, of England, France and Ireland Queene, confirming a peace and league betwixt both the said princes and their subiects.

THE most sacred Musulmanlike Emperor, by the infinite & exceeding great power, by the euerlasting and woonderfull clemencie, and by the vnspeakable helpe of the most mighty and most holy God, creator of all things, to be worshipped and feared with all pureneſſe of minde, and reuerence of speech, The prince of the present times, the onely Monarch of this age, able to giue scepters to the potentates of the whole world, the shadow of the diuine mercy and grace, the distributer of many kingdoms, prouinces, townes & cities, Prince, and most sacred Emperour of Mecha, that is to say, of Gods house, of Medina, of the most glorious and blessed Ierusalem, of the most fertile Egypt, Iemen, and Jouan, Eden & Chanaan, of Damos the peaceable, and of Hebes, of Jabza, and Bazra, of Zeruzub and Halepia, of Caramaria and Diabekiruan, of Dulkadiria, of Babylon, and of all the three Arabias, of the Euxians & Georgians, of Cyprus the rich, and of the kingdoms of Asia, of Dzakior, of the tracts of the White and Blacke sea, of Grecia and Mesopotamia, of Affrica & Goleta, of Algeris, and of Tripolis in the West, of the most choise and principall Europe, of Buda and Temesuar, and of the kingdoms beyond the Alps, and many others such like, most mightie Murad Chan, the sonne of the Emperor Zelim Chan, which was the sonne of Zoliman Chan, which was the sonne of Zelim Chan, which was the sonne of Baizid Chan, which was the sonne of Mehemed Chan, &c.

The most mightie prince Murad Chan, in token of our imperiall friendship, do signifie & declare, that now of late Elizabeth Queene of England, France, & Ireland, the most honorable Queene of Christendome

Chriſtendome (to whoſe marchants wee wiſh happie ſucceſſe) ſent her letters by her worthy ſeruant William Harebrowne, vnto our ſtately and moſt magnificent Porche replenished with iuſtice, which is a refuge and Sanctuarie to all the princes of the worlde, by which letters her Maieſtie ſignified, that whereas heretofore certaine of her ſubiects had repaired to our ſaide ſtately Porche, and had ſhewed their obedience to the ſame, and for that cauſe had deſired that leaue and libertie might alſo be graunted vnto them, to come and goe for traſiques ſake too and from our dominions, and that our Imperial commaundement might be giuen, that no man ſhould preſume to hurt or hinder them, in any of their abodes or paſſages by ſea or land, and whereas ſhe requeſted that we would graunt to all her ſubiects in generall, this our fauour, which before wee had extended onely to a fewe of her people: therefore as wee haue entred into amitie, and moſt holy league with the moſt excellent kings and princes our confederats, ſhewing their deuotion, and obedience or ſeruices towards our ſtately Porch (as namely the French king, the Venetians, the king of Polonia and others) ſo alſo we haue contracted an inuiolable amitie, peace and league with the aforeſaid Queene. Therefore we giue licence to all her people, and marchants, peaceably and ſafely to come vnto our Imperiall dominions, with all their marchandiſe and goods without any impeachment, to exerciſe their traſique, to vſe their owne cuſtomes, and to buy and ſell according to the faſhions of their owne countrey.

And further her Maieſtie ſignified vnto vs, that certaine of her people had heretofore bene taken priſoners, and were detained in captiuitie, and required that they might bee ſet at libertie, and that as we had graunted vnto other princes our confederats, priuiledges, and Imperiall decrees, concerning our moſt inuiolable league with them, ſo it woulde pleaſe our Imperiall Maieſtie to graunt and confirme the like priuiledges, and princely decrees to the aforeſayde Queene.

Whereſore according to our humanitie and gracious ingraffed diſpoſition, the requeſts of her Maieſtie were accepted of vs, and wee haue graunted vnto her Maieſtie this priuiledge of ours agreeable to reaſon & equitie. And we ſtraightly cõmaunde all our Beglerbegs, and Zanziacbegs our ſeruants, and our Reyz, that is to ſay, our Iudges, and all our cuſtomers in all places, hauens and paſſages, that as long as this league and amitie with the conditions, and articles thereof, are kept and obſerued on the behalfe of the aforeſaid Queene, 1 Our Imperiall commandement and pleaſure is, that the people and ſubiectes of the ſame Queene, may ſafely and ſecurely come to our princely dominions, with their goods and marchandiſe, and ladings, and other commodities by ſea, in great and ſmall veſſels, and by land with their carriages and cattels, and that no man ſhall hurt them, but they may buy and ſell without any hinderance, and obſerue the cuſtomes and orders of their owne countrey.

2 Item, if the aforeſaid people and marchants ſhalbe at any time in the courſe of their iourneis, and dealings by any meanes taken, they ſhall bee deliuered and inlarged, without any excuſe or cauillation.

3 Item, if their ſhips purpoſe to ariue in any of our ports and hauens, it ſhalbe lawfull for them ſo to doe in peace, and from thence againe to depart, without any let or impediment.

4 Item, if it ſhall happen that any of their ſhips in tempeſtuous weather ſhall bee in danger of laſſe and periſhing, and thereupon ſhall ſtand in neede of our helpe, we will, and commaund that our men and ſhips be readie to helpe and ſuccour them.

5 Item, if they ſhalbe willing to buy any victuals for their money, no perſon ſhall withſtande them, but they ſhall buy the ſame without any diſturbance to the contrary.

6 Item, if by any caſualtie their ſhippes ſhall bee driuen on ſhoare in perill of ſhipwracke, our Beges and Iudges, and other our ſubiects ſhall ſuccour them, and ſuch wares, and goods of theirs as ſhall bee recouered from the laſſe, ſhall bee reſtored to them, and no man ſhall wrong them.

7 Item, if the people of the aforeſaide Queene, their interpreters and marchants, ſhall for traſique ſake, either by lande or ſea repaire to our dominions paying our lawfull toll and cuſtome, they ſhall haue quiet paſſage, and none of our Captaines or gouernours of the ſea, and ſhippes, nor any kinde of perſons, ſhall either in their bodies, or in their goods and cattels, any way moleſt them.

8 Item, if any Engliſhman ſhall growe in debt, and ſo owe money to any other man, and thereupon doeth abſent himſelfe that hee can not be founde, let no man arreſt or apprehend him for any other mans debt, except he be the creditour.

9 Item, if any Engliſhman ſhall make his will and teſtament, to whome ſoeuer by the ſame hee ſhall giue his goods, the partie ſhall haue them accordingly, and if hee die inteſtate,

he to whom the Consull or gouernour of the societie shall say the goods of the dead are to be giuen, he shall haue the same.

10 Item, if the Englishmen or the marchants and interpreters of any places vnder the iurisdiction of England, shall happen in the buying and selling of wares, by promises or otherwise to come in controuersie, let them goe to the Iudge, and cause the matter to be entred into a booke, and if they will, let them also take letters of the Iudge testifying the same, that men may see the booke and letters, whatsoeuer thing shall happen, and that according to the tenor thereof the matter in controuersie and in doubt may be ended: but if such thinges be neither entred in booke, nor yet the persons haue taken letters of the Iudge, yet he shal admit no false witnes, but shall execute the lawe according to iustice, and shall not suffer them to be abused.

11 Item, if any man shall say, that these being Christians shall speake any thing to the derogation of our holy faith and religion, and shall slander the same, in this matter as in all others, let no false witnesses in any case be admitted.

12 Item, if any one of them shall commit any great crime, and flying thereupon can not be found, let no man be arrested, or detained for another mans fact, except he be his suretie.

13 Item, if any slaue shall be found to be an Englishman, and their Consull or gouernour shall sue for his libertie, let the same slaue be diligently examined, and if he be found in deed to be English, let him be discharged and restored to the Englishmen.

14 Item, if any Englishman shall come hither either to dwell or traffique, whether he be married or vnmarried, he shall pay no polle or head money.

15 Item, if either in Alexandria, Damasco, Samos, Tunes, Tripolis in ꝑ West, the port townes of Ægypt, or in any other places, they purpose to choose to themselues Consuls or gouernours, let them doe so, and if they will alter them at any time, and in the roome of the former Consuls place others, let them doe so also, and no man shall restraine them.

16 Item, if their interpreter shalbe at any time absent, being occupied in other serious matters, let the thing then in question be stayed and differred till his comming, and in the meane time no man shall trouble them.

17 Item, if any variance or controuersie shal arise among the Englishmen, and thereupon they shall appeale to their Consuls or gouernours, let no man molest them, but let them freely doe so, that the controuersie begunne, may be finished according to their owne customes.

18 Item, if after the time and date of this priuiledge, any pirats or other free gouernors of ships trading the sea, shall take any Englishman, and shall make sale of him, either beyonde the sea, or on this side of the sea, the matter shalbe examined according to iustice, and if the partie shalbe found to be English, and shall receiue the holy religion, then let him freely be discharged, but if he will still remaine a Christian, let him then be restored to the Englishmen, and the buyers shall demaunde their money againe of them who solde the man.

19 Item, if the ships of warre of our Imperiall highnes shall at any time goe foorth to sea, and shall finde any English ships laden with marchandise, no man shall hinder them, but rather shall vse them friendly, and doe them no wrong, euen as we haue giuen and graunted articles, and priuiledges, to the French, Venetians, and other Kings and princes our confederats, so also we haue giuen the like to the English: and contrary to this our diuine lawe and priuiledge, let no man presume to doe anything.

20 Item, if either their great or small ships shall in the course of their voyage, or in any place to which they come, be stayed or arrested, let no man continue the same arrest, but rather helpe and assist them.

21 Item, if any theeues and robbers shall by force take away any of their ships, and marchandise, let the same theeues and robbers be sought, and searched for with all diligence, and let them be punished most seuerely.

21 Last of all the Beglerbegs, and Zanziacbegs, our Captaines, our slaues and seruants of Captaines vsing the sea, and our Iudges, customers and gouernours of shippes called Reiz, and free Reiz, all these according to the tenor of this priuiledge and articles, shalbe bounde to doe proceedingly: and, as long as the Queene of England on her part shall duely keepe and obserue this league and holy peace, expressed in this priuiledge, we also for our Imperial part, doe charge and commaunde the same so long to be straighely kept and obserued.

Giuen at Constantinople, in the 988. yeere of our most holy prophete, in the beginning of the moneth of June, And in the yeere of Iesvs, the 1580.

Her

Her Maieſties letters to the Turke or Grand Signior 1581.

promiſing redreſſe of the diſorders of Peter Baker of Ratcliffe, committed in the Leuant.

ELizabeth by the diuine grace of the eternall God, of England, Fraunce and Irelande moſt ſacred Queene, and of the moſt Chriſtian faith, againſt all the prophaners of his moſt holy Name the zealous and mightie defendour, &c. To the moſt renowned and Emperious Cæſar, Sultan Murad Chan, Emperour of all the dominions of Turkie, and of all the Eaſt Monarchie chiefe aboue all others whoſoeuer, moſt fortunate yeeres with the ſucceſſe of all true happineſſe. As with very great deſire we wiſh and embrace the loue and amitie of forreine Princes, and in the ſame by all good duetie and meanes wee ſeeke to be confirmed: ſo to vs there may be nothing more grieuous and diſliking, then that any thing ſhould happen through the default of our ſubiects, which any way might bring our faith and fidelitie into ſuſpicion: Although wee are not ignorant howe many good princes by the like miſaduenture be abuſed, where the doings of the ſubiects are imputed to the want of good gouernment. But ſuch matters of importance and ſo wel approued we may not omit: ſuch is to vs the ſacred eſtimation of our honour, and of our Chriſtian profeſſion, as we would the ſame ſhould appeare aſwell in the concluding of our promiſes and agreements, as in the faithfull performing of the ſame.

The matter which by theſe our letters we ſpecially beholde, is a moſt iniurious and grieuous wrong which of late came vnto our vnderſtanding, that ſhould bee done vnto certaine of your ſubiects by certaine of our ſubiects, as yet not apprehended: but with all ſeueritie vpon their apprehenſion they are to be rewarded for the ſame. And as the deede in it ſelfe is moſt wicked, ſo is it much more intollerable, by how much it doeth infringe the credite of our faith, violate the force of our authoritie, and impeach the eſtimation of our worde faithfully giuen vnto your Imperiall dignitie. In which ſo great a diſorder if wee ſhould not manifeſt our hatred towards ſo wicked and euill diſpoſed perſons, wee might not onely moſt iuſtly be reproued in the iudgement of all ſuch as truely fauour Juſtice, but alſo of all Princes the patrones of right and equitie, might no leſſe be condemned. That therefore conſidered, which of our parts is ordained in this cauſe which may be to the good liking of your highneſſe, wee are moſt eſpecially to requeſt of your Imperiall Maieſtie, that through the default and diſorder of a ſort of euill and wicked diſpoſed perſons, you will not withdrawe your gratious fauour from vs, neither to hinder the trafique of our ſubiects, which by vertue of your highneſſe ſufferance, and power of your licence are permitted to trade into your dominions and countreis, or that either in their perſons or goods they be preiudiced their trauayling by land or by water, promiſing vnto your greatneſſe moſt faithfully, that the goods whereof your ſubiects by great wrong and violence haue bene ſpoyled, ſhall wholie againe be reſtored, if either by the liues or poſſeſſions of the robbers it may any way be brought to paſſe: And that hereafter (as now being taught by this euill example) wee will haue ſpeciall care that none vnder the title of our authoritie, ſhall be ſuffered to commit any the like wrongs or iniuries.

This was Baker of Ratcliffe, who with the barke called the Roe, robbed certaine Greekians in the Leuante.

Neither they which haue committed theſe euil parts, had any power vnder your highneſſe ſafeconduit graunted vnto our ſubiects, but from ſome other ſafeconduit, whether it were true or fained, we knowe not, or whether they bought it of any perſon within the gouernment of Marſeils: but vnder the colour thereof they haue done that, which the trueth of our dealing doeth vtterly abhorre. Notwithſtanding howſoeuer it be, wee will ſurely meaſure their euill proceedings with moſt ſharpe and iuſt correction, and that it ſhall repent them of the impeachment of our honours, as alſo it ſhalbe an example of our indignation, that others may dread at all times to commit the like offence. Wherefore that our amitie might be continued, as if this vnfortunate happe had neuer chaunced, and that the ſinguler affection of our ſubiects towardes your Imperiall Maieſtie vowed, and dayly more and more deſired, might be conſerued and defended, wee thereunto doe make our humble ſuite vnto your greatneſſe: And for ſo great goodneſſe towards vs and our people graunted, doe moſt humbly pray vnto the Almightie creatour of heauen and earth, euer to maintaine and keepe your moſt renowmed Maieſtie in all happineſſe and proſperitie.

Dated at our palace of Greenewich the 26. of June, Anno 1581.

The letters patents, or priuiledges graunted by her Maiestie to Sir Edward Osburne, Master Richard Staper, and certaine other Marchants of London for their trade into the dominions of the great Turke, in the yeere 1581.

ELizabeth by the grace of God Queene of England, France and Ireland, defender of the faith, &c. To all our officers, ministers, and subiects, and to all other people as well within this our Realme of England, as els where vnder our obeysance, iurisdiction, or otherwise, vnto whome these our letters shall be seene, shewed or read, greeting. Where our welbeloued subiects Edward Osburne Alderman of our Citie of London, and Richard Staper of our saide Citie marchant, haue by great aduenture and industrie, with their great costes and charges, by the space of sundry late yeeres, trauailed, and caused trauaile to be taken, as well by secret and good meanes, as by dangerous wayes and passages both by lande and sea, to finde out and set open a trade of marchandize and traffique into the landes, Islands, dominions, and territories of the great Turke, commonly called the Grand Signior, not heretofore in the memorie of any man now liuing knowen to be commonly vsed and frequented by way of marchandise, by any the marchants or any subiects of vs, or our progenitours; and also haue by their like good meanes and industrie, and great charges procured of the saide Grand Signior (in our name,) amitie, safetie, and freedome, for trade and traffique of marchandise to be vsed, and continued by our subiects within his saide dominions, whereby there is good and apparant hope and likelyhoode both that many good offices may be done for the peace of Christendome, and reliefe of many Christians that be or may happen to be in thraldome or necessitie vnder the saide Grand Signior, his vassals or subiects, and also good, and profitable vent and vtterance may be had of the commodities of our Realme, and sundrie other great benefites to the aduauncement of our honour, and dignitie royal, the increase of the reuenues of our Crowne, and generall wealth of our Realme, Knowe yee that hereupon, wee greatly tendering the wealth of our people, and the incouragement of our subiects in their good enterprises for the aduaincement of the common weale, haue of our speciall grace, certaine knowledge and meere motion, giuen and graunted, and by these presents for vs, our heires and successours, doe giue and graunt vnto our saide trustie, and welbeloued subiects Edward Osburne, and vnto Thomas Smith of London esquire, Richard Staper, and William Garret of London marchants, their executours, and administratours, and to the executours and administratours of them, and of euery of them, that they, and euery of them, and such other person and persons Englishmen borne, not exceeding the nomber of twelue, as they the saide Edward and Richard shall appoint, nominate, or admit to be parteners, aduenturers, or doers with them the saide Edward, Thomas, Richard, and William, in their societie by themselues, their seruants, factours or deputies, and to such others as shall be nominated according to the tenour of these our letters patents, shall and may during the terme of seuen yeeres from the date of these patents, freely trade, traffique, and vse feates of marchandise into, and from the dominions of the said Grand Signior, and euery of them, in such order, and maner, forme, liberties and condition to all intents and purposes as shalbe betweene them limitted and agreed, and not otherwise, without any molestation, impeachment, or disturbance, any lawe, statute, vsage, diuersitie of religion or faith, or other cause or matter whatsoeuer to the contrary notwithstanding.

And that it shalbe lawfull to the said Edward and Richard their executors and administrators, (during the said terme) to appoint or admit to be parteners and aduenturers with them the saide Edward, Thomas, Richard and William, such persons not exceeding the nomber of twelue (as before is said) to traffique and vse the said trade & feate of marchandise according to our saide graunt. And that all and euery such person and persons, as shall hereafter fortune to be appointed or admitted as parteners in the said trade or traffique according to these our letters patents, shall and may from the time of such appointment or admittance, haue and enioy the freedome and liberty of the said trade and traffique, during the residue of the said terme of seuen yeeres according to such limitation and agreement as is aforesaid, and that it shall and may be lawfull to and for the saide Edward, Thomas, Richard and William, their executours and administratours, seruants, factours and deputies, and all such as shall be so appointed, nominated or admitted, to be parteners or aduenturers in the saide trade, or so many of them as can and will, to assemble themselues for or about any the matters, causes, affaires or businesse of the said trade in any place or places for the same

ſame conuenient, from time to time during the ſaide terme of 7. yeeres, within our dominions or elſewhere, and to make, ordeine, and conſtitute reaſonable lawes and ordinances, for the good gouernment of the ſaid companie, and for the better aduancement and continuance of the ſaide trade and traffique, not being contrarie or repugnant to the lawes, eſtatutes or cuſtomes of our Realme, and the ſame lawes or ordinances ſo made to put in vre, and execute accordingly, and at their pleaſures to reuoke the ſame lawes and ordinances, or any of them, as occaſion ſhall require.

And in conſideration that the ſaid Edward Oſburne hath bene the principall ſetter foorth and doer in the opening, & putting in vre of the ſaid trade, we do therfore eſpecially ordeine, conſtitute, and prouide by theſe patents, that the ſaid Edwarde Oſburne ſhall be gouernour of all ſuch as by vertue of theſe our letters patents, ſhall be parteners, aduenturers, or traffiquers in the ſaide trade, during the ſaide terme of ſeuen yeeres, if hee ſo long liue: And that if the ſaide Edward ſhall happen to deceaſe during the ſaid terme, the ſaid Richard Staper then liuing, then the ſaide Richarde Staper ſhall likewiſe be gouernour during the reſidue of the ſaid terme (if he ſo long liue) and that if the ſaid Edward and Richard ſhall both happen to deceaſe during the ſaid terme, then the parteners or aduenturers for the time being, or the greateſt part of them ſhall from time to time as neceſſitie ſhall require, chooſe and elect a gouernour of the ſaid companie.

Prouided alwayes, that if there ſhall happen any great or vrgent occaſion to remooue or diſplace any perſon that ſhall be gouernour of the ſaide fellowſhip, that then it ſhall, and may be lawfull for vs, our heires and ſucceſſours, to remooue, and diſplace euery ſuch gouernour, and to place another of the ſaide fellowſhip in the ſame office, during ſuch time as ſuch perſon ſhould haue enioyed the ſame, according to this our graunt, if there had bene no cauſe to the contrary.

And wee further for vs, our heires, and ſucceſſours, of our eſpeciall grace, certaine knowledge, and meere motion, doe graunt to the ſaid Edward Oſburne, Thomas Smith, Richard Staper, and William Garret, their executours and adminiſtratours, that nothing ſhall be done to be of force or validitie touching the ſaide trade or traffique, or the exerciſe thereof, without or againſt the conſent of the ſaide Edward, during ſuch time as hee ſhall bee Gouernour as afore is ſaide. And after that time without the conſent of the Gouernour for the time being, and of the more part of the ſaide company.

And further, wee of our more ample and abundant grace, meere motion and certaine knowledge, haue graunted, and by theſe patents for vs, our heires and ſucceſſors, doe graunt to the ſaide Edward, Thomas, Richard and William, their executors and adminiſtrators, that they, the ſaide Edward, Thomas, Richard and William, their executors and adminiſtrators, and the ſaide perſon and perſons, by them the ſaid Edward and Richard to be nominated, or appointed as afore is ſaid, together, with ſuch two other perſons, as wee our heires or ſucceſſors from time to time during the ſaide terme ſhall nominate, ſhall haue the whole trade and traffique, and the whole entire onely libertie, vſe and priuiledge of trading, and traffiquing, and vſing feate of marchandiſe, into, and from the ſaid dominions of the ſaid Grand Signior, and euery of them. And when there ſhall be no ſuch perſons ſo nominated or appointed by vs, our heires or ſucceſſours, that then the ſaid Edward Oſburne, Thomas Smith, Richard Staper, and William Garret, their executors and adminiſtrators, and ſuch perſons by them ſo to be appointed, ſhall haue the ſaide whole trade and traffique, and the whole entire, and onely libertie, vſe, and priuiledge of trading and traffiquing aforeſaid. And that they the ſaid Edward, Thomas, Richard and William, their executors and adminiſtrators, and alſo all ſuch as ſhal ſo be nominated or appointed to be partners or aduenturers in the ſaid trade, according to ſuch agreement as is aboueſaide, and euery of them, their ſeruants, factours and deputies, ſhal haue full and free authoritie, libertie, facultie, licence and power to trade and traffique into and from all and euery the ſaide dominions of the ſaide Grand Signior, and into, and from all places where, by occaſion of the ſaid trade, they ſhal happen to arriue or come, whether they be Chriſtiãs, Turkes, Gentiles or other, and into, & from all ſeas, riuers, portes, regions, territories, dominions, coaſts & places, with their ſhips, barks, pinneſſes & other veſſels, and with ſuch mariners and men, as they wil lead with them or ſend for the ſaid trade, as they ſhal thinke good at their owne proper coſt & expenſes, any law, ſtatute, vſage, or matter whatſoeuer to the contrary not withſtãding. And that it ſhalbe lawful for the ſaid, Edward, Thomas, Richard & William, and to the perſons aforeſaid, and to & for the mariners and ſea men to be vſed & employed in the ſaid trade and voyage to ſet and place in the tops of their ſhips & other veſſels the armes of England with the red croſſe ouer the ſame, as heretofore they haue vſed ỳ red croſſe, any matter or thing to the cõtrary notwithſtanding.

And we of our further royal fauor, & of our eſpecial grace, certaine knowledge & meere motion haue graunted, & by theſe preſents doe graunt to the ſaid Edward Oſburne, Tho. Smith, Richard Staper, & William Garret, their executors & adminiſtrators by theſe preſents, that the ſaid lands,

territories, and dominions of the saide Grand Signior, or any of them, shall not be visited, frequented, nor haunted by way of marchandise by any other our subiects during the saide terme, contrary to the true meaning of these patents.

And by vertue of our high prerogatiue royall (which we will not haue argued or brought in question) we straighely charge and commaunde, and prohibite for vs, our heires, and successours, all our subiects (of what degree or qualitie soeuer they bee) that none of them directly, or indirectly, doe visite, haunt, frequent or trade, traffique, or aduenture by way of marchandise into, or from any of the Dominions of the saide Grand Signior, or other places aboue saide by water or by lande (other then the saide Edward, Thomas, Richard and William, their executors or administrators, or such as shalbe admitted, and nominated as is afore saide,) without expresse licence, agreement, and consent of the saide Gouernour, and companie or the more part of them, whereof the said Gouernour alwayes to be one, vpon paine of our high indignation, and of forfeiture and losse, as well of the ship and shippes, with the furniture thereof, as also of the goods, marchandizes, and things whatsoeuer they be of those our subiects which shall attempt, or presume to saile, traffique, or aduenture, to or from any the dominions, or places aboue said, contrary to the prohibition afore said: the one halfe of the same forfeiture to be to the vse of vs our heires and successors, and the other halfe to the vse of the said Edward, Thomas, Richard and William, and the saide companie, and further to suffer imprisonment during our pleasure, & such other punishment as to vs, for so high contempt shall seeme meete and conuenient.

And further of our grace speciall, certaine knowledge, and meere motion we haue condiscended and graunted, and by these patents for vs our heires and successors, doe condiscend and graunt to the said Edward, Thomas, Richard & William, their executors and administrators, that we our heires and successors during the said terme, will not graunt libertie, licence or power to any person or persons whatsoeuer, contrary to the tenor of these our letters patents, to saile, passe, trade, or traffique into or from the said dominions of the said Grand Signior or any of them, without the consent of the said Edward, Thomas, Richard & William, and such as shalbe named or appointed as afore is said, or the most of them. And that if at any time hereafter during ẏ said terme, the said Edward, Thomas, Richard and William, or the suruiuors of them, shall admit or nominate any of our subiects to be partners & aduenturers in the said trade to the nomber of 12. or vnder as afore is saide, that then we our heires and successors at the instance and petition of the said Edward, Thomas, Richard, and William, or the suruiuors of them in our Chancerie to be made, and vpon the sight of these presents, will graunt, and make to the said Edward, Thomas, Richard and William, or to the suruiuors of them, & to such persons as so shalbe nominated or appointed by their speciall names, synames, and additions as is afore said, new letters patents vnder the great seale of England in due forme of lawe with like agreement, clauses, prohibitions, prouisoes and articles, (mutatis mutandis) as in these our letters patents are conteined, for, and during the residue of the said terme of 7. yeeres then remayning vnexpired. And that the sight of these presents shalbe sufficient warrant to the Lord Chancelour, or Lord keeper of the great seale for the time being, for the making, sealing and passing of such newe letters patents, without further writte or warrant for the same to be required, had, or obtained.

And the said Edward Osburne, Thomas Smith, and Richard Staper, and William Garret and such others as shalbe so nominated and appointed, as is afore said, to be of their trade or companie, shall yeerely during 6. of the last yeeres of the said 7. yeres, lade out of this our Realme, and bring home yeerely, for, and in the feate and trade of marchandizing afore saide, so much goods and marchandizes, as the custome, and subsidie inwards and outwards, shall amount in the whole to the summe of 500. li. yeerely. So that the said Edward Osburne, Thomas Smith, Richard Staper, and William Garret and the said persons so to be nominated as is afore said, or any of them, or their shippe or shippes be not barred, stayed, restrained or let by any reasonable occasion from the saide trade or traffique, and so that the said shippe or shippes doe not perish by any misfortune, or be spoiled by the way in their voyage.

And further, the saide Edwarde Osburne, Thomas Smith, Richarde Staper, and William Garret, and such others as shall bee appointed as afore saide to bee of their saide trade or companie, shall giue notice vnto the Lorde Admirall of England, or to some of the principall officers of the Admiraltie for the time being, of such shippe or shippes as they shall set foorth in the same voyage, and of the nomber of marriners appointed to goe in the same ship or shippes, by the space of fifteene dayes before the setting or going foorth of the same shippe or shippes. And also the saide Edward Osburne, Thomas Smith, Richard Staper and William Garret, and such other as shall bee by them the saide Edward and Richard, nominated to bee of the saide trade,

shall

shall and will at the setting footh of their shippe, or shippes, for the same voyage, permit and suffer the Master of the Ordinances of vs, our heires, and successors, or some others, our or their principall officers of the Ordinance, to take a view of the number and quantity of such Ordinance, powder, and munition, as shall be caried in the said shippe, or shippes, and shall also at the returne of the same shippe, or shippes, suffer a view to be taken, and vpon request made, make an accompt to the said officers of our Ordinance, of the expenses, and wastes of the said Ordinance, powder, and munition, so to be caried in the same shippe, or ships.

Prouided alwaies, that if any of the said trade or companie, or their seruants, factors, or sailers, in any shippe by them laden, shall commit any piracie or outrage vpon the seas, and that, if the said companie or societie shall not, or doe not, within reasonable time, after complaint made, or notice giuen to the said companie, or to any of them, either satisfie or recompence the parties that so shall fortune to be robbed, or spoiled by any of the said companie, or sailers, in the said shippes, or els shal not doe their endeuour to the vttermost of their reasonable power, to haue the parties so offending punished for the same their offences, that then, and from thencefooth, these present letters patents shall be vtterly voide, cease, and determine.

Prouided likewise, that if it shall hereafter appeare vnto vs, our heires, or successors, that this grant, or the continuance thereof in the whole, or in any part thereof, shall not be profitable to vs, our heires, our successors, or to this our Realme, that then, and from thence footh, vpon, and after one full yeeres warning, to be giuen vnto the said companie, or to the Gouernour thereof, by vs, our heires, or successors, this present grant shal cease, be voide, and determine, to all intents, constructions, and purposes.

Prouided also, that we, our heires, and successors, from time to time, during the said 7. yeeres, may lawfully nominate, appoint, and authorise two persons, being fit men, to be of the said companie, and for want or lacke of them, two others to be aduenturers in the said trade, for such stocke and summe of monie, as they shall put in, so that the saide persons to be nominated, or authorised, shall be contributorie to all charges of the said trade & aduenture indifferently, according to their stockes: and as other aduenturers of the said trade, shall doe for their stockes, and so that likewise they doe obserue the orders of the said companie, allowable by this our grant: and that such persons so to be appointed, by vs, our heires, or successors, shall, and may, with the said companie, and fellowship, vse the trade and feate of marchandise aforesaide, and all the liberties and priuiledges herein before granted, according to the meaning of these our letters patents, any thing in these our letters patents contained to the contrary notwithstanding.

And further of our speciall grace, certaine knowledge, and meere motion, we haue condescended, and granted, and by these presents for vs, our heires, and successors, doe condescend, and grant to the said Edward Osborne, Thomas Smith, Richard Staper, and William Garret, their executors, and administrators, that if at the ende of the said terme of seuen yeeres, it shall seeme meete, and conuenient vnto the said Edward Osborne, Thomas Smith, Richard Staper, and William Garret, or the suruiuer of them, that this present grant shall be continued: and if that also it shall appeare vnto vs, our heires, or successors, that the continuance thereof shall not be preiudiciall, or hurtfull to this our Realme, that then we, our heires, or successors, at the instance, and petition of the said Edward Osborne, Thomas Smith, Richard Staper, and William Garret, or the suruiuer of them, to be made to vs, our heires, or successors, will grant and make to the said Edward, Thomas, Richard, and William, or the suruiuer of them, and to such other persons, as so shall be by the said Edward, and Richard nominated and appointed, new letters patents, vnder the great seale of England, in due forme of lawe, with like couenants, grants, clauses, and articles, as in these presents are contained, or with addition of other necessarie articles, or change of these in some part, for and during the full terme of seuen yeeres, then next following. Willing, and straightly commanding, and charging all and singuler our Admirals, Vicеadmirals, Iustices, Maiors, Sheriffes, Escheaters, Constables, Bailiffes, and all & singuler our other officers, ministers, liege men, and subiects whatsoeuer, to be aiding, fauouring, helping, and assisting vnto the saide Gouernour, and companie, and their successors, and to their Deputies, officers, seruants, assignes, and ministers, and euery of them, in executing, and enioying the premisses, as well on land as on sea, from time to time, and at all times when you, or any of you, shall be thereunto required, any statute, acte, ordinance, prouiso, proclamation, or restraint heretofore had, made, set footh, ordained, or prouided, or any other matter, cause or thing to the contrarie, in any wise notwithstanding.

In witnes whereof, we haue caused these our letters to be made patents, witnes our selfe, at Westminster, the 11. day of September, in the 23. yeere of our Raigne.

The

The Queenes commission vnder her great seale, to her seruant *Master William Harebrowne, to be her Maiesties Ambassadour, or* Agent, in the partes of Turkie. 1582.

ELizabetha, Dei Optimi Maximi, conditoris, & rectoris vnici clementia, Angliæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ Regina, veræ fidei contra Idololatras falsò Christi nomen profitentes inuicta & potentissima propugnatrix, vniuersis, & singulis præsentes has literas visuris, & inspecturis, salutem. Cùm augustissimus, & inuictissimus princeps, Zuldan Murad Can, Turcici Regni Dominator potentissimus, imperijque Orientis Monarcha, fœdus, amicitiámque nobiscum percusserit, iurauerítque, (quam nos perpetuis futuris temporibus, quantum in nobis erit, inuiolatè seruare destinamus) ad eámq; magis ornandam, illustrandámque concesserit idem augustissimus Imperator subditis nostris liberam suas merces exercendi rationem in omnibus Musulmanici imperij sui partibus, cum tam ampla priuilegiorum concessione, quàm alijs bonis principibus, sociis, & fœderatis nostris largitus est, quorum priuilegiorum donationem, nos gratam, acceptámque habentes, pari cum animi gratitudine colere certum habemus, deliberátumque, nihil in votis habentes potiùs, quàm bonorum erga nos principum animos beneuolos honoratissima mente fouere, promererique: Sciatis, nos de singulari erga nos, obsequiúmque nostrũ, fide, obseruantia, prudentia, & dexteritate multùm nobis chari Guilielmi Harebrowne, è custodibus corporis nostri vniu⁹, plurimùm confidentes, eum Oratorem, Nuntium, Procuratorem, & Agentem nostrum, certum, & indubitatum, ordinamus, facimus, & constituimus, per præsentes: dantes ei, & concedentes potestatem, authoritatem, nomine nostro, & pro nobis prædictum amicitiæ fœdus confirmandi, priuilegiorum concessionem in manus suas capiendi, ratámque habendi, omnibus & singulis subditis nostris, Musulmanicis oris, terrísque negotiantibus, pro Maiestatis nostræ authoritate præcipiendi, mandandíque, vt sint in suis commerciis, quamdiu, quotiésque cum Musulmanicis versantur, dictorum priuilegiorum præscripto obtemperantes in omnibus, ac per omnia, ad obsequia tanta amicitia digna se componentes, ac in delinquentes in fœdus nostrum iustitiam exequatur. Potestatem, & authoritatem ei damus in omnes, & singulos subditos nostros in quibuscunque locis, & partibus Musulmanici Imperii dominationi subiectis negotiantes, constituendi emporiorum suorum sedes, in quibus voluerit portubus, & ciuitatibus, in alijs vetandi, in constitutis autem emporiorum sedibus, consules curandi, leges, preceptionésque ferendi, condendíque, quarum ex præscripto, dicti nostri subditi, & eorum quilibet sese publicè, & priuatim gerant, eorum violatores corrigendi, castigandíque, omnia denique & singula faciendi, perimplendíque, quæ ad dictorum subditorum nostrorum honestam gubernationem, & commercii exercendi in illis partibus rationem pertinent, promittentes bona fide, & in verbo Regio, nos ratum, gratum, & firmum habituras, quæcunque dictus Orator, & Agens noster, à legibus nostris non abhorrentia in præmissis aut præmissorum aliquo fecerit. In cuius rei testimonium, has literas nostras fieri fecimus patentes, & figilli nostri impressione iussimus muniri. Datum è castro nostro Windsorię, 20. die Mensis Nouembris. Anno Iesu Christi, 1582. regni verò nostri, vicesimo quarto.

¶ *The same in English.*

ELizabeth, by the clemencie of the most good and most great God, the only creator and gouernour of all things, Queene of England, France, and Ireland, inuincible, and most mightie defender of the true faith, against all Idolaters falsly professing the name of Christ, to all and singuler persons, to whose sight and view, these our present letters may come, greeting. Whereas the most renowmed, and most inuincible Prince, Zuldan Murad Can, the most mighty gouernour of the kingdome of Turkie, and Monarch of the East Empire, hath entred into leagues and friendship with vs, (which we for our part, as much as lieth in vs, do purpose solemnly, and inuiolably to keepe in all times to come,) and whereas for the better countenancing and authorising of the same, the foresaid renowmed Emperour hath granted vnto our subiects free libertie of traffike, in all the partes of his sacred Empire, with as ample, and large a graunt of priuileges, as is giuen to other good Princes, our neighbours, and confederats, the graunt of which priuileges, wee taking very thankfully, and acceptably, are certainely, and thoroughly determined to keepe and maintaine, with the like goodnes and curtesie of mynde, desiring nothing more, then with an honourable respect to nourish, and deserue the beneuolent affections of good Princes toward vs: Knowe yee, that wee thinking well, and hauing good confidence in the singular trustines, obedience, wisdome, and disposition, of our welbeloued seruant William Harebrowne, one of the Esquires of our bodie, towardes vs, and our seruice, doeby the

theſe preſents, make, ordaine, and conſtitute him, our true and vndoubted Orator, Meſſenger, Deputie, and Agent. Giuing and granting vnto him, power, and authoritie, in our name, and for vs, to confirme the foreſaid league of friendſhip, to take into his handes, and to ratifie the grant of the priuiledges, and to commaunde, and enioyne by the authoritie of our Maieſtie, all and ſinguler our ſubiects, trading and dealing in any of the coaſtes, and kingdomes of that Empire, that as long as they remaine in traffike with his ſubiects, they be obedient to the preſcription and order of the foreſaide priuiledges, applying themſelues in all things, and thorough all thinges, to ſuch duties, and ſeruices, as appertaine to ſo great a league, and friendſhip, and the offenders againſt this our league, to receiue iuſtice, and puniſhment accordingly. We further giue vnto him power and authoritie, ouer all and ſinguler our ſubiects, dealing, and vſing traffike in any place or part whatſoeuer, ſubiect to the gouernement of that Empire, to appoint the places of their traffikes, in what hauen or citie it ſhall pleaſe him, and to prohibite them from all other places, and whereſoeuer their traffikes are appointed to be kept, there to make and create Conſuls, or Gouernours, to enact lawes, and ſtatutes, by the vertue and tenor whereof, all our foreſaid ſubiects, and euery one of them, ſhall both publikely, and priuately vſe and behaue themſelues, to correct and puniſh the breakers of thoſe lawes: and laſt of all, to doe and fulfill all and ſinguler things whatſoeuer, which ſhall ſeeme requiſite and conuenient for the honeſt and orderly gouernment of our ſaid ſubiects, and of the maner of their traffike in thoſe parts. Promiſing aſſuredly, and in the word of a Prince, that whatſoeuer ſhall be done of our ſaid Orator, and Agent, in all or in any of the premiſſes, not repugnant and contrarie to our lawes, ſhall be accepted, ratified, and confirmed by vs. In witnes whereof, we haue cauſed theſe our letters to be made patents, and our ſeale thereunto to be appenſed. Giuen at our Caſtle of Windſore, the 20. day of Nouember, in the yeere of Chriſt, 1582. and of our raigne the 24.

The firſt voyage or iourney, made by Maſter Laurence Alderſey, *Marchant of London, to the Cities of Ieruſalem, and Tripolis, &c.*

In the yeere, 1581. Penned and ſet downe by himſelfe.

I Departed from London, the firſt day of Aprill, in the yeere of our Lorde, 1581. and the next morning, being Sunday, I arriued at Graueſende, where I found a Craier laden with beere, then ready to depart, for Fluſhing: I, and the companie that was with me, ſtaied there that day, vntill one of the clocke in the afternoone the next day: and then I, and Thomas God, with foure or fiue more that were in the companie, to goe to Antwerpe, imbarked our ſelues in that Craier, and ſo ſet ſaile, and departed: but the winde being quite contrary, we were ſet on ſhoare, a mile or two before we came to Quinborough: in the euening, we miſſed our way to the towne, ſo that we lay in the Marſhes all that night, til two of the clocke the next morning, and then by chance Thomas God happened vpon a tennants houſe of his, by whome we were brought to Quinborough, where we were well entertained, and well refreſhed our ſelues.

Vpon Wenſday, the fift of Aprill, we tooke the ſeas againe, (the wind being ſomewhat good) and it ſerued vs ſo well, that we arriued at Fluſhing vpon the next day, at foure of the clocke in the afternoone. Vpon Friday in the afternoone, I arriued at Antwerpe, and hauing diſpatched my buſines there by Saturday, I tooke my paſſage for Dort, where I arriued vpon Sunday, the ninth of the ſame moneth, ſtaying there but that night: and in the morning, hauing found companie that went to Wezell, I tooke my paſſage with them in a ſmall boate, the boate being heauie laden, and ſore peſtered with paſſengers, and but one man and a boy, to guide the ſame: and the water withal being very rough, I cauſed them to land me at Gorcom, but foure mile from Dort, and there ſtaied that night, and the next day I tooke a ſtronger boate, better manned, and leſſe peſtered, in which boate, I thanke God, I was ſafely deliuered at Neumegen.

From thence, I tooke my paſſage to Collen, in a ſtronge hoy, laden with houſhold ſtuffe, and ſome other marchandize, and about twelue paſſengers, beſide my ſelfe. From Neumegen, we departed vpon Wenſday, the 12. of Aprill, with very ſcant wind, by reaſon whereof, we were very long vpon the way, and many times ſet on ground in great danger, beſides the perill of the Malecontents, who were vpon both ſides of the riuer. One euening, as we lay at anker, the wind being contrarie, there came about ſixteene of the Malecontents in a great ſhip boate, and thought to haue boorded vs, but our watch perceiuing them comming, called vs, the reſt of our companie being all ready and appointed for them, diſcharged a peece or two at them: they nothing afraide,

ſtill

ſtil came vpon vs, although thoſe 2. peeces were diſcharged, & I being faſt in ſleepe in my Cabbin, was therewith awaked: and aſking what the matter was, one told me, that the Malecontents were comming aboord vs: whereupon I being ſomewhat amazed, roſe out of my Cabbin, and betooke me to my ſword, for that was the beſt weapon I had, and vp I went to the top of the hatches, and when I perceiued them comming, I procured halfe a doſen to diſcharge at once, to let them vnderſtand, that there were thoſe in the ſhip, that would bid them welcome: and when thoſe peeces were all at one inſtant diſcharged, they were amazed, and ſtaied, and wiſt not what to doe. Then I, with the beſt dutch I had, called to them, and aſked them wherefore they came not, they ſhould be welcome to vs, with the beſt cheere that we were able to make, and ſo ſhot off another voley, and ſhewed our ſelues with long pikes, ſwords, and other weapons, in ſuch order, that they went their waies, and would not accept our entertainment, nor thanke vs for our good wils: we were foure daies in danger of them, the wind was ſo contrary. Then at the laſt, we procured the Maſter to go on ſhoare, to hire a couple of horſes to towe the ſhip, which he did, and vpon Sunday, the 16. of the ſame moneth, we landed at Wezell, and there hired a waggon, to goe ouer land to Collen, becauſe I had haſte to be at Venice, before this moneth were out.

Vpon Tueſday, the 17. of Aprill, I ſet from Wezell by lande, and that day I dined at Duiſburge, which is three Dutch miles from Wezell, and I lay all night at Thiſtleborough, which is within fiue miles of Collen, and vpon Wenſday I came to Collen, about foure of the clocke in the afternoone, and ſtaied there till Tueſday, the 24. of the ſame moneth, and then ſet towardes Mentz.

The monuments of the Citie of Collen ſeene by Maſter Alderſey.

The monuments which I ſawe at Collen, be theſe. I ſawe the tombe (as they ſay) of the three Kings of Collen, which are very faire, incloſed in copper, and Maſſe ſaid in it euery day: it is in the great Church of Collen.

I was alſo in the Church of S. Vrſula, where I found the people at a ſermon, made by a Ieſuite: to which ſermon, beſides the people, there reſorted all the ſchollers of the ſaid Ieſuite, who haue their learning there for nothing: I reckoned and numbred them, to be fiue hundreth and more, as they came out, and yet I ſuppoſe there are as many more, as I numbred, which went out at an other doore of the Church, ſo that I could not number them all. Alſo I ſaw the tombe of S. Vrſula there, and the tombe of the Engliſh King, that was her huſband, whoſe ſkuls are layned in ſiluer for great monuments, and the plate of ſiluer is made to open, ſo that euery bodie that will, may ſee the ſkuls: and there are the bones and ſkuls of a great many of other virgins, and ladies of England, to the number of ten thouſand, the ſkuls of all which Ladies, were layned alſo, and the ſkuls of all the virgines were gilt, and put in caſes of purple, and crimſon velluet: alſo the bones of S. Vrſula, and moſt of the bones of the Ladies, with the bones of the Pope, that came with them from Rome, (as they ſay) be all gilt.

This S. Vrſula was a Queene of Wales, and her huſband was a King, or a Kings ſonne of England, and his name was Enterius, which were all ſlaine, comming homewards from Rome, at Collen, with the Pope in their companie, that had chriſtened them at Rome, (for they were all heathen people before) and thinking to be their conductor home, was ſlaine with them. There I ſaw alſo (as they told me) the wedding ring of S. Vrſula: there are the bones and ſkuls alſo of the ſeuen brethren, and the mother of them, mentioned in the Machabees, which were all martyred, for not obeying the tyrants commaundement. I ſawe alſo one of the pots, that (by their report) had water in it at the mariage in Cana of Galile, which Chriſt turned into wine: and I dranke out of the ſame pot, which is made of white marble, and holdeth about a gallon, and the foote of it is trimmed with ſilke of diuers colours.

From Collen, I was commended by George Caſteler to Auguſta, to one Elias Geneſe, towards which place I went vpon Tueſday the 24. of Aprill, and in the way I ſawe many faire caſtles, and braue cities, wherein I entred not, as Punt, which is foure Dutch miles from Collen.

The Caſtle of Drageyfield, is a mile from Punt, which ſtandeth vpon a very high mountaine, and is very ſtrong, and of each ſide of it, is a Caſtle or two more: it is built within the rocke, ſo as it is inuincible, if it were withall well fortified. Then came we to Andernaga, a great Citie, which is not farre from the Caſtle of Drageyfield: from thence to Coplands, which is alſo a great Citie: thence to S. Cure, and Elfielde, two great Cities alſo: and then to the houſe of the Palſgraue, which is vpon the riuer of Rhene, which is not to be come vnto, but by water.

Vpon Sunday, the nine and twentie of Aprill, at twelue of the clocke, I came to Mentz, where I ſtaied but till three of the ſame day, and then tooke paſſage for Vpnam, where I lay all that night.

Mentz

Mentz is a very great Citie, and beautifull: the Biſhop thereof is in dignitie, and authoritie, a great Prince, his Pallace like a Princes Pallace, his barges like dwelling houſes, ſo large, and ſo full as it were of Chambers, that euery one of his ſeruants hath his doore, and thereunto his locke and key of his Chamber in the barge: they haue in the ſaide barge a dining Chamber, walkes, great tables to play at dice or cardes, and much more then I ſpeake of, becauſe I ſawe not all.

Upon Thurſday, the third day of May, I came to Auguſta, where I deliuered the letter I had to Maſter Ieniſe, from Maſter Caſtler, whome I found very willing to pleaſure me, in any thing that I could or would reaſonably demaund. He firſt furniſhed me with a horſe to Venice, for my money, and then tooke me with him a walking, to ſhewe me the Citie, for that I had a day to tarie there, for him that was to be my guide.

The deſcription of Auguſta in Germany.

He ſhewed me firſt the ſtate houſe, which is very faire, and beautifull: then he brought me to the fineſt garden, and orchard, that euer I ſawe in my life: for there was in it a place for Canarie birdes, as large as a faire Chamber, trimmed with wyer both aboue and beneath, with fine litle branches of trees, for them to ſit in, which was full of thoſe Canarie birdes. There was ſuch an other for Turtle dooues: alſo there were two pigeon houſes, ioyning to them, hauing in them ſtore both of Turtle dooues, and pigeons. In the ſame garden alſo, were ſixe or ſeuen fiſhponds, all railed about, and full of very good fiſhe. Alſo, ſeuen or eight fine fountaines, or water ſpringes, of diuers faſhions: as for fruit, there wanted none of all ſortes, as orenges, figges, raiſons, wallnuts, grapes, beſides apples, peares, fillbirds, ſmall nuts, and ſuch other fruite, as wee haue in England.

Then did he bring me to the water tower of the ſame Citie, that by a ſleight and deuiſe, hath the water brought vp as high, as any Church in the towne, and to tell you the ſtrange deuiſes of all, it paſſeth my capacitie. Then he brought me to another very faire garden, called the ſhooters hole, where are buts for the long bowe, the croſſe bowe, the ſtone bowe, the long peece, and for diuers other exerciſes more.

After this, we walked about the wals of the Citie, where is a great, broade, and deepe ditch, vpon one ſide of the towne, ſo full of fiſhe, as euer I ſawe any ponde in my life, and it is reſerued onely for the States of the Citie. And vpon the other ſide of the Citie, is alſo a deepe place all greene, wherein Deere are kept, and when it pleaſeth the States to hunt for their pleaſure, thither they reſorte, and haue their courſes with Grayhoundes, which are kept for that purpoſe.

Venice.

The fift of May, I departed from Auguſta, towards Venice, and came thither vpon Whitſunday, the thirteenth of the ſame moneth. It is needeles to ſpeake of the heigth of the mountaines, that I paſſed ouer, and of the danger thereof, it is ſo well knowen already to the world: the heigth of them is marueilous, and I was the ſpace of ſixe daies in paſſing them.

I came to Venice at the time of a Faire, which laſted foureteene daies, wherein I ſawe very many, and faire ſhewes of wares. I came thither too ſhort for the firſt paſſage, which went away from Venice, about the ſeuenth or eight of May, and with them about three ſcore pilgrims, which ſhippe was caſt away at a towne called Eſtris, two miles from Venice, and all the men in her, ſauing thirtie, or thereabout, loſt.

Within eight daies after fell Corpus Chriſti day, which was a day amongſt them of proceſſion, in which was ſhewed the plate, and treaſure of Venice, which is eſteemed to be worth two millions of pounds, but I doe not accompt it worth halfe a quarter of that money, except there be more then I ſawe. To ſpeake of the ſumptuouſnes of the Copes, and Veſtiments of the Church, I leaue, but the trueth is, they be very ſumptuous, many of them ſet all ouer with pearle, & made of cloth of golde. And for the Ieſuites, I thinke there be as many at Venice, as there be in Collen.

The number of Iewes in Venice.

The number of Iewes, is there thought to be 1000, who dwell in a certaine place of the Citie, & haue alſo a place, to which they reſort to pray, which is called the Iewes Sinagogue. They all, and their offſpring, vſe to weare red caps, (for ſo they are commanded) becauſe they may thereby be knowen from other men. For my farther knowledge of theſe people, I went into their Sinagogue vpon a Saturday, which is their Sabbath day: and I founde them in their ſeruice or prayers, very deuoute: they receiue the fiue bookes of Moſes, and honour them, by carrying them aboue their Church, as the Papiſtes doe their croſſe.

Their Synagogue is in forme round, and the people ſit round about it, & in the middeſt, there is a place for him that readeth to the reſt: as for their apparell, all of them weare a large white lawne ouer their garment, which reacheth from their head, downe to the ground.

The

The Psalmes they sing as we doe, hauing no image, nor vsing any manner of idolatrie: their errour is, that they beleeue not in Christ, nor yet receiue the New Testament. This Citie of Venice is very faire, and greatly to be commended, wherein is good order for all things: and also it is very strong, and populous: it standeth vpon the maine sea, and hath many Ilands about it, that belong to it.

To tell you of the Duke of Venice, & of the Seigniory: there is one chosen that euer beareth the name of a Duke, but in trueth, he is but seruant to the Seignorie, for of himselfe he can do little: it is no otherwise with him, then with a Priest, that is at Masse vpon a festiuall day, which putting on his golden garment, seemeth to be a great man, but if any man come vnto him, and craue some friendshippe at his handes, he will say, you must goe to the Masters of the parrish, for I can not pleasure you, otherwise then by preferring of your suite: and so it is with the Duke of Venice, if any man hauing a suite, come to him, and make his complaint, and deliuer his supplication, it is not in him to helpe him, but he will tell him, you must come this day, or that day, and then I will preferre your suite to the Seignorie, and doe you the best friendship that I may. Furthermore, if any man bring a letter vnto him, he may not open it, but in the presence of the Seignorie, and they are to see it first, which being read, perhaps they will deliuer it to him, perhaps not. Of the Seignorie there be about three hundreth, and about fortie of the priuie Counsell of Venice, who vsually are arraied in gownes of crimsen Satten, or crimsen Damaske, when they sitte in Counsell.

In the Citie of Venice, no man may weare a weapon, except he be a souldier for the Seignorie, or a scholler of Padua, or a gentleman of great countenance, and yet he may not doe that without licence.

The excesse of the women of Venice.

As for the women of Venice, they be rather monsters, then women. Euery Shoemakers or Tailers wife, will haue a gowne of silke, and one to carie vp her traine, wearing their shoes very neere halfe a yard high from the ground: if a stranger meete one of them, he will surely thinke, by the state that she goeth with, that he meeteth a Ladie.

I departed from this Citie of Venice, vpon Midsommer day, being the foure and twentith of June, and thinking that the shippe would the next day depart, I stayed, and laye a shippeboord all night, and we were made beleeue from time to time, that we should this day, and that day depart, but we taried still, till the foureteenth of July, and then with scant winde we sette saile, and sailed that day, and that night, not aboue fiftie Italian miles: and vpon the sixteene day at night, the winde turned flat contrarie, so that the Master knewe not what to doe: and about the fift howre of the night, which we reckon to be about one of the clocke after midnight, the Pylot descried a saile, and at last perceiued it to be a Gallie of the Turkes, whereupon we were in great feare.

His embarking at Venice for Jerusalem

The Master being a wise fellowe, and a good sayler, beganne to deuise howe to escape the danger, and to lose little of our way: and while both he, and all of vs, were in our dumps, God sent vs a merry gale of winde, that we ranne three score and tenne leagues before it was twelue a clocke the next day, and in fiue dayes after, we were seuen leagues past Zanta: and vpon Sunday morning, being the three and twentie of the same moneth, we came to the sight of Candia which day the winde came contrarie, with great blastes, and stormes, vntill the eight and twentie of the same moneth: in which time, the Marriners cried out vpon me, because I was an English man, and saide, I was no good Christian, and wished that I were in the middest of the Sea, saying, that they, and the shippe, were the worse for me. I answered, truely it may well be, for I thinke my selfe the worst creature in the worlde, and consider you your selues also, as I do my selfe, and then vse your discretion. The Friers preached, and the sermon being done, I was demaunded whether I did vnderstand him: I answered, yea, and tolde the Frier himselfe, thus you saide in your sermon, that we were not all good Christians, or els it were not possible for vs to haue such weather: to which I answered, be you well assured, that we are not in deede all good Christians, for there are in the shippe some, that holde very vnchristian opinions: for this time I satisfied him, although (they saide) that I would not see, when they sayd the procession, and honoured their images, and prayed to our Ladie, and S. Marke.

There was also a Gentleman, an Italian, which was a passenger in the shippe, and he told me what they said of me, because I would not sing, Salue Regina, and Aue Maria, as they did: I told them, that they that prayed to so many, or sought helpe of any other, then of God the Father, & of Jesus Christ his onely sonne, goe a wrong way to worke, and robbed God of his honour, and wrought their owne destructions.

All this was tolde the Friers, but I heard nothing of it in three daies after: and then at euening

ning prayer, they ſent the purſer about with the image of our Ladie to euery one to kiſſe, and I perceiuing it went another way from him, and would not ſee it: yet at laſt he fetched his courſe about, ſo that he came to me, and offered it to me as he did to others, but I refuſed it: whereupon there was a great ſtir: the patron and all the friers were tolde of it, and euery one ſaid I was a Lutheran, and ſo called me: but two of the friers that were of greateſt authoritie, ſeemed to beare me better good will then the reſt, and trauelled to the patron in my behalfe, and made all well againe.

The ſecond day of Auguſt we arriued in Cyprus, at a towne called Hillagh: the people there be very rude, and like beaſts, and no better, they eat their meat ſitting vpon the ground, with their legs a croſſe like tailors, their beds for the moſt part be hard ſtones, but yet ſome of them haue ſaye mattraces to lie vpon. Cyprus. Hillagh.

Vpon thurſday the eight of Auguſt we came to Joppa in a ſmall barke, which we hyred betwixt Hillagh and Salina, and could not be ſuffered to come on land till noone the next day, and then we were permitted by the great Baſha, who ſate vpon the top of a hill to ſee vs ſent away. Being come on land, we might not enter into any houſe for victualles, but were to content our ſelues with our owne prouiſion, and that which we bought to carry with vs was taken from vs. I had a paire of ſtirrops, which I bought at Venice to ſerue me in my iourney, and trying to make them fit for me, when the Baſha ſaw me vp before the reſt of the companie, he ſent one to diſmount me, and to ſtrike me, wherupon I turned me to the Baſha, and made a long legge, ſaying, Grand mercye Seignior: and after a while we were horſed vpon litle aſſes, and ſent away, with about fiftie light horſmen to be our conduct thyough the wilderneſſe, called Deſerta fœlix, who made vs good ſport by the way with their pikes, gunnes, and cauchins, Joppa. The Baſha of Joppa.

That day, being S. Laurence day, we came to Rama, which is tenne Italian miles from Joppa, and there we ſtayed that night, and payed to the captaine of the caſtell, euery man a chekin, which is ſeuen ſhillings and two pence ſterling. So then we had a new gard of ſouldiers, and left the other. Rama.

The houſe we lodged in at Rama, had a doore ſo low to enter into, that I was faine to creepe in, as it were vpon my knees, and within it are their roomes to lodge trauellers that come that way: there are no beds, except a man buy a mat, and lay it on the ground, that is all the prouiſion, without ſtooles or benches to ſit vpon. Our victualles were brought vs out of the towne, as hennes, egges, bread, great ſtore of fruite, as pomgranets, figges, grapes, oringes, and ſuch like, and drinke, we drue out of the well. The towne it ſelfe is ſo ruinated, that I take it rather to be a heape of ſtones then a towne.

Then the next morning we thought to haue gone away, but we could not be permitted that day, ſo we ſtayed there till two of the clocke the next morning, and then with a freſh gard of ſouldiers we departed toward Jeruſalem. We had not ridden fiue Engliſh miles, but we were incountred with a great number of the Arabians, who ſtayed vs, and would not ſuffer vs to paſſe till they had ſomewhat, ſo it coſt vs for all our gard aboue twentie ſhillings a man betwixt Joppa and Jeruſalem. Theſe Arabians troubled vs often times. Our Truchman that payed the money for vs was ſtricken downe, and had his head broken becauſe he would not giue them as much as they asked: and they that ſhould haue reſcued both him and vs, ſtood ſtill, and durſt doe nothing, which was to our coſt. Troopes of theeuiſh Arabians.

Being come within ſight of Jeruſalem, the maner is to kneele downe, and giue God thankes, that it hath pleaſed him to bring vs to that holy place where he himſelfe had beene: and there we leaue our horſes, and go on foote to the towne, and being come to the gates, there they tooke our names, and our fathers names, and ſo we were permitted to go to our lodgings. His arriuall in the ſight of Jeruſalem.

The gouernor of the houſe met vs a mile out of the towne, and very curteouſly bade vs all welcome, and brought vs to the monaſterie. The gates of the citie are all couered with yron, the entrance into the houſe of the Chriſtians, is a very low and narrow doore, barred or plated with yron, and then come we into a very darke entry: the place is a monaſtery: there we lay, and dieted of free coſt, we fared reaſonable well, the bread and wine was excellent good, the chambers cleane, and all the meat well ſerued in, with cleane linnen.

We lay at the monaſterie two dayes, friday and ſaturday, and then we went to Bethlem with two or three of the friers of the houſe with vs: in the way thither we ſaw many monuments, as:

The mountaine where the Angell tooke vp Abacucke by the haire, and brought him to Daniel in the Lions denne. The monuments in and about Jeruſalem.

The fountaine of the prophet Jeremie.

The place where the wiſe men mette that went to Bethlem to worſhip Chriſt, where is a fountaine of ſtone.

Being come to Bethlem we ſaw the place where Chriſt was borne, which is now a chapell with two altars, whereupon they ſay maſſe: the place is built with gray marble, and hath beene beautifull, but now it is partly decayed.

Neere therto is the ſepulchre of the innocents ſlaine by Herod, the ſepulchre of Paul, of Jerome, and of Euſebius.

Alſo a litle from this monaſterie is a place vnder the ground, where the virgin Mary abode with Chriſt when Herod ſought him, to deſtroy him.

We ſtayed at Bethlem that night, and the next day we went from thence to the mountaines of Judea, which are about eight miles from Jeruſalem, where are the ruines of an olde monaſterie. In the mid way from the monaſterie to Jeruſalem is the place where John Baptiſt was borne, being now an olde monaſterie, and cattle kept in it. Alſo a mile from Jeruſalem is a place called Inuentio ſanctæ crucis, where the wood was found that made the croſſe.

In the citie of Jeruſalem we ſaw the hall where Pilat ſat in iudgement when Chriſt was condemned, the ſtaires whereof are at Rome, as they tolde vs. A litle from thence is the houſe where the virgin Mary was borne.

There is alſo the piſcina or fiſhpoole where the ſicke folkes were healed, which is by the walles of Jeruſalem, but the poole is now dry.

The mount of Caluaria is a great church, and within the doore thereof, which is litle, and barred with yron, and fiue great holes in it to looke in, like the holes of tauerne doores in London, there ſit that are appointed to receiue our money with a carpet vnder them vpon a banke of ſtone, and they legs a croſſe like tailors: hauing paid our money, we are permitted to go into the church: right againſt the church doore is the graue where Chriſt was buried, with a great long ſtone of white marble ouer it, and railed about, the outſide of the ſepulchre is very foule, by meanes that euery man ſcrapes his name and marke vpon it, and is ill kept.

Within the ſepulchre is a partition, and in the further part thereof is a place like an altar, where they ſay maſſe, and at the doore thereof is the ſtone whereupon the angell ſat when he ſaid to Mary, He is riſen, which ſtone was alſo rowled to the doore of the ſepulchre.

The altar ſtone within the ſepulchre is of white marble, the place able to containe but foure perſons, right ouer the ſepulchre is a deuiſe or lanterne for light, and ouer that a great louer, ſuch as are in England in ancient houſes. There is alſo the chapell of the ſepulchre, and in the mids therof is a canapie as it were of a bed, with a great ſort of Eſtridge egges hanging at it, with tapers of ſilke and lamps.

Behinde the ſepulchre is a litle chapell for the Chaldeans and Syrians.

Vpon the right hand comming into the church is the tombe of Baldwine king of France, and of his ſonne: and in the ſame place the tombe of Melchiſedech.

S. Helens chapell. There is a chapell alſo in the ſame church erected to S. Helen, through which we go vp to the place where Chriſt was crucified: the ſtayres are fiftie ſteps high, there are two altars in it: before the high altar is the place where the croſſe ſtood, the hole whereof is trimmed about with ſiluer, and the depth of it is halfe a mans arme deepe: the rent alſo of the mountaine is there to be ſeene, in the creuis whereof a man may put his arme.

Vpon the other ſide of the mount of Caluarie is the place where Abraham would haue ſacrificed his ſonne. Where alſo is a chapell, and the place paued with ſtones of diuers colours.

There is alſo the houſe of Annas the high prieſt, and the Oliue tree whereunto Chriſt was bound when he was whipt. Alſo the houſe of Caiphas, and by it the priſon where Chriſt was kept, which is but the roome of one man, and hath no light but the opening of the doore.

Without Jeruſalem in the vallie of Joſaphat, is a church vnder the ground, like to the ſtrouds in Paules, where the ſepulchre of the virgin Mary is: the ſtayres be very broad, and vpon the ſtayres going downe are two ſepulchres: vpon the left hand lieth Joſaphat, and vpon the right hand lieth Joachym and Anna, the father and mother of the virgin Mary.

Going out of the valley of Joſaphat, we came to mount Oliuet, where Chriſt prayed vnto his father before his death: and there is to be ſeene (as they tolde me) the water and bloud that fell from the eyes of Chriſt. A litle higher vpon the ſame mount is the place where the Apoſtles ſlept, and watched not. At the foot of the mount is the place where Chriſt was impriſoned.

Vpon the mountaine alſo is the place where Chriſt ſtood when he wept ouer Jeruſalem, and where he aſcended into heauen.

His departure from Jeruſalem. Now hauing ſeene all theſe monuments, I with my company ſet from Jeruſalem, the 20 day of Auguſt, and came againe to Joppa the 22 of the ſame moneth, where we tooke ſhipping preſently for Tripolis, & in 4 dayes we came to Mecina the place where the ſhips lie that come for Tripolis.

The

The citie of Tripolis is a mile and a halfe within the land, ſo that no ſhip can come further then Mecina: ſo that night I came thither, where I lay nine dayes for paſſage, and at laſt we imbarked our ſelues in a good ſhip of Uenice called the new Naue Ragaſona. We entred the ſhip the ſecond of September, the fourth we ſet ſaile, the ſeuenth we came to Salina, which is 140 miles from Tripolis: there we ſtayed foure dayes to take in more lading, in which meane time I fell ſicke of an ague, but recouered againe, I praiſe God. Tripolis in Syria.

Salina is a ruinated citie, and was deſtroyed by the Turke ten yeeres paſt: there are in it now but ſeuenteene perſons, women and children. A litle from this citie of Salina, is a ſalt piece of ground, where the water groweth ſalt that raineth vpon it. Salina.

Thurſday the 21 of September, we came to Hillagh, and there we ſtayed eight dayes for more lading: the 18 of September before we came to Hillagh, and within ten miles of the towne, as we lay at an anker, becauſe the winde was contrarie, there came a great boat full of men to boord vs, they made an excuſe to ſeeke for foure men which (they ſaid) our ſhippe had taken from theirs about Tripolis, but our captaine would not ſuffer any of them to come in to vs. Hillagh a towne in Cyprus.

The next morning they came to vs againe with a great gally, mãned with 500 men at the leaſt, whereupon our captaine ſent the boat to them with twelue men to know their pleaſure: they ſaid they ſought foure men, and therefore would talke with our maiſter: ſo then the maiſters mate was ſent them, and him they kept, and went their way: the next morning they came againe with him, and with three other gallies, and then would needes ſpeake with our captaine, who went to them in a gowne of crimſon damaſke, and other very braue apparell, and fiue or ſixe other gentlemen richlie alſo apparelled. They hauing the Turks ſafe conduct, ſhewed it to the captaine of the gallies, and laid it vpon his head, charging him to obey it: ſo with much adoe, and with the gift of 100 pices of golde we were quit of them, and had our man againe.

That day as aforeſaid, we came to Hillagh, and there ſtayed eight dayes, and at laſt departed towards Candie, with a ſcant winde. Candia.

The 11 day of October we were boorded with foure gallies, manned with 1200 men, which alſo made a ſleeueleſſe arrant, and troubled vs very much, but our captaines paſport, and the gift of 100 chekins diſcharged all.

The 27 of October we paſſed by Zante with a merry winde, the 29 by Corfu, and the third of Nouember we arriued at Eſtria, and there we left our great ſhip, and tooke ſmall boats to bring vs to Uenice. Zanta. Eſtria.

The 9 of Nouember I arriued againe at Uenice in good health, where I ſtaid nine dayes, and the 25 of the ſame moneth I came to Auguſta, and ſtaid there but one day.

The 27 of Nouember I ſet towards Norenberge, where I came the 29, and there ſtayed till the 9 of December, and was very well intertained of the Engliſh merchants there: and the gouernors of the towne ſent me and my company ſixteene gallons of excellent good wine.

From thence I went to Frankford, from Frankford to Collen, from Collen to Arnam, from Arnam to Entrige, from Entrige to Dort, from Dort to Antwerpe, from Antwerpe to Flushing, from Flushing to London, where I arriued vpon Twelfe eue in ſafetie, & gaue thanks to God, hauing finiſhed my iourney to Jeruſalem & home againe, in the ſpace of nine moneths and fiue dayes.

The Queenes letter to the Great Turke 1582, written in commendation of *M. Harebrowne, when he was ſent Ambaſſadour.*

ELIZABETH &c. Auguſtiſſimo inuictiſſimoque principi, &c. Cùm ad poſtulatum noſtrum Cæſarea veſtra Maieſtas anno ſaluatoris noſtri Ieſu 1580, pacis fœdus nobiſcum pepigerit, coniunctum cum liberaliſſima priuilegiorum quorundam conceſſione, quorum beneficio ſubditi noſtri cum omni ſecuritate tutiſſimè liberiméq; ad vniuerſas & ſingulas Muſulmanici imperij veſtri partes terra mariq; proficiſci, in ijſq; commercij exercendi gratia, negotiari, habitare, manere, exindeq; ire & redire cum volent queant, ab ijs qui ſub Cæſarea veſtra Maieſtate in magiſtratu ſunt vbiq; locorum protegendi defendendiq; ſine vlla vel corporum, vel bonorũ læſione: nos tantæ conceſſionis beneficium gratum acceptumq; habentes, quantum in nobis eſt, approbamus confirmamúſq;: pollicentes in verbo regio, quod nos eandem pacem ſine vlla violatione ſartam tectamq; conſeruabimus: faciemúſq; vt ſubditi noſtri priuilegiorũ ſibi indultorum conceſſione ita vtantur, vt Cæſaream veſtram Maieſtatem magnificentiſſimæ ſuæ liberalitatis nunquam pœnitere queat. Quoniam autem conceſſionis huius virtus in vſu potiùs quàm verbis, Maieſtatis vtriúſq; noſtrum ſententiã, ponenda videtur, voluimus hunc mandatarium virum Guilielmum Harebroune, ex ſatellitibus quibus ad corporis noſtri tutelam vtimur vnum, virum compluribus virtutibus ornatum,

ad Cæsaream vestram Maiestatem ablegare, qui tum nomine nostro vobis gratias ageret, tum vt eius opera vteremur ad eam subditorum nostrorum mercimoniorum rationem stabiliẽdam tam in Imperiali vestra ciuitate Constantinopoli, quàm alijs imperij vestri Musulmanici locis, quæ ex præscripto priuilegiorum Cæsareæ vestræ Maiestatis benignitate conceditur, & ex vtu subditorum vtriúsq; nostrum erit. Ad quam rem quoniam opus illi erit Cæsareæ vestræ Maiestatis authoritate, summa contentione ab eadem rogamus, velit id agere apud omnes qui sub se in magistratu sunt, vt quibuscunq; poterunt melioribus modis huic nostro mandatorio in Cæsareę vestrę Maiestatis placito exequendo, adiutores sint & esse velint. Ei enim hanc curam demandauimus, in qua quàm fidem suam sit honeste liberaturus erga Maiestatem vtriúsq; nostrũ neutiquam dubitamus: cui etiam, vt in omnibus sint obtemperantes nostri subditi quantum Cæsareæ vestræ Maiestatis concessio patitur, volumus. Præterea, cum præclarus vir Mustafa sacræ Cæsareæ vestræ Maiestatis Musulmannorum interpres egregiam nauarit operam vt hoc inter nos fœdus fieret, rogamus summopere vt in nostram gratiam eum in Mustafaracarum ordinem Cæsarea vestra Maiestas recipere dignetur. Si in his alijsq; omnibus honestis causis hic noster agens subditiq; nostri Imperatoriæ vestræ sublimitatis æquanimitatem senserint, florebit inter has gentes nobile commercium, & nos omnibus officijs huic vestrę Maiestatis fauori & beneuolentiæ (si vlla ratione rebus vestris commodare poterimus) respondere libentissimè semper paratæ erimus. Deus optimus maximus mundi opifex, &c.

Mustafa interpres

¶ *The same in English.*

ELizabeth by the grace of the most mighty God and onely creator of heauen and earth, of England, France, and Ireland Queene, the most inuincible and most mighty defender of the Christian faith against all kinde of idolatries of all that liue among the Christians and falsly professe the name of Christ, vnto the most Imperiall & most inuincible prince, Sultan Murad Chan, the most mightie ruler of the kingdome of Turkie, sole aboue all and most soueraigne Monarch of the East Empire, greeting.

Wheras at our request your Imperiall Maiestie in the yeere of our Sauior Iesus 1580, hath entred into a league of peace with vs, whereunto was vnited a most large & bountifull grant of certeine priuileges, by benefit wherof our subiects may with all security most safely and freely trauell by sea and land into all and singular parts of your Musulmanlike Empire, and in the same exercising the trade of merchandize may traffike, dwell, remaine, depart from thence, and returne thither at their pleasure, and in all places be maintained & defended from all damage of bodies and goods by such as are in authoritie vnder your Imperiall Maiestie: we thankefully & gratefully receiuing the benefit of so great a priuilege, as much as in vs lieth do approue & confirme the same, promising in the word of a prince, that we will keepe the said league perfect and inuiolable, and will cause our subiects so to vse the grant of the priuileges giuen vnto them, as your Imperiall Maiestie shall neuer haue occasion to repent you of your most princely liberality. And because the force of this grant, in the iudgement of both our Maiesties, seemeth rather to consist in the vse therof, then in the words, we thought good to send vnto your Imperial Maiesty this our ambassador William Harebowne, one of the esquires of our bodie, which both on our behalfe should yeeld thanks vnto your Maiesty, and also that we might vse his good indeuor for the establishing of such order in our subiects trade of merchandize aswell in your Imperiall citie of Constantinople, as in other places of your Musulmanlike Empire, as according to ỳ prescript of the priuileges is granted by your princely Maiesties goodnesse, and shalbe for the benefit of both our subiects. For performance wherof, because he standeth in need of your Imperiall Maiesties authoritie, we earnestly beseech the same, that you would cause all those which be in authority vnder your highnesse, by all their best meanes to aide and assist this our ambassador in executing this your Imperiall Maiesties pleasure, for vnto him we haue committed this charge: wherin how honestly he will discharge his credit toward both our Maiesties, I no whit stand in doubt: to whom also our pleasure is, that all our subiects shalbe obedient, as far as the grant of your Imperiall Maiestie doth permit. Moreouer, whereas that worthy personage Mustafa your Imperiall Maiesties interpretor hath taken speciall paines for the procuring of this league betweene vs, we earnestly beseech you that for our sakes your Imperiall Maiestie would vouchsafe to aduance him vnto the degree of the Mastafaraks or chiefe pensioners. If in these and in all other honest causes our aforesaid agent and our subiects shall finde your Imperiall highnesses fauor, a noble traffike will florish betweene these nations, and we (if by any way we may stand your state in stead) will alwayes most willingly be ready to requite this your Maiesties fauor and good will with all kinde of good offices. Almighty God the maker of the world, preserue and keepe your Imperiall Maiestie, &c.

M. William Harebowne sent ambassador to the Turke.

A request for the preferring of Mustafa Beg.

The

The passeport made by the great Maister of Malta vnto the *Englishmen in the barke Raynolds.* 1582.

FRere *Hugo de Lonbenx Verdala*, Dei gratia sacræ domus hospitalis sancti Iohannis Hierosolimitani magister humilis, pauperúmque Iesu Christi custos, vniuersis & singulis principibus ecclesiasticis & secularibus, archiepiscopis, episcopis, ducibus, marchionibus, baronibus, nobilibus, capitaneis, vicedominis, præfectis, castellanis, admiralijs, & quibuscúnque triremium vel aliorum nauigiorum patronis, ac ciuitatum rectoribus, potestatibus ac magistratibus, cæterísque officialibus, & quibuscúnque personis cuiusuis dignitatis, gradus, status & conditionis fuerint, vbilibet locorum & terrarum constitutis, salutem.

Notum facimus & in verbo veritatis attestamur, *come nel mese di Maggio prossime passato le nostre galere vennero dal viaggio di Barberia, doue habendo mandato per soccorrere a vn galionetto de Christiani che hauea dato trauerso in quelle parti, essendo arriuati sopra questa isola alla parte de ponente trouarono vna naue Inglesa, sopra cargo de essa il magnifico Giouanni Keale, & Dauid Filly patrono, volendo la reconoscere che naue fosse, han visto, che se metteua in ordine per defendersi, dubitando che dette nostre galere fossero de inimici: & per che vn marinaro, riuoltose contra la volonta de detti magnifico Giouani Keale & Dauid Filly, habbi tirato vn tiro di artiglieria verso vna de dette galere, & che non se amangnaua la vela de la Maiestra secondo la volonta de detti magnifico Giouanni Keale & Dauid Filly patrono, fu rimensata detta naue nel presente general porto di Malta, secondo l'ordine del venerando generale de dette galere, & essendo qua, monsignor Inquisitore ha impedita quella per conto del sancto offfcio, & si diede parte alla santita di nostro signor Gregorio papa xiij. a la fin fu licenciata per andarsene al suo viaggio. Han don q, humilmente supplicato detti magnifico Giouanni Keale & Dauid Filly per nome & parte delli magnifici Edwardo Osburn senatore & Richardo Staper merchanti Inglesi della nobile citta di Londra, & anco di Thomaso Wilkinson scriuano, piloti, nocheri, & marinari, gli volessimo dare le nostre lettere patente & saluo condutto, accio che potranno andare & ritornare quando gli parera commodo con alcuna roba & mercantia a loro benuista: si come noi, essendo cosa giusta & che retornera commoda a nostra relligione & a questi forestieri, per tenor de li presenti se gli habiamo concesse con le conditione però infra scritte.* videlicet:

Che ogni volta che detti mercadanti con sopradetta naue o con altra non porteranno mercantie de contra bando, & che constara per fede authentica & con lettere patente de sanita, poteran liberalmente victualiarse de tutte le victuarie necessarie, & praticare in questa isola & dominij, & poi partirsene & seguire suo viaggio per doue volessero in leuante o altroue, come tutti altri vasselli & specialmente de Francesi & altri nationi, & di vendere & comprare qual si voglia mercantia a loro benuista,

Item, che potera portare poluere de canone & di archibuso, salnitro, carboni di petra rosetta, platine de rame, stagno, acciale, ferro, carisee commune, tela grossa bianca per far tende de galere, balle de ferro de calibro, petre de molino fine, arbore & antenne de galere, bastardi & alteri. Et in conclusione, hauendo visto che loro per il tempo che restarano qua, si portorno da fideli & Catholici Christiani, & che sua santita habbia trouato bono il saluo condutto del gran Turko a loro concesso, per il timor della armata Turkesca & di altri vasselli de inimici, inherendo alla volonta di sua santita, & massime per che hauera de andare & passare per diuersi lochi & tanto lontani come Inghilterra, Flandra, & tutti parti di ponente, & in altroue, a noi ha parso farle le presente nostre lettere patente come fidele conuersatore nostro, accio piu securamente & senza obstaculo possa andare & ritornare quando li parera con detta naue o con altre, a loro benuista. Per tanto donque tutti & ciascun di voi sudetti affectuosamente pregamo, che per qual si voglia de vostra iurisditione, alla quale detto magnifico Giouani Keale & Dauid filly a nome quo supra con la naue & marinari de detti loro principali o altri caschera, nauigare, passare, & venire sicuramente, alla libera, senza alcuno disturbo o altro impedimento li lasciate, & facciate lasciare stare, & passare, tornare, & quando li parera partire, talmente che per amore & contemplatione nostra il detto magnifico Giouanni keale a nome quo supra con le naue, marinari, & mercantia non habbi difficulta, fastidio & ritentione alcuna, anzi se gli dia ogni agiuto & fauore, cosa degna di voi, giusta, & a noi gratissima de recompensarnila con vguale & maggior seruitio, quando dall'occasione ne saremo rechiesti. Et finalmente commandammo a tutti & qual si vogla religiosi & frati de nostra relligione di qual si voglia conditione, grado & stato che siano, & a tutti ricenitori & procuratori nostri in tutti & qual si uoglia priorati nostri deputati & deputandi in vertu di santa obedientia, & a tutti nostri vassalli & alla giurisditione di nostra relligione soggetti, che in tale & per tale tenghino & reputino il detto magnifico Giouanni keale a nome vt supra, naue, marinari, & mercantia, senza permettere, che nel detto suo viaggio, o in alcun altro luogo sia molestato, o in qual si voglia

manera impedito, anzi tutte le cose sue, & negotij loro siano da voi agiontati & continuamente fauoriti. In cuius rei testimonium Bulla nostra magistralis in cera nigra præsentibus est impressa. Data Melita in conuentu nostro die duo decimo Mensis Iulij. 1582.

¶ *The same in English.*

FRier Hugo of Loubeux Uerdala, by the grace of God, maister of the holy house, the hospitall of S. Iohn at Ierusalem, and an humble keeper of the poore of Iesus Christ, to all & euery prince ecclesiasticall & secular, archbishops, bishops, Dukes, Marqueses, Barons, Captaines, Uicelords, Maiors, Castellanes, Admerals, and whatsoeuer patrons of small boats, or other greater ships, and gouernors of cities, potentates and magistrates, and to other officers and persons whatsoeuer, of what dignitie, degree, state and condition soeuer they be, dwelling in all places and landes, greeting.

We make it knowne, and in the word of trueth doe witnesse, that in the moneth of May last past, our gallies came on the voyage from Barbarie, where hauing commandement to succor a litle ship of the Christians which was driuen ouer into that part, being arriued vpon this iland on the West part they fould one English ship vnder the charge of the worshipfull John Keele, and Dauid Fillie maister: & our men willing to know what ship it was, they seemed to put themselues in order for their defence, doubting that the said our gallies were of the enemies, and therefore one mariner reuolted contrary to the will of the worshipfull John Keele, and Dauid Fillie maister, and had shot off a piece of artillerie against one of the said gallies, and because she would not strike amaine her saile, according to the will of the said worshipfull John Keele, and Dauid Fillie maister, the said ship was brought backe againe vnto the present port of Malta, according to the order of the reuerend generall of the said gallies: and in being there, maister Inquisitor staid it by authoritie of the holy office, and in that behalfe by the holinesse of our Lord pope Gregory the thirteenth, in the end was licensed to depart on her voyage. They therfore the said worshipfull John Keele, and Dauid Fillie, in the name and behalfe of the worshipfull maister Edward Osburne alderman, and Richard Stoper, English merchants of the noble citie of Londõ, haue humblie besought together with Thomas Wilkinson the purser, pilots, maister and mariners, that we would giue our letters patents, and safe conducts, that they might go and returne, when they shall see opportunitie, with their goods and merchandizes at their pleasure: whereupon the thing seeming vnto vs iust, and that it might be for the profit of our religion, and of these strangers, by the tenor of these presents we haue granted the same to them: yet, with the conditions hereunder written. viz.

That euery time the said merchants of the said ship, or with any other, shall not bring such merchandize as is forbidden, and that by sufficient proofe, and letters testimoniall it appeareth that they are free from the infections of the plague, they may victuall themselues with all necessarie victuals, and traffike with vs, and in this iland and dominion, and afterward may depart, and follow their voyage whither they wil into the Leuant or els where, as all other vessels, and especially of France and other nations do, and sell and buy whatsoeuer merchandize they shall thinke good.

Item, that they may bring powder for cannon and harquebush, saltpeeter, cole of Newcastle, plates of lattin, tinne, steele, yron, common karsies white, course canuas to make saile for the gallies, balles of yron for shot, fine millstones, trees and masts for gallies, litle and others, and in conclusion, hauing seene that they for the time of their abode heere, did behaue themselues like faithfull and catholike Christians, and that his holinesse hath allowed the safeconduct of the great Turke to them granted for feare of the Turkish armie, and other vessels of the enemie, submitting our selues to the pleasures of his holinesse, and especially because our people haue occasion to passe by diuers places so farre off, as England, Flanders, and all parts Westwards, and in other places, we haue vouchsafed to make these our letters patents, as to our faithfull trafficant, so as more surely, and without let they may go and returne when they shall thinke good, with the said ship or with others at their pleasure: we therefore pray all and euery of your subiects effectuously that by what part soeuer of your iurisdiction, vnto the which the said worshipfull John Keele, and Dauid Fillie by name abouesaid, with the ship and mariners of the said principall place or other, shall haue accesse, saile, and passe, and come safely with libertie without any disturbance or other impediment, that you giue leaue, and cause leaue to be giuen that they may passe, stay and returne, and when they please, depart, in such sort, that for our loue and contentation the said worshipfull John Keele, with the ship and mariners haue no let, hinderance, or retention, also that you giue all helpe and fauor, a thing worthie of your iustice, and to vs most acceptable, to be recompenced with equall and greater iustice, when vpon occasion it shalbe required.

And

And finally, we commaund all, and whatſoeuer religious people, and brothers of our religion, of whatſoeuer condition, degree, and ſtate they be, and all our receiuers and procurators, in all and whatſoeuer our priories deputed, and to be deputed by vertue of the holy obedience, and all our people, and all that are ſubiect to the iuriſdiction of our religion, that in, and by the ſame they hold, and repute the ſayd worſhipfull Iohn Keele in the name as aboueſayd, the ſhippe, mariners, and merchandiſe, without let in the ſame their voiage, or in any other place, that they be not moleſted, nor in any wiſe hindered, but that in all their cauſes and buſineſſe they be of you holpen, and furthered continually. In witneſſe whereof, our ſeale of gouerment is impreſſed to theſe preſents in blacke wax. Giuen at Malta in our Conuent, the twelfth of the moneth of July, in the yeare, 1582.

Certayne remembrances of an intended voyage to Braſill, and the *Riuer of Plate, by the Edward Cotton, a ſhippe of M. Edward Cottons of Southhampton, which periſhed through extreme negligence neere Rio grande in Ginnie, the 17. of Iuly, 1583.*

ARticles of Couenants agreed vpon betweene Edward Cotton eſquier, owner of the good ſhip called the Edward Cotton of Southhampton, and of all the merchandizes in her laden, of the one part, and William Huddie gentleman, captaine of the ſaid ſhip, Iohn Hooper his lieutenant, Iohn Foſter maſter, Hugh Smith Pilot for the whole voiage, and William Cheeſman merchant, on the other part.

1 IT is obſerued and kept the daily order of Common prayer aboord the ſhip, & the company to be called thereunto, at the leaſt once in the day, to be pronounced openly.

2 Item, that they be ready with the firſt faire wind, to ſet ſaile and ſailes in the voiage, and not to put into any port or harbour, but being forcibly conſtrained by weather, or other apparant and vrgent cauſe.

3 Item, that they take in, at or about the Iſles of Cape Verde, to the quantitie of 25. or 30. tunnes of ſalt, to be imploied among other the owners merchãdize, at Santos, & S. Vincents, to his only behoofe, & the reſt of the ſalt, ſo much as ſhall be needed for victuall, and for ſauing of the hides to be kept aboord, & the ſame ſalt to be prouided either at the fiſhermens hands nere the ſaid Iſles for trucke of cõmodities, or els to be taken in at the aforeſaid Iſles, at the diſcretion of the aboue named.

4 Item, vpon the due performance of this voiage, the owner bindeth himſelfe by this deede, to yeeld vnto any ſuch of the company, as ſhall refuſe their ſhares before they depart from the coaſt of England, 20. markes a ſingle ſhare, for the dutie of the whole voyage, making not aboue 75. ſhares ſingle in the whole.

5 Item, the company according as they be appointed by the officers of the ſayd ſhippe aboue named, ſhall at all times be as well readie to doe their painfull indeuor, not onely aboord, but in all labours at the land, according to the direction giuen by the aboue named officers, vpon paine of forfeiture of their ſhares and wages, the ſame to be deuided amongſt the company.

6 Item, that the ſhares be taken at their returne out of all the traine oile, and hides of the ſeales, and of all other commodities gotten by their handie labour, and of the ſalt that ſhall be vended and other commodities, at, or neere the coaſt of Braſill, to allow after 9. li. the tunne freight, whereof one third to goe to the companie.

7 Item, that if any man ſhall practiſe by any deuiſe or deuiſes whatſoeuer, to alter the voyage from the true purpoſe and intent of the owner, viz. to make their firſt port at Santos, and S. Vincents, and there to reuictuall and traffike, and from thence to the riuer of Plate, to make their voyage by the traine, and hide of the ſeales, with ſuch other commodities as are there to be had, according as the owner, with diuers that haue gouernment in the ſaid ſhip, are bound to her highnes by their deeds obligatorie in great ſummes, that all ſuch practiſers vpon due proofe made, ſhall looſe their whole intertainment due by ſhares or otherwiſe for this ſaid voiage to be adiudged by the captaine, his lieutenant, the maſter, Pylot and merchaunt, or three of them at the leaſt, whereof the Captaine to be one.

8 Item, that the pinneſſe be ready at all times to ſerue the merchants turne vpon his demaund, to take in wares and commodities, and to cary and recary to, and from the ſhore, when, and as oft as need ſhall bee, and to giue due attendance at the merchaunt, and merchaunts direction, during the whole voyage.

9 Item, that no head or chiefe officer being ſet downe for ſuch an officer vnder the hand of the owner, at the going to ſea of the ſaid ſhip, ſhall or may be diſplaced from his ſaid place or office, without

out great cause, and his misdemeanor to be adiudged by the captaine and his lieutenant, the master, the Pylot, and the merchant, or by the consent of 3. of them at the least.

10 Item, that vpon the returne of the ship to the coast of England, the master and Pilot put not into any porte or harbour, to the Westward of Southhampton, but forced by weather, or such like vrgent cause.

William Huddie. John Foster.
Iohn Hooper. William Cheesman.
Hugh Smith.

A direction as well for the Captaine, and other my friends of *the ship, as especially for William Cheesman Merchant, for the voyage* to the Riuer of Plate.

AT your comming to the Isle of S. Sebastian, vpon the coast of Brasill, you shall according to your discretions, make sale of such commodities, as you may thinke will be there about well vented, and likewise to buy commodities without making longer stay there then your victuals bee prouiding, but rather to bespeake commodities against your returne from the riuer of Plate, especially of Amber, Sugar, Greene ginger, Cotton Wooll, and some quantitie of the peppers of the countrey there. Also for Parats and Munkies, and the best called Serrabosa. Also you shall barrell vp of the beefe called Petune, two or three barrels, and to lose no good opportunitie, to gather of the Indian figs, and the graines of them to preserue dry, in such quantitie as conueniently may be done: and touching the making of the traine, and preseruing of the hides, I leaue it wholy to the order and the discretion of the chiefe of the company. Also that in any road where the ship shall ride vpon the coast of America, that triall be made with the drags, for the pearle Oisters, and the same being taken, to be opened and searched for pearle in the presence of the Captaine, his lieutenant, the master, the pylot, and merchaunt, or three of them, whereof the Captaine or his lieutenant to be one, and to remaine in the custodie of the Captaine and merchant, vnder two lockes, either of them to haue a key to his owne locke, and that a true inuentorie be deliuered also to the master and pilot of the sayd pearle or other iewels of price gotten in the sayd voyage, to the intent that no partie be defrauded of his due, and that no concealment bee made of any such thing vpon forfeiture, the partie to lose his share and dutie for the voyage that shal so conceale and not reueale it vnto the officers aboue named. Also to doe your best indeuour to try for the best Ore of gold, siluer, or other rich mettals whatsoeuer. Forget not also to bring the kernels & seeds of strange plants with you, the Palmito with his fruite inclosed in him. Serue God, keepe good watch, and stand alwayes vpon your gard.

Edward Cotton.

These things being thus ordered, and the ship of the burden of 260. tunnes, with 83. men of all sortes furnished, and fully appointed for the voyage, began to set saile from Hurst Castle vpon Friday the 20. of May, Anno 1583. and the 17. day of July ensuing, fell with the coast of Guinie, to take in fresh water, where, though meere dissolute negligence, shee perished vpon a sand, with the most part of the men in her, as appeareth by the confession of one that escaped, the substance and tenor whereof is this.

The confession of William Bends, Masters Mate in the Edward *Cotton, the 21. of October, An.* 1584

HE saith that the 17. day of July, Anno 1583. hauing some lacke of fresh water, they put roome vpon the coast of Guinie, where they were set vpon a sand about 8. leagues from the shore, and this Examinate with 29. more, got into the pinnesse, who arriued in an Island, being desolate of people, and fiue miles in compasse, where they rested 18. dayes through force of weather, not hauing els to eate but grasse. The rest of the company, the ship being splitted in two, and in quarters, got them into one of the after quarters, and by the helpe of raftes came also a shore into another Island, neere to Rio grande, where they all died as he supposeth.

The other 30. in the pinnesse, at the end of 18. dayes, departed that Island, and came to Saint Domingo,

Domingo, where comming on shore, they were taken of the Moores, and stripped naked. And they buried one Coxe an old man aliue, notwithstanding his pitifull lamentation and skrikings: the rest hauing Rice and water allowed them, liued there a certaine time. This Examinate was at last sold to a Portingall, with whom he dwelt the space of a quarter of a peere, and in the end a Portingall Caruell comming thither, his master laded the same with Negroes, and he obtained leaue of his master to goe in the same Caruell, and by that meanes arriued at Lisbone, and from thence came into England the 17. of October, 1584. leauing behind him of his company aliue, Richard Hacker, Iohn Baker, Iohn Mathew, and a boy, with two others which were gone beyond S. Domingoes: all which, as he saith, were so sicke and diseased, that he iudgeth them to be long before this time dead.

One Coxe an old English man buried aliue by the Moores of Rio grande in Guinea.

The Passeport in Italian granted to Thomas Shingleton Englishman, *by the king of Algier.* 1583.

NOi Assam Bassa Vicere & lochotenente e capitan della iurisditione de Algier doniamo e concediamo libero saluo condutto a Thomas Shingleton *mercadante, che possi con suo vassello e marinari de che natione se siano, e mercadantia di qual si voglia natione, andare & venire, e negotiare, e contrattare liberamẽte in questa citta de Algier & altri lochi de la nostra iurisditione cosi di ponente come di Leuante: & cosi anchora commandiamo al capitan di mare di Algier & d'altri lochi de nostra iurisditione, Rais de Vasselli & capitani de Leuante, & altri capitani di vassells tanto grossi como picholi, li commanda a qual si voglia, che trouando il sopradetto* Thomas Shingleton *Inglese nelli mari di Genoua, Francia, Napoli, Calabria, e Sardigna con suo vassello e mercantia, & homini de che nationi si siano, non gli debba molestare, ne piggliare, ne toccare cosa de nessuna manera tanto di denare, como di qual si voglia altra robba, sotto la pena e disgratia di perder la vita & la robba: Et per quanto hauete a caro la gratia del Gran Signor nostro patrone* Soltan Murates Ottomano, *lo lasciarete andare per suo camino senza dargli nessuno impedimento. Dato in Algieri in nostro reggio Palazzo, sigillato del nostro reggio sigillo, e fermato della gran ferma, & scritto del nostro reggio Secretario il di 23. de Ienaro, 1583.*

¶ *The same in English.*

WE Assam Bassha Uiceroy and lieutenant, and capitaine of the iurisdiction of Algier, giue and graunt free safeconduct to Thomas Shingleton merchaunt, that with his ship & mariners, of what nation soeuer they be, and with his merchandize of what countrey soeuer, he may goe and come, and trade and traffique freely in this citie of Algier, & other places of our iurisdiction, as wel of the West as of the East. And in like sort we further command the capitaine of the sea of Algier, and other places of our iurisdiction, the Reiz of vessels and capitains of the Leuant, and other capitains of vessels as well great as small, whosoeuer they be, we do command them, That finding the foresayd Thomas Shingleton Englishman in the seas of Genua, Fraunce, Naples, Calabria, and Sardinia, with his ship and merchandize, and men of what nation soeuer they be, that they molest them not, neither take nor touch any kind of thing of theirs, neither money nor any other kind of goods, vnder paine and perill of loosing of their liues and goods: and as you make account of the fauour of the Grand Signor our lord Sultan Murates Hottoman, so see you let him passe on his way without any maner of impediment. Dated at Algier in our kingly palace, signed with our princely signet, and sealed with our great seale, and written by our Secretarie of estate, the 23. of Ianuarie, 1583.

A letter written in Spanish by Sir Edward Osborne to the king of *Argier, the 20. of Iuly, 1584 in the behalfe of certaine English captiues* there deteined.

MVy alto y poderoso Rey,

Sea seruida vostra alteza. Como la muy alta y potentissima magestad del Gran Señor tiene hecho articulos de priuilegios con la Serenissima Magestad de nuestra Reyna d'Inglatierra, para los vassallos della poder libremente yr y boluer, y tratar par mar y tierra en los dominios de su potentissima Magestad, Como a la clara paresce por los dichos articulos, de che embiamos el traslado al Senor Iuan Tipton

nuestro

nuestro commissario, para lo muestrar a vostra Alteza. Contra el tenor de los quales articulos por dos galeras de su ciudad de Argier ha sido hechado al fondo en la mar vn des nuestros naues que venia de Petras, que es en la Morea, cargado de corintes y otras mercaderias, que alla se compraron, y las mas de la gente della matados y ahogados en la mar: y el resto estan detenidos por esclauos: cosa muy contraria a los dichos articulos y priuilegios. Que es occasion, que por esto supplicamos a vostra Alteza muy humilmente, que, pues que la potentissima magestad del Gran Senor es seruida nos fauoresçer por los dichos articulos, tambien sea seruida vostra Alteza assistirnos en ellos, otorgandonos por vostra autoridad su ayuda y fauor, segun que esperamos, para que puedan estar libres, y bolver para aca aquellos pobres hombres ansi hechos esclauos, como dicho es. Y ansi mismo, que mande vostra Alteza dar orden a los capitanes, maestres y gente de las galeras, que nos dexen de aqui adelante hazer nuestro trafico con seys naos cada año para Turquia a los dominios del Gran Senor a paz y a salvo, por no cõtrariar a los dichos nuestros priuilegios, Llevando cada vna de nuestras dichas naos por se conoscer vn salvo conducto de su alta & potentissima magestad. Y con esta vostra tan señallada merced y fauor que en esso resciberemos, quedaremos nosotros con grandissima obligation a vostra Alteza de seruirla por ello, segun que el dicho Senor Iuan Tipton, *a quien nos reportamos de todo lo demas, mejor informera a vostra Alteza: Cuya serenissima persona y estado supplicamos y pidimos a Dios omnipotente prosperar y acrescente con toda felicidad y honra. De la ciudad de Londres a los veynte dias de Iulio del año quinientos y ochenta y quatro annos.*

Al seruicio de vostra Alteza por y en nombre de todos los tratantes en Turquia, Io el mayor de Londres,
Edward Osborne.

¶ *The same in English.*

RIght high and mightie king,
May it please your highnesse to vnderstand, that the most high and most mightie maiestie of the Grand Signor hath confirmed certaine articles of priuiledges with the most excellent maiestie of our Queene of England, that her subiects may freely go and come, and traffique by sea and land in the dominions of his most mightie maiestie, as appeareth more at large by the said articles, whereof we haue sent the copy vnto M. Iohn Tipton our Commissarie, to shew the same vnto your highnesse. Against the tenor of which articles, one of our ships which came from Petras which is in Morea, laden with currants and other merchandizes which were bought in those partes, was sunke by 2. gallies of your citie of Argier, and the greatest number of the men thereof were slaine and drowned in the sea, the residue being detained as slaues: An acte very contrary to the meaning of the aforesaid articles and priuiledges, which is the occasion that by these presents we beseech your highnesse very humbly, that since it hath pleased the most mightie maiestie of the Grand Signor to fauour vs with the sayd priuiledges, it would please your highnesse in like maner to assist vs in the same, granting vs by your authoritie, your aide and fauour, according as our hope is, that the poore men so detained in captiuitie, as is aforesaid, may be set at libertie, and returne into their countrey. And likewise that your highnesse would send to giue order to the captaines, masters and people of your gallies, that from henceforth they would suffer vs to vse our traffique with six ships peerely into Turkie vnto the dominions of the Grand Signor in peace and safetie, that they doe not withstand those our said priuiledges, euery one of our foresaid ships carying with them a passeport of his most high and most mightie maiestie to be knowen by. And for that your so singular fauour and curtesie which in so doing we shall receiue, we on our part with all bounden duetie vnto your highnesse, will seeke to honour you in that behalfe, according as the said master Iohn Tipton (to whom we referre our selues touching all other circumstances) shall more at large enforme your highnesse, whose most excellent person and estate, we pray and beseech almightie God to prosper and increase with all felicitie and honour. From the Citie of London the 20. of July, 1584.

An English ship sunke by two gallies of Argier.

At the seruice of your highnesse, for and in the name of our whole company trading into Turkie, I Maior of London, *Edward Osborne.*

Notes concerning the trade of Argier.

The money of Argier.

THe money that is coined in Argier, is a piece of gold called Asiano, and Doublaes, and two Doublaes make an Asiano, but the Doubla is most vsed, for all things bee sold by Doublaes, which Doubla is fiftie of their Aspers there.

The Asper there is not so good by halfe and more, as that in Constantinople: for the Chekin of gold of the Turkes made at Constantinople, is at Argier worth an hundred and fifty Aspers, and at Constantinople it is but 66. Aspers.

The

The piſtolet and roials of plate are moſt currant there.

The ſaid piſtolet goeth for 150. Aſpers there: and the piece of 4. roials goeth for 40. Aſpers, but oftentimes is ſold for more, as men need them to cary vp into Turkie.

Their Aſianos and doublaes are pieces of courſe gold, worth here but 40. ſhillings the ounce, ſo the ſame is currant in no place of Turkie out of the kingdome of Argier, neither the Aſpers, for that they be leſſe then others be, for they coine them in Argier.

The cuſtome to the king is inward 10. per centum, to the Turke, to be paid of the commoditie it ſelfe, or as it ſhall be rated. The cuſtome.

There is another cuſtome to the Elemine, of one & an halfe per centum, which is to the Juſtice of the Chriſtians: the goods for this cuſtome are rated as they are for the kings cuſtome.

Hauing paid cuſtome inwards, you pay none outwards for any commoditie that you doe lade, more then a reward to the gate keepers.

The waight there is called a Cantare for fine wares, as mettals refined, and ſpices, &c. which is here 120. li. ſubtil. The waights.

Mettall not refined, as lead, iron, and ſuch groſſe wares are ſold by a great Cantare, which is halfe as big againe: ſo it is 180. li. ſubtil of ours here.

The meaſure of corne is by a meaſure called a Curtia, which is about 4. buſhels of our meaſure, and corne is plentifull there and good cheape, except when there happeneth a very dry yeere. The meaſure.

The ſureſt lodging for a Chriſtian there, is in a Jewes houſe: for if he haue any hurt, the Jew and his goods ſhall make it good, ſo the Jew taketh great care of the Chriſtian and his goods that lieth in his houſe, for feare of puniſhment. The ſureſt lodging for a Chriſtian.

An Engliſhman called Thomas Williams, which is M. Iohn Tiptons man, lieth about trade of merchandize in the ſtreete called The Soca of the Iewes.

Notes concerning the trade in Alexandria.

ALexandria in Egypt is a free port, and when a man commeth within the Caſtels, preſently the Ermyn ſends aboord to haue one come and ſpeake with him, to know what goods are aboord: and then he will ſet guards aboord the ſhippe to ſee all the goods diſcharged. And then from the Ermine you goe to the *Bye, onely for that he will inquire newes of you, and ſo from thence to the Conſuls houſe where you lye. The Venecians haue a Conſul themſelues. But all other nations goe to the French nations Conſul, who will giue you a chamber for your ſelues apart, if you will ſo haue it. This is another officer.

The cuſtoms inward of all commodities, are ten in the hundred, and the cuſtome is paid in wares alſo that you buy: for the ſame wares in barter you pay alſo ten in the hundred, at the lading of the wares. But if you ſell for money, you pay no more cuſtome but the ten afore ſaid, and one and a half in the hundred, which is for the cuſtome of the goods you lade for the ſayd money, for more cuſtome you pay not. But for all the money you bring thither, you pay nothing for the cuſtome of the ſame. And if you ſell your wares for money, and with the ſame money buy wares, you pay but two in the hundred for the cuſtome thereof. And if you ſteale any cuſtome, if it bee taken, you pay double cuſtome for that you ſteale. Other ſmall cuſtoms you pay beſides, which may be at two in the hundred: and for Conſullage you pay two in the hundred

The waight of Alexandria is called Pois Forforeine, which is a kintal in that place, which maketh at Marſeils 109. li. of Marſeils waight, at 15. ounces the pound, which is 103. li. of 16. ounces to the li. There is another waight called Pois Gerrin, which is 150. li. of Marſeils waight, by which are ſold all things to eate: but ſpice is ſold by the former waight.

From Alexandria to Cairo, is three dayes iourney, but you muſt take a Janiſſarie with you: and to goe vp thither by water, it is 8. dayes iourney. Roials of Spaine are currant money there, and are the beſt money you can cary. And 4. roials are worth 13. Medins, and 2. Medins, are 3. Aſpers. Piſtolets and crowes of France, and Dollers will goe, but of all Roials are beſt. Cairo three daies iourney from Alexandria by land.

Rice is not permitted to goe out of the land, but is kept for a victuall. But with a preſent to the Bye and Ermine ſome may paſſe.

All ſortes of ſpices be garbled after the bargaine is made, and they be Moores which you deale withall, which be good people and not ill diſpoſed. And after you be ſearched & haue leaue to paſſe, you muſt preſently depart out of the port, and if you doe not, they will ſearch you againe. And you muſt depart in the day, for in the night the caſtles will not ſuffer you to depart. The dutie to the Conſul, is 2. in the hundred, for his aide, and meate and drinke and all. And the port of Alexandria is good when one is within it with good ankers and cables. Siluer is better currant then gold in Alexandria, but both are good.

Commonly

Commonly the Caranans come thither in October from Mecca to Cairo, and from thence to Alexandria, where the merchants be that buy the spices, and there fore the spices are brought mot to Alexandria, where each Christian nation remaineth at the Consuls houses. Yet oftentimes the Christians go vp to Cairo to buy drugs and other commodities there as they see cause. And the commodities there vendible, are all sortes of kersies, but the most part blewes, and of clothes all colours except mingled colours and blacks. Pepper is vsually sold for 24. ducats the quintal, Ginger for 14. ducats. You must take canuas to make bags to put your commoditie in from Alexandria, for there is none. There is also fine flaxe, and good store of Buffe hides.

The voiage made to Tripolis in Barbarie, in the yeere 1584. with *a ship called the Iesus, wherein the aduentures and distresses of some Englishmen* are truly reported, and other necessarie circumstances obserued. Written by Thomas Sanders.

THis voiage was set foorth by the right worshipfull, sir Edward Osburne knight, chiefe merchant of all the Turkish company, and one master Richard Stapers, the ship being of the burthen of one hundred tunne, called the Iesus, she was builded at Farmne a riuer by Portsmouth. The owners were master Thomas Thomson, Nicholas Carnabie, and Iohn Gilman. The master (vnder God) was one Zacheus Hellier of Black-wall, and his Mate was one Richard Morris of the place: their Pilot was one Anthony Ierado a French man, of the prouince of Massils: the purser was one William Thomson our owners seruant: the merchants factors were Romane Sonnings, a Frenchman, and Richard Skegs seruant vnto the said master Stapers. The owners were bound vnto the merchants by charter partie thereupon, in one thousand markes, that the said ship by Gods permission should goe for Tripolis in Barbarie, that is to say, first from Portesmouth to Newhauen in Normandie, from thence to S. Lukar, otherwise called S. Lucas in Andeluzia, and from thence to Tripolie, which is in the East part of Affrica, & so to returne vnto London.

Man doeth purpose, and God doth dispose.

But here ought euery man to note and consider the workes of our God that (many times) what man doth determine, God doth disappoint. The said master hauing some occasion to go to Farmne, tooke with him the Pilot and the Purser, and returning againe by meanes of a perrie of wind, the boate wherein they were, was drowned, the said master, the purser, and all the company: onely the said Pilot by experience in swimming saued himselfe: these were the beginnings of our sorowes.

A new master chosen.

After which the said masters Mate would not proceed in that voiage, and the owner hearing of this misfortune, and the vnwillingnesse of the masters Mate, did send downe one Richard Deimond, and shipped him for master, who did chuse for his Mate one Andrew Dier, and so the said ship departed on her voiage accordingly: that is to say, about the 16. of October, in An. 1584. she made saile from Portesmouth, and the 18. day then next following she arriued into Newhauen, where

The new master died.

our said last master Deimond by a surfeit died. The factors then appointed the said Andrew Dier being then masters Mate, to be their master for that voiage, who did chuse to be his Mates, the two quarter masters of the same ship, to wit, Peter Austine, and Shillabey, and for purser was shipped one Richard Burges. Afterward about the 8. day of Nouember, we made saile foorthward, and by force of weather we were driuen backe againe into Portesmouth, where we refreshed our victuals and other necessaries, and then the wind came faire. About the 29. day then next following, we departed thence, and the first day of December by meanes of a contrary winde, we were driuen to Plimmouth. The 18. day then next following, we made foorthward againe, and by force of weather we were driuen to Falmouth, where we remained vntil the first day of Ianuarie: at which time the wind cõming faire, we departed thence, & about the 20. day of the said moneth we arriued safely at S. Lucas. And about the 9. day of March next following, we made saile from thence, and about the

The Iesus arriued in Tripolis.

18. day of the same moneth we came to Tripolis in Barbarie, where wee were very well interteined by the king of that country, and also of the commons. The commodities of that place are sweet oiles: the king there is a merchant, and the rather (willing to preferre himself before his commons) requested our said factors to traffique with him, and promised them that if they would take his oiles at his owne price, they should pay no maner of custome, and they tooke of him certaine tunnes of oile: and afterward perceiuing that they might haue farre better cheape notwithstanding the custome free, they desired the king to licence them to take the oiles at the pleasure of his commons, for that his price did exceed theirs: whereunto the king would not agree, but was rather contented to abate his price, insomuch that the factors bought all their oiles of the kings custome free, and so laded the same aboord.

In

In the meane time there came to that place one Miles Dickenson, in a shippe of Bristow, who together with our said Factors tooke a house to themselues there. Our French Factor Romaine Sonnings desired to buy a commoditie in the market, and wanting money, desired the said Miles Dickenson to lende him an hundred Chikinoes vntill hee came to his lodging, which hee did, and afterward the same Sonnings mette with Miles Dickenson in the streete, and deliuered him money bound vp in a napkin: saying, master Dickenson there is the money that I borowed of you, and so thanked him for the same: hee doubted nothing lesse then falshoode, which is seldome knowen among marchants, and specially being together in one house, and is the more detestable betweene Christians, they being in Turkie among the heathen. The said Dickenson did not tell the money presently, vntill hee came to his lodging, and then finding nine Chikinoes lacking of his hundred, which was about three pounds, for that euery Chikinoe is worth seuen shillings of English money, he came to the saide Romaine Sonnings and deliuered him his handkerchiefe, and asked him howe many Chikinoes hee had deliuered him? Sonnings answered, an hundred: Dickenson said no: and so they protested and swore on both partes. But in the ende the said Romaine Sonnings did sweare deepely with detestable othes and curses, and prayed God that hee might shewe his workes on him, that other might take ensample thereby, and that hee might be hanged like a dogge, and neuer come into England againe, if hee did not deliuer vnto the saide Dickenson an hundred Chikinoes. And here beholde a notable example of all blasphemers, cursers and swearers, how God rewarded him accordingly: for many times it commeth to passe, that God sheweth his miracles vpon such monstrous blasphemers, to the insample of others, as nowe hereafter you shall here what befell to this Romaine Sonnings.

Another ship of Bristowe came to Tripolis.

There was a man in the said towne a pledge, whose name was Patrone Norado, who the yere before had done this Sonnings some pleasure there. The foresaide Patrone Norado was indebted vnto a Turke of that towne, in the summe of foure hundred and fiftie crownes, for certaine goods sent by him into Christendome in a shippe of his owne, and by his owne brother, and himselfe remained in Tripolis as pledge, vntill his saide brothers returne: and, as the report went there, after his brothers arriual into Christendome, hee came among lewde companie, and lost his brothers said shippe and goods at dice, and neuer returned vnto him againe.

The saide Patrone Norado being vayde of all hope, and finding nowe opportunitie, consulted with the saide Sonnings for to swimme a seabooyde the Ilands, and the shippe being then out of danger, should take him in, (as after was confessed) and so to goe to Tallowne in the prouince of Marsilis, with this Patrone Norado, and there to take in the rest of his lading.

A conspiracie practised by the French Factor, to deceiue a Turkish marchant of 450. crownes.

The shippe being readie the first day of May, and hauing her sailes all abroade, our sayde Factors did take their leaue of the King, who very courteously bidde them farewell, and when they came abooyde, they commaunded the Master and the companie hastely to get out the shippe: the Master answered that it was vnpossible, for that the winde was contrary and ouerblowed. And he required vs vpon forfeiture of our bandes, that wee should doe our indeuoure to get her sooth. Then went wee to warpe out the shippe, and presently the king sent a boate abooyde of vs, with three men in her, commaunding the saide Sonnings to come a shoare: at whose comming, the king demaunded of him custome for the oyles: Sonnings answered him that his highnesse had promised to deliuer them custome free. But notwithstanding the king weighed not his saide promise, and as an infidel that hath not the feare of God before his eyes, nor regarde of his worde, albeit hee was a King, hee caused the saide Sonnings to pay the custome to the vttermost penie. And afterwarde willed him to make haste away, saying, that the Ianizaries would haue the oyle ashoare againe.

These Ianizaries are souldiers there vnder the great Turke, and their power is aboue the Kings. And so the saide Factor departed from the king, and came to the waterside, and called for a boate to come a booyde, and hee brought with him the foresaid Patrone Norado. The companie inquisitiue to know what man that was, Sonnings answered, that he was his countreyman, a passenger: I pray God saide the companie, that wee come not into trouble by this man. Then said Sonnings angerly, what haue you to do with any matters of mine? if any thing chance otherwise then well, I must answere for all.

The beginning of their troubles, and occasion of all their miserie.

Nowe the Turke vnto whome this Patrone Norado was indebted, missing him, (supposed him to bee abooyde of our shippe,) presently went vnto the King, and tolde him that hee thought that his pledge Patrone Norado was abooyde of the English shippe, whereupon the King presently sent a boate abooyde of vs, with three men in her, commaunding the said Sonnings to come a shoare, and not speaking any thing as touching the man, hee saide that hee would come presently in his owne boate, but assoone as they were gone, he willed vs to warpe foorth the

shippe, and said that he would see the knaues hanged before hee would goe a shoare. And when the king sawe that hee came not a shoare, but still continued warping away the shippe, he straight commaunded the gunner of the bulwarke next vnto vs, to shoote three shootes without ball. Then we came all to the saide Sonnings, and asked of him what the matter was that we were shot at, he saide that it was the Ianizaries who woulde haue the oyle a shoare againe, and willed vs to make haste away, and after that hee had discharged three shottes without ball, hee commaunded all the gunners in the towne to doe their indeuoure to sinke vs, but the Turkish gunners coulde not once strike vs, wherefore the king sent presently to the Banio: (this Banio is the prison wherein all the captiues lay at night) and promised if that there were any that coulde either sinke vs, or else cause vs to come in againe, he should haue a hundred crownes and his libertie. With that came forth a Spaniard called Sebastian, which had bene an olde seruitour in Flanders, and hee said, that vpon the performance of that promise, hee woulde vndertake either to sinke vs, or to cause vs to come in againe, and thereto hee woulde gage his life, and at the first shotte hee split our rudders head in pieces, and the second shotte he strake vs vnder the water, and the thirde shotte he shotte through our foremaste with a Colouring shotte, and thus hee hauing rent both our rudder and maste, and shotte vs vnder water, we were inforced to goe in againe.

A Spanish captiue that at vs, and made the ship to perish.

This Sebastian for all his diligence herein, had neither his libertie, nor an hundred crownes, as promised by the saide king, but after his seruice done was committed againe to prison, whereby may appeare the regard that a Turke or infidel hath of his word, although he be able to performe it, yea more, though he be a king.

Then our marchants seeing no remedie, they together with fiue of our companie went a shoare, and then they ceased shooting, they shotte vnto vs in the whole, nine and thirtie shoots, without the hurt of any man.

And when our marchants came a shoare, the king commaunded presently that they with the rest of our companie that were with them, should be chained foure and foure, to a hundred waights of yron, and when we came in with the ship, there came presently aboue an hundred Turks about vs, and they searched vs, and stript our very clothes from our backes, and brake open our chests, and made a spoyle of all that we had: and the Christian caitifes likewise that came a boorde of vs, made spoile of our goods, and vsed vs as ill as the Turkes did. And our masters mate hauing a Geneua Bible in his hand, there came the kings chiefe gunner, and tooke it out from him, who shewed me of it, and I hauing the language, went presently to the kings treasurer, and tolde him of it, saying, that sith it was the will of God that wee shoulde fall into their handes, yet that they should graunt vs to vse our consciences to our owne discretion, as they suffered the Spaniards and other nations to vse theirs, and he graunted vs: then I tolde him that the master gunner had taken away a Bible from one of our men: the Treasurer went presently and commaunded him to deliuer vp the Bible againe, which he did: and within a litle after he tooke it from the man againe, and I shewed the Treasourer of it, and presently hee commaunded him to deliuer it againe: saying, thou villaine, wilt thou turne to Christianitie againe? for hee was a Renegado, which is one that first was a Christian, & afterwards becõmeth a Turke, and so hee deliuered me the Bible the second time. And then I hauing it in my hand, the gunner came to mee, and spake these words, saying, thou dogge, I wil haue the booke in despight of thee, and tooke it from me, saying: If thou tell the kings treasurer of it any more, by Mahomet I will bee reuenged of thee. Notwithstanding I went the third time vnto the kiugs Treasurer, and tolde him of it, and he came with me, saying thus vnto the gunner: by the head of the great Turke, if thou take it from him again, thou shalt haue an hundred bastenadoes. And foorthwith he deliuered mee the booke, saying, he had not the value of a pinne of the spoile of the ship, which was the better for him, as hereafter you shall heare: for there was none, neither Christian nor Turke that tooke the value of a penniworth of our goods from vs, but perished both bodie and goods within seuenteene moneths following, as hereafter shall plainly appeare.

A Turke tooke a Geneua Bible for his share of the spoile.

All that had share of the spoile (shortly after) by Gods iudgement died.

Then came the Guardian Basha which is the keeper of the kings captiues, to fetch vs all a shoare, and then I remembring the miserable estate of poore distressed captiues, in the time of their bondage to those infidels, went to mine owne chest, and tooke out thereof a iarre of oyle, and filled a basket full of white Ruske to carie a shoare with mee, but before I came to the Banio, the Turkish boyes had taken away almost all my bread, and the keeper saide, deliuer mee the iarre of oyle, and when thou commest to the Banio thou shalt haue it againe, but I neuer had it of him any more.

But when I came to the Banio, and sawe our marchants and all the rest of our companie in chaines, and we all readie to receiue the same reward, what heart in the world is there so hard, but would

would haue pitied our cauſe, hearing or ſeeing the lamentable greeting there was betwixt vs: all this happened the firſt of May, 1584.

And the ſecond day of the ſame moneth, the king with all his counſell ſate in iudgement vpon vs. The firſt that were had forth to be arraigned, were the Factors, and the Maſters, and the king aſked them wherefore they came not a ſhoare when he ſent for them. And Romaine Sonnings anſwered, that though hee were king on ſhoare, and might commaunde there, ſo was he as touching thoſe that were vnder him: and therefore ſaid, if any offence be, the fault is wholy in my ſelfe, and in no other. Then foorthwith the king gaue iudgement, that the ſaid Romaine Sonnings ſhould be hanged ouer the Northeaſt Bulwarke, from whence he conueyed the forenamed Patrone Norado, and then he called for our Maſter Andrew Dier, and vſed fewe words to him, and ſo condemned him to be hanged ouer the walles of the Weſtermoſt bulwarke. *The Engliſhmen araigned.*

Then fell our other Factor (named Richard Skegs) vpon his knees before the king, and ſaide, I beſeech your highneſſe either to pardon our Maſter, or elſe ſuffer me to die for him, for hee is ignorant of this cauſe. And then the people of that countrey, fauouring the ſaid Richard Skegs, beſought the king to pardon them both. So then the king ſpake theſe wordes: Beholde, for thy ſake, I pardon the Maſter. Then preſently the Turkes ſhouted, and cried, ſaying: Away with the Maſter from the preſence of the king. And then he came into the Banio whereas we were, and tolde vs what had happened, and wee all reioyced at the good happe of maſter Skegs, that hee was ſaued, and our Maſter for his ſake.

But afterward our ioy was turned to double ſorow, for in the meane time the kings minde was altered: for that one of his counſell had aduiſed him, that vnleſſe the Maſter died alſo, by the lawe they coulde not confiſcate the ſhippe nor goods, neither captiue any of the men: whereupon the king ſent for our Maſter againe, and gaue him another iudgement after his pardon for one cauſe, which was that hee ſhould bee hanged. Here all true Chriſtians may ſee what truſt a Chriſtian man may put in an infidels promiſe, who being a King, pardoned a man nowe, as you haue heard, and within an houre after hanged him for the ſame cauſe before a whole multitude: and alſo promiſed our Factors their oules cuſtome free, and at their going away made them pay the vttermoſt penie for the cuſtome thereof. *Maſter Dier condemned to be hanged ouer a bulwarke.*

And when that Romaine Sonnings ſaw no remedie but that he ſhould die, he proteſted to turne Turke, hoping thereby to haue ſaued his life. Then ſaide the Turke, If thou wilt turne Turke, ſpeake the words that thereunto belong: and he did ſo. Then ſaid they vnto him, Now thou ſhalt die in the faith of a Turke, and ſo hee did, as the Turkes reported that were at his execution. And the forenamed Patrone Norado, whereas before he had libertie and did nothing, hee then was condemned ſlaue perpetuall, except there were paiment made of the foreſaid ſumme of money. *A Frenchman turned Turke, in hope of his life, and afterward was hanged.*

Then the king condemned all vs, who were in nomber ſixe and twentie, of the which, two were hanged (as you haue heard) and one died the firſt day we came on ſhoare, by the viſitation of Almightie God: and the other three and twentie he condemned ſlaues perpetually vnto the great Turke, and the ſhippe and goods were confiſcated to the vſe of the great Turke: and then wee all fell downe vpon our knees, giuing God thankes for this ſorowfull viſitation, and giuing our ſelues wholy to the Almightie power of God, vnto whome all ſecrets are knowen, that hee of his goodneſſe would vouchſafe to looke vpon vs.

Here may all true Chriſtian hearts ſee the wonderfull workes of God ſhewed vpon ſuch infidels, blaſphemers, whoremaſters, and runnagate Chriſtians, and ſo you ſhall reade in the ende of this booke, of the like vpon the vnfaithfull king and all his children, and of as many as tooke any portion of the ſaid goods.

But firſt to ſhewe our miſerable bondage and ſlauerie, and vnto what ſmall pittance and allowance wee were tied, for euery fiue men had allowance but fiue aſpers of bread in a day, which is but two pence Engliſh: and our lodging was to lye on the bare boords, with a very ſimple cape to couer vs, wee were alſo forceably and moſt violently ſhauen, head and beard, and within three dayes after, I and ſixe more of my fellowes together, with foure ſcore Italians and Spaniards, were ſent foorth in a Galeat to take a Greekiſh Carmoſel, which came into Arabia to ſteale Negroes, and went out of Tripolis vnto that place, which was two hundred and fourtie leagues thence, but we were chained three and three to an oare, and wee rowed naked aboue the girdle, and the Boteſwaine of the Galley walked abaft the maſte, and his Mate afore the maſte, and eche of them a bulls piſſell dried in their handes, and when their diueliſh choller roſe, they would ſtrike the Chriſtians for no cauſe: And they allowed vs but halfe a pounde of bread a man in a day without any other kinde of ſuſtenance, water excepted. And when wee came to the place whereas we ſaw the Carmoſell, we were not ſuffered to haue neither needle, bodkin, knife, *Euery fiue men allowed but two pence of bread a day.*

or any other instrument about vs, nor at any other time in the night, vpon paine of one hundred bastinadoes: we were then also cruelly manackled in such sort, that we could not put our handes the length of one foot a sunder the one from the other, and euery night they searched our chaines three times, to see if they were fast riueted: Wee continued fight with the Carmosall three houres and then we tooke it, & lost but two of our men in that fight, but there were slaine of the Greekes fiue, and 14. were cruelly hurt, and they that were sound, were presently made slaues, and chained to the oares: and within fifteene dayes after we returned againe into Tripolis, and then we were put to all maner of slauerie. I was put to hewe stones, and other to carie stones, and some to drawe the Cart with earth, and some to make morter, and some to drawe stones, (for at that time the Turkes builded a church:) And thus we were put to all kinde of slauerie that was to be done. And in the time of our being there, the Moores that are the husbandmen of the countrey rebelled against the king, because he would haue constrained them to pay greater tribute then heretofore they had done, so that the souldiours of Tripolis marched forth of the towne to haue fought battell against the Moores for their rebellion, and the king sent with them foure pieces of ordinance, which were drawen by the captiues twentie miles into the countrey after them, and at the sight thereof the Moores fled, and then the captaines returned backe againe. Then I and certaine Christians more, were sent twelue mile into the countrey with a Cart to lode timber, and we returned againe the same day.

The Turkes builded a church.

Nowe the king had 18. captiues, which three times a weeke went to fetch wood thirtie miles from the towne, and on a time he appointed me for one of the 18. and we departed at eight of the clocke in the night, and vpon the way as wee rode vpon the camels, I demaunded of one of our companie, who did direct vs the way: hee saide, that there was a Moore in our companie which was our guide, and I demaunded of them how Tripolis and the wood bare one off the other: and he said, East Northeast, and West Southwest. And at midnight or neere thereabouts, as I was riding vpon my camel, I fell asleepe, and the guide and all the rest rode away from me, not thinking but I had bene among them. When I awooke, and finding my selfe alone, durst not call nor hallow, for feare least the wilde Moores should heare mee, because they holde this opinion, that in killing a Christian they doe God good seruice: and musing with my selfe what were best for me to doe, if I should goe forth, and the wilde Moores should happe to meete with mee, they would kill mee: and on the other side, if I should returne backe to Tripolis without any wood or companie, I should be most miserablie vsed therefore: of two euils, rather I had to goe forth to the losing of my life, then to turne backe and trust to their mercie, fearing to bee vsed as before I had seene others: for vnderstanding by some of my companie before, how Tripolis and the said wood did lie one off another, by the North starre I went forth at aduenture, and as God would haue it, I came right to the place where they were, euen about an houre before day: there altogether we rested and gaue our camels prouender, and assoone as the day appeared, we rode all into the wood, and I seeing no wood there, but a sticke here and a sticke there, about the bignesse of a mans arme growing in the sand, it caused me to marueile how so many camels should be loden in that plat. The wood was Juniper, we needed no axe nor edge toole to cut it, but pluckt it vp by strength of hands rootes and all, which a man might easily do, and so gathered it together, a little at one place and so at another, & laded our camels, & came home about seuen of the clocke that night following: because I fell lame and my camel was tired, I left my wood in the way.

The Christians sent 3. times a weeke 30. miles to fetch wood.

There was in Tripolis that time a Venetian, whose name was Benedetto Venetiano, and seuenteene captiues more of his companie, which ranne away from Tripolis in a boate, and came in sight of an Island called Malta, which lieth fourtie leagues from Tripolis right North, and being within a mile of the shoare, & very faire weather, one of their companie said, In dispetto de dio adesso venio a pilliar terra, which is as much to say: In the despite of God I shall nowe finde the shoare, and presently there arose a mightie storme, with thunder and raine, and the winde at North, their boate being very smal, so that they were inforced to beare vp roome, & to sheare right afore the winde ouer against the coast of Barbarie from whence they came, and rowing vp and downe the coast, their victuals being spent, the 21. day after their departure they were inforced through the want of food to come ashoare, thinking to haue stolne some sheepe: but the Moores of the countrey very craftily (perceiuing their intent) gathered together a three score horsemen, and hid themselues behinde a sandie hill, and when the Christians were come all a shoare, and past by halfe a mile into the countrey, the Moores rode betwixt them and their boate, and some of them pursued the Christians, and so they were all taken and brought to Tripolis, from whence they had before escaped: and presently the king commaunded that the foresaide Benedetto with one more of his companie should lose their eares, and the rest to be most cruelly beaten, which was presently

Eighteene captiues run away from Tripolis.

The iudgement of God vpon blasphemers.

presently done. This king had a sonne which was a ruler in an Island called Gerbi, whereunto arriued an English ship called the Greene Dragon, of the which was master one M. Blonket, who hauing a very vnhappie boy in that shippe, and vnderstanding that whosoeuer would turne Turke should be well entertained of the kings sonne, this boy did runne a shoare, and voluntarily turned Turke. Shortly after the kings sonne came to Tripolis to visit his father, and seeing our companie, he greatly fancied Richard Burges our purser, and Iames Smith: they were both pong men, therfore he was very desirous to haue them to turne Turkes, but they would not yeeld to his desire, saying, we are your fathers slaues, and as slaues wee will serue him. Then his father the king sent for them, and asked them if they would turne Turke: and they saide: If it please your highnes, Christians we were borne, and so we will remaine, & beseeched the king that they might not be inforced thereunto. The king had there before in his house, a sonne of a yeoman of our Queenes guard, whom the kings sõne had inforced to turne Turke, his name was Iohn Nelson: him the king caused to be brought to these pong men, and then said vnto them: will not you beare this your countreyman company, and be Turke as he is? and they said, that they would not yeeld thereunto during life. But it fell out, that within a moneth after, the kings sonne went home to Gerbi againe, being sixe score miles from Tripolis, and caried our two foresaide pong men with him, which were Richard Burges, and Iames Smith: and after their departure from vs, they sent vs a letter, signifying that there was no violence shewed vnto them as yet, but within three dayes after they were violently vsed, for that the kings sonne demaunded of them againe, if that they would turne Turke? then answered Richard Burges, a Christian I am, and so I will remaine. Then the kings sonne very angerly saide vnto him: by Mahomet thou shalt presently bee made Turke. Then called hee for his men, and commaunded them to make him Turke, and they did so, and circumcised him, and would haue had him speake the wordes that thereunto belonged. But he answered them stoutly that he would not: and although they had put on him the habite of a Turke, yet said he, a Christian I was borne, and so I will remaine, though you force mee to doe otherwise.

The kings sonne had a captiue that was sonne to one of the Queenes maiesties guard, that was forced to turne Turke.

And then he called for the other, and commanded him to be made Turke perforce also: but hee was very strong, for it was so much as eight of the kings sonnes men could doe to holde him, so in the ende they circumcised him, and made him Turke. Now to passe ouer a litle, and so to shewe the maner of our deliuerance out of that miserable captiuitie.

In May aforesaid, shortly after our apprehension, I wrote a letter vnto Englande vnto my father, dwelling in Eauistoke in Deuonshire, signifying vnto him the whole estate of our calamities: and I wrote also to Constantinople to the English Embassadour, both which letters were faithfully deliuered. But when my father had receiued my letter, and vnderstood the trueth of our mishap, and the occasion thereof, and what had happened to the offenders, he certified the right honorable the earle of Bedford therof, who in short space acquainted her highnes with ꝑ whole cause thereof, & her maiestie like a most mercifull princesse, tendring her subiects, presently tooke order for our deliuerance. Wherupon the right worshipful sir Edward Osburne knight, directed his letters with all speede to the English Embassadour in Constantinople, to procure our deliuerie: and he obteined the great Turkes commission, and sent it forthwith to Tripolis, by one master Edward Barton, together with a Iustice of the great Turkes, and one souldiour, and another Turke, and a Greeke which was his interpretour, which could speake besides Greeke, Turkish, Italian, Spanish and English. And when they came to Tripolis, they were well intertained. And the first night they did lie in a captaines house in the towne: all our companie that were in Tripolis, came that night for ioy to master Barton and the other commissioners to see them. Then master Barton said vnto vs, welcome my good countreymen, and louingly intertained vs, and at our departure from him, he gaue vs two shillings, and saide, serue God, for to morrow we I hope you shall be as free as euer you were. We all gaue him thankes and so departed.

The first motion for those Englishmens deliuerie.

The next day in the morning very early, the king hauing intelligence of their comming, sent worde to the keeper; that none of the Englishmen (meaning our companie) shoulde goe to worke. Then hee sent for master Barton and the other commissioners, and demaunded of the saide master Barton his message: the Iustice answered, that the great Turke his Soueraigne had sent them vnto him, signifying that hee was informed that a certaine English shippe called the Iesus, was by him the said king confiscated, about twelue moneths since, and nowe my saide Soueraigne hath here sent his especiall commission by vs vnto you, for the deliuerance of the said ship and goods, and also the free libertie & deliuerance of the Englishmen of the same shippe, whome you haue taken and kept in captiuitie. And further the same Iustice saide, I am authorized by my saide Soueraigne the great Turke to see it done: And therefore I commaunde you by

vertue of this commission, presently to make restitution of the premisses or the value thereof, and so did the Justices deliuer vnto the King the great Turkes commission to the effect aforesaide, which commission the King with all obedience receiued: and after the perusing of the same, hee foorthwith commaunded all the English captiues to bee brought before him, and their willed the keeper to strike off all our yrons, which done, the King saide, You Englishmen, for that you do offende the lawes of this place, by the same lawes therefore some of your companie were condemned to die as you knowe, and you to be perpetuall captiues during your liues: notwithstanding, seeing it hath pleased my soueraigne lorde the great Turke to pardon your saide offences, and giue you your freedome and libertie, beholde, here I make deliuery of you to this English Gentleman: so hee deliuered vs all that were there, being thirteene in number, to master Barton, who required also those two yong men which the kings sonne had taken with him. Then the king answered that it was against their lawe to deliuer them, for that they were turned Turkes: and touching the ship and goods, the king saide, that he had solde her, but would make restitution of the value, and as much of the goods as came vnto his handes, and so the King arose and went to dinner, and commaunded a Iewe to goe with master Barton and the other commissioners, to shewe them their lodging, which was a house prouided and appointed them by the saide king. And because I had the Italian and Spanish tongues, by which their most traffique in that countrey is, Master Barton made mee his Cater to buy his victuals for him and his companie, and deliuered mee money needefull for the same. Thus were we set at libertie the 28. day of Aprill, 1585.

The English men released.

The plagues and punishments that happened to the king and his people.

Nowe to returne to the kings plagues and punishments, which Almightie God at his will and pleasure sendeth vpon men in the sight of the worlde, and likewise of the plagues that befell his children and others aforesaid. First when we were made bondmen, being the second day of May 1584. the King had 300. captiues, and before the moneth was expired, there died of them of the plague 150. And whereas there were 26. men of our companie, of whome two were hanged, and one died the same day that we were made bondslaues, that present moneth there died 9. more of our companie of the plague, & other two were forced to turne Turkes as before is rehearsed: and on the 4. day of June next following, the king lost 150. camels, which were taken from him by the wild Moores: and on the 28. day of the said moneth of June, one Geffrey Maltees, a renegado of Malta, ran away to his country, & stole a Brigandine which the king had builded for to take the Christians withal, & caried with him 12. Christians more which were the kings captiues. Afterward about the 10. day of July next following, the king road forth vpon the greatest & fairest mare that might be seen, as white as any swan: he had not ridden 40. paces frō his house, but on a sudden the same mare fell downe vnder him starke dead, & I with 6. more were commanded to burie her skinne, shoes and all, which we did. And about three moneths after our deliuerie, Master Barton, with all the residue of his companie, departed from Tripolie to Zante, in a vessell, called a Settea, of one Marcus Segoorus, who dwelt in Zante, and after our arriuall at Zante, wee remained 15. daies there, aboord our vessell, before wee could haue Platego (that is, leaue to come a shoare) because the plague was in that place, from whence we came: and about three daies after, we came a shoare, thether came another Settea of Marsills bound for Constantinople. Then did Master Barton, and his company, with two more of our company, shippe themselues as passengers in the same Settea, and went to Constantinople. But the other nine of vs that remained in Zante, about three moneths after, shipt our selues in a shippe of the said Marcus Segoorus, which came to Zante, and was bound for England. In which three moneths, the souldiers of Tripolie killed the said king. And then the kings sonne, according to the custome there, went to Constantinople, to surrender vp all his fathers treasure, goods, captiues, and concubines, vnto the Great Turke, and tooke with him our said Purser, Richard Burges, and Iames Smith, and also the other two Englishmen, which he the said kings sonne had inforced to become Turkes, as is aforesaid. And they the said Englishmen, finding now some opportunitie, concluded with the Christian captiues, which were going with them vnto Constantinople, being in number about one hundred and fiftie, to kill the kings sonne, and all the Turkes which were aboord of the Galley, and priuily the said Englishmen conueied vnto the said christian captiues, weapons for that purpose. And when they came into the maine sea, toward Constantinople (vpon the faithfull promise of the said Christian captiues) these foure Englishmen lept suddenly into the Crosia, that is, into the middest of the Galley, where the canon lieth, and with their swordes drawne, did fight against all the foresaid Turkes, and for want of helpe of the saide Christian captiues, who fallie brake their promises, the said Master Blonkets boy was killed, and the saide Iames Smith, and our Purser Richard Burges, and the other Englishman, were taken and bound into chaines, to be hanged at their arriuall in Constantinople: and as the Lordes will was, about two daies after, passing

The king lost 150. Camels, taken by the wild Moores.

Two Englishmen shipped to Constantinople with M. Barton.

The souldiers of Tripolis kill the king.

passing through the gulfe of Venice, at an Iſland called Cephalonia, they met with 2. of ỹ Duke of Venice his Gallies, which tooke that Galley, and killed the kings ſonne, and his mother, and all the Turkes that were there, in number, 150. and they ſaued the Chriſtian captiues, and would haue killed the two Engliſhmen, becauſe they were circumciſed, and become Turkes, had not the other Chriſtian captiues excuſed them, ſaying, that they were inforced to be Turkes, by the kings ſonne, & ſhewed the Venetians alſo, how they did enterpriſe at ſea to fight againſt all the Turkes, and that their two fellowes were ſlaine in that fight. Then the Venetians ſaued them, and they with all the reſidue of the ſaid captiues, had their libertie, which were in number, 150. or thereabouts, and the ſaid Gallie, and all the Turkes treaſure, was confiſcated to the vſe of the ſtate of Venice, and from thence our two Engliſhmen trauelled homeward by land, and in this meane time, wee had one more of our companie, which died in Zante, and afterward the other eight ſhipped themſelues at Zante, in a ſhippe of the ſaide Marcus Segoorus, which was bound for England: and before we departed thence, there arriued the Aſſention, and the George Bonauenture of London, in Cephalonia, in a harbour there, called Arrogoſtoria, whoſe marchantes agreed with the marchants of our ſhippe, and ſo laded all the marchandiſe of our ſhippe into the ſaid ſhips of London, who tooke vs eight alſo in as paſſengers, and ſo we came home, and within two moneths after our arriuall at London, our ſaid Purſer Richard Burges, and his fellow, came home alſo, for the which we are bound to praiſe Almightie God, during our liues, & as dutie bindeth vs, to pray for the preſeruation of our moſt gratious Queene, for the great care her Maieſtie had euer vs, her poore ſubiects, in ſeeking and procuring of our deliuerance aforeſaid: and alſo for her honorable priuie Councell, and eſpeciall for the proſperitie and good eſtate of the houſe of the late deceaſed, the right honorable the Earle of Bedford, whoſe honor I muſt confeſſe, moſt diligently at the ſuite of my father now departed, trauelled herein: for the which I reſt continually bounden to his, whoſe ſoule I doubt not, but is already in the heauens in ioy, with the Almightie, vnto which place he vouchſafe to bring vs all, that for our ſinnes ſuffered moſt vile and ſhamefull death vpon the Croſſe, there to liue perpetually world without end, Amen.

Two gallies of Venice tooke the king of Tripolie his galley, and killed the kings ſonne, and all the Turkes in it, and releaſed al the Chriſtians being in number 150.

The Queenes letters to the Turke, 1584. for the reſtitution of *the ſhippe, called the Ieſus, and the Engliſh captiues detained in Tripo-* lie in Barbarie, and for certaine other priſoners in Argiers.

ELizabetha, Dei ter maximi & vnici cœli terræque conditoris gratia, Angliæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ Regina, fidei Chriſtianę contra omnes omnium inter Chriſtianos degentium, Chriſtíque nomen falſò profitentium idololatrias, inuictiſſima & potentiſsima defenſatrix: auguſtiſsimo, inuictiſsimóque principi, Zultan Murad Can, Muſulmanici regni dominatori potentiſsimo, imperijque Orientis Monarchæ, ſupra omnes ſoli & ſupremo ſalutem, & multos cum ſummâ rerum optimarum affluentia fœlices & fortunatos annos.

Auguſtiſsime & potentiſsime Imperator, biennio iam peracto, ad Cæſaream veſtram Maieſtatẽ ſcripſimus, vt dilectus noſter famulus Guilielmus Harebronus, vir ornatiſsimus pro legato noſtro Conſtantinopoli, alijſque Muſulmanici imperij ditionibus, ſublimi veſtra authoritate reciperetur: ſimul etiam Angli ſubditi noſtri, commercium & mercaturam, in omibus illis prouinciis exerceant, non minùs liberè, quàm Galli, Poloni, Veneti, Germani, cæteríque veſtri confœderati, qui varias Orientis partes peragrant, operam nauantes, vt mutuis commerciis coniungatur Oriens cum Occidente.

Quę priuilegia, cum noſtris ſubditis Anglis inuictiſsima veſtra Maieſtas literis & diplomate ſuo liberaliſsimè indulſerit, facere non potuimus, quin quas maximas animus noſter capere poteſt gratias, eo nomine ageremus: ſperantes fore, vt hæc inſtituta commerciorum ratio maximas vtilitates, & commoda vtrinque, tam in imperii veſtri ditiones, quàm regni noſtri prouincias ſecum adferat.

Id vt planè fiat, cùm nuper ſubditi noſtri nonnulli Tripoli in Barberia & Argellæ ab eius loci incolis voluntatem veſtram fortè neſcientibus malè habiti fuerint, & immaniter diuexati, Cęſaream veſtram Maieſtatem beneuolè rogamus, vt per Legatum noſtrum eorum cauſam cognoſcas, & poſtremò, earum prouinciarum proregibus ac præfectis imperes, vt noſtri liberè in illis locis, ſine vi aut iniuria deinceps verſari, & negotia gerere poſsint.

Et nos omni opera viciſsim ſtudebimus ea omnia præſtare, quæ Imperatoriæ veſtrę Maieſtati vllo pacto grata fore intelligemus: quam Deus vnicus mundi conditor optimus maximus diutiſsimè incolumem & florentem ſeruet. Datæ in palatio noſtro Londini, quinto die

Menſis

Mensis Septembris: anno Iesu Christi Seruatoris nostri, 1584. Regni verò nostri vicesimo sexto.

¶ *The same in English.*

ELizabeth, by the grace of the most high God, and onely maker of heauen and earth, of England, France, and Ireland Queene, and of the Christian faith, against all the Idolaters and false professors of the name of Christ dwelling among the Christians, most inuincible and puissant defender: to the most valiant and inuincible Prince, Zultan Murad Can, the most mighty Ruler of the kingdome of Musulman, and of the East Empire the onely and highest Monarch aboue all, health, and many happie and fortunate yeeres, with great aboundance of the best things.

Most noble and puissant Emperour, about two yeeres now passed, we wrote vnto your Imperiall Maiestie, that our welbeloued seruant, William Harebrowne, a man of great reputation and honour, might be receaued vnder your high authoritie, for our Ambassadour in Constantinople, and other places, vnder the obedience of your Empire of Musulman: And also that the Englishmen, being our subiects, might exercise entercourse and marchandize in all those Prouinces, no lesse freely then the French, Polonians, Venetians, Germanes, and other your confederats, which trauell through diuerse of the East parts: endeuouring that by mutuall traffike, the East may be ioyned and knit to the West.

Which priuiledges, when as your most puissant Maiestie, by your letters and vnder your dispensation most liberally and fauourably granted to our subiects of England, we could no lesse doe, but in that respect giue you as great thankes, as our heart could conceaue, trusting that it wil come to passe, that this order of traffike, so well ordained, will bring with it selfe most great profits and commodities to both sides, as well to the parties subiect to your Empire, as to the Prouinces of our kingdome. Which thing that it may be done in plaine and effectuall manner, whereas some of our subiects of late at Tripolis in Barbarie, and at Argier, were by the inhabitants of those places (being perhaps ignorant of your pleasure) euill intreated and grieuously vexed, we doe friendly and louingly desire your Imperiall Maiestie, that you will vnderstand their causes by our Ambassadour, and afterward giue commandement to the Lieutenants and Presidents of those prouinces, that our people may henceforth freely, without any violence, or iniurie, traual, and doe their busines in those places.

And we againe with all endeuour, shall studie to performe all those things, which we shall in any wise vnderstand to be acceptable to your Imperiall Maiestie, which God, the onely maker of the world, most best and most great, long keepe in health, and flourishing. Giuen in our pallace at London, the fift day of the moneth of September, in the yeere of Iesus Christ our sauiour, 1584. and of our raigne, the 26.

The commandement obtained of the Grand Signior by her *Maiesties Ambassadour, for the quiet passing of her subiects to, & from* his dominions, sent in Anno 1584. to the Viceroys of Argier, Tunes, and Tripolis in Barbarie.

TO our Beglerbege of Argier. We certifie thee, by this our commandement, that the right honorable, William Harebrowne, Ambassadour to the Queenes Maiestie of England, hath signified vnto vs, that the shippes of that Countrey, in their comming, and returning to and from our Empire, ane the one part of the seas haue the Spaniards, Florentines, Sicilians, and Malteses, on the other part our Countries, committed to your charge, which aboueseyd Christians, will not quietly suffer their egresse and regresse into, and out of our dominions, but doe take, and make the men captiues, and forfeit the ships, and goods, as the last yeere the Malteses did one, which they tooke at Gerbi, and to that ende, doe continually lie in waight for them, to their destruction, whereupon they are constrained to stand to their defense, at any such times as they might meete with them: wherefore considering by this meanes they must stand vpon their gard, when they shall see any galley a farre off, whereby if meeting with any of your gallies, and not knowing them, in their defense they doe shoote at them, and yet after, when they do certainely knowe them, doe not shoote any more, but require to passe peaceably on their voyage, which you would denie, saying, the peace is broken, for that you haue shotte at vs, and so doe make prise of them, contrarye to our priuiledges, and agaynst reason: for the preuenting of

of which inconuenience, the ſayd Ambaſſadour hath required this our commandement. We therefore command thee, that vpon ſight hereof, thou doe not permit any ſuch matter in no ſort whatſoeuer, but ſuffer the ſaid Engliſh men to paſſe in peace, according to the tenor of our commandement giuen, without any diſturbance, or let, by any meanes vpon the way, although that meeting with thy gallies, and not knowing them a farre off, they taking them for enemies, ſhould ſhoote at them, yet ſhall you not ſuffer them to hurt them therefore, but quietly to paſſe. Wherefore looke thou, that they may haue right, according to our priuiledge giuen them, and finding any that abſenteth himſelfe, and will not obey this our commaundement, preſently certifie vs to our porch, that we may giue order for his puniſhment: and with reuerence giue faithfull credite to this our commandement, which hauing read, thou ſhalt againe returne it vnto them that preſent it. From our pallace in Conſtantinople, the prime of June, 1584.

The Turkes letter to the King of Tripolis in Barbarie, commanding *the reſtitution of an Engliſh ſhippe, called the Ieſus, with the men,* and goods, ſent from Conſtantinople, by Mahomet Beg, a Iuſtice of the Great Turkes, and an Engliſh Gentleman, called Maſter Edward Barton. Anno 1584.

HOnorable, and worthy Paſſa Romadan Beglerbeg, moſt wiſe and prudent iudge of the Weſt Tripolis, we wiſh the ende of all thy enterprizes happie, and proſperous. By theſe our Highnes letters, we certifie thee, that the right Honorable, William Harebrowne, Ambaſſadour in our moſt famous porche, for the moſt excellent Queenes Maieſtie of England, in perſon, and by letters hath certified our Highnes, that a certaine ſhippe, with all her furniture, and artillerie, worth two thouſand duckets, arriuing in the port of Tripolis, and diſcharged of her lading, and marchandize, paid our cuſtome according to order, and againe, the marchants laded their ſhippe with oile, which by conſtraint they were inforced to buy of you, and hauing anſwered in like manner the cuſtome for the ſame, determined to depart: a Frenchman aſſiſtant to the Marchant, vnknowen to the Engliſhmen, caried away with him another Frenchman, indebted to a certaine Hooze in foure hundred duckets, and by force cauſed the Engliſhmen, and ſhippe to depart: who neither ſuſpecting fraude, nor deceite, hoiſed ſailes. In the meane time, this man, whoſe debter the Frenchman had ſtollen away, went to the Paſſa with the ſupplication, by whoſe meanes, and force of the Caſtle, the Engliſhmen were conſtrained to returne into the port, where the Frenchman, author of the euill, with the Maſter of the ſhippe an Engliſhman, innocent of the crime, were hanged, and fiue and twentie Engliſhmen caſt into priſon, of whom thorough famine, thirſt, and ſtinke of the priſon, eleuen died, and the reſt like to die. Further, it was ſignified to our Maieſtie alſo, that the marchandiſe and other goods, with the ſhippe, were worth 7600. duckets: which things if they be ſo, this is our commandement, which was granted and giuen by our Maieſtie, that the Engliſh ſhippe, and all the marchandize, and whatſoeuer els taken away, be wholy reſtored, and that the Engliſhmen be let goe free, and ſuffered to returne into their Countrey. Wherefore when this our commandement ſhall come vnto thee, we ſtraightly command, that the foreſaid buſines be diligently looked vnto, and diſcharged. And if it be ſo, that a Frenchman, and no Engliſhman, hath done this craft, and wickednes vnknowen to the Engliſhmen, and as author of the wickednes is puniſhed, and that the Engliſhmen committed nothing againſt the peace and league, or their articles: alſo if they paid cuſtome according to order, it is againſt law, cuſtome of Countries, and their priuiledge, to hinder or hurt them. Neither is it meete, their ſhippe, marchandize, and all their goods taken, ſhould be withholden. Wee will therefore, that the Engliſh ſhippe, marchandize, and all other their goods, without exception, be reſtored to the Engliſhmen: alſo that the men be let goe free, and if they will, let none hinder them, to returne peaceably into their Countrey: doe not commit, that they another time complaine of this matter, and howe this buſines is diſpatched, certifie vs at our moſt famous porche. Dated in the Citie of Conſtantinople, in the 992. yeere of Mahomet, and in the ende of the moneth of October, and the yeere of Ieſus, 1584.

A letter of Maister William Harebrowne, the Englisth Ambassadour, Ligier in Constantinople to the Bassa Romadan, the Beglerbeg of Tripolis in Barbarie, for the restoring of an Englisth shippe, called the Iesus, with the goods, and men, detained as slaues, 1585.

Molto magnifico Signor,

Noi hastato significato per diuerse lettere di quanto ha passato circa di vna naue nostra chiamata Iesus, sopra il quale in agiuto di Ricciardo Skegs, *vno de gli nostri mercanti di esse gia morto, venima vn certo Francese per sopra cargo chiamato Romano Sonings, il quale per non esser ben portato secondo che douena, volendo importar seco vn altro Francese debitore a certi vostri senza pagarceni, per giustitia era appiccato col patron Inglese Andre Dier, che come simplice credendo al detto Francese senza auedercene de la sua ria malitia non retornana, quando da vostra magnifica Signoria gli era mandato. La morte del detto tristo Francese approuamo como cosa ben fatta. Ma al contrario, done lei ha confiscato la detta naue e mercantia en essa, & fatto sciaui li mornari, como cosa molto contraria a li priuilegij dal Gran Signor quattro anni passati concessi, & da noi confirmati di parte de la Serenissima Magesta d'Ingilterra nostra patrona, e molto contraria a la liga del detto Gran Signor, il quale essendo dal sopra detto a pieno informato, noi a conceduto il suo regale mandamento di restitutione, la qual mandiamo a vostra magnifica Signoria col presente portator E-*

Edoardo Barton & Mahumed Beg.

doardo Bartõ, nostro Secretario, & Mahumed Beg, *drogueman di sua porta excelsa, con altre lettere del excellentissimo Vizir, & inuictissimo capitan di mar: chiedendo, tanto di parte del Gran Signor, quanto di sua Serenissima Magesta di V.S.M. che gli huomini, oglij, naue col formimento, danari, & tutti altri beni qualconque da lei, & per vestro ordine da gli nostri tolti siano resi à questo mio Secretario liberamente senza empacho alcuno, como il Gran Signor da sua gratia noi ha concesso, specialmente per esser detti oglij comprati per ordine di sua Serenissima Magesta, per prouision della Corte sua. Il qual non facendo, protestiamo per questa nostra al incontra di esso tutti futuri danni che puono succedere per questa cagione, como authore di quelli, contrario à la Santa liga giurata da li duoi Rei, patroni nostri, como per li priuilegij, che lei mostrerà il nostro, consta: per obseruatione de gli quali noi stiamo di fermo en questa excelsa Porta. Et cosi responderete nel altro mondo al solo Iddio, & quà al Gran Signor questo massimo peccato commesso da lei al incontra di tanti poueracchi, chi per questa crudelta sono in parte morti, en parte retenuti da esso en duro cattiuerio. Al contrario, piacendo lei euitar questo incommodo & restarcene en gratia del Signor Iddio, & li nostri patroni, amichevolmente, (como conuien à par vostro di mostrarsi prudente gouernatore, & fidel seruitor al patron) adimpirete questa nostra giustissima domanda, per poter resultarui à grand honore & commodo per la tratta di marchantia, che faronno a laduenire li nostri in quella vostra prouincia. Li quali generalmente, tanto quelli, como tutti altri che nel mar riscõtrarete, siano secondo che manda il Grand Signor, de vostra Signoria magnifica amichevolmente recolti & riceuuti: Et noi non mancheremo al debito di ottimo amico en qualconche occurrenza vostra, piacendo lei amicitia nostra, como desideramo. Il Signor Iddio lei conceda (adimpiendo questa nostra giusta rechiesta, per canar noi di pui futura fatica in questo negocio, & lei di disgratia) ogni vera felicità, & supremo honore. Data in palazzo nostro che fu da Capamat appresso Pera di 15. di Genaro, 1585.*

Il Ambassiatore de la Magesta Serenissima d'Ingilterra, amico de vostra Signoria magnifica, piacendo lei.

¶ *The same in Englisth.*

RIght honorable Lord, it hath bene signified vnto vs by diuerse letters, what hath fallen out concerning a certaine shippe of ours, called the Iesus, into which, for the helpe of Richard Skegs, one of our marchants in the same, now deceased, there was admitted a certaine Frenchman, called Romane Sonnings, which for his ill behauiour, according to his deserts, seeking to carry away with him another Frenchman, which was indebted to certaine of your people, without paying his creditors, was hanged by sentence of iustice, together with Andrew Dier, the Maister of the said shp, who simply, and without fraude, giuing credite to the saide Frenchman, without any knowledge of his euill fact, did not returne when he was commanded, by your honorable Lordshippe. The death of the saide lewde Frenchman, wee approoue as a thing well done, but contrariwise, whereas your Lordeshippe hath confiscated, the sayde shippe, with the goods therein, and hath made slaues of the Marriners, as a thing altogether contrarie to the priuiledges of the Grand Signior, granted foure yeeres since, and confirmed by vs on the behalfe of

of the moſt excellent, the Queenes Maieſtie of England, our Maiſtres, and altogether contrarie to the league of the ſaide Grand Signior, who being fully informed of the aforeſayd cauſe, hath granted vnto vs his royall commaundement of reſtitution, which wee ſende vnto your honorable Lordſhippe, by the preſent bearer Edward Barton, our Secretarie, and Mahomet Beg, one of the Juſtices of his ſtately Court, with other letters of the moſt excellent Admirall, and moſt valiant Captaine of the Sea, requiring your honorable Lordſhip, as well on the behalfe of the Grand Signior, as of the Queenes moſt excellent Maieſtie my Maiſtres, that the men, oiles, ſhippe, furniture, money, and all other goods what ſoeuer, by your Lordſhippe, and your order taken from our men, be reſtored vnto this my Secretarie freely, without delay, as the Grand Signior of his goodnes hath granted vnto vs, eſpecially in regard that the ſame oiles were bought by the commandement of our Queenes moſt excellent Maieſty, for the prouiſion of her Court. Which if you perfoyme not, we proteſt by theſe our letters againſt you, that you are the cauſe of all the inconueniences which may enſue vpon this occaſion, as the author thereof, contrary to the holy league ſworne by both our Princes, as by the priuiledges, which this our ſeruant will ſhewe you, may appeare. For the ſeeing of which league performed, wee remaine here as Ligier in this ſtately Court. And by this meanes you ſhal anſwere in another world, vnto God aloue, and in this world vnto the Grand Signior, for this hainous ſinne committed by you againſt ſo many poore ſoules, which by this your crueltie are in part dead, and in part detained by you in moſt miſerable captiuitie. Contrariwiſe, if it ſhall pleaſe you to auoid this miſchiefe, and to remaine in the fauour of Almightie God, and of our Princes, you ſhall friendly fulfill this our iuſt demand (as it behoueth you to ſhew your ſelfe a prudent Gouernour, and faithful ſeruant vnto your Lord,) & the ſame may turne to your great honour, and profite, by the trade of marchandize, which our men in time to come, may vſe in that gouernment of yours: which generally, as well thoſe poore men, as all others, which you ſhall meete at the ſea, ought to be according to the commandement of the Grand Signior, friendly entertained and receiued of your honorable Lordſhip, and we will not faile in the duties of a ſpeciall friend, whenſoeuer you ſhall haue occaſion to vſe vs, as we deſire. Almightie God grant vnto your Lordſhip, (in the fulfilling of this our iuſt requeſt, whereby we may be deliuered from further trouble in this matter, and your ſelfe from further diſpleaſure) all true felicitie, and increaſe of honour. Giuen in our Pallace from Capamat in Pera, the 15. of Januarie, 1585.

A briefe extract ſpecifying the certaine daily paiments, anſwered *quarterly in time of peace, by the Grand Signior, out of his treaſurie*, to the officers of his Seraglio, or Court, ſucceſsiuely in degrees: collected in a yeerely totall ſumme, as followeth.

FOr his owne diet euery day, one thouſand and one aſpers, according to a former cuſtome receiued from his anceſtors: notwithſtanding, that otherwiſe his diurnall expence is very much, and not certainly known, which ſumme maketh ſterling monie by the yeere, 2. thouſand, one hundred, 92. pound, three ſhillings, eight pence.

The 45. thouſand Ianiſſaries, reparted into ſundry places of his dominions, at ſixe aſpers the day, amounteth by the yeere, fiue hundreth, foure ſcore and eleuen thouſand, and three hundreth pounds.

The Azamoglans, tribute children, farre ſurmount that number, for that they are collected from among the Chriſtians, from whome betweene the yeeres of ſixe and twelue, they are pulled away yeerely perforce: whereof I ſuppoſe thoſe in ſeruice may be equall in number with the Ianiſſaries aboue ſaide, at three aſpers a day, one with another, which is two hundred, foure ſcore and fifteene thouſand, ſixe hundred and fiftie pounds.

The fiue Baſhas, whereof the Viceroy is ſupreme, at one thouſand aſpers the day, beſides their yeerely reuenues, amounteth ſterling by the yeere, ten thouſand, nine hundred and fiftie pounds.

The fiue Beglerbegs, chiefe Preſidents of Greece, Hungarie, and Sclauonia, being in Europe, in Anatolia, and Caramania of Aſia, at one thouſand aſpers the day: as alſo to eighteene other gouernours of Prouinces, at fiue hundred aſpers the day, amounteth by the yeere, thirtie thouſand, ſixe hundred, and three ſcore pounds.

The Baſſa, Admirall of the Sea, one thouſand aſpers the day, two thouſand, one hundred, foure ſcore and ten thouſand pounds.

The Aga of the Ianiſſaries, Generall of the footemen, fiue hundred aſpers the day, and maketh by the yeere in ſterling monie, one thouſand, foure ſcore and fifteene pounds.

The

The Imbrahur Bassa, Maister of his horse, one hundred and fiftie aspers the day, is sterling money, three hundred and eight and twenty pounds.

The chiefe Esquire vnder him, one hundred and fiftie aspers, is three hundred and eight and twentie pounds.

The Agaas of the Spahi, Capitaines of the horsemen, fiue, at one hundred and fiftie aspers to either of them, maketh sterling, one thousand, nine hundred, three score and eleuen pounds.

The Capagi Bassas hed porters foure, one hundred and fiftie aspers to each, and maketh out in sterling money by the yeere, one thousand, three hundred, and foureteene pounds.

The Sisinghir Bassa, Controuler of the houshold, one hundred and twentie aspers the day, and maketh out in sterling money by the yeere, two hundred, three score and two pounds, sixteene shillings.

The Chiaus Bassa, Captaine of the Pensioners, one hundred and twentie aspers the day, and amounteth to by the yeere, in sterling money, two hundred, three score and two pounds, sixteene shillings.

The Capigilar Caiasi, Captaine of his barge, one hundred and twentie aspers the day, and maketh out by the yeere in sterling money, two hundred, three score and two pounds, 16. shillings.

The Solach Bassi, Captaine of his garde, one hundred and twentie aspers, two hundred, three score and two pounds, sixteene shillings.

The Giebrigi Bassi, Maister of the armourie, one hundred and twentie aspers, two hundred, three score and two pounds, sixteene shillings.

The Topagi Bassi, Maister of the artillerie, one hundred and twentie aspers, two hundred, three score and two pounds, sixteene shillings.

The Echim Bassi, Philition to his person, one hundred and twentie aspers, two hundred, three score and two pounds, sixteene shillings.

To fortie Philitions vnder him, to each fortie aspers, is three thousand, eight hundred, three score and sixe pounds, sixteene shillings.

The Mustafaracas spearemen, attending on his person, in number fiue hundred, to either three score aspers, and maketh sterling, three score and fiue thousand, and seuen hundred pounds.

The Cisingeri, gentlemen, attending vpon his diet, fortie, at fortie aspers each of them, amounteth to sterling by the yeere, three thousand, fiue hundred and foure pounds.

The Chiausi Pensioners, foure hundred and fortie, at thirtie aspers, twentie eight thousand, nine hundred, and eight pounds.

The Capagi porters of the Court and Citie, foure hundred, at eight aspers, and maketh sterling money by the yeere, seuen thousand, and eight pounds.

The Solachi, archers of his garde, three hundreth and twentie, at nine aspers, and commeth vnto in English monie, the summe of sixe thousand, three hundred and sixe pounds.

The Spahi, men of Armes of the Court and the Citie, ten thousand, at twentie fiue aspers, and maketh of English money, fiue hundred, fortie and seuen thousand, and fiue hundred pounds.

The Ianissaries fifteene thousand, at six aspers, is two hundred and ten thousand, and two hundred and fortie pounds.

The Giebegi furbushers of armour, one thousand, fiue hundred, at sixe aspers, and amounteth to sterling money, nineteene thousand, seuen hundred, and foure score pounds.

The Seiesir, seruitors in his Esquier or stable, fiue hundred, at two aspers, and maketh sterling money, two thousand, one hundred, foure score and ten pounds.

The Saesi, Sadlers and bit makers, fiue hundred, at seuen aspers, seuen thousand, sixe hundred, three score and fiue pounds.

The Catergi, Cariers vpon Mules, two hundred, at fiue aspers, two thousand, one hundred, foure score and ten pounds.

The Ginegi, Cariers vpon Camels, one thousand, fiue hundred, at eight aspers, and amounteth in sterling money, to twentie sixe thousand, two hundred, and foure score pounds.

The Reiz, or Captaines of the Gallies, three hundred, at ten aspers, and amounteth in English money by the yeere, the summe of sixe thousand, fiue hundred, three score and ten pounds.

The Alechingi, Maister of the said Gallies, three hundred, at seuen aspers, foure thousand, six hundred, foure score and nineteene pounds.

The Getti, Boateswaines thereof, three hundred, at sixe aspers, is three thousand, nine hundred, fortie and two pounds.

The Oda Bassi, Purlers, three hundred, at fiue aspers, maketh three thousand, two hundred, and foure score pounds.

The

The Azappi ſouldiers two thouſand ſix hundred at foure Aſpers, whereof the fiue hundred doe continually keepe the gallies, two and twentie thouſand, ſeuen hundred fourte ſcore and ſix pound.

The Mariers Baſſi maſters ouer the ſhipwrights and kalkers of the nauie, viz. at 20. Aſpers the piece, amounteth to three thouſand foure ſcore and foure pound, foure ſhillings.

The Maſter Daſſi ſhipwrights and kalkers, one thouſand at fourteen Aſpers, and amounteth to by the yeere, thirtie thouſand, fiue hundred three ſcore pound.

Summa totalis of daily paiments, amounteth by the yeere ſterling, one million, nine hundreth threeſcore eight thouſand, ſeuen hundred thirtie fiue pounds, nineteene ſhillings eight pence, anſwered quarterly without default, with the ſumme of foure hundred foure ſcore twelue thouſand, one hundred foure ſcore and foure pounds foure ſhillings eleuen pence, and is for euery day fiue thouſand three hundred foure ſcore and thirteene pounds, fifteene ſhillings ten pence.

Annuities of lands neuer improoued fiue times more in value *then their ſummes mentioned, giuen by the ſayd Grand* Signior, as followeth.

To the Uiceroy for his Timar or annuitie, 60. thouſand gold ducats.
To the ſecond Baſſa for his annuitie, 50. thouſand ducats.
To the third Baſſa for his annuitie, 40. thouſand ducats.
To the fourth Baſſa for his annuitie, 30. thouſand ducats.
To the fifth Baſſa for his annuitie, 20. thouſand ducats.
To the captaine of the Ianiſſaries, 20. thouſand ducats.
To the Ieu Merhorbaſſi maſter of his horſe, 15. thouſand ducats.
To the captaine of the penſioners, 10. thouſand ducats.
To the Captaine of his guard, 5. thouſand ducats.

Summa totalis, 90. thouſand li. ſterling.

Beſide theſe aboue ſpecified, be ſundrie other annuities giuen to diuers others of his aforeſayd officers, as alſo to certaine called Sahims, diminiſhing from three thouſand to two hundreth ducats, eſteemed treble to ſurmount the annuitie aboueſayd.

The Turkes chiefe officers.

The Uiceroy is high Treaſurer, notwithſtanding that vnder him be three Subtreaſurers called Teſtaders, which be accountable to him of the receits out of Europe, Aſia and Affrica, ſaue their peerely annuitie of lands.

The lord Chancellor is called Niſſangi Baſſa, who ſealeth with a certaine proper character ſuch licences, ſafe conducts, paſſeportes, eſpeciall graunts, &c. as proceed from the Grand Signior: notwithſtanding all letters to forren princes ſo firmed, be after incloſed in a bagge, and ſealed by the Grand Signior, with a ſigner which he ordinarily weareth about his necke, credited of them to haue bene of ancient appertaining to king Salomon the wiſe.

The Admiral giueth his voyce in the election of all Begies, captaines of Iſlands, to whom hee giueth their charge, as alſo appointeth the Subbaſſas, Bailies or Conſtables ouer cities & townes vpon the Sea coaſtes about Conſtantinople, and in the Archipelago, whereof he reapeth great profite.

The Subbaſſi of Pera paieth him peerely fifteene thouſand ducats, and ſo likewiſe either of the others according as they are placed.

The Reſſiſtop ſerueth in office to the Uiceroy and Chancellor, as Secretarie, and ſo likewiſe doth the Cogy M. of the Rolls, before which two, paſſe all writings preſented to, or granted by the ſaid Uiceroy and Chancellor, offices of eſpeciall credite and like profite, moreouer rewarded with annuities of lands.

There be alſo two chiefe iudges named Ladies Liſguire, the one ouer Europe, and the other ouer Aſia and Affrica, which in court do ſit on the bench at the left hand of the Baſſas. Theſe ſell all offices to the vnder iudges of the land called Cadies, whereof is one in euery citie or towne, before whom all matters in controuerſie are by iudgement decided, as alſo penalties and corrections for crimes ordained to be executed vpon the offenders by the Subbaſſi.

The number of Souldiers continually attending vpon the Beglerbegs the Gouernours of Prouinces and Sangiacks, and their petie Captains maintained of these Prouinces.

The Beglerbegs of
- Græcia, fortie thousand,
- Buda, fifteene thousand,
- Sclauonia, fifteene thousand,
- Anatolia, fifteene thousand,
- Caramania, fifteene thousand,
- Armenia, eighteene thousand,
- Persia, twentie thousand,
- Vsdrum, fifteene thousand,
- Chirusta, fifteene thousand,
- Caraemiti, thirtie thousand,
- Giersul, two and thirtie thousand.

} persons.

The Beglerbegs of
- Bagdat, fiue and twentie thousand,
- Bassara, two and twentie thousand,
- Lassaija, seuenteene thousand,
- Aleppo, fiue and twentie thousand,
- Damasco, seuenteene thousand,
- Cairo, twelue thousand,
- Abes, twelue thousand,
- Meca, eight thousand,
- Cyprus, eighteene thousand,
- Tunes in Barbarie, eight thousand,
- Tripolis in Syria, eight thousand,
- Algier, fortie thousand,

} persons.

Whole Sangiacks and petie captaines bee three hundred sixtie eight, euery of which retaining continually in pay from fiue hundreth, to two hundreth souldiers, may be one with another at the least, three hundreth thousand persons.

Chiefe officers in his *Serraglio* about his persons, be these.

- Capiaga, High porter.
- Alnader Bassi, Thesurer.
- Oda Bassi, Chamberlaine.
- Killergi Bassi, Steward.
- Saraiaga, Comptroller.
- Peskerolen, Groome of the chamber.
- Edostoglan, Gentleman of the Ewer.
- Schetaraga, Armour bearer.
- Choataraga, he that carieth his riding cloke.
- Ebietaraga, Groome of the stoole.

There be many other meaner officers, which I esteeme superfluous to write.

The Turkes yeerely reuenue.

The Grand Signiors annual reuenue is said to be 14. millions and an halfe of golden ducats, which is sterling fiue millions, eight score thousand pounds.

The tribute paid by the Christians his subiects, is one gold ducat yeerely for the redemption of euery head, which may amount vnto not so little as one million of golden ducats, which is sterling three hundred three score thousand pound.

Moreouer, in time of warre he exacteth manifold summes for maintenance of his armie and spoile of the sayd Christians.

The Emperor paieth him yeerely tribute for Hungarie, three score thousand dollers, which is sterling 13. thousand pound, besides presents to the Viceroy and Bassas, which are said to surmount twentie thousand dollers.

Arabi-

Ambaſſadors allowances.

The amballadour of the Emperor is allowed one thouſand Aſpers the day.

The amballadour of the French king heretofore enioied the like: but of late yeeres by meanes of diſpleaſure conceiued by Mahumet then Uicetoy, it was reduced to ſixe crownes the day, beſides the prouiſion of his Eſquier of ſtable.

The amballadour of Poland, and for the ſtate of Uenice are not Lodgers as theſe two aboue ſaid. The ſaid Polack is allowed twelue French crownes the day, during his abode, which may be for a moneth. Uery ſeldome doe the ſtate of Uenice ſend any amballadour otherwiſe, then enforced of vrgent neceſſitie: but in ſtead thereof keepe there their Agent, preſident ouer their merchants, of the termed a Bailie, who hath none allowance of the Grand Signior, although his port & ſtate is in maner as magnificall as ỹ other aforeſaid amballadors. The Spaniſh amballadour was equall with others in Janiſſaries: but for ſo much as he would not according to cuſtome follow the liſt of other amballadors in making preſent to the Grand Signor, he had none allowance. His abode there was 3. yeeres, at the end wherof hauing concluded a truce for 6. yeers, taking place from his firſt comming in Nouember laſt paſt, 158. he was neuer admitted to ỹ preſence of the Grand ſignior.

A letter written from the Queenes maieſtie, to *Yeladin el Kubar* king of Cambaia, by Iohn Newberie. In February. An. 1583.

Elizabeth by the grace of God, &c. To the moſt inuincible, and moſt mightie prince, lord Yeladin el Kubar king of Cambaya. Inuincible Emperor, &c. The great affection which our ſubiects haue, to viſit the moſt diſtant places of the world, not without good will and intention to introduce the trade of merchandize of all nations whatſoeuer they can, by which meanes the mutuall and friendly traffique of merchandize on both ſides may come, is the cauſe that the bearer of this letter Iohn Newberie, ioinely with thoſe that bee in his company, with a curteous and honeſt boldnes, doe repaire to the borders and countries of your Empire, we doubt not but that your imperiall maieſtie through your roiall grace, will fauourably and friendly accept him. And that you would doe it the rather for our ſake, to make vs greatly beholding to your maieſtie. We ſhould more earneſtly, & with more words require it if we did thinke it needfull. But by the ſingular report that is of your imperiall maieſties humanitie in theſe vttermoſt partes of the world, we are greatly eaſed of that burden, and therefore we vſe fewer & leſſe words: onely we requeſt that becauſe they are our ſubiects, they may be honeſtly intreated and receiued. And that in reſpect of the hard iourney which they haue vndertaken to places ſo far diſtant, it would pleaſe your maieſtie with ſome libertie and ſecuritie of voiage to gratifie it, with ſuch priuiledges as to you ſhall ſeeme good: which curteſie if your imperiall maieſtie ſhall to our ſubiects at our requeſts performe, we, according to our roiall honour will recompence the ſame with as many deſerts as we can. And herewith we bid your Imperiall maieſtie to farewell.

A letter written by her maieſtie to the king of China, in Febr. 1583.

Elizabeth by the grace of God Queene of England. Moſt Imperiall and inuincible prince, our honeſt ſubiect Iohn Newberie the bringer hereof, who with our fauor hath taken in hand the voiage which now he purſueth to the partes & countries of your empire, not truſting vpon any other ground then vpon the fauor of your imperiall clemencie and humanitie, is mooued to vndertake a thing of ſo much difficultie, being perſwaded that he hauing entred into ſo many perils, your maieſtie wil not diſlike the ſame, eſpecially, if it may appeare that it be not damageable vnto your roiall maieſtie, & that to your people it will bring ſome profit: of both which things he not doubting, with more willing mind hath prepared himſelfe for his deſtinated voiage vnto vs wel liked of. For by this means we perceiue, that ỹ profit which by ỹ mutual trade on both ſides, all the princes our neighbors in the Weſt do receiue, your imperial maieſtie and thoſe that be ſubiect vnder your dominion, to their great ioy & benefit ſhal haue the ſame, which conſiſteth in the tranſporting outward of ſuch things wherof we haue plentie, and in bringing in ſuch things as we ſtand in need of. It cannot otherwiſe be, but that ſeeing we are borne and made to haue neede one of another, & that we are bound to aide one another, but that your impetial maieſtie wil wel like of it, & by your ſubiects with like indeuor wil be accepted. For the increaſe whereof, if your imperiall maieſtie ſhall adde the ſecuritie of paſſage, with other priuiledges moſt neceſſary to vſe the trade with your men, your maieſtie ſhal do that which belongeth to a moſt honorable & liberal prince, and deſerue ſo much of vs, as by no continuance or length of time ſhall be forgotten. Which requeſt of ours, we do moſt inſtantly deſire to be taken in good part of your maieſtie, and ſo great a benefit towards vs and our men, we ſhall endeuor by diligence to requite when time ſhall ſerue thereunto. The God almightie long preſerue your imperiall maieſtie.

A Letter of M. Iohn Newberie, written from Aleppo, to M. Richard Hakluit of Oxford, the 28. of May, An. 1583.

RIght welbeloued, and my assured good friend, I heartily commend me vnto you, hoping of your good health, &c. After we set saile from Graueſende, which was the 13. day of Febʒuary last, we remained vpon our coast vntill the 11. day of March, and that day we set saile from Falmouth, and neuer ankered till we arriued in the road of Tripolis in Syria, which was the last day of Apʒill last past, where we staped 14. dayes: and the 20. of this pʒesent we came hither to Aleppo, and with Gods helpe, within fiue oʒ sixe dayes goe from hence towards the Indies. Since my comming to Tripolis I haue made very earnest inquirie both there and here, foʒ the booke of Cosmographie of Abilfada Ismael, but by no means can heare of it. Some say that possibly it may be had in Persia, but notwithstanding I will not faile to make inquirie foʒ it, both in Babylon, and in Balsara, and if I can finde it in any of these places, I will send it you from thence. The letter which you deliuered me foʒ to copy out, that came from master Thomas Steuens in Goa, as also the note you gaue me of Francis Fernandes the Portingall, I bʒought thence with me among other writings vnawares, the which I haue sent you here inclosed. Here is great pʒeparation foʒ the warres in Persia, and from hence is gone the Bassha of a towne called Rahemet, and shortly after goeth the Bassha of Tripolis, and the Bassha of Damasco, but they haue not all with them about 6000. men from hence, and they goe to a towne called Asmerome, which is three dayes iourney from Trapezunde, where they shall meete with diuers Capitains and souldiours that come from Constantinople and other places thereabout, which goe altogether into Persia. This yeere many men goe into the warres, and so hath there euery yeere since the beginning thereof, which is eight yeeres oʒ thereabouts, but very few of them returne againe. Notwithstanding, they get of the Persians, and make castles and holds in their countrey. I pʒay you make my heartie commendations to M. Peter Guillame, and M. Philip Iones, and to M. Walter Warner, and to all the rest of our friends. Master Fitch hath him heartily commended vnto you: and so I commit you to the tuition of the almightie, who blesse and keepe you, and send vs a ioyfull meeting. From Aleppo, the 28. of May, 1583.

Abilfada Ismael his Cosmographie.

Your louing friend to command in all that I may,
Iohn Newberie.

Another letter of the sayd M. Newbery, written to Master Leonard Poore of London, from Aleppo.

RIght welbeloued, my very heartie commendations vnto you, and the rest of my friends remembʒed. My last I sent you was of the 25. of Febʒuary last, from Deele out of the Downes, after which time with contrary windes we remained vpon our owne coast, vntill the 11. day of March, and then wee set saile from Falmouth, and the 13. day the winde came contrary with a very great stoʒme, which continued 8. dayes, and in this great stoʒme we had some of our goods wet, but God be thanked no great hurt done. After which time we sailed with a faire wind within the Streicts, and so remained at sea, and ankered at no place vntill our comming into the road of Tripolis in Syria, which was the last day of Apʒill. This was a very good passage, God make vs thankfull foʒ it. The 14. day of this pʒesent we came from Tripolis, and the 20. day arriued here in Aleppo, and with the helpe of God to moʒow oʒ next day, we begin our voiage towards Babylon and Balsara, and so into India. Our good friend master Barret hath him commended to you, who hath sent you in the Emanuell a ball of nutmegs foʒ the small trifles you sent him, which I hope long since you haue receiued. Also he hath by his letter certified you in what oʒder he sold those things, whereof I can say nothing, because I haue not seene the accompt thereof, neither haue demanded it: foʒ euer since our comming hither he hath bene still busie about the dispatch of the ship, and our voiage, and I likewise in buying of things here to cary to Balsara, and the Indies. We haue bought in currall foʒ 1200. and odde ducats, and amber foʒ 400. ducats, and some sope and bʒoken glasse, with all other small trifles, all which things I hope will serue very well in those places that we shall goe vnto. All the rest of the account of the Barke Reinolds, was sent home in the Emanuell, which was 3600. ducats, which is 200. pound moʒe then it was rated. Foʒ master Stapers rated it but at 1100. li. and it is 1300. pound, so that our part is 200. pound.

March. 11.

The last of Apʒill.

Currall.
Amber greese.
Sope.
Bʒoken glasse.

Besides

Beſides ſuch profit as it ſhall pleaſe God to ſend thereof: wherefore you ſhall doe very well to ſpeake to maſter Stapers for the account. And if you would content your ſelfe to trauell for three or foure yeres, I would wiſh you to come hither or go to Cair, if any go thither. For we doubt not if you had remained there but three or foure moneths, you would like ſo well of the place, that I thinke you would not deſire to returne againe in 3. or 4. yeeres. And, if it ſhould be my chance to remaine in any place out of England, I would chooſe this before all other that I know. My reaſon is, the place is healthfull and pleaſant, and the gaines very good, and no doubt the profit wil be hereafter better, things being vſed in good order: for there ſhould come in euery ſhip the fourth part of her Cargeſon in money, which would helpe to put away our commodities at a very good price. Alſo to haue two very good ſhips to come together, would doe very well: for in ſo doing, the danger of the voyage might be accounted as little as from London to Antwerpe. Maſter Giles Porter and maſter Edmund Porter, went from Tripolis in a ſmall barke to Iaffa, the ſame day that we came from thence, which was the 14. day of this preſent, ſo that no doubt but long ſince they are in Jeruſalem: God ſend them and vs ſafe returne. At this inſtant I haue receiued the account of M. Barret, and the reſt of the rings, with two & twentie ducats, two medins in ready monie. So there is nothing remaining in his hands but a few bookes, and with Thomas Boſtocke I left certaine ſmall trifles, which I pray you demaund. And ſo once againe with my heartie commendations I commit you to the tuition of the almightie, who alwayes preſerue vs. From Aleppo the 29. of May, 1583.

Yours aſſured, Iohn Newbery.

Another letter of M. Newberie to the aforeſayd M. Poore, written from Babylon.

MY laſt I ſent you, was the 29. of May laſt paſt from Aleppo, by George Gill the purſer of the Tiger, which the laſt day of the ſame moneth came from thence, and arriued at Feluge the 19. day of June, which Feluge is one dayes iourney from hence. Notwithſtanding ſome of our company came not hither till the laſt day of the laſt moneth, which was for want of Camels to cary our goods: for at this time of the yeere, by reaſon of the great heate that is here, Camels are very ſkant to be gotten. And ſince our comming hither wee haue found very ſmall ſales, but diuers ſay that in the Winter our commodities will be very well ſold, I pray God their words may prooue true. I thinke cloth, kerſies and tinne, haue neuer bene here at ſo lowe prices as they are now. Notwithſtanding, if I had here ſo much readie money as the commodities are woorth, I would not doubt to make a very good profite of this voiage hither, and to Balſara, and ſo by Gods helpe there will be reaſonable profite made of the voiage. But with halfe money and halfe commoditie, may be bought here the beſt ſort of ſpices, and other commodities that are brought from the Indies, & without money there is here at this inſtant ſmall good to be done. With Gods helpe two daies hence, I mind to go from hence to Balſara, & from thence of force I muſt goe to Ormuz for want of a man that ſpeaketh the Indian tongue. At my being in Aleppo I hired two Naſtaranies, and one of them hath bene twiſe in the Indies, and hath the language very well, but he is a very lewd felow, and therefore I will not take him with me.

The beſt ſort of ſpices at Babylon. Balſara. Ormus.

Here follow the prices of Wares as they are woorth here at this inſtant.

The prices of ſpices at Babylon.

Cloues and Maces, the bateman, 5. ducats.
Cynamom 6. ducats, and few to be gotten.
Nutmegs, the bateman, 45. medins, and 40. medins maketh a ducat.
Ginger, 40. medins.
Pepper, 75. medins.
Turbeta, the bateman, 50. medins.
Neel the churle, 70. ducats, and a churle is 27. rottils and a halfe of Aleppo.
Silke, much better then that which commeth from Perſia, 11. ducats and a halfe the bateman, and euery bateman here maketh 7. pound and 5. ounces Engliſh waight. From Babylon the 20. day of July, 1583.

Yours, Iohn Newbery.

Master Newberie his letter from Ormuz, to Iohn Eldred and William Shals at Balsara.

RIght welbeloued and my assured good friends, I hartely commend me vnto you, hoping of your good healths, &c. To certifie you of my voiage, after I departed fro you, time will not permit: but the 4. of this present we arriued here, and the tenth day I with the rest were committed to prison, and about the middle of the next moneth, the Capitaine will send vs all in his ship for Goa. The cause why we are taken, as they say, is, for that I brought letters from Don Anthonio. But the trueth is, Michael Stropene was the only cause, vpon letters that his brother wrote him from Aleppo. God knoweth how we shall be delt withall in Goa, and therefore if you can procure our masters to send the king of Spaine his letters for our releasement, you should doe vs great good: for they cannot with iustice put vs to death. It may be that they will cut our throtes, or keepe vs long in prison: Gods will be done. All those commodities that I brought hither, had bene very well sold, if this trouble had not chanced. You shall doe well to send with all speed a messenger by land from Balsara to Aleppo, for to certifie of this mischance, although it cost 30. or 40. crownes, for that we may be the sooner released, and I shall be the better able to profite this againe which is now like to be lost: I pray you make my heartie commendations, &c. From out of the prison in Ormuz, this 21. of September, 1583.

His second Letter to the foresaid Iohn Eldred, and William Shals.

THe barke of the Iewes is arriued here two dayes past, by whom I knowe you did write, but your letters are not like to come to my handes. This bringer hath shewed me here very great curtesie, wherefore I pray you shew him what fauour you may. About the middle of the next moneth I thinke wee shall depart from hence, God be our guide. I thinke Andrew will goe by land to Aleppo, wherein I pray you further him what you may: but if he should not goe, then I pray you dispatch away a messenger with as much speed as possibly you may. I can say no more, but doe for me as you would I should doe for you in the like cause, and so with my very heartie commendations, &c. From out of the prison in Ormuz, this 24. day of September, 1583.

Yours, Iohn Newberie.

His third letter to Master Leonard Poore, written from Goa.

MY last I sent you was from Ormuz, whereby I certified you what had happened there vnto me, and the rest of my company, which was, that foure dayes after our arriuall there, wee were all committed to prison, except one Italian which came with me from Aleppo, whom the Capitaine neuer examined, onely he maunded what countreyman he was, but I make account Michael Stropene, who accused vs, had informed the Capitaine of him. The first day wee arriued there, this Stropene accused vs that we were spies sent from Don Antonio, besides diuers other lies: notwithstanding if we had bene of any other countrey then of England, wee might freely haue traded with them. And although we be Englishmen, I know no reason to the contrary, but that we may trade hither and thither as well as other nations, for all nations doe, and may come freely to Ormuz, as Frenchmen, Flemmings, Almains, Hungarians, Italians, Greekes, Armenians, Nastaranies, Turkes and Moores, Iewes and Gentiles, Persians, Moscouites, and there is no nation that they seeke for to trouble, except ours: wherefore it were contrary to all iustice and reason that they should suffer all nations to trade with them, and to forbid vs. But now I haue as great libertie as any other nation, except it be to goe out of the countrey, which thing as yet I desire not. But I thinke hereafter, and before it be long, if I shall be desirous to goe from hence, that they will not denie me licence. Before we might be suffered to come out of prison, I was forced to put in suerties for 2000. pardoas, not to depart from hence without licence of the Uiceroy: otherwise except this, we haue as much libertie as any other nation, for I haue our goods again, and haue taken an house in the chiefest streete in the towne, called the Rue drette, where we sell our goods.

Michael Stropene an Italian accused our men to be spies.

Then

There were two causes which moued the capteine of Ormuz to imprison vs, & afterwards to send vs hither. The first was, because Michael Stropene had accused vs of many matters, which were most false. And the second was for that M. Drake at his being at Maluco, caused two pieces of his ordinance to be shot at a gallion of the kinges of Portingall, as they say. But of these things I did not know at Ormuz: and in the shippe that we were sent in came the chiefest iustice of Ormuz, who was called Aueador generall of that place, he had beene there three yeeres, so that now his time was expired: which Aueador is a great friend to the capteine in Ormuz, who, certeine dayes after our comming from thence, sent for me into his chamber, and there began to demand of me many thinges, to the which I answered: and amongst the rest, he said, that M. Drake was sent out of England with many shippes, and came to Maluco, and there laded cloues, and finding a gallion there of the kinges of Portingall, he caused two pieces of his greatest ordinance to be shot at the same: and so perceiuing that this did greatlie grieue them, I asked, if they would be reuenged of me for that which M. Drake had done to the which he answered, No: although his meaning was to the contrary. Two causes of our more imprisonment at Ormuz.

He said moreouer, that the cause why the capteine of Ormuz did send me for Goa, was, for that the Viceroy would vnderstand of me, what newes there was of Don Antonio, and whether he were in England, yea or no, and that it might be all for the best that I was sent hither, the which I trust in God will so fall out, although contrary to his expectation: for had it not pleased God to put into the mindes of the archbishop and other two Padres or Iesuits of S. Pauls college to stand our friends, we might haue rotted in prison. The archbishop is a very good man, who hath two yong men to his seruants, the one of them was borne at Hamborough, and is called Bernard Borgers: and the other was borne at Enchusen, whose name is John Lenscot, who did vs great pleasure: for by them the archbishop was many times put in minde of vs. And the two good fathers of S. Paul, who trauelled very much for vs, the one of thē is called Padre Marke, who was borne in Bruges in Flanders, & the other was borne in Wilshire in England, and is called ‖ Padre Thomas Steuens. ‖ This is he whose letters to his father from Goa are before put downe, and he was sometimes of New college in Oxford.

Also I chanced to finde heere a yong man, who was borne in Antwerpe, but the most part of his bringing vp hath beene in London, his name is Francis de Rea, and with him it was my hap to be acquainted in Aleppo, who also hath done me great pleasure heere.

In the prison at Ormuz we remained many dayes, also we lay a long time at sea comming hither, and forthwith at our arriuall heere were caried to prison, and the next day after were sent for before the Aueador, who is the chiefest iustice, to be examined: and when we were examined, he presently sent vs backe againe to prison.

And after our being heere in prison thirteene dayes, James Storie went into the monasterie of S. Paul, where he remaineth, and is made one of the companie, which life he liketh very well. James Storie their painter.

And vpon S. Thomas day (which was two and twentie dayes after our arriuall here) I came out of prison, and the next day after came out Ralph Fitch and William Bets. They arriued at Goa the 20 of November 1583.

If these troubles had not chanced, I had beene in possibilitie to haue made as good a voyage as euer any man made with so much money. Many of our things I haue solde very well, both heere and at Ormuz in prison, notwithstanding the capteine willed me (if I would) to sell what I could before we imbarked: and so with officers I went diuers times out of the castle in the morning, and solde things, and at night returned againe to the prison, and all thinges that I solde they did write, and at our imbarking from thence, the capteine gaue order that I should deliuer all my mony with the goods into the hands of the scriuano, or purser of the ship, which I did, and the scriuano made a remembrance, which he left there with the capteine, that my selfe and the rest with money & goods he should deliuer into the hands of the Aueador generall of India: but at our arriuall heere, the Aueador would neither meddle with goods nor money, for that he could not proue any thing against vs: wherefore the goods remained in the ship nine or ten dayes after our arriual, and then, for that the ship was to saile from hence, the scriuano sent the goods on shore, and heere they remained a day and a night, and no body to receiue them. In the end they suffered this bringer to receiue them, who came with me from Ormuz, and put them into an house which he had hyred for me, where they remained foure or fiue dayes. But afterward when they should deliuer the money, it was concluded by the iustice, that both the money and goods should be deliuered into the positors hands, where they remained fourteene dayes after my comming out of prison. At my being in Aleppo, I bought a fountaine of siluer and gilt, sixe kniues, sixe spoones, and one forke trimmed with coral for fiue and twentie chekins, which the capteine of Ormuz did take, and payed for the same twentie pardaos, which is one hundred larines, and was worth there or heere one hundred chekins. Also he had fiue emrauds set in golde, which were worth fiue hundred or sixe hundred crownes, and payed

for

for the same an hundred pardas. Also he had nineteene & a halfe pikes of cloth, which cost in London twentie shillings the pike, and was worth nine or tenne crownes the pike, and he payed for the same twelue larines a pike. Also he had two pieces of greene Kersies, which were worth foure and twentie pardas the piece, and payed for them sixteene pardas a piece: besides diuers other trifles, that the officers and others had in the like order, and some for nothing at all. But the cause of all this was Michael Stropene, which came to Ormuz not worth a penie, and now hath thirtie or fortie thousand crownes, and he grieueth that any other stranger should trade thither but himselfe. But that shall not skill, for I trust in God to goe both thither and hither, and to buy and sell as freelie as he or any other. Heere is verie great good to be done in diuers of our commodities, and in like maner there is great profit to be made with commodities of this countrey, to be carried to Aleppo.

It were long for me to write, and tedious for you to read of all things that haue passed since my parting from you. But for all the troubles that haue chanced since mine arriuall in Ormuz, this bringer is able to certifie you. I minde to stay heere: wherefore if you will write vnto me, you may send your letters to some friend at Lisbone, and from thence by the shippes they may be conueyed hither. Let the direction of your letters be either in Portiguise or Spanish, whereby they may come the better to my hands. From Goa this 20 day of Januarie. 1584.

A Letter written from Goa by Ralph Fitch to M. Leonard Poore aboue said.

LOuing friend Maister Poore, &c. Since my departure from Aleppo, I haue not written vnto you any letters, by reason that at Babylon I was sicke of the flixe, and being sicke, I went from thence for Balsara, which was twelue dayes iourney downe the riuer Tygris, where we had extreame hotte weather, which was good for my disease, ill fare, and woorse lodging, by reason our boate was pestered with people. In eight dayes, that which I did eate was very small, so that if we had staied two dayes longer vpon the water, I thinke I had died: but comming to Balsara, presently I mended, I thanke God. There we staied foureteene dayes, and then we imbarked our selues for Ormuz, where we arriued the fifth of September, and were put in prison the ninth of the same moneth, where we continued vntill the eleuenth of October, and then were shipt for this citie of Goa in the capteines shippe, with an hundred and foureteene horses, and about two hundred men: and passing by Diu and Chaul, where we went on land to water the twentith of Nouember, we arriued at Goa the nine and twentith of the said moneth, where for our better intertainment we were presently put into a fayre strong prison, where we continued vntill the two & twentith of December. It was the will of God that we found there two Padres, the one an Englishman, the other a Flemming. The English mans name is Padre Thomas Stephens, the others Padre Marco, of the order of S. Paul. These did sue for vs vnto the Viceroy and other officers, and stood vs in as much stead, as our liues and goods were worth: for if they had not stucke to vs, if we had escaped with our liues, yet we had had long imprisonment.

October 11.

Diu. Chaul.

After foureteene dayes imprisonment they offered vs, if we could put in sureties for two thousand duckets, we should goe abroad in the towne: which when we could not doe, the said Padres found sureties for vs, that we should not depart the countrey without the licence of the Viceroy. It doth spite the Italians to see vs abroad: and many maruell at our deliuery. The painter is in the cloister of Saint Paul, and is of their order, and liketh there verie well. While we were in prison, both at Ormuz and heere, there was a great deale of our goods pilfered and lost, and we haue beene at great charges in gifts and otherwise, so that a great deale of our goodes is consumed. There is much of our thinges which will sell very well, and some we shall get nothing for. I hope in God that at the returne of the Viceroy, which is gone to Chaul and to Diu, they say, to winne a castle of the Moores, whose returne is thought will be about Easter, that we shall get our libertie, and our sureties discharged. Then I thinke it will be our best way, either one or both to returne, because our troubles haue beene so great, and so much of our goods spoyled and lost. But if it please God that I come into England, by Gods helpe, I will returne hither againe. It is a braue and pleasant countrey, and very fruitfull. The Summer is almost all the yeere long, but the chiefest at Christmas.

The Italians our great enemies for the trade in the East.

The day and the night are all of one length, very litle difference, and maruellous great store of fruits. For all our great troubles, yet are we fat and well liking, for victualles are heere plen-

ti

tie and good cheape. And here I will passe ouer to certifie you of strange things, vntill our meeting, for it would be too long to write thereof. And thus I commit you to God, who euer preserue you and vs all. From Goa in the East Indies the 25 of Januarie 1584.

Yours to command
RALPH FITCH.

The money and measures of Babylon, Balsara, and the Indies, *with the customes, &c. written from Aleppo in Syria, Anno* 1584: *by* William Barret.

BABYLON:

The weight, measure, and money currant there, and the customes of merchandize.

A Mana of Babylon is of Aleppo 1 roue 5 ounces and a halfe: and 68 manaes & three seuenth parts, make a quintall of Aleppo, which is 494 li. 8 ounces of London: and 100 manaes is a quintall of Babylon, which maketh in Aleppo 146 roues, and of London 722 li. and so much is the said quintall: but the merchants accord is by so much the mana, & in the said place they bate the tare in all sorts of commodities, according to the order of Aleppo touching the tare.

The measure of Babylon is greater then that of Aleppo 21 in ȳ 100. For bringing 100 pikes of any measurable ware from Aleppo thither, there is found but 82 pikes in Babylon, so that the 100 pikes of Babylon is of Aleppo 121 pikes, very litle lesse.

The currant mony of Babylō are Sayes, which Say is 5 medines as in Aleppo, & 40 medines being 8 sayes maketh a ducket currant, and 47 medines passeth in value as the ducket of golde of Uenice, and the dollers of the best sort are worth 33 medines. The rials of plate are sold by the 100 drams at prise, according as they be in request: but among the merchants they bargen by the 100 metrals, which are 150 drams of Aleppo, which 150 drams are 135 single rials of plate: but in the mint or castle, they take them by the hundred drams, which is 90 rials of plate, & those of the mint giue 5 medines lesse in ech 100 drāmes then they are worth to be solde among the merchants, and make paiment at the the terme of 40 dayes in Sayes.

The custome in Babylon as well inward as outward, is in this maner: Small wares at 6 per 100. Coral, and amber at 5 and a halfe per 100. Uenice cloth, English cloth, Kersies, Mokayres, Chamblets, Silks, Ueluets, Damasks, Sattins, & such like at 5 per 100: and they rate the goods without reason as they lust themselues. The Toaka, Boabo, and other exactions 6 medines per bale, all which they pay presently in readie mony, according to the custome and vse of the Emperor.

To the Ermin of the mint the ordinarie vse is to giue 30 Sayes in curtesie, otherwise he would by authoritie of his office come aboord, and for despight make such search in the barke, that he would turne all things topsie turuie.

BALSARA:

The weight, measure, and money in the citie of Balsara.

A Mana of Balsara answereth 5 roues 2 oūces & a halfe of Aleppo weight, and 19 manaes & one fourth part of Balsara answereth the quintall of Aleppo, which is 494 roues, 8 ounces English, & 20 manaes is the quintall of Balsara, which is 104 Alepine, and of London 514 li. 8 oūces, and so much is the sayd quintall, but the merchants bargen at so much the mana or wollene (which is all one) and they abate the tare in euery mana, as the sort of spice is, and the order taken therfore in that place.

The measure of Balsara is called a pike, which is iust as the measure of Babylon, to say, 100 pikes of Balsara maketh of Aleppo 121 pikes, vt supra in the rate of Babylon.

The currant mony of Balsara is as followeth. There is a sort of slulles of copper called Estiui, whereof 12 make a mamedine, which is the value of one medine Aleppine, the said mamedine is of siluer, hauing the Moresco stampe on both sides, and two of these make a danine, which is 2 medines Aleppine.

The said danine is of siluer, hauing the Turkesco stampe on both sides, and 2 & a halfe of these make a say, which is iust in value as the say of Aleppo.

The said say is of the similitude and stampe of Aleppo, being (as appeeres) 60 Estiues. Also one say and 20 estiues make a larine, which is of Aleppo money 6 medines and a halfe.

The said larine is a strange piece of money, not being round as all other currant money in Christiamitie,

Christianitie, but is a small rod of siluer of the greatnesse of the penne of a goose fether, wherwith we vse to write, and in length about one eight part thereof, which is wrested, so that the two ends meet at the iust halfe part, and in the head thereof is a stampe Turkesco, and these be the best currant money in all the Indias, and 6 of these larines make a ducket, which is 40 medines or eight sayes of Aleppo.

The ducket of golde is worth there 7 larines, and one danine, which is of Aleppo money 48 medines and a halfe.

The Venetian money is worth larines 88 per 100 meticals, which is 150 drams of Aleppo, vt supra.

The rials of plate are worth 88 larines by the 100 meticals, and albeit among the merchants they sell by the 100 meticals, yet in the mint or castle, they sell by the 100 drams, hauing there lesse then the worth 5 medines in eth hundred drams, and haue their paiment made in 40 dayes, made them in sayes or larines.

The custome of the said places, aswell in ward as out ward, are alike of all sorts of goods, to say 6 by the 100, and Toafo, Boabo, & seruian medines 6 by the bale inward and outward, to say, 3 inward, and as much out ward: but who so leaueth his goods in the custome house payeth nothing, where otherwise at the taking thereof away, he should pay 3 med. by the bale, and of the said goods there is no other duty to pay, and this commeth to passe when the customers esteeme the goods too high. For in such a case they may be driuen to take so much commoditie as the custome amounteth to, and not to pay them in mony, for such is the order from the Grand Signior.

Hauing paid the custome, it behoueth to haue a quittance or cocket sealed and firmed with the customers hand, in confirmation of the dispatch and cleering, and before departure thence, to cause the said customer to cause search to be made, to the end that at the voyages returne there be no cauillation made, as it often times happeneth.

Note that 100 meticals of Balsara weigh 17 ounces and a halfe sottile Venetian, and of Aleppo drams 150, vt supra.

The fraighe of the barks from Ormuz to Balsara, I would say from Balsara to Ormuz, they pay according to the greatnesse thereof. To say, for cariage of 10 cares 180 larines, those of 15 cares 270 larines, those of 20 cares 360 larines, those of 30 cares 540 larines. Note that a care is 4 quintals of Balsara. They pay also to the pilot of the barke for his owne cariage one chare, and to all the rest of the mariners amongst them 3 cares fraight, which is in the whole 4 cares, and paying the abouesaid rules and fraighes, they are at no charges of victualles with them, but it is requisite that the same be declared in the charter partie, with the condition that they lade not aboue one rotilo more thē the fraight, vnder paines that finding more in Ormuz, it is forfeit, and besides that to pay the fraight of that which they haue laden.

And in this accord, it behoueth to deale warilie, and in the presence of the Ermin or some other honest man (whereof there are but few) for they are the worst people in all Arabia. And this diligence must be put in execution, to the end the barks may not be ouerladen, because they are to passe many sands betwixt Balsara and Ormuz.

ORMVZ:

The weight, measure, and money currant in the kingdome of Ormuz.

SPices and drugs they weigh by the bar, and of euery sort of goods the weight is different. To say, of some drugs 5 quintals, and 3 erubi or roues, and other some 4 quintals 25 rotiloes, and yet both is called a barre, which barre, aswell great as litle, is 20 fraseli, and euery fraseli is 10 manaes, and euery mana 23 chiansi, and euery chiansi 10 meticals and a halfe. Note that euery quintall maketh 4 erubi or roues, and euery roue 32 rotiloes, & euery rotilo 16 ounces, and euery ounce 7 meticals, so that the quintall commeth to be 128 rotiloes, which is Aleppine 26 rotiloes and one third part, which is 132 li. English weight. And contrariwise the quintall of Aleppo (which is 494 rotiloes 8 ounces English) maketh 477 rotiloes and a halfe of Ormuz, which is 3 quintals 2 roues, 29 rotiloes and a halfe.

What a rotilo is.

Note that there are bars of diuers weights, vt supra, of which they bargen simplie, according the sort of commoditie, but if they bargen of the great barre, the same is 7 quintals and 24 rotiloes, which is 958 li. 9 ounces of London weight, and of Aleppo 193 rotiloes and a halfe.

Touching the money of Ormuz, they bargen in merchandize at so many leches by the barre, which lech is 100 Asarie, and maketh larines 190 & a halfe, which maketh pardaes 38, & larines one halfe, at larines 5 by the pardao. One asarie is sadines 10, and euery sadine is 100 danarie.

The larine is worth 5 sadines and one fourth part, so that the sadine is worth of Aleppo money

1 medine

1 medine & 1 fourth part, & the larine as in Balsara worth of Aleppo money 6 medines & a halfe.

The pardao is 5 larines of Balsara.

There is also stamped in Ormuz a seraphine of golde, which is licle and round, and is worth 24 sardines, which maketh 30 medines of Aleppo.

The Venetian mony is worth in Ormuz larines 88 per 100: meticals, and the rials are worth larines 86 lesse one saedine, which is euery thousand meticals, 382 asures: but those that will not sell them, vse to melt them, and make them so many larines in the king of Ormus his mint, whereby they cleere 2 per 100, and somewhat more: and this they do because neither Venetian money nor rials runne as currant in Ormuz, per aduise.

The measure of Ormuz is of 2 sorts, the one called Codo which increaseth vpon the measure of Aleppo 3 per 100, for bringing 100 pikes of any measurable wares from Aleppo to Ormuz, it is found in Ormuz to be be 103 Codes. Also these measures of Ormuz increase vpon those of Balsara and Babylon 25 and two third parts per 100: for bringing 100 pikes of any measurable wares from Balsara or Babylon, there is found in Ormuz 125 codes and two third parts.

The other measure is called a vare, which was sent from the king of Portingall to the India, by which they sell things of small value, which measure is of 5 palmes or spannes, and is one code and two third parts, so that buying 100 codes of any measurable wares, and returning to measure it by the said vare, there is found but 60 vares, contrariwise 100 vares maketh 166 codes & 2 third parts.

Note that all such ships as lade horses in Ormuz for Goa or any other place of India, lading 10 horses or vpwards, in what places soeuer the said horses be taken a shore in the India, the merchandize which is to be discharged out of that shippe wherein the said horses come, are bound to pay no custome at all, but if they lade one horse lesse then tenne, then the goods are bound to pay the whole custome. And this law was made by Don Emanuel king of Portingall, but it is to be diligentlie foreseene, whether all those horses laden be bound to pay the king his custome: for many times by the king of Portingall his commandement there is fauor shewed to the king of Cochin his brother of Armes, so that his horses that come in the same shippe, are not to answere custome: as for example, If there were foure horses laden in one shippe, all which were to pay custome to the king, and one other of the king of Cochins which were not to pay any custome, the same causeth all the merchandize of that shippe to be subiect to pay custome, per aduise. But if they lade ten horses vpon purpose to pay the king his custome in Goa, and in the voyage any of them should die in that case, if they bring the taile of the dead horse to the custome in Goa, then the merchandize is free from all custome, because they were laden in Ormuz to pay custome in Goa. Moreouer if the horses should die before the middest of the voyage, they pay no custome at all, and if they die in the mids of the voyage, then they pay halfe custome, but if any horse die after the mid voyage, they pay custome no lesse then if they arriue safe. Notwithstanding, the merchandize (whether the said horses die before or in the mid voyage or after the mid voyage) are free from all custome.

The custome of Ormuz is a leuen in the 100, to say, 10 for the king, and one for the arming of the foists: but for small wares as glasses, and looking glasses of all sorts, and such like, made for apparell, pay no custome. But cloth of Wooll, Karsies, Mokayres, Chamlets, and all sortes of Silke, Saffron, and such like, pay custome, being esteemed reasonable.

There is also another custome, which they call caida, which is, that one bringing his goods into Ormus, with purpose to send the same further into India, the same is bound to pay 3 by the 100, but none other are bound to pay this custome, except the Armenians, Moores, and Iewes: for the Portingalles and Venetians pay nothing thereof.

Note that in Ormuz they abate tare of all sorts of commodities, by an order obserued of custome.

The fraight from Ormuz to Chaull, Goa, and Cochin, as followeth: Mokayres larines 6 per table of 60 pikes. Aquariosa 8 larines by ordinarie chist, reasings 10 larines by chist, which is a quintall of roues 128. Ruuia of Chalangi larines 10 per quintall, glasses larines 8 per chist, of 4 foot & a halfe, glasses in great chist 14 & 15 larines by chist. Small wares larines 12 by chist of 5 foote. Tamari for Malchat sadines 2 and a halfe, and 3 by the fardle. Tamarie for Diu and Chaull 4 sadines, and 4 and a halfe by bale. Other drugges and things which come from Persia, pay according to the greatnesse of the bales.

The fraight mentioned, they pay as appereth, whē they ship ꝑ said goods in ships where horses go: otherwise, not hauing horses, they pay somewhat lesse, because of the custome which they are to pay.

The vse of the India shippes is, that the patrons therof are not at any charge neither with any passenger nor yet with any mariner in the shippe, but that euery one at the beginning of the voyage do furnish to maintein his owne table (if he will eat) & for drinke they haue a great iarre of water, which is garded with great custodie.

GOA:

GOA:

The weight, measure, and money currant in Goa.

THe quintall of Goa is 5 manaes, and 8 larines, & the mana is 24 rotiloes, so that the quintall of Goa is 128 rot. and euery rot. is 16 ounces, which is of Venice weight 1 li. and a halfe, so that the quintall of Goa is 192 li. sotile Venice, which is 26 rotiloes 8 ounces Aleppine, and of London weight 132 li. English, as the weight of Ormuz.

All the merchandize, spices and drugs, are solde by this quintall, except some drugs, as lignũ de China, Galanga, & others, wherof they bargen at so much per candill, aduertising that there be two sorts of candill, one of 16 manaes, the other of 20 manaes, that of 16 manaes commeth to be iust 3 quintals, and that of 20 manaes, 3 quintals, 3 roues. Note that 4 roues make a quintall, and the roue is 32 rotiloes, as in Ormuz.

Note that 4 roues make a quintall.

There is also another weight, which they call Marco, which is 8 ounces or one halfe a rotilo of Goa, & 9 ounces of Venice sotile: with this they weigh amber, coyall, muske, ambracan, ciuet, and other fine wares.

There is also another sort of weight called Mangiallino, which is 5 graines of Venice weight, & therewith they weigh diamonds, and other iewels.

Note that in Goa they vse not to abate any tare of any goods, except of sacks or wraps, & therfore it requireth great aduisement in buying of the goods, especially in the muske of Tartaria which commeth by way of China, in bladders, and so weigh it without any tare rebating.

Muske of Tartaria by the way of China.

The measure of Goa is called a code, which increaseth vpon the measure of Babylon & Balsora after the rate of 17 & one eight part by the 100, so that bringing 100 pikes of any measurable ware from thence to Goa, it is found 117 pikes 7 eight parts, and bringing 100 codes from Ormuz to Goa there is found but 93 codes and one fourth part.

There is also the vare in Goa, which is iust as the vare of Ormuz, and therewith they measure onely things that are of small value.

For the mony of Goa, there is a kinde of mony made of lead and tin mingled, being thicke and round, and stamped on the one side with the spheare or map of the world, and on the other side two arrowes, & 5 rounds: and this kinde of mony is called Basaruchi, and 15 of these make a vintena of naughtie mony, and 5 vintons make a tanga, and 4 vintenas make a tanga of base mony: so the tanga of base mony is 60 basaruchies, and the tanga of good mony 75 basaruchs, and 5 tangas make a seraphine of golde, which in merchandize is worth 5 tangaes good mony: but if one would change them into basaruchies, he may haue 5 tangaes, and 16 basaruchies, which ouerplus they call cerafagio, & when they bargen of the pardap of golde, each pardap is ment to be 6 tangaes good mony, but in merchandize they vse not to demand pardayes of golde in Goa, except it be for iewels and horses, for all the rest they take of seraphins of siluer peraduiso.

The rials of plate, I say the riall of 8 is worth per custome and commandement of the king of Portingall, 400 reyes, and euery rey is one barasuce and one fourth part, which makes tangaes 6, and 53 barasuchies as their iust value, but for that the said rials are excellent siluer and currant in diuers places of the India, and chiefly in Malacha, when the ships are to depart at their due times (called Monsons) euery one to haue the said rials pay more then they are worth, and the ouerplus, as is aboue said they call serafagio. And first they giue the iust value of the 100 rials, of 8 at 5 tangaes 50 basaruchies a piece, which done, they giue seraphins 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 12, 15, vntill 22 by the 100, according as they are in request.

The duccket of golde is worth 9 tangaes and a halfe good money, and yet not stable in price, for that when the ships depart from Goa to Cochin they pay them at 9 tangaes and 3 fourth parts, and 10 tangaes, and that is the most that they are worth.

The larines are worth by iust value basaruchies 93 and 3 fourth parts, and 4 larines make 1 seraphine of siluer, which is 5 tangaes of good money, and these also haue serafagion of 6, 7, 8, 10, vntill 16, by the 100, for when the shippers depart for the North, to say, for Chaul, Diu, Cambaia, or Bassani, all carry of the same, because it is money more currant then any other.

There is also a sort of seraphins of golde of the stampe of Ormuz, whereof there are but few in Goa, but being there, they are worth 5 larines & somewhat more, according as they are in request.

There is also another litle sort of money, round, hauing on the one side a crosse, and on the other side a crowne, which is worth one halfe a tanga of good money, and another of the same stampe lesse then that which they call Imitiuo de buona moneda, which is worth 18 basaruches 3 fourth parts a piece.

Note that if a man bargaine in marchandize, it behoueth to demaunde tangaes of good mony: for

for by nominating tanges onely, is vnderstoode to be base money of 60. basaruches, which wanteth of the good money vt supra.

The custome of Goa is 8. in the 100. inward, and as much outwarde, and the goods are estemed iustly rather to the marchants aduantage then the kings. The custome they paye in this order. Comming with a shippe from Ormuz to Goa without horses, they pay 8. in the 100. whether they sell part or all, but if they would carie of the saide marchandise to any other place, they pay none other custome, except others buy it and carie it fourth of the countrey, and then they pay 8. in the 100. And if one hauing payd the custome should sell to another with composition to passe it fourth as for his proper account to saue the custome, this may not be, because the seller is put to his oth, whether he sende the goods for his owne accompt, or for the accompt of any others, that haue bought the same, and being found to the contrary, they pay custome as aboue saide. And in this order the marchants pay of all the goods which come from any part of the Indies. But if they come from Ormuz to Goa with horses, they are not subiect to pay any custome inward, notwithstanding if they send all or any part therof for any other place, or returne it to Ormuz, they pay the custome outward, although they could not sell.

They vse also in Goa amongst the cõmon sort, to bargaine for coales, wood, lime & such like, at so many braganines, accounting 24. basaruches for one braganine, albeit there is no such money stamped. The custome of the Portingals, is, that any Moore or Gentile, of what cõdition or state soeuer he be, may not depart from Goa to go within the land, without licence of certaine deputies deputed for that office, who (if they be Moores or Gentiles) doe set a seale vpon the arme, hauing therein the armes of Portingal, to be knowen of the porters of the citie, whether they haue the said licence or no.

COCHIN.

The waight, measure, and money, currant in Cochin.

ALl the marchandise which they sell or buy within the said citie, they bargaine for it at so many serafines per quintal, which is 128. rotilos of iust waight with the quintal & Rotilo of Goa, and Ormuz: aduertising ỹ there are diuers sorts of barres according to the sorts of cõmodities, and in traficquing they reason at so much the barre. Note that there are barres of 3. quintals & 3. quintals and a halfe, and 4. quintals. They abate a vsed tare of all marchandise, according to the sort of goods, and order taken for the same.

The measure of Goa, and Cochin are all one.

The money of Cochin are all the same sorts which are currant in Goa, but the ducat of golde value is 10. tanges of good money.

The custome of Cochin as well inward, as outward for all strangers, is 8. in the hundred, but those that haue bene maried 4. yeers in the countrey pay but 4. in the hundred per aduiso.

MALACHA.

The waight, measure, and money of Malaca.

FOr the marchandise bought and solde in the citie, they reason at so much the barre, which barre is of diuers sorts, great and small, according to the ancient custome of the said citie, and diuersitie of the goods. But for the cloues they bargaine at so much the barre, which barre is 3. quintals 2. roues, and 10. rotilos. As I haue aboue said, all kind of drugs haue their sorts of barres limited. Note that euery quintal is 4. roues, and euery roue 32. rotilos, which is 128. rotilos the quintal, the which answereth to Aleppo 95. rotilos, and to London 472. li. per quintal.

The measures of Malaca are as the measures of Goa. In Malaca they abate tare according to their distinction and agreement, for that there is no iust tare limitted.

For the money of Malaca, the least money currant is of tinne stamped with the armes of Portingall, and 12. of these make a Chazza.

The Chazza is also of tinne with the said armes, and 2. of these make a challaine.

The Challaine is of tinne with the said armes, and 40. of these make a Tanga of Goa good money, but not stamped in Malaca.

There is also a sort of siluer money which they call Patachynes, and is worth 6. tanges of good money, which is 360. reyes, and is stamped with two letters, S. T. which is S. Thomas on the one side, and the armes of Portingall on the other side.

There is also a kinde of money called cruzados stamped with the armes of Portingal, and is worth 6. tanges good money, the larines are euery 9. of them worth 2. cruzados, which is 12. tanges good money, and these larines be of those which are stamped in Balsara, and Ormuz.

The ryals of 8. they call Pardaos de Reales, and are worth 7. tanges of good money.

The custome of Malaca is 10. in the 100. as well inwarde as outwarde, and those which pay the custome inwards, if in case they send the same goods for eny other place within terme of a yere and a day, pay no custome for the same.

A note of charges from Aleppo to Goa, as followeth.

‖ Or, by the camels burden.

For camels from Aleppo to Birrha,	Medines 60. per ‖ somme.
For mules from Aleppo to Birrha,	med. 45. per somme.
For custome at Birrha,	med. 10. per somme.
For Anania of the Cady at Birrha,	med. 200.
For 4. dishes reasons, and 20. pounds sope,	med. 35.
For present to the Ermine the somme of	med. 400.
For a barke of 30. or 35. sommes. Duc. 60. is	med. 2400. per barke.
For meate for the men the summe of	med. 200.
For custome at Racca the summe of	med. 5. per somme.
For 3. platters, reasings, and 15. pounds of sope,	med. 25.
For custome to king Aborissei, Duc. 20. is	med. 800.
For custome at Dea the summe of	med. 230. per barke.
For 4. dishes reasings, and 20. pounds of sope.	med. 35.
For custome at Bosara, the summe of	med. 10. per barke.
For 2. dishes reasings, and 10. pound of sope,	med. 17.
For custome in Anna, in 10. per summe,	med. 10. per somme.
For 4. dishes of reasings, and 20. pound of sope.	med. 35.
For custome in Adite, medines 10. per barke,	med. 10. per barke.
For 2. dishes reasings, and 10. pound of sope.	med. 17.
For custome at Gweke,	med. 10. per barke.
For 2. dishes reasings, and 20. pound of sope,	med. 17.
For custome in Ist,	med. 10. per somme.
For 4. platters reasings, and 20. pound of sope,	med. 35.
Charges of presents at Felugia,	med. 30.
For camels from Felugia to Babylon,	med. 30. per somme.
For custome in Babylon, as in the booke appeareth.	
For barke from Babylon to Balsara,	med. 900.
For custome of small wares, at Corno,	med. 20. per somme.
For custome of clothes at Corno, the summe of	med. per somme.
For 3. dishes reasings, and 20. pound of sope,	med. 26.

For fraight from Balsara to Ormuz, according to the greatnesse, as in this booke appeareth.
For custome in Ormuz, as is aboue said in this booke.
For fraight from Ormuz to Goa, as is in this booke shewed.
For custome in Goa, as is aboue said.

A declaration of the places whence the goods subscribed doe come.

Cloues, from Malucho, Tarenate Ambona, by way of Iaua.
Nutmeggs, from Banda.
Maces from Banda, Iaua, and Malacha.
Pepper Gawte, from Cochin.
Pepper common, from Mallauar.
Sinnamon, from Seilan.
Time, from Malacha.
Sandals wilde, from Cochin.
Sandales domesticke, from Malaca.
Uerzini, from S. Thomas, and from China.
Spicknard from Zindi, and Laor.
Quicksiluer, from China.
Galls, from Cambaia, Bengala, Istria & Siria.
Ginger Dabulin, from Dabul.
Ginger Belledin, from the countrie within Cambaia.
Ginger Sorattin, from Sorat within Cambaia.
Ginger Mordassi, from Mordas within Cambaia.
Ginger Meckin, from Mecca.
Mirabolans of all sorts, from Cambaia.
White sucket from Zindi, Cambaia, and China.
Corcunia, from diuers places of India.
Copolle of Leuant, from Mallauer.
Chomin, from Balsara.
Requitria, from Arabia Felix.
Garble of Nutmegs from Banda.
Sal Armoniake, from Zindi and Cambaia.
Zedoari, from diuers places of India.
Cubeb, from China.

Amon

Amomum, from China.
Camphora, from Brimeo neere to China.
Myrrha, from Arabia Felix.
Coſto dulce, from Zindi, and Cambaia.
Borazo, from Cambaia, and Laor.
Aſa fetida, from Laor.
Wax, from Bengala.
Seragni, from Perſia.
Caſſia, from Cambaia, and from Gran Cayro.
Storax calamita, from Rhodes to ſay, from Adena, and Canemarie within Caramania.
Storax liquida, from Rhodes.
Tutia, from Perſia.
Cagiers, from Mallauer, and Maldiua.
Ruuia to die withall, from Chalangi.
Lumme di Rocca, from China, and Conſtantinople.
Chopra, from Cochin and Mallauar.
Oppopanax, from Perſia.
Lignum Aloes, from Cochin, China, and Malaca.
Demnar, from Siacca and Blinton.
Galange, from China, Chaul, Goa, & Cochin.
Laccha, from Pegu, and Ballagate.
Carabbe, from Almanie.
Coloquintida, from Cyprus.
Agaricum, from Allemania.
Scamonea, from Syria, and Perſia.
Bdellium, from Arabia felix, and Mecca.
Cardamomum ſmall, from Barcellona.
Cardamomum great, from Bengala.
Tamarinda, from Balſara.
Aloe Secutrina, from Secutra.
Aloe Epatica, from Pat.
Saffran, from Balſara, and Perſia.
Lignum de China, from China.
Rhaponticum, from Perſia, and Pugia.
Thus, from Secutra.
Turbith, from Diu, and Cambaia.
Nuts of India, from Goa, and other parts of India.
Nux vomica, from Mallauar.
Sanguis Draconis, from Secutra.
Annoniago, from Perſia.
Spodio di Cana, from Cochin.
Margaratina, from Ballagate.
Puſke from Tartarie, by way of China.
Ambrachan, from Melinde, and Moſambique.
Indico, from Zindi and Cambaia.
Silkes fine, from China.
Long pepper, from Bengala and Malaca.
Latton, from China.
Momia, from the great Cayre.
Belzuinum Mandolalo, from Sian, and Baros.
Belzuinum burned, from Bonnia.
Caſtorium, from Almania.
Corallina, from the read ſea.
Maſtik, from Scio.
Mella, from Romania.
Oppium, from Pugia, and Cambaia.
Calamus Aromaticus, from Conſtantinople.
Capari, from Alexandria and other places.
Dates, from Arabia felix, and Alexandria.
Dictamnum album, from Lombardia.
Draganti, from Morea.
Euphorbium, from Barbaria.
Epithymum, from Candia.
Sena, from Mecca.
Gumme Arabike, from Zaffo.
Grana, from Coronto.
Ladanum, from Cyprus and Candia.
Lapis lazzudis, from Perſia.
Lapis Zudaſſi, from Zaffetto.
Lapis Spongij, is found in ſponges.
Lapis Hæmatites, from Almanie.
Manna, from Perſia.
Auripigmentū, from many places of Turkie.
Pilatro, from Barbaria.
Piſtaches, from Doria.
Wlome-ſeede, from Perſia.
Sumack, from Cyprus.
Sebeſten, from Cyprus.
Galbanum, from Perſia.
Dente d'Abolio, from Melinde, & Moſambique.
Folium Indicum, from Goa, and Cochin.
Diaſprum viride, from Cambaia.
Petra Bezzuar, from Tartaria.
Sarcacolla, from Perſia.
Melleghete, from the Weſtparts.
Sugo di Requillicie, from Arabia felix.
Chochenilo, from the Weſt Indians.
Rubarbe, from Perſia, and China.

The times or ſeaſonable windes called monſons, where-*in the ſhips depart from place to place in the Eaſt Indies.*

NOte that the citie of Goa, is the principall place of all the Oriental India, & the winter there beginneth the 15. of May with very great raine, & ſo continueth till the 1. of Auguſt, ſo that during that ſpace, no ſhip can paſſe ouer þ bar of Goa, becauſe through the cõtinual ſhoures of raine all the ſands ioyne together neere vnto a mountaine called Oghane, & all theſe ſands being ioyned together, runne into the ſhoales of the barre and port of Goa, and can haue no other iſſue, but to remaine in that port, and therefore is ſhut vp vntil the firſt of Auguſt, but at the 10. of Auguſt it openeth by reaſon of the raine which ceaſeth, and the ſea doeth then ſcoure the ſands away againe.

The monson from Goa to the Northward, to say, for Chaul, Diu, Cambaia, Daman, Bassani, and other places.

The shippes depart betwixt the tenth and 24. of August, for the Northwarde places abouesaide, and to these places they may saile all times of the yeere, except in the winter, which beginneth and endeth at the times abouesaide.

The monson from the North parts, for Goa.

The shippes depart from Chaul, Diu, Cambaia, and other places Northwardes for Goa, betwixt the 8. and 15. of Januarie, and come to Goa about the ende of Februarie.

The first monson from Diu for the straight of Mecca.

The ships depart from Diu about the 15. of Januarie, and returne from the Straights to Diu in the moneth of August.

The second monson from Diu for the straight of Mecca.

The ships depart betwixt the 25. and first of September, and returne from the Straights to Diu, the 1. and 15. of May.

The monson from Secutra for Ormuz.

The ships depart about the tenth of August for Ormuz: albeit Secutra is an Islande and but few ships, which depart as abouesaid.

The monson wherein the Moores of the firme land come to Goa.

About the 15. of September the Moores of the firme lande beginne to come to Goa, and they come from all parts, as well from Balgatte, Lezanegar, as also from Sudalcao, and other places.

The monson wherein the Moores of the firme land depart from Goa.

They depart from Goa betwixt the 10. and 15. day of Nouember. Note that by going to the North is ment the departing from Goa, for Chaul, Diu, Cambaia, Daman, Bassani, Ghassain, and other places vnto Zindi, and by the South is vnderstoode, departing from Goa, for Cochin, and all that coast vnto Cape Comorin.

The first monson from Goa for Ormuz.

The shippes depart in the moneth of October from Goa, for Ormuz, passing with Easterly windes along the coast of Persia.

The second monson from Goa to Ormuz.

The ships depart about the 20. of Januarie passing by the like nauigation and windes as in the first monson, and this is called of the Portingals and Indians Entremonson.

The 3. monson from Goa to Ormuz.

The ships depart betwixt the 25. of March, and 6. of Aprill, hauing Easterly windes, till they passe Secutra, and then they finde Westerly windes, and therefore they set their course ouer to the coast of Arabia, till they come to Cape Rasalgate and the Straight of Ormus, and this monson is most troublesome of all: for they make 2. nauigations in the height of Seylan, which is 6. degrees and somewhat lower.

The first monson from Ormuz for Chaul and Goa.

The ships depart from Ormuz for Chaul, and Goa in the moneth of September, with North, and Northeast windes.

The second monson from Ormuz for Chaul, and Goa.

The second monson is betwixt the 25. and last of December, with like windes as the former monson.

The 3. monson from Ormuz for Chaul, and Goa.

The 3. monson the ships depart from Ormuz, for Chaul, and Goa, betwixt the 1. and 15. of Aprill, & they saile with Southeast winds, East & Northeast windes, coasting vpon the Arabian shore from Cape Mosandon vnto Cape Rasalgate, and hauing lost sight of Cape Rasalgate, they haue Westerly windes, and so come for Chaul and Goa, and if the said ships depart not before the 25. of Aprill, they are not then to depart that monson, but to winter in Ormuz because of the winter.

The first monson from Ormuz for Zindi.

The ships depart for Ormuz betwixt the 15. and 20. of Aprill.

The 2. monson from Ormuz for Zindi.

The ships depart betwixt the 10. and 20. of October for Zindi from Ormuz.

The monson from Ormuz for the red sea.

The ships depart from Ormus betwixt the 1. and last of Januarie.

Hithero I haue noted the monsons of the ships departing *from Goa to the Northward: Now folowe the monsons wherein* the ships depart from Goa to the Southward.

¶The monson from Goa for Calicut, Cochin, Seilan, and all that coast.

The ships depart from those places betwixt the 1. and 15. of August, and there they finde it nauigable all the yeere except in the winter, which continueth as is abouesaid, from the 15. of May, till the 10. of August. In like maner the ships come from these places for Goa at euery time in the yeere except in the winter, but of all other the best time is to come in November, December and Januarie. Note.

The first monson from Goa, for Pegu.

The ships depart from Goa betwixt the 15. and 20. of April, and winter at S. Thomas, and after the 5. of August, they depart from S. Thomas for Pegu.

The 2. monson from Goa for Pegu.

The ships depart from Goa, betwixt the 8. and 24. of August, going straight for Pegu, and if they passe the 24. of August, they cannot passe that monson, neither is there any more monsons til April as is afore said. Note that the chiefest trade is, to take money of S. Thomas rials, and patechoni, and to goe to S. Thomas, and there to buy Tellami, which is fine cloth of India, whereof there is great quantitie made in Chara Mandel, and brought thither, and other marchandize are not good for that place except some dozen of very faire Emeraulds oriental. For of golde, siluer, and Rubies, there is sufficient store in Pegu. Marchandize good for Pegu.

The monson from Pegu for the Indies.

The ships depart from Pegu betwixt the 15. & 25. of Januarie, and come to Goa about the 25. of March, or in the beginning of April. Note, that if it passe the 10. of May before the saide ships be arriued in Goa, they can not come thither that monson, and if they haue not then ser the coast of India, they shall with great peril fetch S. Thomas.

The first monson from Goa, for Malaca.

The ships depart betwixt the 15. and last of September, and arriue in Malaca about the ende of October.

The second monson from Goa to Malaca.

The ships depart about the 5. of May from Goa, and arriue in Malaca about the 15. of June.

The first monson from Malaca to Goa.

The ships depart about the 10. of September, and come to Goa about the ende of October.

The second monson from Malaca to Goa.

The ships depart from Malaca about the 10. of Februarie, and come to Goa about the ende of March. But if the said ships should stay till the 10. of May, they can not enter into Goa, and if at that time also they should not be arriued at Cochin, they are forced to returne to Malaca, because the winter and contrary windes then come vpon them.

The monson from Goa, for China.

The ships depart from Goa in the moneth of April.

The monson from China for Goa.

The ships depart to be the 10. of May in Goa, and being not then arriued, they turne backe to Cochin, and if they cannot fetch Cochin, they returne to Malaca.

The monson from Goa to the Moluccaes.

The ships depart about the 10. or 15. of May, which time being past, the shippes can not passe ouer the bar of Goa for the cause abouesaid.

The monson of the ships of the Molluccaes arriuall in Goa.

The ships which come from Moluccaes arriue vpon the barre of Goa about the 15. of April.

The monsons of the Portingall ships for the Indies.

The ships which come frō Portingall depart thence ordinarily betwixt the 10. & 15. of March, comming the straight way during the moneth of July to the coast of Melinde, and Mosambique, and from thence goe straight for Goa, and if in the moneth of July they should not be at the coast of Melinde, they can in no wise that yeere fetche Melinde, but returne to the Isle of S. Helena, and so are not able that time being past to fetche the coast of India, and to come straight for Goa. Therefore (as is aboue said) they returne to the Islande of S. Helena, and if they cannot make the saide Iland, then they runne as lost vpon the coast of Guinea: but if the saide shippes bee arriued in time vpon the coast of Melinde, they set forwardes for Goa, and if by the fifteene of Note.

September they can not fetch Goa, they then goe for Cochin, but if they see they can not fetch Cochin, they returne to Mosambique to winter there vpon the saide coast. Albeit in the yeere of our Lord 1580. there arriued the ship called San Lorenzo, being wonderfull sore sea beaten, the 1. of October, which was accounted as a myracle for that the like had not bene seene before.

Note.

The monson from India for Portingall.

The shippes depart from Cochin betweene the 15. and last of January, going on til they haue sight of Capo de buona speranza, and the Isle of S. Helena, which Islande is about the middes, being in 16. degrees to the South. And it is a litle Island being fruitfull of all things which a man can imagine, with great store of fruite: and this Islande is a great succour to the shippes which returne for Portingall. And not long since, the said Island was founde by the Portingals, and was discouered by a shippe that came from the Indies in a great stormе, in which they found such abundance of wilde beasts, and boares, and all sort of fruite, that by meanes thereof that poore shippe, which had bene 4. moneths at sea, refreshed themselues both with water and meate very well, and this Island they called S. Helens, because it was discouered vpon S. Helens day. And no doubtedly this Island is a great succour, and so great an ayde to the ships of Portingall, that many would surely perish if that helpe wanted. And therefore the king of Portingal caused a Church to be made there for deuotion of S. Helena: where there are onely resident Eremits, and all other are forbidden to inhabite there by the kings commaundement, to the ende that the shippes may be the more sufficiently furnished with victuals, because the ships which come from India come but slenderly victualled, because there groweth no corne there, neither make they any wine: but the ships which come from Portingal to the Indies touch not in the saide Island, because they set out being sufficiently furnished with bread, and water from Portingal for 8. moneths voyage. Any other people then the 2. Eremites aboue saide, can not inhabite this Island, except some sicke man that may be set there a shoare to remaine in the Eremites companie, for his helpe and recouerie.

Note.

The monson from Goa to Mosambique.

The ships depart betwixt the 10. and 15. of Januarie.

The monson from Mosambique to Goa.

The ships depart betweene the 8. and last of August, and arriue in Chaul or Goa in the month of October, till the 15. of November.

The monson from Ormuz to Bengala.

The ships depart betwixt the 15. and 20. of June, and goe to winter at Teue and depart thence about the 15. of August for Bengala.

The voyage passed by sea into Egypt, by Iohn Euesham Gentleman. *Anno* 1586.

THe 5. of December 1586. we departed from Grauesend in the Tiger of London, wherein was Master vnder God for the voyage Robert Rickman, and the 11. day at night wee came to the Isle of Wight: departing from thence in the morning following we had a faire winde, so that on the 27. day wee came in sight of the rocke of Lisbone, and so sayling along we came in sight of the South Cape, the 29. of the same, and on the morrow we with a Westerly winde wee entred the Straights: and the 2. of Januarie we being as high as Cape de Gate, we departed from our fleet towards Argier. And the 4. day we arriued at the port of Argier aforesaid, where we stayed till the first of March. At which time we set saile towardes a place called Tunis, to the Eastwarde of Argier 100. leagues, where we arriued the 8. of the same. This Tunis is a small citie vp 12. miles from the sea, and at the port or rode where shipping doe ride, is a castle or fort called the Golem, sometimes in the handes of the Christians, but now in the Turkes: at which place we remained till the three of Aprill: at which time we set saile towardes Alexandria, and hauing sometime faire windes, sometime contrary, wee passed on the 12. day betweene Sicilia and Malta, (where neere adioyning hath bene the fort and holde of the Knights of the Rhodes) and so the 19. day we fell with the Isle of Candie, and from thence to Alexandria, where we arriued the 27. of Aprill, and there continued till the 5. of October.

The description of Alexandria.

The said citie of Alexandria is an olde thing decayed or ruinated, hauing bene a faire and great citie neere two miles in length, being all vaulted vnderneath for prouision of fresh water, which water

water commeth thither but once euery yeere, out of one of the foure riuers of paradise (as it is termed) called Nilus, which in September floweth neere eighteene foote vpright higher, then his accustomed manner, and so the banke being cut, as it were a sluce, about thirtie miles from Alexandria, at a towne called Rocetto, it doth so come to the saide Citie, with such aboundance, that barkes of twelue tunne doe come vpon the same water, which water doth fill all the dawes, setternes, and wels in the said Citie, with very good water, and doth so continue good, till the next yeere following: for they haue there very litle raine, or none at all, yet haue they exceeding great dewes. Also they haue very good corne, and very plentifull: all the Countrey is very hot, especially in the moneths of August, September, and October. Also, within the saide Citie, there is a pillar of Marble, called by the Turkes, King Pharoes needle, and it is foure square, euery square is twelue foote, and it is in heigth 90. foote. Also, there is without the wals of the said Citie, about twentie score paces, another marble pillar, being rounde, called Pompey his pillar: this pillar standeth vpon a great square stone, euery square is fifteene foote, and the same stone is fifteene foote high, and the compasse of the pillar is 27. foote, and the heigth of it is 101. feete, which is a wonder to thinke how euer it was possible to set the said pillar vpon the said square stone. The port of the said Citie is strongly fortified with two strong Castles, and one other Castle within the Citie, being all very well planted with munition: and there is to the Eastward of this Citie, about three daies iourney the Citie of Grand Cayro, otherwise called Memphis: it hath in it by report of the registers bookes, which we did see, to the number of 2400. Churches, and is wonderfully populous, and is one daies iourney about the wals, which was iourneied by one of our Marriners, for triall thereof. Also, neere to the said Citie, there is a place called the Pyrammides, being, as I may well terme it, one of the nine wonders of the world: that is, seuen seuerall places of flint and marble stone, foure square, the wals thereof are seuen yardes thicke in those places that we did see: the squarenes is in length about twentie score euery square, being built as it were a pointed diamond, broad at the foote, and small or narrow at the toppe: the heigth of them, to our iudgement, doth surmount twise the heigth of Paules steeple: within the saide Pyrammides, no man doth know what there is, for that they haue no entrance, but in the one of them, there is a hole where the wall is broken, and so we went in there, hauing torch light with vs, for that it hath no light to it, and within the same, is at it were a great hall, in the which there is a costly tombe, which tombe they say, was made for King Pharao in his life time, but he was not buried there, being drowned in the red sea: also there are certaine dawes, or dungeons, which goe downe very deepe vnder those Pyrammides, with faire staires, but no man dare venter to go down into them, by reason that they can carry no light with them, for the dampe of the earth doth put out the light: the red sea is but three daies iourney from this place, and Ierusalem about seuen daies iourney from thence: but to returne to Cayro. There is a Castle, wherein is the house that Pharoes wiues were kept in, and in the Pallace or Court thereof, standeth 55. marble pillars, in such order, as our Exchange standeth in London: the saide pillars are in heigth 60. foote, and in compasse 14. foote: also in the sayd Citie, is the Castle where Ioseph was in prison, where to this day they put in rich men, when the King would haue any summe of money of them: there are seuen gates to the sayd prison, and it goeth neere 50. yardes downe right: also, the water that serueth this Castle, commeth out of the foresaid riuer of Nilus, vpon a wal made with arches, fiue miles long, and it is twelue foote thicke. Also there are in old Cayro two Monasteries, the one called S. Georges, the other S. Maries: & in the Courts where the Churches be, was the house of King Pharao. In this Citie is great store of marchandize, especially pepper, and nutmegs, which come thither by land, out of the East India: and it is very plentifull of all manner of victuals, especially of bread, rootes, and herbes: to the Eastwards of Cayro, there is a Well, fiue miles of, called Matria, and as they say, when the Virgin Marie fled from Bethleem, and came into Aegypt, and being there, had neither water, nor any other thing to sustaine them, by the prouidence of God, an Angel came from heauen, and strake the ground with his wings, where presently issued out a fountaine of water: and the wall did open, where the Israelites did hide themselues, which fountaine or wel, is walled foure square, to this day. Also we were at an olde Citie, all ruinated and destroied, called in olde time, the great Citie of Carthage, where Hannibal, and Queene Dido dwelt: this citie was but narrowe, but was very long: for there was, and is yet to bee seene, one streete three mile long, to which Citie fresh water was brought vpon arches (as afore) aboue 25. miles, of which arches, some are standing to this day. Also we were at diuers other places, on the coast, as we came from Cayro, but of other antiquities, we saw but fewe. The towne of Argier, which was our first & last port, within the streights, standeth vpon the side of an hill, close vpon the sea shoare: it is very strong both by sea, and land, and it is very well victualled with all manner of fruites,

Cayro.

Carthage.

Argier.

bread

bread, and fiſhe, good ſtore, and very cheape. It is inhabited with Turkes, Moores, and Iewes, and ſo are Alexandria and Cayro. In this towne are a great number of Chriſtian captiues, whereof there are of Engliſhmen onely 15. from which port we ſet ſaile towards England, the ſeuenth of Ianuarie, Anno 1587. and the 30. day of the ſaid moneth, we arriued at Dartmouth, on the coaſt of England.

The ſecond voyage of Maſter Laurence Alderſey, to the Cities *of Alexandria, and Cayro in Aegypt. Anno* 1586.



I Embarked my ſelfe at Briſtoll, in the Hercules, a good ſhip of London, and ſet ſaile the 21. day of Februarie, about ten of the clocke in the morning, hauing a merry wind: but the 23. day, there aroſe a very great ſtorme, and in the midſt of it we deſcried a ſmall boate of the burden of ten tunnes, with foure men in her, in very great danger, who called a maine for our helpe. Whereupon our Maſter made towards them, and tooke them into our ſhippe, and let the boate, which was laden with timber, and appertained to Chepſtow, to runne a drift. The ſame night, about midnight, aroſe another great ſtorme, but the wind was large with vs, vntill the 27. of the ſame moneth, which then grew ſomewhat contrary: yet notwithſtanding, we held on our courſe, and the tenth day of March, we deſcried a ſaile about Cape Sprat, which is a little on this ſide the ſtreight of Gibraltare, but we ſpake not with her. The next day we deſcried twelue ſaile more, with whome we thought to haue ſpoken, to haue learned what they were, but they made very faſt away, and we gaue them ouer.

Thurſday the 16. of March, we had ſight of the ſtreights, and of the coaſt of Barbarie. The 18. day we paſſed them, and ſailed towards Petras. Vpon the 23. of March, we met with the Centurion of London, which came from Genoa, by whome we ſent letters to England, and the foure men alſo which we tooke in, vpon the coaſt of England, before mentioned.

Goletta. The 29. of March, we came to Goleta, a ſmall Iland, and had ſight of two ſhippes, which we iudged to be of England.

Malta. Tueſday the fourth of Aprill, we were before Malta, and being there becalmed, our Maſter cauſed the two ſhippe boates to be had out, and they towed the ſhippe, till we were out of ſight of the

Xante. Caſtle of Malta. The 9. day of Aprill, we came to Zante, and being before the towne, William Aldridge, ſeruant to Maſter Thomas Cordall of London, came aboord vs, with whome our Maſter, and 12. more of our companie, thought to haue gone on ſhoare, but they could not be permitted: ſo we all came aboord againe, and went to

Petraſſe. Petras, where we arriued vpon good Friday, and lay there with good entertainement, at the Engliſh houſe, where was the Conſul Maſter Grime, Ralfe Aſhley, & Iohn Doddington, who very kindly went with vs, and ſhewed vs the pleaſures of the towne.

They brought vs to the houſe of the Cady, who was made then to vnderſtand of the 20. Turkes that we had aboord, which were to go to Conſtantinople, being redeemed out of captiuitie, by Sir Francis Drake, in the weſt Indias, and brought with him into England, & by order of the Queenes Maieſtie, ſent now into their Countrey. Whereupon the Cady commanded them to be brought before him, that he might ſee them: and when he had talked with them, and vnderſtoode how ſtrangely they were deliuered, he marualled much, and admired the Queenes Maieſtie of England, who being but a woman, is notwithſtanding of ſuch power and renowme amongſt all the princes of Chriſtendome, with many other honorable words of commending her Maieſtie. So he tooke the names of thoſe 20. Turkes, and recorded them in their great bookes, to remaine in perpetuall memorie. After this, our foreſaid countrey men brought me to the Chappell of S. Andrew, where his tombe or ſepulchre is, and the boord vpon which he was beheaded, which boord is now ſo rotten, that if any man offer to cut it, it falleth to powder, yet I brought ſome of it away with me. Vpon Tueſday in Eaſter weeke, we ſet out towards Zante againe, and the 24. of Aprill, with much adoe, we were all permitted to come on ſhoare, and I was caried to the Engliſh houſe in Zante, where I was very well entertained. The commodities of Zante, are currans, and oile: the ſituation of the towne is vnder a very great high hill, vpon which ſtandeth a very ſtrong Caſtle, which commandeth the towne. At Zante we tooke in a captaine, and 16. ſouldiers, with other paſſengers. We departed from Zante, vpon Tueſday the 15. of Aprill, & the next day we

Strinalia. anchred at a ſmal Iſland, called Striualia, which is deſolate of people, ſauing a few religious men, who entertained vs wel, wout taking any mone: but of curteſie we beſtowed ſomwhat vpō them

for

for their maintenance, and then they gaue vs a couple of leane ſheepe, which we caried aboord.

The laſt day of Aprill, we arriued at Candie, at a Caſtle, called Sowdaye, where we ſette the Captaine, ſouldiers, and marriners a ſhoare, which we tooke in at Zante, with all their carriage. Candie.

The ſecond day of May we ſet ſaile againe, and the fourth day came to the Iſlands of Milo, where we ankered, and found the people there very curteous, and tooke in ſuch neceſſaries as we wanted. The Iſlands are in my iudgement a hundred in number, and all within the compaſſe of a hundred miles. May. The Iſlands of Milo in old time called Sporades.

The 11. day the Chaus, which is the greateſt man there in authoritie, for certaine offences done in a little Chappell by the water ſide, which they ſaid one of our ſhippe had done, and imputed it to me, becauſe I was ſeene goe into it three daies before, came to vs, and made much a doe, ſo that we were faine to come out of our ſhippe armed, but by three peeces of golde the brabling was ended, and we came to our ſhippe. This day we alſo ſet ſaile, and the next day paſſed by the Caſtle of Serpeto, which is an olde ruinated thing, and ſtandeth vnder a hils ſide.

The 13. day, we paſſed by the Iſland of Paris, and the Iſland of the bankes of Helicon, and the Iſland called Ditter, where are many Boares, and the women be Witches. The ſame day alſo we paſſed by the Caſtle of Tino, ſtanding vpon a very high mountaine, and neere vnto it is the Iſland of Diana.

The 15. of May, we came to Sio, where I ſtaied 33. daies. In it is a very proper towne, after the building of that Countrey, and the people are ciuill: and while we were here, there came in ſixe gallies, which had bene at Alexandria, and one of them which was the Admirall, had a Prince of the Moores priſoner, whome they tooke about Alexandria, and they ment to preſent him to the Turke. The towne ſtandeth in a valley, and along the water ſide pleaſantly. There are about 26. windemils about it, and the commodities of it, are cotton wooll, cotton parne, maſtike, and ſome other drugs. Sio.

As we remained at Sio, there grew a great controuerſie betweene the marriners of the Hercules, and the Greekes of the towne of Sio, about the bringing home of the Turkes, which the Greekes tooke in ill part, and the boies cried out, Viue el Re Philippi: whereupon our men beate the boies, and they threw ſtones, and ſo a broile began, and ſome of our men were hurt: but the Greekes were fetcht out of their houſes, and manacled together with pyons, and threatned to the gallies: about fortie of them were ſent to the priſon, and what became of them, when wee were gone, we know not, for we went thence within 2. daies after, which was the nineteenth of June.

The 20. day we paſſed by the Iſland of Singonina, an Iſland riſen by the caſting of ſtones in that place: the ſubſtance of the ground there is brimſtone, and burneth ſometimes ſo much, that it bloweth vp the rockes. Singonina.

The 24. of June, we came to Cyprus, and had ſight in the way of the aforeſaide ſixe gallies, that came from Alexandria, one whereof came vnto vs, and required a preſent for himſelfe, and for two of the other gallies, which we for quietnes ſake gaue them.

The 27. of June, we came to Tripolis, where I ſtaied till the firſt of July, and then tooke paſſage in a ſmall barke, called a Caramaſate, which was a paſſage boate, and was bound for Bickberre, thirteene miles on this ſide Alexandria, which boate was freighted with Turkes, Moores, and Iewes.

The 20. day of July, this barke which I paſſed in, ranne vpon a rocke, and was in very great danger, ſo that we all began, ſome to be ready to ſwimme, ſome to leape into the ſhippe boate, but it pleaſed God to ſet vs quickly off the rocke, and without much harme.

The 28. of July, I came to Bickbert, where I was well entertained of a Iewe, which was the Cuſtomer there, giuing me Muſkadine, and drinking water himſelfe: hauing broken my faſt with him, he prouided me a Camell for my carriage, and a Mule for me to ride vpon, and a Moore to runne by me, to the Citie of Alexandria, who had charge to ſee me ſafe in the Engliſh houſe, whether I came, but found no Engliſh men there: but then my guide brought me aboord a ſhippe of Alderman Martyns, called the Tyger of London, where I was well receaued of the Maſter of the ſaid ſhippe, whoſe name was Thomas Rickman, and of all the companie. Bickbert. The Engliſh houſe in Alexandria.

The ſaid Maſter hauing made me good cheere, and made me alſo to drinke of the water of Nilus, hauing the keies of the Engliſh houſe, went thither with me himſelfe, and appointed me a faire Chamber, and left a man with me, to prouide me all things that I needed, and euery day came himſelfe to me, and caried me into the Citie, and ſhewed me the monuments thereof, which be theſe.

He brought me firſt to Pompey his pillar, which is a mightie thing, of gray marble, and all of one The monuments of Alexandria.

one ſtone, in heigth by eſtimation, aboue 52. yardes, and the compaſſe about fiue fadome.

The Citie hath three gates, one called the gate of Barbaria, the other of Merina, and the third of Roſetto.

He brought me to a ſtone in a ſtreete of the Citie, whereupon S. Marke was beheaded: and the place where S. Catherine died, hauing there hid her ſelfe, becauſe ſhe would not marrie: alſo ſee the Bath of S. Catherine.

I ſawe there alſo Pharoes needle, which is a thing in heigth almoſt equall with Pompeys pillar, and is in compaſſe fiue fadom, and a halfe, and all of one ſtone.

I was brought alſo to a moſt braue and daintie Bath, where we waſhed our ſelues: the Bath being of marble, and of very curious workemanſhip.

The Citie ſtandeth vpon great arches, or vawtes, like vnto Churches, with mightie pillars of marble, to holde vp the foundation: which arches are built to receaue the water of the riuer of Nilus, which is for the vſe of the Citie. It hath three Caſtles, and a hundred Churches: but the part that is deſtroied of it, is fiue times more then that part which ſtandeth.

Roſſetto. The laſt day of July, I departed from Alexandria, towards Cayro, in a paſſage boate, wherein firſt I went to Roſſetto, ſtanding by the riuer ſide, hauing thirteene or foureteene great Churches in it, their building there is of ſtone & bricke, but as for lodging, there is little, except we bring it with vs.

From Roſſetto, we paſſed along the riuer of Nilus, which is ſo famous in the world, twice as broad as the Thames at London: on both ſides growe Date trees, in great aboundance. The people be rude, inſomuch that a man can not trauell without a Ianiſſar, to conduct him.

The Turkes Lent. The time that I ſtaied in Aegypt, was the Turkes and Moores Lent, in all which time they burne lamps in their Churches, as many as may hang in them: their Lent indureth 40. daies, and they haue three Lents in the yeere: during which time, they neither eate nor drinke in the day time, but all the night they doe nothing els.

Betwixt Roſſetto, and Cayro, there are along the water ſide three hundred cities and townes, and the length of the way is not aboue three hundred miles.

Cayre. To this famous Citie of Cayro, I came the firſt day of Auguſt, where I found Maſter William Alday, and William Cæſar, who intertained me in very good ſorte. Maſter Cæſar brought me to ſee the Pyrammides, which are three in number, one whereof King Pharao made for his owne tombe, the tombe it ſelfe is almoſt in the top of it: the monuments be high, and in forme 4. ſquare, and euery of the ſquares is as long, as a man may ſhoot a roving arrowe, and as high as a church. I ſawe alſo the ruines of the Citie of Memphis, hard by thoſe Pyrammides.

The houſe of Ioſeph is yet ſtanding in Cayro, which is a ſumptuous thing, hauing a plaine walke in of 56. mightie pillars, all gilt with gold, but I ſawe it not, being then lame.

The 11. day of Auguſt, the land was cut at Cayro, to let in the water of the riuer of Nilus, which was done with great ioy, and triumph.

The 12. of Auguſt, I ſet from Cayro, towards Alexandria againe, and came thither the 14. of Auguſt. The 26. day, there was kept a great feaſt of the Turkes, and Moores, which laſted two daies, and for a day they neuer ceaſed ſhooting off of great Ordinance.

The Engliſh Conſul at Argier. From Alexandria I ſailed to Argier, where I lay with Maſter Typton, Conſul of the Engliſh nation, who vſed me moſt kindly, and at his owne charge. He brought me to the kings Court, and into the preſence of the King, to ſee him, and the manners of the Court: the King doth onely beare the name of a King, but the greateſt gouernment is in the hands of the ſouldiers.

The King of Potanca is priſoner in Argier, who comming to Conſtantinople, to acknowledge a dutie to the great Turke, was betraied by his owne Nephew, who wrote to the Turke, that he went onely as a ſpie, by that meanes to get his kingdome. I heard at Argier of ſeuen gallies that were at that time caſt away, at a towne called Formentera, three of them were of Argier, the other foure were the Chriſtians.

We found here alſo thirteene Engliſh men, which were by force of weather put into the Bay of Tunes, where they were very ill vſed by the Moores, who forced them to leaue their barke: whereupon they went to ỹ Councel of Argier, to require a redreſſe and remedie for the iniury. They were all belonging to the ſhippe, called the Golden Noble of London, whereof Maſter Birde is owner. The Maſter was Stephen Haſelwood, and the Captaine Edmond Bence.

The third day of December, the pinneſſe called the Mooneſhine of London, came to Argier with a prize, which they tooke vpon the coaſt of Spaine, laden with ſugar, hides, and ginger: the pinneſſe alſo belonging to the Golden Noble: and at Argier they made ſale both of ſhippe and goods, where we left them at our comming away, which was the ſeuenth day of Ianuarie:

and

and the firſt day of Februarie, I landed at Dartmouth, and the ſeuenth day came to London, with humble thankes to Almightie God, for my ſafe arriuall.

A true report of a worthie fight, performed in the voyage from *Turkie, by fiue ſhippes of London, againſt eleuen gallies, and two frigats* of the King of Spaines, at Pantalarea within the Streights, Anno, 1586. Written by Philip Ionas.

THe Marchants of London, being of the incorporation for the Turkie trade, hauing receaued intelligences, and aduertiſements, from time to time, that the King of Spaine grudging at the proſperitie of this kingdome, had not onely of late arreſted all Engliſh ſhippes, bodies, and goods, in Spaine, but alſo maligning the quiet traffike which they vſed to and in the dominions, and prouinces, vnder the obedience of the Great Turke, had giuen order to the Captaines of his gallies, in the Leuant, to hinder the paſſage of all Engliſh ſhippes, and to endeuour by their beſt meanes, to intercept, take, and ſpoile them, their perſons, and goods: they hereupon thought it their beſt courſe to ſette out their fleete for Turkie, in ſuch ſtrength and abilitie for their defenſe, that the purpoſe of their Spaniſh enemie, might the better be preuented, and the voyage accomplished with greater ſecuritie to the men and ſhippes. For which cauſe, fiue tall, and ſtoute ſhippes, appertaining to London, and intending onely a Marchants voyage, were prouided and furniſhed with all things belonging to the ſeas, the names whereof were theſe.

1. The Marchant Royall, a very braue and goodly ſhippe, and of great report.
2. The Tobie.
3. The Edward Bonauenture.
4. The William, and Iohn.
5. The Suſan.

Theſe fiue departing from the coaſt of England, in the moneth of Nouember, 1585. kept together as one fleete, till they came as high as the Iſle of Sicilie, within the Leuant. And there according to the order and direction of the voyage, each ſhippe began to take leaue of the reſt, and to ſeparate himſelfe, ſetting his courſe for the particular porte, whereunto he was bound: one for Tripolis in Syria, another for Conſtantinople, the chiefe Citie of the Turkes Empire, ſituated vpon the coaſt of Romania, called of olde Thracia, and the reſt to thoſe places, whereunto they were priuatly appointed. But before they deuided themſelues, they altogether conſulted, of and about a certaine and ſpeciall place for their meeting againe after the lading of their goods at their ſeuerall portes. And in concluſion, the generall agreement was to meete at Zante, an Iſlande neere to the maine continent of the Weſt part of Morea, well knowen of all the Pilots, & thought to be the fitteſt place for their Rendeuous. Concerning which meeting, it was alſo couenanted on eche ſide, and promiſed, that whatſoeuer ſhip of theſe 5. ſhould firſt arriue at Zante, ſhould there ſtay and expect the comming of the reſt of the fleete, for the ſpace of 20. dayes. This being done, eche man made his beſt haſt according as winde and wether would ſerue him to fulfill his courſe, and to diſpatch his buſineſſe; and no neede was there to admoniſh or incourage any man, ſeeing no time was ill ſpent, nor opportunitie omitted on any ſide, in the performance of eche mans duetie, according to his place.

It fell out that the Tobie which was bound for Conſtantinople had made ſuch good ſpeede, and gotten ſuch good weather, that ſhe firſt of all the reſt came backe to the appointed place of Zante, and not forgetting the former concluſion, did there caſt ancre, attending the arriuall of the reſt of the fleete, which accordingly (their buſines firſt performed) failed not to keepe promiſe. The firſt next after the Tobie was ꝑ Royal marchant, which together with the William & Iohn came from Tripolis in Syria, and arriued at Zante within the compaſſe of the foreſaide time limitted. Theſe ſhips in token of the ioy on al parts conceiued for their happy meeting, ſpared not ꝑ diſcharging of their ordinance, the ſounding of drummes and trumpets, the ſpreading of Enſignes, with other warlike and ioyfull behauiours, expreſſing by theſe outward ſignes, the inwarde gladneſſe of their mindes, being all as readie to ioyne together in mutuall conſent to reſiſt the cruel enemie, as wone in ſporting maner they made myrthe and paſtime among themſelues. Theſe three had not bene long in the hauen, but the Edward Bonauenture alſo, together with the Suſan her conſort, were come from Venice with their lading: the ſight of whom increaſed the ioy of the reſt, and they no leſſe glad of the preſence of the others, ſaluted them in moſt friendly and kinde ſort, according to the maner of the ſeas: and whereas ſome of theſe ſhips ſtoode at that inſtant in ſome want

of

one stone, in heigth by estimation, aboue 52. pases, and the compasse about sixe fadome.

The Citie hath three gates, one called the gate of Barbaria, the other of Merina, and the third of Rosetto.

He brought me to a stone in a streete of the Citie, whereupon S. Marke was beheaded: to the place where S. Catherine died, hauing there hid her selfe, because she would not marrie: also to the Bath of S. Catherine.

I sawe there also, Pharoes needle, which is a thing in heigth almost equall with Pompeys pillar, and is in compasse fiue fadom, and a halfe, and all of one stone.

I was brought also to a most braue and daintie Bath, where we washed our selues: the Bath being of marble, and of very curious workemanship.

The Citie standeth vpon great arches, or vawtes, like vnto Churches, with mightie pillars of marble, to holde vp the foundation: which arches are built to receaue the water of the riuer Nilus, which is for the vse of the Citie. It hath three Castles, and a hundred Churches: but the part that is destroied of it, is sixe times more then that part which standeth.

Rosetto. The last day of July, I departed from Alexandria, towards Cayro, in a passage boate, wherein first I went to Rosetto, standing by the riuer side, hauing thirteene or foureteene great Churches in it, their building there is of stone & bricke, but as for lodging, there is little, except we bring it with vs.

From Rosetto, we passed along the riuer of Nilus, which is so famous in the world, twise as broad as the Thames at London: on both sides growe Date trees, in great aboundance. The people be rude, insomuch that a man can not trauell without a Ianissar, to conduct him.

The Turkes Lent. The time that I staied in Aegypt, was the Turkes and Moores Lent, in all which time they burne lamps in their Churches, as many as may hang in them: their Lent endureth 40. daies, and they haue three Lents in the yeere: during which time, they neither eate nor drinke in the day time, but all the night they doe nothing els.

Betwixt Rosetto, and Cayro, there are along the water side three hundred cities and townes, and the length of the way is not aboue three hundred miles.

Cayre. To this famous Citie of Cayro, I came the first day of August, where I found Master William Alday, and William Cæsar, who intertained me in very good sorte. Master Cæsar brought me to see the Pyrammides, which are three in number, one whereof King Pharao made for his owne tombe, the tombe it selfe is almost in the top of it: the monumentes be high, and in forme 4. square, and euery of the squares is as long, as a man may shoot a roving arrowe, and as high as a church. I sawe also the ruines of the Citie of Memphis, hard by those Pyrammides.

The house of Ioseph is yet standing in Cayro, which is a sumptuous thing, hauing a plaine walke in of 56. mightie pillars, all gilt with gold, but I sawe it not, being then lame.

The 11. day of August, the land was cut at Cayro, to let in the water of the riuer of Nilus, which was done with great ioy, and triumph.

The 12. of August, I set from Cayro, towards Alexandria againe, and came thither the 14. of August. The 26. day, there was kept a great feast of the Turkes, and Moores, which lasted two daies, and for a day they neuer ceased shooting off of great Ordinance.

The English Consul at Argier. From Alexandria I sailed to Argier, where I lay with Master Typton, Consul of the English nation, who vsed me most kindly, and at his owne charge. He brought me to the kings Court, and into the presence of the King, to see him, and the manners of the Court: the King doth only beare the name of a King, but the greatest gouernment is in the hands of the souldiers.

The King of Potanca is prisoner in Argier, who comming to Constantinople, to acknowledge a dutie to the great Turke, was betraied by his owne Nephew, who wrote to the Turke, that he went onely as a spie, by that meanes to get his kingdome. I heard at Argier of seuen gallies that were at that time cast away, at a towne called Formentera, three of them were of Argier, the other foure were the Christians.

We found here also thirteene English men, which were by force of weather put into the Bay of Tunes, where they were very ill vsed by the Moores, who forced them to leaue their barke: whereupon they went to ỹ Councel of Argier, to require a redresse and remedie for the iniury. They were all belonging to the shippe, called the Golden Noble of London, whereof Master Birde is owner. The Master was Stephen Haselwood, and the Captaine Edmond Bence.

The third day of December, the pinnesse called the Mooneshine of London, came to Argier with a prize, which they tooke vpon the coast of Spaine, laden with sugar, hides, and ginger: the pinnesse also belonging to the Golden Noble: and at Argier they made sale both of shippe and goods, where we left them at our comming away, which was the seuenth day of Ianuarie:

and

and the firſt day of Februarie, I landed at Dartmouth, and the ſeuenth day came to London, with humble thankes to Almightie God, for my ſafe arriuall.

A true report of a worthie fight, performed in the voyage from *Turkie, by fiue ſhippes of London, againſt eleuen gallies, and two frigats* of the King of Spaines, at Pantalarea within the Streights, Anno, 1586. Written by Philip Iones.

THe Marchants of London, being of the incorporation for the Turkie trade, hauing receaued intelligences, and aduertiſements, from time to time, that the King of Spaine grudging at the proſperitie of this kingdome, had not onely of late arreſted all Engliſh ſhippes, bodies, and goods, in Spaine, but alſo maligning the quiet traffike which they vſed to and in the dominions, and prouinces, vnder the obedience of the Great Turke, had giuen order to the Captaines of his gallies, in the Leuant, to hinder the paſſage of all Engliſh ſhippes, and to endeuour by their beſt meanes, to intercept, take, and ſpoile them, their perſons, and goods: they hereupon thought it their beſt courſe to ſette out their fleete for Turkie, in ſuch ſtrength and abilitie for their defenſe, that the purpoſe of their Spaniſh enemie, might the better be preuented, and the voyage accompliſhed with greater ſecuritie to the men and ſhippes. For which cauſe, fiue tall, and ſtoute ſhippes, appertaining to London, and intending onely a Marchants voyage, were prouided and furniſhed with all things belonging to the ſeas, the names whereof were theſe.

1. The Marchant Royall, a very braue and goodly ſhippe, and of great report.
2. The Tobie.
3. The Edward Bonauenture.
4. The William, and Iohn.
5. The Suſan.

Theſe fiue departing from the coaſt of England, in the moneth of November, 1585. kept together as one fleete, till they came as high as the Iſle of Sicilie, within the Leuant. And there according to the order and direction of the voyage, each ſhippe began to take leaue of the reſt, and to ſeparate himſelfe, ſetting his courſe for the particular porte, whereunto he was bound: one for Tripolis in Syria, another for Conſtantinople, the chiefe Citie of the Turkes Empire, ſituated vpon the coaſt of Romania, called of olde Thracia, and the reſt to thoſe places, whereunto they were priuatly appointed. But before they deuided themſelues, they altogether conſulted, of and about a certaine and ſpeciall place for their meeting againe after the lading of their goods at their ſeuerall portes. And in concluſion, the generall agreement was to meete at Zante, an Iſlande neere to the maine continent of the Weſt part of Morea, well knowen of all the Pilots, & thought to be the fitteſt place for their Rendeuous. Concerning which meeting, it was alſo couenanted on eche ſide, and promiſed, that whatſoeuer ſhip of theſe 5. ſhould firſt arriue at Zante, ſhould there ſtay and expect the comming of the reſt of the fleete, for the ſpace of 20. dayes. This being done, eche man made his beſt haſt according as winde and wether would ſerue him to fulfill his courſe, and to diſpatch his buſineſſe; and no neede was there to admoniſh or incourage any man, ſeeing no time was ill ſpent, nor opportunitie omitted on any ſide, in the performance of eche mans duetie, according to his place.

It fell out that the Tobie which was bound for Conſtantinople had made ſuch good ſpeede, and gotten ſuch good weather, that ſhe firſt of all the reſt came backe to the appointed place of Zante, and not forgetting the former concluſion, did there caſt ancre, attending the arriuall of the reſt of the fleete, which accordingly (their buſines firſt performed) failed not to keepe promiſe. The firſt next after the Tobie was ꝑ Royal marchant, which together with the William & Iohn came from Tripolis in Syria, and arriued at Zante within the compaſſe of the foreſaide time limitted. Theſe ſhips in token of the ioy on al parts conceiued for their happy meeting, ſpared not ꝑ diſcharging of their ordinance, the ſounding of drummes and trumpets, the ſpreading of Enſignes, with other warlike and ioyfull behauiours, expreſſing by theſe outward ſignes, the inwarde gladneſſe of their mindes, being all as readie to ioyne together in mutuall conſent to reſiſt the cruel enemie, as wee in ſporting maner they made mirthe and paſtime among themſelues. Theſe three had not bene long in the hauen, but the Edward Bonauenture alſo, together with the Suſan her conſort, were come from Venice with their lading, the ſight of whom increaſed the ioy of the reſt, and they no leſſe glad of the preſence of the others, ſaluted them in moſt friendly and kinde ſort, according to the maner of the ſeas: and whereas ſome of theſe ſhips ſtoode at that inſtant in ſome want

of

of victuals, they were all content to stay in the port, till the necessities of each shippe were supplied, and nothing wanted to set out for their returne.

In this porte of Zante, the newes was fresh and currant, of two seuerall armies, and fleetes, prouided by the King of Spaine, and lying in waite to intercepte them: the one consisting of 30. strong gallies, so well appointed in all respects for the warre, that no necessarie thing wanted: and this fleete houered about the Streights of Gibraltare. The other armie had in it 20. Gallies, whereof some were of Sicilie, and some of the Iland of Malta, vnder the charge and gouernment of Iohn Andreas Dorea, a Captaine of name, seruing the King of Spaine. These two diuers and strong fleetes, waited and attended in the Seas for none, but the English shippes, and no doubt, made their accompt and sure reckoning, that not a shippe should escape their furie. And the opinion also of the Inhabitants of the Isle of Zante, was, that in respect of the number of gallies in both these armies, hauing receaued such streight commandement from the king, our ships and men being but few, and little, in comparison of them, it was a thing in humane reason impossible, that we should passe either without spoiling, if we resisted, or without composition at the least, and acknowledgement of dutie to the Spanish king.

But it was neither the report of the attendance of these armies, nor the opinions of the people, nor any thing els, that could daunt, or dismay the courages of our men, who grounding themselues vpon the goodnes of their cause, & the promise of God, to be deliuered from such as without reason, sought their destruction, caried resolute mindes, notwithstanding all impediments to aduenture thorough the seas, and to finish their nauigation, maugre the beardes of the Spanish souldiers. But least they should seeme too carelesse, and too secure of their estate, and by laying the whole and entire burden of their safetie, vpon Gods prouidence, should foolishly presume altogether of his helpe, and neglect the meanes which was put into their hands, they failed not to enter into counsell among themselues, and to deliberate aduisedly for their best defense. And in the end, with generall consent, the Marchant Royall was appointed Admirall of the Fleete, and the Tobie Viceadmirall, by whose orders the rest promised to be directed, and each shippe vowed not to breake from another, whatsoeuer extremitie should fall out, but to stand to it to the death, for the honour of their Countrey, and the frustrating of the hope of the ambitious, and proud enemie.

Thus in good order they left Zante, and the Castle of Grecia, and committed themselues againe to the seas, and proceeded in their course and voyage, in quietnes, without sight of any enmie, till they came neere to Pantalarea, an Iland so called, betwixt Sicilie, and the coast of Affrike: into sight whereof they came the 13. day of July, 1586. And the same day in the morning, about 7. of the clocke, they descried 13. sailes in number, which were of the gallies, lying in waite of purpose for them, in and about that place. As soone as the English shippes had spied them, they by and by, according to a common order, made themselues ready for a fight, laid out their Ordnance, scowred, charged, and primed them, displaied their ensignes, and left nothing vndone to arme themselues thoroughly. In the meane time, the gallies more and more approched the ships, and in their banners there appeared the armes of the Iles of Sicilia, and Malta, being all as then in the seruice and pay of the Spaniard. Immediatly, both the Admirals of the gallies, sent from each of them a frigat, to the Admiral of our English ships, which being come neere them, the Sicilian frigat first hailed them, and demanded of them whence they were: they answered that they were of England, the armes whereof appeared in their colours. Whereupon the said frigat expostulated with them, & asked, why they delaied to send or come with their captaines and pursers to Don Pedro de Leiua, their Generall, to acknowledge their dutie, & obedience to him, in the name of the Spanish king, Lord of those seas: our men replied, & said, that they owed no such dutie nor obedience to him, & therefore would acknowledge none, but commanded the frigat to depart with that answer, & not to stay longer a brabling, vpon her perill. With that away she went, & vp comes toward them the other frigat of Malta, & she in like sort hailed the Admiral, & would needes know whence they were, & where they had bene. Our Englishmen in the Admiral, not disdaining an answere, tolde them that they were of England, Marchants of London, had bene at Turkie, & were now returning home: & to be requited in this case, they also demanded of the frigat whence he, & the rest of the gallies were: the messenger answered, we are of Malta, & for mine owne part, my name is Caualero. These gallies are in seruice, & pay to the king of Spaine, vnder ỹ conduct of Don Pedro de Leiua, a noble man of Spaine, who hath bene commanded hither by the King, with this present force and armie, of purpose to intercept you. You shal therefore (quoth he) do well to repaire to him, to know his pleasure, he is a noble man of good behauiour & curteste, & meanes you no ill. The Captaine of the English Admiral, whose name was Master Edward Wilkinson now one of the 6. masters of her Maiesties royal nauie, replied, & said, we purpose not at this time

to make triall of Don Pedro his curtesie, whereof we are suspitious and doubtfull, and not without good cause: vsing withall good words to the messenger, and willing him to come aboord him, promising securitie and good vsage, that thereby he might the better know the Spanyards minde: whereupon he in deed left his frigat, and came aboord him, whom he interteined in friendly sort, and caused a cuppe of wine to be drawne for him, which he tooke and began, with his cappe in his hand, and with reuerend termes, to drinke to the health of the Queene of England, speaking very honorable of her Maiestie, and giuing good speeches of the curteous vsage, and interteinement that he himselfe had receiued in London, at the time that the Duke of Alenson, brother to the late French King was last in England: and after he had well drunke, he tooke his leaue, speaking well of the sufficiencie and goodnesse of our shippes, and especiallie of the Merchant Royall, which he confessed to haue seene before, riding in the Thames neere London. He was no sooner come to Don Pedro de Leiua, the Spanish generall, but he was sent off againe, and returned to the English Admirall, saying that the pleasure of the generall was this, that either their captaines, maisters, and pursers should come to him with speed, or els he would set vpon them, and either take them or sinke them. The replie was made by M. Wilkinson aforesaid, that not a man should come to him: and for the bragge and threat of Don Pedro, it was not that Spanish branado that should make them yeeld a iot to their hinderance, but they were as readie to make resistance, as he to offer an iniurie. Whereupon Cauallero the messenger left bragging, and began to persuade them in quiet sort, and with many words, but all his labor was to no purpose, and as his threat did nothing terrifie them, so his persuasion did nothing moue them, to doe that which he required. At the last he intreated to haue the merchant of the Admirall caried by him as a messenger to the generall, that so he might be satisfied, and assured of their mindes by one of their owne companie. But M. Wilkinson would agree to no such thing, although Richard Rowit the merchant himselfe seemed willing to be imployed in that message, and labored by reasonable persuasions to induce M. Wilkinson to grant it, as hoping to be an occasion by his presence and discreet answeres to satisfie the generall, and therby to saue the effusion of Christian bloud, if it should grow to a battell. And he seemed so much the more willing to be sent, by how much deeper the othes and protestations of this Cauallero were, that he would (as he was a true knight and a souldior) deliuer him backe againe in safetie to his companie. Albeit, M. Wilkinson, which by his long experience had receiued sufficient triall of Spanish inconstancie and periurie, wished him in no case to put his life and libertie in hazard vpon a Spanyards oth. But at last, vpon much intreatie, he yeelded to let him goe to the generall, thinking in deed that good speeches, and answeres of reason would haue contented him, whereas otherwise, refusall to doe so, might peraduenture haue prouoked the more discontentment.

Maister Rowit therefore passing to the Spanish generall, the rest of the gallies hauing espied him, thought in deed that the English were rather determined to yeeld then to fight, and therefore came flocking about ỳ frigat, euery man crying out, Que nueuas, que nueuas, Haue these English men yeelded? the frigat answered, Not so, they neither haue, nor purpose to yeeld, onely they haue sent a man of their companie to speake with our generall: and being come to the gallie wherein he was, he shewed himselfe to M. Rowit in his armor, his gard of souldiors attending vpon him in armor also, and began to speake very proudly in this sort: Thou Englishman, from whence is your fleet, why stand ye aloofe off, know ye not your dutie to the Catholike king, whose person I here represent? Where are your billes of lading, your letters, pasports, and the chiefe of your men? Thinke ye my attendance in these seas to be in vaine, or my person to no purpose? Let all these things be done out of hand as I command, vpon paine of my further displeasure & the spoile of you all? These words of the Spanish generall were not so outragiously pronounced, as they were mildly answered by maister Rowit, who, tolde him that they were all merchant men, vsing traffike in honest sort, and seeking to passe quietly, if they were not vrged further then reason: as for the king of Spaine, he thought (for his part) that there was amitie betwixt him and his soueraigne the Queene of England, so that neither he nor his officers should goe about to offer any such iniurie to English merchants, who as they were farre from giuing offence to any man, so they would be loath to take an abuse at the handes of any, or sit downe to their losse, where their ability was able to make defence. And as touching his commandement aforesaid, for the acknowledging of dutie, in such particular sort, he tolde him, that where there was no duetie owing, there none should be performed, assuring him that their whole companie, and shippes in generall, stood resolutely vpon the negatiue, and would not yeeld to any such vnreasonable demand, ioyned with such imperious and absolute maner of commanding. Why then said he, if they will neither come to yeeld, nor shew obedience to me in the name of my king, I will either sinke them or bring them

to harbor, and so tell them from me. With that the frigot came away with M. Rout, and brought him aboord the English Admirall againe, according to promise: who was no sooner entred in, but by and by defiance was sounded on both sides, the Spanyards hewed off the noses of the gallies, that nothing might hinder the leuell of the shot, and the English on the other side courageously prepared themselues to the combat, euery man according to his roome, bent to performe his office with alacritie and diligence. In the meane time a cannon was discharged from out the Admirall of the gallies, which being the onset of the fight, was presently answered by the English Admirall with a culuering: so the skirmish began, and grew hot and terrible, there was no powder nor shot spared: each English shippe matched it selfe in good order against two Spanish gallies, besides the inequallitie of the frigats on the Spanyards side: and although our men performed their parts with singular valure, according to their strength, insomuch that the enemie as amased therewith would often times pause and stay, and consult what was best to be done, yet they ceased not in the midst of their businesse to make prayer to almighty God the reuenger of all euils, and the giuer of victories, that it would please him to assist them in ỳ good quarell of theirs, in defending thẽselues against his proud a tyrant, to teach their hands to war, & their fingers to fight, that ỳ glory of the victory might redound to his name, and to the honor of true religion, which the insolent enemy sought so much to ouerthrow. Contrarily, the foolish Spanyards they cryed out according to their maner, not to God, but to our Lady (as they terme the virgin Mary) saying, O Lady helpe, O blessed Lady giue vs the victory, and the honor therof shalbe thine. Thus with blowes and prayers on both sides the fight continued furious and sharpe, and doubtfull a long time to which part the victory would decline: till at the last the Admirall of the gallies of Sicilie began to warpe from the fight, & to hold vp her side for feare of sinking, and after her went also two others in like case, whom all the rest of them inclosed, laboring by all their meanes to keepe them aboue water, being ready by the force of English shot which they had receiued, to perish in the seas: and what slaughter was done among the Spanyards themselues, the English were vncertaine, but by a probable coniecture apparant a far off, they supposed their losse was so great, that they wanted men to continue the charging of their pieces: whereupon with shame and dishonor, after fiue houres spent in the battell, they withdrew themselues: and the English contented in respect of their deepe lading rather to continue their voyage then to follow the chase, ceased from further blowes, with the losse onely of two men slaine, amongst them all, and another hurt in his arme, whom M. Wilkinson with his good words & friendly promises did so comfort, that he nothing esteemed the smart of his wound in respect of the honor of the victory, and the shamefull repulse of the enemy.

A fight of fiue houres.

Thus with ductifull thanks to the mercy of God for his gracious assistance in that danger, the English ships proceeded in their nauigation, & comming as high as Algier, a port towne vpon the coast of Barbarie they fell with it, of purpose to refresh themselues after their wearinesse, & to take in such supplie of fresh water & victuals, as they needed: they were no sooner entred into the port, but immediatly the king therof sent a messenger to the ships to know what they were, with which messenger the chiefe maister of each ship repaired to the king, and acquainted him not onely with the state of their ships, in respect of marchandize, but with the late fight which they had passed with the Spanish gallies, reporting euery particular circumstance in word as it fell out in action: whereat the said king shewed himselfe maruellous glad, interteining them in the best sort, and promising abundant reliefe of all their wants, making generall proclamation in the citie vpon paine of death, that no man of what degree or state soeuer he were, should presume either to hinder them in their affaires, or to offer them any maner of iniury in body or goods. By vertue wherof they dispatched all things in excellent good sort, with all fauor and peaceablenesse: onely such prisoners & captiues of the Spanyards as were in the citie, seeing the good vsage which they receiued, & hearing also what seruice they had performed against the foresaid gallies, grudged exceedingly against them, & sought as much as they could to practise some mischiefe against them: and one amongst the rest seeing an Englishman alone in a certeine lane of the citie, came vpon him suddenly, and with his knife stroke him in the side, yet made no such great wound, but that it was easily recouered. The English company hearing of it, acquainted the king with the fact, who immediatly sent both for the party that had receiued the wound, and the offender also, and caused an executioner in the presence of himselfe and the English, to chastise the slaue euen to death, which was performed to the end that no man should presume to commit the like part, or to do any thing in contempt of his royall cõmandement.

The English hauing receiued this good iustice at the kings hands, & all other things that they wanted, or could craue for the furnishing of their shippes, tooke their leaue of him, and of the rest of their friends, that were resident in Alger, and put out to sea, looking to meet with the second armie of the Spanish king, which waited for them about the mouth of the streight of Gibaltar,

which

which they were of neceſſitie to paſſe. But comming neere to the ſaid ſtreight, it pleaſed God to raiſe at that inſtant, a very darke and miſtie fogge ſo that one ſhippe could not diſcerne another, if it were 40 paces off: by meanes whereof, together with the notable faire Eaſterne windes that then blew moſt fitte for their courſe, they paſſed with great ſpeed though the ſtreight, and might haue paſſed with that good gale, had there beene 500 gallies to withſtand them, and the ayre neuer ſo cleere for euery ſhippe to be ſeene. But yet the Spaniſh gallies had a ſight of them when they were come within three Engliſh miles of the towne, & made after them in all poſſible haſte, and although they ſaw that they were farre out of their reach, yet in a vaine furie & fooliſh pride, they ſhot off their ordinance, and made a ſtir in the ſea as if they had beene in the midſt of them, which vanity of theirs miniſtred to our men notable matter of pleaſure and mirth, ſeeing men to fight with ſhadowes, and to take ſo great paines to ſo ſmall purpoſe.

But thus it pleaſed God to deride, and delude all the forces of that proud Spaniſh king, which he had prouided of purpoſe to diſtreſſe the Engliſh, who notwithſtanding, paſſed though both his armies, in the one, litle hurt, and in the other nothing touched, to the glory of his immortall name, the honor of our prince and country, and the iuſt commendation of euery mans ſeruice, performed in that voyage.

The voyage of M. Iohn Eldred to Tripolis in Syria by ſea, and *from thence by land and riuer to Babylon and Balſara.* 1583.

I Departed out of Londō in the ſhip called the Tyger in the companie of M. Iohn Newberie, M. Ralph Fitch, and ſixe or ſeuen other honeſt merchants vpon Shroue munday 1583, and arriued in Tripolis of Syria the firſt of May next inſuing: at our landing we went on maying vpon S. Georges Iſland, a place where Chriſtians dying aboord the ſhippes are woont to be buried. In this citie our Engliſh marchants haue a conſul, & our nation abide together in one houſe with him called Fondeghi Ingles, builded of ſtone, ſquare, in maner like a cloiſter, and euery man his ſeuerall chamber, as it is the vſe of all other Chriſtians of ſeuerall nations. This towne ſtandeth vnder a part of the mountaine of Libanus two Engliſh miles diſtant from the port: on the ſide of which port, trending in forme of an halfe moone, ſtand fiue blockehouſes or ſmal forts, wherein is ſome very good artillerie, and the forts are kept with about an hundred Ianiſſaries. Right before this towne from the ſeaward, is a banke of mouing ſand, which gathereth and increaſeth with the Weſterne windes, in ſuch ſort, that, according to an olde prophecie among them, this banke is like to ſwallow vp and ouerwhelme the towne: for euery yeere it increaſeth and eateth vp many gardens, although they vſe all pollicie to diminiſh the ſame, and to make it firme ground. The citie is about the bigneſſe of Briſtow, and walled about, though the walles be of no great force. The chiefe ſtrength of the place is in a citadell, which ſtandeth on the South ſide within the walles, and ouerlooketh the whole towne, and is ſtrongly kept with 200 Ianiſſaries and good artillerie. A riuer paſſeth though the middeſt of the citie, wherewith they water their gardens and mulberie trees, on which there grow abundance of ſilke wormes, wherewith they make great quantity of very white ſilke, which is the chiefeſt naturall commoditie to be found in and about this place. This rode is more frequented with Chriſtian marchants, to wit, Venetians, Genouois, Florentines, Marſillians, Sicilians, Raguſes, and lately with Engliſhmen, then any other port of the Turks dominions. From Tripolis I departed the 14 of May with a carauan, paſſing three dayes ouer the ridge of mount Libanus, at the end whereof we arriued in a citie called Hammah, which ſtandeth on a goodly plaine replenished with corne & cotton wooll. On theſe mountaines which we paſſed, grow great quantity of gall trees, which are ſomewhat like out okes, but leſſer & more crooked: on the beſt tree a man ſhall not finde aboue a pound of galles. This towne of Hammah is fallen, and falleth more & more to decay, and at this day there is ſcarce one halfe of the wall ſtanding, which hath beene very ſtrong and faire: but becauſe it coſt many mens liues to win it, the Turke will not haue it repayred, and hath written in the Arabian tongue ouer the caſtle gate, which ſtandeth in the midſt of the towne, theſe words: Curſed be the father & the ſonne that ſhall lay their hands to the repairing heerof. Refreſhing our ſelues one day here, we paſſed forward with camels three dayes more vntill we came to Alleppo, where we arriued the 21 of May. This is the greateſt place of traffike for a dry towne that is in all thoſe parts: for hither reſort Iewes, Tartarians, Perſians, Armenians, Egyptians, Indians, & many ſorts of Chriſtians, & inioy freedome of their conſciences, & bring thither many kindes of rich merchandizes. In the midſt of this towne alſo ſtandeth a goodly caſtle raiſed on hie with a garriſon of 4 or 5 hundred Ianiſſaries. Within foure

The deſcription of Tripolis in Syria.

Store of white ſilke.

The citie of Hammah. Cotten wooll. Gall trees.

Alleppo.

miles round about are goodly gardens and vineyardes and trees, which beare goodly fruit neere vnto the riuers side, which is but small, the walles are about three English miles in compasse, but the suburbs are almost as much more. The towne is greatly peopled. We departed from thence

Birrah. with our camels the last of May with M. John Newberie and his companie, and came to Birrah in three dayes, being a small towne situated vpon the riuer Euphrates, where it beginneth first to take his name, being heere gathered into one chanell, whereas before it commeth downe in manifolde branches, and is therefore called by the people of the countrey by a name which signifieth a thousand heads. Heere is plentie of victualles whereof we all furnished our selues for our long iourney downe the aforesaid riuer. And according to the maner of those that trauell downe by water, we prepared a small barke for the conueyance of our selues and of our goods. These boates

Euphrates shallow. are flatte bottomed, because the riuer is shallow in many places: and when men trauell in the moneth of Julie, August, and September, the water being then at the lowest, they are constrayned to carie with them a spare boate or two to lighten their owne boates if they chance to fall on the

Eight & twentie dayes iourney by riuer. shoaldes. We were eight and twentie dayes vpon the water betweene Birrah and Felugia, where we disembarked our selues and our goodes. Euery night after the Sunne setteth, we tie our barke to a stake, goe on land to gather stickes, and set on our pot with rice or bruised wheat, and hauing supped, the merchants lie aboord the barke, and the mariners vpon the shores side as neere as

Arabians vpon the riuer of Euphrates. they can vnto the same. In many places vpon the riuers side we meete with troopes of Arabians, of whom we bought milke, butter, egges, and lambes, and gaue them in barter, (for they care not for money) glasses, combes, coral, amber, to hang about their armes and neckes, and for churned milke we gaue them bread and pomgranat peeles, wherewith they vse to tanne their goats skinnes which they churne withall. Their haire, apparell, and colour are altogether like to those vagabond

The Arabian women weare golde rings in their nostrels. Egyptians, which heretofore haue gone about in England. Their women all without exception, weare a great round ring in one of their nostrels, of golde, siluer, or yron, according to their ability, and about their armes & smalles of their legs they haue hoopes of golde, siluer or yron. All of them aswell women and children, as men, are very great swimmers, and often times swimming they brought vs milke to our barke in vessels vpon their heads. These people are very theeuish, which I prooued to my cost: for they stole a casket of mine, with thinges of good value in the same, from vnder my mans head as he was asleepe: and therefore trauellers keepe good watch as they passe

Euphrates described. downe the riuer. Euphrates at Birrah is about the breadth of the Thames at Lambeth, and in some places narrower, in some broader: it runneth very swiftly, almost as fast as the riuer of Trent: it hath diuers sorts of fish in it, but all are scaled, some as bigge as salmons, like barbils.

Felugia. We landed at Felugia the eight and twentith of June, where we made our abode seuen dayes, for lacke of camels to carie our goods to Babylon: the heate at that time of the yeere is such in those parts, that men are loath to let out their camels to trauell. This Felugia is a village of some hundred houses, and a place appointed for discharging of such goods as come downe the riuer: the inhabitants are Arrabians. Not finding camels here, we were constrained to vnlade our goods, and hired an hundred asses to carie our English merchandizes onely to New Babylon, ouer a short desert, in crossing whereof we spent eighteene houres trauelling by night, and part of the morning, to auoid the great heat.

The ruines of olde Babylon. In this place which we crossed ouer, stood the olde mightie citie of Babylon, many olde ruines whereof are easilie to be seene by day light, which I John Eldred haue often beheld, at my good leasure, hauing made three voyages betweene the New citie of Babylon and Aleppo ouer this desert. Heere also are yet standing the ruines of the olde tower of Babell, which being vpon a plaine ground seemeth a farre off very great, but the neerer you come to it, the lesser and lesser it appeereth: sundry times I haue gone thither to see it, and found the remnants yet standing aboue a quarter of a mile in compasse, and almost as high as the stone worke of Paules steeple in London, but it sheweth much bigger. The brickes remaining in this most auncient monument be halfe a yard thicke, and three quarters of a yard long, being dried in the Sunne onely, and betweene euery course of brickes there lieth a course of mattes made of canes, which remaine sounde and not perished, as

New Babylō. though they had beene layed within one yeere. The citie of New Babylon ioyneth vpon the foresaid small desert where the Olde citie was, and the riuer of Tygris runneth close vnder the

The riuer Tygris. wall, and they may if they will open a sluce, and let the water of the same runne round about the towne. It is about two English miles in compasse, and the inhabitants generally speake three languages, to wit, the Persian, Arabian and Turkish tongues: the people are of the Spaniards complexion: and the women generallie weare in one of the gristles of their noses a ring like a wedding ring, but somewhat greater, with a pearle and a Turkish stone set therein: and this they doe be they neuer so poore.

This

This is a place of very great traffique, and a very great throughfare from the East Indies to Aleppo. The towne is very well furnished with victuals which come downe the riuer of Tygris from Mosul which was called Ninive in olde time. They bring these victuals and diuers sortes of merchandises vpon rafts borne vpon goates skins blowen vp ful of wind in maner of bladders. And when they haue discharged their goods, they sell the rafts for fire, and let the wind out of their goates skins, and cary them home againe vpon their asses by land, to make other voyages downe the riuer. The building here is most of bricke dried in the sunne, and very litle or no stone is to bee found: their houses are all flat roofed and lowe. They haue no raine for eight moneths together, nor almost any cloudes in the skie, night nor day. Their Winter is in November, December, Januarie and Februarie, which is as warme as our Sommer in England in a maner. This I know by good experience, because my abode at seuerall times in this citie of Babylon, hath bene at the lest the space of two yeeres. As we come to the citie, we passe ouer the riuer of Tygris on a great bridge made with boates chained together with two mightie chaines of iron. From thence wee departed in flat bottomd barkes more strong and greater then those of Euphrates, and were eight and twentie dayes also in passing downe this riuer to Balsara, but we might haue done it in eighteene or lesse, if the water had bene higher. Upon the waters side by the way stand diuers townes resembling much the names of the old prophets: the first towne they call Ozeah, and another Zecchiah. Before we come to Balsara by one dayes iourney, the two riuers of Tygris and Euphrates meete, and there standeth a Castle called Curna kept by the Turkes, where all merchants pay a small custome. Here the two riuers ioined together, begin to be eight or nine miles broad: here also it beginneth to ebbe and flow, and the water ouerflowing maketh the country all about very fertile of corne, rice, pulse, and dates. The towne of Balsara is a mile and an halfe in circuit: all the buildings, castle and wals, are made of bricke dried in the sunne. The Turke hath here fiue hundred Janissaries, besides other souldiours continually in garison and pay, but his chiefe strength is of gallies which are about fiue and twentie or thirtie very faire and furnished with goodly ordinance. To this port of Balsara come monethly diuers ships from Ormuz, laden with all sortes of Indian merchandise, as spices, drugs, Indico, and Calecut cloth. These ships are vsually from fortie to three score tunnes, hauing their plankes sowed together with corde made of the barke of Date trees, and in stead of Ocam they vse the shiuerings of the barke of the said trees, and of the same they also make their tackling. They haue no kind of iron worke belonging to these vessels, saue onely their ankers. From this place fiue dayes sayling downe the Gulfe, they goe to a place called Baharem in the midway to Ormuz. There they fish for pearles foure moneths in the yeere, to wit, in June, July, August, and September. My abode in Balsara was iust fiue moneths, during which time I receiued diuers letters from master Iohn Newberie from Ormuz, who as hee passed that way with her maiesties letters to Yeladin el Kubar, that is, Yeladin the great, king of Cambaia, and vnto the mightie Emperor of China, was traiterously there arrested, and all his company by the Portingals, and afterward sent prisoner to Goa: where after a long and cruell imprisonment, he and his companions were deliuered vpon suerties, not to depart the towne without leaue, at the sute of one father Thomas Steuens, an English religious man which they found there, but what became afterward of three of them, is not knowen vnto this day. The fourth which was a painter called Iohn Stozie, became religious in the Colledge of S. Paul in Goa, as we vnderstood by their letters. I and my companion William Shales hauing dispatched our businesse at Balsara imbarked our selues in company of seuentie barkes all laden with merchandise, hauing euery barke fourteene men to draw them, like our Westerne bargemen on ye Thames, and we were fortie foure dayes comming vp against the streame to Babylon, where arriuing and paying our custome, we with all other sortes of merchants bought vs camels, hired vs men to lade and driue them, furnished our selues with rice, butter, bisket, honie made of Dates, Onions and Dates: and euery merchaunt bought a proportion of liue muttons, and hired certaine shepheards to driue them with vs: we also bought vs tentes to lie in, and to put our goods vnder, & in this our Carauan were foure thousand Camels laden with spices and other rich merchandises. These Camels will liue very well two or three dayes without water: their feeding is on Thistles, Woorme-wood, Magdalene and other strong weedes which they find vpon the way. The gouerment and deriding of all quarels and duties to be paied, the whole Carauan committeth to one speciall rich merchant of the company, of whose honestie they conceiue best. In passing from Babylon to Aleppo, we spent fortie dayes, trauailing twentie and foure and twentie miles a day, resting our selues commonly from two of the clocke in the afternoone vntill three in the morning, at which time we begin to take our iourney. Eight dayes iourney from Babylon toward Aleppo, neere vnto a towne called Hite, as we crosse the riuer Euphrates by boates, about 3. miles from the towne there is

Rafts borne vpon bladders of goates skins.

Seldome raine.

Eight and twentie dayes iourney more by riuer, from Babylon to Balsara.

Curna castle.

Balsara.

Ships made without iron in the Persian Gulfe.

Yeladin el Kubar king of Cambaia.

He returneth from Balsara to Aleppo.

Their prouision of victuals.

A Carauan of foure thousand Camels.

Hite.

Springs of tarre.

is a valley wherein are many springs throwing out aboundantly at great mouthes, a kind of black substance like vnto tarre, which serueth all the countrey to make stanch their barkes and boates: euery one of these springs make a noise like vnto a Smithes forge in the blowing and puffing out of this matter, which neuer ceaseth night nor day, and the noise may be heard a mile off continually. This vale swalloweth vp all heauie things that come vpon it. The people of the countrey call it in their language Babil gehenham, that is to say, Hell doore. As we passed through these desarts, we saw certaine wild beasts, as wild asses all white, Roebucks, wolues, leopards, foxes, and many hares, whereof we chased and killed many. Aborise, the king of the wandring Arabians in these deserts, hath a dutie of fortie shillings sterling, vpon euery Camels lode, which he sendeth his officers to receiue of the Caruans, and in consideration hereof, he taketh vpon him to conduct the said Caruans if they need his helpe, and to defend them against certaine prowling theeues. I and my companion William Shales came to Aleppo with the Caruan the eleuenth of June, 1584. where

William Barret. Consul in Aleppo. Anthonie Bate.

we were ioyfully receiued twentie miles distant from the towne by master William Barret our Consul, accompanied with his people and Ianissaries, who fell sicke immediatly and departed this life within eight dayes after, and elected before his death. M. Anthonie Bate Consul of our English nation in his place, who laudably supplied the said roume three yeeres. In which meane time I made two voiages more vnto Babylon, and returned by the way aforesaid, ouer the deserts of Arabia. And afterwards as one desirous to see other partes of the countrey, I went from Aleppo to Antioch, which is distant thence 60. English miles, and from thence went downe to Tripolis, where going aboord a small vessel, I arriued at Joppe, and trauailed to Rama, Lycia, Gaza, Jerusalem, Bethlem, to the riuer of Jordan, and the sea or lake of Sodome, and returned backe to Joppe, and from thence by sea to Tripolis, of which places because many others haue published large discourses, I surcease to write. Within few dayes after imbarking my selfe at Tripolis the 22. of December, I arriued (God be thanked) in safetie here in the riuer of Thames with diuers English merchants, the 26. of March, 1588. in the Hercules of London, which was the richest ship of English merchants goods that euer was knowen to come into this realme.

The Letters patents or priuiledges granted by her Maiestie to certaine Noble men and merchants of London, for a trade to Barbarie, in the yeere, 1585.

ELizabeth by the grace of God, Queene of England, France and Ireland, defender of the faith, &c. to the Treasurer & Barons of our Eschequer, and to all Maiors, shirifs, constables, customers, collectors of our customes and subsidies, controllers, searchers, and keepers of our hauens and creekes, portes and passages, within this our realme of England and the dominions of the same, and to all our officers, ministers and subiects, and to all other whosoeuer to whom it shall or may appertaine, and to euery of them greeting. Whereas it is made euidently and apparantly knowen vnto vs, that of late yeeres our right trustie and right welbeloued counsellors, Ambrose Erle of Warwike, and Robert Erle of Leicester, and also our louing and naturall subiects, Thomas Starkie of our citie of London Alderman, Ierard Gore the elder, and all his sonnes, Thomas Gore the elder, Arthur Atie gentleman, Alexander Auenon, Richard Stapers, William Iennings, Arthur Dawbeney, William Sherington, Thomas Bramlie, Anthonie Garrard, Robert How, Henry Colthirst, Edward Holmden, Iohn Swinnerton, Robert Walkaden, Simon Lawrence, Nicholas Stile, Oliuer Stile, William Bond, Henry Farrington, Iohn Tedcastle, Walter Williams, William Brune, Iohn Suzan, Iohn Newton, Thomas Owen, Roger Afield, Robert Washburne, Reinold Guy, Thomas Hitchcocke, George Lydiat, Iohn Cartwright, Henrie Paiton, Iohn Boldroe, Robert Bowyer, Anthonie Dassell, Augustine Lane, Robert Lion and Thomas Dodde, all of London, merchaunts now trading into the countrey of Barbarie, in the partes of Affrica, vnder the gouernment of Muly Hammet Sheriffe, Emperor of Moroccus, and king of Fesse and Sus, haue sustained great and grieuous losses, and are like to sustaine greater if it should not be preuented: In tender consideration whereof, and for that diuers merchandise of the same countries are very necessarie and conuenient for the vse and defence of this our realme of England, and for diuers other causes vs specially mouing, minding the reliefe and benefite of our said subiects, and the quiet traffique and good gouernment to be had, and vsed among them in their said trade, of our speciall grace, certaine knowledge, and meere motion haue giuen and granted, and by these presents for vs, our heires and successors, doe giue and graunt vnto the said Erles of Warwike and Leicester, Thomas Starkie, Ierard Gore the elder, Arthur Atie gentleman, Alexander

Auenon,

Auenon, Richard Stapers, William Iennings, Arthur Dawbenie, William Sherington, Thomas Bramlie, Anthonie Garrard, Robert Howe, Henry Colthirſt, Edward Holmden, Iohn Swinnerton, Robert Walkaden, Simon Lawrence, Nicholas Stile, Oliuer Stile, William Bond, Henry Farington, Iohn Tedcaſtle, Walter Williams, William Brune, Iohn Suzan, Iohn Newton, Thomas Owen, Roger Afild, Robert Waſhborne, Rainold Guie, Thomas Hitchcocke, George Lidiate, Iohn Cartwright, Henrie Payton, Iohn Baldroe, Robert Bowyer, Anthonie Daſſel, Auguſtine Lane, Robert Lion & Thomas Dodde, that they and euery of them by themſelues, or by their factors or ſeruants, & none others, ſhall and may, for, and during the ſpace of twelue yeeres, haue and enioy the whole freedome and libertie in the ſayd traffique or trade, vnto or from the ſayd countrey of Barbarie, or to or from any part thereof, for the buing and ſelling of all maner of wares and merchandizes whatſoeuer, that now or accuſtomably heretofore haue bene brought or tranſported, frō, or to the ſaid countrey of Barbarie, or from or to any of the cities, townes, places, portes, roads, hauens, harbors or creekes of the ſaid countrey of Barbarie, any law, ſtatute, graunt, matter, cuſtomes or priuiledges, to the contrary in any wiſe notwithſtanding.

And for the better eſtabliſhing, ordering and gouerning of the ſayd Erles of Warwike and Leiceſter, Thomas Starkie, &c. aboueſayd, their factors, ſeruaunts and aſſignes in the trade aforeſaid, we for vs our heires and ſucceſſors, doe by theſe preſents giue and graunt full licence to the ſayd Thomas Starkie, Ierard Gore the elder, and the reſt aforeſayd, and to euery of them from time to time, during the ſaid terme of twelue yeeres, at their pleaſures to aſſemble, and meete together in any place or places conuenient within our citie of London, or els where, to conſult of, and for the ſaid trade, and with the conſent of the ſaid Erle of Leiceſter, to make and eſtabliſh good and neceſſarie orders and ordinances, for, and touching the ſame, and all ſuch orders and ordinances ſo made, to put in vre and execute, and them or any of them with the conſent of the ſayd Erle of Leiceſter, to alter, change and make voyd, and if need be, to make new, as at any time during the ſaid terme, they or the moſt part of them then liuing and trading, ſhall find conuenient.

Prouided alwayes, that the ordinaunces or any of them bee not contrary or repugnaunt to the lawes, ſtatutes or cuſtomes of this our Realme of England. And to the intent that they onely to whom the ſayd libertie of traffique is graunted by theſe our Letters patents, and none other our ſubiects whatſoeuer, without their ſpeciall conſent and licence before had, ſhould during the ſaid terme haue trade or traffique for any maner of merchandizes, to, or from the ſayd countrey of Barbarie, or to, or from any Citie, Towne, place, porte, harbour or creeke within the ſayd countrey of Barbarie, to, or out of our ſayd Realmes and dominions, wee doe by theſe preſents ſtraightly charge, commaund, and prohibite all and euery our Subiects whatſoeuer, other then onely the ſayde Erles of Warwike and Leiceſter, Thomas Starkie and the reſt aboueſayd, and euery of them by themſelues or by their factors or ſeruaunts during the ſayde terme, to trade or traffique for, or with any merchandize, to, or from the ſaide countrey of Barbarie, or to, or from any the dominions of the ſame, as they tender our fauour, and will auoyd our high diſpleaſure, and vpon paine of impriſonment of his and their bodies, at our will and pleaſure, and of forfeiting all the merchandiſes, or the full value thereof, wherewith they or any of them during the ſayd terme, ſhall trade or traffique to or from the ſayd countrey of Barbarie, or to, or from the dominions of the ſame, contrary to this our priuiledge and prohibition, vnleſſe it be by and with the expreſſe licence, conſent, and agreement of the ſayd Erles of Warwike and Leiceſter, Thomas Starkie, Ierard Gore, the elder, and all his ſonnes, Thomas Gore the elder, Arthur Atie gentleman, Alexander Auenon, Richard Stapers, William Iennings, Arthur Dawbenie, William Sherington, Thomas Bramlie, Anthonie Garrard, Robert Howe, Henry Colthirſt, Edward Holmden, Iohn Swinnerton, Robert Walkaden, Simon Laurence, Nicholas Stile, Oliuer Stile, William Bond, Henrie Farington, Iohn Tedcaſtle, Walter Williams, William Brune, Iohn Suzan, Iohn Newton, Thomas Owen, Roger Afild, Robert Waſhburne, Rainold Guy, Thomas Hitchcocke, George Lidiate, &c. or by, and with the expreſſe licence and conſent of the more part of them then liuing and trading, firſt had and obtained, ſo alwayes, that the ſayde Erle of Leiceſter bee one, if he be liuing.

And we further for vs our heires and ſucceſſors of our ſpeciall grace, meere motion and certaine knowledge, doe graunt to the ſayde Erles of Warwike and Leiceſter, Thomas Starkie, and the reſt aboueſayd, and to euery of them, that nothing ſhall be done, to be of force or validitie touching the ſayd trade or traffique, or the exerciſe thereof, without or againſt the conſent of the ſayd Erles, Thomas Starkie (and the others before named) during the time of theſe our Letters patents for 12. yeeres as afore ſayd.

And for that the ſayd Erles, Thomas Starkie, &c. and euery of them aforeſayd ſhould not bee

pre-

preuented or interrupted in this their sayd trade, we doe by these presents for vs, our heyres and successours, straightly prohibite and forbid all maner of person or persons, as well strangers of what nation or countrey soeuer, as our owne Subiects, other then onely the sayd Erles, Thomas Starkie, &c. and euery of them as aforesayd, that they nor any of them from henceforth during the sayd terme of 12. yeeres, doe or shall bring, or cause to be brought into this our Realme of England, or to any the dominions thereof, any maner of merchandizes whatsoeuer growing, or being made within the sayd countrey of Barbarie, or within any the dominions thereof, vnlesse it bee by and with the licence, consent and agreement of the sayd Erles, Thomas Starkie, &c. or with the consent and licence of the more part of them then liuing, first had and obtained, so alwayes the said Erle of Leicester (if he be liuing) be one, vnder the paine that euery one that shall offend or doe against this our present prohibition here last aboue mentioned in these presents, shall forfeite and lose all, and singular the said merchandizes to be landed in any our realmes and dominions, contrary to the tenor and true meaning of this our prohibition in that behalfe prouided: the one moitie of all and euery which said forfeitures whatsoeuer mentioned or specified in these our present Letters patents, shall be to vs our heires and successors: And the other moitie of all and euery the sayd forfaitures, we doe by these presents of our certaine knowledge and meere motion, clerely and wholy for vs, our heires and successours, giue and grant vnto the sayd Erles, Thomas Starkie, &c. And these our Letters patents vpon the only sight thereof, without any further warrant shall bee sufficient authoritie to our Treasurer of England for the time being, to our Barons of the Exchequer, and to all other our officers that shall haue to deale in this behalfe, to make full allowance vnto the sayd Erles, Thomas Starkie, &c. their deputies or assignes of the one moitie of all and singular the goods, merchandizes and things whatsoeuer mentioned in these our present Letters patents, to be forfaited at any time or times during the sayd terme of twelue yeeres: which sayd allowance we doe straightly charge and commaund from time to time to bee made to the sayd Erles, Thomas Starkey, &c. and to euery of them accordingly, without any maner of delay or denniall of any of our officers whatsoeuer, as they tender our fauour and the furtherance of our good pleasure. And we doe straightly charge and commaund, and by these presents prohibite all and singular, Customers and Collectors of our customes & subsidies, and comptrollers of the same, of, and within our Citie and porte of London, and all other portes, creekes, & places within this our Realme of England, and euery of them, that they ne any of them take or perceiue, or cause, or suffer to be taken, receiued or perceiued for vs & in our name, or to our vse, or to the vses of our heires or successors of any person or persons, any summe or summes of money, or other things whatsoeuer during the sayd terme of 12. yeeres, for, and in the name & liew or place of any custome, subsidie and other thing or duties to vs, our heires or successors due or to be due for the customs & subsidies of any merchandizes whatsoeuer growing, being made or comming out of the said country of Barbarie, or out of the dominions thereof, nor make, cause, nor suffer to be made any entrie into our or their bookes of customs and subsidies, nor make any agreement for the subsidies and customs, of, and for any the said merchants, liuing onely with, and in the name of the said Erles, Thomas Starkie, &c. or the most part of them, as they and euery of them wil answer at their vttermost perils to the contrary. And for the better and more sure obseruation of this our graunt, we wil, and graunt for vs our heires & successors by these presents, that the Treasurer & barons of our Exchequer for the time being, by force of this our graunt or enrolment therof in the said court, at all and euery time and times during the said terme of 12. yeeres, at & vpon request made vnto them by the said Erles, Thomas Starkie, &c. or by the attorneis, factors, deputies or assignes of them, or the most part of them then liuing and trading, shal and may make and direct vnder the seale of the said Exchequer, one or moe sufficient writ or writs, close or patents, vnto euery or any of our said customers, collectors or controllers of our heires and successors in all and euery, or to any port or portes, creeke, hauen, or other places within this our realme of England, as the said Erles, Thomas Starkie, &c. or any the attorneis, factors, deputies or assignes of them or the most part of them then liuing & trading, shal at any time require, commanding and straightly charging them and euery of them, that they nor any of them at any time or times during the said terme of 12. yeeres, make any entrie of any wares or merchandizes whatsoeuer growing, being made or comming out or frō the said country of Barbarie or the dominions thereof, nor receiue or take any custome, subsidie or other entrie, or make any agreement for the same, other then with or in the name of the said Erles, Thomas Starkie, &c. the factor or factors, deputies or assignes of them or the most part of them then liuing and trading, according to this our graunt, and the true meaning thereof, & according to our said will and pleasure before in these presents declared. In witnes whereof we haue caused these our letters to be made patents. Witnesse our selfe at Westminster the fift day of July in the 27. yeere of our reigne.

The

The Ambaſſage of M. Henrie Roberts, one of the ſworne Eſquires of her Maieſties perſon, from her highneſſe to Mully Hamet Emperour of Marocco, and king of Fes, and Sus, in the yere 1585: who remained there as Liger for the ſpace of 3. yeere. Written briefly by himſelfe.

VPon an incorporation graunted to the companie of Barbarie Marchants reſident in London, I Henrie Roberts one of her Maieſties ſworne Eſquires of her perſon, was appointed her highneſſe meſſenger, and Agent vnto the aforeſaid Mully Hamet Emperour of Marocco, king of Fes and Sus. And after I had receiued my Commiſſion, inſtructions, and her Maieſties letters, I departed from London the 14. of Auguſt in the yeere 1585. in a tall ſhippe called the Aſcenſion, in companie of the Minion and Hopewel, and we all arriued in ſafetie at Aſafi a port of Barbarie, the 14. of September next following. The Alcaide of the towne (being the kings officer there, and as it were Maior of the place) receiued mee with all humanitie and honour, according to the cuſtome of the countrey, lodging me in the chiefeſt houſe of the towne, from whence I diſpatched a meſſenger (which in their language they call a Trottero) to aduertiſe the Emperour of my arriuall: who immediatly gaue order, and ſent certaine ſouldiers for my guard and conduct, and horſes for my ſelfe, and mules for mine owne and my companies carriages. Thus being accompanied with M. Richard Euans, Edward Saltcot, and other Engliſh marchants reſident there in the countrey, with my traine of Moores and cariages, I came at length to the riuer of Anſift, which is within 4. miles of Marocco: and there by the water ſide I pitched my tents vnder the Oliue trees: where I mette with all the Engliſh marchants by themſelues, and the French & Flemiſh, and diuers other Chriſtians, which attended my comming. And after we had dined, and ſpent out the heat of the day, about 4. of the clocke in the afternoone wee all ſet forwarde toward the citie of Marocco, where wee arriued the ſaid day, being the 14. of September, and I was lodged by the Emperours appointment in a faire houſe in the Iudaria or Iurie, which is the place where the Iewes haue their abode, and is the faireſt place, and quieteſt lodging in all the citie.

After I had repoſed my ſelfe three dayes, I had acceſſe to the kings preſence, deliuered my meſſage and her Maieſties letters, and was receiued with all humanitie, and had fauourable audience from time to time for three yeeres: during which ſpace I abode there in his Court, as her Maieſties Agent and Ligier: and whenſoeuer I had occaſion of buſines, I was admitted either to his Maieſtie himſelfe, or to his viceRoy, whoſe name was Alcayde Breme Saphiana, a very wiſe and diſcreete perſon, & the chiefeſt about his Maieſtie. The particulers of my ſeruice for diuers good and reaſonable cauſes, I forbeare here to put downe in writing.

After leaue obteined, and an honourable reward beſtowed by the Emperour vpon me, I departed from his Court at Marocco the 18. of Auguſt 1588. towarde a garden of his, which is called Shoresbenares, where hee promiſed mee I ſhould ſtay but one day for his letters: howbeit, vpon ſome occaſion I was ſtayed vntill the 14. of September at the kings charges, with 40. or 50. ſhotte attending vpon me for my guard and ſafetie.

From thence at length I was conducted with all things neceſſarie to the port of Santa Cruz, being ſixe dayes iourney from Marocco, and the place where our ſhippes doe commonly take in their lading, where I arriued the 21. of the ſame moneth. In this port I ſtayed 43. dayes, and at length the ſecond of Nouember I embarqued my ſelfe, and one Marshok Reiz a Captaine and a Gentleman, which the Emperour ſent with mee vpon an Embaſſage to her Maieſtie: and after much torment and foule weather at ſea, on New yeeres day I came on lande at S. Iues in Cornewall, from whence paſſing by lande both together vp towards London, we were met without the citie with the chiefeſt marchants of the Barbarie companie, well mounted all on horſe backe, to the number of 40. or 50. horſe, and ſo the Embaſſadour and my ſelfe being both in Coche, entred the Citie by torchlight, on Sunday at night the 12. of Ianuarie 1589.

¶ Eſte es vn traſlado bien y fielmente ſacado da vna carta real del Rey Muley Hamet de Fes y Emperador de Marruecos, cuyo tenor es eſte, que Segue.

ON el nombre de Dios piadoſo y miſericordioſo, &c. El ſieruo de Dios ſoberano el conquiſtador por ſu cauſa, el ſucceſſor enſalçado por Dios Emperador de los Moros, hijo del Emperador de los Moros, Iariffe haceni, el que perpetue ſu honra y enſalçe ſu eſtado. Se pone eſte nueſtro real mandado en manos de los criados de nueſtras altas puertas los mercaderes Ingleſes; para que por el ſepan todos los que la preſente vieren,

como nuestro alto Conseio les ampara con el fauor de Dios de todo aquello, que les empeciare y dannare en qualquiera manera, que fueren offendidos, y en qualquiera viage, que fueren, ninguno les captiuara en estos nuestros reynos, y puertos, y lugares, que a nos pertenescen: y que les cubre el amparo de nuestro poder de qualquiera fatiga; y ninguno los impida con mano de enemistad, ni se dara causa, de que se agrauien en qualquiera manera con el fauor de Dios y de su amparo. Y mandamos a los Alcaydes de los nuestros puertos y fortalezas, y a los que en estos nuestros reynos tienen cargo, y a toda la gente comun, que no les alleguen en ninguna manera, con orden, de que sean offendidos en ninguna manera; esto sera necessariamente: Que es escrita en los medios dias de Rabel segundo anno de nueue cientos y nouenta y seys.

Concorda el dia d'esta carta con veynte dias de Março del anno de mil y quiniento y ochenta y siete, lo qual yo Abdel Ratiman el Catan interprete per su Magestad saque, y romançe de verbo ad verbum, como en el se contiene, y en Fee dello firmo de my nombre fecho vt supra. Abdel Rahman el Catan.

This is a copie well and truely translated of an edict of Mully Hamet king of Fez and Emperour of Maruecos, whose tenor is as followeth, to wit, That no Englishmen should bee molested or made slaues in any part of his Dominions, obtained by the aforesaid M. Henrie Roberts.

The same in English.

IN the name of the pitiful & the merciful God, &c. The seruant of the supreame Emperour in his cõquero in his cause, the successor aduanced by God to be Emperor of the Moores, the sonne of the Emperor of the Moores, the Iariffe, the Haçeny, whose honor God long increase & aduance his estate. This our princely commandement is deliuered into the hands of the English marchants, which remaine in the protection of our stately palaces: to the end that al men which shal see this present writing, may vnderstand that our princely counsaile will defend them by the fauor of God, from any thing that may impeach or hurt them in what sort soeuer they shalbe wronged: and that, which way soeuer they shal trauaile, no man shal take them captiues in these our kingdomes, ports, & places which belong vnto vs, which also may protect and defend them by our authoritie from any molestatiõ whatsoeuer: and that no man shal hinder them by laying violent hand vpõ them, & shall not giue occasion that they may be grieued in any sort by the fauor and assistance of God. And we charge & command our officers of our hauens & fortresses, and all such as beare any authoritie in these our dominions, and likewise al the common people, that in no wise they doe molest them, in such sort that they be no way offended or wronged. And this our commandement shall remaine inuiolable, being registred in the middest of the moneth of Rabel in the yeere of nine hundreth ninetie and sixe.

The date of this letter agreeth with the 20. of March 1587. which I Abdel Rahman el Catan interpretour for his Maiestie, haue translated and turned out of the Arabian into spanish word for word as is conteined therein: and in witnes thereof haue subscribed my name as aforesaid.

Abdel Rahman el Catan.

En nombre de Dios el piadoso piadador.

Oracion de Dios sobre nuestro Sennor, y Propheta Mahumet, y los allegados à el.

A letter of Mully Hamet to the Earle of Leicester.

EL sieruo de Dios, y muy guerrero, y ensalsado por la graçia de Dios. Myra Momamyn, hijo de Myra Momamyn, nieto de Mera Momamyn, el Iarif, el Hazeny, que Dios sustenga sus annos, y enhalse su mãdados, para el Señor muy affamado y muy illustre, muy estimado el Conde de Leycester, despues de dar las loores deuidas à Dios, y las oraçiones, y saludes deuidas à le Propheta Mahumet. Seruirà esta por os hazer saber que lligò a qui à nuestra real Corte vuestra carta, y entendimos lo que en ella se contiene. Y vuestro Ambaxador, que aqui està en nuestra corte me dio a entender la causa de la tardança de los rebenes hasta agora: el qual descuento reçebimos, y nos damos por satisfechos. Y quanto à lo que à nos escriueys por causa de Iuan Herman, y lo mesmo que nos ha dicho el Ambaxador sobre el, antes que llegasse vuestra carta, por la quexa del ambaxador, que se auia querado del, ya auiamos mandado prender lo, y assi queda aorà preso, y quedera, hasta que se le hagola justicia que mas se le ha de hazer. Y con tanto nuestro Señor os tenga en su guardia. Hecha en nuestra corte en Marruecos, que Dios sostenga, el 28. dias del mes de Remodan anno 996.

In the name of the mercifull and pitifull God.

The blessing of god light vpõ our lord & prophet Mahumet, & those that are obedient vnto him.

THe seruant of God both mightie in warre & mightily exalted by the grace of God Myra Momahyn, the sonne of Myra momanyn, ỹ Iariff, ỹ Hazeni, whose kingdoms God maintein & aduance

aduance his authoritie: Unto the right famous, right noble, and right highly eſteemed Earle of Leiceſter, after due praiſes giuen vnto God, & due bleſſings & ſalutations rendred vnto ỳ prophet Mahumet. Theſe are to giue you to vnderſtand, ỳ your letters arriued here in our royal Court, and we wel perceiue the cõtents therof. And your Embaſſador which remaineth here in our court told me the cauſe of the ſlownes of the gages or pledges vntil this time: which reckoning we accept of, & hold our ſelues as ſatiſfied. And as touching the matter whereof you write vnto vs concerning Iohn Herman, & the ſelfe ſame complaint which your Embaſſador hath made of him, before the cõming of your letter, we had already cõmanded him to be taken vpon ỳ complaint which your Embaſſador had made of him, whereupon he ſtil remaineth in hold, & ſhall ſo continue vntill further iuſtice be done vpon him according to his deſert. And ſo our Lorde keepe you in his ſafegarde. Written at our royal court in Maruecos, which God maintaine, the 20. day of the moneth Remodan, Anno ‖ 996. ‖ Which is with vs 1587.

The Queenes Maieſties letters to the Emperour of Marocco.

MVy alto, y muy poderoſo Señor,

Auiendo entendido de parte de nueſtro Agente la mucha aſicion, y volontad, que nos teneys, y quanta honra, y fauor le hazeys por amor nueſtro, para dar nos tanto mayor teſtimonio de vueſtra amiſtad, hemos recebido de lo vno, y de lo otro muy grande contento, y ſatisfacion: y aſſi no podemos dexar de agradeſceroslo, como mereceys. Vueſtras cartas hemos tambien recebido, y con ellas holgadonos infinitamente, por venir de parte de vn Principe, a quien tenemos tanta obligacion. Nueſtro Agẽte nos ha eſcripto ſobre ciertas coſas, que deſſeays ſer os embiadas de aqui: Y, aunque queriamos poder os en ello puntualmente cõplazer, como pidiz, ha ſuccedido, que las guerras en que ſtamos al preſente occupadas, no nos lo conſienten del todo: Hemos però mandado, que ſe os ſatisfaga en parte, y cõforme à lo que por agora la neceſſitad nos permite, como mas particularmente os lo declarará nueſtro Agente: eſperãdo, que lo recibereys en buena parte, y conforme al animo, con que os lo concedemos. Yporque nos ha ſido referido, que aueys prometido de proceder contra vn Iuan Herman vaſſallo nueſtro, (el qual nos ha grauemente offendido) de la manera, que os lo demandaremos, auemos dado orden à nueſtro dicho Agente de deziros mas parcularmente lo que deſſeamos ſer hecho a cerca deſte negocio, rogando os, que lo mandeys aſſi complir: y que ſeays ſeruido de fauoreſcer ſiempre al dicho Agente, y tener lo en buen credito, como haſta agora aueys hecho, ſin permiter, que nadie os haga mudar de parecer a cerca de las calumnias, que le podran lenantar, ny dudar, que no complamos muy por entero todo, lo que de nueſtra parte os prometiere. Nueſtro Sennor guarde voſtra muy alta y muy poderoſa perſona. Hecha en nueſtra Corte Real de Grenewich a 20. de Iulio 1587. The Queenes letters to the Emperour.

¶ *The ſame in Engliſh.*

RIght high and mightie Prince, Hauing vnderſtoode from our Agent the great affection & good wil which you beare vs, and how great honour and fauor you ſhewe him for our ſake, to the ende to giue vs more ample teſtimonie of your friendſhip, we haue receiued very great contentment & ſatiſfaction, aſwel of the one as of the other: and withall we could not omit to magnifie you, according to your deſert. We haue alſo receiued your letters, and do not a litle reioyce thereof, becauſe they come from a prince vnto whome we are ſo much beholden. Our Agent hath written vnto vs concerning certaine things which you deſire to be ſent vnto you from hence. And albeit we wiſh that wee could particularly ſatiſfie you, as you deſire, yet it is fallen out, that the warres, wherein at this preſent we be buſied, will not ſuffer vs fully to doe the ſame: neuertheleſſe, we haue commanded to ſatiſfie you in part, and according as the preſent neceſſitie doeth permit vs, as our Agent will declare vnto you more particularly, hoping you will receiue it in good part, and according to the good will wherewith we graunt the ſame. And becauſe it hath bene ſignified vnto vs that you haue promiſed to proceede in iuſtice againſt one Iohn Herman our ſubiect, which hath grieuouſly offended vs, in ſuch ſort as we haue ſent word vnto you, we haue giuen order to our ſaide Agent to informe you more particularly in that which we deſire to be done in this buſines, praying you alſo to command the ſame to be put in execution: and that it would pleaſe you alwayes to fauour our ſaid Agent and to hold him in good credite, as you haue done hitherto, not ſuffring your ſelfe to be changed in your opinion, for all ỳ falſe reports which they may raiſe againſt him, nor to doubt that we wil not accompliſh at large all that he ſhal promiſe you on our behalfe. Our Lord keepe and preſerue your right high and mightie perſon. Written in our royal Court at Greenwich the 20. of July, 1587. John Herman an Engliſh rebel.

A Patent graunted to certaine marchants of Exceter, and *others of the VVest parts, and of London, for a trade to the riuer* of Senega and Gambia in Guinea, 1588.

ELizabeth by the grace of God Queene of England, Fraunce and Ireland, defendour of the faith, &c. To our Treasurer and Admiral of England, our Treasurer and Barons of our Exchequer, and all and euery our officers, ministers and subiects whatsoeuer, greeting. Whereas our welbeloued subiects William Brayley, Gilbert Smith, Nicolas Spicer, and Iohn Doricot of our Citie of Exeter marchants, Iohn Yong of Coliton in our Countie of Deuon marchant, Richard Doderidge of Barnestable in our saide Countie of Deuon Marchant, Antonie Dassell, and Nicolas Turner of our citie of London marchants, haue bene perswaded and earnestly mooued by certaine Portingals resident within our Dominions, to vndertake and set forwarde a voyage to certaine places on the coast of Guinea: videlicet, from the Northermost part of the Riuer commonly called by the name of the Riuer of Senega, and from and within that Riuer all along that coast vnto the Southermost part of another Riuer commonly called by the name of ‖Gambia, and within that Riuer: which, as we are informed, they haue alreadie ones perfourmed accordingly: And for that we are credibly giuen to vnderstand that the further prosecuting of the same voyage, and the due and orderly establishing of an orderly trafique and trade of marchandise into those countreis, will not onely in time be very beneficial to these our Realmes and dominions, but also be a great succour and relefe vnto the present distressed estate of those Portingals, who by our princely fauour liue and continue here vnder our protection: And considering that the aduenturing and enterprising of a newe trade can not be a matter of small charge and hazard to the aduenturers in the beginning: we haue therefore thought it conuenient, that our said louing subiects William Brayley, Gilbert Smith, Nicholas Spicer, Iohn Doricot, Iohn Yong, Richard Doderige, Anthonie Dassell, and Nicholas Turner, for the better incouragement to proceede in their saide aduenture and trade in the saide countreis, shall haue the sole vse and exercise thereof for a certaine time. In consideration whereof, and for other waightie reasons and considerations vs specially moouing, of our speciall grace, certaine knowledge and meere motion, we haue giuen & graunted, and by these presents for vs, our heires and successors doe giue and graunt vnto the saide William Brayley, Gilbert Smith, Nicholas Spicer, Iohn Doricot, Iohn Young, Richard Doderige, Anthonie Dassel and Nicholas Turner, and to euery of them, and to such other our subiects as they or the most part of them shall thinke conuenient to receiue into their companie and societie to be the traders with them into the saide countreis, that they and euery of them by themselues or by their seruants or Factors and none others, shall and may for and during the full space and terme of tenne yeeres next ensuing the date of these presents, haue and enioy the free & whole trafique, trade and feate of marchandise, to & from the saide Northermost part of the said Riuer, commonly called by the name of the Riuer of Senega: and from and within that Riuer all along the coast of Guinea, vnto the Southermost part of the said Riuer, cõmonly called by the name of the Riuer of ‖Gambia, and within that Riuer also. And that they the said William Brayley, Gilbert Smith, Nicholas Spicer, Iohn Doricot, Iohn Yong, Richard Doderige, Anthonie Dassel and Nicholas Turner, & euery of them, by themselues or by their seruants or Factors, & such as they or the most part of them shall receiue into their companie and societie, to be traders with them into the saide Countreis (as is aforesaid) and none others, shal and may, for, and during the said space and terme of 10. yeres, haue and enioy the sole & whole trafique or trade of marchandise into & from the saide places afore limitted and described, for the buying & selling, bartering and changing of and with any goods, wares, and marchandises whatsoeuer, to be vented had or found, at or within any the cities, townes, or places situated or being in the countreis, parts & coasts of Guinea before limitted, any law, statute, or graunt, matter, custome or priuiledges to the contrary in any wise notwithstanding. And for the better ordering, establishing, and gouerning of the said societie & companie in the said trade and trafique of marchandises, and the quiet, orderly and lawful exercise of the same, We for vs, our heires, and successors, doe by these presents giue and graunt full license and authoritie vnto the said William Brayley, Gilbert Smith, Nicholas Spicer, Iohn Doricot, Iohn Yong, Richard Doderige, Anthonie Dassell, and Nicholas Turner, and to such others as they shall receiue into their said societie and company to be traders into the said countreis, as is aforesaid, and to euery of them, that they or the most part of them shall and may at all conuenient times at their pleasures, assemble and meete together in any place or places conuenient, as well within our

‖Or, Gambia.

‖Or, Gambia.

‖Or, Gambia.

citie

citie of Exeter, as elſewhere within this our Realme of England, or other our dominions, during the ſaid terme of ten yeeres, to conſult of, for, and concerning the ſaide trade and traffike of marchandize, and from time to time to make, ordaine, and ſtabliſh good, neceſſarie, and reaſonable orders, conſtitutions, and ordinances, for, and touching the ſame trade. And all ſuch orders, conſtitutions, and ordinances ſo to be made, to put in vre and execute, and them, or any of them, to alter, change, and make voide, and, if neede be, to make newe, as at any time, during the ſaid terme of ten yeeres, to them, or the moſt part of them then trading, as is aforeſaid, ſhall be thought neceſſary & conuenient. Vnto all & euery which ſaid orders, conſtitutions, & ordinances, they, & euery of them, & all other perſons which ſhal hereafter be receaued into the ſaid societie & company, ſhall ſubmit themſelues, & ſhal wel & duely obſerue, performe, and obey the ſame, ſo long as they ſhall ſtand in force, or els ſhal pay and incurre ſuch forfeitures, paines, and penalties, for the breach thereof, & in ſuch manner and forme, and to ſuch vſes and intents, as by the ſaid orders, conſtitutions, and ordinances ſhall be aſſeſſed, limited, and appointed. So alwaies, as the ſame orders, conſtitutions, and ordinances, be not repugnant or contrarie to the lawes, ſtatutes, and cuſtomes of this Realme of England, nor any penaltie to exceede the reaſonable forme of other penalties, aſſeſſed by the companie of our Marchants, named Aduenturers. And to the intent that they onely, to whome the ſaid power and libertie of traffike and trade of marchandize is granted by theſe our letters patents aforeſaid, and none others whatſoeuer, without their ſpeciall conſent and licenſe before had, ſhall, during the ſaid terme of ten yeeres, vſe, or haue trade or traffike, with or for any manner of goods or marchandizes, to and from the ſaid coaſtes or partes of Guinea, afore limited: We doe by theſe preſents, by our royall and ſupreame authoritie, ſtraightly charge, and command that no perſon, or perſons whatſoeuer, by themſelues, or by their factors, or ſeruants, during the ſaid terme of ten yeeres, ſhall in any wiſe trade or traffike, for or with any goods or marchandizes, to or from the ſaid coaſtes and partes of Guinea, afore limited, other then the ſaide William Brailey, Gilbert Smith, Nicholas Spicer, Iohn Doricot, Iohn Yong, Richard Doderige, Antony Daſſel, and Nicholas Turner, and ſuch as from time to time, they, or the moſt part of them, ſhall receaue into their societie and companie, to be traders with them, as is aforeſaid, as they tender our fauour, and will auoid our high diſpleaſure, and vpon paine of impriſonment of his or their bodies, at our will and pleaſure, and to loſe and forfeit the ſhippe or ſhippes, and all the goods, wares, and marchandizes, wherewith they, or any of them, ſhall, during the ſaide terme of tenne yeeres, trade, or traffike to or from the ſaid Countreies, or any part thereof, according to the limitation aboue mentioned, contrarie to our expreſſe prohibition and reſtraint, in that behalfe. And further, we doe by theſe preſents, giue and grant full power and authoritie, to the ſaide William Brailey, Gilbert Smith, Nicholas Spicer, Iohn Doricot, Iohn Yonge, Richard Doderige, Anthony Daſſell, and Nicholas Turner, and to ſuch other perſons, as they ſhall receaue into their ſocietie and companie, to be traders with them, as is aforeſaid, and the moſt part of them, for the time being: that they, and euery of them, by themſelues, their factors, deputies, or aſſignes, ſhall and may, from time to time, during the ſaid terme of ten yeeres, attach, arreſt, take, and ſeaſe all, and all manner of ſhippe, and ſhippes, goods, wares, and marchandizes whatſoeuer, which ſhall be brought from, or caried to the ſaid coaſtes and parts of Guinea, afore limited, contrarie to our will and pleaſure, and the true meaning of the ſame, declared and expreſſed in theſe our letters patents. Of all and euery which ſaid forfeitures whatſoeuer, the one third part ſhall be vnto vs, our heires, and ſucceſſors, and another third part thereof, we giue and grant by theſe preſents, for and towards the reliefe of the ſaid Portingals, continuing here vnder our protection, as is aforeſayd. And the other third part of all the ſame forfeitures, we doe by theſe preſents, of our certaine knowledge and meere motion, for vs, our heires and ſucceſſors, giue and grant cleerely and wholy vnto the ſaid William Brailey, Gilbert Smith, Nicholas Spicer, Iohn Doricot, Iohn Yonge, Richard Doderige, Anthony Daſſell, and Nicholas Turner, and ſuch other perſons, as they ſhall receaue into their ſocietie, and companie, as is aforeſaid. And theſe our letters patents, or the inrolment or exemplification of the ſame, without any further or other warrant, ſhall from time to time, during the ſaid tenne yeeres, be a ſufficient warrant and authoritie to our Treaſurer of England, for the time being, and to the Barons of our Exchequer, and to all other our officers and miniſters whatſoeuer, to whome it ſhall or may appertaine, to allow, deliuer, and pay one third part of all the ſaid forfeitures, to the vſe of the ſaide Portingals, and one other third part of the ſame forfeitures, to the ſaid William Brailey, Gilbert Smith, Nicholas Spicer, Iohn Doricot, Iohn Yonge, Richard Doderige, Anthony Daſſell, and Nicholas Turner, and ſuch other perſons, as they ſhall receaue into their ſocietie and companie, to be traders with them, as aforeſaid, to their owne proper vſe and behoofe: which ſaide allowances and paiments thereof, our will and pleaſure is, and we doe ſtraightly charge and command, to be

from

from time to time duely made and performed accordingly, without any delay or denial of any our officers aforesaid, or any other our officers or ministers whatsoeuer. And we doe straightly charge and command, and by these presents prohibite, all and singular our customers, collectors, and farmers of our customes and subsidies, and controllers of the same, of and within our ports of the citie of London, and the Citie of Exeter, and all other ports, creekes, and places, within this our Realme of England, and euery of them, and all other our officers and ministers whatsoeuer, which haue or shall haue any dealing or intermedling, touching our said customes or subsidies, that they, ne any of them by themselues, their clarkes, deputies, or substitutes, or any of them take or receaue, or in any wise cause or suffer to be taken or receaued for vs, or in our name, or to our vse, or for, or in the names or to the vses of our heires or successors, of any person, or persons, any summe or summes of money, or other things whatsoeuer, during the said terme of ten yeeres, for, or in the name, lieu, or place of any custome, subsidie, or other thing or dutie, to vs, our heires, or successors, due, or to be due, for the customes or subsidies of any such goods, wares, or marchandizes, to be transported, caried, or brought to or from the priuileged places, before in these presents mentioned, or any of them: nor make, nor cause to be made any entry into, or of the bookes of subsidies or customes, nor make any agreement for the customes or subsidies, of, or for any goods, wares, or marchandizes, to be sent to, or returned from any the priuileged places, before in these presents mentioned, sauing onely with, and in the name, and by the consent of the saide William Brailey, Gilbert Smith, Nicholas Spicer, John Doricot, John Yonge, Richard Doderige, Anthony Dassel, & Nicholas Turner, or of some of them, or of such as they, or the most part of them, shall receaue into their societie and company, as aforesaid. Prouided alwaies, that if at any time hereafter, we our selues, by our writing signed with our proper hand, or any sixe or more of our priuie Councell, for the time being, shall, by our direction, and by writing signed and subscribed with their hands, signifie and notifie to the said William Brailey, Gilbert Smith, Nicholas Spicer, John Doricot, John Yonge, Richard Doderige, Anthony Dassell, and Nicholas Turner, or to any of them, or to any other, whom they, or the most part of them shall receaue into their companie and societie, as is aforesaid, or otherwise to our officers in our ports of Exeter, or Plimouth, by them to be notified to such as shall haue interest in this speciall priuiledge, that our will and pleasure is, that the said trade and traffike shall cease, and be no longer continued into the said coastes and partes of Guinea, before limited: then immediatly from and after the ende of sixe moneths next insuing, after such signification and notification so to be giuen to any of the saide companie and societie, as is aforesaid, or otherwise to our officers in our ports of Exeter, or Plimouth, by them to be notified to such as shall haue interest in this speciall priuiledge, these our present letters patents, and our grant therein contained, shall be vtterly voide, and of none effect, ne validitie in the lawe, to all intents and purposes: any thing before mentioned to the contrarie in any wise notwithstanding. Witnesse our selfe at Westminster, the third day of May, in the thirtieth yeere of our Raigne. 1588.

The ende of the first part.

THE SECOND PART OF THE principall Nauigations, Voyages and Diſcoueries of the Engliſh nation, made to the North and Northeaſt quarters of the VVorld, with the directions, letters, priuiledges, diſcourſes & obſeruations incident to the ſame.

Certaine teſtimonies concerning king Arthur and his Conqueſts of the North Regions, taken out of the hiſtorie of the Kings of England, written by *Galfridus Monumetenſis*, and newly printed at Heidelberge, An. 1587.

Lib. 9. cap. 10.



ANno Chriſti, 517. Arthurus, ſecundo regni ſui anno, ſubiugatis totius Hyberniæ partibus, claſſem ſuam direxit in Iſlandiam, eámque debellato populo ſubiugauit. Exin diuulgato per cæteras inſulas rumore, quòd ei nulla Prouincia reſiſtere poterat, Doldauius Rex Gotlandiæ, & Gunfacius Rex Orcadum vltrò venerunt, promiſſóq; vectigali ſubiectionem fecerunt. Emenſa deinde hyeme, reuerſus eſt in Britanniam, ſtatúmq; Regni in firmam pacem renouans, moram duodecim annis ibidem fecit.

¶ *The ſame in Engliſh.*

IN the yeere of Chriſt, 517. king Arthur in the ſecond yeere of his raigne, hauing ſubdued all partes of Ireland, ſayled with his fleete into Iſland, and brought it and the people thereof vnder his ſubiection. The rumor afterwards being ſpred throughout all the other Iſlands, that no countrey was able to withſtand him, Doldauius the king of Gotland, and Gunfacius the king of Orkney, came voluntarily vnto him and yelded him their obedience, promiſing to pay him tribute. The Winter being ſpent, he returned into England, and eſtabliſhing his kingdom in perfect peace, he continued there for the ſpace of 12. yeeres.

Lib. 9. cap. 12.

MIſſis deinde in diuerſa regna Legatis, inuitantur tam ex Gallijs, quàm ex collateralibus Inſulis Oceani, qui ad curiam venire deberent, &c. Et paulò poſt: Ex collateralibus autem Inſulis, Guillaumurius Rex Hyberniæ, Maluaſius Rex Iſlandiæ, Doldauius Rex Gotlandiæ, Gunnaſius Rex Orchadum, Lot Rex Norwegiæ, Aſchilius Rex Danorum.

¶ *The ſame in Engliſh.*

AFter that king Arthur ſending his meſſengers into diuers kingdoms, he ſummoned ſuch as were to come to his Court, as well out of France, as out of the adiacent Iſlands of the ſea, &c. and a little after. From thoſe adiacent Iſlands came Guillaumurius king of Ireland, Maluaſius king of Iſland, Doldauius king of Gotland, Gunnaſius king of Orkney, Lot the king of Norway, and Aſchilius the king of Denmarke.

Lib. 9. cap. 19.

AT Reges cæterarum insularum, quoniam non duxerant in morem Equites habere, pedites quot quisque debebat promittunt, ita vt ex sex Insulis, videlicet, Hyberniæ, Islandiæ, Gotlandiæ, Orcadum, Noruegiæ, atque Daciæ, sexies viginti millia essent annumerata.

¶ The same in English.

BVt the kings of the other Islands, because it was not their custome to breed vp horses, promised the king as many footmen, as euery man was bound to send: so that out of the six Islands, namely, of Ireland, Island, Gotland, Orkney, Norway, and Denmarke, the king had sixe score thousand souldiers sent him.

A testimonie out of the foresaid *Galfridus Monumetensis*, concerning the Conquests of Malgo, king of England.

Lib. 11. cap. 7.

VOrtiporio successit Malgo, omnium ferè Britanniæ pulcherrimus, multorum tyrannorum depulsor, robustus armis, largior cæteris, & vltra modum probitate præclarus. Hic etiam totam Insulam obtinuit, & sex conprouinciales Oceani Insulas: Hyberniam videlicet, atque Islandiam, Gotlandiam, Orcades, Noruegiam, Daciam, adiecit dirissimis prælijs potestati suæ.

¶ The same in English.

MAlgo succeeded Vortiporius which was the goodliest man in person of all Britaine, a prince that expulsed many tyrants. He was strong and valiant in warre, taller then most men that then liued, and exceeding famous for his vertues. This king also obtained the gouernment of the whole Island of Britaine, and by most sharpe warres he recouered to his Empire the sixe Islands of the Ocean sea, which before had bene made tributaries by king Arthur, namely, Ireland, Island, Gotland, Orkney, Norway and Denmarke.

A testimonie of the right and appendances of the crowne of the kingdome of Britaine, taken out of Master Lambard his *Archaionomia*, fol. 137. pag. 2.

ARthurus qui fuit quondam inclitissimus Rex Britonum, vir magnus fuit & animosus, & miles illustris. Parum fuit ei regnum istud, non fuit animus eius contentus regno Britanniæ. Subiugauit igitur sibi strenuè Scantiam totam, quę modo Norweia vocatur, & omnes insulas vltra Scantiam, scz. Islandiam, & Grenlandiam, quæ sunt de appendicijs Norweiæ, & Suechordam, & Hyberniam, & Gutlandiam, & Daciam, Semelandiam, Winlandiam, Curlandiam, Roe, Femelandiam, Wirelandiam, Flandriam, Cherelam, Lappam, & omnes alias terras & insulas Orientalis Oceani vsq; Russiam (in Lappa scilicet posuit Orientalem metam regni Britanniæ) & multas insulas vltra Scantiam, vsq; dum sub Septentrione, quæ sunt de appendicibus Scantiæ, quæ modo Norweia vocatur. Fuerunt autem ibi Christiani occultè. Arthurus autem Christianus optimus fuit, & fecit eos baptizari, & vnum Deum per totam Norweiam venerari, & vnam fidem Christi semper inuiolatam custodire, & suscipere. Ceperunt vniuersi proceres Norweiæ vxores suas de nobili gente Britonum tempore illo, vnde Norwegienses dicunt se exijsse de gente & sanguine regni huius. Impetrauit enim tẽporibus illis Arthurus Rex à domino Papa, & à Curia Romana, quod confirmata sit Norweia, in perpetuum coronę Britannię in augmentum regni huius, vocauitq; illam dictus Arthurus Cameram Britanniæ. Hac verò de causa dicunt Norwegienses, se debere in regno isto cohabitare & dicunt se esse de corpore regni huius, scilicet de corona Britanniæ. Maluerunt enim manere in regno isto, quam in terra eorum propria. Terra enim eorũ aridа est, & montuosa, & sterilis, & non sunt ibi segetes nisi per loca. Ista verò opulenta est, & fertilis, & crescunt hic segetes, & cætera vniuersa. Qua ex causa sæpius per vices gesta sunt bella atrocissima inter Anglos & Norwegienses, & interfecti sunt innumerabiles. Occupauerũt verò Norwegienses terras multas & insulas regni huius, quas adhuc detinent occupatas, nec potuerunt vnquam postea penitus euelli. Tandem modò confederati sunt nobis fide, & sacramento, & per vxores suas, quas postea cepetunt de sanguine nostro, & per affinitates, & coniugia. Ita demum constituit, & eis cõcessit bonus rex Edouardus propinquus noster (qui fuit optimus filius pacis) per commune consilium totius regni. Qua de causa possent, & debent prædicti de cætero nobiscum cohabitare, & remanere in regno, sicut coniurati fratres nostri.

The

¶ *The ſame in Engliſh.*

ARthur which was ſometimes the moſt renowmed king of the Britains, was a mightie, and valiant man, and a famous warrior. This kingdome was too litle for him, and his mind was not contented with it. He therefore valiantly ſubdued all Scantia, which is now called Norway, and all the Iſlands beyond Norway, to wit Iſland and Greenland, which are appertaining vnto Norway, Sweueland, Ireland, Gotland, Denmarke, Semeland, Windland, Curland, Roe, Femeland, Wireland, Flanders, Cherilland, Lapland, and all the other lands and Iſlands of the Eaſt ſea euen vnto Ruſſia (in which Lapland he placed the Eaſterly bounds of his Britiſh Empire) and many other Iſlands beyond Norway, euen vnder the North pole, which are appendances of Scantia, now called Norway. Theſe people were wild and ſauage, and had not in them the loue of God nor of their neighbors, becauſe all euill commeth from the North, yet there were among them certaine Chriſtians liuing in ſecret. But king Arthur was an exceeding good Chriſtian, and cauſed them to be baptized, and throughout all Norway to worſhip one God, and to receiue and keepe inuiolably for euer, faith in Chriſt onely. At that time all the noble men of Norway tooke wiues of the noble nation of the Britaines, whereupon the Norſes ſay, that they are deſcended of the race and blood of this kingdome. The aforeſayd king Arthur obteined alſo in thoſe dayes of the Pope & court of Rome, that Norway ſhould be for euer annexed to the crown of Britaine for the inlargement of this kingdome, and be called it the chamber of Britaine. For this cauſe the Norſes ſay, that they ought to dwell with vs in this kingdome, to wit, that they belong to the crowne of Britaine: for they had rather dwell here then in their owne natiue countrey, which is drie and full of mountaines, and barren, and no graine growing there, but in certaine places. But this countrey of Britaine is fruitfull, wherein come and all other good things doe grow and increaſe: for which cauſe many cruell battels haue bene oftentimes fought betwixt the Engliſhmen and the people of Norway, and infinite numbers of people haue bene ſlain, and the Norſes haue poſſeſſed many lands and Iſlands of this Empire, which vnto this day they doe poſſeſſe, neither could they euer afterwards be fully expelled. But now at length they are incorporated with vs by the receiuing of our religion and ſacraments, and by taking wiues of our nation, and by affinitie, and mariages. For ſo the good king Edward (who was a notable maintainer of peace) ordained and granted vnto them by the generall conſent of the whole kingdome, ſo that the people may, and ought from henceforth dwell and remaine in this kingdome with vs as our louing and ſworne brethren.

The nauigation of king Edgar, taken out of *M. Dee* his diſcourſe of the Britiſh Monarchie, pag. 54, 55, &c.

I Haue oftentimes (ſaid he) and many waies looked into the ſtate of earthly kingdomes, generally the whole world ouer (as farre as it may be yet knowen to chriſtian men commonly) being a ſtudie of no great difficultie, but rather a purpoſe ſomewhat anſwerable to a perfect Coſmographer, to find himſelfe Coſmopolites, a citizen and member of the whole and onely one myſticall citie vniuerſall, and ſo conſequently to meditate of the Coſmopoliticall gouernment thereof, vnder the king almightie, paſſing on very ſwiftly toward the moſt dreadfull and moſt comfortable terme preſixed.

And I find (ſaid he) that if this Britiſh Monarchie would heretofore haue followed the aduantages which they haue had onward, they might very well, ere this, haue ſurpaſſed by iuſtice, and godly ſort, any particular Monarchie els, that euer was on earth ſince mans creation: and that to all ſuch purpoſes as to God are moſt acceptable, and to all perfect common wealths, moſt honourable, profitable, and comfortable.

But yet (ſaid he) there is a little locke of Lady Occaſion, flickering in the aire, by our handes to catch hold on, whereby we may yet once more (before all be vtterly paſt, and for euer) diſcreetly and valiantly recouer and enioy, if not all our ancient and due appurtenances to this Imperial Britiſh monarchie, yet at the leaſt ſome ſuch notable portion thereof, as (all circumſtances duly and iuſtly appertaining to peace and amitie with forren princes being offred & vſed) this may become the moſt peaceable, moſt rich, moſt puiſſant, & moſt flouriſhing monarchie of all els (this day) in chriſtendome. Peaceable, I ſay, euen with the moſt part of the ſelfe ſame reſpects that good king Edgar had (being but a Saxon) and by ſundry ſuch means, as he chiefly in this Empire did put in proofe and bre triumphantly, whereupon his ſirname was Pacificus, moſt aptly and iuſtly. This peaceable king Edgar had in his minde about ſixe hundred yeeres paſt, the repreſentation of a great part of the ſelf ſame Idæa, which from aboue only, & by no mans deuiſe hath ſtreamed down into my imagination,

being as it becommeth a Subiect carefull for the godly prosperitie of this British Empire vnder our most peaceable Queene Elizabeth.

Flores Histor. For, AEdgarus pacificus, Regni sui prospiciens vtilitati, pariter & quieti, quatuor millia octingentas sibi robustas cõgregauit naues, è quibus mille ducentas, in plaga Angliæ Orientali, mille ducẽtas in Occidentali, mille ducentas in Australi, mille ducẽtas in Septentrionali pelago cõstituit, vt ad defensionẽ regni sui, contra exteras nationes, bellorũ discrimina sustineret.

O wisedome imperiall, most diligently to be imitated, videlicet, prospicere, to foresee. O charitable kingly parent, that was touched with ardent zeale, for procuring the publike profite of his kingdome, yea and also the peaceable inioying thereof. O, of an incredible masse of treasure, a kingly portion, yet, in his coffers remayning: if then he had, (or late before) any warres, seeing no notable taxe, or contribution publike is hystorically mentioned to haue bin for the charges leuied: if in peace he himselfe flourished so wealthily: O maruellous politicall, and princely prudencie, in time of peace to foresee, and preuent, (and that most puissantly, and inuincibly) all possible malice, fraude, force, and mischiefe forraine. O most discrete liberalitie to such excellent vses, powring out his treasure so abundantly. O faithfull English people (then,) and worthie subiects, of such an Imperiall and godlie Gouernour. O your true, and willing hearts, and blessed readie handes (then,) so to impart such abundance of victuals for those huge Nauies maintenance: so (I say) as neither death or famine, seemed (foolishly) to be feared of you, for any intollerable want likely to ensue thereby, any prices of victuals complained of to be vnreasonably enhaunsed by you, finding for their great gaines so good, and rare opportunitie.

This peaceable king Edgar, was one of the perfect Imperiall Monarches of this British Empire, and therefore thus his fame remaineth (for euer) recorded.

Charta Regia, Henrici secundi. Anglici orbis Basileus, flos, & Decus AEdgarus, non minùs memorabilis Anglis, quàm Cyrus Persis, Romulus Romanis, Alexander Macedonibus, Arsaces Parthis, Carolus Francis. Anno vitæ 37. Regni sui cum fratre, & post 21. Idibus Iulij obijt, & apud Glascon sepelitur.

O Glastonbury, Glastonbury, the treasurie of the carcasses of so famous, and so many persons (Quæ olim mater sanctorum dicta es, & ab alijs, tumulus sanctorum, quam ab ipsis discipulis Domini, ædificatam fuisse venerabilis habet Antiquorum authoritas) How lamentable is thy case now we: how we hath hypocrisie and pride wrought thy desolation: though I omitte here the names of very many other, both excellent holy men, and mighty princes, whose carcases are committed to thy custody, yet that Apostolike Ioseph, that triumphant British Arthur, & now this peaceable and prouident Saxon king Edgar, doe force me with a certaine sorowful reuerence, here to celebrate thy memorie.

This peaceable king Edgar (as by auncient Records may appeare) his Sommer progresse, and yeerely chiefe pastimes were, the sayling round about this whole Isle of Albion, garded with his grand nauie of 4000. sayle at the least, parted into 4. equall partes of petie Nauies, each one being of 1000. ships, for so it is anciently recorded.

Ranulphus Cestrensis. Idem quoque AEdgarus, 4000. naues congregauit, ex quibus omni anno, post festum Paschale, 1000. naues ad quamlibet Angliæ partem statuit, sic, æstate Insulam circumnauigauit: hyeme verò, iudicia in Prouincia exercuit: & hæc omnia ad sui exercitium, & ad hostium feciterrorem.

COuld, and would that peaceable and wise king Edgar, before need, as being in peace and quiet with all nations about him, and notwithstanding mistrusting his possible enemies, make his pastimes so roially, politically, and triumphantly, with so many thousand ships, and at the least with ten times so many men as ships, and that yeerely: and shal we being not assured of such neighbors friendship, as may become to vs as cruel and tyrannicall enemies as neuer king Edgar needed to dread the like, and they as many and mightie princes, as neuer king Edgar coped with the like, shall we (said he) not iudge it some part of wisdome, to imitate carefully in some little proportion (though not with so many thousands) the prosperous pastimes of peaceable king Edgar, that Saxonicall Alexander? yea prosperous pastimes these may be iustly counted, by which he also made euident to the whole world, that as he wisely knew the ancient bounds and limits of this Brittish Empire, so that he could and would roially, iustly, & triumphantly enioy the same, spite of the deuil, & maugre the force of any forren potentate. And all that, so highly and faithfully to the glory of God finally intended and brought to passe, as the wisest and godliest prelates and counsellors of those dayes (so counted of and recorded) could best aduise & direct him, or perchance, but sincerely commend and ciuilly incourage him in, he being of himselfe so bent, as purposing first inuincible to fortifie the chiefe and vttermost wals of his Islandish Monarchie, against all forren encombrance possible.

Ina

And in that fortification furthering and assuring to trust best his owne ouersight and iudgement, in yeerely viewing the same in euery quarter thereof, and that as it were for his pastime imperiall, also in Summer time, to the end that afterward in all securitie, he might in Winter time (vacare) be at conuenient laisure on land, chiefly to set foorth Gods due honour, and secondly to vnderstand, and diligently to listen to the causes & complaints of his commons. For as Matthæus Westmonasterienſis of him to his imperiall commendation hath left vs a remembrance.

Habebat autem præterea consuetudinem, per omnes Regni prouincias transire, vt intelligeret quomodo legum iura, & suorum statuta decretorum, à principibus obseruarentur, & ne pauperes à potentibus prejudicium passi, opprimerentur, diligenter inuestigare solebat: in vno fortitudini, in altero Iusticię studens, & Reipub. regniq; vtilitati consulens in vtroque. Hinc hostibus circumquáq; timor, & amor omnium erga eum excreuerat subditorum.

Thus we see how in opportunitie, this peaceable Edgar procured to this Empire such prosperous securitie, that his true and faithfull subiects, all maner of wayes (that is at home and also at sea, both outward and inward) might peaceably, safely and securely employ their wits and trauels for the maruelous enriching of this kingdome, and pleasuring very many other, carying foorth the naturall commodities of this land, abounding here aboue our necessarie vses (and due store reserued) and likewise againe furnishing the same with all necessarie and not superfluous forren commodities, set from farre or forren countreys. This was in deed (as before is recorded) a kingly prouidence, Reipub. Regniq; vtilitati consulens, &c. besides with great vtilitie and profite publique forsene, and by his meanes enioyed, he himselfe vsed most gladly the aduantage of that securitie, in ministring of iustice, or causing the same to be executed all his kingdome ouer, not squemishly, frowningly or scornefully shunning the ragged and tattered serue of any suppliant, holding vp to him a simple soiled bill of complaint or petition, and that homely contriued, or afraied at, and timerously hasting from the sickly pale face or feeble limmed suter, extreemely constrained so to speake for himselfe, nor parcially smoothering his owne conscience, to fauour or maintaine the foule fault and trespasse vnlawfull of any his subiects, how mightie or necessarie soeuer, they (els) were, but diligently made search, least Pauperes à potentibus prædiudicium passi, opprimerentur.

Thus did publique securitie frō forren foe abroad, and true loue of his owne subiects, garding him at home, and the heauenly spirite directing all his good purposes, cause iustice and equitie in all quarters of this Albion to flourish. For which his peaceable and prosperous benefits at the eternall king his hand obteined, he became not insolent or declined to tyrannicall regiment (as some princes in other countries haue made their liues Comicotragicall) but with all his foresaid inuincible Sea force, aboundant wealth, triumphant peace, with securitie and Iustice ouer all his Monarchie preuailing, his heart was continually, and most zealously bent to set foorth the glory, laud and honour of the almightie Creator, the heauenly and euerlasting king, by such principall and princely meanes, as (then) were deemed to God most acceptable, as many monuments yet to our dayes remaining, doe of him vndoubtedly testifie: As this, for one.

Altitonantis Dei largiflua clementia, qui est rex Regum, Ego AEdgarus Anglorum Basileus omniúmq; Regum Insularum, Oceaníque Britanniam circumiacentis, cunctarúmq; nationum, quæ infra eam includuntur Imperator, & Dóminus, grátias ago ipsi Deo omnipotenti, Regi meo, qui meum Imperium sic ampliauit, & exaltauit super regnum patrum meorum: qui licet Monarchiam totius Angliæ adepti sunt à tempore Athelstam (qui primus regnum Anglorum, & omnes Nationes, quæ Britanniam incolunt, sibi Armis subegit) nullus tamen eorum vltra eius fines imperium suum dilatare aggressus est. Mihi autem concessit propitia Diuinitas, cum Anglorum Imperio, omnia regna Insularum Oceani, cum suis ferocissimis Regibus, vsque Noruegiam, maximámq; partem Hyberniæ, cum sua nobilissima Ciuitate Dublinia, Anglorum regno subiugare: Quos etiam omnes, meis Imperijs colla subdere (Dei fauente gratia) coegi. Quapropter & ego Christi gloriam, & laudem exaltare, & eius seruitium amplificare deuotus disposui, & per meos fideles Fautores, Dunstanum viz. Archiepiscopum, Athelwoldum, & Oswaldum episcopos (quos mihi patres spirituales, & Consiliatores elegi) magna ex parte, secundum quod disposui, effeci, &c.

Ex charta fundationis Ecclesiæ Cathedralis Wigorniæ.

And againe this in another Monument.

OMnipotentis Dei, &c. Ipsius nutu & gratia suffultus, Ego AEdgarus Basileus, dilectæ Insulæ Albionis, subditis nobis sceptris Scotorum, Cumbrorum, ac Brytonum, & omnium circumcirca Regionum, quieta pace perfruens, studiosus sollicitè de laudibus creatoris omniū

Fundatio Ecclesiæ Cathedralis Elienſis.

occupor addendis: Ne nunc inertia, nostriq; diebus (plus æquo) seruitus eius tepescere videatur, &c. 18. mei terreni Imperij anno, &c. Anno Incarnationis Dominicæ, 973.

Ego AEdgarus totius Albionis Basileus hoc priuilegium (tanta roboratum authoritate) crucis Thaumate confirmaui.

So that by all these rehersed Records it is most euident þ the peaceable king Edgar, was one of those Monarchs, in whose hands (if life had fulfilled) the incredible value and priuiledge granted by God and nature vnto this British monarchie, might haue bene peaceably purchased in such sort, as the very blessing and fauour of the diuine Trinitie hath laid meanes for our industrie to attaine to, and enioyed the same by.

And though sundry other valiant princes and kings of this land I could recite, which in times past haue either by intent gone about, or by wise and valiant exploit, haue meerely well prospered towards this Islandish appropriate supremacie attaining, yet neuer any other reasonable meanes was vsed, or by humane wit, or industrie can be contriued, to all purposes sufficient, but only by our sea forces preuailing, and so by our inuincible enioying all within the sea limites of our Britishe royaltie contained.

To which incredible political mistrie attaining, no easier, readier, or perfecter plat and introduction, is (as yet) come to my imagination, then is the present and continuall seruice of these our good and tall warlike shippes, with twentie smaller barkes, and those 80. ships (great and small) with 6660. apt men furnished, and all singularly well appointed for seruice both on sea and land, faithfully and diligently to be done in such circumspect and discreet order, as partly I haue in other places declared, and further (vpon good occasion offred) may declare.

This grand naute of peaceable king Edgar, of so many thousand shippes, and they furnished with an hundred thousand men at the least, with all the small intents of those sea forces, so inuincible, continually maintained, the order of the execution of their seruice, the godly and imperiall successe thereof, are in a maner kingly lessons and prophetical incouragements to vs left, euen now be as prouident for publique securitie as he was, to be as skilfull of our sea right and royall limits, and wisely to find our selues as able to recouer and enioy the same as he was, who could not chuse, but with the passing and peerely sayling about this Britishe Albion, with all the lesser Iles next adiacent round about it, he could not chuse I say, but by such full and peaceable possession, finde himself (according to right, and his hearts desire) the true and seueraigne Monarch of all the British Ocean, enuironing any way his empire of Albion and Ireland, with the lesser Islands next adiacent: with memoriall whereof, as with one very precious iewell Imperiall, he adorned the title and crowne of his regalitie, as with the testimonie annexed of the states and nobles of his Empire, to commit to perpetuall memorie, the stile of his chiefe worldly dignitie, in this very tenor of words before also remembred.

Note the Queenes maiesties royaltie ouer the Britishe Ocean sea, round about the Britishe Empire.

Ego AEdgarus Anglorum Basileus, omniumq; Regum, Insularum, Oceaniq; Britannium circumiacentis, cunctarumq; nationum, quæ infra eam includuntur, Imperator, & Dominus.

The voyage of *Nicholas de Lynna*, a Franciscan Frier, and an excellent *Mathematician of Oxford*, to all the Regions, situate vnder the North pole, in the yeere 1360. and in the raigne of Edward the 3. king of England.

The words of Gerardus Mercator, in the foote of his general Map, vpon the description of the North partes.

QVod ad descriptionem (partium Septentrionalium) attinet, eam nos accepimus ex Itinerario Iacobi Cnoyen Buscoducensis, qui quædam ex rebus gestis Arthuri Britanni citat, maiorem autem partem & potiora, à Sacerdote quodam apud Regem Noruegiæ, An. dom. 1364. didicit. Descenderat is ex illis quos Arthurus ad has habitandas insulas miserat, & referebat, An. 1360. Minoritam quẽdam Anglum Oxoniensem Mathematicum in eas insulas veniſſe, ipsisq; relictis ad vlteriora arte Magica profectum descripsisse omnia, & Astrolabio dimensum esse in hanc subiectam formam ferè, vti ex Iacobo collegimus. Euripos illos quatuor dicebat tanto impetu ad interiorem voraginem rapi, vt nauis semel ingressæ nullo vento retroagi possent, nequè verò vnquam tantum ibi ventũ esse, vt molæ frumentariæ circumagendæ sufficiat. Simillima his habet Giraldus Cambrensis (qui floruit, An. 1210.) in libro de mirabilibus Hyberniæ, sic enim scribit. Non procul ab insulis Hebridibus, Islandia, &c. ex parte Boreali, est maris quædam miranda vorago, in quam à remotis partibus omnes vndique fluctus marini tanquam ex condicto fluunt, & recurrunt, qui in secretæ naturæ penetralia se ibi transfundentes, quasi in Abyssum vorantur. Si verò nauem hâc fortè

transire

transire contigerit, tanta rapitur, & attrahitur fluctuum violentia, vt eam statim irreuocabiliter vis voracitatis absorbeat.

Quatuor voragines huius Oceani, a quatuor oppositis mundi partibus Philosophi describunt, vnde & tam marinos fluctus, quàm & æolicos flatus causaliter peruenire nonnulli coniectant.

¶ The same in English.

TOuching the description of the North parts I haue taken the same out of the voyage of James Cnoyen of Hartzcuan Buske, which alleageth certaine conquests of Arthur king of Britaine: and the most part, and chiefest things among the rest, he learned of a certaine priest in the king of Norwayes court, in the yeere 1364. This priest was descended from them which king Arthur had sent to inhabite these islands, and he reported that in the yeere 1360, a certaine English frier, a Franciscan, and a Mathematician of Oxford, came into those islandes, who leauing them, and passing further by his Magicall Arte, described all those places that he saw, and tooke the height of them with his Astrolobe, according to the forme that I (Gerard Mercator) haue set downe, in my mappe, and as I haue taken it out of the aforesaid James Cnoyen. He said that those foure Indraughts were drawne into an inward gulfe or whirlpoole, with so great a force, that the shippes which once entred therein, could by no meanes be driuen backe againe, and that there is neuer in those partes so much winde blowing, as might be sufficient to driue a corne mill.

Giraldus Cambrensis (who flourished in the yeere 1210, vnder king John) in his booke of the miracles of Ireland, hath certeine words altogether alike with these, videlicet:

Not farre from these islands (namely the Hebrides, Island &c.) towardes the North there is a certaine woonderfull whirlpoole of the sea, whereinto all the waues of the sea from farre haue their course and recourse, as it were without stoppe: which, there conueying themselues into the secret receptacles of nature, are swallowed vp, as it were, into a bottomlesse pit, and if it chance that any shippe do passe this way, it is pulled, and drawne with such a violence of the waues, that eftsoones without remedy, the force of the whirlpoole deuoureth the same.

There is a notable whirlpoole on the coast of Norway, called Malestrande, about the latitude of 68.

The Philosophers describe foure indraughts of this Ocean sea, in the foure opposite quarters of the world, from whence many do coniecture that as well the flowing of the sea, as the blasts of the winde, haue their first originall.

A Testimonie of the learned Mathematician, maister *Iohn Dee, touching the foresaid voyage of* Nicholas de Linna.

ANno 1360 (that is to wit, in the 34 yeere of the reigne of the triumphant king Edward the third) a frier of Oxford, being a good Astronomer, went in companie with others to the most Northren islands of the world, and there leauing his company together, he trauelled alone, and purposely described all the Northern islands, with the indrawing seas: and the record therof at his returne he deliuered to the king of England. The name of which booke is Inuentio Fortunata (aliter fortunæ) qui liber incipit a gradu 54 vsq; ad polum. Which frier for sundry purposes after that, did fiue times passe from England thither, and home againe. Inuentio Fortunata.

It is to be noted, that from the hauen of Linne in Norfolke (whereof the foresaid Franciscan frier tooke his name) to Island, it is not aboue a fortnights sayling with an ordinary winde, and hath beene of many yeeres a very common and vsuall trade: which further appeareth by the priuileges granted to the Fishermen of the towne of Blacknie in the said countie of Norfolke, by king Edward the third, for their exemption and freedome from his ordinary seruice, in respect of their trade to Island. An. 2. & 4. & 31. Edwardi tertij.

A declaration of the Indies and landes discouered, and subdued vnto the Emperour, and the king of Portingall: And also of other partes of the Indies and rich Countries to be discouered, which the worshipfull M. Robert Thorne merchant of London (who dwelt long in the citie of Siuill in Spaine) exhorted king Henrie the eight to take in hand.

MOST EXCELLENT PRINCE,

EXperience prooueth that naturally all Princes be desirous to extend and enlarge their dominions and kingdomes. Wherefor it is not to be maruelled, to see them euery day procure the same, not regarding any cost, perill, and labour, that may thereby chance, but rather it is to be maruelled, if there be any prince content to liue quiet with his owne dominions. For surely the people would thinke he lacketh the noble courage and spirit of all other.

The world knoweth that the desires of Princes haue beene so feruent to obtaine their purpose, that they haue aduentured and prooued thinges to mans coniecture [illegible], the which they haue made possible, and also thinges difficult haue made facill: and [illegible] to obtaine their purpose, haue in maner turned vp and downe the whole world so many times, that the people inhabiting in the farthest region of the Occident haue pursued with great distresse, labours and perils, to penetrate and enter into the farthest regions of the Orient: and in likewise those people of the saide partes of the Orient, haue had no lesse labour and desire to enter and penetrate into the farthest land of the Occident, and so following their purchase haue not ceased vntill they could passe no farther by reason of the great seas.

This naturall inclination is cause, that scarsely it may be said, there is any kingdome stable, nor king quiet, but that his owne imagination, or other Princes his neighbours doe trouble him. God and nature hath prouided to your Grace, and to your Gracious progenitours, this Realme of England, and set it in so fruitfull a place, and within such limits, that it should seeme to be a place quiet and apaired from all the forsaid desire. One speciall cause is, for that it is compassed with the Sea: by reason thereof it seemes, this notwithstanding, their desires and noble courages haue beene most commonly like vnto others: and with marueilous great labours, costes and perils, they haue trauelled and passed the Seas, making warre, not onely with Kinges and dominions nigh neighbours, but also with them of farre countreys, and so haue woonne and conquered many rich and fayre dominions, and amplified this your Graces Realme with great victorie and glory. And also now of late your Grace hauing like courage and desire, and not without iust cause, to enlarge this your kingdome, and demand your limits and tribute of the French king, which at that present he withstayned, your Grace in person passed with a great power into France, putting your Graces person to great paine and labour, and without doubt victoriously you had conquered the said Realme of France, as ye began, if your aduersarie had not reconciled himselfe, and knowledged your Graces right and title: and so promised truely to pay the tribute then due, and fulfill your requests in all things, and also desired your Grace for peace, the which of your clemencie you could not refuse.

Now I considering this your noble courage and desire, and also perceiuing that your Grace may at your pleasure, to your greater glory, by a godly meane, with little cost, perill, or labour to your Grace or any of your subiects, amplifie and inrich this your said Realme, I know it is my bounden dutie to manifest this secret vnto your Grace, which hitherto, as I suppose, hath beene hid: which is, that with a small number of ships there may be discouered diuers New lands and kingdomes, in the which without doubt your Grace shall winne perpetuall glory, and your subiectes infinite profite. To which places there is left one way to discouer, which is into the North: for that of the foure parts of the world, it seemeth three parts are discouered by other Princes. For out of Spaine they haue discouered all the Indies and Seas Occidentall, and out of Portingall all the Indies and Seas Orientall: so that by this part of the Orient and Occident, they haue compassed the world. For the one of them departing toward the Orient, and the other toward the Occident, met againe in the course or way of the middest of the day, and so then was discouered a great part of the same Seas and coastes by the Spanyards. So that now rest to be discouered the said North partes, the which it seemeth to me, is onely your charge and dutie. Because the situation of this your Realme is thereunto nerest and apest of all other: and also for that you haue ‖ alreadie taken it in hande. And in mine opinion it will not seeme well to

A Secret.

The discouerie of the North.

‖ By Sebastia Cabot and sir Thomas Pert in the eight yeere of his reigne. And this is the voyage spoken of by Conlalus Quirdo, that came to S. Domingo.

to leaue ſo great and profitable an enterpriſe, ſeeing it may ſo eaſily and with ſo litle coſt, labour, and danger, be followed and obteined: though heeretofore your Grace hath made thereof a proofe, and found not the commoditie therby as you truſted, at this time it ſhall be no impediment. For there may be now prouided remedies for thinges, then lacked, and the inconueniences and lets remooued, that then were cauſe your Graces deſire tooke no full effect, which is, the courſes to be changed, and follow the aforeſaid new courſes. And concerning the mariners, ſhippes, and prouiſion, an order may be deuiſed and taken meet & conuenient, much better then hitherto. By reaſon whereof, and by Gods grace, no doubt your purpoſe ſhall take effect. Surely the coſt herein will be nothing, in compariſon to the great profit. The labour is much leſſe, yea nothing at all, where ſo great honour and glory is hoped for: and conſidering well the courſes, truely the danger and way is ſhorter to vs, then to Spaine or Portingall, as by euident reaſons appeareth.

And now to declare ſomething of the commoditie and vtilitie of this Nauigation and diſcouerie, it is very cleere and certaine, that the Seas that commonly men ſay, without great danger, difficultie and perill, yea rather it is impoſſible to paſſe, that thoſe ſame ſeas be nauigable and without any ſuch danger, but that ſhippes may paſſe and haue in them perpetuall cleerenеſſe of the day without any darkeneſſe of the night: which thing is a great commoditie for the nauigants, to ſee at all times round about them, as well the ſafegardes as daungers, and how great difference it is betweene the commoditie and perils of other which leeſe the moſt part of euery foure and twentie houres the ſaid light, and goe in darkeneſſe groping their way, I thinke there is none ſo ignorant but perceiueth this more plainely, then it can be expreſſed. Yea what a vantage ſhall your Graces ſubiects haue alſo by this light to diſcouer the ſtrange landes, countries, and coaſtes: for if they that be diſcouered, to ſaile by them in darkeneſſe is with great danger, much more then the coaſtes not diſcouered be dangerous to trauell by night or in darkeneſſe. Yet theſe dangers or darkeneſſe hath not letted the Spaniards and Portingals and other, to diſcouer many vnknowen Realmes, to their great perill. Which conſidered (and that your Graces ſubiectes may haue the ſame light) it will ſeeme your Graces ſubiects to be without actiuitie or courage, in leauing to do this glorious and noble enterpriſe. For they being paſt this litle way which they named ſo dangerous, (which may be two or three leagues before they come to the Pole, and as much more after they paſſe the Pole) it is cleere that from thence forth the ſeas and landes are as temperate as in theſe partes, and that then it may be at the will and pleaſure of the mariners, to chooſe whether they will ſaile by the coaſtes that be colde, temperate or hot. For they being paſt the Pole, it is plaine, they may decline to what part they liſt. Note.

If they will goe toward the Orient, they ſhall inioy the regions of all the Tartarians that extend toward the midday, and from thence they may goe and proceed to the land of the Chinas, and from thence to the land of Cathaio Orientall, which is of all the maine land moſt Orientall that can be reckoned from our habitation. And if from thence they doe continue their nauigation, following the coaſts that returne toward the Occident, they ſhall fall in with Malaca, and ſo with all the Indies which we call Orientall, and following that way, may returne hither by the Cape of Buona Speranſa: and thus they ſhall compaſſe the whole worlde. And if they will take their courſe after they be paſt the Pole, toward the Occident, they ſhall goe in the backe ſide of the new found land, which of late was diſcouered by your Graces ſubiectes, vntill they come to the backe ſide and South Seas of the Indies Occidentall. And ſo continuing their voyage they may returne thorow the ſtreight of Magellan to this countrey, and ſo they compaſſe alſo the worlde by that way: and if they goe this third way, and after they be paſt the Pole, goe right toward the Pole Antarctike, and then decline toward the lands and Iſlands ſituated betweene the Tropikes, and vnder the Equinoctiall, without doubt they ſhall finde there the richeſt landes and Iſlands of the world of golde, precious ſtones, balmes, ſpices, and other thinges that we heere eſteeme moſt: which come out of ſtrange countreyes, and may returne the ſame way. Tartaria. China. New found land diſcouered by the Engliſh.

By this it appeareth, your Grace hath not onely a great aduauntage of the riches, but alſo your ſubiectes ſhall not trauell halfe of the way that other doe, which goe round about as aforeſaide.

The

The booke made by the right worshipfull M. Robert Thorne *in the yeere 1527, in Siuill, to Doctour Ley, Lord ambassadour for king* Henrie the eight, to Charles the Emperour, being an information of the parts of the world, discouered by him and the king of Portingall: and also of the way to the Moluccaes by the North.

RIght noble and reuerend in &c. I haue receiued your letters, and haue procured and sent to know of your seruant, who, your Lordshippe wrote, should be sicke in Merchena. I cannot there or els where heare of him, without he be returned to you, or gone to S. Lucar, and shipt. I cannot iudge but that of some contagious sickenesse he died, so that the owner of the house for defeming his house would bury him secretly, and not be knowne of it. For such things haue often times happened in this countrey.

Also to write vnto your Lordshippe of the new trade of Spicerie of the Emperour, there is no doubt but that the Islands are fertile of Cloues, Nutmegs, Mace, and Cinnamom: and that the said Islandes, with other there about, abound with golde, Rubies, Diamonds, Balasses, Granates, Iacincts, and other stones & pearles, as all other lands that are vnder and neere the Equinoctiall. For we see, where nature giueth anything, she is no nigard. For as with vs and other, that are aparted from the said Equinoctiall, our mettals be Lead, Tinne, and Yron, so theirs be Golde, Siluer, and Copper. And as our fruites and graines be Apples, Nuts, and Corne, so theirs be Dates, Nutmegs, Pepper, Cloues, and other Spices. And as we haue Ieat, Amber, Cristall, Iasper, and other like stones, so haue they Rubies, Diamonds, Ballasses, Saphyres, Iacincts, and other like. And though some say that of such precious mettals, graines, or kinde of spices, and precious stones, the abundance and quantitie is nothing so great, as our mettals, fruits or stones aboue rehearsed: yet if it be well considered, how the quantitie of the earth vnder the Equinoctiall to both the Tropicall lines, (in which space is found the said Golde, spices and precious stones) is as much in quantitie, as almost all the earth from the Tropickes to both the Poles: it can not be denied but there is more quantitie of the said mettals, fruites, spices, and precious stones, then there is of the other mettals and other thinges before rehearsed. And I see that the preciousnesse of these things is measured after the distance that is betweene vs, and the things that we haue appetite vnto. For in this nauigation of the Spicerie was discouered, that their Islands nothing set by Golde, but set more by a knife and a naile of yron, then by his quantitie of Golde: and with reason, as the thing more necessarie for mans seruice. And I doubt not but in them should be as precious our corne and seeds, if they might haue them, as to vs their spices: and likewise the pieces of glasse that here we haue counterfeited, are as precious to them, as to vs their stones: which by experience is seene dayly by them that haue trade thither. This of the riches of those countries is sufficient.

Doctor Leys letters.

Touching that your Lordshippe wrote, whether it may be profitable to the Emperour or no, it may be without doubt of great profit: if as the king of Portingall doth, he would become a merchant, and prouide shippes and their lading, and trade thither alone, and defend the trade of their Ilands for himselfe. But other greater businesse withholdeth him from this. But still, as now it is begunne to be occupied, it would come to much. For the shippes comming in safetie, there would thither many euery yeere, of which to the Emperour is due of all the wares and iewels that come from thence the fift part for his custome cleare without any cost. And besides this he putteth in euery flote a certeine quantitie of money, of which he enioyeth of the gaines pound and pounde like as other aduenturers doe. In a flote of three shippes and a carauell that went from this citie armed by the merchants of it, which departed in Aprill last past, I and my partener haue one thousand foure hundred duckets that we employed in the said fleete, principally for that two Englishmen, friends of mine, which are somewhat learned in Cosmographie, should goe in the same shippes, to bring me certaine relation of the situation of the countrey, and to be expert in the nauigation of those seas, and there to haue informations of many other thinges, and aduise that I desire to know especially. Seeing in these quarters are shippes, and mariners of that country, and cardes by which they saile, though much vnlike ours: that they should procure to haue the said cards, and learne how they vnderstand them, and especially to know what nauigation they haue for those Islands Northwards, and Northeastward.

This was the fleet wherein Cabot discouered the riuer of Plate, 1526.

Note.

For if from the said Islandes the sea did extend, without interposition of land, to saile from the North point to the Northeast point one thousand seuen hundred or one thousand eight hundred leagues,

leagues, they ſhould come to the New founde ilandes that wee diſcouered, and ſo we ſhould be neerer to the ſaid Spicerie by almoſt two thouſand leagues then the Emperour, or the king of Portingall are. And to aduiſe your Lordſhippe whether of theſe Spiceries of the king of Portingall or the Emperours is neerer, and alſo of the titles that either of them hath, and how our New found landes are parted from it, (for that by writing without ſome demonſtration, it were hard to giue any declaration of it) I haue cauſed that your Lordſhippe ſhall receiue herewith a litle Mappe or Carde of the world: the which, I feare me, ſhall put your Lordſhippe to more labour to vnderſtand, then me to make it, onely for that it is made in ſo little roome that it cannot be but obſcurely ſet out, that is deſired to be ſeene in it, and alſo for that I am in this ſcience little expert: Yet to remedy in part this difficultie, it is neceſſary to declare to your Lordſhippe my intent, with which I truſt you ſhall perceiue in this Card part of your deſire, if, for that I can not expreſſe mine intent, with my declaration I do not make it more obſcure.

The New found ilands diſcouered by the Engliſh.

A Mappe of the world.

Firſt, your Lordſhippe knoweth that the Coſmographers haue diuided the earth by 360 degrees in latitude, and as many in longitude, vnder the which is comprehended all the roundneſſe of the earth: the latitude being diuided into foure quarters, ninetie degrees amount to euery quarter, which they meaſure by the altitude of the Poles, that is the North and South ſtarres, being from the line Equinoctiall till they come right vnder the North ſtarre the ſaid ninetie degrees: and as much from the ſaid line Equinoctiall to the South ſtarre be other ninetie degrees. And as much more is alſo from either of the ſaid ſtarres againe to the Equinoctiall. Which imagined to be roũd, is ſoone perceiued thus, 360 degrees of latitude to be conſumed in the ſaid foure quarters of ninetie degrees a quarter, ſo that this latitude is the meaſure of the world from North to South, and from South to North. And the longitude, in which are alſo counted other 360, is counted from Weſt to Eaſt, or from Eaſt to Weſt, as in the Card is ſet.

To know the latitudes.

The ſaid latitude your Lordſhippe may ſee marked and diuided in the end of this Card on the left hand: ſo that if you would know in what degrees of latitude any region or coaſt ſtandeth, take a compaſſe, and ſet the one foot of the ſame in the Equinoctiall line right againſt the ſaid region, and apply the other foot of the compaſſe to the ſaid region or coaſt, and then ſet the ſaid compaſſe at the end of the Card, where the degrees are diuided. And the one foot of the compaſſe ſtanding in the line Equinoctiall, the other will ſhew in the ſcale the degrees of altitude or latitude that the ſaid region is in. Alſo the longitude of the world I haue ſet out in the nether part of the Card, conteining alſo 360 degrees: which begin to be counted after Ptolome and other Coſmographers from an head land called Capo verde, which is ouer againſt a little croſſe made in the part Occidentall, where the diuiſion of the degrees beginneth, and endeth in the ſame Capo verde.

To know the longitudes.

Now to know in what longitude any land is, your Lordſhippe muſt take a ruler or a compaſſe, and ſet the one foot of the compaſſe vpon the land or coaſt whoſe longitude you would know, and extend the other foot of the compaſſe to the next part of one of the tranſuerſall lines in the Orientall or Occidentall part: which done, ſet the one foot of the compaſſe in the ſaid tranſuerſall line at the end of the nether ſcale, the ſcale of longitude, and the other foot ſheweth the degree of longitude that the region is in. And your Lordſhippe muſt vnderſtand that this Card, though little, contineth the vniuerſall whole world betwixt two Collaterall lines, the one in the Occidentall part deſcendeth perpendicular vpon the 175 degree, and the other in the Orientall on the 170 degree, whoſe diſtance meaſureth the ſcale of longitude. And that which is without the two ſaid tranſuerſall lines, is onely to ſhew how the Orientall part is ioyned with the Occident, and Occident with the Orient. For that that is ſet without the line in the Orientall part, is the ſame that is ſet within the other line in the Occidentall part: and that that is ſet without the line in the Occidentall part, is the ſame that is ſet within the line on the Orientall part, to ſhew that though this figure of the world in plaine or flatte ſeemeth to haue an end, yet one imagining that this ſaid Carde were ſet vpon a round thing, where the endes ſhoulde touche by the lines, it would plainelie appeare how the Orient part ioyneth with the Occident, as there without the lines it is deſcribed and figured.

And for more declaration of the ſaid Card, your Lordſhippe ſhall vnderſtand, that beginning on the part Occidentall within the line, the firſt land that is ſet out, is the maine land and Iſland of the Indies of the Emperour. Which maine land or coaſt goeth Northward, and finiſheth in the land that we found, which is called heere Terra de Labrador. So that it appeareth the ſaid land that we found, and the Indies to be all one maine land.

The ſaid coaſt from the ſaid Indies Southward, as by the Card your Lordſhippe may ſee, commeth to a certeine ſtraight Sea, called Eſtrecho de todos Sanctos: by which ſtraight Sea the Spanyardes goe to the Spiceries, as I ſhall declare more at large: the which ſtraight Sea is right againſt the three hundred fifteene degrees of longitude, and is of latitude or altitude from

Now called the ſtraight of Magelane.

the

the Equinoctiall three and fiftie degrees. The first land from the said beginning of the Card toward the Orient are certaine Illandes of the Canaries, and Illandes of Capo verde. But the first maine land next to the line Equinoctiall is the said Capo verde, and from thence Northward by the streight of this Sea of Italie. And so followeth Spaine, France, Flanders, Almaine, Denmarke, and Norway, which is the highest part toward the North. And ouer against Flanders are our Illands of England and Ireland. Of the landes and coastes within the streights I haue set out onely the Regions, diuiding them by lines of their limits, by which plainely I thinke your Lordship may see, in what situation euery region is, and of what highnesse, and with what regions it is ioyned. I do thinke few are left out of all Europe. In the parts of Asia and Affrica I could not so well make the said diuisions: for that they be not so well knowen, nor need not so much. This I write because in the said Card be made the said lines and strikes, that your Lordship should vnderstand wherefore they doe serue. Also returning to the foresaid Capo verde, the coast goeth Southward to a Cape called Capo de buona speransa: which is right ouer against the 60 & 65 degree of longitude. And by this Cape goe the Portingals to their Spicerie. For from this Cape toward the Orient, is the land of Calicut, as your Lordship may see in the head land ouer against the 130 degree. From the said Cape of Buona speransa the coast returneth toward the line Equinoctial, and passing forth, entreth the red sea, & returning out, entreth againe into the gulfe of Persie, & returneth toward the Equinoctiall line, till that it commeth to the head land called Calicut aforesaid, and from thence the coast making a gulfe, where is the riuer of Ganges, returneth toward the line to a head land called Malaca, where is the principall Spicerie: and from this Cape returneth and maketh a great gulfe, and after the coast goeth right toward the Orient, and ouer against this last gulfe and coast, be many Illandes, which be Illandes of the Spiceries of the Emperour. Upon which the Portingals and he be at variance.

Note. The said coast goeth toward the Orient, and endeth right against the 155 degrees, and after returneth toward the Occident Northward: which coast not yet plainely knowne, I may ioyne to the New found land found by vs, that I spake of before. So that I finish with this briefe declaration of the Card aforesaid. Well I know I should also haue declared how the coasts within the streights of the Sea of Italie runne. It is plaine that passing the streights on the North side of that Sea after the coast of Granado, and with that which pertaines to Spaine, is the coast of that which France hath in Italie. And then followeth in one piece all Italie, which land hath a arme of the Sea, with a gulfe which is called Mare Adriaticum. And in the bottome of this gulfe is the citie of Uenice. And on the other part of the said gulfe is Sclauonia, and next Grecia, then the streights of Constantinople, and then the sea called Euxinus, which is within the said streights: and comming out of the said streights, foloweth Turcia maior (though now on both sides it is called Turcia.) And so the coast runneth Southward to Syria, and ouer against the said Turcia are the Illands of Rhodes, Candie, and Cyprus. And ouer against Italie are the Illands of Sicilia and Sardinia. And ouer against Spaine is Maiorca and Minorca. In the end of the gulfe of Syria is Iudea. And from thence returneth the coast toward the Occident, till it commeth to the streights where we beganne, which all is the coast of Affrike or Barbarie. Also your Lordshippe shall vnderstand that the coastes of the Sea throughout all the world, I haue coloured with yellow, for that it may appeare that all that is within the line coloured yellow, is to be imagined to be maine land or Illand: and all without the said line so coloured to be Sea: whereby it is easie and light to know it. Albeit in this little roome any other description would rather haue made it obscure then cleere. Also the said coasts of the Sea are all set iustly after the maner and forme as they lie, as the nauigation approoueth them throughout all the Card, saue only the coasts and Illes of the Spicerie of the Emperour which is from ouer against the 160 to the 215 degree of longitude. For these coastes and situations of the Illands, euery of the Cosmographers and pilots of Portingall and Spaine do set after their purpose. The Spanyards more towards the Orient, because they should appeare to appertaine to the Emperour: and the Portingals more toward the Occident, for that they should fall within their iurisdiction. So that the pilots and nauigants thither, which in such cases should declare the truth, by their industrie do set them falsly euery one to fauor his prince. And for this cause can be no certaine situation of that coast and Illands, till this difference betwixt them be verified. Now to come to the purpose of your Lordships demand touching the difference betweene the Emperour and the king of Portingall, to vnderstand it better, I must declare the beginning of this discouerie. Though peraduenture your Lordship may say that in that I haue written ought of purpose, I fall in the prouerbe, A gemino ouo bellum: But your Lordship commanded me to be large, and I take licence to be prolixous, and shalbe peraduenture tedious, but your Lordship knoweth that Nihil ignorantia verbosius.

Doctor Leys demand.

In the yeere 1484. the king of Portingall minded to arme certaine Caruelles to discouer this Spicerie. Then forasmuch as he feared that being discouered, euery other Prince would sende and trade thither, so that the cost and perill of discouering should bee his, and the profite common: wherefore first hee gaue knowledge of this his minde to all princes Christened, saying that hee would seeke amongst the infidels newe possessions of regions, and therefore would make a certaine armie: and that if any of them would helpe in the cost of the said armie, hee should enioy his part of the profite or honour that should come of it. And as then this discouering was holden for a strange thing and vncertaine. Nowe they say, that all the Princes of Christendome answered, that they would be no part of such an armie, nor yet of the profite that might come of it. After the which he gaue knowledge to the Pope of his purpose, and of the answere of all the Princes, desiring him that seeing that none would helpe in the costes, that hee would iudge all that should bee founde and discouered to be of his iurisdiction, and commaunde that none other Princes should intermeddle therewith. The Pope said not as Christ saith, Quis me constituit iudicem inter vos? he did not refuse, but making himselfe as Lord and Iudge of all, not onely graunted that all that should be discouered from Orient to Occident, should be the kings of Portingall, but also, that vpon great censures no other Prince should discouer but hee. And if they did, all to bee the kings of Portingall. So he armed a fleete, and in the yeere 1497. were discouered the Islands of Calicut, from whence is brought all the spice he hath. The Pope reprehended.

After this in the yeere 1492. the king of Spaine willing to discouer lands toward the Occident without making any such diligence, or taking licence of the king of Portingall, armed certaine Caruels, and then discouered this India Occidentall, especially two Islandes of the saide India, that in this Carde I set forth, naming the one la Dominica, and the other Cuba, and brought certaine golde from thence. Of the which when the king of Portingal had knowledge, hee sent to the king of Spaine, requiring him to giue him the said Islands. For that by the sentence of the Pope all that should be discouered was his, and that hee should not proceede further in the discouerie without his licence. And at the same time it seemeth that out of Castill, into Portingall had gone for feare of burning infinite nomber of Iewes that were expelled out of Spaine, for that they would not turne to be Christians, and carried with them infinite nomber of golde and siluer. So that it seemeth that the king of Spaine answered, that it was reason that the king of Portingall asked, and that to be obedient to that which the Pope had decreed, hee would giue him the sayde Islands of the Indies. Nowe for as much as it was decreed betwixt the saide kings, that none should receiue the others subiects fugitiues, nor their goods, therfore the king of Portingal should pay and returne to the king of Spaine a million of golde or more, that the Iewes had caried out of Spaine to Portingal, & that in so doing he would giue these Islands, and desist from any more discouering. And not fulfilling this, hee would not onely not giue these Islands, but procure to discouer more where him thought best. It seemeth that the king of Portingal would not, or could not with his ease pay this money. And so not paying, that he could not let the king of Spaine to discouer: so that he enterprised not toward the Orient where he had begun & found the Spicerie. And consented to the king of Spaine, that touching this discouering they should deuide the worlde betweene them two. And that all that should be discouered from Cape Verde, where this Carde beginneth to be counted in the degrees of longitude to 180. of the saide scale of longitude, which is halfe the world toward the Orient, & finisheth in this Card right ouer against a litle crosse made at the said 180. degrees, to be the king of Portingals. And all the land from the said Crosse toward the Occident, vntill it ioyneth with the other Crosse in the Orient, which containeth the other hundreth and eightie degrees, that is the other halfe of the worlde, to be the king of Spaines. So that from the land ouer against the said hundreth & eightie degrees vntill it finish in the three hundred and sixtie on both the ends of the Card, is the iurisdiction of the king of Spaine. So after this maner they deuided the world betweene them.

Now for that these Islands of Spicerie fall neere the terme and limits betweene these Princes (for as by the said Card you may see they beginne from one hundred and sixtie degrees of longitude, and ende in 215.) it seemeth all that falleth from 160. to 180. degrees, should be of Portingall: and all the rest of Spaine. And for that their Cosmographers and Pilots coulde not agree in the situation of the sayde Islandes (for the Portingals set them all within their 180. degrees, and the Spaniards set them all without): and for that in measuring, all the Cosmographers of both partes, or what other that euer haue bene cannot giue certaine order to measure the longitude of the worlde, as they doe of the latitude: for that there is no starre fixed from East to West, as are the starres of the Poles from North to South, but all mooueth with the mouing diuine: no maner can bee founde howe certainely it may bee measured, but The longitudes hard to be found out.

but by coniectures, as the Nauigants haue esteemed the way they haue gone. But it is manifest that Spaine had the situation of al the lands from Cape Verde, toward ỹ Orient of the Portingals to their 180. degrees. And in all their Cardes they neuer hitherto set the saide Islands within their limitation of the saide 180. degrees, (Though they knewe very well of the Islandes,) til nowe that the Spaniards discouered them. And it is knowen that the king of Portingal had trade to these Islands afore, but would neuer suffer Portingall to goe thither from Calicut: for so much as he knewe that it fell out of his dominion: least by going thither there might come some knowledge of those other Islands of the king of Spaine, but bought the cloues of Marchants of the countrey, that brought them to Calicut, much dearer then they would haue cost, if hee had fetched them, thinking after this maner it would abide alwayes secret. And now that it is discouered he sendes and keepes the Spaniards from the trade all that he can.

Also it should seeme that when this foresaid consent of the diuision of the worlde was agreed betweene them, the king of Portingall had alreadie discouered certaine Islands that lye ouer against Cape Verde, and also certaine part of the maine lande of India toward the South, from whence hee fette Brasil, and called it the lande of Brasill. So for that all should come in his terme and limites, hee tooke three hundred and seuentie leagues beyonde Cape Verde: and after this his 180. degrees, being his part of the worlde, should begin in the Carde right ouer against the 340. degrees, where I haue made a litle compasse with a crosse, and should finish at the 160. degree, where also I haue made an other litle marke. And after this computation without any controuersie, the Ilands of the spicerie fal out of the Portingals domination. So that nowe the Spaniards say to the Portingals, that if they would beginne their 180. degrees from the saide Cape Verde, to the intent they should extende more toward the Orient, and so to touche those Islands of the Spicerie of the Emperour, which is al that is betweene the two crosses made in this Carde, that then the Islands of Cape Verde and the lande of Brasill that the Portingals nowe obtaine is out of the saide limitation, and that they are of the Emperours. Or if their 180. degrees they count from the 370. leagues beyonde the saide Cape Verde, to include in it the saide Islands and landes of Brasill, then plainely appeareth the saide 180. degrees should finish long before they come to these Ilands of the Spicerie of the Emperour. As by this Carde your Lordship may see. For their limits should begin at the 340. degrees of this Carde, and ende at 160. degrees, where I haue made two litle markes of the compasse with crosses in them.

So that plainely it should appeare by reason, that the Portingals should leaue these Ilands of Cape Verde and lande of Brasill, if they would haue part of the Spicerie of the Emperour: or els holding these, they haue no part there. To this the Portingals say, that they will beginne their 180. degrees from the selfe same Cape Verde: for that it may extende so much more toward the Orient, and touche these Islands of the Emperours: and would winne these Islands of Cape Verde and land of Brasill neuertheless, as a thing that they possessed before the consent of this limitation was made.

So none can verely tell which hath the best reason. They be not yet agreed, Quare subiudice lis est.

But without doubt (by all coniectures of reason,) the saide Islands fall all without the limitation of Portingall, and pertaine to Spaine, as it appeareth by the most part of all the Cards made by the Portingals, saue those they haue falsified of late purposely.

New found land discouered by the Englishmen.

But nowe touching that your Lordshippe wrote, whether that which we discouered touched any thing the foresaide coastes: once it appeareth plainely, that the Newe founde lande that we discouered, is all a maine lande with the Indies Occidentall, from whence the Emperour hath all the golde and pearles: and so continueth of coast more then 5000. leagues of length, as by this Carde appeareth. For from the said New landes it proceedeth toward the Occident to the Indies, and from the Indies returneth toward the Orient, and after turneth South warde vntil it come to the Straites of Todos Sanctos, which I recken to be more then 5000. leagues.

Note.

So that to the Indias it should seeme that wee haue some title, at least that for our discouering wee might trade thither as other doe. But all this is nothing neere the Spicerie.

To saile by the Pole.

Nowe then (if from the saide Newe founde landes the Sea bee nauigable) there is no doubt, but sayling Northwarde and passing the Pole descending to the Equinoctiall line, wee shall hitte these Islandes, and it should bee a much shorter way, then either the Spaniards or the Portingals haue. For wee be distant from the Pole but thirtie and nine degrees, and from the Pole to the Equinoctiall be 90. the which added together, be an hundreth twentie and nine degrees, leagues 2480. and miles 7440: Where wee should finde these Islands. And the nauigation of the Spaniards to the Spicerie is, as by this Carde you may see, from Spaine to the

Islands

Ilands of Canarie, and from these Ilands they runne ouer the line Equinoctiall Southwarde to the Cape of the maine land of the Indians, called the Cape of S. Augustine, and from this Cape Southwardes to the Straites of Todos Sanctos, in the which Nauigation to the saide Straites is 1700. or 1800. leagues: and from these Straites being past them, they returne towarde the line Equinoctiall to the Ilands of Spicrie, which are distant from the saide Straites 4200. or 4300. leagues. Of the straites of Magellan.

The Nauigation of the Portingals to the saide Ilands, is departing from Portingall Southwarde towarde the Cape Verde, and from thence to another Cape passing the line Equinoctiall called Capo de bona speransa, and from Portingall to the Cape is 1800. leagues, and from this Cape to the Ilands of Spicerie of the Emperour is 2500. leagues.

So that by this Nauigation amounteth all to 4300. leagues. So that (as afore is said,) if betweene our Newe founde landes or Norway, or Island, the seas towarde the North be Nauigable, wee should goe to these Ilandes a shorter way by more then 2000. leagues.

And though wee went not to the saide Ilandes, for that they are the Emperours or kings of Portingall, wee should by the way and comming once to the line Equinoctiall, finde landes no lesse riche of golde and Spicerie, as all other landes are vnder the saide line Equinoctiall: and also should, if we may passe vnder the North, enioy the Nauigation of all Tartarie. Which should bee no lesse profitable to our commodities of cloche, then these Spiceries to the Emperour, and king of Portingall. Note. Benefite to England.

But it is a generall opinion of all Cosmographers, that passing the seuenth clime, the sea is all Ice, and the colde so much that none can suffer it. And hitherto they had all the like opinion, that vnder the line Equinoctiall for much heate the land was vnhabitable. Obiection.

Yet since (by experience is proued) no land so much habitable nor more temperate. And to conclude, I thinke the same should bee founde vnder the North, if it were experimented. For as all iudge, Nihil fit vacuum in rerum natura: So I iudge, there is no lande vnhabitable, nor Sea innauigable. If I should write the reason that presenteth this vnto me, I should be to prolixe, and it seemeth not requisite for this present matter. God knoweth that though by it I shoulde haue no great interest, yet I haue had and still haue no litle minde of this businesse: So that if I had facultie to my will, it should be the first thing that I would vnderstande, euen to attempte, if our Seas Northwarde be Nauigable to the Pole, or no. I reason, that as some sicknesses are hereditarious, and come from the father to the sonne, so this inclination or desire of this discouerie I inherited of my father, which with another marchant of Bristowe named Hugh Eliot, were the discoueres of the Newe found landes, of the which there is no doubt, (as nowe plainely appeareth) if the mariners would then haue bene ruled, and folowed their Pilots minde, the lands of the West Indies (from whence all the golde commeth) had bene ours. For all is one coast, as by the Carde appeareth, and is afore said. Answere. A true opinion. A voyage of discouerie by the Pole. M. Thorne and M. Eliot discoueres of Newe found land. The cause why the West Indies were not ours: which also Sebastian Gabot writeth in an Epistle to Baptist Ramusius.

Also in this Carde by the coastes where you see C. your Lordship shall vnderstande it is set for Cape or head land, where I. for Iland, where P. for Port, where R. for Riuer. Also in all this little Carde I thinke nothing be erred touching the situation of the lande, saue onely in these Ilands of Spicrie: which, for that (as afore is said,) euery one setteth them after his minde, there can be no certification howe they stande. I doe not denie, that there lacke many things, that a consummate Carde should haue, or that a right good demonstration desireth. For there should be expressed all the mountaines and Riuers that are principall of name in the earth, with the names of Portes of the sea, the names of all principall cities, which all I might haue set, but not in this Carde, for the litle space would not consent.

Your Lordship may see that seeing onely the names almost of euery Region, and yet not of all, the roome is occupied. Many Ilands are also left out, for the said lacke of roome, the names almost of all Portes put to silence, with the roses of the windes or pointes of the compasse: For that this is not for Pilots to saile by, but a summarie declaration of that which your Lordship commanded. And if by this your Lordship cannot well perceiue the meaning of this Card, of the which I would not marueile, by reason of the rude composition of it, will it please your Lordship to aduise mee to make a bigger and a better Mappe, or els that I may cause one to be made. For I know my selfe in this and all other nothing perfect, but Licet semper discens, nunquam tamen ad perfectam scientiam perueniens. Also I know, to set the forme Spherical of the world in Plano after ꝑ true rule of Cosmgraphie, it would haue bene made otherwise then this is: howbeit the demonstration should not haue bene so plaine.

And also these degrees of longitude, that I set in the lower part of this card, should haue bene set along by ꝑ line Equinoctial, & so then must be imagined. For ꝑ degrees of longitude were either

of the poles are nothing equall in bignesse to them in the Equinoctiall. But these are set so, for that setting them a long the Equinoctiall, it woulde haue made obscure a great part of the mappe. Many other curiosities may bee required, which for the nonce I did not set downe, as well for that the intent I had principally was to satisfie your doubt touching the spicerie, as for that I lacke leasure and time. I trust your Lordship correcting that which is erred, will accept my good will, which is to doe any thing that I may in your Lordships seruice. But from henceforth I knowe your Lordship will rather commaund me to keepe silence, then to be large, when you shall be wearied with the reading of this discourse. Jesus prosper your estate and health.

Your Lordships
Robert Thorne 1527.

ALso this Carde and that which I write touching the variance betweene the Emperour and the king of Portingall, is not to bee shewed or communicated there with any of that Court. For though there is nothing in it preiudiciall to the Emperour, yet it may bee a cause of paine to the maker: as wel for that none may make these Cardes, but certaine appointed and allowed for masters, as for that peraduenture it would not sounde well to them, that a stranger shoulde knowe or discouer their secrets: and woulde appeare worst of all, if they vnderstand that I write touching the short way to the spicerie by our Seas. Though peraduenture of troth it is not to be looked to, as a thing that by all opinions is vnpossible, and I thinke neuer will come to effect: and therefore neither here nor elsewhere is it to bee spoken of. For to mooue it amongst wise men, it should be had in derision. And therefore to none I would haue written nor spoken of such things, but to your Lordshippe, to whome boldly I commit in this all my foolish fantasie as to my selfe. But if it please God that into Englande I may come with your Lordshippe, I will shewe some coniectures of reason, though against the generall opinion of Cosmographers, by which shall appeare this that I say not to lacke some foundation. And till that time I beseeche your Lordshippe let it bee put to silence: and in the meane season I may please God to sende our two Englishmen, that are gone to the Spicerie, which may also bring more plaine declaration of that which in this case might be desired.

Also I knowe I needed not to haue beene so prolixe in the declaration of this Carde to your Lordship, if the said Carde had bene very well made after the rules of Cosmographie. For your Lordship would soone vnderstande it better then I, or any other that coulde haue made it: and so it should appeare that I shewed Delphinum natare. But for that I haue made it after my rude manner, it is necessarie that I be ꝑ verlarer or gloser of mine owne worke, or els your Lordship shuld haue had much labour to vnderstande it, which nowe with it also cannot be excused, it is so grossly done. But I knewe you looked for no curious things of mee, and therefore I trust your Lordship will accept this, and holde me for excused. In other mens letters that they write they craue pardon that at this present they write no larger: but I must finish, as I king pardon that at this present I write so largely. Jesus preserue your Lordship with augmentation of dignities.

Your seruant Robert
Thorne, 1527.

Epitaphium M. Roberti Thorni, sepulti in Ecclesia Templariorum LONDINI.

RObertus iacet hic Thorne, quem Bristolia quondam
Prætoris meritò legit ad officium.
Huic etenim semper magnæ Respublica curæ,
Charior & cunctis patria diuitijs.
Ferre inopi auxilium, tristes componere lites,
Dulce huic consilio quoſque iuuare fuit.
Qui pius exaudis miserorum vota preceſque,
Christe huic cœli des regione locum.

Ordinances

Ordinances, instructions, and aduertisements of and for the direction *of the intended voyage for Cathaye, compiled, made, and deliuered* by the right worshipfull M. Sebastian Cabota Esquier, gouernour of the mysterie and companie of the Marchants aduenturers for the discouerie of Regions, Dominions, Islands & places vnknowen, the 9. day of May, in the yere of our Lord God 1553. and in the 7. yeere of the raigne of our most dread soueraine Lord Edward the 6. by the grace of God king of England, Fraunce and Ireland, defender of the faith, and of the Church of England and Ireland, in earth supreame head.

FIrst the Captaine general, with the pilot maior, the masters, marchants & other officers, to be so knit and accorded in vnitie, loue, conformitie, and obedience in euery degree on all sides, that no dissention, variance, or contention may rise or spring betwixt them and the mariners of this companie, to the damage or hinderance of the voyage: for that discention (by many experiences) hath ouerthrowen many notable intended and likely enterprises and exploits.

2 Item, for as much as euery person hath giuen an othe to be true, faithfull, and loyall subiects, and liege men to the kings most excellent Maiestie, his heires and successors, and for the obseruation of all lawes & statutes, made for the preseruation of his most excellent Maiestie, & his crowne Imperiall of his realmes of England and Ireland, and to serue his grace, the Realme, and this present voyage truely, and not to giue vp, intermit, or leaue off the said voyage and enterprise vntill it shall be accomplished, so farre forth as possibilitie & life of man may serue or extend: Therefore it behoueth euery person in his degree, as well for conscience, as for dueties sake, to remember his said charge, and the accomplishment thereof.

3 Item, where furthermore euery mariner or passenger in his shippe, hath giuen like othe to be obedient to the Captaine generall, and to euery Captaine and master in his ship, for the obseruation of these present orders contained in this booke, and all other which hereafter shall be made by the 12. counsailers in this present booke named, or the most part of them, for the better conduction, and preseruation of the fleete, and atchieuing of the voyage, and to be prompt, readie and obedient in all acts and feates of honestie, reason, and duetie to be ministred, shewed & executed, in aduancement and preferment of the voyage and exploit: therefore it is conuenient that this present booke shall once euery weeke (by the discretion of the Captaine) be read to the saide companie, to the intent that euery man may the better remember his othe, conscience, duetie and charge.

4 Item, euery person by vertue of his othe, to doe effectually & with good will (as farre forth as him shall complie) all, and euery such act and acts, deede and deedes, as shalbe to him or them from time to time commanded, committed and enioyned (during the voyage) by the Captaine general, with the assent of the Counsell and assistants, as well in and during the whole Nauigation and voyage, as also in discouering and landing, as cases and occasions shall require.

5 Item, all courses in Nauigation to be set and kept, by the aduice of the Captaine, Pilot maior, masters, & masters mates, with the assents of the counsailers, & the most nomber of them, and in voyces vniformely agreeing in one to preuaile, and take place, so that the Captaine generall, shall in all counsailes and assemblies haue a double voyce.

6 Item, that the fleete shall keepe together, and not separate themselues asunder, as much as by winde & weather may be done or permitted, & that the Captaines, Pilots & masters shall speedily come aboord the Admiral, when and as often as he shall seeme to haue iust cause to assemble them for counsaile or consultation to be had concerning the affaires of the fleete and voyage.

7 Item, that the marchants, and other skilful persons in writing, shal dayly write, describe, and put in memorie the Nauigation of euery day and night with the points, and obseruation of the lands, tides, elements, altitude of the sunne, course of the moone and starres, and the same so noted by the order of the Master and pilot of euery ship to be put in writing, the Captaine general assembling the Masters together once euery weeke (if winde and weather shal serue) to conferre all the obseruations, and notes of the said ships, to the intent it may appeare wherein the notes doe agree, and wherein they discent, and vpon good debatement, deliberation, and conclusion determined, to put the same into a common leger, to remaine of record for the companie: the like order to be kept in proportioning of the Cardes, Astrolabes, and other instruments prepared for the voyage, at the charge of the companie.

8 Item, that all enterprises and exploits of discouering or landing to search Iles, regions, and such like, to be searched, attempted, and enterprised by good deliberation, and common assent, determined aduisedly. And that in all enterprises, notable and assages, suites, requests, or

prescrument of gifts, or presents to princes, to be done and executed by the captaine Generall in person, or by such other, as he by common assent shall appoint or assigne to doe or cause to be done in the same.

9 Item, the steward and cooke of euery ship, and their associats, to giue and render to the Captaine and other head officers of their shippe weekely (or oftener) if it shall seeme requisite, a iust & plaine and perfect accompt of expenses of the victuals, as well flesh, fish, bisket, meate or bread, as also of beere, wine, oyle, or vineger, and all other kinde of victualing vnder their charge, and they, and euery of them so to order and dispende the same, that no waste or vnprofitable excesse be made otherwise then reason and necessitie shall commaund.

10 Item, when any inferiour or meane officer of what degree or condition he shal be, shalbe tried vntrue, remisse, negligent, or vnprofitable in or about his office in the voyage, or not to vse himselfe in his charge accordingly, then euery such officer to be punished or remooued at the discretion of the Captaine and assistants, or the most part of them, and the person so remooued not to bee reputed, accepted, or taken from the time of his remooue, any more for an officer, but to remaine in such condition and place, as hee shall be assigned vnto, and none of the companie to resist such chastisement or worthie punishment, as shalbe ministred to him moderately, according to the fault or desert of his offence, after the lawes and common customes of the seas, in such cases heretofore vsed and obserued.

11 Item, if any Mariner or officer inferiour shalbe found by his labour not meete nor worthie the place that he is presently shipped for, such person may bee vnshipped and put on lande at any place within the kings Maiesties realme & dominion, and one other person more able & worthy to be put in his place, at the discretion of the Captaine and maisters, & order to be taken that the partie dismissed shalbe allowed proportionably, the value of that hee shall haue deserued to the time of his dismission or discharge, & he to giue order with sureties, pawne, or other assurance, to repay the ouerplus of that he shal haue received, which he shall not haue deserued, & such wages to be made with the partie newly placed as shalbe thought reasonable, & he to haue the furniture of all such necessaries as were prepared for the partie dismissed, according to right and conscience.

12 Item, that no blaspheming of God, or detestable swearing be vsed in any ship, nor communication of ribaldrie, filthie tales, or vngodly talke to be suffered in the company of any ship, neither dicing, carding, tabling, nor other diuelish games to be frequented, whereby ensueth not onely peuertie to the players, but also strife, variance, brauling, fighting, and oftentimes murther to the vtter destruction of the parties, and prouoking of Gods most iust wrath, and sworde of vengeance. These and all such like pestilences, and contagions of vices, and sinnes to be eschewed, and the offenders once monished, and not reforming, to be punished at the discretion of the Captaine and master, as appertaineth.

13 Item, that morning and euening prayer, with other common seruices appointed by the kings Maiestie, and lawes of this Realme to be read and saide in euery ship dayly by the minister in the Admiral, and the marchant or some other person learned in other ships, and the Bible or paraphrases, to be read deuoutly and Christianly to Gods honour, and for his grace to be obtained, and had by humble and heartie prayer of the Nauigants accordingly.

14 Item that euery officer is to be charged by inuentorie with the particulers of his charge, and to render a perfect accompt of the disfraying of the same together with modest and temperat dispending of powder, shot, and vse of al kinde of artillerie, which is not to be misused, but diligently to be preserued for the necessarie defence of the fleete and voyage, together with due keeping of all instruments of your Nauigation, and other requisites.

15 Item, no liquor to be spilt on the balast, nor filthines to be left within boord the cooke roome, and all other places to be kept cleane for the better health of the companie, the gromals & pages to be brought vp according to the laudable order and vse of the sea, as wel in learning of Nauigation, as in exercising of that which to them appertaineth.

16 Item, the liueries in apparel giuen to the mariners, be to be kept by the Marchants, and not to be worne, but by the order of the Captaine, when hee shall see cause to muster or shewe them in good aray, for the aduancement and honour of the voyage, and the liueries to be redelliuered to the keeping of the marchants, vntill it shall be thought conuenient for euery person to haue the full vse of his garment.

17 Item, when any Mariner or any other passinger shall haue neede of any necessarie furniture of apparell for his body, and conseruation of his health, the same shall bee deliuered him by the Marchant, at the assignment of the Captaine and Master of that shippe, wherein such needie personne shall bee, at such reasonable price as the same cost, without any gaine to bee craued

by

by the marchants, the value thereof to be entred by the marchant in his booke, and the same to be discounted of the parties wages, that so shall receiue, and weare the same.

18. Item the sicke, diseased, weake, and visited person within boord, to be tendred, relieued, comforted, and holpen in the time of his infirmitie, and euery manner of person, without respect, to beare anothers burden, and no man to refuse such labour as shall be put to him, for the most benefite, and publike wealth of the voyage, and enterprise, to be atchieued exactly.

19. Item if any person shall fortune to die, or miscary in the voyage, such apparell, and other goods, as he shall haue at the time of his death, is to be kept by the order of the Captaine, and Master of the shippe, and an inuentorie to be made of it, and conserued to the vse of his wife, and children, or otherwise according to his mind, and wil, and the day of his death to be entred in the Marchants and Stewards bookes: to the intent it may be knowen what wages he shall haue deserued to his death, and what shall rest due to him.

20. Item that the Marchants appointed for this present voyage, shall not make any shewe or sale of any kind of Marchandizes, or open their commodities to any forren princes, or any of their Subiects, without the consent, priuitie, or agreement of the Captaines, the cape Marchants and the assistants, or foure of them, whereof the Captaine Generall, the Pilot Maior, and cape Marchant to be three, and euery of the petie Marchants to shewe his reckoning to the Cape Marchant, when they, or any of them shall be required: and no commutation or trucke to be made by any of the petie Marchants, without the assent aboue said: and all wares, and commodities trucked, bought or giuen to the companie, by way of marchandise, trucke, or any other respect, to be booked by the Marchants, and to be well ordred, packed, and conserued in one Halle entirely, and not to be broken or altered, vntill the shippes shall returne to the right discharges, and inuentorie of all goods, wares, and marchandizes so trucked, bought, or otherwise dispended, to be presented to the Gouernour, Consuls, and Assistants in London, in good order, to the intent the Kings Maiestie may be truly answered of that which to his grace by his grant of corporation is limited, according to our most bound duties, and the whole companie also to haue that which by right vnto them appertaineth, and no embezelment shall be vsed, but the truth of the whole voyage to be opened, to the common wealth and benefite of the whole companie, and mysterie, as appertaineth, without guile, fraude, or male engine. King Edwards corporation.

21. Item no particular person, to hinder or preiudicate the common stocke of the companie, in sale or preferment of his owne proper wares, and things, and no particular emergent or purchase to be employed to any seuerall profite, vntill the common stocke of the companie shall be furnished, and no person to hinder the common benefite in such purchases or contingents, as shall fortune to any one of them, by his owne proper pollicie, industrie, or chance, nor no contention to rise in that behalfe, by any occasion of iewell, stone, pearles, pretious mettals, or other things of the region, where it shall chance the same to rise, or to be found, bought, trucked, permuted, or giuen: but euery person to be bounden in such case, and vpon such occasion, by order, and direction, as the Generall, Captaine, and the Councell shall establish and determine, to whose order and discretion the same is left: for that of things vncertaine, no certaine rules may or can be giuen.

22. Item not to disclose to any nation, the state of our religion, but to palle it ouer in silence, without any declaration of it, seeming to beare with such lawes, and rites, as the place hath, where you shall arriue.

23. Item for as much as our people, and shippes, may appeare vnto them strange and wonderous, and theirs also to ours: it is to be considered, howe they may be vsed, learning much of their natures, and dispositions, by some one such person, as you may first either allure, or take to be brought aboord your shippes, and there to learne as you may, without violence or force, and no woman to be tempted, or intreated to incontinencie, or dishonestie.

24. Item the person so taken, to be well entertained, vsed, and apparelled, to be set on land, to the intent that he or she may allure other to draw nigh to shewe the commodities: and if the person taken, may be made drunke with your beere, or wine, you shal knowe the secrets of his heart.

25. Item our people may not palle further into a land, then that they may be able to recouer their pinnelles, or ships, & not to credit the faire words of the strange people, which be many times tried subtile, and false, nor to be drawen into perill of losse, for the desire of golde, siluer, or riches, and esteeme your owne commodities aboue all other, and in countenance shewe not much to desire the forren commodities: neuerthelesse take them as for friendship, or by way of permutation.

26. Item euery nation and region is to be considered aduisedly, and not to prouoke them by any disdaine, laughing, contempt, or such like, but to vse them with prudent circumspection, with all gentlenes, and curtesie, and not to tary long in one place, vntill you shall haue attained the most

worthy

worthy place ꝑ may be found,in such sort,as you may returne wᵗ victuals sufficient,prosperously.

27. Item the names of the people of euery Island, are to be taken in writing, with the commodities,and incommodities of the same,their natures, qualities, and dispositions, the site of the same,and what things they are most desirous of,and what commodities they will most willingly depart wᵗ,& what mettals they haue in hils,mountaines,streames,or riuers,in,or vnder the earth.

28. Item if people shall appeare gathering of stones,golde, mettall,or other like,on the sand, your pinnesses may draw nigh, marking what thinges they gather, vsing or playing vpon the drumme,or such other instruments as may allure them to harkening to fantasie, or desire to see, and heare your instruments,and voices,but keepe you out of danger, and shewe to them no point or signe of rigour,or hostilitie.

29. Item if you shall be inuited into any Lords or Rulers house, to dinner,or other parliance, goe in such order of strength,that you may be stronger then they, and be warie of woods, and ambushes,and that your weapons be not out of your possessions.

30. Item if you shall see them weare Lyons or Beares skinnes, hauing long bowes, and arrowes,be not afraid of that sight: for such be worne often times more to feare strangers,then for any other cause.

31. Item there are people,that can swimme in the sea,hauens,& riuers,naked,hauing bowes and shafts,coueting to draw nigh your ships,which if they shal find not well watched, or warded, they will assalt,desirous of the bodies of men,which they couet for meate: if you resist them, they driue,and so will flee,and therefore diligent watch is to be kept both day & night,in some Islands.

32. Item if occasion shal serue,that you may giue aduertisements of your proceedings in such things as may correspond to the expectation of the company, and likelihood of successe in the voyage,passing such dangers of the seas,perils of ice, intollerable colde, and other impediments, which by sundry authors & writers, haue ministred matter of suspition in some heads, that this voyage could not succeede for the extremitie of the North pole,lacke of passage,& such like,which haue caused wauering minds,and doubtful heads,not onely to withdraw themselues from the venture of this voyage,but also dissuaded others from the same, the certaintie whereof,when you shall haue tried by experience (most certaine Master of all worldly knowledge) then for declaration of the trueth,which you shall haue experted,you may by common assent of counsell, sende either by land,or otherwaies,such two or one person,to bring the same by credite,as you shal think may passe in safetie: which sending is not to be done,but vpon vrgent causes, in likely successe of the voyage,in finding of passage,in towardlines of beneficiall traffike,or such other like, whereby the companie being aduertised of your estates and proceedings,may further prouide, foreset,and determine that, which may seeme most good and beneficiall for the publike wealth of the same: either prouiding before hand such thiugs, as shall be requisite for the continuance of the voyage, or els otherwise to dispose,as occasion shall serue: in which things your wisedomes and discretions are to be vsed,and shewed,and the contents of this capitule, by you much to be pondred, so that you be not ignorant,how many persons,as wel the kings Maiestie,the Lords of his honorable Counsell,this whole companie,as also your wiues,children,kinsfolkes,allies,friends,and familiars,be replenished in their hearts with ardent desire to learne and know your estates,conditions,and welfares,and in what likelihood you be in,to obtaine this notable enterprise,which is hoped no lesse to succeede to you,then the Orient and Occident Indias haue to the high benefit of the Emperour,and kings of Portingal,whose subiects industries,and trauailes by sea,haue inriched them,by those lands and Islands,which were to all Cosmographers, and other writers both vnknowne,and also by apparances of reason voide of experience thought and reputed vnhabitable for extremities of heates,and colds,and yet in deede tried most rich,peopled,temperate,and commodious,as all Europe hath not the like.

33. Item no conspiracies,partakings,factions,false tales, vntrue reports, which be the very seedes,& fruites of contention,discord,and confusion, by euil tongues to be suffred,but the same,& all other vngodlines to be chastned charitably with brotherly loue,and alwaies obedience to be vsed,and practised by al persons in their degrees,not onely for dutie, and conscience sake towards God, vnder whose mercifull hand nauigants aboue all other creatures, naturally be most nigh, and vicine,but also for prudent and worldly pollicie,and publike weale, considering and alwaies hauing present in your mindes that you be all one most royall kings subiects,and naturals,with dailie remembrance of the great importance of the voyage, the honour, glorie, praise, and benefite that depend of, and vpon the same, toward the common wealth of this noble Realme,the aduancement of you the trauelers therein, your wiues, and children,and so to endeuour your selues as that you may satisfie the expectation of them,who at their great costes, charges, and

expenses,

expenſes haue ſo furniſhed you in good ſort, and plentie of all neceſſaries, as the like was neuer in any Realme ſeene, vſed, or knowen requiſite and needefull, for ſuch an exploit, which is moſt likely to be atchieued, and brought to good effect, if euery perſon in his vocation, ſhall endeuour himſelfe according to his charge, and moſt bounden dutie: praying the liuing God, to giue you his grace, to accompliſh your charge to his glorie, whoſe merciſull hand ſhall proſper your voyage, and preſerue you from all dangers.

In witnes whereof, I Sebaſtian Cabota, Gouernour aforeſaid, to theſe preſent ordinances haue ſubſcribed my name, and put my ſeale, the day and yeare aboue written.

The names of the twelue Counſellors appointed in *this voyage.*

1 Sir Hugh Willoughbie Knight, Captaine Generall.
2 Richard Chancelor Captaine of the Edward Bonauenture, and Pilot generall of the fleete.
3 George Burton Cape Marchant.
4 Maſter Richard Stafford Miniſter.
5 Thomas Langlie Marchant.
6 Iames Dalabere Gentleman,
7 William Gefferſon Maſter of the Bona Speranza Admirall.
8 Stephen Burrowgh Maſter of the Edward Bonauenture.
9 Cornelius Durfurth Maſter of the Confidentia.
10 Roger Wilſon. } Maſters mates.
11 John Buckland. } Maſters mates.
12 Richard Ingram. } Maſters mates.

Exemplar Epiſtolæ ſeu literarum Miſsiuarum, quas illuſtriſsimus *Princeps Eduardus, eius nominis Sextus, Angliæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ* Rex, miſit ad Principes Septentrionalem, ac Orientalem mundi plagam inhabitantes iuxta mare glaciale, nec non Indiam Orientalem. Anno Domini 1553. Regni ſui anno ſeptimo, & vltimo.

EDuardus ſextus, Angliæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ Rex, &c. Omnibus Regibus & principibus ac dominis, & cunctis Iudicibus terræ, & Ducibus eius, quibuſcunque eſt excellens aliqua dignitas in ea, cunctis in locis quæ ſunt ſub vniuerſo cœlo: Pax, tranquillitas, & honor vobis, terris, & regionibus veſtris quæ imperio veſtro ſubiacent, cuique veſtrum quemadmodum conuenit ei. Propterea quòd indidit Deus Opt. Max. hominibus præ cunctis aliis viuentibus, cor & deſiderium tale, vt appetat quiſque cum aliis ſocietatem inire, amare, & viciſſim amari, beneficijs afficere, & mutua accipere beneficia ſtudeat, ideò cuique pro facultate ſua hoc deſiderium in omnibus quidem hominibus beneficijs fouere & conſeruare conuenit, in illis autem maximè, qui hoc deſiderio adducti, à remotis etiam regionibus ad eos veniunt. Quo enim longius iter eius rei gratia ingreſſi ſunt, eò ardentius in eis hoc deſiderium fuiſſe declararunt. Inſuper etiam ad hoc, nos patrum maiorúmque noſtrorum exempla inuitant, qui ſemper humaniſſimè ſuſceperunt & benigniſſimè tractauerunt illos, qui tum à locis propinquis, tum à remotis, eos amicè adibant, eorum ſe protectioni commendantes. Quod ſi omnibus id præſtare æquum eſt, certè mercatoribus imprimis præſtari debet, qui per vniuerſum orbem diſcurrunt, mare circumluſtrantes & aridam, vt res bonas & vtiles, quæ Dei beneficio in regione eorum inueniuntur, ad remotiſſimas regiones & regna adferant, atque inde viciſſim referant, quòd ſuæ regioni vtile ibi repererint: vt & populi ad quos eunt, non deſtituantur commodis quæ non profert illis terra eorum, & ipſi ſint participes rerum quibus illi abundant. Nam Deus cœli & terræ, humano generi maximè conſulens, noluit vt omnia in quauis regione inuenirentur, quò regio ope alterius regionis indigeret, & gens ab alia gente commodum aliquod expectaret, ac ita ſtabiliretur amicitia inter omnes, ſingulíque omnibus benefacere quærerent. Hoc itaque ineundæ ac ſtabiliendæ amicitiæ deſiderio moti viri quidam regni noſtri, iter in remotas maritimas regiones inſtituerunt, vt inter noſtros & illos populos, viam mercibus inferendis & efferendis aperirent, nóſque rogauerunt vt id illis concederemus. Qui

petitioni

petitioni illorum annuentes, concessimus viro honorabili & forti, Hugoni Willibeo, & aliis qui cum eo sunt setuis nostris fidis & charis, vt pro sua voluntate, in regiones eis prius incognitas eant, quæsituri ea quibus nos caremus, & adducant illis ex nostris terris, id quo illi careant. Atque ita illis & nobis commodum inde accedat, sitque amicitia perpetua, & fœdus indissolubile inter illos & nos, dum permittent illi nos accipere de rebus, quibus superabundant in regnis suis, & nos concedemus illis ex regnis nostris res, quibus destituuntur. Rogamus itaque vos Reges & Principes, & omnes quibus aliqua est potestas in terra, vt viris istis nostris, transitum permittatis per regiones vestras. Non enim tangent quicquam ex rebus vestris inuitis vobis. Cogitate quòd homines & ipsi sunt. Et si qua re caruerint, oramus pro vestra beneficentia, eam vos illis tribuatis, accipientes vicissim ab eis, quod poterunt rependere vobis. Ita vos gerite erga eos, quemadmodum cuperetis vt nos, & subditi nostri, nos gereremus erga seruos vestros, si quando transierint per regiones nostras. Atque promittimus vobis per Deum omnium qui cœlo, terra & mari continentur, pérque vitam nostram, & tranquillitatem regnorum nostrorum, nos pari benignitate seruos vestros accepturos, si ad regna nostra aliquando venerint. Atque à nobis & subditis nostris, ac si nati fuissent in regnis nostris ita benignè tractabuntur, vt rependamus vobis benignitatem, quam nostris exhibueritis. Postquam vos Reges, Principes, &c. rogauimus, vt humanitate & beneficentia omni prosequamini seruos nostros nobis charos, oramus omnipotentem Deum nostrum, vt vobis diuturnam vitam largiatur, & pacem quæ nullam habeat finem. Scriptum Londini, quæ ciuitas est primaria regni nostri. Anno 5515. à creato mundo, mense Iiar, 14. die mensis, anno septimo regni nostri.

The copie of the letters missiue, which the right noble Prince *Edward the sixt, sent to the Kings, Princes, and other Potentates, inhabiting* the Northeast partes of the world, toward the mightie Empire of Cathay, at such time as Sir Hugh Willoughby knight, and Richard Chancelor, with their companie, attempted their voyage thither in the yeere of Christ, 1553. and the seuenth and last yeere of his raigne.

EDward the sixt, by the grace of God, King of England, France, and Ireland, &c. To all Kings, Princes, Rulers, Iudges, and Gouernours of the earth, and all other hauing any excellent dignitie on the same, in all places vnder the vniuersall heauen: peace, tranquillitie, and honour, be vnto you, and your lands and regions, which are vnder your dominions, and to euery of you, as is conuenient.

Forasmuch as the great and Almightie God hath giuen vnto mankind, aboue all other liuing creatures, such a heart and desire, that euery man desireth to ioyne friendship with other, to loue, and be loued, also to giue and receaue mutuall benefites: it is therefore the duetie of all men, according to their power, to maintaine and increase this desire in euery man, with well deseruing to all men, and especially to shewe this good affection to such, as being moued with this desire, come vnto them from farre Countreis. For howe much the longer voyage they haue attemped for this intent, so much the more doe they thereby declare that this desire hath bene ardent in them. Furthermore also, the examples of our fathers and predecessors doe inuite vs hereunto, forasmuch as they haue euer gently and louingly intreated such as of friendly minde came to them, aswell from Countreis neere hand, as farre remote, commending themselues to their protection. And if it be right and equitie to shewe such humanitie toward all men, doubtlesse the same ought chiefly to be shewed to Marchants, who wandering about the world, search both the land and the sea, to carry such good and profitable things, as are found in their Countreis, to remote regions and kingdomes, and againe to bring from the same, such things as they finde their commodious for their owne Countreis: both aswell that the people, to whome they goe, may not be destitute of such commodities as their Countreis bring not forth to them, as that also they may be partakers of such thinges, whereof they abound. For the God of heauen and earth, greatly prouiding for mankinde, would not that all things should be founde in one region, to the ende that one should haue neede of another, that by this meanes friendshippe might be established among all men, and euery one seeke to gratifie all. For the establishing and furtherance of which vniuersall amitie, certaine men of our Realme, mooued hereunto by the same desire, haue instituted and taken vpon them a voyage by sea into farre Countreies, to the intent that betweene our people and them, a way may be opened to bring in, & carry out marchan-

dis

zes, desiring vs to further their enterprise. Who assenting to their petition, haue licensed the right valiant and worthy sir Hugh Willoughby, knight, and other our trustie and faithfull seruants, which are with him, according to their desire, to goe to Countreies to them heretofore vnknowen, aswell to seeke such things as we lacke, as also to cary vnto them from our regions, such things as they lacke. So that hereby not only commoditie may ensue both to them and vs, but also an indissoluble and perpetuall league of friendship be established betweene vs both, while they permit vs to take of their things such whereof they haue abundance in their regions, and we againe grant them such things of ours, whereof they are destitute. We therefore desire you kings & princes, and al other, to whome there is any power on the earth, to permit vnto these our seruants, free passage by your regions and dominions: for they shall not touch any thing of yours vnwilling vnto you. Consider you that they also are men. If therefore they shall stand in neede of any thing, we desire you of all humanitie, and for the nobilitie which is in you, to aide and helpe them with such things as they lacke, receiuing againe of them such things as they shall be able to giue you in recompence. Shew your selues so towards them, as you would that we and our subiects should shew our selues towards your seruants, if at any time they shall passe by our regions.

Thus doing, we promise you by the God of all things that are contained in heauen, earth, and the sea, and by the life and tranquillitie of our kingdomes, that we will with like humanitie accept your seruants, if at any time they shall come to our kingdomes, where they shall as friendly and gently be entertained, as if they were borne in our Dominions, that we may hereby recompence the fauour and benignitie which you haue shewed to our men. Thus after we haue desired you Kings and princes, &c. With all humanity and fauour, to entertaine our welbeloued seruants, we will pray our Almightie God, to grant you long life, and peace, which neuer shall haue ende. Written in London, which is the chiefe Citie of our kingdome, in the yeere from the creation of the world, 5515. in the moneth of Iiar, the fourteenth day of the moneth, and seuenth yeere of our raigne.

Iiar. I would read Iiar, that is in the Saracen language, mixt of Turkish and Aegyptian, Februarie, interpreted by them the moneth to set ships to the sea

This letter was written also in Greeke, and diuers other languages.

The true copie of a note found written in one of the two ships, *to wit, the* Speranza, *which wintred in Lappia, where sir Hugh Willoughby*, and all his companie died, being frozen to death. Anno 1553.

THe voyage intended for the discouerie of Cathay, and diuers other regions, dominions, Ilands, and places vnknowen, set forth by the right worshipfull, Master Sebastian Cabota, Esquire, and Gouernour of the mysterie and companie of the Marchants Aduenturers of the Citie of London: which fleete being furnished, did set forth the tenth day of May, 1553. and in the seuenth yeere of our most dread Soueraigne Lord, and King, Edward the sixt,

The names of the shippes of the fleete, and of their burden, together with the names of the Captaines, and Counsellors, Pilot Maior, Masters of the shippes, Marchants, with other officers, and Marriners, as hereafter followeth.

The Bona Esperanza, Admirall of the fleete, of 120. tunnes, hauing with her a pinnesse, and a boate.

Sir Hugh Willoughby, knight, Captaine Generall of the fleete. The first ship.
William Gefferson, Master of the shippe.
Roger Wilson, his Mate.
William Gittons, Charles Barret, Gabriel Willoughby, John Andrewes, Alexander Woodfoord, Ralfe Chatterton, Marchants.

Marriners and officers, according to the custome and vse of the Seas,
John Brooke, Master Gunner.
Nicholas Anthony, Boate swaine.
John Webb, his Mate.
Christopher Banbrucke, Thomas Dauison, Robert Rosse, Thomas Simpson, quarter Masters.
William White, James Smith, Thomas Painter, John Smith, their Mates.
Richard Gwinne, George Golswine, Carpenters.

Robert

Robert Gwinne, Purser.
Laurence Edwards, his Mate, and Cowper.
Richard Morgan, Cooke.
Thomas Nashe, his Mate.
VVilliam Light, Iohn Brande, Cutbert Chelsie, George Blage, Thomas VValker, Thomas Allen, Edward Smith, Edward Hunt, Iohn Fawkner, Rowland Brooke.
Alexander Gardiner, Richard Molton, Surgeons, which two were taken in at Harwiche.
Discharged at Harwiche, by reason of sicknes, George Blake, Nicholas Anthony.
For pickerie ducked at the pardes arme, and so discharged Thomas Nashe.

The second shippe.

The Edward Bonauenture, of 160. tunnes, with her a pinnesse, and a boate.
Richard Chancelor, Captaine, and Pilot Maior of the fleete.
Stephen Burrowgh, Master of the shipp.
Iohn Buckland, his Mate.
George Burton, Arthur Edwards, Marchants.
Iohn Stafford, Minister.
Iames Dallaber, Nicholas Newborrow, Iohn Segswike, Thomas Francis, Iohn Hasse, Richard Iohnson, VVilliam Kempe.

Marriners and officers, according to the custome and vse of the Seas.

Robert Stanton, Master Gunner.
Iohn VValker, his Mate.
Iames Longe, Iohn Cocks, Gunners.
Thomas VValter, Surgeon.
Peter Palmer, Boateswaine.
Richard Strowde, his Mate.
Iohn Robinson, Iohn Carowe, Thomas Stone, Robert Lishbie, quarter Masters.
Iohn Austen, Steward: Patricke Steuens, his Mate.
Austen Iacks, Cooke.
VVilliam Euery, Cowper.
Griffin VVagham, Carpenter.
Thomas Stelton, Thomas Townes, Iohn Robinson, Iohn White, William Laurence, Miles Butter, Iohn Browne, William Morren, William Watson, Thomas Handcocks, Edward Pascie, Thomas Browne, Arthur Pet, George Phibarie, Edward Patterson, William Beare, Iohn Potter, Nicholas Lawrence, William Burrowgh, Roger Welford, Iohn Williams.

William Burrough, nowe Clerke of her Maiesties nauie.

The third ship

The Bona Confidentia, of 90. tunnes, hauing with her a pinnesse, and a boate.
Cornelius Durfoorth, Master of the shippe.
Richard Ingram, his Mate.
Thomas Langlie, Edward Keuer, Henrie Dorset, Marchants.

Mariners and officers, according to the vse and customes of the Sea.

Henrie Tailer, Master Gunner.
George Thurland, his Mate.
William Hamane, Boateswaine.
Iohn Edwards, his Mate.
Thomas Kirbie, Henrie Dickenson, Iohn Haye, William Shepwash, quarter Masters.
Iohn Reine, Steward.
Thomas Hante, Cooke. William Lassie, his Mate.
Nicholas Knight, Carpenter.
Peter Lewike, Nicholas Wiggleworth, Iohn Moore, William Chapman, Brian Chester, William Barrie, Richard Wood, Clement Gibson, Iohn Clarocke, Erasmus Bently, Iohn Durforth.

The *Iuramentum*, or othe, ministred to the Captaine.

YOu shall sweare to be a faithfull, true, and loyall subiect in all points and duties, that to a subiect appertaineth, to our Soueraigne Lord, the Kings Maiestie, his heires, and successours: that you shall wel and truely, to the vttermost of your capacitie, wit, and knowledge, serue this present voyage, committed to your charge, and not to giue vp, nor sooner intermit the same, vntill you shall haue atchieued the same, so farre forth, as you may without danger of your life, and life of the fleete: you shall giue good, true, and faithfull counsell to the said societie, and to such as shall haue

haue the charge with or vnder you, and not to disclose the secrets, or pryuities of the same to any person by any maner of meane, to the preiudice, hurt, or damage of it. You shall minister iustice to all men vnder your charge, without respect of person, or any affection, that might moone you to decline from the true ministration of iustice. And further, you shall obserue, and cause to be obserued, as much as in you lieth, all and singular such rules, articles, prouisions hitherto made, or hereafter to be made for the preseruation or safeconduct of the fleet and voyage, and benefit of the company. You shall not permit nor suffer the stocke or goods of the company to be wasted, imbezeled, or consumed, but shall conserue the same whole and entyre, without diminishment, vntill you shall haue deliuered, or cause to be deliuered the same, to the vse of the company. And finally you shall vse your selfe in all points, sorts, and conditions, as to a faithfull captaine, and brother of this company shall belong and appertaine: So helpe you God, &c.

The othe ministred to the Maister of *the shippe, &c.*

YOu shall sweare by the holy contents in that booke, that you according, and to the vttermost of your knowledge, and good vnderstanding in mariners science and craft, shall in your vocation doe your best to conduct the good shippe called the N. &c. whereof you now are Maister vnder God, both vnto and from the portes of your discouerie, and so vse your indeuour and faithfull diligence, in charging, discharging, lading againe, and roomaging of the same shippe, as may be most for the benefit and profit of this right worshipfull fellowshippe: and you shall not priuately bargen, buy, sell, exchange, barter, or distribute any goods, wares, merchandize, or things whatsoeuer (necessarie tackles and victualles for the shippe onely excepted) to or for your owne lucre, gaine or profit, neither to nor for the priuate lucre, gaine, or profit of any other person or persons whatsoeuer. And further, If you shall know any boatswaine, mariner, or any other person or persons whatsoeuer, to buy, sell, barter, trucke, or exchange any goods, wares, merchandizes, or thinges for priuate account, reckoning or behalfe, you shall doe your best to withstand and let the same: and if you can not commodiously so doe, that then before the discharge of such goods bought for priuat accoūt, you shall giue knowledge therof to the Cape merchant of this said fellowship for the time being. And you shall not receiue nor take, nor suffer to be receiued or taken into your said shippe during this voyage any maner person or persons whatsoeuer, going or returning, but onely those mariners which without fraud or guile shall be hyred to be of your company, and to serue in mariners craft and science onely: So helpe you God, &c.

These foresaid shippes being fully furnished with their pinnesses and boates, well appointed with all maner of artillery, and other things necessarie for their defence with all the men aforesaid, departed from Ratcliffe, and haled vnto Detforth, the 10 day of May, 1553.

The 11 day about two of the clocke, we departed from Detforth, passing by Greenewich, saluting the kings Maiestie then being there, shooting off our ordinance, & so haled vnto Blackewall, and there remained vntill the 17 day, and that day in the morning we went from Blackewall, and came to Woolwich by nine of the clocke, and there remained one tide, and so the same night vnto Heyneth. Mar.

The 18 day from Heyneth vnto Grauesend, and there remained vntill the twentith day: that day being Saturday, from Grauesend vnto Tilberie Hope, remaining there vntill the two and twentith day.

The 22 day from Tylberie Hope to Hollie hauen.

The 23 day from Hollie hauen, till we came against Lee, and there remained that night, by reason that the winde was contrary to vs.

The 24 day the winde being in the Southwest in the morning, we sailed along the coast ouer the Spits, vntill we came against S. Olyth, about sixe of the clocke at night, and there came to anker, and abode there all that night.

The 25 day about ten of the clocke, we departed from S. Olyth, and so sailed forward vnto the Nase, and there abode that night for winde and tide.

The 26 day at fiue of the clocke in the morning, we weyed our anker, and sailed ouer the Nase, the winde being at the Southwest, vntill we came to Harwell wands, and there came to an anker, and abode there vntill the 28 day.

The same day being Trinitie sunday about 7 of the clocke before noone we weyed our ankers,

and sailed till we came athwart Walsurye, and there came to an anker.

The 29 day from thence to Holmehead, where we staied that day, where we consulted which way, and what courses were best to be holden for the discouerie of our voyage, and there agreed.

The 30 day of May at fiue of the clocke in the morning we set saile, and came against Yermouth about three leagues into the sea, riding there at anker all that night.

The last of May into the sea sixe leagues Northeast, and there tarried that night, where the winde blew very sore.

Iune. The first of Iune the winde being at North contrary to vs, we came backe againe to Harewell, and remained there vntill the 15 day, tarying for the winde, for all this time the winde was contrary to our purpose.

The 15 day being at Harewell in the latitude of 52 degrees, in the morning we waied our ankers, and went foorth into the wands about two miles from the towne, and lay there that night.

The 16 day at eight of the clocke we set forward, and sailed vntill we came athwart Alborough, and there staied that night.

The 17 day about fiue of the clocke before noone we went backe vnto Orfordnesse, and there remained vntill the 19 day.

The 19 day at eight of the clocke in the morning we went backe to Harewell, and abode there three dayes tarying for the winde.

The 23 day of Iune the winde being faire in the Southwest we hailed into the seas to Orfordnesse, and from thence into the seas ten leagues Northeast: then being past the sands, we changed our course sixe leagues Northnortheast: about midnight we changed our course againe, and went due North continuing in the same vnto the 27 day.

The 27 day about seuen of the clocke Northnorthwest 42 leagues, to the end to fall with Shotland: then the winde veared to the West, so that we could lie but North and by West, continuing in the same course 40 leagues, whereby we could not fetch Shotland: then we sailed North 16 leagues by estimation, after that North and by West, and Northnorthwest, then Southeast, with diuers other courses, trauersing and tracing the seas, by reason of sundrie and manifold contrary windes, vntill the 14 day of July: and then the sunne entring into Leo, we discouered land Eastward of vs, vnto the which we sailed that night as much as we might: and after we went on shore with our pinnesse, and found little houses to the number of 30, where we knew that it was inhabited, but the people were fled away, as we iudged, for feare of vs.

July.

In this land liueth Oether, as it seemeth.

The land was all full of little Islands, and that innumerable, which were called (as we learned afterwards) Aegeland and Halgeland, which lieth from Foythnesse North and by east, being in the latitude of 66 degrees. The distance betweene Orthfoythnesse and Aegeland 250 leagues. Then we sailed from thence 12 leagues Northwest, and found many other Islandes, and then came to an anker the 19 day, and manned our pinnesse, and went on shore to the Islands, and found people mowing and making of hay, which came to the shore and welcomed vs. In which place

Rost Islands. were an innumerable sort of Islands, which were called the Isles of Rost, being vnder the dominion of the king of Denmarke: which place was in latitude 66 degrees, and 30 minuts. The winde being contrary, we remained there three dayes, and there was an innumerable sort of fowles of diuers kindes, of which we tooke very many.

The 22 day the winde comming faire, we departed from Rost, sailing Northnortheast, keeping the sea vntill the 27 day, and then we drew neere vnto the land, which was still East of vs: then went foorth our pinnesse to seeke harborow, and found many good harbours, of the which we

Stanfew harbour. entred into one with our shippes, which was called Stanfew, and the land being Islandes, were called Lewfoot, or Lofoot, which were plentifully inhabited, and very gentle people, being all vnder the king of Denmarke: but we could not learne howfarre it was from the maine land: and we remained there vntill the 30 day, being in latitude 68 degrees, & from the fore said Rost about 30 leagues Northnortheast.

August. The 30 day of July about noone we weyed our ankers, and went into the Seas, and sayled long these Islandes Northnortheast, keeping the land still in sight vntill the second day of August: then haling in close aboord the land, to the intent to knowe what lande it was, there came a skiffe of the Island aboord of vs, of whom we asked many questions, who shewed vnto vs, that the

Seynam. Island was called Seynam, which is the latitude of seuentie degrees, and from Stanfew three leagues, being also vnder the king of Denmarke, and that there was no merchandize there, but onely dryed fish, and traine oyle. Then we being purposed to goe vnto Finmarke, inquired of him, if we might haue a pilot to bring vs vnto Finmarke, & he said, that if we could beare in, we should haue a good harbour, and on the next day a pilot to bring vs to Finmarke, vnto the warthouse,

which

which is the strongest holde in Finmarke, and most resorted to by report. But when we would haue entred into an harbour, the land being very high on euery side, there came such flawes of winde, and terrible whirlwindes, that we were not able to beare in, but by violence were constrained to take the sea againe, our pinnesse being vnshipt: we sailed North and by East, the winde increasing so sore that we were not able to beare any saile, but tooke them in, and lay adrift, to the end to let the storme ouer passe. And that night by violence of winde, and thickenesse of mists, we were not able to keepe together within sight, and then about midnight we lost our pinnesse, which was a discomfort vnto vs. Alsoone as it was day, and the fogge ouerpast, we looked about, and at the last we descryed one of our shippes to Leeward of vs: then we spyed an hullocke of our foresaile, and bare roome with her, which was the Confidence, but the Edward we could not see. Then the flaw something abating, we and the Confidence hoysed by our sailes the fourth day, sayling Northeast and by North, to the end to fall with the Wardhouse, as we did consult to do before, in case we should part company. Thus running Northeast and by North, and Northeast fiftie leagues, then we sounded, and had 160 fadoms, whereby we thought to be farre from land, and perceiued that the land lay not as the Globe made mention. Wherefore we changed our course the first day, and sailed Southeast and by South eight and fortie leagues, thinking thereby to finde the Wardhouse. Sir Hugh Willoughbie looseth the sight of the Edward.

The eight day much winde rising at the West Northwest, we not knowing how the coast lay, strooke our sailes, and lay adrift, where we sounded, and found 160 fadoms as afore.

The ninth day, the winde bearing to the South Southeast, we sailed Northeast 25 leagues.

The tenth day we sounded, and could get no ground, neither yet could see any land, whereat we wondered: then the winde comming at the Northeast, we ranne Southeast about 48 leagues.

The 11 day, the winde being at South, we sounded, and found 40 fadoms, and faire sand.

The 12 day, the winde being at South and by East, we lay with our saile East, and East and by North 30 leagues.

The 14 day earely in the morning, we descryed land, which land we bare with all, hoising out our boat to discouer what land it might be: but the boat could not come to land the water was so shoale, where was very much yse also, but there was no similitude of habitation, and this land lyeth from Seynam East and by North 160 leagues, being in latitude 72 degrees. Then we plyed to the Northward the 15, 16 and 17 day. Willoughbies land, in 72 degrees.

The 18 day, the winde comming at the Northeast, and the Confidence being troubled with bilge water, and stocked, we thought it good to seeke harbour for her redresse: then we bare roome the 18 day Southsoutheast, about 70 leagues.

The 21 day we sounded, and found 10 fadome, after that we sounded againe, and found but 7 fadome, so shoalder and shoalder water, and yet could see no land, where we maruelled greatly: to auoid this danger, we bare roomer into the sea all that night Northwest and by West.

The next day we sounded, and had 20 fadoms, then shaped our course, and ranne West Southwest vntill the 23 day: then we descried Lowe land, vnto which we bare as nigh as we could, and it appeared vnto vs vnhabitable. Then we plyed Westward along by that land, which lyeth West Southwest, and East Northeast, and much winde blowing at the West, we haled into the sea North and by East 30 leagues. Then the winde comming about at the Northeast, we sayled West Northwest: after that, the winde bearing to the Northwest, we lay with our sailes West southwest, about 14 leagues, and then descryed land, and bare in with it, being the 28 day, finding shoale water, and bare in till we came to 3 fadome, then perceiuing it to be shoale water, and also seeing yse sands, we haled out againe Northeast along that land vntill we came to the point thereof. That land turning to the Westward, we ranne along 16 leagues Northwest: then comming into a fayre bay, we went on land with our boat, which place was vnhabited, but yet it appeared vnto vs that the people had bene there, by crosses, and other signes: from thence we went all along the coast Westward.

The fourth day of September we lost sight of land, by reason of contrary windes, and the eight day we descried land againe. Within two dayes after we lost the sight of it: then running West and by South about 30 leagues, we gat the sight of land againe, and bare in with it vntill night: then perceiuing it to be a lee shoare, we gat vs into the sea, to the end to haue sea roome. September.

The 12 of September we haled to shoareward againe, hauing then indifferent winde and weather: then being neere vnto the shoare, and the tide almost spent, we ranne to an anker in 30 fadoms water.

The 13 day we came along the coast, which lay Northwest & by West, & Southeast & by East.

The 14 day we came to an anker within two leagues of the the shoare, hauing 60 fadoms.

There we went a shore with our boat, and found two or three good harboroughs, the land being rocky, and high, but as for people could we see none. The 15 day we ranne still along the coast vntill the 17 day: then the winde being contrary vnto vs, we thought it best to returne vnto the harboz which we had found before, and so we bare roomer with the same, howbeit we could not accomplish our desire that day. The next day being the 18 of September, we entred into the hauen, and there came to an anker at 6 fadoms. This hauen runneth into the maine, about two leagues, and is in bredth halfe a league, wherein were very may seale fishes, and other great fishes, and vpon the maine we saw beares, great deere, foxes, with diuers strange beasts, as ‖ guloines, and such other which were to vs vnknowne, and also woonderfull. Thus remaining in this hauen the space of a weeke, seeing the yeere farre spent, and also very euill wether, as frost, snow, and haile, as though it had beene the deepe of winter, we thought best to winter there. Wherefore we sent out three men Southsouthwest, to search if they could finde people, who went three dayes iourney, but could finde none: after that, we sent other three Westward foure dayes iourney, which also returned without finding any people. Then sent we three men Southeast three dayes iourney, who in like sort returned without finding of people, or any similitude of habitation.

In this hauen they died.

‖ Or, Ellons.

Here endeth Sir Hugh Willoughbie his note, which was written with his owne hand.

These two notes following, were written vpon the outside of this Pamphlet, or Booke.

1 The proceedings of Sir Hugh Willoughbie after he was separated from the Edward Bonauenture.

2 Our shippe being at an anker in the harbour called Sterfier in the Iland Lofoote.

The riuer or hauen wherein Sir Hugh Willoughbie with the companie of his two shippes perished for colde, is called Arzina in Lapland, neere vnto Kegor.

The Testimonie of M. Richard Eden in his Decades, *concerning this Booke.*

AND whereas (saith he) I haue before made mention how Moscouie was in our time discouered, by Richard Chancelor in his voyage toward Cathay, by the direction and information of M. Sebastian Cabota, who long before had this secret in his minde: I shall not need heere to describe that voyage, forasmuch as the same is largely and faithfully written in the Latine tongue, by that learned young man Clement Adams, schoolemaister of the Queenes henshmen, as he receiued it at the mouth of the said Richard Chancelor.

Noua Anglorum, ad Moscouitas nauigatio Hugone Willowbeio *Equite classis præfecto, & Richardo Cancelero Nauarcho.*

Authore Clemente Adamo, Anglo.

Quas ob causas suscepta sit hęc nauigatio, & quibus authoribus & de nauigatione ad Moscouitarum fines.

POstquam merces nostras apud finitimas gentes sordere negotiatores nostri animaduerterunt, quæq; auorum nostrorum memoria certatim a peregrinis mercatoribus expeterentur, imminuto iam precio, etiam exportatæ fastidiosum reperirent emptorem, exoticarum verò mercium precia in immensum extenderentur, Londinenses quidam viri graues ac reipub. suæ imprimis amantes hanc cogitationem susceperunt, quò huic malo mederentur. Nec quærentibus (vt videbatur) remedium defuit, quo tantum incommodum declinarent. Nam cum Hispanorum ac Lusitanorum opes (inuentis nuper nouis terris) magnoperè auctas viderent, eandem viam sibi insistendam rati, nouam nauigationem instituunt. Cum eodem tempore Sebastianus Cabota vir celeberrimus in vrbe moraretur, cœpêre primo cum illo agere, ac seriò consultare, ac re demum inter plures iactata, tandem conuenit tres naues expedire, quibus aquilonaris mundi tractus diligenter perlustratus, nostris etiam pateret, atq; ad ignota regna viam patefaceret. Ad hanc rem tam arduam & difficilem, cum multa forent dispicienda, primum veluti in senatum quendam viros graues, ac prudentiæ spectatæ legunt, qui collatis consilijs sententias suas exponerent, & in omnem euentum salubriter prospicerent. Lectus hic senatulus censuit in rem fore quandam pecuniæ summam publicè cogi, qua tot naues instruerentur. Et ne quisquam priuatim graui pecunia premeretur, placuit vicenas quinas libras viritim colligi: (tantum enim impendebat) qui in hoc quasi nouum collegium voluit ascisci.) Coacta itaq; ad sex millia librarum summa

Sebastianus Cabota.

Sex millia librarum coacta.

tres

tres naues mercantur, quarum maximam partem de integro ædificandam, ac reficiendam curant. Qua quidem in re, mereatorumne cura, an fabrorum diligentia, maiori me afficiat admiratione, penitus eſt incertum. Illi enim aſſamenta firmiſſima pulchreq; ſiccata ad nauium fabricam comparant: hi indefeſſo labore, ac arte ſumma, eadem inter ſe committunt, rimis ſtupa obſtructis, ac carinis picatis, vnius etiam imam partem inuento peracri, & ingenioſo muniuerunt. Acceperant enim in quibuſdam Oceani partibus teredines generari, quæ vel craſſiſſima etiamnum robora perforarent. Quo magis ab hoc periculo nauigantes forent ſecuri, partem nauis vndis depreſſam, tenuibus plumbi laminis obducunt. Poſt fabricatas naues, ac armamentis inſtructas, cepit illos non minor viatici ſollicitudo: quod pro temporis ratione, & nauigationis longinquitate fuerat proſpiciendum. Ad hæc, cum proſpicerent Orientalem orbis plagam eſſe petendam, nec illuc peruium mare, niſi Borealem mundi tractũ naucleri tenerent, vbi an pateret aditus iam tum in incerto erat: octodecim menſium commeatu naues inſtruunt, quod quidem hoc conſilio faciunt: cum noſtris per illam immenſi, & horrendi frigoris oram fuerat traijciendũ, prudenter in rem conſulentes, ſex menſium cibaria præbent, quo illuc nauigare, totidem menſium, quo ibi moram facere hiberno cœlo reditum negante: rurſum tantundem quo remeare poſſint, aſſignant. Poſt repoſitam (vt diximus) penũ, poſt arma omnis generis in naues congeſta, Duces ac quaſi anteſignani tantæ rei deerant: cui etſi multi ſeſe offerrent viri rerum ancipitum ignari, tamen Hugo Willowbeius vir imprimis ſtrenuus, ac non obſcuro loco natus, hanc curam ſibi delegari impenſius poſtulat, cuius facile præ cæteris, cum ob corporis formam (erat enim proceræ ſtaturæ) tum ob ſingularem in re bellica induſtriam a mercatorum collegio habetur ratio. Conſtituitur ergo Nauarchus, aſſignaturq; illi nauis prætoria, ſic vt in cæteras quoq; imperium haberet. Cum de reliquarum præfectis conſultaretur, ac huic muneri multi offerentur, omnium conſenſu vicit Richardus Cancelerus, vir ob multa ingenij documenta ſpectabilis, in quo vno ſumma conficiendi negotij ſpes erat. Hunc aluerat Henricus Sydneius, adoleſcens nobilis, Regiq; Edouardo apprimè charus, qui mercatorum collegium adiens, pro ſingulari ſua facundia coràm in hanc ſententiam verba fecit.

Teredines quæ naues perforant.

Hugo Willowbeius Nauarchus.

Richardus Cancelerus.

Vehementer pium inſtitutum veſtrum amplector (viri honeſtiſſimi) qui pro egregia veſtra erga patriam pietate in rem, & Anglis (vt ſpero) vtilem, ac patriæ honorificam, animo & cogitatione incumbitis. Quem quidem conatum veſtrum, nos quoq; pro viribus adiuuare paramur: nec quicquam nobis tam charum ducimus, quod non libenter huius tam laudabilis propoſiti nomine expenderimus. Imprimiſque mihi gratulor, me illud ingenium fouiſſe, quod vobis tam præclara molientibus, aliquo modo vſui eſſe poſſit. Nihilominus tamen, vos huius rei neſcios eſſe nolim: me Cancelerum eo animo a me dimittere, non quod faſtidiam, vel quod mihi grauis alumnus eſſe videatur, ſed vt promptam in adiuuando veſtro conſilio voluntatem meam pariter intelligeretis, atq; Cancelero meo commendatione mea a vobis debita tribueretur authoritas. Vos illum fama, ego illum experientia, vos verbis, ego rebus, vos ſermone & congreſſu, ego quotidiano conuictu hominis ingenium penitus habeo perſpectum, & exploratum: Nec latere vos debet, (honeſtiſſimi patres) quanta diſcrimina, & veſtro, & patriæ nomine, aditurus eſt. Cuius (ſi propicia numina proficiſcentem ſeruent) nos non immemores eſſe decebit. Nos pecuniolam fortunæ aleæ credimus, ille dulciſſimam vitam ſæuiſſimo mari, & incertis periculorum caſibus exponet. Nos cum notis, amicis, ac cognatis ſuauem, ac placidam vitam tranſigemus, ille dum ignotos, & indomitos nautas in officio continere ſtudebit, quantis laboribus frangetur? quot curis, vigiliijſq; angetur? quas moleſtias deuorare cogetur? Nos patrias ſedes tenebimus, ille extera & ignota regna petet: Ille Barbaris & feris gentibus ſalutem committet, ille etiam monſtrificis ponti belluis caput obiectabit. Quapropter pro periculorum magnitudine, pro officij ſui dignitate, veſtro fauore abeuntem proſequi, & (ſi fors ferat) vt conſpiciamus reducem, liberaliter quoq; munerari conueniet.

Oratio D. Henrici Sydneij.

Poſtquam hæc, aut non longe alia, multo diſertiſſimè egregius adoleſcens peroraſſet, alius illum contemplari, alius a proximo ſciſcitari, alius (cui nota viri virtus) tacite gaudere, ac arcanam ſpem concipere, illum olim in magnum virũ euaſurum, atq; putare inchoatas has adoleſcentis virtutes magnoperè olim patriam ornaturas. Conticeſcentibus omnibus, grauiſſimis patrum viſum eſt, de orientali orbis tractu quoad eius fieri poteſt ſciſcitari, inueſtigare, ac diligenter perquirere: accerſebantur hoc nomine Tartari duo, qui regi erant ab Equili: aderat interpres, illi per interpretem ſuper patria, ſuper gente, ſuper patrio more interrogati, nihil penitus reſponderunt. Quippe qui (vt falſè quidam palam dixit) poculis exhauriendis potius, quã populorũ moribus diſcendis magis erant aſſueti. Poſt multa vltrò citroq; iactata, tandẽ cenſent, ſoluendi tempus conſtitui, q̃ multum anni iam conſumptũ viſum eſt pleriſq;, & ſi prolixiorem

moram imterponerent, fore vt glacies viam obstrueret. Placuit itaq́, omnibus, vt ad vigessimum diem Maij præfecti, nautæq́; naues conscenderent: ac ex portu Radlifensi, secundo æstu soluerent. Illi salutatis necessarijs, alius coniuge & natis, alius cognatis & affinibus, alius amico cognatis chariore, ad dictum diem adsunt: solutis iam nauibus, ac reciprocante æstu, leni cursu Grenouicum feruntur, remigibus interim grandiores naues celocibus, seu speculatorijs nauiculis remultantibus. Hi nouo vestitu coloris Veneti eleganter ornati, incumbunt remis atq́; æquora verrunt. Cùm nunc proximè Grenouicensem Regiam essent, sub aduenientium famam, effundunt sese aulici, concurrit vulgus, stabat frequens in ripa, prospectat ex fenestris Senatus Regius; alij turrium fastigia ascendunt, vibrantur bombardarum fulmina, Tartariæ voluuntur nubes, Martem sonant crepitacula, reboant summa montium iuga, reboant valles, reboant vndæ, claráque Nautarum percellit sydera clamor, stat alius in puppi, ac gestu quo potest amicis valedicit, alij in foris obambulant, hic cancellatis funibus pendet, ille antennis libratur, alius è summo malo prospectat, in summa, cuiusdam triumphalis pompæ festa facies fuit. At (heu dolor) optimus Rex Eduardus, cuius præcipuè nomine hic tantus apparatus, per valetudinem solus aberat: quorum discessum tristissima illius mors (ac nunquam siccis oculis mihi memoranda) post paucos dies subsecuta est. Volouicum tandem delati figunt naues: inde soluturi, cum aut æstus reciprocatio, aut secundior flatus ad nauigandum inuitaret: nec mora Harouicensem portum petunt, in quo non sine maximo tædio ac summo temporis detrimento diu morantur. Ad postremum tamen nacti idoneam ad nauigandum tempestatem, passis velis in altum feruntur, salutato priùs natali solo, quod an vnquam postea forent reuisuri, penitus ignorabant. Respiciunt subinde tristes, nec lachrymis temperant nonnulli, cogitantes in quàm dubios casus erant ituri, & quàm ancipitem euentum maris erant experituri: Torquebat præter cæteros Richardum Cancelerum præfectum Edouardi Boniuenturi penuriæ metus, nam & pars viatici in portu Harouicensi putrida comperta est, viniq́; cadi infirmi ac fragiles. Mouit etiam illum paternus amor: reliquit enim abiens duos filios paruulos orphanos futuros, si asperior aliquis casus ipsum sustulisset: mouit illum miserorum & infœlicium comitũ fortuna, quorum salutem cum sua coniunctam esse sciebat: dum multiplici curarum ambage Canceleri animus excruciatur, tandem post multorum dierum velificationem, tellus procul visa, ad quam Naucleri naues dirigunt: Insulam esse comperiunt Rossam: in hac consumptis aliquot diebus, vlterius nauigant septentrionem petentes, rursum aliæ apparent insulæ: nomen his Crux insularum: post has cum aliquandiu naues vna velificassent, præfectus nauium Willoubeius, vir in consilijs minimè præceps, erecto vexillo, reliquarum nauium primates euocat, vt his consiliorum adiutoribus, & solicitudinum socijs vsus, de reliqua administratione facilius statueret. Illi ex composito adsunt, ac inter cætera conuenit, si qua grauior tempestas ingrueret, ac classiculam disijceret, omnes Vardhousũ Norduuegiæ portum non incelebrem cursu peterent, quiq́; primi incolumes illuc appulissent, dum reliquę naues eò conuenirent, in anchoris expectarent. Eodem die iam in pomeridianum tempus inclinato, circiter quartam, tanta tempestas subitò coorta est, & immensi fluctus tanta vi se incitauerunt, vt naues institutum cursum tenere non possent, sed aliæ aliò, magno sui cum periculo vagè disijcerentur. Inclamat Nauarchus voce qua potest maxima Cancelerum, enixè rogat ne longiùs abscedat: at ille, nec velle, nec si maximè vellet, posse, modò ille Nauarchidis suæ cursum, erat enim velocior suo, temperaret. Verùm nescio quo casu Willobæi nauis dum plenis velis fertur, tanta vi abrepta est, vt aliquot horarum spacio è conspectu penitus euolauerit. Tertia etiam pari euentu ablata comites amisit. Prętoriæ certè celox in puppim illisa, conspicientibus ex ipsa Edouardo nautis, fluctibus est obruta. Reliqui, fati comitũ suorum, qui incolumes nuper redierunt, penitus sunt ignari. Quod si acerbior casus infœlices premit, si pelagi sæuitia innoxios absorbuit, aut si in aliena terra indigi oberrent, digni certè meliore sorte viri, quibusq́; si viuant, in patriam reditum; sin crudelior mortis fortuna insontes rapuit, mollem tumulum precemur. Richardus Cancelerus solus cum comitibus relictus, ac incerto reliquorũ casu mæstus, ad destinatum portũ contendit, sociorum aduentum (si salui essent) ibi expecturus. Hic septem dierum mora interposita, cùm se frustra expectatione torqueri videret, nauigationem subire in animo habebat. Cum itaq́; omnino certum illi esset, nauem ex portu educere, fortè cum Scotis quibusdam in congressum colloquiumq́; venit. Qui cum illius animum exploratum haberent, & eius rationibus optimè consultum cupientes, vehementer illum ab instituto consilio deterrere conantur, ac pericula in maius extollẽtes, eius constantiam labefactare nituntur. At Cancelerus mobilitate ac leuitate ingenij nihil turpius existimans, & persuasissimum habens fortem virũ maius in se dedecus admittere non posse, quàm si metu fractus & debilitatus, periculorũ casus refugeret, Scotorum oratione nihil deterritus, in proposito susceptoq́;

ceptoq; conſilio permanſit,ſtatuens aut efficere quod propoſuerat,aut certę morti occumbere. Qui in eadem naue cum Cancelero erant, etſi comitum diſceſſu quos auulſerat tempeſtatis ſæuitia plurimum angerentur,& ancipiti curſus ductu commouerentur,tanta tamen & tam ſecunda voluntate in Cancellerum reperiebantur, vt eius ductu & auſpicijs omnes caſus tentare,ac certum capitis periculum adire non reformidarent. Hoc tam conſtans ſodalium ſtudium ſollicitudinem Ducis non mediocriter auxit. Ille enim pari animo erga illos affectus,metuebat ne quo ſuo errore ſociorum ſaluti malè conſultum videri poſſit. Breuiter poſteaquam ſpem ſuam de reliquarum nauium reditu extenuari & euaneſcere vidit, rurſus fortunam maris experitur,mundiq; inane,ac naturæ damnata petit,eoúſque prouectus,dum omnis nox ablata, ſoliſque continuus fulgor vaſtum mare illuſtraret. Itaque continua luce per aliquot dies vſus, tandem Diuino numine fortunante,in ingentem quendam ſinum deueniunt, qui circiter centum millia paſſuũ latitudine collegit.In hunc penitus ingreſſi,naue ad anchoras deligata, dum circum circa proſpiciant,fortè haud procul cernunt ſchapham piſcatoriam, quam Cancelerus cum paucis ingreſſus adire voluit,ſciſcitaturus ex piſcatoribus,quæ terra,qui populus,qui mores.At illi inuſitata nauis magnitudine perculſi (neque enim tam vaſtę naues in illis regionibus viſuntur) præcipites ſeſe fugæ mandabant: Cæterum Cancelerus fugientes aſſequitur: Illi pauidi ac metu ſemianimes,ad genua ducis aduoluti pedibus oſcula offerunt. At Dux pro ſua ſingulari humanitate placidis oculis intuetur,geſtu ac nutu conſolatur,ſupplicum officia recuſat, proſtratóſq; amplexus in pedes adleuat: Mirum quantum fauoris hæc humanitas illi poſtea conciliarit. Hij enim dimiſſi rumorem diſſipant de noua gente,de humanitate ſingulari. Hæc fama vbi percrebuit,accurrere vulgus,vltrò viaticum offerre, nec commercium recuſare, niſi quod magna religione obſtringerentur, ne principe inconſulto peregrinas merces emerent. Mox docentur noſtri terram eſſe Ruſſiam,atque Moſcouiam, & in illis locis Euan Vaſiliuich (hoc enim erat principi nomen) plurimas nationes imperio ac ditione ſua regere ac gubernare.Viciſſim rogat Barbarus noſtrates, vnde genus ducunt, aut quid petunt in terra aliena. Ad hoc noſtri, ſeſe Angligenas, ab illuſtriſſimo Rege Edouardo ſexto in illũ orbem miſſos,habere ſe ad illorum Principem regis ſui mandata,nec quicquam vltra quærere, quàm principis ſui amicitiam ac popularibus ſuis commercia, qua quidem ex re maximas vtilitates in vtriuſque regni populos collatas iri ſperabant.Non inuitis auribus audiunt hæc Barbari, ac vltrò operam ſuam pollicentur,vt tam æqua & honeſta poſtulatio ad principis ſui aures primo quoque tempore perferretur. Tum Cancelerus à Toparchis, qui cum reliquis confluxerant,commeatum petit ac obſides poſcit in nauem,in tutelam ſuæ ſuorúmq; ſalutis. Cui Toparchæ, ſui arbitrij non eſſe,quid ſtatuat princeps,quod in ſua manu ſit,id velle præſtare, quódque ſolum poſſunt, commeatum pollicentur. Dum hæc aguntur,veredarium clàm dimittunt qui Imperatori renũtiet,de ignotæ gentis appulſu,ſimul vt illius animum explorarent,quid ille ſtatuat. Allatũ nuntium pergratum fuit principi,adeò quidem,vt vltro etiam ad Regiam inuitaret, aut ſi terreſtris itineris longinquitas moleſta ipſis videretur,commerciorum copiam ſuis facit: promittit inſuper,ſi libet ad ſe venire,veredariorum equorum impenſam.Interea Toparchæ diem ex die ducere,varias excuſationes prætexere, nunc reliquorum Toparcharum conſenſum, nunc ardua Reip.negotia ceſſationi ſuæ obtendere,tantiſper tempus proferre cupientes, dum reuerſus nũtius ſe de principis voluntate certiores faceret.Verum Cancelerus poſtquam ſe longa & inani expectatione ſuſpenſum teneri, & tempus data opera extrahi videret, ſeriò inſtat, vt promiſſi fidẽ liberent: quod ſi facere neglexerint,ſe vlteriùs nauigaturũ affirmat. At Moſcouitæ, tametſi adhuc Regiæ voluntatis incerti eſſent,& noſtrorum diſceſſum metuerent,(habebant enim merces,quas illi magnoperè expetebant) comeatu inſtruunt.Atq; ita iter longiſſimũ ac multò moleſtiſſimum ingreſſus eſt. Quod quidem trahis, quarum plurimus illi genti vſus, confecit: trahis geſtantur,trahis onera vehuntur,deniq; vix alia nouerunt vehicula. Huius rei cauſa eſt rigidiſſimum ſolum horrendo gelu Hybernis menſibus concretum,de quo paulò poſt diſſerenus. Maiori itineris parte iam peracta,ſuperuenit veredarius quem ſupra oſtendimus,clam ab Irenarchis dimiſſum qui(quo caſu incertum)à via aberrauerat,ac littora Maris Tartaris vicina petiuerat,ratus ſeſe noſtrorum nauem ibi inuenturum. Hic poſt longum errorem tandem ad noſtros redijt,ac Ducem in via aſſecutus, literas Imperatorias,illas quidem humanitatis pleniſſimas Cancelero attulit. Quibus imperabatur, vt veredi illi comitibúſque ſuis ſine prætio ſuppeditarentur: Quod quidem tanta alacritate ab omnibus in reliquo itinere factitatum eſt, vt in magnam contentionem venerint, & poſt rixam pugnis etiam diſceptarent, vtri veredos ſuos trahæ iungerent. Tandem poſt magnas longiſſimi itineris moleſtias (confecerat enim quindecies centena millia paſſuum) Moſcuam Regiam vrbem delatus eſt: de qua, ac Moſcouitarum Cæſare,déque illuſtribus Moſcouiæ vrbibus,paulò poſt plura ſumus ſcripturi.

Traharum vſus.

Litteræ humaniſſimæ Imperatoris ad Cancelerum.

De

De Moscouia, quæ & Russia dicitur.

MOscouia quæ & Russia alba nominatur, terra est amplissima, hinc inde varijs gentibus contermina, à meridie atque Oriente Tartaris cingitur: Septentrionale latus Oceanus Scythicus ambit. Ad Occidentem tenent Lapones, gens syluestris, nec vlli populo commercio linguæ nota: post hos Austrum versus incolunt Sueci, dein Finlandia, ab hac Liuonij, iuxta hos Lituani. Pluribus ac maximis fluminibus irrigua est, multisque locis palustris. Nobilissima fluminum Rha, quod illi materna idiomate Volgam, Tanais quem Don, Boristhenes quem hodie Neper nominant: horum Rha, atque Boristhenes, eodem lacu orti, immensa terræ spacia peragrant. Rha amœnos amnes in se recipiens, ac ex ipso statim fonte Orientem petens, post varios flexus ac cursus ambages aduenas aquas, suásq; in Caspiũ mare pluribus ostijs exonerat.

Tanais fonte haud spectabili ab ipsa scatebra grandescens, tandẽ in amplum lacũ se diffundit: post euagantes aquas in arctum cogens angustus labitur, ac post aliquot passuum millia, iterum in lacum diffusus (quem Iuan appellant) flexuoso meatu vadit, donec in vicina Volgæ peruenit. Deinde quasi comitem auersatus, transuerso cursu flectens in meridiem contendit, ac Mæoticam paludem petit.

Boristhenes quem ex eodem fonte cum Rha ortum diximus, cognatas aquas in austrum defert, subinde auxiliares amnes recipiens: hic maximas gentes præterluens, tandem in pontum Euxinum sese condit.

Habet & Moscouia lacus, & stagna: lacus etiam deciduo syderum semine, pisces generant: Inter hos principatum tenet Bellij ozera, vel ob hoc præcipuè memorabilis, quod arx munitissima in eo sit extructa, quo Moscouitarum princeps gazam suam confert, si quando bellorum terror premit.

Quod ad Ryphæa iuga spectat perpetuis niuibus candẽtia, vnde veteres Tanaim ortum habere somniarunt, reliquáq; naturæ portenta, quæ Græcia olim finxit, nec nostri qui nuper redierunt, videre, nec Trimestri spatio illic versati, ac Moscouitarũ alloquio vtcunq; imbuti, audiru cognouerunt. Terram esse planam, ac campestrem illi, ac raro in montes assurgere: & qua vergit in Septentrionem latissimos saltus habere. Plurima ibi abies, vnde ad struendas ædes materia. Hi saltus feras alunt, vros, vrsos, lupos nigros, aliámq; feram nostro orbi non visam, quam illi Rossomakkam nominant: rarum feræ ingenium, & spectabile: satura enim & distenta, duorum stipitum angustias quærit, per quas se transmittens, ventris onus (quod alias non egerit) excolat: vros equites vt plurimum venantur, vrsos pedites lignijs furcis. Septentrionalis tractus tam horrendi frigoris esse dicitur, vt ex humidis lignis in foco structis distillans liquor in stiriam concrescat: tanta diuersitas tantillo spacio, vt hinc prunam, illinc glaciem in eadem face cernas. Postquam hyemare apud illos incipit, assidua gelu incrementa capit, nec se prius remittit, quàm solis radij nostrum orbem reuisentes canescentem terram fulgore exhilarat, tristéq; gelu tepore soluit. Nautæ certè nostri, qui in naue remanserant ex inferiori stego in foros scandentes, tam subita Lipothymia nõnunquam sunt correpti, vt intermortui subinde ruerent: tanta erat illic rigentis cœli inclementia: Australiora illius aliquantò mitiora sunt.

Frigoris asperitas.

De Moscua Regia vrbe, & de Moscouitarum Rege.

RElíquum est vt promissa opusculi pars à nobis dicatur, déq; Moscua regia vrbe, & de Moscouitarum principe latiùs paulò disseramus, cuius imperium amplissimum est, opésq; hoc tempore insignes: Et quoniã ipsa vrbs facilè inter cæteras principatum tenet, meritò sibi primum locum vendicet. Vrbis amplitudo, vt nostri affirmant, Londinum cum suburbio magnitudine æquat. Aedificia habet multa, sed cultu nequaquam nostris conferẽda. Vici plures sunt, sed incomposíti, viæ lapide non sternuntur vt nostræ: ædium parietes lignij sunt, tecta scandulis vt plurimum muniuntur: iũcta oppido arx est & elegans, & munita. Huic à Septentrione annectitur vrbs lateritio muro. Ipsius etiam arcis mœnia, lateribus struuntur, quorum crassities pedes octodecim colligit: ab altera parte ficca fossa munitur castellum, ab altera flumine Vologda alluitur, quod in Orientem tendens sociales aquas Occæ adiungit. Sunt in castro nouæ ædes sacræ non inuenustæ quas tenent cœnobitæ: habent etiam papam suum, ac quosdam alios præsules, qui omnes vt plurimum in arce degunt: Ipsius certè Principis Regia minus culta, quadratæ formæ, & structuræ humilis, nostrorum palatiorum nitore longè superatur: fenestrarum angustię nunc vitrijs nunc specularibus lumen admittũt. Attalica magnifica nostratũ principum aulis ornamenta, illis deerant. Vndiq; parietibus adhęrent scamna, neq; id solum in Imperatoris Regia, verum etiã vbíq; in priuatorum ędibus. Exactis iam duodecim ab ingressu in vrbem diebus, adest nuntius ad Regias ædes nostros inuitans. Angli moram pertæsi cupidè paruêre. Itaque in aulam ingressi, honorandum centum Aulicorum cœtũ aureo cultu ad talos vsque

vſque demiſſo ornatum, conſidere conſpiciunt: Exinde in ſalutatorium admiſſi, mirum quantum fulgor Imperatorius noſtrorum oculos perſtrinxerit. Ruſſorum enim Imperator Regali in ſolio ſublimis, ac aureo diademate inſigniter conſpicuus, regioq; paludamento aurificũ opere ſpectabili ornatus ſedit: aureum bacillum gemmis diſtinctum dextra tenet, ac præter cætera Regalis opulentiæ decora, inerat etiam in vultu maieſtas tanto faſtigio digna: ſtant iuxta hinc & hinc Archigrammateus ac ſilentiarius, & ipſi Regali auro veſtiti. Deinde centum quinquaginta patrum conceſſus, aureo veſtitu magnificus cubiculi ſubſellia vndiq; prætexuit. Poterat tantæ maieſtatis fulgor, poterat tam auguſtus venerãdorum patrum conſpectus inſueto mentem excutere: At Cancelerus conſtanti vultu, Regia maieſtate more ſalutata, Regis Edouardi literas tradit: lectis literis pauca de Regis noſtri incolumitate interrogat: quibus Angli paucis reſpondent: mox à noſtris per Archigrammatea dono Imperatori oblato (quod ipſe nudato capite obtulit, nam antea erat opertus) Moſcouitarum Princeps Anglos in prandij tempus, ad quod ipſos inuitauit, dimittit: poſtquam horas duas in illius cubiculo qui principi eſt à ſupplicibus morati ſunt, accerſit nũtius ad epulas: in aureum palatiũ (vt ipſi nominabant, licet parum excultum) introducti Ruſſorum Cæſarem alto toro aſſidentem argenteo amictu decoratũ, atque altero iam diademate inſignitum offendunt. Noſtri ex aduerſo collocati menſæ accumbunt, ſtat ingens medio in palatio abacus, ab imo quadratus paulum aſſurgit. Huic orbis incũbit, vnde in metam faſtigiatur, latiori ſemper orbe contractiorem ſuſtinente: hunc gaza Regia adornabat, tanta copia vt pondere etiam grauaret. Melior certè pars vaſorum, ac potoriorum omnium ex auro lectiſſimo fabricata. Quatuor ollæ magnitudine conſpicuæ, reliquam aureorum vaſculorum magnificentiam præcipuè illuſtrarunt. Tantæ enim proceritatis extiterunt, vt quinos propè pedes altitudine colligerent: fuerunt etiam argentea quædam Dolia, à noſtris minoribus capacitate non longè differentia, quibus principis potum priuatim ſeruant. Quatuor menſæ ad ſingula Triclinij latera ſingulæ diſpoſitæ ac mundiſſimis mappis ſtratæ, quibus ab humiliori ſolo ternis gradibus erat aſcenſus, celeberrimo conuiuarum cætu inſtruuntur. Hij foris linteati, intúſq; precioſiſſimis pellibus veſtiti, regalem cœnam ornarunt. Cum princeps cultrum vel panem attrectat ſigno crucis frontem prius munit. Qui in amicitia principis palmam tenent, cõſiliorúmq; participes fiunt, eidẽ thoro adhibiti, remotiore loco ab ipſo ſedent. Porrò hic dum expectantur epulæ, veteri ac quaſi auito Moſcouitarum principum more, ipſe Imperator ſingulos conuiuas pane primum donat, cum donorum ſuorum titulo, ac elata voce in hũc modum. Magnus Moſcouitarum Dux, ac ſummus Ruſſiæ Imperator Ioannes Vaſiliuich (deinde qui perfert accipientẽ nominat) te pane donat. Sub hoc aſſurgunt conuiuæ vniuerſi, ac mox reſidunt. Peracto principis munere, celebri dapiferorum pompa incedit Atrienſis, ac ſalutato principe Cygnellum aurea in lance menſæ admouet: mox tollit, ac ſtructori, cum ſeptem comitibus in fruſta diſcerpendũ tradit. Hęc in menſam paulò poſt illata, pari ceremoniæ celebritate conuiuis diſtribuuntur. Dum hæc aguntur & ipſe Atrienſis pane donatus delibat, ac honorata principis celſitudine mox recedit. De reliquorũ ordine miſſuum, cum omninò incompoſitè ſunt illati, nihil certi referre poſſunt noſtri. Illud certè conſtat, vniuerſum eſculentorum, ac potoriorum omnium apparatum, quibus centum conuiuis miniſtratum eſt, lectiſſimi auri fuiſſe, menſaſq; ipſas vaſis adeò fuiſſe onuſtas, vt nonnullis etiam in menſa deeſſet locus: Neq; verò ſilentio inuoluendum eſt miniſtros centum quadraginta, aurea veſte ornatos ter ipſo conuiuij tempore cultum mutauiſſe: Miniſtri quoq; panc ac potu donantur ſimili (quo reliqui) modo. Ad poſtremum finito prandio, ac illatis lucernis (erat enim iam mox) conuiuas ac familiares omnes nomine appellat, vt non immeritò mirum videatur tot ac tam varia cognomina principi alioqui occupatiſſimo, memoria non excidere: Donatiui, ac citandorum nominum ratio eſt, vt Moſcouitæ referunt, tum vt familiam probè noſcat, tum vt qui principis amicitia exciderunt hoc modo notentur. Nota.

De re Militari Moſcouitarum.

QVoties finitimorum iniurię principem in bellũ euocant, haud vnquam infra trecenta virorum millia in hoſtem armat. Ex quorum numero, centum circiter millia in aciem ſecũ educens, reliqua in tutelam Imperij in præſidijs aptis in locis diſponit. Colonum nullũ, nullum Mercatorem in militiam legit, tanta enim eſt populi multitudo, vt his domi relictis, iuuentus bellis gerendis abundè ſuppeditetur. Quoſcunq; in expeditionem ducit, proprio ſumptu ſeipſos alunt: pedeſtrem pugnam non nouerunt, equites in aciem procedũt. Arma ſunt his lorica, & galea, lorica foris auro tegitur, vel holoſerico etiam gregario militi. Impenſè iuuat opulentiam oſtentare. Arcu ac ſagittis vtuntur more Turcarum. Lanceas etiam in aciem gerunt: ſtapeda adductiore equitant, idq; vt Turcæ: Genus eſt hominũ, algoris vltra omnem fidem patiens,

ac

ac victus parcissimum. Nam cum tellus alta niue candet, cum terra horrēdo gelu astricta riget, tamen hic Sarmata, sago stipitibus, vndè ventus ac niues sæuiunt, expasso, exiguum ignem sibi struit, atq; auersus à vento iacet: sagum illi pro tecto est: sagum pro muro: in summa sagi instar omnium est. Hic incola niuium aqua, è gelido amne petita, ac similagine auenæ admixta, conuiuium suum instruit: ac his dapibus satus, ac lautè pastus, ad ignem decumbit, lateráque huiusmodi lautitiarum crapula defessa, rigenti solo perurit. Huic rigens solum pro pluma, tricus seu cilex pro ceruicali. Equus etiam non lautiori pabulo nutritus quàm herus, hero est contubernalis. Quàm merito hic ignobilis & obscurus Sarmata, effeminatā ducibus nostris molliciem exprobret, qui cœlo longè clementiore, pellitis ocreis renonibúsq; vtuntur. Hic est gregariorum militum apparatus. At qui illustriori dignitatis sunt loco, instructiores paulò in militiam proficiscuntur. Ipsius quidem Imperatoris apparatus vel tum maximè est insignis: Tentorij enim vela, vt plurimum aurea sunt, spectabili etiannum plumariorum opere margaritisq; ornata. Quoties cum hoste conserendum est, incomposiți in hostile agmen procurrunt: neque aciem dirigunt (vt mos est nostris) sed in insidijs collocati aduersarios adoriuntur. Ipsoru equi bidui inediam facilè ferunt. In bello vt plurimum arborum cortices, ac virgultorum mollia his sunt pro pabulo: bimestri spatio hanc tantam penuriam, etiam vegeti, ac fortes & equus & eques non rarò perferūt. Si cuius opera in bello strenua princeps vsus est, hūc prædio aut fundo aliquo donat, in alimentum sui suorúmq;, qui tamē ad ipsum Imperatorē post eius mortem redit, si nulla proles virilis sexus ipsi contingat: nam si numerosam etiam fœminarum sobolem genuerit, tamen hunc hereditariū agrum vendicat princeps, nisi quod exiguam fortè partem ad dotandas puellas princeps concedat. Porrò qui Imperatoris munificentia illo modo muneratur, graui pecunia astringūtur tot milites in bello alere, cum necessitas postulat, quot illius fundi reditus Imperatoris censura abundè nutrire possit. Haud meliori sunt sorte, quibus hæreditario iure agri contingunt. Nam si moriuntur, nec sobolem masculam reliquerint, decedētis prædia fisco Imperatorio statim cedunt. Super hęc, si opimus aliquis, bello inutilis ab Aulicis principi deferatur, quod rei militari in idoneus amplas facultates habeat, quibus multi clari sanguinis viri bello apti nutriantur, mox arcessitur infœlix, opibúsq; quas tantis cum sudoribus, quas tot laboribus per omnem vitam comparauit, tantillo temporis momento exuitur, nisi quod particulam aliquam à principe recipit, ad se, cōiugem, liberos, ac domesticos alendos. Hęc autem à populo Imperatori suo tam alacriter fiunt, vt credas illos aliena restituisse, non sua alieno dedisse. His bonis pro meritis singulorum aulicos suos donat princeps. In Bellis etiam, quo quis sæpius in expeditionē mittitur, eo propensiorē in se principis fauorem auguratur, etiā cum suis impensis seipsum alat: sicuti antea à nobis dictū est: tantum est apud omnes ducis sui obsequii.

Ingens Regum obseruantia.

De Legatis Ducis Moscouitarum.

NOn minori magnificentia quàm qua diximus, Legatos suos in obeundis negotijs ad exteros reges mittit Moscouita: nam nostris Moscuę agentibus, legatos duos ad Polonæ Regem iter suscipientes vel ingressos, quingenti Equites ornatissimi comitabantur, quorum melior pars veste aurea, ac serico induebatur, & qui incultissimè cymatili, vt interim equorum strata, auro argentóq; inducta, & spectabili Phrygionum opere ornata silentio transeam: habebant insuper centum sonipedes albos pulcherrimósq;, in quos (si alicuius tædiū ipsos in itinere cepisset) cum vellent transcenderent. Sed nunc tempus exigit vt ad quasdam alias Moscouitarum vrbes orationem conuertamus, & merces quibus abundant breuiter perstringamus.

Nouogardia.

SEquitur Moscuam celeberrima vrbium Nouogardia, quæ vt illi dignitate est inferior, in magnitudine non parum superat. Emporium est totius Imperij longè nobilissimum: & licet regiam sedem sibi princeps Moscuæ constituit, fluminis tamen opportunus interlapsus, ac post in mare Sarmaticum exoneratus, facit Mercatorum conuentu, ipsa Regia vrbe celebratiorem. Huic vrbi ob summam optimi lini ac canabis abundantiā, inter reliquas regni vrbes facilè datur palma: vendit etiam coria, mel, & ceram. Instituerunt ibi Collegium mercatorum Flandri, qui pari perfidia vsi apud illos, qua nuper apud nos, priuilegia amiserant, quæ sibi restitui, nostris ibi morantibus enixè à duce postularunt. Hi, audito nostrorum accessu, literas expediūt ad principem, nostros falsis criminibus onerant, & in suspicionem piraticæ vocant, itaq; hortantur vt detineat, ac in vincula conijciat: Hæc cum nostris nuntiata sunt, in summam desperationem adducuntur domum reditionis: Princeps tamen multò illustrissimus, regijs scriptis confirmatus, fidem nequaquam mendacibus literis adhibuit.

Flandrorum Mercatorum mendaces literę ad Regem aduersus nostros.

Yeraslaui,

Yeraſlauia.

CElebratur quoque Yeraſlauia propter coria, ſeuum ac fruges quibus plurimum abundat. Cerarum etiam orbes ibi ſunt venales, licet alijs in locis maior ſit copia: ſita hæc eſt ab vrbe Regia ad lapidem ducentiſſimum: totum interuallum plurimos habet vicos populoſiſſimos: abundant agri frugibus, quas Moſcuam tanta copia conuehunt, vt aliquando antemeridiano videas ſeptingentenas vel octingentenas trahas vltrò citróq; commeantes, fruges, vel ſalſamenta vehentes. Veniunt à milleſimo lapide Moſcuam, mercatum fruges, trahíſque vehunt. Hij ſunt Aquilonis incolæ, nam tanta eſt ibi frigoris immanitas, vt ſegetes non creſcant, aut ſi creſcunt non matureſcunt. Hij ſalſamenta, pelles, & coria, merces afferunt.

Vologda.

VOlogda quingentis quinquaginta millibus paſſuũ interiectis, ab vrbe Metropolitana diſtans, mercimonia habet, ſeuum ac linum, tametſi lini maior vis Nouogardiæ væneat.

Pleſcouia.

PRopter Mellis ceræq; præcipuam vim à mercatoribus frequentatur Pleſcouia.

Colmogora.

MIttit Aquilonaris Ruſſiæ tractus raras ac precioſas pelles: in his ſunt vel præcipui Zabellinæ, Dominarum noſtrarũ ceruicibus imprimis expetitæ: habent etiam pelles martias, vulpinas, candidas, nigras, & rufas, leporinas, & armelinas, aliáſq; Barbaris nominibus dictas, beueres, mingas, miniueras: gignit vicinum mare belluam à Barbaris Mors nominatam: hęc dentium adminiculo rupes ſcandens pabulum petit. Hanc cupiunt Ruſſi ob dentium inſignem vſum, qui non minor his eſt, quam elephantorum noſtratibus. Hæc mercimonia ceruorum dorſis ad oppidum Lampas feruntur. Deinceps mercatores vrbem Colmogoram petunt, atq; ibi Hyberno tempore, celeberrimæ ſunt illarum mercium nundinæ: ſuppeditat hæc vrbs vndiquáque vicinæ regioni affatim ſalem ac ſalſamenta: mittunt & Aquilonares Ruſſi oleum à Barbaris, Trein nominatum, quod in quodam flumine Vna dicto faciunt, licet non ſolum ibi habeatur: coquunt etiam marinam aquam vnde ipſis conſtat vis magna ſalis.

Vna flumen, vel Dwina.

De diſſidentium lite, & quibus arbitris finiantur certamina.

NVnc quoniam de inſignioribus vrbibus ea diximus, quæ locus poſtulauit, ſupereſt vt de iuris forma qua vtuntur Moſcouitæ, quatenus ad notitiam noſtram peruenit, perſcribamus. Si qua lis apud eos oritur, fundorum Dominos, iudices primum conſtituunt: hij ſi componere litem non poſſunt, ſuperiori magiſtratui certamen deferunt. Accuſator à magiſtratu petit, vt liceat ſibi aduerſarium in ius vocare. Mox facta poteſtate ſatellitem vocat ac reum ſiſtit, ac in ius rapit: huius tibias flagris cædit Lictor, donec proferat, qui legi ſatiſdet: at reus ſi eius fidei non ſit, vt vadem inueniat, manibus collo conſtrictis à lictore trahitur, verberibúſq; coúſque afficitur, donec ad dicendam cauſam coram Iudice ſiſtatur. Reus itaque à magiſtratu interrogatus (verbi gratia in quæſtione alieni æris) an in illius ære alieno ſit à quo accuſatur, ille it inficias: Ad hæc Iudex, quí potes inficiari? tum reus, iureiurando. Mox à magiſtratu prohibetur lictor ampliùs verberare, donec certiori fide de lite conſtet: leguleios non alunt: Quiſq; ſibi Aduocatus eſt, atq; accuſantis querela, reíq; defenſio ſupplicum literarum forma principi tradũtur, iuſtã principis ſententiã petentiũ. Ipſe Imperator omnẽ litem maiorum præſertim controuerſiarũ cognoſcit, ac cognita lite ſententiam fert. Ille ſumma æquitate certamina dirimit, quod in ſummæ maieſtatis principe præcipua laude dignũ reor. Id licet ſancto animi propoſito faciat, mirè tamen mali magiſtratus idem peruertunt, quos quidẽ in crimine deprehenſos, ſæueriſſimè princeps vindicat. Ad poſtremum cum vtráq; pars, quibus potuit argumentis, cauſam ſuam confirmauit, rogat Iudex accuſatorem, an vlla cauſæ ſuæ argumenta adhuc ſuperſint? reſpondet ſe vel pugilem ſuum manu ſtrenua etiam in hoſte comprobaturum, ac poſtulat vt ſingulari certamine congredi liceat, copiáque certandi vtríque facta, ambo in

Leguléi non alũtur in Moſcouia.

mono-

monomachiam ruunt: aut si alteruter vel vterque parum strenuus, aut pugnæ minus habilis sit, pugiles publicos substituunt: habent enim pugiles, quibus solo hoc quæstu victus constat. Hij armati in arenam descendunt: tela sunt vt plurimum claua bellica, & venabulum: fit pugna pedestris. Cuius igitur pugil in certamine superatur, is absque mora in vincula conijcitur, vbi miseris modis tractatur, donec cum aduersario certamen finiat. Præter hæc, si vterq; ortus sit claris parentibus, atque alter alterum priuatum hostem deposcit, annuit Iudex, nec tum vicarijs pugilibus fas est vti. Porro qui splendidiori loco natus est, hostem obscuriori ortum familia, in certamine respuit. Si quis pauper ære alieno astrictus, creditori soluendo non sit, abducit illum creditor, atque eousq; opere faciundo exercet, vel alteri operam obærati elocat, donec operando debitum persoluit: sunt qui sponte, se, coniugem, ac liberos opulentioribus per omnem vitam emancipabunt, vt in initio exiguam pecuniolæ summam accipiant, ac post pro reliqua vita alimenta capiant: adeo illis vilescit libertas.

Pugiles Mercenarij.

De furum supplicijs.

SI quis furto deprehensus sit, in carcerem conijciunt, ac flagris subinde cædunt, neque ob primam noxam suspendunt, vt nos, atque hanc, legem misericordiæ appellant: qui secundò delinquit, illi nasum præcidunt, ac stigmatis frontem signant: Tertia noxa crucem meretur. Multi, & insignes sunt crumenisecæ: quod si principis seueritas ipsos non tolleret, non esset resistere illorum prouentui.

De Religione.

GRęcæ Ecclesiæ dogma amplectuntur: simulachra Diuorum in templis non admittunt: tabulas tamen diuorum, imaginibus pictas in sacris ædibus frequentes habent: has adorant, his dona offerunt, his cereos accendunt, has etiam sacro fonte aspergunt, alioqui illis nullus est honos. Simulachra nostra nullam diuinitatis vim habere asserunt, quòd in templis dicantur perinde vt à statuarijs emuntur. Priuatis in ædibus statuas instar penatium colunt. Hæ in obscurissima parte domus vt plurimum statuũtur. Si quis domum vicini intrat, primùm omnium penates salutat, etiam cùm non videat: si scamnum aut sella stet in proximo, subinde frontem illidens in sellam, ac crebro capite & corpore nutans larem adorat. Sacrorum ac prophanorum virorum in vestitu nulla diuersitas. Nulli nec sacro nec prophano interdicitur matrimonium. Cæterùm si Ecclesiastici vxor è vita decedat, secundas nuptias repetere non licet. Quocirca ex sacerdotibus (vt vocant) secularibus fiunt plerúmque Monachi, quibus perpetua imperatur castitas. Sacra officia in templis materno idiomate fiunt. Ex pane fermentato Eucharistiam consecrant, ac post consecrationem, lance in capite per templum circumferunt nec participare volentem prohibent. Nouum ac vetus testamentum in templis legunt lingua vernacula tam offensate, vt nec ipse qui legit intelligat. Dum illa leguntur, garrire, confabulari, ac obstrepere licet, in reliquo officio, summam modestiam ac sanctimoniam præ se ferunt. Orationem dominicam decimus quisque haud nouit. At Symbolum Apostolicum, aut Decalogum Moisis nemo aut admodum pauci, aiunt enim rem tam arcanam ac sacram in vulgus temere enuntiari non oportere. Decalogum etiam sanguine Christi antiquatum ésse. Humaniores literas omnino respuunt. Cognitionis Græcæ, Latinæ aut Hebraicæ linguæ penitus sunt ignari: singulis annis quaterna celebrant ieiunia quæ ab ipsis diuorum festis denominant. Primum cum nostro quadragesimali ieiunio exordium habet. Secundum diui Petri ieiunium dicitur. Tertio, dat nomen Diua Maria. Quartum, à Philippo nomen capit. Ac sicuti nos quadragesimam nostram à die Mercurij auspicamur, ita illi à die solis: diebus Sabbati carne vescuntur. Hebdomadis has esuriales ferias præcedentibus lacticinijs viuunt. Ac vulgo appellant butyri ieiunia. Hoc tempore mutuò sese inuisunt vicini, ac pacis oscula vicissim excipiunt, in signum mutui amoris ac concordiæ Christianæ. Nam sub illis ieiunandi temporibus frequentius quàm aliàs sacrosanctam cœnam adeunt. Post septem dies ab incœpto ieiunio, crebrò inuisunt templa, aut domi sese continent, ac orationi plurimum vacant. Nec illa septimana alio quàm oleribus vescuntur. Exacto septimanæ huius ieiunio, pristinam bibendi intemperiem repetunt, sunt enim bibones insignes. Districtè seruant ieiunia sua, nec vllius rei esum nisi holerum ac salsamentorum tunc temporis sibi indulgent: die Mercurij ac Veneris quauis septimana ieiunare solent.

Secundæ nuptiæ prohibitæ ministris.

Quaterna ieiunia singulis annis.

Plurimi

Plurima ibi extruuntur Benedictinorum Cœnobia: his magni ſunt agrorũ reditus: nam tertiam fundorũ partem totius Imperij tenent Monachi. Iſtis per omnem vitam eſus carnium interdicitur: Alimenta ſunt ſalſamenta, lac & butyrum. Nec ex inſtituto religionis recentes piſces edunt. Quaternis tamen illis quæ memorauimus ieiuniis, ne piſcibus quidem vtuntur. Caulibus, ac cucummeribus ſale cõditis, radiculisque (quæ perennare facile faciunt) illis victus conſtat. Potus eſt his valde tenuis ac dilutus. Quotidie in Templis rem diuinam faciunt: ſacrum officium antelucano adeunt, quod aduentante iam die finitur. Circa nonam diei celebratur miſſa. Poſt hanc prandetur: à prandio ſacrum officium repetunt, nec non à cœna. Prandentibus cœnantibuſue legitur euangeliorum interpretatio. Quoties alicuius monaſterij Antiſtes concedit fato, Princeps Cœnobij bona inuadit, armenta, greges, ſuppellectilem, aurum, argentum, rapit. Aut is qui defuncto Antiſtiti dignitate ſuccedit hæc ab imperatore pecunia redimit.

Ædes ſacræ lignijs trabibus contexuntur, Ac plerumque aſſurgit turris ſcandulis tecta. Foris adduntur ædi porticus. In cœmiterijs fabricas ædificant ligneas in quibus librantur campanæ, nunc ſingulæ, nunc binæ, nunc trinæ. Aedes ſacræ.

Non omittenda vt rara ita & ridicula gentis conſuetudo: defunctorum cadauera loculis cõdunt, ac manui cadaueris codicillos indunt. Horum ſumma eſt, defunctum fuiſſe Ruſſum Ruſſorum, fidem amplexum, ac in eadem fide deceſſiſſe. Hæ literæ Diuo Petro mittuntur: lectis literis mox (vt illi aiunt) admittitur, & vt ſyncerioris fidei ſectatori, beatior etiam ſedes quàm Latinis Chriſtianis conceditur. Nos enim ſemichriſtianos eſſe contendunt, ſeſe autem ſynceros ac genuinos. Hæc ſunt indoctæ Barbariei pudenda deliramenta. Mos ſepulturæ.

De idololatris Moſcouitis, Tartaris conterminis.

TArtarorum confinia tenent Moſcouitæ idololatræ. Percelebre eſt illis idolon aurea vetula dictum. Si qua grauior calamitas gentem premit, veluti fames, bellum, vel peſtis, Idolum ſuum ſtatim conſulunt. Quod hoc modo faciunt. Coram ſimulacro proſtrati preces fundunt, mox crepitaculum tympanum in medio ſtatuunt: hoc ſorte lecti circumſtant: Argenteum buſonem tympano imponunt, bacillo concutitur tympanum. Ac cui circumiacentium accedit buſo, protenus interficitur. Statim neſcio quibus Idoli præſtigijs vitæ reſtitutus, malorum cauſas exponit, Itaque placato Idoli numine, non ita multò pòſt publica calamitate liberantur. Aurea vetula Idolum.

De ędium priuatarum forma, ac de cultu populi.

PRiuatorum domus vbiuis truncis abiegnis contexuntur: Inferiori trabe quodam alueo ſuperiacentis rotunditatem ita excipiente, vt hac ſola admiſſura, omnem propemodum flatum excludant. Solent tamen iuncturæ muſcari. Forma ædiũ quadrata eſt, feneſtræ peranguſtæ, per quas impage tranſlucida pelle obducta lumen admittunt. Domorum tecta tabulatis fiunt, arborum corticibus foris inductis, Intus ad parietes lata habent ſcamna. Hęc vulgò pro accubitis, lectorum enim vſus vulgo ignotus, Ignis in Hypocauſtis mane ſtructus, totam domum pro modo, tepidam vel calidam reddit. Vulgi amictus vt plurimum laneus eſt. Piliis vtuntur faſtigiatis, in modum metæ, in quibus etiam nobilitatis eſt inſigne: quò enim porrectiori ac elatiori vtuntur pilio, eò ſplendidiores vulgo habentur. Domus tegunturæ corticibus Arborum foris.

Concluſio ad Sereniſsimam Reginam *Mariam.*

HÆc ſunt ter Maxima Regina, quæ tui Angli modo reduces retulerunt. Quod ſi per tuam excellentiſſimam Maieſtatem liceat illuc denuò Nauigare, non dubitant tui, ad eas gentes nominis tui fulgorem penetraturum, quæ tribus ſolùm Heroibus, à condito mundo ſine æmulo genitis patuêre. ANNO 1554. Nota.

The newe Nauigation and discouerie of the kingdome *of Moscouia, by the Northeast, in the yeere 1553 : Enterprised* by Sir Hugh Willoughbie knight, and perfourmed by Richard Chanceler, Pilot maior of the voyage. Translated out of the former Latine into English.

Vpon what occasions, and by whom this voyage was set out, and of the discouerie of Moscouie by the North.

AT what time our Marchants perceiued the commodities and wares of England to be in small request with the Countreis and people about vs, and neere vnto vs, and that those Marchandizes which strangers in the time and memorie of our auncestors did earnestly seeke and desire, were now neglected, and the price thereof abated, although by vs caried to their owne portes, and all forreine marchandises in great accompt, and their prises wonderfully raised: certaine graue citizens of London, and men of great wisedome, and carefull of the good of their Country, beganne to thinke with themselues, howe this mischiefe might bee remedied: neither was a remedie (as it then appeared) wanting to their desires, for the auoyding of so great an inconuenience: for seeing that the wealth of the Spaniards and Portingals, by the discouerie and search of newe trades and Countreis was marueilously increased, supposing the same to bee a course and meane for them also to obteine the like, they thereupon resolued vpon a newe and straunge nauigation. And whereas at the same time one Sebastian Cabota, a man in those dayes very renowmed, happened to be in London, they beganne first of all to deale and consult diligently with him, and after much speache and conference together, it was at last concluded that three shippes should be prepared and furnished out, for the search and discouerie of the Northerne part of the worlde, to open a way and passage to our men for trauaile to newe and vnknowen kingdomes.

Ships furnished for the discouerie.

And whereas many things seemed necessarie to bee regarded in this so harde and difficult matter, they first make choyce of certaine graue and wise persons in maner of a Senate or companie, which shoulde laye their heads together, and giue their iudgements, and prounde things requisite and profitable for all occasions: by this companie it was thought expedient, that a certaine summe of money shoulde publiquely bee collected to serue for the furnishing of so many shippes. And least any priuate man shoulde bee too much oppressed and charged, a course was taken, that euery man willing to be of the societie, should disburse the portion of twentie and fiue pounds a piece: so that in short time by this meanes the summe of fiue thousande pounds being gathered, the three shippes were bought, the most part whereof they prouided to bee newly built and trimmed. But in this action, I wotte not whether I may more admire the care of the Marchants, or the diligence of the Shippewrights: for the Marchants, they gette very strong and well seasoned plankes for the building, the Shippewrights, they with daylie trauaile, and their greatest skill, doe fitte them for the dispatche of the shippes: they calke them, pitche them, and among the rest, they make one most stanche and firme, by an excellent and ingenious inuention. For they had heard that in certaine partes of the Ocean, a kinde of worme is breede, which many times pearceth and eateth through the strongest oake that is: and therefore that the Mariners, and the rest to be employed in this voyage might bee free and safe from this danger, they couer a piece of the keele of the shippe with thinne sheetes of leade: and hauing thus built the shippes, and furnished them with armour and artillerie, then followed a second care no lesse troublesome and necessarie then the former, namely, the prouision of victuals, which was to be made according to the time and length of the voyage. And whereas they afore determined to haue the East part of the worlde sayled vnto, and yet that the sea towards the same was not open, except they kept the Northerne tract, where as yet it was doubtfull whether there were any passage yea or no, they resolued to victuall the shippes for eighteene moneths, which they did for this reason. For our men being to passe that huge and colde part of the worlde, they wisely foreseeing it, allowe them fiue moneths victuall to saile to the place, so much more to remaine there if the extremitie of the winter hindered their returne, and so much more also for the time of their comming home.

Prouision of victuals for 18. moneths.

Choise of captaines and Pilots.

Sir Hugh Willoughbie.

Nowe this prouision being made and caried aboorde, with armour and munition of all sorts, sufficient Captaines and gouernours of so great an enterprise were as yet wanting: to which office and place, although many men, (and some voyde of experience) offered themselues, yet one Sir Hugh Willoughbie a most valiant Gentleman, and well borne, very earnestly requested to haue that care and charge committed vnto him: of whome before all others, both by reason of

of his goodly perſonage (for hee was of a tall ſtature) as alſo for his ſingular ſkill in the ſeruices of warre, the companie of the Marchants made greateſt accompt: ſo that at the laſt they concluded and made choyce of him for the Generall of this voyage, and appointed to him the Admirall, with authoritie and commaunde ouer all the reſt. And for the gouernement of the other ſhips although diuers men ſeemed willing, and made offers of themſelues thereunto, yet by a common conſent one Richard Chanceler, a man of great eſtimation for many good partes of witte in him, was elected, in whome alone great hope for the performance of this buſineſſe reſted. This man was brought vp by one maiſter Henrie Sidney, a noble young Gentleman and very much beloued of king Edwarde, who at this time comming to the place where the Marchants were gathered together, beganne a very eloquent ſpeache or Oration, and ſpake to them after this maner following.

Richard Chanceler Grand Pilot beyne in Aprſlow.

M. Henry Sidney his Oration.

My very worſhipfull friendes, I cannot but greatly commende your preſent godly and vertuous intention, in the ſerious enterpriſing (for the ſinguler loue you beare to your Countrey,) a matter, which (I hope) will prooue profitable for this nation, and honourable to this our land. Which intention of yours (wee alſo of the Nobilitie) are readie to our power to helpe and further: neither doe wee holde any thing ſo deare and precious vnto vs, which wee will not willingly forgoe, and lay out in ſo commendable a cauſe. But principally I reioyce in my ſelfe, that I haue nouriſhed and maintained that witte, which is like by ſome meanes and in ſome meaſure, to profite and ſteede you in this worthy action. But yet I would not haue you ignorant of this one thing, that I doe nowe part with Chanceler, not becauſe I make litle reckoning of the man, or that his maintenance is burdenous and chargeable vnto mee, but that you might conceiue and vnderſtande, my good will and promptitude for the furtherance of this buſineſſe, and that the authoritie and eſtimation which hee deſerueth may be giuen him. You know the man by report, I by experience, you by wordes, I by deedes, you by ſpeache and companie, but I by the daily triall of his life, haue a full and perfect knowledge of him. And you are alſo to remember, into howe many perils for your ſakes, and his Countreys loue, hee is nowe to runne: whereof it is requiſite that wee bee not vnmindefull, if it pleaſe God to ſende him good ſucceſſe. Wee commit a little money to the chaunce and hazard of Fortune: Hee committs his life, (a thing to a man of all things moſt deare) to the raging Sea, and the vncertainties of many dangers. We ſhall here liue and reſt at home quietly with our friendes, and acquaintance: but hee in the meane time labouring to keepe the ignorant and vnruly Marriners in good order and obedience, with howe many cares ſhall hee trouble and vexe himſelfe, with howe many troubles ſhall hee breake himſelfe, and howe many diſquietings ſhall hee bee forced to ſuſtaine? Wee ſhall keepe our owne coaſtes and Countrey, Hee ſhall ſeeke ſtrange and vnknowen kingdomes. Hee ſhall commit his ſafetie to barbarous and cruell people, and ſhall hazarde his life amongſt the monſtrous and terrible beaſtes of the Sea. Wherefore in reſpect of the greatneſſe of the dangers, and the excellencie of his charge, you are to fauour and loue the man thus departing from vs, and if it fall ſo happily out that hee returne againe, it is your part and duetie alſo, liberally to rewarde him.

After that this noble yong Gentleman had deliuered this or ſome ſuch like ſpeache, much more eloquently then I can poſſiblie report it, the companie then preſent beganne one to looke vpon another, one to queſtion and conferre with another: and ſome (to whome the vertue and ſufficiencie of the man was knowen) began ſecretly to reioyce with themſelues, and to conceiue a ſpeciall hope, that the man would prooue in time very rare and excellent, and that his vertues alreadie appearing and ſhining to the worlde, would growe to the great honour and aduancement of this kingdome.

After all this, the companie growing to ſome ſilence, it ſeemed good to them that were of greateſt grauitie amongſt them, to inquire, ſearche and ſeeke what might be learned and knowen, concerning the Eaſterly part or tract of the world. For which cauſe 2. Tartarians, which were then of the Kings Stable, were ſent for, & an interpreter was gotten to be preſent, by whom they were demaunded touching their Countrey and the maners of their nation. But they were able to anſwere nothing to the purpoſe: being in deede more acquainted (as one there merily and openly ſaide) to toſſe pottes, then to learne the ſtates and diſpoſitions of people. But after much adoe and many things paſſed about this matter, they grewe at laſt to this iſſue, to ſet downe and appoint a time for the departure of the ſhippes: becauſe diuers were of opinion, that a great part of the beſt time of the yeere was alreadie ſpent, and if the delaye grewe longer, the way would bee ſtopt and barde by the force of the Ice, and the colde climate: and therefore it was thought beſt by the opinion of them all, that by the twentieth day of May, the Captaines and Marriners

They departed from Ratcliffe the 20. of May 1553.

shoulde take shipping, and depart from Ratliffe vpon the ebbe, if it so pleased God. They having saluted their acquaintance, one his wife, another his children, another his kinsefolkes, and another his friendes deerer then his kinsefolkes, were present and readie at the day appointed, and hauing waied ancre, they departed with the turning of the water, and sayling easily came first to Greenewich. The greater shippes were towed downe with boates, and oares, and the mariners being all apparelled in Watchet or skie coloured clothe, rowed a maine, and made way with diligence. And being come neere to Greenewich (where the Court then laye) presently vpon the newes thereof the Courtiers came running out, and the common people flocked together, standing very thicke vpon the shoare: the priuie Counsell, they lookt out at the windowes of the Court, and the rest ranne vp to the toppes of the towers: the shippes hereupon discharge their Ordinance, and shoote off their pieces after the maner of warre, and of the sea, insomuch that the tops of the hilles sounded therewith, the valleys, and the waters gaue an Eccho, and the mariners they shouted in such sort, that the skie rang againe with the noyse thereof. One stoode in the poope of the shippe, and by his gesture biddes fare well to his friendes in the best maner he coulde. Another walkes vpon the hatches, another climbes the shrowes, another standes vpon the maine yarde, and another in the toppe of the shippe. To bee short, it was a very triumphe (better a sort) in all respects to the beholders. But (alas) the good King Edwarde (in respect of whome principally all this was prepared,) hee onely by reason of his sickenesse was absent from this shewe, and not long after the departure of these ships, the lamentable and most sorowfull accident of his death followed.

But to proceede in the matter.

The shippes going downe with the tyde, came at last to Woolwiche, where they stayed and cast ancre, with purpose to depart thereheuce againe, as soone as the turning of the water, and better winde shoulde drawe them to set saile. After this they departed and came to Harwiche, in which porte they stayed long, not without great losse and consuming of time: yet at the last with a good winde they hoysed vp saile, and committed themselues to the sea, giuing their last adieu to their natiue Countrey, which they knewe not whether they shoulde euer returne vnto againe or not. Many of them looked oftentimes backe, and could not refraine from teares, considering into what hazards they were to fall, and what vncertainties of the sea they were to make triall of.

Amongst the rest Richard Chanceler, the Captaine of the Edwarde Bonauenture, was not a litle grieued with the feare of wanting victuals, part whereof was founde to bee corrupt, and putrified at Harwiche, and the hoggesheads of wine also leaked, and were not stanch: his naturall and fatherly affection also somewhat troubled him, for hee left behinde him his two little sonnes, which were in the case of Orphanes if hee spedde not well: the estate also of his companie moued him to care, being in the former respects after a sort vnhappie, and were to abide with himselfe euery good or badde accident: but in the meane time while his minde was thus tormented with the multiplicitie of sorowes and cares, after many dayes sayling, they kenned lande afarre off, whereunto the Pilots directed the shippes: and being come to it they landed, and finde it to be Rose Illande, where they stayed certaine dayes, and afterwards set saile againe, and proceeding towardes the North, they espied certaine other Illands, which were called the Crosse of Illands. From which places when they were a litle departed, master Willoughbie the Generall, a man of good foresight and prouidence in all his actions, erected and set out his flagge, by which he called together the chiefest men of the other shippes, that by the helpe and assistance of their counsels, the order of the gouernement, and conduction of the shippes in the whole voyage, might be the better: who being come together accordingly, they conclude and agree, that if any great tempest should arise at any time, and happen to disperse and scatter them, euery shippe shoulde endeuour his best to goe to Wardhouse, a hauen or castell of some name in the kingdome of Norway, and that they that arriued there first in safetie, shoulde staye and expect the comming of the rest.

The very same day in the afternoone, about foure of the clocke, so great a tempest suddenly rose, and the Seas were so outragious, that the shippes coulde not keepe their intended course, but some were perforce driuen one way, and some another way, to their great perill and hazarde. The generall with his lowdest voyce, cried out to Richard Chanceler, and earnestly required him not to goe farre from him: but hee neither would nor coulde keepe companie with him, if he sailed still so fast: for the Admirall was of better saile then his shippe. But the saide Admirall (I knowe not by what meanes) bearing all his sailes, was carried away with so great force and swiftnesse, that not long after hee was quite out of sight, and the thirde shippe also with his sonne

ſame ſtorme and like rage, was diſperſed and loſt vs.

The ſhippe boate of the Admirall (ſtriking againſt the ſhippe,) was ouerwhelmed in the ſight and viewe of the Marriners of the Bonauenture: and as for them that are alreadie returned and arriued, they knowe nothing of the reſt of the ſhippes what was become of them. They returne the next peere not knowing what was become of the other 2. ſhips.

But if it be ſo, that any miſerable miſhappe haue ouertaken them, If the rage and furie of the Sea haue deuoured thoſe good men, or if as yet they liue, and wander vp and downe in ſtrange Countreis, I muſt needes ſay they were men worthy of better fortune, and if they be liuing, let vs wiſh them ſafetie and a good returne, but if the crueltie of death hath taken holde of them, God ſende them a Chriſtian graue and Sepulchre.

Nowe Richard Chanceler with his ſhippe and companie being thus left alone, and become very penſiue, heauie, and ſorrowfull, by this diſperſion of the Fleete, hee (according to the order before taken,) ſhapeth his courſe for Wardhouſe in Norway, there to expect and abide the arriuall of the reſt of the ſhippes. And being come thither, and hauing ſtaied there the ſpace of 7. dayes, and looked in vaine for their comming, he determined at length to proceede alone in the purpoſed voyage. And as hee was preparing himſelfe to depart, it happened that hee fell in companie and ſpeache with certaine Scottiſhmen: who hauing vnderſtanding of his intention, and wiſhing well to his actions, beganne earneſtly to diſſwade him from the further proſecution of the diſcouerie, by amplifying the dangers which hee was to fall into, and omitted no reaſon that might ſerue to that purpoſe. But hee holding nothing ſo ignominious and reprochfull, as inconſtancie and leuitie of minde, and perſwading himſelfe that a man of valure couide not commit a more diſhonourable part then for feare of danger to auoyde and ſhunne great attempts, was nothing at all chaunged or diſcouraged with the ſpeaches and wordes of the Scots, remayning ſtedfaſt and immutable in his firſt reſolution: determining either to bring that to paſſe which was intended, or els to die the death.

And as for them which were with maſter Chanceler in his ſhippe, although they had great cauſe of diſcomfort by the loſſe of their companie (whome the foreſaide tempeſt had ſeparated from them,) and were not a little troubled with cogitations and perturbations of minde, in reſpect of their doubtfull courſe: yet notwithſtanding, they were of ſuch conſent and agreement of minde with maſter Chanceler, that they were reſolute, and prepared vnder his direction and gouernment, to make proofe and triall of all aduentures, without all feare or miſtruſt of future dangers. Which conſtancie of minde in all the companie did exceedingly increaſe their Captaines carefulneſſe: for hee being ſwallowed vp with like good will and loue towardes them, feared leaſt through any errour of his, the ſafetie of the companie ſhoulde bee indangered. To conclude, when they ſawe their deſire and hope of the arriuall of the reſt of the ſhippes to bee euery day more and more fruſtrated, they prouided to ſea againe, and maſter Chanceler helde on his courſe towardes that vnknowen part of the world, and ſailed ſo farre, that hee came at laſt to the place where hee founde no night at all, but a continuall light and brightneſſe of the Sunne ſhining clearely vpon the huge and mightie Sea. And hauing the benefite of this perpetuall light for certaine dayes, at the length it pleaſed God to bring them into a certaine great Bay, which was of one hundreth miles or thereabout ouer. Whereinto they entred, and ſomewhat farre within it caſt ancre, and looking euery way about them, it happened that they eſpied afarre off a certaine fiſher boate, which maſter Chanceler, accompanied with a fewe of his men, went towardes to common with the fiſhermen that were in it, and to knowe of them what Countrey it was, and what people, and of what maner of liuing they were: but they being amazed with the ſtrange greatneſſe of his ſhippe, (for in thoſe partes before that time they had neuer ſeene the like) beganne preſently to auoyde and to flee: but hee ſtill following them, at laſt ouertooke them, and being come to them, they (being in great feare, as men halfe dead) proſtrated themſelues before him, offering to kiſſe his feete: but hee (according to his great and ſinguler courteſie,) looked pleaſantly vpon them, comforting them by ſignes and geſtures, refuſing thoſe duties and reuerences of theirs, and taking them vp in all louing ſort from the ground. And it is ſtrange to conſider howe much fauour afterwardes in that place, this humanitie of his did purchaſe to himſelfe. For they being diſmiſſed, ſpread by and by a report abroade of the arriuall of a ſtrange nation, of a ſinguler gentleneſſe and courteſie: whereupon the common people came together offering to theſe newe come gueſts victuals freely, and not refuſing to traffique with them, except they had bene bound by a certaine religious vſe and cuſtome, not to buy any forraine commodities, without the knowledge and conſent of the king.

By this time our men had learned that this Countrey was called Ruſſia, or Moſcouie, and that Euan Vaſiliuich (which was at that time their Kings name) ruled and gouerned The diſcourſe of Ruſſia.

farre and wide in those places. And the barbarous Russes asked likewise of our men whence they were, and what they came for: whereunto answere was made, that they were Englishmen sent into those coastes, from the most excellent King Edwarde the first, hauing from him in commaundement certaine things to deliuer to their King, and seeking nothing els, but his amitie and friendship, and traffique with his people, whereby they doubted not, but that great commoditie and profite would growe to the subiects of both kingdomes.

The barbarians heard these thinges very gladly, and promised their ayde and furtherance to acquaint their king out of hande with so honest and reasonable a request.

In the meane time master Chancelour intreated victuals for his money of the gouernour of that place, who together with others came aboorde him, and required hostages of them likewise for the more assurance of safetie to himselfe, and his companie. To whome the Gouernours answered, that they knew not in that case the will of their king, but yet were willing in such things as they might lawfully doe, to pleasure him: which was as then to afoorde him the benefite of victuals.

Nowe whiles these thinges were a doing, they secretly sent a messenger vnto the Emperour, to certifie him of the arriuall of a strange nation, and withall to knowe his pleasure concerning them. Which message was very welcome vnto him, insomuch that voluntarily hee inuited them to come to his Court. But if by reason of the tediousnesse of so long a iourney, they thought it not best so to doe, then hee graunted libertie to his subiects to bargaine, and to traffique with them: and further promised, (that if it woulde please them to come to him,) hee himselfe woulde beare the whole charges of poste horses. In the meane time the gouernours of the place differred the matter from day to day, pretending diuers excuses, and saying one while that the consent of all the gouernours, and another while, that the great and waighty affaires of the kingdome compelled them to differre their answere: and this they did of purpose, so long to procrastinate the time, vntill the messenger (sent before to the king) did returne with relation of his will and pleasure.

But Master Chauncelour, (seeing himselfe holde in this suspence with long and vaine expectation, and thinking that of intention to delude him, they posted the matter off so often,) was very instant with them to performe their promise: Which if they woulde not doe, hee tolde them that hee woulde depart, and proceede in his voyage. So that the Moscouites (although as yet they knewe not the minde of their king) yet fearing the departure in deede of our men, who had such wares and commodities as they greatly desired, they at last resolued to furnish our people with all thinges necessarie, and to conduct them by lande to the presence of their king. And Master Chauncelour beganne his iourney, which was very long and most troublesome, wherein hee had the vse of certaine sledds, which in that Countrey are very common, for they are carried themselues vpon sledds, and all their carriages are in the same sort, the people almost not knowing any other maner of carriage, the cause whereof is the exceeding hardnes of the ground, congealed in the winter time by the force of the colde, which in those places is very extreme and horrible, whereof hereafter we will say something.

But nowe they hauing passed the greater part of their iourney, mette at last with the Sledman (of whome I spake before) sent to the king secretly from the Iustices or gouernours, who by some ill happe had lost his way, and had gone to the Sea side, which is neere to the Country of the Tartars, thinking there to haue founde our shippe. But hauing long erred and wandered out of his way, at the last in his direct returne, hee mette (as hee was comming) our Captaine in the way. To whome hee by and by deliuered the Emperours letters, which were written to him with all courtesie, and in the most louing maner that could bee: wherein expresse commaundement was giuen, that poste horses shoulde bee gotten for him and the rest of his companie without any money. Which thing was of all the Russes in the rest of their iourney so willingly done, that they beganne to quarrell, yea, and to fight also, in striuing and contending which of them shoulde put their poste horses to the sledde: so that after much adoe, and great paines taken in this long and wearie iourney, (for they had trauailed very neere fifteene hundred miles) master Chancelour came at last to Mosco, the chiefe citie of the kingdome, and the seate of the king: of which citie, and of the Emperour himselfe, and of the principall cities of Moscouie, wee will speake immediately more at large in this discourse.

The Emperours courteous letters to M. Chancelour.

Of Mos-

Of Moſcouie, which is alſo called Ruſsia.

MOſcouie, which hath the name alſo of Ruſſia the white, is a very large, and ſpatious Countrey, euery way bounded with diuers nations. Towards the South and the Eaſt, it is compaſſed with Tartaria: the Northern ſide of it ſtretcheth to the Scythian Ocean: vpon the Weſt part, boyder the Lappians, a rude, and ſauage nation, liuing in woods, whoſe language is not knowen to any other people: next vnto theſe, more towards the South, is Swecia, then Finlandia, then Liuonia, and laſt of all Lituania. This Countrey of Moſcouie, hath alſo very many, and great riuers in it, and is marish ground in many places: and as for the riuers, the greateſt, and moſt famous amongſt all the reſt, is that, which the Ruſſes in their owne tongue call Volga, but others know it by the name of Rha. Next vnto it in fame, is Tanais, which they call Don, and the third Boriſthenes, which at this day they call Neper. Two of theſe, to wit, Rha, and Boriſthenes, yſſuing both out of one fountaine, runne very farre through the land: Rha receyuing many other pleaſant riuers into it, and running from the very head or ſpring of it towards the Eaſt, after many crooked turnings and windings, diſchargeth it ſelfe, and all the other waters, and riuers, that fals into it, by diuers paſſages into the Caſpian Sea. Tanais, ſpringing from a fountaine of great name in thoſe partes, and growing great neere to his head, ſpreds it ſelfe at length very largely, and makes a great lake: and then growing narrow againe, doth ſo runne for certaine miles, vntill it fall into another lake, which they call Iuan: and there hence, fetching a very crooked courſe, comes very neere to the riuer Volga: but diſdaining as it were, the companie of any other riuer, doth there turne it ſelfe againe from Volga, and runnes toward the South, and fals at laſt into the Lake of Mœotis. Boriſthenes, which comes from the ſame head that Rha doth, (as wee ſaide before) carieth both it ſelfe, and other waters that are neere vnto it, towards the South, not refuſing the mixture of other ſmall riuers: and running by many great and large Countreis, fals at laſt into Pontus Euxinus. Beſides theſe riuers, are alſo in Moſcouie certaine lakes, and pooles, the lakes breede fiſhe by the celeſtiall influence: and amongſt them all, the chiefeſt and moſt principall, is called Bellij Ieſera, which is very famous by reaſon of a very ſtrong Towre built in it, wherein the Kings of Moſcouie reſerue and repoſe their treaſure, in all time of warre, and danger.

The mightie lake of Bellij Ieſera.

Touching the Riphean mountaines, whereupon the ſnow lieth continually, and where hence in times paſt it was thought that Tanais the riuer did ſpring, and that the reſt of the wonders of nature, which the Grecians fained and inuented of olde were there to be ſeene, our men which lately came from thence, neither ſawe them, nor yet haue brought home any perfect relation of them, although they remained there for the ſpace of three moneths, and had gotten in that time ſome intelligence of the language of Moſcouie. The whole Countrey is plaine, and champion, and few hils in it: and towards the North it hath very large and ſpacious woods, wherin is great ſtore of Firre trees, a wood very neceſſarie, and fit for the building of houſes: there are alſo wilde beaſtes bred in thoſe woods, as Buffes, Beares, and blacke Wolues, and another kind of beaſt vnknowen to vs, but called by them Roſſomakka: and the nature of the ſame is very rare, and wonderfull: for when it is great with young, and ready to bring forth, it ſeeketh out ſome narrow place betweene two ſtakes, and ſo going through them, preſſeth it ſelfe, and by that meanes is eaſed of her burden, which otherwiſe could not be done. They hunt their buffes for the moſt part a horſebacke, but their Beares afoote, with woodden forkes. The north parts of the Countrey, are reported to be ſo colde, that the very ice or water, which diſtilleth out of the moiſt wood, which they lay vpon the fire, is preſently congealed and frozen: the diuerſitie growing ſuddenly to be ſo great, that in one and the ſelfe ſame firebrand, a man ſhall ſee both fire and ice. When the winter doth once beginne there, it doth ſtill more and more increaſe, by a perpetuitie of cold: neither doth that colde ſlake, vntill the force of the Sunne beames doth diſſolue the colde, and make glad the earth, returning to it againe. Our marriners which we left in the ſhip in the meane time to keepe it, in their going vp onely from their cabbins to the hatches, had their breath oftentimes ſo ſuddenly taken away, that they eſtſoones fell downe, as men very neere dead, ſo great is the ſharpenes of that cold climate: but as for the South partes of the Countrey, they are ſomewhat more temperate.

The ſharpnes of the winter in Moſcouie.

Of Moſco, the chiefe Citie of the kingdome, and of the Emperour thereof.

IT remaineth, that a larger diſcourſe be made of Moſco, the principall Citie of that Countrey, and of the Prince alſo, as before we haue promiſed. The Empire and gouernment of the King

is

is very large, and his wealth at this time exceeding great. And because the citie of Mosco is the chiefest of all the rest, it seemeth of it selfe to challenge the first place in this discourse. Our men say, that in bignes it is as great as the Citie of London, with the Suburbes thereof. There are many and great buildings in it, but for beautie and fairenes, nothing comparable to ours. There are many Townes, and Villages also, but built out of order, and with no handsomnes: their streetes and waies are not paued with stone, as ours are: the walles of their houses are of wood: the rookes for the most part, are couered with shingle boordes. There is hard by the Citie a very faire Castle, strong, and furnished with artillerie, whereunto the Citie is ioyned directly towardes the North, with a bricke wall: the wals also of the Castle are built with bricke, and are in bredth or thickenes eightene foote. This Castle hath on the one side a dry ditch, on the other side, the riuer Volga, whereby it is made almost inexpugnable. The same Volga trending towardes the East doth admit into it the companie of the riuer Occa.

Their manner of building.

In the Castle aforesayde, there are in number nine Churches, or Chappels, not altogether vnhandsome, which are vsed and kept by certaine religious men, ouer whome, there is after a sort a Patriarke, or Gouernour, and with him other reuerent Fathers, all which for the greater part, dwell within the Castle. As for the Kings Court and Pallace, it is not of the neatest, onely in forme it is foure square, and of lowe building, much surpassed and excelled by the beautie and elegancie of the houses of the Kings of England. The windowes are very narrowly built, and some of them by glasse, some other by lettilles admitte the light: and whereas the Pallaces of our Princes are decked, and adorned with hangings of clothe of golde, there is none such there: they build and ioyne to all their wals, benches, and that not onely in the Court of the Emperour, but in all priuate mens houses.

Nowe after that they had remained about twelue daies in the Citie, there was then a Messenger sent vnto them, to bring them to the Kings house: and they being after a sort wearied with their long stay, were very ready, and willing so to doe: and being entred within the gates of the Court, there sate a very honorable companie of Courtiers, to the number of one hundred, all apparelled in cloth of golde, downe to their ankles: and there hence being conducted into the chamber of presence, our men beganne to wonder at the Maiestie of the Emperour: his seate was aloft, in a very royall throne, hauing on his head a Diademe, or Crowne of golde, apparelled with a robe all of Goldsmithes worke, and in his hande he helde a Scepter garnished, and dect with pretious stones: and besides all other notes and apparances of honour, there was a Port in his countenance, proportionable with the excellencie of his estate: on the one side of him stood his chiefe Secretarie, on the other side, the great Commander of silence, both of them arayed also in cloth of golde: and then there sate the Counsel of one hundred, and fiftie in number, al in like sort arrayed, and of great state. This so honorable an assemblie, so great a Maiestie of the Emperour, and of the place, might very wel haue amazed our men, and haue dasht them out of countenance: but notwithstanding, Master Chanceler being there withall nothing dismaied, saluted, and did his dutie to the Emperour, after the manner of England, and withall, deliuered vnto him the letters of their king, Edward the sixt. The Emperour hauing taken, & read the letters, began a litle to question with them, and to aske them of the welfare of our king: whereunto our men answered him directly, & in fewe words: hereupon our men presented some thing to the Emperour, by the chiefe Secretarie, which at the deliuerie of it, put off his hat, being before all the time couered: and so the Emperour hauing inuited them to dinner, dismissed them from his presence: and going into the chamber of him that was Master of the Requests to the Emperour, & hauing staied there the space of two howres, at the last, the Messenger commeth, and calleth them to dinner: they goe, and being conducted into the golden Court, (for so they call it, although not very fairly) they find the Emperour sitting vpon a high and stately seate, apparelled with a robe of siluer, and with an other Diademe on his heade: our men being placed ouer against him, sitte downe in the middes of the roome, stoode a mightie Cupboorde vpon a square foote, whereupon stoode also a rounde boorde, in manner of a Diamond, broade beneath, and towardes the toppe narrowe, and euery steppe rose vppe more narrowe then another. Vppon this Cupboorde was placed the Emperours plate, which was so much, that the very Cupboord it selfe was scarce able to sustayne the waight of it: the better part of all the vessels, and goblets, was made of very fine golde: and amongest the rest, there were foure pots of very large bignes, which did adorne the rest of the plate, in great measure: for they were so highe, that they thought them at the least. fiue foote long. There were also vpon this Cupboorde, certaine siluer caskes, not much differing from the quantitie of our Fykins, wherein was reserued the Emperours drinke: on eache side of the Hall, stoode foure Tables, eache of them laide, and couered with

K. Edwards letters deliuered.

very

very cleane table clothes, whereunto the companie ascended by three steps or degrees: all which were filled with the assemblie present: the ghestes were all apparelled with linnen without, and with riche skinnes within, and so did notably set out this royall feast. The Emperour, when he takes any bread or knife into his hand, doth first of all crosse himselfe vpon his forehead: they that are in speciall fauour with the Emperour, sitte vpon the same bench with him, but somewhat farre from him: and before the comming in of the meate, the Emperour himselfe, according to an ancient custome of the kings of Moscouy, doth first bestow a peece of bread vpon euery one of his ghests, with a loud pronunciation of his title, and honour, in this manner: The great Duke of Moscouie, and chiefe Emperour of Russia, Iohn Basiliwich, (& then the officer nameth the ghest) doth giue thee bread. Wherupon all the ghests rise vp, and by and by sit downe again. This done, the Gentleman Vsher of the Hall comes in, with a notable companie of seruants, carying the dishes, and hauing done his reuerence to the Emperour, puts a young Swanne in a golden platter vpon the table, and immediatly takes it thence againe, deliuering it to the Caruer, and seuen other of his fellowes to be cut vp: which being performed, the meate is then distributed to the ghests, with the like pompe, and ceremonies. In the meane time, the Gentleman Vsher receiues his bread, and tasteth to the Emperour, and afterward, hauing done his reuerence, he departeth. Touching the rest of the dishes, because they were brought in out of order, our men can report no certaintie: but this is true, that all the furniture of dishes, and drinking vessels, which were then for the vse of a hundred ghests, was all of pure gold, and the tables were so laden with vessels of gold, that there was no roome for some to stand vpon them.

We may not forget, that there were 140. seruitors araied in cloth of golde, that in the dinner time, changed thrise their habit and apparell, which seruitors are in like sort serued with bread from the Emperour, as the rest of the ghests. Last of all, dinner being ended, and candles brought in, (for by this time night was come) the Emperour calleth all his ghests and Noble men by their names, in such sorte, that it seemes miraculous, that a Prince, otherwise occupied in great matters of estate, should so wel remember so many and sundry particular names. The Russes told our men, that the reason thereof, as also of the bestowing of bread in that manner, was to the ende that the Emperour might keepe the knowledge of his owne houshold: and withall, that such as are vnder his displeasure, might by this meanes be knowen.

Of the discipline of warre amongst the Russes.

WHensoeuer the iniuries of their neighbours doe call the King foorth to battell, he neuer armeth a lesse number against the enemie, then 300. thousand souldiers, 100. thousand whereof he carieth out into the field with him, and leaueth the rest in garrison in some fit places, for the better safetie of his Empire. He presseth no husbandmen, nor Marchant: for the Countrey is so populous, that these being left at home, the youth of the Realme is sufficient for all his wars. As many as goe out to warfare, doe prouide all things of their owne cost: they fight not on foote, but altogether on horsebacke: their armour is a coate of maile, & a helmet: the coate of maile about is gilded, or els adorned with silke, although it pertaine to a common souldier: they haue a great pride in shewing their wealth: they vse bowes, and arrowes, as the Turks do: they carry lances also into the field. They ride with a short stirrop, after the manner of the Turkes: they are a kinde of people most sparing in diet, and most patient in extremitie of colde, aboue all others. For when the ground is couered with snowe, and is growen terrible and hard with the frost, this Russe hanges vp his mantle, or souldiers coate, against that part from whence the winde and Snowe driues, and so making a little fire, lieth downe with his backe towards the weather: this mantle of his serues him for his bed, wall, house and all: his drinke is the cold water of the riuer, mingled with oatemeale, and this is all his good cheere, and he thinketh himselfe well, and daintily fedde therewith, and so sitteth downe by his fire, and vpon the harde grounde, rosteth as it were his weary sides thus daintily stuffed: the hard ground is his feather bed, and some blocke or stone his pillow: and as for his horse, he is as it were a chamberfellow with his Master, faring both alike: how iustly may this barbarous, and rude Russe, condemne the daintines and niceues of our Captaines, who liuing in a soile and aire much more temperate, yet commonly vse furred boots, and clokes? But thus much of the furniture of their common souldiers. But those that are of higher degrees, come into the fielde, a little better prouided. As for the furniture of the Emperour himselfe, it is then aboue all other times, most notable. The couerings of his tente for the most part, are all of gold, adorned with stones of great price, and with the curious workemanship of plumasiers: as often as they are to skirmish with the enemie, they goe foorth without any order at all:

all: they make no wings, nor militarie diuisions of their men, as we doe, but lying for the most part, in ambush, doe suddenly set vpon the enemie. Their horses can well abstaine two whole daies from any meate. They feede vpon the barkes of trees, and the most tender branches, in all the time of warre. And this scant and miserable manner of liuing, both the horse and his Master can well endure, sometimes for the space of two moneths, lustie, and in good state of body. If any man behaue himselfe valiantly in the fielde, to the contentation of the Emperour, he bestoweth vpon him in recompense of his seruice, some farme, or so much ground as he and his may liue vpon, which notwithstanding after his death, returneth againe to the Emperour, if he die without a male issue. For although his daughters be neuer so many, yet no part of that inheritance comes to them, except peraduenture the Emperour of his goodnes, giue some portion of the land amongest them, to bestowe them withall. As for the man, whosoeuer he be, that is in this sorte rewarded by the Emperours liberalitie, he is bound in a great summe, to maintaine so many souldiers in the warre, when neede shall require, as that land, in the opinion of the Emperour, is able to maintaine. And all those, to whome any land fals by inheritance, are in no better condition: for if they die without any male issue, all their lands fals into the hands of the Emperour: and moreour, if there be any riche man amongst them, who in his owne person is vnfit for the warres, and yet hath such wealth, that thereby many Noble men and warriors might be maintained, if any of the Courtiers present his name to the Emperour, the vnhappy man is by and by sent for, and in that instant, depriued of all his riches, which with great paines, and trauel all his life time, he had gotten together: except perhaps some small portion thereof be left him, to maintaine his wife, children, and familie. But all this is done of all the people so willingly at the Emperours commandement, that a man would thinke, they rather make restitution of other mens goods, then giue that which is their owne to other men. Nowe the Emperour hauing taken these goods into his hands, bestoweth them among his Courtiers, according to their deserts: & the oftener that a man is sent to the warres, the more fauour he thinketh is borne to him by the Emperour, although he goe vpon his owne charge, as I said before. So great is the obedience of all men generally to their Prince.

Of the Ambassadors of the Emperour of Moscouie.

The Moscouite, with no lesse pompe, and magnificence, then that which we haue spoken of, sends his Ambassadors to forren Princes, in the affaires of estate. For while our men were abiding in the Citie of Mosco, there were two Ambassadors sent to the King of Poland, accompanied with 500. notable horse, and the greater part of the men were arraied in cloth of golde, and of silke, and the worst apparell was of garments of a blewe colour, to speake nothing of the trappings of the horses, which were adorned with gold and siluer, and very curiously embroidered: they had also with them one hundred white and faire spare horses, to vse them at such times, as any wearines came vpon them. But nowe the time requireth me to speake briefly of other Cities of the Moscouites, and of the wares and commodities that the Countrey yeeldeth.

Nouogorode.

Next vnto Mosco, the Citie of Nouogorode is reputed the chiefest of Russia: for although it be in Maiestie inferior to it, yet in greatnes it goeth beyond it. It is the chiefest and greatest Marte Towne of all Moscouie: and albeit the Emperours seate is not there, but at Mosco, yet the commodiousnes of the riuer, falling into that gulfe, which is called Sinus Finnicus, whereby it is well frequented by Marchants, makes it more famous, then Mosco it selfe. This towne excels all the rest in the commodities of flaxe, and hempe: it yeeldes also hides, honie, and wax. The Flemmings there, sometimes had a house of marchandize, but by reason that they vsed the like ill dealing there, which they did with vs, they lost their priuiledges, a restitution whereof they earnestly sued for, at the time that our men were there. But those Flemmings hearing of the arriuall of our men in those partes, wrote their letters to the Emperour against them, accusing them for pirats and rouers, wishing him to detaine, and imprison them. Which things when they were knowen of our men, they conceaued feare, that they should neuer haue returned home. But the Emperour beleeuing rather the Kings letters, which our men brought, then the lying and false suggestions of the Flemmings, vsed no ill intreatie towards them.

The iniurie of the Flemmings against our men.

Yeraslaue.

Yeraſlaue.

YEraſlaue alſo is a Towne of ſome good fame, for the commodities of hides, tallow, and corne, which it yeelds in great abundance. Cakes of waxe are there alſo to be ſolde, although other places haue greater ſtore: this Yeraſlaue is diſtant from Moſco, about two hundred miles: and betwixt them are many populous villages. Their fields yeelde ſuch ſtore of corne, that in conueying it towardes Moſco, ſometimes in a forenoone, a man ſhall ſee ſeuen hundred or eight hundred ſleds, going and comming, laden with corne and ſalt fiſhe: the people come a thouſand miles to Moſco, to buy that corne, and then carry it away vpon ſleds: and theſe are thoſe people that dwell in the North parts, where the cold is ſo terrible, that no corne doth grow there, or if it ſpring vp, it neuer comes to ripenes. The commodities that they bring with them, are ſalt fiſhe, ſkinnes, and hydes.

Vologda.

VOlogda being from Moſco, 550. miles, yeeldes the commodities of hempe, and flaxe alſo: although the greateſt ſtore of flaxe is ſolde at Nouogrode.

Pleſco.

THe Towne of Pleſco, is frequented of Marchants for the good ſtore of honie, and waxe, that it yeeldeth.

Colmagro.

THe North parts of Ruſſia yeelde very rare and precious ſkinnes: and amongeſt the reſt, thoſe principally, which we call Sables, worne about the neckes of our Noble women, and Ladies: it hath alſo Martyns ſkinnes, white, blacke, and red Fore ſkinnes, ſkinnes of Harts, and Ermyns, and others, which they call and terme barbarouſly, as Beuers, Mizres, and Minuers. The ſea adioyning, breedes a certaine beaſt, which they call the Mors, which ſeeketh his foode vpon the rockes, climing vp with the helpe of his teeth. The Ruſſes vſe to take them, for the great vertue that is in their teeth, whereof they make as great accompt, as we doe of the Elephants tooth. Theſe commodities they carry vpon Deeres backes to the towne of Lampas: and from thence to Colmagro, and there in the winter time, are kept great Faires for the ſale of them. This Citie of Colmagro, ſerues all the Countrey about it with ſalt, and ſalt fiſhe. The Ruſſes alſo of the North parts, ſend thither oile, which they call traine, which they make in a riuer called "Vna, although it be alſo made elſe where: and here they vſe to boile the water of the ſea, whereof they make very great ſtore of ſalt.

" or Dwina.

Of controuerſies in Lawe, and how they are ended.

HAuing hitherto ſpoken ſo much of the chiefeſt Cities of Ruſſia, as the matter required: it remaineth that wee ſpeake ſomewhat of the lawes, that the Moſcouits doe vſe, as farre forth as the ſame are come to our knowledge. If any controuerſie ariſe among them, they firſt make their Landlords Iudges in the matter, and if they can not ende it, then they preferre it to the Magiſtrate. The plaintife craueth of the ſaid Magiſtrate, that he may haue leaue to enter lawe againſt his aduerſarie: and hauing obtained it, the officer fetcheth the defendant, and beateth him on the legges, till he bring forth a ſuretie for him: but if he be not of ſuch credite, as to procure a ſuretie, then are his hands by an officer tied to his necke, and he is beaten all the way, till he come before the Iudge. The Iudge then aſketh him (as for example in the matter of debt) whether he oweth any thing to the plaintife. If he denies it, then ſaith the Iudge, how canſt thou deny it? the defendant anſwereth, by an othe: thereuppon the officer is commaunded to ceaſe from beating of him, vntill the matter be further tried. They haue no Lawyers, but euery man is his owne Aduocate, and both the complaint of the accuſer, and the anſwer of the defendant, are in manner of petition deliuered to the Emperour, intreating iuſtice at his hands. The Emperour himſelfe heareth euery great controuerſie, and vpon the hearing of it, giueth iudgement, and that with great equitie, which I take to be a thing worthie of ſpeciall commendation, in the Maieſtie of a Prince. But although he do this with a good purpoſe of mind, yet the corrupt Magiſtrates doe wonderfully peruert

uert the same: but if the Emperour take them in any fault, he doth punish them most seuerely. Now at the last, when eche partie hath defended his cause with his best reasons, the Iudge demandeth of the accuser, whether he hath any more to say for himselfe: he answereth, that he will trie the matter in fight by his Champion, or else intreateth that in fight betwixt themselues, the matter may be ended: which being granted, they both fight it out: or if both of them, or either of them, seeme vnfit for that kind of triall, then they haue publike Champions to be hired, which liue by ending of quarrels. These Champions are armed with yron ares, and speares, and fight on foot, and he whose Champion is ouercome, is by and by taken, and imprisoned, and terribly handled, vntill he agree with his aduersarie. But if either of them be of any good calling, and degree, and doe challenge one another to fight, the Iudge graunteth it: in which case they may not vse publike Champions. And he that is of any good birth, doth contemne the other, if he be basely borne, and will not fight with him. If a poore man happen to growe in debt, his Creditor takes him, and maketh him pay the debt, in working either to himselfe, or to some other man, whose wages he taketh vp. And there are some among them, that vse willingly to make themselues, their wiues, and children, bondslaues vnto rich men, to haue a little money at the first into their handes, and so for euer after contents themselues with meate and drinke: so litle accompt doe they make of libertie.

Of punishments vpon theeues.

IF any man be taken vpon committing of theft, he is imprisoned, and often beaten, but not hanged for the first offence, as the manner is with vs: and this they call the lawe of mercie. He that offendeth the second time, hath his nose cut off, and is burnt in the forehead with a hot yron. The third time, he is hanged. There are many cutpurses among them, and if the rigour of the Prince did not cut them off, they could not be auoided.

Of their religion.

THey maintaine the opinions of the Greeke Church: they suffer no grauen images of saints in their Churches, but their pictures painted in tables they haue in great abundance, which they do adore, and offer vnto, and burne ware candles before them, and cast holy water vpon them, without other honour. They say that our images, which are set vp in Churches, and carued, haue no diuinitie in them. In their priuate houses, they haue images for their houshold saints, and in the most part, they are put in the darkest place of the house: he that comes into his neighbours house, doth first salute his saints, although he see them not. If any foorme or stoole stand in his way, he oftentimes beateth his browe vpon the same, and often ducking downe with his head, and bowing, worshippeth the chiefe Image. The habite, and attire of the Priestes, and of the Laymen, doth nothing at all differ: as for marriage, it is forbidden to no man: onely this is receiued, and holde amongst them for a rule, and custome, that if a Priests wife doe die, he may not marry againe, nor take a second wife: and therefore they of secular Priestes, as they call them, are made Monkes, to whome then chastitie for euer is commanded. Their diuine seruice is all done, and said in their owne language, that euery man may vnderstand it: they receaue the Lordes Supper with leauened bread, and after the consecration, they carry it about the Church in a sawcer, and prohibite no man from receauing and taking of it, that is willing so to doe. They vse both the Olde, and the Newe Testament, and read both in their owne language, but so confusedly, that they themselues that doe read, vnderstand not what themselues doe say: and while any part of either Testament is read, there is libertie giuen by custome to prattle, talke, and make a noise: but in the time of the rest of the seruice, they vse very great silence, and reuerence, and behaue themselues very modestly, and in good sort. As touching the Lordes prayer, the tenth man amongest them knowes it not: and for the articles of our faith, and the ten commandements, no man, or at the least, very fewe of them doe either know them, or can say them: their opinion is, that such secrete and holy things as they are, should not rashly and imprudently be communicated with the common people. They holde for a Maxime amongst them, that the olde Lawe, and the commandements also are all abolished by the death and blood of Christ: all studies and letters of humanitie, they vtterly refuse: concerning the Latine, Greeke, and Hebrue tongues, they are altogether ignorant in them.

Euery yeere they celebrate foure seuerall fastes, which they cal according to the names of the Saincts: the first beginnes with them, at the time that our Lent beginnes. The second is called amongst them, the fast of S. Peter. The third is taken from the day of the Virgin Marie. And the fourth

fourth, and laſt, beginnes vpon S. Philips day. But as we begin our Lent vpon Wenſday, ſo they begin theirs vpon the Sunday. Vpon the Satturday they eate fleſh: whenſoeuer any of thoſe faſting feaſtes doe drawe neere, looke what worke doth immediatly goe before them, the ſame worke they liue altogether vpon white meates, and in their common language, they call thoſe workes, the faſt of butter.

In the time of their faſtes, the neighbours euery where goe from one to another, and viſite one another, and kiſſe one another with kiſſes of peace, in token of their mutuall loue, and Chriſtian concord: and then alſo, they doe more often then at any other time, goe to the holie Communion. When ſeuen daies are paſt, from the beginning of the faſt, then they often doe either goe to their Churches, or keepe themſelues at home, and vſe often prayer: and for that ſeuennights, they eate nothing but hearbes: but after that ſeuennight faſt is once paſt, then they returne to their old intemperancie of drinking, for they are notable toſpots. As for the keeping of their faſting daies, they doe it very ſtreightly, neither doe they eate any thing beſides hearbes, and ſalt fiſhe, as long as thoſe faſting daies do endure: but vpon euery Wenſday and Friday, in euery weeke throughout the yeere, they faſt.

There are very many Monaſteries, of the order of S. Benedict, amongſt them, to which many great liuings, for their maintenance doe belong: for the Friers and the Monkes, doe at the leaſt poſſeſſe the third part of the liuings, throughout the whole Moſcouite Empire: to thoſe Monkes that are of this order, there is amongeſt them a perpetuall prohibition, that they may eate no fleſh: and therefore their meate is onely ſalt fiſhe, milke, and butter: neither is it permitted them by the lawes, and cuſtomes of their religion, to eate any freſh fiſh at all: and at thoſe foure faſting times, whereof we ſpake before, they eate no fiſhe at all: onely they liue with hearbes, and cucumbers, which they doe continually for that purpoſe cauſe, and take order to grow and ſpring, for their vſe and diet.

As for their drinke, it is very weake, and ſmall: for the diſcharge of their office, they doe euery day ſay ſeruice, and that earely in the mornings before day: and they doe in ſuch ſort, and with ſuch obſeruation begin their ſeruice, that they will be ſure to make an ende of it, before day: and about nine of the clocke in the morning, they celebrate the Communion. When they haue ſo done, they goe to dinner, and after dinner, they go againe to ſeruice, and the like alſo after ſupper: and in the meane time, while they are at dinner, there is ſome expoſition, or interpretation of the Goſpel vſed. Note.

Whenſoeuer any Abbot of any monaſterie dieth, the Emperour taketh all his houſholde ſtuffe, beaſtes, flockes of ſheepe, golde, ſiluer, and all that he hath: or els hee that is to ſucceed him in his place and dignitie, doth redeeme all thoſe things, and buieth them of the Emperour for money.

Their churches are built of timber, and the towers of their churches for the moſt part are couered with ſhingle boordes. At the doores of their churches, they vſually build ſome entrance or porch as we doe, and in their churchyardes they erect a certaine houſe of wood, wherein they ſet vp their bels, wherein ſometimes they haue but one, in ſome two, and in ſome alſo three.

There is one vſe and cuſtome amongſt them, which is ſtrange and rare, but yet it is very ridiculous, and that is this: when any man dieth amongſt them, they take the dead body and put it in a coffine or cheſt, and in the hand of the corps they put a little ſcrole, and in the ſame there are theſe wordes written, that the ſame man died a Ruſſe of Ruſſes, hauing receiued the faith, and died in the ſame. This writing or letter they ſay they ſend to S. Peter, who reciuing it (as they affirme) reades it, and by and by admits him into heauen, and that his glory and place is higher and greater then the glory of the Chriſtians of the Latin church, reputing themſelues to bee followers of a more ſincere faith and religion then they: they hold opinion that wee are but halfe chriſtians, and themſelues onely to bee the true and perfect church: theſe are the fooliſh and childiſh dotages of ſuch ignorant Barbarians.

Of the Moſcouites that are Idolaters, dwelling neere to Tartaria.

There is a certaine part of Moſcouie, bordering vpon the countries of the Tartars, wherein thoſe Moſcouits ꝑ dwel, are very great idolaters: they haue one famous idol amongſt them, which they call the Golden old wife, and they haue a cuſtome that whenſoeuer any plague or any calamitie doeth afflict the countrey, as hunger, warre, or ſuch like, then they goe by and by to conſult with their idoll, which they doe after this manner: they fall downe proſtrate before the idoll, and praye vnto it, and put in the preſence of the ſame, Aures vetula, aut Zelotibaba.

a cymball, and about the same certaine persons stand, which are chosen amongst them by lot: vpon their cymball they place a siluer tode, and sound the cymball, and to whomsoeuer of those women persons that tode goeth, he is taken, and by and by slaine: and immediately, I know not by what illusions of the deuill, or idoll, he is againe restored to life, and then doth reueale and deliuer the causes of the present calamitie. And by this meanes knowing how to pacifie the idoll, they are deliuered from the imminent danger.

Of the forme of their priuate houses, and of the *apparell of the people.*

THe common houses of the countrey are euery where built of beames of firre tree: the lower beames do so receiue the round holownesse of the vppermost, that by the meanes of the building thereupon, they resist, and expell all windes that blowe, and where the timber is ioined together, there they stop the chinkes with mosse. The forme and fashion of their houses in all places is foure square, with straight and narow windowes, whereby with a transparent casement made or couered with skinne like to parchment, they receiue the light. The roofes of their houses are made of boordes couered without with the barke of trees: within their houses they haue benches or griezes hard by their wals, which commonly they sleepe vpon, for the common people know not the vse of beds: they haue floores wherein in the morning they make a fire, and the same fire warmeth either moderately warme, or make very hote the whole house.

The apparell of the people for the most part is made of wooll, their caps are picked like vnto rike or diamond, broad beneath, and sharpe vpward. In the maner of making whereof, there is a signe and representation of nobilitie: for the loftier or higher their caps are, the greater is their birth supposed to be, and the greater reuerence is giuen them by the common people.

The Conclusion to Queene Mary.

THese are the things most excellent Queene, which your Subiects newly returned from Russia haue brought home concerning the state of that countrey: wherefore if your maiestie shall be fauourable, and graunt a continuance of the trauell, there is no doubt but that the honour and renowme of your name will be spred amongst those nations, whereunto three onely noble personages from the very creation haue had accesse, to whom no man hath bene comparable.

The copie of the Duke of Moscouie and Emperour of Russia *his letters, sent to King Edward the sixt, by the hands of Richard* Chanceler.

THe Almightie power of God, and the incomprehensible holie Trinitie, right full Christian beliefe, &c. We great Duke Iuan Vasileuich, by the grace of God Emperour of all Russia, and great Duke of Vlademerskij, Moskouskij, Nouogrodskij, Cazanskii, Pskanskii, Smolenskii, Tuerskij, Hugorskij, Permskii, Veatskii, Bolgarskii, with diuers other lands, Emperour also and great Duke of Nouogoroda, and in the lowe Countries of Chernigouskij, Rezanskii, Volotskii, Refskii, Belskii, Rostouskii, Yaroslauskii, Belocherskii, Oodorskii, Obdorskii, Condinskii, and many other Countreis, Lord ouer all the North coast, greeting.

Iuan Vasileuich, that is to say, Iohn the sonne of Basilius.

Before all right great and worthy of honour, Edward King of England, &c. according to our most hartie and good zeale, with good intent and friendly desire, and according to our holy Christian faith, and great gouernance, and being in the light of great vnderstanding, our answere by this our honourable writing vnto your kingly gouernance, at the request of your faithfull seruant Richard Chanceler, with his companie, as they shall let you wisely know, is thus. In the strength of the twentieth yeere of our gouernance, be it knowen, that at our sea coastes, arriued a ship, with one Richard, and his companie, and said, that he was desirous to come into our Dominions, and according to his request hath seene our Maiestie, and our eies: and hath declared vnto your Maiesties desire, as that we should grant vnto your subiects, to goe and come, and in our dominions, and among our subiects, to frequent free Marts, with all sortes of marchandizes, and vpon the same to haue wares for their returne. And they haue also deliuered vs your letters, which

That is, come into our presence.

declare the same request. And hereupon we haue giuen order, that whersoeuer your faithfull seruant Hugh Willoughbie land or touch in our dominions, to be well entertained, who as yet is not arriued, as your seruant Richard can declare.

And we with christian beliefe and faithfulnesse, and according to your honourable request, and my honourable commaundement will not leaue it vndone, and are furthermore willing that you send vnto vs your ships and vessels, when and as often as they may haue passage, with good assurance on our part to see them harmelesse. And if you send one of your maiesties counsell to treate with vs whereby your countrey merchaunts may with all kindes of wares, and where they will make their market in our dominions, they shall haue their free Marte with all free liberties through my whole dominions with all kindes of wares, to come and goe at their pleasure, without any let, damage, or impediment, according to this our letter, our word and our seale which we haue commaunded to be vnder sealed. Written in our dominion, in our towne and our palace in the castle of Mosco, in the yeere seuen thousand and sixtie, the second moneth of Februarie.

This letter was written in the Moscouian tongue, in letters much like to the Greeke letters, very faire written in paper, with a broad seale hanging at the same, sealed in paper vpon waxe. This seale was much like the broad seale of England, hauing on the one side the image of a mã an horseback in complete harnesse fighting with a dragon. Vnder this letter was another paper written in the Dutch tongue, which was the interpretation of the other written in the Moscouian letters. These letters were sent the next yeere after the date of king Edwards letters, 1554.

The coines, waights and measures vsed in Russia, written by Iohn Hasse, in the yeere, 1554.

Forasmuch as it is most necessary for all merchants which seeke to haue traffique in any strange regions, first to acquaint themselues with the coines of those landes with which they doe intend to ioine in traffique, and how they are called from the valuation of the highest piece to the lowest, and in what sort they make their paiments, as also what their common waights and measures be, For these causes I haue thought good to write some thing thereof according to mine owne knowledge and experience, to the end that the merchants of that new Aduenture, may the better vnderstand how the wealth of that new frequented trade will arise.

First, it is to be noted that the Emperour of Russia hath no other coines then siluer in all his land, which goeth for paiment amongst merchants, yet notwithstanding there is a coine of copper, which serueth for the reliefe of the poore in Mosco, and no where els, and that is but onely for quas, water and fruite, as nuts, apples, and such other like. The name of which money is called Pole or Poles, of which Poles there goe to the least of the siluer coines, 18. But I will not stand vpon this, because it is no current money among merchants. *No coines of gold in Russia, but all of siluer.*

Of siluer coines there be these sortes of pieces: the least is a Poledenga, the second a Denga, the third, Nowgrote, which is as much to say in English as halfepenie, penie, and two pence, and for other valued money then this, there is none: there are oftentimes there coines of gold, but they come out of foren countries, whereof there is no ordinarie valuation, but they passe according to the agreement of merchants.

Their order in summing of money is this: as we say in England, halfepenie, penie, shilling and pound, so say they, Poledenga, Denga, Altine and Rubble: There goeth two Poledengas to a Denga, six Dengaes to an Altine, and 23. Altines, and two Dengaes to a Rubble.

Concerning the waights of Russia they are these. There are two sortes of pounds in vse amongst them, the one great, the other small: the great pound is iust two small pounds: they call the great waight by the name of Beasemar, and the small they call the Skallawaight: with this small waight they weigh their siluer coines, of the which the Emperour hath commaunded to put to euery small pound three Rubbles of siluer, and with the same waight they weigh all Grocerie wares, and almost all other wares which come into the land, except those which they waigh by the Pode, as hops sale, iron, lead, tinne and batrie with diuers others: notwithstanding they vse to weigh batrie more often by the small waight then by the great. *The waights in Russia.*

Whensoeuer you find the prices of your wares rated by the Pode, consider that to be the great waight, and the pound to be the small. Also they deuide the small pound into 48. parts, and they call the eight and fortieth part a Slotnike, by the which Slotnike the retailers sell their wares out of their shoppes, as Goldsmiths, Grocers, Silkesellers and such other like as we doe vse to retaile

by the ounce: and as for their great waight which they call the Beasemar, they sell by pode, or shippond. The pode doth containe of the great waight, 40. pounds, and of the small 80. there goe 10. podes to a shippond.

Yet you must consider that their great waight is not full with ours: for I take not their great pound to be full 13. ounces, but aboue 12. I thinke it be. But for your iust proofe, waigh 6. rubbles of Russia money with our pound waight, and then shall you see what it lacketh: for 6. rubbles of Russia is by the Emperours standerd, the great pound: so that I thinke it the next way to know the iust waight, as well of the great pound as of the small.

The waight of Wardhouse.

There is another waight nee defull to be knowen, which is the waight of Wardhouse, for so much as they weigh all their dry fishe by waight, which waight is the Basemare, as they of Russia doe vse, notwithstanding there is another sort in it: the names of those waighes are these: the marke pound, the great pound, the weie, and the shippond. The marke pound is to be vnderstood as our pound, and their great pound is 24. of their marke pound: the weie is 3. great pound, and 8. weie is a shippond.

The Russia measures.

Nowe concerning their measures. As they haue two sortes of waighes, so they haue also two sortes of measures: wherewith they measure cloth both linnen and woollen: they call the one an Areshine, and the other a Locut: the Areshine I take to bee as much as the Flaunders ell, and their Locut halfe an English yard: with their Areshine they may mete all such sortes of clothes as commeth into the land, and with the Locut all such cloth both linnen and woollen, as they make themselues. And whereas wee vse to giue yard and inch, or yard and handfull, they doe giue nothing but bare measure.

They haue also a measure wherewith they doe mete their corne, which they call a Setfooth, and the halfe of that an Osmine: this Setfooth I take to be three bushels of London measure. And as for their drinke measure, they call it a Spanne, which is much like a bucket, and of that I neuer sawe any true rate, but that some was greater then other some. And as for the measures of Wardhouse wherewith they mete their cloth, there is no difference between that & the measure of Danske, which is halfe an English ell.

The measure of Wardhouse in cloth, is the measure of Danske.

Concerning the tolles and customes of Russia, it was reported to mee in Moscouia, that the Turkes and Armenians pay the tenth penie custome of all the Wares they bring into the Emperours land, and aboue that they pay for all such goods as they waigh at the Emperours beame, two pence of the Rubble, which the buyer or seller must make report of to the Master of the beame: they also pay a certayne Horse toll, which is in diuers places of his Realme fourr pence a horse.

The Turkes and Armenians pay custome.

The Emperors beame.

The Dutch nation are free of this: notwithstanding for certaine offences, they had lost their priuiledges which they haue recouered this Sommer to their great charge. It was reported mee by a Justice of that countrey, that they paied for it thirtie thousand Rubbles, and also the Rye, Dorpte and Reuell haue yeelded themselues vnder the gouernement of the Emperour of Russia: whether this was a bragge of the Russes or not, I know not, but thus he sayd, and in deed whiles wee were there, there came a great Ambassadour out of Liffeland, for the assurance of their priuiledges.

The Dutch nation lost their priuiledges, and renewed them with a great summe.

To speake somewhat of the commodities of this countrey, it is to bee vnderstood, that there is a certaine place foure score miles from the Sea called Colmogro: to which place there resort all the sortes of Wares that are in the North partes, as Oiles, Salt, Stockfishe, Salmon, Fethers and Furres: their Salt they make of salt water by the Sea side: their Oiles they make of Seales, where of they haue great store which is brought out of the Bay where our shippes came in: they make it in the Spring of the yeere, and bring it to Colmogro to sell, and the merchants there carie it to Nouogrode, and so sell it to the Dutch nation. Their Stockfish and Salmon commeth from a place called Mallums, not farre from Wardhouse: their Salmon and their Salt they carrie to Mosco, and their dry fishe they carry to Nouogrode, and sell it there to the Leeflanders.

The commodities of Russia.

The Furres and Fethers which come to Colmogro, as Sables, Beauers, Minkes, Armis, Lettis, Graies, Woolouerings, and white Foxes, with Deere skinnes, they are brought thither, by the men of Penninge, Lampne, and Powstezer, which fetch them from the Samoydes that are counted sauage people: and the merchaunts that bring these Furres, doe vse to trucke with the merchants of Colmogro for Cloth, Tinne, Batrie, and such other like, and the merchants of Colmogro carrie them to Nouogrode, Vologda, or Mosco, and sell them there. The Fethers which come from Penning they doe little esteeme.

If our merchants doe desire to know the meetest place of Russia for their standing house, in mine

opinion

opinion I take it to bee Vologda, which is a great towne standing in the heart of Russia, with many great and good townes about it. There is great plentie of corne, victuals, and of all such wares as are raised in Russland, but specially, flaxe, hempe, tallow and bacon: there is also great store of waxe, but it commeth from the Mosko. Vologda and the state thereof.

The towne of Vologda is meetest for our merchaunts, because it lieth amongst all the best townes of Russia, and there is no town in Russia but trades with it: also the water is a great commoditie to it. If they plant themselues in Mosco or Nouogrode, their charge will bee great and wonderfull, but not so in Vologda: for all things will there bee had better cheape by the one halfe. And for their vent, I know no place so meete: it is likely that some will thinke the Mosko to be the meetest by the reason of the court, but by that reason I take it to be worse: for the charge there would be so great by crauers and expences, that the moitie of the profite would bee wholy consumed, which in the other place will bee saued. And yet notwithstanding our merchaunts may bee there in the Winter to serue the Emperour and his coure. The Emperour is a great merchaunt himselfe of waxe and sables, which with good foresight may bee procured to their hands: as for other commodities there are little or none in Moscouia, besides those aboue rehearsed: if there bee other, it is brought thither by the Turkes, who will be daintie to buy our clothes considering the charges of cariage ouer land. The emperor of Moscouie is a merchaunt himselfe.

Our merchaunts may doe well to prouide for the Russes such wares as the Dutch nation doeth serue them of, as Flanders and Holland clothes, which I beleeue, they shall serue better and with lesse charge then they of Rye or Dorpt, or Reuel: for it is no small aduenture to bring their clothes out of Flanders to either of these places, and their charge not little to carry them ouer land to Nouogrode, which is from Rye nine hundred Russia miles.

This Nouogrode is a place well furnished with Flaxe, Waxe, Hides, tallow and many other things: the best flaxe in Russia is brought thither and there sold by the hundred bundels, which is done also at Vologda, and they that bring the flaxe to Nouogrode, dwell as neere Vologda, as Nouogrode, and when they heare of the vtterance which they may haue with our nation, they will as willingly come to them as goe to the other.

They haue in Russia two sortes of flaxe, the one is called great flaxe, and the other small: that which they call great flaxe is better by foure rubbles in 100. bundles then the small: It is much longer then the other, and cleaner without wood: and whereas of the small flaxe there goe 27. or 28. bundles to a shippond, there goeth not of the greater sort aboue 22. or 24. at the most. There are many other trifles in Russia, as sope, mats, &c. but I thinke there will be no great account made of them. Two sortes of flaxe.

Articles conceiued and determined for the Commission of the *Merchants of this company resiant in Russia, and at the VVardhouse, for the second voiage, 1555. the first of May, as followeth.*

FIrst, the Gouernour, Consuls, Assistants and whole company assembled this day in open court, committeth and authorizeth Richard Gray and George Killingworth, iointly and seuerally to be Agents, Factors, and Attornies generall and speciall, for the whole bodie of this companie, to buy, sell, trucke, change and permute all, and euery kind and kindes of wares, merchandizes and goods to the said company appertaining, now laden and shipped in the good ship called ꝑ Edward Bonauenture, appointed for Russia, the same to vtter and sell to the most commoditie, profite and aduantage of the said corporation, be it for ready money, wares & merchandizes, or trucke, presently or for time, as occasion and benefit of the company shal require: and all such wares as they or either of them shall buy, trucke or prouide, or cause to be bought for the company to lade them homeward in good order and condition as by prudent course of merchandizes, shall, and ought to appertaine, which article extendeth also to Iohn Brooke for the Wardhouse, as in the 17. & 18. articles of this commission appeareth.

2 Item, it is also committed, as about to the said Agents, to binde and charge the said company by debt for wares vpon credite, as good opportunitie and occasion shall serue, with power to charge and bind the said company, and their successors for the paiments of such things as shall be taken vp for credite, and the said Agents to be relieued, ab opere satis dandi.

3 Item, full authoritie and power is committed to the sayd first named factors, together with Richard Chancelor graund Pilot of this fleete, to repaire to the Emperors court, there to present

the king and Queenes maiesties letters, written in Greeke, Polish, and Italian, and to giue and exhibite the merchaunts presents at such time and place as shall bee thought most expedient, they, or one of them to demaund, and humbly desire of the Emperour such further graunts and priuiledges to bee made to this company, as may bee beneficiall for the same, to continue in traffique with his subiects, according to such instructions as be in this behalfe deuised and deliuered to the Agents, whereunto relation is to be had, and some one of these persons to attend vpō the court for the obtaining of the same, as to their discretions shall be thought good.

4 Item, that all the sayd Agents doe well consider, ponder and weigh such articles as bee deliuered to them to know the natures, dispositions, lawes, customes, maners and behauiours of the people of the countreys where they shall traffique, as well of the Nobilitie as of the Lawyers, Merchants, Mariners and common people, and to note diligently the subtilties of their bargayning, buying and selling, making as few debtes as possiblie may be, and to be circumspect, that no lawe neither of religion nor politique be broken or transgressed by them or any minister vnder them, ne yet by any mariner or other person of our nation, and to foresee that all toles, customes, and such other rites be so duely paid, that no forfeiture or confiscation may ensue to our goods either outward or inward, and that all things passe with quiet, without breach of the publique peace or common tranquillitie of any of the places where they shall arriue or traffique.

5 Item, that prouision bee made in Mosco or elsewhere, in one or moe good townes, where good trade shall bee found for a house or houses for the Agents, and companie to inhabite and dwell at your accustomed diets, with warehouses, sellers, and other houses of offices requisite, and that none of the inferiour ministers of what place or vocation so euer he bee, doe lie out of the house of the Agents without licence to bee giuen, and that euery inferiour officer shall be obedient to the orders, rules and gouernments of the sayd Agents, and in case any disobedient person shall bee found among any of them, then such person to be punished for his misbehauiour, at the discretion of the sayd Agents, or of one of them in the absence of the other.

6 Item, if any person of the sayde ministers shall bee of such pride or obstinacie, that after one or two honest admonitions, hee will not bee reformed nor reconciled from his faultes, then the sayde Agents to displace euery such person from the place or roume to him here committed, and some other discreete person to occupie the same, as to the sayde Agents by their discretions shall seeme meete.

7 Item, if any person shall bee found so arrogant, that he will not be ordered nor reformed by the sayd Agents or by one of them in the absence of the other, then the sayde person to bee deliuered to the Iustice of the countrey, to receiue such punishment, as the lawes of the countrey do require.

8 Item, that the sayde Agents and factours shall daily one houer in the morning conferre and consult together what shall bee most conuenient and beneficiall for the companie, and such orders as they shall determine, to bee written by the Secretarie of the companie in a booke to bee prouided for that purpose, and no inferiour person to infringe or breake any such order or deuise, but to obserue the same exactly, vpon such reasonable payne as the Agents shall put him to by discretion.

9 Item, that the sayd Agents shall in the ende of euery weeke, or oftener as occasion shall require, peruse, see and trie, not onely the Cashers bookes, reckonings and accounts, firming the same with their handes, but also shall receiue and take weekely the account of euery other officer, as well of the Vendes, as of the emptions, and also of the state of the houshold expenses, making thereof a perfect declaration as shall appertaine, the same accounts also to be firmed by the sayd Agents hands.

10 Item, that no inferiour minister shall take vpon him to make any bargaine or sale of any wares, merchaundizes or goods, but by the Commission and Warrantise of the sayde Agents vnder their handes, and bee not to transgresse his Commission by any way, pretence or colour.

11 Item, that euery inferiour minister, that is to vnderstand, all Clearkes and yong merchants beyng at the order of the sayde Agents, shall ride, goe, saile and trauaile to all such place, and places, as they or he shall be appointed vnto by the sayd Agents, and effectually to follow and doe all that which to him or them shall be committed, well and truly to the most benefit of the company, according to the charge to him or them committed, euen as by their othes, ducties and bonds of their masters they be bounden and charged to doe.

12 Item, that at euery moneths ende, all accountes and reckonings shall bee brought in to perfect order, into the Ledger or memoriall, and the decrees, orders, and rules of the Agents

Agents together with the priuileges, and coppies of letters, may & ſhall be well and truly written by the ſecretarie, in ſuch forme as ſhalbe appointed for it, and that copies of all their doings, may be ſent home with the ſaid ſhippe at her returne.

13 Item, that all the Agents do diligently learne and obſerue all kinde of wares, as well naturals as forren, that be beneficiall for this Realme, to be ſolde for the benefit of the company, and what kinde of our commodities and other thinges of theſe Weſt partes, be moſt vendible in thoſe Realmes with profit, giuing a perfect aduiſe of all ſuch things requiſite.

14 Item, if the Emperour will enter into bargen with you for the whole maſſe of your ſtocke, and will haue the trade of it to vtter to his owne ſubiectes, then debating the matter prudently among your ſelues, ſet ſuch high prices of your commodities, as you may aſſure your ſelues to be gainers in your owne wares, and yet to buy theirs at ſuch baſe prices, as you may heere alſo make a commoditie and gaine at home, hauing in your mindes the notable charges that the companie haue diſtrayed in aduancing this voyage: and the great charges that they ſuſtaine daily in wages, victualles and other things: all which muſt be requited by the wiſe handling of this voyage, which being the firſt preſident ſhalbe a perpetuall preſident for euer: and therefore all circumſpection is to be vſed, and foreſeene in this firſt enterprize, which God bleſſe and proſper vnder you, to his glorie, and the publike wealth of this Realme, whereof the Queenes Maieſtie, and the Lords of the councell haue conceiued great hope, whoſe expectations are not to be fruſtrated. Note.

15 Item, it is to be had in minde, that you vſe all wayes and meanes poſſible to learne how men may paſſe from Ruſſia, either by land or by ſea to Cathaia, and what may be heard of our other ſhippes, and to what knowledge you may come, by conferring with the learned or well trauelled perſons, either naturall or forren, ſuch as haue trauelled from the North to the South.

16 Item, it is committed to the ſaid Agents, that if they ſhall be certified credibly, that any of our ſaid firſt ſhippes be arriued in any place whereunto paſſage is to be had by water or by land, that then certeine of the company, at the diſcretion of the Agents ſhall be appointed to be ſent to them, to learne their eſtate and condition, to viſit, refreſh, relieue, and furniſh them with all neceſſaries and requiſites, at the common charges of the company, and to imbrace, accept, and intreat them as our deare and welbeloued brethren of this our ſocietie, to their reioycing and comfort, aduertiſing Sir Hugh Willoughbie and others of our carefulneſſe of them and their long abſence, with our deſire to heare of them, with all other things done in their abſence for their commodity, no leſſe then if they had beene preſent.

17 Item, it is decreed, that when the ſhippes ſhall arriue at this going forth at the Wardhouſe, that their Agents, with Maiſter Chanceler grand pilot, John Brooke merchant, deputed for the Wardhouſe, with John Buckland maiſter of the Edward, John Howlet maiſter, and John Robbins pilot of the Philip and Mary, ſhall conferre and conſult together, what is moſt profitable to be done therefore for the benefit of the company, and to conſider whether they may bargen with the captaine of the caſtle, and the inhabitants in that place, or alongſt the coaſt for a large quantitie of fiſh, drie or wet, killed by the naturals, or to be taken by our men at a price reaſonable for trucke of cloth, meale, ſalt or beere, and what traincople, or other commoditie is to be had there at this time, or any other ſeaſon of the yeere, and whether there will be had or found ſufficient lading for both the ſaid ſhippes, to be bought there, and how they may conferre with the naturals for a continuance in haunting the place, if profit will ſo ariſe to the company, and to conſider whether the Edward in her returne may receiue at the Wardhouſe any kinde of lading homeward, and what it may amount vnto, and whether it ſhall be expedient for the Philip to abide at Wardhouſe the returne of the Edward out of Ruſſia, or getting that ſhe may, returne with the firſt good winde to England, without abiding for the Edward, and ſo to conclude and accord certainlie among themſelues vpon their arriuall, that the certainty may (vpon good deliberation) be ſo ordered and determined betweene both ſhippes, that the one may be aſſured of the other, and their determinations to be put in writing duplicate to remaine with each ſhip, according to ſuch order as ſhall be taken betweene them. The Philip and Mary.

18 Item, that John Brooke our merchant for the Wardhouſe take good aduiſe of the reſt of our Agents, how to vſe himſelfe in all affaires, while the ſhippe ſhall be at the Wardhouſe, he to ſee good order to be kept, make bargens aduiſedly, not crediting the people vntill their natures, diſpoſitions and fidelities ſhall be well tried, make no debts, but to take ware for ware in hand, and rather be truſted then to truſt. Note diligentlie what be the beſt wares for thoſe parts, and how the fiſh falleth on the coaſt, and by what meane it is to be bought at the moſt aduantage, what kindes and diuerſities of ſorts in fiſhes be, and whether it will keepe better in bulke piled, or in caſke. Note. Note.

19 Item, he to haue a diligent eye and circumſpection to the beere, ſalt, and other liquid wares,

and

and not to suffer any waste to be made by the company, and he in all contracts to require aduise, counsell, and consent of the maister and pilot, the merchant to be our housewife, as our speciall trust is in him, he to tender that no lawes nor customes of the country be broken by any of the company, and to render to the prince, and other officers, all that which to them doth appertaine, the companie to be quiet, voyd of all quarrelling, fighting, or veration, absteine from all excesse of drinking, as much as may be, and in all to vse and behaue themselues as to quiet merchants doth, and ought to appertaine.

20 Item, it is decreed by the companie, that the Edward shall returne home this yeere with as much wares as may be conueniently, and profitably prouided, bought, and laden in Russia, and the rest to be taken in at the Wardhouse, as by the Agentes shall be aduyded. But by all meanes it is to be foreseene and noted, that the Edward returne home, and not to winter in any foreen place, but to come home, and bring with her all the whole aduertisementes of the merchantes, with such further aduise for the next yeeres prouision, as they shall giue.

21 Item, it is further decreed and ordeined, inuiolable to be obserued, that when the good shippes, or either of them (by Gods grace) shall returne home to the coastes of England, that neither of them shall staye or touche in any Hauen or Porte of England, otherwise then winde and weather shall serue, but shall directly saple and come to the Porte of the citie of London, the place of their right discharge, and that no bulke be broken, hatches opened, chest, fardell, trusse, barrell, fatte, or whatsoeuer thing it shall be, be brought out of the shippe, vntil the companie shall giue order for the same, and appoint such persons of the company as shall be thought meete for that purpose, to take view, and consider the shippe and her lading, and shall giue order for the breaking vp of the said bulke, or giue licence by discretion, for thinges to be brought to land. And that euery officer shall shewe the enuoyle of his charge to him first committed, and to examine the wastes and losses, and to deliuer the remainder to the vse and benefite of the company, according to such order as shall be appointed in that behalfe.

22 Item, the company exhorteth, willeth, and requireth, not onely all the said Agents, pilots, maisters, merchantes, clerkes, boatswaines, stewardes, shafemaisters, and all other officers and ministers of this present voyage, being put in charge and trust dayly to peruse, reade, and study such instructions as be made, giuen, and deliuered to them for perfect knowledge of the people of Russia, Moscouia, Wardhouse, and other places, their dispositions, lawes, maners, customes, vses, tolles, cariages, coines, weights, numbers, measures, wares, merchandizes, commodities, and incommodities, the one to be accepted and embraced, the other to be reiected and vtterly abandoned, to the intent that euery man taking charge, may be so well taught, perfited, and readily instructed in all the premises, that, by ignorance, no losse or preiudice may growe or chance to the companie, assuring themselues, that forasmuch as the company hath trauelled and laboured so in their their instructions to them giuen, that euery man may be perfect, and fully learned to eschew all losses, hurts and damages that may insue by pretense or colour of none knowledge, the company entendeth not to allowe, or accept ignorance for any lawfull or iust cause of excuse, in that which shall be misordered by negligence, the burden whereof shall light vpon the negligent offending person, especially vpon such as of their owne heades, or temeritie, will take vpon him or them to do or to attempt any thing, whereby preiudice may arise, without the commission of the Agents aboue is mentioned, whereunto relation be had. Note.

23 Forasmuch as it is not possible to write and indite such prescribed orders, rules and commissions to you the Agents and factours, but that occasion, time and place, and the pleasures of the princes, together with the operation or successe of fortune shall change or shift the same, although not in the whole, yet in part, therefore the said company doe commit to you their deare and intyre beloued Agentes and factours, to doe in this behalfe for the commoditie and wealth of this company, as by your discretions, vpon good aduised deliberations shall be thought good and beneficiall. Prouided alwayes, that the honour, good name, fame, credit, and estimation of the same company be conserued and preserued: which to confirme we beseech the liuing Lord to his glory, the publike benefit of this realme, our common profit, and your praises.

Finallie for the seruice, and due accomplishment of all the premises, euery Agent and minister of and for this voyage, hath not onely giuen a corporall othe vpon the Euangelistes to obserue, and cause to be obserued, this commission, and euery part, clause and sentence of the same, as muche as in him lyeth, as well for his owne parte as for any other person, but also haue bounde themselues and their friendes to the company in seuerall summes of money, expressed in the Actes, and Recordes of this societie, for the trueth and fidelities of them for the here-

an

and also manifester testification of the truth, and of their othes, promises, and bands afore said, they haue to this commission subscribed particularly their seuerall handes, and the companie also in confirmation of the same, haue set their seale. Yeuen the day, moneth, and yeeres first aboue mentioned.

The othe ministred to the seruants of the fellowshippe.

YE sweare by the holy contents of that booke, that ye shall well, faithfully & truely, and vprightly, and with all your indeuour, serue this right worshipfull company in that order, which by this fellowshippes Agent or Agents in the dominions of the Emperour of Russia &c, shall be vnto you committed, by commission, commandement, or other his direction. And that you shall be obedient and faithfull to the same our Agent or Agents, and that well, and truely and vprightlie, according to the commission, charge, commandement, or other direction of the said Agent or Agents to you from time to time giuen and to be giuen, you shall prosecute and doe all that which in you lieth, for the good renowme, commoditie, benefit and profit of the said fellowshippe: and you shall not directly or indirectly, openly or couertly doe, exercise or vse any trade or feat of merchandize for your owne priuate account, commodity, gaine or profit, or for the account of or for any other person or persons, without consent or licence of this said fellowshippe, first obteined in writing. And if you shall know or vnderstand any other person or persons to vse, exercise or doe any trade, traffike or feat of merchandize, to or for his or their owne account or accounts, at any time or times hereafter, that then ye shall truely and plainely disclose, open, vtter and reueale, and shew the same vnto this said fellowshippe, without fraud, colour, couin or delay: So helpe you God, &c.

The letter of M. George Killingworth, the companies *first Agent in Moscouie, touching their interteinement in* their second voyage. Anno 1555 the 27 of Nouember in Mosco.

RIght worshipfull, my duetie considered, &c. It may please your worship to vnderstand, that at the making hereof we all be in good health, thanks be to God, saue onely William our cooke as we came from Colmogro fell into the riuer out of the boat, and was drowned: and the 11 day of September we came to Vologda, and there we laied all our wares vp, and solde very little: but one merchant would haue giuen vs 12 robles for a broad cloth, and he said he would haue had them all, and 4 altines for a pound of sugar, but we did refuse it because he was the first, and the merchants were not come thither, nor would not come before winter, trusting to haue more: but I feare it will not be much better. Yet notwithstanding we did for the best. And the house that our wares lie in, cost from that day vntill Easter ten robles. And the 28 day of September we did determine with our selues that it was good for M. Gray, Arthur Edwards, Thomas Hatton, Christopher Hudson, John Segewicke, Richard Johnson, and Richard Goodale to tarie at Vologda, and M. Chanceler, Henry Lane, Edward Wise, Robert Best and I should go to Mosco. And we did lade the Emperours suger, with part of all sortes of wares to haue had to the Mosco with vs, and the way was so deepe, that we were faine to turne backe, and leaue it still at Vologda till the frost. And we went forth with post horse, & the charge of euery horse being still ten in number comes to 10 s. 7 d. halfe penie, besides the guides, and we came to the Mosco the fourth day of October, and were lodged that night in a simple house: but the next day we were sent for to the Emperour his secretarie, and he bad vs welcome with a cheerefull countenance and cheerefull words, and we shewed him that we had a letter from our Queenes grace to the Emperour his grace, and then he desired to see them all, and that they might remaine with him, to haue them perfect, that the true meaning might be declared to the Emperour, and so we did: and then we were appointed to a better house: and the seuenth day the secretarie sent for vs againe, and then he shewed vs that we should haue a better house, for it was the Emperour his will, that we should haue all things that we did lacke, and did send vs meade of two sorts, and two hens, our house free, and euery two dayes to receiue eight hens, seuen altines, and two pense in money, and me dow a certaine, and a poore fellow to make cleane our house, and to do that whereunto we would set him: and he had giuen many rewards before, which you shall perceiue by other, and so we gaue the messengers

Queene Maries letters to the Emperor of Russia.

gers a reward with thankes: and the ninth day we were sent to make vs ready to speake with the Emperour on the morrow. And the letters were sent vs, that we might deliuer them our selues, and we came before him the tenth day: and before we came to his presence we went thorow a great chamber, where stood many small tunnes, pailes, bowles and pots of siluer, I meane, like washing bowles, all parsell gilt: and within that another chamber, wherein sate (I thinke) neere a hundred in cloth of golde, and then into the chamber where his grace sat, and there I thinke were more then in the other chamber also in cloth of golde, and we did our duety, and shewed his grace our queenes graces letters, with a note of your present which was left in Vologda: and then his grace did aske how our Queenes grace did, calling her cousin, saying that he was glad that we were come in health into his Realme, and we went one by one vnto him, and tooke him by the hand, and then his grace did bid vs go in health, and come to dinner againe, and we dined in his presence, and were set with our faces towardes his grace, and none in the chamber sate with their backes towards him, being, I thinke, neere a hundred at dinner then, and all serued with golde, as platters, chargers, pottes, cuppes, and all not slender, but very massy, and yet a great number of platters of golde, standing still on the cupboord, not mooued: and diuers times in the dinner time his grace sent vs meat and drinke from his owne table, and when we had dined we went vp to his grace, and receiued a cuppe with drinke at his owne hand, and the same night his grace sent certaine gentlemen to vs with diuers sortes of wine and medo, to whome we gaue a reward. And afterward we were by diuers Italians counselled to take heed whom we did trust to make the copie of the priuileges that we would desire to haue, for feare it should not be written in the Russe tongue, as we did meane. So first a Russian did write for vs a breuiate to the Emperor, the tenour wherof was, that we did desire a stronger priuilege: & when the Secretary saw it, he did deliuer it to his grace, and when we came againe, his grace willed vs to write our mindes, and he would see it, and so we did. And his grace is so troubled with preparations to warres, that as yet we haue no answere: but we haue bene required of his Secretary, and of the vnder Chancelour, to know what wares we had brought into the Realme, and what wares we doe intend to haue, that are, or may be had in this Realme: and we shewed them, and they shewed the Emperour therof. And then they said his graces pleasure was, that his best merchants of the Mosco should be spoken to, to meet and talke with vs. And so a day was appointed, and we mette in the Secretary his office, and there was the vnder Chancelour, who was not past two yeeres since the Emperours merchant, and not his Chancelour: and then the conclusion of our talke was, that the Chancelour willed vs to bethinke vs, where we would desire to haue a house or houses, that we might come to them as to our owne house, and for merchandize to be made preparation for vs, and they would know our prises of our wares and frise: and we answered, that for our prices they must see the wares before we could make any price thereof, for the like in goodnesse had not beene brought into the Realme, and we did looke for an example of all sortes of our wares to come from Vologda, with the first fleetway, and then they should see them, and then we would shew them the prices of them: and like wise we could not tell them what we would giue them iustly, till we did know as well their iust weight as their measures (for in all places where we did come, all weighes and measures did vary:) then the Secretary (who had made promise vnto vs before) said, that we should haue all the iust measures vnder seale, & he that was found faulty in the contrary, to buy or sell with any other measure then that, the law was, that he should be punished: he said moreouer, that if it so happen that any of our merchants do promise by couenant at any time to deliuer you any certaine sum of wares in such a place, and of such like goodnesse, at such a day, for such a certaine price, that then because of variance, we should cause it to be written, according as the bargen is, before a iustice or the next ruler in the place: if he did not keepe couenant and promise in all points, according to his couenant, that then looke what losse or hinderance we could iustly proue that we haue there by, he should make it good, if he be worth so much: and in like case we must doe to them, and to that we did agree, saue only if it were to come ouer the sea, then if any such fortune should be (as God forbid) that the shippe should mischance or be robbed, & the proofe to be made that such kinde of wares were laden, the English merchants to beare no losse to the other merchant. Then the Chancelor said, me thinks you shall do best to haue your house at Colmogro, which is but 100 miles from the right discarge of the ships, and yet I trust the ships shall come neerer hereafter, because the ships may not tary long for their lading, which is 1000 miles from Vologda by water, and all our merchants shall bring all our merchandize to Colmogro to you, and so shall our merchants, neither go empty nor come empty: for if that they lacke lading homward, there is salt, which is good ware here, that they may come laden againe: so we were very glad to heare that, and did agree to his saying: for we shall neuertheless, if we list, haue a house at Vologda, & at the Mosco, yea, & at Nouogrode, or where we will in Russia:

The Italians counsell to our people.

The diuersitie of weights & measures in Russia.

Colmogro.

Rusland. But the three and twentith of this present we were with the secretary, and then among other talke, we mooued, that if we should tary at Colmogro with our wares, and should not come to Vologda, or further to seeke our market, but tary still at Colmogro, and then the merchants of the Polco and others should not come and bring their wares, and so the shippes should come, and not haue their lading ready, that then it were a great losse and hinderance for vs: then sayd he againe to vs, that the merchants had beene againe together with him, and had put the like doubt, that if they should come and bring their wares to Colmogro, and that they should not finde wares there sufficient to serue them, that then they should be at great losse and hinderance, they leauing their other trades to fall to that: and to that we did answere, that after the time that we doe appoint with them to bring their wares to Colmogro, God willing, they should neuer come thither, but at the beguming of the peere, they should finde that our merchants would haue at the least for a thousand robles, although the shippes were not come: so that he sayd, that then we must talke further with the merchants: so that as yet I know not, but that we shall haue need of one house at Colmogro, and another at Vologda, and if that they bring not their wares to Colmogro, then we shall be sure to buy some at Vologda, and to be out of bondage. Vologda.

And thus may we continue three or foure peeres, and in this space we shall know the countrey and the merchants, and which way to saue our selues best, and where to plant our houses, and where to seeke for wares: for the Polco is not best for any kinde of wares for vs to buy, saue onely waxe, which we can not haue vnder seuen pence the Russe pound, and it lackes two ounces of our pound, neither will it be much better cheape, for I haue bidden sixe pence for a pound. And I haue bought more, fiue hundred weight of yarne, which standes me in eight pence farthing the Russe pound one with another. And if we had receiued any store of money, and were dispatched heere of that we tary for, as I doubt not but we shall be shortly (you know what I meane) then as soone as we haue made sale, I do intend to goe to Nouogrode, and to Pletsco, whence all the great number of the best tow flaxe commeth, and such wares as are there I trust to buy part. And feare you not, we will do that may be done, if God send vs health, desiring you to prepare fully for one shippe to be readie in the beginning of Aprill to depart off the coast of England. Nouogrode.

Concerning all those thinges which we haue done in the wares, you shall receiue a perfect note by the next bearer (God willing) for he that carieth these from vs is a merchant of Turwell, and he was caused to cary these by the commandement of the Emperour his secretarie, whose name is Euan Mecallawiche weskawate, whom we take to be our very friend. And if it please you to send any letters to Dantiske, to Robert Elson, or to William Watsons seruant Dunstan Walton to be conueyed to vs, it may please you to inclose ours in a letter sent from you to him, written in Pollish, Dutch, Latine, or Italian: so inclosed, comming to the Polco to his handes, he will conuey our letters to vs wheresoeuer we be. And I haue written to Dantiske already to them for the conueyance of letters from thence. The Russian secretary his name.

And to certifie you of the weather here, men say, that these hundred peeres was neuer so warme weather in this countrey at this time of the peere. But as yesternight we receiued a letter from Christopher Hudson from a citie called Yeresslaue, who is comming hither with certaine of our wares, but the winter did deceiue him, so that he was faine to tary by the way: and he wrote that the Emperours present was deliuered to a gentleman at Vologda, and the sledde did ouerthrow, and the butte of Hollocke was lost, which made vs all very sory.

I pray you be not offended with these my rude letters, for lacke of time: but as soone as sales be made; I will finde the meanes to conuey you a letter with speed: for the way is made so doubtfull, that the right messenger is so much in doubt, that he would not haue any letters of any effect sent by any man, if he might, for he knowes not of these: and to say the trueth, the way is not for him to trauell in. But I will make another shift beside, which I trust shall serue the turne till he come, if sales be made before he be ready, which is and shall be as pleaseth God: who euer preserue your worship, and send vs good sales. Written in haste.

By yours to command

GEORGE KILLINGWORTH

Draper.

A copie of the first Priuileges granted by the Emperour of *Russia to the English Merchantes*, in the yeere 1555.

IOhn Vasiliwich, by the grace of God, Emperour of Russia, great Duke of Nuogrode, Moscouia, &c. To all people that shall see, reade, heare, or vnderstand these presents greeting. Forasmuch as God hath planted all Realmes and Dominions in the whole world with sundry commodities, so as the one hath need of the amity and commodities of the other, and by meanes thereof, traffike vsed from one to another, and amity thereby increased, and for that as among st men nothing is more to be desired then amity, without the which no creature being of a naturall good disposition can liue in quietnesse, so that it is as troublesome to be vtterly wanting, as it is perceiued to be grieuous to the body to lacke ayre, fire, or any other necessaries most requisite for the conseruation and maintenance thereof in health, considering also how needfull merchandize is, which furnisheth men of all that which is conuenient for their liuing, and nouriture, for their clothing, trimming, the satisfying of their delights, and all other thinges conuenient and profitable for them, and that merchandize bringeth the same commodities from diuers quarters, in so great abundance, as by meanes thereof nothing is lacking in any part, and that all things be in euery place (where entercourse of merchandizes is receiued and embraced) generally in such sort, as amity thereby is entred into, and planted to continue, and the inioyers thereof be as men liuing in a golden world: Upon these respects, and other weighty and good considerations, vs hereunto mouing, and chiefly vpon the contemplation of the gracious letters, directed from the right high, right excellent, and right mighty Queene Mary, by the grace of God, Queene of England, France, &c. in the fauor of her subiects, merchants, the gouernor, consuls, assistants, and communalty of merchants aduenturers, for discouery of lands, &c.

Know ye therefore, that we of our grace especiall, meere motion, and certaine knowledge, haue giuen and granted, and by these presents, for vs, our heyres and successors, doe giue and grant, as much as in vs is and lyeth, vnto Sebastian Cabota Gouernour, Sir George Barnes knight, &c. Consuls: Sir Iohn Gresham, &c. Assistants, and to the communalty of the aforenamed fellowshippe, and to their successours for euer, and to the successours of euery of them, these articles, grants, immunities, franchises, liberties and priuileges, and euery of them hereafter following, expressed and declared, videlicet:

1 First, we for vs, our heyres and successours, do by these presents giue and grant free licence, faculty, authority and power vnto the said Gouernour, Consuls, Assistants, and communalty of the said fellowshippe, and to their successours for euer, that all and singular the merchants of the same company, their Agents, factours, doers of their businesse, attorneys, seruants, and ministers, and euery of them may at all times hereafter for euer more surely, freely, and safely with their shippes, merchandizes, goods, and things whatsoeuer, saile, come, and enter into all and singular our lands, countryes, dominions, cities, townes, villages, castles, ports, iurisdictions and destraits by sea, land, or fresh waters, and there tary, abide, and soiourne, and buy, sell, barter and change all kinde of merchandizes with all maner of merchants and people, of whatsoeuer nation, right condition, state or degrees they bee, and with the same or other shippes, wares, merchandizes, goods, and things, whatsoeuer they be, vnto other Empyres, Kingdomes, Dukedomes, parts, and to any other place or places at their pleasure and liberty, by sea, land or freshwaters may in part, and exercise all kinde of merchandizes in our Empyre and dominions, and euery part thereof, freely and quietly, without any restraint, impeachment, price, exaction, pyll, straight custome, toll, imposition, or subsidie to be demanded, taxed, or payed, or at any time hereafter to be demanded, taxed, set, leuied, or inferred vpon them or any of them, or vpon their goods, shippes, wares, merchandizes and thinges, of, for, or vpon any part or parcell thereof, or vpon the goods, shippes, wares, merchandizes, and thinges of any of them, so that they shall not need any other safe conduct or licence generall, ne special, of vs, our heyres or successours, neither shall be bound to aske any safe conduct or licence in any of the aforesaid places subiect vnto vs.

2 Item, we giue and grant to the sayd merchantes, this power and libertie, that they, ne any of them, ne their goods, wares, merchandizes or things, ne any part thereof, shall be by any meanes, within our dominions, landes, countryes, castles, townes, villages, or other place or places of our iurisdiction, at any time hereafter attached, stayed, arrested, ne disturbed for any debt, ne

tie, or other thing, for the which they be not principall debters or ſureties, ne alſo for any offence or treſpaſſe committed, or that ſhall be committed, but onely for ſuch as they, or any of them ſhall actually commit, and the ſame offences (if any ſuch happen,) ſhalbe by vs onely heard, and determined.

3 Item, we giue and graunt, that the ſaide Marchants ſhall and may haue free libertie, power, and authoritie, to name, chooſe, and aſſigne brokers, ſhippers, packers, wayers, meaſurers, wagoners, and all other meete and neceſſarie labourers, for to ſerue them in their feate of Marchandiſes, and miniſter, and giue vnto them and euery of them a corporall othe, to ſerue them well and truely in their offices, and finding them or any of them doing contrary to his or their othe, may puniſh and diſmiſſe them, and from time to time chooſe, ſweare, and admit other in their place, or places, without contradiction, let, vexation, or diſturbance, either of vs, our heires or ſucceſſours, or of any other our Juſtices, officers, miniſters, or ſubiects whatſoeuer.

4 Item, wee giue and graunt vnto the ſaide Marchants and their ſucceſſours, that ſuch perſon as is, or ſhall bee commended vnto vs, our heires or ſucceſſours, by the Gouernour, Conſuls, and aſſiſtants of the ſaide fellowſhip, reſiant within the Citie of London within the Realme of Englande, to bee their chiefe Factor within this our Empire and Dominions, may, and ſhall haue full power and authoritie to gouerne and rule all Engliſhmen, that haue had, or ſhall haue acceſſe, or repaire in or to this ſaide Empire and iuriſdictions, or any part thereof, and ſhall and may miniſter vnto them, and euery of them good iuſtice, in all their cauſes, plaints, quarrels, and diſorders betweene them mooued, and to bee mooued, and aſſemble, deliberate, conſult, conclude, define, determine, and make ſuch Actes, and ordinances, as hee ſo commended with his Aſſiſtants ſhall thinke good and meete, for the good order, gouernement and rule of the ſaide Marchants, and all other Engliſhmen repairing to this our ſaide Empire and Dominions, or any part thereof, and to ſet and leuie vpon all, and euery Engliſhmen, offender or offenders, of ſuch their Actes and ordinances made, and to bee made, penalties, and mulcts by fine or impriſonment.

5 Item, if it happen, that any of the ſaide Marchants, or other Engliſhman, as one or more doe rebell againſt ſuch chiefe Factor or Factors, or his or their deputies, and will not diſpoſe him, or themſelues to obey them, and euery of them, as ſhall appertaine, if the ſaide Rebels or diſobedients doe come, and bee founde in our ſaide Empire and iuriſdictions, or any part and place thereof, then wee promiſe and graunt, that all and euery our officers, miniſters, and ſubiects, ſhall effectually ayde and aſſiſt the ſaide chiefe Factor, or Factors, and their deputies, and for their power ſhall really worke, to bring ſuch rebell or diſobedient Rebels, or diſobedients to due obedience: And to that intent ſhall lende vnto the ſame Factor or Factors, and their deputies vpon requeſt therefore to be made, priſons, and inſtruments for puniſhments from time to time.

6 Item, wee promiſe vnto the ſaide Marchants, and their ſucceſſours vpon their requeſt, to exhibite, and doe vnto them good, exact, and fauourable iuſtice, with expedition in all their cauſes, and that when they or any of them, ſhall haue acceſſe, or come to, or before any of our Juſtices, for any their plaints mooued, and to bee mooued betweene any our Subiects or other ſtranger, and them, or any of them, that them they ſhall bee firſt, and furthwith heard, as ſoone as the partie which they ſhall finde before our Juſtices ſhall bee depeached, which partie being heard furthwith, and alldone as may bee, the ſaide Engliſh Marchants ſhall bee ridde, and diſpatched: And if any action ſhall bee mooued by or againſt any of the ſaide Marchants, being abſent out of our ſaide Empire and Dominions, then ſuch Marchants may ſubſtitute an Attorney in all and ſinguler his cauſes to bee followed as neede ſhall require, and as ſhall ſeeme to him expedient.

7 Item, wee graunt, and promiſe to the ſaide Marchants, and to their ſucceſſours, that if the ſame Marchants or any of them ſhall bee wounded, or (which God forbidde) ſlaine in any part, or place of our Empire, or Dominions, then good information thereof giuen, Wee and our Juſtices, and other officers, ſhall execute due correction and puniſhment without delaye, according to the exigence of the caſe: So that it ſhall bee an example to all other, not to commit the like. And if it ſhall chaunce the Factors, ſeruants, or Miniſters of the ſayde Marchants or any of them, to treſpaſſe or offende, whereby they or any of them ſhall incurre the danger of death or puniſhment, the goods, wares, marchandiſes, and thinges of their Maſters, ſhall not therefore be forfaited, confiſcated, ſpoyled, ne ſeiſed by any means, by vs, our heires, or ſucceſſours, or by any our officers, miniſters or ſubiects, but ſhall remaine to their vſe, franke, free, and diſcharged from all puniſhment and loſſe.

8 Item, wee graunt that if any of the English nation be arrested for any debt, hee shall not be layed in prison, so farre, as he can put in sufficient suretie or paune: Neither shall any Sergeant, or officer leade them, or any of them to prison, before he shall haue knowen whether the chiefe Factor or factors, or their deputies, shal be sureties, or bring in paune for such arrested: then the officers shall release the partie, and shall set him or them at libertie.

9 Moreouer, wee giue, graunt, and promise to the saide Marchants, that if any of their shippes or other vessels, shall bee spoyled, robbed, or damnified, in sayling, anckoring or returning to or from our sayde Empires, and Dominions, or any part thereof, by any Pirats, Marchants or other person, whatsoeuer hee or they bee, that then and in such case, wee will doe all that vs is, to cause restitution, reparation, and satisfaction to bee duely made to the saide English Marchants by our letters and otherwise, as shall stande with our honour, and bee consonant to equitie and iustice.

8 Item, for vs, our heires and successours, wee doe promise and graunt, to perfourme, maintaine, corroborate, autenticate, and obserue all and singular the aforesaide liberties, franchises and priuiledges, like as presently wee firmely doe intende, and will corroborate, autentike, and perfourme the same by all meane and way that wee can, as much as may bee to the commodite and profite of the saide English Marchants, and their successours for euer.

And to the intent that all and singuler the saide giftes, graunts and promises, may be inuiolably obserued and perfourmed, wee the saide Iohn Vasiliuich by the grace of God Emperour of Russia, great duke of Nouogrode, Mosco, &c. for vs, our heires and successours, by our Imperiall and Loyally worde in steade of an othe, haue and doe promise by these presents, inuiolably to maintaine and obserue, and cause to bee inuiolably obserued and maintained, all and singuler the aforesaide giftes, graunts, and promises from time to time, and at all and euery time and times hereafter. And for the more corroboration hereof haue caused our Signet hereunto to be put. Dated in our Castel of Mosco, the 20. day of in the yeere.

The Charter of the Marchants of Russia, graunted vpon the discouerie of the saide Countrey, by King Philip and Queene Mary.

PHilip and Mary, by the grace of God, King and Queene, &c. To all maner of officers, true Iurie men, ministers and Subiects, and to all other people as well within this our Realme or els where vnder our obeysance, iurisdiction and rule, or otherwise vnto whome these our letters shall bee shewed, seene, or read, greeting.

Whereas wee be credibly informed, that our right trustie, right faithfull, and welbeloued Counsailers, William Marques of Winchester, Loyde high Treasurer of this our Realme of England, Henry Earle of Arundel, Loyd Steward of our housholde, Iohn Earle of Bedford, Loyde keeper of our priuie Seale, William Earle of Pembroke, William Lord Haward of Effingham, Loyde high Admirall of our saide Realme of England, &c. Haue at their owne aduenture, coastes and charges, prouided, rigged, and tackled certaine shippes, pinesses and other meete vessels, and the same furnished with all thinges necessarie, haue aduaunced and set forwarde, for to discouer, descrie, and finde Iles, landes, territories, Dominions, and Seignories vnknowen, and by our subiects before this not commonly by Sea frequented, which by the sufferance and grace of Almightie God, it shall chaunce them sayling Northwardes, Northeastwards, and Northwestwardes, or any parts thereof, in that race or course which other Christian Monarches, (being with vs in league and amitie) haue not heretofore by Seas traficqued, haunted, or frequented, to finde and attaine by their saide aduenture, as well for the ‖ glorie of God, as for the illustrating of our honour, and dignitie royall, in the increase of the reuenues of our Crowne, and generall wealth of this and other our Realmes and Dominions, and of our subiects of the same: And to this intent our subiects aboue specified and named, haue most humbly beseeched vs, that our abundant grace, fauour and clemencie, may be graciously extended vnto them in this behalfe: Whereupon we inclined to the petition of the foresaid our Counsailers, subiects and Marchants, and willing to animate, aduance, further and nourish them in their said godly, honest, and good purpose, and, as we hope, profitable aduenture, & that they may the more willingly, and readily atchieue the same, Of our especiall grace, certaine knowledge and meere motion, haue graunted, and by these presents doe graunt, for vs, our heires and successours, vnto our saide right trustie,

The discouerie principally intended for Gods glorie.

truſtie and right faithfull, and right welbeloued Counſailers, and the other before named perſons, that they by the name of Marchants aduenturers of England, for the diſcouerie of lands, territories, Iles, Dominions, and Seignories vnknowen, and not before that late aduenture or enterpriſe by ſea or Nauigation, commonly frequented as aforeſaid, ſhalbe from henceforth one bodie and perpetuall fellowſhip and communaltie of themſelues, both in deede and in name, and them, by the names of Marchants aduenturers for the diſcouerie of landes, territories, Iles and Seignories vnknowen, and not by the Seas, and Nauigations, before their ſaide late aduenture or enterpriſe by ſea or Nauigation commonly frequented, We doe incorporate, name, and declare by theſe preſents, and that the ſame fellowſhip or communaltie from henceforth ſhall be, and may haue one Gouernour of the ſaid fellowſhip, and communaltie of Marchants aduenturers.

And in conſideration that one Sebaſtian Cabota, hath bene the chiefeſt ſetter forth of this iourney or voyage, therefore we make, ordeine, and conſtitute him the ſaid Sebaſtian to be the firſt and preſent gouernour of the ſame fellowſhip and communaltie, by theſe preſents. To haue and enioy the ſaid office of Gouernour, to him the ſaid Sebaſtian Cabota during his natural life, without anoying or diuiſſing from the ſame roome. Sebaſtian Cabota firſt Gouernour of the Moſcouie companie.

And furthermore, we graunt vnto the ſame fellowſhip and communaltie and their ſucceſſours, that they the ſaide fellowſhip and communaltie, and their ſucceſſors after the deceaſe of the ſaide Sebaſtian Cabota, ſhall, and may freely and lawfully in places conuenient, and honeſt, aſſemble themſelues together, or ſo many of them as will, or can aſſemble together, as well within our Citie of London, or elſewhere, as it ſhall pleaſe them in ſuch ſort and maner, as other worſhipfull corporations of our ſaide Citie haue vſed to aſſemble, and there yeerely name, elect and chooſe one Gouernour or two, of themſelues, and their liberties, and alſo as well yeerely during the naturall life of the ſaid Sebaſtian Cabota nowe Gouernour, as alſo at the election of ſuch ſaid Gouernour or gouernours before his decreaſe, to chooſe, name and appoint eight and twentie of the moſt ſad, diſcreete, and honeſt perſons of the ſaide fellowſhip, and communaltie of Marchant aduenturers, as is aboue ſpecified, and 4. of the moſt expert and ſkilfull perſons of the ſame 28. to be named and called Conſuls, and 24. of the reſidue, to be named and called Aſſiſtants to the ſaide Gouernour or gouernours, and Conſuls for the time being, which ſhal remaine and ſtand in their authorities for one whole yeere then next following. And if it ſhall fortune the ſaide Gouernour, Conſuls, and aſſiſtants, or any of them ſo to be elected, and choſen as is aforeſaide, to die within the yeere after his or their election, that then and ſo often, it ſhall and may be lawfull to and for the ſaide fellowſhip, and communaltie, to elect and chuſe of themſelues other Gouernour or gouernours, Conſuls and aſſiſtants, in the place and ſteade of ſuch as ſo ſhall happen to die, to ſerue out the ſame yeere.

And further we doe make, ordeine, and conſtitute, George Barnes knight and Alderman of our Citie of London, William Garret, Alderman of our ſaide Citie, Anthonie Huſie, and Iohn Suthcot, to be the firſt and preſent 4. Conſuls of the ſaid fellowſhip and communaltie by theſe preſents, to haue & enioy the ſaid offices of Conſuls to them the ſaid George Barnes, William Garret, Anthonie Huſie, & Iohn Suthcot, for terme of one whole yeere next after the date of theſe our letters patents: And wee doe likewiſe, make, ordeine and conſtitute Sir Iohn Greſham knight, Sir Andrew Iudde, knight, Sir Thomas White knight, Sir, John Yorke knight, Thomas Offley the elder, Thomas Lodge, Henry Herdſon, Iohn Hopkins, William Watſon, Willia Clifton, Richard Pointer, Richard Chamberlaine, William Mallorie, Thomas Pallie the elder, William Allen, Henry Becher, Ieffrey Walkenden, Richard Fowles, Rowland Heyward, George Eaton, Iohn Elliot, Iohn Sparke, Blaſe Sanders, and Miles Mording, to be the firſt and preſent 24. Aſſiſtants to the ſaide Gouernour or gouernours, and Conſuls, and to the ſaide fellowſhip and communaltie by theſe preſents, to haue and enioy the ſaid offices of aſſiſtants to them for terme of one whole yeere, next after the date of theſe our letters patents. And further, we for vs, our heires & ſucceſſours, as much as in vs is, will & graunt by theſe preſents vnto the ſaid Gouernour, Conſuls, aſſiſtants, fellowſhip & company of Marchants aduenturers aforeſaid, & to their ſucceſſours, that the ſaid Gouernour or gouernours, 4. Conſuls, & 24. aſſiſtants, that now by theſe patents are nominated and appointed, or that hereafter by the ſaid fellowſhip, & communaltie of marchants aduenturers, or the more part of them, which ſhalbe then preſent, ſo from time to time to be choſen, ſo that there be 15. at the leaſt, wholy agreed therof, the ſaid Gouernour or gouerners, or one of them, & 2. of the ſaid Cōſuls ſhalbe there, & 12. of the reſidue of the ſaid nomber of 15. ſhalbe of the ſaid aſſiſtants, and in the abſence of ſuch Gouernour, that then 3. of the ſaide Conſuls, and 12. of the ſaide aſſiſtants at the leaſt for the time being, ſhal & may haue, vſe, and exercise ful power & authoritie, to rule & gouerne all and ſinguler the Marchants of the ſaid fellowſhip and communaltie, & to execute, & do full and Sir George Barnes, William Garret, Anthome Huſſie, Iohn Suthcot, the firſt 4. Conſuls.

speedie iustice to them, and euery of them, in all their causes, differences, variances, controuerſies quarrels, and complaints, within any our Realmes, dominions and iuriſdictions onely moued, and to be mooued touching their Marchandiſe, traſiques, and occupiers aforeſaide, or the gouernor or rule of them or any of them.

Alſo wee for vs, our heires and ſucceſſors, ſo much as in vs is, doe likewiſe by theſe preſents graunt, that the ſaid Gouernour, Conſuls, aſſiſtants, fellowſhip and communaltie, and their ſucceſſours, ſhall and may haue perpetuall ſucceſſion, and a common Seale which ſhall perpetually ſerue for the affaires and buſineſſe of the ſaide fellowſhip and communaltie. And that they and their ſucceſſours, ſhall and may be for euer able perſons, and capar in the lawe, for to purchaſe and poſſeſſe in fee and perpetuitie, and for terme of life, or liues, or for terme of yeere or otherwiſe, landes, tenements, rentes, reuerſions, and other poſſeſſions, and hereditaments, whatſoeuer they bee, by the name of the Gouernour, Conſuls, aſſiſtants, fellowſhip and communaltie of the Marchants aduenturers by Seas and Nauigations, for the diſcouerie of landes, territories, Iles, Dominions, and Seigniories vnknowen, and before the ſaide laſt aduenture or enterpriſe by Seas not frequented, as before is ſpecified, and by the ſame names, ſhal and may lawfully alien, graunt, lett and ſett the ſame, or any part thereof to any perſon or perſons, able in the lawe to take and receiue the ſame. So that they doe not graunt nor alien the ſame, or any part thereof into mortmaine, without ſpeciall licence of vs, our heires or ſucceſſours, firſt had and obtained.

Alſo, wee for vs, our heires and ſucceſſours haue graunted, and by theſe preſents doe graunt vnto the ſaide Gouernours, Conſuls, aſſiſtants, fellowſhip, and communaltie of the ſaide Marchants and to their ſucceſſours, that they and their ſucceſſours, ſhall, and may lawfully purchaſe vnto them and their ſucceſſors for euer, landes, tenements and hereditaments whatſoeuer, of the cleare yeerely value of 3. ſcore 6. pounds, thirteene ſhillings and foure pence of lawfull money of Englande and not aboue, as well of ſuch landes, tenements, and hereditaments, as bee holden or ſhall bee holden of vs, our heires or ſucceſſours, as of any other perſon or perſons, the ſtatutes prouided againſt alienations into mortmaine, or any of them, or any article or clauſe in them or any of them contained, or any other lawe, cuſtome, ſtatute, or prouiſion to the contrary in any wiſe notwithſtanding. And that they by the name of the Gouernour, Conſuls, aſſiſtants, fellowſhip and communaltie of Marchants aduenturers, for the diſcouerie of landes, territories, Iles, dominions, and Seigniories vnknowen by the Seas and Nauigations, and not before the ſaide late aduenture or enterpriſe by Seas frequented as aforeſaide, ſhall and may bee able in the lawe, to impleade, and be impleaded, to anſwere, and to be anſwered, to defende, and to bee defended before whatſoeuer Iudge or Iuſtice, temporall or ſpirituall, or other perſons whatſoeuer, in whatſoeuer court, or courtes, and in all actions perſonall, reall, and mixt, and in euery of them, and in all plaintes of nouel diſſeiſon, and alſo in all plaintes, ſuites, quarrels, affaires, buſineſſes and demaundes whatſoeuer they bee, touching and concerning the ſaide fellowſhippe and communaltie, and the affaires and buſineſſe of the ſame onely, in as ample maner and forme, as any other corporation of this our Realme may doe.

Moreouer, wee for vs, our heires and ſucceſſours, haue giuen and graunted, and by theſe preſents doe giue and graunt vnto the ſaide Gouernour Conſuls, aſſiſtants, fellowſhippe, and communaltie of Marchants aduenturers aforeſaide, and to their ſucceſſours, that the ſaide Gouernour, or Gouernours, Conſuls and aſſiſtants, and their ſucceſſours, in maner, forme, and number afore rehearſed, ſhall haue full power and authoritie from time to time hereafter, to make, ordaine, eſtabliſh and erect all ſuch ſtatutes, actes and ordinances, for the gouernement, good conditions, and lawdable rule of the ſaid fellowſhippe and communaltie of Marchants aduenturers afore ſaide, as to them ſhalbe thought good, meete, conuenient and neceſſarie, and alſo to admitte into the ſaide Corporation and fellowſhippe to be free of the ſame, ſuch and as many perſons, as to them ſhall bee thought good, meete, conuenient, and neceſſarie. And that euery ſuch perſon or perſons, as ſhall fortune hereafter to bee admitted into the ſaide fellowſhippe, communaltie and corporation, ſhall from the time of his or their admittance, bee free of the ſame: And alſo wee will, and by theſe preſents graunt for vs, our heires and ſucceſſours, vnto the ſaide Gouernours, Conſuls, aſſiſtants, fellowſhip, communaltie, of Marchant aduenturers aforeſaide, and to their ſucceſſours, that the Gouernour, or gouernours, Conſuls and aſſiſtants of the ſame, in maner, forme, and number afore rehearſed, and their ſucceſſours, for the time being, ſhall, and may haue full power and authoritie by theſe preſents from time to time, as to them ſhall ſeeme good, to limit, ſett, ordeine and make, mulcts, and penalties by fines, forfeitures, & impriſonments, or any of them vpon any offender of the ſaide fellowſhippe and communaltie, for any offence touching the ſame fellow-

ſhip

ſhip and communaltie, and alſo that all acts and ordinances by them or their ſucceſſours to bee made, which time ſhall thinke not neceſſarie or preiudiciall to the ſaid fellowſhip or communaltie, at all times to reuoke, breake, fruſtrate, anihilate, repeale and diſſolue at their pleaſure and liberty. And further, wee will that if any of the ſaide fellowſhip and communaltie ſhalbe founde contrarious, rebellious, or diſobedient to the ſaide Gouernour or gouernours, Conſuls, and the ſaide aſſiſtants for the time being, or to any ſtatutes, acts or ordinances, by them made or to bee made, that then the ſaide Gouernour or gouernours, Conſuls, and the ſaide aſſiſtants, in maner, forme, and nomber aboue ſpecified, for the time being, ſhall and may by vertue of theſe preſents, mulct, and puniſh euery ſuch offender or offenders, as the qualitie of the offence requireth, according to their good diſcretions.

And further, we will that none of the ſaide offender or offenders, ſhall decline from the power of the ſaide Gouernour, or gouernours, Conſuls and aſſiſtants, in maner, forme, and nomber aboueſaide for the time being: ſo alwayes, that the ſaide acts, ſtatutes and ordinances, doe onely touche and concerne the ſaide Gouernour or gouernours, Conſuls, aſſiſtants, and the ſaide fellowſhippe and communaltie of our before named Marchants aduenturers, or the men of the ſame fellowſhip and communaltie, and none other; And ſo alwayes, that ſuch their acts, ſtatutes and ordinances, bee not againſt our prerogatiue, lawes, ſtatutes, and cuſtomes of our Realmes and Dominions, nor contrary to the ſeuerall duetie of any our ſubiects, towardes vs, our heires and ſucceſſours, nor contrary to any compacts, treaties or leagues, by vs or any our progenitours, heretofore had or made, or hereafter by vs, our heires and ſucceſſours to bee made, to or with any forreine Prince or potentate, nor alſo to the preiudice of the corporation of the Maior, communalties and Citizens of our citie of London, nor to the preiudice of any perſon or perſons, bodie politique, or corporate, or incorporate, iuſtly pretending, clayming, or hauing any liberties, franchiſes, priuiledges, rightes or preheminences, by vertue or pretext of any graunt, gift, or letters patents, by vs, or any our progenitours, heretofore giuen, graunted, or made.

Moreouer, we for vs, our heires, and ſucceſſours, will, and by theſe preſents, doe graunt vnto the ſaid Gouernours, Conſuls, aſſiſtants, fellowſhip and communaltie of our Marchants aforeſaid, that their ſaid Gouernour or gouernours, Conſuls and aſſiſtants, and their ſucceſſours for the time being, in maner, forme and nomber aboue rehearſed, ſhall haue full power and authoritie to aſſigne, conſtitute and ordaine one officer, or diuers officers as well within our aforeſaide Citie of London, as alſo in any other place or places of this our Realme of England, or elſwhere within our dominions, which officer or officers, wee will to be named and called by the name of Seriant or Seriants to the fellowſhip or communaltie of the ſaid Marchants, and that the ſame Seriant or Seriants, ſhall and may haue full power and authoritie by theſe preſents, to take, leuie and gather all maner fines, forfeitures, penalties and mulcts of euery perſon and perſons, of the ſaide fellowſhippe and communaltie conuict, and that ſhalbe conuicted, vpon or for breaking of any ſtatutes, acts, ordinances, to be made by the ſaide Gouernour or gouernours, Conſuls and aſſiſtants for the time being.

And further, wee will and alſo graunt for vs, our heires and ſucceſſours, that the ſaide officer or officers, ſhall haue further power and authoritie for the default of payment, or for diſobedience in this behalfe (if neede bee) to ſet handes, and arreſt, as well the body and bodies, as the goods and chattels of ſuch offender, and offenders, and tranſgreſſers, in euery place and places not franchiſed: and if it ſhall fortune any ſuch offender or offenders, their goods and chattels or any part thereof, to bee in any Citie, borowe, towne incorporate, or other place franchiſed or priuiledged, where the ſaide officer or officers, may not lawfully intromit or intermeddle, that then the Maior, ſhiriffes, bayliffes, and other head officers, or miniſters, within euery ſuch Citie, borowe, towne incorporate, or place or places franchiſed, vpon a precept to them, or any of them, to be directed from the Gouernour or gouernours, Conſuls and aſſiſtants of the ſaid fellowſhip, in nomber and forme aforeſaid, vnder the common ſeale of the ſaid fellowſhip & communaltie for the time being, ſhall, & may attach and arreſt the body or bodies of ſuch offender or offenders, as alſo take, and ſeiſe the goods and chattels of all and euery ſuch offender or offenders, being within any ſuch place or places franchiſed, and the ſame bodie and bodies, goods and chattels of all and euery ſuch offender and offenders, being within any ſuch place or places franchiſed, and euery part thereof ſo attached and ſeazed, ſhall according to the tenor and purport of the ſaid precept, returne, and deliuer vnto the ſaide officer, or officers of the aforeſaide fellowſhippe, and communaltie.

And further, we will & graunt for vs, our heires & ſucceſſours by theſe preſents, that al, & euery ſuch

Maior, shirrife, bayliffe, or other head officers or ministers, of any citie, borowe, towne incorporat, or other places franchised, shall not bee impeached, molested, vexed or sued in any our courte courtes, for executing or putting in execution of any of the said precept or precepts.

And furthermore, wee of our ample and abundant grace, meere motion, and certaine knowledge, for vs, our heires, and successours, as much as in vs is, haue giuen and graunted, and by these presents doe giue and graunt, vnto the saide Gouernour, Consuls, assistants, fellowshippe, and comminaltie of Marchants aduenturers, and to their successours, and to the Factors, and Factors, assigne and assignes of euery of them, full and free authoritie, libertie, faculties and licence, and power to saile to all portes, regions, dominions, territories, landes, Iles, Islands, and coastes of the sea, whersoeuer before their late aduenture or enterprise vnknowen, or by our Marchants and subiects by the seas not heretofore commonly frequented, vnder our banner, standerd, flags, and Ensignes, with their shippe, shippes, barkes, pinnesses, and all other vessels of whatsoeuer portage, bulke, quantitie or qualitie they may be, and with any Marriners, and men as they will leade with them in such shippe or shippes, or other vessels at their owne and proper costes and expences, for to trafique, descrie, discouer and finde, whatsoeuer Ile, Islands, countries, regions, prouinces, creekes, armes of the sea, riuers & streames, as wel of Gentile, as of any other Emperour, king, prince, gouernour or Lord whatsoeuer he or they shalbe, and in whatsoeuer part of the world they be situated, being before the saide late aduenture or enterprise vnknowen, and by our Marchants and subiects not commonly frequented: and to enter and land in the same, without any maner of denying, paine, penaltie or forfeiture to bee had or taken by any our lawes, statutes or statutes to our vse, or to the vse of our heires or successors for the same.

K. Philip and Queene Mary hereby doe disanul Pope Alexanders diuision.

And we haue also graunted, and by these presents, for vs, our heires and successors, doe graunt vnto the said Gouernours, Consuls, assistants, fellowshippe and comminaltie, and to their successours, and to their Factors and assignes, and to euery of them, licence for to reare, plant, erect, and fasten our banners standerds, flags, and Ensignes, in whatsoeuer citie, towne, village, castle, Ile, or maine lande, which shalbe by them newly found, without any the penalties, forfeitures, or dangers aforesaide, and that the said fellowship and comminaltie, and their successors, Factors and assignes and euery of them, shall and may subdue, possesse and occupie, all maner cities, townes, Iles, and maine landes of infidelitie, which is or shall bee by them, or any of them newly founde or descried, as our vassals and subiects, and for to acquire and get the Dominion, title, and iurisdiction of the same Cities, Townes, Castles, villages, Iles, and maine landes, which shall bee by them, or any of them newly discouered or founde vnto vs, our heires and successours for euer.

Anno 1554.

And furthermore, whereas by the voyage of our Subiects in this last | yeere attempted by Nauigation, towardes the discouerie and disclosure of vnknowen places, Realmes, Islandes, and Dominions by the seas not frequented, it hath pleased Almighty God to cause one of the three shippes by them first set foorth for the voyage, and purpose aboue mentioned, named the Edward Bonauenture, to arriue, abide, and winter within the Empire and dominions of the high and mightie Prince our cousin and brother, Lorde Iohn Basiliuich Emperour of all Russia, Volodomerskie, great duke of Moscouie, &c. Who, of his clemencie, for our loue and zeale, did not onely admitte the Captaine, and Marchants our subiects into his protection, and Princely presence, but also receiued and intertained them very gratiously, and honourably, graunting vnto them by his letters addressed vnto vs, franke accesse into all his Seignories and Dominions, with licence freely to trafique in and out with all his Subiects in all kinde of Marchandise, with diuers other gratious priuiledges, liberties and immunities specified in his saide letters vnder his Signet: Knowe yee therefore that wee of our further royall fauour and munificence, of our meere motion, certaine knowledge, and speciall grace, for vs our heires, and successours, haue giuen and graunted, and by these Presents doe giue and graunt vnto the same Gouernour, Consuls, assistants, fellowshippe, and comminaltie aboue named, and to their successours, as much as in vs is, that all the maine landes, Iles, portes, hauens, creekes, and Riuers of the said mightie Emperour of all Russia, and great duke of Mosco, &c. And all, and singuler other landes, Dominions, territories, Iles, Portes, hauens, creekes, riuers, armes of the Sea of all and other Emperour, king, prince, rulers and gouerners, whatsoeuer he or they before the said late aduenture or enterprise not known, or by our foresaide Marchants and subiects by the seas, not cõmonly frequented, nor by any part nor parcel thereof lying Eastwards, Northeastwards, or Northwestwards, as is aforesaid, by sea shal not be visited, frequented nor haunted by any our subiects, other then of ꝑ said company & felowship, & their successors without expresse licence, agreement, and consent of the Gouernour, Consuls, and Assistants of the said fellowly

The Moscouites priuiledges vnto the English.

The largenes of the priuiledge of the Moscouite companie.

lowſhip, and Communaltie aboue named, or the more part of them, in manner and number aforeſaid, for the time being, vpon paine of forfeiture, and loſſe, as well of the ſhippe, and ſhippes, with the appertenances, as alſo of all the goods, marchandize, and things whatſoeuer they be, of thoſe our Subiects, not being of the ſaid fellowſhippe, and Communaltie, which ſhall attempt or preſume to ſaile to any of thoſe places, which be, or hereafter ſhall happen to be founde, and trafficked vnto, the one halfe of the ſame forfeiture to be to the vſe of vs, our heires, and ſucceſſors, and the other halfe to be to the vſe of the ſaide fellowſhippe, and Communaltie. And if it ſhall fortune, any ſtranger, or ſtrangers, for to attempt to hurt, hinder, or endamage the ſame Marchants, their factors, Deputies, or Aſſignes, or any of them, in ſailing, going, or returning at any time in the ſaide aduenture, or for to ſaile or trade to or from any thoſe places, lands, or coaſtes, which by the ſaide Marchants, their Factors, Deputies, and Aſſignes haue bene, or ſhall be deſcried, diſcouered, and found, or frequented, as well within the coaſtes and limits of gentilitie, as within the dominions and Seigniories of the ſaid mightie Emperour and Duke, and of all, and euery other Emperour, King, Prince, Ruler, and Gouernour whatſoeuer, he, or they be, before the ſaide late aduenture or enterpriſe not knowen by any our ſaid Marchants, and ſubiects, by the ſeas not commonly frequented, and lying Northwards, Northweſtwards, or Northeaſtwards as aforeſaid, then we will, and grant, and by theſe preſents doe licence, and authorize for vs, our heires, and ſucceſſors, the ſaid Marchants their Factors, Deputies, and Aſſignes, and euery of them, to doe their beſt in their defenſe, to reſiſt the ſame their enterpriſe, and attempts. Willing therefore, and ſtraightly commanding, and charging, all and ſingular our Officers, Maiors, Sherifes, Eſcheators, Conſtables, Bailifs, and all, and ſingular other our Miniſters, and Liege men, and Subiects whatſoeuer, to be aiding, fauouring, helping, and aſſiſting vnto the ſaid Gouernour, or Gouernours, Conſuls, Aſſiſtants, fellowſhip, and Communaltie, and to their Succeſſors, and Deputies, Factors, Seruants, and Aſſignes, and to the Deputies, Factors, and Aſſignes of euery of them, in executing and enioying the premiſſes, as wel on land, as in the ſea, from time to time, and at all times, when you, or any of you, ſhall be thereunto required. In witnes whereof, &c. Anno 1555.

Apud Weſtmonaſterium, 6. die Feb. Annis regnorum noſtrorum, primo & ſecundo.

Certaine inſtructions deliuered in the third voyage, Anno 1556. *for Ruſſia, to euery Purſer, and the reſt of the ſeruants, taken for the* voyage, which may ſerue, as good and neceſſary directions, to all other like aduenturers.

1 FIrſt you ſhall before the ſhippe doth begin to lade, goe aboord, and ſhal there take, and write one inuentorie, by the aduiſe of the Maſter, or of ſome other principall officer there aboord, of all the tackle, apparel, cables, ankers, ordinance, chambers, ſhot, powder, artillerie, and of all other neceſſaries whatſoeuer doth belong to the ſaid ſhip: and the ſame iuſtly taken, you ſhall write in a booke, making the ſaid Maſter, or ſuch officer priuie of that which you haue ſo written, ſo that the ſame may not be denied, when they ſhall call accompt thereof: that done, you ſhall write a copie of the ſame, with your owne hand, which you ſhall deliuer before the ſhippe ſhall depart, for the voyage to the companies booke keeper here to be kept to their behalfe, to the ende that they may be iuſtly anſwered the ſame, when time ſhall require: and this order to be ſeene and kept euery voyage orderly, by the purſers of the companies owne ſhippe, in any wiſe.

2. Alſo when the ſhippe beginneth to lade, you ſhall be ready aboord with your booke, to enter ſuch goods as ſhall be brought aboord, to be laden for the companie, packed, or vnpacked, taking the markes and numbers of euery packe, fardell, truſſe, or packet, conoupa, cheſt, fatte, butt, pipe, puncheon, whole barrell, halfe barrell, fyrkin, or other caſke, maunde, or baſket, or any other thing, which may, or ſhall be packed by any other manner of waies, or deuiſe. And firſt, all ſuch packes, or truſſes, &c. as ſhal be brought aboord to be laden, not marked by the companies marke, you ſhall doe the beſt to let that the ſame be not laden, and to inquire diligently to knowe the owners thereof, if you can, and what commoditie the ſame is, that is ſo brought aboord to be laden: if you can not know the owners of ſuch goods, learne what you can thereof, as well making a note in your booke, as alſo to ſend or bring worde thereof to the Agent, and to ſome one of the foure Marchants with him adioyned, ſo ſpeedily as you can, if it be here laden, or to be laden in this riuer, being not marked with the companies marke, as is aforeſaid: and when the ſaid ſhippe hath receaued

ceiued in all that the companies Agent will haue laden, you shal make a iust copie of that which is laden, reciting the parcels, the markes and numbers of euery thing plainly, which you shal likewise deliuer to the sayd booke keeper to the vse aforesaid.

3 Also when the ship is readie to depart, you shall come for your cockets and letters to the Agent, and shall shew him all such letters as you haue receiued of any person or persons priuately or openly, to be deliuered to any person or persons in Russia or elsewhere, and also to declare if you know any other that shall passe in the ship either master or mariner that hath receiued any letters to be priuily deliuered to any there, directed from any person or persons, other then from the Agent here to the Agent there: which letters so by you receiued, you shall not carry with you, without you be licenced so to doe by the Agent here, and some of the foure merchants, as is aforesayd: and such others as doe passe, hauing receiued any priuie letters to be deliuered, you shall all that in you lieth, let the deliuerie of them at your arriuing in Russia: and also if you haue or doe receiue, or shal know any other that doth or hath receiued any goods or readie money to bee imploied in Russia, or to be deliuered there to any person or persons from any person or persons, other then such as be the companies goods, and that vnder their marke, you shall before the shippe doeth depart, declare the same truely to the said Agent, and to some of the other merchants to him adioyned, as it is before declared.

4 Also when the ship is ready to depart, and hath the master and the whole company aboord, you shall diligently foresee and take heede, that there passe not any priuie person or persons, other then such as be authorized to passe in the said ship, without the licence & warrant of one of ỹ Gouernours and of the assistants, for the same his passage, to be first shewed. And if there bee any such person or persons that is to passe and will passe without shewing the same warrant, you shall let the passage of any such to the vttermost of your power: And for that there may no such priuy person passe vnder the cloke and colour of some mariner, you shall vpon the waying of your ships anker, call the master and the mariners within boord by their names and that by your bookes, to the ende that you may see that you haue neither more nor lesse, but iust the number for the voyage.

5 Also you must haue in remembraunce, that if it shall chaunce the ship to bee put into any harbour in this coast by contrary windes or otherwise in making the voyage, to send word thereof from time to time as the case shall require, by your letters in this maner. To master I. B. Agent for the company of the New trades in S. in London: If you doe hier any to bring your letters, write that which he must haue for the portage. And for your better knowledge and learning, you shall do very well to keepe a daily note of the voiage both outwards and homewards.

6 And principally see that you forget not daily in all the voiage both morning and euening, to call the company within boord to prayer, in which doing you shall please God, and the voiage shall haue the better successe thereby, and the company prosper the better.

7 Also in calme weather and at other times when you shall fortune to come to anker in the seas during the voiage, you shall for the companies profit, and for good husbanding of the victuals aboord, call vpon the Boateswaine and other of the company to vse such hookes and other engines as they haue aboord to take fish with, that such fish so taken may bee eaten for the cause aforesayd: and if there bee no such engines aboord, then to prouide some before you goe from hence.

8 And when God shall send you in safetie into the Baie of S. Nicholas at an anker, you shall goe a shore with the first boate that shall depart from the ship, taking with you such letters as you haue to deliuer to the Agent there: and if he bee not there at your comming a land, then send the companies letters to Colmogro to him by some sure mariner or otherwise, as the master and you shall thinke best: but goe not your selfe at any hand, nor yet from aboord the ship, vnlesse it bee a shore to treate with the Agent for the lading of the ship that you be appointed in, which you shall applie diligently to haue done so speedily as may bee. And for the discharging of the goods therein in the Baie, to bee caried from thence, see that you doe looke well to the vnlading thereof, that there bee none other goods sent a shore then the companies, and according to the notes entered in your booke as aforesayd: if there bee, enquire diligently for whom they bee, and what goods they be, noting who is the receiuer of the sayd goods, in such sort that the company may haue the true knowledge thereof at your comming home.

9 All

9. Alſo there a ſhoare, and likewiſe aboord, you ſhall ſpie, and ſearch as ſecretly as you may, to learne and knowe what bargaining, buying, and ſelling there is, with the Maſter, and the mariners of the ſhippe, and the Ruſſes, or with the companies ſeruants there: and that which you ſhall perceaue and learne, you ſhall keepe a note thereof in your booke, ſecretly to your ſelfe, which you ſhall open, and diſcloſe at your comming home, to the Gouernours, and the Aſſiſtants, in ſuch ſorte, as the truth of their ſecret trades, and occuppyings may be reueiled, and knowen. You ſhall need alwaies to haue Argos eies, to ſpie their ſecret packing and conueyance, as well on land, as aboord the ſhippe, of and for ſuch furres, and other commodities, as priuely they doe vſe to buy, packe, and conuey hither. If you will be vigilant, and ſecrete in this article, you can not muſſe to ſpie their priuie packing one with another, either on ſhoare, or aboord the ſhippe: worke herein wiſely, and you ſhall deſerue great thanks of the whole companie.

10. Alſo at the lading againe of the ſhippe, you ſhall continue and abide aboord, to the ende that you may note and write in your booke, all ſuch goods and marchandize, as ſhall be brought and laden, which you ſhall orderly note in all ſortes as heretofore, as in the ſecond article partly it is touched: and in any wiſe, put the Maſter and the companie in remembrance, to looke and foreſee ſubſtantially, to the roomaging of the ſhippe, by faire meanes or threats, as you ſhall ſee and thinke will ſerue for the beſt.

11. Thus when the ſhippe is fully laden againe, and all things aboord in good order, and that you doe fortune to goe a ſhoare to the Agent for your letters, and diſpatch away: you ſhal demand whether all the goods be laden that were brought thither, and to know the truth thereof, you ſhall repaire to the companies ſtorehouſe there, at S. Nicholas, to ſee if there be any goods left, in the ſaid ſtorehouſe: if there be, you ſhall demand why they be not laden, and to note what kind of goods they be, that be ſo left: and ſeeing any of the ſhippes there, not fully laden, you ſhall put the Agent in remembrance to lade thoſe goods ſo left, if any ſuch be to be laden, as is aforeſaide. And thus God ſending you a faire wind, to make ſpeede and away.

12. Finally, when God ſhall ſende you to arriue againe vpon this coaſt in ſafetie, either at Harewhich, or els where, goe not you a land, if you may poſſible, to the ende, that when you be gone a ſhoare, there may no goods be ſent priuily ſhoare to be ſolde, or els to be ſolde aboord the ſhippe, in your abſence, but keepe you ſtill aboord, if you can by any meanes, for the cauſes aforeſaid, and write the companie a letter from the ſhippe of your good arriuall, which you may conuey to them by land, by ſome boy or marriner of the ſhippe, or otherwiſe as you ſhall thinke beſt: and likewiſe when God ſhall ſend you and the ſhippe, into the riuer here, doe not in any wiſe depart out of the ſhippe that you be in, vntill the companie doe ſend ſome other aboord the ſhippe, in your ſteede and place, to keepe the ſaid ſhippe in your abſence.

The Nauigation and diſcouerie toward the Riuer of Ob, *made by Maſter Stephen Burrowe, Maſter of the Pinneſſe called* the Serchethrift, with diuers things worth the noting, paſſed in the yeere, 1556.

WE departed from Ratliffe to Blackewall, the 23. of Aprill, Saturday being S. Markes day, we departed from Blackewall to Grays. Aprill 25.

The 27. being Munday, the right Worſhipfull Sebaſtian Cabota, came aboord our Pinneſſe at Grauеſende, accompanied with diuers Gentlemen, and Gentlewomen, who after that they had viewed our Pinneſſe, and taſted of ſuch cheere as we could make them aboord, they went on ſhoare, giuing to our Mariners right liberall rewardes: and the good olde Gentleman, Maſter Cabota, gaue to the poore moſt liberall almes, wiſhing them to pray for the good fortune, and proſperous ſucceſſe of the Serchethirſte, our Pinneſſe. And then at the ſigne of the Chriſtopher, he and his friends banketted, and made me, and them that were in my companie, great cheere: and for very ioy that he had to ſee the towardnes of our intended diſcouerie, he entred into the dance himſelfe, amongſt the reſt of the young and luſtie companie: which being ended, he, and his friends departed moſt gently, commending vs to the gouernance of Almightie God. 27

Tueſday we rode ſtill at Grauеſende, making proviſion for ſuch things as we wanted. 28

Wenſday in the morning, we departed from Grauеſende, the wind being at South weſt, and that night we came to an anker thwart of our Lavie of Hollands. 29

Thurſday at three of the clocke in the morning, we waied, and by eight of the clocke, we were at an anker in Orwell wannes, and then incontinent I went aboord the Edward Bonauenture, 30

where

where the Worshipfull companie of Marchants appointed me to be, vntill the said good shippe
Note. arriued at Wardhouse. Then I returned againe into the pinnesse.

Maye.

1 Friday being the first day of May, at 4. of the clocke in the morning, the wind being at South east, and by East, we waied, and went into Orwell hauen.

2 Saturday at fiue of the clocke in the morning, the winde being at South, and by West, we went into the Wands, but at two of the clocke at afternoone, the wind shifted, and came vp at East and by North, and began to blow a good gale: and at foure of the clocke, we waied, and went againe into Harewich.

4 Munday at three a clocke in the morning, we came againe out of Harewich, the wind being at West Northwest, and by eight of the clocke, we were thwart of Orfordnesse, and then the winde shifted, and came at South southeast: and at two of the clocke, we were thwart of Sowlde, and there we tooke in our sailes, and staied for the pinnesse vntil foure of the clocke, which pinnesse we sent thither the third day, to fetch certaine men, and necessaries for the Philip and Marie, and then we set off Northeast, vntil fiue of the clocke: at the same time Yarmouth steeple was off vs West Northwest, eight leagues, and then we set our course North.

5 From that vntil Tuesday fiue a clocke in the morning, North 18. leagues. From that vntill a South sunne North, and by West the latitude being 54. degrees and a halfe, the wind being at this present at South[illegible] and by West.

6 From that vntil Wednesday fiue of the clocke in the morning, North, and by West: and at this present fiue a clocke the wind shifted, and came at West northwest: we had the latitude this day, in
The variation of the compas. 55. degrees, 14. minuts: the variation of the compasse, from North to East almost 13. degrees.

7 From that vnto a west sunne, fiue leagues northeast: and at this present the wind shifted to the northeast.

From that vntill Thursday fiue a clocke in the morning, 5. leagues northwest, and by north.

From that vntill a south sunne, three leagues northwest: we sounded at this present, and had 45. fadome, and small mingled white and blacke sand, and some mathes like Hering bones. We had the latitude this day at noone, in 55. degrees, 23. minuts.

From that vntill a west sunne, north, fiue leagues.

8 From that vntill Friday, a southest sunne, East ten leagues, the wind at north a stiffe gale.

9 From that vntill Saturday, a northeast sunne, fiue leagues southwest, and then we cast about to the Northward, the wind being at West, and by north.

From that vntill a southwest sunne, northeast, and by north, eight leagues, and then the winde shifted to the northwards.

From that vntill a west sunne, two leagues East, and by north.

10 From that vntill Sunday three of the clocke in the morning, fiue leagues East, and by north, the wind at northwest.

11 From that vntill Munday, an East sunne, southeast, and by South, 13. leagues and a halfe.

From that vnto a south southwest sunne, three leagues south southwest, and then the winde shifted, and came at west, and by north.

From that vntill a west sunne, north northwest.

12 From that vntill Tuesday in the morning, three of the clocke, north northwest, 25. leagues, and then north and by west.

From that vnto a south sunne north, and by west, 14. leagues, and then it waxed thicke, and the wind came at the northwest, and by west.

From that vntill a northwest sunne, East northeast, and halfe a point to the Northwards, fiue leagues scant.

13 From that vntill Wensday, a south sunne northeast, and by East, and then we were in 57. degrees, 57. minuts.

From that vnto a Northwest sunne, East northeast, foure leagues.

14 From that vntill the 14. day, a south sunne, three leagues and a halfe, East northeast, and then we cast about, the wind being at northeast,

15 This Friday we were within 7. leagues of the shoare, on the coast of Norway: the latitude a south sunne, 58. degrees and a halfe, where we saw three sailes, beside our owne companie: and thus we followed the shoare of land, which lieth north northwest, north, and by west, and northwest and by north, as it doth appeare by the plat.

Sette

Saturday at an Eaſt ſunne, we came to S. Dunſtans Iſland, which Iſland I ſo named. It was of vs Eaſt, two leagues and a halfe, the wind being at Southeaſt: the latitude this day at a ſouth ſunne, 59. degrees, 42. minutes. Alſo the high round mountaine bare Eaſt of vs, at a South ſunne: and when this hill is Eaſt of you, and being bound to the Northward, the land lieth North, and halfe a point Weſterly, from this ſaide South ſunne, vnto a North ſunne twentie leagues Northnorthweſt alongſt the ſhoare. S. Dunſtans Iſland. 16

Upon Sunday at ſixe of the clocke in the morning, the fartheſt land that we could ſee that lay Northnorthweſt, was Eaſt of vs three leagues, and then it trended to the Northwards, and to the Eaſtwards of the North, which head land I iudge to be Scowtſneſſe. At ſeuen of the clocke, we changed our courſe, and went North, the winde being at Southſoutheaſt, and it waxed very thicke and miſtie, and when it cleered, we went Northnortheaſt. At a South ſunne we loſt ſight of the Serchethrift, becauſe of the miſte, making our way North. And when we loſt ſight of the ſhoare, and pinneſſe, we were within two leagues and a halfe of the ſhoare: the laſt land that we ſawe, when this miſte came vpon vs, which is to the Northwards of Scowtſneſſe, lay Northnortheaſt, and Southſouthweſt, and we made our way North, vntill a Weſt ſunne fiue leagues. 17

From that vntil Munday three a clocke in the morning, ten leagues Northnortheaſt: and then we went North, and by Eaſt, becauſe the winde came at the Weſt Southweſt with thicke myſte: the latitude this day at a South ſunne ſixtie three degrees and a halfe truely taken: at this ſeaſon we had ſight of our Pinneſſe againe. 18

From that vntill Tewsday a South ſunne North northeaſt, fourtie foure leagues, and then Northeaſt. From a South ſunne vntill eight of the clocke, fifteene leagues Northeaſt. 19

From that vntill Wednesday, a South ſunne North northeaſt, except the firſt watch Northeaſt: then had we the latitude in ſixtie ſeuen degrees, thirtie nine minutes. Frō that vnto a Northweſt ſunne, eighteene leagues Northeaſt, and then we were within two leagues of the ſhore, and ſaw the high land to the Southwardes of Lowfoote breake out through the miſte, and then wee went North and by Eaſt. 20

From the ſayd Northweſt ſunne vntill foure of the clocke in the morning North, and by Eaſt, ten leagues and a halfe: and then Northnortheaſt vntill a South ſunne, the Latitude being ſixtie nine degrees, and a halfe. From that vntill halfe an houre paſt ſeuen of the clocke, Northnortheaſt, eleuen leagues and a halfe, and then wee went Northeaſt, ten leagues. From that, three leagues and a halfe, Eaſt Northeaſt, and then wee ſawe the lande through the cloudes and haze thwarte on the broade ſide of vs, the winde being then at the South ſouthweſt. 21 22

From that vntill Saturday, at eight of the clocke in the morning, Eaſt Northeaſt, and to the Northwardes fourtie eight leagues, and then the winde came vp at North, we being aboorde the ſhore, and thwart of the Chappel, which I ſuppoſe is called Kedilwike: then we caſt the ſhippes head to the Seawardes, becauſe the winde was very ſcant: and then I cauſed the Pinneſſe to beare in with the ſhore, to ſee whether ſhe might finde an harborough for the ſhips or not, and that ſhe found and ſawe two roaders ride in the ſounde: and alſo they ſawe houſes. But notwithſtanding, God be praiſed, the winde enlarged vpon vs, that we had not occaſion to goe into the harborough: and then the Pinneſſe bare her Myſſen maſt ouer boorde with flagge and all, and loſt the flagge: with the maſt there fell two men ouer boorde, but God be praiſed, they were ſaued: the flagge was a token, whereby wee might vnderſtand whether there were a good harbour there or not. 23 Kedelwike Chappell.

At a North ſunne the North cape (which I ſo named the firſt voyage) was thwart of vs, which is nine leagues to the Eaſtwards of the foreſayd Chappell from the Eaſtermoſt poynt of it. The North cape ſo named by Steuen Borough.

Iune.

The ſunday we weyed in Corpus Chriſti Bay, at a Northeaſt and by Eaſt ſunne: the Bay is almoſt halfe a league deepe: the head lande which is Corpus Chriſti poynt, lyeth Southeaſt, and by Eaſt, one league from the head of the Baye, where we had a great tyde, like a race ouer the flood: the Bay is at the leaſt two leagues ouer: ſo doe I imagine from the faire foreſande to Corpus Chriſti point tenne leagues Southeaſt, and by Eaſt: It floweth in this Baye, at a South and by Weſt moone full ſea. From that we weyed vntill ſeuen a clocke at afternoone twentie leagues Southeaſt, and by South: and then we tooke in all our ſayles, becauſe it was then verie myſtie, and alſo we met with much yce, that ranne out of the Baye, and then we went South Southeaſt with our foreſayle: at eight of the clocke, we heard a piece of ordinance, which was out of the Edward, which bade vs farewell, and then we ſhot off another piece, and bade her farewell. The ſeuenth.

fare well: we could not one see the other, because of the thicke mist: at a Northwest sunne, it began somewhat to cleere, and then we sawe a head land, and the shoare trended to the Southest ward, which I iudged to be about Crosse Island: it was of vs at a noyth northwest sunne, but southwest.

8 From this noyth northwest sunne, vntill Sunday, we went Southeast, and this morning we came at anker among the shoales that lie off, of point Looke out, E northeast, and by East sunne, the wind being at East southeast. At this point Looke out, a south Moone maketh a full sea. Cape good fortune lieth from the Isle of Crosses southeast, and betweene them is tenne leagues: point Looke out, lieth from Cape Good fortune, East southeast, and betweene them are six leagues. S. Edmonds point lieth from point Lookeout East southeast, and halfe a point to the southwards, and betweene them are sixe leagues. There is betweene these two points, a Bay that is halfe a league deepe, and is full of shoales, and dangers. At a southeast sunne we waied, and turned to the windwards, the winde being at East southeast: and at a southeast sunne, we came to an anker, being then a full sea, in fiue fadoms and a halfe water. It lieth at this place where we roade, and also at point Lookeout, foure fadome water. At a West noyth west sunne

9 we waied, and driued to the windewards, vntill Tuesday, a noyth noytheast sunne, and then being a high water, we came to an anker open of the riuer Colaye, in eight fadome water. Cape S. Bernarde lieth from S. Edmonds point, southeast, and by south, and betwixt them are six leagues, and also betwixt them is the Riuer Colaye, into which Riuer wee went this morning.

10 Wensday we roade still in the said Riuer, the winde being at noyth: we sent our skiffe a lande to be dressed: the latitude of the mouth of the Riuer Cola, is sixtie fiue degrees, foytie and eight minuts.

The latitude of Colaye.

11 Thursday at 6 of the clocke in the morning, there came aboord of vs one of the Russe Lodias, rowing with twentie oares, and there were foure and twentie men in her. The Master of the boate presented me with a great loafe of bread, and sixe ringes of bread, which they call Colaches, and foure dried pikes, and a pecke of fine oatemeale, and I gaue vnto the Master of the boate, a combe, and a small glasse: and he declared vnto me, that he was bound to Pechora, and after that, I made them to drinke, the tide being somewhat broken, they gently departed. The Masters name was Pheother.

A Russe Lodia.

Whereas the tenth day, I sent our pinnesse on shoare to be mended, because she was leake, and weake, with the Carpenter, and three men more to helpe him, the weather chanced so, that it was Sunday, before they could get aboord our shippe. All that time they were without prouision of victuals, but onely a litle bread, which they spent by Thursday at night, thinking to haue come aboord when they had listed, but wind and weather denied them: insomuch that they were faine to eate gralle, and such weedes, as they could finde then aboue grounde, but fresh water they had plentie, but the meate with some of them could scant frame by reason of their queasie stomackes.

14 From Thursday at afternoone, vntill Sunday in the morning, our barke did ride such a roade sted, that it was to be maruelled, without the helpe of God, howe she was able to abide it.

In the bight of the southeast shoare of the riuer Cola, there is a good roade in fiue fadome, & foure fadome and a halfe, at a lowe water: but you shall haue no lande noyth Noytheast of you then. I prooued with our pinnesse, that the depth goeth on the southeast shoare.

18 Thursday we waied our ankers in the Riuer Cola, and went into the Sea seuen or eight leagues, where we mette with the winde farre noytherly, that of force it constrained vs to goe againe backe into the saide Riuer, where came aboord of vs sundry of their boates, which declared vnto me that they were also bound to the noythwards, a fishing for Noyse, and Salmon, and gaue me liberally of their white and wheaten bread.

Lodias hauing 24. men a peece.

As we roade in this riuer, we sawe daily comming downe the riuer many of their Lodias, and they that had least, had foure and twentie men in them, and at the last they grewe to three saile of them: and amongst the rest, there was one of them whose name was Gabriel, who shewed me very much friendshippe, and he declared vnto me, that all they were bound to Pechora, a fishing for Salmons, and Noyses: insomuch that hee shewed mee by demonstrations, that with a faire winde wee had seuen or eight daies sailing to the Riuer Pechora, so that I was glad of their companye. This Gabriel promised to giue mee warning of shoales, as hee did in deede.

From Colaye to Pechora is but 7. or 8. daies sailing.

21 Sunday being the one and twentieth day, Gabriel gaue me a barrell of meede, and one of his speciall

speciall friends gaue me a barrell of beere, which was carryed vpon mens backs, at least two miles.

Sunday we departed from the riuer Cola, with all the rest of the said Lodias, but sailing before the winde, they were all too good for vs: but according to promise, this Gabriel and his friend did often strike their sailes, and tarryed for vs forsaking their owne company. 22 The curtesie of one Gabriel.

Tuesday at an Eastnortheast sunne we were thwart of Cape S. John. It is to be vnderstood, that from the Cape S. John vnto the riuer or bay that goeth to Pezen, it is all sunke land, and full of shoales and dangers, you shall haue scant two fathom water, and see no land. And this present day we came to an anker thwart off a creeke, which is 4 or 5 leagues to the Northwards of the said Cape, into which creeke Gabriel and his fellow rowed, but we could not get in: and before night there were aboue 20 saile that went into the said creeke, the winde being at the Northeast. We had indifferent good landfang. 23 A good & necessary note.

This afternoone Gabriel came aboord with his skiffe, and then I rewarded him for the good company that he kept with vs ouer the shoales with two small yuory combes, and a steele glasse, with two or three trifles more, for which he was not vngratefull. But notwithstanding, his first company had gotten further to the Northwards.

Wednesday being Midsummer day, we sent our skiffe a land to sound the creeke, where they found it almost drie at a low water. And all the Lodias within were on ground. 24

Although the harborough were euill, yet the stormy similitude of Northerly windes tempted vs to set our sailes, and we let slip a cable and an anker, and bare with the harborough, for it was then neere a high water: and as alwayes in such iournyes varieties do chance, when we came vpon the barre in the entrance of the creeke, the winde did shrinke so suddenly vpon vs, that we were not able to lead it in, and before we could haue flatted the shippe before the winde, we should haue beene on ground on the lee shore, so that we were constrained to let fall an anker vnder our sailes, and rode in a very breach, thinking to haue warpt in. Gabriel came out with his skiffe, and so did sundry others also, shewing their good will to helpe vs, but all to no purpose, for they were likely to haue beene drowned for their labor, in so much that I desired Gabriel to lend me his anker, because our owne ankers were too bigge for our skiffe to lay out, who sent me his owne, and borrowed another also and sent it vs. Then we layd out one of those ankers, with a hawser which he had of 140 fathom long, thinking to haue warpt in, but it would not be: for as we shoted vpon the said warpe the anker came home, so that we were faine to beare the end of the warpe, that we rushed in vpon the other small anker that Gabriel sent aboord, and layd that anker to seawards: and then betweene these two ankers we trauersed the shippes head to seawards, and set our foresaile and maine saile, and when the barke had way, we cut the hawser, and so gat the sea to our friend, and tryed out all that day with our maine coyle.

The Thursday we went roome with Cape S. John, where we found indifferent good rode for a Northnortheast wind, and for a need, for a North and by West winde. 25

Friday at afternoone we weyed, and departed from thence, the wether being meetly faire, & the winde at Eastsoutheast, and plyed for the place where we left our cable and anker, and our hawser: & as soone as we were at an anker, the foresaid Gabriel came aboord of vs, with three or foure more of their small boats, and brought with them of their Aquauitæ and meade, professing vnto me very much friendship, and reioyced to see vs againe, declaring that they earnestly thought that we had beene lost. This Gabriel declared vnto me, that they had saued both the ankers and our hawser, and after we had thus communed, I caused 4 or 5 of them to goe into my cabbin, where I gaue them figs, and made them such cheere as I could. While I was thus banketing of them, there came another of their skiffes aboord, with one who was a Kerill, whose name afterwards I learned, & that he dwelt in Colmogro, and Gabriel dwelled in the towne of Colay, which is not far from the riuers mouth. This foresaid Kerill said vnto me that one of the ankers which I borowed was his, I gaue him thanks for the lone of it, thinking it had beene sufficient. And as I continued in one accustomed maner, that if the present which they brought were worth interteinment, they had it accordingly, he brought nothing with him, & therfore I regarded him but little. And thus we ended, and they tooke their leaue and went a shore. At their comming a shore, Gabriel and Kerill were at vnconuenient words, and by the eares, as I vnderstand: the cause was because the one had better interteinment then the other: but you shall vnderstand that Gabriel was not able to make his party good, because there were 17 lodias of Kerils company who tooke his part, and but 2 of Gabriels company. 26

The next high water Gabriel and his company departed from thence, and rowed to their former company and neighbors, which were in number 28 of them at the least, and all of them belonging to the riuer Colay. Twentie eight lodias belonging to Cola.

And as I vnderstood, Kerill made reckoning that ỳ hawser which was fast in his anker should 27 haue

haue beene his owne, and at first would not deliuer it to our boat, insomuch that I sent him word that I would complaine vpon him, wherupon he deliuered the hawser to my company.

The next day being Saturday, I sent our boat on shore to fetch fresh water and wood, and at their comming on shore this Kerill welcomed our men most gently, and also banketed them: and in the meane time caused some of his men to fill our baricoes with water, and to helpe our men to beare wood into their boat: and then he put on his best silke coate, and his coller of pearles, and came aboord againe, and brought his present with him: and thus hauing more respect vnto his present then to his person, because I perceiued him to be vaineglorious, I badde him welcome, and gaue him a dish of figges: and then he declared vnto me that his father was a gentleman, and that he was able to shew me pleasure, and not Gabriel, who was but a priests sonne.

28 After their departure from vs, we weyed, and plyed all the ebbe to the winde wards, the winde being Northerly, & towards night it waxed very stormy, so that of force we were constrayned to go roome with Cape S. John againe, in which storme we lost our skiffe at our sterne, that we bought at Wardhouse, and there we rode vntill the fourth of July. The latitude of Cape S. John is 66 degrees 50 minuts. And it is to be noted, that the land of Cape S. John is of height from the full sea marke, as I iudge 10 fathoms, being cleane without any trees growing, & also without stones or rocks, and consists onely of blacke earth, which is so rotten, that if any of it fall into the sea, it will swimme as though it were a piece of wood. In which place, about three leagues from the shore you shall not haue aboue 9 fadom water, and clay ground.

The latitude of Cape S. John 66 degrees 50 minuts.

Earth swimming aboue water like wood.

Iulie.

4 Saturday at a Northnorthwest sunne, the winde came at Eastnortheast, & then we weyed, and plyed to the Northwards, and as we were two leagues shot past the Cape, we saw a house standing in a valley, which is dainty to be seene in those parts, and by and by I saw three men on the top of the hill. Then I iudged them, as it afterwards prooued, that they were men which came from some other place to set traps to take vermin for their furres, which trappes we did perceiue very thicke longst the shore as we went.

5 Sunday at an East sunne we were thwart off the creeke where the Russes lay, and there came to an anker, and perceiuing the most part of the Lodias to be gone, we thought it not good to ly any longer there, but weyed, and spent all the ebbe, plying to the windewards.

6 Munday at a South sunne it was high water. All alongst the coast it floweth little, onely a South moone makes a full sea: annd as we were a weying we espied the Russe Lodias, which we first lost. They came out of a creeke amongst the sandy hilles, which hilles beginne 15 leagues Noorthnortheast from Cape S. John.

7 Plying this ebbe to an end, we came to an anker 6 leagues Northnortheast from the place where we saw the Russes come out: and there the Russes harboured themselues within a sounke banke, but there was not water enough for vs.

At a North sunne we weyed, and plyed to the Northwards, the land lying Northnortheast, and Southsouthwest, vntill a South sunne, and then we were in the latitude of 68 degrees & a halfe: and in this latitude ende those sandy hilles, and the land beginneth to lie North and by West, South and by East, and Northnorthwest, and to the Westwards, and there the water beginneth to ware deepe.

The latitude 68 degrees and a halfe.

At a Northwest sunne, we came to an anker within halfe a league of the shore, where we had good plenty of fish, both haddocks and cods, riding in 10 fathom water.

8 Wednesday we weyed, and plyed neerer the head land, which is called Caninoz, the winde being at East and by North.

9 Thursday the winde being skant we turned to windewards the ebbe, to get about Caninoz: the latitude this day at noone was 68 degrees 40 minuts.

10 Friday we turned to the windeward of the ebbe, but to no purpose: and as we rode at an anker, we saw the similitude of a storme rising at Northnorthwest, and could not tell where to get rode nor succor for that winde, and harborough we knew none: and that land which we rode vnder with the winde was a lee shore. And as I was musing what was best to be done, I saw a saile come out of a creeke vnder the the foresaid Caninoz, which was my friend Gabriel, who forsooke his harborough and company, and came as neere vs as he might, and pointed vs to the Eastwards, and then we weyed, and followed him, and went East and by South, the winde being at Westnorthwest, and very misty.

11 Saturday we went East southeast & followed Gabriel, and he brought vs into an harborough called

called Wolgiouets, which is 30 leagues from Cammoz, and we had vpon the barre going in two fa- Wolgiouets an harboz.
dome and a fourth part: and after we were past in ouer the barre, it waxed deeper, for we had 5 fa-
thoms, 4 and a halfe, and 3 fathom, &c. our barke being moued, I sent some of our men to shoare
to prouide wood, where they had plenty of dryft wood, but none growing: and in this place we Dryft wood.
found plenty of yoong fowle, as gulles, seapies, and others, whereof the Rusles would eat none,
whereof we were nothing sorry, for there came the more to our part.

Sunday our men cut wood on shoare, and brought it aboord, and we balasted our shippe with 12
stones.

This morning Gabriel saw a smoke on the way who rowed vnto it with his skiffe, which smoke
was two leagues from the place where we road: and at a Northwest sunne he came aboord againe,
and brought with him a Samoyd, which was but a yong man: his apparell was then strange vn- A Samoyd.
to vs, and he presented me with three yoong wilde geese, and one yoong barnacle.

Munday I sent a man to the maine in Gabriels boat, and he brought vs a boord eight barricoes 13
of fresh water: the latitude of the said Wolgiouets is sixtie eight degrees and a tierse. It floweth
there at a Southsouthwest moone full sea, and hyeth two fadome and a halfe water.

At a Westnorthwest sunne we departed from this place, and went East 25 leagues, and then 14
saw an Iland North and by West of vs eight leagues, which Iland is called Dolgoiene: and Dolgoiens an
from the Easternmost part of this Iland, there lyeth a sand East and by South seuen leagues Iland.
long. This sand seemeth to be it whereupon Charles Jackman perished.

Wednesday at a North and by East sunne, Swetinoze was South of vs 5 leagues.

This day at afternoone we went in ouer the dangerous barre of Pechora, and had vpon the Pechora.
barre but one fathom water. 15

Thursday we road still. 16

Friday I went on shoare, and obserued the variation of the compasse, which was three de- 17
grees and a halfe from the North to the West: the latitude this day was sixtie nine degrees tenne The variation of the compas.
minuts.

From two or three leagues to the Eastward of Swetinos, vntil the entring of the riuer Pechora,
it is all sandy hilles, and towards Pechora the sandy hilles are very low.

It highweth on the barre of Pechora foure foot water, and it floweth there at a Southwest moone
a full sea.

Munday at a North and by East sunne, we weyed, and came out ouer the sayd dangerous 20
barre, where we had but fiue foot water, insomuch that we found a foot lesse water comming out
then we did going in. I thinke the reason was, because when we went in, the winde was off the
sea, which caused the sandes to breake on either side of vs, and we kept in the smoothest betweene
the breaches, which we durst not haue done, except we had seene the Rusles to haue gone in be-
fore vs: and at our comming out the winde was off the shoare, and fayre wether, and then the sands
did not appeare with breaches as at our going in: we thanke God, that our shippe did draw so lit-
tle water.

When we were a seaboord the barre, the winde scanted vpon vs, and was at Eastsoutheast, in- 21
somuch that we stopped the ebbes, and plyed all the flouds to the windewards, and made our way
Eastnortheast.

Tuesday at a Northwest sunne we thought that we had seene land at East, or East & by North
of vs: which afterwards prooued to be a monstrous heape of yce.

Within a little more then halfe an houre after we first saw this yce, we were inclosed within Yce.
it before we were aware of it, which was a fearefull sight to see: for, for the space of fiue houres, it
was as much as we could do to keepe our shippe aloofe from one heape of yce, and beare roomer
from another, with as much winde as we might beare a coarse. And when we had past from the
danger of this yce, we lay to the Eastwards close by the winde.

The next day we were againe troubled with the yce. 22

Thursday being calme, we plyed to the windwards, the winde being Northerly. We had the 23
latitude this day at noone in 70 degrees 11 minuts. The latitude 70 degrees. 11 minuts.

We had not runne past two houres Northwest, the winde being at Northnortheast and North-
east and by North a good gale, but we met againe with another heape of yce: we wethered the head
of it, and lay a time to the seawards, and made way West 6 leagues.

Friday at a Southeast sunne, we cast about to the Eastwards, the winde being at Northnorth- 24
east: the latitude this day at noone was 70 degrees 15 minuts.

On S. Iames his day bolting to the windewards, we had the latitude at noone in seuentie de- 25
grees twentie minuts. The same day at a Southwest sunne, there was a monstrous Whale

aboord of vs, so neere to our side that we might haue thrust a sword or any other weapon in him, which we durst not doe for feare he should haue ouerthrowen our shippe: and then I called my company together, and all of vs shouted, and with the cry that we made he departed from vs: there was as much aboue water of his backe as the breedth of our pinnesse, and at his falling downe, he made such a terrible noyse in the water, that a man would greatly haue marueiled, except he had knowne the cause of it: but, God be thanked, we were quietly deliuered of him. And a little after we spyed certaine Ilands, with which we bare, and found good harbor in 15 or 18 fathom, and blacke oze: we came to an anker at a Northeast sunne, & named the Iland S. James his Iland, where we found fresh water.

S. James Iland.

26 Sunday, much winde blowing, we rode still.

27 Munday I went on shoare, and tooke the latitude, which was 70 degrees 42 minuts: the variation of the compasse was 7 degrees and a halfe from the North to the West.

The variation of the compas 7 degrees and a halfe.

Tuesday we plyed to the Westwards alongst the shoare, the winde being at Northwest, and as I was about to come to anker, we saw a saile comming about the point, whereunder we thought to haue ankered. Then I sent a skiffe aboord of him, and at their comming aboord, they made acquaintance of them, and the chiefe man said he had beene in our company in the riuer Colay, and also declared vnto them, that we were past the way which should bring vs to the Ob. This land, said he, is called Noua Zembla, that is to say, the New land: and then he came aboord himselfe with his skiffe, and at his comming aboord he tolde me the like, and said further, that in this Noua Zembla is the highest mountaine in the world, as he thought, and that Camen Bolshay, which is on the maine of Pechora, is not to be compared to this mountaine, but I saw it not: he made me also certaine demonstrations of the way to the Ob, and seemed to make haste on his owne way, being very lothe to tary, because the yeere was farre past, and his neighbour had set Pechora, and not he: so I gaue him a steele glasse, two pewter spoones, and a paire of veluet shorted knives: and then he seemed somewhat the more willing to tary, and shewed me as much as he knew in our purpose: he also gaue me 17 wilde geese, and shewed me that foure of their lodias were driuen perforce from Cannoze to this Noua Zembla. This mans name was Loshake.

The relation of Loshake. The way to the riuer of Obbe. A mightie hill in Noua Zembla. Loshake.

29 Wednesday, as we plyed to the Eastwards, wee espyed another saile, which was one of this Loshaks company, and we bare roome, and spake with him, who in like sort tolde vs of the Ob, as the other had done.

30 Thursday, we plyed to the Eastwards, the winde being at Eastnortheast.

31 Friday, the gale of winde began to increase, and came Westerly withall, so that by a South west sunne we were at an anker among the Ilands of Vaigats, where we saw two small lodias, the one of them came aboord of vs, and presented me with a great loafe of bread: and they tolde me that they were all of Colmogro, except one man that dwelt at Pechora, who seemed to be the chiefest among them in killing of the morse.

The Ilands of Vaigats.

There were some of their company on shore, which did chase a white beare ouer the high cliffe into the water, which beare, the lodia that was aboord of vs, killed in our sight.

This day there was a great gale of winde at North, and we saw so much yce driuing a seaboord, that it was then no going to sea.

August.

1 Saturday I went a shore, and there I saw three morses, that they had killed: they held one teeth of a morse, which was not great, at a roble, and one white beare skinne at three robles and two roubles: they further tolde me, that there were people called Samoyds on the great Iland, and that they would not abide them nor vs, who haue no houses, but only couerings made of deere skinnes, set ouer them with stakes: they are men expert in shooting, and haue great plenty of deere.

Samoyds.

This night there fell a cruell storme, the winde being at West.

2 Sunday we had very much winde, with plenty of snow, and we rode with two ankers a head.

3 Munday we weyed and went roome with another Iland, which was fiue leagues Eastnorth east from vs: and there I met againe with Loshake, and went on shore with him, and he brought me to a heape of the Samoyds idols, which were in number about 300, the worst, and the most artificiall worke that euer I saw: the eyes and mouthes of sundry of them were bloudy, they had the shape of men, women, and children, very grossly wrought, & that which they had made for other parts, was also sprinkled with bloud. Some of their idols were an olde sticke with two or three notches, made with a knife, in it. I saw much of the footing of the said Samoyds, and of the sleds that they ride in. There was one of their sleds broken, and lay by the heape of idols, and there I saw a deere skinne which the fowles had spoyled: and before certaine of their idols blocks were made as

The maners of the Samoyds.

as high as their mouthes, being all bloudy, I thought that to be the table whereon they offered their sacrifice: I saw also the instruments, whereupon they had roasted flesh, and as farre as I could perceiue, they make their fire directly vnder the spit.

Lohake being there present, tolde me that these Samoyds were not so hurtfull as they of Ob are, and that they haue no houses, as in deed I saw none, but onely tents made of deere skinnes, which they vnderproppe with stakes and poles: theyr boats are made of deere skinnes, and when they come on shoare they cary theyr boates with them vpon their backes: for theyr carriages they haue no other beastes to serue them, but deere onely. As for bread and corne they haue none, except the Rusles bring it to them: their knowledge is very base, for they know no letter. The Samoids of the Ob, very hurtfull and shrewd people.

Tuesday we turned for the harborough where Lohaks barke lay, whereas before we road vnder an Iland. And there he came aboord of vs, and said vnto me: if God send winde and weather to serue, I will goe to the Ob with you, because the moyses were skant at these Ilandes of Vaigats: but if he could not get to the riuer of Ob, then he said he would goe to the riuer of Narmezay, where the people were not altogether so sauage as the Samoyds of the Ob are: he shewed me that they will shoote at all men to the vttermost of their power, that can not speake theyr speech. 4

Wednesday we saw a terrible heape of yce approch neere vnto vs, and therefore we thought good with all speed possible to depart from thence, and so I returned to the Westwards againe, to the Iland where we were the 31 of July. 5

Thursday I went a shoare, and tooke the latitude, which was 70 degrees 25 minuts: and the variation of the compasse was 8 degrees from the North to the West. 6 The latitude. The variation of the compas.

Lohake and the two small Lodias of Pechora departed from this Iland, while I was on shoare taking the latitude, and went to the Southwards: I maruelled why he departed so suddenly, and went ouer the shoales amongst the Ilands where it was impossible for vs to follow them. But after I perceiued them to be wearher wise.

Friday we road still, the winde being at Northnortheast, with a cruell storme. The yce came in so abundantly about vs at both ends of the Iland that we road vnder, that it was a fearefull sight to behold: the storme continued with snow, raine, and haile plenty. 7

Saturday we road still also, the storme being somewhat abated, but it was altogether misty, that we were not able to see a cables length about vs, the winde being at Northeast and by East. 8

Sunday at foure of the clocke in the morning we departed from this Iland, the winde being at Southeast and as we were cleere a sea boord the small Ilandes and shoales, it came so thicke with mistes, that we could not see a base shotte from vs. Then we tooke in all our sailes to make little way. 9

At a Southeast sunne it wared cleere, and then we set our sayles, and lay close by the winde to the Southwards alongst the Ilands of Vaigats. At a West sunne we tooke in our sayle againe because of the great mist and raine. We sounded at this place, and had fiue and twenty fathoms water, and soft blacke oze, being three leagues from the shoare, the winde being at South and by East, but still misty.

Munday at an East sunne we sounded, and had 40 fathoms, and oze, still misty: at noone we sounded againe, and had 36 fathom, still misty. 10

Tuesday at an Eastnortheast sunne, we let fall our anker, in three and twenty fadome, the mist still continuing. 11

Wednesday at three of the clocke in the morning the mist brake vp, the winde being at Northeast & by East, and then we saw part of the Ilands of Vaigats, which we bare withall, and went Eastsoutheast close by the winde: at a West sunne we were at an anker vnder the Southwest part of the said Vaigats, and then I sent our skiffe to shoare with three men in her, to see if they might speake with any of the Samoyds, but could not: all that day was rainie, but not windie. 12

Thursday the winde came Westerly, so that we were faine to seeke vs another place to ride in, because the winde came a seaboord land, and although it were misty, yet we followed the shoare by our lead: and as we brought land in the winde of vs, we let fall our anker. At a West sunne the mist brake vp, so that we might see about vs, and then we might perceiue that we were entred into a sound. 13

This afternoone we tooke in two or three skiffes lading of stones to balast our shippe withall. It hath heere foure foot water, and floweth by fits, vncertaine to be iudged.

Friday we road still in the sound, the winde at Southwest, with very much raine, and at the end of the raine it wared againe misty. 14 The vncertaintie of ebbing & flowing.

15 Saturday there was much winde at West, and much raine, and then againe mistie.

16 Sunday was very misty, and much winde.

17 Munday very misty, the winde at Westnorthwest.

18 Tuesday was also misty, except at noone: then the sunne brake out through the mist, so that we had the latitude in 70 degrees 10 minuts: the afternoone was misty againe, the winde being at Westnorthwest.

19 Wednesday at three of the clocke afternoone the mist brake vp, and the winde came at Eastnorth east, and then we weyed, and went South & by East, vntill seuen of the clocke, eight leagues, thinking to haue had sight of the sandy hilles that are to the Eastwards of the riuer Pechora. At a North west sonne we tooke in our maine saile, because the winde increased, and went with fore saile West-northwest, the winde being at Eastnortheast: at night there grew so terrible a stourme, that we saw not the like, although we had indured many stormes since we came out of England. It was woonderfull that our barke was able to brooke such monstrous and terrible seas, without the great helpe of God, who neuer faileth them at need, that put their sure trust in him.

20 Thursday at a Southsouthwest sunne, thanks be to God, the storme was at the highest, & then the winde began to slake, and came Northerly withall, and then I reckoned the Westermost point of the riuer Pechora to be South of vs 15 leagues. At a Westsouthwest sunne we set our maine saile, and lay close by the winde, the winde being at Northwest and by North, making but little way, because the billow went so high: at midnight we cast about, and the shippe caped North northeast, making little way.

They were within 15 leagues of Pechora.

21 Friday at noone we had the latitude in 70 degrees 8 minuts, and we sounded, and had 29 fathoms sand, and in maner stremp ground. At a West sunne we cast about to the Westwards, and a little after the winde came vp at West.

23 Saturday was calme: the latitude this day at noone was 70 degrees and a tierce, we sounded heere, and had nine and fortie fathoms and oze, which oze signified that we drew towards Noua Zembla.

They returne the 22 of August.

And thus we being out of all hope to discouer any more to the Easterward this yere, we thought it best to returne, and that for three causes.

The first, the continuall Northeast and Northerly windes, which haue more power after a man is past to the Eastwardes of Caninoz, then in any place that I doe know in these Northerly regions.

Second, because of the great & terrible abundance of yce, which we saw with our eyes, and no doubt greater store abideth in those parts: I aduentured already somewhat too farre in it, but I thanke God for my safe deliuerance from it.

Third, because the nights waxed darke, and the winter began to draw on with his stormes: and therefore I resolued to take the first best winde that God should send, & plie towards the bay of S. Nicholas, and to see if we might do any good there, if God would permit it.

This present Saturday we saw very much yce, and were within two or three leagues of it: it shewed vnto vs as though it had beene a firme land as farre as we might see from Northwest of vs to the Eastwards: and this afternoone the Lord sent vs a little gale of winde at South, so that we bare cleere off the Westermost part of it, thanks be to God. And then against night it waxed calme againe, and the winde was at Southwest: we made our way vntill Sunday noone North west and by West, and then we had the latitude in 70 degrees and a halfe, the winde at South west: there was a billow, so that we could not discerne to take the latitude exactly, but by a reasonable gesse.

24

25 Munday there was a very gale of winde at South, so that we went West and by South, the latitude this day at noone was 70 degrees 10 minuts: we had little winde all day: at a Westnorthwest sunne we sounded, and had 29 fathoms, blacke sandy oze, & then we were North east 5 leagues from the Northeast part of the Island Colgoiue.

26 Tuesday, the winde all Westerly, we plied to the winde wards.

27 Wednesday, the winde was also Westerly, and calme: we had the latitude this day in 70 degrees 10 minuts, we being within 3 leagues of the North part of the Island Colgoiue.

28 Thursday, we went roome about the Westermost part of the Island, seeking where we might finde a place to ride in for a Northwest winde, but could finde none, and then we cast about againe the seawards, and the winde came at Westsouthwest, and this morning we had plenty of snow.

29 Friday, the winde being at Southwest and by West, we plyed to the windeward.

Saturday, the winde being at South, we plyed to the Westwards, and at afternoone the mist brake vp, and then we might see the land seuen or eight leagues to the Eastwards of Caninoz

it

we ſounded a little before and had 35. fadomes and oze. And a while after we ſounded againe, and had 19. fadome and ſand: then wee were within 3. leagues and a halfe of the ſhore, and towards night there came downe ſo much wind, that we were faine to lying our ſhip a trie, and laid her head to the Weſtwards.

Sunday, the winde became more calme, and then it waxed very miſtie: At noone wee caſt about to the Eaſtwards, the wind being at South, and ranne eight howers on that boord, and then we caſt about and caped Weſt ſouthweſt: we ſounded and had 32. fathomes, and tough oaze like clay. 30

Munday we doubled about Cannoze, and came at an anker there, to the intent that wee might kill ſome fiſh if God would permit it, and there we gate a great Nuſe, which Nuſes were there ſo plentie, that they would ſcarcely ſuffer any other fiſh to come neere the hookes: the ſaid Nuſes caried away ſundry of our hookes and leads. 31

A little after at a Weſt Sunne, the winde began to blow ſtormie at Weſt ſouthweſt, ſo that we were faine to weie and forſake our fiſhing ground, and went cloſe by the wind Southweſt and Southweſt and by Weſt, making our way South ſouthweſt.

September.

Tewsday at a Weſt Sunne, we ſounded and had 20. fathoms, and broken Wilkefels: I reckoned Cannoze to be 24. leagues Northnortheaſt from vs. 1

The eleuenth day we arriued at Colmogro, and there wee Wintered, expecting the approch of the next Sommer to proceed farther in our intended Diſcouerie for the Ob: which (by reaſon of our imploiments to Wardhouſe the next Spring for the ſearch of ſome Engliſh ſhips) was not accordingly performed. 11

A diſcourſe of the honourable receiuing into England of the firſt Ambaſſador from the Emperor of Ruſſia, in the yeere of Chriſt, 1556. and in the third yeere of the raigne of Queene Mary, ſeruing for the third voiage to Moſcouie. Regiſtred by M. Iohn Incent Protonotarie.

HEre is here recorded by writing and autenticall teſtimonie, partly for memorie of things done, and partly for the veritie to be known to poſteritie in time to come, that whereas the moſt high and mightie Euan Vaſiliuich Emperor of all Ruſſia, great duke of Volidemer, Moſcouia, and Nouogrode, Emperor of Caſſan, and of Aſtrachan, lord of Piskie, and great duke of Smolenskie, Tuerskie, Yowgoriskie, Permiskie, Viatskie, Boligarskie, and Sibieriskie, Emperor and great duke of many others, as Nouogrode in the nether countries, Charnogoskie, Rizanskie, Volodſkie, Rezewskie, Bielskie, Roſtoskie, Yeraſlaueskie, Bialazarskie, Woodarskie, Opdorskie, Condinskie, and many other countries, and lord ouer all thoſe partes, in the yeere of our Lord God, enſuing the account of the Latin church, 1556. ſent by the ſea from the port of S. Nicholas in Ruſſia, his right honorable ambaſſador ſirnamed Oſep Napea, his high officer in the towne and countrey of Vologda, to the moſt famous and excellent princes, Philip and Mary by the grace of God, king and Queene of England, Spaine, France and Ireland, defenders of the faith, Archdukes of Auſtria, dukes of Burgundie, Millaine & Brabant, counties of Haſpurge, Flanders and Tyroll, his ambaſſador and Orator with certaine letters trulerly conceiued, together with certain preſents and gifts mentioned in the foote of this memorial, as a manifeſt argument and token of a mutual amitie and friendſhip to be made and continued betweene their maieſties and ſubiects reſpectiuely, for the commoditie and benefit of both the realmes and people: which Orator was the 20. day of July, imbarked and ſhipped, in, and vpon a good Engliſh ſhip named the Edward Bonauenture, belõging to the Gouernour, Conſuls and company of Engliſh merchants, Richard Chanceler being grand Pilot, and Iohn Buckland maſter of the ſaid ſhip. In which was laden at the aduenture of the foreſaid Ambaſſador, and merchants at ſeuerall accounts, goods and merchandizes, viz. in ware, trane oile, tallow, furres, felts, yarne and ſuch like, to the ſumme of 20000. li. ſterling, together with 16. Ruſſies attendant vpon the perſon of the ſaid Ambaſſador. Ouer and aboue ten other Ruſſies ſhipped within the ſaid Baie of S. Nicholas, in one other good ſhip to the ſaid company alſo belonging called the Bona Speranza, with goods of the ſaid Orators and merchants to the value of 6000. li. ſterling, as by the inuiſes and letters of lading of the ſaid ſeueral ſhips (whereunto relation is to be had) particularly appeareth. Which good ſhips comming in good order into the ſeas, & trauerſing Foure ſhips.

the

the same in their iourney towards the coast of England, were by contrary windes and extreme tempests of weather seuered the one from the other, that is to say, the said Bona Speranza with two other English ships also appertaining to the said company, the one surnamed the Philip and Mary, the other the Confidentia, were driuen on the coast of Norway into Drenton water, where the sayd Confidentia was seene to perish on a Rocke, and the other, videlicet, the Bona Speranza, with her whole company, being to the number of foure and twentie persons setting to Winter there, whereof no certaintie at this present day is knowen. The third, videlicet, the Philip and Mary, arriued in the Thames nigh London the eighteene day of Aprill, in the yeere of our Lord, one thousand fiue hundred fiftie and seuen. The Edward Bonauenture trauersing the Seas foure moneths, finally the tenth day of Nouember of the aforesayd yeere of our Lorde, one thousand fiue hundred fiftie and sixe, arriued within the Scottish coast in a Baie named Pettislego, where by outragious tempests and extreme stormes, the sayd ship being beaten from her ground tackles, was driuen vpon the Rockes on shore, where she brake and split in peeces, in such sorte, as the grand Pilot vsing all carefulnesse for the safetie of the bodie of the sayde Ambassadour and his traine, taking the boate of the sayd ship, trusting to attaine the shore, and so to saue and preserue the body, and seuen of the companie or attendaunts of the sayde Ambassadour, the same boate by rigorous waues of the Seas, was by darke night ouerwhelmed and drowned, wherein perished not onely the bodie of the said grand Pilot, with seuen Russies, but also diuers of the Mariners of the sayd ship: the noble personage of the sayde Ambassadour with a few others (by Gods preseruation and speciall fauour) onely with much difficultie saued. In which Shipwracke not onely the sayde ship was broken, but also the whole masse and bodie of the goods laden in her, was by the rude and rauenous people of the countrey thereunto adioyning, rifled, spoyled, and caried away, to the manifest losse and vtter destruction of all the lading of the sayd ship, and together with the ship, apparell, ordinaunce and furniture belonging to the company, in value of one thousand pounds, of all which was not restored towards the costes and charges to the summe of 500. li. sterling.

The Edward Bonauenture arriued in Scotland, in the Baie of Pettislego, Nouember 7. 1556.

Rich. Chancelor drowned.

As soone as by letters addressed to the sayd companie, and in London deliuered the first of December last past, it was to them certainely knowen of the losse of their Pilote, men, goods and ship, the same merchaunts with all celeritie and expedition, obteined not onely the Queenes maiesties most gracious and fauourable letters to the Ladie Dowager, and lordes of the counsell of Scotland for the gentle comfortment and entertainment of the sayde Ambassadour, his traine and companie, with preseruation and restitution of his goods, as in such miserable cases, to Christian pitie, princely honour and meere Iustice appertaineth, but also addressed two Gentlemen of good learning, grauitie, and estimation, videlicet, Master Lawrence Hussie doctor of the Ciuile lawe, and George Gilpin with mony, and other requisites into the Realme of Scotland, to comforte, ayde, assist, and relieue him and his there, and also to conduct the Ambassadour into England, sending with them by poste a Talmach or Speachman for the better furniture of the seruice of the sayde Ambassadour, trusting thereby to haue the more ample and speedie redresse of restitution: which personages vsing diligence, arriued at Edenborough (where the Queenes court was) the three and twentieth day of the sayde moneth of December, who first visiting the sayd Ambassadour, declaring the causes of their comming and Commission, shewing the letters addressed in his fauour, the order giuen them for his solace and furniture of all such things as hee would haue, together with their daily and readie seruice to attend vpon his person and affaires, repaired consequently vnto the Dowager Queene, deliuering the letters.

Whereupon, they receiued gentle answeres, with hope and comfort of speedie restitution of the goods, apparell, iewels and letters: for the more apparance whereof, the Queene sent first certaine Commissioners with an Harold of Armes to Pettislego, the place of the Shipwracke, commaunding by Proclamation and other Edictes, all such persons (no degree excepted) as had any part of such goods as were spoyled and taken out or from the Ship, to bring them in, and to restore the same with such further order as her grace by aduise of her counsell thought expedient: by reason whereof, not without great labours, paynes and charges (after long time) diuers small parcels of Ware, and other small trifling things of no value, were by the poore sort of the Scottes brought to the Commissioners, but the Iewels, rich apparell, presents, gold, siluer, costly furres, and such like, were conueied away, concealed and vtterly embezelled. Whereupon, the Queene at the request of the sayd Ambassadour, caused diuers persons to the number of 180. or moe, to be called personally before her princely presence, to answer to the said spoile, & really to exhibite and bring in all such things as were spoiled and violently taken, & caried out of the same,

whereof not onely good testimonie by writing was shewed, but also the things themselues found in the hands of the Scottish subiects, who by subtile and craftie dealings, by conniuence of the commissioners, so vsed (or rather abused) themselues towards the same Ambassador and his attendants, that no effectuall restitution was made: but he fatigated with daily attendaunce and charges, the 14. day of February next ensuing, distrusting any reall and effectuall rendring of the sayd goods and merchandizes and other the premisses, vpon leaue obtained of the sayd Queene, departed towards England, hauing attending vpon him the said two English gentlemen and others (leauing neuertheless in Scotland three Englishmen to pursue the deliuerie of such things as were collected to haue bene sent by ship to him into England: which being in Aprill next, and not before imbarked for London, was not at this present day here arriued) came the 18. day of February to Barwike, within the dominion and Realme of England, where he was by the Queenes maiesties letters and commaundement, honourably receiued, vsed and intertained by the right honourable lord Wharton, lord Warden of the East marches, with goodly conducting from place to place, as the daily iourneis done ordinarily did lie, in such order, maner and forme, as to a personage of such estate appertaineth: he prosecuting his voiage vntill the 27. of February, approched the citie of London within twelue English miles, where hee was receiued with foure score merchants with chaines of gold and goodly apparell, as well in order of men seruants in one vniforme liuerie, as also in, and vpon good horses and geldings, who conducting him to a merchaunts house foure miles from London, receiued there a quantitie of golde, veluet and silke, with all furniture thereunto requisite, wherewith he made him a riding garment, reposing himselfe that night. The next day being Saturday and the last day of February, he was by the merchants aduenturing for Russia, to the number of one hundred and foxtie persons, and so many or more seruaunts in one liuerie as aboue said, conducted towards the Citie of London, where by the way hee had not onely the hunting of the Fox and such like sport shewed him, but also by the Queenes maiesties commaundement was receiued and embraced by the right honourable Viscount Montague, sent by her grace for his intertainment: hee being accompanied with diuers lustie knights, esquiers, gentlemen and yeomen to the number of three hundred horses, led him to the North partes of the Citie of London, where by foure notable merchaunts rich apparelled, was presented to him a right faire and large gelding richly trapped, together with a footecloth of Orient crimosin veluet, enriched with gold laces, all furnished in most glorious fashion, of the present, and gift of the sayde merchaunts: whereupon, the Ambassadour at instant desire, mounted, riding on the way towardes Smithfield barres, the first limites of the liberties of the Citie of London. The lord Maior accompanied with all the Aldermen in their skarlet did receiue him, and so riding through the Citie of London in the middle betweene the sayd lord Maior and Viscount Montague, a great number of merchants and notable personages riding before, and a large troupe of seruaunts and apprentises following, was conducted through the Citie of London (with great admiration and plausibilitie of the people running plentifully on all sides, and replenishing all streetes in such sort as no man without difficultie might passe) into his lodging situate in Fant church streete, where were prouided for him two chambers richly hanged and decked, ouer and aboue the gallant furniture of the whole house, together with an ample and rich cupboord of plate of all sortes, to furnish and serue him at all meales, and other seruices during his abode in London, which was, as is vnderwritten, vntill the third day of May: during which time, daily, diuers Aldermen and the graue personages of the sayd companie, did visite him, prouiding all kind of victuals for his table and his seruants, with all sortes of Officers to attend vpon him in good sort and condicion, as to such an Ambassadour of honour doth, and ought to appertaine.

His departure from Scotland towards England.

1557. Feb. 27.

His honourable receiuing into the Citie of London.

It is also to be remembred that at his first entrance into his chamber, there was presented vnto him on the Queenes maiesties behalfe, for a gift and present, and his better furniture in apparell, one rich piece of cloth of tissue, a piece of cloth of golde, another piece of cloth of gold raised with crimosin veluet, a piece of crimosin veluet in graine, a piece of purple veluet, a piece of Damaske purpled, a piece of crimosin damaske, which he most thankfully accepted. In this beautifull lodging refreshing and preparing himselfe and his traine with things requisite, hee abode expecting the kings maiesties repaire out of Flaunders into England, whose highnesse arriuing the one and twentie of March, the same Ambassadour the fiue and twentieth of March, being the Annunciation of our Ladie (the day twelue moneth hee tooke his leaue from the Emperour his master) was most honourably brought to the King and Queenes maiesties court at Westminster, where accompanied first with the sayd Viscount and other notable personages, and the merchants, hee arriuing at Westminster bridge, was there receiued with fiue lordes, conducted into a statly chamber, where by the lords, Chancellor, Treasurer, Priuie seale, Admirall, bishop of Elie and other

coun-

counsellers, hee was visited and saluted: and consequently was brought vnto the Kings and Queenes maiesties presence, sitting vnder a stately cloth of honour, the chamber most richly decked and furnished, and most honourably presenced. Where, after that hee had deliuered his letters, made his Oration, giuen two timber of Sables, and the report of the same made both in English and Spanish, in most louing maner embraced, was with much honour and high entertainment, in sight of a great confluence of people, lordes and ladies eftsoones remitted by water to his former lodging, to the which, within two dayes after by assignement of the Kings and Queenes maiesties, repaired, and conferred with him secretely two graue counsellers, that is, the lord bishop of Elie, and Sir William Peter Knight, chiefe Secretarie to their highnesse, who after diuers secret talkes and conference, reported to their highnesse their proceedings, the grauitie, wisedome, and stately behauiour of the sayd Ambassadour, in such sort as was much to their maiesties contentations.

A league and articles of amitie concluded and confirmed vnder the great seale of England.

Finally, concluding vpon such treaties and articles of amitie, as the letters of the Kings and Queenes maiesties most graciously vnder the great seale of England, to him by the said counsellers deliuered, doth appeare.

The foure and twentieth of Aprill, being the feast of S. George, wherein was celebrated the solemnitie of the Noble order of the Garter at Westminster, the same lord Ambassadour was eftsoones required to haue audience: and therefore conducted from the sayd lodging to the court by the right noble the lordes Talbot and Lumley to their maiesties presence (where after his Oration made, and thankes both giuen and receiued) hee most honourably tooke his leaue with commendations to the Emperour. Which being done, hee was with speciall honour ledde into the Chappell, where before the Kings and Queenes maiesties, in sight of the whole Order of the Garter, was prepared for him a stately seate, wherein, hee accompanied with the Duke of Suffolke, the lordes last aboue mentioned, and many other honourable personages, was present at the whole seruice, in ceremonies which were to him most acceptable: the diuine seruice ended, he eftsoones was remitted and reduced to his barge, and so reparred to his lodging, in like order and gratulation of the people vniuersally, as before.

Foure goodly ships of the merchants prouided for Russia, 1557.

The time of the yeere hasting the profection and departure of the Ambassadour, the merchants hauing prepared foure goodly and well trimmed shippes laden with all kindes of merchandizes apte for Russia, the same Ambassadour making prouision for such things as him pleased, the same shippes in good order valed downe the Riuer of Thames, from London to Grauesend, where the same Ambassadour with his trayne and furniture, was imbarked towards his voyage homeward, which God prosper in all felicitie.

It is also to bee remembred, that during the whole abode of the sayde Ambassadour in England, the Agentes of the sayde merchaunts did not onely prosecute and pursue the matter of restitution in Scotland, and caused such things to bee laden in an English shippe hired purposely to conuey the Ambassadours goods to London, there to bee deliuered to him, but also during his abode in London, did both inuite him to the Maior, and diuers worshipfull mens houses, feasting and banketting him right friendly, shewing vnto him the most notable and commendable sightes of London, as the kings palace and house, the Churches of Westminster and Powles, the Tower and Guild hall of London, and such like memorable spectacles. And also the said nine and twentie day of Aprill, the sayd merchaunts assembling themselues together in the house of the Drapers hall of London, exhibited, and gaue vnto the sayde Ambassadour, a notable supper garnished with Musike, Enterludes and bankets: in the which a cup of Wine being drunke to him in the name and liew of the whole companie, it was signified to him that the whole companie with most liberall and friendly hearts, did frankelie giue to him and his, all maner of costes and charges in victuals riding from Scotland to London, during his abode there, and untill setting of saile aboord the ship, requesting him to accept the same in good part, as a testimonie and witnesse of their good hearts, zeale and tenderneste towards him and his countrey.

It is to be considered that of the Bona Speranza, no worde nor knowledge was had at this present day, nor yet of the arriuall of the ships or goods from Scotland.

The third of May the Ambassadour departed from London to Grauesend, accompanied with diuers Aldermen and merchaunts, who in good gard set him aboord the noble ship, the Primrose Admirall to the Fleete, where leaue was taken on both sides and partes after many embracements and diuers farewels not without expressing of teares.

Memorandum, that the first day of May the counsellers, videlicet, the bishop of Elie, and Sir William Peter on the behalfe of the Kings and Queenes maiesties repayring to the lord

Ambass.

ambaſſadour did not onely deliuer vnto him their highneſſe letters of recommendations vnder the great ſeale of England to the Emperour, very tenderly and friendly written, but alſo on their maieſties behalfe, gaue, and deliuered certaine notable preſents to the Emperours perſon, and alſo giftes for the lord Ambaſſadours proper vſe and behoofe, as by the particulars vnder written appeareth, with ſuch further good wordes and commendations, as the more friendly haue not bene heard: whereby it appeareth howe well affected their honours bee to haue and continue amitie and traffique betweene their honours and their ſubiects: which thing as the kings and Queenes maieſties haue ſhewed of their princely munificences and liberalities, ſo haue likewiſe the merchaunts and felowſhip of the Aduenturers, for and to Ruſſia, manifeſted to the world their good wils, mindes and zeales borne to this new commenſed voyage, as by the diſcourſe aboue mentioned, and other the notable actes ouer long to bee recited in this preſent memoriall, doth and may moſt clearely appeare, the like whereof is not in any preſident or hiſtory to be ſhewed.

Forasmuch as it may bee doubted how the Ship named the Edward Bonauenture, receiued ſhipwracke, what became of the goods, how much they were ſpoiled and deteined, how little reſtored, what charges and expenſes enſued, what perſonages were drowned, how the reſt of the Ships either arriued or periſhed, or how the diſpoſition of almightie God hath wrought his pleaſure in them, how the ſame ambaſſadour hath bene after the miſerable caſe of ſhipwracke in Scotland vnreuerently abuſed, and conſequently into England receiued and conducted, there intertained, vſed, honoured, and finally in good ſafetie towards his returne and repaire furniſhed, and with much liberalitie and franke handling friendly diſmiſſed, to the intent that the trueth of the premiſſes may bee to the moſt mightie Emperour of Ruſſia, ſincerely ſignified in eſchewment of all euents and miſfortunes that may chance in this voyage (which God defend) to the Ambaſſadours perſon, traine and goods, this preſent memoriall is written and autentikely made, and by the ſayde Ambaſſadour his ſeruaunts, whoſe names bee vnderwritten, and traine in preſence of the Notarie, and witneſſes vndernamed, recognized, and acknowledged. Giuen the day, moneth, and peere vnderwritten, of which inſtrument into euery of the ſayde Ships, one teſtimoniall is deliuered, and the firſt remayneth with the ſayd compame in London.

Giftes ſent to the King and Queenes maieſties of England by *the Emperour of Ruſsia, by the report of the Ambaſſadour, and ſpoyled by the Scots after the Shipwracke.*

1 Firſt, fiue timber of Sables rich in colour and haire.
2 Item, twentie entire Sables exceeding beautifull with teeth, eares and clawes.
3 Item, foure lining Sables with chaines and collars.
4 Item, thirtie Luſarnes large and beautifull.
5 Item, fiue large and great ſkinnes very riche and rare, worne onely by the Emperour for worthineſſe.
6 Item, a large and faire white Jerfawcon for the wilde Swanne, Crane, Gooſe, and other great Fowles, together with a drumme of ſiluer, the hoopes guilt, vſed for a lure to call the ſayd Hawke.

Giftes ſent to the Emperour of Ruſsia by the King and Queens *Maieſties of England.*

1 Firſt, two rich pieces of cloth of Tiſſue.
2 Item, one fine piece of Scarlet.
3 Item, one fine Violet in graine.
4 Item, one fine Azur cloth.
5 Item, a notable paire of Bigandines with a Murrian couered with Crimoſin veluet and gilt nailes.
6 Item, a Male and Female Lions.

Gifts

Giftes giuen to the Ambassadour at his departure, ouer and aboue such as were deliuered vnto him at his first arriuall.

1 First, a chaine of gold of one hundred pound.
2 Item, a large bason and ewer, siluer and gilt.
3 Item, a paire of pottle pots gilt.
4 Item, a paire of flaggons gilt.

The names of all such Russies as were attendant vpon the Ambassadour, at and before his departure out of England.

Isaak Fwesscheneke.
Demitre.
Gorbolones.
Symonde.
Yeroffia.
Stephen.
Lowca.
Andria.
Foma.

Memorandum, the day and yeere of our Lord aboue mentioned, in the house of the worshipfull John Dimmocke Citizen and Draper of London, situate within the famous Citie of London in the realme of England, the aboue named honourable Osep Gregorywich Napea, Ambassadour and Orator aboue mentioned, personally constituted and presente, hauing declared vnto him by the mouth of the right worshipfull master Anthonie Hussie Esquier, the effect of the causes and contents, of, and in this booke, at the interpretation of Robert Best his Interpreter sworne, recognized, and knowledged in presence of me the Notarie and personages vnderwritten, the contents of this booke to be true, as well for his owne person as for his seruants aboue name, who did not subscribe their names as is aboue mentioned, but onely recognized the same. In witnesse whereof, I John Incent Notarie Publike, at the request of the sayd master Anthonie Hussie, and other of the merchaunts haue to these presents vnderwritten, set my accustomed signe, with the Subscription of my name, the day and yeere aboue written, being present the right Worshipfull,

Andrew Iudde. } Knights. } Aldermen of London.
George Barne. }
William Chester. }
Rafe Greeneaway. }
Iohn Mershe Esquier.
Iohn Dimmocke.
Blase Sanders.
Hubert Hussie, and
Robert Best aboue mentioned.

The voiage of the foresaid M. Stephen Burrough, An. 1557. from Colmogro to Wardhouse, which was sent to seeke the Bona Esperanza, the Bona Confidentia, & the Philip & Mary, which were not heard of the yeere before.

May.

23 Vpon Sunday the 23. of May, I departed with the Searchshipt from Colmogro, the latitude whereof is 64. degrees, 25. minutes, and the variation of the compasse, 5. degrees, 10. minutes from the North to the East.

26 Wednesday we came to the Island called Pozanka, which Island is within foure leagues of the barre Berozoua, that lieth hert at an East and by South Moone full sea.

29 Saturday in the morning wee departed from Pozanka, and plied to the barre of Berozoua Gooba, whereupon wee came to an anker at a low water, and sounded the sayd Barre with our

two Skiffes, and founde in the best vpon the shoaldest of the barre, 13. foote water by the rule. It higheth vpon this barre, in spring streames 3. foote water: and an East moone maketh a full sea vpon this barre.

Sunday in the morning wee departed from the barre of Berozoua, and plied along by the shoalds in fiue fadome, vntill I had sight of S. Nicholas roade, and then wee cast about to the Northwards, and went with a hommocke, which is halfe a mile to the Eastwards of Coya Reca, which hommocke and S. Nicholas abbey lye Southsouthwest, and Northnortheast, and betweene them are 11. leagues. Coia Reca is halfe a mile to the Eastwards of Coscaynos. Coscaynos and the middes of the Island called Mondeustoua ostroue, which is thwart of the barre of Berozoua lieth South, and by East, North and by West, and betweene them are 4. leagues, or as you may say from the Seabooord part of the barre to Coscaynos, are 3. leagues and a halfe. 30. Coia Reca. Coscanos.

Sunday at a Northeast and by East sunne, we were thwart of Coscaynos.

Dogs nose lieth from Coscaynos Northnorthwest, and betweene them are 8. leagues: and Dogs nose sheweth like a Gurnerds head, if you be inwardly on both sides of it: on the low point of Dogs nose there standeth a crosse alone. 31. Dogs nose.

Iune.

From Dogs nose to fore nose, are 3. leagues, North and by West. 1.

The 2. day of June I went on shoare 2. miles to the Northwards of Dogs nose, and had the latitude of that place in 65. degrees, 47. minutes. It floweth a shoare at this place, at an East Moone full sea, and the shippe lay thwart to weyde a flood, in the off at a Southsoutheast moone. So that it is to be vnderstoode, that when it is a full sea on the shoare, it is two points to ebbe, before it be a lowe water in the off. The variation of the Compasse at this place is 4. degrees from the North to the East. 2. The variation of the Compasse 4. degrees.

This day the Northnorthwest winde put vs backe againe with Dogs nose, where a ship may ride thwart of a Salt house, in 4. fadome, or 4. fadome and a halfe of water, and haue Landfange for a North and by West winde: which Salt house is halfe a mile to the Southwardes of Dogs nose. 3.

Friday at a Southsouthwest Sunne, wee departed from this Salt house. It is to bee noted that foure miles to the Northwardes of Dogs nose, there growe no trees on the banke by the water side: and the bankes consist of fullers earth. Ouer the cliffes there growe some trees: so that Dogs nose is the better to be knowen because it is fullers earth, and the like I haue not seene in all that Countrey. 4.

A head of Fore nose a league from the shoare, there are 15. fadome: betwixt Fore nose and Zolatitsa, there are 6. leagues, I meane the Southerly part of Fore nose. Fore nose.

Sunday I sounded the barre of Zolatitsa, which the Russes tolde me was a good harborow, but in the best of it I found but 4. foote water. 6.

Sunday, I had the latitude in 66. degrees, and then was point Pentecost sixe leagues South of vs. 7. Point Pentecost.

Wednesday I went on lande at Crosse Island, and tooke the latitude, which was 66. degrees 24. minutes. 9. Crosse Island.

We being one league Northeast of Crosse Island, I sawe the lande on the Eastside, which I iudged to be Cape good fortune, and it was then East Southeast of vs 9. leagues. Cape good fortune.

Cape grace is 7. leagues and a halfe Northeast from Crosse Island.

There are 2. Islands 5. leagues Northnortheast from Cape grace, the Southermost of them is a litle long Island almost a mile long, and the Northermost a little round Islande, and they are both hard abooord the shoare. Cape grace.

Cape Race is from the Southermost Island North and by West, and betweene them are two leagues, and from that a halfe a league Northnorthwest, there is another point. Betweene which point and Cape Race, the Russes haue a Stanauish or harborow for their Lodias: and to the Westwards of the said point, there is a shoale bay. Cape Race.

Three leagues and a halfe to Northwards of Cape Race, wee had the latitude on the 10. day of this moneth in 67. degrees 10. minutes. Riding within halfe a league of the shoare in this latitude I found it to be a full sea at a North and by East moone. I had where we roade, two and twentie fadome, and the tallow which is taken vp is ful of great broken shels, and some stones withal like vnto small sand coniealed together. 10.

From a South sunne that wee weyed, the winde being at North and by East, wee driued

to the windwards halfe the ebbe, with the shippes head to the Eastwards. And then when we cast her head to the Westwards, we sounded, and had 22. fadome broken shels, and gray sand; this present day was very misty, with frost on the shrowds as the miste fell.

Frost in June.

11. Friday in the morning at an East sunne, the miste brake vp a litle, the winde being at North and by West a stiffe gale, our shrowdes and roapes ouer head being couered with frost, and likely to be a storme: I thought it good to seeke an harborow, and so plied roome with the Islands which are two leagues to the Southwards of Cape Race, and within these Islandes (thankes be to God) we found harborow for vs. It higheth at these Islands two fadome water: it floweth in the harborow at this place at a Southsoutheast moone ful sea: and a sea boord it floweth at a South southwest moone a full sea. The Russes call this Island, Tri Ostroue.

Tri Ostroue.

You may come in betweene the little Island and the great Island, and keepe you in the midst of the Sounde, and if you borrowe on any side, let it bee on the greatest Islande, and you shall haue at a lowe water, foure fadome, and three fadome and a halfe, and three fadome, until that you be shot so farre in as the narrowest, which is betweene the Northermost point of the greatest Island, and the Southerne point of the maine which is right against it, and then hale to the Northwards with the crosse which standeth in the maine, and you shall haue at a lowe water 10. fadome water, and faire sande. And if you be disposed to goe through the Sounde to the Southwards, keepe the Northwest shoare aboorde, for on the Island side after you be shotte so farre in as the crosse, it is a shoale of rockes halfe the sound ouer: which rockes doe lasst vnto the Southerly part of the great Island, and rather to the Southwards. And if you be constrained to seeke a harborow for Northerly windes, when you come out of the sea hale in with the Southerly part of the great Island, giuing the Island a faire birth, and as you shoote towardes the maine, you shall finde rode for all Northerly windes, in foure fadome, fiue, sixe and seuen fadome, at a lowe water.

Also within this great Island, (if neede bee) you may haue a good place to ground a shippe in: the great Island is almost a mile long and a quarter of a mile ouer.

16. This storme of Northerly winde lasted vntill the 16. of this moneth, and then the winde came Southerly, but we could not get out for Ice. I went on shoare at the crosse, and tooke the latitude, which is 66. degrees, 58. minutes, 30. seconds: the variation of the Compasse 3. degrees and a halfe from the North to the East.

Ice.

The variation.

17. Thursday being faire weather, and the winde at North, wee plied to the winde-wards with sailes and oares: wee stopped the flood this day three leagues to the Northwards of Cape Race, two miles from the shoare, and had twentie fadome water, faire gray and blacke sande, and broken shels. And when the slake came wee wayed and made aboorde to the shoare-wards, and past within two cables length of the shoare, eighteene fadomes faire gray and blacke sande: a man may finde roade there for a Northwinde, and so to the Westwards.

18. Two leagues to the Southwarde of Corpus Christi point, you may haue Land range into North and by Eastwinde, and from that to the Westwardes in 23. fadome almost a mile from shoare, and faire sande, and amongst the sande little yong small limpets, or such like as growe vpon muscles: and within two cables length and lesse of the shoare, are eighteene fadomes, and the sounding aforesaid, but the yong limpets more plentifull. It was a full sea where we rode, almost a mile from shoare, at a South and by West moone: two leagues to the Southwardes of Corpus Christi point is the vttermost lande, which lande and Cape Race lyeth South and halfe a point to the Westwards, and North and halfe a point to the Eastwards, and betweene them are sixe leagues. Riding this day sixe leagues to the Northwards of Cape Race, the winde at North northwest, with miste and frost, at noone the sunne appeared through the miste, so that I had the latitude in 67. degrees, 29. minutes.

19.

21. Sunday we were thwart of Corpus Christi point, two leagues and a halfe from shoare, another more, where we sounded, and had 36. fadoms, and broken cockle shels, with brannie sande, but the broken shels very thicke.

Corpus Christi point.

22. Tuesday in the morning wee were shotte a head of Cape gallant, which the Russes call Soonoze. And as we were shotte almost halfe a league betwixt it, and Cape comfort, the winde came vp at the Northwest, and after to the Northwardes, so that wee were faine to beare roome to seeke a harbour, where we founde good harbour for all windes, and the least 7. fadome water betweene S. Iohns Islands, and the maine.

Cape Gallant.

After that we came to an ancre, wee tooke the latitude, which was 68. degrees 1. minute, after noone, the winde at North with plentie of snowe.

At a West sunne there came aboorde vs certaine Lappians in a boate, to the number of fourteene persons, and amongst them there were two wenches, and some of the men could speake the

Russe

Ruſſe tongue: I aſked them where their abiding was, and they tolde mee that there was a companie or heard of them, to the nomber of 100. men, beſides women and children, but a litle from vs in the riuer Iekonga.

They tolde me that they had bene to ſeeke meate among the rockes, ſaying, If wee gette no meate, wee eate none. I ſawe them eate rocke weedes as hungerly, as a cowe doeth graſſe when ſhe is hungrie. I ſawe them alſo eate foules egges rawe, and the yong birdes alſo that were in the egges.

I obſerued certaine wordes of their language, which *I thought good to ſet downe for their vſe, that here-* after ſhall haue occaſion to continue this voyage.

Cowghtie coteat, what call you this.
Poddythecke, come hither.
Aunchythocke, get thee heuce.
Anna, farewell.
Teyrue, good morrowe.
Iomme lemauſes, I thanke you.
Paſſeuellie, a friend.
Olmuelke, a man.
Captella, a woman.
Alke, a ſonne.
Neit, a daughter, or yong wench.
Oyuie, a head.
Cyelme, an eye.
Nenna, a noſe.
Nealma, a mouth.
Pannea, teeth.
Neughtema, a tongue.
Seaman, a beard.
Peallee, an eare.
Teappat, the necke.
Voapt, the haire.
Kear, a hand.
Soarme, fingers.
Iowlkie, a legge.
Peelkie, the thombe, or great toe.
Sarke, wollen cloth.
Lein, linnen cloth.
Payte, a ſhirt.
Toll, fire.
Keatſe, water.
Murr, wood.
Vannace, a boate.
Ariea, an oare.
Nurr, a rope.
Peyue, a day.
Hyr, a night.
Peyuezea, the Sunne.
Manna, the Moone.
Laſte, ſtarres.
Cozam volka, whither goe you.
Otapp, ſleepe.
Tallye, that.
Keeddle pieue, a weeke.
Iſckie, a peere.
Keſſe, Sommer.
Talue, Winter.
Iowkſam, colde.
Parox, warme.
Abrye, raine.
Youghang, pre.
Keatikye, a ſtone.
Sellowpe, ſluer.
Solda, golde.
Tennae, tinne.
Veſkue, copper.
Rowadt, yron.
Neybxs, a knife.
Axſhe, a hatchet.
Leabee, bread.
Ieauegoet, meale.
Peencka, the winde.
Iowte, a platter.
Kemnie, a kettle.
Keeſtes, gloues.
Sapege, ſhoes.
Conde, a wilde Deare.
Poatſa, the labouring Deare.

Their wordes of nomber *are theſe as followeth.*

Offte,	1.
Noumpte,	2.
Colme,	3.
Nellye,	4.
Vitte,	5.
Cowte,	6.
Kegdeem,	7.
Kaffts,	8.
Owghchte,	9.
Locke,	10.
Oſtretumbelocke,	11.
Cowghtnumbelocke,	12.
Colmenonbelocke,	13.
Nellynombelocke,	14.

Vittie nombelocke,	15.	Nelly locke,	40.
Cowmombelocke,	16.	Vitte locke,	50.
Keydemnombelocke,	17.	Cowtelocke,	60.
Kafis nombelocke,	18.	Keydemlocke,	70.
Owght nombelocke,	19.	Kaffitelocke,	80.
Cofiteylocke	20.	Oughchetelok,	90.
Colmelocke,	30.	Tewet,	100.

25 Friday in the morning we departed from S. Iohns Iland: to the Westwards therof, a mile from the shoare, we sounded, and had 36. fadoms, and oazie sand.

Iuana Creos. Iuana Creos, is from Cape gallant Westnorthwest, and halfe a point to the Northwards, and betweene them is 7. leagues. The point of the Iland, which is Cape comfort, lyeth from Iuana Creos, Northwest and by North, and almost the 3. part of a point to the Westwards, and betweene them are 3. leagues.

S. Georges Iland. The Eastermost of S. Georges Ilands, or 7. Ilands, lyeth from Iuana Creos Northwest, and halfe a point to the Northwards, and betweene them are 14. leagues and a halfe. The easte-

Cape Comfort most of the 7. Ilands, or Cape cõfort lyeth Northwest, and by North, Southeast, and by South.

Under the Southermost Iland you shall finde good roade for all Northerly windes from the Northwest to the Northeast. From the Southeast part of the 7. Ilands, vnto the Northwest part of them, are 3. leagues and a halfe.

S. Peters Ilands. From the Northwest part of the Ilands aforesaide, vnto S. Peters Ilands, are 11. leagues Northwest.

26 S. Peters Ilands rise an indifferent low point, not seeming to be an Iland, and as if it had a castle vpon it.

S. Pauls Iland. S. Pauls Ilands lye from S. Peters Ilands Northwest, and to the Westwardes, and betweene them are 6. leagues. Within these Ilands there is a faire sandie bay, and there may be founde good roade for Northerly windes.

Cape Sower beere. Cape Sower beere lyeth from S. Pauls Ilands Northwest, and by West, and betweene them are 5. leagues.

Kildina. Cape comfort, which is the Iland of Kildina, lyeth from Cape Sower beere, 6. leagues West Northwest, and it is altogether a bay betwene them seeming many Ilands in it.

Cape Bonauenture. From Cape Bonauenture, to Chebe Nauoloche are 10. leagues Northwest, and a litle to the Westwards. Chebe Nauologe is a faire point, whereon standeth a certaine blacke, like an empty butt standing a head.

Kegor. From Chebe Naualoch to Kegor, is 9. leagues and a halfe Northwest, and halfe a point to the Westwards. Kegor riseth as you come from the Eastwards like 2. round homets standing together, and a faire saddle betweene them.

27 It floweth where we road this Sunday to the Eastwards of Kegor, at a Southeast and by East moone, a full sea: we roade in 15. fadome water within halfe a mile of the shoare: at a Northwest Sunne the misle came downe so thicke, that we were faine to come to an ancre within lesse then a mile of the point that turneth to Doms haff, where wee had 33. fadome, and the sounding like to the skurfe of a skalde head.

Domshaff.

Wardhouse. 28 Munday at afternoone, we came into ỹ Sound of Wardhouse, although it were very misle. Then I sent a man a shoare to know some newes, and to see whether they coulde heare any thing of our ‖ shippes.

‖ Which were the Bona Esperanza, the Bona confidentia and the Philip and Marie. Whereof the two first were lost.

29 Tuesday I went on shoare, and dined with the Captaines deputie, who made me great cheere: the Captaine himselfe was not as yet come frõ Bergen: they looked for him euery houre, and they said that he would bring newes with him.

At a Northwest, and by North sunne, we departed from Wardhouse, toward Colmogro.

30 Wednesday we came to Kegor, where we met with the wind at East Southeast, so that we were faine to goe in to a bay to the Westwards of the point Kegor, where a man may moare 20. 3. small ships, that shall not drawe past 11. or 12. foote water, for all windes, an East Southeast winde is the worst. It is a ledge of rocks, that defendeth the Northerly winds frõ the place where they moare. When we came into the bay we saw there a barke which was of ‖ Dronton, and three or foure Norway peaghes, belonging to Northbarne: so when I came a shoare, I met first with the Dutchmen, amongst whome was the Borrow-masters sonne of Dronton, who tolde me that the Philip and Mary wintered at Dronton, and departed from thence for England in March: and withall he shewed me that the Confidence was lost, and that hee had bought her sailes for his shippe. Then the Dutch-men caried mee to their Boothe, and made mee good cheere, where I

‖ Or, Trondon.

The Philip and Marie. The bona Confidentia cast away.

sawe the Lappians cheapen of the saide Dutchmen, both siluer platters and dishes, spoones, gilt rings, ornament for girdles of siluer and gilt, and certaine things made to hange about the necke, with siluer chaines belonging to them.

The Dutchmen bring hither mightie strong beere, I am certaine that our English double beere would not be liked of the Kerils and Lappians, as long as that would last.

Here I saw the Dutchmen also haue course cloth, both blewe, greene and redde, and sad horse-flesh colour. And hither they bring also Otars cases and fore cases, both blacke and redde: our English fore cases are but counterfaits vnto them.

They would not let me vnderstand any of their prises, but as I otherwise vnderstood, they barred 2. load of siluer for 100. of stockfish, and 2. loade is a doller. And the Dutch men told me, that they had made a notable good yeere this present yeere 1557. They tolde mee that they should be faine to goe to Wardhouse with one lading, and lay it on land there, and so come againe and fetch another. The Borrowmasters sonne told me, that he would go to Amsterdam with his lading of stockfish, who gaue me a barrel of strong beere, and brought in aboorde our shippe himselfe.

After this I went among the Russes and Kerils, who offred me fish to sel, and likewise the Lappians desired me to looke vpon their fish. I made them answere, that I had now no wares nor money to barter with them, and said that I came only to see if I might meete with our English ships. Then they desired me that I would come thither the next yeere: I said vnto them, if I should come the next yeere, I thinke here would not be fish ynough to serue the Dutchmen and vs also. They answered me, that if more ships did resort thither, there would more people labour to kil and make fish: and further they said, that some of them came thither a fishing 8. weekes iourney with Deere, which Deere will trauaile more speedily then horses will.

As I was thus in talke with the Kerils & Lappians, the Emperour of Russia his deputie (who was there together the tribute of the Lappians) sent for me to come to his tent, who after familiar salutations made me good cheere. He demaunded of me, why none of our shippes came thither. I answered him, because we knew not the place before now, neither yet heard of any faire that was kept there. Then said he, if you wil come hither, here would more people resort to kill fish. I thinke it good (said he) that you make a beginning. I tolde him, that by the grace of God the next yeere, one English shippe should come thither.

Because I saw the seruants of the king of Denmarke there also gathering the tribute, I asked Vasille pheothrouiche the Russe deputie, whether the Denmarks would not be a let to vs, if we should come to this Kegor. And he saide, no, they should not: for this lande is my kings, and therefore be bolde to come hither.

The Kerils and the Lappians solde no fish, vntil the said deputie had looked vpon it, and had giuen them leaue to sell. I asked him what wares were best for vs to bring thither, and he saide, siluer, pearles, cloth, blewe, red and greene. Meale, strong beere, wine, pewter, fore cases, and golde.

The Lappians pay tribute to the Emperour of Russia, to the king of Denmarke, and to the king of Sweden. He tolde me that the Riuer Cola is litle more then 20. leagues to the Southwards of Kegor, where we should haue great plentie of salmon, if coyne were any thing cheape in Russia: for then poore men would resort thither to kill salmon.

The Dutchmen tolde me that they had made a good yeere of this, but the Kerils complained of it, because they could not sell all their fish, and that they solde, was as pleased the Dutchmen, and at their owne price. I asked the Kerils at what price they sold their fish to the Russes, and they said good cheape: we sell 24. fishes for 4. altines, I thinke they solde litle aboue 20. pence, the 25. fishes this yeere.

The Dutchmen tolde me that the best stockefish is made at Kegor. I sawe at Vasillees tent 7. or 8. launces, and halfe a dozen of bowes bent, with their budgets of arrowes, and likewise swords with other weapons: Otherwise I sawe no weapons there.

I was also conueyed to their lodgings, which gathered tribute for the king of Denmarke, where I sawe a paire of bilbowes: and I asked whether they were for the Lappians (if neede were,) and they said no, but onely for their owne companie if they should chaunce to be vnruly.

The Kerils and the Lappians are not to be trusted, for they will steale as well as the Russes, if they may conueniently come by any thing.

Concerning my voyage, because the winde was scant to goe backe againe to Colmogro, I tarried to the Eastwards of the point Kegor, and sent to land, and baked two batches of bread, in the ouens that the Kerils haue for their owne prouision.

Instructions giuen to the Masters and Mariners to be obserued *in and about this Fleete, passing this yeere 1557. toward the Bay* of S. Nicolas in Russia, for this present Raze to be made and returne of the same by Gods grace to the port of London, the place of their right discharge, as in the Articles ensuing is deduced.

FIrst, it is accorded and agreed betweene the seuerall proprietaries and owners, masters and companies of the foure ships, surnamed the Primrose, the Iohn Euangelist, the Anne and the Trinitie, and the Lieutenant, Consuls, assistants and companie of the Marchants aduenturers, that the aboue named foure shippes, shall in good order and conduct, saile, passe, and trauaile together in one fleet, ginge, and conserue of societie, to be kept and indissolubly to be seuered, but vnited within continuall sight, so farrefoorth as (by winde and weather) by possibilitie shall or may be without any separation or departure of one from the other.

2 Item, it is agreed that the good ship named the Primerost, shalbe Admirall of this fleet, and that Anthonie Ienkinson Gentleman, shalbe captaine thereof: and that all other the 3. ships shall ensue and folow her in all courses, and that no course nor waying (in harborough especially) shall be made without the aduice, consent and agreement of the saide Captaine, the Master, his mate, and two other officers of the said shippe, or of three of them at the least.

3 Item, that the said Anthonie is and shalbe reputed & taken for Captaine generall of the said flote together with all such orders, preeminences, priuiledges and preferments as by the order of seas is due and accustomed to a Captaine during his aboade and exercise of the same.

4 It is also ordeined, that if any one or moe of the said 3. shippes shalbe out of sight, either before or behinde the Admirall, that then the rest of the shippes shall tacke or take of their sailes in such sort as they may meete and come together, in as good order as may be, to the intent to keepe the consortment exactly in all points.

5 It is also constituted, that if the ships shalbe seuered by mist or darke weather, in such sort as the one cannot haue sight of the other, then and in such case the Admiral shal make sound and noise by drumme, trumpet, horne, gunne or otherwise or meanes, that the ships may come as nigh together, as by saferie and good order they may.

6 It is also to be obserued, that euery day once the other three shippes shall sende and come aboord the Admirall, and there consult and determine of such matter and things as shall be for the assurance of their Nauigation, and most expedition of the same.

7 Item, that notes & entries be dayly made of their Nauigations put in writing & memorie, and that the yong Mariners and apprentices may be taught & caused to learne and obserue the same.

8 It is accorded that the said Captaine shall haue the principal rule and gouernement of the apprentices: And that not onely they, but also all other the sailers, shalbe attendant and obedient to him, as of duetie and reason appertaineth.

9 Also that no beere nor broth, or other liquor be spilt vpon the balast, or other place of the shippe, whereby any anoyance, stinke, or other vnsauorines shall grow in the shippe to the infection or hurt of the persons in the same.

10 Item, that the Captaine by discretion shall from time to time displace any artificer or English seruingman or apprentice out of the Primerose into any of the other three shippes, and in lieu of him or them, take any such apprentice as he shall thinke conuenient, and most meete to serue the benefite of the companie.

11 Item, that great respect be had to the gunners and cookes roomes, that all danger and perill of powder and fire may be eschewed and auoyded.

12 Item, that singuler care & respect be had to the ports of the ship, as well in Nauigation as in harborow, & especially in lading and vnlading of the ships, that nothing be lacking or surcharged: and that the bookes may oftentimes be conferred & made to agree in eschuement of such falts, as may ensue.

13 Special foresight is to be had, that at the Wardhouse no treacherie, inuasion, or other peril of molestation be done or procured to be attempted to our ships by any kings, princes or companies that do mislike this newe found trade by seas to Russia, or would let and hinder the same, wherein no small boast hath bene made: which giueth occasion of more circumspection and diligence.

14 If the winde & weather wil serue, it is thought good rather to go by the Wardhouse, then to come

come in and ancre there, leſt any male engine, or danger may be the rather attempted againſt vs, our goods and ſhippes as aboue.

15. It is thought good that Richard Iohnſon, late ſeruant to M. Chanceler, ſhal be ſent home in this next returne, to inſtruct the companie of the ſtate of the Countrey, and of ſuch queſtions as may be demanded of him, for our better aduertiſements and reſolutions, in ſuch doubts as ſhall ariſe here: and that he ſhall haue the roome of the Captaine in ſuch ſort, as Maſter Ienkinſon is in this preſent cocket aſſigned vnto. And if Iohnſon can not, may not, nor will not returne and occupie the ſaid place, then any other perſon to be preferred thereunto, as by the diſcretion of our ſaid Captaine, with conſent of our Agents, ſhall be thought meete and apt to ſupply the ſame.

16. Prouided alway, that the ſhippes returning, be not diſfurniſhed of one ſuch able man, as ſhall occupie the Captaineſhip in like order, as is, and hath bene in ſuch caſe appointed, as reaſon and good order requireth.

17. Item that all other former orders, rules, and deuiſes, made and prouided for the good order of our ſhippes, wares, and goods, being not repugnant, contrarie or diuerſe, to theſe articles, and the contents of the ſame, ſhall be, and ſtand in ful force and effect, to be in all reſpects obſerued and kept of all and euery perſon, and perſons, whome the ſame doth or ſhall touch or concerne.

In witneſſe of the premiſſes faithfully to be obſerued, and kept, the owners and Maſters of the ſaid foure ſhippes, together with the ſaid Captaine, to theſe ſeuenteene articles, contained in two ſheetes of paper, haue ſubſcribed their hands. Giuen in London, the third of May, in the yeere of our Lord God, 1557.

¶ Owners of the Primeroſe.
Andrewe Iudde.
William Cheſter.
Anthony Hickman.
Edward Caſteline.
¶ Owners of the Iohn Euangeliſt.
Andrew Iudde.
William Cheſter.
¶ Owner of the Anne.
Iohn Dimocke.
¶ Owner of the Trinitie.
R. T.

The firſt voyage made by Maſter Anthony Ienkinſon, from *the Citie of London, toward the land of Ruſſia, begonne the twelfth* day of Maye, in the yeere, 1557.

FIrſt by the grace of God, the day and yeere aboue mentioned, I departed from the ſaid Citie, and the ſame day at Grauеſend embarked my ſelfe in a good ſhippe, named the Primeroſe, being appointed, although vnworthy, chiefe captaine of the ſame, and alſo of the other three good ſhippes, to ſay, the Iohn Euangeliſt, the Anne, and the Trinitie, hauing alſo the conduct of the Emperour of Ruſſia, his ambaſſadour, named Oſep Nepea Gregorewich, who paſſed with his companie in the ſaid Primeroſe. And thus our foure tall ſhippes being well appointed, aſwell for men and victuals, as other neceſſarie furniture, the ſaide twelfth day of the moneth of Maye, we weyed our ankers, and departed from the ſaide Grauеſende, in the after noone, and plying downe the Thames, the wind being Eaſterly, and faire weather, the 13. day we came a ground with the Primeroſe, vpon a ſand called the Blacke taile, where we ſate faſt vntill the 14. day in the morning, and then God be praiſed, ſhe came off: and that day we plied downe as farre as our Ladie Holland, and there came to an anker, the wind being Eaſterly, and there remained vntill the 20. day: then we weyed and went out at Goldmore gate, and from thence in at Balſey ſlade, and ſo into Orwel wands, where we came to an anker: but as we came out at the ſaide Goldmore gate, the Trinitie came on ground on certaine rockes, that lye to the Northward of the ſaide gate, and was like to be bilged and loſt. But by the aide of God, at the laſt ſhe came off againe, being very leake: and the 21. day the Primeroſe remaining at an anker in the wands, the other three ſhippes bare into Orwel hauen, where I cauſed the ſaide Trinitie to be grounded, ſearched, and repaired. So we remained in the ſaid hauen, vntill the 28. day: and then the winde being weſterly, the three ſhippes that were in the hauen, weied and came foorth, and in comming foorth,

the

the Iohn Euangelist came on ground vpon a sand, called the Andros, where she remained one tide, and the next full sea she came off againe, without any great hurt, God be praised.

The 29. day in the morning, all foure ships weied in the Wands, and that tide went as farre as Orfordnesse, where we came to an anker, because the wind was northerly: And about six of the clocke at night, the wind vered to the Southwest, and we weyed anker, and bare cleare of the nesse, and then set our course north east, and by north, vntill midnight, being then cleare of Yarmouth sands. Then we winded North and by West, and North northwest, vntill the first of June at noone, then it waxed calme, and continued so, vntill the second day at noone: then the winde came at Northwest, with a tempest, and much raine, and we lay close by, and caped North Northeast, and Northeast, and by North, as the winde shifted, and so continued vntill the third day at noone: then the winde vered Westerly againe, and we went North our right course, and so continued our way vntill the fourth day, at three of the clocke in the afternoone, at which time the winde vered to the Northwest againe, and ble we a fresh gale, and so continued vntill the seuenth day in the morning, we lying with all our shippes close by, and caping to the Northwards: and then the winde vering more Northerly, we were forced to put roomer with the coast of England againe, and fell cuerthwart Newe castel, but went not into the hauen, & so plied vpon the coast the eight day & the ninth.

June.

The tenth day, the winde came to the North Northwest, and we forced to beare roomer with Flamborow head, where we came to an anker, and there remained vntill the seuenteenth day. Then the winde came faire, and we weyed, and set our course North and by East, and so continued the same with a meary winde, vntill the 21. at noone, at which time we tooke the Sunne, and had the latitude in 60. degrees. Then we shifted our course, and went North Northeast, and North east, and by north, vntil the 25. day. Then we discouered certaine Islands, called Heilick Islands, lying from vs northeast, being in the latitude of 66. degrees, 40. minuts. Then we went north and by West, because we would not come too nigh the land, and running that course 4. houres, we discouered, and had sight of Rost Islands, ioyning to the maine land of Finmarke. Here the Sunne continueth in sight aboue the horizon, almost 2. moneths together, day and night. Thus continuing our course along the coast of Norway, and Finland, the 27. day we tooke the Sunne, being as farre shot as Lofoote, and had the latitude in 69. degrees. And the same day in the afternoone, appeared ouer our heads a raine bowe, like a semicircle, with both ends vpward. Note that there is betwen the said Rost Islands, and Lofoote, a whirle poole, called Malestrand, which from halfe ebbe, vntil halfe flood, maketh such a terrible noise, that it shaketh the rings in the doores of the inhabitants houses of the said Islands, ten miles of. Also if there commeth any Whale within the current of the same, they make a pitiful cry. Moreouer, if great trees be caried into it by force of streames, & after with the ebbe be cast out againe, the ends & boughes of them haue bene so beaten, that they are like the stalkes of hempe that is bruised. Note, that all the coast of Finmarke is high mountaines, and hils, being couered all the yeere with snowe. And hard aboord the shoare of this coast, there is 100. or 150. fadoms of water in depth. Thus proceeding and sayling forward, we fell with an Island, called Zenam, being in ỳ latitude of 70. degrees. About this Island, we saw many Whales, very monstrous, about our ships, some by estimation of 60. foote long: and being the ingendring time, they roared and cried terribly. From thence we fel with an Island, called Kettelwicke. This coast from Rost vnto Lofoote, lieth north & south, and from Lofoote to Zenam, northeast & southwest, and from Zenam to Kettelwike, east northeast, & west southwest. From the said Kettelwike we sailed east & by north 10. leagues, & fell with a land, called Inger sound, where we fished, being becalmed, & tooke great plenty of Cods. Thus plying along the coast, we fel with a Cape, called the North Cape, which is the northermost land that we passe in our voyage to S. Nicholas, and is in the latitude of 71. degrees, & 10. minuts, and is from Ingersound East, and to the northwards 15. leagues. And being at this North Cape the 2. day of July, we had the sunne at north 4. degrees aboue the Horizon. The 3. day we came to Wardhouse, hauing such mists that we could not see the land. This Wardhouse is a Castle standing in an Island 2. miles from the maine of Finland, subiect to the king of Denmarke, & the Easternmost land that he hath. There are 2. other Islands neere adioyning vnto that, whereon the Castle of Wardhouse standeth. The inhabitants of those 3. Islands, liue onely by fishing, & make much stockefish, which they dry with frost: their most feeding is fish: bread and drinke they haue none, but such as is brought them from other places. They haue small store of cattell, which are also fed with fishe. From Wardhouse we sailed south southeast ten leagues, & fell with a Cape of land called Kegor, ỳ northermost part of the land of Lappia. And between Wardhouse, & the said Cape, is a great Bay, called Dommes haff, in the south part whereof is a Monasterie of Monkes, of the Russes religion, called Pechinchow. Thus proceeding forwarde, and sailing along the coast of the saide lande of Lappia, winding Southeast, the fourth

Heilick Islands in 66. deg. 40. min.

Rost Islands.

A strange whirle poole.

Kettelwick island.

Inger sound.

Wardhouse.

Cattell fed with fish.

The Monasterie of Pechinchow.

day

day,though great miſts and darkenes,we loſt the companie of the other three ſhips, and met not with them againe, vntill the 7. day, when we fell with a Cape or headland, called Suetinoſe, which is the entring into the Bay of S. Nicholas. At this Cape lieth a great ſtone,to the which the barkes that paſſed thereby,were wont to make offrings of butter,meale, and other victuals,thinking that vnleſſe they did ſo,their barkes or veſſels ſhoulde there periſh, as it hath beene oftentimes ſeene: and there it is very darke & miſtie. Note,that the 6.day we paſſed by the place where Sir Hugh Willoughbie,with all his companie periſhed, which is called Arzina reca,that is to ſay,the riuer Arzina. The land of Lappia is an high land,hauing ſnow lying on it commonly all the yeere. The people of the Countrey are halfe Gentiles: they liue in the ſummer time neere the ſea ſide,and vſe to take fiſhe,of the which they make bread, and in the winter they remoue vp into the Countrey into the woods,where they vſe hunting, and kill Deere, Beares, Woolues, Foxes,and other beaſtes,with whoſe fleſh they be nouriſhed,and with their ſkinnes apparelled in ſuch ſtrange faſhion,that there is nothing ſeene of them bare,but their eies. They haue none other habitation,but onely in tents,remouing from place to place, according to the ſeaſon of the yeere. They know no arte nor facultie,but onely ſhooting, which they exerciſe daily, as well men,as women,and kill ſuch beaſts as ſerue them for their foode. Thus proceeding along the coaſt from Suetinoze aforeſaid,the 9. day of July, we came to Cape Grace, being in the latitude of 66. degrees,and 45. minuts,and is at the entring in of the Bay of S. Nicholas. Aboord this land,there is 20. or 30. fadoms water,and ſundry grounds good to anker in. The current at this Cape runneth Southweſt,and Northeaſt. From this Cape we proceeded along, vntill we came to Croſſe Iſland,which is ſeuen leagues from the ſaid Cape Southweſt: and from this Iſland, we ſet ouer to the other ſide of the Baye, and went ſouth ſouthweſt, and fell with an headland,called Forenoſe,which is from the ſaid Iſland 25. leagues. The entring of this Baye from Croſſe Iſland to the neereſt land on the other ſide is ſeuen leagues ouer. From Forenoſe proceeding forward the twelfth day of the ſaid moneth of Julie, all our foure ſhips arriued in ſafetie at the roade of Saint Nicholas, in the land of Ruſſia, where we anchored, and had ſayled from London vnto the ſayde roade ſeuen hundred and fiftie leagues. The Ruſſian Ambaſſadour and his companie with great ioy gotte to ſhore, and our ſhippes here forthwith diſcharged themſelues: and being laden againe,and hauing a faire winde,departed towarde England the firſt of Auguſt. The third of the ſayde moneth I with other of my companie came vnto the citie of Colmogro, being an hundred verſtes from the Bay of Saint Nicholas, and in the latitude of 64. degrees, 25. minutes. I tarried at the ſayd Colmogro vntill the fifteenth day: and then I departed in a little boate vp the great riuer of Dwina, which runneth very ſwiftly, and the ſelfe ſame day paſſed by the mouth of a riuer called Pinego, leauing it on our left hand fifteene verſtes from Colmogro. On both ſides of the mouth of this riuer Pinego is high land,great rockes of Alabaſtre,great woods,and Pyne-apletrees lying along within the ground, which by report haue lyen there ſince Noes flood. And thus proceeding forward the nineteenth day in the morning, I came into a towne called Yemps, an hundred verſtes from Colmogro. All this way along they make much tarre, pitch and aſhes of Aſpen trees. From thence I came to a place called Vſtiug, an ancient citie the laſt day of Auguſt. At this citie meete two riuers: the one called Iug, and the other Sucana, both which fall into the aforeſaid riuer of Dwina. The riuer of Iug hath his ſpring in the land of the Tartars called Cheremizzi,ioyning to the countrey of Permia: and Succana hath his head from a lake not farre from the citie of Vologhda. Thus departing from Vſtiug, & paſſing vp the riuer Succana, we came to a towne called Totma. About this place the water is very ſhallow, and ſtonie, & troubleſome for Barkes and boates of that countrey,which they cal Naſſades,and Doſneckes,to paſſe that way: wherein marchandiſe are tranſported from the aforeſayd Colmogro to the citie of Vologhda. Theſe veſſels called Naſſades,are very long builded,broade made,and cloſe aboue,flatte bottomed,and draw not aboue foure foote water, and will carrie two hundred tunnes: they haue none vpon appertaining to them but all of timber, and when the winde ſerueth,they are made to ſayle. Otherwiſe they haue many men, ſome to hale and draw by the neckes with long ſmall ropes made faſt to the ſaide boates,and ſome set with long poles. There are many of theſe Barks vpon the riuer of Dwina: And the moſt part of them belongeth vnto the citie of Vologhda: for there dwell many marchants, and they occupie the ſayde boates with carrying of ſalt from the ſea ſide vnto the ſayde Vologhda. The twentieth of September I came vnto Vologhda, which is a great citie,and the riuer paſſeth through the middeſt of the ſame. The houſes are builded with wood of Firre trees,ioyned one within another, and round without: the houſes are foure ſquare without any vpon or ſtone worke, couered with birch Barkes, and wood ouer the ſame: Their Churches are all of wood, two for euery pariſh, one to be heated for Winter, and the other for Sommer,

Arzina reca the riuer where Sir Hugh Willoughby was frozen.

The Lappians couered all ſauing their eyes.

The Current at Cape Grace

The entring of the Bay of S. Nicholas is ſeuen leagues broade at the leaſt.

Auguſt.

Pinego riuer.

The towne of Pemps.

Vſtiug.

The deſcription of their Naſſades.

Summer.

On the toppes of their houses they laye much earth, for feare of burning: for they are ofte plagued with fire. This Vologhda is in 59. degrees, 11. minuts, and is from Colmogro, 1000. verstes.

All the way I neuer came in house, but lodged in the wildernesse, by the riuers side, and carried prouision for the way. And he that will trauell those waies, must carry with him an hochet, a tinder boxe, and a kettle, to make fire and seethe meate, when he hath it: for there is small succour in those parts, vnlesse it be in townes.

Good counsel for trauellers.

The first day of December, I departed from Vologhda, in poste in a sled, as the manner is in Winter. And the way to Moscua is as followeth. From Vologhda to Commelski, 27. verstes, so to Olmor 25. verstes, so to Teloytske, 20. verstes, so to Vre 30. verstes, so to Voshansko, 30. verstes, then to Yeraslaue, 30. verstes, which standeth vpon the great riuer Volga, so to Rostow, 50. verstes, then to Rogarin, 30. verstes, so to Peraslaue, 10. verstes, which is a great towne, standing hard by a faire lake. From thence to Dowbnaye, 30. vestes, so to Godoroke, 30. verstes, so to Owchay, 30. verstes, and last to the Musko, 25. verstes, where I arriued the first day of December.

December.

There are 14. posts, called Yannes, betweene Vologhda, and Musko, which are accompted 500. verstes asunder.

The 10. day of December, I was sent for to the Emperours Castle, by the saide Emperour, and deliuered my letters vnto the Secretarie, who talked with me of diuers matters, by the commandement of the Emperour. And after that my letters were translated, I was answered that I was welcome, and that the Emperour would giue me that I desired.

The 25. day, being the day of the natiuitie, I came into the Emperours presence, and kissed his hande, who sate aloft in a goodly chaire of estate, hauing on his heade a crowne most richly deked, and a staffe of golde in his hande, all apparelled with golde, and garnished with pretious stones.

There sate distant from him about two yardes his brother, and next vnto him a boye of twelue yeeres of age, who was inheritor to ỳ Emperour of Casan, conquered by this Emperour 8. yeeres past. Then sate his nobilitie round about him, richly apparelled with golde, and stone. And after I had done obeisance to the Emperour, he with his owne mouth calling me by my name, bade me to dinner, and so I departed to my lodging, till dinner time, which was at sixe of the clocke, by candle light.

The Emperour dined in a faire great Hall, in the middest whereof was a pillar foure square, very artificially made, about which were diuers tables set, and at the vppermost part of the hall, sate the Emperour himselfe, & at his table sate his brother, his Uncles sonne, the Metropolitane, the young Emperour of Casan, and diuers of his noble men, all of one side. There were diuers Ambassadors, & other strangers, as wel Christians, as Heathens, diuersly apparelled, to the number of 600. men, which dined in the said hal, besides 2000. Tartars, men of war, which were newly come to render themselues to the Emperour, and were appointed to serue him in his warres, against the Lyfflanders, but they dined in other hals. I was set at a little table, hauing no stranger with me, directly before the Emperours face. Being thus set, and placed, the Emperour sent me diuers boles of wine, and meade, & many dishes of meat from his owne hand, which were brought me by a Duke, and my table serued all in golde, and siluer, and so likewise on other tables, there were set boles of golde, set with stone, worth by estimation 400. pounds sterling one cup, besides the plate which serued the tables.

There was also a Cupboord of plate, most sumptuous, and rich, which was not vsed: among the which, was a peece of golde, of two yardes long, wrought in the toppe with Towers, and Dragons heades, also diuers barrels of golde, and siluer, with Castles on the bungs, richly, and artificially made. The Emperour, and all the Hall throughout, was serued with Dukes: and when dinner was ended, the Emperour called mee by name, and gaue mee drinke with his owne hande, and so I departed to my lodging.

Note, that when the Emperour drinketh, all the companie stande vp, and at euery time, he drinketh or taketh of a dishe of meate, he blesseth himselfe. Many other things I saw that day, not here noted.

The 4. of Januarie, which was Twelfetide with them, the Emperour, with his brother, and all his Nobles, all most richly apparelled with gold, pearles, pretious stones, & costly furres, with

a

a crowne vpon his head, of the Tartarian fashion, went to the Church in procession, with the Metropolitan, and diuers bishops, and priests. That day I was before the Emperour again, in Russe apparel, and the Emperour asked if that were not I, and his Chancelor answered yea. Then he bad me to dinner: then came he out of the Church, and went with the procession vpon the riuer, being all frozen, and there standing bare headed, with all his Nobles, there was a hole made in the ice, and the Metropolitan hallowed the water with great solemnitie, and seruice, and did cast of the said water vpon the Emperours sonne, and the Nobilitie. That done, the people with great thronging filled pots of the said water, to carry home to their houses, and diuers children were thrown in, and sicke people, and plucked out quickly againe, and diuers Tartars christened: all which the Emperour beheld. Also there were brought the Emperours best horses, to drinke at the said hallowed water. All this being ended, he returned to his pallace againe, and went to dinner by candle light, and sate in a woodden house, very fairely gilt. There dined in the place, aboue 300. strangers, and I sate alone as I did before, directly before the Emperour, and had my meat, bread, and drinke sent me from the Emperour.

The citie of Musko is great, the houses for the most part of wood, and some of stone, with windowes of yron, which serue for summer time. There are many faire Churches of stone, but more of wood, which are made hot in the winter time. The Emperours lodging is in a faire, and large castle, walled foure square of bricke, high, and thicke, situated vpon a hil, two miles about, and the riuer on the Southwest side of it, and it hath 16. gates in the wals, and as many bulwarks. His pallace is separated from the rest of the Castle, by a long wall going north and south, to the riuer side. In his pallace are Churches, some of stone, and some of wood, with round towers, fairely gilded. In the Church doores, and within the Churches, are images of golde: the chiefe markets for all things, are within the saide Castle, and for sundry thinges, sundry markets, and euery science by it selfe. Also in the winter there is a great market without the Castle, vpon the riuer being frozen, and there is sold corne, earthen pots, tubs, sleds, &c. The Castle is in circuite 2900. pases.

The cuntrie is full of marish ground, and plaine, in woods and riuers abundant, but it bringeth forth good plentie of corne. This Emperour is of great power: for he hath conquered much, as well of the Lyfflanders, Poles, Lettos, and Swethens, as also of the Tartars, and Gentiles, called Samoydes, hauing thereby much inlarged his dominions. He keepeth his people in great subiection: all matters passe his iudgement, be they neuer so small. The lawe is sharpe for all offenders.

The Metropolitan dealeth in matters of religion, as himselfe listeth, whome the Emperour greatly honoreth. They vse the ceremonies, and orders of the Greeke Church. They worship many images, painted on tables, and specially the image of S. Nicholas. Their Priests be married, but their wiues being dead, they may not marrie the second time, and so become Monkes, whereof there are a great number in the land.

They haue foure Lents in the yeere, and the weeke before Shrouetide, they call the Butter weeke, &c.

They haue many sortes of meates and drinkes, when they banket, and delight in eating of grosse meates, and stinking fishe. Before they drinke, they vse to blowe in the cup: their greatest friendship is in drinking: they are great talkers, & liers, without any faith or trust in their words, flatterers, and dissemblers. The women be there very obedient to their husbands, and are kept straightly from going abroad, but at some seasons.

At my being there, I heard of men, and women, that drunke away their children, and all their goods, at the Emperours tauerne, and not being able to pay, hauing impawned himselfe, the Tauerner bringeth him out to the high way, and beates him vpon the legges: then they that passe by, knowing the cause, and hauing peraduenture compassion vpon him, giueth the monie, and so he is ransomed.

In euery good towne, there is a drunken Tauerne, called a Cursemay, which the Emperour sometime letteth out to farme, & sometimes bestoweth for a yeere or two on some Duke or Gentleman, in recompence of his seruice: and for that time he is Lord of all the Towne, robbing and spoiling, and doing what pleaseth him: and then he being growen riche, is taken by the Emperour, and sent to the warres againe, where he shall spend all that which he hath gotten by ill meanes: so that the Emperour in his warres is little charged, but all the burden lieth vpon the poore people.

They vse sadles made of wood and sinewes, with the tree gilded & damaske work, and the seate couered with cloth, sometimes of golde, and the rest Saphian leather, well stitched. They vse little stirrops at their sadle bowes, by the sound whereof, their horses vse to runne more swiftly.

The Russe is apparelled in this manner: his vpper garment is of cloth of golde, silke, or cloth, long, downe to the foote, and buttened with great buttons of siluer, or els laces of silke, set on with broches,

brooches, the sleeues thereof very long, which he weareth on his arme, ruffed vp. Vnder that he hath another long garment, buttoned with silke buttons, with a high coller standing vp of some colour, and that garment is made straight. Then his shirt is very fine, and wrought with red silke, or some gold, with a coller of pearle. Vnder his shirt he hath linnen breeches, vpon his legges, a paire of hose without feete, & his bootes of red or yellow leather. On his head he weareth a white Colepecke, with buttons of siluer, gold, pearle, or stone, and vnder it a blacke Fore cap, turned vp very broad.

When he rideth on horse backe to the warres, or any iourney, he hath a sword of the Turkish fashion, and his bowe and arrowes of the same manner. In the towne he weareth no weapon, but onely two or three paire of knues, hauing the hafts of the tooth of a fishe, called the Morse.

In the Winter time, the people trauell with sleds, in Towne and Countrey, the way being hard, and smooth with snow: the waters and riuers are all frozen, and one horse with a sled, will draw a man vpon it 400. miles, in three daies: but in the Summer time, the way is deepe with mire, and trauelling is very ill.

The Russe, if he be a man of any abilitie, neuer goeth out of his house in the Winter, but vpon his sled, and in Summer vpon his horse: and in his sled he sits vpon a carpet, or a white Beares skinne: the sled is drawen with a horse well decked, with many Foxes and Woolues tailes at his backe, & is conducted by a litle boy vpon his backe: his seruants stand vpon the taile of the sled, &c.

The voyage, wherein Osepp Napea the Moscouite Ambassadour, returned home into his Countrey with his entertainment at his arriuall, at Colmogro: and a large description of the manners of the Countrey.

The twelfth of Maye, in the yeere of our Lorde, 1567. there departed from Graueseude, foure good shippes well appointed for Marchants, which were presently bound into the Baye of S. Nicholas in Russia, with which shippes was transported, or caried home, one Osepp Gregoriwiche Napea, who was sent Messenger from the Emperour, and Great Duke of Moscouia. The foure shippes were these, whose names followe, viz.

The Primerose Admirall.
The Iohn Euangelist Viceadmirall.
The Anne, and the Trinitie Attendants.

The 13. of July, the foresaide foure shippes came to an anker in the Baye of S. Nicholas, before an Abbey, called the Abbey of S. Nicholas, whereas the saide Messenger, Osepp Gregoriwich Napea, went a shoare, and as many English men as came to serue the Emperour, remained with him at the Abbey, for the space of sixe daies, vntill he had gotten all his things a shore, and laden the same in Barkes, to goe vp the riuer Dwina, vnto Vologhda, which is by water 1000. verstes, and euery verste is about three quarters of an English mile.

The 20. of July, we departed from S. Nicholas, and the 24. of the same, we came to Colmogro, where we remained eight daies: and the saide Messenger was there of all his acquaintance welcommed home, and had presents innumerable sent vnto him, but it was nothing but meate and drinke. Some sent white bread, some rie bread, and some buttered bread and pancakes, beefe, mutton, bacon, egges, butter, fishes, swannes, geese, duckes, hennes, and all manner of victuals, both fishe, and flesh, in the best manner, that the rude people could deuise: for among them, such presents are highly esteemed.

Presents vsed in Russia, are all for the most part of victuals.

The 29. of July, we departed from Colmogro, and the 14. of August we came to Vstioug, where we remained one day, and changed our barkes, or boates.

The 27. of August, wee came to Vologhda, where we remained foure daies, vnlading the barkes, and lading our chestes and things in small waggons, with one horse in a peere, which in their tongue are called Telegos, and with these Telegoes, they caried our stuffe from Vologhda vnto the Musko, which is 500. verstes: and we were vpon the same way 14. daies: for we went no faster then the Teligoes.

There are three great townes betweene the Musko, and Vologhda, that is to say, Yereslaue, Rostaue, & Pereslaua. Vpon one side of Yereslaua, runneth a famous riuer, which is called Volga. It runneth into the Caspian sea, and it deuideth it selfe, before it come into the Mare Caspium, in 50. parts, or more, and neere vnto the same sea, there stands a great Citie, called Boghare, the inhabitants of the which, are called by the same name.

The citie of Boghare.

The people of the saide Citie, doe traffike into the Citie of Musko: their commodities are spices,

spices, muske, ambergreese, rubarbe with other drugs. They bring also many furres which they buy in Siberia comming towards the Mosko, the said people are of the sect of Mahomet.

They arriued at Mosco.

The 12. of September we came vnto the citie of Mosko, where we were brought by Napea, and two of the Emperours gentlemen vnto a large house, where euery one of vs had his chamber appointed.

The 14. of September we were commanded to come vnto the Emperour, and immediately after our comming wee were brought into his presence, vnto whom each of vs did his dutie accordingly, and kissed his right hand, his maiestie sitting in his chaire of estate, with his crowne on his head, and a staffe of goldsmiths worke in his left hand well garnished with rich and costly stones, and when we had all kissed his hand and done our duties, his maiestie did declare by his interpreter that we were all welcome vnto him, and into his countrey, and thereupon willed vs to dine with him: that day we gaue thanks vnto his maiestie, and so departed vntill the dinner was ready.

When dinner time approched, we were brought againe into the Emperours dining chamber, where we were set on one side of a table that stood ouer against the Emperours table, to the ende that he might well behold vs all: and when we came into the foresaid chamber, we found there readie set these tables following.

First at the vpper end of one table were set the Emperour his maiestie, his brother, and the Emperour of Cassan, which is prisoner. About two pardes lower sate the Emperour of Cassan his sonne, being a child of fiue yeeres of age, and beneath him sate the most part of the Emperours noble men.

And at another table neere vnto the Emperours table, there was set a monke all alone, which was in all points as well serued as the Emperour. At another table sate another kind of people called Chirkasses, which the Emperor entertaineth for men of warre to serue against his enemies. Of which people and of their countrey, I will hereafter make mention.

All the tables aforesayd were couered onely with salt and bread, and after that we had sitten a while, the Emperour sent vnto euery one of vs a piece of bread, which were giuen, and deliuered vnto euery man seuerally by these words: The Emperour and great Duke giueth thee bread this day, and in like maner three or foure times before dinner was ended, hee sent vnto euery man drinke, which was giuen by these words, The Emperour and great Duke giueth thee to drinke. All the tables aforesaid were serued in vessels of pure and fine golde, as well basons and ewers, platters, dishes and sawcers, as also of great pots, with an innumerable sort of small drinking potes of diuers fashions, whereof a great number were set with stone. As for costly meates I haue many times seene better: but for change of wines, and diuers sortes of meads, it was wonderfull: for there was not left at any time so much voyd roume on the table, that one cuppe more might haue bene set, and as farre as I could perceiue, all the rest were in the like maner serued.

In the dinner time there came in fiue singers which stood in the midst of the chamber, and their faces towards the Emperour, who sang there before dinner was ended three seuerall times, whose songs or voices delighted our eares little or nothing.

The Emperour neuer putteth morsell of meate in his mouth, but he first blesseth it himselfe, and in like maner as often as he drinketh, for after his maner he is very religious, and he esteemeth his religious persons aboue his noble men.

This dinner continued about the space of fiue howers, which being ended, and the tables taken vp, we came into the midst of the chamber, where we did reuerence vnto the Emperours maiestie, and then he deliuered vnto euery one of vs with his owne handes a cup of mead, which when euery man had receiued and drunke a quantitie thereof, we were licenced to depart, and so ended that dinner. And because the Emperour would haue vs to be merry, hee sent to our lodging the same Euening 3. barrels of mead of sundry sortes, of the quantitie in all of one hogshead.

The 16. day of September the Emperour sent home vnto our lodging for euery of vs a Tartarie horse to ride from place to place as we had occasion, for that the streetes of Mosko are very fowle and mirie in the Summer.

M. Standish doctor of Physike.

The 18. of September there were giuen vnto master Standish doctor in Physicke, and the rest of our men of our occupations, certaine furred gownes of branched veluet and golde, and some of red Damaske, of which master Doctors gowne was furred with Sables, and the rest were furred some with white Ermine, and some with gray squirrell, and all faced and edged round about with blacke beauer.

The 1. of October in the morning we were commanded to come vnto ỹ Emperors court, & whē we came thether, we were brought vnto ỹ Emperor vnto whō we did our duties accordingly, whereupon he willed vs to dine with him that day, & so with thanks vnto his maiestie, we departed vntil

dinner time, at which time we came and found the tables couered with bread and salt as at the first: and after that we were all set vpon one side of the table, the Emperours maiestie according to his accustomed maner sent vnto euery man of vs a piece of bread by some of the Dukes which attended on his highnesse.

And whereas the 14. of September we were serued in vessels of gold, we were now serued in vessels of siluer, and yet not so abundantly as was the first of gold: they brought drinke vnto the table in siluer boles which contained at the least fiue gallons a piece, and euery man had a small siluer cuppe to drinke in, and another to dip or to take his drinke out of the great boll withall: the dinner being ended, the Emperour gaue vnto euery one of vs a cup with mead, which when we had receiued, we gaue thanks and departed.

Moreouer, whensoeuer the Emperours pleasure is that any stranger shall dine with him, he doth send for them in the morning, and when they come before him, hee with his owne mouth bideth them to dinner, and this order he alwayes obserueth.

The 10. of October the Emperour gaue vnto M. Standish 70. rubbles in money, and to the rest of our men of occupations, 30. rubbles a piece.

The 3. of Nouember we dined againe with the Emperour, where we were serued as before.

The 6. of December being S. Nicholas day, we dined againe at the Emperours, for that is one of the principall feasts which the Moscouites hold: we were serued in siluer vessels, and order in all points as before, and it was past 7. of the clocke at night before dinner was ended.

Long dinners.

The Emperours maiestie visiteth euery peere in the moneth of December, to haue all his ordinance that is in the citie of Mosko caried into the fields which is without the Suburbes of the citie, and there to haue it planted and bent vpon two houses of Wood filled within with earth: against which two houses, there were two faire white markes set vp, at which markes they discharge all their ordinaunce, to the ende the Emperour may see what his Gunners can doe. They haue faire ordinance of brasse of all sortes, bases, faulcons, minions, sakers, culuerings, cannons double and roy all, basiliskes long and large, they haue fiue great pieces whose shot is a yard of height, which shot a man may easily discerne as they flee: they haue also a great many of mortar pieces or potguns, out of which pieces they shoote wild fire.

Ordinance in Russia.

The 12. of December the Emperours maiestie and all his nobilitie came into the field on horsebacke, in most goodly order, hauing very fine Jennets & Turkie horses garnished with gold & siluer abundantly. The Emperours maiestie hauing on him a gowne of rich tissue, & a cap of skarlet on his head, set not only with pearles, but also with a great number of rich and costly stones, his noble men were all in gownes of cloth of gold, which did ride before him in good order by 3. & 3. and before them there went 5000. harquebuzzers, which went by 5. and 5. in a ranke in very goodly order, euery of them carying his gunne vpon his left shoulder, and his match in his right hand, and in this order they marched into the field where as the foresaid ordinance was planted.

A preetie triumph.

And before the Emperours maiestie came into the field, there was a certaine stage made of small poles which was a quarter of a mile long, and about three score yardes off from the stage of poles were certaine pieces of ice of two foote thicke, and fiue foote high set vp, which ranke of ice was as long as the stage of poles, and as soone as the Emperours maiestie came into the field, the harquebuzzers went vpon the stage of poles where they setled themselues in order. And when the Emperours maiestie was setled where he would be, and where he might see all the ordinance discharged and shot of, the harquebuzzers began to shoot of at the banke of ice, as though it had been in any skirmish or battel, who ceased not shooting, vntil they had beaten all the ice flat on the ground.

After the handguns, they shot of their wild fire vp into the aire, which was a goodly sight to behold. And after this, they began to discharge the small pieces of brasse, beginning with the smallest and so orderly bigger and bigger, vntil the last and biggest. When they had shot them all of, they began to charge them againe, and so shot them all of 3. times after the first order, beginning with the smallest and ending with the greatest. And note that before they had ended their shooting the houses that they shot vnto, were beaten in pieces, and yet they were very strongly made of Wood and filled with earth, being at the least 30. foote thicke. This triumph being ended, the Emperour departed and rode home in the same order that he came forth into the field. The ordinance is discharged euery peere in the moneth of December, according to the order before mentioned.

On Christmas day we were all willed to dine with the Emperours maiestie, where for breakfast meat and drinke, we were serued as at other times before: but for goodly and rich plate, we neuer saw the like or so much before. There dined that day in the Emperours presence about 500. strangers, and two hundred Russes, and all they were serued in vessels of gold, and that as much as could stand one by another vpō the tables. Besides this there were foure cupboords garnished with goodly

goodly plate both of gold and siluer. Among the which there were 12. barrels of siluer, conteining about 12. gallons a piece, and at each end of euery barrell were 6. hoopes of fine gold: this dinner continued about 6. howers.

Euery yeere vpon the twelfe day they vse to bleſſe or ſanctifie the riuer Moska, which runneth though the citie of Moskouia, after this maner. The hallowing of the riuer of Moſco.

Firſt, they make a ſquare hole in the ice about 3. fadoms large euery way, which is trimmed about the ſides and edges with white boords. Then about 9. of the clocke they come out of the church with proceſſion towards the riuer in this wiſe.

Firſt and formoſt there goe certaine yong men with Waxe tapers burning, and one carying a great lanterne: then follow certaine banners, then the croſſe, then the images of our Ladie, of S. Nicholas, and of other Saints, which images men carrie vpon their ſhoulders: after the images follow certaine prieſts to the number of 100. or more: after them the Metropolitan who is led betweene two prieſts, and after the Metropolitan came the Emperour with his crowne vpon his head, and after his maieſtie all his noble men orderly. Thus they followed the proceſſion vnto the water, & when they came vnto the hole that was made, the prieſts ſet themſelues in order round about it. And at one ſide of the ſame poole there was a ſcaffold of boords made, vpon which ſtood a faire chaire in which the Metropolitan was ſet, but the Emperours maieſtie ſtood vpon the ice.

After this the prieſts began to ſing, to bleſſe and to ſenſe, and did their ſeruice, and ſo by that time that they had done, the water was holy, which being ſanctified, the Metropolitane tooke a litle thereof in his handes, and caſt it on the Emperour, likewiſe vpon certaine of the Dukes, and then they returned againe to the church with the prieſts that ſate about the water: but the preaſſe that there was about the water when the Emperor was gone, was wonderful to behold, for there came about 5000. pots to be filled of that water: for that Puſcouite which hath no part of that water, thinks himſelfe vnhappy.

And very many went naked into the water, both men and women and children: after the preaſe was a litle gone, the Emperours Jennets and horſes were brought to drinke of the ſame water, and likewiſe many other men brought their horſes thither to drinke, and by that means they make their horſes as holy as themſelues.

All theſe ceremonies being ended, we went to the Emperour to dinner, where we were ſerued in veſſels of ſiluer, and in all other points as we had bene before time.

The Ruſſes begin their Lent alwayes 8. weekes before Eaſter: the firſt weeke they eate egges, milke, cheeſe & butter, and make great cheare with pancakes and ſuch other things, one friend viſiting another, & from the ſame Sunday vntil our Shroſſunday, there are but few Ruſſes ſober, but they are drunke day by day, and it is accounted for no reproch or ſhame among them. The Ruſſes Lent.

The next weeke being our firſt weeke of Lent, or our cleanſing weeke, beginning our Shroſſunday, they make and keepe a great faſt. It is reported, and the people doe verily beleeue, that the Metropolitan neither eateth nor drinketh any maner of thing for the ſpace of ſeuen dayes, and they ſay that there are many religious men which do the like.

The Emperours maieſtie eateth but one morſell of bread, and drinketh but one draught of drinke once in the day during that weeke, and all men that are of any reputation come not out of their houſes during that time, ſo that the ſtreetes are almoſt void of company, ſauing a few poore ſoules which wander to and fro. The other ſixe weekes they keepe as we do ours, but not one of them will eate either butter, cheeſe, egges or milke.

On Palme ſunday they haue a very ſolemne proceſſion in this maner following.

Firſt, they haue a tree of a good bigneſſe which is made faſt vpon two ſleds, as though it were growing there, and it is hanged with apples, raiſins, figs and dates, and with many other fruits abundantly. In the midſt of the ſame tree ſtand 5. boyes in white veſtures, which ſing in the tree before the proceſſion: after this there followed certaine yong men with waxe tapers in their hands burning, and a great lanterne that all the light ſhould not goe out: after them followed two with long banners, and 6. with round plates ſet vpon long ſtaues: the plates were of copper very full of holes and thinne: then followed 6. carying painted images vpon their ſhoulders, after the images follow certaine prieſts to the number of 100. or more, with goodly veſtures, whereof 10. or 12. are of white damaſke, ſet and imbroidered round about with faire and orient pearles, as great as peaſe, and among them certaine Saphires and other ſtones. After them followed the one halfe of the Emperours noble men: then commeth the Emperours maieſtie and the Metropolitane, after this maner.

Firſt there is a horſe couered with white linnen cloth downe to the ground, his eares being made long with the ſame cloth like to an aſſes eares. Vpon this horſe the Metropolitane ſitteth ſidelong like a woman: in his lappe lieth a faire booke, with a crucifix of Goldſmiths worke vpon the couer,

which he holdeth fast with his left hand, and in his right hand he hath a crosse of gold, with which crosse he ceaseth not to blesse the people as he rideth.

There are to the number of 30. men which spread abroad their garments before the horse, and as soone as the horse is past ouer any of them, they take them vp againe and run before, and spred them againe, so that the horse doth alway go on some of them. They which spred the garments are all priests sonnes, and for their labours, the Emperour giueth vnto them new garments.

The Emperor leadeth the Metropolitans horse in procession.

One of the Emperours noble men leadeth the horse by the head, but the Emperour himselfe going on foote, leadeth the horse by the ende of the reine of his bridle with one of his hands, and in the other of his handes he had a braunch of a Palme tree: after this followed the rest of the Emperours Noble men and Gentlemen, with a great number of other people. In this order they went from one church to another within the castle, about the distaunce of two flights shot: and so returned agayne to the Emperours Church, where they made an end of their seruice. Which being done, the Emperours maiestie and certaine of his noble men, went to the Metropolitans his house to dinner, where of delicate fishes and good drinks there was no lacke.

The rest of this weeke vntill Easter day they keepe very solemnely, continuing in their houses for the most part, and vpon Sunday or Thursday the Emperour doth alwayes vse to receiue the Sacrament, and so doth most part of his nobles.

Upon good Friday they continue all the day in contemplation and prayers, and they vse euery yeere on good Friday to let loose a prisoner in the stead of Barrabas. The night following they go to the church where they sleepe vntil the next morning, & at Easter they haue the resurrection, and after euery of the Lents they eate flesh, the next weeke following Friday, Saturday and all.

They haue an order at Easter which they alwaies obserue, and that is this: euery yeere against Easter to die or colour red with Brazzell a great number of egges, of which euery man and woman giueth one vnto the priest of their Parish vpon Easter day in the morning. And moreouer the common people vse to carrie in their hands one of these red egges, not onely vpon Easter day, but also three or foure dayes after, and Gentlemen and Gentlewomen haue egges gilded which they carrie in like maner. They vse it as they say for a great loue, and in token of the resurrection, whereof they reioyce. For when two friends meete during the Easter holydayes, they come and take one another by the hand: the one of them saieth, the Lord, or Christ is risen, the other answereth, it is so of a trueth, and then they kisse and exchange their egges both men and women, continuing in kissing 4. dayes together.

Kissing vsed in the Greeke church.

The 12. of Aprill being Tewesday in the Easter weeke, master Jenkinson and master Gray, and certaine other of vs Englishmen dined with the Emperour, where we were serued as we haue bene before time. And after dinner the Emperours maiestie gaue vnto master Jenkinson and vnto M. Gray, and so orderly vnto euery one of vs a cuppe of mead, according to his accustomed manner, which when euery man had receiued and giuen thanks, M. Jenkinson stepped into the midst of the chamber before the Emperors maiestie, and gaue thanks to his highnes for his goodnesse vnto him extended, desiring his grace to licence him for to depart, and in like maner did M. Gray. His maiestie did not onely licence them to depart, but also graunted vnto M. Jenkinson his letters vnder his great seale, vnto all princes through whose dominions M. Jenkinson should haue occasion to passe, that he might the sooner & quietlier passe by meanes thereof. Which being graunted, M. Jenkinson and Gray lowly submitted themselues, thanking his maiestie. So the Emperour gaue vnto either of them a cup of mead to drinke, and willed them to depart at their pleasure in Gods peace.

With these letters M. Jenkinson tooke his voiage the same Aprill to Boghar.

The 14. of Aprill in the morning when M. Gray and I were redie to depart towards England, the Chancellours sent vnto vs, and willed vs to come to their office in the Chancerie, where at our comming they shewed vs a great number of the Emperours iewels, and rich robes, willing vs to marke and behold them well, to the ende that at our arriuall into England, we might make report what we had seene there.

The Emperors wardrobe.

The chiefest was his maiesties crowne, being close vnder the top very faire wrought: in mine opinion, the workemanship of so much gold few men can amend. It was adorned and decked with rich and precious stones aboundantly, among the which one was a rubie, which stood a handfull higher then the top of the crowne vpon a small wier, it was as big as a good beane: the same crowne was lined with a faire blacke Sable, worth by report 40. rubbles.

We saw all his maiesties robes which were very richly set with stones, they shewed vs many other great stones of diuers kinds, but the most part of the were sneuen, in maner as they came out of the worke, for they do more esteeme the greatnes of stones, then they do the proportion of them.

We sawe two goodly gownes which were as beauie as a man could easily carrie, all set with perles ouer & ouer: the gards or borders round about them were garnished with saphires and other gues

good stones abundantly. One of the same gownes was very rich, for the pearles were very large, round, and orient: as for the rest of his gownes and garments, they were of rich tissue and cloth of gold and all furred with very blacke Sables.

When we had sufficiently perused all these thinges, they willed master Gray at his arriuall in England to prouide if he could, such iewels and rich clothes as he had seene there, and better if hee could, declaring that the Emperour would gladly bestow his money vpon such things.

So we tooke our leaue the same time, and departed towards Vologda immediately.

The maners, vsages, and ceremonies of the Russes.

Of the Emperour.

THe Emperours name in their tongue is Euan Vasiliuich, that is as much to say, as Iohn the sonne of Vasilie, and by his princely state he is called Otesara, as his predecessors haue bene before, which to interprete, is a king, that giueth not tribute to any man. And this word Otesara his maiesties interpreters, haue of late dayes interpreted to be an Emperour, so that now he is called Emperour & great Duke of all Russia, &c. Before his father they were neither called Emperours nor kings but onely Ruese Velike, that is to say, great Duke. And as this Emperour which now is Euan Vasiliuich, doeth exceed his predecessours in name, that is, from a Duke to an Emperour, euen so much by report he doth exceed them in stoutnes of courage and valiantnesse, and a great deale more: for he is no more afraid of his enemies which are not few, then the Hobbie of the larkes. Or, Basilius.

His enemies with whom he hath warres for the most part are these: Litto, Poland, Sweden, Denmarke, Lifland, the Crimmes, Nagaians, and the whole nation of the Tartarians, which are a stoute and a hardie people as any vnder the Sunne.

This Emperour vseth great familiaritie, as well vnto all his nobles and Subiects, as also vnto strangers which serue him either in his warres, or in occupations: for his pleasure is that they shall dine oftentimes in the peere in his presence, and besides that he is oftentimes abroad, either at one church or another, and walking with his noble men abroad. And by this meanes he is not onely beloued of his nobles and commons, but also had in great dread and feare through all his dominions, so that I thinke no prince in Christendome is more feared of his owne then he is, nor yet better beloued. For if he bid any of his Dukes goe, they will runne, if he giue any euill or angrie worde to any of them, the partie will not come into his maiesties presence againe of a long time if he be not sent for, but will faine him to be very sicke, and will let the haire of his head grow very long, without either cutting or shauing, which is an euident token that hee is in the Emperours displeasure: for when they be in their prosperitie, they account it a shame to weare long haire, in consideration whereof, they vse to haue their heads shauen.

His maiestie heareth all complaints himselfe, and with his owne mouth giueth sentence and iudgement of all matters, and that with expedition: but religious matters he medleth not withall, but referreth them wholy vnto the Metropolitane. Note.

His maiestie retaineth and well rewardeth all straungers that come to serue him, and especially men of warre.

Hee delighteth not greatly in hawking, hunting, or any other pastime, nor in hearing instruments or musike, but setteth all his whole delight vpon two things. First, to serue God, as vndoubtedly he is very deuout in his religion, and the second, how to subdue and conquere his enemies.

He hath abundance of gold and siluer in his owne handes or treasurie: but the most part of his people not a crowne from a counter, nor gold from copper, they are so much combred therewithall, and he that is worth 2. 3. or 4. grotes, is a rich man.

Of their Religious men.

THe Metropolitane is next vnto God, our Ladie and S. Nicholas, accepted: for the Emperours maiestie iudgeth and affirmeth him to bee of higher dignitie then himselfe: for that saith he, he is Gods spirituall officer, and I the Emperour am his temporall officer, and therefore his maiestie submitteth himselfe vnto him in many things concerning religious matters, as in leading the Metropolitans horse vpon Palme sunday, and giuing him leaue

to sit on a chaire vpon the 12. day, when the riuer Mosko was in blessing, and his maiestie standing on the ice.

All matters of religion are reformed by the Metropolitan, he heareth the causes and giueth sentence as himselfe listeth, and is authorized so to doe, whether it be to whip, hang, or burne, his will must needs be fulfilled.

They haue both monkes, friers and nunnes, with a great number of great and rich monasteries, they keepe great hospitalitie, and doe relieue much poore people day by day. I haue been in one of the monasteries called Troietes, which is walled about with bricke very strongly like a castle, and much ordinaunce of brasse vpon the wals of the same. They told me themselues that there are seuen hundred brethren of them which belong vnto that house. The most part of the lands, townes, and villages which are within fortie miles of it, belong vnto the same. They shewed me the church, wherein were as many images as could hang about, or vpon the wals of the church round about, & euen the roofe of the church was painted full of images. The chiefe image was of our Lady, which was garnished with gold, rubies, saphires and other rich stones abundantly. In the midst of the church stood 12. waxe tapers of two yards long, and a fathome about in bignesse, there stands a kettle ful of waxe with about 100. waight, wherein there is alwaies the wicke of a candle burning, as it were a lampe which goeth not out day nor night.

They shewed mee a coffin couered with cloth of gold which stoode vpon one side within their church, in which they told me lay a holy man, who neuer eate nor dranke, and yet that he liueth. And they told me (supposing that I had beleeued them) that hee healeth many diseases, and giueth the blind their sight, with many other miracles, but I was hard of beliefe because I saw him worke no miracle whilest I was there.

After this they brought me into their sellers, and made me taste of diuers kinds of drinkes, both wine and beere, mead and quassie, of sundry colours and kinds, such aboundance of drinke as they haue in their sellers, I doe suppose few princes haue more, or so much at once.

Their barrels or vessels are of an vnmeasurable bignes and sise: some of them are 3. yards long and more, and 2. yards & more broad in their heads: they contein 6. or 7. tunnes a piece: they haue none in their sellers of their owne making that are lesse then a tunne. They haue 9. or 10. great vautes which are full of those barrels which are seldome remooued: for they haue trunkes which come downe through the roofe of the vautes in sundry places, through which they powre the drinke downe, hauing the caske right vnder it to receiue the same, for it should be a great trouble to bring it all downe the staires.

The hospitalitie of their monasteries.

They giue bread, meat and drinke vnto all men that come to them, not onely while they are at their abbey, but also when they depart, to serue them by the way.

There are a great number of such monasteries in the realme, and the Emperours maiestie rideth oftentimes from one to another of them, and lieth at them 3. or 4. dayes together.

The same monkes are as great merchants as any in the land of Russia, and doe occupy buying and selling as much as any other men, and haue boates which passe too and fro in the riuers with merchandize from place to place where any other of their country doe traffique.

They eate no flesh during their liues as it is reported, but vpon Sunday, Munday, Tuesday, Thursday and Saturday, it is lawfull for them to eate egges, butter, cheese and milke, and at all times to eate fish, and after this sort they lead their liues.

They weare all blacke garments, and so doe none other in all the land, but at that abbey only.

Want of preachers cause of great ignorance and idolatrie.

They haue no preachers no not one in all the land to instruct the people, so that there are many & the most part of the poore in the country, who if one aske them how many gods there be, they will say a great many, meaning that euery image which they haue is a god: for all the country and the Emperours maiestie himselfe, will bleese and bowe, and knocke their heads before their images: in so much that they will trie earnestlie vnto their images to helpe them to the things which they need. All men are bound by their law to haue those images in their houses, and ouer euery gate in all their townes and cities are images set vp, vnto which the people bowe and bend, and knocke their heads against the ground before them: as often as they come by any church or crosse they do in like maner. And when they come to any house, they bleese themselues 3. or 4. times before they will salute any man in the house.

They reckon and hold it for great sinne to touch or handle any of their images within the circle of the boord where the painting is, but they keepe them very daintely, & rich men decke their ouer and about, with gold, siluer and stones, and hang them ouer and about with cloth of gold.

The priests are married as other men are, and weare all their garments as other men doe, except their nightcappes, which is cloth of some sadde colour, beyng rounde, and reacheth vnto the

the eares: their crownes are shaven, but the rest of their hayre they let grow, as long as nature will permit, so that it hangeth beneath their eares vpon their shoulders: their beards they neuer shaue: if his wife happen to die, it is not lawfull for him to mary againe during his life.

They minister the Communion with bread and wine, after our order but he breaketh the bread, and putteth it into the cuppe vnto the wine, and commonly some are partakers with them: & they take the bread out againe with a spoone together with part of the wine, and so take it themselues, and giue it to others that receiue with them after the same maner.

Their ceremonies are all as they say, according to the Greeke church vsed at this present day, and they allow no other religion but the Greeks, and their owne: and will not permit any nation but the Greeks to be buried in their sacred burials, or churchyards.

All their churches are full of images, vnto the which the people when they assemble, doe bow and knocke their heads, as I haue before said, that some will haue knobbes vpon their foreheads with knocking, as great as egges. Their seruice in their mother tongue.

All their seruice is in the Russe tongue, and they and the common people haue no other prayers but this, Ghospodi Iesus Christos esine voze ponuloi nashe. That is to say, O Lord Jesus Christ, sonne of God haue mercy vpon vs: and this is their prayer, so that the most part of the vnlearned know neither Pater noster, nor the Beliefe, nor Ten commandements, nor scarcely vnderstand the one halfe of the seruice which is read in their churches.

Of their Baptisme.

When any childe is borne, it is not baptised vntill the next Sunday, and if it chance that it be not baptised then, it must tary vntill the second Sunday after the byrth, and it is lawfull for them to take as many Godfathers and Godmothers as they will, the more the better.

When they go to the Church, the midwife goeth formost, carying the childe, and the Godfathers and Godmothers follow into the midst of the Church, where there is a small table ready set, and on it an earthen pot full of warme water, about the which the Godfathers and Godmothers, with the childe, settle themselues: then the clearke giueth vnto euery of them a small waxe candle burning, then commeth the priest, and beginneth to say certeine words, which the Godfathers and Godmothers must answere word for word, among which, one is, that the childe shall forsake the deuill, and as that name is pronounced, they must all spit at the word as often as it is repeated. Then he blesseth the water which is in the pot, and doth breath ouer it: then he taketh all the candles which the gossips haue, and holding them all in one hand letteth part of them droppe into the water, and then giueth euery one his candle againe, and when the water is sanctified, he taketh the childe and holdeth it in a small tubbe, and one of the Godfathers taketh the pot with warme water, and powreth it all vpon the childes head.

After this he hath many more ceremonies, as annointing eares and eyes with spittle, and making certeine crosses with oyle vpon the backe, head, and brests of the childe: then taking the childe in his armes, carieth it to the images of S. Nicholas, and our Lady, &c. and speaketh vnto the images, desiring them to take charge of the childe, that he may liue, and beleeue as a Christian man or woman ought to doe, with many other words. Then comming backe from the images, he taketh a payre of sheeres and clippeth the yoong and tender hayres of the childes head, in three or foure places, and then deliuereth the childe, whereunto euery of the Godfathers and Godmothers lay a hand: then the priest chargeth them, that the childe be brought vp in the faith & feare of God or Christ, and that it be instructed to clinege and bow to the images, and so they make an end: then one of the Godfathers must hang a crosse about the necke of the childe, which he must alwayes weare, for that Russe which hath not a crosse about his necke, they esteeme as no Christian man, and thereupon they say that we are no Christians, because we do not weare crosses as they do.

Of their Matrimonie.

Their matrimony is nothing solemnized, but rather in most points abhominable, and as neere as I can learne, in this wise following.

First, when there is loue betweene the parties, the man sendeth vnto the woman a small chest or boxe, wherein is a whippe, needles, thred, silke, linnen cloth, sheeres, & such necessaries as she shall occupy when she is a wife, and perhaps sendeth therewithall rosins, figges or some such thinges, giuing her to vnderstand, that if she doe offend she must be beaten with the whippe,

whip, & by the needles, thred, cloth, &c. that she should apply her selfe diligently to sowe, and do such things as she could best doe, and by the raisins or fruites he meaneth if she doe well, no good thing shalbe withdrawen from her, nor be too dere for her: and she sendeth vnto him a shirt, handkerchers, and some such things of her owne making. And now to the effect.

When they are agreed, and the day of marriage appointed, when they shall go towardes the church, the bride will in no wise consent to go out of the house, but resisteth and striueth with them that would haue her out, and faineth her selfe to weepe, yet in the end, two women get her out, and lead her towards the church, her face being couered close, because of her dissimulation, that it should not be openly perceiued: for she maketh a great noyce, as though she were sobbing and weeping, vntill she come at the church, and then her face is vncouered. The man commeth after among other of his friends, and they cary with them to the church a great pot with wine or meade: then the priest coupleth them together much after our order, one promising to loue and serue the other during they liues together, &c. which being done they beginne to drinke, and first the woman bringeth to the man, and when he hath drunke he letteth the cuppe fall to the ground, hasting immediatly to tread vpon it, and so doth she, and whether of them tread first vpon it must haue the victory and be maister at all times after, which commonly happeneth to the man, for he is readiest to set his foot on it, because he letteth it fall himselfe, then they go home againe, the womans face being vncouered. The boyes in the streets cry out and make a noyce in the meane time, with very dishonest words.

When they come home, the wife is set at the vpper end of the table, and the husband next vnto her: they fall then to drinking till they be all drunke, they perchance haue a minstrell or two, and two naked men, whiche led her from the churche, dance naked a long time before all the company. When they are weary of drinking, the bride and the bridegrome get them to bed, for it is in the euening alwayes when any of them are marryed: and when they are going to bed, the bridegrome putteth certeine money both golde and siluer, if he haue it, into one of his boots, and then letteth downe in the chamber, crossing his legges, and then the bride must plucke off one of his boots, which she will, and if she happen on the boot wherein the money is, she hath not onely the more in her labor, but is also at such choyce, as she need not euer from that day forth to pull of his boots, but if she misse the boot wherein the mony is, she doth not onely loose the mony, but is also bound from that day forwards to pull off his boots continually.

Then they continue in drinking and making good cheere three dayes following, being accompanyed with certaine of their friends, and during the same three dayes he is called a duke, and the dutches, although they be very poore persons, and this is as much as I haue learned of their matrimony: but one common rule is amongst them, if the woman be not beaten with the whip once a weeke, she will not be good, and therefore they looke for it orderly, and the women say, that if their husbands did not beat them, they should not loue them.

They vse to marry there very yoong, they sonnes at 16 and 18 yeeres olde, and the daughters at 12 or 13 yeeres or yonger: they vse to keepe their wiues very closely, I meane those that be of any reputation, so that a man shall not see one of them but at a chance, when she goeth to church at Christmas or at Easter or els going to visit some of her friends.

The most part of the women vse to ride a stride in saddles with stirrups, as men do, and some of them on sleds, which in summer is not commendable.

The women of Russia paint their faces.

The husband is bound to finde the wife coulers to paint her withall, for they vse ordinarily to paint themselues: it is such a common practise among them, that it is counted for no shame: they grease their faces with such coulers, that a man may discerne them hanging on their facts almost a flight shoot off: I can not so well liken them as to a millers wife, for they looke as though they were beaten about the face with a bag of meale, but their eye browes they couler as blacke as iet.

The best property that the women haue, is that they can sowe well, and imbroder with silke and golde excellently.

Of their Buriall.

When any man or woman dyeth, they stretch him out, and put a new payre of shoes on his feet, because he hath a great iourney to goe: then do they winde him in a sheet as we do, but they forget not to put a testimony in his right hand, which the priest giueth him, to testifie vnto S. Nicholas that he dyed a Christian man or woman. And they put the coarse alwayes in a coffin of wood, although the partie be very poore: and when they go towards the church, the friends and kinsemen of the party departed carry in their hands small ware candles, and they weepe and howle, and make much lamentation.

They

They that be hanged or beheaded, or ſuch like, haue no teſtimony with them: how they are receiued into heauen, it is a wonder, without their paſport.

There are a great number of poore people among them which die daily for lacke of ſuſtenance, which is a pitifull caſe to beholde: for there hath beene buried in a ſmall time, within theſe two yeers, about 80 perſons yoong and olde, which haue dyed onely for lacke of ſuſtenance: for if they had had ſtraw and water enough, they would make ſhift to liue: for a great many are forced in the winter to dry ſtraw and ſtampe it, and to make bread thereof, or at the leaſt they eat it in ſtead of bread. In the ſummer they make good ſhift with graſſe, herbs, and roots: barks of trees is good meat with them at all times. There is no people in the world, as I ſuppoſe, that liue ſo miſerably as do the pouertie in thoſe parts: and the moſt part of them that haue ſufficient for themſelues, and alſo to relieue others that need, are ſo vnmercifull that they care not how many they ſee die of famine or hunger in the ſtreets.

Bread made of ſtraw.

The vnmercifulneſſe of the Ruſſes toward the poore.

It is a countrey full of diſeaſes, diuers, and euill, and the beſt remedy is for any of them, as they holde opinion, to go often vnto the hot houſes, as in a manner euery man hath one of his owne, which he heateth commonly twiſe euery weeke, and all the houſholde ſweat, and waſh themſelues therein.

Stooues or baths vſuall with the Moſcouites.

The names of certaine ſortes of drinkes vſed in *Ruſſia, and commonly drunke in the* Emperours Court.

Reported by Tho. Bullep.

THe firſt and principall meade is made of the iuyce or licor taken from a berry called in Ruſſia, Malieno, which is of a marueilous ſweet taſte, and of a carmoſant couler, which berry I haue ſeene in Paris.

The ſecond meade is called Viſnoua, becauſe it is made of a berry ſo called, and is like a blacke gooſe berry: but it is like in couler and taſte to the red wine of France.

The third meade is called Amarodina, or Smorodina, ſhort, of a ſmall berry much like to the ſmall rezon, and groweth in great plenty in Ruſſia.

The fourth meade is called Chereunikyna, which is made of the wilde blacke cherry.

The fift meade is made of hony and water, with other mixtures.

There is alſo a delicate drinke drawne from the root of the Birch tree, called in the Ruſſe toong Berozeuites, which drinke the noble men and others vſe in Aprill, May, and June, which are the three moneths of the ſpring time: for after thoſe moneths, the ſappe of the tree dryeth, and then they cannot haue it.

The voyage of M. Anthony Ienkinſon, made from the citie of *Moſco in Ruſſia, to the citie of Boghar in Bactria, in the yere* 1558: written by himſelfe to the Merchants of London of the Moſcouie companie.

THe 23 day of Aprill, in the yeere 1558 (hauing obteined the Emperour of Ruſſia his letters, directed vnto ſundry kings and princes, by whoſe dominions I ſhould paſſe) I departed from Moſco by water, hauing with me two of your ſeruants, namely, Richard Johnſon and Robert Johnſon, and a Tartar Tolmach, with diuers parcels of wares, as by the inuentory appeareth: and the 28 day we came to a towne called Collom, diſtant from the Moſco 20 leagues, & paſſing one league beyond the ſaid Collom, we came vnto a riuer called Occa, into the which the riuer Moſco falleth, and looſeth his name: and paſſing downe the ſaid riuer Occa 8 leagues, we came vnto a caſtle called Terreuettisko, which we left vpon our right hand, and proceeding forward, the ſecond day of May, we came vnto another caſtle called Peroſlaue, diſtant 8 leagues, leauing it alſo on our right hand. The third day we came vnto the place where Olde Rezan was ſituate, being now moſt of it ruined and ouergrowen, and diſtant from the ſaid Peroſlaue 6 leagues: the 4 day we paſſed by a caſtle called Terecouia, from Rezan 12 leagues, and the 6 day we came to another caſtle called Caſſim, vnder the gouernment of a Tartar prince named Vtzar Zegoline, ſometime Emperor of the worthy citie of Cazan, and now ſubiect vnto the Emperor of Ruſſia. But leauing Caſſim on our left hand, the 8 day we came vnto a faire towne called Morom, from Caſſim 20 leagues, where we tooke the ſonne, and found the latitude 56 degrees: and proceeding forward the

11 day

11 day, we came vnto another fayre towne and castle called Nyse Nouogrod, situated at the falling of the foresaid riuer Occa into the worthy riuer of Volga, distant from the said Moron 25 leagues, in the latitude of 56 degrees 18 minuts. From Rezan to this Nyse Nouogrod on both sides the said riuer of Occa, is raised the greatest store of ware and hony in all the land of Russia. We tarryed at the foresayd Nyse Nouogrod, vntill the 19 day, for the comming of a captaine which was sent by the Emperour to rule at Astracan, who being arriued, and hauing the number of 500 great boates vnder his conduct, some laden with victuailes, souldiers, and munition: and other some with merchandize, departed altogether the said 19 day from the said Nyse Nouogrod, and the 22 we came vnto a castle called Vasiliagorod, distant 25 leagues, which we left vpon our right hand. This towne or castle had his name of this Emperours father, who was called Vasilius, and gorod in the Russe tongue, is as much to say as a castle, so that Vasiliagorod, is to say, Vasilius castle: and it was the furthest place that the sayd Emperor conquered from the Tartares. But this present Emperour his sonne, called Iuan Vasiliwich, hath had great good successe in his warres, both against the Christians and also the Mahometists and Gentils, but especially against the Tartarres, inlarging his Empyre euen to the Caspian sea, hauing conquerred the famous riuer of Volga, with all the countryes thereabout adiacent. Thus proceeding on our iourney the 25 day of May aforesaid, we came to another castle called Sabowshare, which we left on our right hand, distant from Vasiliagorod 16 leagues. The country hereabout is called Mardouits, and the habitantes did profesle the law of the Gentils: but now being conquerred by this Emperour of Russia, most of them are Christened, but lie in the woods and wildernesse, without towne or habitation.

Cazan. The 27 day we passed by another castle called Swyasko, distant from Shabowshare aforesaid 25 leagues: we left it on our right hand, and the 29 came vnto an Island one league from the citie of Cazan, from which falleth downe a riuer called Cazanka reca, & entreth into the foresaid Volga. Cazan is a fayre towne, after the Russe or Tartar fashion, with a strong castle, situated vpon a high hill, and was walled round about with timber and earth, but now the Emperour of Russia hath giuen order to plucke downe the olde walles, and to build them againe of free stone. It hath bene a citie of great wealth and riches, and being in the hands of the Tartarres, it was a kingdome of it selfe, and did more hurt the Russes in their warres, then any other nation: but 9 yeeres past, this Emperour of Russia conquered it, and tooke the king captiue, who being but young is now baptised, and brought vp in his court with two other princes, which were also kings of the said Cazan, and being ech of them in time of their raignes in danger of their subiects through ciuil discord, came and rendred themselues at seuerall times vnto the said Emperor, so that at this present there are three princes in the court of Russia, which had bene Emperours of the said Cazan, whom the Emperour vseth with great honor.

We remained at Cazan till the 13 day of June, and then departed from thence: and the same day passed by an Island called the Island of merchants, because it was woont to be a place where all merchants, as well Russes and Cazanits, as Nagayans and Crymmes, and diuers other nations did resort to keepe mart for buying and selling, but now it is forsaken, and standeth without any such resort thither, or at Cazan, or at any place about it, from Mosco vnto Mare Caspium.

Thus proceeding forward the 14 day, we passed by a goodly riuer called Cama, which we left on our left hand. This riuer falleth out of the countrey of Perania into the riuer of Volga, and is from Cazan 15 leagues, and the countrey lying betwixt the said Cazan and the said riuer Cama on the left hand of Volga is called Vachen, and the inhabitantes be Gentils, and liue in the wildernesse without house or habitation: and the countrey on the other side of Volga ouer against the said riuer Cama is called the land of Cheremizes, halfe Gentils, halfe Tartarres, and all the land on the left hand of the said Volga from the said riuer vnto Astracan, and so following the North and Northeast side of the Caspian sea, to a land of the Tartarres called Turkemen, is called the countrey of Mangat or Nagay, whose inhabitantes are of the law of Mahomet, and were all destroyed in the yeere 1558, at my being at Astracan, though ciuill warres among them, accompanyed with famine, pestilence, and such plagues, in such sort, that in the sayd yeere there was consumed of the people, in one sort and another, about one hundred thousand: the like plague was neuer seene in those parts, so that the said countrey of Nagay being a countrey of great pasture, remaineth now vnreplenished to the great contentation of the Russes, who haue had cruell warres a long time together.

The Nagayans when they florished, liued in this maner: they were diuided into diuers companies called Hoyds, and euery Hoyd had a ruler, whom they obeyed as their king, and was called a Murse. Towne or house they had none, but liued in the open fieldes, euery Murse or King hauing

hauing his Hoyds or people about him, with their wiues, children and cattell, who hauing conſumed the paſture in one place, remooued vnto another: and when they remoeue they haue houſes like tents ſet vpon wagons or carts, which are drawen from place to place with camels, and therin they haue their wiues, children, and all their riches, which is very little, is caried about, and euery man hath at the leaſt foure or fiue wiues beſides concubines. Vſe of money they haue none, but doe barter their cattell for apparell and other neceſſaries. They delight in no arte nor ſcience, except the warres, wherein they are expert, but for the moſt part they be paſturing people, and haue great ſtore of cattell, which is all their riches. They eate much fleſh, and eſpecially the horſe, and they drinke mares milke, wherewith they be oftentimes drunke: they are ſeditious and inclined to theft and murther. Corne they ſowe not, neither doe eate any bread, mocking the Chriſtians for the ſame, and diſabling our ſtrengths, ſaying we liue by eating the toppe of a weede, and drinke a drinke made of the ſame, allowing their great deuouring of fleſh, and drinking of milke to be the increaſe of their ſtrength. But now to proceed forward to my iourney. Hoyds.

All the countrey vpon our right hand the riuer Volga, from ouer againſt the riuer Cama vnto the towne of Aſtracan, is the land of Crimme, whoſe inhabitantes be alſo of the law of Mahomet, and liue for the moſt part according to the faſhions of the Nagayes, hauing continuall warres with the Emperour of Ruſſia, and are valiant in the field, hauing countenance, and ſupport from the great Turke.

The 16 day of June we paſſed by certaine fiſhermens houſes called Petowſe twentie leagues from the riuer Cama, where is great fiſhing for ſturgion, and ſo continuing our way vntill the 22 day, and paſſing by another great riuer called Samar, which falleth out of the aforeſayd countrey, and runneth through Nagay, and entreth into the ſayd riuer of Volga. The 28 day we came vnto a great hill, where was in times paſt a caſtle made by the Crimmes, but now it is ruined, being the iuſt midway betweene the ſayd Cazan and Aſtrachan, which is 200 leagues or therabout, in the latitude of 51 degrees 47 minuts. Vpon all this ſhore groweth abundance of licoriſh, whoſe root runneth within the ground like a vine. Licoriſh in great plenty.

Thus going forward the firſt day of Julie we came to a place called Perouolog, ſo named becauſe in times paſt the Tartarres carryed their boates from Volga vnto the riuer Tanais, otherwiſe called Don, by land, when they would robbe ſuch as paſſed downe the ſayd Volga to Aſtracan, and alſo ſuch as paſſed downe by the riuer Tanais, to Aſophe, Caffa, or any other towne ſituated vpon Mare Euxinum, into which ſea Tanais falleth, who hath his ſpringes in the countrey of Rezan, out of a plaine ground. It is at this ſtreight of Perouolog from the one riuer to the other two leagues by land, and is a dangerous place for theeues and robbers, but now it is not ſo euill as it hath beene, by reaſon of the Emperour of Ruſſia his conqueſts.

Departing from Perouolog, hauing the wildernеſſe on both ſides, we ſaw a great heard of Nagayans, paſturing, as is aboueſayd, by eſtimation aboue a thouſand cammels drawing of carts with houſes vpon them like tentes, of a ſtrange faſhion, ſeeming to be a farre off a towne: that Hoyd was belonging to a great Murſe called Smille, the greateſt prince in all Nagay, who hath ſlaine and driuen away all the reſt, not ſparing his owne brethren and children, and hauing peace with this Emperour of Ruſſia he hath what he needeth, and ruleth alone, ſo that now the Ruſſes liue in peace with the Nagayans, who were woont to haue mortall warres together.

The 14 day of July paſſing by an olde caſtle, which was Olde Aſtracan, and leauing it vpon our right hand, we arriued at New Aſtracan, which this Emperour of Ruſſia conquered ſixe yeeres paſt, in the yeere 1552. It is from the Moſco vnto Aſtracan ſixe hundreth leagues, or there about. The towne of Aſtracan is ſituated in an Iſland vpon a hill ſide, hauing a caſtle within the ſame, walled about with earth and timber, neither fayre nor ſtrong, the towne is alſo walled about with earth: the buildinges and houſes (except it be the captaines lodging, and certeine other gentlemens) moſt baſe and ſimple. The Iſland is moſt deſtitute and barren of wood and paſture, and the ground will beare no corne: the ayre is there moſt infected, by reaſon (as I ſuppoſe) of much fiſhe, and ſpecially ſturgion, by which onely the inhabitantes liue, hauing great ſcarſitie of fleſh and bread. They hang vp their fiſh in their ſtreetes and houſes to dry for their proviſion, which cauſeth ſuch abundance of flyes to increaſe there, as the like was neuer ſeene in any land, to their great plague. And at my being at the ſayd Aſtracan, there was a great famine and plague among the people, and ſpecially among the Tartarres called Nagayans, who the ſame time came thither in great numbers to render themſelues to the Ruſſes their enemies, and to ſeeke ſuccour at their hands, their countrey being deſtroyed, as I ſaid before: but they were but ill intertained or relieued, for there dyed a great number of them for hunger, which lay all the Iſlande through in heapes dead, and like to beaſtes, vnburyed, very pitifull to beholde: many of them Aſtracan.

were

were also solde by the Russes, and the rest were banished from the Island. At that time it had been an easie thing to haue conuerted that wicked Nation to the Christian faith, if the Russes themselues had beene good Christians: but how should they shew compassion vnto other Nations, when they are not mercifull vnto their owne. At my being there I could haue bought many goodly Tartars children, if I would haue had a thousande, of their owne fathers and mothers, to say, a boy or a wench for a loafe of bread worth fiue pence in England, but we had more need of victualles at that time then of any such merchandize. This Astracan is the furthest holde that this Emperour of Russia hath conquered of the Tartars towardes the Caspian sea, which hee keepeth very strong, sending thither euery yeere prouision of men, and victualles, and timber to builde the castle.

There is a certaine trade of merchandize there vsed, but as yet so small and beggerly, that it is not worth the making mention, and yet there come merchantes thither from diuers places. The chiefest commodities that the Russes bring thither are redde hides, redde sheepe skinnes, woodden vessels, bridles, and saddles, kniues, and other trifles, with corne, bacon, and other victualles. The Tartars bring thither diuers kindes of warres made of cotten wooll, with diuers kindes of wrought silkes: and they that come out of Persia, namely from Shamackie do bring sowing silke, which is the coursest that they vse in Russeland, Craska, diuers kindes of pide silkes for girdles, shirts of male, bowes, swoords, and such like things: and some yeeres corne, and walnuts, but all such thinges in such small quantitie, the merchantes being so beggerly and poore that bring the same, that it is not worth the writing, neither is there any hope of trade in all those parts worth the following.

The length of the Island of Astracan.

This foresaid Island of Astracan is in length twelue leagues, and in breadth three, and lieth East and West in the latitude of fortie seuen degrees nine minuts: we tarryed there vntill the first day of August, and hauing bought and prouided a boate in companye with certaine Tartars and Persians, we laded our goods, and imbarked our selues, and the same day departed I, with the said two Johnsons hauing the whole charge of the Nauigation downe the said riuer Volga, being very crooked, and full of flats toward the mouth thereof. We entred into the Caspian sea the tenth day of August at the Easterly side of the said riuer, being twentie leagues from Astracan aforesaid, in the latitude of fortie fiue degrees twentie seuen minuts.

Volga.

Volga hath seuentie mouthes or falles into the sea: and we hauing a large winde, kept the Northeast shoare, and the eleuenth day we sailed seuen leagues Eastnortheast, and came vnto an Island hauing an high hill thereon, called Accurgar, a good marke in the sea. From thence Eastten leagues, we fell with another Island called Bawhyata, much higher then the other. Within these two Islands to the Northwards, is a great bay called the Blew sea. From thence we sayled East and by North tenne leagues, and hauing a contrary winde, we came to an anker in a fathom water, and so ridde vntill the fifteenth day, hauing a great storme at Southeast, being a most contrary winde, which we ridde out. Then the winde came to the North, and we weyed, and set our course Southeast, and that day sayled eight leagues.

Thus proceeding forwards, the seuenteenth day we lost sight of land, and the same day sayled thirtie leagues, and the eightеenth day twentie leagues winding East, and fell with a land

Baughlata.

called Baughleata, being seuentie foure leagues from the mouth of the foresayd Volga, in the latitude of fortie fiue degrees fiftie foure minuts, the coast lying neerest East and by South, and West and by North. At the poynt of this land lyeth buryed a holye Prophet, as the Tartars call him, of theyr lawe, where great deuotion is vsed of all such Mahometistes as doe passe that waye.

The nineteenth day the winde being West, and we winding Eastsoutheast, we sailed tenne leagues, and passed by a great riuer called Yake, which hath his spring in the lande of Siberia, nigh vnto the foresayd riuer Cama, and runneth through the land of Nagay, falling into this

Serachike.

Mare Caspium. And vp this riuer one dayes iourney is a towne called Serachicke, subiect to the aforesayd Tartar prince called Murse Smille, which is now in friendshippe with the Emperour of Russia. Heere is no trade of merchandize vsed, for that the people haue no vse of money, and are all men of warre, and pasturers of cattell, and giuen much to theft and murther. This being at an anker against this riuer Yake, and all our men being on lande, sauing I, who lay sore sicke, and fiue Tartars, whereof one was reputed a holy man, because hee came from Mecka, there came vnto vs a boate with thirtie men well armed and appoynted, who boorded vs, and beganne to enter into our barke, and our holy Tartar called Azy, perceiuing that, asked them what they would haue, and withall made a prayer: with that these rouers stayed, declaring that they were Gentlemen, banished from theyr countrey, and out of liuing, and came to seeke

them

there were any Russes or other Christians (which they call Caphars) in our barke: to whom this Azie most stoutly answered, that there were none, auowing the same by great othes of their lawe, (which lightly they will not breake) whom the rouers beleeued, and vpon his wordes departed. And so through the fidelitie of that Tartar, I with all my companie and goods were saued, and our men being come on boorde, and the winde faire, wee departed from that place, and winding East and Southeast, that day being the second of August sailed 16. leagues.

The 2. day wee passed ouer a bay of 6. leagues broade, and fell with a Cape of land, hauing two Ilands at the Southeast part thereof, being a good marke in the sea: and doubling that Cape the land trended Northeast, and maketh another bay, into which falleth the great riuer Yem, springing out of the land of Colmacke.

The Countrie of Colmacke.

The 22. 23. and 24. dayes, we were at an ancre.

The 25. the winde came faire, and we sailed that day 20. leagues, and passed by an Iland of low land, and there about are many flats and sands: and to the Northward of this Iland there goeth in a great bay, but wee set off from this Iland, and winded South to come into deepe water, being much troubled with shoalds and flats, and ranne that course 10. leagues, then East Southeast 20. leagues, and fel with the maine land, being full of copped hils, and passing along the coast 20. leagues, the further we sailed, the higher was the land.

The 27. day we crossed ouer a bay, the Southshoare being the higher land, and fell with a high point of land: and being ouerthwart the Cape, there rose such a storme at the East, that we thought verily we should haue perished: this storme continued 3. dayes. From this Cape we passed to a port called Mangoslaue. The place where wee should haue arriued at the Southermost part of the Caspian sea, is 12. leagues within a bay: but wee being sore tormented, and tossed with this foresaid storme, were driuen vnto another land on the other side the bay, ouerthwart the said Mangoslaue being very lowe land, and a place as well for the ill commoditie of the hauen, as of those brute fielde people where neuer barke nor boate had before arriued, not liked of vs.

But yet here we sent certaine of our men to lande to talke with the gouernour and people, as well for our good vsage at their handes, as also for prouision of camels to carry our goods from the saide sea side to a place called Sellyzure, being from the place of our landing fiue and twentie dayes iourney. Our messengers returned with comfortable wordes and faire promises of all things.

Wherefore the 3. day of September 1558. wee discharged our barke, and I with my companie were gently intertained of the Prince, and of his people. But before our departure from thence, wee founde them to bee very badde and brutish people, for they ceased not dayly to molest vs, either by fighting, stealing or begging, rayling the price of horse and camels, and victuals double, that the wont was there to bee, and forced vs to buy the water that wee did drinke: which caused vs to hasten away, and to conclude with them as well for the hier of camels, as for the price of such as wee bought, with other prouision, according to their owne demaunde: So that for euery camels lading being but 400. waight of ours, wee agreed to giue three hides of Russia, and foure wodden dishes, and to the Prince or gouernour of the saide people one ninth and two seuenths, Namely, 9. seuerall things, and twise 7. seuerall things: for money they vse none.

And thus being readie, the fourteenth of September wee departed from that place, being a Caruan of 1000. camels. And hauing trauailed fiue dayes iourney, wee came to another Princes Dominion, and vpon the way there came vnto vs certaine Tartars a horsebacke, being well armed, and seruants vnto the said Prince called Timor Soltan, gouernour of the said Countrey of Mangoslaue, where we ment to haue arriued and discharged our barke if the great storme aforesaid had not disappointed. These foresaid Tartars stayed our Caruan in the name of their prince, and opened our wares, and tooke such things as they thought best for their said prince without money, but for such things as they tooke from me, which was a ninth, (after much dissension) I rode vnto the same Prince, and presented my selfe before him, requesting his fauour, and passport to trauaile through his countrey, and not to be robbed nor spoiled of his people: which request he graunted me, and intertained me very gently, commanding mee to be well feasted with flesh and mares milke: for bread they vse none, nor other drinke except water: but money he had none to giue mee for such things as hee tooke of mee, which might bee of value in Russe money, fifteene rubbles, but hee gaue mee his letter, and a horse worth seuen rubbles. And so I departed from him being glad that I was gone: for hee was reported to bee a very tyrant, and if I had not gone vnto him, I vnderstoode his commaundement was, that I should haue bene robbed and destroyed.

This Soltan liued in the fieldes without Castle or towne, and sate at my being with him,

in a litle rounde house made of reedes couered without with felt, and within with Carpets. There was with him the great Metropolitan of that wilde Countrey, esteemed of the people, as the Bishop of Rome is in most parts of Europe, with diuers other of his chiefe men: the Soltan with this Metropolitan, demanded of me many questions, as wel touching our kingdoms, lawes, and Religion, as also the cause of my comming into those parts, with my further pretence. To whom I answered concerning all things, as vnto me seemed best, which they tooke in good part. So leauing leaue I departed and ouertooke our Caraman, and proceeded on our iourney, and trauailed 20. dayes in the wildernes from the sea side without seeing towne or habitation, carying prouision of victuals with vs for the same time, and were driuen by necessitie to eate one of my camels and a horse for our part, as other did the like, and during the said 20. dayes we found no water, but such as we dre we out of olde deepe wells, being very brackish and salt, and yet sometimes passed two or three dayes without the same. And the 5. day of October ensuing, we came vnto a gulphe of the Caspian sea againe, where wee founde the water very fresh and sweete: at this gulphe the customers of the king of Turkeman met vs, who tooke custome of euery 25. one, and 7. ninthes for the saide king and his brethren, which being receiued they departed, and we remained there a day after to refresh our selues.

Note that in times past there did fal into this gulfe þ great riuer Oxus, which hath his springs in the mountaines of Paraponisus in India, and now commeth not so farre, but falleth into another riuer called Ardocke, which runneth towarde the North, and consumeth himselfe in the ground, passing vnder ground aboue 1000. miles, and then issueth out againe and falleth into the lake of Kithay.

Sellizure, or Shapsure.

We hauing refreshed our selues at the foresaide gulfe, departed thence the 4. day of October, and the 7. day arriued at a Castle called Sellizure, where the king (called Azim Can) remained with 3. other of his brethren, and the 9. day I was commaunded to come before his presence, whome I deliuered the Emperours letters of Russia: and I also gaue him a present of a ninche, who entertained me very well, and caused mee to eate in his presence as his brethren did, feasting me with flesh of a wilde horse, and mares milke without bread. And the next day sent for me againe, and asked of me diuers questions, as well touching the affaires of the Emperour of Russia, as of our Countrey and lawes, to which I answered as I thought good: so that at my departure he gaue me his letters of safe conduct.

This Castle of Sellizure is situated vpon an high hill, where the king called the Canbeth, whose palace is built of earth very basely, and not strong: the people are but poore, and litle trade of marchandise among them. The South part of this Castle is lowe lande, but very fruitfull, where growe many good fruites, among which there is one called a Dynie of a great bignesse and full of moysture, which the people doe eate after meate in steade of drinke. Also there growes another fruite called a Carbuse of the bignesse of a great cucumber, yellow and sweet as sugar: also a certaine corne called Iegur, whose stalke is much like a sugar cane, and as high, and the graine like rice, which groweth at the toppe of the cane like a cluster of grapes; the water that serueth all that Countrey is drawen by diches out of the riuer Oxus, vnto the great destruction of the said riuer, for which cause it falleth not into the Caspian sea as it hath done in times past, and in short time all that lande is like to be destroyed, and to become a wildernes for want of water, when the riuer of Oxus shall faile.

The 14. day of the moneth we departed from this Castle of Sellizure, and the 16. of the same we arriued at a citie called Vrgense, where we payde custome as well for our owne heads as for our camels and horse. And hauing there soiourned one moneth, attending the time of our further trauaile, the king of that Countrey called Aly Soltan, brother to the forenamed Azym Can, returned from a towne called Corozan within the borders of Persia, which hee lately had conquered from the Persians, with whome hee and the rest of the kings of Tartaria haue continuall warres. Before this king also I was commaunded to come, to whome I likewise presented the Emperours letters of Russia, and he intertained me well, and demaunded of me diuers questions, and at my departure gaue me his letters of safe conduct.

This Citie or towne of Vrgence standeth in a plaine ground, with walles of earth, by estimation 4. miles about it. The buildings within it are also of earth, but ruined and out of good order: it hath one long streete that is couered aboue, which is the place of their market. It hath been wonne and lost 4. times within 7. yeeres by ciuill warres, by meanes whereof there are but few marchants in it, and they very poore, and in all that towne I could not sell aboue 4. carseis. The chiefest commodities there solde, are such wares as come from Boghar, and out of Persia, but in most small quantitie not worth the writing. All the land from the Caspian sea to this Citie of Vrgence,

gence, is called the lande of Turkeman, and is ſubiect to the ſaide Azim Can, and his brethren which be 5. in number, and one of them hath the name of the chiefe king called Can, but he is litle obeyed ſauing in his owne Dominion, and where hee dwelleth: for euery one will be king of his owne portion, and one brother ſeeketh alwayes to deſtroy another, hauing no naturall loue among them, by reaſon that they are begotten of diuers women, and commonly they are the children of ſlaues, either Chriſtians or Gentiles, which the father doeth keepe as concubines, and euery Can or Sultan, hath at the leaſt 4. or 5. wiues, beſides yong maydens and boyes, liuing moſt viciouſly: and when there are warres betwixt theſe brethren, (as they are ſeldome without) hee that is ouercome if hee be not ſlaine, flieth to the fielde with ſuch companie of men as will followe him, and there liueth in the wildernes reſorting to watering places, and ſo robbeth and ſpoyleth as many Caruans of Marchants and others as they be able to ouercome, continuing in this ſort his wicked life, vntill ſuch time as hee may get power and ayde to inuade ſome of his brethren againe. From the Caſpian ſea vnto the Caſtle of Sellizure aforeſaid, and all the Countreis about the ſaid ſea, the people liue without towne or habitation in the wilde fieldes, remouing from one place to another in great companies with their cattle, whereof they haue great ſtore, as camels, horſes, and ſheepe both tame and wilde. Their ſheepe are of great ſtature with great buttockes, waying 60. or 80. pound in waight. There are many wilde horſes, which the Tartars doe many times kill with their haukes, and that in this order.

The haukes are lured to ſeaſe vpon the beaſtes neckes or heads, which with chafing of themſelues and ſore beating of the haukes are tired: then the hunter following his game, doeth ſlay the horſe with his arrowe or ſword. In all this lande there groweth no graſſe, but a certaine buſh or heath whereon the cattell feeding, become very fat.

The Tartars neuer ride without their bowe, arrowes, and ſword, although it be on hauking, or at any other pleaſure, and they are good archers both on horſebacke, and on foote alſo. Theſe people haue not the vſe of golde, ſiluer, or any other coyne, but when they lacke apparell or other neceſſaries, they barter their cattell for the ſame. Bread they haue none, for they neither till nor ſow, they be great deuourers of fleſh, which they cut in ſmall pieces, and eate it by handfuls moſt greedily, eſpecially the horſefleſh. Their chiefeſt drinke is mares milke ſowred, as I haue ſaid before of the Nagayans, and they wilbe drunke with the ſame: they haue no riuers nor places of water in this countrey, vntil you come to the foreſaid gulfe, diſtant from the place of our lading 20. dayes iourney, except it be in wels, the water whereof is ſaltiſh, & yet diſtant the one from the other two dayes iourney and more. They eate their meate vpon the ground, ſitting with their leggs double vnder them, and ſo alſo when they pray. Arte or ſcience they haue none, but liue moſt idlely, ſitting round in great companies in the fields, deuiſing, and talking moſt vainely.

The 26. day of Nouember, wee departed from the towne of Vrgence, and hauing trauailed by the riuer Oxus 100. mile, we paſſed ouer another great riuer called Ardocke, where we paid a certaine petie cuſtome. This riuer Ardocke is great, and very ſwift, falling out of the foreſaid Oxus, and paſſing about 1000. mile to the Northward, it then conſumeth it ſelfe in the ground, and paſſing vnder the ſame about 500. mile, iſſueth out againe, and falleth into the lake of Kitay, as I haue before declared.

The 7. of December following, wee arriued at a Caſtle called Kait, ſubiect to a Soltan called Saramet Soltan, who ment to haue robbed all the Chriſtians in the Caruan, had it not bene for feare of his brother the king of Vrgence, as we were informed by one of his chiefeſt counſailers, who willed vs to make him a preſent, which he tooke, and deliuered: beſides we paide at the ſaide Caſtle for cuſtome, of euery camel one red hide of Ruſſia, beſides petie gifts to his officers.

Thus proceeding in our iourney, the tenth day at night being at reſt, and our watche ſet, there came vnto vs foure horſemen, which we tooke as ſpies, from whome wee tooke their weapons and bound them, and hauing well examined them, they confeſſed that they had ſeene the tract of many horſemen, and no footing of camels, and gaue vs to vnderſtande, that there were rouers and theeues abroade: for there trauaile ſtwe people that are true and peaceable in that Countrey, but in companie of Caruan, where there be many camels, and horſefeeting ne we without camels were to be doubted. Whereupon we conſulted & determined amongſt our ſelues, and ſent a poſte to the ſaide Soltan of Kayre, who immediatly came himſelfe with 300. men, and met theſe foure ſuſpected men which we ſent vnto him, and examined them ſo ſtraightly, and threatened them in ſuch ſort, that they confeſſed, there was a baniſhed Prince with 40. men 3. dayes iourney forward, who lay in waite to deſtroy vs, if he could, and that they themſelues were of his companie.

The Soltan therefore vnderſtanding that the theeues were not many, appointed vs 80. men well armed with a Capeaine to goe with vs, and conduct vs in our way. And the Soltan himſelfe

returned backe againe, taking the 4. theeues with him. These souldiers trauailed with vs two dayes, consuming much of our victuals. And the 3. day in the morning very earely, they sent one before our Caruan, and hauing ranged the wildernes for the space of foure houres, they mette vs comming towardes vs, as fast as their horse could runne, and declared that they had found the tract of horses not farre from vs, perceiuing well that wee should meete with enemies, and therfore willed vs to appoint our selues for them, and asked vs what we would giue them to conduct vs further, or els they would returne. To whome we offered as we thought good, but they refused our offer, and would haue more, and so we not agreeing they departed from vs, and went backe to their Soltane, who (as wee coniectured) was priuie to the conspiracie. But they being gone, certaine Tartars of our companie called holy men, (because they had bene at Mecha) caused the whole Caruan to stay, and would make their prayers, and deuine howe wee should prosper in our iourney, and whether we should meete with any ill companie or no, to which, our whole Caruan did agree, and they tooke certaine sheepe and killed them, and tooke the blade bones of the same, and first sodde them, and then burnt them, and tooke of the blood of the saide sheepe, and mingled it with the powder of the saide bones, and wrote certaine Characters with the saide blood, vsing many other ceremonies and wordes, and by the same deuined and founde, that wee should meete with enemies and theeues (to our great trouble) but should ouercome them, to which sorcerie, I and my companie gaue no credite, but we found it true: for within 3. houres after that the souldiers departed from vs, which was the 15. day of December in the morning, we espied farre off diuers horsemen which made towards vs, and we (perceiuing them to be rouers) gathered our selues together, being 40. of vs well appointed, and able to fight, and wee made our prayers together euery one after his lawe, professing to liue and die one with another, and so prepared our selues. When the theeues were nigh vnto vs, we perceiued them to be in nomber 37. men well armed, and appointed with bowes, arrowes and swords, and the Captaine a prince banished from his Countrey. They willed vs to yeelde our selues, or els to bee slaine, but wee defied them, wherewith they shotte at vs all at once, and wee at them very hotly, and so continued our fight from morning vntill two houres within night, diuers men, horses and camels being wounded and slaine on both partes: and had it not bene for 4. handgunnes which I and my companie had and vsed, we had bene ouercome and destroyed: for the theeues were better armed, and were also better archers then we; But after wee had slaine diuers of their men and horses with our gunnes, they durst not approche so nigh, which caused them to come to a truce with vs vntill the next morning, which we accepted, and encamped our selues vpon a hill, and made the fashion of a Castle, walling it about with packes of wares, and layde our horses and camels within the same to saue them from the shotte of arrowes: and the theeues also incamped within an arrowe shotte also of vs, but they were betwixt vs and the water, which was to our great discomfort, because neither we nor our camels had drunke in 2. dayes before.

Thus keeping good watche, when halfe the night was spent, the Prince of the theeues sent a messenger halfe way vnto vs, requiring to talke with our Captaine in their tongue, the Caruan Bassa, who answered the messenger, I will not depart from my companie to goe into the halfe way to talke with thee: but if that thy Prince with all his companie will sweare by our Lawe to keepe the truce, then will I sende a man to talke with thee, or els not. Which the Prince vnderstanding as well himselfe as his companie, swore so lowde that wee might all heare. And then wee sent one of our companie (reputed a holy man) to talke with the same messenger. The message was pronounced aloude in this order, Our Prince demaundeth of the Caruan Bassa, and of all you that be Bussarmans, (that is to say circumcised) not destroy your bloods, that you deliuer into his handes as many Caphars, that is, vnbeleeuers (meaning vs the Christians) as are among you with their goods, and in so doing, hee will suffer you to depart with your goods in quietnesse, and to the contrary, you shall be handled with no lesse crueltie then the Caphars, if he ouercome you, as he doubteth not. To the which our Caruan Bassa answered, that hee had no Christians in his companie, nor other strangers, but two Turkes which were of their Lawe, and although hee had, hee would rather die then deliuer them, and that wee were not afraide of his threatnings, and that should hee knowe when day appeared. And so passing in talke, the theeues (contrary to their othe) carried our holy man away to their Prince, crying with a lowde voyce in token of victorie, Ollo, ollo. Wherewith we were much discomforted, fearing that that holy man would betray vs: but hee being cruelly handled and much examined, would not to death confesse any thing which was to vs preiudiciall, neither touching vs, nor yet what men they had slaine and wounded of ours the day before. When the night was spent, in the morning we prepared our selues to battel againe, which the theeues perceiuing, required to fall to agreement & assented much

of

of vs: And to be briefe, the most part of our companie being loth to go to battel againe, and hauing litle to loose, & safe conduct to passe, we were compelled to agree, & to giue the theeues 20. ninthes (that is to say) 20. times 9. seuerall things, and a camell to carie away the same, which being receiued, the thieues departed into the wildernes to their olde habitation, and we went on our way forward. And that night came to the riuer Oxus, where wee refreshed our selues, hauing bene 3. dayes without water, and drinke, and tarried there all the next day, making merry with our slaine horses and camels, and then departed from that place, & for feare of meeting with the said theeues againe or such like, wee left the high way which went along the saide riuer, and passed through a wildernes of sand, and trauailed 4. dayes in the same before we came to water: and then came to a well the water being very brackish, and we then as before were in neede of water, and of other victuals, being forced to kill our horses and camels to eate. The riuer of Oxus.

In this wildernes also we had almost fallen into the handes of theeues: for one night being at rest, there came certaine scoutes, and caried away certaine of our men which lay a little separated from the Caruan, wherewith there was a great shoute and cry, and we immediatly laded our camels, and departed being about midnight and very darke, and drone fore till wee came to the riuer Oxus againe, and then we feared nothing being walled with the said riuer: and whether it was for that we had gotten the water, or for that the same theeues were farre from vs when the scoutes discouered vs, we know not, but we escaped that danger.

So vpon the 23. day of December wee arriued at the citie of Boghar in the lande of Bactria. This Boghar is situated in the lowest part of all the land, walled about with a high wall of earth, with diuers gates into the same: it is deuided into 3. partitions, whereof two parts are the kings, and the 3. part is for Marchants and markets, and euery science hath their dwelling and market by themselues. The Citie is very great, and the houses for the most part of earth, but there are also many houses, temples and monuments of stone sumptuously builded, and gilt, and specially bathstones so artificially built, that the like thereof is not in the worlde: the maner whereof is to long to rehearse. There is a little Riuer running through the middes of the saide Citie, but the water thereof is most vnholsome, for it breedeth sometimes in men that drinke thereof, and especially in them that be not there borne, a worme of an ell long, which lieth commonly in the legge betwixt the flesh and the skinne, and is pluckt out about the ancle with great art and cunning, the Surgeons being much practised therein, and if shee breake in plucking out, the partie dieth, and euery day she commeth out about an inche, which is rolled vp, and so worketh till shee be all out. And yet it is there forbidden to drinke any other thing then water, & mares milke, and whosoeuer is found to breake that lawe is whipped and beaten most cruelly through the open markets, and there are officers appointed for the same, who haue authoritie to goe into any mans house, to searche if hee haue either Aquauitæ, wine, or brage, and finding the same, doe breake the vessels, spoyle the drinke, and punish the masters of the house most cruelly, yea, and many times if they perceiue but by the breath of a man that he hath drunke, without further examination hee shall not escape their handes. Boghar a citie of Bactria.

There is a Metropolitane in this Boghar, who causeth this lawe to be so streighely kept, and he is more obeyed then the king, and will depose the king, and place another at his will and pleasure, as hee did by this king that raigned at our being there, and his predecessour, by the meanes of the saide Metropolitan: for hee betrayed him, and in the night slewe him in his chamber, who was a Prince that loued all Christians well.

This Countrey of Boghar was sometime subiect to the Persians, and doe now speake the Persian tongue, but yet now it is a kingdome of it selfe, and hath most cruel warres continually with the saide Persians about their religion, although they be all Mahometists. One occasion of their warres is, for that the Persians will not cut the haire of their vpper lippes, as the Bogharians and all other Tartars doe, which they accompt great sinne, and cal them Caphars, that is, vnbeleeuers, as they doe the Christians.

The king of Boghar hath no great power or riches, his reuenues are but small, and he is most maintained by the Citie: for he taketh the tenth penie of all things that are there solde, as wel by the craftes men, as by the Marchants, to the great impouerishment of the people, whome her keepeth in great subiection, and when he lacketh money, hee sendeth his officers to the shoppes of the saide Marchants to take their wares to pay his debts, and will haue credite of force, as the like he did to pay mee certaine money that hee owed me for 19. pieces of carsey. Their money is siluer and copper, for golde there is none currant: they haue but one piece of siluer, & that is worth 12. peace English, and the copper money are called Pooles, and 120. of them goeth to the value of the said 12. d. and is more cõmon paiment then the siluer, which the king causeth to rise and fall to his

most aduantage euery other moneth, and sometimes twise in a moneth, not caring to oppresse his people, for that hee looketh not to raigne aboue 2. or 3. yeeres before hee be either slaine or driuen away to the great destruction of the Countrey and marchants.

The 26. day of the moneth I was commanded to come before the said king, to whom I presented the Emperour of Russia his letters, who interteined vs most gently, and caused vs to eate in his presence, and diuers times he sent for me, and deuised with me familiarly in his secret chamber, as well of the power of the Emperour, and the great Turke, as also of our countrey, lawes, and religion, and caused vs to shoote in handgunnes before him, and did himselfe practise the vse thereof. But after all this great intertainement before my departure he shewed himselfe a very Tartar: for he went to the warres owing me money, and sawe mee not paide before his departure; And although in deede hee gaue order for the same, yet was I very ill satisfied, and forced to rebate part, and to take wares as paiment for the rest contrary to my expectation, but of a beggar, better paiment I could not haue, and glad I was so to be paide and dispatched.

But yet I must needes praise and commende this barbarous king, who immediatly after my arriuall at Boghar, hauing vnderstoode our trouble with the theeues, sent 100. men well armed, and gaue them great charge not to returne before they had either slaine or taken the saide theeues. Who according to their commission ranged the wildernes in such sort, that they met with the said companie of theeues, and slewe part, and part fledde, and foure they tooke and brought vnto the king, and two of them were sore wounded in our skirmish with our gunners: And after the king had sent for me to come to see them, hee caused them all 4. to be hanged at his palace gate, because they were Gentlemen to the example of others. And of such goods as were gotten againe, I had part restored me, and this good iustice I found at his handes.

There is yeerely great resort of Marchants to this Citie of Boghar, which trauaile in great Carauant from the Countries thereabout adioyning, as India, Persia, Balke, Russia, with diuers others, and in times past from Cathay, when there was passage, but these Marchants are so beggerly and poore, and bring so little quantitie of wares, lying two or 3. yeeres to sell the same, that there is no hope of any good trade there to be had worthy the following.

The chiefe commodities that are brought thither out of these foresaide Countreys, are these following.

The Indians doe bring fine whites, which the Tartars doe roll about their heads, and all other kinds of whites, which serue for apparell made of cotton wooll and crasko, but golde, siluer, pretious stones, and spices they bring none. I enquired and perceiued that all such trade passeth to the Ocean sea, and the vaines where all such things are gotten, are in the subiection of the Portingals. The Indians carie from Boghar againe, wrought silkes, redde hides, slaues and horses, with such like, but of carseis and other clothe, they make litle accompt. I offered to barter with Marchants of those Countreis, which came from the furthest parts of India, euen from the Countrey of Bengala, & the Riuer Ganges, to giue them carseis for their commodities, but they would not barter for such commoditie as cloth.

The Persians doe bring thither Craska, wollen cloth, linnen clothe, diuers kindes of wrought pide silkes, Argomacks, with such like, and doe carrie from thence redde hides with other Russe wares, and slaues which are of diuers Countreis, but cloth they will buy none, for that they bring thither themselues, and is brought vnto them as I haue enquired from Aleppo in Syria, and the parts of Turkie. The Russes doe carrie vnto Boghar, redde hides, sheepes kinnes, wollen cloth of diuers sorts, wodden vessels, bridles, saddles, with such like, and doe carrie away from thence, diuers kindes of wares made of cotton woll, diuers kindes of silkes, Crasca, with other things, but there is but small veterance. From the Countreis of Cathay is brought thither in time of peace, and when the way is open, muske, rubarbe, satton, damaske, with diuers other things: at my being at Boghare, there came Carauans out of all these foresaid Countreis, except from Cathay, and the cause why there came none from thence, was the great warres that had dured 3. yeeres before my comming thither, and yet dured betwixt 2. great Countreis and cities of Tartars, that are directly in the way betwixt the said Boghar and the said Cathay, and certaine barbarous fielde people, as well Gentiles as Mahometists bordering to the saide Cities. The cities are called Taskent and Caskayre, and the people that warre against Taskent are called Cassaks of the law of Mahomet, and they which warre with the said countrey of Caskayre, are called Kings, Gentiles & idolaters. These 2. barbarous nations are of great force liuing in the fieldes without house or towne, & haue almost subdued the foresaide cities, & so stopped vp the way, that it is impossible for any Carauan to passe vnspoiled, so that 3. yeeres before our being there, no Carauan had gone, or vsed trade betwixt the Countreis of Cathay, and Boghare, & when the way is cleare, it is 9. moneths iourney.

To

To speake of the said Countrey of Cathay, and of such newes as I haue heard therof, I haue thought it best to reserue it to our meeting. I hauing made my solace at Boghar, in the Winter time, and hauing learned by much inquisition, the trade thereof, as also of all the other Countries thereto adioyning, and the time of the yeere being come, for all Caruans to depart, and also the king being gone to the warres, and newes came, that he was fled, and I aduertised by the Metropolitan himselfe, that I should depart, because the Towne was like to be besieged: I thought it good and meete, to take my iourney some way, and determined to haue gone from thence into Persia, and to haue seene the trade of that Countrey, although I had enformed my selfe sufficiently thereof, as well at Astracan, as at Boghar: and perceaued well the trades, not to be much vnlike the trades of Tartaria: but when I should haue taken my iourney that way, it was let by diuers occasions: the one was, the great warres that did newly begin betwixt the Sophie, and the kings of Tartaria, where by the waies they were destroied: and there was a Carrauan destroyed with rouers, and theeues, which came out of India, and Persia, by safe conduct: and about ten daies iourney from Boghar, they were robbed, and a great part slaine. Also the Metropolitane of Boghar, who is greater then the king, tooke the Emperours letters of Russia from me, without which I should haue bene taken slaue in euery place: also all such wares as I had receaued in barter for cloth, and as I tooke perforce of the king, and other his Nobles, in paiment of monie due vnto me, were not vendible in Persia: for which causes, and diuers others, I was constrained to come backe againe to Mare Caspium, the same way I went: so that the eight of March, 1559. we departed out of the said Citie of Boghar, being a Carauan of 600. Camels, and if we had not departed when we did, I and my companie had bene in danger to haue lost life and goods. For ten daies after our departure, the king of Samarc and came with an armie, & besieged the said Citie of Boghar, the king being absent, and gone to the warres against another prince, his kinsman, as the like chanceth in those Countries, once in two or three yeeres. For it is maruell, if a king raigne there aboue three or foure yeeres, to the great destruction of the Countrey, and marchants.

The 25. of March, we came to the foresaid towne of Vrgence, and escaped the danger of 400. theeues, which lay in waite for vs backe againe, being the most of them of kindred to that companie of theeues, which we met with going fourth, as we perceaued by foure spies, which were taken. There were in my companie, and committed to my charge, two Ambassadours, the one from the king of Boghar, the other from the king of Balke, and were sent vnto the Emperour of Russia: and after hauing taried at Vrgence, and the Castle of Zellysure, eight daies for the assembling, and making ready of our Caruan: the second of Aprill we departed from thence, hauing foure moe Ambassadors in our company, sent from the king of Vrgence, and other Soltans, his brethren, vnto the Emperour of Russia, with answere of such letters as I brought them: and the same Ambassadors were also committed vnto my charge, by the said kings, and princes: to whome I promised most faithfully, and swore by our lawe, that they should be well vsed in Rusland, and suffered to depart from thence againe in safetie, according as the Emperour had written also in his letters: for they somwhat doubted, because there had none gone out of Tartaria into Russia, of long time before. Vrgence.

The 23. of Aprill, we arriued at the Mare Caspium againe, where we founde our barke which we came in, but neither anker, cable, cocke nor saile: neuertheless we brought hempe with vs, and spunne a cable our selues, with the rest of our tackling, and made vs a saile of cloth of cotton woll, and rigged our barke, as well as we could, but boate or anker we had none. In the meane time, being deuising to make an anker of wood of a cart wheele, there arriued a barke, which came from Astracan, with Tartars, and Russes, which had two ankers, with whom I agreed for the one: and thus being in a readines, we set saile, and departed, I, and the two Iohnsons being Master and Purriners our selues, hauing in our barke the said fiue Ambassadors, and 25. Russes, which had bene slaues a long time in Tartaria, nor euer had before my comming, libertie, or meanes to get home, and these slaues serued to rowe when neede was. Thus sailing sometimes along the coast, and sometimes out of sight of land, the 13. day of May, hauing a contrarie winde, we came to an anker, being three leagues from the shoare, & there rose a sore storme, which continued 44. houres, and our cable being of our owne spinning, brake, and lost our anker, and being off a lee shoare, and hauing no boate to helpe vs, we hoised our saile, and bare roomer with the said shoare, looking for present death: but as God prouided for vs, we came into a creeke full of ooze, and so saued our selues with our barke, we liued in great discomfort for a time. For although we should haue escaped with our liues the danger of the sea, yet if our barke had perished, we knew we should haue bene, either destroied, or taken slaues by the people of that Countrey, who liue wildly in the field, like beastes, without house or habitation. Thus when the storme was ceased, we went out of the creeke again:

and

and hauing sette the lande with our Compasse, and taken certaine markes of the same, during the time of the tempest, whilest we ridde at our anker, wee went directly to the place where we ridde, with our barke againe, and founde our anker which wee lost: whereat the Tartars much maruelled, howe wee did it. While wee were in the creeke, wee made an anker of woode of Cart wheeles, which wee had in our barke, which we threwe away, when wee had founde our owne anker againe. Within two daies after, there arose another great storme, at the Northeast, and we lay a trie, being driuen farre into the sea, and much adoe to keepe our barke from sinking, the billowe was so great: but at the last, hauing faire weather, wee tooke the Sunne, and knowing howe the lande laye from vs, wee fell with the Riuer Yake, according to our desire, whereof the Tartars were very glad, fearing that wee shoulde haue bene driuen to the coast of Persia, whose people were vnto them great enemies.

The English flagge in the Caspian sea.

Note, that during the time of our nauigation, wee sette vppe the redde crosse of S. George in our flagges, for honour of the Christians, which I suppose was neuer seene in the Caspian sea before. We passed in this voyage diuers fortunes, notwithstanding the 28. of Maye, wee arriued in safetie at Astracan, and there remained till the tenth of June following, as well to prepare vs small boates, to goe vp against the streame of Volga, with our goods, as also for the companie of the Ambassadors of Tartarie, committed vnto me, to be brought to the presence of the Emperour of Russia.

This Caspian sea (to say some thing of it) is in length about two hundred leagues, and in breath 150. without any issue to other seas, to the East parte whereof, ioyneth the great desert Countrey of the Tartars, called Turkemen: to the West, the Countreyes of the Chyrcasses, the mountaines of Caucasus, and the Mare Euxinum, which is from the saide Caspian sea a hundred leagues. To the North is the riuer Volga, and the land of Nagay, and to the South part, ioyne the Countries of Media, and Persia. This sea is fresh water in many places, and in other places as salt as our great Ocean. It hath many goodly riuers falling into it, and it auoideth not it selfe, except it be vnder ground. The notable riuers that fall into it, are first the great riuer of Volga, called in the Tartar tongue Edell, which springeth out of a lake in a marrish, or plaine ground, not farre from the Citie of Nouogrode, in Russia, and it is from that springe, to the sea, about two thousand English miles. It hath diuers other goodly riuers falling into it, as out of Sebaria, Yaick, and Yeim: Also out of the mountaines of Caucasus, the riuers of Cyrus, and Arash, and diuers others.

As touching the trade of Shamakye in Media, and Tebris, with other townes in Persia, I haue enquired, and doe well vnderstande, that it is euen like to the trades of Tartaria, that is little vtterance, and small profite: and I haue bene aduertised that the chiefe trade of Persia is into Syria, and so transported into the Leuant seas. The fewe shippes vpon the Caspian Sea, the want of Parte and port Townes, the pouertie of the people, and the ice, maketh that trade naught.

At Astracan, there were Marchants of Shamakye, with whome I offered to barter, and to giue them kersies for their wares, but they would not, saying, they had them as good cheape in their Countrey, as I offered them, which was sixe rubbles for a kersie, that I asked: and while I was at Boghar, there were there brought thither out of Persia, cloth, and diuers commodities of our Countreies, which were solde as good cheape, as I might sell ours.

The tenth daye of June, wee departed from Astracan, towardes the Musko, hauing a hundred Gunners in our companie, at the Emperours charges, for the safe conduct of the Tartarre Ambassadors, and me. And the eight and twentieth daye of July following, we arriued at the Citie of Cazan, hauing beene vppon the waye from Astracan thither, sixe weekes, and more, without any refreshing of victuals: for in all that waye there is no habitation.

His arrinal at Mosco the 2. of September.

The seuenth of August following, we departed from Cazan, and transported our goods by water, as farre as the Citie of Morons, and then by land: so that the second of September, we arriued at the Citie of Musko, and the fourth day I came before the Emperours Maiestie, killed his hand, and presented him a white Cowes taile of Cathay, and a drumme of Tartaria, which he well accepted. Also I brought before him all the Ambassadors that were committed to my charge, with all the Russe slaues: and that day I dined in his Maiesties presence, and at dinner, his Grace sent me meate by a Duke, & asked me diuers questions, touching the lands, & Countreis where I had bene. And thus I remained at the Musko about your affaires, vntill the 17. day of February, that your wares were sent downe: & then hauing licence of the Emperours Maiesty to depart, the 21. day I came to your house at Vologhda, and there remained vntill the breaking vp of the yeere:

and

and then hauing ſeene all your goods laden into your boates, I departed with the ſame, and arriued withall in ſafetie at Colmogro, the 9. of May, 1560. And here I ceaſe for this time, intreating you to beare with this my large diſcourſe, which by reaſon of the varietie of matter, I could make no ſhorter, and I beſeech God to proſper all your attempts.

The latitudes of certaine principall places in Ruſsia, *and other Regions.*

	Deg.	Min.
Moſco in	55	10
Nouogrod the great	58	26
Nouogrod the leſſe	56	33
Colmogro	64	10
Vologda	59	11
Cazan	55	33
Oweke	51	40
Aſtracan	46	31
At the entrance into the Caſpian ſea,	46	27
Vrgence in Tartarye 20. daies iourney from the Caſpian ſea.	42	18
Boghar a Citie in Tartarie, 20. daies iourney from Vrgence,	39	10
Manguſlaue beyond the Caſpian ſea,	45	00

The Queenes Maieſties letters to the Emperour of Ruſsia, requesting licence, and ſafe conduct for Maſter Anthony Ienkinſon, to paſſe through his kingdome of Ruſsia, into Perſia, to the Great Sophie.

ELizabetha Dei gratia, Angliæ, &c. Regina, Sereniſſimo & potentiſſimo principi, D. Ioanni Baſiliwiche, Imperatori totius Ruſſiæ, Magno Duci, &c. Salutem, & omnium rerum proſperarum fœliciſſimum incrementum. Potentiſſime Princeps, res eſt nobis ad memorandum longè gratiſſima, illa veſtræ Maieſtatis, erga nos & noſtros amicitia. Quæ tempore fœliciſſimæ memoriæ Regis Edwardi Sexti, fratris noſtri chariſsimi, Dei benignitate incepta, deinceps verò veſtra non ſolùm ſingulari humanitate alta atque fota, ſed incredibili etiam bonitate aucta atque cumulata, nunc autem omnibus beneuolentiæ veſtræ officijs ſic firmata eſt atque conſtabilita, vt iam minimè dubitemus, quin ea ad laudem Dei, ad gloriam vtriuſque noſtrum, ad publicam noſtrorum vtrobique regnorum immenſam commoditatem, ad priuatam ſingulorum vtrinque ſubditorum optatam ſpem, certámque fœlicitatem multis ſit deinceps ſeculis duratura. Et quanquam hæc veſtra bonitas, pleniſsimè ſeſe effudit in omnes noſtros ſubditos, qui ſeſe in vllas imperij veſtri partes vnquam receperunt, (pro qua ingentes noſtras, vt par eſt, gratias veſtræ Maieſtati habemus, veſtriſque viciſsim in omni opportunitatis loco libentiſsimè feremus,) tamen abundantia benignitatis veſtræ, in accipiendo, rámque humaniter tractando noſtrum fidelem & perdilectum famulum Antonium Ienkinſon, qui has perfert literas, ſeorſim nobis gratiſsima exiſtit. Nam prętereſquam quòd nullis non locis veſtri Imperij & magna libertate, & ſumma humanitate veſtræ ſerenitatis non permiſſu ſolùm, ſed iuſſu etiam frueretur, veſtra bonitas tamen non in hac domeſtica benigne faciendi ratione conquieuit, ſed perlibenter & vltrò eundem noſtrum hunc perdilectum famulum, variis exteris principibus, quoquouerſus ipſe iter ſuum inſtituerat, literis ſuis, ſuo magno Imperiali ſigillo conſignatis commendauit. Quod beneficium illi vbiuis gentium, & viam ſine vllo periculo, propter publicam veſtram fidem, & aduentum cum magno fauore, propter veſtram commendationem, optatè quidem, & fœliciter è communiit. Itaq; quemadmodum gemina hæc veſtra beneuolentia, cum illa generalis exhibita in veſtro regno negotiantibus ſubditis noſtris vniuerſis, tum iſta ſeorſim præſtita huic Antonio Ienkinſon, perfidelí noſtro famulo,

nobis

nobis in mente, non solùm ad gratam perpetuámque memoriam, verùm etiam ad mutuam, vel opportunam compensationem, firmissimè defixa est: ita, petimus à vestra Maiestate vt vtramque beneuolentiæ vestrę rationem & communem nostris vniuersis, & priuatam huic nostro dilecto famulo, vtrisque deinceps dignetur tueri, atque conseruare. Neque nos quidem diffidimus, quin quem fauorem vestra Maiestas anteà sua sponte Antonio Ienkinson, tum quidem priuato ostendit, eundem nunc nostro rogatu eidem Antonio in nostrum iam famulatum cooptato benignè velit denuò declarare. Et propterea à petimus à vestra Maiestate, vt dignetur iterum concedere eidem nostro famulo, literas suas commeatus, publicæ fidei, ac saluiconductus, quarum tenore, authoritate, atque præsidio, sit illi, familiaribus suis, & seruis, tutum, liberúmque, cum mercibus, sarcinis, equis, & bonis suis vniuersis, inuehendi euehendisque, per vestra regna, domicilia, atque prouincias, proficisci, ire, transire, redire, abire, & istic morari, quámdiu placuerit, & inde recedere quandocunque illi aut suis libitum fuerit. Et sicut non dubitamus, quin vestra Maiestas hęc omnia humanitatis grata officia, pro immensa bonitate suæ naturę benignè & largiter huic famulo nostro sit concessura, ita valdè optamus, adeóque petimus, vt vestra Maiestas eodem modo eundem nostrum famulum, vnà cum omnibus suis familiaribus, ac bonis, exteris alijs principibus literis suis dignetur commendare, præsertim verò atque seorsim, Magno Sophi, Persarum Imperatori, in cuius etiam imperia & ditiones idem noster famulus gratia potissimè experiundi peregrina commercia, proficisci vnà cum suis constituit.

Confidimus igitur hæc omnia nostræ postulata pro famuli spe, pro nostra expectatione, pro vestra bonitate, pro nostrorum vtrinque subditorum commoditate, fausta illi grata nobis, accepta etiam vestræ Maiestati, & nostris vtrobique perquam vtilia euasura. Deus vestræ Maiestatis, &c. Datum in celeberrima nostra Ciuitate Londini, Anno mundi, 5523. Domini, ac Dei nostri Iesu Christi, 1561. regnorum verò nostrorum tertio.

¶ The same in English.

ELizabeth by the grace of God, Queene of England, &c. to the right excellent, and right mightie Prince, Lorde Iohn Vasiliwiche, Emperour of all Russia, &c. greeting, and most happie increase in all prosperitie. Right Mightie Prince, the amitie of your Maiestie towards vs, and our Subiects, is very pleasant to vs to be remembred, which being begunne by the goodnes of God, in the raigne of our most deere brother of happie memorie, King Edward the first, and afterwardes, though your not onely singular humanitie, fosde, and nourished, but also though your incredible goodnes increased, and augmented, is nowe so firmed, and established, with all manner of tokens of your beneuolence, that nowe wee doubt not, but that from hence forth, during many ages, the same shall endure to the praise of God, to both our glories, to the publike great commoditie of our Realmes on either part, and to the priuate vtter hope, and certaine felicitie of all our Subiects.

And although that this your goodnes hath bene aboundantly extended to all our Subiects, that haue at any time repaired into any part of your Empire, for the which wee giue (as reason is) your Maiestie right hartie thankes, and will againe shewe the like vnto yours, right willingly, whensoeuer opportunitie shall require: yet the aboundance of your benignitie both in receauing, and also in entertayning our faithfull, and beloued seruant, Anthonie Ienkinson, the bringer of these our letters, is vnto vs for him priuately very thankefull. For besides this, that in all places of your Empire, he not onely by your Maiesties sufferance, but also by your commandement, enioyed much libertie, and great friendshippe, your goodnes not ceasing in this your domesticall disposition of clemencie, did right willingly, and of your aboundant grace, commende the same our welbeloued seruant, by your letters, sealed with your Imperiall seale, to sundry forren Princes, vnto whome he was minded to iourney: which your magnificence did purchase vnto him happily, and according to his desire, both passage without all perill, though your notable credite, and also archieuing of his iourney though your commendation.

Therefore like as these your duplicated beneuolences, both that one generally exhibited to all our Subiectes, frequenting that your Realme, and also this the other extended apart to this our right faithfull seruant, Anthonie Ienkinson, is right assuredly fastened in our remembrance, not onely for a perpetuall, and gratefull memoriall, but also for a mutuall, and meete

meere compensation: so wee desire of your Maiestie, to vouchsafe from hence forth to conserue and continue the geminate disposition of your beneuolences, both generally to all our Subiects, and also priuately to this our beloued seruant. And we doubt not, but that at our request, you will againe graciously shewe vnto the same Anthonie, nowe admitted into our seruice, the like fauour as heretofore your Maiestie of your meere motion, did exhibite vnto him, being then a priuate person. And therefore wee desire your Maiestie ctrsoones to graunt to the same our seruant, your letters of licence, passport, and safe conduct, through the tenor, authoritie, and helpe whereof, he, his seruants, together with their marchandizes, baggages, horses, and goods whatsoeuer, that shall be brought in, or carried out, by or through all your Empire, kingdome, dominions, and prouinces, may surely, and freely iourney, goe, passe, repasse, depart, and there tarry so long, as it shall please him: and from thence returne, whensoeuer it shall seeme good to him, or his: and as wee doubt not, but that your Maiestie in the goodnes of your nature, will graciously and abundantly grant all these good offices of humanitie, so wee doe hartely desire, that your Maiestie will likewise vouchsafe to commende the same our seruant, together with all his goods, by your letters, to other forren Princes, and specially to the Great Sophie, and Emperour of Persia, into whose Empire, and Iurisdictions, the same our seruant purposeth with his for to iourney, chiefly for triall of forreine marchandizes.

We therefore doe trust, that all these our demands shall tende, and haue effect, according to the hope of our seruant, and to our expectation, for your wealth, for the commoditie of both our Subiects, luckie to him, thankefull to vs, acceptable to your Maiestie, and very profitable to our Subiects on either part. God grant vnto your Maiestie, long and happie felicitie in earth, and euerlasting in heauen. Dated in our famous Citie of London, the 25. day of the moneth of April, in the yeere of the creation of the world, 5523. and of our Lorde God Iesus Christ, 1561, and of our raigne, the third.

The Queenes Maiesties letters to the Great Sophie of Persia, *sent by Master Anthony Ienkinson.*

ELizabetha Dei gratia, Angliæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ Regina, &c. Potentissimo & inuictissimo Principi, Magno Sophi, Persarum, Medorum, Parthorum, Hyrcanorum, Carmanorum, Margianorum, populorum cis & vltrà Tygrim fluuium, & omnium intra Mare Caspium, & Persicum sinum nationum atque Gentium Imperatori salutem, & rerum prosperarum fœlicissimum incrementum. Summi Dei benignitate factum est, vt quas gentes, non solùm immensa terrarum spacia, & insuperabiles marium vastitates, sed & ipsi etiam cœlorum cardines longissimè disiunxerunt, ipsæ tamen literarum bono & mentis certa cogitata, & humanitatis grata officia, & intelligentiæ mutuæ multa commoda facilè inter se & opportunè possint communicare. Itaque cùm perdilectus, & fidelis noster famulus Antonius Ienkinson, qui has literas nostras perfert, cum bona venia, fauore, & gratia nostra hoc Angliæ nostræ regnum excedere, & in Persiam vsque, vestráque alias ditiones Dei benignitate penetrare constituerit, hoc illius institutum perlaudabile quidem, grato nostro fauore prosequi, & promouere studuimus: id quod eo nos libentiùs facimus, quoniam hoc eius propositum ex honesto studio commercij constituendi potissimùm cum vestris subditis, alijsque peregrinis hominibus, ad vestra regna confluentibus, omninò exortum sit. Propterea nobis & scribendum ad vestram Maiestatem, ab eaque petendum esse duximus, vt nostro rogatu dignetur concedere huic famulo nostro Antonio Ienkinson, literas publicæ fidei, & salui conductus, quarum authoritate atque præsidio, licitum, liberúmque sit illi, vnà cum suis familiaribus, seruis, sarcinis, mercibus & bonis vniuersis, per vestra regna, domicilia, ditiones, atque prouincias liberè, & sine impedimento proficiscí, ire, transire, redire, abire, & istic morari, quamdiu placuerit, & inde recedere, quandocunque illi vel suis lubitum fuerit. Si hæc sancta hospitalitatis iura & dulcia communis humanitatis officia, inter nos, nostra regna, nostrósque subditos libentèr constitui, sincerè coli, & constantèr conseruari queant, speramus nos, Deum Optimum Maximum effecturum, vt ab hijs paruis initijs, grandiora rerum momenta, nobis ad magna ornamenta atque decus, nostris ad summa commoda atque vsus, aliquando sint oritura: si quidem, vt non terra, non mare, non cœlum, ad nos longissimè separandos, quàm diuina ratio communis humanitatis, & mutuæ beneuolentiæ ad nos firmissimè

missimè coniungendos plus virium habuisse videatur. Deus salutem omnem, & fœlicem in terris, & perpetuam in cœlis, vestræ concedat Maiestati. Datum in Anglia, in celebri nostra vrbe Londino, 25. die Mensis Aprilis, anno mundi, 5523. Domini ac Dei nostri Iesu Christi, 1561. Regnorum verò nostrorum tertio.

¶ *The same in English.*

This letter was also written in Hebrue, and Italian.

ELizabeth, by the grace of God, Queene of England, &c. To the right mightie, and right victorious Prince, the Great Sophie, Emperour of the Persians, Medes, Parthians, Hyreanes, Carmanarians, Margians, of the people on this side, and beyond the River of Tygris, and of all men, and nations, betweene the Caspian Sea, and the gulph of Persia, greeting, and most happie increase in all prosperitie. By the goodnes of the Almightie God, it is ordayned, that those people, which not onely the huge distance of landes, and the inuincible wildernes of Seas, but also the very quarters of the heauens doe most farre separate, and seuer asunder, may neuertheless through good commendation by writing, both ease, and also communicate betweene them, not onely the conceaued thoughes, or deliberations, and gratefull offices of humanitie, but also many commodities of mutuall intelligence. Therefore whereas our faithfull, and right welbeloued seruant, Anthonie Ienkinson, bearer of these our letters, is determined with our license, fauour, and grace, to passe out of this our Realme, and by Gods sufferance to trauell euen into Persia, and other your Iurisdictions: wee minde truely with our good fauour, to sette forward, and aduance, that his right laudable purpose: and that the more willingly, for that this his enterprise is onely grounded vpon an honest intent, to establish trade of marchandize with your Subiects, and with other strangers trafficking your Realmes. Wherefore we haue thought good, both to write to your Maiestie, and also to desire the same, to vouchsafe at our request, to grant to our saide seruant, Anthonie Ienkinson, good passports, and safe conducts, by meanes, and authoritie whereof, it may be free, and lawfull for him, together with his familiars, seruants, cariage, marchandize, and goods whatsoeuer, through your Realmes, Dominions, Iurisdictions, and Prouinces, freely, and without impeachment, to iourney, goe, passe, repasse, depart, and tarry so long as he shall please, and from thence to returne, whensoeuer he or they shall thinke good. If these holye duties of entertainment, and sweete offices of naturall humanitie, may be willingly concluded, sincerely embraced, and firmely obserued betweene vs, and our Realmes, and Subiects, then we doe hope, that the Almightie God will bring it to passe, that of these small beginnings, greater moments of things shall hereafter spring, both to our furniture, and honors, and also to the great commodities, and vse of our peoples: so it will be knowen, that neither the earth, the seas, nor the heauens, haue so much force to separate vs, as the godly disposition of naturall humanitie, and mutuall beneuolence, haue to ioyne vs strongly together. God grant vnto your Maiestie, long, and happie felicitie in earth, and perpetuall in heauen. Dated in England, in our famous Citie of London, the 25. day of the moneth of Aprill, in the yeere of the creation of the world, 5523. and of our Lord Iesus Christ, 1561. and of our Raigne the third.

A remembrance giuen by vs the Gouernours, Consuls, and *Assistants of the companie of Marchants, trading into Russia, the* eight day of May, 1561. to our trustie friende Anthonie Ienkinson, at his departure towards Russia, and so to Persia, in this our eight iourney.

FIrst you shall vnderstand, that we haue laden in our good shippe, called the Swallowe, one Chest, the keyes whereof wee doe here deliuer you, and also a bill, wherein are written particularly the contents in the saide Chest, and what euery thing did coste: and because, as you knowe, the saide Chest is of charge, wee desire you, to haue a speciall regarde vnto it, and when God shall sende you vnto Musko, our minde and will is, that you, with the aduise of our Agents there, doe appoynt some such presents for the Emperour, and his sonne, either wrought clothe of golde, scarlet, or plate, as to your good discretion shall be thought

thought meet, and when you haue deliuered vnto him the Queenes Maiesties letters, & our said present in the name of the company, we thinke it good that you make your humble suite vnto his highnesse in our name, to get his licence or safeconduct for you and all other our seruants or Agents at all times hereafter, with such wares and merchandize as you at this time, or they hereafter at all other times shall thinke good, to passe out of his dominions towards Tartaria, Persia, or other places, and also to returne vnto Mosco with such wares and merchandizes as you shall bring or send from any land or countrey that is not in his dominions, and if it be thought good by you and our Agents there to make composition with the Emperor or his officers for some certaine custome or tole vpon such goods as we shall passe that way, to the intent we might be the better fauoured, we referre it to your discretion, foreseeing that the opening of this matter be not preiudiciall vnto our former priuileges.

And for the sale of our cloth of golde, plate, pearles, saphyres, and other iewels, we put our trust and confidence in you principally to sell them for ready money, time to good debters, or in barter for good wares, so that you make our other Agents priuy how & for what price you sell any of the premises, and also deliuer such summes of money, billes or wares as you shall receiue, vnto our said Agents: thinking good, further, that if you perceiue that the plate or other iewels, or any part thereof will not be solde for profit before your departure from the Mosco, that then you cause them to be safe packed, and set order they may be sent hither againe in our shippes the nert peere, except you perceiue that there may be some profit in carrying some part of them into Persia, which we would not to be of any great value.

We haue also laden in the said Swallow and the other two ships, 80 fardles, conteining 400 karsies, as by the cunnoys do appeare, which fardles be packed, and appointed to be carryed into Persia: neuertheless if you chance to finde good sales for them in the Mosco, we thinke it were good to sell part of them there, and to carry the lesse quantity with you, because we be vncertaine what vent or sale you shall finde in Persia or other places where you shall come.

If you obtaine the Emperours licence to passe out of his dominions, and to returne, as aforesaid, and that you perceiue you may safely do the | me, our minde is, that at such time as you thinke best and most conuenient for that purpose, you | appoint so many, & such of our hyred seruants or apprentises as you thinke necessary & meet for our affayres, and may best be spared to go with you in your said voyage, whereof we would one to be such as you might make priuie of all your doings for diuers considerations and causes that may happen: which seruants & apprentises, we wil and command, by this our remembrance, to be obedient vnto you as vnto vs, not onely to go with you, and to do such things as you command them in your presence, but also to go vnto such countries or places as you shall appoint them vnto, either with wares or without wares, and there to remaine and continue so long as you shall thinke good, and if they or any of them will refuse to do such things as you do appoint them, as aforesaid, or that any of them (be he hyred seruant or apprentise) do misuse himselfe by any maner of disobedience or disorder, and will not by gentle and fayre meanes be reformed, we will that you send him backe to the Mosco, with straight order that he may be sent from thence hither, and let vs haue knowledge of his euill behauior, to the intent that if he be a hyred seruant we may pay him his wages according to his seruice, and if he be an apprentise we may vse him according to his deserts.

We will also that you take with you such karsies, scarlet, & other clothes, or any other such wares of ours, as you shall thinke good, and so in the name of God to take your iourney towardes Persia, either by the way of Astracan and Mare Caspium, or otherwise, as you shall see cause: and when God sendeth you into Persia, our minde is, that you repayre vnto the great Sophie with the Queenes Maiesties letters, if he be not too farre from the Caspian sea for you to trauell, and that you make him such a present as you shall thinke meete, and if you passe by any other kinges, princes, or gouernours, before or after you come to the presence of the Sophie, likewise to make them some present, as you see cause according to their estate and dignitie, and withall to procure letters of priuilege or safeconduct of the said Sophie or other princes in as large and ample maner as you can, for the sure establishing of further trade in merchandize by vs hereafter to be made, frequented and continued in those parts, not onely that we may freely sell in all places within his dominions such wares as we cary thither, but also buy and bring away any maner of wares or merchandizes whatsoeuer it be, that is for our purpose and commoditie within his dominions, with free passage also for vs at all times, to passe as often as we will with our goods and merchandize into any part of Iudia or other countryes thereunto adioyning, and in like maner to returne through his dominions into Russia or els where.

And for the sale of our karsies or other wares that you shall haue with you, as our trust is that you will doe for our most profite and commoditie: euen so we referre all vnto your good discretion, as well in the sale of our sayd goodes, as to make our returne in such thinges as you shall finde there, and thinke best for our profite. But if passage can not be had into Persia by Astracan, or otherwise, the next Summer, which shall be in the yeere 1562, then our minde is, that you procure to sell our karsies, and other such wares as are appointed for Persia, in the Mosco, or other the Emperours dominions, if you may sell them for any reasonable price, and then to employ your selfe with such other of our seruantes, as you shall thinke meete for the search of the passage by Noua Zembla, or els you to returne for England as you thinke good. Prouided alwayes, that if you doe perceiue or vnderstand, that passage is like to be had into Persia the Summer following, which shall be in the yeere 1563, and that you can not sell our karsies in the Emperours dominions, as aforesayd, at a reasonable price: then we will rather they may be kept till the sayd Summer in the yeere 1563, and then you to proceed forwards vpon your iourney towards Persia, as aforesayd. If passage into Persia can not be obteined the next yeere, neither good hope of passage in the yeere 1563, neither yet in the meane time, good sale of our karsies in the Emperours dominions, then we thinke good for you to see if you can practise to cary your sayd wares by safe conduct through Polonia, or any other wayes vnto Constantinople, or els where you thinke better sale may be had, then in Russia.

The passage of Noua Zembla.

Thus haue we giuen you to vnderstand our meanings in this intended aduenture: but forasmuch as we do consider and know, that if we should prescribe vnto you any certaine way, or direct order what you should doe, we might so worke cleane contrary to our purpose and intent: therefore knowing your approued wisedome with your experience, and also your carefull and diligent minde in the atchieuing and bringing to good successe (by the helpe of almighty God) all things that you take in hand, we doe commit our whole affayres concerning the sayd aduenture wholly vnto your good discretion, praying God so to prosper you, as may be first for his glory, secondly for the honour and commoditie of this realme, and next for our profit, with the increase of your good name for euer.

And yet further desiring, and also most earnestly requiring you as you tender the state of our company, that you will haue a speciall regard vnto the order of our houses & our seruants, aswell at Colmogro and Vologda, as at Mosco, and to see and consider if any misorder be amongst our seruants or apprentises, whereby you thinke we might hereafter be put to hinderance or losse of any part of our goods or priuiledge there, that you do not onely see the same reformed, but also to certifie vs thereof by your letter at large, as our trust is in you.

And for the better knowledge to be had in the prices and goodnesse of such things as we do partly suppose you shall finde in the parties of Russia, we doe herewith deliuer you a quantitie of certaine drugges, whereby you may perceiue how to know the best, and also there is noted the prices of such wares and drugges as be heere most vendible: also we deliuer you herewith one pound and one ounce weight in brasse, to the end, that you may thereby, and with the bill of prices of wares, know what things be worth heere. As for the knowledge of silks, we need not to giue you any instructions therof, other then you know.

Waights and drugs deliuered to M. Jenkinson.

Also if you vnderstand that any commoditie in Russia, be profitable for vs to haue with you into Persia or other places, our minde is that our Agents shall either prouide it for you, or deliuer you money to make prouision your selfe. And because the Russes say that in trauelling Eastwards from Colmogro thirtie or fortie dayes iourney, there is the maine sea to be found, we thinke that Richard Johnson might implay his time that way by land, and to be at Mosco time enough to go with you into Persia: for if it be true that he may trauell to the sea that way, and that he may know how many miles it is towards the East from Colmogro, it will be a great helpe for vs to finde out the straight and passage that way, if any be there to be had.

The maine sea within thirtie dayes East ward of Colmogro.

William Gerrard. } Gouernours.
Thomas Lodge. }

William Merrike.
Blase Sanders.

A compendious and briefe declaration of the iourney of M. Anthonie Ienkinſon, from the famous citie of London into the lande of Perſia, paſſing in this ſame iourney through Ruſſia, Moſcouia, and Mare Caſpium, aliàs Hircanum, ſent and imployed therein by the right worſhipfull Societie of the Merchants Aduenturers, for the diſcouerie of Lands, Iſlands, &c. Being begunne the foureteenth day of May, Ann. 1561: and in the third yeere of the raigne of the Queenes Maieſtie that now is: this preſent declaration being directed and written to the foreſayd Societie.

FIrſt imbarking my ſelfe in a good ſhippe of yours, named the Swallow, at Grauelend, hauing a fayre and good winde, our anker then weyed, and committing all to the protection of our God, hauing in our ſailing diuerſitie of windes, and thereby forced to direct and obſerue ſundry courſes (not here rehearſed, becauſe you haue beene thereof heeretofore amply informed) on the foureteenth day of July, the yeere aforeſaid, I arriued in the bay of S. Nicholas in Ruſſia: and the ſixe and twentith day of the ſame moneth, after conference then had with your Agents there, concerning your worſhippes affayres, I departed from thence, paſſing through the countrey of Vago, and on the eight day of Auguſt then following, I came to Vologda, which is diſtant from Colmogro ſeuen hundred miles, where I remained foure dayes, attending the arriuall of one of your boates, wherein was laden a cheſt of iewels with the preſent, by your worſhippes appointed for the Emperours Maieſtie: which being arriued, and the cheſt receiued, I therewith departed toward the citie of Moſcouia, and came thither the twentith day of the ſame moneth, where I immediatly cauſed my comming to be ſignified vnto the Secretarie of the Imperiall Maieſtie, with the Queenes highneſſe letters addreſſed vnto the ſame his Maieſtie, who informed the Emperour thereof. But his highneſſe hauing great affayres, and being at that preſent ready to be marryed vnto a Lady of Chirchaſſi, of the Mahometicall law, commanded that no ſtranger, Ambaſſadour, nor other, ſhould come before him for a time, with further ſtraight charge, that during the ſpace of three dayes that the ſame ſolemne feaſt was celebrating, the gates of the citie ſhould be ſhutte, and that no perſon, ſtranger or natiue (certeine of his houſholde reſerued) ſhould come out of theyr ſayd houſes during the ſayd triumph, the cauſe thereof vnto this day not being knowne.

The Queenes letters to the Emperor of Ruſſia.

The firſt of September following, the Emperour made a great feaſt, whereunto were called all Ambaſſadours and ſtrangers being of reputation, and hauing affayres: amongſt whom I was one, but being willed by the Secretarie firſt to come, and to ſhew him the Queenes Maieſties letters, I refuſed ſo to doe, ſaying I would deliuer the ſame vnto the Emperours owne hands, and not otherwiſe: which heard, the Secretarie anſwered, that vnleſſe he might firſt peruſe the ſaid letters, I ſhould not come into the Emperours preſence, ſo that I was not at the feaſt. Neuertheleſſe, I was aduertiſed by a noble man that I was inquired for by the Emperours Maieſtie, although the cauſe of my abſence was to his Maieſtie vnknowne. The next day following, I cauſed a ſupplication to be made, and preſented it to his highneſſe owne handes, and thereby declared the cauſe of my comming, ſignified by the Queenes Maieſties letters, and the anſwere of his ſayd Secretary, moſt humbly beſeeching his Grace that he would receiue and accept the ſame her highneſſe letters, with ſuch honor and friendſhippe, as his letters ſent by Oſepp Napeya, were receiued by the handes of our late Souereigne lady Queene Mary, or els that it would pleaſe his highneſſe to diſmiſſe me, ſaying that I would not deliuer the ſaid letters but vnto his owne handes, for that it is ſo vſed in our countrey. Thus the matter being pondered, and the effect of my ſuplication well digeſted, I was forthwith commanded to come with the ſayd letters before his Maieſtie, and ſo deliuered the ſame into his owne handes, (with ſuch preſents as by you were appointed) according to my requeſt, which were gratefully accepted, and the ſame day I dined in his Graces preſence, with great intertainment. Shortly after, I deſired to know whether I ſhould be licenced to paſſe through his highneſſe dominions into the land of Perſia, according to the Queenes Maieſties requeſt: hereunto it was anſwered, that I ſhould not paſſe thither, for that his Maieſtie ment to ſend an armie of men that way into the land of Chircaſſi, whereby my iourney ſhould

Requeſt to paſſe into Perſia through Moſcouia.

should be both dangerous and troublesome, and that if I should perish therein, it would be much to his Graces dishonour, but he doubted other matters although they were not expressed. Thus hauing receiued his answere, neither to my expectation, nor yet contentation, and there remaining a good part of the yeere, hauing in that time solde the most part of your karsies and other wares appointed for Persia, when the time of the yeere required to returne for England, I desired passport, and post horses for money, which was granted: but hauing receiued my passport, ready to depart, there came vnto our house there Osip Nepeya, who perswaded me that I should not depart that day, saying that the Emperour was not truely informed, imputing great fault to the frowardnesse of the Secretary, who was not my friend: before whom comming againe the next day, and finding the same Secretary and Osip Nepeya together, after many allegations and obiections of things, and perceiuing that I would depart, I was willed to remaine vntill the Emperours Maiestie were spoken with againe touching my passage: wherewith I was content, and within three dayes after sending for me, he declared that the Emperors pleasure was, that I should not onely passe thorow his dominions into Persia, but also haue his Graces letters of commendations to foreyn princes, with certaine his affayres committed to my charge, too long here to rehearse: whereupon I appointed my selfe for the voyage, and the 15 day of March, the yeere aforesaid, I dined againe in his Maiesties presence in company of an Ambassadour of Persia and others, and receiuing a cuppe of drinke at his Maiesties hands, I tooke my leaue of his highnesse, who did not only giue me letters, as aforesaid, but also committed matter of importance & charge vnto me, to be done when I should arriue in those countries whither I intended to go, and hauing all things in readinesse for the same voyage, I departed from the citie of Mosco the 27 day of April 1562, downe by the great riuer of Volga, in company of the said Ambassador of Persia, with whom I had great friendship and conference all the way downe the same riuer vnto Astracan, where we arriued all in health the 10 day of June.

Osippe Nepeya Embassador from the Emperour of Russia to Q. Mary.

Astracan.

And as touching the situations of the cities, townes, castles and countreys, as well of Mahometans as also of Gentils adioyning to the same, whereby I passed from Mosco vnto Astracan, I omit in this treatie to rehearse, for that I heretofore haue declared the same most amply vnto you in my voyage to Boghar. Thus being arriued at Astracan, as is aforesaid, I repayred vnto the captaine there, vnto whom I was commended from the Emperours Maiesty, with great charge that he not only should ayd and succor me with all things needfull during my abode there, but also to safeconduct me with 50 gunners well appointed in two strooges or brigantines into the Caspian sea, vntill I had passed certaine dangerous places which pirats & rouers do accustome to haunt, & hauing prepared my barke for the sea, the Ambassador of Persia being before departed in a barke of his owne, the 15 day of July, the yeere aforesaid, I and my company tooke our voyage from the said Astracan, and the next day at a West sunne, passed the mouth of the said riuer being twentie miles distant, lying nere Southeast. The 18 at a Southwest sunne, we passed by three Ilands being distant nine miles from the said mouth of Volga, and Southsouthwest from thence, sailing Southsouthwest the next day, at a West by North sunne we fell with the land called Challica Ostriua, being foure round Ilands together, distant from the said three Ilands fortie miles. From thence sailing the said course the next day, we had sight of a land called Tuke, in the countrey of Tywmen, where pirats and rouers doe vse: for feare of whom we haled off into the sea due East fortie miles, and fell vpon shallowes out of the sight of land, and there were like to haue perished, escaping most hardly: then the 22 day we had sight of a goodly Iland called Chatalet, distant from the said Challica Ostriua a hundred miles, the winde being contrary, and a stiffe gale, we were not able to seize it: but were forced to come to an anker to the lee ward of the same six miles off in three or foure fathom water, being distant from the maine land to the West ward of vs, which was called Skafcayll or Connyke, a countrey of Mahometans, about miles, and so riding at two ankers a head, hauing no other prouision, we lost one of them, the storme and sea being growne very sore, and thereby our barke was so full of leakes, that with continuall pumping, we had much a doe to keepe her aboue water, although we threw much of our goods ouerboord, with losse of our boate, and our selues thereby in great danger like to haue perished either in the sea, or els vpon the lee shoare, where we should haue fallen into the handes of those wicked infidels, who attended our shipwracke: and surely it was very vnlike that we should haue escaped both the extremities, but onely by the power and mercy of God, for the storme continued seuen dayes, to wit, vntill the thirtith day of the same moneth: and then the winde comming vp at the West with faire weather, our anker weyed, and our saile displayed, lying South, the next day hailing to the shore with a West sunne, we were nigh a lande called by the inhabitantes Shyruansha, and there became againe to an anker, hauing the winde contrarie being distant from the sayd Shirake

M. Jenkinsons voyage to Boghar.

He passeth the Caspian sea.

The countrey of Tywmen.

The Iland of Chatalet.

The land of Shyruansha.

150 miles, and there we continued vntill the third day of August, then hauing a faire winde, winding Southsoutheast, and sailing threescore miles, the next day at a Southeast sunne we arriued at a citie called Derbent in the king of Hyrcans dominion, where comming to land, and saluting the captaine there with a present, he made to me and my company a dinner, and there taking fresh water I departed. Derbent.

This citie of Derbent is an ancient towne, hauing an olde castle therein, being situated vpon an hill called Castowe, builded all of freestone much after our building, the walles very high and thicke, and was first erected by king Alexander the great, when he warred against the Persians and Medians, and then he made a wall of a woonderfull height and thickenesse, extending from the same citie to the Georgians, yea vnto the principall citie thereof named Tewflish, which wall though it be now raced, or otherwise decayed, yet the foundation remayneth, and the wall was made to the intent that the inhabitants of that countrey then newly conquered by the said Alexander should not lightly flee, nor his enemies easily inuade. A mighty wall. Of Typhis.

This citie of Derbent being now vnder the power of the Sophie of Persia, bordereth vpon the sea, adioyning to the foresaid land of Shalfeall, in the latitude of fortie one degrees. Fortie one degrees.

From thence sailing Southeast & Southsoutheast about 80 miles, the sixth day of August, the yeere aforesaid, we arriued at our landing place called Shabran, where my barke discharged: the goods layd on shore, and there being in my tent keeping great watch for feare of rouers, whereof there is great plenty, being field people, the gouernor of the sayd countrey named Alcan Murcy, comming vnto me, intertayned me very gently, vnto whom giuing a present, he appointed for my safegard fortie armed men to watch and ward me, vntil he might haue newes from the king of Shyruan. Shabran. Alcan Murcy the gouernor.

The 12 day of the same moneth newes did come from the king, with order that I should repayre vnto him with all speed: and for expedition, aswell camels to the number of fiue and fortie to carry my goodes, as also horses for me and my company were in readinesse, so that the goods laden, and taking my iourney from thence the said twelfth day, on the 18 of the same moneth, I came to a citie called Shamackye, in the said countrey of Hyrcan, otherwise called Shyruan, and there the king hath a fayre place, where my lodging being appointed, the goods were discharged: the next day being the 19 day, I was sent for to come to the king named Obdolowcan, who kept his court at that time in the high mountaines in tents, distant from the said Shamackye twentie miles, to auoid the iniury of the heat: and the 20 day I came before his presence, who gently intertayned me, and hauing kissed his handes, he bad me to dinner, and commanded me to sit downe not farre from him. King Obdolowcan.

This king did sit in a very rich pauilion, wrought with silke and golde placed very pleasantly, vpon a hill side, of sixteene fathom long, and sixe fathom broad, hauing before him a goodly fountaine of faire water: wherof he and his nobilitie did drinke, he being a prince of a meane stature, and of a fierce countenance, richly apparelled with long garments of silke, and cloth of golde, imbrodered with pearles and stone: vpon his head was a tolipane with a sharpe end standing vpwards halfe a yard long, of rich cloth of golde, wrapped about with a piece of India silke of twentie yards long, wrought with golde, and on the left side of his tolipane stood a plume of fethers, set in a trunke of golde richly inameled, and set with precious stones: his eareings had pendants of golde a handfull long, with two great rubies of great value, set in the ends thereof: all the ground within his pauilion was couered with rich carpets, and vnder himselfe was spred a square carpet wrought with siluer & gold, & therupon was laid two suitable cushions. Thus the king with his nobilitie sitting in his pauillion with his legs a crosse, and perceiuing that it was painefull for me so to sit, his highnesse caused a stoole to be brought in, and did will me to sit thereupon, after my fashion. The maiestie & attyre of king Obdolowcan.

Dinner time then approching, diuers clothes were spred vpon the ground, and sundry dishes serued, and set in a ranke with diuers kindes of meats, to the number of 140 dishes, as I numbred them, which being taken away with the table clothes, and others spred, a banket of fruites of sundry kindes, with other banketting meates, to the number of 150 dishes, were brought in: so that two seruices occupyed 290 dishes, and at the end of the said dinner & banket, the king said vnto me Quoshe quelde, that is to say, welcome: and called for a cup of water to be drawen at a fountaine, and tasting thereof, did deliuer me the rest, demanding how I did like the same, and whether there were so good in our countrey or not: vnto whom I answered in such sort, that he was therewith contented: then he proponed vnto me sundry questions, both touching religion, and also the state of our countryes, and further questioned whether the Emperour of Almaine, the Emperour of Russia, or the great Turke, were of most power, with many other things too long heere to rehearse, to whom I answered as I thought most meet. Then he demanded whether I intended to goe any further, and the cause of my comming: vnto that I answered, that I was sent with letters from the Queenes most excellent Maiesty of England, vnto the great Sophie, to intreat friendshippe and free passage, and for his safeconduct to be granted vnto The Queenes letters to the Sophie.

English merchants to trade into his Seignories, with the like also to be granted to his subiectes, when they should come into our countreys, to the honour and wealth of both realmes, and commoditie of both theyr subiects, with diuers other words, which I omit to rehearse. This said king much allowing this declaration, said that he would not onely giue me passage, but also men to safeconduct me vnto the sayd Sophie, lying from the foresaid citie of Shamakye thirtie dayes iourney, vp into the land of Persia, at a castle called Casbin: so departing from the king at that time, within three dayes after, being the foure and twentie day of August the yeere aforesayd, he sent for me againe: vnto whom I repayred in the morning, and the king not being risen out of his bedde (for his maner is, that watching in the night, and then banketting with his women, being a hundred and fortie in number, he sleepeth most in the day) did giue one commandement that I should ride an hawking with many Gentlemen of his Court: and that they should shew me so much game and pastime as might be, which was done, and many cranes killed: we returned from hawking about three of the clocke at the afternoone. The king then risen, and ready to dinner, I was inuited thereunto, and approching nigh to the entring in of his tent, and being in his sight two gentlemen incountred me with two garmentes of that countrey fashion, side downe to the ground, the one of silke, and the other of silke and golde, sent vnto me from the king, and, after that they caused me to put off my vpper garment, being a gowne of blacke veluet furred with Sables, they put the sayd two garments vpon my backe, and so conducted me vnto the king, before whom doing reuerence, and kissing his hand, he commanded me to sit not farre from him, and so I dined in his presence, he at that time being very merry, and demanding of me many questions, and amongst other, how I like the maner of theyr hawking. Dinner so ended, I required his highnesse safeconduct for to depart towards the Sophie, who dismissing me with great fauour, and appointing his Ambassadour (which returned out of Russia) and others, to safeconduct me, he gaue me at my departure a fayre horse with all furniture, and custome free from thence with all my goods. So I returned to Shamakye againe, where I remayned vntill the first of October, to prouide camels, horses, and other necessaries for my sayd intended iourney.

Casbin.

Multitude of concubines.

But now before I proceed further, I purpose to write something of this countrey of Hyrcan, now called Shyruan, with the townes and commodities of the same. This countrey of Hyrcan in times past was of great renowme, hauing many cities, townes, and castles in it: and the kings thereof in time of antiquitie were of great power, able to make warres with the Sophies of Persia: but now it is not onely otherwise (for that the cities, townes and castles be decayed) but also the king is subiect to the sayd Sophie, (although they haue theyr proper king) and be at the commandement of the sayd Sophie, who conquered them not many yeeres passed, for theyr diuersitie in religion, and caused not onely all the nobilitie and gentlemen of that countrey to be put to death, but also ouer and besides, rased the walles of the cities, townes, and castles of the said realme, to the intent that there should be no rebellion, & for theyr great terrour, caused a turret of free stone and flints to be erected in the sayd citie called Shamakye, and in a ranke of flints of the sayd turret, did set the heads of the sayd nobilitie and gentlemen, then executed: this citie is distant from the sea side, with camels seuen dayes iourney, but now the same being much decayed, and chiefly inhabited with Armenians, another citie called Arrash, bordering vpon the Georgians, is the chiefest and most opulent in the trade of merchandize, and thereabouts is nourished the most abundant growth of raw silke, and thither the Turkes, Syrians, and other strangers do resort and traffike. There be also diuers good and necessarie commodities to be prouided and had in this said realme: videlizet, galles, rough and smooth, cotten wooll, allome, and raw silke of the naturall growth of that countrey. Besides, there all kinde of spices and drugges, and some other commodities, which are brought thither from out of East India, but in the lesse quantitie, for that they be not assured to haue vent or veterance of the same: but the chiefest commodities be there, raw silkes of all sortes, whereof there is great plenty. Not farre from the sayd citie of Shamakye, there was an olde castle called Gullistone, now beaten downe by this Sophie, which was esteemed to be one of the strongest castles in the world, and was besieged by Alexander the great, long time before he could winne it. And not farre from the said castle was a Nunnery of sumptuous building, wherein was buried a kinges daughter, named Amalecke Channa, who slew her selfe with a knife, for that her father would haue forced her (the professing chastitie) to haue married with a king of Tartary, vpon which occasion the maidens of that countrey doe resort thither once euery yeere to lament her death.

The description of Hyrcania.

Danger by diuersitie in religion.

Barbarous cruelty.

The citie of Arash.

The commodities of this countrey.

The strong castle of Gullistone defaced.

Also in the said countrey there is a high hill called Quiquiffs, vpon the toppe whereof (as it is commonly reported) did dwell a great Giant, named Arneoste, hauing vpon his head two great hornes, and eares, and eyes like a horse, and a tayle like a cowe. It is further said, that this

this monſter kept a paſſage thereby, vntill there came an holy man (termed Haucoire Hamſhe) a kinſman to one of the Sophies, who mounted the ſaid hil, and combatting with the ſaid Giant, did bind not onely him in chaines, but alſo his woman called Lamiſache, with his ſonne named After: for which victorie they of that countrey haue this holy man in great reputation, and the hill at this day (as it is byuited) ſauoureth ſo ill, that no perſon may come nigh vnto it. But whether it be true or not, I referre it to further knowledge.

Now to returne to the diſcourſe of the proceeding in my voiage towards the great Sophie. The 6. of October in the yeere aforeſayd, I with my company departed from Shamachie aforeſayd, and hauing iourneied three ſcore miles, came to a towne called Yauate, wherein the king hath a faire houſe, with orchards and gardens, well repleniſhed with fruites of all ſorts. By this towne palleth a great riuer called Curre, which ſpringeth in the mountains of the Georgians, and paſſing through the countrey of Hircania aforeſaid, falleth in to the Caſpian or Hircan ſea, at a place betweene two ancient townes called Shabran and Bacowe, ſituate within the realme of Hircane, and from thence iſſueth further, paſſing through a fruitfull countrey, inhabited with paſturing people, which dwell in the Summer ſeaſon vpon mountaines, and in Winter they remoue into the valleys without reſorting to townes or any other habitation: and when they remoue, they do iourney in Carrauans or troopes of people and cattell, carrying all their wiues, children and baggage vpon bullocks. Now paſſing this wild people ten dayes iourney comming into no towne or houſe, the 16. day of October we arriued at a citie called Ordowill, where we were lodged in a hoſpitall builded with faire ſtone, and erected by this Sophies father named Iſmael, onely for the ſuccour and lodging of ſtrangers and other trauellers, wherein all men haue victuals and feeding for man and horſe, for 3. dayes, and no longer. This foreſayd late prince Iſmael, lieth buried in a faire Meskit, with a ſumptuous ſepulchre in the ſame, which he cauſed to be made in his life time. This towne Ordowill is in the latitude of 38. degrees, an ancient citie in the prouince of Aderraugan, wherein the princes of Perſia are commonly buried, and there Alexander the great did keepe his court when he inuaded the Perſians. Foure daies iourney to the Weſtward is the Citie Tebris, in old time called Tauris, the greateſt citie in Perſia, but not of ſuch trade of merchandize as it hath bene, or as others be at this time, by meane of the great inuaſion of the Turke, who hath conquered from the Sophie almoſt to the ſayd Citie of Tauris, which the ſayd Turke once ſacked, and thereby cauſed the Sophie to forſake the ſame, and to keepe his court ten dayes iourney from thence, at the ſayd Citie of Casbin.

The towne of Yauate.

The citie of Ordowil or Ardoul.

The citie Tebris or Tauris

The 21. day wee departed from Ordowil aforeſaid, trauelling for the moſt part ouer mountaines all in the night ſeaſon, and reſting in the day being deſtitute of wood, and therefore were forced to vſe for fewell the dung of horſes and camels, which we bought deare of the paſturing people. Thus paſſing ten dayes iourney the yeare aforeſayd, the ſecond day of Nouember we arriued at the foreſayd Citie of Casben, where the ſayd Sophie keepeth his court, and were appointed to a lodging not farre from the kings pallace, and within two dayes after the Sophie commaunded a prince called Shallie Murzey ſonne to Obdolowcan king of Shiruan aforeſayd, to ſend for me to his houſe, who aſked me in the name of the ſayd Sophie how I did, and whither I were in health, and after did welcome me, and inuited me to dinner, whereat I had great entertainment, and ſo from thence I returned to my lodging. The next day after I ſent my interpreter vnto the Sophies Secretarie, declaring that I had letters directed from our moſt gracious Soueraigne ladie the Queenes moſt excellent maieſtie of the Realme of England, vnto the ſayd Sophie, and that the cauſe of my comming was expreſſed in the ſame letters, deſiring that at conuenient time I might come into his maieſties preſence, who aduertiſing the Sophie thereof, ſhortly after anſwered mee that there were great affaires in hand: Which being finiſhed, I ſhould come before his preſence, willing mee in the meane time to make readie my preſent if I had any to deliuer.

M. Jenkinſons arrual at the Sophies court. 2. Nouember, 1562.

At this time the great Turkes Amballadour arriued foure dayes before my comming, who was ſent thither to conclude a perpetuall peace betwixt the ſame great Turke and the Sophie, and brought with him a preſent in gold and faire horſes, with rich furnitures and other gifts eſteemed to be worth fortie thouſand pound. And thereupon a peace was concluded with ioyfull feaſtes, triumphs and ſolemnities, corroborated with ſtrong othes, by their lawe of Alkaron, for either to obſerue the ſame, and to liue alwayes after as ſworne brethren, ayding the one the other againſt all princes that ſhould warre againſt them, or either of them. And vpon this concluſion the Sophie cauſed the great Turkes ſonne named Baiſet Soltan, a valiaunt prince, (who beyng fled from his father vnto the Sophie, had remayned in his court the ſpace of foure yeeres) to bee put to death. In which time the ſayd Turkes ſonne had cauſed mortall warres betwixt the ſayd princes,

The Turkes Amballadour to the Sophie.

princes, and much preuailed therein: The Turke demaunded therefore his sonne to bee sent vnto him, and the Sophie refused thereunto to consent. But now being slaine according to the Turkes will, the Sophie sent him his head for a present, not a little desired, and acceptable to the vnnaturall father. Discoursing at my first arriuall with the king of Shiruan of sundry matters, and being intertained as hath bene before declared, the sayd king named Obdolocan, demaunding whether that wee of England had friendship with the Turkes or not, I answered that we neuer had friendship with them, and that therefore they would not suffer vs to passe through their countrie into the Sophie his dominions, and that there is a nation named the Venetians, not farre distant from vs, which are in great league with the sayd Turkes, who trade into his dominions with our commodities, chiefly to barter the same for rawe silkes, which (as wee vnderstand) come from thence: and that if it would please the sayde Sophie and other princes of the countrey, to suffer our merchaunts to trade into those dominions, and to giue vs passeport and safe conduct for the same, as the sayde Turke hath graunted to the sayde Venetians, I doubted not but that it should growe to such a trade to the profite of them as neuer before had bene the like, and that they should bee both furnished with our commodities, and also haue vtterance of theirs, although there neuer came Turke into their land, perswading with many other woordes for a trade to be had. This king vnderstanding the matter liked it maruellously, saying, that he would write vnto the Sophie concerning the same: as he did in very deede, assuring me that the Sophie would graunt my request, & that at my returne vnto him he would giue me letters of safe conduct, and priuiledges. The Turkes Ambassadour was not then come into the land, neither any peace hoped to be concluded, but great preparation was made for warre which was like much to haue furthered my purpose, but it chaunced otherwise. For the Turkes Ambassadour being arriued, and the peace concluded, the Turkish merchants there at that time present, declared to the same Ambassadour, that my comming thither (naming mee by the name of Franke) would in great part destroy their trade, and that it should bee good for him to perswade the Sophie not to fauour me, as his highnesse ment to obserue the league and friendship with the great Turke his master, which request of the Turkish merchants, the same Ambassadour earnestly preferred, and being afterwards dismissed with great honour hee departed out of the Realme with the Turkes sonnes head as aforesayd, and other presents.

The Turkes merchaunts withstand M. Ienkinson.

Shaw Thomas the Sophies name.

The 20. day of Nouember aforesayd, I was sent for to come before the sayd Sophie, otherwise called Shaw Thomas, and about three of the clocke at after noone I came to the court, and in lighting from my horse at the court gate before my feete touched the ground, a paire of the Sophies owne shoes termed in the Persian tongue (Basmackes) such as her himselfe weareth when he ariseth in the night to pray (as his maner is) were put vpon my feete, for without the same shoes I might not be suffered to tread vpon his holy ground, being a Christian, and called amongst them Gower, that is, vnbeleeuer, and vncleane: esteeming all to bee infidels and Pagans which be not beleeue as they doe, in their false filthie prophets, Mahomet and Murtezallie. At the first court gate the things that I brought to present his maiestie with, were deuided by sundry parcels to sundry seruitors of the court, to carry before me, for none of my companie or seruaunts might be suffered to enter into the court with me, my interpreter only excepted. Thus comming before his maiestie with such reuerence as I thought meete to bee vsed, I deliuered the Queenes maiesties letters with my present, which he accepting, demaunded of me of what country of Franke I was, and what affaires I had there to do: vnto whom I answered that I was of the famous Citie of London within the noble realme of England, and that I was sent thither from the most excellent and gracious soueraigne Ladie Elizabeth, Queene of the sayd Realme for to treate of friendship, and free passage of our merchaunts and people, to repaire and traffique within his dominions, for to bring in our commodities, and to carrie away theirs to the honour of both princes, the mutuall commoditie of both realmes, and wealth of the subiects, with other woords here omitted. He then demaunded me in what language the letters were written. I answered, in the Latine, Italian and Hebrew: well sayd he, we haue none within our realme that vnderstand those tongues. Whereunto I answered that such a famous and woorthie Prince (as hee was) ought not people of all nations within his large dominions to interprete the same. Then he questioned with me of the state of our countries, and of the power of the Emperour of Almaine, King Philip, and the great Turke, and which of them was of most power: whom I answered to his contemplation, not dispraysing the great Turke, their late concluded friendship considered. Then he reasoned with me much of religion, demaunding whether I were a Gower, that is to say, an vnbeleeuer or a Muselman, that is, of Mahomets lawe. Unto whom I answered, that I was neither no beleeuer nor Mahometan, but a Christian. What is that sayd hee vnto the king of Georgiana

The Queenes letters deliuered.

The Sophies questions.

sonne, who being a Christian was fled vnto the sayd Sophie, and hee answered that a Christian was he that beleeueth in Iesus Christus, affirming him to bee the sonne of God, and the greatest prophet: Doest thou beleeue so sayd the Sophie vnto me? Yea that I doe, sayd I: Oh thou vnbeleeuer sayd he, we haue no neede to haue friendship with the vnbeleeuers, and so willed mee to depart. I being glad thereof did reuerence and went my way, being accompanied with many of his gentlemen and others, and after mee followed a man with a Basanet of sand, sifting all the way that I had gone within the said pallace, euen from the sayd Sophies sight vnto the court gate.

The entresse of Shally Murzey.

Thus I repaired againe vnto my lodging, and the sayd night Shally Murzey sonne to the king of Hircane aforesayd, who fauoured mee very much for that I was commended vnto him from his father, willed me not to doubt of any thing, putting me in hope that I should haue good successe with the Sophie, and good intertainment.

Thus I continued for a time, daily resorting vnto me diuers gentlemen sent by the Sophie to conferre with me, especially touching the affaires of the Emperour of Russia, and to know by what way I intended to returne into my countrey, either by the way that I came, or by the way of Ormus, and so with the Portingals shippes. Vnto whom I answered, that I durst not returne by the way of Ormus, the Portingals and wee not being friends, fully perceiuing their meaning: for I was aduertised that the sayde Sophie meant to haue warres with the Portingals, and would haue charged me that I had bene come for a spie to passe through his dominions vnto the said Portingals, thinking them and vs to bee all one people, and calling all by the name of Franks, but by the prouidence of God this was preuented.

Warres intended against the Portingals.

After this the sayd Sophie conferred with his nobilitie and counsell concerning me, who perswaded, that he should not entertaine me well, neither dismisse mee with letters or gifts, considering that I was a Franke, and of that nation that was enemie to the great Turke his brother, perswading that if hee did otherwise, and that the newes thereof should come to the knowledge of the Turke, it should be a meane to breake their new league and friendship lately concluded: dissuading further because hee had no neede, neither that it was requisite for him to haue friendship with vnbeleeuers, whose countreys lay farre from him, and that it was best for him to send mee with my letters vnto the sayde great Turke for a present, which he was fully determined to haue done at some meete time, meaning to send his Ambassadour vnto the sayd great Turke very shortly after.

The king of Hircanes second letters in M. Jenkinsons behalfe.

But the king of Hircanes sonne aforesayd, vnderstanding this deliberation, sent a man in post vnto his father, for to declare and impart the purpose vnto him, who as a gracious prince, considering that I had passed through his dominions, and that I had iourneyed for a good intent, did write to the Sophie all that which hee vnderstood of his sayd determination, and that it should not stand with his maiesties honour to doe me any harme or displeasure, but rather to giue mee good entertainment, seeing I was come into his land of my free will, and not by constraint, and that if hee vsed me euill, there would few straungers resort into his countrey, which would be greatly vnto his hinderance, with many other perswasions: which after that the sayd Sophie had well and throughly pondered and digested (much esteeming the same king of Hircane, being one of the valiantest princes vnder him and his nigh kinseman) changed his determined purpose, and the 20. day of March, 1562. he sent to me a rich garment of cloth of gold, and so dismissed me without any harme.

Conference with Indian merchants.

During the time that I soiourned at the sayd citie of Casbin, diuers merchaunts out of India came thither vnto mee, with whom I conferred for a trade of spices: whereunto they answered that they would bring of all sortes so much as wee would haue, if they were sure of vent, whereof I did promise to assure them, so that I doubt not but that great abundance thereof may from time to time be there prouided and had.

M. Jenkinsons returne.

The same twentith day of March I returned from the sayd citie of Casbin where I remayned all the Winter, hauing sent away all my cammels before, and the thirteth day I came to the sayde Citie of Ordowill, and the fifteenth of Aprill vnto Zauant aforesayde, where king Obdolowcan was at that present, who immediately sent for mee, and demaunding of mee many questions, declared that if it had not bene for him, I had bene vtterly cast away, and sent to the great Turke for a present by the Sophie, though the euill perswasion of his wicked counsell, and that the Zieties and holy men were the chiefe and principall procurers and mouers thereof: but the Sophie himselfe meant mee much good at the first, and thought to haue giuen me good entertainement, and so had done, had not the peace and league fortuned to

haue

haue bene concluded betweene them and the great Turke. Neuertheleſſe, ſayd he, the Sophie hath written vnto me to entertaine you well, and you are welcome into my countrey, and ſo he intreated mee very gently, in whoſe court I remayned ſeuen dayes, and obteined of him letters of ſafe conductes and priuiledges in your names to be free from paying cuſtome, which I deliuered vnto your ſeruaunts Thomas Alcocke and George Wyen, at their departure towards Perſia for your affaires: and his highneſſe did giue mee two garmentes of ſilke, and ſo diſmiſſed me with great fauour, ſending with me his Ambaſſadour againe vnto the Emperour of Ruſſia, and committed the chiefeſt ſecrete of his affayres vnto mee, to declare the ſame vnto the Emperours maieſtie at my returne: and thus departing the tenth day of Aprill, I came to the Citie of Shamachie, and there remayning certaine dayes for prouiſion of cammels downe to the Sea ſide, I ſent from thence before, men to repayre my barke, and to make her in a readineſſe. And during my abode in Shamachie, there came vnto me an Armenian ſent from the king of Georgia, who declared the lamentable eſtate of the ſame king, that being encloſed betwixt thoſe two cruell tyrants and mighty princes, the ſayd great Turke and the Sophie, he had continuall warres with them, requiring for the loue of Chriſt and as I was a Chriſtian, that I would ſend him comfort by the ſayd Armenian, and aduiſe how hee might ſend his Ambaſſadour to the ſayd Emperour of Ruſſia, and whether I thought that hee would ſupport him or no: and with many other words requited mee to declare his neceſſitie vnto the ſame Emperour at my returne: adding further that the ſayd king would haue written vnto mee his minde, but that he doubted the ſafe paſſage of his meſſenger. Vnto whom I did likewiſe anſwere by word of mouth, not onely perſwading him to ſend his Ambaſſadour to Ruſſia, not doubting but that hee ſhould finde him moſt honourable and inclined to helpe him, but alſo I directed him his way how the ſayde king might ſend by the countrey of Chircaſſi, through the fauour of Teneruke king of the ſayd countrey, whoſe daughter the ſayd king had lately married. And thus diſmiſſing the ſayd Armenian, within two dayes after I ſent Edward Clearke your ſeruaunt vnto the Citie of Arraſh, where the moſt ſtore of ſilkes is to bee had, giuing him Commiſſion to haue paſſed further into the ſayd countrey of Georgia, and there to haue repaired vnto the ſayde king. And after my commendations premiſed, and my minde declared to haue purſued for ſafeconduct of the ſame prince for our merchaunts to trade into his dominions, and that obtained to haue returned againe with ſpeede. The ſame your ſeruaunt iourneying to the ſayde Citie of Arraſh, and there finding certaine merchants Armenians, which promiſed to goe to the ſayde citie of Georgia, comming to the borders there, was perceiued by a Captaine there, that he was a Chriſtian, and thereupon demaunded whither he went, and vnderſtanding that hee could not paſſe further without great ſuſpicion, anſwered that hee came thither to buie ſilkes, and ſhewed the king of Hircanes letters which hee had with him, and ſo returned backe againe, and the 15. of Aprill came to Shamachie: from whence I departed the ſixteene of the ſame moneth, and the one and twentie thereof comming to the Sea ſide, and finding my barke in a readineſſe, I cauſed your goods to bee laden, and there attended a faire wind.

Priuiledges obtained of Abdolowcan, which are hereafter annexed.

An Armenian ſent to maſter Ienkinſon frõ the king of Georgia.

Teneruke king of Chircaſſi.

But before I proceede any further to ſpeake of my returne, I intend with your fauours ſomewhat to treate of the countrey of Perſia, of the great Sophie, and of his countrey, lawes and religion.

The deſcription of Perſia.

This land of Perſia is great and ample, deuided into many kingdomes and prouinces as Gilan, Coraſan, Shiruan, and many others hauing diuers Cities, Townes and Caſtles in the ſame. Euery prouince hath his ſeuerall king, or Sultane, all in obedience to the great Sophie.

The chiefe cities of Perſia.

The names of the chiefeſt Cities be theſe: Teueris, Casbin, Keſhan, Yeſſe, Meskit, Heirin, Ordowill, Shamachie, Arraſh with many others. The countrey for the moſt part toward the Sea ſide plaine and full of paſture, but into the land, high, ful of mountaines, and ſharpe. To the South it bordereth vpon Arabia and the Eaſt Ocean. To the North vpon the Caſpian ſea and the lands of Tartaria. To the Eaſt vpon the prouinces of India, and to the Weſt vpon the confines of Chaldæa, Syria, and other the Turkes landes. All within theſe dominions be of the Sophies, named Shaw Thamas, ſonne to Iſmael Sophie. This Sophie that now raigneth, is nothing valiant, although his power bee great, and his people martiall: and though his puſillanimitie the Turke hath much inuaded his countries, euen nigh vnto the citie of Teueris, wherein he was woont to keepe his chiefe court. And now hauing forſaken the ſame, is chiefly reſident at Casbin afore ſayd, and alwayes as the ſayd Turke purſueth him, hee not being able to withſtand the Turke in the field, truſting rather to the mountaines for his ſafegard, then to his fortes and caſtles, hee hath cauſed the ſame to be raſed within his dominions, and his ordinaunce to bee molten, to the intent that his enemies purſuing him, they ſhould not ſtrengthen themſelues with the ſame.

This

This prince is of the age of fiftie yeeres, and of a reasonable stature, hauing fiue children. His eldest sonne he keepeth captiue in prison, for that hee feareth him for his valiantnesse and actiuitie: he professeth a kind of holynesse, and saith that he is descended of the blood of Mahomet and Murtezallie: and although these Persians bee Mahometans, as the Turkes and Tartares bee, yet honour they this falsefained Murtezallie, saying that he was the chiefest disciple that Mahomet had, curling and chiding daily three other disciples that Mahomet had called Ouear, Vsiran, and Abebecke, and these three did slay the sayd Murtezallie, for which cause and other differences of holy men and lawes, they haue had and haue with the Turkes and Tartares mortall warres. To intreat of their religion at large, being more or lesse, Mahomets lawe and the Alkaron, I shall not need at this present. These persons are comely and of good complexion, proude and of good courage, esteeming themselues to bee best of all nations, both for their religion and holines, which is most erroneous, and also for all other their fashions. They be martiall delighting in faire horses and good harnesse, soone angrie, craftie and hard people. Thus much I haue thought good to treate of this nation, and now I returne to discourse the proceeding of the rest of my voyage. The difference of religion.

My Barke being readie at the Caspian Sea side as afore sayd, hauing a faire winde, and committing our selues vnto God the 30. day of May, one thousand fiue hundred sixtie three, wee arriued at Astracan, hauing passed no lesse dangers vpon the Sea in our returne, then we sustained in our going foorth, and remayning at the sayd Astracan, vntill the tenth day of June, one hundred gunners being there admitted vnto me for my safegard vp the riuer Volga, the fifteenth of Julie I arriued at the Citie of Cazan, where the captaine entertained me well, and so dismissing mee, I was conducted from place to place vnto the citie of Mosko, where I arriued the 20. day of August 1563. in safetie, thankes be to God, with all such goods, merchandizes, and iewels, as I had prouided as well for the Emperours stocke and account, as also of yours, all which goods I was commaunded to bring into the Emperours treasurie before it was opened, which I did, and deliuered those parcels of wares which were for his maiesties account, videlicet, precious stones, and wrought silkes of sundry colours and sortes, much to his highnesse contentation, and the residue belonging to you, viz. Craskoe, and raw silkes, with other merchandizes (as by account appeareth) were brought vnto your house, whereof part there remained, and the rest was laden in your ships lately returned. The 30. of May 1563.

Shortly after my comming to the Mosko, I came before the Emperours maiestie, and presented vnto him the apparell giuen vnto me by the Sophie, whose highnesse conferred with mee touching the princes affaires which he had committed to my charge, and my proceedings therein it pleased him so to accept, that they were much to his contentation, saying vnto me, I haue perceiued your good seruice, for the which I doe thanke you, and will recompence you for the same, wishing that I would trauell againe in such his other affaires, wherein he was minded to employ me: to whom I answered, that it was to my heartie reioycing that my seruice was so acceptable vnto his highnesse, acknowledging all that I had done, to bee but of duetie, humblie beseeching his grace to continue his goodnesse vnto your worships, and euen at that instant I humbly requested his maiestie to vouchsafe to graunt vnto you a new priuiledge more ample then the first, which immediately was graunted, and so I departed. And afterwards hauing penned a briefe note how I meant to haue the same priuiledges made, I repaired daily to the Secretarie for the perfecting of the same, & obtained it vnder his maiesties broad seale, which at my departure from thence, I deliuered vnto the custodie of Thomas Glouer your Agent there. The copie whereof, and also of the other priuiledges graunted and giuen by the king of Hircan, I haue alreadie deliuered vnto you. Sojourning all that Winter at Mosko, and in the meane time hauing bargained with the Emperours maiestie, I sent away your seruaunt Edward Clearke hither ouerland with aduise, and also made preparation for sending agayne into Persia in meete time of the yeere. And committing the charge thereof vnto your seruaunts Thomas Alcocke, George Wrenne, and Richard Cheinie, the 28. of June last, I departed in poste from the sayd Mosko, and comming to Colmogro and so downe to the Sea side, I found your ships laden and readie to depart, where I embarked my selfe in your good ship called the Swallow, the 9. of July, one thousand fiue hundred sixtie foure, and hauing passed the Seas with great and extreme daungers of losse of shippe, goods and life, the 28. day of September last (God bee praysed) wee arriued here at London in safetie. New priuiledges obtained hereafter following. 28. Sept. 1564

Thus knowing that the couragious and valiaunt souldier, which aduenturеth both fame, member and life, to serue faithfully his soueraigne, esteemeth not the perils and daungers passed (the victorie once obtained) neither for his guerdon desireth any thing more, then that his seruice bee

well

well taken of him for whom he enterprised it: So I perceiuing your fauourable beneuolence to me extended in accepting my trauels in good part to your contentations, doe thinke my selfe therewith in great part recompensed: beseeching almightie God so to prosper your aduentures, from time to time hereafter to be made for reaping the fruits of my trauels (at your great charges, and to my no small dangers) that ye may plentifully gather in and enioy the same to the illustrating of the Queenes most excellent maiestie, the honour and commoditie of this her highnesse realme, and to the ample benefite and abundant enriching of you and your succession, & posteritie for euer.

A copie of the priuiledges giuen by Obdolowcan king of Hircania to the companie of Englishmen Aduenturers for Russia, Persia, and Mare Caspium, with all the landes and countries adioyning to the same, obtained by M. Anthonie Ienkinson at his being there about the affaires of the sayd company, April 14. Anno 1563.

WE Obdolowcan by the mightie power of God maker of heauen and of earth, appointed and now raigning king of Shiruan and Hircan, of our meere motion and great goodnes, at the earnest suite and request of our fauored and welbeloued Anthonie Ienkinson Ambassadour, haue giuen and granted vnto the right worshipfull sir William Garret, sir William Chester, sir Thomas Lodge, M. Richard Mallarie, and M. Richard Chamberlaine, with all their companie of merchants Aduenturers of the Citie of London in England, free libertie, safe conduct, and licence to come or send their factors in trade of merchandize into our countries, and to buy and sell with our merchants and others, either for readie money or barter, and to tarrie and abide in our countrey, so long as they will, and to goe away when they list, without impediment, let, or hinderance, either of bodie or goods.

And further our commandement and pleasure is, that the said English merchaunts with their company, shal pay no maner of custome for wares, which they or their factors shal buy or sell within our dominions. And if at any time our customers or other officers, or any of the, do disturbe, molest, force or constraine the said English merchants or any of them, or their factors, to pay any maner of custome or dutie for any wares they bring in or carie out of our dominiõs contrary to this our commandement, and the same be knowen vnto vs, then wee will that the said customers and officers shall loose and be put out of their said offices, with our further displeasure, and the sayd English merchants to haue restored all such mony and wares as our customers haue taken of them for our said custome. And whensoeuer the said English merchants or their factors shall bring any maner of wares meet for our treasurie, then our treasurer shal take the sayd wares into our treasurie, and shal giue vnto the said English merchaunts, either ready money or raw silkes, to the value of their said wares. And wheresoeuer this our letter of priuiledges shall be seene and read within our dominion, wee straightly will and commaund that it take effect, and be obeied in all points. Dated at our place of Iauat, the day and yeere aboue written, and sealed with our princely seale, and signed by our secretarie in the 12. yeere of our raigne.

The 2. voyage into Persia made by Tho. Alcocke who was slaine there, & by George Wrenne, and Rich. Cheinie seruants to the worshipful companie of Moscouie merchants in An. 1563. written by the said Richard Cheinie.

IT may please your worships to vnderstand, that in the yeere 1563. I was appointed by M. Anthonie Jenkinson, and M. Thomas Glouer your Agent in Russia, to go for Persia in your worships affaires, one Thomas Alcocke hauing the charge of the voyage committed to him, and I one of your worships seruants being ioined with him in your businesse, hauing with vs, as they said, fiftéene rubbles. And if it shall please you I cannot tel certainly what summe of money we had then of the Emperours: for I receiued none, nor disbursed any of it in wares for the voyage. Also, God I take to record, I could not tell what stocke your worships had there, for the bookes were kept so priuilie, that a man could neuer see them. The 10. of May, anno 1563. we departed from a towne called Yeraslaue vpon our voyage towards Persia. The 24. of July we arriued at Astracan: and the second of August we departed from Astracan, and the 4. of the same moneth we came to the Caspian sea, and the 11. day of the said moneth we arriued at our port in Media: and the 21. of the said August we arriued at Shammakie, where as the king Obdolowcan lay in the field. We were well entertained of heathen people, for the third day after our

A rubble is a marke English.

our arriuall at Shammakie wee were called before the king: wee gaue him a preſent, and hee entertained vs very well.

At our comming to the Court we were commaunted to come before the king, who ſate in his tent vpon the ground with his legs a croſſe, and all his dukes round about his tent, the ground being couered with carpets: wee were commaunded to ſit downe, the king appointing euery man his place to ſit. And the king commaunded the Emperour of Ruſſelands Marchants to riſe vp, and to giue vs the vpper hande. The 20. of October Thomas Alcocke departed from Shammakie towards Casbin, leauing me at Shammakie to recouer ſuch debts as the dukes of Shammakie ought for wares which they tooke of him at his going to Casbin. In the time I lay there, I could recouer but litle. And at Thomas Alcocks comming from Casbin, who arriued at a towne called Leuuacta, wheras the king Obdolocan lay, a day and a halfes iourney from the towne whereas I lay, I hearing of his arriuing there, departed from Sammakie, finding him there in ſafetie with all ſuch goods as hee had with him. During his abode there for ſeuen dayes hee made ſuite to the king for ſuch money as the dukes ought him. But the king was diſpleaſed for that the Emperour of Ruſſelands Marchant had ſlaine a Boſer man at his going to Casbin. Thomas Alcocke ſeeing the king would ſhewe vs no fauour, and alſo hearing from Shammakie, that the Ruſſes ſent their goods to the ſea ſide, for that they feared that the king of Perſia ſhould haue knowledge of the death of the Boſerman, willed mee to depart to Shammakie with all ſuch goods as he had brought with him from Casbin, I leauing him at the Court.

Casbin.

Leuuacta.

A Boſerman is a Renegado.

The third day after mine arriuall at Shammakie, I had newes that Thomas Alcocke was ſlaine comming on his way towards me. Then the king Obdolocan vnderſtanding of his death, demaunded whether he had euer a brother. Some ſaid I was, ſome ſaide I was not his brother. When this fell out, your worſhips had no other ſeruant there but mee among thoſe heathen people. Who hauing ſuch a ſumme of goods lying vnder my handes, and ſeeing how the Ruſſes ſent their goods with as much haſt as they might to the ſea ſide, and hauing but foure men to ſende our wares to the ſea ſide, I vſed ſuch diligence, that within two dayes after Thomas Alcocke was ſlaine, I ſent in company with the Ruſſes goods, all your worſhips goods with a Mariner, William Auguſt, and a Swethen, for that they might the ſafer arriue at the ſeaſide, being ſafely lyde in. All which goods afterwards arriued in Ruſſeland in good condition, M. Glouer hauing the receipt of all things which I ſent then out of thoſe parties into Ruſſeland. Concerning my ſelfe, I remained after I had ſent the goods into Ruſſeland ſixe weekes in Shammakie, for the recouerie of ſuch debts as were owing, and at laſt with much trouble recouered to the ſumme of ſixteene hundreth robles or there about, which M. Glouer receiued of mee at my comming to Moſco, and all ſuch goods as I brought with mee out of Keſelbaſh, as by a note of my hande that hee hath ſhall appeare. Alſo hee hauing the receipt of all ſuch goods as I ſent into Ruſſeland by theſe two aboue named, hee then had that voyage in venter of his owne better then an hundreth rubles, one Richard Iohnſon twentie rubles, one Thomas Petre fiftie rubbles, one Euan Chermiſin a Tartar ſeuentie rubles. All theſe had their returne. M. Glouer allowed himſelfe God knoweth howe, I then being in Perſia in your worſhips affaires.

Thomas Alcocke ſlaine in the way betweene Leuuacta and Shammakie.

Keſelbaſh. or Jeſelbaſh.

And whereas he ſaith, the Emperour had but for his part a dobble, as farre as I can ſee, knowing what the wares coſt in thoſe parties, hee had treble. If they gaue him ſo much wares, all charges turned to your worſhips, as well of the Emperours as of their owne returnes. I haue ſowen the ſeede, and other men haue gathered the harueſt: I haue trauailed both by land and by water, full many a time with a ſorowfull heart, aſwell for the ſafegarde of their goods as yours, how to frame all things to the beſt, and they haue reaped the fruites of my trauaile. But euer my prayer was to God, to deliuer mee out of thoſe miſeries which I ſuffered for your ſeruice among thoſe heathen people. Therefore knowing my duetie which I haue done, as a true ſeruant ought to doe, I beſeech your worſhips, (although I haue but ſmall recompence for my ſeruice,) yet let me haue no wrong, and God will proſper you the better.

Alſo, to informe your worſhips of your Perſian voyage what I iudge: it is a voyage to be followed. The king of Gillan, where, as yet, you haue had no traffique, liueth all by marchandiſe: and it is neere Casbin, and not paſt ſix weekes trauaile from Ormus, whereas all the ſpices be brought: and here, (I meane at Gillan) a trade may bee eſtabliſhed: But your worſhips muſt ſende ſuch men as are no riotous liuers, nor drunkerds. For if ſuch men goe, it will bee to your diſhonour and great hinderance, as appeared by experience the yeere 1565. when as Richard Iohnſon went to Perſia, whoſe iourney had bene better ſtayed then ſet forward. For whereas before we had the name among thoſe heathen people to be ſuch marchants as they thought none like in al reſpects, his vicious liuing there hath made vs to be compted worſe then the Ruſſes.

Gillan in Perſia.

Againe, if such men trauaile in your affaires in such a voyage, you shall neuer knowe whe gaine is to be gotten. For how can such men imploy themselues to seeke the trade, that are inclined to such vices? or how can God prosper them in your affaires. But when a trade is stablished by wise and discreete men, then will it be for your worships to trafique there, and not before: for a voyage or market made euil at the first, is the occasion that your worships shal neuer vnderstand what gaines is to be gotten thereby hereafter.

The thirde voyage into Persia, begun in the yeere 1565. by Richard Iohnson, Alexander Kitchin, and Arthur Edwards.

¶ *A letter of Arthur Edwards to M. Thomas Nicols, secretarie to* the worshipfull companie trading into Russia and other the North parts, concerning the preparation of their voyage into Persia.

Ieraslaue a towne vpon the Riuer of Volga.

MAster Nicols, my bounden duetie remembred, with desire of God for the preseruation of you and yours: you shall vnderstande that the second of March I was sent by M. Thomas Glouer (your Agent) vnto Ieraslaue, appointed to receiue such goods as should come frō Vologhda, as also such kinde of wares as should be bought and sent from Mosco by your Agent, & M. Edward Clarke, thought meete for your voyage of Persia. And further, I was to prouide for biscuit, beere, beefe, and other victuals, and things otherwayes needefull according to aduise. Thus I remained here vntill the comming of your Agent, which was the 12. of May, who tarried here three dayes, to see vs set forwards on our voyage, and then hee departed towardes Colmogro, hauing appointed (as chiefe for your voyage of Persia) Richard Iohnson. For my part I am willing, as also haue bene and shall be content, to submit my selfe vnder him, whome the Agent shall appoint, although hee were such a one as you shoulde thinke in some respects vnmeete. Three two packes of carseis are all of that kinde of cloth that wee shall haue with vs. The other 11. packes that should haue gone, were solde in Mosco. What other goods are shipped for our voyage, you shall vnderstand by your Agents letters. Whereas Edward Clarke (being an honest man) was appointed Agent for Persia, as one for those parts more fit then any I doe knowe here, God hath taken him vnto his mercie, who departed this present life the 16. of March last past. I wished of God for my part he had liued: for my desire was in his companie to haue trauailed into Persia. Your barke or craer made here for the riuer of Volga and the Caspian sea is very little, of the burthen of 30. tunnes at the most. It is handsomly made after the English fashion: but I thinke it to litle for your goods and prouision of victuals. If the worshipfull companie would sende hither a Shipwright, being skilfull to make one of the burden of 60. tunnes or more, drawing but 6. foote water at the most when it is laden, I thinke it should bee profitable. For if your owne goods would not lade the same, here be Marchants that would bee glad and faine to giue great fraight to lade their goods with vs, whereby your charges would be much lessened: and so it may happen, the wages of your men hired here may be saued, and your seruants and goods in farre greater assurance: for their boates here are dangerous to saile with and to passe the Caspian sea. There be Carpenters here that will doe well enough hauing one to instruct them. Your wares bought here, and orders taken for those that goe for your voyage of Persia, are yet vnknowen vnto mee: wherefore I can not (as I would at this present) write to you thereof, for (as you doe knowe) it was the Gouernours minde I should be acquainted with greater affaires then these. Howbeit I doubt not but I shalbe informed of them that are appointed, and all things shall be bought when they shall see time and haue more leasure.

Richard Johnson chiefe of the third voyage into Persia.

A barke of 30. tunnes made at Ieraslaue 1564. to passe the Caspian seas.

Thus (in hast as appeareth) I commit you and yours into the hands of Almightie God, who preserue you in perfect health with increase of worship.

From Ieraslaue the 15. of May 1565.

By yours to commaunde here or els where during life,
Arthur Edwards.

An other

An other letter of the ſaid M. Arthur Edwards, written the 26. *of April* 1566. *in Shamakie in Media to the right worſhipfull* ſir Thomas Lodge knight and Alderman: And in his abſence to M. Thomas Nicols, Secretarie to the right worſhipfull companie trading into Ruſſia, Perſia, and other the North and Eaſt parts, touching the ſucceſſe of Richard Iohnſon in the thirde voyage into Perſia.

WOrſhipfull ſir, my bounden duetie remembred, with heartie prayer vnto God for the preſeruation of you and and yours in perfect health with increaſe of worſhip. It may pleaſe you that my laſt letter I ſent you was from Aſtracan the 26. of July 1565. From whence Richard Iohnſon, my ſelfe, and Alexander Kitchin, departed as the 30. of the ſame. And by meanes of contrary windes, it was the 23. of Auguſt before wee came to our deſired porte named Nazauoc. There, after wee had gotten your goods on lande, with much labour and ſtrength of men, as alſo windleſſes deuiſed and made, wee haled your barke ouer a barre of beach or peeble ſtones into a ſmall Riuer, ſending your ſhippes apparell with other things to an houſe hired in a village thereby. And aſſoone as wee might get camels, being the firſt of September wee departed thence, and came to this towne of Shamakie the 11. of the ſame: and the 17. day following wee preſented vnto Abdollocan the King of this Countrey one timber of ſables, one tunne or neſt of ſiluer cuppes parfill gilt, three moſſes teeth, 4. arſhines of ſkarlet, three pieces of carſeis, with 40. redde foxes.

They departed from Aſtracan the 3. of July 1565.

September.

Preſents to the king Abdolowcan.

He receiued our preſents with giuing vs thankes for our good wills, demaunding if M. Ienkinſon were in good health, and whether he would returne into theſe parts againe. Hee willed vs alſo himſelfe to ſit downe before him the diſtance of a quoits caſt from his tent, where hee ſate with diuers of his counſaile and nobilitie, ſending vs from his table ſuch meate as was before him: And after certaine talke had with vs, hee ſaide if hee might perceiue or knowe any maner of perſon to doe vs any wrong, hee woulde puniſh them in example of others, whereby wee ſhould liue in quietneſſe, and haue no cauſe to complaine, giuing vs a litle houſe for the time, vntill a better might be prouided in ſuch place as wee ſhould thinke moſt meete, neuer willing vs to riſe or depart, vntill ſuch time as wee of our ſelues thought it conuenient. At the taking of our leaue, he willed vs to put our whole mindes and requeſts in writing, that hee might further vnderſtand our deſires. But while we were about to doe ſo, God tooke this good king our friende out of this preſent life the 2. of October paſt. The want of him hath bene the cauſe that as yet wee cannot receiue certaine debts. Howbeit, we doubt not but wee ſhall recouer all ſuch ſummes of money as are owing vs for this voyage. As for Thomas Alcocks debts they are paſt hope of recouerie, which had not bene loſt if the king had liued. Wee truſt in the place of him, God will ſende as friendly a king towards vs: who by report (and as wee be credibly informed,) ſhall be his ſonne named the Murſay: who ſince the death of his father, at our being with him, promiſed to ſhewe vs more friendſhip then euer we found: God graunt the ſame.

A houſe giuen our men in Shamakie by the King.

The death of Abdollocan the 2. of October 1565.

Murſay the newe king of Media.

Great troubles haue chaunced in theſe parts. Of thoſe which were of the olde kings counſaile or bare any rule about him in theſe quarters, ſome are in priſon, ſome are pinched by the purſe, and other ſent for vnto the Shaugh. Theſe troubles haue partly bene the let that wares were not ſolde, as they might to more profite. Your Agent Richard Iohnſon bought foure hoyſes, minding to haue ſent to Casbin, Alexander Kitchin, whome God tooke to his mercie the 23. of October laſt: and before him departed Richard Dauis one of your Mariners; whoſe ſoules I truſt the Lord hath receiued to his mercie. We are now deſtitute of others to ſupply their roomes. Foure Mariners were fewe ynough to ſaile your barke, whereof at this preſent wee haue but one, whoſe name is William Smith, an honeſt yong man, and one that doeth good ſeruice here. For want and lacke of Mariners that ſhould knowe their labours, wee all were like to bee caſt away in a ſtorme. For all the broad ſide of our barke laye in the water, and wee had much a doe to recouer it: but God of his mercie deliuered vs. Mariners here, may doe you good ſeruice all the winter otherwayes: and Marchants here will be the gladder to ſhippe their goods in vs giuing good fraighte. One Marchant at this preſent is content to pay twentie robles for twentie camels lading fraighte to Aſtracan. Such barkes as muſt paſſe theſe ſeas, may not drawe about fiue foote of water, becauſe that in many places are very ſhallowe waters. Wee minde hereafter to make the Ruſſian boates more ſtrong, and they ſhall ſerue our turnes very well.

The death of Alexander Kitchin the 23. of October 1565.

The Caſpian ſea very ſhoald in diuers places.

And whereas some in times past tooke great paines, trauaile, and care, and could not haue their desire in the getting of the Shaughes letters or priuiledge, Nowe, I trust (with Gods helpe) they may bee obtained: which being had, will bee beneficiall to the companie, and great quietnesse to those that shall remaine here, although heretofore thinges haue chaunced ill, as the like in other Countreis hath bene. But I doubt not, this priuiledge once gotten and obtained, wee shall liue in quietnesse and rest, and shall shortly growe into a great trade for silkes both raw and wrought, with all kinde of spices and drugs, and other commodities here, as to master Anthonie Ienkinson is well knowen; Who (I doubt not) hath long agoe throughly aduertised the Companie thereof.

The murthering of Thomas Alcocks.

The trueth of the slaughter of Thomas Alcocks your seruant is not certainly knowen. Some thinke it was by the meanes of a noble man, with whome your saide seruant was earnest in demaunding of your debts: vpon whose wordes he was so offended, that he procured his death. Other doe thinke verily, that in riding from the Court without companie, false knaues layde waite, thinking hee had much about him, and so slewe him. I doubt not though this misfortune hath chaunced, that things shall come well to passe, and that we shall be better beloued when we shall be more knowen.

Honest Marchants are glad of our being here, and seeke to growe in acquaintance with vs, being glad to further vs in that they may, & haue spoken in our fauours to the chiefest of this Countrey: one being a noble man, with whome your Agent and I are entred into friendship, who is at this time in great fauour with the Shaugh. Hee hath here and in other places of these parts great stay in things since the kings death: he is well knowen to M. Ienkinson, his name is Cozamomet. Also another duke named Ameddin-becke is our great friende: And his sister is the Shaughes wife. These two haue promised your Agent by their lawe, not onely to procure vnto the Shaughes priuiledge, but also that I shall haue the debts paide mee of those that went from hence to Casbin, if we would send one with them. In consideration whereof, I was vpon their warning (for want of a better) appointed by your Agent M. Richard Iohnson, all crafts layde apart, presently to put my selfe in readinesse, and to depart in company with these noblemen: with charge, when God should send me to Casbin, to vse my discretion with their aduise, for the recouering of your debts and priuiledge. I shall haue with mee one interpretour and two bought seruants: one of which partly vnderstandeth this tongue, and may be put in trust whatsoeuer should become of me.

Cozamomet a noble man that fauoured our nation.

The value of a tumen.

I haue receiued 6. tumens in readie money: 200. shaughes is a tumen, reckoning euery shaugh for 6. pence Russe. I haue further receiued two timbers of sables, one to be solde, the other to bee giuen to Thomas the Shaugh: and haue order further to giue as I shall see good vnto those that shall further my suite, and as occasion serueth. And for as much as I am commanded to goe, I shall willingly doe my best, putting my trust in God that hee will sende mee well speede in this iourney.

For all kinde of wares bought or solde, you shall throughly be aduertised by your Agent Richard Iohnson, whose reckonings or accompts at no hande I might see or be priuie vnto. Your carsels were good and well sorted, they are and will be solde from 150. shaughs to 160. the piece. Two hundreth pieces were solde vnder, that needed not: one 100. pieces at 146. and 147. the piece: but more would haue bene giuen, if circumspection had bene vsed. They were solde to those noblemen aforesaid, when as yet it was not knowen that I should haue gone with them. They may stande vs much in steade, as they haue promised vs their good wils in that they may doe. Here is at this time bought for England, 11. packes of rawe silke, 25. and 26. batmans being in euery packe: The batman being 7. li. which may be 6. li. and a halfe of English waight: being bought here for 66. to 70. shaughes the batman. It is fine and good: little course at this time was to be had. And where course silke might be had being at Grousin, we could not send thither for that time was neglected at the first. When wee shall haue lodgers here to remaine in Summer, we may bye it at the first hand of the Countrey people that bring it to sel hither, and to other places. I would to God the companie could finde the meanes to haue a vent to make sales for the one halfe that wee may bye here. The Companie may haue for 30. or 40. thousande pounds yeerely.

What a batman is.

Varas a great mart for silke.

And as appeareth by your Agents wordes being at Varas, hee and others saw there great abundance, that by report of diuers, you may bestowe (if it were not for the Turkes) in two hundred thousande pounds: besides silke of all colours died in graine, bounde vp in round waights, I thinke 15. of our ounces to their pound waight, and here solde for 23. shaughes, at 6. the shaugh may be 11. s. 6. pence.

Gilan 7. dayes saying from Astracan. Niam.

From Astracan in 7. or 8. dayes, wee may saile with our barke to a place named Gilan: the which place in time to come, (I thinke) shall serue our purpose best to goe vnto. Niam is there

great

good cheape, being brought from thence hither to Shamakie, and solde here for 2. bists their batman, which may be 5. pence in our money: and so I haue bought to be sent home 223. batmans for example. And at Gilan there is rawe silke enough for the companies stocke. I beleeue, if any great store of wares be sent from you, that must be the place: and frō thence a man may trauaile in 4. dayes to Casbin, and there make quicke and better sales, at which place your commodities are to be solde. For there be the chiefe and best marchants, and diuers other cities round about, to wit, Teueris, Ardaoulle, and Cayshan, being the heart of the Countrey, where there is more ciuilitie and marchants are better vsed. Concerning this point I haue inquired of diuers marchants both Russes and others that haue bene in those parts, and found them all agreeing in one tale, and perceiue the same to be true, and that all kinde of wares come from thence into these parts. And from Casbin to Ormus is about 30. dayes trauailing with camels. I haue written the prices of wares in my letter to the gouernour both for spices and some drugs, which I doe know.

Gilan 4. dayes iourney from Casbin.

From Casbin to Ormus a moneths trauaile with camels.

Also you shall vnderstand here is plentie of yew for bowstaues. I caused three horse loades to be bought vs for to knowe the trueth: but they were cut out of season this month of April the sappe being in them. Three moneths I neuer left speaking to the Countrey men to bring some. Your Agent will send some home for example.

This day being the 26. of April I departed towards Casbin: God giue mee a good houre and well to speede, with a merrie heart in returning againe, as my hope is I shall. I haue written my minde to M. Glouer your Agent what Russian wares I thinke best to be bought for this Countrey: and to sende some one hither that hath the Russe tongue: for we haue neede. And the companie shall doe well hereafter in taking of seruants to be sent hither, to see that they be such as haue discretion and be something broken in the world, and seene in the trade of Marchandise: and one, (if they can get some such) as can speake the Portingall tongue, may doe them as good seruice, as those that shall be here two yeeres before him: for then wee may bye a slaue that can speake this language and the Portingal tongue also, which shall then interprete vnto vs in all your secret doings, not making the Russes priuie: for they are sorie that we doe trade into these parts. For wee are better beloued then they are: because they are giuen to be drunkards they are much hated of these people. It is to be wished that none should serue your worships in these parts that be giuen to that kinde of vice: And that your chiefe Agent and Factor should be able to rule and gouerne himselfe, that no dishonestie should be imputed to him and vs. By his euill vsage hee payd here 24. robles, being in this Countrey 4. tumens for a boy that hee was charged to haue conuayde away from a Tesicke one of this countrey men, who willed him to sweare that he knew not where the boy was become, and he should not pay it. If he were honest he might doe your worships good seruice because of his Russian tongue.

The secret doings of the Moscouie companie.

Your London reds are not to be sent hither: for they will not giue aboue 18. shaughes their arshine. Here be reds of more orient colour being Venice die. The people are giuen much to weare cloth: the common people specially were carsets: and the Marchants of more wealth weare broad cloth. You shall doe well to sende fiue or sixe broad clothes, some blackes, pukes, or other sadde colours, that may be affoarded at 20. shaughes the ashine and not aboue. It is here reported that King Philip hath giuen the Turkes a great ouerthowe at Malta, and taken 70. or 80. of his chiefe Captaines.

Orient reds of Venice die.

Thus wishing I had more time to write, I pray you to beare with this my scribled letter, and after you haue red it that M. Nicols may haue a sight thereof.

By your seruant to commaund,
Arthur Edwards.

Commodities to be caried out of England into Persia, *with their prices there.*

1. Carsets are solde there for 180. shaughes. So that a carsey is solde there in Persia for 4. li. 10. s. For euery shaugh is 6. d. English. And euery bist is 2. d. halfe penie English, and in Russe money 3. d.

A shaugh is 6. d. English.

2. Tinne is solde in Persia for 14. and 18. shaughes the batman. The batman containing as I haue mentioned before.
3. Brasill is at 10. and 12. shaughes the batman.
4. Rede cloth fine at 25. and 30. shaughes the yard.
5. Copper at 20. and 25. shaughes the batman.

Commodities to be brought out of Persia *for England.*

1. Rawe silke at 60. shaughes the batman.
2. Peper at 32. shaughes the batman.
3. Ginger at 18. and 20. shaughes the batman.
4. Nutmegs at 30. shaughes the batman.
5. Byrmstone at 4. shaughs the great batman. } The great batman is 12. li. Engl.
6. Allam at 2. bists and a halfe the batman, and lesse.
7. Rice at halfe a bist the batman.
8. Galles at halfe a bist the batman.
9. Cloues at 40. shaughes the batman.
10. Yew for bowe staues, at

A letter of M. Arthur Edwards, written the 8. of August 1566. *from the towne of Shamakie in Media, to the right worshipfull the* Gouernours, Consuls, assistants, and generalitie of the companie of Russia, &c. Shewing his accesse vnto the Emperour of Persia, his conference with him, his obteining of a priuiledge: with diuers other good obseruations.

His arriuall at Caldin the 25. of May.

Right worshipfull (sirs) my bounden duetie remembred, with most humble commendations and like request to God for the preseruation of your good healthes with the rest of the companie, &c. It may please you to vnderstand, that the last letter which I sent you from hence was of the 26. of Aprill of this present yeere by Richard Iohnson at my departure towards Casbin: to which Citie I came the 25. of May following, not slacking any day, houre, nor moment, to procure and make friends for the speedie bringing me before the presence of the Shaugh, being the 29. day of the same moneth brought before him, with whose Maiestie I was in talke (as I thinke) two houres. He willed me twise to come neerer him, demaunding what were my requests: and hauing heard them, he promised me his gratious letters. Afterwardes he called me twise againe to come neerer him, and talked with me of our Queenes Maiestie and Countrey, and what commodities we had, and what other commodities we desired: And then of other Countreis adioyning vnto vs and their commodities, as also of K. Philip, what ouerthrow he gaue the Turkes at the siege of Malta. And how long we had traded into Russeland and Moscouia, and in what space wee might saile out of England into Russeland, & how many weekes trauaile it is from Colmogro to Astracan: And then came to discourse of Russeland, and what townes the Emperour had wonne, declaring vnto me himselfe most of our commodities. In the end he willed that your worships should send him of all sorts of clothes, but of one especially, which maydens doe make (as he saide:) He named it Karengi, I thinke it is Westerne dosens died into scarlets. Time will not permit me to write at large the cõference which I had with his Maiestie. It was strange to his people (knowing our religion) to see me so long in talke with him, willing his Secretarie before mee to write what he was desirous of: to wit of London clothes, three or foure of all sorts for example being well shorne and drest. Violets in graine and fine reds be most worne: but other good colours will away, when they shall see them. I wore a garment of London russet, being much esteemed. You shall doe well to send such sorts as be liuely to the sight, and some blackes for womens garments, with some Orenge colours and tawneis. Here is much broad cloth worne. They talke much of London clothes: and they that know the wearing are desirous of them before the cloth of the women making: for they finde it nothing durable. For when it commeth to weare on the cheere it renteth like paper. Here is much Venice cloth worne, being crompliffed, a yard and a halfe broad, and solde here from 24. to 30. shaughes their arshine, being longer by two inches then the Russe arshine is. I wish also that you send some good chamlets & veluets died in graine, with purple colours & fine reds: because these are most worne. Also some blacks with other colours: some cloth of gold, tissue & botky, some veluets wrought with gold, with sattens and damaskes, most purple and reds of all sorts. You may not forget to send some Westerne carsies, to wit, dosens, which be thicked well, and close shutte in the weauing, being died into fine reds, and some skarlets: for I thinke

Conference and demands of the Shaugh.

All sorts of cloth to be sent specially Westerne dosens died into scarlet.

Odon clothes much talked of in Persia.

Much Venice cloth worne in Persia.

thinke there is no ſuch cloth for their cappes.

Your Worſhips ſhall underſtand, that after my firſt departure from the preſence of the Prince, I neglected no time in daily attendance on them, who had my priuiledge in writing, that I might haue it in readines, at ſuch time as I ſhould againe be called before the preſence of the Shaugh, which was the 29. of June laſt. I was in apparell that he gaue vnto me, with other garments to mine Interpretour, and one of your ſeruants. And then I receaued your letters, or priuiledge, according to my deſire, ſeaſed and firmed with the Shaughes owne hand. Praiſed be God, who hath wrought with me, and for me, in all my doings.

The ſecond admiſſion to the Shaughes preſence, the 29. of June, 1566. at which time he receaued the priuiledge.

The 29. of June, is one of their chiefe feſtiuall daies, ſo that all his Nobilitie was there preſent, with two Ambaſſadors in companie with his Maieſtie, who ſaid vnto me, that if my letters were not to my minde, in time to come they ſhould be mended. Wherupon I made my reuerence, and gaue his Highnes moſt humble & hartie thankes, ſaying, that with as much ſpeede as might be, our Queenes Maieſtie ſhould vnderſtand of his goodnes towards her Marchants, which I thought would write their letters of requeſt vnto his Highnes, in ſuch forme & order, as by them ſhould be thought meete and requiſite for their good aſſurance, in the trade of marchandizes: who replied with theſe wordes: when we ſhall ſee their reaſonable requeſts, we will ſhewe them our farther good will, and ſo I departed.

The Shaughs promiſe to increaſe the priuiledge.

Since the receauing of the Shaughes letters, I haue eaten in companie of good Dukes, and others, who before would not come neere me. And euery day ſome would come to my ſhoppe, and eate and drinke with me, out of mine owne diſhe. Likewiſe in riding from Casbin hither, on the way when I ſate downe to dinner, they would come and eate with me vnbidden, when I wiſhed them further off: for I ſpared them that, which gladly I would haue eaten my ſelfe. I doubt not but we ſhall liue here from henceforth in quietnes: for now in all places where I come, I am friendly vſed with the beſt.

I was aſked by the Shaugh, if you were able to bring him yeerely one hundred thouſand peeces of kerſies, and clothes. And I anſwered him, ſaying, your Worſhips were able to furniſh his countrey with two hundred thouſand. Whereat his Highnes reioyced: for the Turkes Ambaſſador the laſt yeere, as diuerſe haue tolde mee, did put the Shaugh in deſpaire, ſaying, that the Turke would not permit any cloth to be brought into his Countrey.

Aleppo a Cit of great trade.

There is a Citie in Turkie, named Aleppo, wherein continually are many Venetians dwelling, beſides other that come yeerely, & there buy wools, gals, tallow, ſaffron, ſkinnes, cotton wooll, and other wares, and great ſtore of ſpices. Alſo the Armenians yeerely receaue at the Venetians hands, kerſies in barter for raw ſilkes, giuing ſometimes 60. peeces of kerſies for 70. batmans of ſilke of this Countrey, and 40. peeces for Grouſine ſilke. And kerſies ſolde commonly for ready monie in Aleppo, at 11. and 12. duckets the peece, (the ducket being here worth 12. ſhillings) may coſt the firſt peny 132. and 144. Shaughes a kerſie. By report it is one moneths trauell from this towne of Shamakye to Aleppo, and from thence to Tripolis, fiue daies iourney: and from Tripolis to Venice, by water, a moneths or fiue weekes ſailing. As I learne, from hence to Venice, may eaſily be trauelled in leſſe then three moneths. Therefore I wiſh your Worſhips to procure ſome truſtie and aſſured friend there, to whome from hence letters may be ſent. For I can haue them here to put in ſuerties to deliuer my letters, and to bring anſwere. If I had any other here with mee, I would nothing haue doubted to haue brought you the Shaughs letters that way.

Armenians barter with the Venetians

The diſtance from Shamakye to Aleppo.

The Armenians and other, are deſirous to barter with vs, giuing ſilke for kerſies, and alſo will ſerue vs of all kinde of ſpices, we giuing them ſufficient warning to fetch it in the Indias, and will deliuer it vs in Shamakye, at theſe prices.

Armenians & other, deſirous to barter ſilke and ſpices for kerſies.

Pepper this townes batman for 18. Shaughes: euery Shaugh is fiue pence.

Maces large for 40. Shaughes, and 45. the batman.

Cloues for 40. Shaughes the batman.

Nutmegs for 16. and 18. Shaughes the batman.

Cinamon for 40. Shaughes the batman.

I doubt not but there will be profite and good done in ſpices, with druggs, and other like, in time.

From Casbin to Ormus, is fiue weekes trauell, and from hence to Casbin is 16. daies with camels laden: but if one trauell with a good Mule vnladen, it may be gone in ſeuen or eight daies. And I thinke to Ormus, and other places, may be trauelled in like order and proportion, with cattell vnladen. But here in all places as men trauell, they muſt carry their owne prouiſion on horſes, which they are to buy: and thus they trauell but a footepaſe.

The

The Shaugh desirous to bargaine for our commodities.

The Shaugh himselfe is desirous to bargaine with you, who will giue monie, silke, and other wares as we will, and take our wares as we may affoord them, willing me himselfe to bring such wares as we might gaine by him. The Armenians by report, and as I perceaue, bring from Aleppo yeerely foure, fiue, and sixe thousand peeces of kersies and clothes, besides those which other men bringe. If your Worships might procure and finde vent or sales for rawe silke, and silke died in graine, besides other silkes wrought and made here, by which, profite may be made, then you might sende a great substance of wares hither. But I feare you shall be hindred by the Venetians, if they may: for I knowe it will grieue them, that you doe trade into these partes: for in time it shall cleane alter their trade, and hinder the sales of their clothes in Aleppo, and other places adioyning. You shall vnderstand that 60. batmans of silke is a Mules lading: and as it is reported, one village of the Armenians, yeerely carrieth 400. and 500. Mules lading of silke to Aleppo, and bringeth thence 800. or a thousand Mules laden with kersies, and Venice clothes. And 18. peeces of kersies, are a Mules lading. But I wish you not to sende aboue 2000. peeces of kersies, although I haue bene willed to write for more. If I might haue had any vnderstanding what your Worships had written for in your letters sent this yeere, I should in this my letter haue bene better able to haue answered you. They which be now in Astracan, might haue written some thing vnto me hither, if it had pleased them, or else haue sent me such letters of mine, as I hope some of my friendes haue written to me: for here are arriued 8. weekes past, two boates with wares, and Russes, by whome they might haue written, had it bene but 3. or 4. lines. They promised the Russes to write, but promise was not kept. I would be sorie that any boate should depart out of these parts, and not write vnto them, waying how all things stande. I heare they haue bought a boate, which cost 40. robbles, and shipped certaine wares to come hither. God send them in safetie. I doe tary their comming, or els I had thought to haue come to Astracan in those boates which departed hence lately.

2000. peeces of kersies to be sent into Persia.

He departed from Casbin the 15. of July.

The fifteenth of July last, I departed from Casbin, and came to this Towne the 29. of the same. And the fourth of August, I founde meanes to arrest the falsest knaue in this Countrey, to wit, the Customer, for 22. tumens, and 100. shaughes, (200. shaughes is a tumen.) I haue caused him to put in suerties for his sooth comming at all times: what end I shall haue with him God knoweth: the debt wil be recouered, but not yet: for he must pay the Shaugh 1000. robbles. These parts as yet are in no stay, for lacke of a Gouernour or head to rule, which I thinke shall be the Mursey. Within 5. or 6. daies, we shal know, for it is time, because men are in feare to trauell for being robbed. If there were a prince placed, I should soone get in your debts, for they dare not disobey the Shaughes letters, or priuiledge: wherein he hath not onely written that our debts shal be paid, but also that we shall be taken heede to, so as we need not to doubt, God willing, in time to come, to be here as wel vsed as we are in Russeland. The bils of debts that Richard Iohnson left with me, had neither the parties name, nor summe of money in two of them, and in other bils, but his owne name. If I had not vsed discretion, in causing to be written in our priuiledge, that such debts as are owing, should be paide any of vs in the absence of the other, some men would not haue paid one penny, but onely to Richard Iohnson, who hath written but his owne name onely in the bils. I receaued in Casbin of Forackan, in part of 29. tumens, 300. shaughes in money: the rest he will deliuer me here in silke, and this is all that I haue receaued to this day. And as for Hawrambecks twelue tumens, I make accompt, that if I could ride to speake with him, I should be paid in money and wares. Touching Ackones money, by meanes of Duke Amedenbecke, who first owed the debt, because they meant not to pay a penny, he did rather seeke to hinder my suit, then to farther mee: but I founde out a present remedie: for God sent me friendes that were alwaies about the Shaugh, and daily put on his apparell, who opened all my sute, and brought me to the presence of the Shaugh, before that Cosomomet sawe the Shaughes eies. But Cosomomet in the ende was my friende: for he was sent for, and declared vnto the Shaugh, what good Marchants we were, vsing trueth in all our doings, and howe wee were in great fauour with the Emperour of Russia, and what good commodities we might bring into his Countrey, with other talke. And daily he was sent for to the Shaugh, about the affaires in those partes: for no man was able to aduise the Shaugh of the state and affaires of those Countries, so much as he was. He owed your Worships seuen tumens, and 48. shaughes, which was not all this time to be gotten at his hands: for he was at great charges in riding to Casbin, and giuing great gifts since his comming, which he twise declared vnto mee. I feeling his griefe, became Phisicion, to ease his paine, and forgaue him his debt aboue saide, in recompence of tenne peeces of kersies, that were promised him by Richard Iohnson, and mee, to giue him at the comming of our goods, in consideration that hee shoulde with speede doe what laye in him, to dispatche mee my way:

Richard Johnsons great negligence.

Cosomomet was Arthur Edwards friend to the Shaugh.

way: for I perceaued he procured other, that did helpe me in my ſute, to delay me of, till time he had his purpoſe. I neuer was in quiet, till I had the Princes priuiledge, & had got me out of Casbin: for victuals, and all other things are very deere there, becauſe they are brought thither from far off. As for all other ſmal debts (which may be about 7. tumens) when our Marchants are come hither, we ſhal ſeeke to get them in as we may. I wiſh your Worſhips to ſend ſome bullion to be coined here, it will pleaſe the prince there, & be profitable to you. Silke is better cheape by 2. and 3. ſhaughes the batman, then it was the laſt yeere. You ſhal vnderſtand that I haue written 2. letters of all my proceedings, which I ſent from Casbin long ſince, to wit, the 24. and 29. of June laſt, by one of your ſeruants to Gilan, there to take ſhip and to goe to Aſtracan, and to deliuer the ſame vnto your factors, which might haue bene to their quietnes and mine, long ago. But I am right ſorie to heare ſince my comming hither, that he hath plaied the loitering marchant in Gilan, not going in thoſe boates that went firſt, but taried for the laſt boates. But I will teach him, to the example of other, how he ſhal make haſte hereafter in ſuch affaires. The kerſies which you ſent laſt, being bought of Maſter Quarles, were good and full lengths, and well ſorted. The Princes Ambaſſador of Gilan was in Casbin, at my being there. I hope in God, if I remaine here, and may go to Gilan to obtaine for your Worſhips the like priuiledge at the kings hand there alſo. For I haue ſomething moued the matter, being put in ſuch comfort, that I doubt not the getting thereof with ſmall charges: which I had done at this time, if I had had other here with me to put in truſt: for from Casbin to Gilan, is but 5. daies riding, which Contrey may be profitable to your Worſhips. There is in that Prouince, good ſtore of ſilke, better cheape, and better in goodnes, then this Countrey ſilke is. Alſo great ſtore of Allam, being there ſold this townes batman, for one buſt and a halfe. I haue made reckoning, al charges borne from hence to Colmogro, & from thence ſtraight into England, at three pounds the tunne, all charges accompted, will not ſtand you in aboue 18. and 20. ſhillings the hundreth. You may haue yeerely by report, two or three hundred tunnes lading. Other commodities there for England, I beare not of. As for gals here to be bought, there is no profit to be done by them. They be brought from Aleppo, & ſold here not vnder 3. or 4. ſhaughs their batman, being ſixe pounds Engliſh weight. Graine that you dye ſcarlet withall, is worth the batman ready money, 200. ſhaughes, reckoning the ſhaugh for 6. pence Ruſſe, it may be 6. robbles their batman. Your Worſhips may ſend ſome portion of money, if you may buy, as I thinke you may, for 12. and 13. ſhillings a pound the berries, ſo you ſhall gaine both in the price, and waight. If one Engliſhman more had bene here with me, to whome I might haue deliuered our bils of debts, and other things, whatſoeuer ſhould haue chanced of me, I would then haue become ſeruant to mine Interpretor, and ſo haue gone to Ormus, and Aleppo, which both ioyne on the borders of this Countrey, being the chiefe Parte Townes, whereunto from all places Marchants reſort. And thus would I haue ſpent 4. or 5. moneths in trauelling for farther knowledge of things, for to haue certified your Worſhip of. I hope in God to vſe things in ſuch order, that yeerely you ſhall haue returne of your goods from hence, as you haue foorth of Ruſſeland, and in thoſe ſhippes. For if we may, as I doubt not with diligence, prouide to make ſales in time, and with ſpeede receaue ſilke at the Shaughes hand, and other mens, that it may be ſent from hence to be in Aſtracan at the beginning of Aprill, from whence it may be ſent to Colmogro in three moneths and leſſe, & there to be ready with the reſt of your goods, by the ende of June, for your ſhippes to receaue, that will be time inough. This I doubt not to bring to paſſe within a yeere or two, when we are throughly ſetled in theſe parts, and better knowen. Moreouer, you ſhall vnderſtand, that at my laſt being in the preſence of the Shaugh, it was ſaide to me, that Maſter Anthonie Ienkinſon did proffer to take all the rawe ſilke in thoſe parties, deliuering cloth, and other commodities for the ſame. I aſſure you, there is in thoſe parts to be had three or fowre thouſand horſes lading, euery horſe loade being 50. or 60. batmans, beſide ſilke of Groſine. Great aboundance of ſilke at times is ſent out of theſe parts, to wit, 4. or 5. hundred horſe loades at a time, by the Turkes, who bring great ſtore of ſiluer to be coyned, to wit, Dollars at ten ſhaughes the peece. The Hungarie Ducket is at 12. ſhaughs. And hauing monie in readines at the time of the yeere, they buy ſilke the better cheape, when the Countrey men bring it firſt to be ſolde. If your Worſhips may bargaine with the Venetians, to take ſilke at your hands, or otherwiſe deale with them, I do not miſtruſt but to haue at ỹ Shaughs hand, ſixe batmans of ſilke for two peeces and a halfe of kerſies. Your good aduiſe herein, and in other matters, I truſt you will write with conuenient ſpeede. Maſter Anthony Ienkinſon hath deſerued great commendation at all your Worſhips hands: for the good report of his well and wiſe doings in thoſe parts, was oftentimes a comfort to me to heare thereof, and ſome good helpe to me in my proceedings. To this day I neuer heard from any of our Marchants. God grant me in health to ſee your Worſhips: for I haue had a carefull trauell, with many a ſorrowfull day, and vnquiet

Victuals and all things deere at Casbin.

The Ambaſſador of the prince of Gilan

Gilan but fiue daies riding from Casbin.

Gals.

Graine.

Ormus. Aleppo.

M. Anthony Ienkinſons offer to the Perſian.

M. Anthony Ienkinſon commended.

vnquiet sleepes. Neither had I the companie of one English person, to whom sometimes I might haue eased my pensiue heart, as God well knoweth, who hath deliuered me from mine enemies. Thus almightie God grant you in health and wealth, long to liue.

Your humble seruant at commandement during life,
Arthur Edwards.

Another letter of Arthur Edwards, written in Astracan, the 16. *of Iune*, 1567. *at his returne in his first voyage out of Persia*, to the right Worshipfull companie, trading into Russia, Persia, and other the North and Northeast partes.

The Shaughs letters to the Moscouie company.

IT may please your Worships, that herein I haue written not onely certaine articles of your priuiledge, but also the Gouernours names, with the Consuls, Assistants, and generallitie. Also such commodities as the Prince or Emperour of the Countrey hath written in one of his letters, directed to your Worships, to be sent him, with other notes, which I thought good to be remembred, as may appeare hereafter following. Your priuiledge is written, granted, and giuen in the names of these fiue persons following, to wit, sir William Garrard, sir William Chester, gouernours, sir Thomas Lodge, Master Anthony Ienkinson, Master Thomas Nichols, and Arthur Edwards.

1. First it is granted, that you shall pay no manner of customes, or tolles, any kind of wayes, now, nor in time comming, vnto his heires after him. And that all English Marchants, such as you shall appoint nowe, and hereafter, shall and may passe and repasse into all places of his dominions, and other Countreyes adioyning, in the trade of marchandise, to buy and sell all manner of commodities, with all manner of persons.

2. Item that in all places where any of our Marchants shall haue their resort, or abiding, his chiefe Gouernours, Rulers, and Iustices shall take heede vnto vs, being our aide and defence gainst all euill persons, punishing those that shall doe vs any wrong.

3. Item that for all such debts as shall be owing by any manner of person, iustice shall be done on the partie, and we paid at the day.

4. Item that no manner of person, of whatsoeuer estate or degree they be of, shall be so hardie as to take any kind of wares, or any guifts, without any leaue and good will.

5. Item if by chance medley any of our Marchants or seruants, as God forbid, should kill any of his subiects, that no part of your goods shall be touched or medled withall, neither any parte but the offendour, and true iustice to be ministred, and being any of vs, not to suffer without the Princes knowledge, and aduise.

6. Item that all such debts as are nowe owing, or hereafter shall be, are to be paide vnto any of vs, in the absence of the other, be the partie dead, or aliue.

7. Item that no person returne any kinde of wares backe againe, being once bought or solde.

8. Item that when God shall send your goods to shoare, presently his people shall helpe vs a land with them.

These articles before written, I trust in God, will content your mindes, vntill your farther letters be hitherto written vnto the Prince: who I am assured will grant your farther reasonable requests, which his Maiestie hath promised. For I moued the question, declaring vnto him, that I thought your Worships would write your letters of requests, to craue his farther good will, as should be thought meete for your better assurance in the trade of marchandize: you will hardly beleeue what long and gratious talke he had with me, which I assure you continued two houres, which was strange vnto the people, and other Marchant strangers. For betwixt euery question that his Maiestie moued, when I had answered him, he would talke with his Nobles, and other his seruants, hauing some knowledge of our Westerne partes and commodities, and then againe would demand other questions. He caused his Secretarie to write the articles before named, in all of his foure letters giuen me (whereof two as I required, are in the Turkish tongue to be sent you.) On the backe side of one, he hath written what wares his Maiestie would haue you to send him. He held me one houre within night, before I departed from him.

These be the names of the wares or commodities which on the

backe

backeside of one of his letters, the Shaugh hath written to you to be sent him.

FIrst some clothe of golde, with cloth of tyssue, and cloth of botky, as Uelluets wrought with golde.

Item good velluets, to wit, cremosins, purples, reds, greenes, and blackes. These colours his Maiestie requireth: for they are most worne. And though there be some of these wares made in his Citie of Cassan, yet nothing like in goodnes, to those that you may procure for him. Small profite I thinke will be in these wares: yet for diuers considerations, as also to satisfie the Princes minde, I wish you to send some, and those that be especiall good.

Item good damasks and satins, of all sortes, with an hundred peeces of good chamlets, which are worth here 80. shaughes the peece, at fiue pence the shaugh, and those silkes to be of those colours aboue written, to wit, cremosins, purples, reds, greenes, blackes, with some light watchet colours.

Item three or foure complete harnesses that will abide the shot of a handgunne, with tenne or twelue targets of steele, being good.

Item ten or twelue good shirts of male, being very good, or else none, that may abide the shot of an arrowe, and two buffe ierkins.

Item ten or twelue peeces of Westerne kersies, being thickers well and close shut in the weauing, and died into scarlets, and fine reds. I thinke there wil be no such cloth for Noblemens caps. The Prince named them "karangies, saying, that maidens did make them, and is desirous of them.

" By the word Karangies, I thinke they meane kersies.

Item fiue peeces of fine Holland cloth for the Prince, with some other for Noblemen, of a lower price.

Item twentie handguns being good, some of them with fire lockes, and also fiue good dags, with lockes to trauell withall.

Item 100. bushes for garments, (none made of swines haire,) for guifts, and other wise to be solde.

Item fiue stone bowes that shoote lead pellets.

Item a mill to grinde corne in the field as they goe, finely deuised: for Cozomomet willed me to write for one to be sent, to giue the Prince.

Item the Prince requireth of all sortes and colours of London clothes. I wish you to sende no lesse then 40. or 50. for I knowe they will be solde to profite, especially such cloth as may be afforded for 20. shaughes the arshine, which is longer by two of mine ynches then Russia arshine is. Let there be fine scarlets, violets in graine, fine reds, blackes, browne blewes, foure or fiue of euery sort, for the Prince, and other Lordes: the rest of other colours liuely to the sight, as London russets, tawnies, Lion colours, good liuely greenes, with other, as you shall thinke good: for the Prince desireth to see of all sortes, which will be an occasion, that the Venetians and Turkes shall be in lesse estimation then they are: for they themselues doe feare, and secretly say the same. And truely the Princes subiects intend to enter into trade with vs for spices, and other commodities, that they were woont to sell vnto the Venetians, and Turkes.

Thus I committe you all to God, who send you health, with increase of Worship. Written in Astracan, the 16. of June, 1567.

By your seruant during life to command
Arthur Edwards.

Distances of certaine places in Russia.

The way from S. Nicholas Bay to Mosko.

	verstes.
To Colmogro	100
To Vstiug	500
To Tokma	250
To Vologhda	250
All by the riuer of Dwina	1100
To Yeraslaue	180
To Rostoue	60
To Peraslaue	60
To Mosko	120
By land East and West	440

The way from Mosco to Smolensko.

To

To Moramis 300
To Smolensko 200

The way from Mosco to Nouogorode.

To Ottuer is 180
To Torzhoke 60
To Wisnouolloko 60
To Nouogorode 150
Southeast and Northwest } 450

The way from Nouogorode to Narue.

To Teseua 50
To the Friers 60
To Yria Niagorod 40
To Narue 15
Southwest and Northeast } 165

From Nouogorod to Vobsky, is 180. verstes by East.

The way from Vobsky to Rie in Liefe land.

To Newe house 50
To Gouen on the borders
To Wenden
To Trecado
To Newslot
To Rie
} verstes All is 200.

The way from Mosco to Astracan.

To Costrom
To Nisnouogorod
To Cazan
To Astracan in all is } verstes. 2800

The way from Vologhda to Narue.

To Belozerco 140
To Batag 80
To Witergen 40
To Ladiskie 60
To Onego lake 180
To Oher 90
To Narue 180
Southwest Northeast } verstes 770

To goe with a small boate within the land from S. Nicholas to Wardhouse.

To Newnox riuer.
To Ousca Gouba
To Lobshanga
To Oust Nauelockie
To Orlouanos
To Solusca Monasterie.
To Candeloxe
To Oust Colla
To Zhemaker
To Poganna Volorkie
To Chibe Nauolocke
To Kegor
} To Wardhouse in all 800. verst Northwest and Southeast.

The way from Colmogro to Mizemske Sloboda, where the Samoeds keepe their Marte.

To Vst Pinnago
To Palango
To Leunona
To Vescom
To Soyaua
To Coula
To Nendega
To Lampas
To Sloboda
} All is 230. verst.

The way to Vromo from Mezemske Sloboda, where the losh hides are gotten.

To Lampas
To Pogorel
To Zapolle
To Vromo
} All is 115. verst, Northeast and Southwest.

The way and distances from S. Nicholas, to the Caspian sea.

IF you goe streight from S. Nicholas, to the Caspian sea, you must goe to Vologhda by water, as by the easiest passage, and that is accomplished passing day & night, in 14. daies, & 14. nights, in boates cut out of a tree: (the boates are called Stroogs) 1100. verstes it is.

By horse and sleds in eight daies you may passe it in Winter. In Summer the way is long ons, by meanes of marishes and bogs, and not safely then to be passed. Then from Vologhda to Yeraslaue, 180. verstes ouer land. This Yeraslaue standeth vpon the riuer of Volga, 180. verstes I say distant from Vologhda.

To the Caspian sea are 2700. verstes from Yeraslaue.

So from S. Nicholas to the Caspian sea, are } iii. M. viii. C. lxx. verstes.

The iourney from S. Nicholas to Yeraslaue is accomplished in fourteene dayes by water, and two dayes by land. } xvi. dayes.

From thence to Astracan men trauell by water in 30. daies and 30. nights.

So betweene S. Nicholas and the Caspian sea, are } 46. daies iourney.

The

There paſſe downe Volga euery Sommer, 500. boates great & ſmall, from all the vpper parts of the riuer, whereof ſome be of 500. tunne. They goe for minerall ſalt and for Sturgion.

The ſalt lieth in rocks (and is whitiſh red, and in fine ſand) as it were 30. miles from Aſtracan vpward the Caſpian ſea. They dig it themſelues and pay nothing for it, but to the prince a penie a poode, viz. 40. pound waight.

The Sturgion which they call Ocetera, is taken fiftie miles on this ſide Aſtracan. Along the riuer the ſpace of 20. miles, they make their booties in plaine grounds, and fiſh for the ſpace of three moneths, viz. from the end of May till the end of Auguſt, and hauing ſalt they vſe to ſalt them. Fiſhing for Sturgion for 3. moneths.

The riuer there is 5. or 6. miles broad, but with ſome Iſlands.

The riuer below Yeraſlaue where it is moſt narrow, is a mile broad from ſide to ſide.

The riuer runneth vpon red clay, all woods of birch and oke on the riuer ſides, ſaue about the townes of the fiſhing places.

Dwina from S. Nicholas to Vſtiug, runneth all on chalke and ſand: the fiſh are ſweet and fat.

The Mene a fiſh with a great head a foote long, breedeth about Vologda, and is fat and delicate.

Betweene Vobska and Nouogrode, the ſpace of 180. miles, groweth flaxe: the whole ſoile in length is ſo imploied, and as much in breadth: this is vpon a flat ſoile.

The hempe groweth about Smolensko vpon the Poliſh border, 300. miles in compaſſe: much of the ſoile is ſo imploied.

Of this hempe, they bring in Winter to Vologda and Colmogro, and we ſet in worke in making of cables aboue 100. men.

The Ruſſians doe ſpinne and hachell it, and the Engliſhe tarre it in threed and lay the cable. And one cable of thoſe is worth two of Danzicke, becauſe the Danzickers put in old cable and rotten ſtuffe, which in foule weather is found of no ſtrength. The Engliſhmen in making of cables ſet on worke a 100. men in Ruſſia.

Soſnoua, a tree that cureth the wolfe with the ſhauings of the wood, groweth in theſe parts, and of the barkes they make ropes as big as a mans arme for their boates. Soſnoua tree, excellent for the cure of the wolfe.

The Samoeds lacking linnen, make handkerchiefs and towels of the bery wood of this tree. The wood of this tree is as heauie as hollie, and the ſhauings tough.

Roſe Iſland in S. Nicholas baie, is full of Roſes damaſke and red, of violets and wilde Roſemarie: This Iſland is neere 7. or 8. miles about, and good paſture, and hath the name of the roſes.

The ſnow here about the midſt of May is cleared, hauing bene two moneths in melting, then the ground is made die within 14. dayes after, and then the graſſe is knee high within a moneth. Then after September the froſt commeth in, the ſnow is a yard deepe vpon plaine ground. The Iſland hath firre and birch, and a faire freſh ſpring neere the houſe built thereby the Engliſh.

Certaine notes gathered by Richard Iohnſon (which was at Boghar with Maſter Anthony Ienkinſon) of the reports of Ruſſes and other ſtraungers, of the wayes of Ruſſia to Cathaya, and of diuers and ſtraunge people.

The firſt note giuen by one named Sarnichoke a Tartarian ſubiect to the Prince of Bogarskie, which are alſo Tartars bordering vpon Kizilbaſh or Perſia, declaring the way from Aſtracan, being the furtheſt part of Ruſſia, to Cathaya as followeth.

FIrſt from Aſtracan to Serachicke by land, trauailing at leaſure as merchants vſe with wares, is 10. dayes iourney.

From Serachicke to a towne named *Vrgenſhe, 15. dayes. *Or, Vrgenz.

From Vrgenſhe to Bogarskie, 15. dayes.

From Bogharskie to Caſhar, 30. dayes.

From Caſhar to Cathaya, 30. dayes iourney.

By the ſame partie a note of another way more ſure to trauell, as he reporteth.

FRom Aſtracan to Turkemen by the Caſpian ſea, 10. dayes with barkes.

From Turkemen by land ſpecially with camels, bearing the weight of 15. poodes for their common burthens, is 10. dayes to Vrgenſhe.

From Vrgenſhe to Bogharskie, 15. dayes.

Note. At this citie of Boghar is the marte or meeting place betweene the Turkes and natiues of those partes and the Cathaians.

Also the toll there is the 40. part to be paid for merchandizes or goods.

From thence to Cashar or Caskar is one moneths iourney, and from Cashar or Caskar (being the frontier of the great Can, hauing many townes and fortes by the way) is also a moneths trauell for merchants by land to Cathay.

Further as he hath heard (not hauing bene in those partes himselfe) ships may saile from the dominions of Cathaia vnto India. But of other waies, or how the Seas lie by any coast he knoweth not.

The instruction of another Tartarian Merchant dwelling in the citie of Boghar, as he hath learned by other his countrymen which haue bene there.

Or Serachick. FIrst from Astracan by sea to *Serachocke, is 15. dayes (affirming also that a man may trauel the other way before written by Turkemen.)

From Serachocke to Vrgenshe is 15. dayes.

From Vrgenshe to Boghar also 15. dayes.

Note. These last 30. daies iourney is without habitation of houses, therefore trauellers lodge in their owne tents, carying with them to eate their seuerall prouisions: and for drinke there be many wels of faire water at equal baiting places not farre distant daily to be had.

Or Taskent. From Boghar to *Taskan easie trauelling with goods, is 14. dayes by land.

From Taskan to Occient 7. dayes.

From Occient to Caskar 20. daies. This Caskar is the head towne or citie of another prince, lying betweene Boghar and Cathaia, called Reshit can.

From Caskar to Sowchick, 30. daies iourney, which Sowchick is the first border of Cathay.

From Sowchick to Camchick 5. dayes iourney, & from Camchick to Cathay is two moneths iourney, all the way being inhabited, temperate and well replenished with innumerable fruits, and

Or Cambaln. the chiefe citie in that whole land is called * Cambuloo, which is yet 10. daies iourney from Cathay.

Beyond this land of Cathay which they praise to be ciuil and vnspeakably rich, is the country named in the Tartarian tongue Cara-calmack inhabited with blacke people: but in Cathay the most part thereof stretching to the sunne rising, are people white and of faire complexion. Their religion also as the Tartares report, is christian, or after the maner of christians, and their language peculiar, differing from the Tartarian tongue.

There are no great and furious Beares in trauelling through the waies aforesaid, but wolues white and blacke. And because that woods are not of such quantitie there, as in these partes of Russia, but in maner rather skant then plentifull, as is reported, the Beares breed not that way, but some other beasts, (as namely one in Russe called Barse) are in those coasts. This Barse appeareth by a skinne of one seene here to sell, to be neere so great as a big lion spotted very faire, and therefore we here take it to be a Leopard or Tiger.

Note, 20. dayes iourney from Cathay is a country named Angrim, where liueth the beast that beareth the best muske, & the principal therof is cut out of the knee of the male. The people are tawnie, & for that the men are not bearded nor differ in complexion frō women, they haue certaine

Wademille speaketh hereof. tokens of iron, that is to say: the men weare the same round like a bosse vpon their shoulders, and women on their priuie partes. Their feeding is raw flesh in the same land, and in another called

Or Kitay. *Titay, the Duke there is called Can, they worship the fire, and it is 34. daies iourney from great Cathay, and in the way lieth the beautifull people, eating with knifes of gold, and are called Co-

Small people. morom, and the land of small people is neerer the Mosko then Cathay.

The instructions of one of Permia, who reporteth he had bene at Cathay the way before written, and also another way neere the sea coast, as followeth, which note was sent out of Russia from Giles Holmes.

Pechora but six dayes iourney by land or water frō Ob. FIrst from the prouince of Dwina is knowen the way to Pechora, and from Pechora trauelling with olens or harts, is sixe dayes iourney by land, and in the Sommer as much by water to the riuer of Ob.

The Ob is a riuer full of flats, the mouth of it is 70. Russe miles ouer. And from thence three dayes iourney on the right hand is a place called Chorno-lese, to say in English, Blacke woode,

and from thence neere hand is a people called Pechey-cony, wearing their haire by his description after the Irish fashion.

From Pechey-cony to Ioulc Calmachey 3. dayes iourney, and from thence to Chorno Callachay 3. dayes tending to the Southeast.

These two people are of the Tartarian faith, and tributaries to the great Can.

Here follow certaine countreys of the Samoeds which dwell vpon the riuer Ob, and vpon the sea coasts beyond the same, taken out of the Russe tongue word by word, and trauelled by a Russe borne in Colmogro, whose name was Pheother Towtigin, who, by report, was slaine in his second voyage in one of the sayd countreys.

VPon the East part beyond the countrey of Vgori, the riuer Ob is the most Westermost part thereof. Upon the sea coast dwell Samoeds, and their countrey is called Molgomzey, whose meat is flesh of olens or harts, and fishe, and doe eate one another sometimes among themselues. And if any merchants come vnto them, then they kill one of their children for their sakes to feast them withall. And if a merchant chance to die with them, they burie him not, but eate him, and so doe they eate them of their owne countrey likewise. They be euill of sight, and haue small noses, but they be swift and shoote very wel, and they trauaile on harts and on dogges, and their apparell is Sables and Harts skinnes. They haue no merchandise but sables onely. Trauelling on harts & dogs.

2 Item, on the same coast or quarter beyond those people, and by the sea side also doeth dwell another kind of Samoeds in like maner, hatting another language. One moneth in the yeere they liue in the sea, and do not come or dwell on the dry land for that moneth.

3 Item beyond these people, on the sea coast, there is another kind of Samoeds, their meate is flesh and fish, and their merchaundise are Sables, white and blacke Foxes (which the Russes call Pseits) and harts skins and fawnes skins.

The relation of Chaggi Memet a Persian Merchant, to Baptista Ramusius and other notable citizens of Venice, touching the way from Tauris the chiefe citie of Persia, to Campion a citie of Cathay ouer land: in which voiage he himselfe had passed before with the Carauans.

From Tauris to Soltania.	6	dayes iourney.
From Soltania to Casbin.	4	
From Casbin to Veremi.	6	
From Veremi to Eri.	15	
From Eri to Boghara.	20	
From Boghara to Samarchand.	5	
From Samarchand to Caskar.	25	
From Caskar to Acsu.	20	
From Acsu to Cuchi.	20	
From Cuchi to Chialis.	10	
From Chialis to Turfon.	10	
From Turfon to Camul.	13	
From Camul to Succuir.	15	
From Succuir to Gauta.	5	
From Gauta to Campion.	6	

Which Campion is a citie of the Empire of Cathay in the prouince of Tangut, from whence the greatest quantitie of Rubarbe commeth.

The way discouered by water by vs Thomas Sowtham, and Iohn Sparke, from the towne of Colmogro, vnto the citie of Nouogrode in Russia, conteining many particulers of the way, and distance of miles, as hereafter foloweth. Anno 1566.

WE departed from Colmogro about 10. of the clocke afore noone in a Lodia or Barke, which we hired to bring vs along the coast to a place called Soroka, & in the said barke we hired 6. mariners, and a boy to conduct vs to the place before rehearsed.

The Lodia or barke was of the burden of 25. tunnes or thereabout, wherewith we haled downe the riuer of Dwina, the wind being then calme, vnto a monasterie called S. Michael where we were constrained to anker because of a contrary wind which there met vs.

A uerst is but 3. quarters of an English mile.

From Colmogro to this monasterie are 50. uersts or miles of Russia, at which place we tarried till the 21. day in the morning, and then hauing the wind somewhat faire, we set saile and departed thence.

21 We departed from the monasterie of S. Michael, hauing the wind somewhat faire, and arriued at Rose Island, outer and against the monasterie of S. Nicholas, the 22. day at 2. of the clocke in the morning, which is 35. miles distant from the monasterie of S. Michael. By reason of contrary wind and tide we were constrained to tarie there all that day.

23 We departed from the monasterie of S. Nicholas at 7. of the clocke in the euening, and came to an anker at the beacons, and continued there vntil halfe an hower past 10. of the clocke, and then set from thence, the wind being South: our course was West until 5. of the clocke in the morning, when as we came to an anker against Newnox towne, where we continued vntil the 25. day.

At this towne of Newnox Richard Chancelor in his first voyage, with his company a ships boord were relieued.

The said towne of Newnox is from the monasterie of S. Nicholas 35. miles.

25 We departed from Newnox haue at one of the clocke in the after noone, the wind at South and Southeast, and our course Northwest and by West.

The point of Tolsticke which is the headland before the entrance of Newnox hauen, and the headland of Seusemskie, lie next Southeast and by South, Northwest and by North. We came to an anker there this day at 4. of the clock in the afternoone, being from Newnox hauen 15. miles, where we continued in harbour til the 27. day of the moneth by reason of contrary winds.

27 We departed from Seusemskie in the morning at 5. of the clocke, the wind next at East and by North, and our course Northwest and by West.

The said land of Seusemskie and the headland going into Owna riuer, lieth East & by South west, and by North, and betweene them is 25. miles.

This day at Sunne set we came to an Island called Sogisney passing betwixt it and the maine, with the wind at South and by East, our course was West and by South, being 85. miles from Owna riuer.

Being past the said Island 10. miles, the wind came contrary, whereupon we returned to the Island of Sogisney, where we remained vntil the 29. day.

29 The 29. day we departed from Sogisney aforesaid at 5. of the clocke in the afternoone, the wind at East northeast, and our course was Southwest & by west, passing by an Island called Anger, being 30. miles from Sogisney, and keeping on our course, wee came by the headland of an Island called Abdon, being from the Island of Anger 15. miles, where we found many rockes: and if the great prouidence of God had not preserued vs, wee had there perished, being fallen amongst them in the night time, and our pilot none of the perfectest, which was contrary to his profession as we found it.

But whosoeuer will trauell that way, must either keepe hard aboord the shore, for that there is a chanell which goeth along the coast within the rockes, or els giue the headland a birth of 6. miles at the least, and so goe a seaboord all: for there are ledges of rockes that lie fiue miles from the headland.

We gaue the headland a birth of 3. miles, notwithstanding there lay two rocks two miles in sea boord of vs, so that we were inclosed with them, and sate vpon the highest of them: but it pleased God to make it calme, and giue vs the day allo, or els we had miscaried.

30 We departed from the headland of the Island of Abdon, at 4. of the clocke in the morning, directing our course West, and at 10. of the clocke before noone, wee arriued at a monasterie named Soloffekay, which is 15. miles from Abdon.

At this monasterie we continued vntill the 31. day of this moneth. Wee had here deliuered vs by the chiefe monkes of the monasterie, their letter and house seale, and a seruaunt of theirs to conduct vs safely through the dangerous riuer of Owiga.

Ex

The people of all those partes are wilde, and speake another kind of language, and are for the most part all tenants to the monasterie. The effect of the letter was, that they should bee readie to helpe and assist vs in all dangerous places, and carie our boats and goods ouer land in places needfull, as in deed they did, as hereafter shall appeare.

Note, that at our being at the monasterie, there was no Abbot for the place as then chosen: for 15. dayes before our arriuall there, the Abbot was sent for by the Emperour, and made Metropolitane of the realme, as he now is: The number of monkes belonging to the monasterie are at the least 200.

31 Wee departed from the monasterie of Soloffekay, as is aforesayd, to a faire stone house of theirs, which is 5. miles from the monasterie, lying from it South and by West.

1 We departed from the Stone house at 3. of the clocke in the morning: our course was West for 60. versts, and then passing betwixt diuers and sundry rocks, with many small Islands round about vs for the space of 20. miles, keeping most commonly the same course still, wee then shaped a new course, and yet sundry times shifting, but we alwayes kept the Southwest, and neerest of all South southwest, vntill we came within two miles of the entrance of the riuer Owiga, where we were to beare in, West and by North. August.

From the riuer Owiga, to the Islands and rocks before mentioned, are 20. miles.

The riuer Owiga.

We arriued about 4. of the clocke in the after noone within the riuer of Owiga, at a place named Soroka, at which place we forsooke our barke or Lodia, and continued there in making prouision for small boates to carie vs vp the riuer vntill the 3. day of the same.

3 We departed from Soroka at two of the clocke in the afternoone, with 3. boates and 12. men to rowe, and set the foresaid boates vp the riuer of Owiga, which we hired.

We went this day 7. miles to a place called Ostroue, where we lay all night, but in the way 4. miles from Soroka at a place where the water falleth from the rockes, as if it came steepe downe from a mountaine, we were constrained to take out our goods and wares out of the said boats, and caused thē to be caried a mile ouer land, & afterwards also had our boats in like sort caried or drawn ouer land by force of men which there dwelled, being tenants to the monasterie aforesaid.

The fall of a riuer.

And when our boates were come to the place where our wares were laied, wee launched our boates and laded our wares againe, and went to the place before named, where wee continued and remained that night.

We departed from Ostroue in the morning before Sunne rising, rowing, and setting vp the riuer 5. miles, where wee came to a place, whereas wee were againe constrained to take out our wares and to carie them and our boates three miles ouer land, so that with rowing, drawing, and setting wee went this day 7. mile more to a place called Sloboday, where we lay all night.

5 We departed from Sloboday in the morning at Sunne rising, and at 6. of the clocke in the afternoone we came to a village called Paranda, which is from Sloboday, 30. miles, where wee remained all that night.

6 We departed from Paranda at 6. of the clocke in the morning, and all that day what with setting and drawing our boats, we went but 11. miles, for twise vnladed our wares, and drew our boats ouerland, in one place a mile & an halfe, in an other place as it were the eight part of a mile, and so we came to a place called Voyets, where we caried all that night.

7 We departed from Voyets at 4. of the clocke in the morning, and so came to an Ozora or lake called after the name of the riuer, and vnto a place called Quequenich, we rowed all this day, and came thither by one of the clocke in the afternoone, which is 25. miles from Voyets, and there wee remained all night to hire men and boates to carie vs forward on our iourney.

Here departed backe from vs the seruant which wee had at the monasterie, being sent by the monkes to goe thus farre with vs. And after that he had hired the boats and taken the mens names that should conduct vs, and giuen them charge to deliuer vs with all things in safetie, at a place being a litle towne called Pouensa, then hee departed from vs without taking any reward for his paines, for so he was charged and commanded by the monkes.

8 We departed from Quequenich at Sunne rising, and all that day rowed vpon the lake amongst many Islands. The inhabitants doe there report that there are as many Islands in their lake, as there are dayes in the yeere. In the euening wee came to a village named Tellekina, which is 60. miles from Quequenich.

A lake very full of Islands.

9 We departed from Tellekina in the morning at 5. of the clocke, and so entring into a riuer, we went that day 13. miles. In one place we caried our boates and goods ouer land 3. miles. At euening we came to a place called Oreiche na maelay, where we lay all night.

10 We departed thence at 5. of the clocke in the morning, & so rowing, came to a place where ṕ

riuer ended, being 20. miles distant from the place where we lay all night, at which place we forsooke our boates and vnladed our wares, and sent a man to the towne of Pouensa, which was seuen mile off for horses to carie vs and our wares to the sayd place. The horses came, and we laded our goods, and at 6. of the clocke in the afternoone wee arriued at the towne of Pouensa, with all things in safetie.

The famous lake of Onega.

This towne of Pouensa standeth within one mile of the famous lake or Ozera of Onega, which is 320. miles long, and in some places 70. miles ouer. But where it is narowest, it is 25. miles ouer, being fed with many goodly riuers which fall into it. Hard aboord the shore within 6. miles, you shall haue 40. and 45. fathoms of depth.

Here it is to be noted that from this place of Pouensa vnto the village of Soroka downe those dangerous riuers which we came thorough, at no time of the yeere can or may any man carrie or transport any goods that come from Nouogrode, or the Narue, and such other places: for in the Sommer it is impossible to carie downe any wares by reason of the great fals of water that doe descend from the rockes. Likewise in the Winter by reason of the great force and fall of waters which make so terrible raises, that in those places it neuer freezeth, but all such wares as come frō Nouogrode to Pouensa, are transported by land to a place called Some in the Winter which Some standeth on the sea side, as doth Soroka. The ready way from Pouensa by land to this place of Some, with the distance of miles I will shew hereafter.

12 We departed from Pouensa at 9. of the clocke in the morning, with 2. small boates which we hired to carie vs to a place called Toluo vpon the lake of Onega, being 50. miles from Pouensa, where we arriued the 13. day in the morning, where we bought a boate that caried vs and all our wares from thence to the citie of Nouogrode.

14 We departed from Toluo at 3. of the clocke in the afternoone, and at the euening arriued at a certaine Iland named Salasalma, vpon the said lake 7. miles from Toluo, and by reason of contrary windes we there taried vntil the 16. day of this moneth.

16 We departed from Salasalma, at 8. of the clocke in the morning, and came to an Iland the 17. day in the morning, named Vorronia, where we continued by reason of contrary windes, vntill the 21. day of the said moneth, and it is 60. miles from Salasalma.

S. Clement his monasterie

21 We departed from Vorronia Iland two howers before day, and arriued at S. Clements monasterie, at 2. of the clocke in the after noone, being from Vorronia 48. miles.

22 We departed from S. Clements monasterie at the breake of the day, hauing a faire wind all along the lake: wee sailed without striking of saile vntil 2. howers within night, and then entred into a riuer called Swire, at a monasterie called Vosnessino Christo, 5. miles from the entrance of the riuer, where we taried all night. It is from S. Clements monasterie 160. miles: the stream of that riuer went with vs.

23 We departed from Vosnessino Christo before sunne rising, and haled down the riuer sometime sailing, and sometime rowing, so that this day wee went 90. miles and lay at night at a place called Vassian.

Or, Sermarx.

24 We departed from Vassian at the breake of the day, & came to a place called ‡Selucaxe, where we lay all night, and is 10. miles from Vassian.

25 We departed from Selucaxe at 4. of the clocke in the morning, and entred vpon the Lake of Ladiskaie, the wind being calme all that day sauing 3. howers, and then it was with vs, so that we sailed and rowed that day 10. miles, along vpon the said lake, and entred into the riuer of Volhuskie, which riuer hath his beginning 20. miles aboue Nouogrode, and runneth thorough the midst of the citie, and so falleth into this lake, which is farre longer then the lake of Onega but it is not so broad. This lake falleth into the sea that commeth from the Sound: where any vessell or boat, hauing a good pilot, may go thorough the Sound into England.

The riuer of Volhuskie. The lake of Ladeskaie.

As soone as we were entred into the riuer, wee came to a monasterie called S. Nicholas Medued, where we lay all that night.

The monasterie of Colnespoli.

26 Wee departed from S. Nicholas Medued, at 5. of the clocke in the morning, rowing and hawing our boates all day, and came at night to another monasterie called Gosnopolie, which is 30. miles from S. Nicholas Medued, where we lay all that night.

27 We departed from Gosnopolie at 6. of the clocke in the morning, and at euening came to a place called Moislaue, where we lay all night, being 46. miles from the monasterie of Gosnopolie.

28 We departed from Moislaue, and the said day at night came to a place called Grussina, 35. miles from Moislaue where we lodged.

29 We departed from Grussina in the morning, & the same day at euening came to a place called Petroe Suetoe, where we lay all night, being 40. miles from Grussina.

30 We

30 We departed from Petroe Suetoe in the morning, & at two of the clocke in the afternoone we arriued at the citie of Nouogrod, being twentie miles from Petroe Suetoe. Here we found William Rowlie Agent to the company, who was there stayed with all his company, and was not licenced to depart thence for the Mosco, by reason that the plague was thē in the citie of Nouogrod. Vnto him we deliuered all the wares that we brought from Colmogro, for by the way we sold not a peny worth, the people of the countrey euery where be so miserable. The citie of Nouogrod.

The right way to bring and transport wares from Nouogrod to Rose illand into S. Nicholas bay, where our shippes yeerely lade, with the distance of miles from place to place, is as followeth:

20 Miles from Nouogrod to Petroe Suetoe.
40 Miles from thence to Grusina.
35 Miles from thence to Moislaue.
46 Miles from thence to the monasterie Gosnopolie.
15 Miles from thence to Ladega towne.
15 Miles from thence to Selunax ouer the lake of Ladega, albeit there be many villages all along the lake.
180 Miles from Ladega towne vp the riuer of Swire, vnto the monasterie of Vosnessino Christo, albeit there are many villages vpon the riuer: for within euery fiue or sixe miles you shall haue villages or small townes.
160 Miles from Vosnessino Christo to S. Clements monastery, albeit there be many villages all along the lake of Onega.
48 Miles from thence to Voronia.
67 Miles from thence to Toluo towne: & there are diuers villages all along the lake where the carryers may lie, and haue meat for man and horse.
50 Miles from thence to Pouensa, where Onega lake endeth.

The way from Pouensa to Some towne is this:

30 Miles from Pouensa to Mastellina.
10 Miles from thence to Tellekina.
30 Miles from thence to Toluich.
35 Miles from thence to Carraich.
20 Miles from thence to Varnich.
10 Miles from thence to Oxtrouo.
15 Miles from thence to Lapina.
20 Miles from thence to Some it selfe.

Note that from the citie of Nouogrod vnto the towne of Some is 936 miles, & from the towne of Some vnto the monasterie of S. Nicholas or Rose illand, ouer and against where our shippes do ride, is full as many miles as is Soroka village from S. Nicholas, as the Russes do account it, as also we do iudge it, namely 325 miles. So that from Nouogrod to S. Nicholas road, is by our account 1261 miles or verstes.

Furthermore it is to be noted that all such wares as shall be bought at Nouogrod, and sent to Some towne, must be sent by sled way in the winter: for if any ware should be sent from Nouogrod by water in the spring of the yeere, after the yce is gone, then must the sayd wares remaine at Pouensa towne all that summer, by reason that in the summer there is no way to go from Pouensa vnto Some towne. Trauell by sleds.

At Pouensa there are many warehouses to be hyred, so that if there were as much goods as ten ships could carry away, you might haue warehouses to put it in: but if there should remaine much ware all the summer, to be caryed in the winter to Some towne, then horses are not easily to be goten at that place to cary it thither: so that your wares once bought at Nouogrod, you must haue caryers there to cary it to the towne of Some by sledges, whereof you may there haue 2000 if you will, by the report of the Russes. 2000 sleds belonging to one towne.

For from Nouogrod yeerely there go many sledges in the winter to fetch salt from Some, with caryers and empty sledges there to buy it, and to bring it to Nouogrod to sell it in the market or otherwise.

From Nouogrod vnto Some towne you may haue a pood of wares caryed for eight pence or nine pence: but in any wise your wares must be sent from Nouogrod by the first of January, so that the wares may be at Some by Candlemas, or soone after: for if your wares should cary by the

A good cause for seasonable trauell.

the way vntill the 15 of February when the sunne is of some power, then is it dangerous: for the heat of the sunne in the day causeth the deepe lakes of Ladega, and specially of Onega to cleare, and if there should come then a sudden thaw, as oftentimes in that time of the yeere doth, then doe these lakes open and breake, whereby many men are lost, and both men and horse drowned, although other riuers do remaine frozen a long time after.

In the towne of Some also there are many warehouses, whereof we can not be destitute for the reposing of our wares, as also as many barks as you will to transport your wares from thence to S. Nicholas road, and that for three pence a poods carpage: so that from the citie of Nouogrod vnto S. Nicholas road you may haue wares caryed for two altines. The pood commeth vnto 23 altines the tunne.

Nouogrod within 180 miles of the Narue.

Prouided alwayes, that you buy your wares there your selfe, and send it thence: for there is no hope that the natiues will bring their wares from Nouogrod to Some, in hope to sell vnto vs, considering the great trade that they haue at the Narue, which is within 180 miles off them.

Written by Thomas Sowtham
a seruant to the company.

An Act for the corporation of Merchants aduenturers for the discouering of new trades, made in the eight yere of Queene Elizabeth. Anno 1560.

WHeras diuers very good subiects of this realme of England in the latter end of the reigne of the late right high and mighty prince our soueregne Lord king Edward the first, at the gracious incouragement, & right good liking of the said king, & by his Maiesties liberall example, did at their aduenture, and to their exceeding great charges, for the glory of God, the honor and increase of the reuenues of the crowne, and the common vtilitie of the whole realme of England, set forth their shippes for the discouery by sea, of iles, lands, territories, dominions, and seignories vnknowne, and by the subiects of the said late king, not commonly by seas frequented: and after that almighty God had called to his mercy the said king, who dyed before the finishing, and sealing of his most ample and gracious letters of priuileges promised to the said subiects, as well in consideration of the said enterprise, as for diuers other respects, it pleased our late soueregne Quene Mary, at the humble sutes of the same subiects, to grant by her letters patents vnder the great seale of England, bearing date at Westminster the 26 day of February, in the second yeere of her raigne, for the considerations mentioned in the said letters patents, to the said subiects being specially named in the said letters patents, and to their successours, that they by the name of Merchants aduenturers of England, for the discouerie of lands, territories, iles, dominions, and seignories vnknowne, and not before their late aduenture or enterprise, by seas or nauigations commonly frequented, should be from thencefoorth one body, and perpetuall fellowshippe and communaltie of themselues, both in deed and in name, and that the same fellowshippe and communaltie from thencefoorth should and might haue one or two gouernours, foure consuls, and foure and twentie assistants, of the said fellowshippe and communaltie of Merchants aduenturers, and that they by the name of the Gouernour, Consuls, Assistants, Fellowshippe, and Communaltie of Merchants aduenturers, for the discouery of lands, territories, iles, dominions, and seignories vnknowne, by the seas and nauigations, and not before their sayd late aduenture or enterprise, by seas frequented, should or might be able in the law to implead and to be impleaded, to answere and to be answered, to defend and to be defended, before what soeuer iudge or iustice temporall or spirituall, or other persons whatsoeuer, in whatsoeuer court or courts, and in all actions, reall, personall, and mixt, and in euery of them, and in all plaints of Nouel desseisen, and also in all plaints, sutes, quarels, affayres, businesse, and demands whatsoeuer they be, touching and concerning the said fellowshippe and communaltie, and the affayres and businesse of the same, onely in as ample maner and forme, as any other corporation of this realme might doe, giuing also, and granting vnto them by the sayd letters patents, diuers authorities, powers, iurisdictions, prehemmences, franchises, liberties, and priuileges, as by the same letters patenes more at large will appeare. And among other things mentioned in the said letters patents, whereas one of the three shippes, by the said fellowshippe being that time set forth for the voyage of discouerie aforesayd, named the Edward Bonauenture, had arriued within the Empyre and dominion of the high and mighty prince Lord Iohn Vasilowich, Emperour of all Russia, Vologda, Marskye, great Duke of Musky, &c. who receiued the

captaine

captaine and merchants of the sayd shippe very graciously, granting vnto them freelie to traffike with his subiects in all kinde of merchandizes, with diuers other gracious priuileges and liberties: therefore the said late Queene by the same letters patents, for her, her heyres & successors, did grant that all the maine lands, iles, ports, hauens, creeks and riuers of the said mightie Emperour of all Russia, and great duke of Mosco, &c. and all and singular other lands, dominions, territories, iles, ports, hauens, creeks, riuers, armes of the seas, of all and euery other Emperour, king, prince, ruler, or gouernor whatsoeuer he or they be, before the said late aduenture or enterprise not knowne, or by the aforesaid merchants and subiects of the said king and queene, by the seas not commonly frequented, nor any part or parcell thereof, and lying Northwards, Northeastwards, or Northwestwards, as in the said letters patents is mentioned, should not be visited, frequented nor haunted by any the subiects of the said late Queene, other then of the said company and fellowship, and their successors, without expresse licence, agreement, and consent of the Gouernor, Consuls, and Assistants of the said fellowship, and communaltie, or the more part of them, in maner and forme, as is expressed in the said letters patents, vpon paine of forfeiture and losse aswell of the ship and ships, with the appurtenances, as also of the goods, merchandizes, and things whatsoeuer they be, of those the subiects of the said late Queene not being of the said fellowship and communaltie, which should attempt or presume to saile to any of those places, which then were, or after should happen to be found and traffiked vnto, the one halfe of the same forfeiture to be to the vse of the said late queene, her heyres and successors, and the other halfe to be to the vse of the said fellowship and communaltie, as by the same letters patents more plainely will appeare.

Since the making of which letters patents, the said fellowship haue, to their exceeding great costes, losses and expences, not onely by their trading into the said dominions of the said mightie prince of Russia, &c. found out conuenient way to saile into the said dominions: but also passing thorow the same, and ouer the Caspian sea, haue discouered very commodious trades into Armenia, Media, Hyrcania, Persia, and other dominions in Asia maior, hoping by Gods grace to discouer also the countrey of Cathaia, and other regions very conuenient to be traded into by merchants of this realme, for the great benefit and commodities of the same.

And forasmuch as diuers subiects of this realme, vnderstanding the premises, and perceiuing that now after the charge and trauell aforesaid, diuers wares and merchandizes are brought by the said fellowshippe into this realme, out of the dominions already discouered, which be within this realme of good estimation, minding for their peculiar gaine, vtterly to decay the trade of the said fellowshippe, haue contrary to the tenor of the same letters patents, in great disorder traded into the dominions of the sayd mightie prince of Russia, &c. to the great detriment of this common wealth: And for that the name by which the said fellowshippe is incorporated by the letters patentes aforesaid, is long, and consisteth of very many words: Therfore be it enacted by the queenes most excellent Maiestie, the lords spirituall and temporall, and the commons in this present parlement assembled, and by authority of the same, that the said fellowship, company, society and corporation made or created by the said letters patents, shall at all time & times from henceforth be incorporated, named and called onely by the name of the fellowship of English merchants, for discouery of new trades, and by the same name for euer, shall and may continue a perpetuall body incorporate in deed and name, and onely by the same name from henceforth, shall implead, and be impleaded, answere and be answered, defend and be defended, sue and be sued, in whatsoeuer courts and places, and shall and may by the same name be inabled to purchase, haue, holde, possesse, reteine, and inioy whatsoeuer manors, lands, tenements, rents, reuersions, seruices, and hereditaments not exceeding a hundred marks yerely, not being holden of the Queenes maiestie, her heyres, or successors by knights seruice in Capite, and all goods, merchandizes, chattels, and other things whatsoeuer, and shall and may by the same name make and do all things as any other corporation may do, and also shall haue and inioy all and singular the liberties, priuileges, iurisdictions, franchises, preheminences, powers, authorities, and things, and may doe and execute all other matters and thinges in the sayd letters patents mentioned, or in any wise conteined. And that no part nor parcell of the mayne landes, iles, portes, hauens, roades, creekes, riuers, armes of the seas of any Emperour, king, prince, ruler or gouernour whatsoeuer he or they be, before the said first enterprise made by the merchantes of the sayd corporation, not knowen by the merchantes and subiectes of this realme, or by them not commonly by seas frequented, and lying from the citie of London Northwards, Northwestwards or Northeastwards, nor any part or parcell of the maine landes, dominions, iles, portes, roades, hauens, creekes, armes of the seas, that now be subiect to the said high and mightie prince Lord Iohn Vasiliwich, his heyres or successours, or to the Emperour, chiefe gouernour or ruler of the said country of Russia for the time being, his heyres or successors, nor the countries of Armenia maior

This is ment by Alderman Bond the elder.

English merchants for discouery of new trades.

maior or minor, Media, Hyrcania, Persia, or the Caspian sea, nor any part of them shall be sayled or traffiked vnto, visited, frequented, or haunted by any person, being or that shall be a subiect or denizen of this realme, by themselues, theyr factor or factors, or any other to theyr vse or commodity, by any wayes or meanes, directly or indirectly, other then by the order, agreement, consent, or ratification of the gouernor, consuls, and assistants of the said fellowshippe and communaltie, or the more part of them, and their successors for the time being: vpon paine that euery person and persons offending in this behalfe, shall forfeit and loose, Ipso facto, euery such shippe and shippes, with the appurtenances, and all such goodes, merchandizes, and thinges whatsoeuer, as by any such person or persons shalbe by any wayes or meanes, directly or indirectly, prouided, caryed, conducted, brought or exchanged, in, at, to, through or from any of the places prohibited, as is aforesaid, contrary to the true intent of this statute: the one moity of all which forfeitures to be to our said soueraigne lady the Queenes Maiesty, her heyres and successors, and the other moity thereof to the said fellowshippe of English merchants for discouery of new trades, and theyr successors, to be seized and taken whersoeuer they may be found, by any person or persons, to the vse of our said soueraigne lady, her heyres and successors, and of the said fellowshippe of English merchants for discouery of new trades, and of theyr successors, or the same or the value thereof to be demanded or sued for by the Queenes highnesse, her heyres and successors, or by the sayd fellowshippe of English merchants for discouery of new trades, or their successors, or their attornie or attornies, or by any person or persons being of the same fellowshippe of English merchants for discouery of new trades, or theyr successors in any court of record, or in any other court or courts within this realme, or els where by action of debt, action of detinue, bill, plaint, information, or otherwise: in which suit no essoine, protection, wager of law, our iniunctio shall be allowed, for, or on the behalfe of the partie or parties defendant.

Prouided alwayes, that whereas diuers subiects of this realme being not of the fellowshippe aforesayd, haue heretofore made aduentures to and from some of the places prohibited by the said letters patents, that the said subiects, theyr heyres, executors, administrators and assignes, or any of them shall not be impeached, impleaded, troubled, sued, nor molested for the same in their goods or persons in any maner of wise, either by our said soueraigne lady, her heyrs or successors, or the sayd fellowshippe, or theyr successors.

Prouided also, that it shall be lawfull for any subiect of this realme, hauing presently any shipping, goods, wares, or ready money, remayning at or in any place, of or within the dominion of the said mighty prince of Russia, or in any other of the places prohibited to be visited or traffiked vnto by this statute or the said letters patents, to fetch, bring, and conuey the same, or cause the same to be brought or conueyed from thence by sea or otherwise, before the feast of S. Iohn Baptist, which shalbe in the yeere of our Lord God 1568, any thing conteined in this statute, or in the said letters patents to the contrary notwithstanding.

Prouided also, that it shall be lawfull for any of the subiects of this realme, to saile to the port, towne, territory, or castle of Wardhouse, or to any of the coastes, townes, hauens, creekes, riuers, islands, and land of Norway for trade of fishing, or any other trade there vsed by the subiects of this realme, any thing in this statute to the contrary notwithstanding.

And for the better mainteinance of the naue and mariners of this realme, be it prouided and inacted, that it shall not be lawfull to the said fellowshippe and company, nor to any of them to carry and transport, or cause to be carryed and transported any commodity of this realme to theyr new trade, but onely in English shippes, and to be sailed for the most part with English mariners, nor also to bring into this realme nor into Flanders from their sayd new trade, any merchandizes, or other commodities but in English shippes, and sailed for the most part by the English mariners, on paine to forfeit for euery such offence two hundred poundes, whereof the one moity shall be to the Queenes maiestie, her heyres and successors, the other moity to the head officers of any port towne, hauing any hauen, or harborough decayed, by what name soeuer they be incorporate, to the reparation of such harborough, that will sue for the same in any court of record, by action, bill, plaint or information, wherein no essoine, protection, or wager of law for the defendant shall be admitted or allowed.

Prouided also, and be it enacted, that no maner of person or persons shall from henceforth carrie or transport, or cause to be carryed or transported out of this realme of England, any maner of clothes or karsies into anie of the partes where the sayde fellowshippe and society is priuiledged to trade by this act, before the same clothes and karsies shall be all dressed, and for the most part dyed within this realme, vpon payne of forfeiture for euery such cloth and karsie, otherwise carryed and transported, fiue pounds: the one halfe thereof to the Queenes Maiestie, her heyres and

successors,

ſucceſſors, the other halfe to the Maiſter and Wardens of the cloth workers in the city of London for the time being, by what name ſoeuer they be incorporate, that will ſue for the ſame.

Prouided alſo, that whenſoeuer the ſayd ſociety or company ſhall willingly withdraw, and diſcontinue wholly by the ſpace of three yeeres in time of peace, the diſcharging of their merchandizes at the road of S. Nicholas bay in Ruſſia, and doe not diſcharge their ſayd merchandizes at ſome other port or roade lying on that North coaſt of Ruſſia, or other territory, now ſubiect to the ſayd mighty prince of Ruſſia, &c. hetherto by the ſubiects of this realme not commonly frequented, that then during the time of any ſuch diſcontinuance and withdrawing, as is aforeſaid, it ſhalbe lawfull to all the ſubiects of this realme to trade to the Narue onely in Engliſh bottoms, any thing in this Act to the contrary notwithſtanding.

Prouided alſo, that euery of the Queenes Maieſties ſubiectes inhabiting within the citie of Yorke, the townes of Newcaſtle vpon Tyne, Hull, and of Boſton, hauing continually traded the courſe of merchandize by the ſpace of ten yeeres, and which before the 25 of December, that ſhalbe in Ann. Dom. 1567, ſhall contribute, ioyne, and put in ſtocke to, with, and amongſt the ſaid company, ſuch ſumme and ſummes of money, as any of the ſaid company, which hath thoroughly continued and contributed to the ſaid new trade, from the yeere 1552, hath done, & before the ſaid 25 of December 1567 ſhall do for the furniture of one ordinary, full and intyre portion, or ſhare, and do in all things behaue himſelfe as others of the ſaid ſociety be bound to doe, and hereafter ſhall be bound to do by the priuileges, ordinances & ſtatutes of the ſayd company, ſhall from the ſame 25 day of December 1567, be, and be accounted free, and as one of the ſayd ſociety and company, and ſubiect to the priuileges, ordinances and ſtatutes of the ſaid company, reaſonably made and to be made, any thing in this preſent Act to the contrary notwithſtanding.

A very briefe remembrance of a voyage made by M. Anthony Ienkinſon, from London to Moſcouia, ſent from the Queenes Maieſtie to the Emperour, in the yeere 1566.

THe fourth day of May in the yeere aforeſaid, I imbarked my ſelfe at Grauelend in the good ſhip called the Harry of London, and hauing had a proſperous voyage arriued at the bay of S. Nicholas in Ruſſia the tenth day of July following, and immediatly I ſent in poſt to the Emperor to aduertiſe of my comming and trauelling then thorow the country, I with my company came to the Moſco where the Emperor kept his court, the 23 of Auguſt, and forthwith gaue the Secretarie to vnderſtand of my arriuall, who aduertiſed the Emperours Maieſty of it, and the firſt day of September, being a ſolemne feaſt among the Ruſſes, I came before the Emperors Maieſty, ſitting in his ſeat of honour, and hauing kiſſed his hand, & done the Queenes Maieſties commendations, & deliuered her Graces letters & preſent, he bad me to dinner, which I accepted, and had much honor done vnto me both then & all the time of my abode in Ruſſia.

The Priuileges granted by the Emperour of Ruſsia to the Engliſh merchants of that company: obteined the 22 of September Ann. 1567, by M. Anthony Ienkinſon.



ONe onely ſtrengthener of all things, and God without beginning, which was before the world, the Father, the Sonne, and the Holy ghoſt, our one lie God in Trinitie, and maker of all things, whom we worſhip in all things, and in all places, the doer and fulfiller of all things, which is the perfect knowledge giuer of the true God, our Lord Jeſus Chriſt, with the comforter the Holy ſpirit, & thou which art the ſtrengthener of our faith, keepe vs together, and giue vs health to preſerue our kingdome, thou giuer of all good fruites, and helper of all Chriſtian beleeuers.

We great lord by the grace of God, and great duke Iohn Vaſiliwich, of all Ruſſia, Vollodimar, Moſco, Nouogrod, Caſſan, Aſtracan, Plaſco, Smollensko, Twire, Vgorie, Vateque, Bulgar, Sybir and others, Emperor, and great duke of Nouogrod of the lower land, of Chirnygo, Kaſſan, Pollotskie, Rotſcoue, Yereſlaue, Bellozer, Vdar, Obdar, Condine, and lord of many other lands, and of all the North parts, commander and lord of Liffe land.

Whereas our ſiſter Queene Elizabeth, by the grace of God, Queene of Engiland, France and Ireland, hath written to vs her letters, that we would grant her merchants, William Gerrard, William Cheſter, Rowland Heyward, Lawrence Huſſie, John March, Anthony Ienkinſon, William

William Rowlie, and their company of England, to come in shippes into this kingdome, and that merchants, William Garrard and his company, haue required of vs that we would grant and licence them to come into our country of Dwina, with all kinde of wares at will, to our citie of Mosco, and to all our castles in our kingdomes, we for our sisters sake Elizabeth, by the grace of God, Queene of England, France and Ireland, haue licenced her merchants, William Garrard and his company to passe in shippes to our kingdome of Colmogro, and to the land of Dwina, and to all other our inheritances in the North parts, with all kinde of wares to our citie of Mosco, and to all castles and townes in our kingdome. And sir William Garrard and his company desired of vs, that we would grant them licence to passe to our inheritance of Cassan and Astracan, and into our inheritance of Nouogrod the great, and to our inheritance of Liffe land to Narue and Dorpe, and to other our castles and townes of Liffe land, with all kinde of wares, and the trade to be without custome, which request we haue granted to sir William Garrard and his company, and haue giuen them licence to passe to our inheritance of Cassan and Astracan, and Nouogrod the great, and into our inheritance of Liffe land, Narue and Dorpe, and other places of our inheritance in Liffe land with all kinde of wares, to buy, barter and sell at will, without custome: and what wares soeuer they bring out of England, or out of any other countrey, needfull or necessary, that they shall bring all those wares needfull or necessary to our treasury, & those wares there to be opened, and then to take out of the same, such wares as shalbe needfull for our treasury, and the rest being deliuered againe, to sell and barter at their pleasure, and to sell none of the fine wares before they be seene by our chanceler, except soaping clothes, and other wares not meete for our treasurie: and when our chanceler will send our treasure out of our treasurie with them, they shall take it with them, and so sell and barter it for wares meete for our treasurie, and bring it to our treasurie, and they to take no other mens wares to barter or sell with them, nor yet our people to buy or sell for them their wares: and if those English merchants do desire to passe out of our kingdome of Astracan to Boghar, Shamakie, Chaday, or into any other countreys, or els to goe into their owne country, then they to take their treasure with them, and to barter and sell it for wares necessarie for our treasure, and to bring it and deliuer it to our chanceler, and when they come backe againe to our inheritance of Cassan and Astracan, or to any other of our castles and townes, that then our captaine of Cassan and Astracan, and all other our people of charge shall not holde them, but with speed let them passe without taking custome of them, or their wares, and without opening or looking vpon them in any wise: and when they haue not our treasure with them, that then like wise no custome shall be taken of them nor their wares to be seene of any man.

And likewise we haue granted them to buy and sell in all our kingdomes and castles, with all kinde of wares: and we haue also licenced them, that when those English merchants doe desire to buy and sell with our merchants wholly together, that they shall haue libertie so to do wholly together: and they that doe desire to sell their owne wares by retaile in their owne house, that then they sell it in their owne house by retaile to our people, & other strangers, as they can agree: and weights and arshends to be kept in their house with our seale, and they themselues to barter and sell their owne wares: and no Russe merchant in Mosco, or any other place in our kingdome, not to sell for them any wares, nor to buy or barter any wares for them, nor couler any strangers goods. And whereas those merchants of England, sir William Garrard and his company, do desire to sell their wares at Colmogro, Dwina, Vologda, Yeraslaue, Costrum, and in Nouogrod the lower, Cassan, Astracan, great Nouogrod, Plasko, Narue, Dorpe, and in other our townes and castles, they shall haue their will to sell it: and of their wares of England and Russe land no custome shall be taken, neither they nor their wares shalbe stayed in any place: and when they depart out of Mosco, to aduertise our chancelor thereof, and not to giue any note or inuentory of any kinde of their wares they carry away: and when the English merchants, sir William Garrard and his companie, doe come vpon the sea, and by misfortune haue their shippes cast away vpon those coasts of the North parts, then we will their goodes to be sought out with truth, and to be deliuered to sir William Garrard and his company, which as then shall be found in our countrey: and if that sir William Garrardes company be not in the Mosco nor in our countrey, then we will and command that those goodes of theirs shall be layd vp in a place of safegard vntill such time as the said sir William Garrard or his company come to demand the same: and then at their comming wee will that it shall be deliuered. And whereas heeretofore wee haue giuen sir William Garrard and his companie in this our kingdome of Mosco, the new castle by the church of S. Maxim, behinde the market, they shall there still holde their house as heeretofore wee haue giuen them paying no custome for the same: and wee also doe licence them to keepe one Russe porter or two, or els of their owne country, and those porters shall dwell with them, and not sell for them

them, nor barter, nor buy for them: And alſo I haue graunted them to buy a houſe at Vologda, and at Colmogro, or in any other place, where they can chooſe for themſelues any good harbour, and there they to ſet vp thoſe houſes in thoſe places at their owne charges: and in Vologda or the other houſes to keepe two or three porters of their owne, or els two or three Ruſſes, and their wares to be layed vp in thoſe houſes, and to ſel their owne wares at wil: and the porters without them to ſell none of their wares, neither yet to buy any for them. And our officers of Colmogro, and Dwina, and of other our caſtles and townes ſhall not looke ouer their wares, nor take any cuſtome thereof: neither ſhall thoſe Engliſh Marchants ſir William Garret, and his company be iudged by any of them. And when the Engliſh Marchants ſhall ſende from our kingdome their owne people into their owne Countrey by lande ouer other kingdomes whatſoeuer they be, they may without ware ſend their owne people at their pleaſure. And when any matter of lawe doeth fall out in their trade of Marchandiſe, then they ſhall be iudged by our Chancellours, and lawe ſhalbe done with equitie betwixt our people and them. And when they cannot be iudged by law, they then ſhalbe tried by lots, and whoſe lot is firſt taken out, he ſhall haue the right: And if it happen any of thoſe Marchants to haue any matter of lawe in any other part of our Dominions for trade of Marchants, then our Captaines. Iudges and chiefe officers, ſhall heare the matter, and adminiſter Juſtice with equitie and trueth, and where lawe can take no place to be tried by lots, and his lot that is firſt taken out to haue the right, and for their matters of lawe no cuſtome to bee payde.

Furthermore, wee for our ſiſters ſake Elizabeth haue graunted, that none beſide ſir William Garret and his Companie, out of what kingdome ſoeuer it bee, England or other, ſhall not come in trade of Marchandiſe nor otherwiſe to Colmogro, nor to the Riuer Ob nor within Wardhouſe, nor to Petzora, nor Cola, nor Mezen, nor to the Abbey Petchingam, nor to the Iſlands of Sallawye, nor to any mouth of the riuer of Dwina, nor to any part of the North Countrey of our coaſt: and if any Marchant, out of what Countrey ſoeuer it be, doe come with ſhippe or ſhipp's, buſſes, or any other kinde of veſſell to any of our harbors, within all our North parts, wee will, that then the people, and goods, ſhippe or ſhippes, ſhalbe confiſcate, and forfeited to vs the Emperour and great Duke.

Giuen in our kingdome and houſe of Moſco, the yeere from the beginning of the world 7000. threeſcore and ſirteene, in the moneth of September, and in the 34. yeere of our raigne, and in our conqueſt of Caſſan 16, and in our conqueſt of Aſtracan 15.

Peruſed and allowed by vs:

Anthonie Ienkinſon.
William Rowlye.
Thomas Hawtrye.
Thomas Sowtham.
Rafe Rutter, tranſlatour hereof out of the Ruſſe tongue.

The Ambaſſage of the right worſhipfull M. Thomas *Randolfe Eſquire, to the Emperour of Ruſsia, in the yeere* 1568. Briefly written by himſelfe.

In this voyage went Thomas Bannister, and Geofrey Duckett, for their voyage into Perſia.

THe 22. day of June, in the yeere of our Lord 1568. I went aboorde the Harry, lying in the roade at Harwich with my companie, being to the nomber of 40. perſons or there about: of which the one halfe were Gentlemen, deſirous to ſee the world.

Within one dayes ſayling, we were out of the ſight of all lande, and following our courſe directly North, till wee came to the North Cape, wee ſailed for the ſpace of 12. dayes with a proſperous winde, without tempeſt or outrage of ſea: Hauing compaſſed the North Cape, we directed our courſe ſlatte Southeaſt, hauing vpon our right hande Norway, Wardhouſe, Laplande, all out of ſight till wee came to Cape Gallant: And ſo ſayling betweene two Bayes, the two and thirtieth day after our departure from Harwiche, wee caſt ancre at S. Nicholas roade. In all the time of our voyage, more then the great nomber of Whales ingendering together, which wee might plainely beholde, and the

Sperma Cetæ, which we might see swimming vpon the sea, there was no great thing to be wondered at. Sometimes we had calmes, wherein our Mariners fished, and tooke good store of diuers sorts. At S. Nicholas wee landed the 23. of July, where there standeth an abbey of Monkes (to the number of 20.) built all of wood: the apparel of the Monkes is superstitious, in blacke coates as ours haue bene. Their Church is faire, but full of painted images, tapers, and candles. Their owne houses are lowe, and small roomes. They lie apart, they eate together, and are much giuen to drunkennesse, vnlearned, write they can, preach they doe neuer, ceremonious in their Church, and long in their prayers.

The abbey of S. Nicholas of 20. Monks.

At my first arriuall I was presented from their Prior with two great rye loaues, fish both salt and fresh of diuers sorts, both sea fish and fresh water, one sheepe aliue, blacke with a white face, to be the more grateful vnto me, and so with many solemne words inuiting me to see their house, they tooke their leaue.

The English house at S. Nicholas.

Towne or habitation at S. Nicholas there is none more then about 4. houses neere the abbey, and another built by the English Companie for their owne vse.

This part of the Countrey is most part wood, sauing here and there pasture & arable ground, many riuers and diuers Ilands vnhabited, as the most part of the Countrey is, for the coldnesse in winter.

The riuer of Dwina.

S. Nicholas standeth Northeast: the eleuation of the pole 64. degrees. The riuer that runneth there into the sea is called Dwina, very large but shallow. This riuer taketh his beginning about 700. miles within the cõtrey, and vpon this riuer standeth Colmogro, & many prettie villages, well situated for pasture, arable land, wood, and water. The riuer pleasant betweene high hils of either side inwardly inhabited, and in a maner a wildernes of high firre trees, and other wood.

Colmogro.

At Colmogro being 100. verstes, which we accompt for 3. quarters of a mile euery verst, we tarried 3. weekes, not being suffered to depart before the Emperour had worde of our comming: who sent to meete vs a Gentleman of his house to conuey vs, and to see vs furnished of victuals, and all things needefull vpon his owne charge.

The allowance of meate and drinke was for euery day 2. rubbles, besides the charge of boates by water, and 4. score post horses by lande, with aboue 100. cartes, to carrie my wines, and other carriage.

Colmogro is a great towne builded all of wood, not walled, but scattered house frõ house. The people are rude in maners, & in apparell homely, sauing vpon their festiuall, and marriage daies.

The people of this towne finding cõmoditie by the English mens traffique with them are much at their commandement, giuen much to drunkennes and all other kinde of abominable vices.

An English house with lands at Colmogro.

In this towne the Englishmen haue landes of their owne giuen them by the Emperour, and faire houses with offices for their commoditie very many.

Of other townes vntil I come to Vologda, I write not, because they are much like to this, and the inhabitants not differing from them.

I was 5. whole weekes vpon the riuer of Dwina till I came to Vologda, being drawen with men against the streame, for other passage there is none.

Vologda standeth vpon the riuer of Vologda, which commeth into Dwina. The towne is great and long, built all of wood, as all their townes are.

In this towne the Emperour hath built a castle inuironed with a wall of stone, and bricke, the walles faire, and high rounde about. Here (as in all other their townes) are many Churches, some built of bricke, the rest of wood, many Monkes and Nunnes in it: A towne also of great traffique, and many rich Marchants there dwelling.

From hence we passed by land towardes Mosco in poste, being 500. verstes great, which are equall with our miles. In their townes we baited or lay, being post townes.

The description of the maland of Moscouia.

The Countrey is very faire, plaine & pleasant, wel inhabited, corne, pasture, medowes, many riuers, and woods, faire and goodly.

At Yeraslaue, wee passed the riuer of Volga, more then a mile ouer. This riuer taketh his beginning at Beatla Ozera, & descendeth into Mare Caspium, portable thorow of very great vessels with flat bottomes, which farre passe any that our Countrey vseth.

To saile by this riuer into Mare Caspium, the English Companie caused a barke to be built of 27. tunne, which there was neuer seene before: This barke built, and readie rigged to the sea with her whole furniture, cost not the companie aboue one hundreth markes there.

His arrival at Mosco.

To Mosco wee came about the ende of September, receiued by no man, not so much as our owne Countreymen suffered to meete vs, which bred suspicion in mee, of some other matter intended, then we had hitherto found.

The

We were brought to a house built of purpose by the Emperour for Embassadours, faire, and large, after the fashion of that Countrey. A special house at Moico built for Embassadours.

Two gentlemen were appointed to attend upon me, the one to see vs furnished of victuals, and that we lacked nothing of the Emperors allowance: the other to see that we should not goe out of the house, nor suffer any man to come vnto vs, in which they left nothing vndone that belonged to their charge. But specially he that looked to our persons, so straightly handled vs, that we had no small cause to doubt that some euill had bene intended vnto vs. No supplication, suite, or request, could take place for our libertie, nor yet to come to his presence.

Having passed ouer 17. weekes in this sort, the Emperour sendeth word that we should be ready against tuesday the 20. of February, at 8. a clocke in the morning.

The houre being come that I should go to the Court, the two Gentlemen, Pristaues (as they cal them) came vnto me apparelled more princely, then before I had euer seene them. They presse vs to depart, and mounted vpon their owne horses, and the Embassadour vpon such a one as he had borrowed, his men marching on foote, to their great griefe. 2. Pristaues.

The Embassadour (being my selfe) was conueyed into an office where one of the Chancellors doeth vse to sit, being there accompanied with the 2. foresaid Gentlemen: I tarried 2. long houres before I was sent for to the Emperour. In the ende message being brought that the Emperour was set, I was conueyed by my gentlemen vp a paire of staires through a large roome, where sate by my estimation 300. persons, all in riche attire, taken out of the Emperours wardrobe for that day, vpon three rankes of benches, set round about the place, rather to present a Maiestie, then that they were either of qualitie or honour.

At the first entrie into the Chamber, I with my cappe gaue them the reuerence, such as I iudged their stately sitting, graue countenances, and sumptuous apparel required, and seeing that it was not answered againe of any of them, I couered my head, and so passing to a chamber where the Emperor was, there receiued mee at the doore from my 2. Gentlemen or gouernours, two of the Emperors Counsellers, and shewed me to the Emperor, and brought mee to the middle of the chamber, where I was willed to stand still, and to say that which I had to say. His admission to the Emperors presence.

I by my Interpreter opened my message as I receiued it from the Queene my Mistresse, from whom I came, at whose name the Emperour stood vp, & demaunded diuers questions of her health and state: whereunto answere being made, he gaue me his hand in token of my welcome, & caused me to sit downe, and further asked me diuers questions.

This done, I deliuered her Maiesties present, which was a notable great Cuppe of siluer curiously wrought, with verses grauen in it, expressing the histories workmanly set out in the same. The Queenes present.

All being said and done, (as appeared) to his contentment, he licensed mee and my whole company to depart, who were all in his presence, and were saluted by him with a nodde of his head, and said vnto me: I dine not this day openly for great affaires I haue, but I wil send thee my dinner, and giue leaue to thee, and thine, to goe at libertie, and augment our allowance to thee, in token of our loue and fauour to our sister the Queene of England. The Emperors speach to the Embassadour.

I with reuerence tooke my leaue, being conueyed by 2. other of greater calling, then those that brought me to the Emperors sight: who deliuered me to the two first Gentlemen, who conducted me to the office where I first was, where came vnto mee one called the long Duke, with whom I conferred a while, and so returned to my lodging.

Within one houre after, in comes to my lodging a duke richly apparelled, accompanied with 50. persons, eche of them carrying a siluer dish with meate, & couered with siluer. The duke first deliuered 10. loaues of bread of the Emperors owne eating, hauing tasted the same, & deliuereth euery dish into my hands, and tasted of euery kinde of drinke that he brought.

This being done, the duke and his companie sate downe with me, and tooke part of the Emperors meate, and filled themselues well of all sorts, and went not away from me vnrewarded.

Within few nights after the Emperor had will to speake secretly with mee, and sent for me in the night by the Long duke; The place was farre off, and the night cold, and I hauing changed my apparell into such as the Russes doe weare, found great incommoditie thereby.

Hauing talked with him aboue 3. houres, towards the morning I was dismissed, and so came home to my lodging, where I remained aboue 6. weekes after, before I heard againe from the Emperor, who went the next day to Slouoda, the house of his solace. A second conference with the Emperor.

After the ende of which 6. weekes, which was about the beginning of April, the Emperor returned frō Slouoda aforesaid, and sent for me againe to make repaire vnto him. And being come, I dealt effectually wᵗ him in the behalfe of our English Marchants, & found him so gratiously inclined towards them, ꝑ I obtained at his hands my whole demaunds for large priuileges in general, together wᵗ al the rest my particular requests.

And then hee commended to my conduct into England, a noble man of his, called Andrewe Sauin as his Embassadour, for the better confirmation of his priuiledges graunted, and other negotiations with her Maiestie. And this being dispatched with full contentment, the saide Embassadour and my selfe departed, and imbarked at S. Nicholas about the ende of July, and arriued safely at London in the moneth of September following.

A Copie of the priuiledges graunted by the right high and *mightie Prince, the Emperour of Russia, &c: vnto the right wor.* shipful felowship of English Marchants, for the discouerie of new trades: And hither sent by Thomas Randolfe Esquire, her Maiesties Embassadour to the said Emperour, And by Andrew Sauin his Embassadour in the yeere of our Lord God 1569.

ONe God euerlasting, and without, and before the beginning, the Father, the Sonne, and the holy Ghost, the blessed Trinitie, our onely God, maker, and preseruer of all things, and replenisher of all things euery where, who by thy goodnesse dost cause all men to loue the giuer of wisedome our onely Mediatour, and leader of vs all vnto blessed knowledge by the only Sonne his word our Lord Iesus Christ holy and euerlasting Spirit; And now in these our dayes tracket vs to keepe Christianitie, and sufferest vs to enioy our kingdome to the happie commoditie of our land, and wealth of our people in despite of our enemies, and to our fame with our friends.

We Iohn Vasiliwich by the grace of God, great Lord Emperour and great duke of all Russia, Volodemaria, Moscouia, Nouogrode, Emperor of Cazan, Tuerkie, Vgorskie, Permiskie, Vaskie, Bulgaria, and many others; Lord & great duke of the low Countreis of Nouogorode, Chenigoskie, Rasanskie, Polotiskie, Rastow, Yeraslaue, Belloforo, Owderskie, Condinski, and all Siberland, Great commaunder of all the North parties, Lord of Leifland, and many other Northward, Southward and Westward.

Whereas our sister Elizabeth by the grace of God Queene of England, Fraunce & Ireland, defender of the faith, hath written vnto vs her letters for her marchants, who hath made suite that we should graunt our goodnes to the Marchants which are of our Companie, and giue them licence to come to trafique in our kingdome to Colmogorode, and to the Countrey of Dwina, and to our great Citie of Moscouia, and to all the cities in our Dominions, and through our Country to Bowhair, to Persia, Casbine, and Chardaye, and to all other Countreis.

1 We Iohn Vasiliwich Emperour and great duke of all Russia, (for our sister Elizabeths sake, Queene of England) haue giuen and graunted to the English Marchants, the Gouernours, Consuls, assistants and felowship, sir Wil. Garrard knight, Rowland Hayward Alderman, Ioh. Thamworth Esquire, Iohn Riuers Alderman, Henry Beacher Alderman, Consuls, Sir Wil. Chester knight, Edward Iackman Alderman, Lionel Ducket Alderman, Edward Gilbert, Laurence Huse, Francis Walsingham, Clement Throgmorton, Iohn Quarles, Nicholas Wheeler, Thomas Banister, Iohn Harrison, Francis Burneham, Anthony Gamage, Ioh. Somers, Richard Wilkinson, Ioh. Sparke, Richard Barne, Robert Woolman, Thomas Browne, Thomas Smith, Thomas Allen, Thomas More, William Bully, Richard Yong, Thomas Atkinson, assistants, Iohn Mersh Esquire, Ieffrey Ducket, Francis Robinson, Matthew Field, and all the rest of their Companie and fellowship, and to their successours and deputies, to come with ships, and other vessels into our Countrey, at Colmogorod, & Dwina, and to all the North parts now being ours, or that hereafter shall at any time be in our possession, by sea, riuer or land, euen to our great Citie of Moscow, in al the townes of our Countrey, to Cazan and Astracan, to Nouogorode the great, to Pleskow & Leifland, Vriagorod, to Narue, and all other townes of Leifland; 2 And to passe through our land to Bowghair, Persia, Casbin, Chardaye, and other Countreis; And wheresoeuer they come there to be and abide freely, and to barter and bargaine freely all wares of sale, without custome of all people, and Marchants strangers whatsoeuer.

And if so be they bring any fine wares out of England, or any other Countrey from Bowhair, Persia, Casbine, or from any other place, and those their wares that come by the way of Narue, or any other part into our Dominion, to bring ỳ same wares into our treasure, & our Treasurers to view the same wares, and to take into our Treasurie of the same such as shalbe needful

for

for vs. And all such wares as we shal not need, our Chancellour to redeliuer þ same, And after the view of our Chancellours, to barter it freely to whome they will, not selling any of their wares needfull for vs, before our Chancellour haue seene the same. And all other grosse and heauy wares that shalbe needfull to our vse, not being brought to Mosco to declare and tell our Chancellour of the same wares: And to giue a note thereof by name, and how much they leaue there, not brought to Mosco: and then if we neede not the said wares, the English Marchants, their seruants & Factors, to conuey their wares the neerest way to Vstiuge the great, and so to Colmogorod, or elsewhere at their pleasure, there to barter and sell the same. But those wares that shalbe needeful for our Treasurie, they shall not hide from vs in any case.

And when our Chauncellours shall send our aduenture, with the said Marchants or their Factors they to take our aduentures with them, and to sell, & to barter for such wares as shalbe meete for our Treasurie, and to returne it into our Treasurie.

And when wee shall sende any aduenture into England then our Chancellour to giue them a perres warning, that their ships may be prouided thereafter, that by taking in of our wares, they leaue not their owne behinde them.

And to take our aduenture yeerely when they goe into Persia.

Neither shal þ English marchants receiue or colour any of our peoples goods, nor barter nor sel it in any wise: likewise our people not to barter for the said English marchants or occupy for them.

3 And when they shall come into our Empire of Casan and Astracan, and other places of our Dominions, then our Captaines of Casan and Astracan, and our authorised people, quietly to let them passe, not taking any toll or custome of their wares, nor once to make search thereof.

And when we shall send no aduenture with them, yet to suffer them freely to passe, not viewing their wares, nor taking any kinde of custome. And whatsoeuer English marchant will bargaine with our Marchants or Factors ware for ware to barter the same at their pleasure.

And whatsoeuer their Marchant or Factors wil sel their wares at their house at Mosco, which house I granted them at S. Maxims at the Mosco, they to sel þ ware to our people, either strangers as they may best veter it, keeping within their house, arshines, measures, & waights vnder seales.

4 We haue graunted them the said house at S. Maxims in the halfe free, and without standing rent, as heretofore we did graunt it the said English Marchants, sir Wil. Garrard, and the Companie, maintayning in the said house one housekeeper a Russe, and two Russe seruants, or some of their owne countrey men, and none other Russes besides they aforesaid. And the said housekeepers that shall liue at their house with the English marchants, neither to bye nor sel any wares for them, but that the said marchants themselues or their factors, shall bye, sell, and barter their owne wares; And our Moscouie marchants not to take the said Englishmens wares to sell them in our townes, nor to bye any wares for them, neither the English marchant to colour any Russes wares at any towne.

5 And whatsoeuer English marchant wil sel his wares at Colmogorod, Dwyna, Vologda, Yeraslaue, Castran, Nouogrode, the lower Casan, Astracan, Nouogorode the great, Vapska, the Narue, Vriagorod, or at any other townes, they to sel their wares there at their pleasure, And of al wares aswell of other countreis as of Russia, no officer or other to take any custome, neither in any place to stay them in any wise, neither take any kinde of toll of them for their wares whatsoeuer.

6 And whatsoeuer marchant shal bargaine or bye any wares of English marchants: The said Russe not to returne those wares vpon the marchants handes againe, but to giue readie money for the said wares, otherwise they to craue the Iustice to giue right, and to execute the lawe vpon the same with all expedition. And when the English marchants or factors shal trauaile from Moscouie after the dispatche of their wares and busines, then to shewe themselues vnto our Chancellours, whatsoeuer wares of theirs shall goe from Mosco, they not to shewe the same wares to any our officers, nor pay no custome nor toll in any place.

7 If it so happen the English marchants haue any wracke, and the shippes be brought to any port of our Dominions, we to command the saide goods to be enquired and sought out, and to bee giuen to the English marchants, being here abiding at that time in our Countrey, the factors, seruants, or deputies, of the Companie aforesaid, to whom we haue graunted this our gratious letter.

And if there happen none of the English marchants, factors, seruants, or deputies to bee in our Countreis at such time, then we will all the said goods to be sought out and bestowed in some conuenient place, and when any of the Companie afore written, bringing these our letters, shall come for their goods, we to commaund their goods to be restored vnto them.

8 Likewise wee haue granted leaue to the English marchants, their Gouernours, Consuls,

and assistants, namely, sir William Garrard knight, Rowland Hayward, and the Companie to builde houses at Vollogda, Colmogro, and the seaside, at Iuangorode, at Cherell, and in all other places of our Dominions, as shall bee needefull for their trade. And they to keepe at the saide house one housekeeper, a Russe, and two or three men to keepe their wares at the said houses, making sale thereof to whome they will, they, their Factors or deputies: the said housekeeper not to buy or sell for them.

9 Also wee haue giuen and graunted to the English Marchants, their house which they haue by our goodnesse at S. Maximes in the Zenopskie, and other their houses in the towne of Zenopskie, made for the better assurance of their goods, and all such as they shall set vp hereafter shalbe of the ‖Oprissini, and will make them knowen to all them of Oprissini.

‖Or, chosen for.

10 And whereas by our goodnes we haue graunted them a Ropehouse at Vologda, being farre from the English Marchants house, nowe we haue giuen them to builde a house for that vse by the said English house, and haue giuen and graunted them (of our goodnesse) ground, one hundreth and fourescore fadome long, and fiftie fadomes in breadth, according to their owne request.

11 Also, we haue of our goodnesse giuen and graunted to the English Marchants, leaue to buy them a house at Witchida, and there to search out mines of yron. And where they shal happily finde it, there to set vp houses for the making of the same yron: and to make the same, of our goodnesse haue graunted them woods, fiue or sixe miles compasse about the said houses, to the making of the saide yron, and not to exceede these bounds and limits: And where they shall cut the saide wood, not to set vp any village or farme there, bringing the artificers for making of their yron, out of their owne Countrey, and to learne our people that arte, and so freely occupying the saide yron in these our Dominions, transporting also of the same home into England, allowing for euery pound one dingo, or halfe penie.

12 And if any of the said yron shalbe needfull for our workes, then we to take of the saide yron to our worke, vpon agreement of price, paying money out of our Treasurie for the same; And when the said English Marchants or Factors shall send their owne people out of our Realme into their Countrey, ouer land through any Countrey whatsoeuer, freely to send the same with our words.

13 Also, we of our goodnesse haue graunted, that if any man misuse the saide English, the Factors or seruants, Or the saide English Marchants, their Factors or seruants abuse any other at Moscouie, or any other our townes whatsoeuer within our Dominions in trade of Marchandize or otherwise, then they to haue vpright iustice in all such matters of our counsaile the Oprissini without all let or delay; But if our Justice may not agree the parties, then lots to be made, and to whose lotte it shall fall, to him the right to bee giuen, and that onely our counsaile at Moscouie, and none of our Captaines, or authorised people, or officers in any other our townes, giue iudgement vpon the said English Marchants for any thing.

14 Also, if any stranger shal haue matter of controuersie with any English Marchant, Factor or seruant, abiding within these our Realmes, or contrary wise any English Marchant, Factor or seruant, against any other stranger, in all those causes our Counsaile of the Oprissinie, to giue them Justice, and to make an agreement & ende betweene the parties, without all delaye; And none to deale therein, saue our Counsaile of the Oprissinie: 15 And if any man haue action against any English Marchant being absent, that then in his absence it shalbe lawful for any other Englishman at his assignation to answere his cause.

16 If any Englishman happen to be wounded or beaten to death, or any Russe or stranger slaine or beaten, 17 Or any stollen goods to be found in the saide English houses, then our Counsellers to cause the guiltie persons to be sought out, and to doe right and Justice in the cause, and the partie that is guiltie, if he deserue punishment, to be corrected accordingly after his offence, That the said English Marchants, factors and seruants, sustaine thereby no hinderance or damage.

18 And whatsoeuer English Marchant, Factor, seruant, or deputie, shalbe guiltie of any fault, deseruing our displeasure, then our Counsailers to cause the guiltie partie to goe vnder sureties, and their goods to be sealed and kept, vntill our pleasure bee further knowen, and our Counsaile to examine their offence, and so to report it vnto vs, that wee may command what shall bee done therein, and none other to be arrested or haue their goods sealed, which are not guiltie of that offence, nor to stay or apprehend them in any of our Dominions for the same.

19 If any English Marchant, Factor or seruant shal offend, it shalbe lawfull for their Agent to doe iustice vpon the said partie, or to send him home into England at his pleasure.

20 If any English Marchant, Factor or seruant, haue lent or hereafter shall lende money to any of our people, or credite them with wares, and so depart into any forreigne Country, or die before the debt bee due to be paide, then our people and Marchants to paye the saide debt,

to

to whome soeuer shall be appointed to the said roome or charge, and the said English Marchant, factor, or seruant, to bring his bill of debt to our Counsell, to shewe them what is due, and what money is owing them for any wares: and thus to doe truly, not adding any whit to the debt, and our Counsel to command the debt to be discharged vnto the English Marchant, factor, or seruant, without delay.

21 And whatsoeuer English Marchant shall be arrested for debt, then our Counsell to command the partie vnder arrest to be deliuered to the Agent: and if he haue no suertie, to bind the Agent with him, for the better force of the bond.

And if any Englishman be endebted, we will the Creditor not to call him in prison, or to deliuer him to the Sergeant, lest the officer lose him, but to take ware in pawne of the debt.

22 Also of our goodnes, we haue granted the English Marchants to send our Commission to all our Townes, Captaines, and authorised men, to defende and gard the saide Marchants from all theeues, robbers, and euill disposed persons.

23 If in comming or going to and fro our dominions, the Merchants, the factors, or seruants be spoiled on the sea, our Counsell shall send our letters, and will them to be sought out, and where they shall finde the goods, cause it to be restored againe, and the offender to be punished, according to our commandement.

24 Also of our goodnes, we haue granted the saide Merchants to take vp Brokers, Packers, Wayers, and such like labourers, as shall be needefull for them, paying for their hier as the laborers and they shall agree.

25 We likewise of our goodnes, haue licensed the English Merchants in our Townes of Mosko, Nouogorode the great, and Pasko, that the Coiners of the said Townes shall melt Dollers, and coine money for them, without custome, allowing for coales, and other necessaries, with the workemanship.

26 Also of our goodnes, wee haue granted to the said English Merchants, to take poste horse at needefull times, leauing with our officers a note how many they take, and not els, in no case hindering or diminishing our treasurie.

27 Also for our sister Queene Elizabeths sake, we of our goodnes haue granted to the merchants within written, this our letter, and to their successors, that no Englishman, nor any other stranger, come without the Queenes leaue to Colmogorode, the riuer of Vob, Vasiagy, Pechora, Cowlaye, Meseyne, Pechmecoue, Zeleuetskyes Island, the riuer of Shame, nor to no other hauen of Dwina, nor to any part of the north side of Dwina, by hether ward of Wardhouse, to any hauen, with shippe, Busse, or any other vessell, nor to occupie in any kind of waies, but onely the said English companie, and their successors, to whome we of our goodnes haue granted this priuiledge.

28 Also that no English Merchant, without the Queenes leaue, shall come with any wares, to the Narue, or Vriogorode.

29 And whatsoeuer English Merchant, stranger, or other, of whatsoeuer Countrey he be, shall come with any shippe, Busse, or any other vessell, to any of the said hauens of the north side, to any part of Dwina, by North the Narue, or Vriagorode, without the Queenes leaue or knowledge, not being of the company aboue written, wee to apprehende and take the same vessell from those strangers and Merchants, the one halfe to vs the Emperour, and great Duke, and the other halfe to the companie of English Merchants.

30 Also of our goodnes, we haue granted the said companie of English merchants, that no English merchants or strangers shall passe through our dominions, to Boghare, Persia, Casbin, Chardaye, or other Countreies, saue onely the companie of English merchants, and our owne messengers.

31 Also whatsoeuer Englishman, comming out of England or any other Countrey, into our dominions, without the Queenes leaue, and knowledge, not being of the said companie, written within those our letters, mind, and purpose, to abide in our Realme, contrary to the Queenes will and pleasure, or any way abuse himselfe, the Agent shall freely send him home, to the Queene his Soueraigne: which if the Agent of himselfe be vnable to do, let him pray for aide of the Captaines and officers of our Townes there being, and so send him to prison, and will the saide Captaines not to hinder the said Agent from sending home such euill persons into England.

32 And if any man within our Countrey, runne away to any other towne, or place, the English merchants, and factors, to haue free libertie to apprehende him, and take their goods from him againe.

33 And as for our priuiledge, giuen to Thomas Glouer, Ralfe Rutter, Christopher Bennet, Iohn Chappell, and their adherents, we haue commanded the same priuiledges to be taken from them.

34 Also

34 Also we of our goodnes haue granted the said company of English merchants, their successors seruants and deputies, that doe or shall remaine at Musko, or elsewhere within our dominions freely to keepe their owne lawe: and in any wise none of ours to force them to our lawe or faith against their will.

Moreouer, besides and with the companie of English merchants, we permit all strangers, to trade to our towne of Narue, Vtiogorode, and other our townes of Leifland, as they haue done before time, from the beginning of the world 7077. in the moneth of June 20. indiction, 12. The yeere of our Lordship & reigne 35. and of our Empire of Rusland 23, Casan 17. Astracan 15.

Other speciall graunts by his Maiesties priuate letters at the *suite of Master Randolph Embassadour.*

RElearement out of prison of Fitzherbert, that was accused for writing of letters against the Emperour.

Liberty giuen to Thomas Greene that was accused, & troubled vpon suspition of his dealing with the Embassadour, and licence giuen to him to traffique as he was accustomed.

Andrew Atherton and his sureties released at the Narue and his seruaunt at the Mosko, that were in trouble for sending the merchants letters into England.

A letter graunted to Thomas Southam to the Counsaile for iustice against them that stole the pearles.

His Maiesties fauour promised to the Artificers, and liuings to be appointed them as they can best deserue.

A letter to the merchants that went into Persia, to passe freely without impeachment in his dominions, as also letters of fauour to the great Shawe of Persia.

A graunt vnto the companie that at what time soeuer, they send to the discouery of Catay a, they shalbe licensed to repaire vnto this countrey and haue such conducts and guides, Barriners, vessels, Men, and victuals as they shall stand in neede of.

It is also promised by Kneez Alfanas, and Peter Gregoriwich in the Emperours name, that if Benet Butler or any Englishman complaine, deface, hinder in way of traffique, or otherwise goe about to discredite the worshipfull companie, and their doinges, that therein they shall not bee harde, and the doers to bee punished, as in such cases they shalbee iudged to haue deserued.

Certaine persons graunted to be sent home into England that serued the company, and were practisers against them in that countrey.

A Commission giuen by vs Th. Randolph, Embassadour for the *Queenes Maiestie in Russia, and Th. Bannister, &c. Vnto Iames Bassendine,* Iames Woodcocke and Rich. Browne, the which Bassendine, Woodcocke, and Browne we appoint ioyntly together, and ayders, the one of them to the other, in a voyage of discouery to be made (by the grace of God) by them, for searching of the sea, and border of the coast, from the riuer Pechora, to the East wardes, as hereafter followeth Ann. 1588. The first of August.



IN primis, when your barke with all furniture is ready, you shall at the beginning of the yeere (as soone as you possible may) make your repaire to the Easterne part of the riuer Pechora, where is an Island called Dolgoieue, and from thence you shall passe to the East wardes alongest by the Sea coast of Hugorie or the mayne lande of Pechora, and sayling alongst by the same coast, you shall passe within seuen leagues of the Island Vaigattes which is in the straight, almost halfe way from the coast of Hugorie, vnto the coast of Noua Zembla, which Island Vaigattes and Noua Zembla, you shall finde noted in your plat, therefore you shall not neede to discouer it: but proceede on alongest the coast of Hugorie, towardes the riuer Obba.

There is a Bay betweene the saide Vaigattes, & the riuer Obba, that doth byte to the South wardes, into the lande of Hugorie, in which Bay are two small riuers, the one called Cara Reca, the other Narmsye, as in the paper of notes which are giuen to you herewith, may appeare in the

the which Baye you ſhall not neede to ſpende any time for ſearching of it, but to direct your courſe to the riuer Ob, (if otherwiſe you be not conſtrained to keepe alongſt the ſhoare,) and when you come to the Riuer Ob, you ſhall not enter into it, but paſſe ouer, vnto the Eaſterne parte of the mouth of the ſaid riuer.

And when you are at the Eaſterne part of the mouth of Obba Reca, you ſhall from thence paſſe to the Eaſtwards, alongſt by the border of the ſaid coaſt, deſcribing the ſame in ſuch perfect order, as you can beſt doe it. You ſhall not leaue the ſaide coaſte or border of the land, but paſſe alongſt by it, at leaſt in ſighe of the ſame, vntill you haue ſailed by it ſo farre to the Eaſtwards, and the time of the yeere ſo farre ſpent, that you doe thinke it time for you to returne with your barke to Winter, which trauell may well be three or 400. leagues to the Eaſtwards of the Ob, if the ſea doe reach ſo farre, as our hope is it doth: but and if you finde not the ſaid coaſt and ſea to trende ſo farre to the Eaſtwards, yet you ſhall not leaue the coaſt at any time, but proceede alongſt by it, as it doth lie, leauing no part of it vnſearched, or ſeene, vnleſſe it be ſome baye, or riuer, that you doe certainly know by the report of the people, that you ſhall finde in thoſe borders, or elſe ſome certaine tokens, whereby you of your ſelues may iudge it to be ſo. For our hope is, that the ſaid border of land, and ſea, doth in ſhort ſpace after you paſſe the Ob, incline Eaſt, and ſo to the Southwardes. And therefore we would haue no part of the land of your ſtarreboord ſide, as you proceede in your diſcouerie, to be left vndiſcouered.

But and if the ſaid border of land doe not incline ſo to the Eaſtwards, as we preſuppoſe it, but that it doe prooue to incline, and trende to the Northwardes, and ſo ioyne with Noua Zembla, making the ſea from Vaigats to the Eaſtwards but a baye: yet we will that you doe keepe alongſt by the ſaid coaſt, and ſo bring vs certaine report of that forme and manner of the ſame baye.

And if it doe ſo prooue to be a baye, and that you haue paſſed rounde about the ſame, and ſo by the trending of the land come backe vnto that part of Noua Zembla, that is againſt Vaigats, whereas you may from that ſee the ſaid Iſland Vaigats, if the time of the yeere will permit you, you ſhall from thence paſſe alongſt by the ſaid border & coaſt of Noua Zembla, to the Weſtwards, and ſo to ſearch whether that part of Noua Zembla doe ioyne with the lande, that ſir Hugh Willoughbie diſcouered in anno 53. and is in 72. degrees, and from that part of Noua Zembla, 120. leagues to the Weſtwards, as your plat doth ſhewe it vnto you: and if you doe finde that lande to ioyne with Noua Zembla, when you come to it, you ſhall proceede further along the ſame coaſt, if the time of the yeere will permit it, and that you doe thinke there will be ſufficient time for you to returne backe with your barke to winter, either at Pechora, or into Ruſſia, at your diſcretion: for we referre the ſame to your good iudgements, truſting that you will loſe no time, that may further your knowledge in this voyage.

Note you, it was the 20. of Auguſt, 56. ere the Serchethrift began to returne backe from her diſcouerie, to winter in Ruſſia, and then ſhe came from the Iſland Vaigats, being forcibly driuen from thence, with an Eaſterly winde, and yce, and ſo ſhe came into the riuer Dwina, and arriued at Colmogro, the 11. of September, 56. If the yce had not bene ſo much that yeere, as it was, in the Streights, on both ſides of the Iſland Vaigats, they in the ſaid pinneſſe, would that yeere haue diſcouered the partes that you are nowe ſent to ſeeke: which thing (if it had pleaſed God) might haue bene done then: but God hath reſerued it for ſome other. Which diſcouerie, if it may be made by you, it ſhall not onely proue profitable vnto you, but it will alſo purchaſe perpetuall fame and renowme, both to you, and our Countrey. And thus not doubting of your willing deſires, and forwardnes towards the ſame, we pray God to bleſſe you, with a luckie beginning, fortunate ſucceſſe, and happily to ende the ſame. Amen.

Neceſſarie notes to be obſerued, and followed in your diſcouerie, *as hereafter followeth.*

When your barke with all furniture, and neceſſaries, ſhall be in readines for you to depart to the ſea (if it be that you take your barke at S. Nicholas, or any part of Dwina Reca) you ſhall from thence, euen as timely in the ſpring as the yce will permit you, ſaile, & make all expedition that may be, vnto the mouth of the riuer Pechora, (as your commiſſion doth leade you) and as you paſſe by the coaſt all alongſt, notwithſtanding the plat that ſhewth you the deſcription of the ſaid coaſt, from Dwina vnto Vaigats,) yet you ſhall ſeeke by all the meanes that you can, to amend the ſame plat, vſing as many obſeruations, as you poſſibly can doe: and theſe notes following, are to be obſerued by you principally.

1. Firſt, that you doe obſerue the latitude as often, and in as many places, as you may poſſibly

bly doe it, noting diligently the place where you doe so obserue the same.

2 Also that you doe diligently set with your compasse, how ꝑ land doth lie from point to point, all alongst as you goe, and to vse your iudgements howe farre there may bee betweene eche of them.

3 Item, that you doe alwayes vse to drawe the proportion and lyeing of the land, as well the lying out of the poyntes, and head lands, vnto the which you shall giue some apt names (at your discretion) as also the forme of the Bayes, and to make some marke in drawing the forme, and border of the same, where the high cliffes are, and where lowe lande is, whether sandie hilles, or whatsoeuer: omitte not to note any thing, that may be sensible, and apparant to you, which may serue to any purpose.

4 In passing along by any coast, that you keepe your lead going often times, and sound, at the least once euery glasse, and oftener if you thinke good as occasion doth serue, and note diligently the depth with the maner of the grounde, and at euery time, howe farre the same sounding may be from the next shore to it: and howe the next poynt or head land doth beare from you. And in the sea after you set off from your porte, you shall orderly at the end of euery foure glasses sound, and if you finde ground, note the depth and what grounde, but if you can finde no ground, you shall also note in what depth you could finde no ground.

5 Also that you doe diligently obserue the flowing, & ebbing in euery place, and how the tides do set, which way the flood doth come, and how much water it doth high in euery place, and what force the same tide hath to driue a ship in an houre, as neere as you can iudge it.

6 Also that you doe seeke to obserue with the Instrument, which I deliuer you herewith, according as I taught you at Rose Island, the true platformes, and distances, in as many places as conueniently you may, for it serueth very aptly your purpose.

7 Also that you take with you paper and inke, and keepe a continuall iournall, or remembrance day by day, of all such things as shal fal out worth the knowledge, not forgetting, or omitting to write it, and note it, that it may be shewed and read at your returne.

8 These orders if you shall diligently obserue, it will bee easie for you to make a plaine, and perfect description of your discouerie, and so shall your notes bee sufficient to answer that which is looked for at your handes. But withall you may not forgette, to note as manie thinges as you can learne and vnderstande by the reporte of anie people whatsoeuer they be, so that it appertaine any way to our desires. And thus the Lord God prosper your voyage. Amen.

Certaine letters in verse, written by Master George Turberuile out *of Muscouia, which went as Secretarie thither with Master Tho. Randolph,* her Maiesties Embassadour to the Emperour 1568, to certaine friends of his in London, describing the manners of the Country, and people.

To his especiall friend Master Edward Dancie.

MY Dancie deere, when I recount within my brest,
My London friends, and wonted mates, and thee about the rest:
I feele a thousand fittes of deepe and deadly woe,
To thinke that I from land to sea, from blisse to bale did goe,
I left my native soyle, full like a reckelesse man,
And vnacquainted of the coast, among the Russies ran:
A people passing rude, to vices vile inclinde,
Folke fitte to be of Bacchus trayne, so quaffing is their kinde.
Drinke is their whole desire, the pot is all their pride,
The sobrest head doeth once a day stand needfull of a guide.
If he to banquet bid his friends, he will not shrinke
On them at dinner to bestowe a douzen kindes of drinke:
Such licour as they haue, and as the country giues,
But chiefly two, one called Kuas, whereby the Mouske liues.
Small ware and waterlike, but somewhat tarte in taste,
The rest is Meade of honie made, wherewith their lippes they baste.
And if he goe vnto his neighbour as a guest,

ye

Pe cares for litle meate, if so his vinke be of the best.
No wonder though they vse such vile and beastly trade,
Sith with the hatchet and the hand, their chiefest gods be made.
Their Idoles haue their heartes, on God they neuer call,
Unlesse it be (Nichola Bough) that hangs against the wall.
The house that hath no god, or paynted Saint within,
Is not to be resorted too, that roofe is full of sinne.
Besides their priuate gods, in open places stand
Their crosses vnto which they crooche, and blesse themselues with hand.
Deuoutly downe they ducke, with forehead to the ground,
Was neuer more deceit in ragges, and greasie garments found.
Almost the meanest man in all the countrie rides,
The woman eke against our vse, her trotting horse bestrides.
In sundry colours they both men, and women goe,
In buskins all, that money haue on buskins to bestoe.
Eche woman hanging hath a ring within her eare,
Which all of auncient vse, and some of very pride doe weare.
Their gate is very haute, their countenance wise and sadde,
And yet they follow fleshly lustes, their trade of liuing badde.
It is no shame at all accounted to defile
Anothers bedde, they make no care, their follies to conceile.
Is not the meanest man in all the land but hee,
To buy her paynted colours doth allow his wife a fee.
Wherewith she deckes her selfe, and dyes her tawnie skinne,
She prankes and paintes her smoakie face, both browe, lippe, cheeke, and chinne.
Yea those that honest are, if any such there bee
Within the lande, doe vse the like: a man may plainely see
Upon some womens cheekes the paynting how it lyes,
In plaister sort for that too chirke, her face the harlot dies.
But such as skilfull are, and cunning Dames indeede,
By daily practise doe it well, yea sure they doe exceede.
They lay their colours so, as he that is full wise,
May easly be deceiu'd therein, if he doe trust his eyes.
I not a little muse, what madnes makes them paine
Their faces, saying how they keepe the stoute by meere constraint.
For seldome when, vnlesse on Church or marriage day
A man shall see the Dames abroade, that are of best aray.
The Russie meanes to reape the profit of her pride,
And so he mewes her to be sure, she lye by no mans side.
Thus much friend Dancie, I did meane to write to thee,
To let thee weete in Russia land, what men and women bee.
Hereafter I perhaps of other thinges will write
To thee, and other of my friendes, which I shall see with sight:
And other stuffe besides, which true report shall tell,
Meane while I ende my louing lines, and bid thee now farewell.

To Spencer.

If I should now forget, or not remember thee,
Thou Spencer mightest a foule rebuke, and shame impute to mee.
For I to open shew did loue thee passing well,
And thou wert he at parture, whom I loathde to bid farewell.
And as I went thy friend, so I continue still,
No better proofe thou canst then this desire of true good will.
I doe remember well when needes I should away,
And that the Poste would licence vs, no longer time to stay:
Thou wrongst me by the fist, and holding fast my hand,
Didst craue of me to send thee newes, and how I liked the land.

It is a sandie soile, no very fruitfull vaine,
Woze waste and wooddie grounds there are, then closes fit foz graine.
Yet graine there growing is, which they vnmely take,
And cut oz eare the corne be ripe, they mowe it on a stake.
And laying sheafe by sheafe, their harueft so they vse,
They make the greater haste, foz feare the frost the corne destroy.
Foz in the winter time, so glarie is the ground,
As neither grasse, noz other graine, in pastures may be found.
In comes the cattell then, the sheepe, the colt, the cowe,
Fast by his bed, the Mowsike then, a lodging doth allowe,
Whom he with fodder feedes, and holds as deere as life:
And thus they weare the winter with the Mowsike, and his wife.
Seuen months the winter dures, the glare it is so great,
As it is May before he turne, his ground to sowe his wheate.
The bodies eke that die, vnburied lie they then,
Laid vp in coffins made of firre, as well the poozeft men,
As those of greater state: the cause is lightly found,
Foz that in winter time, they can not come to breake the ground.
And wood so pleuteous is, quite throughout all the land
As rich, and poore, at time of death allurd of coffins stand.
Perhaps thou museft much, how this may stand with reason,
That bodies dead can vncozrupt abide so long a season.
Take this foz certaine trothe, as soone as heate is gone,
The force of colde the bodie binds as hard as any stone.
Without offence at all to any liuing thing:
And so they lye in perfect state, till next returne of spzinge.
Their beasts be like to ours, as farre as I can see
Foz shape, and shewe, but somewhat leste of bulke, and bone they be.
Of watrish taste, the flesh not firme, like English beefe,
And yet it serus them very well, and is a good releefe:
Their sheepe are very small, sharpe singled, handfull long,
Great stoze of fowle on sea and land, the moozish reedes amonge.
The greatnes of the stoze, doth make the pzices lesse,
Besides in all the land they knowe, not how good meate to dreffe.
They vse neither broach noz spit, but when the stoue they heate,
They put their victuals in a pan, and so they bake their meate.
No pewter to be had, no dishes but of wood,
No vse of trenchers, cups cut out of byrche are very good.
They vse but wooden spoones, which hanging in a case,
Eache Mowsike at his girdle ties, and thinkes it no disgrace.
With whitles two oz three, the better man the moe,
The cheefest Russies in the land, with spoone and knines doe goe.
Their houses are not huge of building, but they say,
They plant them in the loftiest ground, to shift the snowe away.
Which in the winter time, eache where full thicke they lie,
Which makes them haue the moze desire, to set their houses high.
No stone worke is in vse, their roofes of rafters be,
One linked in another fast, their wals are all of tree.
Of masts both long, and large, with mosse put in betweene,
To keepe the force of weather out. I neuer earst haue seene
A grosse deuise so good, and on the roofe they lay
The burthen barke, to rid the raine, and sudden showres away.
In euery roome a stone, to serue the winter turne,
Of wood they haue sufficient stoze, as much as they can burne.
They haue no English glasse, of slices of a rocke
Hight sluda, they their windowes make, that English glasse doth mocke.
They cut it very thinne, and sowe it with a thzed
In pzetie ozder like to panes, to serue their pzesent neede.

B

No other glaſſe good faith, doth giue a better light:
And ſure the rocke is nothing rich, the coſt is very light.
The chiefeſt place is that, where hangs the god by it.
The owner of the houſe himſelfe doth neuer ſit,
Unleſſe his better come, to whom he yeelds the ſeat,
The ſtranger bending to the god, the ground with bow muſt beat.
And in that very place which they moſt sacred deeme,
The ſtranger lyes: a token that his gueſt he doth eſteeme.
Where he is woont to haue a beares ſkinne for his bed,
And muſt in ſtead of pillow, clap his ſaddle to his head.
In Ruſſia other ſhift there is not to be had,
For where the bedding is not good, the boalſters are but bad.
I muſed very much, what made them ſo to lie,
Sith in their countrey downe is rife, and feathers out of crie:
Unleſſe it be becauſe the countrey is ſo hard,
They feare by niceneſſe of a bed their bodyes would be mard,
I wiſht thee oft with vs, ſaue that I ſtood in feare
Thou wouldſt haue loathed to haue layd thy limmes vpon a beare,
As I and Stafford did, that was my mate in bed:
And yet (we thanke the God of heauen) we both right well haue ſped.
Loe thus I make an end: none other newes to thee,
But that the countrey is too colde, the people beaſtly bee.
I write not all I know, I touch but heere and there,
For if I ſhould, my pen would pinch, and eke offend I feare.
Who ſo ſhall read this verſe, coniecture of the reſt,
And thinke by reaſon of our trade, that I do thinke the beſt.
But if no traffike were, then could I boldly pen
The hardneſſe of the ſoile, and eke the maners of the men.
They ſay the Lions paw giues iudgement of the beaſt:
And ſo may you deeme of the great, by reading of the leaſt.

To Parker.

My Parker, paper, pen, and inke were made to write,
And idle heads, that little do, haue leiſure to indite:
Wherefore, reſpecting theſe, and thine aſſured loue,
If I would write no newes to thee, thou might'ſt my pen reproue.
And ſithence fortune thus hath ſhou'd my ſhippe on ſhore,
And made me ſeeke another realme vnſeene of me before:
The maners of the men I purpoſe to declare,
And other priuate points beſides, which ſtrange and geaſon are.
The Ruſſie men are round of bodies, fully faſte,
The greateſt part with bellies bigge that ouerhang the waſte,
Flat headed for the moſt, with faces nothing faire,
But browne, by reaſon of the ſtoue, and cloſeneſſe of the aire:
It is their common vſe to ſhaue or els to sheare
Their heads, for none in all the land long lolling locks doth weare,
Unleſſe perhaps he haue his ſouereigne prince diſpleaſ'd,
For then he neuer cuts his haire, vntill he be appeaſ'd.
A certaine ſigne to know who in diſpleaſure be,
For euery man that viewes his head, will ſay, Loe this is he.
And during all the time he lets his locks to grow,
Dares no man for his life to him a face of friendſhip ſhow.
Their garments be not gay, nor handſome to the eye,
A cap aloft their heads they haue, that ſtandeth very hye,
Which colpacke they do terme. They weare no ruffes at all:
The beſt haue collers ſet with pearle, which they Rubaſca call.
Their ſhirts in Ruſſie long, they worke them downe before,

And on the sleeues with coulered silks, two inches good and more
Aloft they weare shirts, a garment iacket wise
Right onoriadka, and about his burlie waste he tyes
His portkies, which in stead of better breeches bee:
Of linnen cloth that garment is, no codpiece is to see.
A payre of parnen stocks to keepe the colde away,
Within his boots the Russie weares, the heeles they vnderlay
With clouting clamps of steele sharpe pointed at the toes,
And ouer all a suba furd, and thus the Russies goes.
Well buttned is the sube, according to his state,
Some silke, of siluer other some, but those of poorest rate
Do weare no subes at all, but groller gownes to sight,
That reacheth downe beneath the calfe, and that Armacha hight:
These are the Russies robes. The richest vse to ride
From place to place, his seruant runnes, and followes by his side.
The cassacke beares his felt, to force away the raine:
Their bridles are not very braue, their saddles are but plaine.
No bits but snaffles all, of birch their saddles bee,
Much fashioned like the Scotish seats, broad flacks to keepe the knee
From sweating of the horse, the pannels larger farre
And broader be then ours, they vse short stirrups for the warre:
For when the Russie is pursued by cruell foe,
He rides away, and suddenly betakes him to his boe,
And bends me but about in saddle as he sits,
And therewithall amids his race, his following foe he hits.
Their bowes are very short, like Turkie bowes outright,
Of sinowes made with birchen barke, in cunning maner dight.
Small arrowes, cruell heads that fell and forked bee,
Which being shot from out those bowes, a cruell way will flee.
They seldome vse to shoo their horse, vnlesse they ride
In post vpon the frozen fluds, then cause they shall not slide,
He sets a slender calke, and so he rides his way.
The horses of the countrey go good foure score verstes a day,
And all without the spurre, once pricke them and they skippe,
But go not forward on their way, the Russie hath his whippe
To rappe him on the ribbes, for though all booted bee,
Yet shall you not a payre of spurres in all the countrey see.
The common game is chesse, almost the simplest will
Both giue a checke and eke a mate, by practise comes they skill.
Against the dice as fast, the poorest roges of al
Will sit them downe in open field, and there to gaming fall.
Their dice are very small, in fashion like to those
Which we do vse, he takes them vp, and ouer thumbe he throwes
Not shaking them a whit, they cast suspiciously,
And yet I deeme them void of art that dicing most applie.
At play when siluer lacks goes saddle, horse and all,
And eche thing els worth siluer walkes, although the price be small.
Because thou louest to play friend Parker other while,
I wish thee there the weary day, with dicing to beguile.
But thou weart better fare at home, I wist it well,
And wouldest be loath among such lowts so long a time to dwell.
Then iudge of vs thy friends, what kinde of life we had,
That neere the frozen pole to waste our weary dayes were glad.
In such a sauage soile, where lawes do beare no sway,
But all is at the king his will, to saue or els to slay.
And that sans cause God wot, if so his minde be such,
But what meane I with kings to deale, we ought no saints to touch.
Conceiue the rest your selfe, and deeme what liues they lead,

Wher

Where lust is law, and subiects liue continually in dread,
And where the best estates haue none assurance good
Of lands, of liues, nor nothing falles vnto the next of blood,
But all of custome doth vnto the prince redowne,
And all the whole reuenue comes vnto the king his crowne.
Good faith I see thee muse at what I tell thee now,
But true it is, no choice, but all at princes pleasure bow.
So Tarquine ruled Rome as thou remembrest well,
And what his fortune was at last, I know thy selfe canst tell.
Where will in common weale doth beare the onely sway,
And lust is law, the prince and realme must needs in time decay.
The strangenesse of the place is such for sundry things I see,
As if I would I can not write ech priuate point to thee.
The colde is rare, the people rude, the prince so full of pride,
The realme so stored with moonks and nunnes, and priests on euery side:
The maners are so Turkie like, the men so full of guile,
The women wanton, temples stuft with idols that defile
The seats that sacred ought to be, the customes are so quaint,
As if I would describe the whole, I feare my penne would faint.
In summe, I say I neuer saw a prince that so did raigne,
Nor people so beset with saints, yet all but vile and vaine.
Wilde Irish are as ciuill as the Russies in their kinde,
Hard choice which is the best of both ech bloudy, rude and blinde.
If thou be wise, as wise thou art, and wilt be ruled by me,
Liue still at home, and couet not those barbarous coasts to see.
No good befalles a man that seeks, and findes no better place,
No ciuill customes to be learnd, where God bestowes no grace.
And truelie ill they do deserue to be belou'd of God,
That neither loue nor stand in awe of his assured rod:
Which though be long, yet plagues at last the vile and beastly sort
Of sinfull wights, that all in vice do place their chiefest sport.
Adieu friend Parker, if thou list, to know the Russes well,
To Sigismundus booke repayre, who all the trueth can tell:
For he long earst in message went vnto that sauage king,
Sent by the Pole, and true report in ech respect did bring.
To him I recommend my selfe, to ease my penne of paine,
And now at last do wish thee well, and bid fare well againe.

The fourth voyage into Persia, made my M. Arthur Edwards *Agent, Iohn Sparke, Laurence Chapman, Christopher Faucet, and* Richard Pingle, in the yeere 1568, declared in this letter written from Casbin in Persia, by the foresayd Laurence Chapman to a worshipfull merchant of the companie of Russia in London. Anno Domini 1569. Aprill 28.

WOrshipfull sir, my dutie alwayes remembred, and your prosperous health, and good successe in all your affayres wished, to the glory of God, and your owne hearts desire, &c. May it please you to vnderstand that your Agent M. Arthur Edwards & we departed from Yeraslaue in July 1568, & the 14 of August arriued at our port called Bilbill, with your ship the Grace of God, & the goods in her in good safetie, God be thanked for it, finding there neither ỳ people so ready to aid vs for the bringing of her in, & vnlading of the goods, nor yet so obedient to the Shaughs priuilege, as the worshipfull company haue beene informed. Our goods brought vpon land, we were compelled to open and sell as they would set the price, or otherwise it would haue bene worse for vs. Being so satisfied to their contentment, we were speedily ayded with camels by the prince Eraisbecke Sultan his appointment, to carry our goods to Shamakie, to which place we attayned the first of September, finding it so throughly furnished with all maner of commodities by occasion of our late comming, and by such as came before vs, that no man would alke to buy any one

Their arriuall at Bilbill the 14 of August 1568.

Prince Eraisbecke.

piece of karſie of vs, and lying then the ſpace of one whole moneth before your Agent Arthur Edwardes would diſperſe vs abroad with the goods, ſuch as came out of Ruſſia afterwardes, had brought theyr goods to that and other places, and ſpoyled thoſe ſales we might haue made, being ſent abroad in time conuenient, being no little hinderance to the worſhipfull, as alſo great griefe vnto vs to ſee. To conclude, through our daply calling vpon him, he bent himſelfe for Casbin, taking with him the greateſt ſumme of the goodes, and two of the worſhipfuls ſeruants, to witte, Iohn Sparke and my ſelfe, to helpe and procure the better ſale for the ſame: and leauing at Shamakie Chriſtopher Faucet and Richard Pingle with three hundred and fiftie pieces of karſies in theyr hands, ſuppoſed to be ſolde there or in Arraſh before he ſhould be able to make his returne from Casbin, which ſo farre forth as I can vnderſtand, lie for the greateſt part vnſolde. And being vpon our way, at a certayne towne called Ardowill, we chanced to barter nine pieces of karſies with thoſe merchants for foureſcore and foure batemans of cynnamom, ſelling the karſies at one hundred and fiftie ſhawghs the piece.

Chriſtopher Faucet and Richard Pingle.

And being at that preſent not farre from Teueris, called the principall place in this countrey for vttering of cloth or karſies, by much intreaty I perſuaded your Agent to ſend thither to proue what might be done, and receiuing from him foure and fiftie pieces of karſies, as alſo his commiſſion for ſale of the ſame, I proceeded on that voyage my ſelfe, and one Tolmach in company with me, finding in that place great ſtore of broade cloth and karſies, brought thither, ſome part by the Turkes, who be reſident there, ſome by the Armenians, who fetch them at Aleppo, and ſome by the townelmen, who trauell vnto Venice, and there buy them, ſo that no man offered me one penie more then a hundred and fortie ſhawghs for a karſie: and hauing ſpeciall commiſſion and charge from your Agent not to ſtay there aboue the ſpace of ſeuen dayes after my arriuall there, but to repayre to Casbin with all ſpeed, and furthermore, hauing regard to keepe vp the price of the worſhipfuls commodities, according to theyr deſire, I found meanes to barter them away for ſpices, ſuch as were there to be had, neither in goodneſſe nor yet in price to my content: neuertheleſſe, conſidering the colde ſales which were there, as well for your karſies, as alſo the hotneſſe, that Ormuz way was ſhut vp by occaſion that the Indians do warre againſt them, which is true in deed: and againe the deſire that the worſhipfull hath to haue ſuch commodities bought, I thought it neceſſarie to buy them, the prices and weight whereof appeareth at large by my account ſent to the worſhipfull, and is, as I thinke, the whole ſumme of ſpices bought at this time.

War againſt the Portingals at Ormus.

It chanced me in that place to meet with the gouernours merchant of Grozyne, who was not a little deſirous to bargen with me for a hundred pieces of karſies for his maiſter called Leuontie, and offering me ſo good bands for the payment of the money or ſilke to the merchants contentment vpon the deliuery of them, as in any place within all this countrey is to be had: and offering me beſides his own letter in the behalfe of his maiſter, that no cuſtome ſhould be demanded for the ſame, and the obtaining alſo at his maiſters hand as large a priuiledge for the worſhipfull to trauell into all parts of his dominion, as the Shaugh had giuen them, and hearing good report made of him by the Armenians alſo, and that he was a Chriſtian, I was much more the willing to bargen with him, and ſolde him a hundred pieces for a hundred and threeſcore ſhawghs a piece, to be paid to the merchant in Grozine either in money or ſilke to his contentment, within three dayes after the deliuerie of the karſies there, hauing a band of him made by the Metropolitanes owne hand, for the performance of the ſame, which is as ſure as any heere is to be deuiſed: and vpon the ſame I ſent my Tolmach from me backe to Shamakie, with ſuch goodes as I bought at Teueris, and to the end he might cauſe the worſhipfuls ſeruants there to ſee this bargen accompliſhed. At whoſe arriuall there, as I do perceiue, the captaine would not accompliſh his bargen to take them, but ſaith he hath no need of them: ſuch is the conſtancie of all men in this countrey, with whomſoeuer you ſhall bargen. If the ware be bought, and they doe miſlike it afterwardes, they will bring it againe, and compell you to deliuer the money for it againe, regarding the Shawghs letters, which manifeſteth the contrary, as a ſtraw in the winde: by meanes whereof, the worſhipfull may know whether all be true that hath beene written of this countrey people or not.

The gouernor of Grozyne his merchant.

The generall inconſtancy in the merchants and dealers of thoſe parts.

I am informed by all the brokers in Teueris, that the way once open to Ormuz, from whence commeth no ſuch ſtore of ſpices as the worſhipfull doth looke for, that heere will be put away in Teueris, ſome for money, and other ſome for barter, to the number of three hundred or foure hundred pieces of karſies, being in coulers and goodneſſe to the examples here ſent you, the reſt of the karſies to make them vp a thouſand, and broad clothes to the ſumme of a hundred, be as many as will be put away yeerely in this countrey, ſo farre as yet I can perceiue.

The trade betweene the Venetians and the Armenians not eaſily to be broken.

To breake the trade betwixt the Venetians and the whole company of the Armenians, it is not poſſible, vnleſſe the worſhipfull will finde ſome meanes to receiue them yeerely to the number of

100 catters or mules lading, and deliuer them for the same one third part money, the rest cloth and karsies fitted in couleres meet for this countrey: the examples, as aboue said, are sent vnto you.

At Amadia sixe dayes iourney from Teueris, grow abundance of galles, which are brought by perrely by the Venetians, and be solde there for two bilhes the Teueris bateman, which as your Agent heere sayth, maketh sixe pound English weight, but I doubt it will not so be prooued. Nevertheless it is supposed much good will be done by buying of them: which might at this present haue partlie beene prooued, if so be that some could doe but halfe that which hath beene written.

Touching drugges, I finde many as well at Teueris, as also in Casbin, but the goodnesse nothing like to such as be brought into England out of other places: and the price is so high, that small gaine will be had in buying of them: albeit, if I had beene furnished with money, as I might haue beene, if some would, I would haue bought some, to the end the goodnesse of them might haue beene seene in England. At my comming to Casbin, I found no maner of sales of any commoditie made, but all lying there whole, and newes giuen out (as your Agent saith) that the Shawgh would buy all such commodities as he had, and giue him silke & spices for the same: but by report the Shawgh neuer tooke cloth into his treasurie all the dayes of his life, and will not now beginne: his whole trade is in raw silke, which he selleth alwayes for money to the Armenians and Turkes, and such other as vse to buy it: thus hoping of that which is not like to be had, he hath driuen off the time, not sending to any other places: by meanes whereof the worshipfuls goodes lye vnsolde to this day to their great hinderance, which I for my part am not a little sorrie to see.

Babylon is from hence fifteene dayes iourney, whereas by true report, be great store of dates, and solde for a bille the bateman, the commoditie fit for England: and the place so neere vnto vs, might easily haue beene knowne, if he, whose deeds and sayings differ much, had beene willing to the same. Cashan also is but seuen dayes iourney from hence, and a place by report, where most store of spices be at all times to be had, ouer and aboue any place in this countrey: it could not be granted by him to be seene and proued at this time: if this be loste to the worshipfull, referre it to the want of one which can do that which he speaketh in words. Babylon 15 dayes iourney from Casbin.

To trauell in this countrey, is not onely miserable and vncomfortable, for lacke of townes and villages to harbour in when night commeth, and to refresh men with wholesome victuailes in time of need, but also such scarsitie of water, that sometime in three dayes iourney together is not to be found any droppe fit for man or beast to drinke, besides the great danger we stand in for robbing by these infidels, who do account it remission of sinnes, to wash their hands in the bloud of one of vs. Better it is therefore in mine opinion to continue a begger in England during life, then to remaine a rich merchant seuen yeeres in this countrey, as some shall well finde at their comming hither.

By commandement of the Agent also, I went to Gillan, as well to see what harbor was there for your shippe, as also to vnderstand what commoditie is there best solde, and for what quantitie. I found the way from hence so dangerous and troublesome, that with my penne I am not able to note it vnto you: no man trauelleth from hence thither, but such poore people as need constraineth to buy Rice, for their reliefe to liue vpon, and they lay not aboue twentie batemans vpon a catter, and it lyeth no lower then the skirts of the saddle, and he escapeth very hardly that commeth there with the same. His voyage to Gillan.

The towne of Layghone, which was the chiefest place in all that land, haue I seene, and Langroe and Rosare also, which be now latelie ouerrunne by the Shawgh and his power, and be so spoyled, and the people so robbed, that not one of them is able to buy one karsie. The best commoditie there to be bought, is rawe silke, and is solde in the Summer time for eight and thirtie shawghs the Layghone bateman, which is little aboue foxtie pound weight, and for readie money: also there is to be had what store of Allome you will, and solde there for one bille the Teueris bateman.

In these partes be many Turkie merchants resident, which giue an outward shew, as though they were glad of our comming hither, but secretlie they be our mortall enemies, searching by all meanes to hinder our sales, because we should the sooner giue ouer our trade thither, which in processe of time I hope will grow to better perfection. They wish vs to go to Hallape with the rest of our commodities vnsolde, where they say we shall haue good intertainement in spight of the great number of Venetians which be there resident, and the custome but two in the hundred, and our karsies to be solde presently, had we neuer so many, for twelue duckets, which makes of this money one hundred sixe and fiftie shawghs: but by such as know the place, market & custome, The malice of the Turkish merchants.

it is repoxed to vs credibly to the contrary, and that such karsies as ours be are not solde for aboue eight duckets there: the custome thirtie in the hundred, & more, that no place in the world is so well furnished with good cloth, and karsies, & of so braue couler, as that place is, supposing it to be craftily purposed of them, to bring vs into trouble, which God defend vs from.

4 The price of spices.

The prices of spices be these, at this present inhansed by reason the way is shut to Ormuz, which when God shall send open, I purpose (God willing) to see, and at my returne to aduertise the worshipfull what benefit is there to be had in all points, so neere as I can learne: Pepper 25 shawghs the Teueris bateman: Cloues 50 shawghs, Long pepper 25 shawghs, Maces large 50 shawghs, Ginger 24 shawghs, ready money all, or els looke not vpon them. And the best sort of raw silke is solde for 60 shawghs the Teueris bateman. Thus for want of further matter to inlarge, I end by this time, beseeching God to preserue you in continuall health.

By your obedient seruant
Laurence Chapman.

Notes concerning this fourth voyage into Persia, begunne in *the moneth of Iulie* 1568, *gathered by M. Richard Willes* from the mouth of M. Arthur Edwards which was Agent in the same.

WHen he came first to the Sophies presence, at his court in Casbin, bringing his interpretour with him, and standing far off, the Sophie (sitting in a seat royall with a great number of his noble men about him) bad him come neere, and that still, vntill he came so neere him that he might haue touched him with his hand. Then the first demand that he asked him, was from what countrey he came: he answered, that he came from England. Then asked he of his noble men, who knew any such countrey? But when Edwards saw that none of them had any intelligence of that name, he named it Ingilterra, as the Italians call England. Then one of the noble men said Londro, meaning thereby London, which name is better knowen in farre countries out of Christendome, then is the name of England. When Edwards heard him name Londro, he said that that was the name of the chiefe citie of England, as was Teueris of the chiefe citie of Persia. He asked him many thinges more, as of the realme of England, maruelling that it should be an Iland, of so great riches and power, as Edwards declared vnto him, of the riches & abundance of our merchandize, as he further vnderstood by our traffike in Moscouia, and other countries. He demanded also many things of the Queenes Maiestie, and of the customes and lawes of the realme: saying oftentimes in his owne language, Bara colla (that is to say) Well said. He asked also many things of king Philip, & of his wars against the Turke at Malta. Then he demanded of him what was the chiefe cause of his resort into his realme. And being certified that it was for the trade of merchandize, he asked what kinde of merchandize he could bring thither. Such (said he) as the Venetian merchants do, which dwelling in our country in the citie of Londro, send to Uenice, & from thence into Turkie by Halepo and Tripoli in Syria, from whence, as by the second and third hands, with great charges of many customes and other thinges thereunto pertaining, they are at the length brought into your countrey and cities of Persia. What merchandize are those? sayd the Sophie. Edwards answered, that they were great abundance of fine karsies, of broad clothes, of all sorts and coulers, as scarlets, violets, and other of the finest cloth of all the world. Also that the Venetians brought out of England, not onely such clothes ready made, but furthermore great plenty of fine wooll to mingle with their woools, of which they could not otherwise make fine cloth: affirming that there went out of England yeerly that wayes, aboue two hundred thousand karsies, and as many broad clothes, beside fine wooll and other merchandize, beside also the great abundance of like clothes, the which were carryed into Spaine, Barbarie, & diuers other countries. The Sophie then asked him by what meanes such merchandize might be brought into Persia. Right well sir (said he) by the way of Moscouia, with more safetie and in much shorter time then the Venetians can bring them: first from England to Uenice, and from thence into Persia, by the way of Turkie. And therefore if it shall please your Maiestie to grant vs free passage into all your dominions, with such priuileges as may appertaine to the safegard of our liues, goods, and merchandize, we will furnish your countries with all such merchandize, and other commodities, in shorter time, and better cheape then you may haue the same at the Turks hands. This talke and much more was betweene the Sophie and Edwardes for the space of two houres, all which thinges liked him so well, that shortly after he granted to the saide Arthur Edwardes other priuileges, for the trade of merchandize into Persia,

Londro. London.

The Venetians traffike in England.

all

all written in Azure and gold letters, and deliuered vnto the lord keeper of the Sophie his great ſeale. The lord keeper was named Coche Califay, who ſayd that when the Shaugh (that is the king or prince) did ſit to ſeale any letters, that laſt priuiledge ſhould be ſealed and deliuered to Laurence Chapman. In this priuiledge is one principall article for ſeruants or merchants: That if the Agent do perceiue that vpon their naughtie doings, they would become Buſor men, that then the Agent whereſoeuer he ſhall find any ſuch ſeruant or ſeruaunes, to take them and put them in priſon, and no perſon to keepe them or maintaine them. This article was granted in reſpect of a cuſtome among the Perſians, being Mahumetans, whoſe maner is friendly to receiue and welentertaine both with gifts and liuing, all ſuch Chriſtians, as forſaking their religion, will become of the religion of the Perſians. Inſomuch that before this priuiledge was granted, there was great occaſion of naughtie ſeruants to deceiue and rob their maſters, that vnder the colour of profeſſing that religion, they might liue among them in ſuch ſafetie, that you might haue no lawe againſt them, either to punish them or to recouer your goods at their hands, or elſewhere. For before the Sophie (whom they ſay to be a maruelous wiſe and gracious prince) ſeemed to fauour our nation, and to graunt them ſuch priuiledges, the people abuſed them very much, and ſo hated them, that they would not touch them, but reuiled them, calling them Cafars and Gawars, which is, infidels or miſbeleeuers. But after they ſaw how greatly the prince fauoured them, they had them afterward in great reuerence, and would kiſſe their hands, and vſe them very friendly. For before they tooke it for no wrong to rob them, defraud them, beare falſe witneſſe againſt them, and ſuch merchandizes as they had bought or ſold, make them take it againe, and change it as often as them liſted. And if any ſtrauger by chance had killed one of them, they would haue the life of two for one ſlaine, and for the debes of any ſtranger, would take the goods of any other of the ſame nation, with many other ſuch like abuſes, in maner vnknowen to the prince, before the complaints of our men made vnto him for reformation of ſuch abuſes: which were the cauſe that no merchant ſtrangers of contrary religion, durſt come into his dominions with their commodities, which might be greatly to the profite of him and his ſubiects.

The Articles of the ſecond priuiledge deliuered to Lawrence Chapman, which are to be annexed vnto the former priuiledge.

10 Item that the merchants haue free libertie, as in their firſt priuiledge, to goe vnto Gillan, and all other places of his dominions, now or hereafter when occaſion ſhall be giuen.

11 Item, if by miſfortune any of their ſhips ſhould breake, or fall vpon any part of his dominions on the ſea coaſt, his ſubiects to helpe with all ſpeed to ſaue the goods and to be deliuered to any of the ſaid merchaunts that liueth: or otherwiſe to bee kept in ſafetie vntill any of them come to demaund them.

12 Item, if any of the ſaid merchants depart this life in any citie or towne, or on the high way, his gouernours there to ſee their goods ſafely kept, and to bee deliuered to any other of them that ſhall demaund them.

13 Item, the ſaid merchants to take ſuch camell men as they themſelues will, being countrey people, and that no Kiſſell Baſh doe let or hinder them. And the ſaid owners of the camels to bee bound to anſwere them ſuch goods as they ſhall receiue at their hands, and the camell men to ſtand to the loſſes of their camels or horſes.

14 Item more, that the ſaid carriers do demaund no more of them, then their agreement was to pay them.

15 Item more, if they be at a price with any carriers, & haue geuen earneſt, the Camel men to ſee they keepe their promiſe.

16 Item, if any of the ſaid merchants be in feare to trauell, to giue them one or more to go with them, and ſee them in ſafetie with their goods to the place they will goe vnto.

17 Item, in all places, to ſay, in all cities, townes or villages on the high way, his ſubiects to giue them honeſt roume, and vitails for their money.

18 Item, the ſayd merchants may in any place where they ſhall thinke beſt, build or buy any houſe or houſes to their owne vſes. And no perſon to moleſt or trouble them, and to ſtand in any Caruan where they will, or ſhall thinke good.

THe commodities which the merchants may haue by this trade into Perſia, are thought to be great, and may in time perhaps be greater then the Portugals trade into the Eaſt Indies, for ſmuch as by the way of Perſia into England, the returne may be made euery yeere once: where

as

as the Portugals make the returne from Calecut but once in two yeeres, by a long and dangerous voiage all by sea: for whereas the citie and Iland of Ormus, lying in the gulfe of Persia, is the most famous marte towne of all East India, whither all the merchandises of India are brought, the same may in shorter time and more safely, be brought by land and riuers through Persia, euen vnto the Caspian sea, and from thence by the countreis of Russia or Moscouia by riuers, euen vnto the citie of Yeraslaue, and from thence by land a hundred and foure score miles to Vologda, and from thence againe all by water, euen vnto England.

The merchandises which be had out of Persia for the returne of wares, are silke of all sortes and colours, both rawe and wrought. Also all maner of spices and drugs, pearles and precious stones, likewise carpets of diuers sortes, with diuers other rich merchandises. It was told me of them that came last from Persia, that there is more silke brought into some one citie of Persia, then is of cloth brought into the citie of London. Also that one village of Armenia named Gilgat, doth carie yeely fiue hundred, and sometime a thousand mules laden with silke to Halepo in Soria of Turkie, being foure daies iourny frō Tripoli, where the Venetians haue their continual abiding, and send from thence silkes which they returne for English karsies and other clothes into all partes of Christendome.

The maner how the Christians become Busor men, and forsake their religion.

I Haue noted here before that if any Christian will become a Busor man, that is, one that hath forsaken his faith, and be a Mahumetan of their religion, they giue him many gifts, and sometime also a liuing. The maner is, that when the deuill is entred into his heart to forsake his faith, he resorteth to the Soltan or gouernour of the towne, to whom hee maketh protestation of his diuilish purpose. The gouernour appointeth him a horse, and one to ride before him on another horse, bearing a sword in his hand, and the Busor man bearing an arrow in his hand, and rideth in the citie, cursing his father and mother: and if euer after he returne to his owne religion, hee is guiltie of death, as is signified by the sword borne before him. A young man, a seruant of one of our merchants, because he would not abide the correction of his maister for his faultes, was minded to forsake his faith. But (as God would) he fell suddenly sicke and died, before he gaue himselfe to the deuill. If he had become a Busor man, he had greatly troubled the merchants, for if he would then haue said that halfe their goods had bene his, they would haue giuen credite vnto him. For the auoiding of which inconuenience, it was granted in the priuileges that no Busor man, &c. as there appeareth.

In Persia in diuers places, oxen and kine beare the tents and houshold stuffe of the poore men of the countrey, which haue neither camels nor horses.

Of the tree which beareth Bombasine cotton, or Gossampine.

IN Persia is great abundance of Bombasine cotton, & very fine, this groweth on a certaine little tree or briar, not past ỳ height of a mans waste or litle more: the tree hath a slender stalk like vnto a briar, or to a carnation gilleflowre, with very many branches, bearing on euery branch a fruit or rather a cod, growing in round forme, conteining in it the cotton: & when this bud or cod commeth to the bignesse of a wallnut, it openeth and sheweth foorth the cotton, which groweth still in bignesse vntill it be like a fleece of woll as big as a mans fist, and beginneth to be loose, and then they get it as it were the ripe fruit. The seeds of these trees are as big as peason, and are blacke, and somewhat flat, and not round: they sowe them in plowed ground, where they grow in the fields in great abundance in many countries in Persia, and diuers other regions.

The writing of the Persians.

ARthur Edwards shewed me a letter of the Sophie, written in their letters backward, subscribed with the hands both of the Sophie and his Secretarie. The Sophies subscription was only one word (his name I suppose was Shaugh) written in golden letters vpon red paper. The whole letter was also written on the same piece of red paper, being long and narow, about ỳ length of a foote, and not past three inches broad. The priuate signet of the Sophie, was a round printed marke about the bignes of a riall, onely printed vpon the same paper without any ware or other seale, the letters seeme so misshapen and disordered, that a man would thinke it were somewhat scribbled in maner at aduentures. Yet they say that almost euery letter with his pricke or circumflex, signifieth a whole word. Insomuch that in a piece of paper as big as a mans hand, their writing doth containe as much as doth ours almost in a sheete of paper.

The

The firſt voyage into Perſia made by M. Thomas Baniſter, and M. Ieffrey Ducket Agents for the Moſcouie companie, begun from England in the yeere 1568. and continuing to the yeere 1574. following. Written by P. I. from the mouth of M. Lionell Plumtree.

VPon the 2. day of July 1568. they embarked themſelues at Yeraſlaue, being accompanied with Lionell Plumtree, and ſome 12. Engliſhmen more, in a Barke called the Thomas Bonauenture of the burden of 70. tunnes, taking alſo along with them of Ruſſes to the number of 40. for their vſe and imploiments. It fell out in the way, before they came to Aſtracan by 40. miles, that the Nagaian Tartares, being a kind of theeuiſh and cruell people, made an aſſault vpon them with 18. boates of theirs, each of them being armed, ſome with ſwords, ſome with ſpeares, and ſome others with bowes and arrowes, and the whole number of them they diſcouered to bee about 300. men. They for their partes, although they could haue wiſhed a quiet voiage and iourney without blowes and violence, yet not willing to be ſpoiled with ſuch Barbarians as they were, began to defend themſelues againſt their aſſaule, by meanes whereof a very terrible and fierce fight followed and continued hote & ſharpe for two howers, wherein our men ſo well plaid their parts with their caliuers, that they forced the Tartares to flee with the loſſe of 120. of them, as they were afterwards enformed by a Ruſſe priſoner, which eſcaped from the Nagaians, and came to them to Aſtracan, at which towne they arriued the 20. of Auguſt.

In this towne of Aſtracan they were ſomwhat hindered of their iourney, and ſtaied the ſpace of 6. weekes by reaſon of a great armie of 70000. Turkes and Tartares which came thither vpon the inſtigation of the great Turke, hoping either to haue ſurpriſed it ſuddenly or by continuance of ſiege to win the ſame. But in the end by reaſon that the Winter approched, as alſo, becauſe they had receiued newes of a great expedition, which the Emperour of Ruſſia was in prouiding for the defence of the ſayde place, they were conſtrained to raiſe their ſiege, and to leaue the towne as they found it.

Vpon their departure our men had opportunitie to proceed on their voyage, and vſing the occaſion, they left Aſtracan, and came to Bilbill towards the ende of October: from whence they went to Shauaran, where (as they lodged in their tents) they were greatly moleſted with ſtrange troopes of Iholcaues or foxes, which were ſo buſie with them that they tooke their meate and victuals out of their lodgings, and deuoured to the bare bones in one night a mightie wild Boze that was ſent vnto them for a preſent from the gouernour of the countrey.

Hauing ſtaied here ſome three or foure dayes in prouiding of cartages and other neceſſaries for their iourney, they departed thence and came to Shamachie, which is foure dayes iourney from the aforeſayd Shauaran. In this towne of Skamachie their whole company ſpent out the Winter, and from thence in Aprill following, they tooke their iourney towards Ardowill a place of great account and much eſteemed, by reaſon of the ſepulchres of the Emperours of Perſia, which for the moſt part lie there buried, and ſo is growen to be a place of their ſuperſtitious deuotion. In this towne of Ardowill they ſoiourned the ſpace of 5. or 6. moneths, finding ſome traffique and ſales, but to no purpoſe, the towne being more inhabited and frequented with gentlemen and noblemen then merchants.

The difference of religion bred great broiles in this towne whiles they remained there: for the brother ſought the deſtruction of the brother, and the neereſt kinſemen roſe vp one againſt another, inſomuch that one of their companie Lionell Plumtree hath ſeene in one day ſometimes 14. ſleine in a garboile. And he being further deſirous to ſee their maner of fight, or rather ſomewhat more curious to behold, then miſtruſtfull of their blowes, was like to haue borne a ſhare in their bloodie tragedie, being twiſe wounded with their ſhot and arrowes, although not to the death.

At this towne the Shaw Thamas ſent a meſſenger for our men to come to his preſence at Caſbin, to whom Thomas Baniſter failed not to goe, although maſter Ducket lay very ſicke at Ardowill, and in ſuch caſe that they almoſt deſpaired of his recouerie. Hee being come to the Shawgh, was receiued and entertained of him with great fauour and ſpeciall countenaunce, and had the moſt part of all his requeſts graunted him, this onely excepted, that whereas he entreated a priuiledge or ſufferance to tranſport and carie through his dominions certaine horſes into India, the Shawgh ſeemed loth to yeeld thereunto, and yet did not altogether denie it, but referred it to ſome further time. As for the point of traffique, hee could not make that motion or requeſt that was not ſo ſoone graunted as it was preferred: and the Shaugh himſelfe bought there of him many horſes, and made him as good paiment as any man could wiſhe, and oftentimes would ſend his

money

money for the wares before the wares were deliuered, that he might bee the surer of this honourable intended dealing.

One thing somewhat straunge I thought good in this place to remember, that whereas hee purposed to send a great summe of money to Mecca in Arabia, for an offering to Mahomet their prophet, hee would not send any money or coine of his owne, but sent to the English merchants to exchange his coyne for theirs, according to the value of it, yeelding this reason for the same, that the money of the merchaunts was gotten by good meanes, and with good consciences, and was therefore woorthie to bee made an oblation to their holy prophet, but his owne money was rather gotten by fraud, oppression, and vnhonest meanes, and therefore was not fit to serue for so holie a vse.

After sixe moneths spent in Casbin, the sayd Thomas Banister departed towards the great citie of Tauris, where being arriued, hee found master Ducket well recouered of his sickenesse, whom he had left ill at Ardowill.

At this Citie the foresayde master Ducket made sales of the English commodities, remayning there to that purpose the space of two yeeres and a halfe. And besides other kindes of merchandises of that countrey, he bought great store of gals which grow in great abundance at a place within one dayes iourney of the aforesaid Tauris.

The death of M. Banister.

After this Thomas Banister departed from Tauris, and went to Shamakie, to giue order in the transporting of those commodities which were bought for England. And hauing dispatched them away, hee went there hence to Arrash, a towne foure dayes iourney with camels from Shamachie, for the buying of rawe silke. But there by reason of the vnwholesomnesse of the ayre, and corruption of the waters in the hote time of the yeere, hee with Lawrence Chapman and some other English men vnhappily died: which being knowen of master Ducket, hee immediately came from Tauris to Arrash, to take possession of the goods, for otherwise by the custome of the countrey, if there had bene no merchaunt or other friend of his to enter vpon that which hee left, all had fallen into the Shaughs hands, which goods notwithstanding could not bee recouered from the officers which had sealed and sealed vp the same, vntill master Ducket had bene in person with the Shaugh, and had procured his order for the deliuerie thereof.

Lionell Plumtree in the meane time that master Ducket was at Casbin in sute by goodes vpon the perswasion of certayne Bogharians, made prouision for a iourney to Cathaya, with cariages and commodities, and hauing all things readie, departed secretly with a Caruan: but being gone forwards on his way sixe dayes iourney, some fiftie horsemen by the procurement of Humfrey Greensell (who afterwardes being at Ormuz in the East Indias, was there cruelly burnt in the Inquisition by the Portingals) were sent after him in poste from Soltan Eraslbecke, the Shawghs Lieuetenaunt, to fetche him backe againe, not suffering him to passe on so perillous and dangerous a iourney for feare of diuers inconueniences that might follow.

After this master Ducket returned from Casbin to Shamachie againe, and immediately made preparation for a iourney to Cashan, being about foure dayes iourney from Shamachie, and caried with him 4. mules laden with money.

In the way of his trauell hee passed through Persipolis, sometime the royall state of the Emperours of Persia, but now altogether ruined and defaced, whereof remayne to be seene at this day two gates onely that are distant one from the other the space of 12. miles, and some few pinnacles in the mountaines and conueiances for fresh water.

The foresayde Cashan is a Towne that consisteth all together of merchandise, and the best trade of all the lande is there, being greatly frequented by the merchaunts of India.

Heere our men bought great store of all maner of wrought Silkes, and some Spices, and good store of Turkie stones.

The towne is much to bee commended for the ciuill and good gouernement that is there vsed. An idle person is not suffered to liue amongst them.

The childe that is but fiue yeeres olde, is set to some labour. No ill rule, disorder or vice by gaming or otherwise, is there permitted. Playing at Dice or Cardes is by the lawe present death.

At this Cashan they remayned about the space of tenne weekes, and then came downe againe to Shamachie, and after some time spent in diuers places of the countrey for buying of rawe silke

silke and other commodities, they came at last to Shauaran againe, where their ship was in harbour, and then they shipt all their goods and embarked themselues also, setting saple the eight day of May, in the yeere 1573. intending to fetch Astracan. By reason of the varietie of the windes and dangerous flats of the Caspian sea, they beat it vp and downe some 20. dayes. And the 28. day riding at anker vpon the flats, certaine Russe Cassaks, which are outlawes or banished men, hauing intelligence of their being there, and of the great wealth that they had with them, came to them with diuers boates vnder the colour of friendship, and entred their ship, but immediately they tooke their hatchets and slew diuers of the Russes that were of the ship vpon the hatches: Whereupon master Ducket, Lionell Plumtree, William Smith, the master, a man of singular valure, and Amos Riall being vnder the Spardecke, did so well behaue themselues, that they skowred the hatches, and slew 14. of the Cassaks gunners, and hurt and wounded aboue 30. more, being of them all in number 150. at the least, armed with caliuers and other weapons fit for so vilanous a purpose.

M. Ducket notwithstanding and the rest aforesayd, receiued diuers wounds from the enemie, and were so hurt, and withall so oppressed with the multitude and force of them, that they were at last constrained to make an agreement with the Cassaks by rendring the ship into their hands, hauing receiued first their othes sworne by their crucifixes, not to doe any further harme to their persons.

Thus the shippe beyng taken, and all the English greuously hurt, the Cassaks immediately discharged the ship of them, putting them all into the ship boate with two or three Persian targets full of horse flesh and swines flesh, without further victuals or relefe: they being in that case, made the best hast they could to get to Astracan: and being come to the towne, master Ducket made great sute to the captaine, to haue men and boates set out for the rescuing and recouering of the ship if it were possible, who immediately sent out his sonne with fortie boates and fiue hundred men to pursue the Pirats, and by good hap came to the place where they rid at anker with the ship, but by reason of their foolishnesse in striking vp their drummes before they were come neere them, the Cassaks discouering the boates, cut their cables, and put out to Sea, whereupon the boates not being able to follow them, returned againe to Astracan. After which, three score boates more were sent out to pursue them agayne the second time: and that second armie came to a place where they found many of those Cassaks, and slew them and found out the places where they had hid certaine parcels of their goods in the earth in the chestes of the ship: all which they recouered againe for the English merchants, to the valew of 5000. li. of 30. or 40. thousand pound, but all the rest the Cassaks in the ship had caried away.

In the same place they found further, diuers of the Cassaks which the English men had slaine, buried in the earth, and wrapt some in fortie or fiftie yardes of Sattin, and Taffataes, and some in Turkie carpets cut and spoyled by those vilanous Pirats, of whom afterwardes as many as could be taken by the Persians, who entirely loued the English merchants, were put to most cruel tormentes in all places according to their deserts.

But our men being thus spoyled of their goods, and wounded in their bodies, remained about two moneths at Astracan, for their better recouerie: and hauing gotten some reasonable strength, they then prouided boates, and went vp the riuer Volga to Cazan, with such goods as they had recouered from the Cassaks. From Cazan they went towards Yeraslaue, but in the way the ice intercepted them about the beginning of October, where suddenly in the night they were taken with a cruell and vehement frost, and therewithall the waters so congeled, that their boates were crushed and cut in sunder with the ice, whereby they sustained both a further daunger of life and losse of goods: but as much as they could preserue with much adoe, they conueyed ouer land in sleds to Vologda, and from thence sent much of it to S. Nicholas, to bee laden in the shippes for England.

But master Ducket, Lionell Plumtree, and Amos Riall went with some parcels to the Mosko, and there sold certaine quantities of it to the Emperour, who pitying the mightie losse that they had sustained by his owne rebellious people and subiects, bought himselfe as much as hee liked, and paied present money for the same. So that Winter beyng spent out in Mosko, and such wares prouided by them as serued for England, they departed to S. Nicholas, and there embarked in the moneth of August: and hauing indured a very terrible passage in nine weekes and three dayes, with some hardnesse of victuals, contrary and furious windes, and other sea accidents, they arriued at London in the moneth of October one thousand fiue hundred seuentie and foure, and so made an ende of an vnfortunate voyage, which if it had pleased God to prosper, that all things had come home as safely as they were carefully prouided, and painfully laboured for,

it

ichao proued the richest voyage and most profitable returne of commoditie, that had euer bene vndertaken by English merchants, who notwithstanding all misfortunes, lost nothing of their principall aduenture, but onely the interest and gaine that might haue risen by the vse of their stocke in the meane time.

Further obseruations concerning the state of Persia, taken in the foresayd fift voyage into those partes, and written by M. Ieffrey Ducket, one of the Agents employed in the same.

SHamachie is the fairest towne in all Media, and the chiefest commoditie of the countrey is rawe silke, and the greatest plentie thereof is at a towne three dayes iourney from Shamachie called Arash: and within three dayes iourney of Arash, is a countrey named Groisine, whose inhabitants are Christians, and are thought to bee they which are otherwise called Georgians: there is also much silke to bee solde. The chiefe Towne of that countrey is called Zegham, from whence is caried yeerely into Persia, an incredible quantitie of Hasell nuts, all of one sort and goodnesse, and as good and thinne shaled as are our Filberds. Of these are caried yeerely the quantitie of 4000. Camels laden.

Of the name of the Sophie of Persia, and why he is called the Shawgh, and of other customes.

THe king of Persia (whom here we call the great Sophi) is not there so called, but is called the Shawgh. It were there daungerous to call him by the name of Sophi, because that Sophi in the Persian tongue, is a begger, and it were as much as to call him, The great begger. He lieth at a towne called Casbin, which is situate in a goodly fertile valley of three or foure dayes iourney in length. The towne is but euill builded, and for the most part all of bricke, not hardened with fire, but onely dried at the Sunne, as is the most part of the building of all Persia. The king hath not come out of the compasse of his owne house, in three and thirtie or foure and thirtie yeeres, whereof the cause is not knowen, but as they say, it is vpon a superstition of certaine prophesies to which they are greatly addicted: hee is now about fourescore yeeres of age, and very lustie. And to keepe him the more lustie, hee hath foure wiues alwayes, and about three hundred concubines, and once in the yeere he hath all the faire maidens and wiues that may be found a great way about, brought vnto him, whom he diligently perviseth, feeling them in all partes, taking such as he liketh, and putting away some of them which hee hath kept before, and with them that he putteth away, he gratifieth some such as hath done him the best seruice. And if he chance to take any mans wife, her husband is very glad thereof, and in recompence of her, oftentimes he giueth the husband one of his olde store, whom he thankfully receiueth.

How strangers are vsed.

If any stranger being a Christian shall come before him, he must put on a new paire of shoes made in that countrey, and from the place where he entereth, there is digged as it were, a caue all the way, vntill he come to the place where he shall talke with the king, who standeth alwayes aboue in a gallerie, when he talketh with any strangers: and when the stranger is departed, then is the caue cast downe, and the ground made euen againe.

Of the religion of the Persians.

THeir religion is all one with the Turkes, sauing that they differ who was the right successour of Mahumet. The Turkes say that it was one Homer and his sonne Viman. But the Persians say that it was one Mortus Ali, which they would proue in this maner. They say there was a counsell called to decide the matter who should bee the successour: and after they had called vpon Mahumet to reueale vnto them his will and pleasure therein, there came among them a litle Lizard, who declared that it was Mahumets pleasure that Mortus Ali should bee his successour. This Mortus Ali was a valiant man, and slew Homer the Turkes prophet. He had a sword that he fought withall, with the which he conquered all his enemies, and killed as many as he stroke. When Mortus Ali died, there came a holy prophet, who gaue them warning that shortly there would come a white Camell, vpon the which hee charged them to lay the body & sword of Mortus Ali, and to suffer the Camel to carie it whither he would.

A goodly and well grounded religion.

The

The which being perfourmed, the said white camell caried the sword and body of Mortus Ali vnto the sea side, and the camell going a good way into the sea, was with the sword and body of Mortus Ali taken vp into heauen, for whose returne they haue long looked in Persia. And for this cause, the king alwayes keepeth a horse readie sadled for him, and also of late kept for him one of his owne daughters to be his wife, but she died in the yeere of our Lorde 1573. And say furthermore, that if hee come not shortly, they shalbe of our beliefe: much like the Iewes, looking for their Messias to come and reigne among them, like a worldly king for euer, and deliuer them from the captiuitie which they are nowe in among the Christians, Turkes, and Gentiles.

The Shaugh, or king of Persia, is nothing in strength and power comparable vnto the Turke: for although he hath a great Dominion, yet is it nothing to be compared with the Turkes: neither hath hee any great Ordinance or gunnes, or harquebusses. Notwithstanding, his eldest sonne Ismael, about twentie and fiue yeeres past, fought a great battaile with the Turke, and slew of his armie about an hundreth thousand men, who after his returne, was by his father cast into prison, and there continueth vntil this day: for his father the Shaugh, had him in suspition that he would haue put him downe, and haue taken the regiment vnto himselfe.

Their opinion of Christ is, that hee was an holy man, and a great Prophete, but not like vnto Mahumet: saying, that Mahumet was the last prophet, by whome all things were finished, and was therefore the greatest. To proue that Christ was not Gods sonne, they say that God had neuer wife, and therefore could haue no sonne or children. They goe on pilgrimage from the furthest part of Persia, vnto Mecha in Arabia, and by the way they visit also the Sepulchre of Christ at Ierusalem, which they now call Couche Kalye. Their opinion of Christ.

The most part of spices which commeth into Persia, is brought from the Islande of Ormus, situate in the gulfe of Persia, called Sinus Persicus, betweene the maine lande of Persia and Arabia, &c. The Portingals touche at Ormus both in their voyage to East India, and homeward againe, and from thence bring all such spices as are occupied in Persia and the regions there about: for of pepper they bring very small quantitie, and that at a very deare price.

The Turkes oftentimes bring pepper from Mecha in Arabia, which they sell as good cheape as that which is brought from Ormus. Silkes are brought from no place, but are wrought all in their owne countrey. Ormus is within two miles of the maine lande of Persia, and the Portingals fetche their fresh water there, for the which they pay tribute to the Shaugh or king of Persia.

Within Persia, they haue neither golde nor siluer mines, yet haue they coyned money, both of golde and siluer, and also other small moneis of copper. There is brought into Persia an incredible summe of Dutch dolers, which for the most part are there employed in rawe silke. Their money.

They haue fewe bookes, and lesse learning, and are for the most part very brutish in all kinde of good sciences, sauing in some kind of silke workes, and in such things as pertaine to the furniture of horses, in the which they are passing good. Their bookes and learning.

Their lawes are, as is their religion, wicked and detestable. And if any man offend the prince, he punisheth it extreemely, not onely in the person that offendeth, but also in his children, and in as many as are of his kinne. Theft and murther are often punished, yet none otherwise then pleaseth him that is ruler in the place where the offence is committed, and as the partie offending is able to make friends, or with money to redeeme his offence. Such was the lawe of the Macedonians for treason.

There is oftentimes great mutenie among the people in great townes, which of Mortus Ali sonnes was greatest: Insomuch that sometimes in the towne two or three thousande people are together by the eares for the same, as I haue seene in the towne of Shamaky and Ardouill, and also in the great citie of Teueris, where I haue seene a man comming from fighting, in a brauerie hanging in his hande foure or fiue mens heads, carrying them by the haire of the head: for although they shaue their heads most commonly twise a weeke, yet leaue they a tuft of haire vpon the crowne, about two foote long. I haue enquired why they leaue that tuft of haire vpon their heads. They answere, that thereby they may easlyer bee caried vp into heauen, when they are dead. Dissention for religion.

For their religion, they haue certaine priestes, who are apparelled like vnto other men. They vse euery morning and afternoone, to goe vp to the tops of their Churches, and tell there a great tale of Mahumet & Mortus Ali: and other preaching haue they none. Their Lent is after Christmas, not in abstinence from flesh onely, but from all meates and drinkes, vntill the day be off the same: but then they eate sometimes the whole night. And although it be against their religion to drinke wine, yet at night they will take great excesse thereof, and be wonken. Their priests, and preaching. Their Lent.

Their lent beginneth at the newe Moone, and they doe not enter into it vntill they haue seene the same: Neither yet doeth their lent ende, vntill they haue seene the next newe Moone, although the same (through close weather) should not be seene in long time.

Their saints and holy men.

They haue among them certaine holy men, whome they call Setes, counted holy for that they or any of their auncestours haue bene on pilgrimage at Mecha in Arabia, for wholoeuer goeth thither on pilgrimage to visite the sepulchre of Mahumet, both hee and all his posteritie, are euer after called Setes, and counted for holy men, and haue no lesse opinion of themselues. And if a man contrary one of these, hee will say that hee is a Saint, and therefore ought to be beleeued and that hee cannot lie, although he lye neuer so shamefully. Thus a man may be to holy, as his pride is greater then spirituall pride, of a minde puffed vp with his owne opinion of holinesse.

Pilgrimage.

These Setes doe vse to shaue their heads all ouer, sauing on the sides a little aboue the temples, the which they leaue vnshauen, and vse to braide the same as women doe their haire, and to weare it as long as it will growe.

Their prayer and worshipping of God and Mahumet.

Euery morning they vse to worship God, Mahumet, and Mortus Ali, and in praying turne themselues toward the South, because Mecha lieth that way from them. When they be in trauaile on the way, many of them will (as soone as the Sunne riseth) light from their beastes, turning themselues to the South, and will laye their gownes before them, with their swoordes and beades, and so standing vpright, worship to the South: And many times in their prayers kneele downe and kisse their beades, or some what els that lieth before them.

Washing and outward cleanlinesse.

The men or women doe neuer go to make water, but they vse to take with them a potte with a spoute, and after they haue made water, they flash some water vpon their priuie parts, and thus doe the women as well as the men: and this is a matter of great religion among them, and in making of water, the men doe cowe downe as well as the women.

Their swearing.

When they earnestly affirme a matter, they will sweare by God, Mahumet, or Mortus Ali, and sometimes by al at ones: as thus in their owne language, saying, Olla Mahumet Ali. But if he sweare by the Shaughes head, in saying Shaugham bashe, you may then beleeue him if you will.

The kings magnificence.

The Shaugh keepeth a great magnificence in his court: and although sometimes in a moneth or fiue weekes, none of his nobilitie or counsaile can see him, yet goe they dayly to the court, and tarie there a certaine time, vntill they haue knowen his pleasure whether he will commaund them any thing or not. He is watched euery night with a thousand of his men, which are called his Curshes, who are they that hee vseth to sende into the Countreis about his greatest affaires. When he sendeth any of them (if it be to the greatest of any of his nobilitie) he will obey them, although the messenger should beate any of them to death.

Pursiuants.

The kings company with his wiues and concubines.

The Shaugh occupieth himselfe alwayes two dayes in the weeke in his Bathstoue, and when hee is disposed to goe thither, hee taketh with him fiue or sixe of his concubines, more or lesse, and one day they consume in washing, rubbing, and bathing him, and the other day in paring his nailes, and other matters. The greatest part of his life, hee spendeth amongst his wiues and concubines. Hee hath nowe reigned about fiftie and foure yeeres, and is therefore counted a very holy man, as they euer esteeme their kings, if they haue reigned fiftie yeeres or more: for they measure the fauour of God by a mans prosperitie, or his displeasure by a mans misfortune or aduersitie. The great Turke hath this Shaugh in great reuerence, because hee hath reigned king so long time.

The succession of the kingdome.

I haue saide before that hee hath foure wiues, and as many concubines as him listeth: and if he chaunce to haue any children by any of his concubines, and bee minded that any of those children shall inherite after him, then when one of his wiues dieth, the concubine whome hee so honoureth hee maketh one of his wiues, and the childe whome hee so loueth best, hee ordaineth to be king after him.

Circumcision.

What I heard of the maner of their marriages, for offending of honest consciences and chaste eares, I may not commit to writing: their fasting I haue declared before. They vse circumcision vnto children of seuen yeeres of age, as doe the Turkes.

Their houses and maner of eating.

Their houses (as I haue said) are for the most part made of bricke, not burned but only dried in the Sunne: In their houses they haue but little furniture of household stuffe, except it be their carpets, and some copper worke: for all their kettles and dishes wherein they eate, are of copper. They eate on the ground, sitting on carpets crosse legged as doe tailers. There is no man so simple but he sitteth on a carpet better or worse, and the whole house or roome wherein hee sitteth is wholy couered with carpets. Their houses are all with flat rooles, couered with earth: and in the sommer time, they lie vpon them all night.

They haue many bond seruants both men and women. Bond men and bond women, is not

of the beſt kinde of Marchandiſe that any man may bring. When they buy any mayds or yong women, they vſe to feele them in all partes, as with vs men doe horſes: when one hath bought a young woman, if hee like her, hee will keepe for his owne vſe as long as him liſteth, and then ſelleth her to an other, who doeth the like with her. So that one woman is ſometimes ſolde in the ſpace of foure or fiue yeeres, twelue, or twentie times. If a man keepe a bonde woman for his owne vſe, and if hee finde her to be falſe to him, and giue her bodie to any other, hee may kill her if her will. Bondmen and bond women.

Women bought and ſold, and let to hire.

When a marchant or trauailer commeth to any towne where he entendeth to tary any time, he hireth a woman, or ſometimes 2. or 3. during his abode there. And when hee commeth to an other towne, he doeth the like in the ſame alſo: for there they vſe to put out their women to hire, as wee doe here hackney horſes.

There is a very great riuer which runneth through the plaine of Iauar, which falleth into the Caſpian ſea, by a towne called Backo, neere vnto which towne is a ſtrange thing to behold. For there iſſueth out of the ground a marueilous quantitie of Oyle, which Oyle they fetch from the vttermoſt bounds of all Perſia: it ſerueth all the Countrey to burne in their houſes. Abundance of Oyle iſſuing out of the ground.

This oyle is blacke, and is called Neſte: they vſe to cary it throughout all the Countrey vpon kine & aſſes, of which you ſhall oftentimes meete, with foure or fiue hundred in a companie. There is alſo by the ſaid towne of Backo, an other kinde of oyle which is white and very precious: and is ſuppoſed to be the ſame that here is called Petroleum. There is alſo not farre from Shamaky, a thing like vnto tarre, and iſſueth out of the ground, whereof wee haue made the proofe, that in our ſhips it ſerueth well in the ſtead of tarre. Oleum Petroleum.

In Perſia are kine of two ſorts, the one like vnto ours in theſe partes, the other are marueilous euill fauoured, with great bones, and very leane, and but little haire vpon them: their milke is paſſing ſweete: they are like vnto them which are ſpoken of in the Scripture, which in the meane of Pharao ſignified the ſeuen deare yeeres: for a leaner or more euill fauoured beaſt, can no man ſee. Two ſorts of kine.

In the Countrey of Shiruan (ſometime called Media) if you chaunce to lye in the fields neere vnto any village, as the twilight beginneth, you ſhall haue about you two or three hundred fores, which make a marueilous wayleing or howling: and if you looke not well to your victuals, it ſhall ſcape them hardly but they will haue part with you. Fores in great plentie.

The Caſpian ſea, doeth neither ebbe nor flowe, except ſometimes by rage of winde it ſwelleth vp very high: the water is very ſalt. Howbeit, the quantitie of water that falleth out of the great riuer of Volga, maketh the water freſh at the leaſt twentie leagues into the ſea. The Caſpian ſea is marueilous full of fiſh, but no kinde of monſtrous fiſh, as farre as I could vnderſtand, yet hath it ſundrie ſortes of fiſhes which are not in theſe partes of the world.

The mutton there is good, and the ſheepe great, hauing very great rumps with much fat vpon them.

Riſe and mutton is their chiefe victuall.

The Copie of a letter ſent to the Emperour of Moſcouie, by Chriſtopher Hodſdon, and William Burrough, Anno 1570.

MOſt mightie Emperour, &c. Whereas ſir William Garrard and his fellowſhip, the Companie of Engliſh Marchants this laſt winter, ſent hither to the Narue, 3. ſhips laden with marchandiſe, which was left here, & with it Chriſtopher Hodſdon one of the ſaide fellowſhip and their chiefe doer in this place, who when hee came firſt hither, and vntill ſuch time as hee had diſpatched thoſe ſhippes from hence, was in hope of goods to lade twelue or thirteene ſailes of good ſhippes, againſt this ſhipping, wherefore hee wrote vnto the ſaide ſir William Garrard and his companie to ſende hither this ſpring the ſaide nomber of thirteene ſhippes. And becauſe that in their comming hither wee founde the Freebooters on the ſea, and ſuppoſing this yeere that they would be very ſtrong, hee therefore gaue the ſaide ſir William and his Companie aduiſe, to furniſh the ſaide nomber of ſhippes ſo ſtrongly, as they ſhoulde bee able to withſtande the force of the Freebooters: Whereupon they haue according to his aduiſe ſent this yeere thirteene good ſhippes together well furniſhed with men and munition, and all other neceſſaries for the warres, of which 13. ſhippes William Burrough one of the ſaid fellowſhip is Captaine generall,

vnto whome there was giuen in charge, that if hee mette with any the Danske Freebooters, or whatsoeuer robbers and theeues, that are enemies to your highnesse, hee should doe his best to apprehende and take them: It so happened that the tenth day of this moneth the saide William with his fleete, mette with sixe shippes of the Freebooters neere vnto an Iſlande called Tuttee, which is about 50. leeks from Narue, vnto which Freebooters he with his fleete gaue chase, and tooke of them the Admirall, wherein were left but 3. men, the rest were fledde to shoare in their boates amongst the woods vpon Tuttee, on which shippe hee set fire and burnt her. Hee also tooke foure more of those shippes which are nowe here, and one shippe escaped him: out of which foure shippes some of the men fled in their boates and so escaped, others were slaine in fight, and some of them when they sawe they coulde not escape, cast themselues willingly into the Sea, and were drowned. So that in these 5. shippes were left but 83. men.

Fiue shippes of Freebooters taken.

The saide William Borough when hee came hither to Narue, finding here Christopher Hodsdon aforenamed, both the saide Christopher and William, together in the name of sir William Garrard, and the rest of their whole Companie and fellowship, did present vnto your highnesse of those Freebooters taken by our shippes 82. men, which wee deliuered here vnto Kneze Voivoda, the 13. of this moneth. One man of those Freebooters we haue kept by vs, whose name is Haunce Snarke a Captaine. And the cause why we haue done it is this: When we should haue deliuered him with the rest of his felowes vnto the Viouodaes officers, there were of our English men more then 50. which fell on their knees vnto vs, requesting that hee might be reserued in the shippe, and carried backe into England: and the cause why they so earnestly intreated for him, is, that some of those our Englishmen had bene taken with Freebooters, and by his meanes had their liues saued, with great fauour besides, which they found at his hands. Wherefore if it please your highnesse to permit it, we will carry him home with vs into England, wherein wee request your Maiesties fauour: notwithstanding what you command of him shalbe obserued.

Wee haue also sent our seruant to your highnesse with such bestellings and writings, as we found in those shippes: whereby your Maiestie may see by whome, and in what order they were set out, and what they pretended, which writings wee haue commended vnto Kneze Yorive your Maiesties Viouoda at Plasco, by our seruant. And haue requested his furtherance for the safe deliuerie of them to your Maiesties handes: which writings when you haue perused, wee desire that they may be returned vnto vs by this our seruant, as speedily as may be: for these shippes which we now haue here, will be soone dispatched from hence, for that wee haue not goods to lade about the halfe of them. And the cause is, we haue this winter (by your Maiesties order) bene kept from trafiquing, to the companies great losse. But hoping your Maiestie will hereafter haue consideration thereof, and that we may haue free libertie to trafique in all parts of your Maiesties Countreis, according to the priuiledge giuen vnto vs, wee pray for your Maiesties health, with prosperous successe to the pleasure of God. From Narue the 15. of July. Anno 1570.

Your Maiesties most humble
and obedient,

{ Christopher Hodsdon,
{ William Borough.

A note of the proceeding of M. Anthonie Ienkinson, Ambassadour *from the Queenes most excellent Maiestie, to the Emperour of Russia, from the time of his arriuall there, being the 26. of Iuly 1571. vntill his departure from thence the 23. of Iuly, 1572.*

THe said 26. day I arriued with the two good shippes called the Swallow and the Harry in safetie at the bay of S. Nicholas in Russia aforesaide, and landed at Rose Island, from whence immediatly I sent away my Interpreter Daniel Silvester in poste towardes the Court, being then at the Mosco, whereby his Maiestie might as well be aduertised of my arriuall in his Dominions, as also to knowe his highnesse pleasure for my further accesse. And remaining at the saide Iland two or three dayes, to haue conference with your Agent about your affaires, I did well perceiue by the wordes of the saide Agent, and others your seruants, that I was entred into

into great perill and danger of my life, for they reported to mee that they heard ſaide at the Moſco, that the Princes diſpleaſure was ſuch againſt mee, that if euer I came into his Countrey againe I ſhould looſe my head, with other wordes of diſcouragement: Whereat, I was not a little diſmayde, not knowing whether it were beſt for mee to proceede forwards, or to returne home againe with the ſhippes for the ſafegard of my life. But calling to minde mine innocencie and good meaning, and knowing my ſelfe not to haue offended his Maieſtie any maner of wayes either in word or deede, or by making former promiſes not performed, hereto fore by mine enemies falſely furniſhed, and being deſirous to come to the triall thereof, whereby to iuſtifie my true dealings, and to reprooue my ſaid enemies as well here as there, who haue not ceaſed of late by vntrue reports to impute the cauſe of the ſaide Emperours diſpleaſure towards you to proceede of my dealings, and promiſes made to him at my laſt being with him (although by his letters to the Queenes Maieſtie, and by his owne wordes to mee the contrary doeth appeare) I determined with my ſelfe rather to put my life into his handes, and by the prouidence of God to proſecute the charge committed vnto mee, then to returne home in vaine, diſcouraged with the wordes of ſuch, who had rather that I had tarried at home, then to bee ſent ouer with ſuch credite, whereby I might ſift out their euill doings, the onely cauſe of your loſſe.

Wherefore, leauing the ſaide ſhippes the nine and twentieth day of the moneth, I departed from the ſeaſide, and the firſt of Auguſt arriued at Colmogro, where I remayned attending the returne of my ſaide meſſenger with order from his Maieſtie.

But all the Countrey being ſore viſited by the hande of God with the plague, paſſage in euery place was ſhutte vp, that none might paſſe in paine of death: My meſſenger being eight hundreth miles vpon his way, was ſtayed, and kept at a towne called Shasko, and might not bee ſuffered to goe any further, neither yet to returne backe againe, or ſende vnto mee: by meanes whereof in the ſpace of foure moneths, I could neither heare nor knowe what was become of him, in which time my ſaide meſſenger founde meanes to aduertiſe the Gouernour of the Citie of Vologda, as well of his ſtay, as of the cauſe of his comming thither, who ſent him worde that it was not poſſible to paſſe any neerer the Prince without further order from his Maieſtie, who was gone to the warres againſt the Swethens, and that hee would aduertiſe his highneſſe ſo ſoone as hee might conueniently: And ſo my ſaide meſſenger was forced to remaine there ſtill without anſwere. During which time of his ſtay through the great death (as afore ſaide,) I founde meanes to ſende another meſſenger, with a guide by an vnknowen way through wilderneſſe, a thouſande miles about, thinking that way hee ſhould paſſe without let: but it prooued contrary, for likewiſe her being paſſed a great part of his iourney, fell into the handes of a watche, and eſcaped very hardly, that hee and his guide with their horſes had not bene burnt, according to the lawe prouided for ſuch as would ſeeke to paſſe by indirect wayes, and many haue felt the ſmart thereof, which had not wherewith to buy out the paine: neither coulde that meſſenger returne backe vnto mee.

And thus was I kept without anſwere or order from his Maieſtie, and remained at the ſaide Colmogro, vntill the 18. of Januarie following, neither hauing a Gentleman to ſafegard me, nor lodging appointed me, nor allowance of victuals according to the Countrey faſhion for Ambaſſadours, which argued his grieuous diſpleaſure towards our nation. And the people of the Countrey perceiuing the ſame, vſed towards mee and my companie ſome diſcourteſies: but about the 28. day afore ſaid, the plague ceaſed, and the paſſages being opened, there came order from his Maieſtie that I ſhould haue poſte horſes, and be ſuffered to depart from Colmogro to goe to a Citie called Peraſlaue neere to the Court, his Maieſtie being newly returned frō the ſaid warres. And I arriued at the ſaid Peraſlaue the 3. of Februarie, where I remained vnder the charge of a gentleman, hauing then a houſe appointed me, & allowance of victuals, but ſo ſtraitly kept, that none of our nation or other might come or ſend vnto me, nor I to them. And the 14. of March following, I was ſent for to the Court, and being within 3. miles of the ſame, a poſte was ſent to the Gentleman which had charge of mee to returne backe againe with mee to the ſaid Peraſlaue, and to remaine there vntill his Maieſties further pleaſure, wherewith I was much diſmayed, and maruelled what that ſudden change meant, and the rather, becauſe it was a troubleſome time, and his Maieſtie much diſquieted through the ill ſucceſſe of his affaires, (as I did vnderſtand.) And the twentieth of the ſame, I was ſent for againe to the Court, and the 23. I came before his Maieſtie, who cauſed mee to kiſſe his hande, and gaue gratious audience vnto my Oration, gratefully receiuing and accepting the Queenes Maieſties princely letters, and her preſent, in the preſence of all his nobilitie. After I had finiſhed my Oration to long here to rehearſe, and deliuered her highneſſe letters, and preſent (as afore ſaid) the Emperour ſitting in royal eſtate ſtood vp

and said, How doth Queene Elizabeth my sister, is she in health? to whom I answered, God doth blesse her Maiestie with health, and peace, and doeth with the like vnto thee Lord, her louing brother. Then his Maiestie sitting downe againe, commanded all his nobilitie and others to depart, and auoyde the chamber, sauing the chiefe Secretarie, and one other of the Counsell, and willing me to approch neere vnto him with my Interpretor, said vnto me these words.

Anthonie, the last time thou wast with vs heare, wee did commit vnto thee our trustie and secret Message, to bee declared vnto the Queenes Maiestie herselfe thy Mistresse at thy comming home, and did expect thy comming vnto vs againe at the time we appointed, with a full answere of the same from her highnesse. And in the meane time there came vnto vs at seuerall times three messengers, the one called Manly, the other George Middleton, and Edward Goodman, by the way of the Narue about the Marchants affaires: to whome we sent our messenger to knowe whether thou Anthonie, were returned home in safetie, and when thou shouldest returne vnto vs againe: but those messengers could tell vs nothing, and did miscall, and abuse with euill wordes, both our messenger and thee, wherewith wee were much offended. And vnderstanding that the saide Goodman had letters about him, wee caused him to be searched, with whome were found many letters, wherein was written much against our Princely estate, and that in our Empire were many vnlawfull things done, whereat wee were much grieued, and would suffer none of those rude messengers to haue accesse vnto vs: and shortly after wee were informed that one Thomas Randolfe was come into our Dominions by the way of Dwina, Ambassadour from the Queene, and wee sent a Gentleman to meete and conduct him to our Citie of Mosco, at which time wee looked that thou shouldest haue returned vnto vs againe. And the saide Thomas being arriued at our saide Citie, wee sent vnto him diuers times, that hee shoulde come and conferre with our Counsell, whereby wee might vnderstande the cause of his comming, looking for answere of those our princely affaires committed vnto thee. But hee refused to come to our saide Counsell: wherefore, and for that our saide Citie was visited with plague, the saide Thomas was the longer kept from our presence. Which being ceased, forthwith wee gaue him accesse and audience, but all his talke with vs, was about Marchants affaires, and nothing touching ours. Wee knowe that Marchants matters are to bee heard, for that they are the staye of our Princely treasures: But first Princes affaires are to bee established, and then Marchants. After this the saide Thomas Randolfe was with vs at our Citie of Vologda, and wee dealt with him about our Princely affaires, whereby amitie betwixt the Queenes Maiestie and vs, might be established for euer, and matters were agreed and concluded betwixt your Ambassadour and vs, and thereupon wee sent our Ambassadour into England with him to ende the same, but our Embassadour returned vnto vs againe, without finishing our said affaires, contrary to our expectation, and the agreement betwixt vs, and your said Ambassadour.

Thus when his Maiestie had made a long discourse, I humbly beseeched his highnesse to heare me graciously, and to giue me leaue to speake without offence, and to beleeue those words to be true which I should speake. Which he graunted, and these were my wordes.

Most noble and famous Prince, the message which thy highnesse did sende by mee vnto the Queene her most excellent Maiestie touching thy Princely and secret affaires, immediatly, and so soone as I came home, I did declare both secretly and truely vnto the Queenes Maiestie herselfe, word for word, as thou Lorde diddest commaunde mee. Which her highnesse did willingly heare and accept, and being mindefull thereof, and willing to answere the same, the next shipping after her Maiestie did sende vnto thee Lorde, her highnesse Ambassadour Thomas Randolfe, whose approoued wisedome and fidelitie was vnto her Maiestie well knowen, and therefore thought meete to bee sent to so worthy a Prince, who had Commission not onely to treate with thy Maiestie of Marchants affaires, but also of those thy Princely and secret affaires committed vnto mee. And the cause (most gracious Prince) that I was not sent againe, was, for that I was imployed in seruice vpon the Seas against the Queenes Maiesties enemies, and was not returned home at such time as Master Thomas Randolfe departed with the Shippes, to come into thy Maiesties Countrey, otherwise I had bene sent. And whereas thy Maiestie sayeth, that Thomas Randolfe would not treate with thy Counsell of the matters of his Legation, hee did (Lord) therein according to his Commission: which was: First to deale with thy Maiestie thy selfe, which order is commonly vsed among all Princes, when they sende their Ambassadours about matters of great waighe. And whereas the saide Thomas is charged that hee agreed and concluded vpon matters at the same time, and promised the same should bee performed by the Queene her Maiestie: Whereupon (Lorde) thou diddest send thy Ambassadour with him into Englande, for answere thereof: It may please thy Maie-

ſtie

ſtie to vnderſtand, that as the ſaid Thomas Randolfe doth confeſſe, that in deede he had talke with thy Highnes, and counſell diuers times about princely affaires: euen ſo he denieth that euer he did agree, conclude, or make any promiſe in any condition or order, as is alleaged otherwiſe then it ſhould pleaſe the Queene her Maieſtie to like of, at his returne home, which he did iuſtifie to thy Highnes Ambaſſador his face in England. Wherefore moſt mightie Prince, it doth wel appeare, that either thy Ambaſſador did vntruly enforme thy Maieſtie, or els thy princely minde, and the true meaning of the Queenes Highnes her Ambaſſador, for want of a good Interpretor, was not well vnderſtoode: and how thankefully the Queene her Maieſtie did receaue thy Highnes commendations, and letters ſent by thy Maieſties Ambaſſador, and how graciouſly ſhe gaue him audience ſundry times, vſing him with ſuch honour in al points for thy ſake Lord, her louing brother, as the like was neuer ſhewed to any Ambaſſador in our Realme, and how honorably with full anſwere in all things, her Maieſtie diſmiſſed him, when he had finiſhed all thy princely affaires (as it ſeemed) to his owne contentation, it may well appeare by a true certificate lately ſent with her Highnes letter vnto thee Lord, by her Meſſenger Robert Beaſt, and her Maieſtie did ſuppoſe that that thy Ambaſſador would haue made report accordingly, and that by him thy Highnes would haue bene ſatisfied in all things: otherwiſe ſhe would haue ſent her Maieſties Ambaſſador with him vnto thee Lord againe. But now her Highnes perceauing that thy Maieſtie is not fully ſatisfied in thy Princely affaires, neither by Thomas Randolfe, her Highnes Ambaſſador, nor by thine owne Ambaſſador Andrea Sauyne, nor yet by her Maieſties letter, ſent by the ſaid Andrea: and alſo vnderſtanding thy great griefe and diſpleaſure towards ſir William Garret, and his company, merchants trafficking in thy Maieſties dominions, hath thought good to ſend me at this preſent vnto thee Lord Emperour, and great Duke, as wel with her Highnes ful mind, touching thy princely affaires, as alſo to knowe the iuſt cauſe of thy Maieſties ſaid diſpleaſure towards the ſaid company of merchants: and hath commanded me to anſwere to all things in their behalfe, and according to their true meanings. For her Highnes doth ſuppoſe thy Maieſties indignation, to proceede rather vpon the euill, and vntrue reports of thy late Ambaſſador in England, and of ſuch wicked perſons of our nation reſident here in thy Highnes dominions, rebels to her Maieſtie, and their countrie, then of any iuſt deſerts of the ſaid merchants, who neuer willingly deſerued thy highneſſe diſpleaſure, but rather fauour in all their doinges and meaninges. And ſince the firſt time of their trafficking in thy Maieſties dominions, which is now nineteene yeeres, the ſaid merchants haue bene, and are alwaies readie and willing truely to ſerue thy highneſſe of all thinges meete for thy treaſurie, in time of peace and of warre in deſpite of all thy enemies: although the Princes of the Eaſt ſeas were agreed to ſtoppe the ſounde, and the way to the Narue, and haue brought, and do bring from time to time ſuch commoditie to thee Lord, as her Maieſty doth not ſuffer to be tranſported forth of her Realme to no other Prince of the world. And what great loſſes the ſayd Sir William Garret, with his companie hath ſuſtained of late yeeres in this trade, as wel by ſhipwracke, as by falſe ſeruants it is manifeſtly knowen: and what ſeruice the ſaid companies ſhips did vnto thy Maieſtie againſt thy enemies, two yeeres paſt in going to the Narue, when they fought with the king of Poles ſhippes Freebutters, and burnt the ſame and ſlew the people, and as many as were taken aliue deliuered vnto thy Captaine at the Narue, I truſt thy Highnes doth not forget. Wherefore moſt mighty Prince, the premiſes conſidered, the Queene her moſt excellent Maieſtie thy louing Siſter, doeth requeſt thy Highnes to reſtore the ſaide Sir William Garret with his companie vnto thy princely fauour againe, with their priuiledges for free traffike with thy accuſtomed goodnes and iuſtice, to be miniſtred vnto them throughout all thy Maieſties dominions, as afore time: and that the ſame may be ſignified by thy Princely letters, directed to thy officers in all places, any thy highneſſe commandement or reſtraint to the contrarie notwithſtanding. And further that it will pleaſe thy Maieſtie, not to giue credite to falſe reports, and vntrue ſuggeſtions of ſuch as are enemies, and ſuch as neither would haue mutuall amity to continue betwixt your Maieſties, nor yet entertourſe betwixt your countries. And ſuch rebels of our nation, as Ralfe Rutter, and others which lye lurking here in thy Highnes dominions, ſeeking to ſowe diſſentions betwixt your Maieſties by falſe ſurmiſes, ſpending away their maſters goodes riotouſly, and will not come home to giue vp their accounts, auaunсing themſelues to bee merchants, and able to ſerue thy Highnes of all thinges fitte for thy treaſurie, whereas indeede they be of no credite, nor able of themſelues to doe thy Maieſtie anie ſeruice at all: the Queenes Highneſſe requeſt is, that ſo would pleaſe thy Maieſtie to commaunde that ſuch perſons may bee deliuered vnto me to be carried home, leaſt by their remaining here, and hauing practiſes & friendſhip with ſuch as be not thy highneſſe friends, their euill doing might be a cauſe hereafter to withdraw thy goodnes from Sir William Garret and his companie, who haue true meaning in all

their

their doings, and are ready to serue thy Highnes at all times, vsing many other wordes to the aduancement of your credits, and the disgracing of your enemies, and so I ended for that time.

Then said his Maiestie, we haue heard you, and will consider of all things further, when we haue read the Queene our sisters letters: to whome I answered, that I supposed his Maiestie should by those letters vnderstand her Highnes full mind to his contentation, and what wanted in writing, I had credite to accomplish in word. Wherewith his Maiestie seemed to be well pleased, and commanded me to sit downe. And after pawsing a while, his Maiestie said these wordes vnto me, It is now a time which we spend in fasting, and praying, being the weeke before Easter, and for that we will shortly depart from hence, towards our borders of Nouogrode, we can not giue you answere, nor your dispatch here, but you shall goe from hence, and tary vs vpon the way, where we will shortly come, and then you shall knowe our pleasure, and haue your dispatch. And so I was dismissed to my lodging, and the same day I had a dinner ready dyght sent me from his Maiestie, with great store of drinkes, of diuers sortes, and the next day following, being the foure and twentieth of March aforesaide, the chiefe Secretarie to his Maiestie, sent vnto mee a Gentleman, to signifie vnto mee, that the Emperours Maiesties pleasure was, I should immediatly depart towards a Citie, called Otwer, three hundred miles, from the aforesaid Sloboda, and there to tary his highnes comming vnto a place called Staryts, three score miles from the said Otwer.

Then I sent my Interpretor to the chiefe Secretarie, requesting him to further, and shewe his fauour vnto our said merchants in their suites, which they should haue occasion to moue in my absence: who sent me word againe, that they should be well assured of his friendship, & furtherance in all their suites. And forthwith post horses were sent me, with a Gentleman to conduct me. And so departing from the saide Sloboda, I arriued at the saide Otwer, the 28. of March aforesaide, where I remained till the eight of May following. Then I was sent for, to come vnto his Maiestie, to the saide Staryts, where I arriued the tenth of the same, and the twelfth of the same, I was appointed to come to the chiefe Secretarie, who at our meeting sayde vnto mee these wordes.

Our Lord Emperour, and great Duke, hath not onely perused the Queene her Highnes letters sent by you, and thereby doth perceaue her mind, as well touching their princely affaires, as also her earnest request in the merchants behalfe, but also hath well pondered your wordes. And therefore his Maiesties pleasure is, that you let me vnderstand, what suites you haue to moue in the merchants behalfe, or otherwise, for that to morrowe, you shall haue accesse againe vnto his Highnes, and shall haue full answere in all things, with your dispatch away.

Then after long conference had with him of diuers matters, I gaue him in writing certaine briefe articles of requests, which I had drawen out ready, as followeth.

1. First the Queenes Maiestie her request is, that it would please the Emperours Highnes to let me knowe the iust cause of his great displeasure fallen vpon sir William Garret, & his companie, who neuer deserued the same, to their knowledge.

2. Also that it would please his Highnes, not to giue credite vnto false and vntrue reports, by such as seeke to sowe dissention, and breake friendshippe, betwixt the Queenes Highnes, and his Maiestie.

3. Also that it would please his Maiestie to receaue the said sir William Garret, with his companie, into his fauour againe, and to restore them to their former priuiledges, and liberties, for free traffike in, and through, and out of all his Maiesties dominions, in as ample manner as aforetime, according to his princely letters of priuiledge, and accustomed goodnes.

4. Also it would please his Highnes to grant, that the said companie of merchants may haue iustice of all his subiects, as well for money owing vnto them, as other their griefes and iniuries, throughout all his dominions suffred since the time of his displeasure, during which time, the merchants were forced by seuere iustice to answer to all mens demands, but theirs could not be heard.

5. Also that his Maiestie would vnderstand, that much debts are owing to the said merchants, by diuers of his Nobilitie, whereof part are in durance, and some executed, and the said merchants know not how to be paid, and answered the same, except his Highnes pitie their case, and command some order to be taken therein.

6. Also it would please his Highnes to command that the saide merchants may be paide all such summe, or summes of money as are owing, and due vnto them by his Maiestie, for wares, as well English, as Shamakye, taken into his Highnes treasurie by his officers in sundry places, the long forbearing whereof hath bene, and is great hinderance to the said companie of merchants.

7 Also it would please his Maiestie to vnderstand, that at this present time there are in Persia of English merchants, Thomas Banister, and Geofrye Ducket, with their companie, and goods, ready to come into his Maiesties Countrey of Astracan, and would haue come the last yeere, but that the ship, with our merchants, and marriners, appointed to goe for them, were staied at Astracan by his Highnes Captaine there, to the great hinderance of the said merchants. Wherefore it may now please his Maiestie, to direct his princely letters vnto his Captaines, and rulers, both at Astracan, and Cazan, not onely to suffer our people, as well merchants, as marriners, quietly, and freely to passe and repasse with their shippes, barkes, or other vessels downe the riuer Volga, and ouer the Mare Caspium, to fetch the said English merchants, with their companie, and goods, out of the said Persia, into his Maiesties dominions, but also that it would please his Highnes streightly to command, that when the said Thomas Bannester, and Geofrye Ducket, with their charge, shall arriue at the saide Astracan, his Maiesties Captaine there, and in all other places, vppon the riuer Volga, shall so aide and assist the said merchants, as they may be safely conducted out of the danger of the Crimmes, and others their enemies.

8 Also it may please his Highnes to vnderstand, that lately our merchants comming from Shamakye, haue bene ill vsed by his Maiesties Customers, both at Astracan, and Cazan, at both which places they were forced to pay custome for their wares, although they solde no part thereof, but brought the same into his Highnes treasurie at Sloboda: and the said Customers did not only exact, and take much more custome then was due by his Maiesties lawes, but also for want of present monie, tooke wares much exceeding their exacted custome, and doe keepe the same as a pawne. It may therefore please his Highnes to direct his princely letters to the said Customers, to signifie vnto them his great goodnes againe restored vnto the saide English merchants, as also to command them to send the said merchants their said goods so detained, vp to the Musko, they paying such custome for the same, as shall be by his Maiestie appointed.

9 Also that it would please his Highnes to grant, that sir William Garret, with his companie, may establish their trade for merchandise at Colmogro in Dwina, and that such wares as shal be brought out of our Countrey fit for his treasurie might be looked vpon, and receaued by his officers there: and that his Maiesties people trafficking with our merchants, may bring downe their commodities to the said Colmogro, by meanes whereof the saide English merchants auoiding great troubles, and charges, in transporting their goods so farre, and into so many places of his dominions, may sell the same better cheape, to the benefite of his Maiesties subiects.

10 Also if it seemed good to his Highnes, that the whole trade likewise from Persia, Boghar, and all other those Countreies beyond the Mare Caspium, might be established at Astracan, the ancient marte towne in times past, which would be both for the great honour, and profite of his Maiestie, and subiects, as I am well able to proue, if it will please his Highnes to appoint any of his counsell to talke with me therein.

11 Also forasmuch as it pleased his Maiestie immediatly after the burning of the Musko, to command that the said English merchants should giue in a note into his treasurie, for their losses sustained by the said fire, which was done by William Rowlye, then cheefe Agent for sir William Garret, and his company, and the particulars in the same note consumed with the said fire, did amount to the summe of 10000. rubbles, and aboue: It may please his Highnes of his accustomed goodnes, and great clemencie, to consider of the same, and to giue the saide companie so much as shall seeme good vnto his Maiestie, towards their said losses.

12 Also that it will please his Highnes, to vnderstand that the Queenes most excellent Maiestie, at the earnest suite and request of Andrea Sauyne his Maiesties Ambassador, did not onely pardon and forgiue Thomas Glouer, his great and grieuous offences towards her Highnes committed, only for his Maiesties sake, but also commanded sir William Garret, with his companie, to deale fauourably with the said Glouer, in his accompes, to whome he was indebted greatly, and being their seruant, detained their goods in his hands a long time: whereupon the said sir William Garret, with his companie, counted with the saide Glouer, and ended all thinges, euen to his said contentation, and was found to be debter to the said companie, 4000. robbles, and aboue, and bound him selfe both by his solemne othe, and his hand writing, to pay the same immediatly after his returne into Russia, with the said Andrea Sauyne, vnto Nicholas Proctor, cheefe Agent here, for the said companie of merchants. But although it is now two yeeres past, since the saide agreement, and that the said Nicholas hath diuers, and sundry times requested the said monie of the said Thomas, yet will he not pay the same debt, but maketh delay from time to time, alleaging that his Maiestie oweth him a great summe of money, without the paiment whereof, he can not be able to pay the said merchants his due debt long forborne, to their great hinderance. In consideration

tion

tion of the premisses, It may please his Highnes, to giue order that the said Glouer may be paid, and that he may discharge his debt to the saide company of merchants, and the rather for that he found such mercie and fauour in England, onely for his Maiesties sake.

13 Also forasmuch as Ralfe Rutter, a rebell to the Queenes Maiestie, and an enemie to his Countrey, and to sir William Garret, and his company, hath of long time remained here, living of the spoiles and goods of the said merchants, which he wrongfully detained in his hands, riotously spending the same, during the time that he was their seruant, and would not come home when he was sent for, and also for that the Queenes Maiestie doth vnderstand, that the said Ralfe, with other his adherents, doe seeke by all false meanes, to sowe dissention, and breake amitie betwixt their Maiesties, and to ouerthrowe the trade of the said merchants: her Highnes request is, that the said Ralfe, with his complices, may be deliuered vnto me, to be carried home, and none other of her Maiesties subiects, not being of the societie of the said sir William Garret, and his compaine, to be suffered to traffike within his Highnes dominions, but to be deliuered to their Agent to be sent home: for that the said merchants with great charges and losses, both by shipwracke, and riotous seruants, did first finde out this trade, and haue continued the same, these 19. yeeres, to their great hinderance.

14 Also whereas diuers Makers, and artificers of our nation, are here in his Maiesties seruice, and doe finde themselues grieued that they can not haue licence to depart home into their natiue Countrey, at their will and pleasure: the Queenes Maiesties request is, according to her Highnes writing in that behalfe, that not onely it will please his Maiestie to permit, and suffer such artificers, here resident in the seruice of his Highnes, to haue free libertie to depart, and goe home with mee, if they request the same, but also all other the like, which shall come hereafter to serue his Maiestie, to haue free libertie to depart likewise, without any let or stay.

15 Also it may please his Maiestie to vnderstand, that during the time of my long being at Colmogro, attending his Highnes pleasure, for my further accesse, I with my company, haue not onely bene ill vsed, and intreated there, and likewise the merchants there, but one Besson Mysserueye, his Maiesties chiefe officer, who hath dishonored me, and smitten my people, and deteth the said merchants much money, and will not pay them: but also the saide Bessone hath spoken wordes of dishonor against the Queenes Maiestie. Wherefore it may please his Highnes to send downe with me to Colmogro, a Gentleman, as well chiefly to serch foorth his euill behauiour towards her Maiestie, as towards me her Highnes Amballador, and to punish him accordingly: and also that it would please his Maiestie to sende downe his letter of iustice, by vertue whereof, the said Bessone may be forced to pay all such money as he oweth to the saide merchants, without delay.

16 Also that it would please his Highnes to vnderstand, that sir William Garret, with his companie, vnderstanding of the great dearth in his Maiesties dominions, by licence of ỹ Queenes Maiestie, (not otherwise permitted) hath sent certaine ships laden with corne into his Highnes Countrey of Dwyna, rather for the reliefe of his Maiesties subiects, then for any gaine: yet the good will of the said merchants lightly regarded, they were forbidden to sell the said corne, to their great discouragement hereafter to send any more. Wherefore it may please his Highnes, to render the good will of the said merchants, as well in sending the said corne, as in all other things, ready to serue his Maiestie, and to direct his letters to his officers of Dwyna, to suffer the saide merchants, with their companie, to sell the said corne by measure great, or small, at their pleasure, without paying custome.

These articles being deliuered to the chiefe Secretarie, as aforesaide, and our talke ended for that time, I departed to my lodging, accompanied with certaine Gentlemen. The next day, being the 13. of May aforesaid, I had warning earely in the morning, to prepare my selfe to be at the Court, betwixt the howres of 10. and 11. of the clocke, where I should haue accesse vnto the presence of the Prince, as well to receaue answere of all things, as to be dismissed to goe home. At which howres I was sent for to the Court, and brought into the Chamber of presence, where his Maiestie did sit apparelled most sumptuously, with a rich Crowne vpon his head, garnished with many pretious stones, his eldest sonne sitting by him, and many of his Nobilitie about him: and after my dutie done, his Highnes commanded me to approch very neere vnto him, and saide vnto me these words.

Anthony, the Queene our louing sister her letters wee haue caused to be translated, and doe well vnderstande the same, and of all things as well therein contayned, as by worde of mouth by you to vs declared, wee haue well considered, and doe perceaue that our secrete message vnto you committed, was done truely according to our minde (although wee haue

aboue all

aduertiſed to the contrarie) and now we are by you fully ſatisfied. And when we did ſend our Ambaſſador into England, about thoſe our great, and waighтie affaires, to conclude the ſame with the Queene our ſiſter, our Ambaſſador could ende nothing for want of ſuch aſſurance as was requiſite in princely affaires, according to the manner of all Countreyes, but was diſmiſſed vnto vs againe, with letters of ſmall effect, touching the ſame, and no Ambaſſador ſent with him from the Queene: which cauſed vs to thinke, that our princely affaires were ſet aſide, and little regarded, wherewith we were at that time much greeued: for the which cauſe, and for the euill behauiour of your merchants, reſident in our dominions (who haue diuers wayes tranſgreſſed and broken our lawes, liuing wilfully in all their doings) we did lay our heauie diſpleaſure vpon them, and did take away from them their priuiledge, commanding that the ſame throughout all our dominions, ſhould be void, and of none effect: and thereupon did write to the Queene our ſiſter, touching our griefes.

And now her Highnes hath ſent vnto vs againe, you her Ambaſſador, with her louing letters, and full minde, which we doe thankefully receaue, and are thereby fully ſatiſfied. And for that our princely, and ſecret affaires were not finiſhed to our contentation at our time appointed, according to our expectation, we doe now leaue of all thoſe matters, and ſet them aſide for the time, becauſe our minde is nowe otherwiſe changed, but hereafter when occaſion ſhall moue vs to the like, we will then talke of thoſe matters againe. And for that it hath pleaſed the Queene, our louing ſiſter, to ſende vnto vs at this preſent, and doeth deſire to continue in friendſhippe with vs for euer (which wee doe gratefully accept, and willingly agree to the ſame) we of our goodnes for her Highnes ſake, will not onely from henceforth put away, and forget all our diſpleaſure towardes the ſame Sir William Garret, and his companie (as though they had neuer offended vs) but alſo will reſtore them to their priuiledges, & liberties, in, and through our all our dominions, and will ſignifie the ſame by our letters, in all townes and cities, where the ſaid merchants doe traffike, and we will ſhewe them fauour as afore time, if they deſerue not the contrary. And if the Queene our ſiſter had not ſent thee Anthony vnto vs, at this preſent, God knoweth what we ſhould haue done to the ſaid merchants, or whether we would haue called backe our indignation.

Then I humbly beſeeched his Maieſtie, to let me know the particular offences committed by the ſaid merchants, and the offendors names, to the intent I might make report thereof, vnto the Queenes Maieſtie, my miſtres, accordingly, that the ſaide offendors might receaue iuſt puniſhments for their deſerts: but he ſaid, I ſhould not know them, becauſe he had cleerely remitted all offences: and further, that it was not princely to forgiue, and after to accuſe the parties, whereby her Maieſties diſpleaſure might fal vpon them at home. Notwithſtanding I did after vnderſtand ſome part thereof, by other meanes.

Then his Maieſtie proceeding in talke, ſaide: As touching the articles of requeſt, concerning the merchants affaires, which you did yeſterday deliuer vnto our Secretarie, we haue not onely read the ſame our ſelfe, but alſo haue appointed our ſaid Secretarie to declare vnto you our mind, and anſwere to the ſame. And for that we are now vpon our iourney towards our borders, and will depart from hence ſhortly, we will diſmiſſe you to the Queene our louing ſiſter, your miſtres, with our letters, and full mind by word of mouth, touching all your requeſts, & will ſend a Gentleman one of our houſhold with you, to ſafeconduct you to your ſhips: and of our goodnes wil giue you victuals, boates, men, and poſt horſes, ſo many as you ſhall neede. And therewith his Maieſtie ſtanding vp, and putting off his cappe, ſaid vnto me theſe words. Doe our hartie commendations vnto our louing ſiſter, Queene Elizabeth, vnto whome wee wiſh long life, with happie ſucceſſe: and therewith his Highnes extended his hand to me to kiſſe, and commanded his ſonne, ſiting by him, to ſend the like commendations, which he did, whoſe hand likewiſe I kiſſed. And then his Maieſtie cauſed me to ſit downe, and commanded wine, and drinkes of diuers ſortes to be brought, whereof he gaue me to drinke, with his owne hand, and ſo after I departed.

Then the next day, being the 14. of May aforeſaid, I was ſent for to come to the cheefe Secretarie, and one other of the Counſell with him, who at our meeting ſaid vnto me theſe words: We are appointed by the Emperour his Maieſtie, to giue you anſwere from his Highnes, touching your requeſts deliuered in writing, which his Maieſtie himſelfe hath peruſed, and anſwered as followeth.

1 To the firſt requeſt it is anſwered, that all his Maieſties greefes and diſpleaſure (now put away from the merchants) did grow, becauſe the Queenes Maieſtie did not accompliſh and ende with his Ambaſſador, his ſecrete and waighтie affaires, according to his expectation, and the promiſe made by Thomas Randolph, at his being here: and alſo of the ill behauiour of your merchants

chants resident here in our Countrey, as his Maiestie did himselfe yesterday declare vnto you.

2 To the second, his Maiestie willeth you to vnderstand, that he hath not, nor will not hereafter be moued to breake friendship with the Queenes Maiestie, without good, and iust cause.

3 To the third, you are answered by the Emperours Maiestie himselfe, that his great goodnes and fauour againe vnto the merchants, shall be restored, and the same to be knowen by his gratious letters of priuiledge, now againe granted.

4 To the fourth, his Maiestie hath commanded, that your merchants here resident shall exhibite, and put in writing vnto me his Maiesties Secretarie, all their griefes, and complaints, as well for debts, as other iniuries offred them since the time of his Highnes displeasure, and they shall haue iustice truly ministred throughout all his Maiesties dominions without delay.

5 To the fifth, his Maiestie doth not know of any debts due vnto the merchants, by any of his Noblemen, as is alleaged: and whether it be true or no, he knoweth not, the trueth whereof must be tried out, and thereupon answere to be giuen: and hereafter his Maiestie would not haue the merchants to trust his people with too much.

6 To the sixth, it is answered, that his Maiestie hath commanded search to be made, what money is owing to the merchants, for wares receaued into his treasurie, as in the articles (the most of the bookes of accompt being burnt in the Musko:) and such as is due, and founde meete to be paide, shall be paide foorthwith to the merchants, their factors, or seruants, which shall come for the same. And for paiment of the rest, his Maiesties further pleasure shall be signified hereafter.

7 To the seuenth, his Maiesties answere is, that letters shall be written foorthwith to his Captaines of Astracan, and Cazan, and other his officers, vpon the riuer Volga, to whome it appertaineth, not onely to suffer your people, both merchants, and mariners, to passe with their ships, or barkes, from Astracan, ouer the Mare Caspium, to fetche Thomas Bannister, and George Ducket, with their companie, and goods, out of Persia, but also when they shall arriue within his Maiesties dominions, to ayde, and assist them, and see them safely conducted vp the riuer Volga, from danger of enemies.

7 To the eight, his Maiestie hath commanded letters to be written to the Customers, both at Astracan, and Cazan, to make restitution to the English merchants of their goods so detained by them for custome, and to take custome for the same, according to his Maiesties letters of priuiledge.

9 10 To the ninth and tenth articles, his Maiestie will consider of those matters, and hereafter will signifie his princely pleasure therein.

11 To the eleuenth, as touching an inuentorie giuen into the treasurie, what goods the merchants had burnt in the Musko, in their houses there, his Maiesties pleasure was, to vnderstand the same, to the intent he might knowe the losses of all strangers at that present, but not to make restitution, for that it was Gods doing, and not the Emperours.

12 To the twelfth, concerning Thomas Glouer, his Maiestie was enformed by his Ambassador, of the Queenes great mercie and clemencie towards the said Thomas, for his sake, which his Highnes receaued in good part, but what agreement or dealings was betwixt the said sir William Garret, and his companie, and the said Glouer, or what he doth owe vnto the saide merchants, his Maiestie doth not know. And as for the money which the saide Thomas sayth is owing vnto him by the Emperour, his Maiesties pleasure is, that so much as shall be found due, and growing vpon wares deliuered vnto the treasurie, out of the time of his Maiesties displeasure, shall be paid foorthwith to the saide Thomas, and the rest is forfeited vnto his Maiestie, and taken for a fine, as appertaining to Rutter, and Bennet, accompted traytors vnto his Highnes, during the time of his displeasure.

13 To the thirteenth article, concerning Rutter to be deliuered vnto you, to be caried home, the answere was, that as his Maiestie will not detaine any English man in his Countrey, that is willing to goe home, according to the Queenes request: euen so will he not force any to depart, that is willing to tary with him. Yet his Highnes, to satisfie the Queenes Maiesties request, is contented at this present, to sende the saide Ralfe Rutter home with you, and hath commanded that a letter shall be written vnto his cheefe officer at the Musko, to send the said Rutter away with them, that he may be with you at Vologhda, by the fine of Maye, without faile: and touching the rest of your request in the said article, his Maiesties pleasure shall be signified in the letters of priuiledge, granted to the said merchants.

14 To the foureteenth, touching artificers, his Maiestie will accomplish all the Queenes Highnes request in that behalfe, and now at this present doth licence such and so many to depart to their natiue Countrey, as are willing to goe.

15 To

15 To the 15. touching Beſſon Meſſeriuey, the Emperors maieſtie is much offended with him, and wil ſend downe a gentleman with you to inquire of his ill behauior, as wel for ſpeaking of vndecent words againſt the Queens maieſtie as you haue alleaged, as alſo againſt you, and the merchants for his outrages mentioned in the article, and the ſaid Beſſone being found guiltie, to bee impriſoned and puniſhed by ſeuere iuſtice accordingly, and after to put in ſuerties to anſwer ẏ Emperours high diſpleaſure, or els to be brought vp like a priſoner by the ſaid gentleman, to anſwere his offences before his maieſtie. And his highnes doth requeſt that the Queenes highneſſe would doe the like vpon Middleton and Manlie her meſſengers ſent hither two yeeres paſt, and of all others for their ill behauiour towards his maieſtie, as may appeare by the letters ſent by Daniel Siluеſter by his highneſſe, leaſt by the bad demeanor of ſuch lewd perſons, the amitie and friendſhip betwixt their maieſties might be diminiſhed.

16 To the 16 and laſt article touching the corne brought into the Emperours dominions by the merchants, his maieſtie doth greatly commend them for ſo well doing, and hath commanded to giue you a letter forthwith in their behalfe, directed to his officers of Dwina, to ſuffer the ſaid merchants to ſell their corne, by meaſure great or ſmall at their pleaſure without cuſtome.

Thus I receiued a full anſwere from his maieſtie by his chiefe Secretarie and one other of his counſell, to the 16. articles afore rehearſed, by me exhibited in writing touching your affaires, with his letter alſo ſent by me to the Queenes maieſtie. Which being done, I requeſted that the new letters of priuiledge granted by his highnes vnto you, might be forthwith diſpatched to the intent I might carie the ſame with me. Alſo I requeſted that ſuch money due to you, which it had pleaſed his maieſtie to command to be paid, might be deliuered to me in your behalfe.

Touching the letters of priuiledge, the Secretarie anſwered me, it is not poſſible you can haue them with you, for they muſt be firſt written and ſhewed vnto the Emperour, and then three to bee written of one tenour according to your requeſt, which cannot be done with ſuch ſpeed, for that his maieſties pleaſure is, you ſhall depart this night before him, who remoueth himſelfe to morrow towards Nouogrode: but without faile the ſaid letters ſhall be diſpatched vpon the way, and ſent after you with ſpeed to Colmogro. And as touching the mony which you require, it cannot be paid here becauſe we haue not the bookes of accounts: for want whereof wee know not what to paie, wherefore the beſt is that you ſend one of the merchaunts after the Emperour to Nouogrode, and let him repaire vnto me there, and without faile I will pay all ſuch money as ſhall be appointed by his maieſtie to be paied, after the bookes ſeene.

But foraſmuch as there was none of your ſeruaunts with mee at that preſent (although I had earneſtly written vnto your Agent Nicholas Proctor by Richard Pingle one of your owne ſeruaunts, one moneth before my comming to Starites, where I had my diſpatch, that he ſhould not faile to come himſelfe, or ſend one of your ſeruaunts to me hither, to follow all ſuch ſutes as I ſhould commence in your behalfe, which he neglected to doe to your great hinderance) I requeſted the ſaid Secretarie that I might leaue Daniell my interpreter with him, as well for the receit of money, as for the ſpeedie diſpatch of the letters of priuiledge, but it would not bee granted in any wiſe that I ſhould leaue any of mine owne companie behind me, and thereupon I did take my leaue with full diſpatch, and departed to my lodging, and forthwith there came vnto me a gentleman who had charge as well to conduct me, and prouide boates, men, poſt horſes and victuals for me all the way to the Sea ſide, being a thouſand and three hundred miles, as alſo to doe iuſtice of the ſayd Beſſone, as afore ſayd. And he ſayd vnto me, the Emperours pleaſure is, that you ſhall preſently depart from hence, and I am appointed to goe with you. And that night I departed from the ſayd Starites, being the fourteenth of May afore ſayd. And paſſing a great part of my iourney, I arriued at the citie of Vologda the laſt of the ſayd May, where I remayned fiue dayes as well expecting a meſſenger to bring vnto mee the new letters of priuiledge, as the comming of Rutter, whom the Emperours maieſtie himſelfe commaunded before my face, ſhould be ſent vnto me without faile, and I did ſee the letters written to the chiefe officers at the Poſko for the ſame. Neuertheleſſe the ſayd Rutter did not come, neither could I heare of him after, nor know the ſudden cauſe of his ſtay contrary to the princes owne worde and meaning, as I ſuppoſe. But I could not helpe the matter being farre from the prince, neither could I tell how to haue redreſſe, becauſe by abſence I could not complaine. Notwithſtanding, I vſed all my indeuour, and ſent a meſſenger John Norton one of your ſeruaunts from Vologda to Nouogrode, where the court then lay expreſſely with letters, as well to aduertiſe his maieſtie that the ſayd Rutter was not ſent vnto me according to his highneſſe commaundement and order, as alſo about the diſpatch of the ſaid letters of priuiledge and receit of your money, with ſtraight charge that he ſhould in any wiſe returne vnto me againe before the departing of the ſhips.

And the first day of June I departed from the said Vologda by water towards Colmogro, where I arriued the 21. of June aforesaid, and remained there vntill the 23. of Julie, looking for the said John Horton to haue returned vnto me in all that time, which had respite fully inough in that space both to goe to the court to dispatch his businesse, and to haue returned againe vnto me, but he came not, for it was otherwise determined before his going, as I did after vnderstand, & can more at large by word of mouth declare vnto your worships, the occasion thereof.

Neuertheless, I am well assured before this time your Agent hath receiued into his hands the said letters of priuiledges, and shall haue dispatch with expedition in all things touching your affaires, according to his maiesties graunt by me obtained, and as her hath written to the Queenes maiestie at this present, wishing that as now by my going the Emperour hath withdrawen his grieuous displeasure from you, and restored you againe into his fauour, so your Agent and others your seruants there resident may behaue, and endeuour themselues to keepe & augment the same, whose euill doings haue bene the onely occasion of his indignation now remitted.

The names of such countries as I Anthonie Ienkinson haue trauelled vnto from the second of October, 1546. at which time I made my first voiage out of England, vntill the yeere of our Lord, 1572. when I returned last out of Russia.

FIrst, I passed into Flanders, and trauelled through all the base countries, and from thence through Germanie, passing ouer the Alpes I trauelled into Italy, and from thence made my iourney through Piemont into France, throughout all which realme I haue throughly iourneied.

I haue also trauelled through the kingdoms of Spaine and Portingall, I haue sailed through the Leuant seas euery way, and haue bene in all the cheefe Islands within the same sea, as Rhodes, Malta, Sicilia, Cypres, Candie, and diuers others.

I haue bene in many partes of Grecia, Morea, Achaia, and where the olde citie of Corinth stood.

I haue trauelled through a great part of Turkie, Syria, and diuers other countreys in Asia minor.

I haue passed ouer the mountaines of Libanus to Damasco, and trauelled through Samaria, Galile, Philistine and Palestine, vnto Jerusalem, and so through all the holy land.

I haue bene in diuers places of Affrica, as Algiers, Cola, Bona, Tripolis, the Goulet within the gulfe of Tunis.

I haue sailed farre Northward within the Mare glaciale, where wee haue had continuall day, and light of the Sunne ten weekes together, and that nauigation was in Norway, Lapland, Bomagotia, and other very strange places.

I haue trauelled through all the ample dominions of the Emperour of Russia and Moscouia, which extende from the North sea, and the confines of Norway, and Lapland, euen to the Mare Caspium.

I haue bene in diuers countries neere about the Caspian sea, Gentiles, and Mahometans, as Cazan, Cremia, Rezan, Cheremisi, Mordouiti, Vachin, Nagaia, with diuers others of strange customes and religions.

I haue sailed ouer the Caspian sea, and discouered all the regions there about adiacent, as Chicassi, Comul, Shascall, Shiruan, with many others.

I haue trauelled 40. daies iourney beyond the said sea, towards the Orient all India, and Cathaia, through diuers deserts and wildernesses, and passed through 5. kingdomes of the Tartars, and all the land of Turkeman and Zagatay, and so to the great citie of Boghar in Bactria, not without great perils and dangers sundry times.

After all this, in An. 1562, I passed again ouer the Caspian sea another way, and landed in Armenia, at a citie called Derbent, built by Alexander the great, and from thence trauelled through Media, Parthia, Hircania, into Persia to the court of the great Sophie called Shaw Tamasso, vnto whom I deliuered letters from the Queenes maiestie, and remayned in his court 8. moneths, and returning homeward, passed through diuers other countreys. Finally I made two voyages more after that out of England into Russia, the one in the yeere 1566. and the other in the yeere 1571. And thus being wearie and growing old, I am content to take my rest in mine owne house, cheerfully comforting my selfe, in that my seruice hath bene honourably accepted and rewarded of her maiestie and the rest by whom I haue bene employed.

The

The requeſt of an honeſt merchant to a friend of his, to be aduiſed and directed in the courſe of killing the Whale, as followeth. Anno 1575.

I pray you pleaſure me in getting me perfect information of the matter hereunder ſpecified.

For the prouiſion and furniture for a ſhip of 200. tunnes, to catch the whale fiſh in Ruſſia, paſſing from England.

How many men to furniſh the ſhip.

How many fiſher men ſkilfull to catch the Whale, & how many other officers, and Coopers.

How many boats, and what faſhion, and how many men in each boate.

What wages of ſuch ſkilfull men and other officers, as we ſhall need, out of Biſkay.

How many harping irons, ſpeares, roddes, axes, hatchets, kniues, and other implements for the fiſhing, and what ſort and greatneſſe of them.

How many kettles, the greatneſſe and maner of them, and of what mettall, and whether they bee ſet on triuets or on furnaces for boiling of the traine oile, and others.

What quantitie of caſke, and what ſort of caſke, and what number of hoopes and twigges, and how much thereof to be ſtaued for the traine.

What quantitie of victuals, & what kind of victuals for the men in all ꝑ ſhip for 4. moneths time.

For the common mariners and officers to gouerne the ſhip, we ſhall not needs any out of Biſkaie, but onely men ſkilfull in the catching of the Whale, and ordering of the oile, and one Cooper ſkilfull to ſet vp the ſtaued caſke.

Alſo what other matters are requiſite to bee knowen, and done for the ſaid voyage to catch the Whale, not here noted nor remembred.

Theſe requeſts were thus anſwered, which may ſerue as directions for all ſuch as ſhall intend the ſame voyage, or the like for the Whale.

A proportion for the ſetting foorth of a ſhip of 200. *tunne,* for the killing of the Whale.

There muſt be 55. men who departing for Wardhouſe in the moneth of Aprill, muſt be furniſhed with 4. kintals and a half of bread for euery man,

250. hogſheds to put the bread in.

150. hogſheds of Cidar.

6. kintals of oile.

8. kintals of bacon.

6. hogſheds of beefe.

10. quarters of ſalt.

150. pound of candles.

8. quarters of beanes and peaſe.

Salt fiſh and herring, a quantitie conuenient.

4. tunnes of wines.

Halfe a quarter of muſtard ſeed, and a querne.

A grindſtone.

800. emptie ſhaken hogſheds.

350. bundles of hoopes, and 6. quintalines.

800. paire of heds for the hogſheds.

10. Eſtrechas called rotes for harping irons.

10. pieces of Arpozieras.

3. pieces of Baibens for the Iauelings ſmall.

2. tackles to turne the Whales.

A halſer of 27. fadome long to turne the Whales.

15. great Iauelings.

18. ſmall Iauelings.

50. harping irons.

6. machicos to cut the Whale withall.

2. dozen of machetos to mince the Whale.

2. great hookes to turne the Whale.

3. paire of Can hookes.
6. hookes for staues.
3. dozen of staues for the harping irons.
6. pullies to turne the Whale with.
10. great baskets.
10. lampes of iron to carrie light.
5. kettels of 150. li. the piece, and 6. ladles.
1000. of nailes for the pinnases.
500. of nailes of Carabelie for the houses, and the wharfe.
18. axes and hatchets to cleaue wood.
12. pieces of lines, and 6. dozen of hookes.
2. beetles of Rosemarie.
4. dozen of oares for the pinnases.
6. lanternes.
500. of Tesia.
Item, gunpowder and matches for harquebushes as shall be needfull.
Item, there must be caried from hence 5. pinnases, fiue men to strike with harping irons, two cutters of Whale, 5. coopers, and a purser or two.

A note of certaine other necessarie things belonging to the Whalefishing, receiued of master W. Burrough.

A sufficient number of pullies for tackle for the Whale.
A dozen of great baskets.
4. furnaces to melt the Whale in.
6. ladles of copper.
A thousand of nailes to mend the pinnases.
500. great nailes of spikes to make their house.
3. paire of bootes great and strong, for them that shall cut the Whale.
8. calue skins to make aprons or barbecans.

The deposition of M. William Burrough to certaine Interrogatories ministred vnto him concerning the Narue, Kegor, &c. to what king or prince they doe appertaine and are subiect, made the 23. of Iune, 1576.

These articles seeme to haue bene ministred vpon the quarell betwene Alderman Bond the elder, and the Moscouie companie, for his trade to the Narue without their consent.

The first Interrogatorie.

FIrst, whether the villages or townes vulgarely called the Narue, Kegor, Pechingam and Cola, and the portes of the same towne, as well at the time of the grant of the letters of priuiledge by the Emperour to our merchants, as also in the yeres of our Lord, 1566, 1567, 1568, 1569, 1570, 1571, 1572, 1573, 1574, and 1575. respectiuely were (as presently they be) of the iurisdiction, and subiect to the mightie prince the Emperour of Russia: and whether the sayd Emperour of Russia by all the time aforesayd, was chiefe lord and gouernour respectiuely of the sayd places, and so vulgarly known, had, and reputed: and whether the said townes and places, and either of them be situated towards the North and Northeast or Northwest, and betweene the North and the East point: and be the same places whereunto by force of the foresayd priuiledge, it is forbidden to any other subiect to haue traffique, sauing to the societie aforesaid.

The deponents answer

To this Interrogatorie the deponent saith, that it is true that the villages, townes and places vulgarly called the Narue, Kegor, Pechingam and Cola, and the portes thereof, at the time of the grant of the said priuiledge (as he iudgeth) were reputed respectiuely to bee vnder the iurisdiction, and subiect to the Emperour of Russia, and so from the time of the sayde graunt, vnto the yere, 1566, and that in the yeres of our Lord, 1566, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, and 1575. respectiuely they were (as presently they be) of the iurisdiction, and subiect vnto the mightie prince the Emperour of Russia, and the same Emperour of Russia by all the time aforesaid, was chiefe gouernour respectiuely of the said places, and so vulgarly known, had and reputed. And that all the said places are situated from London Northwards, betweene the East and the North, and within

within the grant of the letters patents, and priuiledges of the said companie of merchants for the discouerie of new trades, and the same places whereunto by force of the said letters patents, it is forbidden to any other subiect to haue traffique sauing to the societie aforesayd.

Notwithstanding the Deponent saith, that hee hath heard it credible reported by diuers, that the king of Denmarke of late yeeres, or euery yeere once, hath had one of his subiects or more by himselfe, or with his guide a Lappian, that hath at the places, Cola, Kegor, and diuers other places in Lappia, taken of the Lappies certaine tribute or head pence, which the said Lappies haue willingly giuen to win fauour of the said prince, and to liue quietly by his subiects, the people of Finmarke which border vpon their countrey, whereof Wardhouse is the strongest hold, & bordereth neere vnto them. He hath also heard that in the time of peace betweene the said Emperor of Russia, and the kings of Sweden, there was yeerely for the king of Sweden one or more that came into Lappia vnto diuers places, in maner as the king of Denmarkes seruaunt vseth to doe, and did demaund of them some tribute or dutie which they willingly paid: but since the late wars betweene the said Emperour and king of Sweden, he hath not heard of any thing that hath bin paid by them to the king of Sweden: such is the simplicitie of this people the Lappies, that they would rather giue tribute to all those that border vpon their countrey, then by denying it haue their ill wils.

But the truth is, as this Deponent saith, that the said mightie prince the Emperour of Russia is the chiefe lord and gouernour of the said countrey of Lappia, his lawes and orders are obserued by them, he takes toll and custome &c. of them. They are infidels, but if any of them become christians, it is after the Russe law. If there happen any controuersie betweene those people, such as cannot be ended amongst themselues, or by the Emperours deputies in that countrey, they repaire to the Polco as their highest court, & there haue it ended. Betweene the place specified Kegor, & the confines of Finmarke aforesaid in Lappia, is the monasterie Pechingam, which are monkes, and vse the Russe law, the chiefe or head of that abbey is alwaies appointed by the clergie in Polko. Pechingam abbey.

Also in the yeere of our Lord, 1557. the said Deponent was at the place Kegor, in the moneth of June, the 29. day being S. Peters day, at which time was a great assembly of people, at a Mart there, the Russes, Kerils and Lappians, on the one side subiects to the said mightie prince ỳ Emperour of Russia, and the Norwegians or Norles and people of Finmarke, subiects to the king of Denmarke on the other part, they did barter and exchange fish for other commodities. The deputie for the Russe had the chiefe gouernment of the said Mart, and tooke toll of those people that were subiect to his master, and the captaine of Wardhouse, had then the gouernment of the people subiect to his master the king of Denmarke. He saith also, that betweene the abbey Pechingam, and the abbey of S. Nicholas in Russia, vpon the border of the said coast of Lappia, he hath bene vpon the shore at diuers places, where fresh riuers fall into the Sea, where are commonly taken fresh Salmons, all which places he doth know for certaine, that they were farmed out to the subiects of the said Emperour, and he the said Emperour receiued yeerely the rent for them. And further he saith, that it hath bene further credibly reported vnto him, that there is not any such riuer or creeke of fresh water which falleth out of the said countrey of Lappia into the sea, betweene the said abbey Pechingam, and the baie of S. Nicholas, but they are all and euery of them farmed out, and the Emperour receiueth the rent for them.

Item, whether as well before, as also within the memory of men, till the time of the grant of the said letters patents any of the English merchants (sauing the merchants of the said societie) subiects of this realme of England, haue commonly exercised or frequented busines or trade in the said villages or townes called the Narue, Kegor, Pechingam, & Cola, or in any of them, or in any ports or territories of the said Emperour of Russia. The second Interrogatorie.

To this Interrogatorie the Deponent answereth, that the subiects of this Realme before the graunt of the said letters patents did not commonly exercise, neither frequent or trade to any of the said places called the Narue, Kegor, Pechingam or Cola, or to any of them. The deponents answer.

Certaine reasons to disswade the vse of a trade to the Narue aforesayd, by way through Sweden.

THe merchandise of the Narue are grosse wares, viz. flaxe, hempe, waxe, tallow & hides.

The traffique at that place standeth vpon the agreement and liking of the Emperour of Russia, with the king of Sweden: for all these merchandizes that are brought thither come from Plescoue, Nouogrode, and other parts of the Emperours dominions.

For transporting those merchandizes from Narue to Stockholm, or what other place shall bee thought conuenient in Swede, it must be in vessels of those countries, which will be of small force to resist

Freebooters, or any other that shall make quarell or offer violence against them.

When the goods are brought into Sweden, they must be discharged, and new laden into smaller vessels, to carry the same by riuer or lake a part of the way, and againe to bee vnladen and transported by land to Newles.

So as the ordinarie charges for transporting of goods from Narue to Newles by way as aforesaid, besides the spoile by so often lading and vnlading, cariage by land, and the dangers of the seas, pirats, &c. will be such as when it shal be so brought to Newles, it will be as deare to the merchants in that place as it shall be worth to be sold in London, wherefore the trade that waies can not be profitable to our nation.

Note. Moreouer, when the goods shall be in Newles, it may bee thought doubtful to bring it thence quietly without disliking or forcible resistance of the king of Denmarke, forasmuch as he maketh quarell, and alleageth damage vnto him in his tolles of the Sound by our trade to S. Nicholas, how much more will he now doe by this way, and with how much greater aduantage may he performe it? The danger that may grow in our trade to Russia by way of S. Nicholas, though the displeasure that the Emperour may conceiue by our trade with the Sweden to Narue, is also to be considered.

A remembrance of aduise giuen to the merchants, touching a voyage for Cola abouesayd. 1578.

WHere as you require my counsell after what order the voyage for Cola is to be set forth, I answere that I know no better way then hath bene heretofore vsed, which is after this maner. First of all we haue hired the ship by the great, giuing so much for the wearing of the tackle and the hull of the ship, as the ship may be in bignesse: as if she be about the burden of 100. tunnes, we pay 80. pound, and so after that rate: and thereunto we doe victuall the ship our selues, and do ship all our men our selues, shipping no more mē, nor giuing them more wages then we should doe if they went of a merchants voyage, for it hath bene a great helpe to our voiage hitherto, to haue our men to fish with one boate, & colling vs no more charges then it should do, if our men should lie & doe nothing sauing the charges of salt, & of lines, which is treble paid for againe. For this last yeere past our men killed with one boat betwixt 9. and 10. thousand fish, which yeelded to vs in mony with the oile that came of it, about 15. or 16. score pounds, which is a great helpe to a voyage. And besides all this our ship did take in so much oile and other commodities as we bestowed 100. whole clothes in. But because, as I do suppose, it is not the vse of London to take ships to fraight after that order before prescribed, neither I thinke that the mariners will take such paines as our men will: Therefore my counsell is, if you thinke good, to freight some ship of Hull or Newcastle, for I am sure that you may haue them better cheape to freight, then here at London. Besides all this, one may haue such men as will take paines for their merchaunts. And furthermore when it shall please God that the ship shal returne to come to discharge at Hull, which will be the most for your profite for the sales of all such like commoditie as comes from that place, as for fish, oile, & Salmon chiefly, he þ will seeke a better market for the sales then at Hull, he must seeke it out of England, for the like is not in England. This is the best way that I can deuise, and most for your profite, and if you will, I will also set you downe all the commodities that are necessary for such a voiage, and which way also that the Hollanders may within two or three yeeres be forced to leaue of the trade of Cola which may easilie be done. For if my abilitie were to my will, I would vse the matter so that they should either leaue of the trade, or els cary light ships with them home againe.

Hull the best market of England for sale of fish.

Aduertisements and reports of the 6. voyage into the partes of Persia and Media, for the company of English merchants for the discouerie of new trades, in the yeeres 1579. 1580. and 1581. gathered out of sundry letters written by Christopher Burrough seruant to the said company, & sent to his vnkle M. William Burrough.

FIrst it is to be vnderstood, that the ships for the voiage to S. Nicholas in Russia, in which the factors & merchandise for the Persian voiage were transported, departed from Graues end the 19. of June, 1579. which arriued at S. Nicholas in Russia the 22. of July, where the factors and merchants landed, and the merchandize were discharged and laden into dolshnikes, that is, barkes of the countrey, to be caried from thence vp by riuer into Vologda. And the fiue and twentie day of the sayde Julie, the Dolshnikes departed from Rose Island by Saint Nicholas vp the Riuer Dwina, Peremene, that is to say, poste by continuall sayling, rowing, setting with poles, or drawing of men, which came to Colmogro, the

the 27 day, and departed thence the 29 day of Julie vp the sayd riuer Dwina, and came to Vstyoug (which is at the head of the riuer Dwina, and mouth of Sughano) the 9 of August, where they stayed but a small time, prouiding some victualles, and shifting certaine of their carkes or barkemen, and so departed thence the same day vp the riuer Sughano, and came to Totma, (which is counted some what more then halfe the way from Vstioug) the 15 day, where they shifted some of their carkes, and departed thence the same day, and came to the citie Vologda the 19 of August, where they landed their goods, and stayed at that place till the 30 of the same. Hauing prouided at Vologda, Telegas, our wagons, whereupon they laded their goods, they departed thence with the same by land towards Yeraslaue the sayd 30 of August, at eight of the clocke in the morning, and came to the East side of the riuer Volga ouer against Yeraslaue, with 25 Telegas laden with the said goods the seuenth of September at fiue of the clocke afternoone. Then the three stroogs or barks prouided to transport the said goods to Astracan (where they should meet the shippe that should carrie the same from thence into Persia) came ouer from Yeraslaue vnto the same side of the riuer Volga, and there tooke in the said goods. And hauing prepared the said barks ready with all necessarie furniture they departed with them from Yeraslaue downe the riuer Volga, on the 14 day of September at nine of the clocke in the morning, and they arriued at Niznouogrod, the 17 day at three of the clocke afternoone, where they shewed the Emperours letters to passe free without paying any custome, and tarryed there about three houres to prouide necessaries, and then departing, arriued at Cazan (or neere the same towne) on the 22 of September at fiue of the clocke afternoone, where (through contrary windes, and for prouiding new carkes in the places of some that there went from them) they remayned till the 26 day, at what time they departed thence about two of the clocke after noone, and arriued at Tetushagorod, which is on the Crim side of Volga, and in latitude 55 degrees 22 minuts the 28 day at ten in ỹ forenoone, where they auckered, and remained about three houres, and departing thence came to Oueak, which is on the Crims side (on the Westerne side of Volga) the fift of October about fiue of the clocke in the morning. This place is accounted halfe the way betweene Cazan, and Astracan: and heere there groweth great store of Licoras: the soile is very fruitfull: they found there apple trees, and cherrie trees. The latitude of Oueake is 51 degrees 30 minuts. At this place had beene a very fayre stone castle called by the name Oueake, & adioyning to the same was a towne called by Russes, Sodom: this towne & part of the castle (by report of the Russes) was swallowed into the earth by the iustice of God, for the wickednesse of the people that inhabited the same. There remaineth at this day to be seene a part of the ruines of the castle, and certain tombs, wherein as it seemeth haue beene laid noble personages: for vpon a tombe stone might be perceiued the forme of a horse and a man sitting on it with a bowe in his hand, and arrowes girt to his side: there was a piece of a scutchion also vpon one of the stones, which had characters grauen on it, whereof some part had beene consumed with the weather, and the rest left vnperfect: but by the forme of them that remained, we iudged them to be characters of Armenia: and other characters were grauen also vpon another tombe stone. Now they departed from Oueake the said fift of October, at fiue of the clocke after noone, and came to Perauoloke, the 10 day about eleuen or twelue of the clocke at night, making no abode at that place, but passed alongst by it. This word Perauoloke in the Russe tongue, doth signifie a narrow straight or necke of land, betweene two waters, and it is so called by them, because from the riuer Volga, at that place to the riuer Don, or Tanais, is counted thirtie versts, or as much as a man may well trauell on foot in one day. And seuen versts beneath, vpon an Iland called Tsaritsina, the Emperour of Russia hath fiftie gunners all the summer time to keepe watch, called by the Tartar name Carawool. Betweene this place and Astracan are fiue other Carawools or watches.

Yeraslaue.

Great store of Licoras.

1 The first is named Kamenie Carawool, and is distant from Perauoloke 120 versts.
2 The second named Stupino Carawool, distant from the first 50 versts.
3 The third called Polooy Carawool, is 120 versts distant from the second.
4 The fourth named Keezeyur Carawool, is 50 versts distant from the third.
5 The fift named Ichkeebre, is 30 versts distant from the fourth, and from Ichkebre to Astracan is 30 versts.

The 16 of October they arriued at Astracan with their three stroogs in safetie about nine of the clocke in the morning, where they found the shippe prouided for the Persia voyage in good order and readinesse. The 17 day the foure principall factors of the company, Arthur Edwards, William Turnbull, Matthew Talboys, and Peter Garrard, were inuited to dine with the chiefe duke or secretarie of Astracan (Vasilie Pheodooruich Shelepin) who declared then vnto them the troubles that were in Media and Persia: and how the Turke with helpe of the Crims had conquered,

Astracan.

Peter Garrard.

and

and did possesse the greatest part of Media: also he laid before them that winter was at hand, and if they should put out with their shippe to the sea, they should be constrayned to take what hazards might happen them by wintring in the parts of Media, or els where, for backe againe to that place there was no hope for them to atchieue: whereupon the said factors determined to stay there all winter to learne further of the state of those countries.

Ice at Astracan for foure moneths.

The 19 of November the winde being Northerly, there was a great frost, and much ice in the riuer: the next day being the 20 of November the ice stood in the riuer, and so continued vntill Easter day.

The 22 of December departed this life John Hoore the gunner of the shippe.

Anno 1580.

Thursday the seuenth of Januarie betweene eight & nine of the clocke at night there appeared a crosse proceeding from the moone, with two galles at the South and North end thereof.

The first of January being Twelfe day (which they call Chreshenia) the Russes of Astracan brake a hole in the ice vpon the riuer Volga, and hallowed the water with great solemnity according to the maner of their country, at which time all the souldiors of the towne shotte off their small pieces vpon the ice, and likewise to gratifie the captaine of the castle being a duke, whose name is Pheodore Michalouich Troiocouria, who stood hard by the shippe, beholding them as they were on the riuer, was shot off all the ordinance of our shippe being fifteene pieces, viz. two faulcons, two faulconets, foure fowlers, foure fowlers chambers, and three other small pieces made for the strooges to shoot hailestones, and afterwards the great ordinance of the castle was shot off.

On the 31 of January there happened a great eclipse of the moone, which began about twelue of the clocke at night, and continued before she was cleare an houre and a halfe by estimation, which ended the first of February about halfe an houre past one in the morning: she was wholly darkened by the space of halfe an houre.

The 26 of February the towne of Nagay Tartars, called the Yourt, which is within three quarters of a mile of the castle of Astracan, by casualtie was set on fire about ten of the clocke at night, & continued burning till midnight, whereby one halfe of it was burnt, and much cattell destroyed. The Nagayes that inhabit that towne, are the Emperour of Russia his vassals: It is supposed there are of them inhabiting that place, of men, women, and children, the number of seuen thousand. That night the Allarum was made in the castle and towne of Astracan. The captaine thereof had all his souldiors in very good order, and readinesse, being of them in number two thousand gunners, and cassaks, that is to say, a thousand gunners, which are accounted meere souldiours, and are not put to any other seruice then the vse of their pieces, watch, &c. as souldiors which alwayes keepe the castle, and the cassaks also bring their pieces, do keepe the towne, and are commonly set to all kinde of labors.

The seuenth of March 1580, the Nagayes and Crims came before Astracan to the number of one thousand foure hundred horsemen, which incamped round about, but the neerest of them were two Russe verstes and a halfe off from the castle and towne: some of them lay on the Crims side of Volga, and some on the Nagay side, but none of them came vpon the Island that Astracan standeth on. It was sayd that two of the prince of the Crims his sonnes were amongst them. They sent a messenger on the eight day to the captaine of Astracan, to signifie that they would come and visit him: who answered, he was ready to receiue them: and taking a great shotte or bullet in his hand, willed the messenger to tell them that they should not want of that geare, so long as it would last. The ninth day newes was brought that the Crims determined to assault the towne or castle, and were making of fagots of reede, to bring with them for that purpose. The tenth day two Russes that were captiues, and two of the Tartars bondmen ranne away from the Nagayes, and came into Astracan. The same day word was brought to the duke of two Nagayes, which were seene at Gostine house, supposed to be spies, but were gone againe from thence before they were suspected. This Gostine house is a place a little without the towne where the Tisiks (or Persian merchants) do vsually remaine with their merchandize. The 11 day the sayd Nagayes, and one more with them, came againe to that house earely in the morning, where they were taken by the Russes, and brought to the captayne of the castle, and being examined, confessed that their coming was onely to seeke two of their bondmen that were runne from them: whereupon their bondmen were deliuered to them: which fauor the sayd captaine commonly sheweth if they be no Russies, and they were set at liberty. The 15 day they brake vp their camps, and marched to the North wards into the countrey of Nagay.

Astracan stands vpon an Island.

The variation of the compas in Astracan was 13 deg. 40 minuts.

The 17 of Aprill the variation of the compasse obserued in Astracan was 13 deg. 40 min. from North to West. This spring there came newes to Astracan that ye queene of Persia (the king being blinde,

blinde) had beene with a great armie against the Turks that were left to possesse Media, and had giuen them a great ouerthrow: yet notwithstanding Derbent, and the greatest part of Media were still possessed and kept by the Turks. The factors of the company consulting vpon their affayres, determined to leaue at Astracan, the one halfe of their goods with Arthur Edwards, and with the other halfe the other three factors would proceed in the ship on their purposed voyage to the coast of Media, to see what might be done there, where if they could not finde safe traffike, they determined to proceed to the coast of Gilan, which is an Iland in the Caspian sea bordering vpon Persia: and thereupon appointed the said goods to be laden aboord the shippe, and tooke into her also some merchandize of Tisiks or Persian merchants.

The 29 of April Amos Riall, and Anthony Marsh, the companies seruants were sent from Astracan by the said factors, vp the riuer Volga to Yeraslaue, with letters of aduise to be sent for England, and had order for staying the goods in Russia that should come that yeere out of England for maintaining the trade purposed for Persia, vntill further triall were made what might be done in those parts.

The first day of May in the morning, hauing the shippe in readinesse to depart, the factors inuited the duke Pheodore Micalouich Proiocoorow, and the principall secretary Vasilie Pheodorouich Shelepin, with other of the chiefest about the duke to a banket aboord the ship, where they were entertained to their good liking, and at their departure was shot off all the ordinance of the ship, and about nine of the clocke at night the same day they weyed anker, and departed with their ship from Astracan, and being but little winde, towed her with the boat about three verstes, and then ankered, hauing with them a pauos or lighter to helpe them at the flats. The second day at foure of the clocke in the morning they weyed & plyed downe the riuer Volga toward the Caspian sea. The seuenth of May in the morning they passed by a tree that standeth on the left hand of the riuer as they went downe, which is called Mahomet Agatch, or Mahomets tree, and about three verstes further, that is to say, to the Southwards of the said tree is a place called Vchoog, that is to say, the Russe weare: (but Ochoog is the name of weare in the Tartar tongue) where are certaine cotages, and the Emperour hath lying at that place certaine gunners to gard his fishermen that keepe the weare. This Vchoog is counted from Astracan 60 verstes: they proceeded downe the said riuer without staying at the Vchoog. The ninth and tenth dayes they met with shoald water, and were forced to lighten their shippe by the pauos: the 11 day they sent backe to the Vchoog for an other pauos: This day by mischance the shippe was bilged on the grapnell of the pauos, whereby the company had sustained great losses, if the chiefest part of their goodes had not beene layd into the pauos: for notwithstanding their pumping with three pomps, heauing out water with buckets, and all the best shifts they could make, the shippe was halfe full of water ere the leake could be found and stopt. The 12 day the pauos came to them from the Vchoog, whereby they lighted the shippe of all the goods. The 13 day in the morning there came to them a small boat, sent by the captaine of Astracan, to learne whether the shippe were at sea cleere off the flats. The 15 day by great industrie and trauell they got their shippe cleare off the shoales and flats, where with they had beene troubled from the ninth day vntill then: they were forced to passe their shippe in three foot water or lesse. The 16 day they came to the Chetera Bowgeri, or Iland of Foure Hillocks, which are counted fortie verstes from Vchoog, and are the furthest land to wards the sea. The 17 day they bare off into the sea, and being about twelue verstes from the Foure hillocks, riding in fiue foot and a halfe water about eleuen of the clocke in the forenoone, they tooke their goods out of the pauoses into the shippe, and filled their shippe with all things necessary. The 18 day in the morning about seuen of the clocke, the pauoses being discharged, departed away toward Astracan, the winde then at Southeast, they road still with the shippe, and obseruing the eleuation of the pole at that place, found it to be 45 degrees 20 minuts. The 19 day, the winde Southeast, they road still. The 20 day the winde at Northwest they set saile about one of the clocke in the morning, and steered thence South by West, and Southsouthwest, about three leagues, and then ankered in fiue and a halfe water, about nine of the clocke before noone, at which time it fell calme: the eleuation of the pole at that place 45 degrees 13 minuts. The 21 hauing the winde at Northwest, they set saile, and steered thence South by West, and South vntill eleuen of the clocke, and had then nine foote water: and at noone they obserued the latitude, and found it to be 44 degrees 47 minuts: then had they three fathoms and a halfe water, being cleare off the flats. It is counted from the Foure hillocks to the sea about fiftie verstes. From the said noone tide vntill foure of the clocke they sayled South by East fiue leagues and a halfe: then had they fiue fathoms and a halfe and blackish water: from that till twelue at night they sayled South by East halfe a league East tenne leagues: then had they eleuen fathome, and the water saltet. From that till the 22 day three of the clocke

Note.

The Caspian sea.

45 degrees 20 minuts.

The first obseruation in the Caspian sea.

Blackish water farre within the sea.

in the morning they sayled three & fiftie leagues, then had they sixteene fathome water: from thence they sailed vntill noone South and by West seuen leagues and a halfe, the latitude then obserued 43 degrees 15 minuts, the depth then eight and twentie fathoms, and shallow ground: from thence vntill eight of the clocke at night, they sayled South by East fiue leagues and a halfe, then had they three and fortie fathoms shallow ground. From thence till the 23 foure a clocke in the morning, they sailed Southsouthwest three leagues and a halfe: then could they get no ground in two and fiftie fathoms deepe. From thence vntill noone they sailed South nine leagues, then the latitude obserued was 42 degrees 24 minuts. From thence till the 24 day at noone they sayled South by West seuenteene leagues and a halfe, then the latitude obserued was 41 degrees 32 minuts. From noone till seuen of the clocke at night, they sailed Southsouthwest foure leagues, then had they perfect sight of high land or hilles, which were almost couered with snowe, and the mids of them were West from the shippe, being then about twelue leagues from the nereest land: they sounded but could finde no ground in two hundred fathoms. From thence they sailed Southwest vntill midnight: about three leagues from thence till the 25 day foure of the clocke in the morning, they sailed West three leagues, being then little winde, and neere the land, they tooke in their sayles, and lay hulling: at noone the latitude obserued, was 40 degrees 54 minuts: they sounded but could get no ground in two hundred fathoms. At foure of the clocke in the afternoone, the winde Northwest, they set their sayles, and from thence till the 26 day at noone they sailed Eastsoutheast foure leagues. From thence they sailed till eight of the clocke at night Southwest three leagues, the winde then at North. From thence they sailed vntill the 27 day two of the clocke in the morning, Westsouthwest eight leagues, the winde blowing at North very much. From the said two till foure of the clocke they sayled South by West one league: then being day light, they saw the land playne, which was not past three leagues from them, being very high ragged land. There were certaine rocks that lay farre off into the sea, about fiue leagues from the same land, (which are called Barmake Tash) they sayled betweene those rocks and the land, and about fiue of the clocke they passed by the port Bilbill, where they should haue put in but could not: and bering longst the shoare about two of the clocke afternoone, they came to Bildigh in the countrey of Media or Sheruan, against which place they ankered in nine foot water. Presently after they were at anker, there came aboord of them a boat, wherein were seuen or eight persons, two Turks, & rest Persians, the Turks vassals, which bade them welcome, and seemed to be glad of their arriuall, who tolde the factors that the Turke had conquered all Media, or the countrey Sheruan, and how that the Turks Basha remayned in Derbent with a garrison of Turks, and that Shamackie was wholly spoyled, and had few or no inhabitants left in it. The factours then being desirous to come to the speech of the Basha, sent one of the Tatks (or merchants that went ouer with them from Astracan, passingers) and one of the companyes seruants Robert Golding, with those louldiours, to the captaine of Backow, which place standeth hard by the sea, to certifie him of their arriuall, and what commodities they had brought, and to desire friendshippe to haue quiet and fair traffike for the same. Backow is from Bildih, the place where they road, about a dayes iourney, one foote easily to be trauelled, which may be sixe leagues the next way ouer land: it is a walled towne, and strongly fortified. When the sayd messenger came to the captaine of Backowe, the said captaine gaue him very friendly intertainement, and after he vnderstood what they were that were come in the shippe, and what they had brought, he seemed to reioyce much thereat: who gaue the sayd Golding licence to depart backe the next day, being the eight and twentith day: and promised that he would himselfe come to the shippe the next day following: with which answere the sayd Golding returned and came to the shippe the sayd eight and twentith day about nine of the clocke at night. The nine and twentith day in the morning the factours caused a tent to be set vp at shoare neere the shippe, against the comming of the sayde captayne: who came thither about three of the clocke after noone, and brought about thirtie souldiours, that attended on him, in shirts of male, and some of them had gauntlets of siluer, others of steele, and very fayre. The factours met him at their tent, and after very friendly salutations passed betweene them, they gaue him for a present a garment of cloth of veluet, and another of scarlet, who accepted the same gratefully: after they had talked together by their interpretours, as well of the state of the voyage and cause of their comming thither, as also learned of the sayde captaine the state of that countrey, the factours made request vnto him, that he would helpe them to the speeche of the Basha, who answered that their demaund was reasonable, and that hee would willingly shew them therein what pleasure he could, and sayd because the way to Derbent, where the Basha remayned, was dangerous, he would send thither, and certifie him of their arriuall, and what commodities they had brought, and such commodities as they would desire to exchange or barter the same for,

42 degrees 15 minuts.

41 degrees 32 minuts.

Bilbill.

Backow port.

ſir he would procure the ſaid Baſha to prouide for them: and therefore willed the factors to conſult together, and certifie him what they moſt deſired, and what quantitie they would haue prouided: ſo whileſt the factors were conſulting togither thereupon, the captaine talked with a Tiſike merchant that came ouer in the ſhip with them from Aſtracan, which Tiſike among other matters in talke, certified the captaine, that the night before the factors and their company were determined to haue returned backe againe to Aſtracan, and that they were about to way their ankers, which in deed was true, but the maiſter of the barke, Thomas Hudſon of Limehouſe, perſuaded them that the winde was not good for them to depart, &c. When the factors came againe to talke with the captaine, they deſired to go to the Baſha, and that he would ſafely conduct them thither: he granted their requeſts willingly, deſiring them to goe with him to a village hard by, and there to abide with him that night, and the next day they ſhould go to Backow, and from thence proceed on their iourney to Derbent. They were vnwilling to go that night with him, becauſe their prouiſion for the way was not in readineſſe, but requeſted that they might ſtay till the morning. Thereupon the captaine ſayd it was reported vnto him, that they ment the night before to haue gone away: and if it ſhould ſo happen, he were in great danger of looſing his head: for which cauſe he requeſted to haue ſome one for a pledge: wherefore M. Garrard one of the factours offered himſelfe to go, who becauſe he could not ſpeake the Ruſſe tongue, tooke with him Chriſtopher Burrough, and a Ruſſe interpretour: that night they road from the ſea ſide, to a village about ten miles off, where at ſupper time the captaine had much talke with M. Garrard of our countrey, demanding where about it did lie, what countries were neere vnto it, and with whom we had traffike, for by the Ruſſe name of our countrey he could not coniecture who we ſhould be: but when by the ſituation he perceiued we were Engliſhmen, he demanded if our prince were a mayden Queene: which when he was certified of, then (quoth he) your land is called Engleterra, is it not? anſwere was made it was ſo: wherof he was very glad when he knew the certainty. He made very much of them, placing M. Garrard next to himſelfe, and Chriſtopher Burrough, with the Ruſſie interpretour for the Turkie tongue hard by. There was a Gillan merchant with him at that preſent, of whom he ſeemed to make great account: him he placed next to himſelfe on the other ſide, and his gentlemen ſate round about him talking together. Their ſitting is vpon the heeles, or croſſe legged.

Thom. Hudſon of Limehouſe maiſter of the Engliſh barke.

M. Chriſtoph. Burrough.

Supper being brought in, he requeſted them to eat. After their potage (which was made of rice) was done, and likewiſe their boyled meat, there came in platters of rice ſodden thicke, and hony mingled withall: after all which, came a ſheepe roſted whole, which was brought in a tray, and ſet before the captaine: he called one of his ſeruitours, who cut it in pieces, and laying therof vpon diuers platters, ſet the ſame before the captaine: then the captaine gaue to M. Garrard and his company one platter, and to his gentlemen another, and to them which could not well reach he caſt meat from the platters which were before him. Diuers queſtions he had with M. Garrard and Chriſtopher Burrough at ſupper time, about their diet, inquiring whether they eat fiſh or fleſh voluntarily, or by order. Their drinke in thoſe parts is nothing but water. After ſupper (walking in the garden) the captaine demanded of M. Garrard, whether the vſe was in England to lie in the houſe or in the garden, and which he had beſt liking of: he anſwered, where it pleaſed him, but their vſe was to lye in houſes: thereupon the captaine cauſed beds to be ſent into the houſe for them, and cauſed his kinſman to attend on them in the night, if they chanced to want any thing: he himſelfe with his gentlemen and ſouldiors lying in the garden.

In the morning very early he ſent horſe for the reſt of the company which ſhould go to Derbent, finding by them that went tenne ſheepe for the ſhippe. In that village there was a Stoue, into which the captaine went in the morning, requeſting M. Garrard to go alſo to the ſame to waſh himſelfe, which he did. Shortly after their comming out of the Stoue, whileſt they were at breakfaſt, M. Turnbull, M. Taylboyes, and Thomas Hudſon the M. of the ſhippe, came thither, and when they had all broken their faſts, they went to Backow: but Chriſtopher Burrough returned to the ſhip, for that he had hurt his leg, and could not well endure that trauell. And from Backow they proceeded towards Derbent, as it was by the captaine promiſed, being accompanyed on their way for their ſafe conduct, with a gentleman, and certaine ſouldiors, which had the captaine of Backow his letters to the Baſha of Derbent, very friendly written in their behalfe. In their iourney to Derbent they forſooke the ordinary wayes, being very dangerous, and trauelled through woods till they came almoſt to the towne of Derbent: and then the gentleman road before with the captaines letters to the Baſha, to certifie him of the Engliſh merchants comming, who receiuing the letters, and vnderſtanding the matter, was very glad of the newes, and ſent forth to meete them, certaine ſouldiors gunners, who met them about two miles out of the towne, ſalu-

ting

ting them with great reuerence, and afterwardes road before them: then againe met them other souldiours, somewhat neerer the castle, which likewise hauing done their salutations road before them, and then came forth noble men, captaines, and gentlemen, to receiue them into the castle and towne. As they entred the castle there was a shot of twenty pieces of great ordinance, and the Basha sent M. Turnbull a very fayre horse with furniture to mount on, esteemed to be worth an hundred markes, and so they were conueyed to his presence: who after he had talked with them, sent for a coate of cloth of golde, and caused it to be put on M. Turnbulles backe, and then willed them all to depart, and take their ease, for that they were weare of their iourney, and on the morrow he would talke further with them. The next day when the factors came againe to the presence of the Basha, according to his appointment, they requested him that he would grant them his priuilege, whereby they might traffike safely in any part and place of his countrey, offering him, that if it pleased his Maiesty to haue any of the commodities that they had brought, and to write his minde therof to the captaine of Backow, it should be deliuered him accordingly. The Bashaes answere was, that he would willingly giue them his priuilege: yet for that he regarded their safetie, hauing come so farre, and knowing the state of his country to be troublesome, he would haue them to bring their commodity thither, & there to make sale of it, promising he would prouide such commodities as they needed, and that he would be a defence vnto them, so that they should not be iniured by any: wherupon the factors sent Thomas Hudson backe for the ship to bring her to Derbent, and the Basha sent a gentleman with him to the captaine of Backow, to certifie him what was determined, which message being done, the captaine of Backow, and the Bashaes messenger, accompanied with a doozen souldiours, went from Backow with Thomas Hudson, and came to the ship at Bildih the 11 day of June. After the captaine and his men had beene aboord and seene the ship, they all departed presently, but the gentleman, messenger from the Basha, with three other Turkes, remained aboord, and continued in the shippe till she came to Derbent: the latitude of Bildih by diuers obseruations is 40 degrees 25 minuts: the variation of the compasse 10 degrees 40 minuts from North to West. After the returne of Thomas Hudson backe to Bildih, they were constrayned to remayne there with the shippe through contrary windes vntill the 16 day of June foure of the clocke in the morning, at which time they weyed anker, set saile and departed thence towardes Derbent, and arriued at anker against Derbent East and by South from the said castle in foure fathome and a halfe water, the 22 day of June at ten of the clocke in the morning: then they tooke vp their ordinance, which before they had stowed in holde for easing the shippe in her rowing. In the afternoone the Basha came downe to the water side against the shippe, and hauing the said ordinance placed, and charged, it was all shotte off to gratifie him: and presently after his departure backe, he permitted the factors to come aboord the shippe. The 29 day their goods were vnladen and carryed to the Bashaes garden, where he made choyce of such things as he liked, taking for euery stone of euery fiue and twentie karsies, or whatsoeuer, one, or after the rate of foure for the hundred. The factours after his choyce made, determined to send a part of the rest of the goods to Backow, for the speedier making sale thereof, for which cause they obteined the Bashaes letter to the captaine of Backow, written very fauourably in their behoofe: and thereupon was laden and sent in a small boat of that countrey in merchandize, to the value (very neere) of one thousand pound sterling: videlicet, one hundred pieces of karsies, seuen broad clothes, two barrels of cochenilio, two barrels of tinne, foure barrels of shalle. There went with the same of the companyes seruants William Winckle, Robert Golding, and Richard Relfe, with two Russies, whereof one was an interpretor, besides foure barkemen. They departed from Derbent with the said barke the 19 of July, and arriued at Bildih the 25 day: their passage and carriage of their goods to Backow was chargeable, although their sales when they came thither were small: they had great friendship shewed them of the captaine of Backow, as well for the Bashaes letter, as also for the factours sakes, who had dealt friendly with him, as before is declared. Robert Golding desirous to vnderstand what might be done at Shamakie, which is a daies iourney from Backow, went thither, from whence returning, he was set on by theeues, and was shot into the knee with an arrow, who had verie hardly escaped with his life and goodes, but that by good hap he killed one of the theeues horse with his caliuer, and shot a Turke thorow both cheeks with a dag. On the sixt day of August the factors being aduertised at Derbent that their ship was so rotten and weake, that it was doubtfull he would not carry them backe to Astracan, did therupon agree and bargen at that place with an Armenian, whose name was Iacob, for a barke called a Busse, being of burden about 35 tunnes, which came that yeere from Astracan, and was at that instant riding at an island called Zere about three or foure leagues beyond or to the Eastwardes of Bildih, which barke for their more safety, they ment to haue with them in their returne to Astracan, and therupon wrote vnto Wincell and the

The latitude of Bildih 40 deg. 25. min.

The variation of the compas 10 deg. 40 min.

Zere Island.

the rest at Backow, that they should receiue the same Busse, and lade in her their goods at Bildigh to be returned to Derbent, and to discharge their first boate, which was obserued by them accordingly. When all their goods were laden aboorde the saide Busse at Bildigh, and being readie to haue departed thence for Derbent, there arose a great storme with the winde out of the sea, by force whereof the cables and hailsters were broken, and their vessell put a shoare, and broken to pieces against the rockes: euery of them that were in her saued their liues, and part of the goods. But there was a Carobia or cheste, wherein were dollers, and golde, which they had receiued for the commodities of the companie, which they solde at Backowe, which at the taking out of the Busse, fell by the barkes side into the water amongst the rockes, and so was lost. The packes of cloth which they could not well take out of the Busse were also lost, other thinges that were more portable they saued.

The 18. of August, the Factors receiued from the Basha 500. Batmans of rawe silke, parcell of the bargaine made with him, who bade them come the next day for the rest of the bargaine.

The 19. day the Factors went to the Basha according to his appointment, but that day they could not speake with him, but it was deliuered them as from him, that they should looke and consider whether any thing were due vnto him or not, which grieued the Factors, and thereupon M. Turnebul answered, that their heads and all that they had were at the Bashaes pleasure; But then it was answered there was no such matter in it: but that they should cast vp their reckonings, to see how it stood betweene them. The 20. day they cast vp their reckonings. The 21. they went to haue spoken with the Basha, but were denied audience.

The 22. day they heard newes by a Busse that came from Astracan, that Arthur Edwards (whome the Factors left at Astracan with the moitie of the goods) was dead, who departed this life the of Arthur Edwards dieth at Astracan.

The 23. day the Factors receiued more from the Basha 500. Batmans of silke. The 4. of September newes was brought to Derbent, that Golding comming from Shamakie, was set on by theeues (Turkes) and had hurt one of them.

The 5. Tobias Atkins the gunners boy died of the flure, who was buried the 6. day 2. miles to the Southward of the Castle of Derbent, where the Armenian Christians do vsually burie their dead. About the 20. of September newes came to Derbent, that the Busse which they had bought of Iacob the Armenian as before, was cast away at Bildih, but they receiued no certaine newes in writing from any of our people.

The 26. of September was laden aboord the shippe 40. bales of silke. From the 26. til the 2. of October, they tooke into the shippe, bread, water, and other necessary prouision for their sea store: the said 2. day of October, the Factors were commanded vpon the suddaine to auoyd their house, and get them with their prouision out of the towne: Whereupon they were constrained to remoue and carry their things to the sea side against the ship, and remained there all the night. The cause of this sudden auoyding them out of the towne (as afterwards they perceiued) was for that the Basha had receiued newes of a supplie with treasure that the Turke had sent, which was then neere at hand comming towards him.

The 3. day of October all things were brought from the shoare aboorde the ship: and that day the Factors went to the Basha to take their leaue of him, vnto whom they recommended those the Companies seruants, &c. which they had sent to Backow, making accompt to leaue them behinde in the Countrey: who caused their names to be written, and promised they should want nothing, nor be iniuried of any. After this leaue taken, the Factors went aboord purposing presently to haue set saile and departed towards Astracan, the winde seruing well for that purpose at South Southeast; And as they were readie to set saile, there came against the shippe a man who weued: whereupon the boate was sent a shoare to him, who was an Armenian sent from William Wincoll, with his writing tables, wherein the saide Wincoll had written briefly, the mishappe of the losse of the Busse, and that they were comming from Bildih towardes Derbent, they, and such things as they saued with a small boate, forced to put a shoare in a place by the sea side called the Armenian village: Whereupon the Factors caused the shippe to stay hoping that with the Southerly winde that then blew, they would come from the place they were at to the shippe, but if they could not come with that winde, they ment to saile with the shippe, with the next winde that would serue them, against the place where they were, & take them in if they could: which stay and losse of those Southerly windes, was a cause of great troubles, that they afterwards sustained through out, &c. entring the Volga as shalbe declared.

The 4. day the winde South Southeast, the shippe rode still: This day Christopher Burrow was sent to shore to Derbent to prouide some necessaries for the voyage, & with him a Tisike

or two, which should goe in the shippe passengers to Astracan. And being on shoare he saw there the comming in of the Turkes treasure, being accompanied with 200. souldiers, and 100. pioners, besides Captaines and Gentlemen: the Basha with his Captaines and souldiers very gallantly apparelled and furnished, went out from Derbent about three or foure miles to meete the saide treasure, and receiued the same with great ioye and triumphe. Treasure was the chiefe thing they needed, for not long before, the souldiers were readie to breake into the Court against the Basha for their pay: there was a great mutenie amongst them, because hee had long differred and not payed them their due. The treasure came in 7. wagons, and with it were brought 12. pieces of brasse.

The Turke his treasure sent to Derbent.

In the parts of Media where they were, there was no commoditie to bee bought of any value, but raw silke, neither was that to bee had but at the Bashaes handes: who shortly after their comming thither taxed the Countrey for that commoditie. His dealing with our Marchants as it was not with equitie in all points according to his bargaine, so it was not extreeme ill. Of the commodities they carried hee tooke the chiefest part, for which hee gaue but a small price in respect of the value it was there worth, and because he had prouided such quantitie of commodities for them, which otherwise they coulde not haue had, the Countrey being so troublesome, and trauaile by land so dangerous, he vsed them at his pleasure.

The newes that was reported vnto them at Astracan touching the warres betweene the Turkes and Persians differed litle from the trueth: For the Turkes armie with ayde of the Crims, (being in nomber by the information of 2. Spaniards that serued in those warres, about 200000.) inuaded & conquered the Countrey of Media in Anno 1577. When the great Turke vnderstood of the conquest, he appointed Osman Basha (the said Basha, and now Captaine of Derbent) gouernour of the whole Countrey, who settled himselfe in Shamakie the chiefe Citie of Media, and principal place of trafique, vnto whome was sent from the great Turke, in signification of the gratefull acceptation of his seruice and the great conquest, a sword of great value.

Osman Bacha.

After the saide Basha had brought the Countrey in order to his liking, and placed garrisons where hee thought conuenient, the armie was dissolued and sent backe: When the Persians vnderstoode that the Turkes armie was dissolued and returned, they gathered a power together, and with the Queene of their Countrey as chiefe, they entred the Countrey of Media, and ouerranne the same with fire and sword, destroying whatsoeuer they founde, as well people, cattell, as whatsoeuer els, that might be commodious to the Turkes. And after they had so ouerrunne the Countrey, they came to Shamakie, where the saide Basha Lieutenant generall of the great Turke was settled, and besieged it: whereupon the Basha seeing hee coulde not long indure to withstande them, fledde thence to Derbent where he now remaineth.

Derbent is a strong Castle which was built by Alexander the great, the situation whereof is such, that the Persians being without Ordinance, are not able to winne it but by famine. When the Turkes were fled from Shamakie, the Persians entred the same and spoyled it, leauing therein neither liuing creature nor any commoditie, and so returned backe into Persia, and settled themselues about Teueris, where there grewe some question among them for the kingdome. Afterwards the Persians hauing intelligence of an armie from the Turke comming into Media, gathered themselues together in a great armie and encountring the saide Turkes, set vpon them on the sudden, and vanquished them, putting them all to the sworde. This ouerthowe of the Turkes grieued the Basha of Derbent, and made him to haue the more care for his owne safetie. Moreouer, newes was brought vnto him that the Kisel Bashaes, (that is to say the nobles & Gentlemen of Persia) were minded to set vpon him, and that neere vnto Backow there lay an armie readie to besiege it. Whereupon the Basha oftentimes would ride about the Castle of Derbent viewing the same, and the spyings that did come to it, and where he saw any cause of reformation it was amended.

Derbent built by Alexander the great.

The Latitude of Derbent (by diuers obseruations exactly there made) is 41. deg. 52. The variation of the Compasse at that place about 11. degrees from North to West. From Derbent to Bildih by land, 46. leagues. From Derbent to Shamakie by land 45. leagues. From Shamakie to Backow about 10. leagues, which may be 30. miles. From Backow to Bildih 5. or six leagues by land, but by water about 12. leagues. From the Castle Derbent Eastwards there reache 2. stone walles to the border of the Caspian sea, which is distant one English mile. Their walles are 9. foote thicke, and 28. or 30. foote high, and the space betweene them is 160. geometrical paces, that is 800. foote. There are yet to be perceiued of the ruine of those walles, which do now extend into the sea about halfe a mile: Also from the Castle Westward into the land, they did perceiue the ruines of a stone wall to extend, which wall as it is reported, did passe from thence

The latitude of Derbent 41. deg. 52. min.

to Pontus Euxinus, and was built by Alexander the great when the Caſtle Derbent was made.

The 5. of October about noone the winde North Northeaſt they waped ancre, and ſet ſaile from Derbent, being longeſt the coaſt to the Southwards to ſeeke their men, but as they had ſailed about foure leagues the winde ſcanted Eaſterly, ſo that they were forced to ancre in three fathome water.

The 6. day they waped ancre, and bare further off into the ſea, where they ancred in 7. fathome water, the ſhippe being very leke and ſo rotten abafte the maine maſte, that a man with his nailes might ſcrape through her ſide.

The 7. day about 7. of the clocke in the morning, they ſet ſaile, the winde Southweſt. They conſidered the time of the yeere was farre ſpent, the ſhip weake, leke and rotten, and therefore determining not to tary any longer for Wincoll and his fellowes but to leaue them behinde, bent themſelues directly towards Aſtracan: and ſayling North Northeaſt vntill midnight about 16. leagues, the winde then came to the North Northweſt, and blew much, a very ſtorme, which cauſed them to take in all their ſailes, ſauing the fore coyſe, with which they were forced to ſteere before the ſea, South by weſt, and South ſouthweſt. And on the 8. day about 2. of the clocke in the morning their great boate ſunke at the ſhips ſterne, which they were forced to cut from the ſhippe to their great griefe and diſcomfort: for in her they hoped to ſaue their liues if the ſhippe ſhoulde haue miſcaried. About 10. of the clocke before noone they had ſight of the lande about 5. leagues to the South of Derbent, and bare longſt the coaſt to the Southeaſtwards vnto Nezauoo, where they came at ancre in 3. fathoms and blacke oze, good ancre holde, whereof they were glad as alſo that the winde was ſhifted to the Northweſt, and but a meane gale. Wincoll and the reſt of his fellowes being in the Armenian village, which is about 18. verſts to the weſtwards of Nezauoo, the place where againſt they rode at ancre, ſaw the ſhip as ſhe paſſed by that place, and ſent a man in the night following alongſt the coaſt after her, who came againſt the ſhip where ſhe rode, and with a fireband in the top of a tree, made ſignes, which was perceiued by them in the ſhippe, whereupon they hoyſed out their ſkiffe, and ſent her a ſhoare to learne what was ment by the fire: which returned a letter from Wincoll, wherin he wrote that they were with ſuch goods as they had at the Armenian village, and prayed that there they might with the ſame goods be taken into the ſhippes. The 9. day it was litle winde, they waped and bare a litle further off into the ſea towards the ſaid village, and ancred. The 10. day they ſent their ſkiffe to the Armenian village to fetch thoſe men and the goods they had, with order that if the winde ſerued, that they could not returne to fetche the ſhippe, they of the ſhippe promiſed to come for them, againſt the ſaide village; this day it was calme.

The 11. day the winde Northweſt they rode ſtill. The 12. day the winde Southeaſt they waped ancre, and bare againſt and neere to the Armenian village where they ancred, and then the ſkiffe came aboord and tolde them that our people at ſhoare, were like to be ſpoyled of the Tartars, were it not that the gunners defended them: then was the ſkiffe ſent backe againe to charge them at any hand they ſhould haſten aboorde the ſhippe whatſoeuer it coſt them. Whereupon, all the companie came aboorde the ſame day ſauing Richard Relfe, and two Ruſſes, but as ſoone as the ſkiffe was returned aboorde the ſhippe, the winde blewe at Southeaſt, and the Sea was growen: ſo as they were forced to take in their ſkiffe into the ſhip and rode ſtill till the 13. day, and then being faire weather, early in the morning the ſkiffe was hoyſed out of the ſhippe, and ſent to ſhoare to fetch the ſaid Relfe and the two Ruſſes, which were readie at the ſhoare ſide, and with them two Spaniards that were taken captiues at the Goletta in Barbarie, which ſerued the Turke as ſouldiers. Thoſe Spaniards (of Chriſtian charitie) they brought alſo aboord the ſhippe to redeeme them from their captiuitie, which were brought ouer into England, and ſet free and at libertie here in London, in September 1581. The winde this day at North Northeaſt, faire weather. The 14. day they ſent the ſkiffe to ſhoare, and filled freſh water. The 15. day they rode ſtill being litle winde and fogge. The 16. day the winde Eaſt Southeaſt, they waped ancre and ſet ſaile bearing Northwards towardes Aſtracan, and the ſame night they ancred in 10. fadoms water, about 5. miles from the ſhoare of the Shalkaules countrey, which place is 8. leagues South Northweſt from Derbent. The 17. day the winde at North very ſtormie, they rode ſtil all that day & night. The 18. the winde all Southeaſt about one of the clocke afternoone, they waped ancre & ſailed thence til 4. of the clocke North Northeaſt 6. leagues, then might they ſee the land Northweſt about 10. leagues from the wind Southeaſt: frō thence they ſailed til midnight North Northeaſt 12. leagues. Frō thence til ꝑ 19. day 7. a clocke in ꝑ morning they ſailed Northnortheaſt 8. leagues: the wind then Eaſt ſoutheaſt, a faire gale, they ſounded and had 17. fathoms, and ſand, being (as the M. iudged) about the head of Shetly: from thence till 12. of the clocke at noone they

Two Spaniards deliuered by our Engliſhmen.

sailed North 5. leagues, the winde then at East a faire gale, they sounded and had 5. fadoms. From thence till 8. of the clocke at night, they sailed North 7. leagues: the winde then at South east with small raine, they tooke in their sailes and ancred in 3. fadoms water and soft ooze, where they rode still all night, and the 20. day and night the winde Northeast, as before with small raine.

The 21. day the winde Northwest, they likewise rode still. The 22. day about 3. of the clocke in the afternoone, they waied ancre the winde West Northwest, and sailed from thence till sixe of the clocke at night North 4. leagues, then they ancred in 2. fathoms and a halfe soft ooze, the winde at West a small breath.

The 23. day about 7. of the clocke in the morning, they waied ancre and set saile being little winde Easterly, and sailed till 2. of the clocke after noone Northwest in with the shoare about sixe leagues, and then ancred in 6. foote water, hauing perfect sight of the lowe lande (lande hilles) being about three miles from the neerest land. This place of the land that they were against, they perceiued to be to the Westwards of the foure Islands (called in the Russe tongue Chetera Boogori) and they founde it afterwards by due proofe, to be about 50. verstes, or thirtie English miles to the Southwest, or Southwest by South, from the said Chetera Bogori.

The 24. day the winde at East, and by South, a sea winde called Gillauar, caused them to ride still. The 25. day they thought good to sende in their skiffe Robert Golding, and certaine Russes, to rowe him longest Northwards by the shoare, to seeke the foure Islands, and so to passe vnto the Vchooge, and there to land the saide Rob. Golding to proceede to Astracan, to deliuer Amos Riall a letter, wherein he was required to prouide Pauozes to meete the shippe at the saide Islands, and the skiffe with the Russes were appointed to returne from the Vchooge with victuals to the shippe, which skiffe departed from the shippe about nine of the clocke in the forenoone. The 26. 27. 28. and 29. dayes, the windes Easterly, and Northeast they roode still with their shippe. The 30. day the winde Southeast, they waied and set saile to the Northeast ward: but the shippe fell so on the side to the shorewards, that they were forced eftsoones to take in their sailes and ancre againe, from whence they neuer remooued her. That day they shared their breade but in their want God sent them two couies of partridges, that came from the shoare, and lighted in and about their shippes, whereby they were comforted, and one that lay sicke, of whose life was small hope, recouered his health.

A strange accident of prouision for their reliefe.

November.

The 4. of November the skiffe returned to the shippe with some victuals and certified that the 4. Islands were about 60. verstes from them to the Northeastwards. When Robert Golding came to Astracan, and deliuered there the Factors letters to Amos Rial, the duke, Capteine of the place, was done to vnderstand of the ships arriual, and of the state they were in, and their request for Pauoses, who was very glad to heare of their safe returne, and appointed to be sent with all speede 2. Pauoses, and a Strooge, with gunners to garde and to defende them. With the which Strooge and Pauoses, Amos Riall went downe to the Chetera Bougori, or 4. Islands aforesaid, where he staied with those barks, according to the Factors appointment. The 5. day they purposed to send from the shippe their skiffe with the carpenter, and 4. Russes, to rowe him to the 4. Bougories, to request Amos Rial to come from thence with the Pauoses to the ship with al possible speed. The skiffe with those men departed from the ship in the morning, and within one houre they met with a small boat with Russes, rowing towards the ship which came from the Ouchooge with wilde swine and other victuals to sell: with the same boate the skiffe returned backe to the ship after the Russes had receiued and were satisfied for the victuals they brought: the same day they returned with their boate backe toward the Ouchooge, and with them in the same boate was sent the carpenter of the ship to the Chetera Bougori which were in their way, to declare vnto Amos Riall the message before appointed him. From the 5. vntill the 9. day the ship rode still with contrary winds Easterly. The same 9. day came to the ship certaine Russes in a small boate, which brought with them some victuals sent by Amos Riall, and declared, that hee with the Pauoses and Strooge, had remained at the Chetera Boogori 5. dayes expecting the comming thither of the ship. The 10. day being doubtfull of the Pauoses comming, they sent Thomas Hudson master of the ship in the skiffe (and with her went the aforesaid skiffe boate) towards the Chetera Boogori to the Pauoses, to bring word whether they would come to the ship or not, the winde then at North east with fogge. The 11. day the winde Northerly with fogge, the ship roode still. The 12. day Amos Rial, Christopher Fawcet, and a new gunner came to the ship, and with them the M. Thomas Hudson returned (but the Strooge with the gunners remained at the Chetera Boogori) and from thence (when it began to freese,) returned to Astracan. Amos Rial declared that he sent the carpenter backe from the Chetera Boogori in a small boate on the 10. day, and marueiled that he was

was not come to the shippe (but in the fogge the day before as afterwards they learned) missed the shippe, and ouershot her, and afterwards returning backe, hee found the ship at ancre, and nothing in her but the Russes that were left to keepe her, and then hee departed thence, and went to the Vchooge, and there staied. Presently vpon the comming of the Pauoses to the shippe, they vsed as much speede as might be, to get the goods out of the shippe into them, and after the goods were laden in, they tooke in also of the shippes Ordinance, furniture and prouision, as much as they coulde.

The 13. day in the morning Amos Riall was sent away in a small boate towards Astracan, to prouide victuals and carriages to relieue and helpe them, who coulde passe no further then the fourr Ilands, but was there ouertaken with yce, and forced to leaue his boate, and from thence passed poste to Astracan, finding at the Vchooge the Carpenter returned from his ill iourney, very ill handled with the extremitie of the colde. The same day they departed also in those lighters with the goods towards the Chetera Bougori, leauing the shippe at ancre, and in her two Russes, which with three more that went in the Pauoses, to prouide victuals for themselues and the rest, and there with promised to returne backe to the shippe with all speede, had offered to vndertake for twentie rubbles in money to carry the shippe into some harborowe, where shee might safely winter, or els to keepe her where shee rode all winter, which was promised to be giuen them if they did it: and the same day when with those lighters they had gotten sight of the 4. Ilands being about eight versts Southwest from them, the winde then at Northeast, did freese the sea so, as they could not rowe, guide, stirre or remoue the saide lighters, but as the winde and yce did force them; And so they continued driuing with the yce, Southeast into the sea by the space of fourtie houres, and then being the sixteene day the yce stoode. Whiles they droue with the yce the dangers which they incurred were great: for oftentimes when the yce with the force of winde and sea did breake, pieces of it were tossed and driuen one vpon another with great force, terrible to beholde, and the same happened at sometimes so neere vnto the lighters, that they expected it would haue ouerwhelmed them to their vtter destruction: but God who hath preserued them from many perils before, did also saue and deliuer them then.

Ice the 13. of Nouember in the mouth of the riuer of Volga.

The 16 day.

Within three or foure dayes after the first standing of the yce when it was firme and strong, they tooke out all their goods, being fourtie and eight bales or packes of rawe silke, &c. layde it on the yce, and couered the same with such prouisions as they had. Then for want of victuals, &c. they agreed to leaue all the good there vpon the yce, and to goe to the shoare: and thereupon brake vp their chests and Corobias, wherewith, and with such other things as they coulde gette, they made sleds for euery of them to drawe vpon the yce, whereon they layde their clothes to keepe them warme, and such victuals as they had, and such other thinges as they might conuiencly carry, and so they departed from the saide goods and Pauoses very early about one of the clocke in the morning, and trauayling on the yce, directed their way North, as neere as they could iudge, and the same day about two of the clocke in the after noone, they had sight of the Chetera Babbas (foure hillockes of Ilands so called:) vnto the same they directed themselues, and there remained that night.

Chetera Babas.

The goods and Pauoses which they left on the yce, they iudged to be from those Chetera Babas about 20. versts.

And the next morning departed thence Eastwardes, and came to the Chetera Bougories (or foure Ilands before spoken of) before noone, (the distance betweene those places is about fifteene versts) where they remained all that night, departing thence towards Astracan: the next morning very earely they lost their way through the perswasion of the Russes which were with them, taking to much towardes the left hande, (contrary to the opinion of Master Hudson:) Whereby wandering vpon the yce foure or fiue dayes, not knowing whether they were entred into the Crimme Tartars lande or not, at length it fortuned they mette with a way that had bene trauailed, which crosse backewardes towardes the Sea, that way they tooke, and following the same, within two dayes trauaile it brought them to a place called the Crasnoyare, (that is to say in the English tongue) redde cliffe, which diuers of the companie knewe.

There they remayned that night hauing nothing to eate but one loafe of bread which they happened to finde with the two Russes that were left in the shippe to keepe her all the winter (as is aforesaide) whome they chanced to meete going towards Astracan, about fiue miles before they came to the saide Crasnoyare, who certified them that the shippe was cut in pieces with the yce, and that they had hard scaping with their liues.

In the morning they departed earely from Crasnoyare towardes the Ouchooge, and

about 9. of the clocke before noone, being within 10. verſts of the Vchooge, they mette Amos Riall, with the Carpenter, which he founde at Ouchooge, and a gunner newly come out of England, and alſo ſixtie and fiue horſes with ſo many Caſſacks to guide them, and 50. gunners for garde, which brought prouiſion of victuals, &c. And were ſent by the Duke to fetche the goods to Aſtracan. The meeting of that company was much ioy vnto them.

The Factors ſent backe with Amos Riall and the ſaide companie to fetche the goods, Thomas Hudſon, the maſter, Tobias Paris his mate, and ſo they the ſaide Factors, and their company marched on to the Vchooge, where they refreſhed themſelues that day, and the night following. And from thence proceeded on towards Aſtracan, where they arriued the laſt day of November.

December. Theſe that went for the goods after their departure from the Factors trauailed the ſame day vntill they came within 10. verſts of the Chetera Babas, where they reſted that night. The next morning by the breake of the day they departed thence, and before noone were at the Chetera Babas, where they ſtayed all night; But preſently departed thence Thomas Hudſon, with the Carpenter and gunner to ſeeke where the goods lay: who founde the ſame, and the next day they returned backe to their company, at the Chetera Babas, and declared vnto them in what ſort they had found the ſaid goods.

The 3. day early in the morning they departed all from the 4. Babas towards the ſaide goods, and the ſame day did lade all the goods they could finde vpon the ſaid ſleds, and with al conuenient ſpeede returned backe towardes Aſtracan. And when they came to the Chetera Bougori, where they reſted the night, in the morning very early before the breake of day, they were aſſaulted by a great companie of the Nagays Tartars horſemen, which came ſhouting and hallowing with a great noyſe, but our people were ſo inuironed with the ſleds, that they durſt not enter vpon them, but ranne by, and ſhotte their arrowes amongſt them, and hurt but one man in the head, who was a Ruſſe, and ſo departed preſently. Yet when it was day, they ſhewed themſelues a good diſtance off from our men, being a very great troupe of them, but did not aſſault them any more. The ſame day our men with thoſe cariages, departed from thence towards Aſtracan, where they arriued in ſafetie the 4. of December, about 3. of the clocke in the after noone: where our people greatly reioyced of their great good happe to haue eſcaped ſo many hard euents, trouble and miſeries as they did in that voyage, and had great cauſe therefore to praiſe the Almightie, who had ſo mercifully preſerued and deliuered them. They remained the winter at Aſtracan, where they found great fauour and friendſhip of the Duke, Captaine and other chiefe officers of that place: But that winter there happened no great matter worth the nothing.

Their returne to Aſtracan.

In the ſpring of the yeere 1581. about the mids of March the yce was broken vp, and cleane gone before Aſtracan, and the ninth of Aprill hauing all the goods that were returned from the parts of Media laden into a Strooge, the Factors, William Turnebull, Matthewe Taileboyes, Giles Crowe, Chriſtopher Burrough, Michael Lane, Laurence Prouſe gunner, Randolfe Foxe, Th. Hudſon, Tobias Parris, Morgan Hubblethorne the vier, Ric. the ſurgean, Rob. Golding, Iohn Smith, Edward Reding carpenter, and William Perrin gunner, Hauing alſo 40. Ruſſes, whereof 36. were Caſſacks to rowe, the reſt Marchants paſſengers, departed from Aſtracan with the ſaid Strooge and goods vp the Volga towards Yeraſlaue. They left behinde them at Aſtracan, with the Engliſh goods & Marchandiſe there remayning, Amos Rial, W. Wincol, and Richard Reſe, and appointed them to ſell & barter the ſame, or ſo much thereof as they could to the Tiſiks, if there came any thither that ſpring, and to others as they might, & the reſt with ſuch as they ſhould take in exchange to returne vp to Yeraſlaue that ſummer, when the Emperours carriage ſhould paſſe vp to the Volga. The 21. day they came with their Strooge to the Perauoloke, but made no ſtay at that place: for they had bene much troubled with yce in their comming from Aſtracan. The 3. of May about noone they came to Oneke, and from thence proceeding vp the riuer, on the 17. day William Turnebul departed from the Strooge in a ſmal boate, and went before towards Tetuſha to prouide victuals, and ſende downe to the Strooge from which place they were then about 130. verſts. The 23. day they mette a boate with victuals, which William Turnebull ſent from Tetuſha, and the ſame day they arriued with their Strooge at Tetuſha, where they ſtayed all night, and the next morning betimes departed thence, but W. Turnebull was gone in the ſmall boat before to Cazan, to prouide neceſſaries from thence, and to make way for their diſpatch. The 26. day they arriued with their Strooge at Cazan, where they remayned till the fourth of June: the Factors ſent Giles Crowe from Cazan to the Moſco, with their letters the 30. of May. The fourth day of June they departed from Cazan with their Strooge, and arriued at Yeraſlaue the 22. day about 5. of the clocke in the morning.

May.

The 23. day they prouided Telegos, to carry the goods to Vologda: The 24. day hauing the

the goods laden vpon Telegos, they departed with the ſame towards Vologhda, and remained there fiue verſtes from Yeraſlaue.

The 29. day, they came to Vologhda, with all their goods in ſafetie, and good order. The ſame 29. William Turnebull, and Peter Garrard, departed from Vologhda, poſt by water towards Colmogro: the third of July, hauing their goods laden in a ſmall Doſhenike, they departed with the ſame from Vologhda, towards Roſſe Iſland, by S. Nicholas, where they arriued in ſafetie the 16. of July, and founde there the Agents of Ruſſia, and in the Rode the ſhips ſent out of England, almoſt laden ready to depart.

The 25. day departed for England (out of the rode of S. Nicholas) the ſhippe Elizabeth.

The 26. day departed thence the Thomas Allen, and Marie Suſan, and in the Thomas Allen went William Turnbull, Matthew Tailboys, Thomas Hudſon, and others. The goods returned of the Perſia voyage, were laden into the ſhippe, William, and Iohn, whereof was Maſter William Bigat, and in her with the ſame goods, came Peter Garrard, and Tobias Parris.

The 11. of Auguſt, the ſame ſhippe being laden, and diſpatched, departed from the rode of S. Nicholas, and with her in companie another of the companies fraighted ſhips, called the Tomaſin, whereof was Maſter Chriſtopher Hal. In their returne homewards, they had ſome foule weather, and were ſeparated at the ſea, the William, and Iohn, put into Newcaſtle, the 24. of September: from whence the ſaid Peter Garrard, and Tobias Parris, came to London by lande, and brought newes of the arriuall of the ſhippe.

The 25. of September, both the ſaid ſhippes arriued at the port of London in ſafetie, and anchored before Limehouſe, and Wapping, where they were diſcharged. 1581.

Obſeruations of the latitudes and Meridian altitudes of diuers places in *Ruſſia, from the North to the South. Anno* 1581.

S. Michael Archangel.	Meridian altitude obſerued at Michael the Archangel, 42. degrees, 30. minuts.	
	The true latitude, 64. degrees, 54. minuts.	
The Engliſh houſe in Colmogro.	The Engliſh houſe in Colmogro, in latitude, 64.d.25.m.	
	The meridian altitude there obſerued, the 29. of July, 42.d.15.m.	
Recola.	Meridian altitude the 30. of July, 41.d.46.m.	64.d.20.m.
	Declination, 16.d.6.m.	
Yeegris.	Meridian, 4. of Auguſt, 41.d.50.m.	62.d.59.m.
	Declination Northerly, 14.d.49.m.	
Towlma	Meridian altitude, the 15. of Auguſt, 40.d.45.m.	60.d.17.m.
	Declination Northerly, 11.d.2.m.	
Vologhda.	Meridian altitude, the 20. of Auguſt, 40.d.	59.d.17.m.
	Declination Northerly, 9.d.17.m.	
Vologhda.	Meridian altitude, 21. of Auguſt, 39.d.36.m.	59.d.20.m.
	Declination, 8.d.56.m.	
Yereſlaue.	Latitude by geſſe, 57.d.50.m.	
Swyaskagorod.	Meridian altitude, 21. September, 31.d.	56.d.4.m.
	Declination, 2.d.56.m.	
Ouſlona Monaſterie.	Meridian altitude, 23. September, 30.d.26.m.	55.d.51.m.
	Declination, 3.d.43.m.	
Tenuskagorod.	Meridian altitude, 28. September, 28.d.28.m.	55.d.22.m.
	Declination, 5.d.35.m.	
Oueeke.	Meridian altitude, 5. October, 30.d.12.m.	51.d.30.m.
	Declination, 8.d.18.m.	
Aſtracan.	Aſtracan Meridian altitude, 22. October, 29.d.36.m.	46.d.10.m.
	Declination, 14.d.16.m.	
Aſtracan.	Meridian altitude, 1. of November, 26.d.35.m.	46.d.9.m.
	Declination, 17.d.16.m.	

Certaine

Certaine directions giuen by Master Richard Hakluyt of the *middle Temple, to Master Morgan Hubblethorne, Dyer, sent into Persia, 1579.*

1 FOr that England hath the best wooll, and cloth of the world, and for that the cloches of the Realme haue no good vent, if good dying be not added: therefore it is much to be wished, that the dying of forren Countreies were seene, to the ende that the arte of dying may be brought into the Realme in greatest excellencie: for therof will follow honour to the Realme, and great and ample vent of our clothes: and of the vent of clothes, will followe the setting of our poore on worke, in all degrees of labour in clothing and dying: for which cause most principally, you are sent ouer, at the charge of the Citie: and therefore for the satisfying of the Lordes, and of the expectation of the Merchants, and of your companie, it behooues you to haue care to returne home, with more knowledge, then you carried out.

2 The great dearth of clothes is a great let in the ample vent of clothes, and the price of a cloth, for a fifth, sixth, and seuenth part riseth by the colour and dying: and therefore to deuise to dye as good colours with the one halfe of the present price, were to the great commoditie of the Realme, by sauing of great treasure in time to come. And therefore you must haue great care to haue knowledge of the materials of all the Countreies, that you shall passe through, that may be vsed in dying, be they hearbes, weedes, barkes, gummes, earths, or what els soeuer.

3 In Persia you shall finde carpets of course thrommed wooll, the best of the worlde, and excellently coloured: those Cities and Townes, you must repaire to, and you must vse meanes to learne all the order of the dying of those thrommes, which are so died, as neither raine, wine, nor yet vineger, can staine: and if you may attaine to that cunning, you shall not neede to learne dying of cloth. For if the colour holde in yarne, and thromme, it will holde much better in cloth.

4 For that in Persia, they haue great colouring of silkes, it behooues you to learne that also, for that clothe dying, and silke dying, haue a certaine affinitie, and your Merchants minde to bring much rawe silke into the Realme, and therefore it is more requisite you learne the same.

5 In Persia, there are that steine linnen clothe: it is not amisse you learne it, if you can: it hath bene an olde trade in England, whereof some excellent clothes yet remaine: but the arte is now lost, and not to be found in the Realme.

6 They haue a cunning in Persia, to make in Buskins of Spanish leather, flowers of many kindes in most liuely colours, and these the Courtiers doe weare there, to learne which arte were no harme.

7 If any Dier of China, or of the East partes of the world, be to be found in Persia, acquaint your selfe with him, and learne what you may of him.

8 You shall finde Anyle there, if you can procure the herbe, that it is made of either by seede, or by plant, to carry into England, you may doe well to endeuour to enrich your Countrey with the same: but withall learne you the making of the Anyle, and if you can get the hearbe, you may sende the same dryed into England, for possibly it groweth here already.

9 Returne home with you all the materials and substances, that they dye with all in Russia, and also in Persia, that your companie may see all.

10 In some litle pot in your lodging, I wish you to make daily trials in your arte, as you shall from time to time learne ought among them.

11 Set downe in writing, whatsoeuer you shall learne from day to day, least you should forget, or least God should call you to his mercie, and by each returne, I wish you sende in writing whatsoeuer you haue learned, or at the least keepe the same safe in your coffer, that come death, or life, your Countrey may enioy the thing that you goe for, and not lose the charge, and trauell bestowed in this case.

12 Learne you there to fire, and make sure the colour to be giuen by logge wood: so shall we not neede to buy oade so deere, to the enriching of our enemies.

13 Enquire of the price of Leckar, and of all other things belonging to dying.

14 In any wise set downe in writing a true note, from whence euery of them doe come, and where, and in what Countrey each of them doth growe. I meane where the naturall place of each of them is, as how neere to such a Citie, or to such a Sea, or to such a portable Riuer, in Russia, Persia, or els where.

15 I

15 If before your returne you could procure a singular good workeman, in the arte of Turkish carpet making, you should bring the arte into this Realme, and also thereby increase worke to your company.

Commission giuen by Sir Rowland Hayward, Knight, and *George Barne, Aldermen and Gouernours of the company of English* Merchants, for discouerie of newe trades, vnto Arthur Pet, and Charles Iackman, for a voyage by them to be made, for discouerie of Cathay, 1580. in forme following.



IN the name of God Almightie, and euerlasting, Amen. This writing for commission Tripartite, made the twentieth day of May, Anno Domini, 1580. and in the two and twentieth yeere of the raigne of our Soueraigne Ladie Elizabeth, by the grace of God, Queene of England, France, and Ireland, defender of the faith, &c. Betweene Sir Rowland Hayward, Knight, & George Barne, Aldermen of the Citie of London, and Gouernours of the companie of English merchants, for discouerie of newe trades, for the behoofe, and in the name of the said companie, on the first partie, and Arthur Pet of Ratcliffe, in the Countie of Middlesex, Captaine, Master, and chiefe ruler of the good barke, called the George of London, of the burthen of 40. tunnes, or thereabouts, on the second partie, and Charles Iackman of Popler, in the saide Countie of Middlesex, Captaine, Master, and Ruler of the good barke, called the William of London, of the burthen of 20. tunnes, or thereabouts, (which barkes are nowe riding at anker in the riuer of Thames against Limehouse) on the third partie: witnesseth, that the said Gouernours, and companie, haue hired the said Arthur Pet, to serue in the said barke, called the George, with nine men and a boye: And likewise the said Charles Iackman, to serue in the said barke, called the William, with fiue men and a boye, for a voyage by them to be made by Gods grace, for search and discoueries of a passage by sea from hence by Boroughs streights, and the Iland Vaigats, Eastwards, to the countries or dominion of the mightie Prince, the Emperour of Cathay, and in the same vnto the cities Cambalu, and Quinsay, or to either of them.

The which passage (vpon authoritie of writers, and great reason) is conceaued to be from the Vaigats Eastwards according to the description in plat of spirall lines, made by master William Borough, whereof either of the said Arthur Pet, and Charles Iackman, haue one deliuered vnto them and also one other sailing carde, and a blanke plat for either of them. But if it should not be in all points, according to that description, yet we hope, that the continent or firme land of Asia, doth not stretch it selfe so farre Northwards, but that there may be found a sea passeable by it, betweene the latitude of 70. and 80. degrees. And therefore we haue appointed you with these two barkes, to make triall of the same: wishing you both to ioyne in friendship together, as most deere friendes, and brothers, to all purposes and effects, to the furtherance and orderly performing of the same voyage. And likewise order your companies, that they of the one barke may haue such loue and care, to helpe and succour them of the other, as most deere friendes and brothers would doe: so as it may appeare, that though they be two barkes, and two companies, (which is so appointed for your greater comfort and assurance) yet that you are wholy of one minde, and bende your selues to the vttermost of your powers, to performe the thing that you are both employed for.

Doe you obserue good order in your daily seruice, and pray vnto God, so shall you prosper the better.

We would haue you to meete often together, to talke, conferre, consult, and agree howe, and by what meanes you may best performe this purposed voyage, according to our intents. And at such meeting, we thinke it requisite, that you call vnto you your mates, and also Nicholas Chanceler, (whome we doe appoint as merchant, to keepe accompt of the merchandize you shall buy, or sell, barter, or exchange) to the ende, that whatsoeuer God should dispose of either of you, yet they may haue some instructions and knowledge howe to deale in your place or places. And of all your assemblies and consultations together, and the substance of matter you shall at euery time agree vpon, we would haue you to note them in the paper bookes that we giue you for that purpose, vnto each barke one. We doe appoint Arthur Pet in the George, as Admirall, to weare the flagge in the maine top, and Charles Iackman in the William, as Vice admiral. For good orders to be taken for your good and orderly keeping of companie together, which we wish may be such, as you should neuer lose sight the one of the other, except by both your consents, to discouer about an Iland, or in some

some riuer, when and where you may certainly appoint to meete together againe, we referre the same to your good discretions.

And nowe for your good direction in this voyage, we would haue you with the next good wind and weather, that God shall send thereunto meete and conuenient, after the 22. day of this present moneth of May, saile from this riuer of Thames, to the coast of Finmarke, to the North Cape there, or to the Wardhouse, and from thence direct your course to haue sight of Willoughbies land, and from it passe alongst to the Noua Zemla, keeping the same lands alwaies in your sight on your larboordsides (if conueniently you may) to the ende you may discouer, whether the same Willoughbies land be continent and firme land, with Noua Zemla, or not: notwithstanding wee would not haue you to entangle your selues in any Baye, or otherwise, so as it might hinder your speedie proceeding to the Island Vaigats.

And when you come to Vaigats, we would haue you to get sight of the maine land of Samoeda, which is ouer against the South part of the same Island, and from thence with Gods permission, to passe Eastwards alongst the same coast, keeping it alwaies in your sight (if conueniently you may) vntill you come to the mouth of the riuer Ob, and when you come vnto it, passe ouer the saide riuers mouth vnto the border of land, on the East side of the same (without any staye to be made for searching inwardly in the same riuer) and being in sight of the same Easterly land, doe you in Gods name proceede alongst by it, from thence Eastwards, keeping the same alwaies on your starboordside in sight, if you may, and followe the tracte of it, whether it incline Southerly or Northerly (as at times it may doe both) vntill you come to the Countrey of Cathay, or the dominion of that mightie Emperour.

And if God prosper your voyage, with such good successe, that you may attaine to the same, doe you seeke by all meanes you can, to arriue to the Cities Cambalu, and Quinsay, or to the one of them. But if it happen that you can not conueniently come to either of those places, or shall be driuen to remaine a winter in some other port or place of his dominion, do you seeke by al meanes possible to winne fauour and liking of the people, by gifts and friendly demeanes towards them, and not to offer violence, or doe wrong to any people or nation whatsoeuer, but therein to bee innocent as doues, yet wilie as serpents, to auoid mischiefe, and defend you from hurt. And when you shall haue gotten friendship through your discreete ordring of your selues, towards the people, doe you learne of them what you can of their Prince, and shewe them one of the Queenes Maiesties letters, which she sendeth with you (by either of you one, made of one substance and effect, for each of you particularly) written in Latine, whereunto her Maiestie hath subscribed, and caused her signet seale to be set, the effect of the same letters you haue also written in English, for your owne vnderstanding thereof.

The same her Maiesties letters, you shall procure to deliuer vnto the same mightie Prince, or Gouernour, with some present to be giuen such as you shall thinke meete, and conuenient, vsing your selues in all pointes according to the effect of the same letters, and procure againe from the same Prince, his letters accordingly.

And if God so prosper your voyage that you may this summer passe the Streights, and compasse about the Northermost land of Asia, vnto the Countrey of Cathay, or dominion of that mightie Prince, and wintering in it, may obtaine from him his letters of priuiledge against the next peeres spring, you may then after your first setting foorth, search and discouer some what further then you had discouered before your wintering, so farre as you shall thinke conuenient, with regard had, and alwaies prouided, that you may returne home hither, to giue vs aduice of your proceedings the same summer, or before the sharpenes or extremitie of winter ouertake you.

And if it happen you cannot this summer attaine to the border of Cathaye, and yet finde the land beyond the Ob, to stretch it selfe Easterly, with the sea adioyning vnto it nauigable, doe you then proceede on your discouerie (as before said) alongst the same continent, so farre as you can this summer, hauing care in the trauel to find out some conuenient harborow and place, where you may winter: and when you thinke it conuenient, put your selfe to wintering, where if you happen to finde people, you shall deale with them, as we haue before aduised you to doe with the people of Cathay, &c. And if you can learne that they haue a Prince or chiefe Gouernour, doe you procure to deliuer vnto the same Prince or gouernour, one of the Queenes Maiesties letters, as before said, and seeke to obtaine againe his letters accordingly, if you so happen to winter and obteine letters of priuiledge, finding the countrey and people, with the commodities to be such, that by vsing trade thither with the people, & for the cõmodities, it may be beneficiall vnto vs (as we hope you may) the same will be some good liking vnto vs: notwithstanding we would haue you the next summer (by the grace of God) at your first setting out of your wintering harborough, proceede alongst the

that tracte of land to Cathay, if you ſee likelihoode to paſſe it (for that is the Countrey that wee chiefly deſire to diſcouer) and ſeeing you are fully victualed for two yeeres and vpwards, which you may very well make to ſerue you for two yeeres and a halfe, though you finde no other helpe, you may therefore be the bolder to aduenture in proceeding vpon your diſcouerie: which if you do, we doubt not, but you ſhall atchieue the Countrey of Cathay, and deliuer to the Prince there, one of her Maieſties letters, bringing from thence the ſame Princes letters anſwerable: & ſo in the yeere of our Lord, 1582. returne home with good newes, and glad tidings, not onely vnto vs the aduenturers in this voyage, but alſo to our whole Countrey, and nation, which God grant you may doe, Amen.

But if it happen that the land of Aſia from beyond the riuer Ob, extend it ſelfe Northwards to 80. degrees, or neerer the poole, whereby you finde it to leade you into that extremitie, that ſmall, or no hope may be looked for, to ſaile that waies to Cathay, doe you notwithſtanding followe the tracte of the ſame land, as farre as you can diſcouer this ſummer, hauing care to finde out by the way a conuenient place for you to winter in, the which (if you may diſcouer the ſame lande of Aſia this ſummer to extend it ſelfe to 80. degrees of latitude, and vpwards, or to 85. degrees) we wiſh then that the ſame your wintring place may be in the riuer of Ob, or as neere the ſame riuer as you can, and finding in ſuch wintering place people, be they Samoeds, Yowgorians, or Molgomzes, &c. do you gently entreat with them as aforeſaid, & if you can learne þ they haue a prince or chiefe Gouernour amongſt them, doe you deliuer him one of her Maieſties letters, and procure thereof anſwere accordingly: doe you procure to barter and exchange with the people, of the merchandiſe and commodities that you ſhall carie with you, for ſuch commodities as you ſhall finde them to haue, &c.

If you ſo happen to winter, we would haue you the next ſummer, to diſcouer into the riuer Ob, ſo farre as conueniently you may: And if you ſhall finde the ſame riuer (which is reported to be wide or broade) to be alſo nauigable and pleaſant for you, to trauell farre into, happely you may come to the Citie Siberia, or to ſome other towne or place, habited vpon or neere the border of it, and thereby haue liking to winter out the ſecond winter: vſe you therein your diſcretions.

But if you finde the ſaid riuer Ob, to be ſholde, or not ſuch as you may conueniently trauell in with your barkes, doe you then the next ſummer returne backe through Boroughs ſtreights: And from that part of Noua Zembla, adioyning to the ſame ſtreights, doe you come alongſt the tracke of that coaſt Weſtwards, keeping it on the ſtarboord ſide, and the ſame alwaies in ſight, if conueniently you may, vntill you come to Willoughbies land, if outwards bound, you ſhall not happen to diſcouer and trie whether the ſaid Willoughbies lande ioyne continent with the ſame Noua Zembla, or not. But if you ſhall then proue them to be one firme and continent, you may from Noua Zembla direct your courſe vnto the ſaid Willoughbies land, as you ſhall thinke good, and as you may moſt conuenently: and from Willoughbies land, you ſhall proceede Weſtwards alongſt the tract of it, (though it incline Northerly) euen ſo farre as you may or can trauell, hauing regard that in conuenient time you may returne home hither to London for wintering.

And for your orderly paſſing in this voyage, and making obſeruations in the ſame, we referre you to the inſtructions giuen by Maſter William Borough, whereof one copie is annexed vnto the firſt part of this indenture, vnder our ſeale, for you Arthur Pet, an other copie of it is annexed to the ſecond part of this indenture, vnder our ſeale alſo, for you Charles Iackman, and a third copie thereof is annexed vnto the third part of this indenture, remaining with vs the ſaid companie, ſealed and ſubſcribed by the ſaid Arthur Pet, and Charles Iackman.

And to the obſeruing of all things contained in this commiſſion. (ſo neere as God will permit me grace thereunto) I the ſaid Arthur Pet, doe couenant by theſe preſents, to perfoorme them, and euery part and parcell thereof. And I the ſaid Charles Iackman, doe for my part likewiſe couenant by theſe preſents to perfoorme the ſame, and euery part thereof, ſo neere as God will giue me grace thereunto.

And in witnes therof, theſe indentures were ſealed and deliuered accordingly, the day and yeere firſt aboue written. Thus the Lord God Almightie ſend you a proſperous voyage, with happie ſucceſſe, and ſafe returne, Amen.

Inſtructions

Instructions and notes very necessarie and needefull to be ob. serued, *in the purposed voyage for discouerie of Cathay Eastwards,*

by Arthur Pet, and Charles Iackman.

WHen you come to Orfordnesse, (if the winde doe serue you to goe a seaboord the sands) doe you set off from thence, and note the time diligently of your being against the said Nesse, turning then your glasse, whereby you intend to keepe your continuall watch, and appoint such course as you shall thinke good, according as the wind serueth you: and from that time forwards continually (if your ship be lose, vnder saile, a hull or trie) do you at the ende of euery 4. glasses at the least (except calme) sound with your dipsin lead, and note diligently what depth you finde, and also the ground. But if it happen by swiftnes of the shippes way, or otherwise, that you can not get ground, yet note what depth you did proue, and could finde no ground (this note is to be obserued all your voyage, as well outwards as homewards.) But when you come vpon any coast, or doe finde any sholde banke in the sea, you are then to vse your leade oftener, as you shall thinke it requisite, noting diligently the order of your depth, and the deeping and sholding. And so likewise doe you note the depthes into harboroughs, riuers, &c.

How to note downe in his Iornall of the voyage, his dead reckoning, and other obseruations.

And in keeping your dead reckoning, it is very necessarie that you doe note at the ende of euery 4. glasses, what way the shippe hath made (by your best proofes to be vsed) and howe her way hath bene through the water, considering withall for the sagge of the sea, to leewards, accordingly as you shall finde it growen: and also to note the depth, and what thinges worth the noting, happened in that time, with also the winde vpon what point you finde it then, and of what force, or strength it is, and what sailes you beare.

But if you should omit to note those things at the ende of euery 4. glasses, I would not haue you to let it slippe any longer time, then to note it diligently at the ende of euery watch, or 8. glasses at the farthest.

Doe you diligently obserue the latitude as often, and in as many places as you may possible, and also the variation of the compasse (especially when you may be at shoare vpon any lande) noting the same obseruations truely, and the place and places where, and the time and times when you doe the same.

For noting the shape and view of the land at first discouerie, &c.

When you come to haue sight of any coast or land whatsoeuer, doe you presently set the same with your sailing compasse, how it beares off you, noting your iudgement howe farre you thinke it from you, drawing also the forme of it in your booke, howe it appeares vnto you, noting diligently howe the highest, or notablest part thereof beareth off you, and the extreames also in sight of the same land at both endes, distinguishing them by letters, A. B. C. &c. Afterwards when you haue sailed 1. 2. 3. or 4. glasses (at the most) noting diligently what way you barke hath made, and vpon what point of the compasse doe you againe set that first land seene, or the partes thereof, that you first obserued, if you can well perceaue or discerne them, and likewise such other notable pointes or signes, vpon the land that you may then see, and could not perceaue at the first time, distinguishing it also by letters from the other, and drawing in your booke the shape of the same land, as it appeareth vnto you, and so the third time, &c.

And also in passing alongst by any and euery coast, doe you drawe the manner of biting in of euery Baye, and entrance of euery harborough or riuers mouth, with the lying out of euery point, or headland, (vnto the which you may giue apt names at your pleasure) and make some marke in drawing the forme and border of the same, where the high cliffs are, and where lowe lande is, whether sande, hils, or woods, or whatsoeuer, not omitting to note any thing that may be sensible and apparant to you, which may serue to any good purpose. If you carefully with great heede and diligence, note the obseruations in your booke, as aforesaid, and afterwards make demonstration thereof in your plat, you shall thereby perceaue how farre the land you first sawe, or the partes thereof obserued, was then from you, and consequently of all the rest: and also how farre the one part was from the other, and vpon what course or point of the compasse the one lieth from the other.

For obseruing of tides and currants.

And when you come vpon any coast where you find floods and ebs, doe you diligently note the time of the highest and lowest water in euery place, and the slake or still water of full sea, & lowe water, and also which way the flood doth runne, howe the tides doe set, howe much water it high, and what force the tide hath to driue a shippe in one howre, or in the whole tide, as neere as you can iudge it, and what difference in time you finde betweene the running of the floode, and the ebbe. And if you finde vpon any coast the currant to runne alwaies one way, doe you also note the same duely,

duly how it setteth in euery place, and obserue what force it hath to driue a shippe in one houre, &c.

Item, as often, and when as you may conueniently come vpon any land, to make obseruation for the latitude and variation, &c. do port also (if you may) with your instrument, for trying of distances, obserue the plat-forme of the place, and of as many things (worth the noting) as you may then conueniently see from time to time. These orders if you diligently obserue, you may thereby perfectly set downe in the plats, that I haue giuen you your whole trauell and description of your discouery, which is a thing that will be chiefly expected at your hands. But withall you may not forget to note as much as you can learne, vnderstande or perceiue, of the manner of the soile, or fruitfulnesse of euery place and country you shall come in, and of the maner, shape, attire and disposition of the people, and of the commodities they haue, and what they most couet and desire of the commodities you carrie with you. It behoueth you to giue trifling things vnto such people as you shall happen to see, and to offer them all curtesie and friendshippe you may or can, to winne their loue and fauour towards you, not doing or offering them any wrong or hurt. And though you should be offered wrong at their hands, yet not to reuenge the same lightly, but by all meanes possible seeke to winne them, yet alwayes dealing wisely and with such circumspection that you keepe your selues out of their dangers.

To take the plat-formes of places within compasse of view vpon land.

Thus I beseech God almighty to blesse you, and prosper your voyage with good and happie successe, and send you safely to returne home againe, to the great ioy and reioycing of the aduenturers with you, and of all your friends, and our whole countrie. Amen.

By M. W. Burrough.

Certaine briefe aduises, giuen by Master Dee, to Arthur Pet, *and Charles Iackman, to be obserued in their Northeasterne* discouerie, Anno 1580.

IF we reckon from Wardhouse to Colgoieue Iland 400 miles for almost 20 degrees difference onely of longitude very neere East & West, and about the latitude of 70 degrees and two third parts: From Colgoieue to Vaigats 200 miles for 10 degrees difference, only in longitude, at 70 degrees of latitude also: Frō Vaigats to the Promontorie Tabin 60 degrees difference of longitude (the whole course, or shortest distance being East and West) in the latitude likewise of 70 degrees, maketh 1200 miles: then is summa totalis frō Wardhouse to Tabin 600 leagues, or 1800 English miles. Therefore allowing in a discouery voyage for one day with another but 50 English miles, it is euident that from Wardhouse to Tabin, the course may be sailed easily in five and thirty dayes: but by Gods helpe it may be finished in much shorter time, both by helpe of wind prosperous, and light continuall for the time requisit thereunto.

When you are past Tabin, or come to the longitude of 142 degrees, as your chart sheweth, or two, three, foure, or fiue degrees further Easterly, it is probable you shall finde the land on your right hand runne much Southerly and East ward, in which course you are like either to fall into the mouth of the famous riuer Oechardes, or some other, which yet I coniecture to passe by the renowned citie of Cambalu, and the mouth to be in latitude about 50 or 52 degrees, and within 300 or 400 miles of Cambalu it selfe, being in the latitude about 45 degrees Southerly of the said riuers mouth, or els that you shall trend about the very Northerne and most Easterly point of all Asia, passing by the prouince Ania, and then in the latitude of 46 degrees, keeping still the land in view on your right hand (as neere as you may with safety) you may enter into Quinsay hauen being the chiefe city in the Northeren China, as I terme it for distinction sake, from the other better knowen.

M. Dee gaue them a chart of his owne making, which heere he refers them vnto.

And in or about either or both of these two warme places, you may to great good purpose be occupied the whole winter, after your arriuall in those quarters, as sometime by sea, sometime in notable fresh riuers, sometime in discreet view and noting downe the situation of the cities within land, &c. and euer assaying to come by some charts or mappes of the country, made and printed in Cathay or China, and by some of their bookes likewise for language, &c. You may also haue opportunity to saile ouer to Iapan Iland, where you shall finde Christian men, Iesuits, of many countries of Christendome some, and perhaps some Englishmen, at whose hands you may haue great instruction and aduise for your affayres in hand.

Notes in writing, besides more priuie by mouth, that were giuen by *M. Richard Hakluyt, of Eiton in the countie of Hereford, Esquire,* Anno 1580: To M. Arthur Pet, and to M. Charles Iackman, sent by the merchants of the Moscouie companie for the discouerie of the North-east straight, not altogether vnfit for some other enterprises of discouerie, hereafter to be taken in hand.

What respect of Islands is to be had, and why.

WHeras the Portingalles haue in their course to their Indies in the Southrall, certaine ports and fortifications to thrust into by the way, to diuers great purposes: so you are to see what Islandes, and what portes you had need to haue by the way in your course to the Northeast. For which cause I wish you to enter into consideration of the matter, & to note all the Islands, and to set them downe in plat, to two ends: that is to say, That we may deuise to take the benefit by them, And also foresee how by them the Sauages or ciuill Princes may in any sort annoy vs in our purposed trade that way.

And for that the people to the which we purpose in this voyage to go, be no Christians, it were good that the masse of our commodities were alwayes in our owne disposition, and not at the will of others. Therefore it were good that we did seeke out some small Island in the Scithian sea, where we might plant, fortifie, and staple safely, from whence (as time should serue) we might feed those heathen nations with our commodities without cloying them, or without venturing our whole masse in the bowels of their countrey.

And to which Island (if ueed were, & if we should thinke so good) we might allure the Northeast nauie, the nauie of Cambalu to resort with their commodities to vs there planted, & stapling there.

And if such an Island might be found so standing as might shorten our course, and so standing, as that the nauie of Cambalu, or other those parties might conueniently saile vnto without their dislike in respect of distance, then would it fall out well. For so, besides lesse danger, and more safetie, our ships might there vnlade and lade againe, and returne the selfe same summer to the ports of England or of Norway.

And if such an Island may be for the stapling of our commodities, to the which they of Cambalu would not saile, yet we might, hauing shippes there, imploy them in passing betweene Cambalu and that stapling place.

Respect of hauens and harbarowes.

AND if no such Islands may be found in the Scithian sea toward the firme of Asia, then may you to search out the ports that be about Noua Zembla, all along the tract of that land, to the end you may winter there the first yeere, if you be let by contrarie windes, and to the end that we may in short time come into Cambalu, and vnlade and set saile againe for returne without venturing, there at Cambalu, that you may on your way come as farre in returne as a port about Noua Zembla: that the summer following, you may the sooner be in England for the more speedy vent of your East commodities, and for the speedyer discharge of your mariners: if you can not go forward and backe in one selfe same summer.

And touching the tract of the land of Noua Zembla, toward the East out of the circle Arctic in the more temperate zone, you are to haue regard: for if you finde the soile planted with people, it is like that in time an ample vent of our warme woollen clothes may be found. And if there be no people at all there to be found, then you shall speciallie note what plentie of whales, and of other fish is to be found there, to the end we may turne our new found land fishing or Island fishing or our whalefishing that way, for the ayd and comfort of our new trades to the Northeast to the coasts of Asia.

Respect of fish and certaine other things.

AND if the ayre may be found vpon that tract temperate, and the soile yeelding wood, warrland and grasse, and the seas fish, then we may plant on that maine the offals of our people, as the Portingalles do in Brasill, & so they may in our fishing in our passage, and diuers wayes yeeld commoditie to England by harbouring and victualling vs.

And

And it may be, that the inland there may yeeld masts, pitch, tarre, hempe, and all things for the nauie, as plentifully as Estland doth.

The Islands to be noted with their commodities and wants.

TO note the Islands, whether they be hie land or low land, mountaine, or flat, grauelly, clay, chalkie, or of what soile, woody or not woody, with springs and riuers or not, and what wilde beasts they haue in the same.

And whether there seeme to be in the same apt matter to build withall, as stone free or rough, and stone to make lime withall, and wood or coale to burne the same withall.

To note the goodnesse or the badnesse of the hauens and harborowes in the Islands.

If a straight be found what is to be done, and what *great importance it may be of.*

AND if there be a straight in the passage into the Scithian seas, the same is specially and with great regard to be noted, especially if the same straight be narrow and to be kept. I say it is to be noted as a thing that doth much import: for what prince soeuer shall be Lord of the same, & shall possesse the same, as the king of Denmarke doth possesse the straight of Denmarke, he onely shall haue the trade out of these regions into the Northeast parts of the world for himselfe, and for his priuate profit, or for his subiects only, or to enioy woonderfull benefit of the toll of the same, like as the king of Denmarke doth enioy of his straightes, by suffering the merchantes of other Princes to passe that way. If any such straight be found, the elcuation, the high or lowe land, the hauens neere, the length of the straightes, and all other such circumstances are to be set downe for many purposes: and all the mariners in the voyage are to be sworne to keepe close all such things, that other Princes preuent vs not of the same, after our returne vpon the disclosing of the mariners, if any such thing should hap.

Which way the Sauage may be made able to purchase our *cloth and other their wants.*

IF you finde any Island or maine land populous, and that the same people hath neede of cloth, then are you to deuise what commodities they haue to purchase the same withall.

If they be poore, then are you to consider of the soile, and how by any possibilitie the same may be made to inrich them, that hereafter they may haue something to purchase the cloth withall.

If you enter into any maine by portable riuer, and shall finde any great woods, you are to note what kinde of timber they be of: that we may know whether they are for pitch, tarre, masts, dealeboord, clapboord, or for building of ships or houses, for so if the people haue no vse of them they may be bought perhaps to vse.

Not to venture the losse of any one man.

YOu must haue great care to preserue your people, since your number is so small, and not to venture any one man in any wise.

To bring home besides merchandize certaine trifles.

BRing home with you (if you may) from Cambalu, or other ciuil place, one or other young man, although you leaue one for him.

Also the fruites of the countries, if they will not of themselues dure, vse them, and so preserue them.

And bring with you the cornels of peares and apples, and the stones of such stone fruits as you shall finde there.

Also the seeds of all strange herbs and flowres, for such seeds of fruits and herbs comming from another part of the world, and so farre off, will delight the fancie of many, for the strangenesse & for that the same may grow and continue the delight long time.

If you arriue at Cambalu or Quinsay, to bring thence the mappe of that country, for so shall you haue the perfect description which is to great purpose.

To bring thence some old printed booke, to see whether they haue had print there, before it was deuised in Europe, as some write.

To note their force by sea and by land.

If you arriue in Cambalu or Quinsay, to take a speciall view of their Nauie, and to note the force, greatnesse, maner of building of them, the sailes, the tackles, the ankers, the furniture of them, with ordinance, armor, and munition.

Also, to note the force of the walles and bulwarks of their cities, their ordinance, and whether they haue any caliuers, and what powder and shot.

To note what armor they haue.

What swoords.

What pikes, halberts, and billes.

What horses of force, and what light horses they haue.

And so throughout, to note the force of the countrey both by sea and by land.

Things to be marked to make coniectures by.

TO take speciall note of their buildings, and of the ornaments of their houses within.

Take a speciall note of their apparell and furniture, and of the substance that the same is made of, of which a merchant may make a gesse, as well of their commoditie, as also of their wants.

To note their shoppes and warehouses, and with what commodities they abound, the principalia.

To see their shambles, and to view all such things as are brought into the markets, for so you shall soone see the commodities, and the maner of the people of the inland, and so giue a gesse of many things.

To note their fields of graine, and their trees of fruit, and how they abound or not abound in one and other, and what plentie or scarcitie of fish they haue.

Things to be carried with you, whereof more or lesse is to be *carried for a shew of our commodities to be made.*

KArsies of all orient coulers, specially of stamell, broade cloth of orient coulers also.

Frizadoes, motlyes, Bustow frizes, Spanish blankets, bayes of all coulers, specially with stamell, woorsteds, carels, sayes, woadmols, flanels, rash, &c.

Felts of diuers coulers.

Taffeta hats.

Deepe cappes for mariners coulered in stamell, whereof if ample vent may be found, it would turne to an infinite commoditie of the common poore people by knitting.

Quilted cappes of Leuant taffeta of diuers coulers, for the night.

Knit stocks of silke of orient coulers.

Knit stocks of Jerzie yerne of orient coulers, whereof if ample vent might follow the poore multitude should be set in worke.

Stocks of karsie of diuers coulers for men and for women.

Garters of silke of seuerall kindes, and of coulers diuers.

Girdles of Buffe, and all other leather, with gilt and vngilt buckles, specially waste girdles, waste girdles of veluet.

Gloues of all sorts, knit, and of leather.

Gloues perfumed.

Paints of all sorts of silke, threed, and leather, of all maner of coulers.

Shooes of Spanish leather, of diuers coulers, of diuers lengths, cut and vncut.

Shooes of other leather.

Veluet shooes and pantophles.

These shooes and pantophles to be sent this time, rather for a show then for any other vse.

Purses knit, and of leather.

Night cappes knit, and other.

A garnish of pewter, for a show of a vent of that English commoditie, bottles, flagons, spoons, &c. of that mettall.

Glasses of English making.

Venice glasses.

Looking glasses for women, great and fayre.

Small

Small dials a few for proofe, although there they will not hold the order they do heere.
Spectacles of the common sort.
Others of Cristall trimmed with siluer, and otherwise.
Powne glasses.
Combes of Iuorie.
Combes of Boxe.
Combes of Horne.
Linnen of diuers sorts.
Handkerchiffes with silke of seuerall coulers wrought.
Glazen eyes to ride with against dust.
Knives in sheathes, both single and double, of good edge.
Needles great and small of euery kinde.
Buttons greater and smaller, with moulds of leather and not of wood, and such as be durable of double silke, and that of sundrie coulers.
Boxes with weights of golde, and of euery kinde of the coine of golde, good and badde, to shew that the people heere vse weight & measure, which is a certeine shew of wisedome, and of a certaine gouernement setled heere.
All the seuerall siluer coines of our English monyes, to be carried with you to be shewed to the gouernours at Cambalu, which is a thing that shall in silence speake to wise men more, then you imagine.
Locks and keyes, hinges, boltes, haspes, &c. great and small of excellent workemanship, wherevnto vent may be, hereafter we shall set our subiectes in worke, which you must haue in great regard. For in finding ample vent of any thing that is to be wrought in this realme, is more worth to our people besides the gaine of the merchant, then Christchurch, Bridewell, the Sauoy, and all the Hospitals of England.

For banketing on shipboord persons of credit.

FIrst the sweetest perfumes to set vnder hatches to make the place sweet against their comming aboord, if you arriue at Cambalu, Quinsey, or in any such great citie and not among Sauages.
Marmelade.
Sucket.
Figges barrelled.
Reisens of the sunne.
Comfets of diuers kindes, made of purpose by him that is most excellent, that shall not dissolue.
Prunes damaske.
Dryed peares.
Walnuts.
Almonds.
Smalnuts.
Olives to make them taste their wine.
The apple John that dureth two yeeres to make shew of our fruits.
Pullocke.
Sacke.
Vials of good sweet waters, and casting bottles of glasses to besprinkle the guests withall, after their comming aboord.
Suger, to vse with their wine, if they will.
The sweet oyle of Sántie, and excellent French vineger, and a fine kinde of Bisket liked in the same doe make a banketting dish, and a little Suger cast in it cooleth and comforteth, and refresheth the spirits of man.

Cynamon water } is to be had with you to make a shew of by taste, and also to comfort your
Imperiall water } sicke in the voyage.

With these and such like, you may banket where you arriue the greater and best persons.
Or with the gift of these Marmelades in small boxes, or small vials of sweet waters you may preuaile by way of gift, or you may make a merchandize of them.

The mappe of England and of London.

Take with you the mappe of England set out in fayre coulers, one of the biggest sort I meane, to make shew of your countrey from whence you come.

And also the large mappe of London, to make shew of your citie. And let the riuer be drawne full of shippes of all sorts, to make the more shew of your great trade and traffike in trade of merchandize.

Ortelius booke of mappes.

If you take Ortelius booke of mappes with you, to marke all these regions, it were not amisse, and if need were, to present the same to the great Cam, for it would be to a Prince of marueilous account.

The booke of the attire of all nations.

Such a booke carried with you and bestowed in gift, would be much esteemed, as I perswade my selfe.

Bookes.

If any man will lend you the new Herball, and such bookes as make shew of herbes, plantes, trees, fishes, fowles and beastes of these regions, it may much delight the great Cam, and the nobilitie, and also theyr merchants to haue the view of them: for all things in these parties so much differing from the things of those regions, since they may not be here to see them, by meane of the distance, yet to see those things in a shadow, by this meane will delight them.

The booke of Rates.

TAke with you the booke of Rates, to the end you may pricke all those commodities there specified, that you shall chance to finde in Cambalu, in Quinsey, or in any part of the Cal, where you shall chance to be.

Parchment.

Rowles of Parchment, for that we may vent much without hurt to the Realme, and it lyes in small roome.

Glew.

To carrie Glew, for that we haue plentie, and want vent.

Red Oker for Painters.

To seeke vent because we haue great mines of it, and haue no vent.

Sope of both kindes.

To trie what vent it may haue, for that we make of both kindes, and may perhaps make more.

Saffron.

To trie what vent you may haue of Saffron, because this Realme yeelds the best of the world, and for the tillage and other labours, may set the poore greatlie in worke to their relief.

Aquauitæ.

By new deuises wonderfull quantities may be made heere, and therefore to seeke the vent.

Blacke Conie skinnes.

To trie the vent at Cambalu, for that it lyes towards the North, and for that we abound with the commoditie, and may spare it.

Three

Threed of all colours.

The vent thereof may set our people in worke.

Copper Spurres, and Hawkes bels.

To see the vent, for it may set our people in worke.

A note and a Caueat for the Merchant.

That before you offer your commodities to sale, you indeuour to learne what commodities the countrey there hath. For if you bring thither veluet, taffeta, spice, or any such commoditie that you your selfe desire to lade your selfe home with, you must not sell yours deare, least hereafter you purchase theirs not so cheape as you would.

Seedes for sale.

Carie with you for that purpose, all sortes of garden seedes, as well of sweete strawing herbes and of flowers, as also of pot herbes, and all sortes for rootes, &c.

Lead of the first melting.

Lead of the second melting of the slags.

To make triall of the vent of Lead of all kindes.

Englisth iron, and wier of iron and copper.

To trie the sale of the same.

Brimstone.

To trie the vent of the same, because we abound with it made in the Realme.

Anthimonie a minerall.

To see whether they haue any ample vse there for it, for that we may lade whole nauies of it, and haue no vse of it, vnlesse it be for some small portion in founding of bels, or a litle that the Alcumists vse of this you may haue two sortes at the Appoticaries.

Tinder boxes with Steele, Flint and matches, and Tinder, the matches to be made of Iuneper, to auoid the offence of Brimstone.

To trie and make the better sale of Brimstone by shewing the vse.
Candles of Waxe to light.

A painted Bellowes.

For that perhaps they haue not the vse of them.

A pot of cast iron.

To trie the sale, for that it is a naturall commoditie of this Realme.

All maner of edge tooles.

To be sold there or to the lesse ciuill people by the way where you shall touch.

What

What I would haue you there to remember.

To note specially what excellent dying they vse in these regions, and therfore to note their garments and ornaments of houses: and to see their die houses and the materials and simples that they vse about the same, and to bring musters and shewes of the colours and of the materials, for that it may serue this clothing realme to great purpose.

To take with you for your owne vse.

All maner of engines to take fish and foule.

To take with you those things that be in perfection of goodnesse.

For as the goodnesse now at the first may make your commodities in credite in time to come: So false and sophisticate commodities shall drawe you and all your commodities into contempt and ill opinion.

The discouerie made by M. Arthur Pet, and M. Charles Iackman,

of the Northeast parts, beyond the Island of Vaigats, with two Barkes: the one called the George, the other the William, in the yeere 1580.

Written by Hugh Smith.

May. Vpon Munday the 30. of May, we departed from Harwich in the afternoone, the wind being at South, and to the Eastward. The ebbe being spent we could not double the poole, and therefore were constrained to put in againe vntill the next day in the morning, being the last of May: which day wee waied our ankers about 3. a clocke in the morning, the wind being West southwest. The same day we passed Orfordnesse at an East Sunne, and Stamford at a West Sunne, and Yarmouth at a West northwest sunne, and so to Winterton where we did anker all night: it was then calme, and the flood was come.

June. The next day being the first of June, we set saile at 3. a clock in the morning, and set our course North, the wind at the Southwest, and at Southsouthwest.

The 2. day of June by my dead reckoning, I was 40. leagues from Winterton due North.

The 3. day the wind was at the West southwest, and at 12. a clocke by my reckoning I was 70. leagues North from Winterton. The same day I did obserue the sunne, where I found the pole to be eleuated aboue the Horizon, 56. deg. 70. minutes. This day in the afternoone at 6. of the clocke the wind came to the South and by West with a very good gale.

The 4. day about 6. of the clocke in the morning, the winde came to the Southeast with raine and foule weather, and after to the East southeast, the same night it brake vp very faire weather.

The 5. day in the morning at 4. or 5. of the clocke, the wind came into the West northwest, and to the Northwest: the same day I did find the pole to bee eleuated 58. deg. 23. minutes. This day about 3. in the afternoone, the wind with a faire and gentle gale came to the South, and so did continue till the next day in the morning.

The 6. day about 5. in the morning, the wind came to the Southeast, and to the East southeast, with a very cruell storme all the same day. And about 3. in the afternoone we lost the company of the William, in the night the weather came very faire.

The 7. day was faire, the wind being at South by East. This day I did find the pole to be eleuated, 60. deg. 58. minutes: this day and all night it was very calme.

The 8. day at 10. of the clocke, the wind came to the Southwest for the space of 2. howers, & then grew calme for 3. howers. Then the winde came to the North, and to North northeast, and so did continue vntill the next day.

The 9. day the wind being at the North northeast, we did lie East and by North.

The 10. day about one of the clocke in the afternoone, we put into Norway to a place where one of the headlands of the sound is called Bottel: the other headland is called Boile. There is also an Island called Kene. Here I did find the pole to be eleuated 62. deg. it doeth flowe there South, and it hieth 7. or 8. foote not aboute.

Kene an Island of Norway.

The 11. day in the morning the wind came to the South & to the Southeast: the same day at 6. in the afternoone we set saile, & bare along the coast: it was very foule weather with raine & fog.

The

The 12. day about 8. in the morning, the wind came to the Southwest, and to the West southwest, and so did continue the same night.

The 13. day I did find the pole to be eleuated, 64. degrees, 3. minutes. The same day the winde was at West southwest.

The 14. day the wind came to the Southwest about 12. of the clocke with raine and fogge.

The 15. day the wind Southwest, and this day I found the pole eleuated, 66. deg. 50. minutes, in the after noone we had very much raine, and fowle weather.

The 16. day we did fall with Faire Nesse.

The 17. day the wind came to the South, and to the South Southeast with raine and fogge. We ranne along the coast North northeast, and by North.

This day in the afternoone the wind came North with very much wind, and we did lie a head for the space of 8. howers.

The 18. day about 5. in the morning, the wind came to the West and by North, and to the West and then we set saile, and set our course Northeast. This day we did find the pole eleuated, 69. deg. 36. minutes.

The 19. day the wind at West, and West and by North, faire weather with some showers, wee hald along the coast Northeast, and Northeast and by East, and East northeast.

The 20. day we had very faire weather, the wind at South, and South by East. so that we hald along the coast East & by North, the weather was very close, so that we could not obserue ỳ sunne.

The 21. day was very calme till about 11. of the clocke, at which time the wind came West and West southwest, with some raine, the same night was faire.

The 22. day the wind being at West, we did hall the coast East northeast, and East. The same day at 6. in the morning, we did double the north Cape. About 3. in the afternoone we past Skites beare nesse, and hald along the coast East, and East southeast, and all the same night wee halled Southeast, and Southeast by East. The north Cape doubled.

The 23. day about 3. in the morning we came to Wardhouse, the wind at the Northwest. The cause of our comming in, was to seeke the William, whose companie we lost the 6. day of this moneth, and to send letters into England. About one of the clocke in the afternoone the William also came into Wardhouse to vs in good safetie, and all her company in good health. Wardhouse.

The 24. the wind came to the East northeast. This day the William was hald a ground, because she was some what leake, and to mend her steerage. This night about 12. of the clocke, shee did hale a flote againe.

The 25. day the wind was at East northeast.

The 26. day the Tobie of Harwich departed from Wardhouse for London, Thomas Greene being master, to whom we deliuered our letters.

The 27. day the wind was at South southeast, and the 28. also.

The 29. day about 6. in the afternoone, the wind came to the West northwest for the space of one hower, and presently to the East againe, and so was variable all the same night,

The 30. about sixe in the morning, the wind came to East southeast, and continued so all the same day.

The first of July about 5. in the afternoone, the wind was at North northwest: and about 7. of the clocke we set saile from Wardhouse East and by South. July.

The second day about 5. in the morning, the wind was East, and East southeast, and we did lie to the shoreward. And about 10. in the morning, the wind came to South southeast, and we laid it to the Eastward: sometime we lay East by South, sometime East southeast, and sometimes East by North. About 5. in the afternoone we bare with the William, who was willing to goe with Kegor, because we thought her to bee out of trim, and sailed very ill, where we might mend her steerage: whereupon master Pet not willing to goe into harborough, said to master Iackman, that if he thought himselfe not able to keepe the sea, he should doe as he thought best, and that he in the meane time would beare with Willoughbies land, for that it was a parcell of our direction, and would meet him at Veroue Ostroue, or Vaigats, and so we set our course East northeast, the wind being at Southeast. Willoughbies land.

The 3. day the wind at Southeast we found the pole to be eleuated 70. degrees, 46. minutes. The same night at 12. of the clocke we sounded, but had no ground, in 120. fadomes, being fiftie leagues from the one side by our reckoning East northeast from Kegor. 50. leagues from Kegor.

The 4. day all the morning was calme. This day we found the pole to be eleuated, 71. degrees 38. minutes. This day at 9. in the afternoone the wind at Northeast with a gentle gale, wee hald along Southeast by East.

The

The 5. day the wind at Northwest, we hald East and East by South: this day we saw land, but we could not make it, the wind being Northerly, so that we could not come neere to it.

The 6. day about 2. in the afternoone, the wind at North northwest, we hald East southeast with a faire and gentle gale: this day we met with ice. About 6. in the afternoone it became calme: we with saile and oares laid it to the Northeast part, hoping that way to cleare vs of it: for that way we did see the head part of it, as we thought. Which done, about 12. of the clocke at night wee do thinke it to be ice of the baie of S. Nicholas, but it was not as we found afterwards.

A sight of perfect land.

The 7. day we met with more ice, at the East part of the other ice: we hald a long a weather the ice to finde some ende thereof by East northeast. This day there appeared more land North from vs being perfect land: the ice was betweene vs and it, so that wee could not come neere to it.

The same morning at sixe of the clocke, we put into the ice to find some way through it, we continued in it all the same day and all the night, following the winde by the North Northwest. Wee were constrained to goe many pointes of our compasse, but wee went most an Eastlie course.

The eight day the wind at North northwest, wee continued our course, and at fiue in the morning we sounded, and had 90. fadoms red oase. This day at 4. in the afternoone wee sounded againe, & had 84. fadomes ose, as before. At sixe in the afternoone wee cleared our selues of the ice, and hald along Southeast by South: we sounded againe at 10. a clocke at night, and had 43. fadoms sandie oase.

The 9. day at two in the morning, we sounded agayne, and had 45. fadomes, then there appeared a shadow of land to vs East Northeast, and so we tanne with it the space of two howers, and then perceiuing that it was but fogge, we hald along Southeast.

This day at 2. in the afternoone we sounded and had 50. fadomes blacke oase. Our latitude was 70. degrees 3. minutes. At ten a clocke at night we sounded againe, and had fiftie fadoms blacke oase.

The tenth day the wind being at North northwest, we hailed East and by North, which course we set, because at ten of the clocke afore noone we did see land, and then wee sounded hauing 35. fadomes blacke oase. All this day there was a great fogge, so that wee durst not beare with the land to make it, and so we kept an outwardly course. This day at 6. in the afternoone wee espied land, wherewith we hailed, and then it grew calme: we sounded and had 120. fadoms blacke oase: and then we sent our boat a land to sound and prooue the land. The same night we came with our ship within an Island, where we rode all the same night. The same night wee went into a bait to ride neere the land for wood and water.

An Island.

The 11. day the wind came to the East southeast: this day about a league from vs to the Eastwards, we saw a very faire sound or riuer that past very farre into the countrey with 2. or 3. branches with an Island in the midst.

The maine land.

The 12. of July the wind was East Southeast. This day about 11. a clocke in the morning, there came a great white beare downe to the water side, and tooke the water of his owne armes, we chased him with our boate, but for all that we could doe, he got to land and escaped from vs, where we named the baie Bearebaie. This day at 7. in the afternoone we set saile, for wee had good hope that the wind would come Westerly, and with saile and oares we gate the sea. All the night it was calme with fogge.

Beare baie.

The 13. day in the morning the wind was very variable with fogge, and as it cleared vp we met with great store of ice, which at the first shewed like land. This ice did vs much trouble, and the more because of the fogge which continued in this ice vntill the 14. day, 12. of the clocke.

The 14. day in the morning we were imbaied with ice, that we were constrained to come out as we went in, which was by great good fortune, or rather by the goodnesse of God, otherwise it had bene impossible, and at 12. of the clocke we were cleare of it, the wind being at South and South by West. The same day we found the pole to be eleuated, 70. degrees, 26. minutes: we lay aboard the coast Northwest, thinking it to be an Island, but finding no end in rowing so long, wee supposed it to be the maine of Noua Zembla. About 2. in the afternoone wee laid it to the Southward to double the ice, which we could not doe vpon that boord, so that wee cast about againe and lay West along vnder the ice. About 7. in the afternoone we got about the greatest part thereof. About 11. a clocke at night we brought the ice Southeast of vs, and thus we were rid of this trouble at this time.

The supposed maine of Noua Zembla.

The 15. day about 3. in the morning, the wind was at South southwest: we cast about and lay to the Eastwards, the wind did Wester, so that we lay South southwest with a flawne sheet,

an

and so we ran all the same day. About 8. in the after noone we sounded, and had 23. fadoms small grey sand. This night at twelue of the clocke we sounded againe, and had 29. fadomes sand, as afore.

The 16. day vnto 3. in the morning we held along East Southeast, where we found 18. fadoms red sand, then we held along Northeast. In these soundings wee had many ouerfals. This day at 10. of the clocke wee met with more ice, which was very great, so that wee could not tell which way to get cleare of it. Then the wind came to the South Southeast, so that we lay to the Northwards. We thought that way to cleare our selues of it, but that way we had more ice. About 6. in the afternoone, the wind came to the East. Then wee lay to the Southwards that wee had 30. fadoms blacke oase. This day we found the pole to be eleuated, 69. deg. 40. minutes, and this night at 12. of the clocke, we had 41. fadoms red sand. Many ouerfals.

The 17. day at 3. in the morning, we had 12. fadoms. At 9. we had 8. and 7. all this day we ran South and South by West, at the depth aforesaid, red sand, being but shallow water. At eight in the afternoone, the wind with a shower and thunder came to the Southwest, and then wee ranne East northeast. At 12. at night it came to the South and by East, and all this was in the baie of Pechora. The baie of Pechora.

The 18. day at 7. in the morning we bare with the head land of the baie, where we found two Ilands. There are also ouerfals of water or tides. We went betweene the maine and the Iland, next to the head, where we had about 2. fadoms and a halfe. We found the pole eleuated, 69. deg. 13 minutes. This day we had sight of Vaigats: the land of the maine of Pechora did trend Southeast, we held East southeast, and had 10. fadoms oase all the same day vntill 4. in the afternoone, then being calme, we ankered in 10. fadoms all the same night.

The 19. day at two in the morning, we set saile, and ranne South and South southwest all the same day, at 8. 7. and 6. fadoms, this was off the South part of Vaigats: this part of the land lieth North and South. This day at 4. in the afternoone we found shallow water, sometime foure fadoms, sometime 3. and 2. and a halfe, and one fadome and a halfe, there wee ankered and sent our boat away to sound, and all to lee ward we had 4. foote and 3. foote, and 2. foote, there was not water for the boate betweene Vaigats and the other side: finding no more water, there was no other way but to goe backe as we came in, hauing the winde Northwest, so at twelue at night we set saile.

The 20. day we plied to the Northwards, and got deepe water againe 6. and 7. fadoms.

The 21. day the wind by the Northwest, we held along the coast North and North northwest, we had 8. and 9. and 10. fadoms.

The 22. day the winde came to the Southwest, wee bare along the coast of Vaigats, as wee found it to lie North and by West, and North northwest, and North. The wind blew very much with great fogge, we lacking water and wood bare within an Iland where we found great store of wood and water, there were 3. or 4. goodly sounds. Vnder two points there was a crosse set vp, and a man buried at the foote of it. Vpon the said crosse master Pet did graue his name with the date of our Lorde, and likewise vpon a stone at the foote of the crosse, and so did I also, to the end that if the William did chaunce to come thither, they might haue knowledge that wee had bene there. At eight in the afternoone the winde came to the North northwest, wee set saile and turned out of the baie. The same night the winde came to the West, so that we lay North along the land. An Iland hauing store of wood & water

The 23. day at fiue in the morning, the wind came to the Southwest, a sea boord wee sawe a great number of faire Ilands, to the number of sixe: a sea boord of these Ilands, there are many great ouerfals, as great streames or tides: wee held Northeast and East northeast as the lande did trend. At eight afternoone the winde came to the Southeast with very much wind, raine and fogge, and very great store of ice a sea boord: so we lay to the Southwest to attaine to one of the Ilands to harbour vs if the weather did so extremely continue, and to take in our boate, thinking it meete so to doe, and not to tow her in such weather. About twelue of the clocke it became very calme vpon the sudden, and came vp to the West Northwest, and Northwest by West, and then we tooke in our boate, and this done, there came downe so much wind, as we were not able to steere afore it, with coyle and bonets of each, we held South with the land, for so the land did trend. This day all the afternoone we sailed vnder a great land of ice, we sailed betweene the land and it, being not able to crosse it. About twelue at night wee found the ice to stretch into the land, that we could not get cleare to the Eastward, so wee laid it to the shore, and there we found it cleere hard aboord the shore, and we found also a very faire Iland which makes a very good harbour, and within are 12. fadoms. 6. faire Ilands

This

An Iland to the East of Vaigats, 4. or 5. leagues.

This Iland is to the Eastward of Vaigats, 4. or 5. leagues. This land of the maine doth trend Southeast, and Southeast by East. It is a very faire coast, and euen and plaine, and not full of mountains nor rockes: you haue but shallow water of 6. or 7. fadomes, about a league from the shore, all this morning we hailed East southeast. This day we found the pole to be eleuated 69 degrees, 14. minutes. About 12. a clocke wee were constrained to put into the ice to seeke some way to get to the Northwards of it, hoping to haue some cleare passage that way, but there was nothing but whole ice. About nine in the afternoone we had sight of the William, and when we sawe her, there was a great land of ice betweene her and vs, so that we could not come one to the other, but as we came neere to her, we founded our trumpet and shot off two muskets, and she put out her flag vpon her foretopmaste in token that she did see vs: all this time wee did shorten our sailes, and went with our foresaile and maine etopsaile, seeking the best way through the broken ice, she making away the best that she could to follow vs, we put out our flagge to answer her againe with the like: thus wee continued all the afternoone till about 12. a clocke at night, and then we moued our ship to a piece of ice to tary for the William.

The William and the George meete againe.

The 25. day about fiue in the morning, the William came to vs, being both glad of our meeting. The William had her sterne post broken, that the rudder did hang cleane besides the sterne, so that she could in no wise poize her helme, with all hands she did lighten her sterne, and trimme her head, and whē we had brought her forward all that we could, we brought a cable vnder her sterne, and with our capstaine did winde vp her sterne, and so we made it as well as the place would giue vs leaue, and in the ende we brought her to steere againe. We acknowledge this our meeting to be a great benefite of God for our mutuall comfort, and so gaue his maiestie thanks for it. All the night after we tooke our rest being made fast vpon a piece of ice: the wind was at West North west, but wee were so inclosed with ice that wee could not tell which way to passe. Windes we haue had at will, but ice and fogge too much against our wils, if it had pleased the Lorde Otherwise.

The 26. day the wind was at West Northwest: we set saile to the Northwardes, to seeke if we could finde any way cleare to passe to the Eastward, but the further wee went that way, the more and thicker was the ice, so that wee could goe no further. So about foure in the afternoone we were constrained to moze vpon another piece of ice. I thinke we sailed in all a league this day, here we had 15. fadomes oase, and this oase is all the chanell ouer. All the same day after foure of the clocke, and all the night we taried there, being without all good hope, but rather in despaire. This day master Jugman did see land East Northeast from vs, as hee did thinke, whether it were land or no, I cannot tell well, but it was very like land, but the fogges hath many times deceiued vs.

The 27. day the winde was at Northwest. This day at nine in the morning wee set sayle to seeke the shore. Further into the ice we could not goe, and at seuen in the afternoone wee moored to a piece of ice, and the William with vs, here we had 14. fadomes oase. At 3. in the afternoone we warpt from one ice to another. At 9. in the afternoone we moued againe to a piece of ice vntill the next day. All this night it did snow with much wind, being at West Northwest, and at North west, and by West.

The 28. day the winde came to the Southwest, and South southwest: this day was a very faire day. At one in the afternoone master Pet, and master Jackman did conferre together what was best to be done considering that the windes were good for vs, and we not able to passe by it, they did agree to seeke to the land againe, and so to Vaigats, and there to conferre further. At 2. in the afternoone we did warpe from one piece of ice to another, to get from them if it were possible: here were pieces of ice so great, that we could not see beyond them out of the toppe. Thus we warped vntill 9. in the afternoone, and then wee moued both our ships to a great and high piece of ice, vntill the next morning.

Their returne.

The nine and twentie day the winde came to the Southwest, wee set saile at fiue in the morning to plie into the shore if it were possible, wee made many turnes among the ice to small purpose, for with the wind doeth the currant runne. This day by misfortune a piece of ice stroke of our greepe afore at two afore noone, yet for all this wee turned to doe our best. The William being incombred with ice, and perceiuing that she did little good, tooke in all her sailes, and made her selfe fast to a piece of ice, and about foure in the afternoone she set saile to follow vs. Wee were afraid that she had taken some hurt, but she was well. At seuen afore noone we tooke in all our sailes to tarie for the William, and made our ship fast to a piece of ice: the William before she came to vs tooke in all her sailes, and moored to another piece of ice, and thus we continued vntill the next morning.

The currant runneth with the wind.

The

The 30. day the winde at Southeast, and by South, and at 9. in the morning we set saile, and sooner would haue done if ꝑ William had bene by vs, but we did tarrie for her to know whether all was well with her: But as soone as we made saile, she did the like. All this day wee did our best to seeke our way as the yce would giue vs leaue, sometime we lay South, sometime West, and sometime East, and thus we continued vntill eight at night, and then being calme, wee made our shippe fast to a piece of yce, and went to supper. In the meane time the winde with a faire gentle gale, came vp to the East, and East and by South, but there came downe a showre of raine with it, which continued the space of one houre: Which being done, it became calme againe, so that we could doe no good all that night, but tooke our rest vntill the next day.

The 31. the winde being at Southwest, wee set saile to turne to windeward at three a clocke in the morning. In this turning wee did litle good, for the currant would not giue vs leaue. For as the winde is, so is the currant. Wee did our best vntill tenne of the clocke, and then perceiuing that wee did no good, and being inclosed with yce, wee made our shippes fast to a piece of yce; All this day the William lay still, and did as much good as we, that did labour all the forenoone. Thus wee tooke our rest all the same day.

In the afternoone wee set saile the winde being at South and by East, wee lay to the Westwards, as Southwest, and Southwest, and by South, and sometime to the Westward as wee might. Thus we continued vntill nine at night, and then we could goe no further for yce; so wee with the William were constrained to make our shippe fast to a piece of yce all the same night. This day wee founde the pole eleuated 69. degrees 20. minutes, and here wee had 17. fathoms oze.

The first day of August was very calme in the morning, the winde being at West Northwest. About twelue the winde came to the West, and continued so all the same night with great fogge. August.

The 2. day the winde was at Southwest all day, with raine and fogge. All this day we were inclosed with yce, so that wee were forced to lie still. Here wee had 21. fathoms oze. At fiue in the afternoone the winde was at West with very much foule weather, and so continued all the same night.

The three day the winde was at West, and West by North, and West Northwest, this day we lay still inclosed with yce, the weather being darke with fogge: thus abiding the Lords leasure, we continued with patience, And sounding we found 21. fathoms.

The 4. day wee laye still inclosed with yce, the winde being at West Northwest: this yce did euery day increase vpon vs, yet putting our trust in God, wee hoped to be deliuered out of it in good time.

The fift day all the morning, it rained with very much winde, being at South Southeast: about 3. in the afternoone wee set saile, and presently it became calme for the space of one houre, then the winde came to the North Northeast, and here we had 33. fathoms: thus we made way among the yce Southwest, and Southsouthwest, & West, as we might finde our way for the space of 3. houres: then we met with a whole land of yce, so that we could goe no further: here we moored our ship to tarrie for a further opening. Here wee found 45. fathoms oze, and all the night was very darke with fogge.

The 6. day hauing no opening of the yce, wee lay still the winde being at West and West by South: here we had 63. fathoms oze: all the same night the winde was at the West Northwest.

The 7. day the winde was at West, and West and by North all day. And all this day we lay still being inclosed with yce, that we could not stirre, labouring onely to defend the yce as it came vpon vs. Here we had 68. fathoms oze.

The 8. day was very faire & calme but foggie. This day towards night there was litle winde by the South Southwest: then the yce began a litle to open, and here we had 70. fathoms oze, all the night was foggie.

The 9. day the winde was at Northwest, and by West, all the afternoone we lay still because of the yce, which did still inclose vs. This day wee founde the pole eleuated 70. degrees 4. minutes, we had 63. fathoms oze: this night was a very faire night, but it freesed: in the morning we had much a doe to goe through the same: and wee were in doubt that if it should haue freesed so much the night following, we should hardly haue passed out of it. This night there was one starre that appeared to vs. 70. degr. 4. min. The appearing of the starres, signe of winter.

The 10. day the winde was at East Northeast with a very small gale. Wee with saile and oares made way through the yce: about fiue in the morning wee set saile: sometime wee laye Southwest, and sometime South, and sometime West, as wee might best finde the way.

About 7. in the afternoone the gale began to fresh: about 6. in the afternoone the winde was at Northeast with fogge. Here we had 88. fathoms: we bare saile all the same night, and it snowed very much.

The 11. day we were much troubled with yce, and by great force wee made our way through it, which wee thought a thing impossible, but extremitie doeth cause men to doe much, and in the weakenesse of man Gods strength most appeareth. This day wee had 95. fathoms. At three in the afternoone the winde came to the Southwest, wee were forced to make our shippe fast to a piece of yce, for wee were inclosed with it, and tarried the Lordes leasure. This night wee had 97. fathoms.

The 12. day the winde was at the Southeast not very much but in a maner calme: at eleuen of the clocke the winde came to the West Southwest: all the day was very darke with snowe and fogge. At 6. in the afternoone we set saile the winde being at the North northeast: all this night we bare away Southwest, and Southsouthwest, as well and as neere as the yce would giue vs leaue: all this night we found the yce somewhat fauourable to vs, more then it was before, whereupon we stood in good hope to get out of it.

The 13. day at 7. in the morning, the winde was at the Northeast, and Northeast and by East: all this day we were much troubled with the yce, for with a blowe against a piece of yce, we brake the stocke of our ancre, and many other great blowes we had against the yce, that it was marueilous that the shippe was able to abide them: the side of our boate was broken with our shippe which did recule backe, the boate being betwixt a great piece of yce, and the shippe, and it perished the head of our rudder. This day was a very harde day with vs: at night wee founde much broken yce, and all this night it blewe very much winde, so that wee laye in drift with the yce, and our drift was South, for the winde was at North al this night, and we had great store of snowe.

The 14. day in the morning wee made our shippe fast to a piece of yce, and let her drine with it. In the meane time wee mended our boate and our steerage: all this day the winde continued Northerly, and here wee had three score and two fathoms. Thus we lay a drift all the same night.

The 15. day wee set saile at 6. in the morning, the winde being at Northeast. At 9. afore noone wee entred into a cleare sea without yce, whereof wee were most glad, and not without great cause, and gaue God the praise. Wee had 19. fathoms water, and ranne in Southwest all the morning vntill we came to 14. fathoms, and thence we hailed West, till we came to 10. fathoms, and then we went Northwest, for so the lande doeth trende; At 12. of the clocke wee had sight of the lande, which wee might haue had sooner, but it was darke and foggie all the same day: for when wee had sight of the lande, wee were not passing three leagues from it. This day wee had the pole eleuated 69. degrees 49. minutes. All day wee ranne along the coast in 10. and 9. fathoms, pepered sande. It is a very goodly coast and a bolde, and faire soundings off it, without sands or rocks.

69. deg. 49. min.

They are thwart against Waigats.

The 16. day the winde was at East: this day wee were troubled againe with yce, but wee made great shift with it: for we gotte betweene the shoare and it. This day at twelue of the clocke wee were thwart of the Southeast part of Vaigats, all along which part there was great store of yce, so that wee stoode in doubt of passage, yet by much adoe wee got betwixt the shoare and it: about 6. in the afternoone was founde a great white beare vpon a piece of yce: all this day in the afternoone it was darke with fogge. And all night wee hailed North and North by West, and sometime North and by East, for so doeth the land trend.

Hands.

The 17. day in the morning wee hailed West, for so doeth the lande lye. The winde was at Southeast, and it was very darke with fogge, and in running along the shoare wee felt a ground,

The Islands.

but God bee praised without hurt, for wee came presently off againe: The William came to an ancre to stay for vs, and sent some of their men to helpe vs, but before they came wee were vnder saile, and as wee came to the William wee did stowe our boates, and made saile, wee were within some of the Islands, and hailed West Southwest.

About two of the clocke in the afternoone, wee set our course Southwest and by South: so we ranne Southwest vntill twelue at night, that the winde came to the North Northeast, and then we hailed West.

The 18. day at 6. in the morning wee had 16. fathoms redde sand: at 9. in the morning 15. fathoms. At 10. 14. fathoms, and we hailed West Northwest. At 12. a clocke the winde came to the East, and East by South, we hailed West and by North all the same day, and night. At 6. in the afternoone we had 17. fathoms red sand.

The

The 19. day the winde was at East Northeast: at 6. in the morning wee had 19. fathoms red sand: at 12. of the clocke the winde blew North and North by East, we had 17. fathoms water, at 3. in the afternoone 15.

The 20. day the winde was at Northeast, and North Northeast: at 7. in the morning wee had 30. fathoms blacke oze: at twelue of the clocke wee were vpon the suddaine in shoale water, among great sands, and could finde no way out. By sounding and seeking about, wee came a ground, and so did the William, but we had no hurt, for the winde was off the shoare, and the same night it was calme: all night we did our best, but we could not haue her a flote. These shoales do lye off Colgoyeue: it is very flat a great way off, and it doeth not high aboue 2. or 3. foote water, it floweth Northeast, and Southwest. Shoales off Colgoyeue.

The 21. day the winde was at Southwest, and being very faire weather wee did lighten our shippes as much as was possible for vs to doe, by reason of the place. The same high water by the helpe of God we got both a flote, and the winde being at the Southwest did helpe vs, for it caused it to flowe the more water.

This day wee found the pole to be elcuated 68. degrees 40. min. In the afternoone wee both set saile to seeke way to get out of these sands, our boate a head sounding, hauing 6. 7. and 8. fathoms all within the sand which was without vs. We bare to the Southwarde, and the William bare more to the Eastwards, and night being at hande the winde came to the Southeast, whereupon we layde it to the Southwards, lying Southwest, and South & by West, and ranne to 19. and 12. and 14. fathoms, & presently we had but 6. fathoms, which was off the sands head, which wee were a ground vpon the day before. Then we cast about to the Eastwards for deepe water, which we presently had, as 10. 15. and 20. and so to 23. fathoms.

The 22. day at 8. in the morning, wee cast about to the Southward, and this day in the morning we saw the William vnder our lee as farre as wee could see her, and with a great fogge we lost the sight of her, and since wee haue not seene her. Thus we ranne till we came to thirtie fathoms blacke oze, which wee had at twelue of the clocke, and at three in the afternoone wee had twentie and three fathoms, and then wee ranne West Northwest, and West by North all the same night following. They lost the William here, where she perished.

The 23. day we had at 6. in the morning 27. fathoms, at 8. a clocke 28. fathoms: at 9. the winde being at East Southeast, wee hailed West Northwest: this day wee had sight of the lande of Hugri side. At twelue of the clocke we had 32. fathoms sande. This day wee ranne West and by North, and came to fiue fathoms off the bay of Morzouets. Then wee layde it to the Northwards, so that wee lay North Northeast off. The winde after came to the North, and North by East, and we lay East, and East by North, then we layd it to the Westward againe: and thus we lay till we came to 40. fathoms, and then we went Northwest till we came to 14. fathoms, and so to 10. fathoms. Then wee cast about to the Eastwards and lay East, and East by North all the same night. The land of Yugri. The bay of Morzouets.

The 24. day at 8. in the morning we had 32. fathoms. We ranne Northwest til we came to 11. fathoms, then we lay to the Northwards til 12. at night, and then wee came to 40. fathoms, then the winde at Northeast we lay to the Westwards, and hailed Northwest along.

The 25. at 4. in the morning wee had 37. fathoms, wee ranne Northwest, the winde at Northeast very much.

The 26. day we ran with the same winde, and found the pole to be elcuated 70. deg. 40. min.

The 27. at 7. in the morning we saw land, which we made to be Kegor, then we hailed Northwest, and North by West to double the North Cape.

The 28. day at 3. in the morning we ran Northwest, and so all day. At night the winde came to the Southwest, and we ran Northwest all that night.

The 29. day we put into a sound called Tane, and the towne is called Hungon: wee came to an anker at 5. in the afternoone, at 25. fathoms very faire sand. This sound is very large and good, and the same night we got water aboord. The towne of Hungon.

The 30. day in the morning the winde at Northeast, and but little, wee set saile, and with our boate a head we got the sea about 12. of the clocke: the winde with a faire gale came to the East Southeast, and all this day and night we ran West Northwest.

The 31. day at 12. of the clocke we doubled the North Cape, the winde being at East Southeast, we hailed West all the same day, and at night we ran West Southwest. They double the North Cape in their returne.

The 1. day of September the winde was at Northeast with very much fogge: all this day wee ranne West Southwest: at 2. in the afternoone the winde came North.

The second day at 3. in the morning we doubled Fowlnesse, & the winde was this day variable

at all parts of the Compasse. In the afternoone we made but litle way: at 6. a clocke the winde came to the Southwest, and wee went Northwest. At 9. in the night there came downe so much winde by the West Southwest, that we were faine to lay it a hull, we hald it to Northwardes in the space of 2. houres, and then we layd her head to the Southwards, and at the breake of day wee saw land, which is very high, and is called by the men of the Countrey Fowlnesse. It is within ful of small Ilands, and without full of rocks very farre out, and within the rockes you haue faire sand at 20. fathoms.

Fowlnesse.

The 3. day in the morning we bare with the sounde aforesaid: Within it is but shoale water, 4. 5. and 3. fathoms, sandie ground, the land is very high, and the Church that is seene is called Helike Kirke. It doeth high here not aboue 8. or 9. foote.

The 4. day was reasonable weather, the winde at South southwest.

The 5. 6. and 7. dayes very foule weather, with great and vehement blasts of raine, and happy was the shippe that was then in harbour.

The 8. day the winde was at West by North, and reasonable weather.

The 9. day at 12. of the clocke we set saile, and at 3. in the afternoone we cleared our selues of the land, and then we hald West Southwest, with a good stiffe gale all day and night. We found the pole eleuated 69. degrees 20. minutes.

The 11. day the winde was at Northeast all the forenoone, the afternoone was calme, and all the night, and we found the pole eleuated 68. deg. 16. min.

Lowfoote.

The 12. day at 3. in the afternoone, wee put into a sounde by Lowfoote, where it doeth flowe Southwest, and by South, and doeth high 7. or 8. foote water.

The 13. day much winde at West: wee had a ledge of rockes in the winde of vs, but the roade was reasonable good for all Southerly and Westerly windes. Wee had the maine land in the winde of vs: this day was stormie with raine.

The 14. day the winde was South, and Southwest reasonable weather.

The 15. day was windie and raynie at West Southwest.

The 16. day very foule weather, with raine and fogge.

The 17. day at 3. of the clocke we were cleare of the lande, and wee hailed Southwest all the same night.

The 18. day we kept the same course. And found the pole eleuated, 66. degr. 30. min.

The 19. day the pole was eleuated to vs 64. degr. 50. min. We haild this day South by East, and so likewise all night.

The 20. day at 4. in the morning the winde was at East, at 6. after we had light of lande: this day the pole was eleuated to vs 63. degr. 30. min. the night was calme, and the winde variable vpon all points of the Compasse.

The 21. day the winde was at the Southeast all the forenoone: all the afternoone at the south southwest, and all the same night variable with raine.

The 22. day the winde was at the South, all the after noone was calme, and so was all the night.

The sounde of Romesall.

The 23. day at 4. of the clocke in ꝑ afternoone we put into Norway, into a sound called Romesall, where it floweth South Southeast, and doeth high 8. foote water: this place is full of lowe Ilands, and many good sounds without the high mountaine land. Here is great store of wood growing, as firre, birche, oke, and hasell: all this night the winde was at the South, very much winde, with raine and fogge.

The 24. day was like vnto it.

The 25. 26. and 27. we had very much winde with great and stormie blasts.

The 28. day in the morning the winde being at East Northeast we set saile at 8. of the clocke, and hailed out of the bay West Southwest, and South west, hauing a goodly gale vntill one of the clocke, and then the winde came to the Southeast, and to the South with raine, and fogge, and very much winde: at 6. of the clocke wee came into a very good rode, where wee did ride all the same night in good safetie.

The 29. day wee put into a good sounde, the winde by the Southwest: at three in the afternoone there came downe very much winde by the South, and all night, with vehement blasts and raine.

The 30. day all day the winde was at West Southwest. And in this sound the pole is elevated 63. degr. 10. min.

October.

The first day of October the winde was at South with very much winde, & vehement blasts.

The 7. day wee set saile: for from the first of this moneth vntill this 7. day, wee had very foule

weather

weather, but specially the fourth day when the winde was so great, that our cables brake with the very stoyme, and I do not thinke that it is possible that any more winde then that was should blow: for after the breaking of our cable, we did driue a league before our ancres would take any holde: but God be thanked the stoyme began to slacke, otherwise we had bene in ill case.

The 7. day at night we came to an ancre vntil the next day, which was the 8. day of the moneth, when as the winde grew great againe, with raine, whereupon wee set saile and returned into the sound againe: and at our first comming to an ancre, presently there blew so much winde, that although our best ancre was out, yet the extremitie of the stoyme droue vs vpon a ledge of rocks, and did hurte our ship in such sort, that we were cõstrained to lighten her to saue her, & by this meanes (by the helpe of God) we got off our ship and stopped our leakes, and moared her in good safetie abiding for a winde. We rid from this day by reason of contrary winds, with fogge and raine vntil the 14. day, which day in the morning the winde came to the Northeast, and at 8. of the clocke wee set saile. This sound is called Moore sound, where it higheth about 7. foote water, and floweth South southeast. The next day being the 15. day wee put into a sounde which is called Vtar sound, where was a shippe of the king of Denmarke put into another sound there by, being two leagues to the southwards of vs, that came out of Island: the winde was contrary for vs at south-South west. Moze sound.

The 12. day of November we set saile the winde being at the East Southeast, and past through the sound where the kings ship did lie: which sound is called Sloure sound. But as wee did open the sound, we found the winde at the Southwest, so that we could doe no good, so that we moared our ship betweene 2. Islands vntil the 18. day, and then the weather being faire and calme, wee set saile, & went to sea hoping to finde a faire wind, but in the sea we found the wind at the southwest, and south southwest, so that we were constrained to returne into the same sound.

The nert day being the 19. the kings ship came out also, because she saw vs put to sea, and came as farre out as we, and moared where we did moare afore: And at our returne backe againe, wee moared our ship in an vtter sound called Scorpe sound, because the kings ship was without victuals, and we did not greatly desire her companie, although they desired ours. In this sound the pole is elevated 62. degr. 47. min.

Thus we lay still for a winde vntill the 1. of December, which day we set saile at 6. a clocke in the morning, and at 4. in the afternoone we layde it to the inwards.

The 3. day at three in the morning, there arose so much winde, that we could beare but our foresaile. The 4. day was calme weather, so was the 5. but wee were leake, and it was as much as we were able to doe, to free our ship, the leake was so great, and yet we pumped euery halfe glasse.

The 5. day we brought a Bonnet vnder her forefoote basted with Occam, which did stop much of our leake.

The 6. day the winde was at Southeast, the 7. day at Southsoutheast.

The 8. day was calme with litle winde Northerly.

The 9. day we had sight of the coast of Scotland which was Bowsamnesse.

The 10. day we were open off the Frith.

The 11. day at 4. in the morning we were thwart of Barwike: at 6. wee were thwart of Bamburghe: the same day at 10. at night we were shot as farre as Hollyfoote. Then the winde came to the South and Southeast. so that we laye still vntill the nert day in the morning, and then we were constrained to put with Tinmouth. The same day at night we halled a ground to stoppe a leake, which we found to be in the skarfe afore. The winde continued by the Southeast & southsoutheast vntill the 20. day, and then we set saile about 12. at night, bearing along the coast.

The 22. day by reason of a Southeast winde, we thought we should haue bene put into Humber, but the wind came to the West, so that we haled Southeast: and at 3. in the afternoone we halled a sea boord the sands, and had shoale water off Lymery and Owry, and were in 4. fathoms off them. The nert day we hald as we might to sease Orfordnesse.

The 24. day we came thwart of the Nase, about 8. in the morning.

The 25. day being the Natiuitie of Christ, we came to an ancre betweene Old hauen, and Tilbery hope. The same day we turned as high as Horsbet.

The 26. day wee turned as high as Ratcliffe, and praised God for our safe returne. And thus I ende, 1580.

The 2. iournal of M. Arthur Pet and M. Charles Iackman in *their discouerie Northeastward in the yeere 1580. VVrit-* ten by Nicholas Chanceller, which was in the aforesaid discouerie: with two barkes, the one called the William, the other the George.

The iournal beginneth from Wardhouse.

FRiday the 1. of July about 5. in the afternoone, the winde came to the North Northwest. About 7. a clocke in the afternoone we set saile from Wardhouse: our course was East and by South, And as we were waying our ancres preparing to depart, I Nicholas Chanceller was sent by M. Pet aboord the William to M. Charles Iackman, to deliuer him a note in writing as followeth.

Vorousko Ostroue an high Iland.

M. Iackman, M. Pet determineth to direct his course East and by South, if the winde will serue thereto: and if wee should chaunce to loose companie, you shall heare of vs at Vorousko Ostroue not farre off Vaygats: it is an high piked Iland. If there be any Russes there you shall receiue a letter of them: if there bee none, then you shall finde a letter vpon the highest part of the Southeast side thereof vnder a warle or heape of stones. The Lorde blesse vs in these our affaires. At the roade of Wardhouse the last of June 1580. The Iland of Vorousko standeth North Northeast of the Southwest part of Vaigats, and is foure or fiue leagues distant from Vaigats.

The 2. day about 5. in the morning the winde came to the East, and East southeast, & we bare in the shorewards, and about ten a clocke the winde came to Southsoutheast, & wee bare to the Eastwards, sometime we lay East and by south, sometime East and East & by North. About 5. in the afternoone we bare with the William, she was willing to go with Kegor. The cause was (as we did thinke) that she was out of her trimme, and sailed very ill, & therefore would mend her stirrage. Whereupon M. Pet, not willing himselfe to go into Kegor, said to M. Iackman that he would goe East & by north to discouer Willoughbies land, for that it was a parcel of our direction, & so would meete with him at Vorousko or Vaigats. And so we departed & set our course East Northeast, the winde being at southeast. The 3. day we had the wind at Southeast. This day we found the pole elevated 70. degrees, 46. min. The winde changed to south & by East. At 12. a clocke at night we sounded and had no ground at 120. fathoms, we being 50. leagues frō Kekor by our reckoning.

He called because in his iournal which was found in his ship after his death was found mention that he had seene such a coast.

The 4. day all the morning was very calme. This day we found the pole to be elevated 71. degrees, 31. min. At nine in the euening the winde came to the Northeast with a gentle gale: we haled along Southeast and by East.

The North land discouered.

The 5. day the wind Northnortheast, we haled East, and East and by south. This day we did see land, but we could not make it perfit, the winde being so Northerly that we could not come neere to it. The 6. day about 2. in the afternoone the winde North Northwest, we haled East southeast with a faire gentle gale. This day we met with yce. About 6. in the afternoone it became calme, and we with saile and oares layed it to the Northeast, hoping that way to cleare our selues of the yce, and about 12. at night we gate cleare of it. We supposed it had bene yce of S. Nicholas bay, but it was not as we afterward found it.

Part of the North land againe discouered.

The 7. day we met with more yce being the Easter part of the other yce: wee haled along the weather part thereof to finde ende of it East northeast. This day we saw land North from vs, being very desirous to haue had more knowledge thereof: but extreemitie of yce kept vs backe there frō contrary to our desire. We were inforced by the said yce, which we found to lye a long the said land to go through it with much trauaile, wherein we continued all the day and night following.

The 8. day the wind being at Northwest, we were troubled all the day with the aforesaid yce. At 5. in the morning we sounded, & had 90. fathoms red oze: at 4. in ꝑ afternoone we soūded againe and had as before. At 6. in the afternoone we gate cleare off the yce, with going South southeast, and Southeast, whereof we were very glad. Wee had sailed in the said yce 40. or 50. leagues as we esteeme it: for we had a fine winde, and bare all our sailes. Wee haled along Southeast and sounded at 10. at night, and had 45. fathoms sandie oze.

The 9. at 2. in the morning we sounded and had 45. fathoms. There appeared to vs a shadow of land East Northeast, and so we ranne with it for the space of 2. houres, and then perceiuing that it was but a fogge we haled along Southeast. At 2. in the afternoone we sounded and had 50. fathoms blacke oze. The same day our latitude was 70. degrees 3. min. At nine a clocke at night we sounded againe, and had 50. fathoms blacke oze.

The 10. the wind at North northwest, we haled East & by North. We did set this course for the

ten of the clocke at afternoone, we had sight of land, which we thought to haue bene Morzouets: but afterward we found it to be Colgoycue by the soundings: and then we sounded, and had 53. fathoms blacke oaze. Presently there fell a great fogge, wherefore we durst not beare with the land, to make it: and so we kept an outwardly course, which drawe vs to Noua Zembla. At sixe in the afternoone, we had sight of the land againe, and bare with it: afterward the wind dulled, and was very calme: we sounded and had 120. fathoms blacke oaze: we sent also our boate on land, to sound and proue the land, and we came with our shippe within an Island, where wee roade all the same night.

Colgoyeue Island.

Noua Zembla.

Our men arriue at Noua Zembla.

The 11. day in the morning, we went into a Baye to ride, to prouide vs wood and water.

The 12. day, the wind at Southeast, about 11. of the clocke, there came downe a great white Beare, to the water side, and tooke the water of his owne accord. We chased him with our boate, but for all that we could doe, he gate to land, and scaped from vs. At 7. in the afternoone, we being furnished with wood and water, did set saile, for that we hoped the wind would come Westerly, and with sailes and oares we gate to the sea: al the night it was calme with fogge. This lande aforesaid is Noua Zembla.

A great white Beare.

Wood and water taken vpon Noua Zembla.

The 13. in the morning, the wind was very variable with fogge, and as it cleered vp, we met with great store of yce, which shewed to vs at the first like land. It did put vs to great trouble, and much the more for the fogge: we continued in it all the day, and all the night following.

Yce.

The 14. day in the morning, we were inclosed with the aforesaid yce, so that wee were constrained to goe out the same way that we came in: which fortuned to vs by the prouidence of God, otherwise it had bene vnpossible. For when we were almost inclosed with mightie great landes of yce, and could not perceaue any way out, being partly in despaire of getting out, but there to perish: it pleased God to turne the wind, which made way through the yce, and caried vs cleere of it: by 12. of the clocke at noone, the wind came to the South, and South and by West. This day we founde the pole eleuated 70. degrees, 26. minutes. We laide it along the coaste Northwest. By the lying of it wee found it to be Noua Zembla. About 2. of the clocke in the afternoone, wee laid it to the Southward, to double the yce, but we could not vpon that boyd: so we cast about againe, and laye West along vnder the yce. About seuen in the afternoone, wee gate about the greatest part of the said yce, and at 11. at night, we brought the yce Southeast of vs, and so were we cleere of the trouble of it.

The 15. day, about three in the morning, the wind South Southwest, we cast about, and lay to the Eastwards: as we lay to Southeast, the wind did wester, so that we lay South Southeast, with a slawnd sheate, and so we ranne all the day. About eight in the euening, we sounded, and had 23. fathoms small sand. At one at night we sounded againe, and had 29. fathoms sande, as before.

Saturday the 16. at three in the morning, we haled along East Southeast, where we founde 18. fathoms red sand: then we haled along Northeast. In these soundings wee had many ouerfals, at 10. of the clocke before noone, yce which was very great, so that we could not tel which way to cleere our selues thereof. The wind came to the South Southeast, so that we laye to the Northwards: we thought that way to cleere our selues of it, but we met with more yce. About 6. in the afternoone, the wind came East, then we lay to the Southwards: we sounded and had 30. fathoms blacke oaze. This day we found the pole eleuated 69. degrees, 40. minuts. At 12. at night, we sounded, and had 42. fathoms red sand.

Sunday the 17. at three in the morning, we had 12. fathoms, and at 9. in the morning, we had 8. and 7. fathoms. All this day we ranne South and South, and by West. At this depth aforesaid, we had red sand. All this way we had but sholled water. At 8. in the afternoone, the winde with a shower and thunder, came to the South west, and then we ranne East Southeast. All this was in the Baye of Pechora.

The Bay of Pechora.

Sunday the 18. at 7. in the morning, we had sight of the head land of the Northest side of Pechora, where we found 2. Islands, the Wester side of them lieth North Northwest, and South Southeast. There is a long point or lande on the Easter side, whereupon standeth an heape of crosses: it lieth off the West side Southwest, and Northeast, and of the Easter side it falleth south Southeast, and is a great Baye, wherein we sawe no land, sauing Vaigats, which lay Northeast from vs. The Nother point of the said headland, and the Souther point of the Island, lie due East and West, and is not past a mile distant from the other. And there are two fathoms and an halfe water betweene them. And when we had gotten past the said Islands, within Vaigats it was calme: whereupon we ankered in 8. or 9. fathoms water. The Masters mind was much to goe with Vaigats, for that we sawe no land to the Southwards, and had bene much troubled with yce,

Vaigats Island.

More.

On

on Noua Zembla side.

They arriue at Vaigats.

The 19. day, at two in the morning, we set saile, and ranne South, and South southwest all the same day, in 8. 7. 6. fathoms. This was the South part of Vaigats. This part of the land lyeth South and North. At 4. in the afternoone, we found sholde water, sometime 4. fathoms, sometime 3. and 2. and one and a halfe, and then ankered, and sent our boate away to sound, and all to leewards, we had but 4. and 3. foote: there was not water ynough for our boate, betweene Vaigats, and the other side; and finding no more water, there was no other way for vs, but to get backe againe as we came in. And hauing the wind at northwest, at 12. of the clocke at night, we set saile, and turned out. The Southside of Vaigats hath two Islands, which are very sholde. The Southside of Vaigats is a very faire and a greene land.

The Southside of Vaigats a faire land.

The 20. day, we plied to the Northwards, and got deeper water, at 6. and 7. fathoms.

The 21. day, the wind northwest, we turned about the coast north, and north northwest, and had 8. 9. and 10. fathoms.

Friday the 22. at a South sunne, we ankered in a Baye of the West side of Vaigats, betweene two Islands, and there furnished our selues with wood and water, supposing it had bene Vorousko Ostroue, and here sent for our consorte, according to appointment, where wee found a goodly harbour, with Russes crosses at eche side, and many Islands scant to be numbred, with faire baies,

* Note.

"to the northwards: and at a northwest sunne we waied, and turned out, and by a north northeast sunne we doubled the Westermost land, and found the land to trend much to the Eastward, where we found many faire Islands, and many ouer falls in the offing (or putting off.) Note, that wee went within none of the Islands.

Saturday the 23. we had the wind at southwest, with thicke weather, which afterward cleered vp to the southeast very much winde and thicke: wherupon we cast about to the Westwards, meaning to lease the land, but we could not, for that it was much wind, and a growen Sea. So we were put off againe, till we were among the yce, which forced vs to cast about againe, and afterward we had the wind larged to the West southwest, and we had faire weather, and small water: then we scoured our boate, which we towed 5. daies before. Then it increased presently a great and extreame gale of wind to the northwest: so we tooke in our maine saile, and went with our foresaile, and about a north northwest sunne, I suppose we were thwart the southeast ende of Vaigats, hauing a great land of yce to the sea boord of vs, which also afterward did growe on head of vs, and so troubled vs, that it caused vs to pipe to the shoare, where we thought we saw an Iland, which chanced to be a faire Island, lying halfe a mile from the shoare, and a mile in length, and halfe a mile ouer. To the northwest of it lieth a point a mile off, and betweene them a Baye, and to the southeast three leagues of riseth as it were a faire Cape like to beach: the maine, is ouen and trendeth Southeast and Northwest. There goeth a good tide betweene the Island and the maine.

A faire Cape.

A good tide.

Sunday the 24. we had the elevation of the pole at 69. degrees, 4. minuts. At a West and by South sunne, we passed by a great arme, or a baye, which had two head lands: and being ouer against it, foure leagues from the shoare, wee sounded, and had 10. fathoms, and oazie sande: at a northwest and by north sunne, we had sight of the William. All this day we bare along the shoare, being continually among the yce: and at a north and by West sunne, we bare north and by East, to the seaboord, seeking to be cleere of the yce. After that, we had sight of the William, we bare off to the sea wards, meaning to cleere our selues of the yce: and for that the yce grew thicker, we tooke in our sailes, at a northeast sunne.

A great Baye with two head lands.

Munday the 25. we ankered with our grapnell vpon a peece of yce, to tary for the William, to speake with her, fearing that we should be incloled, and not able to come together, to speake one with another. We are as we esteeme, from the southeast part of the aforesaide Cape, which we esteeme like beach, to the southeast part of the riuer or Baye, which wee passed the 24. daye, 25. leagues, and from the maine 6. or 7. leagues, where we continued all the day and night, to mend the Williams falle sterne poste, which was broken with the yce, the foure and twentieth day.

Tuesday the 26. we continued at the aforesaid yce, till a Southwest and by South sunne, and went north and by East, to seeke to cleere vs of the yce, being enuironed therewith, the wind being West northwest, and sailed 4. miles, and then had no way: so we came to anker at a peece of yce, at a West and by south sunne.

Wensday the 27. we put off from the yce, where wee roade at a Southeast and by East sound, and sayled three or foure howres to the Southwards towards the lande, and then roade at an Iland againe, till we had dined, and after we haled along the yce, to the landward, till a Northwest

Sunne,

same, and then the fogge came vpon vs, whereby we could goe no further that night: so we anchored there all that night. It did snowe all that night, and blewe much wind at West Northwest. Fogge. Snowe.

This euening, Master Iackman, and George Sparrowe, came aboord the George, to conferre together with vs, where they determined concerning our matters in hande, for the proceeding or returne of this our voyage: where Master Pet, and Master Iackman both, were very willing in this their determination, to doe for the best aduantage, and profite of the company. This to conclude was the generall voice of Master Pet, Master Iackman, Hugh Smith, George Sparrowe, and me Nicholas Chanceler. First we laid before our eies, the cause of our let present, which was the innumerable quantitie of yce, with the hugenes thereof: and not onely that, but also the vnlike diminishing of the said yce, the summer being so farre spent, & further the snowe falling with the frost gathered vpon the same, is an augmenter vnto the yce, and no diminisher vnto the same. And further we finde that no currant runneth here, to be a disperser of the said yce, and no sea goeth here to dissolue it to water. We haue had in the meane time very faire windes, sufficient to haue passed the furthermost land, extending North, according to the estimate of those that gaue vs instructions of this said voyage. This also we finde by proofe of trauell, that the farther we runne of to the sea, to get the maine Ocean, the thicker we finde the yce, and small hope of a cleere sea. All these things duely considered, our determination is, to seeke by all meanes to get to the shoare, hoping there to get some cleere, to get to Vaigats, and there to conferre further, as time and place shall giue occasion. The George the chiefe ship. They resolue to returne.

Thursday the 28. at noone, all we aforesaid, meeting together aboord the George, agreed and made full determination of the premisses aforesaid: and at 3. in the afternoone, we warped from one peece of yce to another, to get from them, if it were possible: wee continued in warping from yce to yce, till nine at night, then we moored both our barkes to a great peece of yce, all that night.

Friday the 29. the winde at Southwest, at fiue in the morning, wee set saile to plye into the shoare, if we might possible attaine thereto: we made many a turne, but to small purpose. At two in the afternoone, by misfortune, hitting a great peece of yce, we brake off our grepe before: yet nevertheless we did our endeuour in turning. The William encombred with yce, and pestered, doing little good, tooke in al her sailes, and made fast to a peece of yce: howbeit the perceauing that we continued still turning vp and downe, about 4. in the afternoone did set saile to followe vs. At 7. in the afternoone, we tooke in our sailes, and made fast to a peece of yce, to carry for the William: the perceauing that we stroke saile, did the like, and made fast to a peece of yce, a league and better from vs.

Saturday the 30. the wind being at Southeast, and by South, at a Southeast sunne, we set saile, and would sooner haue done, but that we taried for the William, to haue knowen in what state they were, because they came not to vs ouer night: but they moued not, till they saw we vs begin: thus we continued all the day, seeking our best way, as the yce would permit vs: sometime we went South, sometime East, sometime West, continuing thus till eight at night, the winde waxing calme, we moored to a peece of yce, and there staied till the next day.

The 31. at three in the morning, we set saile, the winde being Southwest, to turne to windewards, wherein we did little good: for the current was against vs: for as the winde is, so setteth the current: neuertheless we did our best, vntill 10. of the clocke, and then perceauing that wee got nothing, and also being inclosed with yce, we made fast to a peece of yce. All this day the William stoode still, and did as much good as we that laboured all the forenoone. The wind comming to the South and by East, in the afternoone we set saile, and lay Southwest, and Southwest and by South, and sometime to the Westwards, as we might, till nine at night, and then could passe no farther for the yce: so we and the William made fast to a peece of yce. This day the eleuation of the pole was 69. degrees, 20. minuts. We had 87. fathoms water, and oaze. a Current.

August.

The first day, the winde being calme, about 12. the winde came to the West, with a great fogge.

The 2. the wind at Southwest, with raine and fogge all day, wee were inclosed so with yce, that we could not stirre. In the afternoone the wind came to the West, with much foule weather, and continued all night.

The third day, the wind at West, and West and by North, and West Northwest, all the day darke with fogge: we continued all day and all night inclosed in the yce, thus abiding the Lords leisure, beseeching him to strengthen vs with patience and faith in him. Here we had 21. fathoms.

The

The 4. day, we continued inclosed with yce, which increased more and more vpon vs.

The 5. day, all the morning faire, with much wind, at South and South southeast, and South east. The said wind a little separating the yce, made vs some way: at a South west sunne we set saile, and suddenly it became calme for the space of an howre: then the winde came to the North north east: we made way through the yce, as we could finde passage betweene them for the space of three howres: then we met with an whole land of yce, that wee could passe no further for it: so we made our ships fast to it, and roade by it all the night, which was very darke with fogge.

The 6. we lay still all the day and night, inclosed with yce.

The 7. we continued still so inclosed with yce, that we could not stirre, but defend the yce from the ships side, as it came grating vpon vs.

The 8. day, very faire and calme, but a fogge towards night: the winde came to the South southeast a prctie gale, which did a little cause the yce to open: all the night was fogge. Here we had 70. fathoms water.

The 9. the wind North west and by West, and all the afternoone West south west: we lay still, for that we were still inclosed with yce: the eleuation of the pole was 70. degrees.

Frost. we sounded and had 68. fathoms oaze. It did freese so hard in the night, that in the morning we had much adoe to passe through it. If we had continued there, and it had frosen the next night, we should hardly haue gotten out of it.

The 10. day, about 5. in the morning, wee set saile, the winde at East northeast, a very small gale, with our boate a head to wing vs, and breaking the yce with their oares, which had frosen the night before. Sometime we lay South west, sometime West, as we might best finde way. About 6. in the afternoone, the wind came to Northeast with fogge, yet we bare saile all the night. Here

Snowe. we sounded, and had 88. fathoms. There fell much snowe in the night.

The 11. day, we were much troubled with yce, so that wee were constrained to beare forcibly through it, in such sort, that it may be thought impossible for such small barkes to passe it, but extremitie causeth men to doe much. About noone we sounded, and had 95. fathoms. At three in the afternoone, the wind came to the South west, and we being inclosed with much yce, were constrained to take in all our sailes, and to ride by a peece of yce. The 12. in the morning, the wind South east, in manner calme. At 2. in the afternoone, the wind at South south west: all the day darke

Snowe. with fogge and snowe. At 6. in the afternoone, the winde being north northeast, we set saile, and went all night South west, and South south west, as neere as the yce would giue vs leaue: we found the yce more fauourable to vs then we did before, hoping to get cleere of it.

The 13. the wind at northeast, & northeast and by east. At 7. in the morning we brake an anker stocke, being vpon the boowe of our ship, with a blow which we had against a peece of yce. All this day we were very much troubled with yce, & had so many great blowes against them, that it was maruell that the ship was able to abide them: also the ship giuing backe, bare the boate to a perr of yce, & brake her side, the boate being thwart her sterne, & with the same blow perished the head of our rudder. This was a very hard day with vs. At night we came among much broken yce, and the wind did blowe very much at north, which caused the yce to driue: wee draue with it, for our

Much snowe. drift was South. All the night it did snowe very much. The 14. day, in the morning, we moored our ship fast to a peece of yce, & did driue with it, the wind being northerly. In the meane time we mended our boate, and the head of our rudder: so we continued all the day and night in drift.

The 15. day, the wind at northeast, we set saile at 6. in the morning, bearing through the yce, & at 9. at night, we entred into a cleere sea, at which sight our hearts did greatly reioyce, as the bird

A cleere sea. which was escaped out of ỳ cage, wherein she was kept long as prisoner. At this time we sounded, & had 19. fathoms. We ran in south west al ỳ morning, til we came to 14. fathoms: then we haled West, til we came to 10. fathoms: then we went north west, for so the land trendeth. At noone we had sight of the land, being within three leagues of it: we might haue seene it sooner, if the fogge had not bene. This day we had ỳ pole eleuated 69. degrees, 49. minuts: we kept along the coast in 10. & 9. fathoms. The shore along is euen & faire sounding of it without sholds of sands or rocks.

The 16. day, the wind East, we were troubled againe with yce, but we made great shift with it: for we gate betweene the shoare and it. At noone we were thwart the south part of Vaigats, where we found great store of yce all alongst it, which made vs doubt of passage through it: yet with much trouble we gate betweene the shoare and it. All the afternoone was a fogge. At 6. of

A white beare. the clocke, we found a great white Beare vpon a peece of yce. All the night we haled North, and north and by East, and sometimes East, for so doeth the land trende. The 17. day the wind Southeast in the morning, wee haled along West, for so the lande doeth runne, it being darke with fogge, and we running too neere the shoare, our shippe was on ground: but, God be praised, we

we gate no hurt: for it being flood, we came off againe presently. The William being on head of vs, and seeing vs strike our sailes, did anker by Vorousko Ostroue to stay for vs, and sent some of her men to helpe vs, but we were vnder saile before they came neere vs: and when we came to the William, we tooke in our boate, and so did the William: then we made saile, and went betweene some of the Ilands: we haled West southwest, so we passed Vaigats, and the Masters came not together to conferre, as they had appointed the 28. day of July. About two in the afternoone, we set our course southwest and by south, and southwest, and ran so, till 12. at night, then the wind came to north northeast, and we haled West. "This was Arthur Pets fault.

The 18. day, at five in the morning, we sounded, and had 16. fathoms red sande. At nine wee sounded, and had 14. and 10. fathoms: we haled West northwest. At 12. the winde came to the East, and East and by south: we haled West and by North all the day and night following. At five in the euening, we sounded, and had 17. fathoms sand.

The 19. day, the wind at East northeast, at five in the morning, wee sounded, and had 19. fathoms red sand, the wind north and by East. At three in the afternoone we sounded, and had 15. fathoms.

The 20. day, at 7. in the morning, we sounded, and had three fathoms blacke oaze. About noone we were vpon the sudden in sholde water among sandes, which lye thwart of Colgoyeue: and turning vp & downe, seeking to get cleere of them, continually sounding, we came on ground, and the William also which was a league from vs. In the night, it being calme, we laid all our cables, ankers, ropes, and such like, vpon the sand in the water, and made a rafte, with such prouision as we had, and laid thereon such things as lay vppermost in our shippe that it would beare, but coulde not get her on flote that night.

The 21. day, at an high water, we gate off, and the William also, the wind being at southwest, caused the water to be the higher, which was a great helpe to vs. This day we found the pole to be eleuated 68. degrees 40. minuts. In the afternoone the William and we did set saile, seeking to cleere our selues of the said sholdes, both our boates being on head of vs, sounding to seeke for the deepest water: we gat into 6. 7. and 8. fathams, the sands being without vs: we bare to the southwards, and the William bare more to the Eastwards. The night being at hand, and the wind south east, we lay southwest, and south and by West, and came to 10. and 12. fathoms, and suddenly we came to five fathoms, which was the head of the land, whereupon we were before on ground: then we did cast about to the eastward, for deeper water, and gate in short time 16. and 20. and 23. fathoms. 68. deg. 40. mi.

The 22. in the morning, we cast about, and went southwest and by south. This morning wee lost sight of the William, vnder our lee, as farre as we could see her, and in a great fogge wee lost sight of her, and since we haue not seene her. Thus we continued till three in the afternoone, then we bare West northwest, and West and by north, all the night following. Here they lost sight of the William, where she was cast away.

The 23. day, at five in the morning, we had 27. fathoms: afterwards we had sight of the coast of Vgori, and at 7. in the afternoone, the wind came to the East, and we laye West and by north: running this course, we came to fiue fathoms, thwart the Baye of Morzouetz, then we lay north northeast off: then the wind came north, and we lay East, and East and by north, and sometimes to the Westwards againe, vntill we came to 40. fathoms. Afterwards we lay East and East and by north, all the same night. Vigori. The bay of Morzouetz.

The 24. day, we continued our course northwest, till we came to 11. fathoms, then wee laye to the northwards, vntill midnight, and then we came to 40. fathoms, then the wind came to the north east, and we lay northwest along.

The 25. day, the wind being north northeast a very stiffe gale, we continued our course northwest. At 4. in the morning we sounded, and had 36. fathoms.

The 26. day, the wind at northeast, we continued our course northwest. This day we found the pole eleuated 70. degrees, 40. minuts. 70. deg. 40. mi.

The 27. day, at 7. in the morning, we had sight of land, which we made to be Kegor, the winde being East, we haled north and by West, and North northwest, and North, to double the North Cape.

The 28. at three in the morning, we set our course northwest, and ranne so all the day, and all the night following. The same night the wind came to the Southwest.

The 29. at 5. in the afternoone, the wind being at West, we did put into a certaine sound. The towne by it is called Vngon, and ankered in 25. fathoms faire sand. The same night we gate in fresh water, which we had neede of. A towne called Vngon.

The 30. day in the morning, the wind came to the Northeast little wind: we set saile, and with our

our boate on head, we gate to the sea. In the afternoone the wind came to the East, and we came West northwest.

The North Cape doubled. The 31. day, the wind at East southeast, at noone, wee doubled the North Cape, and haled along West all the day following, and at night we went West southwest.

September.

The first day, the wind at Northeast, with thicke fogge, we continued our course West southwest.

The second day, at three in the morning, we doubled Fowlnes. All this day the wind being variable, we did little good. In the euening the wind came to Southwest, and we bare West northwest, and northwest. And betweene nine and ten of the clocke in the night, the winde came to the West, a very stiffe gale, that we were faine to lay it on hull to the northwards, for the space of two howres. After we laid her head to the southwards, and at breake of day, wee had sight of South Fowlnes.

The third day, in the morning, we bare with the foresaid land, and harbored our selues among the lowe Islands in 4. or 5. fathoms water.

The fourth day, the wind at South southwest, reasonable weather.

The 5. 6. and 7. daies very foule weather, with vehement blastes, and such raine, that we thought our selues blest to be in harbour.

The eight day reasonable weather, the wind being West and by North.

The ninth day, the wind at East, at twelue of the clocke, we set saile, and by three in the afternoone wee cleered our selues of the lande, and went West Southwest, and so continued all the night.

The tenth day, the wind at East northeast, a faire gale, we continued our course aforesaid. This day we found the pole elcuated 69. degrees, 20. minuts.

The 11. day, the wind northeast in the afternoone, and all the night calme. This day we found the pole elcuated 68. degrees, 16. minuts.

The 12. day, the winde South southwest, and in the afternoone south, and to the Eastwards. At three in the afternoone, we did put into an harbour to the southwards of Lawestafte, where we roade, hauing a ledge of rockes to windward of vs, and continued there till the 17. day, hauing the weather for the most part very tempestuous, with great showers, the winde continuing all the time betweene the South and the West.

The 17. day at noone, the wind came to the Northeast, and at two in the afternoone, wee set saile, and bare along southwest, all the same night.

The 18. day, we went south southwest, the wind being north northeast. This day the pole was elcuated 66. degrees, 30. minuts.

The 19. day, the wind at East northeast. This day the pole was elcuated 64. degrees, 50. minuts. At 6. in the afternoone the wind came to the East southeast, we went South and by East, all the same night.

The 20. day, in the morning, the wind came to the East. We founde the pole elcuated 63. degrees, 30. minuts, all the night was calme.

The 21. day, all the forenoone, the wind at southeast, and in the afternoone it came to the south southwest, and all the night variable with wind.

The 22. in the morning, the wind at South, all the afternoone and night following, calme.

Ramsdall. The 23. day, the wind south, at foure in the afternoone, wee put into a sound called Ramsdall, where we found many lowe Islands, and good sounds, without the high land. That was the first place that we sawe any wood growe on vpon this coast. We continued in the said harbour, vntill the 28. day, the weather being very stormie and rainie.

Where wood was first on the coast.

The 28. in the morning, we set saile, the wind being East northeast, and haled along southwest. In the afternoone the wind came to the South, then we cast about, and by five of the clocke gate harbour, and roade vnder an Island all night.

The 29. day, we shifted from the aforesaid Island, into a better place, betweene two Islands, where we roade more quietly.

Thus by reason of contrary windes, we were forced to stay longer vpon the coast of Norway, then we wished: so that it was the 25. day of December, before we could get home into the mouth of the Thames.

A

A letter of Gerardus Mercator, written to M. Richard Hakluyt of Oxford, touching the intended discouerie of the Northeast passage. Anno 1580.

LIteræ tuæ (vir humanissime) 19. Iunij demum mihi redditæ fuerunt: vehemẽter dolui visis illis tantam, non modo temporis, sed multò magis tempestiuæ instructionis iacturam factam esse. Optassem, Arthurum Pet de quibusdam non leuibus ante suum discessum prænonitum fuisse. Expeditissima sane per Orientem in Cathaium est nauigatio: & sæpe miratus sum, eam fœliciter inchoatam, desertam fuisse, velis in Occidentẽ translatis, postquam plus quàm dimidium itineris vestri iam notum haberent. Nam post Insulam Vaigats, & Noua Zembla continuò ingens sequitur sinus, quem ab ortu Tabin immane promontorium complectitur. In hunc medium maxima illabuntur flumina, quæ vniuersam Regionẽ Sericam perluentia, vtque existimo, in intima continentis vsq; magnis nauigijs peruia, facillimam rationẽ exhibent quaslibet merces ex Cataio, Mangi, Mien, cæterisq; circumfusis regnis contrahendi, atque in Angliam deportandi. Cæterùm cùm non temere eam nauigationem intermissam crederem, opinabar ab Imperatore Russorum & Moscouiæ obstaculum aliquod interiectum fuisse: quod si verò cum illius gratia vlterior illac nauigatio detur, suaderẽ profectò non primùm Tabin promontorium quærere, atque explorare, sed sinum hunc atque flumina, in ijsq; portum aliquem commodissimum, stationémq; Anglicis Mercatoribus deligere, ex quo deinceps maiore opportunitate, minoribúsq; periculis Tabin promontorium, & totius Cathai circumnauigatio indagari posset. Esse autem ingens in Septentrionem excurrens promontorium Tabin, non ex Plinio tantùm, verùm & alijs scriptoribus, & tabulis aliquot (licèt rudius depictis) certum habeo. Polum etiam Magnetis haud longè vltra Tabin situm esse, certis Magnetis obseruationibus didici: circa quem & Tabin plurimos esse scopulos, difficilémq; & periculosam nauigationem existimo: difficiliorem tamen ad Cathaium accessum fore opinor, ea qua nũc via in Occidentem tentatur. Propinquior enim fiet hæc nauigatio polo Magnetis, quàm altera, ad quem propiùs accedere non puto tutum esse. Quia verò Magnes alium quàm Mundi polum habet, quo ex omni parte respicit: quò propiùs ad eum acceditur, eò directorium illud Nauticũ magnetis virtute imbutum, magis à Septentrione deuiat, nunc in Occidentem, nunc in Orientem, prout quis vel orientalior, vel occidentalior est illo Meridiano, qui per vtrumq; polum Magnetis, & Mundi ducitur. Mirabilis est hæc varietas, & quæ nauigantẽ plurimùm fallere potest, nisi hanc Magnetis inconstantiam nôrit, & ad poli eleuationem per instrumenta subinde respiciat. In hac re si non sit instructus D. Arthurus, aut ea sit dexteritate, vt deprehenso errore eum inuenire & castigare possit, timeo ne deuias faciat ambages, tempus illum fallat, & semiperacto negotio, à gelu præoccupetur: Aiunt enim sinum illum fortiùs quotannis congelari. Quod si contingat, hoc quod consultius mihi visum fuit, proximum illi erit refugium, vt in eo sinu, ijsq; fluminibus quæ dixi, portum quærat, & per Legatum aliquem, cum magno Cham, nomine sereniſsimæ Reginæ notitiam, amicitiámque contrahat, quam opinor Maximo orbis Imperatori gratam, imo gratissimam fore propter remotissima cõmercia. Opinor ab ostijs Bautisi & Oechardi fluminum maximorum, vsq; ad Cambalu Regiam summã Chami, non vltra 300. miliaria Germanica esse, & iter sumendum per Ezinam vrbem regni Tangut, quæ 100. tantùm miliarijs Germanicis ab ostijs distare videtur, & paret Magno Cham.

Postulata Mercatoris, de quibus certior fieri cupit.

Valde optarem cognoscere, quàm altè communiter exurgat æstus maris in eo Moscouiæ portu, quem vestri pro statione habent, & in alijs versùs orientem locis vsq; ad Tabin. Item, an mare in hoc districtu semper in vnam partem, videlicet Orientem, aut Occidentẽ fluat, an verò pro ratione æstuũ fluat, & refluat, in medio inquam canali, hoc est, an ibi sex horis in occasum, & iterum sex in ortum fluat, an verò semper in eandem partem: aliæ enim speculationes non parum vtiles hinc dependent. Idem optarem à D. Frobiscero in occidentem obseruari. Quod ad sinum Merosro, & Canadam, ac Nouam Franciam attinet, ea in meis tabulis desumpta sunt ex quadam Tabula marina, quæ à quodam sacerdote ex earum ditionum Naucleri peritissimi Galli descriptione excerpta fuit, & illustrissimo Principi Georgio ab Austria episcopo Leodiẽsi oblata: Non dubito, quin quantùm ad littorum situm attinet & poli eleuationem, ad veritatem ea quàm proximè accedant. Habebat enim ea tabula præter scalam graduum latitudinis per medium sui extensam, aliam præterea particularem Nouæ Franciæ littoribus adiunctam, qua deprauatæ latitudines, occasione erroris Magnetis ibi commissæ, castigarẽtur. Iacobi Cnoyen, Buscoducensis itinerariũ per omnem Asiam, Affricã, & Septentrionẽ, olim mihi Amicus Antuerpiæ ab alio mutuò acceptum cõmunicauit, eo vsus sum, & reddidi: post multos annos eũdem ab amico repetij, & reminisci ille non potuit à quo accepisset. Guilielmi Tripolitani & Ioãnis de plano Carpini scripta non vidi, tantùm excerpta ex illis quędã in alijs scriptis libris inueni.

Abelfedæ Epitome gaudeo verti, vtinam cito habeamus.

Hæc (mi Domine) tuis respondenda putaui: si quid est aliud quod à me desideres, libentissimè tibi communicabo: hoc vicissim amanter à tua humanitate petens, vt quæ ex vtriusque nauigationis cursu obseruata nanciscì poteris, mihi communices, penes me pro tuo arbitrio manebunt omnia, & quæcunq; inde collegero, fideliter ad te perscribam, si forte ad pulcherrimum, vtilissimúmq; orbi Christiano hoc nauigationis institutum aliquid opis & consilij adferre possint. Bene vale, vir doctissime. Duisburgi in Cliuia, 28. Iulij, 1580.

Redeunte Arthuro, quæso discas ab illo quæ optaui, & num alicubi in suo itinere, dulce mare, aut parum salsum inuenerit: suspicor enim mare inter Noua Zembla, & Tabin dulce esse.

T. H. paratissimus quantus quantus sum, *Gerardus Mercator.*

¶ *The same in English.*

SIr, I receiued your letters the 19. of June: it grieued me much that vpon the sight of them the time being spent, I could not giue any conuenient instructions: I wish Arthur Pet had bene informed before his departure of some speciall pointes. The voyage to Cathaio by the East, is doubtlesse very easie and short, and I haue oftentimes marueiled, that being so happily begun, it hath bene left of, and the course changed into the West, after that more then halfe of your voyage was discouered. For beyond the Iland of Vaigats, and Noua Zembla, there followeth presently a great baie, which on the left side is inclosed with the mightie promontorie Tabin. Into the middes hereof there fall great riuers, which passing through the whole countrey of Serica, and being as I thinke nauigable with great vessels into the heart of the continent, may bee an easie meanes whereby to traffique for all maner of merchandize, and transport them out of Cathaio Mangi, Mien, and other kingdoms thereabouts into England: But considering with my selfe that that nauigation was not intermitted, but vpon great occasion, I thought that the Emperour of Russia and Moscouie had hindered the proceeding thereof. If so bee that with his grace and fauour a further nauigation may be made, I would counsell them certainely not first to seeke out the promontorie Tabin, but to search this baie and riuers aforesayd, and in them to picke and chuse out some conuenient porte and harborough for the English merchaunts, from whence afterward with more opportunitie and lesse perill the promontorie Tabin, and all the coast of Cathaio may be discouered. And that there is such a huge promontorie called Tabin, I am certainly perswaded not onely out of Plinie, but also other writers, and some Maps (though somewhat rudely drawen): and that the pole of the Loadstone is not farre beyond Tabin, I haue learned by the certayne obseruations of the Loadstone: about which pole and Tabin, I thinke there are very many rockes, and very hard and dangerous sailing: and yet a more hard and difficile passage I thinke it to bee this way which is now attempted by the West, for it is neerer to the pole of the Loadstone, to the which I thinke it not safe to approch. And because the Loadstone hath another pole then that of the worlde, to the which from all partes it hath a respect, the neerer you come vnto it, the more the needle of the compasse doth varie from the North, sometimes to the West, and sometimes to the East, according as a man is to the Eastward or to the Westward of that Meridian, that passeth by both the poles of the Magnes and the World.

The best course to be taken in discoueries.

This is a strange alteration and very apt to deceiue the Sailer, vnlesse hee know the vncertaincie and variation of the compasse, and take the eleuation of the pole sometimes with his instruments. If master Arthur bee not well prouided in this behalfe, or of such dexteritie, that perceiuing the errour he be not able to correct the same, I feare least in wandering vp and downe he lose his time, and be ouertaken with the ice in the midst of the enterprise. For that gulfe, as they say, is frosen euery yeere very hard, which if it be so, the best counsell I could giue for their best safetie, were to seeke some harborough in that baie, and those riuers whereof I haue spoken, and by some Ambassador to make friendship and acquaintance with the great Cham, in name of the Queenes maiestie, which I beleeue will be grateful to the mightiest Emperour in the world, yea most excellent for the length of the traffique, and great distance of the places. I thinke from the mouths of the mightie riuers Bautisus & Oechardus to Cambalu the chiefest seat of the prince, the Cham, there are not past 300. Germane miles, and to passe by Ezina a citie of the kingdom of Tangut, which seemeth to be but 100. German miles frō the mouthes of ỳ said riuers, & is subiect to great Cham.

I would gladly know how high the sea doth flowe commonly in the porte of Moscouia where your men do harborough, and in other Easterly places vnto Tabin. And also whether the sea in this streight do flow alwaies one way to the East or to the West, or whether it doe ebbe and flowe accor-

ding

ding to the maner of the tides in the middle of the chanell, that is to ſay, whether it flow there ſtre bowers into the Weſt, and as may backe againe to the Eaſt, for hereupon depend other ſpeculations of importance: I would wiſh M. Frobiſher to obſerue the ſame Weſtwards. Concerning the gulfe of Meroſro and Canada, and new France which are in my mappes, they were taken out of a certaine ſea card drawen by a certaine prieſt out of the deſcription of a Frenchman, a Pilot very ſkilfull in thoſe partes, and preſented to the worthie prince George of Auſtria, biſhop of Liege: for the trending of the coaſt, and the eleuation of the pole, I doubt not but they are very neere the truth: for the Charte had, beſide a ſcale of degrees of latitude paſſing through the middeſt of it, another particularly annexed to the coaſt of New France, wherewith the errour of the latitudes committed by reaſon of the variation of the compaſſe might be corrected. The hiſtorie of the voyage of Iacobus Cnoyen Buſcoducenſis throughout all Aſia, Affrica, and the North, was lent me in time paſt by a friend of mine at Antwerpe. After I had vſed it, I reſtored it againe: after many yeeres I required it againe of my friend, but hee had forgotten of whom hee had borrowed it. The writings of Guiliemus Tripolitanus, and Ioannes de Plano Carpini, I neuer ſaw: onely I found certaine pieces of them in other written hand bookes. I am glad the Epitomie of Abelfada is tranſlated, I would we might haue it ſhortly.

Upon the obſeruations of the tides depend great ſpeculations.

Thus much Sir I thought good to anſwere your letters: if there bee any thing els that you would require of me, I will moſt willingly communicate it with you, crauing this likewiſe of your curteſie, that whatſoeuer obſeruations of both theſe voiages ſhall come to your hands, you would impart them to me, they ſhall all remaine with mee according to your diſcretion and pleaſure, and whatſoeuer I gather of them, I will faithfully ſignifie vnto you by letters, if happily they may yeeld any helpe or light vnto this moſt excellent enterpriſe of nauigation, and moſt profitable to our chriſtian common wealth. Fare you well moſt learned friend. At Duisburge in Cluia, 28. of Julie, the yeere, 1580.

At Arthur his returne I pray you learne of him the things I haue requeſted, and whether any where in his voiage, he found the ſea freſh, or not very ſalt: for I ſuppoſe the Sea betweene Noua Zembla and Tabin to be freſh.

Yours to my power to be commanded, *Gerardus Mercator.*

The firſt of Iune, 1582. London.

Inſtructions made by the companie of Engliſh merchants for diſcouerie of new trades, vnto Richard Gibs, William Biggat, Iohn Backhouſe, William Freeman, Iohn Hall, and Iames Woodcocke, &c. maſters of the 9. ſhips, and one barke that wee haue freighted for a voiage with them to be made (by the grace of God) from hence to S. Nicholas in Ruſſia, and backe againe: which ſhips being now in the riuer of Thames, are preſently readie to depart vpon the ſayd voyage, with the next apt windes that may ſerue thereunto, and with this Fleete afterwards was ioyned M. Chriſtopher Carlile with the Tyger.

FOraſmuch as the number of ſhips which we purpoſe to ſend in this Fleete together for S. Nicholas in Ruſſia, is greater then at any time heretofore wee haue ſent thither, as alſo for that ſome ſpeaches are giuen out that you ſhall bee met withall by ſuch as with force and violence will aſſault you as enemies, to the ende that good order may be eſtabliſhed among you for keeping together in companie, and vniting your forces, as well for the better direction to be had in your nauigation, as alſo for your more ſafetie and ſtrength againſt the enemie, we haue thought good to appoint among you an Admirall and viceadmirall, and that all of you and euery one particularly ſhall bee bound in the ſumme of one hundred pounds to keepe company together.

2 Becauſe the Salomon is the biggeſt ſhip, beſt appointed, and of greateſt force to defend or offend the enemie, we doe therefore appoint that ſhip Admirall, which ſhall weare the flag in the maine top.

3 The Thomas Allen being a good ſhip and well appointed, and for that the maſter of her is the ancienteſt maſter of the Fleete that hath taken charge that way, we doe appoint the ſame ſhip to be Viceadmirall, and to weare the flag in the fore top.

4 And for that the maſter of the Prudence is of great experience, and knowledge in that voyage, we doe appoint that he with the maſter of the Admirall and Viceadmirall ſhall conferre, conſult and agree vpon the courſes and directions that ſhall be vſed in this voiage, and it ſhall be lawfull

full vnto the maſter of the Admirall, with the conſent of M. Gibs, and M. Biggat, or one of them to make his courſes and directions from time to time during the whole voyage, and all the fleete are to follow and obſerue the ſame without ſtraying or breaking of company at any time vpon the penaltie before ſpecified.

5 The appointing of the ſhips for Admirall and Vice admirall, and thoſe men to conſult and agree vpon the courſes and directions of the voyage, as aforeſaid, hath bene done by the conſents and with the liking of you all, and therefore we doubt not but that you will all carefully and willingly obſerue the premiſſes.

6 Item, we haue thought good to put you in mind, that at ſuch times as you may conueniently from time to time, you doe aſſemble and meete together, to conſider, conſult, and determine vpon ſuch articles as you ſhall thinke neceſſarie to be propounded touching your beſt ſafetie and defence againſt all forces that may bee offered you in this voiage, as well outwardes bound, and while you ſhall remaine in the roade and baie of S. Nicholas, as alſo homewardes bound, and that which you ſhal agree vpon, or that which moſt of you ſhall conſent vnto, cauſe it to be ſet downe in writing for record, which may ſerue for an acte amongſt your ſelues to binde you all to obſerue the ſame.

7 We haue appointed Iames Woodcocke in the ſmal barke to attend vpon you, and to receiue his directions from you. You are therefore to remember well what conference and talke hath bene had with you here before your going touching the ſayd barke, to what purpoſes ſhe may beſt ſerue, and the maner how to imploy her, and thereupon to giue your order and direction vnto him, as the time and place ſhall require.

8 Item, if you ſhal vnderſtand as you are outwards bound, that the enemie is gone before you to S. Nicholas, remember what aduiſe hath bene giuen you for your ſtay at Berozoua Vſtia, till you haue by eſpials viewed and vnderſtood the forces, and the maner of their abode at that place.

9 And if in the Sea either outwardes or homewardes, or in the time of your abode at anker at Saint Nicholas, you ſhall bee aſſaulted by force of any, as enemie whatſoeuer, you are to defend you ſelues with ſuch forces as you may or can: truſt not too farre, neither giue place to inconuenience.

10 You will not forget what conference wee had touching your paſſing outwards bound by Wardhouſe, to view & vnderſtand what you can at that place, & to ſhew your ſelues, to ſee if there be any there that haue a mind to ſpeake with you, for that we thinke it better then and thereabout, then afterwards or els where.

11 While you ſhall remaine in the road at S. Nicholas, bee circumſpect and carefull to haue your ſhips in readineſſe, and in good order alwayes, and vpon all ſuddens. The greateſt danger vnto you in that place, will be while you ſhall ſhift your ſhips: therefore you are to conſider of it, but the fitteſt time for you to doe the ſame, will bee when the winde is Southerlie off the ſhore, or calme, and at ſuch time you may the better doe it without daunger. You muſt take ſuch order among you, that your companies may bee alwayes willing and readie to helpe one the other, and appoint among your ſelues ſuch ſhips to ſhift firſt, and ſuch after, in ſuch ſort and fourme as you ſhall thinke beſt and moſt conuenient. And while they ſhall bee in diſcharging, ſhifting, and lading, let the reſt of your companies which haue not then to doe in lading or diſcharging, helpe thoſe ſhippes that ſhall haue labour to doe, as well for carying the Barkes from ſhips to the ſhore, or from ſhore to the ſhippe with your boates, as alſo for any other helpe that they ſhall haue neede of.

12 Remember what hath bene ſaid vnto you touching the moring of your ſhips, &c. for hauing aduantage againſt the enemie, if you ſhall be aſſaulted in that place.

13 See that you ſerue God, aboliſh ſwearing and gaming, bee carefull of fire and candles, &c.

14 You are to conſult and agree among your ſelues vpon ſignes, tokens, and good orders for the better keeping of companie together, and alſo the maner how and by what meanes, reſcue, aide, or helpe may be giuen by one to the other in fight, if you happen to come to it.

Thus we pray God to ſend you a proſperous voiage and ſafe returne.

The opinion of master William Burrough sent to a friend, requiring *his iudgement for the fittest time of the departure of our ships towards S. Nicholas in Russia.*

WHereas you request mee to perswade the companie not to send their shippes from hence before the fine of May, I doe not thinke the same so good a course for them to obserue: for you know that the sooner wee send them hence, the sooner we may looke for their returne. If we send them in the beginning of May, then may they be at S. Nicholas by the fine of the same moneth: and by that time the greatest part of your lading of necessitie must be come down, especially the flaxe: but if it should fall out so lateward a breaking vp of the riuer of Dwina, that by the end of May the goods cannot bee brought to S. Nicholas, yet this is alwayes to be accounted for certaine, that before our shippes can come thither, the goods may bee brought downe to that place: and if through ice the shippes bee kept backe any time, the losse and charge of that time toucheth not the companie at all, but the owners of the ships, and yet will the Owners put that in aduentuoe, rather than tarie longer time before their going hence.

Now seeing by sending our ships hence in the beginning of May, their arriuall at S. Nicholas may be at the ende of the same moneth, and remaining thirtie dayes there, they may bee laden and come thence by the last of June, and returne home hither by the 10. of August with commodities to serue the market then, it connot be denied but we should reape thereby great commoditie.

But it may be obiected, that if all our ships bee sent then to returne as aforesaid, you shall not bee able to send vs in so much coydage, Ware and Oyles, as otherwise you should doe if they remained a moneth longer, neither could you by that time perfect your accounts to bee sent in them as you would doe.

For answere thereunto this is my meaning, though I wish the greatest part of our shipping to goe as aforesayd, yet would I haue one good ship or two at the most well furnished in all points that should depart alwayes from hence, betweene the beginning and the 10. day of June: and the same to be condicioned withall to remaine at S. Nicholas from the first arriuall there vntill the middest of August, or to bee dispatched thence sooner, at the will and liking of our factors for the same: by this order these commodities following may ensue.

1 You may haue our commodities there timely to send vp the riuer before it waxe shallow, to be dispersed in the countrey at your pleasure.

2 The greatest part of our goods may be returned hither timely to serue the first markets.

3 Our late ships remaining so long here, may serue to good purpose, for returning answere of such letters as may be sent ouer land, and receiued here before their departure.

4 Their remayning so late with you shall satisfie your desire for perfecting your accounts, and may bring such coydage, Ware, Oile, and other commodities, as you can prouide before that time: and chiefly may serue vs in stead to bring home our goods that may be sent vs from Persia.

Now seeing it may be so many wayes commodious to the company to obserue this order, without any charge vnto them, I wish that you put to your helping hand to further the same.

A copie of the Commission giuen to Sir Ierome Bowes, authorizing *him her Maiesties Ambassadour with the great Duke of Russia, Anno* 1583.

ELIZABETHA Dei gratia, Angliæ, Franciæ, & Hybernię Regina, fidei defensatrix, &c. Vniuersis & singulis præsentes literas visuris, & inspecturis, salutem. Cùm Sereniſſimus Princeps, Ioannes Basilius, Rex, & magnus Dux Russiæ, Volodomeræ, Moscouiæ, & Nouogrodiæ, Rex Cassani, & Astracani, Dominus Plescoæ, & magnus Dux Smolenscoæ, Tueri, Vgori, Permiæ, Valeæ, Bolharæ, & aliarum ditionum: Dominus & magnus Dux Nouogrodiæ in inferiori regione Chernigæ, Razanæ, Polotscoæ, Ratsauiæ, Yeraslauæ, Belozeri, Liflandiæ, Oudori, & Condensæ, & gubernator in tota prouincia Seberiæ, & partium Septentrionalium, & aliarum, frater, & Amicus chariſſimus, Nobilem virum, Feder Anderwich Spiſemski, nuper ad nos ablegauerit, ad certa quædam negotia nobiſcum

Pheodore Anderwich Spiſemski Ambassadour to the Queene.

cum agenda, quæ honorem vtrinque nostrum quam proximè attingunt, quæque rectè definiri concludique nequeunt, nisi Ambassiatorem aliquem & oratorem ad præfatum serenissimum principem amandauerimus: Hinc est, quòd nos de fidelitate, industria, prouida circumspectione, & satis magno rerũ vsu, prædilecti nobis famuli nostri, Hieronimi Bowes Militis, ex nobilibus domesticis nostris vnius, plurimùm confidentes, præfatum Hieronimum Bowes Militem, nostrum verum, & indubitatum Ambassiatorem, Oratorem, & Commissarium specialem facimus, & constituimus per præsentes. Dantes, & concedentes eidem Hieronimo Bowes Militi oratori nostro tenore præsentium, authoritatem, & mandatũ, tam generale, quàm speciale, ita quòd specialitas non deroget generalitati, nec è contrà generalitas specialitati, nomine nostro, & pro nobis, cum præfato serenissimo principe, eiúsque consiliarijs, & deputatis quibuscunq; de prefatis negotijs & eorum singulis, tractandi, conferendi, concludẽdi appunctuandiq; prout præfato Oratori nostro æquum, & ex honore nostro videbitur: Nec non de, & super huiusmodi tractatis, concluſis, appunctuatísq;, cæterísq; omnibus & singulis, premissa quouismodo concernentibus, literas, & instrumenta valida & efficacia, nomine nostro, & pro nobis tradendi, literáſq; & instrumenta consimilis vigoris & effectus, ex altera parte petendi, & confici, & sigillari debitè procurandi, & recipiendi, & generaliter omnia, & singula, præmissa qualitercunq; concernentia, faciendi, exercendi, & expediendi, in, & eodem modo, ſicut nos ipſi faceremus, & facere possemus, ſi essemus præsentes, etiamſi talia sint, quæ de se mandatum exigant magis speciale: promittentes bona fide, & in verbo Regio, omnia & singula, quæ per prædictum Ambassiatorem, & oratorem nostrum appunctuata, promiſſa, conuenta, concordata, & concluſa fuerint in hac parte, nos rata & grata, & firma habituras & obseruaturas, & super inde literas nostras patentes confirmatorias, & approbatorias in forma valida, & autentica, prout opus fuerit, daturas. In cuius rei testimonium, his præsentibus manu nostra signatis, magnum sigillum nostrum regni nostri Angliæ apponi fecimus. Datæ e Regia nostra Grenwici, quinto die mensis Iunij, Anno Dom. 1583. Regni verò nostri vicesimo quinto.

¶ *The same in English.*

ELIZABETH by the grace of God, Queene of England, France and Ireland, defender of the faith, &c. to all and singular, to whom these presents shal come to be seene and red, greeting. Whereas the most excellent prince Iohn Basiliwich king, and great duke of all Russia, Volodomere, Moscouie, and Nouogrode, king of Casan and Astracan, lord of Plesco, and great duke of Smolensco, of Tuer, Vgor, and Permia, Valca, Bolhar and others, lord great duke of Nouogrode in the low countrey of Cherinega, Rasar, Polotsco, Rostaue, Yeraslaue, Belozer, Lisland, Oudor, Ohdor and Condene, and gouernour of all the land of Seberia, and of the North parts and others, our most deare brother and friend did of late send vnto vs one Feder Anderwich Spisemsky, a noble man of his to deale with vs in certaine speciall businesses, respecting very neerely the honour of either of vs, and being such as without the speeding of some Ambassadour of ours to the foresaid most excellent prince, cannot be sufficiently determined and concluded: For this cause we hauing great confidence in the fidelitie, industrie, prouident circumspection and conuenient experience of our welbeloued seruaunt Ierome Bowes knight, a gentleman of qualitie of our household, do by these presents make and constitute the foresaid Ierome Bowes knight, our true and vndoubted Ambassadour, Orator and speciall commissioner, giuing and graunting to the same Ierome Bowes knight, our Orator, by the vertue of these presents authoritie and commandement, as well generall as speciall, so that the speciall shall not preiudice the generall, nor on the other side the generall the speciall, to intreat, conferre, conclude, and appoint in our name, and for vs with the foresayd most excellent prince and his counsellors and deputies whatsoeuer, concerning the foresayd businesses, and each of them, according as it shall seeme good, and for our honour to our foresayd Orator, as also of and vpon such things intreated, concluded and appointed, as in all and singular other things, any maner of way concerning the premisses, to deliuer in our name and for vs sufficient and effectuall letters and instruments, and to require letters and instruments of the like validitie and effect of the other part, and to procure them lawfully to bee made and sealed, and them to receiue them, and generally to doe, execute, and dispatch all and singular other things concerning the premisses, in, and after the same maner, as we our selues would and might do if we were present, although they bee such things as may seeme of themselues to require a more speciall commandement: promising in good faith & in the word of a prince, that we will hold & obserue all, and singular the things which by our Ambassador aforesaid shalbe apointed, promised, agreed, accorded and

and concluded in this behalfe, as lawfull, gratefull, and firme, and therupon as need ſhall require, will giue our letters patents, confirmatorie and approbatorie, in forme effectuall and autenticall. In witneſſe wherof, we haue cauſed our great ſeale of our kingdome of England to be put to theſe preſents, and ſigned them with our owne hand.

Giuen at our pallace of Greene wich the fourth day of June, in the yeere of our Lord, 1583, and of our reigne the fiue and twentith.

A letter ſent from her highneſſe to the ſayd great Duke of *Ruſsia, by Sir Hierome Bowes aforeſayd, her* Maieſties Ambaſſadour.

Sereniſſimo Principi ac Domino, Ioanni Baſilio, Dei gratia Regi & magno Duci totius Ruſsiæ, Volodomeræ, &c. Regi Caſſani, &c. Domino Pleſcoæ, &c. Domino & magno Duci Nouogrodiæ, &c. & Gubernatori in tota Prouincia Seberiæ, &c. Fratri, & amico noſtro chariſſimo.

ELIZABETHA, Dei gratia Angliæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ Regina, fidei defenſatrix, &c Sereniſſimo Principi ac Domino, Ioanni Baſilio, eadem Dei gratia Regi & magno Duci totius Ruſſiæ, Volodomeræ, Moſcouiæ & Nouogrodiæ, Regi Caſſani & Aſtracani, Domino Pleſcoæ, & magno Duci Smolenſcoæ, Tueri, Vgori, Permiæ, Valcæ, Bolharæ, & aliarum ditionum, Domino & magno Duci Nouogrodiæ in inferiori regione Chernigæ, Razanæ, Polotſcoæ, Ratſtouæ, Iroſlauæ, Belozeri, Liflandiæ, Oudori, & Condencæ, & Gubernatori in tota prouincia Sebetiæ, & partium Septentrionalium, & aliarum, fratri & amico ſuo chariſſimo, Salutem.

Sereniſſime princeps, frater & amice chariſſime, ex ijs quæ nobiſcum egit, S. V. illuſtris legatus, intelleximus, quàm gratè vobis faceremus ſatis, ſi legatum aliquem cum mandatis inſtructum, ad S. V. ablegaremus. In quo certè quidem inſtituto adeò nobis ex animo placuit, quod eſt honeſtè poſtulatum, vt non niſi præſtita re, poſſemus nobis quoquo modo ſatisfacere. Atq; cum id haberemus apud nos decretum, nobis non incommodè incurrit in mentem & oculos Hieronimus Bowes miles, ex nobilibus noſtris Domeſticis, plurimùm nobis dilectus, quem inpræſentiarum ad S. V. ablegamus, cuius prudentiæ & fidei, totum hoc quicquid eſt, quod ad Serenitatũ mutuò noſtratũ dignitatem ornandam pertinere poſſe arbitramur, commiſimus. In quo munere perfungendo, quin omnem curam & diligentiam ſit collaturus, neutiquam dubitamus: à S. autẽ V. rogamus, velit ei eam fidem habere in ijs perſequendis quæ habet à nobis in mandatis, quam nobis habendam putaret, ſi eſſemus præſentes. Præterea, cùm nobis multum charus ſit Robertus Iacobus medicus, quem ſuperiori ‖ anno, ad S. V. miſimus, rogamus vt eum eo loco S. V. habeat, quo virum probatiſſimum, & ſingulari quàm plurimarum virtutum laude ornatum habendum eſſe, boni principes cenſent. Quem à nobis neutiquam ablegauiſſemus, niſi amicitiæ noſtræ, & ſtudio gratificandi S. V. plurimùm tribuiſſemus. In qua dum voluntate manemus erga S. V. non niſi optimè de bonis veſtris meritis in præfatum Iacobum nobis pollicemur. Et Deum Opt. Max. precamur, vt S. V. ſaluam conſeruet, & incollumem. Datæ è Regia noſtra Grenouici 19 die menſis Iunij, Anno Domini 1583, regni verò noſtri viceſſimo quinto. ‖ 1582.

S. veſtræ bona ſoror.

¶ *The ſame in Engliſh.*

ELizabeth by the grace of God, Queene of England, France, and Ireland, defender of the faith, &c. to the moſt excellent Prince and Lord, Iohn Baſiliwich, by the ſame grace of God, King and great Duke of all Ruſſia, Volodomere, Moſcouie, and Nouogrod, King of Caſſan and Aſtracan, Lord of Pleſcoe, and great Duke of Smolenſcoe, of Tuer, Vgor, and Permie, Valea, Bolhar, and others, Lord and great Duke of Nouogrod in the lowe countrey of Cherniga, Razan, Poloſo, Rotſtaue, Iroſlaue, Belozer, Lifland, Oudor, Ohdor, and Condene, and Gouernour of all the lande of Seberia, and of the North partes and others, her deereſt brother and friend, Salutations.

Moſt

Most excellent Prince, most deare brother and friend, by those things which the worthy ambassador of your excellencie declared vnto vs, we haue vnderstood how kindely it would be taken, if we should send to your excellency an ambassador from vs, with commandement and instructions. In which matter your honourable request hath so much pleased vs, that we could not any manner of way satisfie our selues, except we performed the same. And hauing purposed with our selfe so to doe, we thought of, and remembred Ierome Bowes knight, a gentleman of qualitie of our houshold, a man very much beloued of vs, whome at this present we send vnto your Maiestie, and to whose wisedome and faithfulnesse we haue committed all, whatsoeuer we take to appertaine to the aduancement of both our honours indifferently. In the discharge of which seruice, we doubt not but that all care and diligence shall be vsed on his part, so that we intreat your Maiestie to giue him credence in the prosecuting of those thinges which he hath from vs in commandement, no lesse then to our selfe if we were present. And whereas Robert Jacob, doctor of phisicke, is a man very deare vnto vs, whome the last yeere we sent vnto your excellency, we desire that he may haue that fauor and estimation with you, which good princes thinke a most honest and vertuous man worthie of: for had we not carryed great respect to our mutuall friendshippe, and indeuor to gratifie your Maiestie, we should in no case haue parted with him. And seeing we continue still the same good will towards your excellency, we do euen promise to our selfe your honorable kindnesses towards him: and we pray the almighty God to preserue your Maiesty in good safetie and health. Giuen at our pallace of Greenewich, the 19 day of June, in the yeere of our Lord 1583, and of our reigne, the fiue and twentith.

Doctor Jacob

Your Maiesties good sister.

The maner of the preferring of sutes in Russia, by the *example of our English merchants bill, exhibited* to the Emperour.

IOhn Basiliwich, Lord, King, and great Duke of all Russia, the English merchants, William, sonne of Thomas, with his company sue vnto,

Lord, in the 7082 yeere of the worlds creation, thy Maiesties treasurer, named Gregorie Meekeetich Borozden, tooke of vs for thy vse 12 poods of loafe sugar, prised at 8 robles the pood, which sugar was sent to the ‖ Sloboda. Item, the said Gregorie treasurer, tooke of vs for thy Maiestie 200 reames of paper, prised at 20 altines the reame, for all which the money hath not beene payd which amounteth to 216 robles.

‖ The Emperours house of recreation.

And in the 84 yeere thy diake Stephan Lighachdo, tooke of vs for thy Maiestie copper plates, for the summe of 1032 robles and one fourth part vnpayd for.

Also in the said 84 yeere thy Maiesties diakes called Iuan Blasghoy, and Iuan Sobakin, tooke of vs for thy vse, sundry commodities, and haue not payd 630 robles, the rest of the money due for the sayd goods.

In the 85 yeere thy Maiesties treasurer Peter Gholouen tooke of vs for thy Maiestie, cloth of sundry sorts, and hath not payd of the money due therefore 538 robles.

In the 88 yeere, thy diakes Andrea Shalkan, and Istomay Yeuskoy, tooke of vs lead for thy Maiesty, to the value of 267 robles and a halfe not payd.

And in the same yere thy Maiesties diake Borees Gregoriwich, had for thy vse 15 broad clothes of diuers sorts, prised at 210 robles, wherof 90 robles are vnpayd.

Also in the said 88 yere thy diake Andrea Shalkan, tooke from vs 1000 robles for ther (Lord) in ready money, yet we know not whether by thy Maiesties appointment.

And also in the 89 yeere (Lord) thy diake Andrea Shalkan, tooke from vs for thy Maiestie 500 robles, we know not whether by thy Maiesties order or no, because that thy authorized people doe peerely take away from vs, neither do they giue vs right in any cause.

All the money (Lord) which is not payd vs out of thy Maiesties treasury for our commodities or wares, with the money taken from vs by Andrea Shalkan, is 4273 robles 25 altines.

Right noble king and Lord, shew thy mercy, and cause the money to be payd vs which is owing for our goods, as also that which hath beene taken from vs: extend thy fauor, King and Lord.

The

The Ambassage of Sir Hierome Bowes to the Emperour of Moscouie 1583.

BEfore I enter into the declaration of mine ambassage into Moscouie, it shall not be amisse briefely to declare the occasion therof. Therefore it is to be vnderstood that Iohn Basiliwich the Emperour of Russia, in the yeere 1582, sent ouer into England, as his ambassadour, one Pheodor Andrewich Spisemskie, a verie discreet and aged councellor of his, accompanyed with a secretarie named Neodatza Gawralo, who were wafted hether with a warlike shippe called the Tyger, wherof one M. Christopher Carlile, a gentlman indued with many good partes, was partly for that, and partly for the safe walting of the rest of the fleete against the Dane appointed captaine.

The aforesaid ambassadour, with all his traine, to the number of aboue twentie persons, hauing beene entertained and vsed heere very honourablie both by her Maiestie and her subiects, besought her Highnesse to send an ambassadour home with him vnto his Maister, with commission to conclude such matters of importance as he was sent about into these parts. Whereupon I was chosen for that seruice: and after I had receiued order for my preparation, and had my commission deliuered vnto me, with two letters from her Maiestie to the Emperour, & the articles here agreed vpon with his ambassadour, as also mine instructions, with the doleances and petitions of our English merchants, I tooke my leaue in Court to proceed in my voyage. And hauing assembled my company together, which were in number, foxtie persons, whereof about ten were gentlemen, besides one M. Cole a learned man of Oxford which was my preacher, I embarked my selfe the 22 of June 1583 at Harewich in a tall shippe of 200 tunnes, called the Centurion, and the Moscouit ambassadour and the secretarie were placed in another shippe by themselues, and some of the chiefe of their company: the rest were bestowed in other roomes conuenient. Thus our fleet being ten sailes in the whole number, we committed our selues to God and the seas, and arriued in safety at S. Nicholas bay in the space of a iust moneth, to witte the 23 of Julie next insuing. June 22. June 23.

Vpon our arriuall the Moscouit ambassadour was ioyfully receiued and lodged at the monasterie of S. Nicholas. And I was very well entertayned at our English house in Rose island, where I remayned fiue or six dayes to repose my selfe and my weary company. From thence I passed vp the riuer of Dwina to Colmogro, drawne with men against the streame in large boats of that countrey. At Colmogro I stayed the space of fiue weeks, to witte all August, and part of September, in a certaine small Island, which vpon mine aboad so long in it, is still called Bowes island by our nation. From Colmogro I passed vp against the streame very slowly towards Vologda, and arriued not there vntill the 22 of September. At this towne a gentleman sent from the Emperour, receiued me, whose name was Protou Popou: he presented me with two geldings, with saddle and furniture after their countrey fashion. I was tolde that the horses were of those that were for the Emperours owne saddle. August. Septemb. 22.

I stayed at Vologda foure dayes, and then tooke iourney toward Yeraslaue, where mette me from the Emperour, a Duke well accompanyed, which presented me a coch and tenne geldings for change. I rested at Yeraslaue sixe dayes, and then set forward towards Moscua, where I arriued the first of October. There met me before I came at the towne by two miles, foure gentlemen of the Emperours, accompanyed, I geese, with about two hundred horses. After diuers salutations, they tolde me they had to say to me from the Emperour: I answered that it was welcome, and requested them to deliuer what they had in charge. Thus after the rehearsing of a long stile, both they and my selfe being lighted from our horses, they deliuered what they had to say, which were nothing but welcomes and messages of fauour: so we went agayne to horsbacke, and they brought me to my lodging in Mosco. I was not in my lodging one quarter of an houre, but there came a gentleman from the Emperour, and brought me a supper readie dyest of the Emperours meat. And after rehearsing of the Emperours stile, and deliuerie of his message, he sate downe to supper, where he would haue driuen me to haue tasted of euery sundrie meats and drinks of the Emperours goodnesse (as hee termed it) or els he would say, that I did not accept it as I should. A Duke sent to meet him to Peraslaue. October 1. A supper sent from the Emperour.

The Friday next after, being the fourth of October, there came to me from the Emperour a principall secretarie, who brought me a dinner from the Emperour, meaning himselfe to dine with me. He came, giuing me a very short warning, and so founde me sicke in my bedde: howbeit there was no remedie, but the dinner must be set vpon a table at my beddes side, and so it was.

And

And yet were they not so satisfied therewith, but I must either take and cast my gowne about my shoulders, and sit vp, and taste of somewhat, or els the Emperour would imagine that I loued him not, and that I scorned his sending to me. Thus I was faine to satisfie in part these vnreasonable requests: and so we two departed in kindnesse.

The 14 of October there came to visite me another secretarie, whose name was Sauio Frolle, and to aske me if I had any secret matter to send to the Emperour, to whome I answered that I had none, and so after a little space he left me.

He was sent for to Court.

The next day the Emperour sent a gentleman to me, and would haue had me to haue come to Court the Sunday next following, but I was sicke and could not: but the Tuesday then next following, being the 16. of October, I sent to intreat that I might see his Maiestie on the Thursday next insuing: which was granted me: yet the very next day I had a countermand, and that the Thursday seuenight I should come to Court.

Thursday being come, which was the 24 of October, there came gentlemen to my lodging to accompany me to Court, where I dined in the presence of the Emperour, and all my men at another boord, in the presence of the Emperor also.

When I was set at the table, the Emperor commanded a company of gentlemen to sit downe by me, to accompany me as he sayd, and I had vpon the sudden no comely meanes to shunne it.

I was no sooner returned to my lodging, after my going from Court, but the Emperor sent after me a gentleman of his, and good store of drinke, to pottuat (as they terme it) me and my people: so was I forced to sit drinking with them, till some of vs had too much.

The next Tuesday following, being the 29 of the moneth, there came to me the wonted company that inuited me before, to summon me to Court.

Wednesday being the 33 day of October, the gentlemen came for me, and so I went againe to Court, and was mette (as the day before) with two sundrie companyes of gentlemen, the one of better degree then the other: and so was conueyed to the Emperors presence, who straightway after I had done my duety to him, bad me sit downe, without vsing any other speeches or entertainment vnto me: neither had I sitten two minuts of an houre, but the Emperor sent his chancellor to me, to will me to retyre my selfe to another chamber, whether I was guided by my woonted companions.

I had not beene long in that other chamber, but there came to me Mekita Romanowich, Bodan Belskoy, Andrew Shalcan the chancellor, all three chiefe councellors, and Sauio Frolle principall secretarie.

They demanded of me what it was that I had to say to the Emperour from the Queene my mistresse. I answered that I was rather sent to hearke then to speake: for it is not vnknowen to all your honours (quoth I) that the Emperour hath sent to the Queene my mistresse, intreating her to send a gentleman of hers vnto him, naming what kinde of person he desired to be sent towards him: and for such an one as he desired to be sent, her Maiestie hath allowed me, commanding me hither to knowe his Maiesties pleasure: as then I was ready to doe his Maiestie what seruice I might.

They tolde mee that the Queene had written to the Emperour, that shee had deliuered her minde in all pointes, that had beene spoken of, and that I shoulde resolue his Maiestie in euery thing.

I tolde them that I was made priuie to thus much, that the Emperour had sent to the Queene to haue a perpetuall league with her Maiestie, and that his ambassadour had deliuered the articles of his Maiesties desire to the Queene, and the Queene had caused her answere to euery article to be deliuered to the Emperours ambassadour, to be presented to his Maiestie, as I well knewe they were: I therefore looked that rather there should be somewhat sayd to me, touching the liking or misliking of those articles, then any thing (till then) to be looked for from me.

They yet replyed, that it was the course in all partes, that the ambassadours should deliuer the cause of their comming: I answered that I knew it well, but that case was altered in my comming, in as much as I was sent for, and (in all likelihood) to haue somewhat to be sayd to me: by this time they seemed to finde the argument reasonable, saying they would goe tell the Emperour what I had sayd.

Ere long they returned with this answere from the Emperour, that now the morning was well spent, so as I could not conueniently speake with the Emperour any more that day, but the next time that I came to Court, I shoulde, and that against then they would haue their answere ready to the articles, and so left me: and I returned to my lodging with such like farewell as I had welcome, sauing that I saw the Emperour no more that day.

The

The Tuesday next following, being the 21st of November, I was summoned by my wonted company, to be at the Court the next day: and the next day the gentlemen, according to their former woont, came for me to my lodging.

When I came to Court, and into the Emperours presence, I had no sooner saluted him, and that he saw me draw neere vnto him, as I did, misliking my former intertainement, he sent his chancellor (besides that he bad me himselfe in his language) to bidde me sit downe, which to do I must go backe againe, and further from him: which misliking much, as I did the day before, when I was at Court, I caused the interpretour to tell the Emperour that I had rather stand where I stood, then sit where he willed me to sit: but notwithstanding my speeches, he would needs haue me to sit downe, and so I did.

I was almost no sooner set, but the Emperour sent his chancellor, as he did the other time before, to will me to retyre to another place, which place was the same chamber where I had beene the other time before, and was the councell chamber: where the same onely councellor came againe to me, and our questions tended all to the articles of the league, which they amongst them did read ouer, without challenging of any, sauing that which touched the sending to that prince that should become the Emperours enemie, to desist from his wrong doing: which they alleaged would aske so long space, as in the meane time the Emperour might sustaine irrecouerable hinderance.

I told them that in that poynt the Queenes Maiesty had drawen her selfe as neere to satisfie the Emperours desire as she might in reason, honor and conscience: and did make her reckoning that the Emperour would take it in great good part, that shee had drawne her consent so neere vnto all his requests. Whereunto they answered nothing: but fell off, and entred into the article of Englishe merchauntes sole trade to the North partes of Russia, and to the riuer of Dwina.

The article concerning the English sole trade to Dwina & the bay of S. Nichol.

They seemed to thinke it a very hard request to haue this countrey shut vp from the haunt of all strangers, and not to consent to, that this one Dutch merchant, Iohn de Wale, might traffike as now he did.

Iohn de Wale a Dutchman had great traffike to S. Nicholas.

Amongst other replies, I did answere them, that the Queenes Maiesty did aske nothing of the Emperour, but did onely put him in remembrance to maintaine his promise, and that sith neither her Maiesty nor her subiects, had deserued otherwise then well, at the Emperors hands, he would ratifie and strengthen the olde and first priuilege, which vpon they well deseruing it at his hands, he thought them woorthie of: and did graunt vnto them franck and freely long since.

Hereupon we had many speeches, for in this, and the other I thinke we spent nigh three howres, and so left off without any conclusion vntill another day.

Vpon the fifteenth of November my wonted inuiters came to summon me to Court: I answered that I was very ready to obay the Emperour, but the next morrow was the day when the Queene my mistresse came to the crowne, and we (as we had great cause) did thinke it a happy day, and kept it festiuall (as it were) and I had already inuited my countrey folks to come to make merry with me, and therefore would be glad that his Maiesty would spare me, and so he did, and reckoned it very reasonable.

Thursday the eight and twentieth day of November, I went to Court, and saw the Emperours eyes, and went to Councell as I was woont, but grewe no neerer any resolution then before.

The next Sunday after, I went to Court agayne, vpon summons, and went to the Councell chamber, as of custome, where I was neere an houre before any Councellor came to me, & when they came, hauing beene in councell halfe of that houre, betwixt their parting from the Emperour, and comming to me: they tolde me that the Emperour, thinking it not reasonable that all strangers should in all kindes of soртes be kept from, and forbidden his Northeren Seas and Hauens of that countrey, or that Iohn de Wale shoulde be driuen thence, had resolued that the English merchantes should haue their letter ratified for halfe custome with all fauors that might be done vnto them, to holde their Hauen at S. Nicholas, and their houses there, and els where, and that Iohn de Wale should enioy his Hauen or roadthereby, and to trade vp the riuer of Dwina to Mosco, and the townes towardes Mosco, but not any further, nor to any other of his countreys, as the English merchantes might freely doe to all partes: and sayd further that hee would that his other Hauens, as Cola and others shoulde bee free for the French, and all other comers to touche, barter, buye, and sell, but yet not at all to trade further into his countreyes.

The French permitted to come to Cola.

I did tell them, that if the Emperours resolution were such as they sayd, that I doubted he would

would loose the English merchants, and tolde some reasons why the English merchants could not then trade thither to theyr profit, and that they were not so bound to the nation, that they would come to them to theyr hinderance, and that if the English merchants did leaue them, I was of opinion that neither Dutch nor French would come to them. I tolde them that Iohn de Wale had not mispent his time in Russia, for I found he had gotten good friends among them: and then more, touching the Dutchmens disorder vpon Dwina.

December. The Sunday following, being the eight of December, vpon summons the day before I went to Court, and so to councell, after hauing seene the Emperours eyes, as of custome, where we talked but of such matters as before, sauing that they vged me to haue named what princes the Queene did reckon to be her enemyes: I answered that I had no commission to make discourse therof, nor the Queene had as yet any occasion to proclame to whom she was enemie.

This question grewe vppon the article, that the Emperours Ambassadour or messenger might passe thorowe Englande, whereunto the Queenes answere is, so as they goe towardes suche Princes, with whome her Maiestie is in league, and that holde the same religion that she doth.

The Friday then next following, being the thirteenth day of December, I was called againe to Court, and the Emperour spake with mee, but yet with sixe or seuen of his councell about him: and I was willed before my then going to Court (by a councellour that was sent expressly to that end) that I should leaue off my sword, which I had alwayes worne till then. And further the morning when I went, those gentlemen that came for me did will me from the Emperour, that I should not haue about me neither dagger nor knife.

The Emperor findeth faults with our merchants wares. The Emperour did make cauill, that the English merchantes did bring him nothing that was good, and compared olde gaberdines of his owne of skarlet with such skarlets as the merchants had then brought him, which skarlets were in the merchants opinions, the best piece of cloth that euer came in Russia: and in truth it was the better cloth.

He found fault also with parsement laces that the merchants had also then brought him, comparing them with laces vpon his olde cloakes, such as the fashion was worne out in England twenie yeeres since. Nothing pleased that day.

The Wednesday then next following, being the eighteenth day of December, I went againe to Court after such summons as of custome, when the Emperour talked with me, and his councell about him, but not so many as before, but vsed the like cauelling as the other time he did: seeming as though he would make no more reckoning to haue any amitie with the Queenes Maiestie, vanting himselfe quite beyond his compasse, challenging me, as he had done ere then, for my too much stoutnesse, reckoning vp great numbers of ambassadours that had come to him from many great princes, but that not any that bare himselfe so stout as I did, or would challenge his place to be so great.

I desired his Maiestie to haue patience (for he had then none within my seeing) and not to iudge of me in his choller, and then he would finde that I had not at any time done ought that became me not: saying further that I had bestowed my time very ill, hauing all my life time beene brought vp in Court and forren nations, if I had not learned with what duety to vse a prince, were he euer so great.

After these extreme iarres (wherin I vsed more patience then I had) we grew calmer, and parted such friends (reconciled as it were) as presently vpon my arriuall in my lodging, he sent of his gentlemen to pacifie me, which was the greatest token of his fauour that might be, and therwithall did threaten to send me of his owne meat as soone as his Lent was ended, which should be at Christmas.

January. Vpon New yeeres day I went agayne to Court vpon summons, as of custome, hauing onely the bare intertainement that I had beene wonted to, which was onely to see the Emperours eyes, and was willed to goe to the Councell chamber, whither the councell came vnto me, and readde vnto mee the articles which had beene in Englande deliuered to the ambassadour: and when they had readde them, they asked me if I had commission to confirme them. I answered that I durst assure them, that the Queenes Maiestie woulde not goe from them, if her requestes tooke place.

They then asked mee (as they had done before then) if I had no power by commission to alter them? I answered that I had not: and tolde that the Queene my Mistresse, had therein yeelded so farre to satisfie the Emperours desire, as with honour shee might, and so farre as shee did imagine, the Emperour woulde rather haue taken extreame kindelye, then once seemed to haue misliked or disallowed anie parte thereof. And I sayde further that when

when the Queenes Maiestie shoulde knowe that hee made such cauilling, and tooke her kindenesse in no better part, I would not be bounde, that shee woulde performe all that shee had saide: for that since the time that shee made these kinde offers to the Emperour, the case was much altered.

They vrged mee much to haue tolde them wherein, (on my opinion) the case was so altered: whereunto I answered, that I purposed to doe so, but not till I founde mine owne time.

All the rest of our time was wasted in those two points of Iohn de Wale, and the article of willing the enemies of the Emperour to desist from offering of wrong: vpon which both points they stacke still.

But I assured them, that the reasonable requests of her Maiestie must be answered in the one, or els the amitie would goe but slowly forward, and as for the other, I assured them that her Maiestie would be drawen no further.

The 5. of Ianuarie being wednesday, in the afternoone, he sent my wonted visitors to me, who tolde me, that the Emperour, because hee loued (quoth they) the Queene of England his sister, would send the next day a very great noble personage to speake with mee, and intreated mee that therefore I would eate betimes.

I answered, that who so came from the Emperour, shoulde bee welcome to mee: but as for my eating, I had so bad a disgestion with long keeping my chamber, as I might ill breake my ordinary times of eating.

This great man came to me the next day, but it was three of the clocke ere hee came; his name is Bodan Belscoy the Emperours chiefest fauourite, and Domine fac totum. His comming was to examine two matters: The one, touching Sacayr, who conducted mee from Colmogro to Vologda: The other, was against the Emperours officers, who were to deliuer mee my diet, and had vsed me extreeme naughtily. Bodan Belscoy a great duke.

Hee first beganne with the matter of my diet, wherein my Steward was to playe a part, whom Bodan (hauing as it seemed before hande purposed to doe so) did vse naughtily, and with naughtie termes, to bolster out the Emperours officers, burthening him with the selling of such victuals, as the Emperour had allowed me.

After that hee had called Sakayr before him, and that I had named my witnesses against him of his owne companie, touching his villanous behauiour towardes mee, hee was dismissed vntill an other time, that the witnesses might bee recouered, which were at that time somewhat farre off: hee caused the Secretarie Sauio Frolle who came with him, to reade a scroule, which the Emperour had commaunded them to reade vnto mee: In which scroule were set downe to bee repeated, those Articles touching the sending to the Prince that shoulde bee enemie to the Emperour, to desist from his doing of iniurie (which point hee still misliked) and that Article of the sole trade of the English Marchants to the hauens, and riuer of Dwina, which neither hee brooked.

I answered, that what I had to say, I had alreadie saide, and had no more to say concerning those pointes.

They prested me much that I would be content to receiue againe such victuals for my diet, as the Emperour would sende and allowe me, promising that all the wants should be amended, and the faulters punished.

To satisfie them for that they were in my lodging, and for that the one of them was in chiefe fauour with the Emperour, and sent of purpose to please mee (although his pride caused him to slippe besides his Commission:) And againe, for that I had desire that hee shoulde returne to the Emperour, and report that I had vsed him honourablie (as I did) I denied not, but that I woulde receiue victualls againe the next morning, although I was resolued otherwise.

This being tolde the Emperour, hee in great haste sent for his Chancellor, and rated him, and threatned him not to leaue one of his race aliue: And then hee sent his chiefest Secretarie vnto mee to pacifie mee, and to intreate mee to take my Come (as they doe vse to terme it,) with offers that I should haue what I would: but I alleaged howe hardly I had bene vsed at those Counsellers handes, and therefore that the Emperour should pardon mee. I hoped that hee would leaue the Market open for mee (which in deede was stopped) seeing that I came from his good friende and Sister, and so hee shoulde finde that I had a Mistresse that was well able to serue me. Andrew Shalcan.

The Secretarie finding mee so vnreadie to satisfie the Emperour, arose in great haste and fume, and would needes haue bene gone, thinking hee should haue scarred mee therewith,

saying, that sith he found me so vntractable, hee would be gone. I answered, that if hee had nothing els to say vnto mee hee might goe when pleased him: And so for good maners sake I followed him to guide him towards his sledde. But his haste was but seeming: for although I made very slowe speede after him, hee gaue me leaue to ouertake him, and stayed without intreating, first once and then againe, and would very gladly haue had a better message to haue carried to the Emperour: for well he knew that he should be ill welcome home.

At his departing I willed him to intreate the Emperour that the Market might be set open by me, and that I might not be starued: for that it was not impossible, but that I might yet doe his Maiestie some seruice if I shall liue. You goe not about (quoth hee) to doe him any seruice: Ha (quoth I) I haue no seruice yet readie for him, for I haue had no cause yet to doe him any, But I will not forsweare to doe him seruice. And thus he went his way in other sort then he looked for, and sorrowfull.

The next morning hee came againe, being sent from the Emperour, and brought with him a scroll of a newe allowance of victuals, more then I had before, by much, which I still in the respect before spoken of, refused to receiue. But yet for that I knewe it reasonable, and well becomming me to yeelde, (in as much as I might) to satisfie the Emperours request at a seconde sending, especially for that other men had done mee the wrong and not the Emperour, I was content to yeelde thus farre vnto his Maiestie, to agree (if needes he would feede mee) to take a reasonable allowance in money for my diet, but so much he pressed mee to satisfie the Emperours kinde sending to me, that I agreed to receiue the scroule of diet, that the Emperour had sent me: And so went the Secretarie a merrie man away.

The scroule of the new diet, was this,
Ianuarie 13.

- One bushell of fine meale for 3. dayes.
- One bushell of wheate meale for a day and a halfe.
- 2. Liue geese for one day.
- 20. Hennes for the day.
- 7. Sheepe for a day.
- 1. Oxe for three dayes.
- 1. Side of porke for a day.
- 70. Eggs for a day.
- 10. Pound of butter.
- 70. Pennie white loaues.
- 12. Pennie loaues of bread.
- 1. Veather or bottle of Vinegar.
- 2. Veathers of salt Cabiges.
- 1. Pecke of Onions.
- 10. Pound of salt.
- 1. Altine of waxe candles.
- 2. Altines of tallow candles.
- 1. Fourth part of a Vether of cherrie meade.
- As much of Mallynouomeade.
- Halfe a Vether of burnt wine.
- 1. Veather of sodden meade, called Obarni.
- 3. Veathers of sweete meade.
- 10. Veathers of white meade.
- 15. Veathers of ordinary meade.
- 5. Veathers of sweete beere.
- 15. Veathers of beere.
- Halfe a pound of pepper.
- 3. Sollynikes of saffron.
- 1. Sollynike of Mace.
- 1. Sollynike of Nutmegs.
- 2. Sollynikes of Cloues.
- 3. Sollynikes of Cinnamom.

Prouender.

- One bushell of Oates.
- One loade of hay.
- 1. Loade of strawe.

The

The Secretarie I thinke had no ſooner ended to tell the Emperour howe hee had ſpedde, but by and by the Gentlemen, which were wonted, came to ſummon mee to Court againſt the nexte day. Whither I went, and founde the Emperour in his Maieſtie as of cuſtome, and after hauing ſitten in his preſence, (after the common maner) I was willed (as of wont) to goe to the Councell chamber, whither came to mee three of my olde companions, and not the Chanceller, and with them fiue others of the Counſell, with whome I had no acquaintance till then. And amongſt thoſe one duke, who tooke the formoſt place of them all, both of my olde companions, and of the newe ſupplie.

This great duke (as they termed him) began to rehearſe ſome former matters touching the vnkindeneſſe twixt mee and the Chanceller, and tolde mee, that for that the ſaide Chanceller had not vſed himſelfe well towards me, the Emperours diſpleaſure was vpon him, and for his fault was put out of his place, and that the Emperours meaning was to doe me right, vpon euery man that had wronged mee: and then they called into preſence Sakair, to ſhewe him vnto me as a man condemned to priſon, and further to receiue ſuch puniſhment, as vpon examination of his faults, hee ſhould be found to haue deſerued. The Chanceller diſplaced for abuſing ſir Ierom Bowes.

Touching the Chanceller, I anſwered no more but that I founde that the Emperours purpoſe was to doe the Queene my Miſtreſſe right: for the others, Sakayr and one other Gentleman, who had alſo behaued himſelfe ill towards me, I intreated the great duke, and the reſt, that they would in my name be ſuters to his Maieſtie to pardon them at my humble ſuite, and ſaide, that if they had not had better backes then their owne, that were their ſetters on, they durſt neuer haue offered me a wrong.

This ſuite was much liked, and they all promiſed to ſay to the Emperour all that they had heard of me, and ſo they tooke their leaue of me, willing me to retire to my lodging.

The Tueſday next after, I was ſummoned againe to Court, againſt the next day, which was no ſooner done, but the chiefe Secretarie came to mee ſent from the Emperour onely to knowe of mee, whether my coyne (as they terme it) were, and had bene deliuered mee according to the ſcroule, which the Emperour had ſent mee before then, and to knowe if I had any other grieues.

Vpon this ſuddaine arriuall, my Priſtaues, Maſters of houſholde, after our reckoning, for that in all this time they had not yet deliuered my coyne, as they ſhould haue done, but had ſo much bungled with me, ſent to mee in great haſte, that I would be ſo good vnto them, as to ſay, that I had had euery thing according to the Emperours appointment: for if I ſhoulde haue tolde the trueth, they woulde all haue bene whipped. And therefore to ſaue that ſore, I made a cleanely anſwere, without telling any lie that ſatiſfied the Secretarie, whereof they were more then glad.

The next day being the 19. of Januarie, I went againe to Court, and the Emperour ſpake with mee with 3. of his Counſell by him, and two Interpretours, to whome after I had giuen thankes for the right hee had done me againſt thoſe who had ill vſed mee: He aſked me if I had any other grieues, ſaying, that if I had and would tell them, I ſhould haue remedie of them. I gaue his Maieſtie moſt humble thankes, and told him, that if I had any other grieues, I would tel them to his Maieſtie at ſome other time.

He then tolde mee, that hee had often by himſelfe, and more often by his Counſell, talked with mee touching the Articles of amitie, twixt the Queene my Miſtreſſe and him, and yet they were brought to no good ende, Aſking me if I had no other, nor further Commiſſion then I had alreadie tolde of: whereunto I anſwered, that I had not. And then he tolde mee (as hee had often done ere then) in what ſort he would haue the Quenes Maieſtie ioyne in friendſhip with him, that was, to take his part againſt all his enemies. I anſwered, that in that matter I coulde ſay to his Maieſtie but as I had done.

He then aſked my opinion, whether the Queenes Maieſtie did make better reckoning of the king of Pole, or of him. I anſwered, that I was ſorie to heare him make that a queſtion; for as betwixt the Queenes Maieſtie and the king of Pole, there was no cumitie, ſo for ought I knewe there was no great friendſhip. But I was well aſſured, that when I came from her Maieſtie, ſhe helde his highneſſe very deere vnto her. If ſhe holde mee deare (quoth he) then ſhee will take my part againſt my enemies. So ſhe will (quoth I) as farre as ſhe hath promiſed in the Articles, which in my opinion will ſerue your turne, although it bee not ſet downe in ſuch wordes as you would haue it.

Well (quoth hee) I will ſende my Ambaſſadour againe to the Queene my ſiſter, about theſe matters, and others.

Sir (quoth I) her Maiestie intreateth you but in small matters, if it shal please your Maiestie to satisfie her in those her small requests, which shal cost you nothing, and you may performe them at home in your owne Countrey at your ease, her Maiestie (I beleeue) will be loath to denie you any reasonable request.

He answered that touching those matters of the Marchants, hee would talke once againe with his Counsell, and that at my next comming to Court, I shoulde haue answere in that matter, and so willed mee to depart, being glad as my selfe was, that wee parted so good friends.

My backe was no sooner turned, but hee rated his Counsellers, and tolde them that I was courteous ynough if I were well vsed.

The 26. of Januarie the Emperours chiefe Secretarie came to me two sundrie times about M. Roper.

Friday the 7. of Febuarie I was at Court, and sawe the Emperour as of wont: and I talked with the Counsell two sundrie times, but to litle purpose.

The next tuesday I was summoned to Court to bee there the next day, but the same day, I had a countermaunde to stay till Saturday: Then I went to Court and the Emperour talked with mee, and rehearsed the effect of his Ambassage, and saide that to the chiefe parts of his Articles, and requests, hee was not answered any whitte to his liking: but that it seemed by the Queenes answeres, that shee woulde haue no friendshippe with him, rather then otherwise. Whereunto I answered, that if hee woulde consider well, howe farre her Maiestie had drawen her selfe to friend him, hee should finde great cause rather to accept her friendly offers kindely, then to construe them after his owne fashion. But he ranne still to his olde point, that her would haue her Maiestie take his part directly against all his enemies.

I desired his Maiestie to haue a little patience (a hard request) and that hee would giue mee leaue to speake, (a hard thing also to come by:) for hee must say all himselfe without to bee answered.

Sir (quoth I) then thus I pray the case, that vpon condition that the Queene will make warres vpon all your enemies, who all are yet her friendes, you will then bee content that the English Marchants shall enioy a priuiledge, that they haue alreadie more then deserued at your handes. And besides you will that the Queenes Maiestie first graunt your great requests, and then you will graunt her little ones. But I doubt her Maiestie will take it very vnkindely, that you take in no better part her kinde and friendly offers: for I answere, her meaning neuer was to make warre vpon these Princes, except vpon greater cause then shee yet knoweth.

Well, (quoth he) I will sende my Ambassadour with you to the Queene my sister, and will let downe my meaning more plainely then before, and hee shall doe there touching the Marchants matters as he shall finde cause.

Sir, (quoth I) I thinke your Ambassadour wil not goe with me, for the Queene my Mistresse hath giuen mee leaue to goe ouer lande, and to that ende I am to craue your Maiesties fauour and furtherance.

This liked his Maiestie as little, as the deniall of it pleased mee: For hee might not suffer, (nor would) that I should goe ouer lande, and therefore concluded that I should goe home the same way that I came. And so after some other speaches, hee bade mee goe home, and tolde me that vpon the Munday next following hee woulde appoint his chiefe Councellers to declare vnto mee the rest of his minde, and then I shoulde haue my dispatche homewards.

Febuarie. Munday, the sixt of Febuarie, I went againe to Court, and sawe the Emperour as of wont, but talked no whit with him: I was willed to retire my selfe to the Councell chamber, whither came his Counsell, and (by his commaundement) read vnto mee a scroule of Articles, such as he would haue to passe in the league of amitie. I tolde them in part my opinion of those Articles, as I had done often before when I tolde them, as then also, that if the Emperour did not answere the Queenes final demaunds and reasonable requests, it was not like that she would yeeld to those of his, which no man would reckon reasonable.

I had tolde them before, that the Emperour might saue labour in keeping his Ambassadour at home, if he left the Queenes Maiestie vnsatisfied.

I was answered, that he would proone once againe what the Queene would doe for him: But still I felt both the Emperour and his Counsell to nibble at the baite, and found that they would bite at length.

They tolde mee that vpon Thursday then next, I should be called to Court againe to see the Emperour, and so to take my leaue, and thus we parted.

In the meane season the Emperour and his Counsell, hauing well considered my constancie

inuyting the reasonable requests of our Marchants, as also bethinking themselues of the great benefite they might reape by the continuance of their trafique, grewe to such issue as I looked for, and the Marchants desired. So that after certaine dayes, I was againe called to Court into the Emperours presence, where after apparant shewe of his gratious countenance and fauour, I was requested to repaire againe to the Counsel chamber, where his greatest Counsailers signified vnto me, that the Emperour had at last yeelded to these articles following, viz.

1 First, that the goods which were taken from our Marchants by robberie vpon the Volga, should be recompensed.

2 Then that the summe of 500. markes, which was paid for 10. yeeres together into the Emperours receit, for the rent of a house that they had in Vologda, should be repayed.

3 Thirdly, that 1500. markes, which had bene exacted from them the two last yeeres before my comming into Russia, should also be repayed.

4 Next that an olde desperate debt of 1000. markes or there abouts, shoulde nowe bee satisfied.

5 Lastly, that their custome which before that time they had payde, amounting to 2000. pounds by the yeere, should now be abated, and no more required.

There remayned nothing in the foresaide Articles, but the confirmation of them by seale, and the deliuerie of them to mee, which was determined to bee done at my next repaire to the Court.

But in the meane time it fell out so vnfortunately that the Emperour fell sicke, and within a fewe dayes died: After whose death, the foresaide Counsellers, who not long before were as glad of my friendship, as I was also of theirs, grewe againe to be of their former authoritie, and then beganne to reuenge themselues vpon mee, at their pleasure. For Mekita and Shalkan, shut mee by immediatly in mine owne house, (as it were a close prisoner,) so that for the space of eight or nine weekes, I was forced with all my companie to keepe within doores, not so much as to looke out at the windowes, that were vpon the streetes side, with continuall watche, and gard set to obserue all our doings. The death of the olde Emperour.

Besides this, they tooke from me the liberall allowance of diet, which the late Emperour had graunted me, yeelding such slender and ill fare, as enuious stomackes coulde afoorde, with many other indignities, which for modesties sake I here suppresse.

All this while I sued for my dispatche, which I should haue had before the Emperour died, but coulde by no meanes obtaine it, such was the pleasure of Mekita and Shalkan. But after long and tedious delaye, they sent mee worde at last ouernight, to come to Court the next day to haue my dispatch. Whicher being come, whereas euer before I had bene mette within Counsell, with many of the greatest and graueſt Counsailers, I was nowe onely intertained by this Shalcan, and a brother of his, and one other meane Gentleman, whome I had neuer seene till then. Who deliuered to mee for resolution from the newe Emperour, that hee had no meaning to proceede further in those treaties, that his late father nowe deceased, had to fore dealt in. Theodore the newe Emperour.

Shortly after I was willed to come againe to Court to take my leaue of the Emperour, and so I did, and being come into his presence, he told me briefly, that he desired such league and friendshippe with the Queene my Mistresse, as his father heretofore had had, and for the summe of my dispatche, deliuered vnto mee a letter, which hee had written to her Maiestie, which I receiued.

Thus within a fortnight after this, I had post horses prouided mee, and hauing furnished them for the vse of my companie, I tooke horse, and departed from Mosco, on the 29. of May being then Saturday, about two of the clocke in the afternoone: I was accompanied out of the Citie of Mosco, with Mekita, and the foure Prestaues, and other Gentlemen and seruants, who hauing brought me some part of my way, about two verstes from the Citie, there tooke their leaue, and departed backe againe: Onely Mekita accompanied mee still, and went with mee to S. Nicholas. His departing from Mosco the 29. of May

This Saturday at night I lodged at a place about 4. verstes from Bratezeue, which Bratezeue is from Mosco 30. verstes. Bratzeue.

On Sunday I ridde forewardes towardes Troits, which is also 30. verstes from Bratezeue: there I dined that day, and lodged that night at Doobna 300. verstes from Troits. Doobna.

On Munday I ridde to Peraslaue 20. verstes from Doobna, and there dined, and lodged that night at Rogozeue, 12. verstes from Peraslaue. Peraslaue

Deobola. On tuesday I ridde to Deobala, and from thence to Rostoue, where I lodged, which is 48. verst̃s from Deobola.

Sheupza. Jeraslaue. On wednesday I ridde to Sheupza, where I dined and lodged that night at Ieraslaue in my olde lodging, which Ieraslaue is 25. verst̃s from Sheupza.

On thursday in the afternoone, I went to the Volga, to haue passed it ouer by ferrie, but the winde was high, and all things not readie, and I returned againe to Ieraslaue for that night.

Danileske. On friday I past the riuer, and lodged that night at Daunleske, being 43. verst̃s from Vochsur, where I dined that day.

Teletske. On saturday I ridde from Daunleske to Teletske, where I rested that night.

Camelskie. Vologda. On Sunday I ridde from Teletske to Obnorske, which was 20. verst̃s. Therehence the next day to Camelski, which was 20. verst̃s more, and so vpon tuesday I came to Vologda 30. verst̃s from Camelski. At Vologda I rested till Sunday morning, and then went downe the Riuer.

S. Nicholas. The thursday seuenth night after at night, I came to S. Nicholas, and there remayned till our English shipping were readie to way for our voyage homewards, which was the tenth day of August following, at which time Mekyta, which accompanied mee hither from Mosco tooke his leaue of me, and I imbarked my selfe, and my whole companie in the bay or roade, and arriued in safetie at Graues end, the 12. day of September next ensuing.

A letter of M. Henrie Lane to the worshipfull M. William Sanderson, *contayning a briefe discourse of that* which passed in the Northeast discouerie for the space of 33. yeeres.

MAster Sanderson, as you lately requested mee, so haue I sought, and though I cannot finde things that heretofore I kept in writing and lent out to others, yet perusing at London copies of mine olde letters to content one that meaneth to pleasure many, I haue briefly and as truely as I may, drawen out as followeth: The rough hewing may be planed at your leasure, or as pleaseth him that shall take the paines.

First the honourable attempt to discouer by sea Northeast and Northwest named for Cathay, being chiefly procured by priuiledge from King Edwarde the first, and other his Nobilitie by and at the coste and suite of M. Sebastian Cabota, then gouernour for discoueries with sir Andrewe Iudde, sir George Barnes, sir William Garret, M. Anthonie Hussie, and a companie of Marchants, was in the last yeere of his Maiesties raigne 1553. The generall charge whereof was committed to one sir Hugh Willoughbie knight, a goodly Gentleman accompanied with sufficient nomber of Pilots, Masters, Marchants and Mariners, hauing three shippes well furnished to wit, The Bona Speranza, the Edward Bonaduenture, and the Confidentia. The Edward Bonaduenture, Richard Chanceller being Pilote, and Steuen Burrough Master, hauing discouered Wardhouse vpon the coast of Finmarke, by storme or fogge departed from the rest, found the bay of S. Nicholas nowe the chiefe port for Russia, there wintred in safetie, and had ayde of people at a village called Newnox.

Anno 1553. M. William Burrough was then yong and with his brother in this first voyage.

The other two shippes attempting further Northwards (as appeared by pamphlets founde after written by sir Hugh Willoughbie) was in September encountred with such extreme colde, that they put backe to seeke a wintring place: and missing the saide bay fell vpon a desert cost in Lappia, entring into a Riuer immediatly frosen vp, since discouered, named Arzina, Reca, distant East from a Russian Monasterie of Monkes called Pechingham, from whence they neuer returned, but all to the nomber of 70. persons perished, which was for want of experience to haue made canes or stoues. These were founde with the shippes the next Sommer Anno 1554. by Russe fishermen: and in Anno 1555. the place sent vnto by English Marchants as hereafter appeareth.

Note.

Anno 1554. Anno 1554. the saide shippe Edward Bonaduenture (although robbed homewards by Flemings) returned with her companie to London, shewing and setting forth their entertainments and discouerie of the Countreis euen to the Citie of Mosco, from whence they brought a priuiledge written in Russe with the kings or great dukes seale, the other two ships looked for and vnknowen to them where they were.

Anno 1555. An. 1555. the said Companie of Marchants for discouerie vpõ a new supply, sent thither againe with

with two ships, to wit, the Edwarde Bonaduenture, and another bearing the name of the King and Queene, Phillip, and Marie, whose Maiesties by their letters to the said Moscouite, recommended sundry their subiects then passing, whereof certaine, to wit, Richard Chanceller, George Killingworth, Henry Lane, and Arthur Edwards, after their arriuall at the Baye, and passing vp Dwina to Vologhda, went first vp to Mosco, where vpon knowledge of the said letters, they with their traine, had speciall entertainment, with houses and diet appointed, and shortly permitted to the Princes presence, they were with Gentlemen brought through the Citie of Mosko, to the castle and pallace, replenished with numbers of people, and some gunners. They entred sundry roomes, furnished in shew with ancient graue personages, all in long garments of sundry colours, gold, syllue, baldekin, and violet, as our vestments and copes haue bene in England, suitable with caps, iewels, and chaines. These were found to be no Courtiers, but ancient Moscouits, inhabitants, and other their merchants of credite, as the manner is, furnished thus from the Wardrobe and Treasurie, waiting and wearing this apparell for the time, and so to restore it. The King and Queenes letters.

Then entring into the Presence, being a large roome strowed, with carpets, were men of more estate, and richer shew, in number aboue an hundred set square: who after the saide Englishmen came in, doing reuerence, they all stood vp, the Prince onely sitting, and yet rising at any occasion, when our King and Queenes names were read or spoken. Then after speeches by interpretation, our men killing his hande, and bidden to dinner, were staied in another roome, and at dinner brought through, where might be seene mallie siluer and gilt plate, some like to as big as kilderkins, and washbowles, and entring the dining place, being the greater roome, the Prince was set bare headed, his crowne and rich cappe standing vpon a pinnacle by. Not farre distant, sate his Metropolitane, with diuers other of his kindred, and chiefe Tartarian Captaines: none sate oueragainſt him, or any, at other tables, their backes towards him: which tables all furnished with ghests set, there was for the Englishmen, named by the Russes, Ghosti Carabelski, to wit, strangers or merchants by ship, a table in the middest of the roome, where they were set direct against the Prince: and then began the seruice, brought in by a number of his yong Lordes and Gentlemen, in such rich attire, as is aboue specified: and still from the Princes table (notwithstanding their owne furniture) they had his whole messes set ouer all in mallie fine golde, deliuered euery time from him by name to them, by their seuerall Christian names, as they sate, viz. Richarde, George, Henry, Arthur. Likewise bread and sundry drinkes of purified meade, made of fine white and clarified honie. At their rising, the Prince called them to his table, to receaue each one a cuppe from his hand to drinke, and tooke into his hand Master George Killingworths beard, which reached ouer the table, and pleasantly deliuered it the Metropolitane, who seeming to bleſſe it, said in Russe, this is Gods gift. As in deede at that time it was not onely thicke, broad, and yellowe coloured, but in length fiue foote, and two inches of a size. Then taking leaue, being night, they were accompanied and followed with a number, carrying pots of drinke, and dishes of meate dressed, to our lodging. M. Killingworths beard of a meruailous length.

This yeere the two shippes, with the deade bodies of Sir Hugh Willoughby, and his people, were sent into by Master Killingworth, (which remained there in Mosko, Agent almost two yeres) and much of the goods and victuals were recouered and saued.

Anno 1556. The companie sent two ships for Russia, with extraordinarie Masters and sailers, to bring home the two ships, which were frosen in Lappia, in the riuer of Arzina aforesaid. The two ships sent this yeere from England sailing from Lapland to the Baye of S. Nicholas, tooke in lading with passengers, to wit, a Russe Ambassador, named Ioseph Nepey, and some of his men shipped with Richard Chanceler, in the Edward. But so it fell out that the two which came from Lappia, with all their newe Masters and marriners, neuer were heard of, but in foule weather, and nought seas, after their two yeeres wintring in Lapland, became, as is supposed, vnstanch, and sunke, wherein were drowned also diuers Russes merchants, and seruants of the Ambassador. A third ship the Edward aforesaid, falling on the North part of Scotland, vpon a rocke was also lost, and Master Chanceler, with diuers other, drowned. The said Russe Ambassador hardly escaping, with other his men, marriners, and some goods saued, were sent for into Scotland, from the King, Queene, and Merchants (the Messenger being Master Doctor Lawrence Hussie, and others:) And then, as in the Chronicles appeareth, honourably entertained and receaued at London. Anno 1556.

This yeere also the companie furnished and sent out a pinnesse, named the Serchthrifte, to discouer the harborowes in the North coast from Norway to Wardhouse, and so to the Baye of S. Nicholas. There was in her Master and Pilot, Stephen Burrough, with his brother William, and eight other. Their discouerie was beyond the Baye, toward the Samoeds, people dwelling

neere

neere the riuer of Ob, and found a sound or sea with an Iland called Vaigats, first by them put into the Carde or Mappe. In that place they threwe sno we out of their said pinnesse, with shouels in August, by which extremitie, and lacke of time, they came backe to Russia, and wintred at Colmogro.

Anno 1557. The companie with foure good ships, sent backe the said Russe Ambassador, and in companie with him, sent as an Agent, for further discouerie, Master Anthony Ienkinson, who afterward anno 1558. with great fauour of the Prince of Moscouia, and his letters passed the riuer Volga, to Cazan, and meaning to seeke Cathay by land, was by many troupes and companies of vnciuil Tartarians, encountred, and in danger: but keeping companie with merchants of Bactria, or Boghar, and Vrgeme, trauailing with camels, he with his companie, went to Boghar, and no further, whose entertainment of the king is to be had of Master Ienkinson, which returned anno 1559. to Moscouie. And in anno 1560. he, with Henry Lane, came home into England, which yeere was the first safe returne, without losse of shipwracke, or dead fraight, and burnings. And at this time was the first traffike to the Narue in Liuonia, which confines with Lituania and all the dominions of Russia, with the markets, faires, commodities, great townes, and riuers, here sent vnto by diuers seruants: the reportes were taken by Henry Lane, Agent, and deliuered to the companie, 1561. The trade to Rie, and Reuel, of olde time hath bene long since frequented by our English nation, but this trade to the Narue was hitherto concealed from vs by the Danskers and Lubeckers.

Anno 1561. the said Master Anthony Ienkinson, went Agent into Russia, who the next yeere after, passing all the riuer of Volga, to Astracan, and ouer the Caspian sea, arriued in Persia, and opened the trade thither.

Also betweene the yeeres of 1568. and 1572. sundry voyages after Master Ienkinsons, were made by Thomas Alcocke, Arthur Edwards, Master Thomas Bannister, and Master Geffrey Ducket, whose returne, if spoile neere Volga had not preuented by rouing theeues, had altogether saued and recouered the companies (called the olde companies) great losse, charges, and damages: but the saying is true, by vnitie small things growe great, and by contention great things become small. This may be vnderstoode best by the companie. The frowardnes of some fewe, and euill doing of some vniust factors, was cause of much of the euill successe.

Arthur Edwards was sent againe 1579. and died in the voyage at Astracan. About which matters, are to be remembred the voyages of Master Thomas Randolph Esquire, Ambassador, anno 1567. And late of Sir Hierom Bowes, anno 1583. both tending and treating for further discoueries, freedomes, & priuiledges, where with I medle not. But in conclusion, for their paines and aduentures this way (as diuers doe nowe adaies other waies) as worthie Gentlemen sent from Princes, to doe their Countrey good, I put them in your memorie, with my hartie farewel. From S. Margarets neere Dartforth in Kent.

Yours Henrie Lane.

Anno 15[illegible].

Boghar voyage.

4 1560.

The first trade to the Narue 1560.

Alcocke slaine in Persia. Bannister died in Media. Edwards died at Astracan

The late ambassage of Master Giles Fletcher, Doctor of the Ciuill Lawe, *sent from her Maiestie to the Emperour of Russia,* Anno 1588.

IN the yeere 1588, was sent Ambassador from her Highnes, into the Country of Russia, Giles Fletcher, Doctor of the Ciuill Law, aswel to treat with the new Emperour Pheodor Iuanowich, about league and amitie, in like manner as was before with his father Iuan Vasilowich, as also for the reestablishing and reducing into order the decaied trade of our English men there. Who notwithstanding at his first arriuall at the Mosko, founde some partes of harde intertainment, by meanes of certaine rumors, concerning the late nauall victorie, which was there reported to haue fallen on the Spanish side, as also for some dislike conceaued against the priuiledged trade of our English merchants. Yet in the ende obtained of the Emperour many good and equall conditions, and was courteously and honorably dismissed by him. The principall pointes which he intreated of, and were granted vnto him by the said Emperour, were these:

1 A continuation of league and amitie, betweene hir Highnes, and the saide Emperour Pheodor Iuanowich, in like manner as was before with his father Iuan Vasilowich.

2 A confirmation and reestablishment of the former priuiledges of the companie of our English Merchants, which were infringed and annulled in the principall pointes, with diuers necessarie additions to the same, for the better ordering of their trade in those Countries hereafter,

hereafter, viz. That the state of the priuiledge granted before in the names of some priuate and particular men, be altered in that point, and the same granted by the name and stile of their incorporation, viz. To the fellowship of Englisth Merchants, for the discouerie of newe trades.

3 That vpon euery surmise and light quarrell, the said priuiledge be not reuoked, and annulled, as before time it hath bene.

4 That iustice shall be administred to the said companie, and their Agent without delay, vpon such as shall offer them any dispite or iniurie, or shall exact or impose vppon them any paiment, taxation, or imposition whatsoeuer, contrarie to the freedome of the said grant.

5 That the goods and commodities of the said companie, be not forcibly taken, as before time they haue bene, by the Emperours officers, or people of authoritie, either for the vse of the said Emperour, or of his officers. But in case they haue neede of the said commodities, the same to be taken at reasonable prices, and for ready money.

6 That the said companie be not charged hereafter with the answering of such debts as are made by any Englisth man, not being of the societie.

7 That the Emperours authorized people, shall not hereafter repute any Englisth man resiant in that Countrey, to be any factor, seruant, or dealer in the said companies affaires, but such as the Agent shall enregister by name, within the offices where custome is entred in all such places of the land, where the said companie haue residencies to traffike.

8 That the names of such as shall so be enregistred, be no longer continued in recorde, nor themselues reputed as factors or dealers, for the said companie, then the Agent shal thinke good. But in case the said Agent in his discretion shall thinke meete to strike out of the register any name of such as haue bene emploied in the companies seruice, the saide person to be held as priuate, and whose acte in bargaining or otherwise, shall not charge the saide Companie.

9 That if any Englisth man within the Countrey of Russia, be suspected for any notorious crime, as fellonie, treason, the same be not straite waies set vppon the Pudkey, nor otherwise tormented, till such time as he shall be conuicted by plaine and euident proofes: which being done, the whole proceeding to be sent ouer to the Queene of England.

10 That the said priuiledge, with the additions, shall be publisthed in all Townes and partes of the Emperours dominions, where the said companie haue traffique.

11 That the said companie shall be permitted to vse a sole trade through the Emperours Countries, by the riuer Volga, into Media, Persia, Bogharia, and the other the East Countries.

12 Whereas there was claimed of the saide companie, the summe of 23553. Markes of debt, made by certaine of their factors for the said companie, for paiment wherof, their whole stocke was in danger of arrest, by publike authoritie: Further also 2140. Rubbles for custome and housrent, he obtained a rebatement of seuenteene thousand, eleuen hundred, fifty & three Markes of the said debt.

The said Ambassador Master Giles Fletcher, as I vnderstand, hath drawen a booke, intituled, Of the Russe Common wealth, containing:

First, a Cosmographicall description of the Countrey, which hath these Chapters.

1 Of the length and breadth of the Countrey of Russia, with the names of the shires.
2 Of the soile and climat.
3 Of the natiue commodities of the Countrey.

Secondly a description of their policie, contained in these Chapters, viz.

1 Of the constitution or state of the Russe Common wealth.
2 Of their Parliaments, and manner of holding them.
3 Of the Russe Nobilitie, and meanes, whereby it is kept in an vnder proportion, agreeable to that state.
4 Of the manner of gouerning their Prouinces or Shires.
5 Of the Emperours priuie Counsell.
6 Of the Emperours custo nes, and their reuenues, with the practises for the increase of them.
7 Of the Russe Communaltie, and their condition.
8 Of their publike iustice, and manner of proceeding therein.
9 Of the Emperours forces for his warres, with the chiefe officers, and their salarie or pay.
10 Of their manner of mustering, armour, and prouision for victuall.

11 Of

11 Of their ordering, marching, charging, and their martiall discipline.
12 Of their Colonies, and pollicie in maintaining their purchases by conquest.
13 Of their Borderers, with whome they haue most to doe in warre and peace.
14 Of their Church offices and degrees.
15 Of their Liturgie, or forme of Church seruice.
16 Of their manner of administring the Sacraments.
17 Of the doctrine of the Russe Church.
18 Of the manner of solemnizing their marriages.
19 Of the other ceremonies of the Russe Church.

Thirdly, the Oeconomie or priuate behauiour of the Russe, containing these Chapters.

1 Of the Emperours houshold Officers, and order of his house.
2 Of the priuate behauiour and manner of the Russe people.

The booke it selfe he thought not good, for diuers considerations, to make publike at this time.

A testimonie of the Northeasterne discouerie, made by the English, and of the profite that may arise by pursuing the same: taken out of the second volume of nauigations, and voyages, fol. 17. of the notable Cosmographer, Master Iohn Baptista Ramusius, Secretarie to the state of Venice. Written in Italian, in the yeere, 1557.

Alla parte poi di sotto la nostra Tramontana, che chiascuno scrittore & Cosmographo di questi & de passati tempi fin'hora vi ha messo & mette mare congelato, & che la terra corra continuamente fino a 90. gradi verso il Polo: sopra questo mappa-mondo all' incontro si vede che la terra và solamente un poco sopra la Noruega & Suetia, & voltando corre poi Greco & Leuante nel paese della Moscouia & Rossia, & và dritto al Cataio. Et che cio sia la verità, le nauigationi che hanno fatte gl' Inglesi con le loro naui, volendo andare à scoprire il Cataio al tempo del Re Odoardo Sesto d'Inghilterra, questi anni passati, ne possono far vera testimonianza: perche nel mezzo del loro viaggio, capitate per fortuna ai liti di Moscouia, done trouarono all'hora regnare Giouanni Vassiliuich Imperatore della Rossia & gran Duca di Moscouia, il quale con molto piacere & marauiglia veduti gli fece grandissime carezze, hanno trouato quel mare essere nauigabile, & non agghiacciato. La qual nauigatione (ancor che con l'esito fin hora non sia stata bene intesa) seguendo stesso frequentarla & col lungo vso & cognitione d'que' mari si continuerà, è per fare grandissima mutatione & riuolgimento nelle cose di questa nostra parte del mondo.

¶ *The same in English.*

MOreouer (hauing before spoken of diuers particularities, in an excellent Mappe of Paulus Venetus) on that part subiect to our North pole, where euery writer and Cosmographer of these, and of former times hitherto, haue, and doe place the frozen sea, and that the lande stretcheth continually to 90. degrees, towards the pole: contrariwise, in this Mappe is to be seene, that the land extendeth onely a little aboue Norway, and Suethland, and then turning it selfe, trendeth afterwards towards the Southeast, and by East, vnto the Countrey of Moscouie, and Russia, & stretcheth directly vnto Cathay. And that this is true, the nauigations which the Englishmen haue of late made intending to discouer Cathay, in the time of Edward the first, King of England, are very sufficient witnesses. For in the middes of their voyage, lighting by chance vpon the coast of Moscouie (where they found then raigning Iohn Vasiliwich, Emperour of Russia, and great Duke of Moscouia, who after he had to his great delight, and admiration, seene the Englishmen, entertained them with exceeding great curtesies) founde this Sea to be nauigable, and not frozen.

Which nauigation to Cathay, although it be not as yet throughly knowen, yet if with often frequenting the same, and by long vse and knowledge of those seas, it be continued, it is like to make a wonderfull change, and reuolution, in the state of this our part of the world.

The

The teſtimonie of Gerardus Mercator, in his laſt large Mappe *of Europe, touching the notable diſcoueries of the Engliſh, made* of Moſcouie by the Northeaſt.

MAgnam occaſionem certámque rationem emendandæ Europæ nobis attulit celeberrima Anglorum per Cronium mare nauigatio: quæ littora Septentrionalia Finlappię, Moſcouiæque iuxta cœli ſitum, mundique plagas digeſta habet. Exacta etiam vrbis Moſcuæ latitudo ab Anglis obſeruata, interiorum Regionum emendatiùs deſcribendarum infallibilem legem præſcripſit. Quibus oblatis adminiculis pulcherrimis, iniquum putaui tabulam hanc caſtigatiorem non reddere.

¶ *The ſame in Engliſh.*

THe moſt famous nauigation of the Engliſhmen by the northeaſt ſea, hath offred vnto me a great occaſion, and certaine direction, for the reformation of the Mappe of Europe: which diſcouerie hath the northerne parts of Finmarke, Lapland, and Moſcouie, laide out according to the iuſt elcuation, and the quarters of the world. And further, the true obſeruation of the latitude of the citie of Moſco, made by the foreſaid Engliſhmen, hath geeuen me an infallible rule, for the correcting of the ſituation of the inland Countries: which notable helpes being miniſtred vnto me, I thought it my dutie to exhibite to the world this Mappe, more exact and perfect, then hitherto it hath bene publiſhed.

Another teſtimonie of Ioannes Metellus Sequanus, concerning *the ſame nauigation, and diſcouerie, in his preface prefixed before Oſorius de rebus geſtis Emanuelis Regis Portugalliæ*, written about the yeere, 1574.

AT ne omnis, vnis Hiſpanis, Oceani maris gloria totáque concederetur, Britanni Septentriones noua in Moſcouiam nauigatione, ab hinc annis viginti plus minùs illuſtrarunt. Nam bellis Sueticis à Moſcouitarum, Naruæque Liuoniæ excluſi commercio, iter ad illos Oceano, hinc Noruegiæ, Finmarchię, Lappiæ, Scricfinniæ, Biarmiæque: illinc Groenlandiæ littora præteruecti, vltrà Septuageſſimum latitudinis Aquilonaris gradum ſibi patefaciunt. Quam nauigationem Belgæ poſteà non ſine tamen cum ijſdem Britannis velitatione ſunt ſecuti. Eo vehunt argenti veteris fragmenta, lineáſque veſtes propè detritas, omníſque generis minutiores merces, ad vſum, cultúmque corporis hominum vtriuſque ſexus, veluti lintea & byſſea cingula, periſcelides, crumenas, cultros, & id genus ſexcenta. A Moſchis autem pelles omnis generis pretioſas adferunt, & Salmones ſalitos, fumóque duratos.

¶ *The ſame in Engliſh.*

BVt leaſt all, and the whole glorie of diſcouering the Ocean ſea, ſhould be aſcribed to the Spaniards, the Engliſh men about 20. yeeres paſt, by a newe nauigation into Moſcouie, diſcouered the northeaſt parts. For they by reaſon of the warres of Swethland, being hindred from the traffike of the Moſcouites, and of the Narue in Lyffland, opened a paſſage for themſelues by the Ocean ſea, beyond the northerne latitude of 70. degrees: hauing in their courſe on the one ſide the coaſts of Norway, Finmarke, Lapland, Scrikfine, and Biarmia. On the other ſide the coaſt of Groneland. Which voyage the Hollanders afterward entred into, but not without ſome conflict with the Engliſh. They carry thither olde plate, and courſe linnen cloth, and all kind of ſmall mercerie wares, ſeruing for the apparelling of men, and women, as linnen, and ſilke girdles, garters, purſes, knifes, and many ſuch like things. And they bring away from the Moſcouites, all kind of pretious furres, and Salmons ſalted, and dried in the ſmoke.

The ende of the ſecond part.

A briefe diſcourſe of the voyage of Sir Ierome Bowes knight, her *Maieſties ambaſſador to the Emperour of Muſcouia, in the yeere* 1582:

and printed this ſecond time, according to the true copie I receiued of a gentleman that went in the ſame voyage, for the correction of the errours in the former impreſſion.

THe Emperour of Ruſſia that then liued, by name Euan Vaſſilliwich, hauing deliberately conſidered how neceſſary it were for the ſtrengthening of his eſtate, that a ſure commerce and entercourſe of merchants ſhould be againe renued betweene him and her ſacred Maieſtie of England, with ſuch further immunities and priuileges for the honor and vtility of both their dominions, and ſubiects of the ſame, as vpon mutuall treatie of perſons interpoſed on both ſides, might be aſſented vnto: ſent ouer into this realme, in the yeere of our Lord 1581, as his ambaſſadour for that purpoſe, an ancient and diſcreet gentleman of his houſholde called Pheodor Andreuich Phiſemskie, accompanied with one of his ſecretaries, for his better aſſiſtance in that expedition: and beſides his many other directions, wherof part were to be deliuered by word of mouth, and the reſt ſet downe in a letter vnder the Emperors ſignature, addreſſed to her Maieſtie: he had in ſpeciall charge to ſollicit her Maieſtie to ſend ouer with him to his maiſter an ambaſſador from her, to treat and contract of ſuch affaires of importance as concerned both the realmes, which was the principall end of his imploiments hither. Whereupon her Maieſtie very graciouſly inclining to the Emperours motion, and at the humble ſute of the Engliſh merchants trading thoſe countries, being caried with the ſame princely reſpects, to ſatiſfie his demands in that behalfe, made choice of Sir Ierome Bowes, a gentleman of her court, ordinarily attending vpon her Maieſties perſon, towards whom was apparantly expreſſed her princely opinion and fauor by the credit of this negociation.

After he had receiued his commiſſion, with other ſpeciall letters to the Emperor, with all other inſtructions appertaining to his charge, and that the ſaid Ruſſe ambaſſadour was licenced to returne home to his maiſter, being honorably entertained and rewarded, the Engliſh ambaſſador being attended vpon with forty perſons at the leaſt, very honourably furniſhed, whereof many were gentlemen, and one M. Humfrey Cole a learned preacher, tooke his leaue of her Maieſty at the court at Greenewich, the xxiii. of June, and he with the other ambaſſador, with their ſeuerall companies, embarked themſelues at Harwich the xxii. of the ſame, and after a ſtormy voyage at the ſea, they arriued both in ſafetie, in the road at S. Nicholas the xviii. of July next following.

The Ruſſe ambaſſador lodged himſelfe at the abbey of S. Nicholas: and the Engliſh ambaſſador was lodged and well intertained by the Engliſh merchants, at their houſe at S. Nicholas, ſtanding in an Iſland called Roaſe Iſland.

The Ruſſe ambaſſador hauing repoſed himſelfe one whole day, tooke his leaue of the Engliſh ambaſſador, and departed towards Muſco.

The Engliſh ambaſſador abode yet at S. Nicholas foure or fiue dayes, when hauing made prouiſion of boats, & meanes to that purpoſe, he went forward vpon his iourney towards Muſco, to a towne called Colmagro, about foure ſcore miles diſtant from S. Nicholas.

You muſt heere vnderſtand that before the Engliſh ambaſſadors going into Ruſſia, there were diuers ſtrangers, but eſpecially certaine Dutch merchãts, who had intruded themſelues to trade into thoſe countries. Notwithſtanding a priuilege of the ſole trade thither, was long before granted to the Engliſh merchants, theſe Dutchmen had already ſo handled the matter, as they had by chargeable meanes wooned three of the chiefeſt councellers to the Emperour to be their aſſured friends, namely, Mikita Romanauich, Bodan Belskoy, and Andrew Shalkan the chancellor: for beſides daily gifts that they beſtowed vpon them all, they tooke ſo much money of their's at intereſt at xxv. vpon the hundred, as they payed to ſome one of them fiue thouſand marks yerely for the vſe of his money, and the Engliſh merchants at that time had not one friend in court.

The ambaſſadour hauing now ſpent fiue weeks at S. Nicholas & at Colmagro, there came to him then a gentleman ſent from the Emperor to intertaine him, and had in charge to conduct him vp the riuers towards Muſco, and to deliuer him prouiſion of all kinde of victuals neceſſary.

This gentleman being a follower of Shalkan the chancellor, was by him (as it ſeemed) foiſted into that ſeruice of purpoſe, as afterward appeared by the courſe he tooke, to offer diſcourteſies, and occaſions of miſlike to the ambaſſador: for you muſt vnderſtand, that the chancellor and the other two great councellers (ſpoken of as friends to the Dutchmen) had a purpoſe to oppoſe themſelues directly againſt her Maieſties ambaſſage, eſpecially in that point, for the barring of all ſtrangers from trading into the Emperors countrey.

This gentleman conducted the English ambassador a thousand miles vp the riuers of Dwyna and Soughana, to a citie called Vologda, where receiued him another gentleman sent from the Emperor, a man of better countenance then the other, who presented the ambassador from the Emperor with two faire geldings well furnished after their maner.

At a citie called Yeraslaue vpon the riuer Volga there met the ambassador a duke well accompanied, sent from the Emperor, who presented him from the Emperor a coach and ten geldings for the more easie conueying of him to Musco, from whence this city was distant fiue hundred miles.

Two miles on this side Musco there met the ambassadour foure gentlemen of good account, accompanied with two hundred horse: who after a little salutation, not familiar, without imbracing, tolde him that they had to say to him from the Emperour, and would haue had him light on foot to haue heard it, notwithstanding themselues would still haue sit on horsebacke: which the ambassadour soone refused to doe, and so they stood long vpon termes, whether both parties should light or not: which afterwards agreed vpon, there was yet great niceneſſe whose foot should vse be first on ground.

Their message being deliuered, and after hauing embraced eche other, they conducted the said ambassador to his lodging at Musco, a house builded of purpose for him, themselues being placed in the next house to it, as appointed to furnish him of all prouisions, and to be vsed by him vpon all other occasions.

The ambassadour hauing beene some dayes in Musco, and hauing in all that time beene very honorably vsed from the Emperor (for such was his will) though some of his chiefest councellors (as is said) had another purpose, and did often times cunningly put it in vse: He was sent for to Court, and was accompanied thither with about fortie gentlemen, honorably mounted, & sumptuously arrayed, & in his passage from his lodging to the court, were set in a ward fiue or sixe thousand shot, that were of the Emperors guard. At the entry into court, there met him foure noble men apparelled in cloth of golde, and rich furres, their caps embrothered with pearle and stone, who conducted him towards the Emperour, till he was met with foure others of greater degree then they, who guided him yet further towards the Emperor, in which passage there stood along the walles, and sate vpon benches and formes in row, seuen or eight hundred persons, said to be noblemen and gentlemen, all apparelled in garments of coloured satins and cloth of golde.

These foure noblemen accompanied him to the Emperours chamber dore, where met him the Emperors herald, whose office is there held great: and with him all the great officers of the Emperors chamber, who all conducted him to the place where the Emperor sate in his state, having three crownes standing by him, viz. of Muscouia, Cazan, & Astrakan, & also by him foure young noblemen of about twenty yeeres of age, of eche side twaine, costly apparelled in white, holding vpon their shoulders eche of them a broade axe, much like to a Galloglas axe of Ireland, thin and very sharpe, the steale or handle not past halfe a yard long, and there sate about the chamber vpon benches and other low seats, about a hundred noblemen richly apparelled in cloth of golde.

The ambassador being thus brought to the Emperor to kisse his hand, after some complements and inquirie of her Maiesties health, he willed him to goe sit downe in a place prouided for that purpose, nigh ten pases distant from him, from whence he would haue had him to haue sent him her Maiesties letters and present, which the ambassador thinking not reasonable, crept forward towards the Emperour: in which passage the chancellor came to meet him, and would haue taken his letters, to whom the ambassador said, that her Maiestie had directed no letters to him, and so went on, and deliuered them himselfe to the Emperors owne hands.

And after hauing thus deliuered her Maiesties letters, and what he had elſe to say at that time, he was conducted to the Councell chamber, where hauing had conference with the councell of matters of his ambassage, he was soone after sent for againe to the Emperor, where he dined in his presence at a side table, neere vnto him, and all his company at another boord by, where also dined at other tables in the same place all the chiefe noble men that were about the court, to the number of an hundred. And in the time of this dinner, the Emperor vsed many fauors to the ambassadour, and about the midſt of dinner (standing vp) dranke a great carouse to the health of the Queene his good sister, and sent him a great bowle full of Rhenish wine and sugar to pledge him.

The ambassadour after this, was often called to court, where he had conference both with the Emperor and his councell, of the matters in question, touching both ambassages, which diuers times raised many iarres: and in the end after sundry meetings, the Emperour finding himselfe not satisfied to his liking, for that the ambassadour had not power by his commission to yeeld to euery thing that he thought fit, as a man whose will was seldome wonted to be gainesaid, let loose his

his paſſion, and with a ſterne and angry countenance tolde him, that he did not reckon the Queene of England to be his fellow: for there are (quoth he) that are her betters.

The ambaſſador greatly miſliking theſe ſpeeches, & being very vnwilling (how dangerous ſoeuer it might prooue to his owne perſon) to giue way to the Emperor, to derogate ought from the honour and greatneſſe of her Maieſtie: and finding alſo that to ſubiect himſelfe to the angrie humor and diſpoſition of the Emperour, was not the meanes to winne ought at his hands, with like courage and countenance to anſwere his, tolde him that the Queene his miſtreſſe, was as great a prince as any was in Chriſtendome, equall to him that thought himſelfe the greateſt, well able to defend her ſelfe againſt his malice whoſoeuer, and wanted not meanes to offend any that either ſhe had, or ſhould haue cauſe to be enemy vnto. Yea (quoth he) How ſayeſt thou to the French king, and the king of Spaine? Marry (quoth the ambaſſador) I holde the Queene my miſtreſſe as great as any of them both. Then what ſayeſt thou (quoth he) to the Emperour of Germany? Such is the greatneſſe of the Queene my miſtreſſe (quoth the ambaſſadour) as the king her father had (not long ſince) the Emperor in his pay, in his warres againſt France.

This anſwere miſliked the Emperor yet ſo much more, as that he tolde the ambaſſadour, that were he not an ambaſſadour, he would throw him out of the doores. Whereunto he anſwered that he might doe his will, for he was now fait within his countrey: but he had a miſtreſſe who (he doubted not) would be reuenged of any iniury that ſhould be done vnto him. Whereupon the Emperour in great ſudden bad him get him home. And he with no more reuerence then ſuch vſage required, ſaluted the Emperor, and went his way.

All this notwithſtanding, the ambaſſadour was not much ſooner out of the chamber, and the Emperors choller ſome what ſetled, but he deliuered to his counſell that ſtood about him many commendations in the fauor of the ambaſſador, for that he would not indure one ill word to be ſpoken againſt his miſtreſſe, and therewithall wiſhed himſelfe to haue ſuch a ſeruant.

The ambaſſador had not beene much more then one houre in his lodging, but the Emperour imagining (as it ſeemed) by the extraordinary behauior of the ambaſſador (for he wanted not wit to iudge) that he had found what was the Emperors caſe, ſent his principall Secretary vnto him, to tell him, that notwithſtanding what had paſt, yet for the great loue that he bare to the Queene his ſiſter, he ſhould very ſhortly be called againe to Court, and haue a reſolution of all the matters in queſtion: and this Secretary was now further content to impart, and ſaid to the ambaſſador that the Emperour was fully reſolued to ſend a greater noble man home with him, in ambaſſage to the Queene his ſiſter, then euer he yet at any time ſent out of his countrey: and that he determined alſo, to ſend to the Queene a preſent worth three thouſand pounds, and to gratifie himſelfe at his departure, with a gift that ſhould be worth a thouſand pounds: and tolde him alſo that the next day the Emperor would ſend a great noble man vnto him, to conferre with him of certaine abuſes done him by Shalkan the chancellor, and his miniſters.

And ſo the day following he ſent Bodan Belskoy the chiefeſt counceller he had, and a man moſt in credit with him; this man examined all matters wherewith the ambaſſador had found himſelfe grieued, and ſupplied him with what he wanted, and righted him in all things wherein he had beene wronged.

Not long after the returne of this noble man, the Emperor cauſed to be ſet downe in his owne preſence, a new and much larger allowance of diet for the ambaſſador then he had had before, and ſhortly after ſent the ſame to the ambaſſadour by his principall Secretarie Sauio Frollo. This diet was ſo great, as the ambaſſadour often times ſought to haue it leſſened, but the Emperour would it not by any meanes.

The ſcroule of the new diet was this:

One buſhell of fine meale for three dayes.	Twelue peny loaues of bread.
One buſhell of wheat meale for a day and a halfe.	One veather or gallon of vinegar.
Two liue geeſe for one day.	Two veathers of ſalt cabiges.
Twenty hennes for the day.	One pecke of onions.
Seuen ſheepe for a day.	Ten pound of ſalt.
One oxe for three dayes.	One altine, or fiue peny worth of ware candles.
One ſide of porke for a day.	Two altines of tallow candles.
Seuentie egges for a day.	One fourth part of a veather of cherie mead.
Ten pound of butter.	As much of Mallynouomead.
Seuenty peny white loaues of bread	Halfe a veather of burnt wine.

One veather of sodden mead called Obarni.	Halfe a pound of pepper.
Three veathers of sweet mead.	Three sollitincks or ounces of saffron.
Ten veathers of white mead.	One sollitincke of mase.
Fiftene veathers of ordinary mead.	One sollitincke of nutmegs.
Foure veathers of sweet beere.	Two sollitincks of cloues.
Fifteene veathers of beere.	Three sollitincks of sinamon.

Prouender, { One bushell of oats. / One load of hay. / One load of straw. }

Now he began so much to discouer his purpose and affection towards her Maiestie & her countrey, as he sent to the ambassador, intreating him that his preacher, and doctor Iacob his English phisicion, might set downe the points of the religion in vse in England, which the ambassadour caused to be done accordingly, and sent them vnto him, who seemed so well to like them, as he caused them (with much good allowance) to be publikely read before diuers of his councell, and many others of his nobility.

Now he drew hotly againe in question, to marry some kinswoman of her Maiesties, & that he would send againe into England, to haue some one of them to wife, and if her Maiestie would not vpon his next ambassage send him such a one as he required, himselfe would then goe into England, and carry his treasure with him, and marry one of them there.

Heere you must vnderstand that the yeere before this ambassage, he had sent to her Maiestie by his ambassador to haue had the lady Mary Hastings in marriage, which intreaty by meanes of her inhabillity of body, by occasion of much sicknesse, or perhaps, of no great liking either of her selfe or friends, or both, tooke no place.

The ambassador was now so farre growen into the Emperors fauor, and his affection so great to England, as those great councellors that were the ambassadors great enemies before, were now desirous of some publike courtesies at his hands for their aduantage to the Emperour: neither durst they now any more interpose themselues twixt the Emperor & him: for not long before this, the Emperor for abusing the ambassador had (to shew his fauor towards him) beaten Shalkan the chanceller very grieuously, and had sent him word, that he would not leaue one of his race aliue.

Now whilest the ambassador was thus strongly possest of the Emperours fauor, he imployed himselfe in all he might, not only for the speedy dispatch of the negociation he had in hand, but laboured also by all the good meanes he might, further to benefit his country and countrymen: and so not long after, wanne at the Emperors hands, not onely all those things he had in commission to treat for by his instructions, but also some other of good and great importance, for the benefit of the merchants.

Priuate sutes obteined of the Emperor by the ambassador.

LEaue for Richard Fransham an Englishman and apothicary to the Emperor, his wife and children, to come home into England, and to bring with him all such goods as he had gotten there.

He obteined like leaue for Richard Elmes an Englishman one of the Emperors surgions.

He also got leaue for Iane Ricards the widow of Doctor Bomelius a Dutch man, and physicion to the Emperor, who for treason practised with the king of Pole against the said Emperour, was rosted to death at the city of Musco, in the yeere 1579.

These following he obteined for the behoofe of the merchants.

HE procured for the merchants, promise of recompence for certaine goods taken from their factors by robberie vpon the Volga.

He obtained likewise, the repayment of fiue hundred marks, which was payd for ten yeeres before his going into Russia (into the Emperours receipt) for a rent of a house that they had at Vologda.

He also got granted for them, the repayment of fifteene hundred marks, which had beene exacted of them the two last yeeres before his comming thither.

He

He got also for them, order for the repayment of an olde and desperate debt of three thousand marks, a debt so desperate, as foure peeres left out of their accounts, and by the opinion of them all, not thought fit to be dealt with, for too much offending the Emperour, or impeaching his other businesse, which was thought at least otherwise sufficient, and was therefore left out of his instructions from her Maiestie.

He obteined that all strangers were forbidden to trade any more into Russia, and that the passage and trade to all the Emperors Northren coasts and countries, from the Ward house to the river of Ob should be onely free to the English nation.

Lastly of a great debte he had to do the merchants good, without motion either of themselues here, or theyr agents there, or any other for them, he obteined of the Emperour, the abatement of all theyr custome which they had long before paid, and agreed still to continue, which custome, the Dutch men and strangers being removed, as now it was agreed, amounted to two thousand pounds yeerely.

All these were granted, some already paid before his comming from Musco, the olde priuiledge ratified, newly written, signed and sealed, and was to be deliuered to the ambassadour at his next comming to court, before when, the Emperor fell sicke of a surfet, and so died.

After whose death, the case was woonderously altered with the ambassador: for whereas both in his owne conceit, and in all mens opinion els, he was in great forwardnes to haue growen a great man with the Emperor, what for the loue he bare to her Maiesty, and the particular liking he had of himselfe, he now fell into the hands of his great enemies, Mikita Romanauich and Andre Shalkan the chancellor, who after the death of the Emperour, tooke the speciall gouernement vpon themselues, and so presently caused the ambassadour to be shut vp a close prisoner in his owne house, for the space of nine weeks, and was so straightly guarded, and badly vsed by those that attended him, as he dayly suspected some further mischiefe to haue followed: for in this time there grew a great vproze in Mosco of nigh twenty thousand persons, which, remembring that his enemies reigned, some what amazed the ambassador, but yet afterwards the matter fell out against that great councellor Bodan Belskoy, whom I noted before to be a speciall man in the olde Emperors fauor: who was now notwithstanding so outragiously assaulted, as that he was forced to seeke the Emperors chamber for his safetie, and was afterwards sent away to Cazan, a place he had in gouernment, fiue hundred miles from Musco, where he hath remained euer since, and neuer as yet called againe to court, at which time the ambassador expected some such like measure, and prepared himselfe as well as he could, for his defence: yet happily after this, was sent for to court, to haue his dispatch, and to take his leaue of the Emperor. Whither being conducted (not after the wonted maner) and brought to the councell chamber, came to him onely Shalkan the chancellor and a brother of his, who without more adoo, tolde him for the summe of his dispatch, that this Emperour would not treat of further amitie with the Queene his mistresse, then such as was betweene his late father and her, before his comming thither: and would not heare any reply to be made by the ambassador, but presently caused both himselfe and all his company to be disarmed of theyr weapons, and go towards the Emperor. In which passage there were such outrages offered him, as had he not vsed more patience, then his disposition afforded him, or the occasion required, he had not in likelihood escaped with life, but yet at length was brought [redacted] presence of the Emperor, who said nothing to him, but what the chancellor had already [redacted] offered him a letter to carry to her Maiestie, which the ambassador (for that he knew it concerned nothing that did concerne his ambassage) refused till he saw his danger grow too great: neither would the Emperour suffer the ambassadour to reply ought, nor well he could, for they had now of purpose taken away his interpretor, being yet vnwilling (as it seemed, and suspecting the ambassadours purpose) that the Emperor and others should know how dishonorably he had beene handled: for there was at that time, in that presence a noble braue gentleman, one Borris Phedaruich Gordino, brother to the Emperour that now is, who yet after the death of the Emperour did alwayes vse the ambassador most honorably, and would very willingly haue done him much more kindenesse, but his authority was not yet, till the coronation of the Emperour: but notwithstanding sent often vnto him, not long before his departure, and accompanied his many honorable fauours with a present of two faire pieces of cloth of golde, and a tymber of very good sables: and desired that as there was kindnesse and brotherhood twixt the Emperor and her Maiesty, so there might be loue and brotherhood twixt him and the ambassador. Hauing from this man, there was now no more fauor nor friendship left for the ambassador in Muscouia: for the chancellor Shalkan had now sent him word that the English Emperor was dead: he had now nothing offered him but dangers and disgraces too many, and a hasty dispatch from the Musco, that he might not tary the coronation

of the new Emperour: offences many in his preparation for his long iourney, onely one meane gentleman appointed to accompany him to the sea side, expecting daily in his passage some sudden reuenge to be done vpon him, for so he vnderstood it was threatned before his comming from the Mosco, and therfore with resolution prouided by all the meanes he might, by himselfe and seruants for his defence (for now was his danger knowen such, as the English merchants did altogether leaue him, although he commanded them in her Maiesties name to accompany him) that if any such thing should happen to be offered him, as many of them as he could that should offer to execute it, should die with him for company: which being perceiued (was thought) did make his passage the safer. So afterward being driuen to digest many iniuries by the way, at length he recouered S. Nicholas, where remembring his vnfortunate losse of the olde Emperour: and his ill vsage since then at the Mosco, his being forced to take a bare letter for the summe of his dispatch, conteining nothing of that he came for, and the poore and disgracefull present sent him (in the name of the Emperour) in respect of that that was meant him by the olde Emperour, knowing all these to be done in disgrace of her Maiestie and himselfe, determined now to be discharged of some part of them in such sort as he could, and so prouiding as he might to preuent his danger, in getting to his shippe, furnishing and placing his men to answere any assault that should be offered him, after he had bidden farewell to the vncourteous gentleman that brought him thither, by three or foure of the valiantest and discreetest men he had, he sent to be deliuered him or left at his lodging, his maisters weake letter, and woorse present, and so afterwards happily (though hardly) recouered his shippe in safetie, although presently afterwards, there was great hurlie burlie after him, to force him to receiue the same againe, but failed of their purpose. So came the ambassadour from S. Nicholas the twelft day of August, and arriued at Grauesend the twelft of September following, and attended her Maiestie at the court at Otelands, where, after hauing kist her Maiesties hands, and deliuered some part of the successe of his ambassage, he presented her an Elke or Losse, the Red deere of the country, and also a brace of Raine deare, Bucke & Doe, both bearing very huge hornes: they in her Maiesties presence drew a sled & a man vpon it, after the maner of the Sammites, a people that inhabit in the Northeast from Russia, and were that peere come ouer the sea in the winter season vpon the ice, in their sleds, drawen with these deere into Russia, where the ambassadour brought of them seuentene, whereof he brought nine aliue into Kent.

A letter of M. Henrie Lane to the worshipfull M. William *Sanderson, conteining a briefe discourse of that which* passed in the Northeast discouerie for the space of three and thirtie yeeres.

MAster Sanderson, as you lately requested mee, so haue I sought, and though I cannot finde things that heeretofore I kept in writing, and lent out to others, yet perusing at London copies of mine olde letters to content one that meaneth to pleasure many, I haue briefly and as truly as I may, drawen out as follow[illegible] The rough hewing may be planed at your leasure, or as pleaseth him that [illegible] take the paines.

First the honourable attempt to discouer by sea Northeast and Northwest named for Cathay, being chiefly procured by priuiledge from king Edward the first, and other his nobilitie, by and at the cost and sute of M. Sebastian Cabota, then gouernor for discoueries with sir Andrew Iudde, sir George Barnes, sir William Garret, M. Anthonie Hussie, and a companie of merchants, was in the last peere of his Maiesties reigne 1553. The generall charge whereof was committed to one sir Hugh Willoughbie knight, a goodly Gentleman accompanied with sufficient number of Pilots, Maisters, Merchants and Mariners, hauing three shippes well furnished, to wit, The Bona Speranza, the Edward Bonaduenture, and the Confidentia. The Edward Bonaduenture, Richard Chanceller being Pilot, and Steuen Burrough Maister, hauing discouered Ward house vpon the coast of Finmarke, by stoyme or fogge departed from the rest, found the bay of S. Nicholas now the chiefe port for Russia, there wintred in safetie, and had ayd of people at a village called Newnox.

Anno 1553. M. William Burrough was then yong and with his brother in this first voyage.

The other two shippes attempting further Northwards (as appeared by pamphlets founde after written by sir Hugh Willoughbie) was in September encountred with such extreame colde, that they put backe to seeke a wintring place: and missing the saide baye fell vpon a desert coast in Lappia, entring into a Riuer immediatelie frozen vp, since discouered, named Arzina,

Reca,

Reca, distant East from a Russian Monastery of Monkes called Pechingham, from whence they neuer returned, but all to the number of 70. persons perished, which was for want of experience to haue made caues or stoues. These were found with the shippes the next Summer Anno 1554. by Russe fishermen: and in Anno 1555. the place sent vnto by English Merchants as hereafter appeareth. Note.

Anno 1554. the saide shippe Edward Bonaduenture (although robbed homewards by Flemings) returned with her companie to London, shewing and setting foorth their entertainments and discouerie of the countryes euen to the citie of Mosco, from whence they brought a priuilege written in Russe with the kings or great dukes seale, the other two ships looked for & vnknowen to them where they were. Anno 1554.

An. 1555. the said companie of Merchants for discouerie vpon a new supply, sent thither againe with two ships, to wit, the Edward Bonaduenture, & another bearing the name of the King and Queene, Phillip and Marie, whose Maiesties by their letters to the said Moscouite, recommended sundry their subiects then passing, whereof certaine, to wit, Richard Chanceller, George Killingworth, Henry Lane, and Arthur Edwards, after their arriuall at the Bay, and passing vp Dwina to Vologda, went first vp to Mosco, where vpon knowledge of the said letters, they with their traine had speciall entertainment, with houses and diet appointed, and shortly permitted to the princes presence, they were with gentlemen brought through the citie of Mosco, to the castle and palace, replenished with numbers of people, and some gunners. They entred sundrie roomes, furnished in shew with ancient graue personages, all in long garments of sundry colours, gold, tissue, baldekin, and violet, as our vestments and copes haue bene in England, sutable with caps, iewels, and chaines. These were found to be no courtiers, but ancient Moscouits, inhabitants, and other their merchants of credite, as the maner is, furnished thus from the Wardrobe and Treasurie, waiting and wearing this apparell for the time, and so to restore it. Anno 1555. The King and Queenes letters.

Then entring into the presence, being a large roome floored with carpets, were men of more estate, and richer shew, in number aboue an hundred set square: who after the said English men came in, doing reuerence, they all stood vp, the prince onely sitting, and yet rising at any occasion, when our King and Queenes names were read or spoken. Then after speeches by interpretation, our men killing his hand, and bidden to dinner, were stayed in another roome, and at dinner brought through, where might be seene massie siluer and gilt plate, some like & as big as kilderkins, and washbowles, and entring the dining place, being the greater roome, the prince was set bare headed, his crowne and rich cappe standing vpon a pinnacle by. Not farre distant, sate his Metropolitane, with diuers other of his kindred, and chiefe Tartarian Captaines: none sate ouragainst him, or any, at other tables, their backs towards him: which tables all furnished with ghests set, there was for the Englishmen, named by the Russes, Ghosti Carabelski, to wit, strangers or merchants by ship, a table in the middest of the roome, where they were set direct against the prince: and then began the seruice, brought in by a number of his yoong Lords and Gentlemen, in such rich attire, as is aboue specified: and still from the Princes table (notwithstanding they owne furniture) they had his whole messes set ouer all in massie fine golde, deliuered euery time from him by name to them, by their seuerall Christian names, as they sate, viz. Richard, George, Henry, Arthur. Likewise bread and sundry drinks of purified mead, made of fine white and clarified honie. At their rising, the prince called them to his table, to receiue each one a cuppe from his hand to drinke, and tooke into his hand Master George Killingworths beard, which reached ouer the table, and pleasantly deliuered it the Metropolitane, who seeming to blesse it, said in Russe, this is Gods gift. As in deed at that time it was not only thicke, broad, & yellow coloured, but in length fiue foot & two inches of assize. Then taking leaue, being night, they were accompanied & followed with a number, carying pots of drinke, and dishes of meat dressed, to our lodging. M. Killingworths beard of a maruelous length.

This yeere the two shippes, with the dead bodies of Sir Hugh Willoughbie, and his people, were sent vnto by Master Killingworth, (which remained there in Mosco, Agent almost two yeeres) and much of the goods and victuals were recouered and saued.

Anno 1556. The companie sent two ships for Russia, with extraordinary maisters and sailers to bring home the two ships, which were frozen in Lappia, in the riuer of Arzina aforesaid. The two ships sent this yeere from England sailing from Lapland to the Bay of S. Nicholas, tooke in lading with passengers, to wit, a Russe ambassador, named Ioseph Nepey, and some of his men shipped with Richard Chanceler, in the Edward. But so it fell out that the two which came from Lappia, with all their new Masters and Mariners, neuer were heard of, but in foule weather, and wrought seas, after their two yeeres wintring in Lapland, became, as is supposed, vnstanch, and sunke, wherein were drowned also diuers Russes merchants, and seruants of the ambassador. Anno 1556.

A third ship the Edward aforesaid, falling on the North part of Scotland, vpon a rocke was also lost, and Maister Chanceler, with diuers other, drowned. The said Russe ambassador hardly escaping, with other his men, mariners, and some goods saued, were sent for into Scotland, from the King, Queene, and Merchants (the messenger being M. Doctor Laurence Hussie, and others:) And then, as in the chronicles appeareth, honorably entertained and receiued at London.

This yeere also the companie furnished and sent out a pinnesse, named the Serchthrift, to discouer the harborowes in the North coast from Norway to Wardhouse, and so to the Bay of S. Nicholas. There was in her Master and Pilot, Stephen Burrough, with his brother William, and eight other. Their discouerie was beyond the Bay, toward the Samoeds, people dwelling neere the riuer of Ob, and found a sound or sea with an Iland called Vaigars, first by them put into the Carde or Mappe. In that place they threwe ouerboord out of their said pinnesse, with shouels in August, by which extremitie, and lacke of time, they came backe to Russia, and wintred at Colmogro.

Anno 1557. Anno 1557. The companie with foure good ships, sent backe the said Russe Ambassador, and in companie with him, sent as an Agent, for further discouerie, Master Anthony Ienkinson, who

Boghar voyage. afterward anno 1558, with great fauour of the prince of Moscouia, and his letters passed the riuer Volga to Cazan, and meaning to seeke Cathay by land, was by manie troupes and companies of vnciuil Tartarians, encountred, and in danger: but keeping companie with merchants of Bactria, or Boghar, & Vrgeme, trauelling with camels, he with his company, went to Boghar, and no further, whose entertainment of the king is to be had of master Ienkinson, which returned

1560. anno 1559. to Moscouie. And in anno 1560. he, with Henry Lane, came home into England, which yeere was the first safe returne, without losse of shipwracke, or dead fraight, and burnings.

The first trade to the Narue. 1560. And at this time was the first traffike to the Narue in Liuonia, which confines with Lituania, & all the dominions of Russia, with the markets, faires, commodities, great townes & riuers, were sent vnto by diuers seruants: the reports were taken by Henry Lane, Agent, and deliuered to the companie, 1561. The trade to Rie, and Reuel, of olde time hath beene long since frequented by our English nation, but this trade to the Narue was hitherto concealed from vs by the Danskers and Lubeckers.

Anno 1561. the said Master Anthony Ienkinson went Agent into Russia, who the next yeere after, passing all the riuer of Volga to Astracan, and ouer the Caspian sea, arriued in Persia, and opened the trade thither.

Also betweene the yeeres of 1568. and 1573. sundry voyages after Master Ienkinsons, were

Alcocke slaine in Persia. made by Thomas Alcocke, Arthur Edwards, Master Thomas Bannister, and Master Geffrey

Bannister died in Media. Ducket, whose returne (if spoile neere Volga had not preuented by rouing theeues) had altogether saued and recouered the companies (called the olde companies) great losse, charges, and da-

Edwards died at Astracan mages: but the saying is true, By vnitie small things grow great, and by contention great things become small. This may be vnderstood best by the companie. The frowardnes of some few, and euill doing of some vniust factors, was cause of much of the euill successe.

Arthur Edwards was sent againe 1579. and died in the voyage at Astracan. About which matters, are to be remembred the voyages of Master Thomas Randolph Esquire, Ambassador, anno 1567. And late of Sir Ierome Bowes, anno 1583. both tending and treating for further discoueries, freedomes, & priuileges, wherewith I medle not. But in conclusion, for their paines and aduentures this way (as diuers doe now adayes other wayes) as woorthie Gentlemen sue from princes, to doe their Countrey good, I put them in your memorie, with my hearty farewell. From S. Magarets neere Dartforth in Kent.

Yours Henrie Lane.

The late ambassage of Master Giles Fletcher, Doctor of the *Ciuill Law, sent from her Maiestie to the Emperour* of Russia, Anno 1588.

IN the yeere 1588, was sent Ambassador from her Highnesse, into the Country of Russia, Giles Fletcher Doctor of the Ciuill Law, aswell to treat with the new Emperour Phedor Iuanowich, about league and amitie, in like manner as was before with his father Iuan Vasilowich, as also for the reestablishing and reducing into order the decayed trade of our English men there. Who notwithstanding at his first arriuall at the Mosco, founde some partes of hard intertainment, by meanes of certaine rumors, concerning the late nauall victorie, which was there re-

ported

poſed to haue fallen on the Spaniſh ſide, as alſo for ſome diſlike conceiued againſt the priuileged trade of our Engliſh merchants. Yet in the end obteined of the Emperour many good & equall conditions, and was courteouſly and honorably diſmiſſed by him. The principall points which he intreated of, and were granted vnto him by the ſaid Emperour, were theſe:

1 A continuation of league and amitie betweene her Highneſſe, and the ſaid Emperour Pheodor Iuanowich, in like maner as was before with his father Iuan Vaſilowich.

2 A confirmation and reeſtabliſhment of the former priuileges of the company of our Engliſh merchants, which were infringed and annulled in the principall points, with diuers neceſſary additions to the ſame, for the better ordering of their trade in thoſe countries hereafter, viz. That the ſtate of the priuilege granted before in the names of ſome priuate and particular men, be altered in that point, and the ſame granted by the name and ſtile of their incorporation, viz. To the fellowſhip of Engliſh merchants, for the diſcouerie of new trades.

3 That vpon euery ſurmiſe and light quarrell, the ſaid priuilege be not reuoked, and annulled, as before time it hath beene.

4 That iuſtice ſhall be adminiſtred to the ſaid companie and their agent, without delay, vpon ſuch as ſhall offer them any deſpite or iniurie, or ſhall exact or impoſe vpon them anie paiment, taxation, or impoſition whatſoeuer, contrary to the freedome of the ſaid grant.

5 That the goods and commodities of the ſaid companie, be not forcibly taken, as before time they haue beene by the Emperors officers, or people of authoritie, either for the vſe of the ſaid Emperour or of his officers. But in caſe they haue need of the ſaid commodities, the ſame to be taken at reaſonable prices, and for ready money.

6 That the ſaid companie be not charged heereafter with the anſwering of ſuch debts as are made by any Engliſh man, not being of the ſocietie.

7 That the Emperours authorized people, ſhall not heereafter repute any Engliſh man reſiant in that country, to be any factor, ſeruant, or dealer in the ſaid companies affaires, but ſuch as the agent ſhall inregiſter by name, within the offices where cuſtome is entred in all ſuch places of the land, where the ſaid companie haue reſidencies to traffike.

8 That the names of ſuch as ſhall ſo be inregiſtred, be no longer continued in record, nor themſelues reputed as factors or dealers, for the ſaid company, then the agent ſhal thinke good. But in caſe the ſaid agent in his diſcretion ſhall thinke meet to ſtrike out of the regiſter any name of ſuch as haue beene imployed in the companies ſeruice, the ſaid perſon to be held as priuate, and whoſe act in bargaining or otherwiſe, ſhall not charge the ſaid company.

9 That if any Engliſh man within the countrey of Ruſſia, be ſuſpected for any notorious crime, as fellony, treaſon, &c. the ſame be not ſtraightwaies ſet vpō the Pudkey, nor otherwiſe tormented, till ſuch time as he ſhalbe conuicted by plaine and euident proofes: which being done, the whole proceeding to be ſent ouer to the Queene of England.

10 That the ſaid priuilege, with the additions, ſhall be publiſhed in all townes and parts of the Emperors dominions, where the ſaid company haue traffike.

11 That the ſaid companie ſhall be permitted to vſe a ſole trade through the Emperours countries, by the riuer Volga, into Media, Perſia, Bogharia, and the other the Eaſt countries.

12 Whereas there was claimed of the ſaid companie, the ſumme of 2[illegible]53. markes of debt, made by certaine of their factors for the ſaid company, for paiment wherof, their whole ſtocke was in danger of arreſt, by publike anthoritie: Further alſo 2140. rubbles for cuſtome and houſerent, he obtained a rebatement of ſeuenteene thouſand, eleuen hundred, fiftie and three marks of the ſaid debt.

The ſaid Ambaſſador Maſter Giles Fletcher, as I vnderſtand, hath drawen a booke, intituled, Of the Ruſſe Common wealth, containing:

Firſt, a Coſmographicall deſcription of the countrey, which hath theſe chapters.

1 Of the length and bredth of the countrey of Ruſſia, with the names of the ſhires.
2 Of the ſoile and climat.
3 Of the natiue commodities of the countrey.

Secondly a deſcription of their pollicie, conteined in theſe Chapters, viz.

1 Of the conſtitution or ſtate of the Ruſſe Common wealth.
2 Of their Parliaments, and maner of holding them.
3 Of the Ruſſe Nobilitie, and meanes, whereby it is kept in an vnder proportion, agreeable to that ſtate.
4 Of the maner of gouerning their prouinces or ſhires.

5 Of

5 Of the Emperours priuie councell.
6 Of the Emperours customes, and their reuenues, with the practises for the increase of them.
7 Of the Russe comminaltie, and their condition.
8 Of their publike iustice, and maner of proceeding therein.
9 Of the Emperours forces for his warres, with the chiefe officers, & their salarie or pay.
10 Of their maner of mustering, armor, and prouision for victuall.
11 Of their ordering, marching, charging, and their martiall discipline.
12 Of their colonies, and pollicie in mainteining their purchases by conquest.
13 Of their borderers, with whom they haue most to do in warre and peace.
14 Of their church offices, and degrees.
15 Of their liturgie, or forme of church seruice.
16 Of their maner of administring the Sacraments.
17 Of the doctrine of the Russe church.
18 Of the maner of solemnizing their marriages.
19 Of the other ceremonies of the Russe church.

Thirdly, the Oeconomie or priuate behauior of the Russe, conteining these chapters.

1 Of the Emperours housholde officers, and order of his house.
2 Of the priuate behauior and maner of the Russe people.

The booke it selfe he thought not good, for diuers considerations, to make publike at this time.

A testimony of the Northeastern discouerie, made by the English, *and of the profit that may arise by pursuing the same: taken out of the se-*

cond volume of nauigations, and voyages, fol. 17. of the notable Cosmographer M. Iohn Baptista Ramusius, Secretarie to the state of Venice: Written in Italian, in the yeere, 1557.

Dalla parte poi di sotto la nostra Tramontana, che chiascuno scrittore & Cosmographo di questi & de passati tempi fin'hora vi ha messo & mette mare congelato, & che la terra corra continuamente fino a 90. gradi verso il Polo: sopra questo mappa-mondo all' incontro si vede che la terra và solamente vn poco sopra la Norwega & Suetia, & voltando corre poi Greco & Leuante nel paese della Moscouia & Rossia, & và diritto al Cataio. Et che cio sia la verità, le nauigationi che hanno fatte gl' Inglesi con le loro naui, volendo andare à scoprire il Cataio al tempo del Re Odoardo Sesto d' Inghilterra, questi anni passati, ne possono far vera testimonianza: perche nel mezzo del loro viaggio, capitate per fortuna ai liti di Moscouia, doue trouarono allhora regnare Giouanni Vassiliwich Imperatore della Rossia & gran Duca di Moscouia, il quale con molto piacere & marauigha vedutogli, fece grandissime carezze, hanno trouato quel mare essere nauigabile, & non agghiacciato. La qual nauigatione (ancor che con l'esito fin hora non sia stata bene intesa) se col stesso frequentarla & col lungo vso & cognitione di que' mari si continuerà, è per fare grandissima mutatione & rimolgimento nelle cose di questa nostra parte del mondo.

¶ *The same in English.*

MOreouer (hauing before spoken of diuers particularities, in an excellent mappe of Paulus Venetus) on that part subiect to our North pole, where euery writer & Cosmographer of these, and of former times hitherto, haue, and doe place the frozen sea, and that the land stretcheth continually to 90. degrees, towards the pole: contrariwise, in this mappe is to be seene, that the land extendeth only a little aboue Norway, and Suethland, and then turning it selfe, trendeth afterwards towards the Southeast, and by East, vnto the country of Moscouie and Russia, and stretcheth directly vnto Cathay. And that this is true, the nauigations which the English men haue of late made, intending to discouer Cathay, in the time of Edward the first, king of England, are very sufficient witnesses. For in the mids of their voyage, lighting by chance vpon the coast of Moscouie (where they found then reigning Iohn Vassilliuich Emperor of Russia, and great duke of Moscouia, who after he had to his great delight, and admiration, seene the English men, entertained them with exceeding great courtesies) found this sea to be nauigable, and not frozen.

Which nauigation to Cathay, although it be not as yet throughly knowen, yet if with often frequenting the same, and by long vse and knowledge of those seas, it be continued, it is likely make a wonderfull change and reuolution in the state of this our part of the world.

The

The teſtimonie of Gerardus Mercator, in his laſt large mappe of Europe, touching the notable diſcoueries of the Engliſh, made of Moſcouie by the Northeaſt.

MAgnam occaſionem certámque rationem emendandæ Europæ nobis attulit celeberrima Anglorum per Cronium mare nauigatio: quæ littora Septentrionalia Finlappiæ Moſcouiæque iuxta cœli ſitum, mundique plagas digeſta habet. Exacta etiam vrbis Moſcuæ latitudo ab Anglis obſeruata, interiorum Regionum emendatiùs deſcribendarum infallibilem legem præſcripſit: Quibus oblatis adminiculis pulcherrimis, iniquum putaui tabulam hanc caſtigatiorem non reddere.

¶ The ſame in Engliſh.

The moſt famous nauigation of the Engliſh men by the Northeaſt ſea, hath offered vnto me a great occaſion, and certeine direction for the reformation of the mappe of Europe: which diſcouery hath the Northerne parts of Finmarke, Lapland, and Moſcouie, laid out according to the iuſt eleuation, and the quarters of the world. And further, the true obſeruation of the latitude of the citty of Moſco, made by the foreſaid Engliſhmen, hath yeelded me an infallible rule, for the correcting of the ſituation of the inland countries: which notable helps being miniſtred vnto me, I thought it my duety to exhibite to the world this mappe, more exact and perfect, then hitherto it hath beene publiſhed.

Another teſtimonie of Ioannes Metellus Sequanus, concerning the ſame nauigation, and diſcouerie, in his preface prefixed before Oſorius de rebus geſtis Emanuelis Regis Portugalliæ, written about the yeere, 1574.

AT ne omnis, vnis Hiſpanis, Oceani maris gloria totáque concederetur, Britanni Septentriones noua in Moſcouiam nauigatione, ab hinc annis viginti plus minùs illuſtrarunt. Nam bellis Sueticis à Moſcouitarum, Naruæque Liuoniæ excluſi commercio, iter ad illos Oceano, hinc Noruegiæ, Finmarchiæ, Lappiæ, Scricfinniæ, Biarmiæque: illinc Groenlandiæ littora præterſuecti, vltra Septuageſſimum latitudinis Aquilonaris gradum ſibi patefaciunt. Quam nauigationem Belgæ poſtea, non ſine tamen cum iiſdem Britannis velitatione, ſunt ſecuti. Eò vehunt argenti veteris fragmenta, lineáſque veſtes propè detritas, omníſque generis minutiores merces, ad vſum, cultúmque corporis hominum vtriúſque ſexus, veluti lintea & byſſea cingula, periſcelides, crumenas, cultros, & id genus ſexcenta. A Moſchis autem pelles omnis generis pretioſas adferunt, & Salmones ſalitos, fumóque duratos.

¶ The ſame in Engliſh.

BVt leaſt all, and the whole glorie of diſcouering the Ocean ſea, ſhould be aſcribed to the Spaniards, the Engliſh men about twenty yeeres paſt, by a new nauigation into Moſcouie, diſcouered the Northeaſt parts. For they by reaſon of the warres of Swethland, being hindred from the traffike of the Moſcouites, and of the Narue in Liſland, opened a paſſage for themſelues by the Ocean ſea, beyond the Northerne latitude of 70. degrees: hauing in their courſe on the one ſide the coaſts of Norway, Finmarke, Lapland, Scrikfine, and Biarmia: On the other ſide the coaſt of Groneland. Which voyage the Hollanders afterward entred into, but not without ſome conflict with the Engliſh. They carry thither olde plate, and courſe linnen cloth, and all kinde of ſmall mercerie wares, ſeruing for the apparelling of men and women, as linnen, and ſilke girdles, garters, purſes, kniues, and many ſuch like things. And they bring away from the Moſcouites, all kinde of pretious furres, and Salmons ſalted, and dried in the ſmoke.

The end of the ſecond part.

THE THIRD AND LAST PART OF THE principall Nauigations and Diſcoueries of the Engliſh nation

made to the Weſt, Northweſt, and Southweſt parts of the world, with the Letters, Priuileges, Diſcourſes, Obſeruations, and other neceſſarie thinges concerning the ſame.

The voyage of Madoc the ſonne of Owen Guyneth Prince of Northwales, to the Weſt Indies, in the yeere 1170: taken out of the hiſtorie *of Wales, lately publiſhed by M. Dauid Powel Doctor of Diuinitie.*



After the death of Owen Gwyneth, his ſonnes fell at debate who ſhould inherit after him: for the eldeſt ſonne borne in matrimony, Edward or Iorwerth Drwydion, was counted vnmeet to gouerne, becauſe of the maime vpon his face: and Howell that tooke vpon him all the rule was a baſe ſonne, begotten vpon an Iriſh woman. Therefore Dauid gathered all the power he could, and came againſt Howell, and fighting with him ſlew him, & afterwards inioyed quietly the whole land of Northwales, vntill his brother Iorwerths ſonne came to age. Madoc another of Owen Gwyneth his ſonnes left the land in contention betwixt his brethren, & prepared certaine ſhips, with men and munition, and ſought aduentures by ſeas, ſailing Weſt, and leauing the coaſt of Ireland ſo farre North, that he came to a land vnknowen, where he ſaw many ſtrange things. ¶Madoc the ſonne of Owen Gwineth.

This land muſt needs be ſome part of that countrey of which the Spanyards affirme themſelues to be the firſt finders ſince Hannoes time. For by reaſon, and order of Coſmographie, this land to the which Madoc came, muſt needs be ſome part of Noua Hiſpania, or Florida. Whereupon it is manifeſt that that country was long before by Britaines diſcouered, afore either Columbus or Americus Veſputius led any Spanyards thither. Of the voyage and returne of this Madoc there be many fables fained, as the common people do vſe in diſtance of place & length of time rather to augment then to diminiſh, but ſure it is that there he was. And after he had returned home, and declared the pleaſant and fruitfull countryes that he had ſeene without inhabitants, and vpon the contrary part, for what barrenes wilde ground his brethren and nephues did murther one another, he prepared a number of ſhippes, & got with him ſuch men and women as were deſirous to liue in quietneſſe, and taking leaue of his friends, tooke his iourney thitherward againe. Therfore it is to be preſuppoſed, that he & his people inhabited part of thoſe countryes: for it appeareth by Francis Lopez de Gomara, that in Acuzamil and other places the people honored the croſſe. Whereby it may be gathered that Chriſtians had beene there before the comming of the Spanyards. But becauſe this people were not many, they followed the maners of the land they came vnto, and vſed the language they found there. ¶M. Lloyd. ¶Gomara lib. 2. cap. 16.

This Madoc arriuing in that Weſterne countrey, vnto the which he came in the yeere 1170, left moſt of his people there, and returning backe for more of his owne nation, acquaintance and friends, to inhabit that fayre and large countrey, went thither againe with ten ſailes, as I finde noted by Gutyn Owen. I am of opinion that the land whereunto he came, was ſome part of Mexico. The cauſes which make me to thinke ſo be theſe. ¶M. Powels addition.

1 The common report of the inhabitants of that country, which affirme that their rulers deſcended from a ſtrange nation that came thither from a farre countrey. Which thing is confeſſed by

Mutezuma king of that country, in an oration made for quitting of his people, at his submission to the king of Castile, Hernando Cortes being then present, which is laid downe in the Spanish chronicles of the conquest of the West Indies.

Dan. Ingram, Sir Humfrey Gilberts discoueris.

2 The British wordes, and names of places vsed in that countrey, euen to this day, doe argue the same, as when they talke together, they vse this word Gwrando, which is, Hearken or Listen. Also they haue a certaine bird with a white head, which they call Penguyn, that is, White head, but the Island of Corroeso, the riuer of Guyndor, and the white rocke of Penguyn, which be all British or Welsh words, do manifestly shew that it was that countrey which Madoc and his people inhabited.

Carmina Meredith filij Rhesi mentionem facientia de Madoco *filio Oweni Gwynedd, & de sua nauigatione in terras incognitas.*

Vixit hic Meredith circiter Annum Domini 1477.

These verses I receiued of my learned friend M. William Camden.

MAdoc wyf, mwyedic wedd,
Iawn genau, Owen Gwynedd:
Ni fynnum dir, fy enaid oedd
Na da mawr, ond y moroedd.

¶ *The same in English.*

MAdoc I am the sonne of Owen Gwynedd
With stature large, and comely grace adorned:
No lands at home nor store of wealth me please,
My minde was whole to search the Ocean seas.

The offer of the discouerie of the West Indies by Christopher *Columbus to King Henrie the seuenth in the yeere* 1488 *the* 13 *of* Februarie: with the Kings acceptation of the offer, and the cause whereupon he was depriued of the same, recorded in the thirteenth chapter of the historie of Don Fernand Columbus of the life and deeds of his Father Christopher Columbus.

CHristophoro Colon temendo, se parimente i Re di Castiglia non assentissero alla sua impresa, non gli bisognasse proporla di nuouo à qualche altro principe, & cosi in cio passasse lungo tempo: mando in Inghilterra vn suo fratello, che haueua appresso di se, chiamato Bartolomeo Colon: il qual quantunque non hauesse lettere Latine, era però huomo prattico, & giudicioso nelle cose del mare, & sapea molto bene far carte da nauigare, & sphere, & altri instrumenti di quella professione, come dal suo fratello era instruito. Partito adunque Bartholomeo Colon per Inghilterra, volle la sua sorte, che desse in man di corsali, i quali lo spogliarono insieme con gli altri della sua naue. Per la qual cosa, & per la sua pouertà & infirmità, che in cosi diuerse terre lo assalirono crudelmente, prolungo per gran tempo la sua ambasciata, fin che, aquistata vn poco di facultà con le carte, ch'ei fabricaua, cominciò a far pratiche co'l Re Enrico settimo, padre di Enrico ottauo, che al presente regna: a cui appresentò un mappamondo, nel quale erano scritti questi versi, che fra le sue scriture lo trouai, & da me saranno qui posti piu tosto per l'antichità, che per la loro eleganza.

Terrarum quicunque cupis fœliciter oras
Noscere, cuncta decens doctè pictura docebit,
Quam Strabo affirmat, Ptolomæus, Plinius, atque
Isidorus: non vna tamen sententia cuique.
Pingitur hîc etiam nuper sulcata carinis
Hispanis Zona illa, priùs incognita genti
Torrida, quæ tandem nunc est notissima multis.

Et piu di sotto dicena.

Pro

Pro authore ſiue pictore.

Ianua cui patriæ eſt nomen, cui Bartholomæus
Columbus de terra rubra, opus edidit iſtud,
Londonijs anno Domini 1480 atque inſuper anno,
Octauo decimaque die cùm tertia menſis
Februarij. Laudes Chriſto cantentur abundè.

Et, percioche auuertirà alcuno, che dice Columbus de terra rubra, dico, che medeſimamente Io vidi alcune ſottoſcrittroni dell' Ammiraglio, primo che acquiſtaſſe lo ſtato, ou'egli ſi ſotto ſcriuena, Columbus de terra rubra. Ma, tornando al Re d'Inghilterra, dico, che, da lui il mappa mondo veduto, & cio che l' Ammiraglio gli offeriua, con allegro volto accettò la ſua offerta, & mandolo a chiamare. Ma, percioche Dio l'haueua per Caſtiglia ſerbata, gia l' Ammiraglio in quel tempo era andato, & tornato con la vittoria della ſua impreſa, ſecondo che per ordine ſi raccontera. Laſciarò hora di raccontar ciò, che Bartolomeo Colon haueua negociato in Inghilterra, & tornarò all Ammiraglio, &c.

¶ The ſame in Engliſh.

CHriſtopher Columbus fearing leaſt if the king of Caſtile in like maner (as the king of Portingall had done) ſhould not condeſcend vnto his enterpriſe, he ſhould be inforced to offer the ſame againe to ſome other prince, and ſo much time ſhould be ſpent therin, ſent into England a certaine brother of his which he had with him, whoſe name was Bartholomew Columbus, who, albeit he had not the Latine tongue, yet neuertheleſſe was a man of experience and ſkilfull in ſea cauſes, and could very well make ſea cards & globes, and other inſtruments belonging to that profeſſion, as he was inſtructed by his brother. Wherefore after that Bartholomew Columbus was departed for England, his lucke was to fall into the hands of pirats, which ſpoiled him with the reſt of them which were in the ſhip which he went in. Vpon which occaſion, and by reaſon of his pouerty and ſickneſſe which cruelly aſſaulted him in a country ſo far diſtant from his friends, he deferred his amballage for a long while, vntill ſuch time as he had gotten ſomewhat handſome about him with making of ſea cards. At length he began to deale with king Henry the ſeuenth the father of Henry the eight, which reigneth at this preſent: vnto whom he preſented a mappe of the world, wherein theſe verſes were written, which I found among his papers: and I will heere ſet them downe, rather for their antiquity then for their goodneſſe.

Thou which deſireſt eaſily the coſts of lands to know,
This comely mappe right learnedly the ſame to thee will ſhow:
Which Strabo, Plinie, Ptolomew and Iſodore maintaine:
Yet for all that they do not all in one accord remaine.
Heere alſo is ſet downe the late diſcouered burning Zone
By Portingalles, vnto the world which whilom was vnknowne,
Wherof the knowledge now at length through all the world is blowne.

And a little vnder he added.

For the author or the drawer.

He, whoſe deare natiue ſoyle height ſtately Genua,
Euen he whoſe name is Bartholomew Colon de Terra rubra,
The peereof grace a thouſand and foure hundred and foureſcore
And eight, and on the thirteenth day of February more,
In London publiſhed this worke. To Chriſt all laud therefore.

And beauſe ſome peraduenture may obſerue, that he calleth himſelfe Columbus de Terra rubra, I ſay, that in like maner I haue ſeene ſome ſubſcriptions of my father Chriſtopher Columbus, before he had the degree of Admirall, wherin he ſigned his name thus, Columbus de Terra rubra. But to returne to the king of England, I ſay, that after he had ſeene the map, & that which my father Chriſtopher Columbus offered vnto him, he accepted the offer with ioyfull countenance, and ſent to call him into England. But becauſe God had reſerued the ſaid offer for Caſtile, Columbus was gone in the meane ſpace, and alſo returned with the performance of his enterpriſe, as hereafter in order ſhalbe rehearſed. Now will I leaue off from making any farther mention of that which Bartholomew Colon had negotiated in England, and I will returne vnto the Admirall. &c.

King Henrie the ſeuenth his acceptation of Columbus offer.

Another testimony taken out of the 60 chapter of the foresayd *historie of Ferdinando Columbus, concerning the offer that* Bartholomew Columbus made to king Henrie the seuenth on the behalfe of his brother Christopher.

Ornato adunque l' Ammiraglio dallo scoprimento di Cuba & di Giamaica, trouo nella Spagnuola Bartolomeo Colon suo fratello, quello, che era già andato a trattare accordo col Re d' Inghilterra sopra lo scoprimento delle Indie, come di sopra habiam detto. Questo poi, ritornandosene verso Castiglia con capitoli concedutí, hauena inteso a Parigi dal re Carlo di Francia, l' Ammiraglio suo fratello hauer già scoperte l' Indie: perche gli souenne per poter far il Viaggio di cento scudi. Et, Auenga che per cotal nuona egli si fosse molto affrettato, per arriuar l' Ammiraglio in Spagna, quando non dieno giunse a Siuiglia, egli era già tornato alle Indie co' 17 nauigli. Perche, per esseguir quanto egli hauea lasciato, di subito al principio dell' anno del 1494 sen' andò a' Re Catholici, menando seco Don diego Colon, mio fratello, & me ancora, acciochè seruissimo di paggi al serenissimo prencipe Don Giouanni, il qual viua in gloria, si come hauea commandato la Catholica Reina donna Isabella, che alhora era in Vagliadolid. Tosto adunque che noi giungemmo, i Re chiamarono don Bartholomeo & Mandaronlo alla Spagnuola con tre naui, &c.

¶ *The same in English.*

Christopher Columbus the Admirall being returned from the discouery of Cuba and Iamayca, found in Hispaniola his brother Bartholomew Columbus, who before had bene sent to intreat of an agreement with the king of England for the discouerie of the Indies, as we haue said before. This Bartholomew therefore returning vnto Castile, with the capitulations granted by the king of England to his brother, vnderstoode at Paris by Charles the king of France, that the Admirall his brother, had already performed that discouery: and gaue him 100 crownes towards his voyage. And albeit he made great haste vpon this good newes to meet with the Admirall in Spaine, yet at his comming to Siuil his brother was already returned to the Indies, with 17 saile of shippes. Wherefore to fulfill that which he had left him in charge, in the beginning of the yeere 1494 he repayred to the Catholike prince, taking with him Diego Colon my brother and me also, which were to be preferred as pages to the most excellent prince Don Iohn, who now is with God, according to the commandement of the Catholike Queene lady Isabell, which was then in Validolid. As soone therefore as we came to the Court, the prince called for Don Bartholomew, and sent him to Hispaniola with three shippes, &c.

The letters patents of king Henry the seuenth granted vnto *Iohn Cabot and his three sonnes, Lewis, Sebastian, and Sancius,* for the discouerie of new and vnknowne lands.

HEnricus Dei gratia rex Angliæ & Franciæ, & Dominus Hiberniæ, omnibus ad quos præsentes literæ nostræ peruenerint, salutem.

Notum sit & manifestum, quòd dedimus & concessimus, ac per præsentes damus & concedimus pro nobis & hæredibus nostris, dilectis nobis Ioanni Caboto ciui Venetiarum, Lodouico, Sebastiano, & Sancio, filijs dicti Ioannis, & eorum ac cuiuslibet eorum hæredibus & deputatis, plenam ac liberam authoritatem, facultatem & potestatem nauigandi ad omnes partes, regiones, & sinus maris orientalis, occidentalis, & septentrionalis, sub banneris, vexillis, & insignijs nostris, cum quinque nauibus siue nauigijs, cuiuscunq; portituræ & qualitatis existant, & cum tot & tantis nautis & hominibus, quot & quantos in dictis nauibus secum ducere voluerint, suis & eorum proprijs sumptibus & expensis, ad inueniendum, discooperiendum, & inuestigandum quascúque insulas, patrias, regiones siue prouincias gentilium & infidelium quorumcunque, in quacunque parte mundi positas, quæ Christianis omnibus ante hæc tempora fuerint incognitæ. Concessimus etiam eisdem & eorum cuilibet, eorumq; & cuiuslibet eorum hæredibus & deputatis, ac licentiam dedimus ad affigendum prædictas banneras nostras & insignia in quacunque villa, oppido, castro, insula seu terra firma à se nouiter inuentis. Et quòd prænominatus Ioannes, & filij eiusdem, seu hæredes & eorum deputati, quascunque huiusmodi villas, castra, oppida,

pida, & inſulas à ſe inuentas, quæ ſubiugari, occupari, poſſideri poſſint, ſubiugare, occupare, poſſidere valeant tanquam vaſalli noſtri, & gubernatores, locatenentes, & deputati eorundem, dominium, titulum & iuriſdictionem earundem villarum, caſtrorum, opidorum, inſularum, ac terræ firmæ ſic inuentorum nobis acquirendo. Ita tamen, vt ex omnibus fructibus, proficuis, emolumentis, commodis, lucris, & obuentionibus ex huiuſmodi nauigatione prouenientibus, præfatus Iohannes, & filij ac hæredes, & eorum deputati, teneantur & ſint obligati nobis pro omni viagio ſuo, toties quoties ad portum noſtrum Briſtolliæ applicuerint (ad quem omnino applicare teneantur & ſint aſtricti) deductis omnibus ſumptibus & impenſis neceſſarijs per eoſdem factis, quintam partem capitalis lucri facti, ſiue in mercibus, ſiue in pecunijs perſoluere: Dantes nos & concedentes eiſdem ſuiſq; hæredibus & deputatis, vt ab omni ſolutione cuſtumarum omnium & ſingulorum bonorum & mercium, quas ſecum reportarint ab illis locis ſic nouiter inuentis, liberi ſint & immunes. Et inſuper dedimus & conceſſimus eiſdem ac ſuis hæredibus & deputatis, quòd terræ omnes firmæ, inſulæ, villæ, oppida, caſtra, & loca quæcunq; à ſe inuenta, quotquot ab eis inueniri contigerit, non poſſint ab alijs quibuſuis noſtris ſubditis frequentari ſeu viſitari, abſque licentia prædictorum Ioannis & eius filiorum ſuorumque deputatorum, ſub pœna amiſſionis tam nauium quàm bonorum omnium quorumcunque ad ea loca ſic inuenta nauigare præſumentium. Volentes & ſtrictiſſimè mandantes omnibus & ſingulis noſtris ſubditis, tam in terra quàm in mari conſtitutis, vt præfato Ioanni, & eius filijs ac deputatis, bonam aſſiſtentiam faciant, & tam in armandis nauibus ſeu nauigijs, quàm in prouiſione quietatus & victualium pro ſua pecunia emendorum, atque aliarum omnium rerum ſibi prouidendarum pro dicta nauigatione ſumenda ſuos omnes fauores & auxilia impertiant. In cuius rei teſtimonium has literas noſtras fieri fecimus patentes. Teſte meipſo apud Weſtmonaſterium quinto die Martij anno regni noſtri vndecimo. Ann. 1495.

¶ *The ſame in Engliſh.*

HEnry by the grace of God, King of England & France, and lord of Ireland, to all to whom theſe preſents ſhall come, Greeting.

Be it knowne that we haue giuen and granted, and by theſe preſents doe giue and grant for vs and our heyres, to our welbeloued Iohn Cabot citizen of Uenice, to Lewis, Sebaſtian & Santius ſonnes of the ſaid Iohn, and to the heyres of them, and euery of them, and their deputies, full & free authority, leaue, and power to ſaile to all parts, countries, and ſeas of the Eaſt, of the Weſt, and of the North, vnder our banners and enſignes, with fiue ſhips of what burthen or quantity ſoeuer they be, and as many mariners or men as they will haue with them in the ſayd ſhips, vpon their owne proper coſts and charges, to ſeeke out, diſcouer, and finde whatſoeuer iſles, countries, regions or prouinces of the heathen and infidels whatſoeuer they be, and in what part of the world ſoeuer they be, which before this time haue beene vnknowen to all Chriſtians: we haue granted to them, and alſo to euery of them, the heyres of them, and euery of them, and their deputies, and haue giuen them licence to ſet vp our banners and enſignes in euery village, towne, caſtle, iſle, or maine land of them newly found. And that the aforeſaid Iohn and his ſonnes or their heyres and aſſignes may ſubdue, occupy and poſſeſſe all ſuch townes, cities, caſtles and iſles of them found, which they can ſubdue, occupy and poſſeſſe, as our vaſſals, and lieutenants, getting vnto vs the rule, title, and iuriſdiction of the ſame villages, townes, caſtles, and firme land ſo found.

Yet ſo that the aforeſaid Iohn, and his ſonnes and heyres, and their deputies, be holden & bounden of all the fruits, profits, gaines, and commodities growing of ſuch nauigation, for euery their voyage, as often as they ſhall arriue at our port of Briſtoll (at the which port they ſhall be bound and holden only to arriue) all maner of neceſſary coſts and charges by them made, being deducted, to pay vnto vs in wares or money the fift part of the capitall gaine ſo gotten. We giuing & granting vnto them and to their heyres and deputies, that they ſhall be free from all paying of cuſtomes of all and ſingular ſuch vnerchandize as they ſhall bring with them from thoſe places ſo newlie found.

And moreouer, wee haue giuen and graunted to them, their heyres and deputies, that all the firme landes, iſles, villages, townes, caſtles and places whatſoeuer they be that they ſhall chance to finde, may not of any other of our ſubiectes bee frequented or viſited without the licence of the foreſayd Iohn and his ſonnes, and their deputies, vnder payne of forfeiture as well of their ſhips, as of all and ſingular goods of all them that ſhall preſume to ſayle to thoſe places ſo found. Willing, and moſt ſtraightly commanding all and ſingular our ſubiects as well on land as on ſea, appointed officers, to giue good aſſiſtance to the aforeſaid Iohn, and his ſonnes and deputies,

and that as well in arming and furnishing their shippes or vessels, as in prouision of quietnesse, and in buying of victualles for their money, and all other things by them to be prouided necessarie for the said nauigation, they do giue them all their helpe and fauour. In witnesse whereof we haue caused to be made these our letters patents. Witnesse our selfe at Westminster, the fift day of March, in the eleuenth yeere of our reigne.

Billa signata Anno 13 Henrici 7.

A record of the rolls touching the voyage of John Cabot & Sebastian his sonne.

REx tertio die Februarij, anno 13, licentiam dedit Ioani Caboto, quod ipse capere possit sex naues Anglicanas, in aliquo portu, siue portibus regni Angliæ, ita quod sint de portagio 200 doliorum, vel subtus, cum apparatu requisito, & quod recipere possit in dictas naues omnes tales magistros, marinarios, & subditos regis, qui cum eo exire voluerint, &c.

¶ *The same in English.*

THe king vpon the third day of February, in the 13 yeere of his reigne, gaue licence to John Cabot to take fiue English shippes in any hauen or hauens of the realme of England, being of the burden of 200 tunnes, or vnder, with all necessary furniture, and to take also into the sayde shippes, all such maisters, mariners, and subiects of the king as willingly will go with him, &c.

An extract taken out of the mappe of Sebastian Cabot, cut by *Clement Adams, concerning his discouerie of the VVest Indias,* which is to be seene in her Maiesties priuie gallerie at Westminster, and in many other ancient merchants houses.

ANno Domini 1494, Ioannes Cabotus venetus, & Sebastianus illius filius eam terram fecerunt peruiam, quam nullus priùs adire ausus fuisset, die 24 Iunij, circiter horam quintam bene manè. Hanc autem appellauit Terram Primùm visam, credo quod ex mari in eam partem primùm oculos iniecerat. Nam quæ ex aduerso sita est insula, eam appellauit insulam D. Ioannis, hac opinor ratione, quòd aperta fuit eo die qui est sacer D. Ioanni Baptistæ: Huius incolæ pelles animalium, exuuiasq; feratum pro indumentis habent, easq; tanti faciunt, quanti nos vestes pretiosissimas. Cùm bellum gerunt, vtuntur arcu sagittis, hastis, spiculis, clauis ligneis & fundis. Tellus sterilis est, neq; vllos fructus affert, ex quo fit, vt leonibus albo colore, & ceruis inusitatæ apud nos magnitudinis referta sit: piscibus abundat, ijsq; sanè magnis, quales sunt lupi, & quos salmones vulgus appellat, soleæ autem reperiuntur tam longæ, vt vlnæ mensuram excedant. Imprimis autem magna est copia eorum piscium, quos vulgari sermone vocant Bacallaos. Gignuntur in ea insula accipitres ita nigri, vt coruorum similitudinem mirum in modum exprimant, perdices autem & aquilæ sunt nigri coloris.

¶ *The same in English.*

IN the yeere of our Lord 1494, John Cabot a Uenetian, & his sonne Sebastian (with an English fleet set out frõ Bristoll) discouered that land which no man before that time had attempted, on the 24 of June, about fiue of the clocke early in the morning. This land he called Prima vista, that is to say, First seene, because as I suppose it was that part whereof they had the first sight from sea. That Island which lyeth out before the land, he called the Island of S. John, vpon this occasion, as I thinke, because it was discouered vpon the day of John the Baptist. The inhabitants of this Island vse to weare beasts skinnes, and haue them in as great estimation, as we haue our finest garments. In their wars they vse bowes, arrowes, pikes, darts, woodden clubs, & slings. The soile is barren in some places, & yeeldeth little fruit, but it is full of white lions, & stags farre greater then ours. It yeeldeth plentie of fish, and those very great, as seales, and those which commonly we call salmons: there are soles also aboue a yard in length: but especially there is great abundance of that kinde of fish which the Saluages call Baccalaos. In the same Island also there breed hawkes, but they are so blacke, that they are very like to rauens, as also their partridges, & eagles, which are in like sort blacke.

A discourse of Sebastian Cabot touching his discouerie of part of the VVest India out of England in the time of king Henry the seuenth, vsed to Galeacius Butrigarius the Popes Legate in Spaine, and reported by the sayd Legate in this sort.

This discourse is taken out of the second volume of voiages of Baptista Ramusius.

DOe you not vnderstand said hee (speaking to certaine Gentlemen of Venice) how to passe to India toward the Northwest winde, as did of late a citizen of Venice, so valiant a man, and so well practised in all things pertaining to Nauigations, and the science of Cosmographie, that at this present hee hath not his like in Spaine, insomuch that for his vertues he is preferred about all other Pilots that saile to the West Indies, who may not passe thither without his licence, and is therefore called Piloto Maggiore (that is) the grand Pilot. And when we said that wee knew him not, he proceeded, saying, that being certaine peeres in the citie of Siuil, and desirous to haue some knowledge of the Nauigations of the Spaniards, it was told him that there was in the citie a valiant man, a Venetian borne, named Sebastian Cabot, who had the charge of those things, being an expert man in that science, and one that could make Cardes for the Sea with his owne hand, and that by this report, seeking his acquaintance, he found him a very gentle person, who intertained him friendly, and shewed him many things, and among other a large mappe of the world, with certaine particuler nauigations, as well of the Portingals, as of the Spaniards, and that he spake further vnto him in this effect.

When my father departed from Venice many yeeres since to dwell in England, to follow the trade of merchandises, he tooke me with him to the citie of London, while I was very yong, yet hauing neuertheless some knowledge of letters of humanitie, and of the Sphere. And when my father died in that time when newes were brought that Don Christofer Colonus Genuese, had discouered the coasts of India, whereof was great talke in all the court of king Henry the 7. who then raigned, insomuch that all men with great admiration affirmed it to bee a thing more diuine then humane, to saile by the West into the East where spices growe, by a way that was neuer knowen before, by this fame and report there increased in my heart a great flame of desire to attempt some notable thing. And vnderstanding by reason of the Sphere, that if I should saile by way of the Northwest winde, I should by a shorter tract come into India, I thereupon caused the king to be aduertised of my deuise, who immediatly commaunded two Caruels to bee furnished with all things appertaining to the voiage, which was, as farre as I remember, in the yeere 1496 in the beginning of Sommer. I began therefore to saile toward the Northwest, not thinking to find any other land then that of Cathay, and from thence to turne toward India, but after certaine dayes I found that the land ranne towards the North, which was to me a great displeasure. Neuertheless, sailing along by the coast to see if I could find any gulfe that turned, I found the land still continent to the 56. deg. vnder our pole. And seeing that there the coast turned toward the East, despairing to find the passage, I turned backe againe, and sailed downe by the coast of that land toward the Equinoctiall (euer with intent to find the said passage to India) and came to that part of this firme land which is now called Florida, where my victuals failing, I departed from thence and returned into England, where I found great tumults among the people, and preparation for warres in Scotland: by reason whereof there was no more consideration had to this voyage. Whereupon, I went into Spaine to the catholike king, and Queene Elizabeth, which being aduertised what I had done, intertained me, and at their charges furnished certaine ships, wherewith they caused me to saile to discouer the coasts of Brasile, where I found an exceeding great and large riuer named at this present, Rio de la plata, that is, the riuer of siluer, into the which I sailed and followed it into the firme land, more then sixe score leagues, finding it euery where very faire, and inhabited with infinite people, which with admiration came running daily to our ships. Into this riuer run so many other riuers, that it is in maner incredible. After this I made many other voiages, which I now pretermit, and waxing old, I giue my selfe to rest from such trauels, because there are now many yong and lustie Pilots and mariners of good experience, by whose forwardnesse I do reioyce in the fruit of my labours, and rest with the charge of this office, as you see.

The second voiage of Cabot to the land of Brasil, and Rio de plata.

The

The foresayd Baptista Ramusius in his Preface to the third volume of the Nauigations, writeth thus of Sebastian Cabot.

IN the latter part of this volume are put certaine relations of Iohn de Verarzana, a Florentine, and of a great captaine a Frenchman, and the two voyages of Iacques Cartier a Briton, who sailed vnto the land set in 50. degrees of latitude to the North, which is called New France, which lands hitherto are not throughly knowen, whither they doe ioyne with the firme land of Florida and Noua Hispania, or whether they be separated and deuided all by the Sea as Ilands: and whether that by that way one may goe by sea vnto the countrey of Cathaia. As many yeeres past it was written vnto me by Sebastian Caboto our countrey man a Venetian, a man of great experience, and very rare in the arte of Nauigation, and the knowledge of Cosmographie, who sailed along and beyond this land of New France, at the charges of king Henry the 7. king of England: and he aduertised me, that hauing sailed a long time West and by North, beyond those Ilands vnto the latitude of 67. degrees and an halfe, vnder the North pole, and at the 11. day of June finding still the open sea without any maner of impediment, he thought verily by that way to haue passed on still the way to Cathaia, which is in the East, and would haue done it, if the mutinie of the shipmaster and mariners had not hindered him and made him to returne homewards from that place. But it seemeth that God doeth yet still reserue this great enterprise for some great prince to discouer this voiage of Cathaia by this way, which for the bringing of the Spiceries from India into Europe, were the most easie and shortest of all other wayes hitherto found out. And surely this enterprise would be the most glorious, and of most importance of all other that can be imagined, to make his name great, and fame immortall, to all ages to come, farre more then can be done by any of all these great troubles and warres which daily are vsed in Europe among the miserable christian people.

Another testimonie of the voiage of Sebastian Cabot to the West and Northwest, taken out of the 6. chapter of the third Decade of Peter Martyr of Angleria.

SCrutatus est oras glaciales, Sebastianus quidam Cabotus genere Venetus, sed à parentibus in Britanniam insulam tendentibus (vti moris est Venetorum, qui commercij causa terrarum omnium sunt hospites) transportatus penè infans. Duo is sibi nauigia, propria pecunia in Britannia ipsa instruxit, & primò tendens cum hominibus tercentum ad Septentrionem donec etiam Iulio mense vastas repererit glaciales moles pelago natantes, & lucem ferè perpetuam, tellure tamen libera gelu liquefacto: quare coactus fuit, vti ait, vela vertere & occidentem sequi: tetendítq; tantum ad meridiem littore sese incuruante, vt Herculei freti latitudinis fere gradus æquarit: ad occidentémq; profectus tantum est vt Cubam Insulam, à læua, longitudine graduum penè parem, habuérit. Is ea littora percurrés, quæ Baccalaos appellauit, eosdem se reperisse aquarũ, sed lenes delapsus ad Occidentem ait, quos Castellani, meridionales suas regiones adnauigantes, inueniunt. Ergò non modò verisimilius, sed necessario concludendum est, vastos inter vtrámq; ignotam hactenus tellurem iacere hiatus, qui viam præbeant aquis ab oriente cadentibus in Occidentem. Quas arbitror impulsu cælorum circulariter agi in gyrum circa terræ globum, non autem Demogorgone anhelante vomi, absorberíq; vt nonnulli senserunt, quod influxu, & refluxu forsan assentire daretur. Baccalaos, Cabotus ipse terras illas appellauit, eò quod in earũ pelago tantam reperierit magnorum quorundam piscium, tynnos æmulantium, sic vocatorum ab indigenis, multitudinem, vt etiam illi interdum nauigia detardarent. Earum Regionum homines pellibus tantum coopertos reperiebat rationis haudquaquam expertes. Vrsorum inesse regionibus copiam ingentem refert, qui & ipsi piscibus vescantur. Inter densa namq; piscium illorum agmina sese immergunt vrsi, & singulos singuli complexos, vnguibúsque inter squammas immissis in terram raptant, & comedunt. Propterea minimè noxios hominibus visos esse ait. Orichalcũ in plerisque locis se vidisse apud incolas prædicat. Familiarem habeo domi Cabotum ipsum, & contubernalem interdum. Vocatus namque ex Britannia à Rege nostro Catholico, post Henrici Maioris Britanniæ Regis mortem, concurialis noster est, expectátq; indies, vt nauigia sibi parentur, quibus arcanum hoc naturæ latens, iam tandem detegatur.

¶ *The ſame in Engliſh.*

THeſe North ſeas haue bene ſearched by one Sebaſtian Cabot, a Venetian borne, whom being yet but in maner an infant, his parents caried with them into England, hauing occaſion to reſort thither for trade of merchandiſe, as is the maner of the Venetians to leaue no part of the world vnſearched to obtaine riches. He therefore furniſhed two ſhips in England at his owne charges, and firſt with 300. men, directed his courſe ſo farre towards the North pole, that euen in the moneth of Julie he found monſtrous heapes of ice ſwimming on the ſea, and in maner continuall day light, yet ſaw he the land in that tract free from ice, which had bene molten by the heat of the Sunne. Thus ſeeing ſuch heapes of ice before him, he was enforced to turne his ſailes and follow the Weſt, ſo coaſting ſtill by the ſhore, that hee was thereby brought ſo farre into the South, by reaſon of the land bending ſo much Southwards, that it was there almoſt equall in Latitude, with the ſea Fretum Herculeum, hauing the North pole elcuate in maner in the ſame degree. He ſailed likewiſe in this tract ſo farre towards the Weſt, ỹ he had the Iſland of Cuba on his left hand, in maner in the ſame degree of longitude. As he trauelled by the coaſts of this great land, (which he named Baccalaos) he ſaith that hee found the like courſe of the waters toward the Weſt, but the ſame to runne more ſoftly and gently then the ſwift waters which the Spaniards found in their Nauigations Southward. Wherefore it is not onely more like to be true, but ought alſo of neceſſitie to be concluded that betweene both the lands hitherto vnknowen, there ſhould be certaine great open places whereby the waters ſhould thus continually paſſe from the Eaſt vnto the Weſt: which waters I ſuppoſe to be driuen about the globe of the earth by the inceſſant mouing and impulſion of the heauens, and not to bee ſwallowed vp and caſt vp againe by the breathing of Demogorgon, as ſome haue imagined, becauſe they ſee the ſeas by increaſe and decreaſe to ebbe and flowe. Sebaſtian Cabot himſelfe named thoſe lands Baccalaos, becauſe that in the Seas thereabout hee found ſo great multitudes of certaine bigge fiſhes much like vnto Tunies, (which the inhabitaunts call Baccalaos) that they ſometime ſtaied his ſhips. He found alſo the people of thoſe regions couered with beaſtes ſkinnes, yet not without the vſe of reaſon. Hee alſo ſaith there is great plentie of Beares in thoſe regions which vſe to eate fiſhe: for plunging themſelues into the water, where they perceiue a multitude of theſe fiſhes to lie, they faſten their clawes in their ſcales, and ſo draw them to land and eate them, ſo (as he ſaith) the Beares being thus ſatisfied with fiſh, are not noiſome to men. Hee declareth further, that in many places of theſe regions, he ſawe great plentie of Laton among the inhabitants. Cabot is my very friend, whom I vſe familiarlie, and delight to haue him ſometimes keepe me companie in mine owne houſe. For being called out of England by the commaundement of the Catholike king of Caſtile, after the death of king Henry the ſeuenth of that name, king of England, he was made one of our counſell and Aſſiſtants, as touching the affaires of the new Indies, looking for ſhips daily to bee furniſhed by him to diſcouer this hid ſecret of Nature.

The teſtimonie of Frauncis Lopez de Gomara a Spaniard, in the fourth chapter of the ſecond booke of his generall hiſtorie of the Weſt Indies concerning the firſt diſcouerie of a great part of the Weſt Indies, to wit, from 58. to 38. degrees of latitude, by Sebaſtian Cabota out of England.

HE which brought moſt certaine newes of the countrey and people of Baccalaos, ſaith Gomara, was Sebaſtian Cabote a Venetian, which rigged vp two ſhips at the coſt of king Henry the 7. of England, hauing great deſire to traffique for the ſpices as the Portingals did. Hee caried with him 300. men, and tooke the way towards Iſland from beyond the Cape of Labrador, vntill hee found himſelfe in 58. degrees and better. Hee made relation that in the moneth of July it was ſo cold, and the ice ſo great, that he durſt not paſſe any further: that the dayes were very long, in a maner without any night, and for that ſhort night that they had, it was very cleare. Cabot feeling the cold, turned towards the Weſt, refreſhing himſelfe at Baccalaos: and afterwards hee ſailed along the coaſt vnto 38. degrees, and from thence hee ſhaped his courſe to returne into England.

A note

A note of Sebastian Cabots first discouerie of part of the Indies taken out of the latter part of Robert Fabians Chronicle not hitherto printed, which is in the custodie of M. Iohn Stowe a diligent preseruer of Antiquities.

IN the 13. yeere of king Henry the 7. (by meanes of one Iohn Cabot a Venetian which made himselfe very expert and cunning in knowledge of the circuit of the world and Ilands of the same, as by a Sea carde and other demonstrations reasonable he shewed) the king caused to man and victuall a ship at Bristow, to search for an Iland, which he said he knew well was rich, and replenished with great commodities: Which ship thus manned and victualled at the kings cost, diuers merchants of London ventured in her small stocks, being in her as chiefe patron the sayd Venetian. And in the companie of the said ship, sailed also out of Bristow three or foure smal ships fraught with sleight and grosse merchandizes, as course cloth, caps, laces, points, and other trifles. And so departed from Bristow in the beginning of May, of whom in this Maiors time returned no tidings.

Of three sauages which Cabot brought home and presented vnto the king in the fourteenth yeere of his raigne, mentioned by the foresayd Robert Fabian.

THis yeere also were brought vnto the king three men taken in the Newfound Iland that before I spake of, in William Purchas time being Maior: These were clothed in beasts skins, and did eate rawe flesh, and spake such speach, that no man could vnderstand them, and in their demeanor like to brute beasts, whom the king kept a time after. Of the which vpon two yeeres after, I sawe two apparelled after the maner of Englishmen in Westminster pallace, which that time I could not discerne from Englishmen, till I was learned what they were, but as for speach, I heard none of them vtter one word.

The voiage of Sir Thomas Pert and Sebastian Cabot, about the eight yeere of king Henry the eight, which was the yeere, 1516. to Brasil, S. Domingo, and S. Iohn de porto ricco.

THat learned and painefull writer Richard Eden in a certaine epistle of his to the late duke of Northumberland, before a worke which hee translated out of Munster in the yeere 1553. called A treatise of the new India, maketh mention of a voyage of discouerie vndertaken out of England by Sir Thomas Pert and Sebastian Cabota, about the eight yeere of king Henry the 8. of famous memorie, imputing the ouerthrow thereof vnto the cowardise and want of stomacke of the sayd Sir Thomas Pert, in maner following. If manly courage, saieth he, (like vnto that which hath bene seene and prooued in your grace as well in forraine realmes, as also in this our country) had not bene wanting in other in these our dayes, at such time as our soueraigne lord of noble memorie king Henry the 8. about the same yeere of his raigne, furnished and sent out certaine ships vnder the gouernance of Sebastian Cabot yet liuing, and one Sir Thomas Pert, whose faint heart was the cause that the voiage tooke none effect, if, I say such manly courage, whereof we haue spoken, had not at that time bene wanting, it might happily haue come to passe, that that rich treasurie called Perularia, (which is now in Spaine in the citie of Siuil, and so named, for that in it is kept the infinite riches brought thither from the Newfound land of Peru) might long since haue bene in the Tower of London, to the kings great honour and wealth of this realme. Hereunto that also is to be referred which the worshipfull M. Robert Thorne wrote to the sayd king Henry the 8. in the yeere 1527. by doctor Leigh his ambassador sent into Spaine to the Emperour Charles the fift, whose wordes be these. Now rest to bee discouered the North partes, the which it seemeth vnto me, is onely your highnes charge and dutie, because the situation of this your realme is thereunto neerest and aptest of all other: and also, for that alreadie you haue taken it in hand. And in mine opinion it will not seeme well to leaue so great and profitable an enterprise, seeing it may so easilie and with so litle cost, labour & danger, be folowed and obtained. Though hitherto your grace haue made thereof a proofe, & found not the commoditie thereby as you trusted, at this time it shall be none impediment: for there may be now prouided remedies for things

This sir Thomas Pert was Viceadmiral of England & dwelt in an house called Poplar at Blackwall.

Note.

things then lacked, and the inconueniences and lets remooued, that thē were cauſe your graces deſire tooke no full effect: which is, the courſes to be chaunged, and to follow the aforeſaid new courſes. And concerning the mariners, ſhips, and prouiſion, an order may be deuiſed and taken meete and conuenient, much better then hitherto: by reaſon whereof, and by Gods grace no doubt your purpoſe ſhall take effect. And whereas in the aforeſaid wordes M. Robert Thorne ſaith, that he would haue the old courſes to be chaunged, and the new courſes (to the North) to be followed: It may plainly bee gathered that the former voyage whereof twiſe or thriſe he maketh mention, wherein it is like that ſir Thomas Pert and Sebaſtian Cabot were ſet forth by the king, was made toward Braſil and the South parts. Moreouer it ſeemeth that Gonſaluo de Ouiedo, a Spaniſh famous writer, alludeth vnto the ſaid voyage in the beginning of the 13. chapter of the 19. booke of his generall and naturall hiſtorie of the Weſt Indies, agreeing very well with the time about which Richard Eden writeth that the foreſaid voyage was begun. The authors wordes are theſe as I find them tranſlated into Italian by that excellent and famous man Baptiſta Ramuſius. *Nel 1517. Vn Corſaro Ingleſe, ſotto colore di venire à diſcoprire ſe ne venne con vna gran naue alla volta del Braſil nella coſtiera di terra ferma, & indi attraverſo à queſta iſola Spagnuola, & giunſe preſſo la bocca del porto di queſta città di S. Domenico, & mando in terra il ſuo battello pieno di gente, & chieſe licentia di potere qui entrare, dicendo che venia con mercantie a negotiare. Ma in quello inſtante il caſtellano Franceſco di Tapia fece tirare alla naue vn tiro d'arteglieria da queſto caſtello: perche ella ſe veniua diritta al porto. Quando gli Ingleſi viddero queſto, ſi ritirarono fuori, & quelli del battello toſto ſi raccolſero in naue. Et nel vero il Caſtellan fece errore: perche ſe ben foſſe naue entrata nel porto, non ſarebbono le genti potuto ſmontare à terra ſenza volontà & della città & del caſtello. La naue adunque veggendo come vi era ricenuta, tirò la volta dell' iſola di San Gionanni, & entrata nel porto di San Germano parlarono gli Ingleſi con quelli della terra, & dmandarono vettouaglie & fornimenti per la naue, & ſi lamentarono di quelli di queſta città, dicendo che eſſi non veniuano per fare diſpiacere, ma per contrattare, & negotiare con ſuoi danari & mercantie. Hora quiui hebbero alcune vettouaglie, & in compenſa eſſi diedero & pagarono in certi ſtagni lauorati & altre coſe. Et poi ſi partirono alla volta d'Europa, doue ſi crede, che non giunge ſſero, perche non ſe ne ſeppe piu nuona mai.* This extract importeth thus much in Engliſh, to wit: That in the yeere 1517. an Engliſh Rouer vnder the colour of trauelling to diſcouer, came with a great ſhip vnto the partes of Braſill on the coaſt of the Firme land, and from thence he croſſed ouer vnto this Iſland of Hiſpaniola, and arriued neere vnto the mouth of the hauen of this citie of S. Domingo, and ſent his ſhipboate full of men on ſhore, and demaunded leaue to enter into this hauen, ſaying, that he came with merchaundiſe to traffique. But at that very inſtant the gouernour of the caſtle Francis de Tapia cauſed a tire of ordinance to be ſhot from the caſtle at the ſhip, for ſhee bare in directly with the hauen. When the Engliſhmen ſawe this, they withdrew themſelues out, and thoſe that were in the ſhipboate, got themſelues with ſpeede on ſhipboord. And in truth the Warden of the caſtle committed an ouerſight: for if the ſhip had entred into the hauen, the men thereof could not haue come on land without leaue both of the citie and of the caſtle. Therefore the people of the ſhip ſeeing how they were there receiued, ſayled toward the Iſland of S. John, and entring into the port of S. Germaine, the Engliſhmen parled with thoſe of the towne, requiring victuals and things needfull to furniſh their ſhip, and complained of the inhabitaunts of the citie of Saint Domingo, ſaying that they came not to doe any harme, but to trade and traffique for their money and merchandiſe. In this place they had certaine victuals, and for recompenſe they gaue and paid them with certain veſſell of wrought tinne and other things. And afterward they departed toward Europe, where it is thought they arriued not: for we neuer heard any more newes of them. Thus farre proceedeth Gonſaluo de Ouiedo, who though it pleaſe him to call the captaine of this great Engliſh ſhip a Rouer, yet it appeareth by the Engliſhmens owne words, that they came to diſcouer, and by their traffique for pewter veſſell and other wares at the towne of S. Germains in the Iſland of S. Iohn de porto ricco, it cannot bee denied but that they were furniſhed with wares for honeſt traffique and exchange. But whoſoeuer is conuerſant in reading the Portingal and Spaniſh writers of the Eaſt and Weſt Indies, ſhall commonly finde that they account all other nations for pirats, rouers and theeues, which viſite any heathen coaſt that they haue ones ſailed by or looked on. Howbeit their paſſionate and ambitious reckoning ought not to be preiudiciall to other mens chargeable and painfull enterpriſes and honourable traueils in diſcouerie.

The

The voiage of the two ships, whereof the one was called the Dominus vobiscum, set out the 20. day of May, in the 29. yeere of king Henry the eight, and in the yeere of our Lord God, 1527. for the discouerie of the North partes.

Rich. Yakluit.

MAster Robert Thorne of Bristoll, a notable member and ornament of his country, as well for his learning, as great charitie to the poore in a letter of his to king Henry the 8. and in a large discourse to doctor Leigh, his Ambassador to Charles the emperor, (which both are to be seene almost in the beginning of the second part of this my worke) exhorted the foresaid king with very waighty and substantiall reasons, to set forth a discouerie euen to the North pole. And that it may bee knowen that this his motion tooke present effect, I thought it good herewithall to put downe the testimonies of two of our Chronicles, M. Hall, and M. Grafton, who both write in this sort. This same moneth (say they) king Henry the 8. sent two faire ships well manned and victualled, hauing in them diuers cunning men to seeke strange regions, and so they set forth out of the Thames, the 20. day of May in the 19. yeere of his raigne, which was the yeere of our Lord, 1527.

And whereas master Hall, and master Grafton say, that in those ships there were diuers cunning men, I haue made great inquirie of such as by their yeeres and delight in nauigation, might giue me any light to know who those cunning men should be which were the directers in the aforesaid voyage. And it hath bene told mee by Sir Martin Frobisher, and master Richard Allen, a knight of the Sepulchre, that a Canon of S. Paul in London, which was a great Mathematician, and a man indued with wealth, did much aduaunce the action, and went therein himselfe in person, but what his name was, I can not learne of any. And further they told mee that one of the ships was called the Dominus vobiscum, which is a name likely to bee giuen by a religious man of those daies: and that sailing very farre Northwestward, one of the ships was cast away as it entred into a dangerous gulphe, about the great opening, betweene the North partes of new found land, and the countrey lately called by her maiestie Meta Incognita. Whereupon the other ship shaping her course towards Cape Britton, and the coast of Norumbega, and oftentimes putting their men on land to search the state of those vnknowen regions, returned home about the beginning of October, of the yeere aforesaid. And thus much (by reason of the great negligence of the writers of those times, who should haue vsed more care in preserving the memories of the worthie acts of our nation,) is all that hitherto I can learne, or find out of this voiage.

The voyage of master Hore and diuers other Gentlemen, to Newfound land, and Cape Breton, in the yeere 1536. and in the 28. yeere of king Henry the eight.

ONe master Hore of London, a man of goodly stature and of great courage, and giuen to the studie of Cosmographie, in the 28. yeere of king Henry the 8. and in the yeere of our Lord 1536. encouraged diuers gentlemen and others, being assisted by the kings fauour and good countenance, to accompany him in a voyage of discouerie vpon the Northwest partes of America: wherein his perswasions tooke such effect, that within short space many gentlemen of the innes of court, and of Chauncerie, and diuers other of good worship desirous to see the strange things of the world, very willingly entered into the action with him, some of whose names were as followeth: M. Wickes a gentleman of the West countrey of fiue hundred markes by the yeere liuing. Master Tucke a gentleman of Kent. M. Tuckfield. M. Thomas Buts the sonne of sir William Buts knight of Norfolke, which is yet aliue, and from whose mouth I wrote most of this relation. Master Hardie, master Biron, master Carter, master Wright, master Rastall Serieant Rastals brother, master Ridley, and diuers other, which all were in the admirall called the Trinitie, a ship of seuen score tunnes, wherein M. Hore himselfe was imbarked. In the other shippe whose name was the Minion, went a very learned and vertuous gentleman, one master Armigil Wade, father to the worshipfull master William Wade now clerke of the priuie counsell. Master Oliuer Dawbeney merchant of London, M. Joy afterward gentleman of the kings chappell, with diuers other of good account. The whole number that went in the two tall shippes aforesayd, to wit, the Trinitie and the Minion, were about six score persons, whereof 30. were gentlemen, which all were mustered in warlike maner at Grauesend, and after the receiuing of the sacrament, they embarked themselues in the end of Aprill, 1536.

From

from the time of their setting out from Graueſende, they were very long at ſea, to witte, aboue two moneths, and neuer touched any lande vntill they came to part of the Weſt Indies about Cape Breton, shaping their course thence Northeastwards, vntill they came to the Iſland of Penguin, which is very full of rockes and stones, whereon they went and founde it full of great foules white and gray, as bigge as geese, and they sawe infinite nombers of their egges. They spent a great nomber of the foules into their boates vpon their sailes, and tooke vp many of their egges, the foule they flead and their skinnes were like hony combes full of holes being flead off: they dressed and eate them, and found them to be very good and nourishing meate. They saw also store of beares both blacke and white, of whome they killed some, and tooke them for no badde foode.

Cape Breton.

The Iſland of Penguin, standeth about the latitude of 50. degrees.

M. Oliuer Dawbeny, which (as it is before mentioned) was in this voyage, and in the Minion, told M. Richard Hakluyt of the middle Temple these things following: to wit, That after their arriuall in Newfound land, and hauing bene there certaine dayes at ancre, and not hauing yet seene any of the naturall people of the Countrey, the same Dawbeny walking one day on the hatches, spied a boate with Sauages of those partes, rowing downe the bay towarde them, to gaze vpon the shippe and our people, and taking view of their comming aloofe, hee called to such as were vnder hatches, and willed them to come vp if they would see the naturall people of the Countrey, that they had so long and so much desired to see: Whereupon they came vp and tooke view of the Sauages rowing toward them and their shippe, and vpon the view they manned out a shipboote to meete them and to take them. But they spying our shipboate making towards them, returned with maine force & fled into an Iſland that laye vp in the bay or riuer there, and our men pursued them into the Iſland, and the Sauages fledde and escaped: but our men founde a fire, and the side of a beare on a wodden spit left at the same by the Sauages that were fledde.

M. Dawbenis report to M. Richard Hakluyt of the Temple.

They beheld the Sauages of Newfound land.

There in the same place they founde a boote of leather garnished on the vtter side of the calfe with certaine braue trailes, as it were of rawe silke, and also founde a certaine great warme mitten: And these carried with them, they returned to their shippe, not finding the Sauages, nor seeing any thing elſe besides the soyle, and the things growing in the same, which chiefly were store of firre and pine trees.

And further, the said M. Dawbeny told him, that lying there they grewe into great want of victuals, and that there they found small releife, more then that they had from the nest of an Oſprey, that brought hourely to her yong great plentie of diuers sorts of fishes. But such was the famine that increased amongſt them from day to day, that they were forced to seeke to relieue themselues of rawe herbes and rootes that they sought on the maine: but the famine increasing, and the releife of herbes being to little purpose to satisfie their insatiable hunger, in the fieldes and deserts here and there, the fellowe killed his mate while hee stouped to take vp a roote for his releife, and cutting out pieces of his body whome hee had murthered, broyled the same on the coles and greedily deuoured them.

Extreame famine.

By this meane the company decreased, and the officers knewe not what was become of them; And it fortuned that one of the company driuen with hunger to seeke abroade for releife, found out in the fields the sauour of broyled flesh, and fell out with one for that hee would suffer him and his fellowes to serue, enioying plentie as he thought: And this matter growing to cruel speaches, he that had the broyled meate, burst out into these wordes, If thou wouldest needes knowe, the broyled meate that I had, was a piece of such a mans buttocke. The report of this brought to the ship, the Captaine found what became of those that were missing, & was perswaded that some of them were neither deuoured with wilde beastes, nor yet destroyed with the Sauages: And hereupon he stood vp and made a notable Oration, containing, How much these dealings offended the Almighty, and touched the Scriptures from first to last, what God had in cases of distresse done for them that called vpon him, & told them that the power of the Almighty was then no lesse, then in al former time it had bene. And added, that if it had not pleased God to haue holpen them in that distresse, that yet it had bene better to haue perished in body, and to haue liued euerlastingly, then to haue relieued for a poore time their mortal bodies, and to bee condemned euerlastingly both body and soule to the vnquenchable fire of hel. And thus hauing ended to that effect, he began to exhort to repentance, and besought all the company to pray, that it might please God to looke vpon their miserable present state, and for his owne mercie to relieue the same. And such was the mercie of God, that the same night there arriued a French shippe in that port, well furnished with victaile, and such was the policie of the English, that they became masters of the same, and changing ships and victayling them, they set saile to come into England.

Our men eate one another for famine.

The Captaines Oration.

The English surprise a French ship, wherein they returned home.

In their iourney they were so farre Northwards, that they sawe mightie Iſlands of yce in

Hankes and other foules.

the sommer season, on which were haukes and other foules to rest themselues being wearie of flying ouer farre from the maine. They sawe also certaine great white foules with redde billes and redde legs, somewhat bigger then Herons, which they supposed to be stokes. They arriued at S. Iues in Cornewall about the ende of October. From thence they departed vnto a certaine Castle belonging to sir Iohn Luttrel, where M. Thomas Buts, and M. Rastall, and other Gentlemen of the voyage were very friendly intertained: after that they came to the Earle of Bathe at Bathe, and thence to Bristoll, and so to London. M. Buts was so changed in the voyage with hunger and miserie, that sir William his father and my Lady his mother, knewe him not to be their sonne, vntill they found a certaine secret marke which was a wart vpon one of his knees, as he tolde me Richard Hakluyt of Oxforde himselfe, to whome I rode 200. miles onely to learne the whole trueth of this voyage from his owne mouth, as being the onely man nowe aliue, that was in this discouerie.

Foules supposed to be stokes.

Certaine moneths after, those Frenchmen came into England, and made complaint to king Henry the 8: the king causing the matter to be examined, and finding the great distresse of his subiects, and the causes of the dealing so with the French, was so mooued with pitie, that hee punished not his subiects, but of his owne purse made full and royall recompense vnto the French.

The French royally recompenced by king Henry the 8.

In this distresse of famine, the English did somewhat relieue their vitall spirits, by drinking at the springs the fresh water out of certaine wooden cups, out of which they had drunke their Aqua composita before.

The large pension graunted by K. Edward the 6. to *Sebastian Cabota, constituting him grand Pilot* of England.

EDwardus sextus Dei gratia Angliæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ rex, omnibus Christi fidelibus, ad quos præsentes hæ literæ nostræ peruenerint salutem. Sciatis quod nos in cõsideratione boni & acceptabilis seruitii, nobis per dilectum seruientem nostrum, Sebastianũ Cabotam, impensi atque impendendi, de gratia nostra speciali, ac ex certa scientia, & mero motu nostro, nec non de aduisamento, & consensu præclarissimi auunculi nostri Edwardi Ducis Somerseti personæ nostræ Gubernatoris, ac Regnorum, dominiorum, subditorumque nostrorum protectoris, & cæterorum consiliariotum nostrorum, dedimus & concessimus, ac per præsentes damus, & concedimus eidem Sebastiano Cabotæ, quandam annuitatem siue annualem reditum, cẽtum sexaginta & sex librarũ, tresdecim solidorum, & quatuor denariorum sterlingorum habendam, gaudendam, & annuatim percipiendam prædictam annuitatem, siue annalem reditum eidem Sebastiano Cabotæ, durante vita sua naturali, de thesauro nostro ad receptum scacarii nostri Westmonasterii per manus thesauriariorum, & Camerariorum nostrorum, ibidem pro tempore existentium, ad festa annuntiationis beatæ Mariæ Virginis, natiuitatis sancti Ioannis Baptistæ, Sancti Michaelis Archangeli, & Natalis Domini per æquales portiones soluendam. Et vlterius de vberiori gratia nostra, ac de aduisamento, & consensu prædictis damus, & per præsentes concedimus præfato Sebastiano Cabotæ, tot & tantas Denariorum summas, ad quot & quantas dicta annuitas siue annalis redditus centũ sexaginta sex librarum, tresdecim solidorum, & quatuor denariorum, à festo sancti Michaelis Archangeli vltimò præterito huc vsque se extendit, & attingit, habendas & recipiendas præfato Sebastiano Cabotæ & assignatis suis de thesauro nostro prædicto per manus prædictorum Thesauriariorum, & Camerariorum nostrorum de dono nostro absque computo, seu aliquo alio nobis, hæredibus, vel successoribus nostris proinde reddendo, soluendo, vel faciendo, eo quòd expressa mentio, &c. In cuius rei testimonium, &c. Teste Rege, apud Westmonasterium, 6. die Ianuarii, Anno 2. Regis Edwardi sexti.

¶ *The same in English.*

EDward the first by the grace of God, king of England, Fraunce and Ireland, defender of the faith, to all Christian people to whome these presents shall come, sendeth greeting. Knowe ye that wee, in consideration of the good and acceptable seruice done, and to bee done, vnto vs by our beloued seruant Sebastian Cabote, of our speciall grace, certaine knowledge, meere motion,

and

and by the aduiſe and counſell of our moſt honourable vncle Edward duke of Somerſet gouernour of our perſon, and Protector of our kingdomes, dominions, and ſubiects, and of the reſt of our Counſaile, haue giuen and graunted, and by theſe preſents doe giue and graunt to the ſaide Sebaſtian Cabota, a certaine annuitie, or yeerely reuenue of one hundreth, threeſcore and ſixe pounds, thirteene ſhillings foure pence ſterling, to haue, enioye, and yeerely receiue the foreſaide annuitie, or yeerely reuenue, to the foreſaide Sebaſtian Cabota during his naturall life, out of our Treaſurie at the receite of our Exchequer at Weſtminſter, at the handes of our Treaſurers and paymaſters, there remayning for the time being, at the feaſtes of the Annunciation of the bleſſed Virgine Mary, the Natiuitie of S. Iohn Baptiſt, S. Michael the Archangel, and the Natiuitie of our Lord, to be paide by equall portions.

And further, of our more ſpeciall grace, and by the aduiſe and conſent aforeſaide we doe giue, and by theſe preſents doe graunt vnto the aforeſaide Sebaſtian Cabota, ſo many, and ſo great ſummes of money as the ſaide annuitie or yeerely reuenue of an hundreth, threeſcore and ſixe pounds, thirteene ſhillings 4. pence, doeth amount and riſe vnto from the feaſt of S. Michael the Archangel laſt paſt vnto this preſent time, to be had and receiued by the aforeſaide Sebaſtian Cabota, and his aſſignes out of our aforeſaid Treaſurie, at the handes of our aforeſaide Treaſurers, and officers of our Exchequer of our free gift without accompt, or any thing elſe therefore to bee yelded, payed, or made, to vs, our heires or ſucceſſours, foraſmuch as herein expreſſe mention is made to the contrary.

In witneſſe whereof we haue cauſed theſe our Letters to be made patents: Witneſſe the king at Weſtminſter the firſt day of Ianuarie, in the ſecond yeere of his raigne. The yeere of our Lorde 1548.

A voyage to Braſill, made by the worſhipfull M. William Haukins of Plimmouth, father to ſir Iohn Haukins knight now liuing, in the yeere 1530.

OLde M. William Haukins of Plimmouth, a man for his wiſdome, valure, experience, and ſkill in ſea cauſes much eſteemed, and beloued of king Henry the eight, and being one of the principall Sea Captaines in the Weſt partes of England in his time, not contented with the ſhort voyages commonly then made onely to the known coaſtes of Europe, armed out a tall and goodly ſhip of his owne of the burthen of 250. tunnes, called the Pole of Plimmouth, wherewith hee made three long and famous voyages vnto the coaſt of Braſill, a thing in thoſe dayes very rare, eſpecially to our Nation. In the courſe of which voyages he touched at the Riuer of Seſtos vpon the coaſt of Guinea, where hee traffiqued with the Negroes, and tooke of them Oliphants teeth, and other commodities which that place yeeldeth: and ſo arriuing on the coaſt of Braſil, vſed there ſuch diſcretion, and behaued himſelfe ſo wiſely with thoſe ſauage people, that he grew into great familiaritie and friendſhip with them. Inſomuch that in his 2. voyage, one of the ſauage kings of the Countrey of Braſill, was contented to take ſhippe with him, and to bee tranſported hither into England: whereunto M. Haukins agreed, leauing behinde in the Countrey as a pledge for his ſafetie and returne againe, one Martin Cockeram of Plimmouth. This Braſilian king being arriued, was brought vp to London, and preſented to king Henry the 8. lying as then at Whitehall: at the ſight of whome, the king and all the Nobilitie did not a little marueile, and not without cauſe: for in his cheekes were holes made according to their ſauage maner, and therein ſmall bones were planted, ſtanding an inche out from the ſaid holes, which in his owne Countrey was reputed for a great brauerie. He had alſo another hole in his nether lippe, wherein was ſet a precious ſtone about the bignelle of a peaſe: All his apparell, behauiour and geſture, were very ſtrange to the beholders.

Hauing remained here the ſpace almoſt of a whole yere, and the king with his ſight fully ſatiſfied, M. Haukins according to his promiſe and appointment, purpoſed to conuey him againe into his Countrey: but it fell out in the way that by change of ayre, and alteration of diet, the ſaide ſauage king died at Sea, which was feared would turne to the loſſe of the life of Martin Cockeram his pledge. Neuertheleſſe, the Sauages being fully perſwaded of the honeſt dealing of our men with their Prince, reſtored againe the ſaide pledge, without any harme to him, or any man of the companie: which pledge of theirs they brought home againe into England,

with their shippe fraighted, and furnished with the commodities of the Countrey. Which Martine Cockeram, by the witnesse of sir Iohn Haukins, being an officer in the towne of Plimmouth, was liuing within these fewe yeeres.

I haue bene informed by M. Anthony Garrard an ancient & worshipful marchant of London, that this voyage to Brasil was frequented by Robert Reniger, Thomas Borey, and diuers other wealthie Marchants of Southhampton, about 50. yeeres past, to wit, in the yeere 1540.

An acte against the exaction of money or any other thing *by any officer for licence to trafique into Iseland, and New* found land, made in An. 2. Edwardi sexti.

FOrasmuch as within these fewe yeeres now last past, there hath bene leuied, perceiued & taken by certaine of the officers of the Admiraltie, of such Marchants, and fishermen as haue vsed and practised the aduentures and iourneis into Iseland, New found land, Ireland, and other places commodious for fishing, and the getting of fish, in and vpon the seas or otherwise, by way of Marchants in those parties diuers great exactions, as summes of money, doles or shares of fish, & such other like things, to the great discouragement & hinderance of the same marchants and fishermen, and to no little damage of the whole common wealth, and thereof also great complaines haue bene made, & informations also openly to the kings Maiesties most honourable counsell: for reformation whereof, & to the intent also that the said marchants and fishermen may haue occasion the rather to practise and vse the same trade of marchandizing, and fishing freely without any such charges or exactions, as is before limitted, whereby it is to be thought that more plenty of fish shal come into this realme, & thereby to haue the same at more reasonable prices: Be it therfore enacted by the king our soueraigne Lord, and the lords & commons in this present parliament assembled, and by authoritie of the same, that neither the Admiral, nor any officer, or minister, officers or ministers of the Admiraltie for the time being, shall in any wise hereafter exact, receiue, or take by himselfe his seruant, deputie, seruants, or deputies of any such marchant or fisherman, any summe or summes of money, doles or shares of fish, or any other reward, benefite or aduantage whatsoeuer it be for any licence to passe this Realme to the saide voyages or any of them, nor vpon any respect concerning the saide voyages, nor any of them, vpon paine to forfeite for the first offence treble the summe, or treble the value of the rewarde, benefite or aduantage, that any such officer or minister shall hereafter haue or take of any such marchant or fishermen. For the which forfeiture the parte grieued, and euery other person or persons whatsoeuer he or they be, shal and may sue for the same by information, bill, plaint, or action of debt in any of the kings courts of recorde: The king to haue the one moitie, and the partie complayning the other moitie: in which suite no essoigne, protection, or wager of lawe shalbe allowed. And for the second offence the partie so offending, not only to loose and forfeite his or their office or offices in the Admiraltie, but also to make fine and ransome at the kings will, and pleasure.

By this act it appeareth, that the trade out of England to New found land was common and frequented about the beginning of the raigne of Edward the 6. namely in the yere 1548. and it is much to be maruelled, that by the negligence of our men, the countrey in all this time hath bene no better searched.

The first voyage of the right worshipfull and valiant knight, *sir Iohn Haukins, now treasurer of her Maiesties nauie* Royall, made to the West Indies 1562.

MAster Iohn Haukins hauing made diuers voyages to the yles of the Canaries, and there by his good and vpright dealing being growne in loue and fauour with the people, informed himselfe amongst them by diligent inquisition of the state of the West India, whereof he had receiued some knowledge by the instructions of his father, but increased the same by the aduertisements and reports of that people. And being amongst other particulers assured, that Negroes were very good marchandise in Hispaniola, and that store of Negroes might easily be had vpon the coast of Guinea, resolued with himselfe to make trial thereof, and

and communicated that deuise with his worshipfull friends of London: namely with sir Lionell Ducket, sir Thomas Lodge, M. Gunston his father in lawe, sir William Winter, M. Bromfield, and others. All which persons liked so well of his intention, that they became liberall contributers and aduenturers in the action. For which purpose there were 3. good shippes immediatly prouided: The one called the Salomon of the burthen of 120. tunne, wherein M. Haukins himselfe went as Generall: The 2. the Swallow of 100. tunnes, wherein went for Captaine M. Thomas Hampton: And the 3. the Ionas a barke of 40. tunnes, wherein the Master supplied the Captaines roome: in which small fleete, M. Haukins tooke with him not aboue 100. men, for feare of sickenesse, and other inconueniences, whereunto men in long voyages are commonly subiect.

With this company hee put off and departed from the coast of England in the moneth of October 1562. and in his course touched first at Teneriffe, where he receiued friendly intertainement. From thence hee passed to Sierra Leona, vpon the coast of Guinea, which place by the people of the Countrey is called Tagarin, where he staied some good time, and got into his possessiõ partly by the sword, and partly by other meanes, to the nomber of 300. Negroes at the least, besides other marchandises, which that Countrey yeeldeth. With this praye he sailed ouer the Ocean sea vnto the Iland of Hispaniola, and arriued first at the port of Isabella: and there hee had reasonable vtterance of his English commodities, as also of some part of his Negroes, trusting the Spaniards no further, then that by his owne strength he was able still to master them. From the port of Isabella he went to Porte de Plata, where he made like sales, standing alwayes vpõ his gard: from thence also hee sailed to Monte Christi another port on the North side of Hispaniola, and the last place of his touching, where he had peaceable traffique, & made vent of the whole nomber of his Negroes: for which he receiued in those 3. places by way of exchange, such quantitie of marchandise, that he did not onely lade his owne 3. shippes, with hides, ginger, sugers, and some quantitie of pearles, but he fraighted also two other hulkes with hides, and other like commodities, which he sent into Spaine. And thus leauing the Iland, hee returned and discimboked, passing out by the Ilands of the Caycos, without further entring into the bay of Mexico, in this his first voyage to the West India. And so with prosperous successe and much gaine to himselfe, and the aforesaide aduenturers he came home, and arriued in the moneth of September 1563.

A voyage made by M. Roger Bodenham, to S. Iohn de *Vllua in the bay of Mexico, in the yeere* 1564.



Roger Bodenham, hauing a long time liued in the Citie of Siuill in Spaine, being there married, and by occasion thereof vsing trade and traffique to the parts of Barbarie, grew at length to great losse and hinderance by that new trade begunne by mee in the Citie of Fez: Whereupon being returned into Spaine I began to call my wits about me, and to consider with my selfe by what meanes I might recouer & renue my state: and in conclusion by the ayde of my friends, I procured a shippe called the Barke Foxe, pertaining to London, of the burden of 8. or 9. score tunnes, and with the same I made a voyage to the West India, hauing obtained good fauour with the Spanish marchants, by reason of my long abode, and marriage in the Countrey. My voyage was in the companie of the Generall Don Pedro Melendes, for Noua Hispania. Who being himselfe appointed Generall for Terra firma and Peru, made his sonne our Generall for Newe Spaine, although Pedro Melendes himselfe was the principall man and directer in both fleetes. We all departed from Cales together the last day of May in the yere 1564. And I with my ship being vnder the conduct of the sonne of Don Pedro aforesaide, arriued with him in Noua Hispania, where immediatly I tooke order for ỹ discharge of my marchandise at the port of Vera Cruz, otherwise called Villa ricca, to be transported thence to the Citie of Mexico, which is 70. and odde leagues distant from the said port of Villa Ricca. In the way are many good townes, as namely, Pueblo de los Angelos, & another called Tlaxcalan. The citie of Mexico hath 3. great causeis to bring men to it, compassed with a lake, so that it needeth no walles, being so defended by the water. It is a Citie plentiful of al necessary things, hauing many faire houses, Churches & monasteries. I hauing continued in the Countrey the space of 9. moneths, returned againe for Spaine with the Spanish fleet, & deliuered the marchandise & siluer which I had in ỹ ship, into the Cõtraction house, and there receiued my fraight, which amounted outwards and homewards to the value of 13000. ducats, & more. I obserued many things in ỹ time of my abode in Noua Hispania as wel touching the cõmodities of the countrey, as the maners of the people both Spaniards & Indians, but because

the Spaniſh hiſtories are full of thoſe obſeruations, I omit them, and refer the readers to the ſame: onely this I ſay, that the commoditie of Couchenelio, groweth in greateſt aboundance about the towne of Pueblo de los Angelos, and is not there worth aboue 40. pence the pound.

The voyage made by the worſhipful M. Iohn Haukins *Eſquire, now knight, Captaine of the Ieſus of Lubek, one of her Maieſties* ſhippes, and Generall of the Salomon, and other two barkes going in his companie to the coaſt of Guinea, and the Indies of Noua Spania, being in Affrica, and America: begunne in An. Dom. 1564.

October 18.

MAſter Iohn Haukins with the Ieſus of Lubek, a ſhippe of 700. and the Salomon a ſhip of 7. ſcore, the Tiger a barke of 50. and the Swallowe of 30. tunnes, being all well furniſhed with men to the nomber of one hundreth, threeſcore and tenne, as alſo with ordinance, and victuall requiſite for ſuch a voyage, departed out of Plimmouth the 18. day of October, in the yere of our Lord 1564. with a proſperous winde: at which departing, in cutting the foreſaile, a marueilous miſfortune happened to one of the officers in the ſhippe, who by the pullie of the ſheat was ſlaine out of hande, being a ſorrowfull beginning to them all. And after their ſetting out tenne leagues to the ſea, he met the ſame day with the Minion a ſhip of the Queenes Maieſties, wherein was Captaine Dauid Carlet, and alſo her conſort, the Iohn Baptiſt of London, being bounde to Guinea alſo, who hailed one the other after the cuſtome of the Sea, with certaine peeces of ordinance for ioy of their meeting: which done, the Minion departed from him to ſeeke her other conſort, the Merline of London, which was a ſtarne out of ſight, leauing in M. Haukins companie the Iohn Baptiſt her other conſort.

The Minion, the Iohn Baptiſt, and the Merline bound for Guinea.

Thus ſayling forwards on their way with a proſperous winde vntill the 21. of the ſame moneth, at that time a great ſtorme aroſe, the winde being at Northeaſt about 9. a clocke in the night, and continued ſo 23. houres together, in which ſtorme M. Haukins loſt the companie of the Iohn Baptiſt aforeſaid, and of his pinneſſe called the Swallow, his other 3. ſhippes being ſore beten with the ſtorme. The 23. day the Swallow to his no ſmall reioycing, came to him againe in the night, 10. leagues to the Northward of Cape Finiſter, he hauing put roomer not being able to double the Cape, in that there roſe a contrary winde at Southweſt. The 25. the wind continuing contrary, he put into a place in Gallicia, called Ferroll, where hee remained fiue dayes, and appointed all the Maſters of his ſhippes an order for the keeping of good companie in this manner: The ſmall ſhippes to be alwayes a head and a weather of the Ieſus, and to ſpeake twiſe a day with the Ieſus at leaſt: if in the day the Enſigne bee ouer the poope of the Ieſus, or in the night two lights, then ſhall all the ſhippes ſpeake with her: If there be three lights aboord the Ieſus, then doeth ſhe caſt about: If the weather be extreeme, that the ſmall ſhippes cannot keepe companie with the Ieſus, then all to keepe companie with the Salomon, and forthwith to repaire to the Iſland of Teneriffe, to the Northward of the roade of Sirroes; If any happen to any miſfortune, then to ſhewe two lights, and to ſhoote off a piece of Ordinance. If any looſe companie, and come in ſight againe, to make three yawes, and ſtrike the Pylon three times: Serue God daply, loue one another, preſerue your victuals, beware of fire, and keepe good companie.

The 26. day the Minion came in alſo where he was, for the reioycing whereof hee gaue them certaine peeces of Ordinance, after the courteſie of the Sea for their welcome, but the Minions men had no mirthe, becauſe of their conſort the Merline, whome at their departure from M. Haukins vpon the coaſt of England they went to ſeeke: and hauing mette with her, kept companie two dayes together, and at laſt by miſfortune of fire (though the negligence of one of their gunners) the powder in the gunners roome was ſet on fire, which with the firſt blaſt ſtrooke out her poope, and therewithall loſt three men, beſides many ſore burned (which eſcaped by the Brigandine being at her ſterne) and immediatly, to the great loſſe of the owners, and moſt horrible ſight to the beholders, ſhe ſonke before their eyes.

The 30. day of the moneth M. Haukins with his conſorts and companie of the Minion, hauing nowe both the Brigandines at her ſterne, wayed ancre, and ſet ſaile on their voyage, hauing a proſperous winde thereunto.

The fourth of November they had ſight of the Iſlande of Madera, and the firſt day of Teneriffe,

Teneriffe, which they thought to haue bene the Canaries, in that they ſuppoſed themſelues to haue bene to the Eaſtward of Teneriffe, and were not: but the Pynion being a three or foure leagues a head of vs, kept on her courſe to Teneriffe, hauing better ſight thereof, then the other had, and by that meanes they parted companie. For Maſter Hawkins and his companie, went more to the Weſt, vpon which courſe hauing ſailed a while, he eſpied another Iſland, which he thought to be Teneriffe, and being not able, by the meanes of the fogge vpon the hils, to diſcerne the ſame, nor yet to fetch it by night, went roomer, vntill the morning, being the 7. of November, which as yet he could not diſcerne, but ſailed along the coaſt, the ſpace of two howres, to perceaue ſome certaine marke of Teneriffe, and found no likelihoode thereof at all, accompting that to be, as it was in deede, the Iſle of Palmes: and ſo ſailing forwards, eſpied another Iſland, called Gomera, and alſo Teneriffe, with the which he made, and ſailing all night, came in the morning the next day to the port of Adecia, where he found his pinneſſe which had departed from him the 1. of the moneth, being in the weather of him, and eſpying the pike of Teneriffe all a high, bare thither. At his arriuall, ſomewhat before he came to anker, he hoyſed out his ſhips pinneſſe rowing a ſhoare, intending to haue ſent one with a letter to Peter de ponte, one of the Gouernours of the Iſland, who dwelled a league from the ſhoare: but as he pretended to haue landed, ſuddenly there appeared vpon the two points of the roade, men leuelling of baſſes and harquebuſſes to them, with diuers others, to the number of 80. with halberts, pykes, ſwordes, and targets, which happened ſo contrarie to his expectation, that it did greatly amaſe him, and the more, becauſe he was nowe in their danger, not knowing well how to auoide it, without ſome miſchiefe. Wherefore he determined to call to them, for the better appeaſing of the matter, declaring his name, and profeſſing himſelfe to be an eſpeciall friend to Peter de ponte, and that he had ſundry things for him, which he greatly deſired. And in the meane time, while he was thus talking with them, whereby he made them to hold their hands, he willed the marriners to rowe away, ſo that at laſt he gat out of their danger: and then aſking for Peter De Ponte, one of his ſonnes being Signior Nicholas Ponte, came forth, whome he perceauing, deſired to put his men aſide, and he himſelf would leape a ſhoare, and common with him, which they did: ſo that after communication had betweene them of ſundry things, and of the feare they both had, Maſter Hawkins deſired to haue certaine neceſſaries prouided for him. In the meane ſpace, while theſe things were prouiding, he trimmed the maine maſt of the Ieſus, which in the ſtorme aforeſaid was ſprong: here he ſoiourned 7. daies, refreſhing himſelfe and his men. In the which time Peter de ponte dwelling at S. Cruz, a Citie 20. leagues off, came to him, & gaue him as gentle entertainment, as if he had bene his owne brother. To ſpeak ſomewhat of theſe Iſlands, being called in olde time Inſulæ fortunatæ, by the meanes of the flouriſhing therof, the fruitfulnes of them doeth ſurely exceede farre all other that I haue heard of: for they make wine better then any in Spaine, they haue grapes of ſuch bignes, that they may be compared to damſons, and in taſte inferiour to none: for ſugar, ſuckers, raiſons of the Sunne, and many other fruits, abundance: for roſine & rawe ſilke, there is great ſtore, they want neither corne, pulſes, cattell, nor yet wilde fowle: they haue many Camels alſo, which being yong, are eaten of the people for victuals, and being olde, they are vſed for carriage of neceſſaries: whoſe propertie is as he is taught to kneele at the taking of his loade, and vnlading againe: his nature is to ingender backward, contrarie to other beaſtes: of vnderſtanding very good, but of ſhape very deformed, with a little bellie, long miſhapen legges, and feete very broade of fleſh, without a hooke, all whole, ſauing the great toe, a backe bearing vp like a molehill, a large and thinne necke, with a little head, with a bunch of hard fleſh, which nature hath giuen him in his breaſt, to leane vpō. This beaſt liueth hardly, and is contented with ſtrawe, and ſtubble, but of force ſtrong, being well able to carry 500. weight. In one of theſe Iſlands, called" de Fierro, "De Fierra. there is by the reporte of the inhabitants, a certaine tree that raineth continually, by the dropping whereof, the inhabitants and cattell are ſatisfied with water, for other water haue they none in all the Iſland. And it raineth in ſuch abundance, that it were incredible vnto man to beleeue ſuch a vertue to be in a tree, but it is knowen to be a diuine matter, and a thing ordained by God, at whoſe power therein, we ought not to marueil, ſeeing he did by his prouidence, as we read in the Scriptures, when the children of Iſrael were going into the land of promiſe, feede them with Manna from heauen, for the ſpace of 40. yeeres. Of the trees aforeſaid, we ſawe in Guinie many, being of great height, dropping continually, but not ſo abundantly as the other, becauſe the leaues are narrower, and are like the leaues of a peare tree. About theſe Iſlands, are certaine flitting Iſlands, which haue bene oftentimes ſeene, and when men approched neere them, they vaniſhed: as the like hath bene of theſe Iſlands now knowen, by the reporte of the Inhabitants, which were not founde of long time one after the other: and therefore it ſhoulde ſeeme he is not yet borne, to whome God hath appointed the finding

The Iſle of Palmes. Gomera and Teneriffe.

Trees dropping water in Gomera.

The pike of Teneriffe.

ding of them. In this Iland of the Teneritte, there is a hill called the Pike, because it is picked, which is in heigth by their reports, 20. leagues, hauing both winter and summer, abundance of snowe in the toppe of it: this pike may be seene in a cleere day 50. leagues off, but it sheweth as though it were a blacke clowde a great heigth in the element. I haue heard of none to be compared with this in heigth, but in the Indias I haue seene many, and in my iudgement not inferiour to the pike, and so the Spaniards write.

The 15. of November at night, we departed from Teneriffe, and the 20. of the same, wee had sight of 10. Caruels, that were fishing at sea, with whome we would haue spoken, but they fearing vs, fled into a place of Barbarie, called Cape de las Barbas.

Cape de Barbas.

The 20. the shippes pinnesse, with two men in her, sailing by the shippe, was ouerthrowen by the ouersight of them that were in her, the wind being so great, that before they were espied, and the ship had cast about for them, she was driuen halfe a league to leeward of the pinnesse, and had lost sight of her, so that there was small hope of recouerie, had not Gods helpe, and the Captaines diligence bene, who hauing well marked, which way the pinnesse was by the Sunne, appointed 24. of the lustiest rowers in the great boate, to rowe to windwards, and so recouered, contrary to all mens expectations, both the pinnesse and the men sitting vpon the keele of her.

Cape Blanco.

The 25. he came to Cape Blanco, which is vpon the coast of Affrica, and a place where the Portingals doe ride that fishe there, in the moneth of November especially, and is a very good place of fishing, for Pargoes. Mullet, and Dogge fishe. In this place the Portingals haue no holde for their defense, but haue refuge of the Barbarians, whome they entertaine as their souldiers, for the time of their being there, and for their fishing vpon that coast of Affrica, doe pay a certaine tribute to the King of the Moores. The people of that part of Affrica, are tawnie, hauing long haire, without any apparell, sauing before their priuie members. Their weapons in warres, are bowes, and arrowes.

Cape Verde in 14. degrees.

The 26. we departed from S. Auis Baye, within Cape Blanco, where we refreshed our selues with fishe, and other necessaries: and the 29. we came to Cape Verde, which lieth in 14. degrees, and a halfe. These people are all blacke, and are called Negroes, without any apparell, sauing before their priuities: of stature goodly men, and well liking, by reason of their foode, which passeth all other Guyneans for kine, goates, pullin, rise, fruits, and fishe. Here we tooke fishes with heades like Conies, and teeth nothing varying, of a iollie thickness, but not past a foote long, and is not to be eaten without flaying or cutting of his head. To speake somewhat of the sundry sortes of these Guyneans. The people of Cape Verde, are called Leophares, and counted the goodliest men of al other, sauing ꝑ Manicongoes, which do inhabite on this side ꝑ cape de Buena Speranza. These Leophares haue warres against the Ieloffes, which are borderers by them: their weapons are bowes, and arrowes, targets, and short daggers, darts also, but varying from other Negroes: for whereas the other vse a long dart, to fight with in their hands, they carry fiue or sixe small ones a peece, which they cast with. These men also are more ciuill then any other, because of their dailie traffike with the Frenchmen, and are of nature very gentle, and louing: for while we were there, we tooke in a Frenchman, who was one of the 19. that going to Brasile, in a Barke of Diepe, of 60. tunnes, and being a sea boord of Cape De Verde, 200. leagues, the plankes of their barke with a sea brake out vpon them so suddenly, that much a doe they had to saue themselues in their boates: but by Gods prouidence, the wind being westerly, which is rarely seene there, they got to the shoare, to the Iles Braues, and in great penurie got to Cape Verde, where they remained sixe weekes, and had meate and drinke of the same people. The said Frenchman hauing forsaken his fellowes, which were three leagues off from the shoare, and wandring with the Negroes too and fro, fortuned to come to the water side, and communing with certaine of his countreymen, which were in our ship, by their perswasions came away with vs: but his entertainment amongst them was such, that he desired it not: but through the importunate request of his Countreymen, consented at the last. Here we staied but one night, and part of the day: for the 7. of December, wee came away, in that pretending to haue taken Negroes there perforce, the Mynions men gaue them there to vnderstand of our comming, and our pretence, wherefore they did auoide the snares we had laid for them.

The 8. of December, we ankered by a small Iland, called Alcatrarsa, wherein at our going a shoare, we found nothing but sea birds, as we call them Ganets, but by the Portingals called Alcatrarses, who for that cause gaue the said Iland the same name. Herein halfe of our boates were laden with yong and olde fowle, who not being vsed to the sight of men, flew so about vs, that wee stroke them downe with poles. In this place, the two ships riding, the two barkes, with their boates, went into an Iland of the Sapies, called La Formio, to see if they could take any of them,

and

and there landed to the number of 80. in armour, and eſpying certaine, made to them, but they fled in ſuch order into the woods, that it booted them not to followe: ſo going on their way forward til they came to a riuer which they could not paſſe ouer, they eſpied on the other ſide two men, who with their bowes and arrowes ſhot terribly at them. Whereupon we diſcharged certaine harquebuſſes to them againe, but the ignorant people waied it not, becauſe they knewe not the danger thereof: but vſing a marueilous crying in their fight, with leaping, and turning their tailes, that it was moſt ſtrange to ſee, and gaue vs great pleaſure to behold them. At the laſt, one being hurt with a harquebuſſe vpon the thigh, looked vpon his wound, and wiſt not howe it came, becauſe he could not ſee the pellet. Here Maſter Hawkins perceauing no good to be done amongſt them, becauſe we could not finde their townes, and alſo not knowing how to goe into Rio grande, for want of a Pilot, which was the very occaſion of our comming thither: and finding ſo many ſholes, feared with our great ſhips to goe in, and therefore departed on our pretended way to the Idols.

The 10. of December, hauing a northeaſt wind, with raine, and ſtorme, which weather continued two daies together, was the occaſion, that the Salomon, and Tyger loſte our companie: for whereas the Ieſus, and pinneſſe ankered at one of the Iſlands, called Sambula, the 12. day, the Salomon and Tyger came not thither, till the 14. In this Iſland, we ſtaied certaine daies, going euery day a ſhoare, to take the Inhabitants, with burning, and ſpoiling their townes, who before were Sapies, and were conquered by the Samboſes, Inhabitants beyond Sierra Leona. *The Iſland called Hambula.*

Theſe Samboſes had inhabited there 3. yeeres before our comming thither, and in ſo ſhort ſpace haue ſo planted the ground, that they had great plentie of mill, riſe, rootes, pompions, pullin, goares, of ſmall frye vſed, euery houſe full of the Countrey fruite planted by Gods prouidence, as Palmito trees, fruites like dates, and ſundry other in no place in all that Countrey ſo aboundantly, whereby they liued more deliciouſly then other. Theſe inhabitants haue diuerſe of the Sapies, which they tooke in the warres, as their ſlaues, whome onely they keepe to till the ground, in that they neither haue the knowledge thereof, nor yet will worke themſelues, of whome wee tooke many in that place, but of the Samboſes none at all, for they fled into the maine. *The Samboſes.* *Sapies.*

All the Samboſes haue white teeth as wee haue, far vnlike to the Sapies, which doe inhabite about Rio grande, for their teeth are all filed, which they doe for a brauerie, to ſet out themſelues, and doe iagge their fleſh, both legges, armes, and bodies, as workemanlike, as a Jerkinmaker with vs pinketh a jerkin. Theſe Sapies be more ciuill then the Samboſes: for whereas the Samboſes liue moſt by the ſpoile of their enemies, both in taking their victuals, and eating them alſo, The Sapies doe not eate mans fleſh, vnleſſe in the warres they be driuen by neceſſitie thereunto, which they haue not vſed, but by the example of the Samboſes, but liue onely with fruits, and cattell, whereof they haue great ſtore. This plentie is the occaſion that the Sapies deſire not warre, except they be thereunto prouoked by the inuaſions of the Samboſes, whereas the Samboſes for want of foode, are inforced thereunto, and therefore are not woont onely to take them that they kill, but alſo keepe thoſe that they take, vntill ſuch time as they want meate, and then they kill them. There is alſo another occaſion, that prouoketh the Samboſes to warre againſt the Sapies, which is for couetouſnes of their riches. For whereas the Sapies haue an order to burie their dead in certaine places appointed for that purpoſe, with their golde about them, the Samboſes diggeth vp the ground, to haue the ſame treaſure: for the Samboſes haue not the like ſtore of golde, that the Sapies haue. In this Iſland of Sambula, we found about 50. boates, called Almadyes, or Canoas, which are made of one peece of wood, digged out like a trough, but yet of a good proportion, being about 8. yardes long, and one in breadth, hauing a beake head, and a ſterne very proportionably made, and on the out ſide artificially carued, and painted red, and blewe: they are able to carry 20. or 30. men, but they are about the coaſt able to carry three ſcore, and vpward. In theſe Canoas they rowe ſtanding vpright, with an ower ſomewhat longer then a man, the ende whereof is made about the breadth and length of a mans hand, of the largeſt ſort. They rowe very ſwift, and in ſome of them foure rowers, and one to ſteere make as much way, as a paire of oares in the Thames of London. *The Canoas of Affrica.*

Their townes are prettily diuided with a maine ſtreete at the entring in, that goeth thorough their Towne, and another ouerthwart ſtreete, which maketh their townes croſſe waies: their houſes are built in a ranke very orderly in the face of the ſtreete, and they are made round, like a doue cote, with ſtakes ſet full of Palmito leaues, in ſteede of a wall: they are not much more then a fathome large, & two of heigth, and thatched with Palmito leaues very cloſe, other ſome with reede, and ouer the roofe there of, for the better garniſhing of the ſame, there is a round bundle of reede prettily contriued like a louer: in the inner part, they make a loft of ſtickes, whereupon they lay all their prouiſion of victuals: a place they reſerue at their entrance for the kitchin, and the place they lie in is deuided with certaine mats artificially made with the rine of Palmito trees: their *The forme of their townes.*

bed-

bedsteedes are of small staues, laide along, and raised a foote from the ground, vpon which is laide a matte, and another vpon them when they list: for other couering they haue none. In the middle of the Towne, there is a house larger and higher then the other, but in forme alike, adioyning vnto the which, there is a place made of foure good stancions of woode, and a round roofe ouer it, the grounde also raised round with claye, a foote high, vpon the which flooze were strawed many fine mats: this is the consultation house, the like whereof is in all Townes, as the Portingals affirme: in which place, when they sitte in Counsell, the King or Captaine sitteth in the middes, and the Elders vpon the flooze by him: (for they giue reuerence to their Elders,) and the common sorte sitte round about them. There they sitte to examine matters of theft, which if a man be taken with, to steale but a Portingall clothe from another, he is solde to the Portingals for a slaue. They consult also, and take order what tyme they shall goe to warres: and as it is certainly reported by the Portingals, they take order in gathering of fruites in the season of the yeere, and also for receauing of Palmito wine, which is gathered by a hole cutte in the toppe of a tree, and a gourde set for the receauing thereof, which falleth in by droppes, and yeelded fresh wine againe within a moneth, and this diuided, part and portion like to euery man, by the iudgement of the Captaine and Elders, euery man holdeth himselfe contented: and this surely I iudge to be a very good order: for otherwise, whereas scarsitie of Palmito is, euery man would haue the same, which might breede great strife: but for such things, as euery man doth plant for himselfe, the sower thereof reapeth it to his owne vse, so that nothing is common, but that which is vnset by mans handes. In their houses there is more common passage of Lizardes, like Guats, and other greater, of blacke and blewe colour, of neere a foote long, besides their tailes, then there is with vs of Mise in great houses. The Sapies and Samboses also, vse in their warres bowes and arrowes, made of reedes, with heads of yron poysoned with the iuice of a Cucumber, whereof I haue had many in my handes. In their battels they haue target men, with broade wicker targets, and darts with heades at both endes, of yron, the one in forme of a two edged sworde, a foote and a halfe long, and at the other ende, the yron long of the same length, made to counterpease it, that in casting, it might flee leuell, rather then for any other purpose, as I can iudge. And when they espie the enemie, the Captaine to cheere his men, crieth, Hungry, and they answere Heygre, and with that euery man placeth himselfe in order, for about euery target man three bowemen will couer themselues, and shoote as they see aduantage: and when they giue the onset, they make such terrible cryes, that they may be hearde two miles off. For their beleefe, I can heare of none that they haue, but in such as they themselues imagine to see in their dreames, and so worshippe the pictures, whereof we sawe some like vnto Diuels. In this Iland afore laide, wee soiourned vnto the one and twentieth of December, where hauing taken certaine Negroes, and of their fruites, rise, and myll, as we could well carry away, (whereof there was such store, that we might haue laden one of our Barkes therewith,) we departed, and at our departure, diuers of our men being desirous to goe a shoare, to fetch Pompions, which hauing prooued, they found to be very good, certaine of the Tygers men went also, amongst the which there was a Carpenter, a young man, who with his fellowes hauing set many, and carried them downe to their boates, as they were ready to depart, desired his fellowes to tarry, while he might goe vp to fetch a few which he had layed by for himselfe, who being more licorous then circumspect, went vp without weapon, and as hee went vp alone, possibly beeing marked of the Negroes that were vpon the trees, espying him what he did, perceauing him to be alone, and without weapon, dogged him, and finding him occupied in binding his Pompions together, came behind him, ouerthrowing him, and straight cutte his throate, as he afterwards was founde by his fellowes, who came to the place for him, and there founde him naked.

The extreme negligence of one of the companie.

The two and twentieth the Captaine went into the Riuer, called Callowsa, with the two Barkes, and the Iohns pinnesse, and Salomons boate, leauing at anker in the Riuers mouth the two shippes, the Riuer being twentie leagues in, where the Portingals roade: he came the fiue and twentieth, and dispatched his business, and so returned with two Carauels, loaden with Negroes.

The riuer Callowsa.

The 27. the Captaine being aduertised by the Portingals, of a Towne of the Negroes, called Bymba, being in the way as they returned, where was not onely great quantitie of golde, but also that there were not aboue fortie men, and a hundred women, and children in the Towne, so that if hee would giue the aduenture vppon the same, hee might gette a hundreth slaues: with the which tydings hee beeing gladde, because the Portingals should not thinke him to bee of so base a courage, but that hee durst to giue them that, and greater attempts: and being

The towne of Bymba.

being thereunto also the more prouoked with the prosperous successe he had in other Islands adiacent, where he had put them all to flight, and taken in one boate 20. together, determined to stay before the Towne three or foure howres, to see what he could doe: and therefore prepared his men in armour, and weapon together, to the number of fortie men well appointed, hauing to their guides certaine Portingals, in a boate, who brought some of them to their death: we landing boate after boate, and diuers of our men scattering themselues, contrarie to the Captaines will, by one or two in a companie, for the hope they had to finde golde in their houses, ransaking the same, in the meane time the Negroes came vppon them, and hurte many, being thus scattered, whereas if fiue or sixe had bene together, they had bene able, as their companies did, to giue the ouerthowe to 40. of them, and being driuen downe to take their boates, were followed so hardly by a route of Negroes, who by that tooke courage to pursue them to their boates, that not onely some of them, but others standing a shoare, not looking for any such matter, by meanes that the Negroes did flie at the first, and our companie remained in the towne, were suddenly so set vpon, that some with great hurt recouered their boates: other some not able to recouer the same, tooke the water, and perished by meanes of the oaze. While this was a doing, the Captaine, who with a dosen men went thorough the Towne, returned, finding 200. Negroes at the waters side, shooting at them in the boates, and cutting them in peeces, which were drowned in the water, at whose comming, they ranne all away: so he entred his boates, and before he could put off from the shore, they returned againe, and shot very fiercely, and hurt diuers of them. Thus wee returned backe, somewhat discomforted, although the Captaine in a singular wise manner, with countenance very cheerefull outwardly, as though he did little weigh the death of his men, nor yet the great hurt of the rest, although his heart inwardly was broken in peeces for it, done to this ende, that the Portingals being with him, should not presume to resist against him, nor take occasion to put him to further displeasure or hinderance, for the death of our men: hauing gotten by our going ten Negroes, and lost seuen of our best men, whereof Walter Field, Captaine of the Salomon, was one, and we had 27. of our men hurt. In the same howre, while this was a doing, there happened at the same instant, a meruelous miracle to them in the shippes, who roade ten leagues to seaward, by many sharks or Tuberons, who came about the ships, among which one was taken by the Iesus, and foure by the Salomon, and one very sore hurt, escaped: and so it fell out of our men, whereof one of the Iesus men, and foure of the Salomons were killed, and the 5. hauing 20. wounds, was rescued, and scaped with much adoe.

Portingals not to be trusted.

Want of circumspection in our men.

The 28. they came to their ships, the Iesus, and the Salomon, and the 30. departed from thence to Taggarin.

Taggarin.

The first of Januarie, the two barkes, and both the boates forsooke the ships, and went into a riuer, called the Casserroes, and the 6. hauing dispatched their busines, the two barkes returned, and came to Tagarrin, where the two ships were at anker. Not two daies after the comming of the two shippes thither, they put their water caske a shoare, and filled it with water, to season the same, thinking to haue filled it with fresh water afterward: and while their men were some a shoare, and some at their boates, the Negroes set vpon them in the boates, and hurt diuers of them, and came to the caskes, and cut off the hoopes of twelue buts, which lost vs 4. or 5. dayes time, besides great want we had of the same: soiourning at Taggarin, the Swallowe went vp the riuer about her traffike, where they saw great townes of the Negroes, and Canoas, that had three score men in a peece: there they vnderstoode of the Portingals, of a great battell, betweene them of the Sierra Leona side, and them of Taggarin: they of Sierra Leona, had prepared 300. Canoas to inuade the other. The time was appointed not past 6. daies after our departure from thence, which we would haue seene, to the intent we might haue taken some of them, had it not bene for the death, and sickenes of our men, which came by the contagiousnes of the place, which made vs to make haste away.

January.

The mart of Casserroes.

Very great Canoas.

The contagion of the Countrey of Sierra Leona.

The 18. of Januarie at night, we departed from Taggarin, being bound to the West Indies, before which departure, certaine of the Salomons men went a shoare, to fil water in the night, and as they came a shoare with their boate, being ready to leape a land, one of them espied a Negroe in a white coate, standing vpon a rocke, being ready to haue receaued them, when they came a shoare, hauing in sight of his fellowes also eight or nine, some in one place leaping out, & some in another, but they hid themselues straight againe: whereupon our men doubting they had bene a great companie, and sought to haue taken them at more aduantage, as God would, departed to their shippes, not thinking there had bene such a mischiefe pretended toward them, as then was in deede. Which the next day we vnderstoode of a Portingall, that came downe to vs, who had traffiked with the Negroes, by whome he vnderstoode, that the King of Sierra Leona had made all the

power

power he could, to take some of vs, partly for the desire he had to see what kind of people we were, that had spoiled his people at the Idols, wherof he had newes before our comming, and as I iudge also, vpon other occasions prouoked by the Tangomangoes, but sure we were that the armie was come downe, by meanes that in the euening we sawe such a monstrous fire, made by the watring place, that before was not seene, which fire is the onely marke for the Tangomangoes, to knowe where their armie is alwaies. If these men had come downe in the euening, they had done vs great displeasure, for that we were a shoare, filling water: but God, who worketh all thinges in the best, would not haue it so, and by him wee escaped without danger, his name be prayed for it.

Tangomangoes.

The 29. of the same moneth, we departed with all our ships from the Sierra Leona, towards the West Indias, where for the space of 28. daies, wee were becalmed, hauing nowe and then contrarie windes, and some Ternados amongest the same calme, which happened to vs very ill, being but reasonably watered, for so great a companie of Negroes, and our selues, which pinched vs all, and that which was worst, put vs in such feare, that many neuer thought to haue reached to the Indias, without great death of Negroes, and of themselues: but Almightie God, who neuer suffereth his elect to perish, sent vs the sixteene of Februarie, the ordinarie Byrie, which is the North west winde, which neuer left vs, till we came to an Iland of the Cannybals, called Sancta Dominica, where we arriued the ninth of March, vpon a Saturday: and because it was the most desolate place in all the Iland, we could see no Cannybals, but some of their houses, where they dwelled, and as it should seeme, forsooke the place, for want of fresh water, for wee coulde finde none there but raine water, and such as fell from the hils, and remayned as a puddle in the dale, whereof we filled for our Negroes. The Cannybals of that Iland, and also others adiacent, are the moste desperate warriers that are in the Indias, by the Spaniards report, who are neuer able to conquer them, and they are molested by them not a little, when they are driuen to water there in any of those Ilands: of very late, not two moneths past, in the same Iland, a Caruell being driuen to water, was in the night sette vpon by the Inhabitants, who cutte their cable in the halser, whereby they were driuen a shoare, and so taken by them, and eaten. The greene Dragon of Newhauen, whereof was Captaine, one Bontemps, in March also, came to one of those Ilands, called Granado, and being driuen to water, could not doe the same, for the Cannybals, who fought with him very desperately two daies. For our part also, if we had not lighted vpon the desertest place in all the Iland, we could not haue missed, but should haue bene greatly troubled by them, by all the Spaniards reportes, who make them Deuils in respect of men.

Februarie.

Dominica Iland. March.

Cannybals exceeding cruell, and to be auoided.

The tenth day, at night, we departed from thence, and the fifteenth had sight of nine Ilands, called the Testigos: and the sixteenth, of an Iland, called Margarita, where we were entertayned by the Alcalde, and had both beeues and sheepe giuen vs, for the refreshing of our men: but the Gouernour of the Iland, would neither come to speake with our Captaine, neither yet giue him any licence to traffike: and to displease vs the more, whereas wee had hired a Pilot, to haue gone with vs, they would neither suffer him to goe with vs, but also sent worde by a Caruell out of hand, to Santo Domingo, to the Uiceroy, who doth represent the Kings person, of our arriuall in those parts, which had like to haue turned vs to great displeasure, by the meanes that the same Uiceroy did send word to Capo de la Vela, and to other places along the coast, commanding them by the vertue of his authoritie, and the obedience that they owe to their Prince, no man should traffike with vs, but shoulde resiste vs with all the force they could. In this Iland, notwithstanding that we were not within foure leagues of the Towne, yet were they so afraid, that not onely the Gouernour himselfe, but also all the Inhabitants forsooke their Towne, assembling all the Indians to them, and fled into the mountaines, as we were partly certified, and also sawe the experience our selues, by some of the Indians comming to see vs, who by three Spaniards a horseback passing hard by vs, went vnto the Indians, hauing euery one of them their bowes, and arrowes, procuring them away, who before were conuersant with vs. Here perceauing no traffike to be had with them, nor yet water for the refreshing of our men, wee were driuen to depart the twentieth day, and the two and twentieth, we came to a place in the mayne, called Kenimnawo, whither the Captaine going in his pinnesse, spake with certaine Spaniards, of whome he demanded traffike, but they made him answere, they were but souldiers newly come thither, and were not able to buy one Negroe: whereupon he asked for a watring place, and they pointed him a place two leagues off, called Sancta Fee, where we found maruelous goodly watring, and commodious for the taking in thereof: for that the fresh water came into the Sea, and so our shippes had aboord the shoare 20. fathome water. Neere about this place, inhabited certaine Indians, who the next day after

The Testigos Iland.

Margarita Iland.

ter we came thither, came downe to vs, presenting mill & cakes of bread, which they had made of a kind of corne called Maise, in bignes of a peasle, the eare whereof is much like to a teasell, but a span in length, hauing thereon a number of graines. Also they brought downe to vs which we bought for beades, pewter whistles, glasses, knines, and other trifles, Hennes, Potatoes and pines. These Potatoes be the most delicate rootes that may bee eaten, and doe farre exceede their passeneps or carets. Their pines be of the bignesse of two fistes, the outside whereof, is of the making of a pine-apple, but it is soft like the rinde of a Coucomber, and the inside eateth like an apple, but it is more delicious then any sweete apple sugred. These Indians be of colour tawnie like an Oliue, hauing euery one of them both men and women, haire all blacke, and no other colour, the women wearing the same hanging downe to their shoulders, and the men rounded, and without beards, neither men nor women suffering any haire to growe in any part of their body, but daily puls it off as it groweth. They goe all naked, the men couering no part of their body but their yard, vpon the which they weare a gourd or piece of cane, made fast with a threed about his loines, leauing the other partes of their members vncouered, whereof they take no shame. The women also vncouered, sauing with a cloth which they weare a handbreadth, where with they couer their priuities both before and behind. These people be very small feeders, for trauelling, they carrie but two small bottels of gourdes, wherein they put in one the iuice of Sorrell whereof they haue great store, and in the other flowre of their Maise, which being moist, they eate, taking sometime of the other. These men carie euery man his bowe and arrowes, whereof some arrowes are poisoned for warres, which they keepe in a Cane together, which Cane is of the bignesse of a mans arme, other some with broad heades of iron wherewith they strike fishe in the water: the experience whereof we sawe not once nor twise, but daily for the time we taried there, for they are so good archers that the Spaniards for feare thereof arme themselues and their horses with quilted canuas of two inches thicke, and leaue no place of their bodie open to their enemies, sauing their eyes which they may not hide, and yet oftentimes are they hit in that so small a scantling: their poison is of such a force, that a man being stricken there with, dieth within foure and twentie howers, as the Spaniards doe affirme, and in my iudgement it is like there can bee no stronger poyson as they make it, vsing therevnto apples which are very faire and red of colour, but are a strong poison, with the which together with venemous Bats, Vipers, Adders and other serpents, they make a medley, and there with anoint the same.

The vse of Sorrell.

The making of their poison.

The Indian women delight not when they are yong in bearing of children, because it maketh them haue hanging breasts which they account to bee great deforming in them, and vpon that occasion while they bee yong, they destroy their seede, saying, that it is fittest for olde women. Moreouer, when they are deliuered of childe, they goe straight to washe themselues, without making any further ceremonie for it, not lying in bed as our women doe. The beds which they haue are made of Gossopine cotton, and wrought artificially of diuers colours, which they carie about with them when they trauell, and making the same fast to two trees, lie therein they and their women. The people bee surely gentle and tractable, and such as desire to liue peaceablie, or els had it bene vnpossible for the Spaniards to haue conquered them as they did, and the more to liue vnpeaceable, they being so many in number, and the Spaniards so few.

The manners of the yong women.

From hence we departed the eighe and twentie, and the next day we passed betweene the maine land and the Iland called Tortuga, a very lowe Iland, in the yeere of our Lord God one thousand fiue hundred sixtie fiue aforesaid, and sailed along the coast vntill the first of April, at which time the Captaine sayled along in the Iesus pinnace to discerne the coast, & saw many Caribes ashore, and some also in their Canowas, which made tokens vnto him of friendship, and shewed him golde, meaning thereby that they would traffique for wares. Whereupon hee staied to see the maners of them, and so for two or three trifles gaue such things as they had about them and departed: but the Caribes were very importunate to haue them come ashore, which if it had not bene for want of wares to traffique with them, he would not haue denied them, because the Indians we sawe before were very gentle people, and such as doe no man hurt. But as God would haue it, hee wanted that thing, which if hee had had, would haue bene his confusion: for these were no such kinde of people as wee tooke them to bee, but more diuelish a thousand partes, and are eaters and deuouters of any man they catche, as it was afterwardes declared vnto vs at Burboata, by a Caruell comming out of Spaine with certaine souldiours, and a captaine generall sent by the king for those East ward parts of the Indians, who sailing along in his pinnace as our Captaine did to descrie the coast, was by the Caribes called ashore with sundrie tokens made to him of friendshippe, and golde shewed as though they desired traffique, with the which the Spaniardes being mooued, suspecting no deceite at all, went ashore amongst them,

The Ile of Tortuga.

who was no sooner a shore, but with 4. or 5. more was taken, the rest of his company being vnaded by them, saued themselues by flight, but they that were taken, paied their ransome with their liues, and were presently eaten. And this is their practise to toll with their golde the ignorant to their snares: they are bloudsuckers both of Spaniards, Indians, and all that light in their laps, not sparing their owne countrymen if they can conueniently come by them. Their pollicie in fight with the Spaniards is marueious: for they choose for their refuge the mountaines and woods where the Spaniards with their horses cannot follow them, and if they fortune to bee met in the plaine where one horseman may ouerrunne 100. of them, they haue a deuise of late practised by them to pitch stakes of wood in the ground, and also small iron pikes to mischiefe their horses, wherein they shew themselues politike warriours. They haue more abundance of gold then all the Spaniards haue, and liue vpon the mountains where the Pines are in such number, that the Spaniards haue much adoe to get any of them from them, and yet sometimes by assembling a great number of them, which happeneth once in two yeeres, they get a piece from them, which afterwards they keepe sure inough.

The crueltie of the Caribes.

Thus hauing escaped the daunger of them, wee kept our course along the coast, and came the third of Aprill to a Towne called Burborata, where his ships came to an anker, and her himselfe went a shore to speake with the Spaniardes, to whom he declared himselfe to be an Englishman, and came thither to trade with them by the way of merchandize, and therefore required licence for the same. Vnto whom they made answere, that they were forbidden by the king to traffique with any forren nation, vpon penaltie to forfeit their goods, therfore they desired him not to molest them any further, but to depart as he came, for other comfort he might not looke for at their hands, because they were subiects & might not goe beyond the law. But he replied that his necessitie was such, he might not so doe: for being in one of the Queenes Armados of England, and hauing many souldiours in them, he had neede both of some refreshing for them, and of victuals, and of money also, without the which hee could not depart, and with much other talke perswaded them not to feare any dishonest part of his behalfe towards them, for neither would he commit any such thing to the dishonour of his prince, nor yet for his honest reputation and estimation, vnlesse hee were too rigorously delt withall, which hee hoped not to finde at their handes, in that it should as well redound to their profite, as his owne, and also hee thought they might doe it without daunger, because their princes were in amitie one with another, and for our partes wee had free traffique in Spaine and Flaunders, which are in his dominions, and therefore hee knew no reason why hee should not haue the like in all his dominions. To the which the Spaniardes made answere, that it laie not in them to giue any licence, for that they had a gouernour to whom the gouernment of those partes was committed, but if they would stay tenne dayes, they would send to their gouernour who was three score leagues off, and would returne answere within the space appointed, of his mind.

Burborata.

In the meane time they were contented he should bring his ships into harbour, and there they would deliuer him any victuals he would require. Whereupon, the fourth day we went in, where being one day and receiuing all things according to promise, the captaine aduised himselfe, that to remaine there tenne dayes idle, spending victuals and mens wages, and perhaps in the ende receiue no good answere from the gouernour, it were meere follie, and therefore determined to make request to haue licence for the sale of certaine leane and sicke Negroes which he had in his shippe like to die vpon his hands if he kept them ten dayes, hauing litle or no refreshing for them, whereas other men hauing them, they would bee recouered well inough. And this request hee was forced to make, because he had not otherwise wherewith to pay for victuals & for necessaries which he should take: which request being put in writing and presented, the officers and townedwellers assembled together, and finding his request so reasonable, graunted him licence for thirtie Negroes, which afterwardes they caused the officers to view, to the intent they should grant to nothing but that were very reasonable, for feare of answering thereunto afterwardes. This being past, our captaine according to their licence, thought to haue made sale, but the day past and none came to buy, who before made shewe that they had great neede of them, and therefore wist not what to surmise of them, whether they went about to prolong the time of the Gouernour his answere because they would keepe themselues blamelesse, or for any other pollicie hee knew not, and for that purpose sent them worde, marueiling what the matter was that none came to buie them. They answered, because they had graunted licence onely to the poore to buie those Negroes of small price, and their money was not so readie as other mens of more wealth. More then that, as soone as euer they sawe the shippes, they conueyed away their money by their wiues that went into the mountaines for feare, and were not yet returned, and yet asked two dayes to seeke their

their wiues and fetch their money. Notwithstanding, the next day diuers of them came to cheapen, but could not agree of price, because they thought the price to high. Whereupon the Captaine perceiuing they went about to bring downe the price, and meant to buie, and would not consent if hee had licence, that hee might sell at any reasonable rate, as they were worth in other places, did send for the Principals of the Towne, and made a shew hee would depart, declaring himselfe to be very sory that hee had so much troubled them, and also that hee had sent for the gouernour to come downe, seeing now his pretence was to depart, whereat they maruelled much, and asked him what cause mooued him thereunto, seeing by their working he was in possibilitie to haue his licence. To the which he replied that it was not onely a licence that he sought, but price, which hee perceiued was not there to be had, and therefore would seeke further, and withall shewed him his writings what he paied for his Negroes, declaring also the great charge he was at in his shipping, and mens wages, and therefore to counteruaile his charges, hee must sell his Negroes for a greater price then they offered. So they doubting his departure, put him in comfort to sell better there then in any other place. And if it fell out that hee had no licence, that hee should not loose his labour in tarying, for they would buie without licence. Whereupon, the captaine being put in comfort, promised them to stay, so that hee might make sale of his leane Negroes, which they graunted vnto. And the next day did sell some of them, who hauing bought and paied for them, thinking to haue had a discharge of the Customer for the custome of the Negroes, being the kings duetie, they gaue it away to the poore for Gods sake, and did refuse to giue the discharge in writing, and the poore not trusting their wordes, for feare, least hereafter it might bee demaunded of them, did refraine from buying any more, so that nothing els was done vntill the Gouernours comming downe, which was the fourteenth day, and then the Captaine made petition, declaring that hee was come thither in a shippe of the Queenes maiesties of England, being bound to Guinie, and thither driuen by winde and weather, so that being come thither, hee had neede of sundry necessaries for the reparation of the sayde Naule, and also great neede of money for the paiment of his Souldiours, vnto whom hee had promised paiment, and therefore although hee would, yet would not they depart without it, and for that purpose requested licence for the sale of certaine of his Negroes, declaring that although they were forbidden to traffique with straungers, yet for that there was a great amitie betweene their princes, and that the thing pertained to our Queenes highnesse, hee thought he might doe their prince great seruice, and that it would bee well taken at his handes, to doe it in this cause. The which allegations with diuers others put in request, were presented vnto the Gouernour, who sitting in counsell for that matter, granted vnto his request for licence. But yet there fell out another thing which was the abating of the kings custome, being vpon euery slaue 30. duckets, which would not be granted vnto.

Whereupon the captaine perceiuing that they would neither come neere his price hee looked by a great deale, nor yet would abate the kings custome of that they offered, so that either hee must bee a great looser by his wares, or els compell the officers to abate the same kings custome which was too vnreasonable, for to a higher price hee could not bring the buiers: Therefore the fifteenth of Aprill hee prepared one hundred men well armed with bowes, arrowes, harquebusses and pikes, with the which he marched to the towne wardes, and being perceiued by the Gouernour, hee straighe with all expedition sent messengers to know his request, desiring him to marche no further forward vntill hee had answere againe, which incontinent hee should haue. So our captaine declaring how vnreasonable a thing the kings custome was, requesting to haue the same abated, and to pay seuen and a halfe per centum, which is the ordinarie custome for wares thorough his dominions there, and vnto this if they would not graunt, he would displease them. And this worde being caried to the Gouernour, answere was returned that all things should bee to his content, and thereupon hee determined to depart, but the souldiours and mariners finding so litle credite in their promises, demaunded gages for the performance of the premisses, or els they would not depart. And thus they being constrained to send gages, we departed, beginning our traffique, and ending the same without disturbance.

An hundred Englishmen in armour.

Thus hauing made traffique in the harborough vntill the 28. our Captaine with his ships intended to goe out of the roade, and purposed to make shew of his departure, because now the common sort hauing imploied their money, the rich men were come to towne, who made no shew that they were come to buie, so that they went about to bring downe the price, and by this pollicie the captaine knew they would be made the more eger, for feare least we departed, and they should goe without any at all.

The nine and twentie we being at anker without the roade, a French shippe called the Greene

Dragon of Newhauen, whereof was captaine one Bon Temps came in, who saluted vs after the maner of the Sea, with certaine pieces of ordinaunce, and we resaluted him with the like againe: with whom hauing communication, he declared that he had bene at the Mine in Guinie, and was beaten off by the Portingals Gallies, and inforced to come thither to make sale of such wares as he had: and further that the like was happened vnto the Minion, besides the captaine, Dauit Carlet and a merchaunt, with a dozen mariners betrayed by the Negroes at their first arriuall thither, and remaining prisoners with the Portingals, besides other miseduentures of the losse of their men, happened thorough the great lacke of fresh water, with great doubts of bringing home the ships, which was most sorowfull for vs to vnderstand.

The reports of the mishaps of the Minion in Guinie.

May. Thus hauing ended our traffique here the 4. of May, wee departed, leauing the French man behind vs, the night before the which, the Caribes whereof I haue made mention before, being to the number of 200. came in their Canowas to Burborata, intending by night to haue burned the towne, and taken the Spaniards, who being more vigilant because of our being there, then their custome was, perceiuing them comming, raised the towne, who in a moment being a horsebacke, by meanes their custome is for all doubts to keepe their horses readie sadled, in the night fell vpon them, and tooke one, the rest making swift for themselues, escaped away. But this one, because hee was their guide, and was the occasion that diuers times they had made inuasion vpon them, had for his trauell a stake thrust thorough his fundement, and so out at his necke.

Horses kept ready sadled.

The first of May aforesayd, wee came to an Iland called Curasao, where wee had thought to haue ankred, but could not finde ground, and hauing let fall an anker with two cables, were faine to weie it againe, and the 7. sayling along the coast to seeke an harborow, and could finde none, came to an anker where wee rode open in the sea. In this place we had traffique for Hides, and found great refreshing both of beefe, mutton and lambes, whereof there was such plentie, that saluing the skinnes, we had the flesh giuen vs for nothing, the plentie whereof was so abundant, that the worst in the ship thought scorne not onely of mutton, but also of sodden lambe, which they disdained to eate vnrosted.

Exceeding plentie of cattell in Curasao

The increase of cattell in this Iland is maruellous, which from a dozen of each sort brought thither by the gouernour, in 25. yeeres had 100. thousand at the least, and of other cattell was able to kill without spoile of the increase, 15. hundred yeerely, which he killeth for the skinnes, and of the flesh saueth onely the tongues, the rest he leaueth to the foule to deuour. And this I am able to affirme, not onely vpon the Gouernours owne report, who was the first that brought the increase thither, and so remaineth vnto this day, but also by that I sawe my selfe in one field, where an hundred oxen lay one by another all whole, sauing the skinne and tongue taken away, and it is not so maruelous a thing why they doe thus cast away the flesh in all the Islands of the West Indies, seeing the land is great, and more then they are able to inhabite, the people fewe, hauing delicate fruits and meates inough besides to feede vpon, which they rather desire, and the increase which passeth mans reason to beleeue, when they come to a great number: for in S. Domingo an Iland called by the finders thereof, Hispaniola, is so great quantitie of cattell, and such increase thereof, that notwithstanding the daily killing of them for their hides, it is not able to asswage the number of them, but they are deuoured by wild dogs, whose number is such by suffering them first to range the woods and mountains, that they eate and destroy 60000. a yeere, and yet small lacke found of them. And no maruell, for the said Iland is almost as big as all England, and being the first place that was found of all the Indies, and of long time inhabited before the rest, and therefore it ought of reason to be most populous, and to this hower the Viceroy and counsell roiall, abideth there as in the chiefest place of all the Indies to prescribe orders to the rest for the kings behalfe, yet haue they but one citie and 13. villages in all the same Iland, whereby the spoile of them in respect of the increase is nothing.

The 15. of the foresaid moneth we departed from Curasao, being not a little to the reioycing of our captaine and vs, that we had there ended our traffique, for notwithstanding our sweete meat, we had sower sauce, for by reason of our riding so open at sea, what with blasts whereby our ankers being a ground, three at once came home, and also with contrary windes blowing, whereby for feare of the shore we were faine to hale off to haue anker hold, sometimes a whole day and a night turning vp and downe, and this happened not once, but halfe a dozen times in the space of our being there.

The 16. wee passed by an Iland called Aruba, and the 17. at night, ankred 6. bowers at the West end of Cabo de La vela, and in the morning being the 18. weied againe, keeping our course, in the which time the captaine sailing by the shore in the pinnace, came to the Rancharia, a place where the Spaniards vse to fish for pearles, and there spoke with a Spaniard, who told him how

farre

farre off he was from Rio de la Hacha, which because he would not ouershoote, ankered that night againe, and the 19. came thither, where hauing talke with the kings treasurer of the Indies resident there, declared his quiet traffique in Burboroata, and shewed a certificate of the same, made by the gouernour thereof, and therefore he desired to haue the like there also: but the treasurer made answere that they were forbidden by the Uiceroy and counsell of S. Domingo, who hauing intelligence of our being on the coast, did send expresse commission to resist vs, with all the force they could, insomuch that they durst not traffique with vs in no case, alleaging that if they did, they should loose all that they did traffique for, besides their bodies at the magistrates commaundement. Our captaine replied, that hee was in an Armado of the Queenes maiesties of England, and sent about other her affaires, but driuen besides his pretended voiage, was inforced by contrary windes to come into those partes, where he hoped to find such friendship as hee should doe in Spaine, to the contrary wherof he knew no reason, in that there was amitie betwixt their princes. But seeing they would contrary to all reason goe about to withstand his traffique, he would it should not be said by him, that hauing the force he hath, to be driuen from his traffique perforce, but he would rather put it in aduenture to trie whether he or they should haue the better, and therefore willed them to determine either to giue him licence to trade, or els to stand to their owne harmes: So vpon this it was determined hee should haue licence to trade, but they would giue him such a price as was the one halfe lesse then he had sold for before, and thus they sent word they would do, and none otherwise, & if it liked him not, he might do what he would, for they were not determined to deale otherwise with him. Wherupon, the captaine waying their vnconscionable request, wrote to them a letter, that they delt too rigorously with him, to goe about to cut his throte in the price of his commodities, which were so reasonablie rated, as they could not by a great deale haue the like at any other mans hands. But seeing they had sent him this to his supper, hee would in the morning bring them as good a breakefast. And therefore in the morning being the 21. of May, he shot of a whole Culuering to summon the towne, and preparing one hundred men in armour, went a shore, hauing in his great boate two Faulcons of brasse, and in the other boates double bases in their noses, which being perceiued by the Townesmen, they incontinent in battell araie with their drumme and ensigne displayed, marched from the Towne to the sands, of footemen to the number of an hundred and fiftie, making great bragges with their cries, and weauing vs a shore, whereby they made a semblant to haue fought with vs in deede. But our Captaine perceiuing them so bragge, commaunded the two Faulcons to bee discharged at them, which put them in no small feare to see, as they afterward declared, such great pieces in a boate. At euery shotte they fell flat to the ground, and as we approched neere vnto them, they broke their araie, and dispersed themselues so much for feare of the ordinaunce, that at last they went all away with their ensigne. The horsemen also being about thirtie, made as braue a shew as might be, coursing vp and downe with their horses, their braue white leather Targets in the one hand, and their Iauelings in the other, as though they would haue receiued vs at our landing. But when we landed, they gaue ground, and consulted what they should doe, for litle they thought wee would haue landed so boldly: and therefore as the Captaine was putting his men in aray, and marched forward to haue encountred with them, they sent a messenger on horsebacke with a flagge of truce to the Captaine, who declared that the treasurer maruelled what hee ment to doe to come a shore in that order, in consideration that they had graunted to euery reasonable request that hee did demaund: but the Captaine not well contented with this messenger, marched forwardes. The messenger praied him to stay his men, and said, if hee would come apart from his men, the treasurer would come and speake with him, whereunto he did agree to common together. The captaine onely with his armour without weapon, and the treasurer on horseback with his iaueling, was afraid to come neere him for feare of his armour, which he said was worse then his weapon, and so keeping aloofe communing together, granted in fine to all his requests. Which being declared by the captaine to the company, they desired to haue pledges for the performance of all things, doubting that otherwise when they had made themselues stronger, they would haue bene at defiance with vs: and seeing that now they might haue what they would request, they iudged it to be more wisedome to be in assurance then to be forced to make any more labours about it. So vpon this, gages were sent, and we made our traffique quietly with them. In ỹ meane time while we staied here, we watred a good breach off from the shore, where by the strẽgth of the fresh water running into the sea, the salt water was made fresh. In this riuer we saw many crocodils of sundry bignesses, but some as big as a boat, with 4. feet, a long broad mouth, & a long taile, whose skin is so hard, that a sword will not pierce it. His nature is to liue out of the water as a frog doth, but he is a great deuourer, & spareth neither fish, which is his cõmon food, nor beasts, nor men, if he take thẽ, as the proofe thereof was knowen

M. Hawkins his letter to the treasurer of Rio de la Hacha.

by a Negroe, who as he was filling water in the riuer was by one of them caried cleane away, and neuer seene after. His nature is euer when he would haue his praie, to crie, and sobbe like a christian bodie, to prouoke them to come to him, and then hee snatcheth at them, and thereupon came this prouerbe that is applied vnto women when they weepe, Lachrymæ Crocodili, the meaning whereof is, that as the Crocadile when he crieth, goeth then about most to deceiue, so doth a woman most commonly when she weepeth. Of these the master of the Iesus watched one and by the bankes side stroke him with a pike of a bill in the side, and after 3. or 4. times turning in sight, he sunke downe, & was not afterward seene. In the time of our being in the riuers of Guinie, we saw many of a monstrous bignes, amongst the which the captaine being in one of the barks comming downe the same, shot a faulcon at one, which very narowly he missed, and with a feare plunged into the water, making a streame like the way of a boate.

Now while we were here, whether it were of a feare that the Spaniards doubted wee would haue done them some harme before wee departed, or for any treason that they pretended towardes vs, I am not able to say, but then came thither a captaine from some of the other townes, with a doozen souldiers, who vpon a time that our captaine and the treasurer cleared all things betweene them, and were in a communication of a debt of the gouernours of Burboroata, which was to be paied by the said treasurer, who would not answere the same by any meanes. Certaine words of displeasure passed betwixt the captaine and him, and parting the one from the other, the treasurer possibly doubting that our captaine would perforce haue sought the same, did immediately commaund his men in armour both horsemen and footemen: but because the captaine was in the Riuer on the backe side of the towne with his other boates, and all his men vnarmed and without weapons, it was to be iudged he ment him litle good, hauing that aduantage of him, that comming vpon the sudden, he might haue mischieued many of his men, but the captaine hauing vnderstanding thereof, not trusting to their gentlenesse, if they might haue the aduauntage, departed aboord his ships, and at night returned againe, & demanded amongst other talke, what they ment by assembling their men in that order, and they answered, that their captaine being come to towne did muster his men according to his accustomed maner. But it is to bee iudged to bee a cloake, in that comming for ꝑ purpose he might haue done it sooner, but the trueth is, they were not of force vntill then, whereby to enterprise any matter against vs, by meanes of pikes and harquebusses, whereof they haue want, and were now furnished by our captaine, and also 3. faulcons, which hauing got in other places, they had secretly conueied thither, which made them the bolder, and also for that they saw now a conuenient place to do such a feat, and time also seruing thereunto, by the meanes that our men were not only vnarmed and vnprouided, as at no time before the like, but also were occupied in hewing of wood, & least thinking of any harme: these were occasions to prouoke them thereunto. And I suppose they went about to bring it to effect, in that * I with another gentleman being in the towne, thinking of no harme towards vs, and seeing men assembling in armour to the treasurers house, whereof I maruelled, and reuoking to minde the former talke betweene the captaine and him, and the vnreadinesse of our men, of whom aduauntage might haue bene taken, departed out of the Towne immediately to giue knowledge thereof, but before wee came to our men by a flight shot, two horsemen riding a gallop were come neere vs, being sent, as we did gesse, to stay vs least we should carie newes to our captaine, but seeing vs so neere our men staied their horses, comming together, and suffering vs to passe, belike because we were so neere, that if they had gone about the same, they had bene espied by some of our men which then immediately would haue departed, whereby they should haue bene frustrate of their pretence: and so the two horsemen ridde about the bushes to espie what wee did, and seeing vs gone, to the intent they might shadow their comming downe in post, whereof suspicion might be had, fained a simple excuse in asking whether he could sell any wine, but that seemed so simple to the captaine, that standing in doubt of their curtesie, hee returned in the morning with his 3. boates, appointed with bases in their noses, and his men with weapons accordingly, where as before he caried none: and thus dissembling all iniuries conceiued of both partes, the captaine went a shore, leauing pledges in the boates for himselfe, & cleared all things betweene the treasurer and him, sauing for the gouernors debt, which the one by no means would answere, nor the other, because it was no his due debt, he would not molest him for it, but was content to remit it vntill another time, & therefore departed, causing the two barkes which rode neere the shore to weie and goe vnder saile, which was dont to the intent that captaine demaunding a testimoniall of his good behauiour there, could not haue the same vntill he were vnder the saile readie to depart, and therefore at night went for the same againe, and receiued it at the treasurers hand, of whom very curteously he tooke his leaue, and departed shooting of the bases of his boate for his farewell, and the townesmen also shot off

The author of this Storie.

fourt

foure faulcons and thirtie harquebusses, and this was the first time that we knew of the conueyance of theyr faulcons.

The 31 of May we departed, keeping our course to Hispaniola, and the fourth of June wee had sight of an Iland, which we made to be Iamaica, marueiling that by the vehement course of the seas we should be driuen so farre to leeward: for setting our course to the West end of Hispaniola we fell with the middle of Iamaica, notwithstanding that to all mens sight it shewed a head land, but they were all deceiued by the clouds that lay vpon the land two dayes together, in such sort that we thought it to be the head land of the said Iland. And a Spanyard being in the ship, who was a merchant, and inhabitant in Iamaica, hauing occasion to go to Guinie, and being by treason taken of the Negroes, & afterwards bought by the Tangomangoes, was by our captaine brought from thence, and had his passage to go into his countrey, who perceiuing the land, made as though he knew euery place therof, and pointed to certaine places, which he named to be such a place, and such a mans ground, and that behinde such a point was the harborow, but in the end he pointed so from one point to another, that we were a leeboord of all places, & found our selues at the West end of Iamaica before we were aware of it, and being once to leeward, there was no getting vp againe, so that by trusting of the Spanyards knowledge, our captaine sought not to speake with any of the inhabitãts, which if he had not made himselfe sure of, he would haue done, as his custom was in other places: but this man was a plague not onely to our captaine, who made him loose, by ouershooting the place, two thousand pounds by hides, which he might haue gotten, but also to himselfe, who being three yeeres out of his countrey, and in great misery in Guinie, both among the Negroes and Tangomangoes, and in hope to come to his wife and friends, as he made sure account, in that at his going in to the pinnesse, when he went a shoare he put on his new clothes, and for ioy flung away his olde, could not afterwards finde any habitation, neither there nor in all Cuba, which we sayled all along, but it fell out euer, by one occasion or other, that we were put beside the same, so that he was layne to be brought into England, and it happened to him as it did to a Duke of Samaria, when the Israelites were besieged, and were in great misery with hunger, and being tolde by the Prophet Elizæus, that a bushell of flower should be solde for a sickle, would not beleeue him, but thought it impossible: and for that cause Elizæus prophesied he should see the same done, but he should not eate thereof: so this man being absent three yeeres, and not euer thinking to haue seene his owne countrey, did see the same, went vpon it, and yet was it not his fortune to come to it, or to any habitation, whereby to remayne with his friendes according to his desire.

Thus hauing sailed along the coast two dayes, we departed the seuenth of June, being made to beleeue by the Spanyard, that it was not Iamaica, but rather Hispaniola, of which opinion the captaine also was, because that which he made Iamaica seemed to be but a piece of the land, and thereby tooke it rather to be Hispaniola, by the lying of the coast, and also for that being ignorant of the force of the currant, he could not beleeue he was so farre driuen to leeward, and therefore setting his course to Iamaica, and after certaine dayes, not finding the same, perceiued then certainly that the Iland which he was at before, was Iamaica, and that the clouds did deceiue him, wherof he marueiled not a little: and this mistaking of the place came to as ill a passe as the ouershooting of Iamaica: for by this did he also ouerpasse a place in Cuba, called Santa Cruz, where, as hee was informed, was great store of hides to be had: and thus being disappointed of two of his ports, where he thought to haue sailed great profit by his traffike, and also to haue found great refreshing of victuailes and water for his men, was now disappointed greatly, and such want he had of fresh water, that he was forced to seeke the shoare to obtaine the same, which he had sight of after certaine dayes ouerpassed with stormes and contrary windes, but yet not of the maine of Cuba, but of certaine Ilands, in number two hundred, wherof the most part was desolate of inhabitants: by the which Ilands the captaine passing in his pinnesse, could finde no fresh water vntill he came to an Iland bigger then all the rest, called the Isle of Pinas, where we ankered with our shippes the sixteenth of June, and found water, which although it were neither so toothsome as running water, by the meanes it is standing, and but the water of raine, and also being neere the sea was brackish, yet did we not refuse it, but were more glad therof, as the time then required, then we should haue beene another time with fine conduct water. Thus being reasonably watred we were desirous to depart, because the place was not very conuenient for such shippes of charge as they were, because there were many shoales leeward, and also lay open to the sea for any winde that should blowe, and therefore the captaine made the more haste away, which was not vnneedfull: for little sooner were there ankers weyed, and foresayle set, but there arose such a storme, that they had not much to spare for doubling out of the shoales: for one of the barks not being fully ready as the rest

June.

The deceitfull force of the currant.

Two hundred Ilands for the most part not inhabited.

was

was faine for haste to cutte the cable in the hawse, and loose both anker and cable to saue her selfe.

The cape of S. Anthony in Cuba.

Thus the seuenteenth of June we departed and the twentith fell with the West end of Cuba, called Cape S. Anthony, where for the space of three dayes, we doubled along till we came beyond the shoales, which are 20 leagues beyond S. Anthony. And the ordinary brise taking vs, which is the Northeast winde, put vs the 24 from the shoare, and therfore we went to the Northwest to fetch winde, and also to the coast of Florida to haue the helpe of the currant, which was iudged to haue set to the Eastward: so the 29 wee found our selues in 27 degrees, and in the soundings of Florida, where we kept our selues the space of foure dayes, sailing along the coast as neere as we could, in teene or twelue fathome water, hauing all the while no sight of land.

Florida.

July. The iles of Tortugas. Great store of birds.

The fift of July we had sight of certaine Ilandes of sand, called the Tortugas (which is lowe land) where the captaine went in with his pinnesse, and found such a number of birds, that in halfe an houre he laded her with them, and if they had beene tenne boats more, they might haue done the like. These Ilandes beare the name of Tortels because of the number of them, which there doe breed, whose nature is to liue both in the water and vpon land also, but breed onely vpon the shoare, in making a great pit wherein they lay egges to the number of three or foure hundred, and couering them with sand, are hatched by the heat of the sunne, and by this meanes commeth the great increase. Of these we tooke very great ones, which haue both backe and belly all of bone of the thickenesse of an inch, the fish whereof we proued, eating much like veale, and finding a number of egges in them, called also of them, but they did eate very swelly. Heere we ankered sixe houres, and then springing a fayre gale of winde, we weyed anker, and made saile to ward Cuba, whither we came the sixt day, and weathered as farre as the Table, being a hill so called, because of the forme thereof: heere we lay off and on all night, to keepe that wee had gotten to windeward, intending to haue watered in the morning, if we could haue done it, or els if the winde had come larger, to haue plyed to windeward to the Hauana, which is a harborow whereunto all the fleet of the Spanyards come, and doe there tarry to haue one the company of another. This hill we thinking to haue bene the Table, made account (as it was in deed) the Hauana, to be but eight leagues to windeward, but by the persuasion of a French man, who made the captaine beleeue hee knew the Table very well, and had beene at the Hauana, said that it was not the Table, and that the Table was much higher, and neerer to the sea side, and that there was no plaine ground to the Eastward, nor hilles to the Westward, but all was contrary, and that behinde the hilles to the Westward was the Hauana: to which persuasion credit being giuen by some, and they not of the worst, the captaine was persuaded to go to leeward, and so sailed along the seuenth and eight dayes, finding no habitation, nor no other Table, and then perceiuing his folly to giue eare to such praters, was not a little sorry, both because he did consider what time he should spend ere he could get so farre to windeward againe, which would haue bene with the weathering which we had 10 or 12 dayes worke, and what it would haue beene longer he knew not, and that (which was worst) he had not aboue a dayes water, and therefore knew not what shift to make: but in fine, because the want was such, that his men could not liue with it, he determined to seeke water, and to go further to leeward, to a place (as it is set in the card) called Rio de los porcos, which he was in doubt of both whether it were inhabited, and whether there were water or not, and whether for the shoales he might haue such accesse with his shippes that he might conueniently take in the same: and while we were in these troubles, and kept our way to the place aforesaid, almighty God our guide (who would not suffer vs to ruine into any further danger, which we had beene like to haue incurred, if we had ranged the coast of Florida along as we did before, which is so dangerous (by reports) that no shippe escapeth which commeth thither, as the Spanyards haue very well proued the same) sent vs the eight day at night a fayre Westerly winde, whereupon the captaine and company consulted, determining not to refuse Gods gift, but euery man was contented to pinch his owne belie whatsoeuer had happened, and taking the sayd winde, the ninth day of July got to the Table, and sailing the same night, vnawares ouershot the Hauana, at the which place we thought to haue watered, but the next day, not knowing that we had ouershot the same, sailed along the coast, seeking it, and the eleuenth day in the morning, by certaine knowen markes, we vnderstood that we had ouershotte it twentie leagues: in which coast ranging, we found no conuenient watering place, whereby there was no remedy but to dissemble, and to water vpon the coast of Florida: for, to go further to the Eastward, we could not for the shoales, which are very dangerous, and because the currant shooteth to the Northeast, we doubted by the force therof to be set vpon them, and therfore durst not approch them: so making but reasonable way the day aforesaid, & all night: the 12 day in the morning, we fell with the Ilands vpon the cape of Florida, which we could scant double by the

A hill called the Table.

The port of Hauana.

meanes

meanes that fearing the shoales to the Eastwards, and doubting the currant comming out of the West, which was not of that force we made account of, for we felt little or none till we fell with the cape, and then felt such a currant, that bearing all sailes against the same, yet were driuen backe againe a great pace: the experience whereof we had by the Iesus pinnesse, and the Sallomons boate, which were sent the same day in the afternoone, while the shippes were becalmed, to see if they could finde any water vpon the Ilands aforesayd, who spent a great part of the day in rowing thither, being further off then they deemed it to be, and in the meane time a fayre gale of winde springing at sea, the shippes departed, making a signe to them to come away, who although they saw them depart, because they were so neere the shoare would not loose all the labour they had taken, but determined to keepe their way, and see if there were any water to be had, making no account but to finde the shippes well enough: but they spent so much time in filling the water which they had founde, that the night was come before they coulde make an end, and hauing lost the sight of the shippes, rowed what they could, but were wholly ignorant which way they should seeke them againe, as in deede there was a more doubt then they knew of. For when they departed, the shippes were in no currant, and sayling but a mile further, founde one so strong, that bearing all sailes, it coulde not preuaile against the same, but were driuen backe: whereupon the captaine sent the Sallomon, with the other two barkes, to beare neere the shoare all night, because the currant was lesse there a great deale, and to beare light with shooting off a piece now and then, to the intent the boates might better knowe how to come to them. The state of the currant of Florida.

The Iesus also bare a light in her toppe gallant, and shot off a piece also now and then, but the night passed and the morning was come, being the thirteenth day, and no newes could be heard of them, but the shippes and barkes forlooke not, but to looke still for them, yet they thought it was all in vaine, by the meanes they heard not of them all the night past, and therefore determined to tarry no longer, seeking for them till noone, and if they heard no newes, then they would depart to the Iesus, who perforce (by the vehemency of the currant) was carryed almost out of sight, but as God would haue it, now time being come, and they hauing tacked about in the pinnesses top, had sight of them, and tooke them vp: they in the boates, being to the number of one and twentie, hauing sight of the shippes, and seeing them tacking about, whereas before at the first sight of them did greatly reioyce, were now in a greater perplexitie then euer they were: for by this they thought themselues vtterly forsaken, whereas before they were in some hope to haue found them. Truely God wrought maruellously for them, for they themselues hauing no victualles but water, and being sore oppressed with hunger, were not of opinion to bestowe any further time in seeking the shippes then that present noone time: so that if they had not at that instant espyed them, they had gone to the shoare to haue made prouision for victualles, and with such thinges as they could haue gotten, either to haue gone for that part of Florida, where the French men are (which would haue beene very hard for them to haue done, because they wanted victualles to bring them thither, being one hundred and twentie leagues off) or els to haue remayned amongest the Floridians, at whose handes they were put in comfort by a French man, who was with them, that had remayned in Florida at the first finding thereof, a whole yeere together, to receiue victualles sufficient, and gentle intertainement, if neede were, for a yeere or two, vntill which time God might haue prouided for them. But how contrary this would haue fallen out to their expectations, it is hard to iudge, seeing those people of the cape of Florida, are of more sauage and fierce nature, and more valiant then any of the rest, which the Spanyardes well prooued, who being fiue hundred men, who intended there to land, returned few or none of them, but were inforced to forsake the same, and of their cruelty mention is made in the booke of the Decades, of a fryer, who taking vpon him to perswade the people to subiection, was by them taken with his skinne cruelly pulled ouer his eares, and his flesh eaten.

In these Ilandes they being a shoare, founde a dead man dried in a maner whole, with other heads and bodyes of men, so that those sorts of men are eaters of the flesh of men, as well as the Canibals. But to returne to our purpose.

The fourteenth day the shippe and barks came to the Iesus, bringing them newes of the recouery of the men, which was not a little to the reioycing of the captaine, and the whole company: and so then altogether they kept on their way along the coast of Florida, and the fifteenth day came to an anker, and so from sixe and twenty degrees to thirtie degrees & halfe, where the French men are, ranging all the coast along, seeking for fresh water, ankering euery night, because we woulde ouershoote no place of fresh water, and in the day time the captaine in the shippes pinnesse sayled along the shoare, went into euery creeke, speaking with diuers of the Floridians, because he would vnderstand where the French men inhabited, and not finding them in eight and twentie degrees M. Hawkins ranged all the coast of Florida.

as

as it was declared vnto him, maruelled thereat, and neuer left sailing along the coast till he found them, who inhabited in a riuer, by them called the riuer of May, and standeth in thirtie degrees and better. In ranging this coast along, the captaine found it to be all an Island, and therefore it is all lowe land, and very scant of fresh water, but the countrey was maruellously sweet, with both marish and medow ground, and goodly woods among. There they found Sorrell to growe as abundantly as grasse, and where their houses were, great store of mayes and mill, and grapes of great bignesse, but of taste much like our English grapes. Also Deere great plenty, which came vpon the sands before them. Their houses are not many together, for in one house a hundred of them do lodge: they being made much like a great barne, and in strength not inferiour to ours, for it hath stanchions and rafters of whole trees, and couered with Palmito leaues, hauing no place diuided, but one small roome for their King and Queene. In the middest of this house is a hearth where they make great fyers all night, and vpon certaine pieces of wood hewen in for the bowing of their backes, and another place made high for their heads, they lye vpon the same, which they put one by another all along the walles on both sides. In their houses they remaine onely in the nights, and in the day they desire the fieldes, where they dresse their meat, and make prouision for victualles, which they prouide onely for a meale from hand to mouth. There is one thing to be maruelled at, for the making of their fire, and not onely they but also the Negroes doe the same, which is made onely by two stickes, rubbing them one against another: and this they may doe in any place they come, where they finde sticks sufficient for the purpose. In their apparell the men onely vse deere skinnes, wherewith some only couer their priuy members, other some vse the same as garments to couer them before and behinde, which skinnes are painted, some yellow & red, some blacke and russet, and euery man according to his owne fancy. They do not omit to paint their bodies also with curious knots, or antike worke, as euery man in his owne fancy deuiseth, which painting, to haue it to continue the better, they vse with a thorne to pricke their flesh, and dent in the same, whereby the painting may haue better holde. In their warres they vse a slighter couler of painting their faces, therby to make themselues shew the more fierce: which after their warres ended they wash away againe. In their warres they vse bowes and arrowes, whereof their bowes are made of a kinde of Yew, but blacker then ours, but many passing the strength of the Negroes or Indians, for it is not greatly inferior to ours, their arrowes also of a great length, but yet of reeds like other Indians, but varying in two points both for length, and also for nocks and fethers, which the other lacke, whereby they shoot very steddy: the heads of the same are vipers teeth, bones of fishes, flint stones, piked points of kniues, which hauing gotten of the French men, broke the same, and put the points of them in their arrowes heads: some of them haue their heads of siluer, other some that haue want of these, put in a kinde of hard wood, notched, which pearceth as farre as any of the rest. In their fight, being in the woods, they vse a maruellous pollicie for their owne safegard, which is by clasping a tree in their armes, and yet shooting notwithstanding: this pollicy they vsed with the French men in their fight, whereby it appeareth that they are people of some pollicy: and although they are called by the Spanyards Gente triste, that is to say, Bad people, meaning therby, that they are not men of capacity: yet haue the French men found them so witty in their answers, that by the captaines owne report, a councellour with vs could not giue a more profound reason.

The riuer of May.

Florida found to be cut in Islands.

Sorrell.

The commodities of Florida.

The houses of Florida.

The maner of kindling of fire in Florida.

The women also in their apparell vse painted skinnes, but most of them gownes of mosse, somewhat longer then our mosse, which they sowe together artificially, & make the same surplewise, wearing their haire downe to their shoulders, like the Indians. In this riuer of May aforesaid, the captaine entring with his pinnesse, found a French ship of fourescore tunne, and two pinnesses of fifteene tunne a piece, by her, and speaking with the keepers thereof, they tolde him of a fort two leagues vp, which they had built, in which their captaine Mounsieur Laudonier was, with certaine souldiers therin. To whom our captaine sending to vnderstand of a watring place, where he might conueniently take it in, and to haue licence for the same, he straight because there was no conuenient place but vp the riuer fiue leagues, where the water was fresh, did send him a pilot for the more expedition thereof, to bring in one of his barkes, which going in with other boats prouided for the same purpose, ankered before the fort, into the which our captaine went, where he was by the general, with other captaines and souldiers, very gently intertained, and declared vnto him the time of their being there, which was 14 months, with the extremity they were driuen to for want of victuals, hauing brought very little with them, in which place they being 200 men at their first comming, had in short space eaten al the mayes they could buy of the inhabitants about them & therfore were driuen certeine of thē to serue a king of the Floridians against other his enemies for mill, and other victualles, which hauing gotten, could not serue them, being so many so long a time, but

The French fort.

Mounsieur Laudonier.

but want came vpon them in such sort, that they were faine to gather acorns, which being stamped small, and often washed to take away the bitternesse of them, did vse the same for bread, eating withall sundry times roots, whereof they found many good and wholesome, and such as serue rather for medicines then for meates alone. But this hardnesse not contenting some of them, who would not take the paynes so much as to fish in the riuer before their doores, but would haue all things put in their mouthes, did rebell against the captaine, taking away first his armour, & afterward imprisoning him: and so to the number of fourescore of them, departed with a barke and a pinnesse, spoyling their store of victuall, and taking away a great part therof with them, and so went to the Islands of Hispaniola & Iamaica a rouing, where they spoiled, and pilled the Spaniardes, and hauing taken two caruels laden with wine and Casaua, which is a bread made of roots, and much other victualles and treasure, had not the grace to depart therewith, but were of such hautie stomacks, that they thought their force to be such that no man durst meddle with them, and so kept harborough in Iamaica, going daily a shoare at their pleasure. But God which would not suffer such euill doers vnpunished, did indurate their hearts in such sort, that they lingered the time so long, that a shippe and galeasse being made out of S. Domingoes, came thither into the harborough, and tooke twentie of them, wherof the most part were hanged, and the rest carried into Spayne, and some (to the number of fiue and twentie) escaped in the pinnesse, and came to Florida, where at their landing they were put in prison, and incontinent foure of the chiefest being condemned, at the request of the souldiours, did passe the harquebussers, and then were hanged vpon a gibbet. This lacke of threescore men was a great discourage & weakning to the rest, for they were of the best souldiors that they had: and whereas they had now made the inhabitants weary of them by their dayly craning of mayis hauing no wares left to content them withall, and therefore inforced to robbe them, and to take away their victuall perforce, was the occasion that the Floridians (not well contented therewith) did take certaine of their company in the woods, and slew them, whereby there grew great warres betwixt them and the French men, and therefore they being but a few in number durst not venture abroad, but at such time as they were inforced thereunto for want of food to do the same: and going twentie harquebussers in a company, were set vpon by eighteene kings, hauing seuen or eight hundred men, which with one of their bowes slew one of their men, and hurt a dozen, and droue them all downe to their boats, whose policy in fight was to be maruelled at: for hauing shot at diuers of their bodies which were armed, and perceiuing that their arrowes did not preuaile against the same, they shot at their faces & legs, which were the places that the French men were hurt in. Thus the French men returned, being in ill case by the hurt of their men, hauing not aboue forty souldiors left vnhurt, whereby they might ill make any more inuasions vpon the Floridians, and keepe their fort withall: which they must haue beene driuen vnto, had not God sent vs thither for their succour, for they had not aboue ten dayes victuall left before we came. In which perplexity our captaine seeing them, spared them out of his ship twenty barrels of meale, and foure pipes of beanes, with diuers other victuals and necessaries which he might conueniently spare: and to helpe them the better homewards whither they were bound before our comming, at their request we spared them one of our barks of fifty tunnes. Notwithstanding the great want that the French men had, the ground doth yeeld victuals sufficient, if they would haue taken paines to get the same, but they being souldiors, desired to liue by the sweat of other mens browes: for while they had peace with ỹ Floridians, they had fish sufficient, by weares which they made to catch the same: but when they grew to warres, the Floridians tooke away the same againe, and then would not the French men take the paines to make any more. The ground yeldeth naturally grapes in great store, for in the time that the French men were there, they made twenty hogsheads of wine. Also it yeldeth roots passing good, deere maruellous store, with diuers other beasts, and fowle, seruiceable to the vse of man. These be things where with a man might liue, hauing corne or mayis wherwith to make bread: for mayis maketh good sauory bread, and cakes as fine as flower. Also it maketh good meale beaten and sodden with water and eateth like pappe wherwith we feed children. It maketh also good beuerage sodden in water, and nourishable: which the French men did vse to drinke of in the morning, and it alluaged their thirst, so that they had no need to drinke all the day after. And this mayis was the greatest lacke they had, because they had no labourers to sowe the same, and therefore to them that should inhabit the land it were requisite to haue labourers to till and sowe the ground. For they hauing victuals of their owne, whereby they neither rob nor spoile the inhabitants, may liue not onely quietly with them, who naturally are more desirous of peace then of warres, but also shall haue abundance of victuals proffered them for nothing: for it is with them as it is with one of vs, when we see another man euer taking away from vs, although we haue enough besides, yet then we thinke all to little for our selues: for surely we haue heard the French men

Bread made of acorns.

The occasion of the falling out with the Floridians.

The French greatly relieued by M. Hawkins.

Twentie hogsheads of wine made in Florida, like to the wine of Orleance.

Labourers necessarie to inhabit new countries.

men repoꝛt, and I know it by the Indians that a very little contenteth them: foꝛ the Indians with the head of mapis roasted, will trauel a whole day, and when they are at the Spanyards finding, they giue them nothing but sodden herbs and mapis, & in this oꝛder I saw threescoꝛe of them fed, who were laden with wares, and came fiftie leagues off. The Floridians when they trauell haue a kinde of herbe dryed, which with a cane, and an earthen cup in the end, with fire, and the dried herbs put together, do sucke thoꝛow the cane the smoke thereof, which smoke satisfieth their hunger, and therewith they liue foure oꝛ fiue dayes without meat oꝛ drinke, and this all the French men vsed foꝛ this purpose: yet do they holde opinion withall, that it causeth water and fleame to void from their stomacks. The commodities of this land are moꝛe then are yet know̄e to any man: foꝛ besides the land it selfe, whereof there is moꝛe then any king Christian is able to inhabit, it flourisheth with medow, pasture ground, with woods of Cedar and Cypres, and other soꝛts, as better can not be in the woꝛld: they haue foꝛ apothicary herbes, trees, roots and gumme great stoꝛe, as Storax liquida, Turpintine, Gumme, Myrre and Frankinsence, with many others, wheroꝛ I know not the names. Coulers both red, blacke, yellow, and russet, very perfect, wherewith they paint their bodies, and deere skinnes which they weare about them, that with water it neither fadeth away, noꝛ altereth couler. Golde and siluer they want not: foꝛ at the French mens first comming thither, they had the same offered them foꝛ little oꝛ nothing: foꝛ they receiued foꝛ a hatchet two pound weight of golde, because they knew not the estimation thereof: but the souldiours being greedy of the same, did take it from them, giuing them nothing foꝛ it: the which they perceiuing, that both the French men did greatly esteeme it, and also did rigoꝛously deale with them, by taking the same away from them, at last would not be know̄en they had any moꝛe, neither durst they weare the same foꝛ feare of being taken away: so that sauing at their first comming, they could get none of them: and how they came by this golde and siluer, the French men know not as yet, but by gesse, who hauing trauelled to the South west of the cape, hauing found the same dangerous, by meanes of sundry banks, as we also haue found the same, and there finding masts which were wracks of Spanyards comming from Mexico, iudged that they had gotten treasure by them. Foꝛ it is most true that diuers wracks haue beene made of Spanyards, hauing much treasure. Foꝛ the French men hauing trauelled to the capeward a hundred and fiftie miles, did finde two Spanyards with the Floridians, which they brought afterward to theyꝛ foꝛt, wheroꝛ one being in a Caruell, comming from the Indias was cast away foureteene yeeres ago, and the other twelue yeeres, whose fellowes some escaped, other some were slaine by the inhabitants. It seemeth they had estimation of theyꝛ golde and siluer, foꝛ it is wrought flat and grauen, which they weare about their necks, other some made round like a pancake, with a hole in the middest to boalster vp their brests withall, because they thinke it a deformitie to haue great brests. As foꝛ mines either of golde oꝛ siluer, the French men can heare of none they haue vpon the Island, but of copper, wheroꝛ as yet also they haue not made the proofe, because they were but few men: but it is not vnlike, but that in the maine where are high hilles, may be golde and siluer as well as in Mexico, because it is all one maine. The French men obtained pearles of them of great bignesse, but they were blacke, by meanes of wasting of them, foꝛ they do not fish foꝛ them as the Spanyards do, but foꝛ their meat: foꝛ the Spanyardes vse to keepe dayly a fishing some two oꝛ three hundred Indians, some of them that be of choyse a thousand: and their oꝛder is to goe in Canoaes, oꝛ rather great pinnesses, with thirtie men in a piece, whereof the one halfe, oꝛ most part be diuers, the rest doe open the same foꝛ the pearles: foꝛ it is not suffered that they should vse dragging, foꝛ that would bring them out of estimation, and marre the beads of them. The oysters which haue the smallest soꝛt of pearles are found in seuen oꝛ eight fathome water, but the greatest in eleuen oꝛ twelue fathom.

Tabacco, & the great vertue thereof.

The variety of commodities in Florida.

Coulers.

Golde and siluer.

Two Spanyards liued long among the Floridians

Pieces of gold grauen among the Floridians.

Florida esteemed an island.

This copper was found perfect golde, called by the Sauages, Syeroa phyra.

Pearles.

The Floridians haue pieces of Unicoꝛnes hoꝛnes, which they were about their necks, wherein the French men obtayned many pieces. Of those Unicoꝛnes they haue many, foꝛ that they doe affirme it to be a beast with one hoꝛne, which comming to the riuer to drinke, putteth the same into the water before shee drinketh. Of these Unicoꝛnes there is of our company, that hauing gotten the same of the French men, brought home thereof to shewe. It is therefoꝛe to be presupposed that there are moꝛe commodities, as well as that, which foꝛ want of time, and people sufficient to inhabite the same, can not yet come to light: but I trust God will reueale the same before it be long, to the great profite of them that shall take it in hand. Of beastes in this countrey besides Deere, Foxes, Hares, Polcats, Cunnies, Dwnces, Leopards, I am not able certainely to say: but it is thought that there are Lions and Tygers as well as Unicoꝛnes, Lions especially, if it bee true that is said of the enmity betweene them & the Unicoꝛnes. Foꝛ there is no beast but hath his enemy, as the Cunny the Polcat, a Sheepe the Wolfe, the Elephant the Rinoceros, and so of other beasts the like: insomuch, that whereas the one is the other can not be missing. And seeing I haue

Unicoꝛnes hoꝛnes, which the inhabitats call Soua mamma.

Beastes.

made

made mention of the beastes of this Countrey, it shal not be from my purpose to speake also of the venemous beastes, as Crocodiles, whereof there is great abundance, Adders of great bignesse, whereof our men killed some of a yard and a halfe long. Also I heard a miracle of one of these adders, upon the which a Faulcon seazing, the same adder did clasp her taile about her, which the French Capeaine seeing, came to the rescue of the faulcon, and tooke her slaying the adder, and this faulcon being wilde hee did reclaime her, and kept her for the space of 2. moneths, at which time for very want of meat he was faine to cast her off. On these adders the Frenchmen did feede to no little admiration of vs, and affirmed the same to be a delicate meate. And the Capeaine of the Frenchmen sawe also a Serpent with 3. heads and 4. feete, of the bignesse of a great Spaniell which for want of a harquebusse he durst not attempte to slay. Of fishe also they haue in the riuer, pike, roche, salmon, troute, and diuers other small fishes, and of great fish, some of the length of a man and longer, being of bignesse accordingly, hauing a snoute much like a swoorde of a yarde long. There be also of sea fishes which wee sawe comming along the coast flying, which are of the bignesse of a smelt, the biggest sort whereof haue foure winges, but the other haue but two: Of these we sawe comming out of Guinea, a hundreth in a companie, which being chased by the Gilt heads, otherwise called the Bonitoes, doe to auoyde them the better take their flighte out of the water, but yet are they not able to flie farre, because of the drying of their winges, which serue them not to flye but when they are moyste, and therefore when they can flye no further, fall into the water, and hauing wette their wings take a newe flighte againe. These Bonitoes be of bignesse like a carpe, and in colour like a makarell, but it is the swiftest fish in swimming that is, and followeth her praye very fiercely, not onely in the water, but also out of the water: for as the flying fish taketh her flighte, so doeth this Bonito leape after them, and taketh them sometimes aboue the water. They were some of those Bonitoes, which being galled by a fisgig did follow our ship comming out of Guinea 500. leagues. There is a sea foule also that chaseth this flying fish as wel as the Bonito: for as the flying fish taketh her flighte, so doth this foule pursue to take her, which to beholde is a greater pleasure then hauking, for both the flighes are as pleasant, and also more often then 100. times: for the foule can flie no way but one or other lighteth in her pawes, the nomber of them are so abundant. There is an innumerable pong frie of these flying fishes, which commonly keepe about the shippe, and are not so bigge as butterflies, and yet by flying doe auoyde the insatiablenesse of the Bonito. Of the bigger sort of these fishes we tooke many, which both night and day flew into the sailes of our shippe, and there was not one of them which was not worth a Bonito: for being put vpon a hooke trabling in the water, the Bonito would leape thereat, and so was taken. Also, we tooke many with a white clothe made fast to a hooke, which being tied so short in the water, that it might leape out, and in, the greedie Bonito thinking it to be a flying fish leapeth thereat, and so is deceiued: Wee tooke also Dolphins which are of very goodly colour and proportion to beholde, and no lesse delicate in taste. Foules also there be many, both vpon lande and vpon sea: But concerning them on the lande I am not able to name them, because my abode was there so short. But for the foule of the fresh riuers, these two I noted to bee the chiefe, whereof the Flemengo is one, hauing all redde feathers, and long redde legges like a Herne, a necke according to the bill redde, whereof the vpper nebbe hangeth an inche ouer the nether; And an Egipte which is all white as the swanne, with legges like to an hearneshewe, and of bignesse accordingly, but it hath in her taile feathers of so fine a plume, that it passeth the Estridge his feather. Of sea foule aboue all other not knowen in Englande, I noted the Pellicane, which is saigned to be the louingest birde that is: which rather then her yong should want, will spare her heart blood out of her bellie, but for all this loouingnesse shee is very deformed to beholde, for shee is of colour russet, notwithstanding in Guinea I haue seene of them as white as a swanne, hauing legges like the same, and a body like a Herne, with a long necke, and a thicke long beake, from the nether sawe whereof downe to the breast passeth a skinne of such a bignesse, as is able to receiue a fishe as bigge as ones thigh, and this her bigge thoate and long bill, doeth make her seeme so ougly.

Faulcons in Florida.

Serpents.

Dolphins.

Flemingo.

The Egript.

The Pellicane

Here I haue declared the estate of Florida, and the commodities therein to this day knowen, which although it may seeme vnto some, by the meanes that the plentie of Golde and Siluer is not so abundant, as in other places, that the cost bestowed vpon the same, will not bee able to yeelde the charges: Yet am I of the opinion, that by that which I haue seene in other Ilandes of the Indians, where such increase of cattell hath bene that of twelue head of beastes in 25. yeeres, they be in the dayes of them raise 1000. pound profite yeerely, that the increase of cattell onely would raise profite sufficient for the same: For wee may consider, if so small a portion did raise so much gaines in such short time, What would a greater doe in many yeeres?

Meanes to reape a sufficient profite in Florida and Virginia.

And surely I may this affirme, that the ground of the Indians for the breede of cattell, is not in any point to be compared to this of Florida, which all the yeere long is so greene, as any time in the Sommer with vs: which surely is not to be marueiled at, seeing the Countrey standeth in so warrie a climate: for once a day without faile they haue a showre of raine. Which by meanes of the Countrey it selfe, which is drie, and more feruent hot then ours, doeth make all things to flourish therein: and because there is not the thing wee all seeke for, being rather desirous of present gaines, I do therefore affirme the attempt therof to be more requisite for a prince, who is of power able to goe thorow with the same, rather then for any subiect.

From thence we departed the 28. of July, vpon our voyage homewards, hauing there al things as might be most conuenient for our purpose: and tooke leaue of the Frenchmen that there still remained, who with diligence determined to make great speede after, as they could. Thus by meanes of contrary windes oftentimes, we prolonged our voyage in such manner that victuals scanted with vs, so that wee were diuers (or rather the most part) in despaire of euer comming home, had not God of his goodnesse better prouided for vs, then our deseruing. In which state of great miserie, we were prouoked to call vpon him by feruent prayer, which mooued him to heare vs, so that wee had a prosperous winde, which did set vs so farre shotte, as to be vpon the banke of Newfound land, on S. Bartlemewes eue, & sounded thereupon finding ground, at 130. fathoms, being that day somewhat becalmed, and tooke a great number of fresh codde fish, which greatly relieued vs: and very glad thereof, the next day departing, by lingring little gales for the space of foure or fiue dayes, at the which we sawe a couple of French ships, and had so much fish as would serue vs plentifully for all the rest of the way, the Captaine paying for the same both golde and siluer, to the iust value thereof, vnto the chiefe owners of the saide shippes, which they not looking for any thing at all, were glad in themselues to meete with such good intertainement at sea, as they had at our handes. After which departure from them, with a good large winde the 20. of September we came to Padstow in Cornewall God be thanked, in safetie, with the losse of 20. persons in all the voyage, and profitable to the venturers of the saide voyage, as also to the whole Realme, in bringing home both golde, siluer, pearles and other iewels great store. His name therefore be praised for euermore. Amen.

Their arrival in Padstow in the moneth of September, 1565.

The names of certaine Gentlemen that were in this voyage.

M. Iohn Hawkins.
M. Iohn Chester, } sir William Chesters sonne.
M. Anthony Parkhurst.
M. Fitzwilliam.
M. Thomas Woorley.
M. Edward Lacie, } with diuers others.

The Register and true accompts of all herein expressed, hath bene approoued by mee Iohn Sparke the yonger, who went vpon the same voyage, and wrote the same.

The arriuall and courtesie of M. Hawkins to the distressed *Frenchmen in Florida, is elsewhere also recorded, both in French,* and English, in the historie of Laudonier, written by himselfe, and printed in Paris, Anno 1586. And translated into English by me Richard Hakluyt, Anno 1587. and published as followeth.

Laudoniers and his companie.

AS eche of vs were much tormented in minde with diuers cogitations, the thirde of August I descried foure sailes in the Sea, as I walked vpon a little hill, whereof I was exceeding well apayde: I sent immediatly one of them which were with me, to aduertise those of the fort thereof, which were so glad of those newes, that one would haue thought them to be out of their wits, to see them laugh and leape for ioy. After these shippes had cast ancre, we descried that they sent off their shippe boates to land: whereupon I caused one of mine to be armed with diligence to sende to meete them, and to knowe who they were.

In

In the meane while fearing leaſt they were Spaniards, I ſet my ſouldiers in order and readineſſe, attending the returne of Captaine Vaſſeur, and my lieutenant, which were gone to meete them, who brought me word that they were Englishmen. And in trueth they had in their companie one whoſe name was Martine Attinas of Diepe, which at that time was in their ſeruice: which on the behalfe of M. Iohn Haukins their Generall came to requeſt me that I would ſuffer them to take freſh water, whereof they ſtoode in great neede, ſignifying vnto me that they had bene aboue 15. dayes on the coaſt to get ſome. He brought vnto me from the Generall 2. flagons of wine, & bread made of wheate, which greatly refreſhed mee, for aſmuch as for 7. moneths ſpace, I neuer taſted a drop of wine: neuertheleſſe it was all deuided among ỳ greateſt part of my ſouldiers: this Martin Attinas had guided ỳ Engliſhmen to our coaſt, wherwith he was acquainted. For in ỳ yere 1562. he came thither with me, & therfore the General ſent him to me. Therfore after I had granted his requeſt, he ſignified the ſame vnto ỳ general, which the next day following cauſed one of his ſmall ſhips to enter into the riuer, & came to ſee me in a great ſhipboat, accompanied wᵗ gentlemē honorably apparelled, yet vnarmed: he ſent for great ſtore of bread & wine to diſtribute thereof to euery one. On my part I made him the beſt cheare I could poſſibly, & cauſed certaine ſheepe & poultry to be killed, which vnto this preſent I had cauſed carefully to be preſerued, hoping to ſtore ỳ cõtrey withal. Now 3. dayes paſſed while the Engliſh general remained wᵗ me, during which time the Indians came in frõ all parts to ſee me, & aſked me whether he were my brother: I told them he was ſo, & ſignified vnto them, that he was come to ſee me, & ayde me with ſo great ſtore of victuals, that frõ hence forward I ſhould haue no need to take any thing of them. The bruit hereof incontinently was ſpred ouer all ỳ countrie, in ſuch ſort, as Ambaſſadors came vnto me frõ al parts, which on the behalfe of the kings their maſters, deſired to make alliance wᵗ me, & euen they which before ſought to make warre againſt me, came to offer their ſeruice & friendſhip vnto me: whereupon I receiued them, & gratified them with certaine preſents. The general immediatly vnderſtood the deſire and vrgent occaſion which I had to returne into France; whereupon he offred to tranſport me, & al my company home: whereunto notwithſtanding I would not agree, being in doubt vpon what occaſion he made ſo large an offer. For I knew not how the caſe ſtood betwixt the French & the Engliſh: and although he promiſed me on his faith to put me on land in France, before he would touch in England, yet I ſtood in doubt leaſt he would attempt ſomewhat in Florida in the name of his Miſtreſſe: wherefore I flatly refuſed his offer. Whereupon there roſe a great mutinie among my ſouldiers, which ſaid that I ſought to deſtroy them al, And that the Bzigandine whereof I ſpake before, was not ſufficient to tranſport them, conſidering the ſeaſon of the yeere, wherein wee were. The bruite and mutinie increaſed more and more: for after that the generall was returned to his ſhips, he told certaine gentlemen and ſouldiers which went to ſee him, partly to make good cheere with him, he declared and ſaid vnto them, that he greatly doubted, that hardly we ſhould be able to paſſe ſafely in thoſe veſſels which we had, and that in caſe we ſhould enterpriſe the ſame, we ſhould no doubt be in great ieopardie: Notwithſtanding, if I were ſo cõtented, he would tranſport part of my men in his ſhips, and that he would leaue me a ſmall ſhip to tranſport the reſt. The ſouldiers were no ſooner come home, but they ſignified the offer vnto their companions, which incontinently conſented together, that in caſe I would not accept the ſame, they would imbarke themſelues with him, and forſake me, ſo that he would receiue them according to his promiſe. They therefore aſſembled themſelues together, and came to ſeeke me in my chamber, and ſignified vnto me their intention, Whereunto I promiſed to anſwere them in one houre after. In which meane ſpace I gathered together the principall members of my companie, which, after that I had broken the matter with them, anſwered mee all with one voyce, that I ought not to refuſe his offer, nor contemne the occaſion which preſented it ſelfe. And that they could not thinke euill of it in France, if, being forſaken as we were, wee ayded our ſelues with ſuch meanes, as God hath ſent to vs. After ſundrie debatings of this matter, in concluſion I gaue my aduiſe that wee ought to deliuer him the price of the ſhippe which hee was to leaue vs, and that for my part I was content to giue him the beſt of my ſtuffe, and the ſiluer which I had gathered in the Countrey.

Siluer in Florida.

Whereupon notwithſtanding it was determined, that I ſhould keepe the ſiluer, for feare leaſt the Queene of Englande ſeeing the ſame, ſhoulde the rather bee incouraged to ſet footing there, as before ſhe had deſired: That it was farre better to carry it into Fraunce, to giue incouragement to our Princes not to leaue off ſuch an enterpriſe of ſo great importance for our Common wealth. And that ſeeing wee were reſolued to depart, it was farre better to giue him our Artillerie, which otherwiſe wee ſhould be conſtrained to leaue behinde vs, or to hide in the ground, by reaſon of the weakeneſſe of our men, being not able to imbarke the ſame. This point being thus concluded, and reſolued on, I went (my ſelfe) vnto the Engliſh Generall, accompanied

with my lieuetenant, and Captaine Vasseur, Captaine Verdier, and Trenchant the pilot, and my seriant, al men of experience in such affaires, & knowing sufficiently how to driue such a bargaine. We therefore tooke a view of the ship, which the Generall would sell, whom we drew to such reason, that he was content to stand vnto mine owne mens iudgement, who esteemed it to bee worth 700. crownes, whereof we agreed very friendly. Wherefore I deliuered him in earnest of the summe, 2. bastards, 2. minions, one thousand of yron, & one thousand of pouder: this bargaine thus made, he considered the necessitie wherein we were, having for al our sustenance but mil & water: whereupon being mooued with pitie, he offered to relieue me with 20. barrels of meale, 6. pipes of beanes, one hogshead of salt, and 100. of waxe to make candles. Moreouer, for somuch as he saw my souldiers goe barefoote, he offered me besides 50. paire of shoes, which I accepted, and agreed of a price with him, and gaue him a bill of my hand for the same, for which vntil this present I am indebted to him. He did more then this, for particularly he bestowed vpon my selfe a great iarre of oyle, a iarre of vineger, a barrel of oliues, and a great quantitie of rise, and a barrel of white bisket: besides he gaue diuers presents to the principall officers of my company, according to their qualities. So that I may say, that we receiued as many courtesies of the General, as it was possible to receiue of any man liuing. Wherein doubtelesse, he hath wonne the reputation of a good & charitable man, deseruing to be esteemed as much of vs al, as if he had saued all our liues. Incontinent after his departure, I spared no paines to hasten my men, to make biscuits of the meale which he had left me, and to hoope my caske to take in water needefull for the voyage.

Thus farre Laudoniere, concerning M. Haukins and his courtesie.

A relation of the commodities of Noua Hispania, and the *maners of the inhabitants, written by Henry Hawkes mar-* chant, which liued 5. yeeres in the said Countrey, and drewe the same at the request of M. Richard Hakluyt Esquire of Eiton in the Countie of Hereford, 1572.

S. Iohn de Vllua.

Saint Iohn de Vllua, is an Iland not high aboue the water, whereas now the Spaniards, vpon M. Iohn Hawkins being there, are in making a strong fort. In this place all the shippes that come out of Spaine with goods for their parts do vnlade. For they haue none other port so good as this is. The comming into this place hath 3. chanels, and the best of all is the Northermost, which goeth by the maine land: and on euery side of the chanels, there are many small rockes as bigge as a small barrell: they will make men stand in doubt of them, but there is no feare of them. There is another Iland thereby called the Iland of sacrifices, whereas the Spaniards did in times past vnlade their goods. And for that they say there are vpon it spirits or deuils, it is not frequented as it hath bene. In these places the North winde hath so great dominion, that oftentimes it destroyeth many shippes and barkes. This place is giuen to great sicknesse. Their Ilands stand in 18. degrees and a halfe, and about the same is great plentie of fish.

Spirits.

Vera Cruz.

Fiue leagues from S. Iohn de Vllua is a faire riuer: it lieth North west from the porte, and goeth to a little towne of the Spaniards called Vera Cruz, and with small vessels or barkes, which they call Fragates, they carry all their marchandise which commeth out of Spaine, to the said towne: and in like maner bring all the golde, siluer, Cochonelio, hides, and all other things that the shippes carry into Spaine vnto them. And the goods being in Vera Cruz, they carry it to Mexico, and to Pueblo del los Angelos, Sacatecas, and Saint Martin, and diuers other places so farre within the Countrey, that some of them are 700. miles off, and some more and some lesse, all vpon horses, mules, and in waynes drawne with oxen, and in carres drawne with mules. In this towne of Vera Cruz within these 20. yeres, when women were brought to bedde, the children newe borne incontinently died: which is not so now in these dayes, God be thanked.

Muskito.

This towne is inclined to many kinde of diseases by reason of the great heate, and a certaine gnat or flie which they call a Muskito, & biteth both men and women in their sleepe, and as soone as they are bitten, incontinently the flesh swelleth as though they had bene bitten with some venemous worme. And this Muskito or gnat doeth most follow such as are newly come into the Countrey: Many there are that die of this annoyance.

This towne is situated vpon the riuer aforesaide, and compassed with woods of diuers maners and sortes, and many fruits, as Oranges and lemmons, Guiaues, and diuers others, and birds in them,

them, popiniayes both ſmall and great, and ſome of them as bigge as a rauen, and their tailes as long as the taile of a Feſant. There are alſo many other kinde of birdes of purple couller, and ſmall monkies marueilous proper. Popiniayes. Monkies.

This hotte or ſicke Countrey continueth 45. miles towardes the Citie of Mexico: and the 45. miles being paſſed, then there is a temperate Countrey and full of tillage: but they water all their corne with riuers which they turne in vpon it. And they gather their wheate twiſe a yeere. And if they ſhould not water the ground where as their corne is ſowne, the Countrey is ſo hotte it would burne all. Wheate twiſe in a yeere.

Before you come to Mexico, there is a great towne called Tlaxcalla, which hath in it aboue 16000. houſeholds. All the inhabitants thereof are free by the kings of Spaine: for theſe were the occaſion that Mexico was wonne in ſo ſhort time, and with ſo little loſſe of men. Wherefore they are all Gentlemen and pay no tribute to the king. In this towne is all the Cochonilio growing. Tlaxcalla a free Citie.

Mexico is a great Citie: it hath more then fiftie thouſande houſeholds, whereof there are not paſt fiue or ſixe thouſande houſes of Spaniards, all the other are the people of the Countrey, which liue vnder the Spaniards lawes. There are in this Citie ſtately buildings and many Monaſteries of friers and nonnes which the Spaniards haue made. And the building of the Indians is ſomewhat beautifull outwardly, and within full of ſmall chambers, with very ſmall windoes, which is not ſo comely as the building of the Spaniards. This Citie ſtandeth in the middeſt of a great lake, and the water goeth through all or the moſt part of the ſtreetes, and there come ſmall boates, which they call Canoas, and in them they bring all things neceſſary, as wood and coales, and graſſe for their horſes, ſtones and lime to builde, and corne. Mexico.

This Citie is ſubiect to many earthquakes, which oftentimes caſt downe houſes, and kill people. This Citie is very well prouided of water to drinke, and with al maner of victuals, as fruits, fleſh and fiſh, bread, hennes and capons, Guinie cocks and hennes, and all other foule. There are in this Citie euery weeke three faires or marktes, which are frequented with many people as well Spaniards as the people of the Countrey. There are in theſe faires or markets all maner of things that may bee inuented to ſell, and in eſpeciall things of the Countrey. The one of theſe faires is vpon the Monday, which is called S. Hypolitos faire, and S. Iames his faire is vpon the Thurſday, and vpon Saturday is S. Iohns faire. In this Citie is alwayes the kings Gouernour or Viceroy, and there are kept the Termes and Parliaments. And although there bee other places of Iuſtice, yet this is aboue all; ſo that all men may appeale vnto this place, and may not appeale from this Citie, but onely into Spaine before the King: and it muſt be for a certaine ſumme; And if it be vnder that ſumme, then there is no appellation from them. Many riuers fall into this lake which the Citie ſtandeth in: but there was neuer any place founde whither it goeth out.

The Indians knowe a way to drowne the Citie, and within theſe 3. yeeres they would haue practiſed the ſame: but they which ſhoulde haue bene the doers of it were hanged, and euer ſince the Citie hath bene well watched both day and night, for feare leaſt at ſometime they might be detried: for the Indians loue not the Spaniards. Round about the towne there are very many gardens and Orchards of the fruits of the Countrey marueilous faire, where the people haue great recreation. The men of this Citie are marueilous vicious, and in like maner the women are diſhoneſt of their bodies, more then they are in other Cities or townes in this Countrey. A way to drowne Mexico.

There are neere about this Citie of Mexico many riuers and ſtanding waters, which haue in them a monſtrous kinde of fiſhe which is marueilous rauening, and a great deuourer of men and cattell. He is wont to ſleepe vpon the drie land many times: and if there come in the meane time any man or beaſt and wake or diſquiet him, he ſpeedeth well if he get from him. Hee is like vnto a ſerpent ſauing that he doeth not flye, neither hath he wings. Crocodiles.

There is Weſt out of Mexico a port towne which is on the Southſea, called Puerto de Nauidad, whereas there are ſhippes which they haue ordinarily for the Nauigation of China, which they haue newly found. This port is threeſcore leagues from Mexico. Nauigation to China from port de Nauidad.

There is another porte towne which is called Culluacan on the South Sea which lyeth Weſt and by North out of Mexico, and is 150. leagues from the ſame. And there the Spaniards made two ſhips to goe ſeeke the ſtreight or gulfe, which as they ſay, is betweene the Newfoundland and Groenland, and they call it the Engliſhmens ſtraite, which as yet was neuer fully found. They ſay, that Straight lieth not farre from the maine land of China, which the Spaniards accompt to be marueilous rich. The North-weſt ſtraight.

Towarde the North from Mexico, there are great ſtore of ſiluer mynes. There is greater quan-

quantitie of siluer founde in these mines towarde the North, then there is in any other parte: and as the most men of experience said alwayes, they finde the richer mines the more Northerly. These mines are commonly vpon great hilles and stonie ground, maruailous hard to be laboured and wrought.

Painting earth. Out of some of the mines, the Indians finde a certaine kinde of earth of diuers coulers, wherewith they paint themselues in times of their daunces, and other pastimes which they vse.

Golde mines. In this Countrey of Noua Hispania, there are also mines of gold, although the golde be commonly found in riuers, or very neere vnto riuers. And nowe in these dayes there is not so much golde found as there hath bene heretofore.

There are many great riuers and great store of fishe in them, not like vnto our kindes of fish. And there are marueilous great woods, and as faire trees as may bee seene of diuers sortes, and especially firre trees that may maste any shippe that goeth vpon the sea, okes and pineapples, and another tree which they call a Miskitoth beareth a fruite like vnto a peasecod marueilous sweete, which the wilde people gather and keepe it all the yeere, and eate it in steede of bread.

The Spaniards haue notice of seuen Cities which olde men of the Indians shewe them should lie towards the Northwest from Mexico. They haue vsed and vse dayly much diligence in the seeking them, but they cannot finde any one of them. They say that the witchcraft of the Indians is such, that when they come by these townes they cast a misse vpon them, so that they can not see them.

7. Cities by witchcraft not found of the seekers.

They haue vnderstanding of another Citie which they call Copalla, and in like maner, at my being in the Countrey, they haue vsed much labour and diligence in the seeking of it: they haue found the lake on which it should stande, and a Canoa, the head whereof was wrought with copper curiously, and coulde not finde nor see any man nor the towne, which to their vnderstanding should stand on the same water or very neere the same.

The beastes of Noua Hispania. There is a great nomber of beastes or kine in the Countrey of Cibola, which were neuer brought thither by the Spaniards, but breed naturally in the Countrey. They are like vnto our oxen, sauing that they haue long haire like a Lion, and short hornes, and they haue vpon their shoulders a bunche like a Camell, which is hier then the rest of their body. They are marueilous wilde and swift in running. They call them the beastes or kine of Cibola.

Cibola abandoned. This Cibola is a Citie which the Spaniards founde nowe of late, without any people in the same, goodly buildings, faire chimneis, windoes made of stone and timber excellently wrought, faire welles with wheeles to drawe their water, and a place where they had buried their dead people, with many faire stones vpon the graues. And the Captaine woulde not suffer his souldiers to breake vp any part of these graues, saying, hee would come another time to doe it.

They asked certaine people which they mette, whither the people of this Citie were gone: And they made answere, they were gone downe a riuer which was thereby very great, and there had builded a Citie which was more for their commoditie.

This Captaine lacking things necessarie for himselfe and his men, was faine to returne backe againe without finding any treasure according to his expectation: neither founde they but fewe people, although they founde beaten wayes, which had bene much haunted and frequented. The Captaine at his comming backe againe, had a great checke of the gouernour, because he had not gone forwards and seene the ende of that riuer.

Water congealed to salt. They haue in the Countrey farre from the seaside, standing waters which are salt: And in the moneths of Aprill and May, the water of them congealeth into salt, which salt is all taken for the kings vse and profite.

Dogs of India described. Their dogges are all crooked backt as many as are of the Countrey breede, and cannot runne fast: their faces are like the face of a pigge or an hogge, with sharpe noses.

Cacao a fruit currant as money. In a certaine prouince which is called Guatimala, and Sacanosco, there is growing great store of Cacao; which is a berrie like vnto an Almond: It is the best Marchandise that is in all the Indies. The Indians make drinke of it, and in like maner meate to eate. It goeth currantly for money in any market or faire, and may buy any flesh, fish, bread or cheese or other things.

Fruites. There are many kinde of fruites of the Countrey which are very good, as Plantans, Sapotes, Guiaues, Pinas, Aluacatas, Tunas, Mamios, Lymons, Orenges, Walnuts, very small and hard, and little meate in them, grapes which the Spaniards brought into the Countrey, and also wilde grapes, which are of the Countrey, and are very small, quinses, peches, figges, and but few apples, and very small, and no peares: but there are melons and Calabasses.

There is much honie both of bees, and also of a kind of tree which they cal Maguez. This hony of

of Maguez is not so sweete as the other hony is, but it is better to be eaten onely with bread, then the other is: and the tree serueth for many things, as the leaues make threed to sowe any kinde of bags, and are good to couer or thatch houses, and for diuers other things.

They haue in diuers places of the Countrey many hot springs of water. As aboue all other, I haue seene one in the prouince of Mechuacan. In a plaine field without any mountaine, there is a spring which hath much water, and it is so hot, that if a whole quarter of beefe bee cast into it, within one halfe howre, it will be as well sodden, as it will be ouer a fire in halfe a daye. I haue seene halfe a Sheepe cast in, and immediatly it hath beene sodden, and I haue eaten parte of it. Hot springs.

There are many Hares and some Conies. There are no Partridges, but aboundance of Quayles. Hares and conies.

They haue great store of fishe in the South Sea, and many Oysters, and very great. The people doe open the Oysters, and take out the meate of them, and dry it, as they doe any other kind of fishe, and keepe them all the yeere: and when the times serue, they sende them abroad into the Countrey, to sell as all other fishe. They haue no Salmon, nor Trowte, nor Pele, nor Carpe, Teach, nor Pike, in all the Countrey. Sea fishe.

There are in the Countrey mightie high mountaines, and hils, and snowe vpon them. They commonly burne, and twise euery day they cast out much smoke, and ashes, at certaine open places, which are in the toppes of them. Mountaines.

There is among the wild people much Manna. I haue gathered of the same, and haue eaten it, and it is good. For the Apothecaries sende their seruants at certain times, to gather of the same, for purgations, and other vses. Manna.

There are in the mountaines many wild hogs, which all men may kill, and Lyons and Tygers, which Tygers doe much harme to men that trauell in the wildernes.

In this Countrey, not long since, there were two poore men that found a meruelous rich myne, and when these men went to make a register of the same, according to the Lawe and custome, before the Kings officers, they thought this myne not meete for such men as they were, and violently tooke the said myne for the King, and gaue no part thereof vnto the two poore men. And within certaine daies the Kings officers reloyned thither to labour in the myne, and they found two great mightie hils were come together, so they founde no place to worke in. And in the time, while I was among them, which was fiue yeeres, there was a poore sheepheard, who keping of his sheepe, happened to finde a Well of quicke siluer, and he went in like manner to manifest the same, as the custome and manner is. The Kings officers dealt in like order, as they did with the two poore men that found the rich myne, taking it quite from the sheepheard: but when they went to fetch home the quicke siluer, or part therof, they could neuer finde it againe. So these things haue bene declared vnto the King, who hath giuen commandement, that nothing being found in the fieldes, as mynes, and such like, shall be taken away from any man. And many other things haue bene done in this Countrey, which men might count for great meruels. Mines discouered, not found againe.

There is great abundance of suger here, and they make diuers conserues, and very good, & send them into Peru, whereas they sell them meruelous well, because they make none in those parts. Suger and conserues.

The people of the Countrey, are of a good stature, tawnie coloured, broad faced, flat nosed, and giuen much to drinke both wine of Spaine, & also a certain kind of wine, which they make w hony of Maguez, and rootes, and other things which they vse to put into the same. They call the same wine Pulco. They are soone drunke, and giuen to much beastlines, and void of all goodnes. In their drunkennes they vse and commit sodomie, and with their mothers and daughters they haue their pleasures and pastimes. Whereuppon they are defended from the drinking of wines, vpon paines of money, as well he that selleth the wines, as the Indian that drinketh the same. And if this commandement were not, all the wine in Spaine, and in France, were not sufficient for the West Indias onely. Description of the Indians person and manners.

They are of much simplicitie, and great cowards, void of all valour, and are great Witches. They vse diuers times to talke with the Deuill, to whome they doe certaine sacrifices and oblations: many times they haue bene taken with the same, and I haue seene them most cruelly punished for that offence.

The people are giuen to learne all maner of occupations and sciences, which for the most part they learned since the comming of the Spaniards: I say all manner of artes. They are very artificiall in making of Images, with feathers, or the proportion or figure of any man, in all kinde of maner as he is. The finenes and excellencie of this is wonderfull, that a barbarous people as they are, should giue themselues to so fine an arte as this is. They are Goldsmiths, Blacksmiths, and

Copper-

Copper Smiths, Carpenters, Masons, Shoemakers, Tailers, Sadlers, Imbroderers, and of all other kind of sciences: and they will, and doe worke so good cheape, that poore yong men that go out of Spaine, to get their liuing, are not set on worke. Which is the occasion there are many idle people in the Countrey. For the Indian will liue all the weeke with lesse then one groate, which the Spaniard cannot doe, nor any man else.

The Indians ignorance from whence they came.

They say, that they came of the linage of an olde man, which came thither in a boate of wood, which they call a Canoa. But they cannot tell whether it were before the flood, or after, neither can they giue any reason of the flood, nor from whence they came. And when the Spaniards came first among them, they did certaine sacrifice to an Image made in stone, of their owne invention. The stone was set vpon a great hill, which they made of bricks of earth, they call it their Cowa. And certaine daies in the yeere, they did sacrifice certaine olde men, and yong children, and onely beleeued in the Sunne and the Moone, saying, that from them they had all things that were needfull for them. They haue in these parts great store of cotton wooll, with which they make a maner of linnen cloth, which the Indians weare, both men and women, and it serueth for shirts & smocks and all other kind of garments, which they weare vpon their bodies: and the Spaniards vse it to all such purposes, especially such as cannot buy other. And if it were not for this kind of cloth, all manner of cloth that goeth out of Spaine, I say, linnen cloth would be sold out of all measure.

The Sunne and Moone honored.

The wild Indians.

The wild people goe naked, without any thing vpon them. The women weare the skinne of a Deere, before their priuities, and nothing else vpon all their bodies. They haue no care for any thing but only from day to day for that which they haue neede to eate. They are bigge men, and likewise the women. They shoote in bowes, which they make of a cherrie tree, and their arrowes are of a Cane, with a sharpe flint stone in the end of the same: they will pierce any coate of maile, and they kill Deere, and Cranes, and wild Geese, Duckes, and other fowle, and Wormes, and Snakes, and diuers other vermin, which they eate. They liue very long, for I haue seene men that haue bene 100. yeeres of age. They haue but very litle haire in their face, nor on their bodies.

Friers in reuerence.

The Indians haue the Friers in great reuerence. The occasion is, that by them, and by their meanes, they are free, & out of bondage, which was so ordained by Charles the Emperour, which is the occasion, that now there is not so much gold and siluer comming into Europe, as there was while the Indians were slaues. For when they were in bondage, they could not chuse but doe their taske euery daye, and bring their Masters so much mettall out of their Mynes. But now they must be well paied, and much entreated to haue them worke. So it hath bene, and is a great hinderance to the owners of the Mynes, and to the Kings quinto or custome.

Copper mines

There are many Mynes of Copper, in great quantitie, whereof they spend in the Countrey, as much as serueth their turnes. There is some gold in it, but not so much as will pay the costes of the fining. The quantitie of it is such, and the Mynes are so farre from the sea, that it will not be worth the fraight to carry it into Spaine. On the other side, the Kings officers will giue no licence to make Ordinance thereof: whereupon the Mynes lie vnlaboured, and of no valuation.

There is much lead in the Countrey, so that with it they couer Churches, and other religious houses: wherefore they shal not neede any of our lead, as they haue had neede thereof in times past.

The pompe of owners of Mynes.

The pompe and liberalitie of the owners of the Mynes, is meruelous to behold. The apparell both of them, and of their wiues, is more to be compared to the apparell of Noble persons, then otherwise. If their wiues goe out of their houses, as vnto the Church, or any other place, they goe out with great Maiestie, and with as many men and maides, as though she were the wife of some Noble man. I will assure you, I haue seene a Myners wife goe to the Church, with 100. men, and 20. Gentlewomen, and maides. They keepe open house, who will, may come to eate their meate. They call men with a bell to come to dinner and supper. They are Princes in keeping of their houses, and bountifull in all manner of things.

A good owner of Mynes must haue at the least 100. slaues, to carrye, and to stampe his mettals: he must haue many Mules, and men to keepe the Mynes: he must haue mils to stampe his mettals: he must haue many waines, and Oxen to bring home wood to fine the ore: he must haue much quicksiluer, and a meruelous quantitie of salt brine, for the mettals, and he must be at many other charges. And as for this charge of quicksiluer, it is a newe inuention, which they finde more profitable, then to fine their ore with lead. Howbeit the same is very costly. For there is neuer a hundreth of quicksiluer, but costeth at the least 60. pounds sterling. And the Mynes fall dayly in decay, and of lesse value: and the occasion is, the fewe Indians that men haue to labour their Mynes.

The plentie of cattell.

There is in new Spaine, a meruelous increase of cattel, which daily doth increase, and they are of a greater growth then ours are. You may haue a great Oxeere that hath an hundred weight of tallowe

tallowe in his bellie for 16. ſhillings, and ſome one man hath 20. thouſand head of cattell of his owne. They ſel the hides vnto the Merchants, who lade into Spaine as many as may be wel ſpared. They ſpend many in the Countrey in ſhoes and bootes, and in the mynes: and as the Countrey is great, ſo is the increaſe of the cattell wonderfull. In the Iſland of Santo Domingo, they commonly kil the beaſts for their hides and tallowe, and the fowles eate the carkaſes: and ſo they doe in Cuba, and Porto Ricco, whereas there is much ſuger, and Cana fiſtula, which daily they ſend into Spaine. They haue great increaſe of ſheepe in like maner, and daily doe intende to increaſe them. They haue much wool, and as good as the wooll of Spaine. They make cloth as much as ſerueth the Countrey, for the common people, and ſend much cloth into Peru. I haue ſeene cloth made in the Citie of Mexico, which hath bene ſold for ten pezos a vare, which is almoſt 4. pounds Engliſh, and the vare is leſſe then our yard. They haue Dad growing in the Countrey, and Alam, and Bzaſill, and diuers other things to dye withall, ſo that they make all colours. In Peru they make no cloth, but hereafter our cloth will be little ſet by in theſe partes, vnleſſe it be ſome fine cloth. The wools are commonly 4. ſhillings euery roue, which is 25. pounds: and in ſome places of the Countrey that are farre from the places whereas they make cloth, it is worth nothing, and doth ſerue but onely to make beds for men to lye on.

Sheepe, wool. Cloth. Dad. Alam. Bzaſill.

They make hats, as many as doe ſerue the Countrey, very fine and good, and ſell them better cheape, then they can be brought out of Spaine, and in like manner ſend them into Peru.

Many people are ſet on worke, both in the one, and in the other: they ſpin their wooll as we do, and in ſteede of oile, they haue hogs greaſe: they twiſt not their threed ſo much as we doe, neither worke ſo fine a threed. They make no kerſies, but they make much cloth, which is courſe, and ſell it for leſſe then 12. pence the vare. It is called Bayall.

They haue much ſilke, and make all maner of ſortes thereof, as Taffataes, Sattins, Veluets of all colours, and they are as good as the ſilkes of Spaine, ſauing that the colours are not ſo perfect: but the blackes are better then the blackes that come out of Spaine.

They haue many horſes, and mares, and mules, which the Spaniards brought thither. They haue as good Iennets, as any are in Spaine, and better cheape then they be in Spaine. And with their Mules they carry all their goods from place to place.

Horſes. Mules. Iennets.

There is raine vſually in this Countrey, from the moneth of May, to the midſt of October, euery day, which time they call their winter, by reaſon of the ſaid waters. And if it were not for the waters which fal in theſe hot ſeaſons, their Maiz, which is the greateſt part of their ſuſtenance, would be deſtroied. This Maiz is the greateſt maintenance which the Indian hath, and alſo all the common people of the Spaniards. And their horſes and mules which labour, cannot be without the ſame. This graine is ſubſtantiall, and increaſeth much blood. If the Miners ſhoulde bee without it, they could not labour their Mines: for all their ſeruants eate none other bread, but only of this Maiz, and it is made in cakes, as they make oaten cakes, in ſome places of England.

Maiz graine for man and beaſt.

The Indians pay tribute, being of the age of 20. yeeres, 4. ſhillings of money, and an hanege of Maiz, which is worth 4. ſhillings more, vnto the King euery yeere. This is paid in all Noua Hiſpania, of as many as be of the age of 20. yeeres, ſauing the citie of Tlaſcalla, which was made free, becauſe the Citizens thereof were the occaſion that Cortes tooke Mexico in ſo litle a time. And although at the firſt, they were freed from payment of tribute, yet the Spaniards now begin to claime vpon them, and make them to till a great field of Maiz, at their owne coſtes euery yeere for the King, which is as beneficiall vnto him, and as great coſt vnto them, as though they paid their tribute, as the others doe.

The ſhips which goe out of Spaine with goods from Peru, goe to Nombre de dios, and there diſcharge the ſaid goods: and from thence they be carried ouer the necke of a lande, vnto a porte towne, in the ſouth ſea, called Panama, which is 17. leagues diſtant from Nombre de dios. And there they doe ſhip their goods againe, and ſo from thence goe to Peru. They are in going thither 3. moneths, and they come backe againe in 20. daies. They haue ſeldome foule weather, and few ſhips are loſt in the ſouth ſea. Foure yeeres paſt, to wit, 1568. there was a ſhip made out of Peru, to ſeeke Salomons Iſlands, and they came ſomewhat to the ſouth of the Equinoctiall, and founde an Iſland with many blacke people, in ſuch number, that the Spaniards durſt not goe on land among them. And becauſe they had bene long vppon the voyage, their people were very weake, and ſo went not on land, to know what commoditie was vpon it. And for want of victuals, they arriued in Noua Hiſpania, in a porte called Porte de Nauidad, and thence returned backe againe vnto Peru, whereas they were euill entreated, becauſe they had not knowen more of the ſame Iſland.

Salomons Iſlands ſought, and found in the South ſea 1568.

They haue in this porte of Nauidad, ordinarily their ſhips, which goe to the Iſlands of China, which are certain Iſlands, which they haue found within theſe 7. yeeres. They haue brought from thence

China found by the Weſt.

thence gold, and much Cinamon, and dishes of earth, and cups of the same, so fine, that euery man that may haue a peece of them, will giue the weight of siluer for it. There was a marriner that brought a pearle, as big as a doues egge, from thence, & a stone, for which the Viceroy would haue giuen 3000. duckets. Many things they bring from thence, most excellent. There are many of these Ilands, & the Spaniards haue not many of them as yet: "for the Portingals disturbe them much, & combate with them euery day, saying, it is part of their conquest, & to the maine land they cannot come at any hand. There are goodly people in them, & they are great marriners, richly apparelled in cloth of gold, & siluer, & silke of all sorts, & goe apparelled after the maner of ꝑ Turkes. This report make such as come from thence. The men of the maine lande, haue certaine traffike with some of these Ilanders, & come thither in a kind of ships, which they haue with one saile, and bring of such merchandize as they haue neede of. And of these things there haue bene brought into Newe Spaine both cloth of gold, & siluer, & diuers maners of silkes, & workes of gold and siluer, maruelous to be seene. So by their saying, there is not such a Countrey in the whole world. The maine land is from the Ilands 150. leagues: and the Ilands are not farre from the Moluccas northwards. And the people of those Ilands, which the Spaniards haue, say, that if they would bring their wiues & children, that then they should haue among them what they would haue. So there goe women daily, & the king paieth all the charges of the maried men & their wiues, that go to those Ilands. And there is no doubt, but the trade will be meruelous rich in time to come.

"This is to be vnderstood of the time when this discourse was written. Anno 1572.

China ships with one saile.

It was my fortune to be in companie with one Diego Gutieres, who was the first Pilot that euer went to that Countrey of the Phillipinaes. He maketh report of many strange things in that Countrey, aswel riches, as others, and saith, if there be any Paradise vpon earth, it is in that countrey: and addeth, that sitting vnder a tree, you shall haue such sweete smels, with such great content and pleasure, that you shall remember nothing, neither wife, nor children, nor haue any kinde of appetite to eate or drinke, the odoriferous smels will be so sweete. This man hath good liuings in Noua Hispania, notwithstanding he will returne thither, with his wife and children, and as for treasure, there is aboundance, as he maketh mention. In this Countrey of Noua Hispania, there are many Bucks and Does, but they haue not so long hornes as they haue here in England. The Spaniards kill them with handguns, and with grayhounds, and the Indians kill them with their bowes, and arrowes, and with the skins they make chamoyce, such as we in England make doublets and hose of, as good as the skins that are wrought in Flanders, and likewise they make maruelous good Spanish leather of them. There is a bird, which is like vnto a Rauen, but he hath some of his feathers white: there is such aboundance of them, that they eate all the corrupt and dead flesh which is in the Countrey. Otherwise the aboundance of carren is so much, that it would make a maruelous corrupt aire in all the Countrey, and be so noisome, that no man could abide it. Therefore it is commanded, there shall none of them be killed. These birds are alwaies about Cities, and Townes, where there is much flesh killed.

Chamoice.

Spanish leather.

India Rauens not killed, to deuoure carrion.

The Indians are much fauoured by the Iustices of the Countrey, and they call them their Ophanes. And if any Spaniard should happen to doe any of them harme, or to wrong him in taking any thing from him, as many times they doe, or to strike any of them, being in any towne, whereas iustice is, they are aswell punished for the same, as if they had done it one Spaniard to another. When a Spaniard being farre from Mexico, or any place of iustice, thinking to doe with the poore Indian what he list, considering he is so farre from any place of remedie, he maketh the Indian doe what he commandeth him, and if he will not doe it, he beateth and misuseth him, according to his owne appetite. The Indian holdeth his peace, vntill he find an opportunitie, and then taketh a neighbour with him, and goeth to Mexico, although it be 20. leagues off, and maketh his complaint. This his complaint is immediatly heard, and although it be a Knight, or a right good Gentleman, he is forthwith sent for, and punished both by his goods, and also his person is imprisoned, at the pleasure of the Iustice. This is the occasion that the Indians are so tame and ciuill, as they are: and if they should haue this fauour, the Spaniards would soone dispatch all the Indians, or the Indians would kill them. But they may call them dogs, and vse other euill words, as much as they will, and the Indian must needes put it vp, and goe his way.

Wrongs done to the Indians punished.

Iustice cause of ciuilitie.

The poore Indians will goe euery day 2. or 3. leagues to a Faire or Market, with a childe vpon their necks, with as much fruite or rootes, or some kind of ware, as cotton woll, or Cadis of all colours, as shall be not past worth a pennie: and they will maintaine themselues vpon the same. For they liue with a maruelous small matter.

They are in such pouertie, that if you neede to ride into the Countrey, you shall haue an Indian to goe with you all the day, with your bed vpon his backe, for one rial of plate: and this you shall haue from one Towne to another. Here you are to vnderstand, that all men that trauell by the

the way,are alwaies wont to carry their beds with them. They are great theeues, and will ſteale all that they may,and you ſhall haue no recompence at their hands.

The garments of the women, are in this manner. The vppermoſt part is made almoſt like to a womans ſmock,ſauing that it is as broad aboue as beneath,and hath no ſleeues, but holes on eche ſide one to put out their armes. It is made of linnen cloth, made of cotton wooll, and filled full of flowers,of red Cadis and blewe,and other colours. This garment commeth downe to the knees, and then they haue another cloth made after the ſame manner, and that goeth round about their waſte,and reacheth to their ſhoes,and ouer this a white fine ſheete vpon their heads, which goeth downe halfe the legge. Their haire is made vp round with an haire lace about their head. And the men haue a ſmall paire of breeches,of the ſame cotton wooll, and their ſhirtes which hang ouer their breeches,and a broad girdle about their middles,and a sheete with flowers vpon their backs, and with a knot vpon one ſhoulder,and an hat vpon their heads,and a paire of ſhoes. And this is all their apparell,although it be a Caſique,which they vſe in all the Countrey. The apparell of the Indians.

The wals of the houſes of the Indians are but plaine, but the ſtones are laid ſo cloſe, that you ſhall not well perceaue the ioynts betweene one ſtone and another, they are ſo finely cut: and by the meanes that the ſtones are ſo workmanly done,and finely ioyned together,there is ſome beautie in their wals. They are meruelous ſmall and light,as Pumie ſtones. They make their doores very little,ſo that there can goe in but one man at a time. Their windowes, and roomes within their houſes,are ſmall,and one roome they haue reſerued for their friendes, when they come to talke one with another,and that is alwaies faire matted, and kept meruelous cleane, and hanged full of images,and their chaires ſtanding there to ſit in. They eate their meate vpon the ground, and ſleepe on the ground vpon a mat,without any bed,both the gentlemen,and other. The houſes of the Indians.

The Indians ſtrike their fire with one ſticke in another,alſwell the tame people, as the wilde. For they know not howe to doe it with an yron,and a ſtone. Fire rubbed out of two ſticks.

In Noua Hiſpania,euery 10. or 12. leagues they haue a contrarie ſpeech, ſauing onely about Mexico: ſo there is a number of ſpeeches in the Countrey. Diuers ſpeeches.

Mutezuma which was the laſt King of this Countrey, was one of the richeſt Princes which haue bene ſeene in our time,or long before. He had all kind of beaſts,which were then in the country,and all maner of birds,and fiſhes,and all maner of wormes, which creepe vpon the earth,and all trees,and flowers,and herbes,all faſhioned in ſiluer and gold,which was the greateſt part of al his treaſure,and in theſe thinges had he great ioy,as the olde Indians report. And vnto this day, they ſay that the treaſure of Mutezuma,is hidden,and that the Spaniards haue it not. This King would giue none of his people freedome, nor forgiue any of them that ſhoulde paye him tribute, though he were neuer ſo poore. For if it had bene told him, that one of his tributaries was poore, & that he was not able to pay his tribute,according to the cuſtome, then he would haue him bound to lying at ſuch times as tributes ſhould be paid, a quill full of Lyce, ſaying, he would haue none free,but himſelfe. He had as many wiues,or concubines, as he would haue, and ſuch as liked him. Alwaies whenſoeuer he went out of his Court,to paſſe the time,he was borne vpon 4. of his noble mens ſhoulders,ſet vpon a table,ſome ſay,of gold,and very richly veſſed with feathers, of diuers and many colours and flowers. He waſhed all his body euery day,were it neuer ſo cold. And vnto this day,ſo doe all the Indians,and eſpecially the women. Mutezuma, and his riches. The Indians waſh themſelues euery day.

The Spaniards keepe the Indians in great ſubiection. They may haue in their houſes no ſword nor dagger,nor knife with any pointe,nor may weare vppon them any manner of armes, neither may they ride vpon any horſe, nor mules, in any ſadle nor bridle, neither may they drinke wine, which they take for the greateſt paine of all. They haue attempted diuers times to make inſurrections,but they haue bene ouerthrowen immediatly by their owne great and beaſtly cowardines.

There remaine ſome among the wild people,that vnto this day eate one another. I haue ſeene the bones of a Spaniard,that haue bene as cleane burniſhed, as though it had bene done by men that had no other occupation. And many times people are carried away by them, but they neuer come againe, whether they be men or women. Campbalo.

They haue in the ſea Iſlands of red ſalt in great aboundance, whereas they lade it from place to place,about the ſea coaſt: and they ſpend very much ſalt with ſalting their hides, and ſilke: and in their mynes they occupie a great quantitie. Iſland of ſalt.

They haue much Allam,and as good as any that is in all the Leuant, ſo that they neede none of that commoditie. Allam.

They haue alſo of their owne growing,much Cana fiſtula, and much Salſa Perilla, which is meruelous good for many kind of diſeaſes. Caſſia fiſtula. Salſa Perilla.

There are in Florida,many Iarrefalcons,and many other kind of Hawkes,which the Gentle- Florida.

men

men of Noua Hispania send for euery yeere. The Spaniards haue two forts there, chiefly to keepe out the Frenchmen from planting there.

The 3. vnfortunate voyage made with the Iesus, the Minion, *and foure other shippes, to the partes of Guinea, and the VVest In*dias, in the yeeres 1567. and 1568. by M. Iohn Hawkins.

October. THe shippes departed from Plymmouth, the second day of October, Anno 1567.

A storme. and had reasonable weather, vntil the seuenth day, at which time foure leagues North from Cape Finester, there arose an extreame storme, which continued foure daies, in such sorte, that the fleete was dispersed, and all our great boates lost, and the Iesus our chiefe shippe, in such case, as not thought able to serue the voyage: whereupon in the same storme we sette our course homeward, determining to giue ouer the voyage: but the eleuenth day of the same moneth, the winde changed with faire weather, whereby we were animated to followe our enterprise, and so did, directing our course with the Islands of Grand Canaries, where according to an order before prescribed, all

Gomera. our shippes before dispersed, mette in one of those Islands, called Gomera, where we tooke water, and departed from thence the fourth day of

November. November, towards the coast of Guinea, and arriued at Cape Verde, the eighteenth of November: where wee landed 150. men, hoping to obtaine some Negroes, where we gatte but fewe, and those with great hurt and damage to our men,

Enuenomed arrowes. which chiefly proceeded of their enuenomed arrowes: & although in the beginning, they seemed to be but small hurtes, yet there hardely escaped any, that had bloode drawen of them, but died in strange sorte, with their mouthes shutte, some ten dayes before he died, and after their woundes were whole, where I my selfe had one of the greatest woundes, yet thankes be to God, escaped.

December. Ianuarie. From thence we past the time vpon the coast of Guinea, searching with all diligence, the Riuers from Rio grande, vnto Sierra Leona, till the twelfth of Ianuarie, in which time wee had not gotten together a hundreth and fiftie Negroes: yet notwithstanding the sickenes of our men, and the late time of the yeere commanded vs away: and thus hauing nothing wherewith to seeke the coast of the West Indias, I was with the rest of our companie in consultation to goe to the coast of the Myne, hoping there to haue obtained some golde for our wares, and thereby to haue defraied our charge. But euen in that present instant, there came to vs a Negro, sent from a King, oppressed by other Kings his neighbours, desiring our aide, with promise, that as many Negroes as by these wares might be obtained, as well of his part, as of ours, should be at our pleasure: whereupon we concluded to giue aide, and sent 120. of our men, which the fifteenth of Ianuarie, assaulted

A towne of 8000. Negroes taken. a towne of the Negroes of our Allies aduersaries, which had in it 8000. Inhabitants, and very strongly impaled and fenced, after their manner, but it was so well defended, that our men preuailed not, but lost fiue men, and 40. hurt: so that our men sent foorthwith to me for more helpe: whereupon considering that the good successe of this enterprise might highly further the commodity of our voyage, I went my selfe, and with the helpe of the King of our side, assaulted the towne, both by land and sea, and very hardly with fire (their houses being couered with dry Palme leaues) obtained the towne, and put the Inhabitaunts to flight, where we tooke 250. persons, men, women, and children, and by our friend the King of our side, there was taken 600. prisoners, whereof we

No truth in Negroes. hoped to haue had our choise: but the Negro (in which nation is seldome or neuer found truth) meant nothing lesse: for that night he remooued his campe, and prisoners, so that we were faine to content vs with those fewe which we had gotten our selues.

Now had we obtained betweene 4. and 500. Negroes, wherewith we thought it somewhat reasonable to seeke the coast of the West Indias, and there, for our Negroes, and other our merchandize, we hoped to obtaine, whereof to counteruaile our charges with some gaines, whereunto we proceeded with all diligence, furnished our watering, tooke fuell, and departed the coast of Guinea

February. the third of February, continuing at the sea with a passage more hard, then before hath been accustomed, til the 27. day of March, which day we had sight of an Island, called Dominica, vpon the

March. Dominica. coast of the west Indias, in 14. degrees: from thence we coasted from place to place, making our traffike with the Spaniards, as we might, somewhat hardly, because the King had straightly commanded all his Gouernours in those partes, by no meanes to suffer any trade to be made with vs:

April. notwithstanding we had reasonable trade, & courteous entertainment, from the Ile of Margarita

May. vnto Cartagena, without any thing greatly worth þ noting, saue at Capo de la Vela, in a towne called Rio de la Hacha, from whence come all the pearles: the treasurer who had þ charge there, would by no meanes agree to any trade, or suffer vs to take water, he had fortified his towne with diuers

diuers bulwarkes in all places where it might be entred, and furnished himselfe with a 100. Hargabusiers, so that he thought by famine to haue inforced vs to haue put a land our Negroes: of which purpose he had not greatly failed vnles we had by force entred the towne: which (after we could by no means obtaine his fauour) we were enforced to do, & so with 200. men brake in vpon their bulwarkes, & entred the towne with the losse only of ii. men of our partes, and no hurt done to the Spanyards because after their volye of shott discharged, they all fled.

June. Rio de la Hacha taken.

Thus hauing the town, with some circūstance, as partly by the Spanyards desire of Negroes, & partly by friendship of the Treasorer, we obtained a secrete trade: whereupon the Spanyards resorted to vs by night, & bought of vs to the nomber of 200. Negroes: in all other places where we traded the Spanyards inhabitants were glad of vs and traded willingly.

Cartagena.

At Cartagena the last towne we thought to haue seene on the coast, we could by no meanes obtaine to deale with any Spanyard the gouernor was so straight, & because our trade was so neere finished we thought not good either to aduenture any landing, or to detract further time, but in peace departed from thence the 24. of July, hoping to haue escaped ỳ time of their stormes which then soone after began to raigne, the which they cal Furicanos, but passing by the west end of Cuba, towardes the coast of Florida there happened to vs the xii. day of August an extreme storme which continued by the space of 4. daies, which so beat the Jesus, that we cut downe all her higher buildings, her ruddar also was sore shaken, and with all was in so extreame a leake that we were rather vpon the point to leaue her then to keepe her any longer, yet hoping to bring all to good passe sought the coast of Florida where we found no place nor Hauen for our ships because of the shalownes of the coast: thus being in greater dispaire, & taken with a new storme which continued other 3. dayes, we were inforced to take for our succor ỳ Port which serueth the Citie of Mexico called Saint John de Vllua which standeth in xix. degrees: in seeking of which Port we tooke in our way iii. ships which carried passengers to ỳ nomber of C. which passengers we hoped should be a meane to vs the better to obtaine victuals for our money, and a quiet place for the repairing of our fleete: shortly after this the xvi. of September we entered the Port of Saint John de Vllua and in our entrie the Spanyardes thinking vs to be the fleete of Spaine, the chiefe officers of the Countrey came aborde vs, which being deceiued of their expectation were greatly dismayed: but immediatly when they sawe our demaund was nothing but victuals, were recomforted. I found also in the same Port xii. ships which had in them by the report. 200000. li. in golde and siluer, all which (being in my possession, with the Kinges Iland as also the passengers before in my way thitherwarde stayde) I set at libertie, without the taking from them the wayght of a grote: onely because I woulde not bee delayed of my dispatch, I stayed two men of estimation and sent post immediatly to Mexico, which was 200. miles from vs, to the Presidentes and Counsell there, shewing them of our arriuall there by the force of weather, and the necessitie of the repaire of our shippes and victualles, which wantes wee required as friends to king Philip to be furnished of for our money: and that the Presidentes and Counsell there shoulde with all conuenient speede take order, that at the arriuall of the Spanishe fleete, which was daily looked for, there might no cause of quarrel rise betweene vs and them, but for the better maintenance of amitie, their commaundement might bee had in that behalfe. This message being sent away the sixteenth day of September at nyght, being the very day of our arriuall, in the next morning which was the sixteenth day of the same moneth, we sawe open of the Hauen xiii. great shippes, and vnderstanding them to be the fleete of Spaine, I sent immediatly to aduertise the General of the fleete of my being there, doing him to vnderstand, that before I would suffer them to enter ỳ Port, there should some order of condicions passe betweene vs for our safe being there, and maintenance of peace: now it is to be vnderstood that this Port is a little Iland of stones not three foote aboue the water in the hiest place, and but a bow shoote of length any way, this Iland standeth from the maine land two bowe shootes or more, also it is to be vnderstood that there is not in all this coaste any other place for shippes to arriue in safetie, because the North wind hath there such violence, that vnles the shippes be very safely moored with their ancres fastned vpon this Iland, there is no remedie for these North windes but death: also the place of the Hauen was so little, that of necessitie the shippes must ride one aboord the other, so that we could not giue place to them, nor they to vs: & here I began to bewaile ỳ which after followed, for now said I, I am in two dangers, & forced to receaue the one of them. That was, either I must haue kept out the fleete from entring the Port, ỳ which with Gods helpe I was very well able to do, or els suffer them to enter in with their accustomed treason, which they neuer faile to execute, where they may haue opportunitie, or circumuent it by any meanes: if I had kept thē out, then had there bin ymet shipwarke of al ỳ fleete which amounted in value to sixe Millions, which was in

September. Saint John de Vllua a Port. The Spanyards deceiued

Stormes.

Our requests.

The fleete of Spaine.

The maner of the Port S. John de Vllua.

North winds perilous.

1800 thousand pound. value of our money 1800000. li. which I considered I was not able to aunswere, fearing the Queens Maiesties indignation in so waighty a matter. Thus with my selfe reuoluing ẏ doubts, thought rather better to abide ẏ iust of the vncerteinty, then the certeinty. The vncertein doubt I accompt was their treason which by good policy I hoped might be preuented, & therefore as chusing the least mischief I proceeded to conditions. Now was our first messenger come & returned from the fleete with report of the arrival of a vice Roy, so that he had auctority, both in all this Prouince of Mexico (otherwise called noua Hispania) & in the sea, who sent vs word that we should send out cõditions, which of his part should (for the better maintenãce of amity betweene ẏ Princes) be both fauorably granted, & faithfully performed, with many faire words how passing the coast of the Indies he had vnderstood of our honest behauiour towards the inhabitants where we had to do aswel elswhere as in ẏ same Port, the which I let passe, thus following our demand we required victual for our mony, & licence to sel asmuch ware as might furnish our wãts, & that there might be of either part xii. gentlemen as hostages for the maintenance of peace: and that the Iland for our better safety might be in our owne possession, during our abode there, & such ordinance as was planted in the same Iland which was xi. peeces of Brasse: & that no Spanyarde might land in the Iland with any kind of weapon: these conditions at the first, he somewhat misliked, chiefly the gard of the Iland to be in our owne keeping, which if they had had, we had soone knowen our fare: for with the first North wind they had cut our cables and our ships had gone a shore: but in the ende hee concluded to our request, bringing the xii. hostages to vs. which with all speede of either part weare receaued, with a writing from the vice Roy signed with his hand and sealed with his seale of all the conditions concluded, & forthwith a trumpet blowne with cõmandement that none of either part should be meane to inuiolate the peace vpon paine of death: & further it was concluded that the two generals of the fleetes should meete, & giue faith eche to other for the performance of the premisses which was so done. Thus at the end of 3. daies all was concluded and the fleete entred the Port, saluting one another as the maner of the sea doth require. Thus as I said before, thursday we entred the Port, friday we sawe the fleete, and on monday at night they entred the Port: then we laboured ii. daies placing the English ships by them selues & the Spanish ships by them selues, the captaines of each part & inferiour men of there parties promising great amity of all sides: which euen as th all fidelity was ment of our part, so the Spanyardes ment nothing lesse of their parts, but from the maine land had furnished them selues with a supplie of men to the nomber of 1000. and ment the next thursday being the 23. of September at dinner time to set vpon vs of all sides, the same thursday in the morning the treason being at hand, some appearance shewed, as shifting of weapon from ship to ship, planting and bending of ordinãce from the ship to the Iland where our men warded, passing too & fro of companies of men more then required for their necessary busines, and many other yll lickly hoodes which caused vs to haue a vehement suspition, and therewithall sent to the vice Roy to enquire what was ment by it, which sent immediatly straight commandement to implant all thinges suspicious, & also sent word that he in the faith of a vice Roy would be our defence from all villanies. Yet we being not satisfied with this aunswere because we suspected a great nomber of men to be hid in a great ship of 900 tonnes which was mored next vnto the Minion sent againe to the vice Roy the master of the Iesus which had the Spanish tongue and required to bee satisfyed if any such thing were or not, which seeing the vice Roy that the treason must bee discouered, forthwith stayd our master, blewe the trumpet, and of all sides set vpon vs: our men which warded a shore being stricken with sodein feare, gaue place, fled, and sought to recouer succour of the shippes, the Spanyardes being before prouided for the purpose landed in all places in multitudes from their shippes which they might easely doe without boates, and slewe all our men a shore without mercy, a fewe of them escaped aborde the Iesus. The great shippe which had by the estimation 300. men placed in hir secretly, immediatly fell aborde the minion which by Gods apointment in the time of the suspition we had, which was onely one halfe houre, the Minion was made ready to auoide and so leesing hir hedfastes, and hayling away by the sterne fastes shee was gotten out: thus with Gods helpe she defended the violence of the first hunt of these CCC. men. The Minion being paste out they came aborde the Iesus, which also with very much a doe and the losse of many of our men weare defended and kept out. Then were there also two other shippes that assaulted the Iesus at the same instant, so that shee had hard getting loose, but yet with some time we had cut our hedfastes and gotten out by the sterne fastes. Now when the Iesus and the Minion weare gotten aboad two shippes length from the Spanish fleete, the fight beganne hot of all sides that within one houre the Admirall of the Spanyardes was supposed to be sincke their vice Admirall burned and one other of there principall ships supposed to be sunke, so that the ships,

A vice Roy.

Faire words begun.

Our requests.

The peace concluded.

Treason.

A vice Roy false of his word.

The treason brake forth.

Sodden feare.

The Minion escaped hardly.

The Iesus escaped hardly.

Sharpe wars.

3. Ships of the Spanyardes consumed.

ships were little to annoy vs.

Then is it to bee vnderstood that all the ordinance vpon the Iland was in the Spanyardes handes, which did vs so great annoyance, that it cutt all the Maſtes and yardes of the Ieſus, in ſuch ſort that there was no hope to cary her away: alſo it ſunke our ſmall ſhippes, whereupon wee determined to place the Ieſus on that ſide of the Mynion that ſhee myght abide all the batterie from the lande, and ſo be a defence for the Mynion till night, and then to take ſuch reliefe of victuall and other neceſſaries from the Ieſus as the time would ſuffer vs, and to leaue her. As wee were thus determining and had placed the Minion from the ſhott of the lande, ſuddenly the Spanyardes had fired two great ſhippes which were coming directly with vs, and hauing no meanes to auoide the fire, it dread among our men a marueilous feare, ſo that ſome ſayd, let vs depart with the Minion, other ſayde, let vs ſee where the winde will carrie the fyre from vs. But to bee ſhort, the Mynions men which had alwayes there ſayles in a readineſſe, thought to make ſure worke, and ſo without eyther conſent of the Captayne or Maſter cutte their ſayle, ſo that verie hardly I was receaued into the Mynion.

A hard caſe.

Fire.

The moſt part of the men that were left a lyue in the Ieſus, made ſhift and followed the Minion in a ſmall boat, the reſt which the little boate was not able to receaue, were inforced to abide the mercy of the Spanyards (which I doubt was very little): ſo with the Minion onely and the Iudith (a ſmall barke of fiftye tunne) wee eſcaped, which barke the ſame nyght forſooke vs in our great myſerie: wee were nowe remooued with the Mynion from the Spanyſhe ſhippes two bowe ſhootes and there roade all that nyght: the next morning wee recouered an Iſlande a myle from the Spanyardes where there tooke vs a North winde, and being left onely with two Ankers and two cables (for in this conflicte wee loſte three Cables and two Ankers) wee thought alwayes vpon death which euer was preſent, but God preſerued vs to a longer tyme.

Small hope to be had of tyrants.

A ſtorme.

The weather waxed reaſonable, and the Saturday wee ſet ſayle, and hauing a great number of men and lyttle victuals our hope of life waxed leſſe and leſſe: ſome deſired to yelde to the Spanyardes, ſome rather deſired to obtayne a place where they might giue themſelues to the Infidels, and ſome had rather abide with a little pittance the mercie of God at Sea: ſo thus with manie ſorowfull hearts wee wandred in an vnknowen Sea by the ſpace of fourteene dayes, tyll hunger inforced vs to ſeeke the lande, for hides were thought very good meate, ratts, cattes, miſe and dogges none eſcaped that myght bee gotten, parrotts and monkayes that were had in great price, were thought there very profitable if they ſerued the tourne one dinner: thus in the ende the eyght day of October wee came to the lande in the bottome of the ſame bay of Mexico in twenty three degrees and a halfe where wee hoped to haue founde inhabitantes of the Spanyardes, reliefe of victualles, and place for the repaire of our ſhippe, which was ſo ſore beaten with ſhotte from our enemyes and bruſed with ſhooting of our owne ordinance, that our weary and weake armes were ſcarce able to defende and keepe out the water. But all thinges happened to the contrary, for we founde neyther people, victuall, nor hauen of reliefe, but a place where hauing faire weather with ſome perill we might land a boate: our people being forced with hunger deſired to be ſet a land, whereunto I concluded.

Small hope of life.

Hard choiſe.

Myſeries.

October 1568.

Many miſeries.

And ſuch as were willing to land I put them apart, and ſuch as were deſirous to goe homewards, I put apart, ſo that they were indifferently parted a hundred of one ſide and a hundred of the other ſide: theſe hundred men we ſet a land with all diligence in this little place before ſaid, which being landed, we determined there to refreſh our water, and ſo with our little remaine of victuals to take the Sea.

The next day hauing a lande with me fiftie of our hundreth men that remained for the ſpeedier preparing of our water aboorde, there aroſe an extreme ſtorme, ſo that in three dayes we could by no meanes repayre our ſhippes: the ſhippe alſo was in ſuch perill that euery houre we looked for ſhipwracke.

The greateſt miſerie of all.

But yet God againe had mercie on vs, ſent faire weather, had aboorde our water, and departed the ſixteene day of October, after which day wee had faire and proſperous weather till the ſixteene day of Nouember, which day God be prayſed wee were cleere from the coaſt of the Indians, and out of the Chanell and Goulfe of Bahama, which is betweene the Cape of Florida, and the Ilandes of Cuba. After this growing neere to the colde Countrie, our men being oppreſſed with Famine, died continually, and they that

Nouember.

The goulfe of Bahama.

were left, grewe into such weakenes that wee were scantly able to manure our ship, and the wind being alwaies ill for vs to recouer England, determined to go with Galicia in Spaine, with intent there to releeue our company & other extreame wants. And being arriued the last day of December. December in a place neare vnto Vigo called Ponte vedra, our men with excesse of fresh meate grew into miserable diseases, and died a great part of them. This matter was borne out as long as it might be, but in the end although there was none of our men suffered to goe a lande, yet by accesse of the Spanyardes, our feblenes was knowen to them. Whereupon they ceassed not to secke by all meanes to betraie vs, but with all speede possible we departed to Vigo, where we had some helpe of certaine English ships & xii. fresh men wherewith we repaired our wants as wee might, and departing the xx. day of January 1568. arriued in Mounts bay in Cornewale the xxv. Iannarie. of the same moneth, praised be God therefore.

If all the miseries and troublesome affaires of this sorowfull voyage should be perfectly and throughly written, there should neede a paynfull man with his penne, and as great a time as hee had that wrote the liues and deathes of the martirs.

Iohn Hawkins.

The Relation of Dauid Ingram of Barking, in the Countie of *Essex Sayler, of sundry things which he with others did see, in traueiling by* land from the most Northerly partes of the Baie of Mexico (where he with many others were set on shoare by Master Hawkins) through a great part of America, vntill he came within fiftie leagues or there abouts of Cape Britton.

About the beginning of October, Anno 1568. Dauid Ingram with the rest of his company being 100. persons in all, were set on land by M. Iohn Hawkins, about fiue Leagues to the West of the riuer La mina, or Rio de Minas, which standeth about 140. leagues west & by North from the cape of Florida, who traueling towards cape Britton, spent about 12. moneths in the whole, And about seuen moneths thereof in those Countries, which lie towards the North of the riuer of May, in which time (as the said Ingram thinketh) he traueiled by land two thousand miles at the least, and neuer continued in any one place aboue three or foure dayes, sauing onely at the Citie of Balma, where he stayed fiue or seuen dayes.

Kings. There are in those partes (sayth he) very many Kings, commonly within a hundreth or a hundreth and twenty miles one from an other, who are at continual warres together: The first King that they came before, dwelt in a Countrey called Giricka, who caused them to be stripped naked, and wondring greatly at the whitenes of their skins, let them depart without further harme.

Large pretious stones. The Kings in those Countries are clothed with painted or coloured garments, and thereby you may know them, and they weare great pretious stones, which commonly are Rubies, being 4. inches long, and two inches broad. And if the same bee taken from them, either by force or sleight, they are presently depriued of their kingdomes.

The Kings in their maiestie. When they meane to speake with any person publikely, they are alwaies carried by men in a sumptuous chaire of Siluer or Christal, garnished with diuers sortes of pretious stones.

The maner of saluting their kings. And if you will speake with the king at your first approching neere to him, you must kneele downe on both your knees, and then arise againe and come somewhat neerer him, within your length, thē kneele downe againe as you did before. Then take of the earth or grasse betwen both your hands, kissing the backside of each of them, and put the earth or grasse on the crowne of your head, and so come, & kisse the kings feete. Which circumstances being performed, you may then arise and stand vp, and talke with him.

How to know the noble men. The Noble men and such as be in special fauour with the King, do commonly weare feathers in the haire of their heads for the most part, of a Byrde, as bigge as a goose of russet collour. And this is the best marke that this Ingram can giue to know him by.

Pearle. There is in some of those Countries great aboundance of pearle, for in euery cottage be found pearle, in some houses a quart, in some a pottle, in some a pecke, more or lesse, where he did see some as great as a beane. And Richard Browne one of his companions, found one of these great pearles in one of their Canoes or boats, which pearle he gaue to Mounsier Campain, who tooke them aboard his ship, and brought them to Newhauen in France,

Bracelets of Gold. All the people generally do weare Manilios or Bracelets, as big as a mans finger, vpon each of

of their armes, and the like on the small of eche of their legs, whereof commonly one is golde and two siluer.

And many of the women also doe weare plates of golde, couering their bodies in maner of a payre of curets, and many bracelets and chaines of great pearle. Curets of golde.

The people commonly are of good fauour, feuter & shape of body, of growth aboue fiue foote high, somewhat thicke, with their faces and skins of colour like an oliefe, and toward the North somewhat tawnie, but some of them are painted with diuers colours, they are very swift of foote, the haire of their heads is shauen in sundry spots, and the rest of their head is traced. The fauour and shape of the people.

In the South partes of these countreys they go all naked, sauing that the Noble mens priuities are couered with the necke of a goose, and the womens priuities with the hayre or leafe of the palme tree. But in the North partes they are clothed with beastes skins, the hayrie side being next to their bodies in winter. Naked people

They are so brutish & beastly, that they wil not forbeare the vse of their wiues in open presence. Brutish behauiour.

They are naturally very courteous, if you do not abuse them, either in their persons or goods, but vse them courteously. The killing or taking of their beasts, birds, fishes, or fruites cannot offende them, except it be of their cattell which they keepe about their houses, as Kine, Guinie hennes, or such like. People courteous.

If any of them doe holde vp both their hands at length together, and kisse the backes of them on both sides, then you may vndoubtedly trust them, for it is the greatest token of friendship that may be. A sure token of friendship.

If any of them shal come vnto you with a horsetaile in his hand, then you may assure your selfe that hee is a Messenger from the King, and to him you may safely commit your person, or go to the king, or any where els, or by him send any thing or message to the king. For these men are alwayes either Ensigne bearers in the warres, or the kings messengers, who wil neuer betray you. Messengers from the king

If you will haue any of the people come aboorde your ship, hang out some white cloth vpon a staffe, for that is a signe of amitie. To allure the people to speach.

If you will bargaine for ware with them, leaue the thing that you will sell vpon the ground, and go from it a prettie way off: then wil they come and take it, and set downe such wares as they will giue for it in the place: And if you thinke it not sufficient, leaue the wares with signes that you like it not, and they will bring more, vntill either they or you be satisfied, or will giue no more. Otherwise you may hang your wares vpon a long poles end, and so put more or lesse on it, vntill you haue agreed on the bargaine. The maner of trafique and dealing with them.

When they goe to the warres, they march in battell aray two and three in a ranck. Howe they march in battell.

Their Trumpets they doe make of certaine beasts teeth, they haue a kinde of Drum which they make of beastes skins, they make shields and Targets of the skins of beastes, compassed with willowe twigs, and being dried, they are strong and defensible. Their weapons and instruments for warre.

Their weapons are dartes, headed with yron, the heads are two fingers broad, and halfe a foot long, which are fastened within a socket.

They haue also short bowes, strung with ỹ barke of trees, being halfe an inch broad, & the arrowes are of bone, a yarde long, nocked and headed with siluer & bone, and their arrowes are of small force within a stones cast of them, and you may put them by with a staffe a prettie way off.

They haue short broad swordes of blacke yron of the length of a yarde, or very neere an elle, bearing edges thicker then backs of kniues, somewhat like the foyles in our fence schooles.

They haue crooked kniues of yron, somewhat like a woodknife, or hanger, wherewith they will carue excellently both in wood and bone.

Their Ensigne is a horse taile, with glasse or Christall in some of them being dyed in sundry colours, as red, yellow, greene, &c.

The people in those Countreys are professed enemies to the Canibals or men eaters: The Canibals doe most inhabite betweene Norumbega, & Bariniah, they haue teeth like dogs teeth, and thereby you may know them. In the warres they doe pitch their campe as neere as they may vnto some wood of Palme tree, which yeelde them meate, drinke, and present remedy against poysoned arrowes. Canibals.

Their buildings are weake and of small force, their houses are made round like Doue houses, and they doe dwell together in Townes and Villages. And some of them haue banqueting houses in the top of them, made like the louer of a hall, builded with pillars of massie siluer, and chrystall, framed square: whereof many of them are as big as a boyes leg of fifteene yeeres of age, and some lesse. Their houses and buildings

This Ingram did also see diuers Townes and Villages, as Gunda, a Towne a flight Townes and Villages.

shoote in length.

Ochala, a great Towne a mile long.

Balma, a rich Citie, a mile and a halfe long.

Bega, a Countrey, and Towne of that name, three quarters of a mile long, where are great store of Oxe hides.

Saguanah, a Towne almost a mile in length.

Bariniah, a Citie a mile and a quarter long: Also there is a Riuer and a Towne of that name, but lesse then the first aboue named.

Gunda, a small Towne and a Riuer, both of that name. And this is the most Northerly part, that this Ingram was at.

There are besides those Townes aforenamed, many other great Townes which this Ingram passed by, commonly distant fiue or eight miles one from the other, which haue diuers small Villages within eight or ten miles from them.

Vessels of massie siluer, for common vses.

They haue in euery house scoupes, buckets, and diuers other vessels of massie siluer, wherewith they doe throwe out water and dust, and otherwise doe imploy them to their necessary vses in their houses: All which this Ingram did see common and vsuall in some of these Countreys, especially where he found the great Pearles.

Gold in the heads of Riuers.

There are also great riuers, at the heads whereof, this Ingram & his companions did find sundry pieces of golde, some as big as a mans fist, the earth being washed away with the water.

Rocks of chrystall.

And in other places, they did see great rockes of Chrystal, which growe at the heads of great and many Riuers, being in quantitie to loade shippes.

Fine Furres.

There are also in those partes, plentie of fine Furres, vnknowen to this Ingram, dressed after the maner of the Countrey.

Sweete turfe to burne.

The people there do burne a kind of white Turfe or earth, which they dig out of the marishes, a fadome deepe in the ground. It burneth very cleare, and smelleth as sweete as muske, and that earth is as wholesome, sweete, and comfortable, to smell vnto, as any Pomander. They do make their fire of this earth for the sweetnes thereof, hauing great aboundance of wood.

Their maner of kindling fire

When they want fire, they take briers, and rub them very hard together betweene their fists, and so with hard and often rubbing they kindle and make fire.

Iron and Minerall salt.

They haue great plentie of Iron, and there is also great plentie of minerall salt, in the marish ground which looketh reddish, a thing necessary for the great fishings neere the sea shore, which are there aboundant, and the fish very large and huge.

The fertilitie of the soyle.

The ground & Countrey is most excellent, fertile and pleasant, & specially towards the Riuer of May. For the grasse of ỳ rest is not so greene, as it is in these parts, for the other is burnt away with the heate of the Sunne. And as all the Countrey is good and most delicate, hauing great

Plaines.

plaines, as large & as fayre in many places as may be seene, being as plaine as a board: And then

Great woods. Palmes.

great & huge woods of sundry kind of trees, as cedar, Lignum vitæ, Bombasse, plants & bushes, bark that biteth like Pepper, (of which kind, yong M. Winter brought home part from ỳ straight of Magelane) with the fruitfull Palme tree, & great plentie of other sweete trees to this Ingram

Closes and pastures.

vnknowen. And after that plaines againe, and in other places great closes of pasture, enuironed with most delicate trees, in stead of hedges: they being as it were set by the hands of men: Yet the best grasse for the most part is in the high Countries, somewhat farre from the Sea side, and great Riuers, by reason that the lowe grounds there be so rancke, that the grasse groweth faster then it can be eaten, whereby the olde grasse lieth withered thicke, and the newe grasse growing through it. Whereas in the vpper partes, the grasse and ground is most excellent and greene. The ground not being ouercharged with any olde withered grasse, as is afore specified.

The Palme tree.

The Palme tree aforesayd carieth hayres on the leaues thereof, which reach to the ground, Whereof the Indians doe make ropes and cords for their Cotten beds, and doe vse the same to many other purposes.

Wine of the Palme.

The which Tree, if you pricke with your knife, about two foote from the roote, it will yeelde a Wine in colour like whey, but in taste strong and somewhat like Bastard, which is most excellent drinke. But it wil distemper both your head and body, if you drinke too much thereof, as our strong Wines wil doe in these partes.

Meate of the Palme.

The branches of ỳ top of ỳ tree, are most excellent meat raw, after you haue pared away ỳ bark.

Oyle against poysoned arrowes.

Also there is a red oyle that commeth out of ỳ roote of this tree, which is most excellent against poisoned arrowes & weapons: for by it they doe recouer themselues of their poysoned wounds.

The Plantine with his fruits

There is a tree called a Plantine, with a fruite growing on it like a pudding, which is most excellent meate rawe.

They

They haue also a red berry like a Pescod, called Guyathos, two or three inches long, which groweth on short bushes full of pricks like the Sloe or Thorne tree, and the fruite eateth like a greene Raisin, but sharper somewhat: They stampe this berry and make Wine thereof, which they keepe in vessels made of wood.

They haue also in many places, Vines which beare Grapes as big as a mans thumbe. Vines with great Grapes.

There is also great plentie of herbes, and of all kinde of flowers, as Roses, and Gilliflowers, like ours in England, and many others which he knewe not. Herbes and flowers.

Also, they haue a kinde of Graine, the eare whereof is as big as the wrist of a mans arme: the Graine is like a flat pease, it maketh very good bread and white. Graine.

They doe also make bread of the roote called Cassaua, which they doe drie, and beate it as small as they can, and temper it with water, and so bake it in cakes on a stone. Bread of a Cassada.

There is also great plenty of Buffes, Beares, Horses, Kine, Woolues, Foxes, Deare, Goats, Sheepe, Hares, and Conies: Also other cattell like ours, to this Examinate vnknowen, the most part being wilde: the Hides and skinnes of them are good Marchandize. There is very great store of those Buffes, which are beasts as big as two Oxen, in length almost twentie foot, hauing long eares like a Blood hound, with long haires about their eares, their hornes be crooked like Rams hornes, their eyes blacke, their haires long, blacke, rough, & shagged as a Goat: The Hides of these beasts are solde very deare, this Beast doeth keepe companie onely by couples, male and female, & doeth alwayes fight with others of the same kinde when they do meete. There is also great plentie of Deare both red, white, and speckled. This last sort this Examinate knoweth not. There is also great plentie of another kinde of Sheepe which carie a kinde of course wooll: This Sheepe is very good meate, although the flesh be very red. They are exceeding fatte, and of nature loth to rise when they are laid, which is alwayes from fiue a clocke at night, vntill fiue a clocke in the morning: betweene which time you may easily kill them, but after they be on foote they are very wilde, & rest not in one place, but liue together in heards, in some 500. as it happeneth, more or lesse: And these red Sheepe are most about the Bay of Saint Marie, as this Examinate gesseth. There are Beares both blacke and white. There are Woolues. The Foxes haue their skins more grilled then ours in England. There are Conies both white and red, and grey in euery place great plentie. Beasts of sundry kindes. Vacca giboſa, supposed a Buffe. Deare. Sheepe bearing woolle the flesh red.

This Examinate did also see in those Countries a Monstrous beast twise as big as an Horse, and in proportion like to an Horse, both in maine, hoofe, haire, and neighing, sauing it was small towards the hinder partes like a Grey hound. These Beasts hath two teeth or hornes of a foote long growing straight foorth by their nosethrilles: they are naturall enemies to the Horse. A strange Beast.

Hee did also see in that Countrey both Elephants and Ounces. Hee did also see one other strange Beast bigger then a Beare, he had neither head nor necke: his eyes and mouth were in his breast. This beast is very vgly to beholde, and cowardly of kinde. It beareth a very fine skin like a Rat, full of siluer haires. Elephants and Ounces. A strange shapen Beast.

There are in those Countries abundance of Russet Parrots, but very fewe greene. There are also Birds of all sortes as we haue, and many strange Birds to this Examinate vnknowen. There are great plenty of Guinie hennes which are tame Birds, and proper to the Inhabitants, as big as Geese, very blacke of colour, hauing feathers like Downe. There is also a Bird called a Flamingo, whose feathers are very red, and is bigger then a Goose, billed like a Shoueil, and is very good meate. There is also another kinde of Foule in that Countrey which hunteth the Riuers neere vnto the Ilands: They are of the shape and bignesse of a Goose but their wings are couered with small yelowe feathers, and cannot flie: You may driue them before you like sheepe: They are exceeding fatte and very delicate meate, they haue white heads, and therefore the Countrey men call them Penguins (which seemeth to be a Welsh name.) And they haue also in vse diuers other Welsh words, a matter worthy the noting. There is also a very strange Bird, thise as big as an Eagle, very beautifull to beholde, his feathers are more orient then a Peacockes feathers, his eyes are glistering as an Hawkes eyes, but as great as a mans eyes, his head and thigh as big as a mans head and thigh: It hath a crest and tuffe of feathers of sundry colours on the top of the head like a Lapwing hanging backwards: His beake and talents in proportion like Egles, but very huge and large. Russet Parrots. Birds like ours. Guinie hens. A red Bird. Penguins. A great strage Bird.

Touching Tempests and other strange monstrous things in those partes, this Examinate saith, that he hath seene it Lighten and Thunder in sommer season by the space of foure & twentie houres together: the cause whereof he iudgeth to be the heate of the Climate. Tempests.

He farther saith, that there is a Cloud sometime of the yeere seene in the ayre, which commonly turneth to great Tempests. And that sometimes of the yeere there are great windes in maner Furicanes. Turnados.

of

of Whirlewindes.

Their maner of Religion.

Touching their Religion, he saith that they honor for their God a Deuil, which they call Colluchio, who speaketh vnto them sometimes in the likenesse of a blacke Dogge, and sometimes in the likenesse of a blacke Calfe.

And some doe honor the Sunne, the Moone, and the Starres.

Adulterie punished with death.

He saith ẏ the people in those Countries are allowed many Wiues, some fiue, some tenne, & a king sometimes an hundred: And ẏ Adulterie is very seuerely punished in maner following, that is to say: The woman taken in adulterie, must with her owne hands cut ẏ throte of the Adulterer, and the next of his kindred both likewise cut ẏ throte of the Adulteresse. And being asked in what maner they take their executions, he saith: That they are brought to execution by certaine Magistrates, who do deliuer vnto ẏ woman the knife, wherewith she cutteth ẏ throte of the Adulterer.

Then appeareth their Colluchio or Deuil, in the likenesse aforesaid, and speaketh vnto them, and to that Deuil the parties brought to execution doe great reuerence, and with many prayers to it doe take their death.

Their maner of Burials.

He saith that such persons as are put to death in such sort, haue not any of their friends buried with them: but such as die naturally, haue alwayes buried quicke with them one of their dearest friendes to keepe them companie, and to prouide necessaries and victuall for them, who doe willingly cõsent thereto, being thereto perswaded by their Colluchio or Deuil, whõ they do worship.

The Deuil fled away at the name of the holy Trinitie.

He saith further, that he & his two fellowes, namely, Richard Browne, and Richard Twide, went into a poore mans house, & there they did see the said Colluchio or Deuil, with very great eyes like a blacke Calfe: Vpon the sight whereof, Browne saide, There is the Deuil, and thereupon he blessed himselfe: In the name of the Father, and of the Sonne, and of the holy Ghost. And Twide said very vehemently, I defie thee and all thy workes. And presently the Colluchio shrancke away in a stealing maner forth of the doores, and was seene no more vnto them.

Great Riuers.

Also they passed ouer many great Riuers in those Countries, in Canoes or Boates: some foure, some sixe, some eight, some tenne miles ouer: whereof one was so large, that they could scarse crosse the same in foure and twentie houres.

Musicall instruments.

Also he saith, that in the same Countrie, the people haue instruments of Musicke made of a piece of a Cane, almost a foote long, being open at both endes: which sitting downe, they smite vpon their thighes and one of their handes, making a pleasant kind of sound.

And they do vse an other kind of instrument like a Taber, couered with a white skinne somewhat like Parchment.

This Examinate can very well describe their gestures, daunsing, and songs.

After long trauaile, the aforesaide Dauid Ingram with his two companions Browne and Twide, came to the head of a riuer called Garinda, which is 60. Leagues West frõ Cape Britton: where they vnderstood by the people of that Countrey of ẏ arriuall of a Christian. Whereupon they made their repaire to the Sea side, and there found a French Captaine named Monsieur Champaigne, who tooke them into his Shippe and brought them vnto Newhauen, & from thence they were transported into England, Anno. Dom. 1569.

Siluer mens change of trifles.

This Monsieur Campaigne, with diuers of his companie was brought into ẏ Village of Bariniah, about twentie miles vp into the Countrie by ẏ said Examinate and his two Companions, by whose meanes he had a trade with the people of diuers sortes of fine furres, & of great redde leaues of trees almost a yard long, & about a foote broade, which he thinketh are good for dying.

Also the said Monsieur Champaigne, had there for exchange of trifling wares, a good quantitie of rude, and wrought siluer.

He saith further, that diuers of the said Frenchmen which were in the said Shippe called the Gargarine, are yet liuing in Homflewe vpon the coast of France, as he thinketh, for he did speake with some of them within these three yeeres.

About a fortnight after their comming from Newhauen into England, this saide Examinate and his two companions came to master John Hawkins, who had set them on shore vpon the Baie of Mexico, and vnto eche of them he gaue a reward.

Richard Browne his companion was slaine about fiue yeeres past in the Elizabeth of master Cockins of London: And Richard Twide his other cõpanion died at Ratcliffe in John Sherewoods house there, about three yeeres past.

The language of some of the Countreis.

Gwando. Is a worde of Salutation, as among vs: Good morrowe, Good euen, God saue you or such like.
Caricona. A King.
Caraccona. A Lord.

Fom.

Fona. Bread.
Carmugnar. The Pꝛiuities.
Kericca. The Sunne.

Alſo the ſayd Dauid Ingram trauelling towardes the Nꝛth, fonnd the maine ſea vpon the Nꝛthſide of America, and trauailed in the ſight thereof the ſpace of two whole dayes, where the people ſignified vnto him, that they had ſeene ſhippes on that coaſt, and did dꝛaw vpon the ground the ſhape and figure of ſhippes, and of their ſailes and flagges. Which thing eſpecially pꝛoueth the paſſage of the Nꝛthweſt, and is agreeable to the experience of Vaſques de Coronado, which found a ſhippe of China oꝛ Cataia vpon the Nꝛthweſt of America. The maine Sea on the Nꝛth parte of America.

Alſo the ſayd examinate ſayth, that there is an Iland called Corraſau, and there are in it fiue oꝛ ſix thouſand Indians at the leaſt, and all thoſe are gouerned by one onely Negro, who is but a ſlaue to a Spaniard. And moꝛeouer the Spanyardes will ſend but one of their ſlaues with an hundꝛed oꝛ two hundꝛed of the Indians, when they goe to gather golde in the Riuers deſcending from the mountaines. And when they ſhal be abſent by the ſpace of twentie oꝛ thirty dayes at the leaſt, euery one of the Indians will neuertheleſſe obey all the Slaues commaundements with as great reuerence, as if he were their naturall King, although there be neuer a Chriſtian neere them by the ſpace of an hundꝛed oꝛ two hundꝛed miles: which argueth the great obedience of thoſe people, and how eaſily they may be gouerned when they be once conquered. Corraſau Iland.

A diſcourſe written by one Miles Phillips Engliſhman, one of *the company put a ſhore in the VVeſt Indies by M. Iohn Hawkins in the* yeere 1568. contayning many ſpeciall things of that countrie and of the Spaniſh gouernement, but ſpecially of their cruelties vſed to our Engliſhmen, and amongſt the reſt to himſelfe for the ſpace of 15. or 16. yeeres together, vntill by good and happy meanes he was deliuered from their bloody hands and returned to his owne countrie. Anno, 1582.

The firſt Chapter.

Wherein is ſhewed the day and time of our departure from of the coaſt of England, with the number, and names of the ſhippes, their Captaines and Maſters, and of our traffique and dealing vpon the coaſt of Africa.

VPon mundᵃy being the ſecond of October, 1567. the weather being reaſonable fayꝛe, our Generall M. Iohn Hawkins, hauing commaunded all his captaines and maſters to be in a readineſſe to make ſayle with him, hee himſelfe being imbarked in the Ieſus, wherof was appointed foꝛ Maſter, Robert Barret, hoyſed ſayle, and departed from Plymmoth vpon his intended voyage foꝛ the parts of Africa, & America, being accompanied with fiue other ſayle of ſhippes, as namely the Mynion, wherein went foꝛ Captaine Maſter Iohn Hampton, and Iohn Garret Maſter. The William and Iohn, wherein was Captaine Thomas Bolton, and James Raunce Maſter. The Iudith, in whome was Captaine M. Francis Drake now knight, and the Angel whoſe Maſter, as alſo the Captaine and Maſter of the Swallow I now remember not. And ſo ſayling in companie together vpon our voyage vntill the tenth of the ſame moneth, an extreame ſtoꝛme then tooke vs neere vnto cape Finiſter, which dured foꝛ the ſpace of foure dayes, and ſo ſeparated our ſhippes, that wee had loſt one another, and our Generall finding the Ieſus to be but in yll caſe, was in minde to giue ouer the voyage, and to returne home. Howbeit the eleuenth of the ſame moneth the ſeas waxing calme, and the winde comming fayꝛe, he altered his purpoſe, and helde on the foꝛmer entended voyage: And ſo comming to the Iland of Gomera being one of the Ilands of the Canaries, where according to an oꝛder befoꝛe appoynted, we met with all our ſhippes which were befoꝛe diſperſed, wee then tooke in freſh water and departed from thence the fourth of Nouember, and holding on our courſe, vpon the eightenth day of the ſame moneth we came to an anker vpon the coaſte of Africa, at cape Verde in twelue fadome water, and here our Generall landed certaine of our men,

This fleete conſiſteth of 6. ſhippes.
1 The Ieſus
2 The Mynion.
3 The William and Iohn.
4 The Iudith.
5 The Angel.
6 The Swallowe.

men, to the number of 160 or there about, seeking to take some Negroes. And they going vp in to the countrey for the space of six miles, were incountred with a great number of the Negroes: who with their inuenomed arrowes did hurt a great number of our men, so that they were inforced to retyre to the shippes, in which conflict they recouered but a fewe Negroes, and of these our men which were hurt with their enuenomed arrowes, there died to the number of 7. or 8. in very strange maner, with their mouths shut, so that we were forced to put stickes & other things into their mouths to keepe them open, & so afterward passing the time vpon the coast of Guinea, vntill the twelft of Januarie, we obteined by that time the number of 150 Negroes. And being ready to depart from the sea coast, there was a Negro sent as an Ambassadour to our Generall, from a King of the Negroes, which was oppressed with other Kings his bordering neighbours, desiring our Generall to graunt him succour and ayde against those his enemies, which our Generall graunted vnto, and went himselfe in person a land, with the number of 200 of our men or thereabouts, and the sayde King which had requested our ayde, did ioyne his force with ours, so that thereby our Generall assaulted, and set fyre vpon a towne of the sayd King his enemies, in which there was at the least the number of 8 or 10 thousand Negroes, and they perceiuing that they were not able to make any resistance sought by flight to saue themselues, in which their flight there were taken prisoners to the number of 8 or 900, which our Generall ought to haue had for his share: howbeit the Negro King which requested our ayde falsifying his worde and promise, secretly in the night conuayed himselfe away with as many prisoners as hee had in his custodie: but our Generall notwithstanding finding himselfe to haue nowe very neere the number of 500 Negroes thought it best without longer abode to depart with them, and such marchandize as he had from the coast of Africa towardes the west Indies, and therefore commanded with all diligence to take in fresh water and fewel, and so with speede to prepare to depart. Howbeit before we departed from thence, in a storme that we had, we lost one of our ships namelie the William and Iohn, of which ship and of her people, we heard no tidings during the time of our voyage.

The 2. Chapter.

Wherein is shewed the day and time of our departure from the coast of Africa, with the day and time of our arriuall in the West Indies, also of our trade, and traffike there, and also of the great crueltie that the Spaniards vsed towards vs, by the Vice-Roy his direction, and appointment, falsifying his faith and promise giuen, and seeking to haue intrapped vs.

ALl things being made in a readinesse, at our Generall his appointment, vpon the third day of Februarie, 1568. we departed from the coast of Affrica, hauing the weather somewhat tempestuous, which made our passage the more hard, and sayling so for the space of 25. dayes, vpon the 27. of March, 1568. we came in sight of an Iland, called Dominica, vpon the coast of America in the West Indies, situated in 14. degrees of latitude, and 222. of longitude: from thence our Generall coasted from place to place, euer making traffike with the Spaniards, and Indians as he might, which was somewhat hardly obtayned, for that the king had straightly charged all his gouernours in those partes not to trade with any: yet notwithstanding, during the months of April, and May, our General had reasonable trade and traffike, and curteous entertainement in sundry places, as at Margarita, Coraisao, and els where, til we came to Cape de la vela, & Rio de Hacha, (a place from whence all the pearles doe come:) the gouernour there would not by any meanes permit vs to haue any trade or traffike, nor yet suffer vs to take in fresh water: By meanes whereof our Generall for the auoyding of famine & thirst about the beginning of June, was enforced to lande two hundreth of our men, and so by maine force and strength to obtaine that which by no faire meanes he coulde procure: And so recouering the Towne with the losse of two of our men, there was a secrete and peaceable trade admitted, and the Spaniards came in by night, and bought of our Negroes to the number of two hundreth and vpwards, and of our other marchandize also. From thence we departed for Carthagena, where the Gouernour was so straight, that we coulde not obteine any traffike there, and so for that our trade was neere finished, our Generall thought it best to depart from thence the rather for the auoiding of certaine dangerous stormes called the Huricanos, which accustomed to beginne there about that time of the yeere, and so the 24. of July 1568. wee departed from thence directing our course North, leauing the Ilands of Cuba vpon our right hand, to the East ward of vs, and so sayling towarde Florida, vpon the 12 of August, an extreme tempest arose, which dured for the space of eight dayes, in which our ships were most dangerously tossed & beaten hither, & thither,

so

so that wee were in continuall feare to bee drowned by reason of the shallownesse of the coaste, and in the ende we were constrayned to flee for succour to the port of S. Iohn de Vllua, or Vera Cruz, scituated in 19 degrees of latitude, and in 200. seuentie nine degrees of longitude which is the porte that serueth for the citie of Mexico: in our seeking to recouer this porte our Generall met by the way, three small shippes that caryed passengers, which hee tooke with him, and so the sixtenth of September, 1568 wee entred the sayde port of S. Iohn de Vllua. The Spaniards there supposing vs to haue bene the King of Spaynes fleete, the chiefe officers of the countrey there abouts came presently aborde our Generall, where perceiuing themselues to haue made an vnwise aduenture, they were in great feare to haue bene taken and staied: howbeit our Generall did vse them all very curteously: in the sayd porte there were twelue shippes, which by report had in them in treasure to the valew of 200 thousand pound, all which being in our Generall his power and at his deuotion, he did freely set at libertie, as also the passengers which he had before staied, not taking from any of them all the valewe of one groate: onely he staied two men of credite and account, the one named Don Laurenzo de Alua, and the other Don Pedro de Reuera, and presently our Generall sent to the Vizroye to Mexico which was tweluescore leagues of, certifying him of our arriuall there by force of weather, desiring that forasmuch as our Queene his Soueraigne, was the King of Spayne his louing sister and friend, that therefore he would, considering our necessities and wants, furnish vs with victuals for our mony, and quietly to suffer vs to repaire and amend our shippes. And furthermore that at the arriuall of the Spanish fleete which was there dayly expected and looked for, to the ende that there might no quarrell arise betweene them, and our Generall and his companye for the breach of amitie, hee humbly requested of his excellencie, that there might in this behalfe some speciall order bee taken. This message was sent away the 16 of September, 1568, it being the very day of our arriuall there. The next morning being the seuentenih of the same moneth, we descryed 13 sayle of great shippes: and after that our Generall vnderstood, that it was the king of Spaynes Fleete then looked for, hee presently sent to aduertise the Generall hereof, of our being in the sayde porte, and giuing him further to vnderstande, that before hee should enter there into that harbour, it was requisite that there shoulde passe betweene the two Generals some orders and conditions to bee obserued on either part, for the better continuing of peace betweene them and theirs, according to our Generals request made vnto the Viceroye. And at this instant our Generall was in a great perplexitie of minde, considering with himselfe that if he should keepe out that fleete from entring into the porte, a thing which he was very wel able to doe with the helpe of God, then should that fleete be in danger of present shipwracke and losse of all their substance, which amounted vnto the valewe of one myllion and 800 thousande crownes. Againe he saw that if he suffered them to enter, hee was assured that they would practise by all maner of meanes to betray him and his, and on the other side the hauen was so litle, that the other fleete entring, the shippes were to ride one hard aborde of another: also hee sawe that if their fleete should perish by his keeping of them out, as of necessitie they must if he should haue done so, then stoode he in great feare of the Queene our Soueraignes displeasure in so weighty a cause, therefore did hee choose the lest euill, which was to suffer them to enter vnder assurance, and so to stande vpon his garde, and to defende himselfe and his from their treasens which we were wel assured they would practise, and so the messenger being returned from Don Martine de Henriques, the new Viceroy, who came in the same Fleete, and had sufficient authoritie to commaund in al cases both by sea and by land in this prouince of Mexico or new Spaine, did certifie our General, that for the better maintenance of amitie betweene the king of Spaine and our Soueraigne, all our requests should bee both fauourably graunted, and faithfully performed: signifying further that he heard and vnderstood of the honest and friendly dealing of our Generall, toward the King of Spaynes subiects in all places where he had bene, as also in the sayde porte: so that to be breefe our requests were articled, and set downe in writing. viz.

1 The first was that wee might haue victuals for our money, and license to sell as much wares, as might suffice to furnish our wants.

2 The second, that we might be suffered peaceably to repayre our shippes.

3 The third that the Iland might bee in our possession during the time of our abode there, in which Iland our Generall for the better safetie of him and his, had alreadie planted and placed certaine ordinance which were eleuen peeces of brasse, therefore hee required that the same might so continew, and that no Spaniard should come to land in the sayde Iland, hauing or bearing any kinde of weapon about him.

4 The fourth and the last, that for the better and more sure performance and maintenance of peace

4. Articles concluded vpon, betwixt the English and the Spaniards: although the treacherous Spaniards kept none of them.

men, to the number of 160 or there about, seeking to take some Negroes. And they going vp in to the countrey for the space of six miles, were incountred with a great number of the Negroes: who with their inuenomed arrowes did hurt a great number of our men, so that they were inforced to retyre to the shippes, in which conflict they recouered but a fewe Negroes, and of these our men which were hurt with their enuenomed arrowes, there died to the number of 7. or 8. in very strange maner, with their mouths shut, so that we were forced to put stickes & other things into their mouths to keepe them open, & so afterward passing the time vpon the coast of Guinee, vntill the twelft of Ianuarie, we obteined by that time the number of 150 Negroes. And being ready to depart from the sea coast, there was a Negro sent as an Ambassadour to our Generall, from a King of the Negroes, which was oppressed with other Kings his bordering neighbours, desiring our Generall to graunt him succour and ayde against those his enemies, which our Generall graunted vnto, and went himselfe in person a land, with the number of 200 of our men or thereabouts, and the sayde King which had requested our ayde, did ioyne his force with ours, so that thereby our Generall assaulted, and set fyre vpon a towne of the sayd King his enemies, in which there was at the least the number of 8 or 10 thousand Negroes, and they perceiuing that they were not able to make any resistance sought by flight to saue themselues, in which their flight there were taken prisoners to the number of 8 or 900. which our Generall ought to haue had for his share: howbeit the Negro King which requested our ayde falsifying his worde and promise, secretly in the night conuayed himselfe away with as many prisoners as hee had in his custodie: but our Generall notwithstanding finding himselfe to haue nowe very neere the number of 500 Negroes thought it best without longer abode to depart with them, and such marchandize as he had from the coast of Africa towardes the west Indies, and therefore commanded with all diligence to take in fresh water and fewel, and so with speede to prepare to depart. Howbeit before we departed from thence, in a storme that we had, we lost one of our ships namelie the William and Iohn, of which ship and of her people, we heard no tidings during the time of our voyage.

The 2. Chapter.

Wherein is shewed the day and time of our departure from the coast of Africa, with the day and time of our arriuall in the West Indies, also of our trade, and traffike there, and also of the great cruelty that the Spaniards vsed towards vs, by the Vice-Roy his direction, and appointment, falsifying his faith and promise giuen, and seeking to haue intrapped vs.

ALl things being made in a readinesse, at our Generall his appointment, vpon the third day of Februarie, 1568. we departed from the coast of Affrica, hauing the weather somewhat tempestuous, which made our passage the more hard, and sayling so for the space of 25. dayes, vpon the 27. of March, 1568. we came in sight of an Iland, called Dominica, vpon the coast of America in the West Indies, situated in 14. degrees of latitude, and 222. of longitude: from thence our Generall coasted from place to place, euer making traffike with the Spaniards, and Indians as he might, which was somewhat hardly obtayned, for that the king had straightly charged all his gouernours in those partes not to trade with any: yet notwithstanding, during the monethes of Aprill, and May, our General had reasonable trade and traffike, and curteous entertainement in sundry places, as at Margarita, Coraisao, and els where, til we came to Cape de la vela, & Rio de Hacha, (a place from whence all the pearles doe come:) the gouernour there would not by any meanes permit vs to haue any trade or traffike, nor yet suffer vs to take in fresh water: By meanes whereof our Generall for the auoyding of famine & thirst about the beginning of June, was enforced to lande two hundreth of our men, and so by maine force and strength to obtaine that which by no faire meanes he coulde procure: And so recouering the Towne with the losse of two of our men, there was a secrete and peaceable trade admitted, and the Spaniards came in by night, and bought of our Negroes to the number of two hundreth and vpwards, and of our other marchandize also. From thence we departed for Carthagena, where the Gouernour was so straight, that we coulde not obteine any traffike there, and so for that our trade was neere finished, our Generall thought it best to depart from thence the rather for the auoiding of certaine dangerous stormes called the Huricanos, which accustomed to beginne there about that time of the yeere, and so the 24. of July 1568. wee departed from thence directing our course North, leauing the Ilands of Cuba vpon our right hand, to the East ward of vs, and so sayling towarde Florida, vpon the 12 of August, an extreme tempest arose, which dured for the space of eight dayes, in which our ships were most dangerously tossed & beaten hither, & thither,

so

ſo that wee were in continuall feare to bee drowned by reaſon of the ſhallowneſſe of the coaſte, and in the ende we were conſtrayned to flee for ſuccour to the porte of S. Iohn de Vllua, or Vera Cruz, ſcituated in 19 degrees of latitude, and in 200. ſeuentie nine degrees of longitude which is the porte that ſerueth for the citie of Mexico: in our ſeeking to recouer this porte our Generall met by the way, three ſmall ſhippes that caryed paſſengers, which hee tooke with him, and ſo the ſixteenth of September, 1568 wee entred the ſayde porte of S. Iohn de Vllua. The Spaniards there ſuppoſing vs to haue bene the King of Spaynes fleete, the chiefe officers of the countrey there abouts came preſently aborde our Generall, where perceiuing themſelues to haue made an vnwiſe aduenture, they were in great feare to haue bene taken and ſtayed: howbeit our Generall did vſe them all very curteouſly: in the ſayd porte there were twelue ſhippes, which by report had in them in treaſure to the valew of 200 thouſand pound, all which being in our Generals his power and at his deuotion, he did freely ſet at libertie, as alſo the paſſengers which he had before ſtayed, not taking from any of them all the valewe of one groate: onely he ſtayed two men of credite and account, the one named Don Laurenzo de Alua, and the other Don Pedro de Reuera, and preſently our Generall ſent to the Vizroye to Mexico which was ripeſcore leagues of, certifying him of our arriuall there by force of weather, deſiring that foraſmuch as our Queene his Soueraigne, was the King of Spayne his louing ſiſter and friend, that therefore he would, conſidering our neceſſities and wants, furniſh vs with victuals for our Fleete, and quietly to ſuffer vs to repaire and amend our ſhippes. And furthermore that at the arriuall of the Spaniſh fleete which was there dayly expected and looked for, to the ende that there might no quarrell ariſe betweene them, and our Generall and his companye for the breach of amitie, hee humbly requeſted of his excellencie, that there might in this behalfe ſome ſpeciall order bee taken. This meſſage was ſent away the 16 of September, 1568, it being the very day of our arriuall there. The next morning being the ſeuentenih of the ſame moneth, we deſcryed 13 ſayle of great ſhippes: and after that our Generall vnderſtood, that it was the king of Spaynes Fleete then looked for, hee preſently ſent to aduertiſe the Generall hereof, of our being in the ſayde porte, and giuing him further to vnderſtande, that before hee ſhoulde enter there into that harbour, it was requiſite that there ſhoulde paſſe betweene the two Generals ſome orders and conditions to bee obſerued on either part, for the better continuing of peace betweene them and theirs, according to our Generals requeſt made vnto the Viceroye. And at this inſtant our Generall was in a great perplexitie of minde, conſidering with himſelfe that if he ſhould keepe out that fleete from entring into the porte, a thing which he was very wel able to doe with the helpe of God, then ſhould that fleete be in danger of preſent ſhipwracke and loſſe of all their ſubſtance, which amounted vnto the valewe of one myllion and 800 thouſande crownes. Againe he ſaw that if he ſuffered them to enter, hee was aſſured that they would practiſe by all maner of meanes to betray him and his, and on the other ſide the hauen was ſo litle, that the other fleete entring, the ſhippes were to ride one hard aborde of another: alſo hee ſawe that if their fleete ſhould periſh by his keeping of them out, as of neceſſitie they muſt if he ſhould haue done ſo, then ſtoode he in great feare of the Queene our Soueraignes diſpleaſure in ſo weighty a cauſe, therefore did hee chooſe the leſt euill, which was to ſuffer them to enter vnder aſſurance, and ſo to ſtande vpon his garde, and to defende himſelfe and his from their treaſens which we were wel aſſured they would practiſe, and ſo the meſſenger being returned from Don Martine de Henriques, the new Viceroy, who came in the ſame Fleete, and had ſufficient authoritie to commaund in al cafes both by ſea and by land in this prouince of Mexico or new Spaine, did certifie our General, that for the better maintenance of amitie betweene the king of Spaine and our Soueraigne, all our requeſts ſhould bee both fauourably graunted, and faithfully performed: ſignifying further that he heard and vnderſtood of the honeſt and friendly dealing of our Generall, toward the King of Spaynes ſubiects in all places where he had bene, as alſo in the ſayde porte: ſo that to be briefe our requeſts were articled, and ſet downe in writing. viz.

1 The firſt was that wee might haue victuals for our money, and licenſe to ſell as much heere, as might ſuffice to furniſh our wants.

2 The ſecond, that we might be ſuffered peaceably to repayre our ſhippes.

3 The third that the Iland might bee in our poſſeſſion during the time of our abode there, In which Iland our Generall for the better ſafetie of him and his, had already planted and placed certaine ordinance which were eleuen peeces of braſſe, therefore hee required that the ſame might ſo continew, and that no Spaniard ſhould come to land in the ſayde Iland, hauing or bearing any kinde of weapon about him.

4 The fourth and the laſt, that for the better and more ſure perfourmance and maintenance of peace

4. Articles concluded vpon, betwixt the Engliſh and the Spaniards: although the treacherous Spaniards kept none of them.

peace, and of all the conditions, there might twelue gentilmen of credite be deliuered of either part as hostages. These conditions were concluded and agreed vpon in writing by the viceroy and signed with his hande, and sealed with his seale, and tenne hostages vpon either part were receiued. And further it was concluded that the two Generals should meete, and giue faith eche to other for the performance of the promises. All which being done, the same was proclaymed by the sound of a trumpet, and commaundement was giuen that none of either part should violate or breake the peace vpon payne of death: thus at the end of three dayes all was concluded, and the fleete entred the port, the ships saluting one another as the manner of the sea doth require: the morow after being Friday we laboured on al sides in placing the English ships by themselues, and the Spanish ships by them selues, the captaines and inferiour persons of either part, offering, and shewing great curtesie one to another, and promising great amitie vpon all sides. Howbeit as the sequel shewed, the Spaniards ment nothing lesse vpon their parts. For the Viceroye, and gouernour thereabout, had secretly at land assembled to the number of 1000 chosen men, and well appoynted, meaning the next thursday being the 24 of September at dinner time to assault vs, and set vpon vs on all sides. But before I goe any further, I think it not amisse briefely to discribe the maner of the Iland as it then was, and the force & strength that it is now of. For the Spaniards since the time of our Generals being there, for the better fortifying of the same place, haue vpon the same Iland built a faire castle, and bulwarke very well fortified: this porte was then at our being there, a litle Iland of stones, not past three foote aboue water in the highest place, and not past a bow shotte ouer any way at the most, and it standeth from the mayne land, two bowshootes or more: and there is not in all this coast any other place for ships safely to arriue at: also the North windes in this coast are of great violence and force, and vnlesse the shippes bee safely mored in, with their ankers fastened in this Iland, there is no remedie, but present destruction and shipwracke. All this our generall wisely foreseeing, did prouide that hee would haue the sayde Iland in his custodie, or els the Spaniardes might at their pleasure, haue but cut our cables, and so with the first Northwinde that blewe wee had had our passport, for our shippes had gone a shore. But to returne to the matter. The time approching that their treason must bee put in practise, the same Thursday morning, some appearance thereof beganne to shewe it selfe, as shifting of weapon from shippe to shippe, and planting, and bending their ordinance against our men that warded vpon the lande, with great repayre of people: which apparant shewes of breache of the Viceroyes fayth, caused our Generall to sende one to the Viceroye, to enquire of him what was ment thereby, which presently sent and gaue order, that the ordinance aforesayde, and other things of suspicion shoulde bee remooued, returning answere to our Generall in the fayth of a Viceroye, that hee woulde bee our defense, and safetie from all villanous treacherye: this was vpon Thursday in the morning. Our Generall not being therewith satisfied, seeing they had secretly conuaied a great number of men aboorde a great hulke or ship of theyrs of 900 tunne, which shippe rode hard by the Mynion, hee sent againe to the Viceroy Robert Barret the master of the Iesus, a man that coulde speake the Spanish tongue very well, and required that those men might bee vnshipt againe, which were in that great hulke. The Viceroy then perceiuing that their treason was throughly espied, stayed our Master, and sounded the trumpet, and gaue order that his people should vpon all sides charge vpon our men, which warded on shore, and elsewhere, which strooke such a mase, and sudden feare among vs, that many gaue place, and sought to recouer our ships for the safetie of themselues. The Spaniards which secretly were hid in ambush at lande were quikly conuaied ouer to the Iland in their long boates, and so comming to the Iland, they slewe all our men that they coulde meete with, without any mercie. The Mynion which had somewhat before prepared her selfe to auoyde the danger, haled away and abode the first hunt, of the 300 men that were in the great hulke: then they sought to fall aboorde the Iesus, where was a cruel fight, and many of our men slayne: but yet our men defended themselues, and kept them out: so the Iesus also gotte loose, and ioyning with the Mynion, the fight waxed hot vpon all sides: but they hauing wonne and got our ordinance on shore, did greatly annoy vs. In this fight, there were two great ships of the Spaniards sunke, and one burnt, so that with their shippes they were not able to harme vs, but from the shore they beat vs cruelly with our owne ordinance, in such sort that the Iesus was very sore spoyled, and suddenly the Spaniards hauing fired two great shippes of their owne, they came directly against vs, which bred among our men a maruelous feare. Howbeit the Mynion which had made her sayles ready, shifted for her selfe, without consent of the Generall, captaine or master, so that very hardly our Generall could be receiued into the Mynion: the most of our men that were in the Iesus shifted for themselues

The falsehood of a Spanish Viceroy his fayth.

The villanous treacherie of the Spaniards & their crueltie.

ſelues, and followed the Minion in the boate, and thoſe which that ſmall boate was not able to receiue, were moſt cruelly ſlaine by the Spanyards. Of our ſhippes none eſcaped ſauing the Minion and the Iudith: and all ſuch of our men as were not in them were inforced to abide the tyrannous cruelty of the Spanyards. For it is a certaine trueth, that whereas they had taken certaine of our men at ſhoare, they tooke and hung them vp by the armes vpon high poſtes vntill the bloud burſt out of their fingers ends: of which men ſo vſed, there is one Copſlowe, and certaine others yet aliue, who through the mercifull prouidence of the almighty, were long ſince arriued here at home in England, carrying ſtill about with them (and ſhall to their graues) the markes and tokens of thoſe their inhumane and more then barbarous cruell dealing.

The third Chapter.

Wherein is ſhewed, how that after we were eſcaped from the Spanyards, we were like to periſh with famine at the Sea, and how our Generall, for the auoiding thereof was conſtrained to put halfe of his men on land, and what miſeryes wee after that ſuſtayned amongſt the Sauage people, and how we fell againe into the hands of the Spanyards.

After that the Vice Roy, Don Martin Henriques, had thus contrary to his faith and promiſe, moſt cruelly dealt with our Generall maiſter Hawkins, at S. Iohn de Vllua, where moſt of his men were by the Spanyards ſlaine and drowned, and all his ſhippes ſunke and burnt, ſauing the Minion, and the Iudith which was a ſmall barke of fiftie tunne, wherein was then captaine, maiſter Francis Drake, aforeſaid: the ſame night the ſaid barke loſt vs, we being in great neceſſitie, and inforced to remoue with the Minion two bowſhoote from the Spaniſh fleete, where we ankered all that night: and the next morning we weyed anker, and recouered an Iſland a mile from the Spanyards, where a ſtorme tooke vs with a North winde, in which we were greatly diſtreſſed, hauing but two cables, and two ankers left: for in the conflict before, we had loſt three cables and two ankers. The morrow after, the ſtorme being ceaſed, and the weather fayre, wee weyed, and ſet ſaile, being many men in number, and but ſmall ſtore of victuailes to ſuffice vs for any long time: by meanes whereof we were in diſpayre and feare that wee ſhould periſh through famine, ſo that ſome were in minde to yeelde themſelues to the mercie of the Spanyardes, other ſome to the Sauages or Infidels, and wandering thus certayne dayes in theſe vnknowne Seas, hunger conſtrained vs to eate hides, cattes and dogges, mice, rattes, parats and munkyes: to be ſhort, our hunger was ſo great, that wee thought it ſauourie and ſweete, whatſoeuer we could get to eate.

And on the eight of October we came to lande againe, in the bottome of the bay of Mexico, where we hoped to haue found ſome inhabitants, that we might haue had ſome reliefe of victuailes, and a place where to repayre our ſhippe, which was ſo greatly bruiſed, that wee were vnable with our weary armes to keepe cooth the water: being thus oppreſſed with famine on the one ſide, and danger of drowning on the other, not knowing where to finde reliefe, we began to be in woonderfull deſpayre, and we were of many mindes, amongſt whome there were a great many that did deſire our Generall to ſet them on lande, making they choyſe rather to ſubmit themſelues to the mercie of the Sauages or Infidels then longer to hazard themſelues at Sea, where they very well ſaw, that if they ſhould all remayne together, if they periſhed not by drowning, yet hunger would inforce them in the ende to eate one another: to which requeſt our Generall did very willingly agree, conſidering with himſelfe that it was neceſſary for him to leſſen his number, both for the ſafetie of himſelfe and the reſt: and thereupon being reſolued to ſet halfe his people on ſhoare that hee had then left aliue, it was a woonder to ſee howe ſuddenlie mens mindes were altered, for they which a little before deſired to be ſet on land, were nowe of another minde, and requeſted rather to ſtay: by meanes whereof our Generall was inforced, for the more contentation of all mens mindes, and to take away all occaſions of offence, to take this order: Firſt hee made choyſe of ſuche perſons of ſeruice and account, as were needefull to ſtay, and that being done, of thoſe which were willing to goe he appointed ſuch as hee thought might be beſt ſpared, and preſently appointed that by the boate they ſhould be ſet on ſhoare, our Generall promiſing vs that the next yeere he would either come himſelfe, or elſe ſende to fetche vs home. Heere agayne it would haue

caused any stoup heart to haue relented to heare the pitifull mone that many did make, and how loth they were to depart: the weather was then somewhat stormie and tempestuous, and therefore we were to passe with great danger, yet notwithstanding there was no remedy, but we that were appointed to goe away, must of necessitie doe so. Howbeit those that went in the first boate were safelie set a shoare, but of them which went in the second boate, of which number I my selfe was one, the seas wrought so high, that we could not attayne to the shoare, and therefore we were constrayned through the cruell dealing of John Hampton captaine of the Minion, and John Sanders boatswaine of the Jesus, and Thomas Pollard his mate, to leape out of the boate into the maine Sea, hauing more then a mile to shoare, and so to shift for our selues, and either to sincke or swimme. And of those that so were (as it were) thrown out, and compelled to leape into the Sea, there were two drowned, which were of captaine Blands men.

In the euening of the same day, it being Sunday the eight of October, 1568, when we were all come to shoare, we found fresh water, whereof some of our men drunke so much, that they had almost cast themselues away, for we could scarse get life in them for the space of two or three hours after: other some were so cruelly swollen, what with the drinking in of the salt water, and what with the eating of the fruite which wee found on lande, hauing a stone in it much like an almond (which fruite is called Capule) that they were all in very ill case, so that we were in a manner all of vs both feeble, faint and weake.

The next morning it being Tuesday, the ninth of October, we thought it best to trauell along by the Sea coast, to seeke out some place of habitation: whether they were Christians or Sauages, we were indifferent, so that wee might haue wherewithall to sustaine our hungrie bodyes, and so departing from an hill where wee had rested all night, not hauing any dry threed about vs, for those that were not wet being throwne into the Sea, were throughly wet with raine, for all the night it rained cruelly: As we went from the hill, and were come into the plaine, we were greatly troubled to passe for the grasse and woods that grew there higher then any man. On the left hand we had the Sea, and vpon the right hand great woods, so that of necessitie we must needes past on our way Westward, though those marshes, and going thus, suddenly we were assaulted by the Indians, a warlike kinde of people, which are in a maner as Canibals, although they do not feed vpon mans flesh as Canibals do.

Chichemici a warlike and cruell people.

These people are called Chichemici, and they vse to weare their haire long, euen downe to their knees, they doe also colour their faces greene, yellow, red and blew, which maketh them to seeme very ougly and terrible to beholde. These people doe keepe warres against the Spanyards, of whome they haue beene oftentimes very cruelly handled: for with the Spanyards there is no mercy. They perceiuing vs at our first comming on land, supposed vs to haue beene their enemies, the bordering Spanyards, and hauing by their forerunners descryed what number wee were, and how feeble and weake without armour or weapon, they suddenly according to their accustomed maner, when they encounter with any people in warlike sort, raysed a terrible and huge crie, and so came running fiercely vpon vs, shooting off their arrowes as thicke as haile, into whose mercy we were constrained to yeeld, not hauing amongst vs any kinde of armour, nor yet weapon, sauing one caliuer, and two olde rustie swoordes, whereby to make any resistance, or to saue our selues: which when they perceiued, that we sought not any other then fauour and mercy at their hands, and that we were not their enemies the Spanyards, they had compassion on vs, and came and caused vs all to sit downe: and when they had a while surueyed, and taken a perfect view of vs, they came to all such as had any coloured clothes amongst vs, and those they did stripp starke naked, and tooke their clothes away with them, but they that were apparelled in blacke they did not meddle withall, and so went their wayes, and left vs, without doing vs any further hurt, onely in the first hunt they killed eight of our men. And at our departure, they perceiuing in what weake case we were, pointed vs with their hands which way we should goe to come to a towne of the Spanyards, which as we afterwards perceiued, was not past ten leagues from thence, vsing these words: Tampeco, tampeco Christiano, tampeco Christiano, which is as much (we thinke) as to say in English, Go that way, and you shall finde the Christians. The weapons that they vse are no other but bowes and arrowes, and their aime is so good, that they very seldome misse to hit any thing that they shoot at. Shortly after they had left vs stripe (as aforesaid) we thought it best to diuide our selues into two companies, and so being separated, halfe of vs went vnder the leading of one Anthony Godard, who is yet a man aliue, and dwelleth at this instant in the towne of Plimmouth, whom before we chose to be captaine ouer vs all, and those which went vnder his leading, of which number I Miles Phillips was one, trauelled Westward that way which the Indians with their hands had before pointed vs to go. The other halfe went vnder the leading of

of one Iohn Hooper, whome they did choose for their captaine, and with the company that went with him, Dauid Ingram was one, and they tooke their way and trauelled Northward, and shortly after, within the space of two dayes, they were againe incountred with the sauage people, and their captaine Hooper and two more of his company were slaine: then againe they diuided themselues, and some held on their way still Northward, and other some, knowing that we were gone Westward, sought to meet with vs againe, as in truth there was about the number of fiue & twentie or sixe and twentie of them that mette with vs in the space of foure dayes againe, and then we began to reckon amongst our selues, how many we were that were set on shoare, and we found the number to be an hundred & foureteene, whereof two were drowned in the Sea, and eight were slaine at the first incounter, so that there remained an hundred and foure, of which fiue and twentie went Westward with vs, and two and fiftie to the North with Hooper and Ingram: and as Ingram since hath often tolde me, there were not past three of their company slaine, and there were but sixe and twenty of them that came againe to vs, so that of the company that went Northward, there is yet lacking, and not certainely heard of, the number of three and twentie men. And verely I doe thinke that there are of them yet aliue, and marryed in the sayd countrey, at Sibola, as hereafter I purpose (God willing) to discourse of more particularly, with the reason and causes that make me so to thinke of thē that were lacking, which were Dauid Ingram, Twide, Browne, and sundry others, whose names we could not remember. And being thus met againe together, we trauelled on still Westward, sometime through such thicke woods, that we were inforced with angels to breake away the brambles and bushes from tearing our naked bodies: other some times we should trauell through the plaines, in such high grasse that we could scarse see one another, and as we passed in some places, we should haue of our men slaine, and fall downe suddenly, being stricken by the Indians, which stood behinde trees and bushes, in secret places, and so killed our men as they went by, for we went scatteringly in seeking of fruits to relieue our selues. Wee were also oftentimes greatly annoyed with a kinde of flie, which in the Indian tongue is called Tequani, and the Spanyards called them Musketas. There are also in the sayd countrey a number of other kinde of flies, but none so noysome as these Tequanies be: you shall hardly see them they be so small, for they are scarse so bigge as a gnat: they will sucke ones blood maruellously, and if you kill them while they are sucking, they are so venemous that the place will swell extremely, euen as one that is stoong with a waspe or bee: but if you let them sucke their fill, and to goe away of themselues, then they doe you no other hurt, but leaue behinde them a redde spotte somewhat bigger then a fleabiting. At the first we were terriblie troubled with these kinde of flies, not knowing their quallities, and resistance we coulde make none against them, being naked: as for colde we feared not any, the countrey there is alwayes so warme. And as we trauelled thus for the space of tenne or twelue dayes, our captaine did oftentimes cause certaine to goe vpinto the toppes of high trees, to see if they could descrie any towne or place of inhabitants, but they coulde not perceiue any, and vsing often the same order to climbe vp into high trees, at the length they descryed a great riuer that fell from the Northwest in the maine Sea, and presentlie after, we heard an harquebusse shotte off, which did greatly incourage vs, for thereby we knew that we were neere to some Christians, and did therefore hope shortly to finde some succour and comfort, and within the space of one houre after, as we trauelled, we heard a cocke crowe, which was also no small ioy vnto vs, and so we came to the North side of the riuer of Panuco, where the Spanyards haue certaine Salines, at which place it was that the harquebusse was shot off, which before we heard: to which place we went not directly, but missing thereof, we left it about a bowshoot vpon our left hand: of this riuer we dranke very greedilie, for we had not mette with any water in sixe dayes before, and as we were heere by the riuer side resting our selues, and longing to come to the place where the cocke did crowe, and where the harquebusse was shot off, we perceiued many Spanyardes vpon the other side of the riuer, riding vp and downe on horsseback, and they perceiuing vs, did suppose that wee had beene of the Indians their bordering enemies, the Chichemici, the riuer was not past halfe a bowe shoot ouer: and presently one of the Spanyards tooke an Indian boate called a Canoa, and so came ouer, being rowed by two Indians, and hauing taken the view of vs, did presently rowe ouer backe againe to the Spanyards, who without any delay made out about the number of twentie horssemen, and imbarking themselues in the Canoas, they led their horsses by the reines swimming ouer after them, and being come ouer to that side of the riuer where wee were, they sadled their horsses, and being mounted vpon them with their launces charged, they came very fiercely, running at vs. Our captaine Anthony Godard seeing them come in that order, did persuade vs to submitte and yeelde our liues vnto them, for beeing naked, as wee at this time were, and without weapon, we

Dauid Ingra.

could not make any resistance, whose bidding wee obeyed, and vpon the yeelding of our selues, they perceiued vs to be Christians, and did call for more Canoas, and carryed vs ouer by foure and foure in a boate, and being come on the other side, they vnderstanding by our captaine how long we had beene without meate, imparted betweene two and two a loafe of bread made of that countrey wheate, which the Spanyardes call Mayse, of the bignesse of one of our halfpennie loaues, which bread is named in the Indian tongue Clashacally. This bread was very sweet and pleasant vnto vs, for wee had not eaten any in a long time before, and what is it that hunger doth not make to haue a sauory and a delicate taste? and hauing thus imparted the bread amongst vs, those which were men they sent afore to the Towne, hauing also many Indians inhabitants of that place to garde them: they which were young, as boyes, and some such also as were feeble, they tooke vp vpon their horses, behinde them, and so carryed vs to the Towne where they dwelt, which was very neere distant a mile from the place where we came ouer.

This Towne is well situated, and well replenished with all kindes of fruites, as Orinages, Limmons, Pomgranets, Apricoks, and Peaches, and sundry others, and is inhabited with a great number of tame Indians, or Mexicans, and had in it also at that time about the number of two hundred Spanyards, men, women, and children, besides Negroes. Of their Salines, which lie vpon the West side of the riuer, more then a mile distant from thence, they make a great profite, for it is an excellent good merchandize there: the Indians doe buy much thereof, and carrie it vp into the Countrey, and there sell it to their owne Countrey people, in doubling the price. Also much of the Salt made in this place, is transported from thence by Sea to sundry other places, as to Cuba, S. Iohn de Vllua, and the other Portes of Tamiago, and Tamachos, which are two barred Hauens West and by South aboue threescore leagues from S. Iohn de Vllua. When we were all come to the Towne, the Gouernour there shewed himselfe very seuere vnto vs, and threatened to hang vs all: and then he demanded what money wee had, which in truth was very little, for the Indians which we first met withall, had in a maner taken all from vs, and of that which they left, the Spanyardes which brought vs ouer, tooke away a good part also: howbeit, from Anthony Godard the Gouernour heere had a chaine of golde, which was giuen vnto him at Carthagena, by the Gouernour there: and from others he had some small store of money: so that we accounted that amongst vs all he had the number of fiue hundred Pezoes, besides the chaine of golde.

And hauing thus satisfied himselfe, when he had taken all that we had, he caused vs to be put into a little house much like a Hogstie, where we were almost smoothered: and before we were thus shutte vp into that little coate, they gaue vs some of the Countrey wheat, called Mayse, sodden, which they feed their Hogges withall. But many of our men which had beene hurt by the Indians at our first comming on land, whose wounds were very sore and grieuous, desired to haue the helpe of their Surgions to cure their wounds. The Gouernour, and most of them all answered, that we should haue none other Surgion but the hangman, which should sufficiently heale vs of all our griefes: and thus reuiling vs, and calling vs English dogges, and Lutheran heretikes, we remayned the space of three dayes in this miserable state, not knowing what should become of vs, waiting euery houre to be bereaued of our liues.

The fourth Chapter.

Wherein is shewed how we were vsed in Panuco, and in what feare of death we were there, and how we were carryed to Mexico to the Vice Roy, and of our imprisonment there and at Tescuco, with the courtesies and cruelties wee receiued during that time, and how in the end we were by proclamation giuen to serue as slaues to sundrie Gentlemen Spanyardes.

VPon the fourth day after our comming thither, and there remayning in a perplexitie, looking euery houre when we should suffer death, there came a great number of Indians and Spanyardes weaponed to fetch vs out of the house, and amongst them we espyed one that brought a great many of newe halters, at the sight whereof wee were greatly amazed, and made no other account but that we should presently haue suffered death, and so crying and calling to God for mercy and for forgiuenesse of our sinnes, we prepared our selues, making vs ready to die, yet in the end, as the sequell shewed, their meaning was not so: for when we were come out of the house, with those halters they bound our armes behinde vs, and so

so coupling vs two and two together, they commanded vs to march on through the Towne, and so along the country from place to place toward the citie of Mexico, which is distant from Panuco West and by South the space of threescore leagues, having onely but two Spanyards to conduct vs, they being accompanyed with a great number of Indians warding on either side with bowes and arrowes, least we should escape from them. And trauelling in this order, vpon the second day at night we came vnto a Towne which the Indians call Nohele, and the Spanyardes call it Santa Maria: in which Towne there is a house of White fryers, which did very courteously relieue vs, and gaue vs hote meat, as mutton and broth, and garments also to couer our selues withall, made of white bayes: we fed very greedily of the meat, and of the Indian fruite, called Nochole, which fruite is long and small, much like in fashion to a little Cowcumber. Our greedie feeding caused vs to fall sicke of hote burning agues. And heere at this place one Thomas Baker one of our men died of a hurt: for he had beene before shot in with an arrowe into the throat at the first incounter.

The next morrow about ten of the clocke, we departed from thence, bound two & two together, and garded as before, and so trauelled on our way toward Mexico, till we came to a towne within fiue leagues of Mexico, named Mesticlan, where is a house of Blacke fryers: and in this towne there are about the number of three hundred Spanyards, both men, women, and children. The fryers sent vs meat from the house ready dressed, and the fryers, and men and women, vsed vs very courteously, and gaue vs some shirts and other such things as we lacked. Heere our men were very sicke of their agues, and with eating of another fruite called in the Indian tongue, Guiaccos, which fruite did binde vs so fore, that for the space of tenne or twelue dayes we could not ease our selues. The next morning we departed from thence with our two Spanyards & Indian gard, as aforesaid. Of these two Spanyards the one was an aged man, who all the way did very courteously intreat vs, and would carefully goe before to prouide for vs both meat and things necessary to the vttermost of his power: the other was a yoong man, who all the way trauelled with vs, and neuer departed from vs, who was a very cruell caitiffe, and he carryed a iauelin in his hand, and sometimes when as our men with very feeblenesse and faintnesse were not able to goe so fast as he required them, he would take his iauelin in both his hands, and stricke them with the same betweene the necke and the shoulders so violently, that hee would strike them downe, then would he cry, and say: Marches, marches Engleses perros, Luterianos, enemicos de Dios: which is as much to say in English: March, march on you English dogges, Lutherans, enemies to God. And the next day we came to a towne called Pachuca, and there are two places of that name: as this towne of Pachuca, and the mines of Pachuca, which are mines of siluer, and are about fiue leagues distant from this towne of Pachuca towardes the Northwest.

Heere at this towne the good olde man our Gouernour suffered vs to stay two dayes and two nights, hauing compassion of our sicke and weake men, full fore against the minde of the yoong man his companion. From thence we tooke our iourney, and trauelled foure or fiue dayes by little villages, and Stantias, which are Farmes or Dairie houses of the Spanyardes, and euer as we had neede, the good olde man would still prouide vs sufficient of meates, fruites, and water to sustaine vs. At the end of which fiue dayes wee came to a towne within fiue leagues of Mexico, which is called Quoghliclan, where we also stayed one whole day and two nights, where was a fayre house of Gray fryers, howbeit, we sawe none of them. Heere we were tolde by the Spanyards in the Towne, that we had not past fifteene English miles from thence to Mexico, whereat we were all very ioyfull and glad, hoping that when we came thither, we should either be relieued, and set free out of bondes, or els be quickely dispatched out of our liues: for seeing our selues thus carryed bound from place to place, although some vsed vs courteously, yet could wee neuer ioy, nor be merry till we might perceiue our selues set free from that bondage, either by death or otherwise.

The next morning we departed from thence on our iourney towardes Mexico, and so trauelled till we came within two leagues of it, where there was built by the Spanyards a very fayre church, called our Lady church, in which there is an image of our Lady of siluer and gilt, being as high & as large as a tall woman, in which church, and before this image, there are as many lamps of siluer as there be dayes in the yeere, which vpon high dayes are all lighted. Whensoeuer any Spanyards passe by this church, although they be on horsebacke, they will alight, and come into the church, & kneele before this image, and pray to our Lady to defend them from all euill: so that whether he be horsman or footman he will not passe by, but first goe into the church, and pray as aforesaid, which if they doe not, they thinke and beleeue that they shall neuer prosper, which image they call in the Spanish tongue, Nostra signora de Guadalupe. At this place there are certaine

colde baths, which arise, springing vp as though the water did seethe: the water whereof is somewhat brackish in taste, but very good for any that haue any sore or wound, to wash themselues therewith, for as they say, it healeth many: and euery yeere once vpon our Lady day the people vse to repayre thither to offer, and to pray in that Church before the image, and they say that our Lady of Guadalupe doeth worke a number of miracles. About this Church there is not any towne of Spanyards that is inhabited, but certaine Indians doe dwell there in houses of their owne countrey building.

Heere wee were met with a great number of Spanyards on horsseback, which came from Mexico to see vs, both gentlemen, and men of occupations, and they came as people to see a wonder: wee were still called vpon to march on, and so about foure of the clocke in the afternoone of the said day we entred into the citie of Mexico, by the way or street called La calia Sancta Catherina: and wee stayed not in any place till wee came to the house or pallace of the Vice Roy, Don Martin Henriques, which standeth in the middell of the city, hard by the market place, called La plaça dell Marquese. Wee had not stayed any long time at this place, but there was brought vs by the Spanyards from the market place great store of meat, sufficient to haue satisfied fiue times so many as we were: some also gaue vs hats, and some gaue vs money: in which place we stayed for the space of two houres, and from thence wee were conueyed by water in to large Canoas to an hospitall where as certaine of our men were lodged, which were taken before the fight at S. Iohn de Vllua: wee should haue gone to our Ladies hospitall, but that there were also so many of our men taken before at that fight that there was no roome for vs. After our comming thither, many of the company that came with me from Panuco died within the space of fouretene dayes: soone after which time we were taken forth from that place, and put altogether into our Ladyes hospitall, in which place wee were courteously vsed, and visited oftentimes by vertuous gentlemen and gentlewomen of the citie, who brought vs diuers things to comfort vs withall, as succats and marmilads, and such other thinges, and would also many times giue vs many things, and that very liberally. In which hospitall we remayned for the space of sixe moneths, vntill we were all whole and sound of body, and then wee were appointed by the Vice Roy to be carryed vnto the towne of Tescuko, which is from Mexico Southwest distant eight leagues: in which towne there are certaine houses of correction and punishment for ill people called Obraches, like to Bridewell here in London: into which place diuers Indians are solde for slaues, some for ten yeeres, and some for twelue. It was no small griefe vnto vs when wee vnderstood that we should be carryed thither, and to be vsed as slaues, wee had rather be put to death: howbeit there was no remedy, but we were carryed to the prison of Tescuko, where we were not put to any labour, but were very straitly kept, and almost famished, yet by the good prouidence of our mercifull God, we happened there to meete with one Robert Sweeting, who was the sonne of an English man borne of a Spanish woman: this man could speake very good English, and by his meanes wee were holpen very much with victualles from the Indians, as mutton, hennes, and bread. And if we had not beene so relieued, we had surely perished: and yet all the prouision that we had gotten that way was but slender. And continuing thus straightly kept in prison there for the space of two moneths, at the length wee agreed amongst our selues to breake forth of prison, come of it what would, for wee were minded rather to suffer death then longer to liue in that miserable state.

And so hauing escaped out of prison, we knew not what way to flie for the safetie of our selues, the night was darke, and it rayned terribly, and not hauing any guide, we went we knew not whither, and in the morning, at the appearing of the day, wee perceiued our selues to be come hard to the citie of Mexico, which is foure & twentie English miles from Tescuko. The day being come we were espyed by the Spanyards, and pursued, and taken, and brought before the Vice Roy and head iustices, who threatned to hang vs for breaking of the kings prison. Yet in the end they sent vs into a garden belonging to the Vice Roy, and comming thither, wee found there our English gentlemen which were deliuered as hostages when as our generall was betrayed at S. Iohn de Vllua, as is afore said, and with them we also found Robert Barret, the Maister of the Iesus, in which place we remayned labouring and doing such things as we were commanded, for the space of foure moneths, hauing but two sheepe a day allowed to suffice vs all, being very neere a hundred men, and for bread, wee had euery man two loaues a day, of the quantity of one halfepennie loafe. At the end of which foure moneths, they hauing remooued our gentlemen hostages, and the Maister of the Iesus to a prison in the Vice Roy his owne house, did cause it to be proclaimed, that what gentleman Spanyard soeuer was willing, or would haue any English man to serue him, and be bound to keepe him forth comming, to appeare before the Iustices within one moneth after notice giuen, that they should repayre to the said garden, and there take their choice: which

proclamation

proclamation was no ſooner made, but the gentlemen came and repaired to the garden amaine, ſo that happie was he that could ſooneſt get one of vs.

The 5. Chapter.

Wherein is ſhewed in what good ſort, and how wealthily we liued with our maſters vntill the comming of the Inquiſition, when as agayne our ſorowes began a freſh: Of our impriſonment in the holy houſe, and of the ſeuere iudgement and ſentences giuen againſt vs, and with what rigour and crueltie the ſame were executed.

THe gentlemẽ that thus tooke vs for their ſeruants or ſlaues, did new apparrel vs throughout, with whom we abode, doing ſuch ſeruice as they appointed vs vnto, which was for the moſt part to attend vpon them at the table, and to bee as their chamberlaines, and to waite vpon them when they went abroade, which they greatly accounted of: for in that countrey no Spaniard will ſerue one another, but they are all of them attended and ſerued by Indians weekely, and by Negroes which be their ſlaues during their life. In this ſort we remained and ſerued in the ſaid citie of Mexico, and thereaboutes for the ſpace of a yeere and ſomewhat longer. Afterwards many of vs were by our maſters appointed to go to ſundry of their Mines where they had to doe, and to bee as ouerſeers of the Negroes and Indians that laboured there. In which Mines many of vs did profite and gaine greatly: for firſt we were allowed three hundred Pezoes a man by a yeere, which is three ſcore pound ſterling, and beſides that the Indians and Negroes which wrought vnder our charge, vpon our well vſing and intreating of them, would at times as vpon Saturdayes whẽ they had left worke, labour for vs, & blow as much ſilver as ſhould be worth vnto vs 3. marks or thereabouts, euery marke being worth 6. Pezoes, & a halfe of their mony, which 19. Pezoes & a half, is worth 4. li. 10. s. of our mony. Sundrie weeks we did gaine ſo much by this meanes beſides our wages, that many of vs became very rich, and were worth three thouſand or foure thouſand Pezoes, for wee liued and gained thus in thoſe Mines ſome three or foure yeeres. As concerning thoſe Gentlemen which were deliuered as hoſtages, and that were kept in priſon, in the Viceroy his houſe, after that we were gone from out the garden to ſerue ſundry Gentlemen as aforeſaid, they remained priſoners in the ſayde houſe for the ſpace of foure moneths after their comming thither, at the ende whereof the Fleete beyng readie to depart from S. Iohn de Vllua, to goe for Spaine, the ſaid Gentlemen were ſent away into Spaine with the fleete, where as I haue heard it credibly reported, many of them died with the cruell handling of the Spaniards in the Inquiſition houſe, as thoſe which haue bene deliuered home after they had ſuffered the perſecution of that houſe can more perfectly declare. Robert Barret alſo the maſter of the Jeſus, was ſent away with the fleete into Spaine the next yeere following, where afterwards he ſuffered perſecution in the Inquiſition, and at the laſt was condemned to bee burnt, and with him three or foure more of our men, of whom one was named Gregorie, and another John Browne, whom I knew, for they were of our Generall his Muſitians, but the names of the reſt that ſuffered with them I know not.

Now after that ſixe yeeres were fully expired ſince our firſt comming into the Indies, in which time we had bene impriſoned and ſerued in the ſaid countreys as is before truely declared, In the yeere of our Lord one thouſand fiue hundred ſeuentie foure, the Inquiſition begamne to be eſtabliſhed in the Indies, very much againſt the mindes of many of the Spaniards themſelues: for neuer vntill this time ſince their firſt conquering and planting in the Indies, were they ſubiect to that bloodie and cruell Inquiſition. The chiefe Inquiſitor was named Don Pedro Moya de Contreres, and Iohn de Bouilla his companion, and Iohn Sanchis the Fiſchall, and Pedro de la Rios, the Secretarie: they being come and ſetled, and placed in a very faire houſe neere vnto the white Friers, conſidering with themſelues that they muſt make an entrance and beginning of that their moſt deteſtable Inquiſition here in Mexico, to the terrour of the whole country, thought it beſt to call vs that were Engliſhmen firſt in queſtion, and ſo much the rather, for that they had perfect knowledge and intelligence, that many of vs were become very rich, as hath bene alreadie declared, and therefore we were a very good bootie and praie to the Inquiſitors: ſo that now again began our ſorowes a freſh, for we were ſent for, and ſought out in all places of the countrey, and proclamation made vpon paine of looſing of goods, and excommunication, that no man ſhould hide or keepe ſecret any Engliſhman or any part of their goods. By meanes whereof we were all ſoone apprehended in all places, and all our goods ſeized and taken for the Inquiſitors vſe, and ſo from

all

all partes of the countrey we were conueied and sent as prisoners to the citie of Mexico, and there committed to prison in sundry darke dungeons, where we could not see but by candle light, & were neuer past two together in one place, so that we sawe not one another, neither could one of vs tell what was become of an other. Thus we remained close imprisoned for the space of a yeere and a halfe, and others for some lesse time, for they came to prison euer as they were apprehended. During which time of our imprisonment, at the first beginning we were often called before the Inquisitors alone, and there seuerely examined of our faith, and commanded to say the Pater noster, the Aue Maria, and the Creed in Latin, which God knoweth a great number of vs could not say, otherwise then in the English tongue. And hauing the said Robert Sweeting who was our friend at Tescuco alwayes present with thē for an interpreter, he made report for vs, þ in our owne country speach, we could say them perfectly, although not word for word as they were in Latin. Then did they proceed to demaund of vs vpon our othes what we did beleeue of the Sacrament, & whether there did remaine any bread or wine after the words of consecration, yea or no, and whether we did not beleeue that the host of bread which the priest did hold vp ouer his head, and the wine that was in the chalice, was the very true and perfect body & blood of our Sauiour Christ, yea or no: To which if we answered not yea, then was there no way but death. Then they would demaund of vs what we did remember of our selues, what opinions we had held, or had bin taught to hold contrary to the same whiles we were in England: to which we for the safetie of our liues were cōstrained to say, that we neuer did beleeue, nor had bene taught otherwise then as before we had said. Then would they charge vs that we did not tel them the trueth, that they knew to the contrary, and therfore we should call our selues to remembrance, & make them a better answer at the next time, or els we should be rackt, and made to confesse the trueth whether we would or no. And so comming againe before them the next time, we were still demaunded of our beliefe whiles we were in England, and how we had bene taught, & also what we thought or did know of such of our owne company as they did name vnto vs, so that we could neuer be free from such demands, and at other times they would promise vs, that if we would tell them trueth, then should we haue fauour & be set at libertie, although we very wel knew their faire speaches were but meanes to intrap vs, to the hazard and losse of our liues: howbeit God so mercifully wrought for vs by a secret meanes that wee had, that we kept vs still to our first answer, & would stil say that we had told the trueth vnto them, and knew no more by our selues nor any other of our fellowes then as we had declared, and that for our sinnes and offences in England against God and our Ladie, or any of his blessed saintes, we were heartily sory for the same, and did crie God mercy, and besought the Inquisitors for Gods sake, considering that we came into those countries by force of weather, and against our wils, and that neuer in all our liues we had either spoken or done any thing contrary to their lawes, that therfore they would haue mercy vpon vs, yet all this would not serue: for still from time to time we were called vpon to confesse, and about the space of 3. moneths before, they proceeded to their seuere iudgement, we were all rackt, and some enforced to vtter that against themselues, which afterwards cost them their liues. And thus hauing gotten from our own mouthes matter sufficient for thē to proceed in iudgement against vs, they caused a large scaffold to be made in the middest of the market place in Mexico right ouer against the head church, & 14. or 15. dayes before the day of their iudgement, with the sound of a trumpet, and the noise of their Attabalies, which are a kind of drummes, they did assemble the people in all partes of the citie, before whom it was then solemnly proclaimed, that whosoeuer would vpon such a day repaire to the market place, they should heare the sentence of the holy Inquisition against the English heretikes, Lutheranes, and also see the same put in execution. Which being done, and the time approching of this cruell iudgement, the night before they came to the prison where we were, with certaine officers of that holy hellish house, bringing with them certain fooles coats which they had prepared for vs, being called in their language S. Benitos, which coats were made of yealow cotton & red crosses vpon them, both before & behind: they were so busied in putting on their coates about vs, and in bringing vs out into a large yard, and placing and pointing vs in what order we should go to the scaffold or place of iudgement, vpon the morow, that they did not once suffer vs to sleepe all that night long. The next morning being come, there was giuen to euery one of vs for our breakfast a cuppe of wine, and a slice of bread fried in honie, and so about eight of the clocke in the morning, wee set foorth of the prison, euery man alone in his yealow coate, and a rope about his necke, and a great greene Waxe candle in his hand vnlighted, hauyng a Spaniard appointed to go vpon eyther side of euery one of vs: and so marching in this order and maner toward the Scaffold in the Market place, which was a bowe shoote distant or thereaboutes, wee found a great assemblie of people all the way, and such throng, that certayne of the Inquisitors officers on horsebacke were constrained to make way,

and

and ſo comming to the Scaffold, wee went vp by a paire of ſtaires, and found ſeates readie made and prepared for vs to ſit downe on, euery man in order as he ſhould be called to receiue his iudgement. We being thus ſet downe as we were appointed, preſently the Inquiſitors came vp another paire of ſtaires, and the Viceroy and all the chiefe Juſtices with them. When they were ſet downe and placed vnder the cloth of eſtate agreeing to their degrees and calling, then came vp alſo a great number of Friers, white, blacke and gray, about the number of 300. perſons, they being ſet in the places for them appointed. Then was there a ſolemne Oyes made, and ſilence commanded, and then preſently began their ſeuere and cruell iudgement.

The cruell iudgements of the Spaniſh Inquiſitors vpõ our poore countreymen.

The firſt man that was called was one Roger the chiefe Armourer of the Jeſus, and hee had iudgement to haue three hundred ſtripes on horſebacke, and after condemned to the gallies as a ſlaue for 10. yeeres.

After him was called John Gray, John Browne, John Rider, John Moone, James Collier, and one Thomas Browne: theſe were adiudged to haue 200. ſtripes on horſebacke, and after to be committed to the Gallies for the ſpace of 8. yeeres.

Then was called John Keies, and was adiudged to haue 100. ſtripes on horſeback, and condemned to ſerue in the gallies for the ſpace of 6. yeeres.

Then were ſeuerally called the number of 53. one after another, and euery man had his ſeuerall iudgement, ſome to haue 200. ſtripes on horſeback, and ſome 100. and condemned for ſlaues to the gallies, ſome for 6. yeeres, ſome for 8. and ſome for 10.

And then was I Miles Philips called, and was adiudged to ſerue in a monaſterie for 5. yeeres, without any ſtripes, and to weare a fooles coate, or S. Benito, during all that time.

Then were called John Stozie, Richard Williams, Dauid Alexander, Robert Cooke, and Horſewell and Thomas Hull: theſe ſixe were condemned to ſerue in monaſteries without ſtripes, ſome for 3. yeeres and ſome for foure, and to weare the S. Benito during all the ſaid time. Which being done, and it now drawing towards night, George Riuelie, Peter Pomfrie, and Cornelius the Iriſhman, were called, and had their iudgement to be burnt to aſhes, and ſo were preſently ſent away to the place of execution in the market place but a litle from the ſcaffold, where they were quickly burnt and conſumed. And as for vs that had receiued our iudgement, being 68. in number, we were caried backe that night to priſon againe. And the next day in ẏ morning being good Friday, the yeere of our Lord 1575. we were all brought into a court of ẏ Inquiſitors pallace, where we found a horſe in a readineſſe for euery one of our men which were condemned to haue ſtripes, and to be committed to the gallies, which were in number 60. and ſo they being inforced to mount vp on horſebacke naked from the middle vpward, were caried to be ſhewed as a ſpectacle for all the people to behold throughout the chiefe and principall ſtreetes of the Citie, and had the number of ſtripes to euery one of them appointed, moſt cruelly layd vpon their naked bodies with long whips by ſundry men appointed to be the executioners thereof: & before our men there went a couple of criers which cried as they went, Behold theſe Engliſh dogs, Lutherans, enemies to God, and all the way as they went, there were ſome of the Inquiſitors themſelues, and of the familiars of that vnchriſtian order, that cried to the executioners, Strike, lay on thoſe Engliſh heretikes, Lutherans, Gods enemies: and ſo this horrible ſpectacle being ſhewed round about the citie, and they returned to the Inquiſitors houſe, with their backes all gore blood, and ſwollen with great bumps, they were then taken from their horſes, & caried againe to priſon, where they remained vntill they were ſent into Spaine to the gallies, there to receiue the reſt of their martyrdome, and I and the 6. other with me which had iudgement, and were condemned amongſt the reſt to ſerue an apprentiſhip in the monaſteries, were taken preſently & ſent to certaine religious houſes appointed for the purpoſe.

The 6. Chapter.

Wherein is ſhewed how we were vſed in the religious houſes, and that when the time was expired, that wee were adiudged to ſerue in them, there came newes to Mexico of M. Francis Drakes being in the South Sea, & what preparation was made to take him, and how I ſeeking to eſcape, was againe taken and put in priſon at Vera Cruz, and how againe I made mine eſcape from thence.

MIles Phillips and William Lowe, were appointed to the blacke Friers, where I was appointed to be an ouerſeer of Indian workemen, who wrought there in building of a new church: amongſt which Indians I learned their language or Mexican tongue very perfectly, and had great familiaritie with many of them, whom I found to bee a

courteous

curteous and louing kind of people, ingenious, and of great vnderstanding, and they hate & abhorre the Spaniards with all their hearts, they haue vsed such horrible cruelties against them, and doe still keepe them in such subiection and seruitude, that they and the Negroes also doe daily lie in waite to practise their deliuerance out of that thraldome and bondage, that the Spaniards doe keepe them in. William Lowe he was appointed to serue the Cooke in the kitchin, Richard Williams and Dauid Alexander were appointed to the gray Friers, John Story and Robert Cooke to the white Friers: Paule Horsewell the Secretarie tooke to be his seruant: Thomas Hul was sent to a monasterie of priests, where afterward he died. Thus we serued out the yeeres that wee were condemned for, with the vse of our fooles coates, and we must needes confesse that the Friers did vse vs very curteously: for euery one of vs had his chamber with bedding and diet, & all things cleane and neat: yea many of the Spaniards and Friers themselues doe vtterly abhorre and mislike of that cruell Inquisition, and would as they durst bewaile our miseries, and comfort vs the best they could, although they stood in such feare of that diuelish Inquisition, that they durst not let the left hand know what the right doeth. Now after that the time was expired for which we were condemned to serue in those religious houses, wee were then brought againe before the chiefe Inquisitor, and had all our fooles coates pulled off and hanged vp in the head church, called Ecclesia Maiore, and euery mans name and iudgement written thereupon with this addition, An heretike Lutheran reconciled. And there are also all their coats hanged vp, which were condemned to the gallies, with their names and iudgements, and vnderneath his coat, Heretike Lutheran reconciled. And also the coats and names of the three that were burned, whereupon were written, An obstinate heretike Lutheran burnt. Then were we suffred to goe vp and downe the country, and to place our selues as we could, and yet not so free, but that we very well knew that there was good espiall alwayes, attending vs and all our actions, so that wee durst not once to speake or looke awrie. Dauid Alexander and Robert Cooke they returned to serue the Inquisitor, who shortly after maried them both to two of his Negro women: Richard Williams maried a rich widow of Biskaie with 4000. Pezoes: Paule Horsewell is maried to a Mestisa, as they name those whose fathers were Spaniards, and their mothers Indians, and this woman which Paule Horsewel hath maried, is sayd to be the daughter of one that came in with Hernando Cortes the Conquerour, who had with her in mariage foure thousand Pezoes, and a faire house: John Storie hee is maried to a Negro woman: William Lowe had leaue and licence to goe into Spaine where he is now married: for mine owne part I could neuer thoroughly settle my selfe to marrie in that country, although many faire offers were made vnto mee of such as were of great abilitie and wealth, but I could haue no liking to liue in that place, where I must euery where see and know such horrible idolatrie committed, and durst not once for my life speake against it: and therefore I had alwayes a longing and desire to this my natiue countrey: and, to returne and serue againe in the Mines where I might haue gathered great riches and wealth, I very well saw that at one time or another I should fall againe into the danger of that diuelish Inquisition, and so be stript of all, with losse of life also, and therefore I made my choise rather to learne to weaue Grograines and Taffataes, and so compounding with a Silke weauer, I bound my selfe for 3. yeeres to serue him, and gaue him 150. Pezoes to teach me the science, otherwise he would not haue taught me vnder seuen yeeres prentiship, and by this meanes I liued the more quiet, and free from suspition. Howbeit I should many times bee charged by familiars of that diuelish house, that I had a meaning to runne away into England, and to bee an heretike Lutherane againe: To whom I would answere that they had no neede to suspect any such thing in mee, for that they knew all very well that it was impossible for mee to escape by any maner of meanes: yet notwithstanding I was called before the Inquisitor, and demaunded why I did not marrie: I answered that I had bound my selfe at an occupation. Well sayd the Inquisitor, I know thou meanest to runne away, and therefore I charge thee here vpon payne of burning as an heretike relapsed, that thou depart not out of this citie, nor come neere to the porte of S. Iohn de Vllua, nor to any other porte, To the which I answered, that I would willingly obey. Yea sayd he, see thou doe so and thy fellowes also, they shall haue the like charge.

So I remained at my science the full time, and learned the Arte, at the end whereof there came newes to Mexico that there were certaine Englishmen landed with a great power at the port of Acapulco, vpon the South sea, & that they were comming to Mexico to take the spoile therof, which wrought a marueilous great feare amongst them, & many of those that were rich, began to shift for themselues, their wiues & children: vpon which hurlie burlie the Viceroy caused a generall muster to be made of all the Spaniards in Mexico, and there were found to the number of 7000. and odde housholders of Spaniards in ỹ citie & suburbs, & of single men vnmaried, the number of 3000. and

of

of Nestizoes, which are counted to be the sonnes of Spaniards borne of Indian women twentie thousand persons, and then was Paule Horsewell and I Miles Phillips sent for before the Viceroy, and were examined if we did know an English man named Francis Drake, which was brother to Captaine Hawkins: to which we answered, that Captaine Hawkins had not any brother but one, which was a man of the age of three score yeeres or thereabouts, and was now gouernour of Plimmouth in England. And then he demaunded of vs if we knew one Francis Drake, and we answered, no.

While these things were in doing, there came newes that all the Englishmen were gone, yet was there eight hundred men made out vnder the leading of seuerall captaines, whereof two hundred were sent to the porte of S. Iohn de Vllua, vpon the North Sea vnder the conduct of Don Luys Suares, two hundred were sent to Guatimala in the South sea, who had for their captaine Iohn Cortes, two hundred more were sent to Guatulco, a port of the South sea, ouer whom went for captaine Don Pedro de Roblis, and two hundred more were sent to Acapulco, the port where it was sayd that Captaine Drake had bene. And they had for Captaine doctor Roblis Alcalde de Corte, with whom I Miles Phillips went as interpreter, hauing licence giuen by the Inquisitors. When we were come to Acapulco, we found that Captaine Drake was departed from thence, more then a moneth before we came thither. But yet our captaine Alcalde de Corte there presently embarked himselfe in a small ship of three score tunne or thereabout, hauing also in companie with him two other small barkes, and not past two hundred men in all, with whom I went as interpreter in his owne ship, which God knoweth was but weake and ill appointed, so that for certaine, if we had met with captaine Drake, he might easily haue taken vs all: Wee being imbarked kept our course and ranne Southward towards Panama, keeping still as nigh the shore as we could, and leauing the land vpon our left hand, and hauing coasted thus for the space of eighteene or twentie dayes, and were more to the South then Guatimala, wee met at last with other ships which came from Panama, of whom we were certainly informed that he was cleane gone off the coast more then a moneth before: and so we returned backe to Acapulco againe, and there landed, our Captaine being thereunto forced, because his men were very sore sea sicke: All the while that I was at Sea with them, I was a glad man, for I hoped that if we met with master Drake, we should all be taken, so that then I should haue bene freed out of that danger and miserie wherein I liued, and should returne to mine owne countrey of England againe. But missing thereof, when I saw there was no remedie but that wee must needes come on land againe, little doth any man know the sorow and griefe that inwardly I felt, although outwardly I was constrained to make faire weather of it. And so being landed, the next morow after, we began our iourney towards Mexico, and past these townes of name in our way, as first the towne of Tuatepec, 90. leagues from Mexico, from thence to Washaca, 40. leagues from Mexico: from thence to Tepuca 24. leagues from Mexico, and from thence to Lo pueblo de los Angelos, where is a high hill which casteth out fire three times a day, which hill is 18. leagues in maner directly West from Mexico, from thence we went to Stapelapa, 8. leagues from Mexico, and there our captaine and most of his men tooke boate, and came to Mexico againe, hauing bene footh about the space of seuen weekes or thereabouts. Our captaine made report to the Viceroy what he had done, and how farre he had trauelled, and that for certaine he was informed that captaine Drake was not to bee heard of. To which the Viceroy replied and said, Surely we shall haue him shortly come into our handes driuen a land though necessitie in some one place or other, for he being now in these seas of Sur, it is not possible for him to get out of them againe, so that if he perish not at sea, yet hunger will force him to land. And then againe I was commanded by the Viceroy that I should not depart the citie of Mexico, but alwayes be at my masters house in a readinesse at an howers warning, when soeuer I should be called for: that notwithstanding within one moneth after certaine Spaniards going to Mecameca, 18. leagues from Mexico, to send away certaine hides and Cuchionelio, that they had there at their Stantiaes or dairie houses, and my master hauing leaue of the Secretarie for me to goe with them, I tooke my iourney with them being very well horsed and appointed, and comming thither and passing the time there at Mecameca certaine dayes till we had perfect intelligence that the fleete was ready to depart, I not being past 3. dayes iourney from the porte of S. Iohn de Vllua, thought it to be the meetest time for me to make an escape, and I was the bolder, presuming vpon my Spanish tongue, which I spake as naturally as any of them all, thinking with my selfe, that when I came to S. Iohn de Vllua, I would get to bee entertained as a souldior, and so goe home into Spaine in the same Fleete, and therefore secretly one euening late, the moone shining faire, I conueied my selfe away, and riding so for the space of two nights and two dayes, sometimes in, and sometimes out, resting very little all that time, vpon the second day at night

The Spanish Viceroy prophecieth, but falsly.

night I came to the towne of Vera Cruz, distant from the port of S. Iohn de Vllua, where the ships rode, but only 8. leagues, and here purposing to rest my selfe a day or two, I was no sooner alighted, but within the space of one halfe howre after, I was by ill hap arested, and brought before Iustices there, being taken and suspected to be a gentlemans sonne of Mexico, that was runne away from his father, who in trueth was the man they sought for: So I being arrested, and brought before the Iustices, there was a great hurlie burlie about the matter, euery man charging me that I was the sonne of such a man dwelling in Mexico, which I flatly denied, affirming that I knew not the man, yet would they not beleeue me, but urged still vpon me that I was he that they sought for, and so I was conueied away to prison. And as I was thus going to prison, to the further increase of my griefe, it chaunced that at that very instant there was a poore man in the preasse that was come to towne to sell hennes, who told the Iustices that they did me wrong, and that in trueth hee knew very well that I was an Englishman and no Spaniard. They then demaunded of him how hee knew that, and threatened him that he sayd so, for that hee was my companion, and sought to conuey mee away from my father, so that he also was threatened to be laid in prison with mee: he for the discharge of himselfe stood stiffe in it, that I was an Englishman, and one of captaine Hawkins men, and that hee had knowen me weare the S. Benito in the blacke Friers at Mexico, for three or foure whole yeeres together: which when they heard they forsooke him, and began to examine me a new whether that speach of his were true, yea or no, which when they perceiued that I could not denie, and perceiuing that I was run from Mexico, and came thither of purpose to conuey my selfe away with the fleete, I was presently committed to prison with a sorowful heart, often wishing my selfe that that man which knew me had at that time bene further off, howbeit he in sinceritie had compassion of my distressed state, thinking by his speach, and knowing of me, to haue set me free frō that present danger which he saw me in: howbeit, contrary to his expectation, I was thereby brought into my extreme danger, & to the hazard of my life, yet there was no remedie but patience perforce: and I was no sooner brought into prison, but I had a great paire of bolts clapt on my legs, and thus I remained in that prison for the space of 3. weeks, where were also many other prisoners which were thither committed for sundry crimes, and condemned to the gallies. During which time of imprisonment there, I found amōgst those my prison fellowes some that had knowen me before in Mexico, and truely they had compassion of me, and would share of their victuals & any thing els that they had to do me good, amongst whom there was one of them that told me that he vnderstood by a secret friend of his which often came to the prison to him, that I should be shortly sent back againe to Mexico by wagon, so soone as the fleete was gone from S. Iohn de Vllua, for Spaine. This poore man my prison fellow of himselfe, & without any request made by me, caused his said friend which came often vnto him to the grate of the prison to bring him wine & victuals to buie for him two kniues which had files in their backs, which files were so well made that they would serue & suffice any prisoner to file off his irons, and of those knives or files he brought one to me, & told me that he had caused it to be made for me, & let me haue it at ỳ very price it cost him, which was 2. Pezoes, the value of 8. s. of our mony, which knife when I had it, I was a ioyfull man, and conueied the same into the foote of my boot, vpon the inside of my left leg, and so within 3. or 4. dayes after that I had thus receiued my knife, I was suddenly called for, & brought before the head Iustice which caused those my irons with the round bolt to be striken off and sent to a Smiths in ỳ towne, where was a new paire of bolts made readie for me of another fashion, which had a broad iron barre cōming between ỳ shackles, & caused my hands to be made fast with a paire of manacles, and so was I presently laid into a wagon all alone, which was there ready to depart with sundry other wagons to the number of 60. towards Mexico, and they all were laden with sundry merchandize which came in the fleete out of Spaine.

The wagon that I was in was formost of all the companie, and as wee trauelled I being alone in the wagon, began to trie if I could plucke my handes out of the manacles, and as God would although it were somewhat painfull for mee, yet my handes were so slender that I could pull them out, and put them in againe, and euer as we went, when the wagons made most noyse, and the men busied, I would be working to file off my boltes, and trauelling thus for the space of eight leagues from Vera Cruz, wee came to an high hill, at the entring vp of which (as God would) one of the wheeles of the wagon wherein I was, brake, so that by that meanes the other wagons went a fore, and the wagon man that had charge of me set an Indian Carpenter a worke to mend the wheele: and here at this place they baited at an ostrie that a Negro woman keepes, and at this place for that the going vp of the hill is very steepe, for the space of two leagues and better, they doe alwayes accustome to take the mooles of 3. or 4. wagons, and to place them all together for the drawing vp of one wagon, & so to come downe againe, and fetch vp others in that order.

All

All which came very wel to paſſe: for as it drew towards night whē moſt of the Wagoners were gone to draw vp their wagons, in this ſort I being alone had quickly filed off my bolts, & ſo eſpying my time in the darke of the euening before they returned downe the hill againe, I conueyed my ſelfe into the woods there adioyning, carying my bolts and manacles with me, and a few biſkets, and two ſmall cheeſes. And being come into the woods I threw my yrons into a thicke buſh, and then couered them with moſſe and other things, and then ſhifted for my ſelfe as I might all that night. And thus by the good prouidence of Almightie God, I was freed from mine yrons all ſauing the coller, that was about my necke, and ſo got my libertie the ſecond time.

The 7. Chapter.

Wherein is ſhewed how I eſcaped to Guatimala, vpon the South ſea, and from thence to the port of Cauallios, where I got paſſage to goe into Spaine, and of our arriuall at the Hauana, and our comming to Spaine, where I was againe like to haue bene committed priſoner, and how through the great mercie of God I eſcaped, and came home in ſafetie into England, in Februarie 1582.

THe next morning (day light being come) I perceiued by the Sunne riſing what way to take to eſcape their handes, for when I fledde, I tooke the way into the woods vpon the left hande: and hauing left that way that went to Mexico vpon my right hand, I thought to keepe my courſe as the woods and mountaines lay, ſtill direct South as neere as I coulde: by meanes whereof I was ſure to conuey my ſelfe farre ynough from that way that went to Mexico. And as I was thus going on in the woods, I ſaw many great fires made to the North not paſt a league from the mountaine where I was, and trauailing thus in my bootes with mine yron coller about my necke, and my bread and cheeſe, the very ſame forenoone I met with a companie of Indians which were hunting of deare for their ſuſtenance, to whome I ſpake in the Mexicane tongue, and tolde them howe that I had of a long time bene kept in priſon by the cruel Spaniards, and did deſire them to helpe me file off mine yron coller, which they willingly did, reioycing greatly with mee, that I was thus eſcaped out of the Spaniards handes. Then I deſired that I might haue one of them to guide me out of thoſe deſart mountaines towardes the South, which they alſo moſt willingly did: and ſo they brought me to an Indian towne 8. leagues diſtant from thence named Shalapa, where I ſtayed 3. dayes, for that I was ſomewhat ſickely. At which towne (with the golde that I had quilted in my dublet,) I bought me an horſe of one of the Indians, which coſt me 6. Peſoes, and ſo trauailing South, within the ſpace of 2. leagues I happened to ouertake a gray Frier, one that I had bene familiar withall in Mexico, whome then I knewe to be a zealous good man, and one that did much lament the crueltie vſed againſt vs by the Inquiſitors, and truely hee vſed me very courteouſly: and I hauing confidence in him did indeede tell him, that I was minded to aduenture to ſee if I could get out of the ſaid countrey, if I could finde ſhipping, and did therefore pray him of his ayde, direction, and aduice herein, which hee faithfully did, not onely in directing me which was my ſafeſt way to trauaile, but he alſo of himſelfe kept me company for the ſpace of three dayes, and euer as we came to the Indians houſes (who vſed and intertained vs well) he gathered among them in money to the value of 20. Peſoes, which at my departure from him hee freely gaue vnto me. So came I to the citie of Guatimala vpon the South ſea, which is diſtant from Mexico, about 250. leagues, where I ſtayed 6. dayes, for that my horſe was weake. And from thence I trauailed ſtill South and by Eaſt ſeuen dayes iourney, paſſing by certaine Indian townes, vntill I came to an Indian towne diſtant from Mexico, direct South 309. leagues. And here at this towne enquiring to goe to the port Cauallos in the Northeaſt ſea, It was anſwered that in trauailing thither I ſhould not come to any towne in 10. or 12. dayes iourney: ſo here I hired two Indians to be my guide, and I bought hennes, and bread to ſerue vs ſo long time, and tooke with vs things to kindle fire euery night, becauſe of wilde beaſtes, and to dreſſe our meate: and euery night when wee reſted, my Indian guides would make two great fires, betweene the which we placed our ſelues, and my horſe. And in the night time we ſhould here the Lions roare, with Tygers, Dunces, and other beaſtes, and ſome of them we ſhould ſee in the night, which had eyes ſhining like fire. And trauayling thus for the ſpace of twelue dayes wee came at laſt to the port of Cauallos vpon the Eaſt ſea, diſtant from Guatimala South and by Eaſt, two hundreth leagues, and from Mexico 450. or thereabouts. This is a good harborow for ſhippes, and is without either caſtle or bulwarke. I hauing diſpatched away my guids, went downe to the hauen, where I ſaw certaine ſhips loden chiefly with Canary wines, where I ſpake with one of the

Maſters, who aſked me what Countrey man I was, and I told him that I was borne in Granado, & he ſaid, that then I was his countreyman. I required him that I might paſſe home with him in his ſhip paying for my paſſage: And he ſaid yea, ſo that I had a ſafe conduct, or letter teſtimonial to ſhew, that he might incurre no danger; for ſaid he, it may be that you haue killed ſome man, or be indebted, and would therfore runne away: To that I anſwered that there was not any ſuch cauſe. Wel, in the end we grew to a price, that for 60. pezoes, he would carry me into Spaine: a glad man was I at this good hap, and I quickly ſold my houſe, & made my prouiſion of hennes and bread to ſerue me in my paſſage; And thus within 2. dayes after we ſet ſaile, and neuer ſtayed vntill wee came to the Hauana, which is diſtant from port de Cauallios by ſea 500. leagues: where we found the whole fleete of Spaine, which was bounde home from the Indies. And here I was hired for a ſouldier to ſerue in the Admiral ſhip of the ſame fleete, wherein the Generall himſelf went. There landed while I was here 4. ſhips out of Spaine, being all ful of ſouldiers and ordinance, of which nomber there were 200. men landed here & 4. great braſſe pieces of ordinance, although the caſtle were before ſufficiently prouided: 200. men more were ſent to Campeche, & certaine ordinance: 200. to Florida with ordinance, And 100. laſtly to S. Iohn de Vllua. As for ordinance there they haue ſufficient, and of the very ſame which was ours, which we had in the Ieſus, and thoſe others which we had planted in the place, where the Vice Roy betraied M. Hawkins our generall, as hath bene declared. The ſending of thoſe ſouldiers to euery of thoſe portes, and the ſtrengthening of them, was done by commandement from the king of Spaine, who wrote alſo by them to the generall of his fleete, giuing him in charge ſo to doe, as alſo directing him what courſe he ſhould keepe in his comming home into Spaine, charging him at any hand not to come nigh to the yles of Azores, but to keepe his courſe more to the Northwarde, aduertiſing him withall, what nomber and power of French ſhips of warre, and other, Don Anthony had at that time at the Terçera, & yles aforeſaid: which the generall of the fleete well conſidering, and what great ſtore of riches he had to bring home with him into Spaine, did in all very duetifully obſerue and obey: for in truth he had in his ſaid fleete 37. ſaile of ſhips, and in euery of them there was as good as 30. pipes of ſiluer one with another, beſides great ſtore of gold, Cochenelio, ſugers, hides, and Cana Fiſtula, with other Apothecarie drugs. This our generall, who was called Don Pedro de Guſman, did prouidently take order for, for their moſt ſtrength and defence, if neede ſhould be to the vttermoſt of his power, and commanded vpon paine of death, that neither paſſenger nor ſouldier ſhould come aboord without his ſword and harquebuſſe, with ſhot and powder, to the end that they might be the better able to encounter the fleete of Don Anthony, if they ſhould hap to meete with them, or any of them: and euer as the weather was faire, the ſaid generall would himſelf go aboord from one ſhip to another, to ſee that euery man had his full prouiſion according to the commandement giuen. Yet to ſpeake truely what I thinke, two good tall ſhips of warre would haue made a foule ſpoile amongſt them. For in all this fleete there were not any that were ſtrong and warlike appointed, ſauing onely the Admiral, and Vice Admiral: And againe ouer and beſides the weakenes and the ill furniſhing of the reſt, they were all ſo deepely laden, that they had not bene able (if they had bene charged) to haue held out any long fight. Wel, thus we ſet ſaile, & had a very il paſſage home, ſ weather was ſo contrary. We kept our courſe in maner Northeaſt, and brought our ſelues to the height of 42. degrees of latitude, to be ſure not to meete with Don Anthony his fleete, and were vpon our voyage from the 4. of June, vntil the 10. of September, & neuer ſaw land til we fell with the Arenas Gordas hard by S. Lucar. And there was an order taken that none ſhould go on ſhoare vntil he had licence: as for me, I was knowne by one in the ſhip, who told the Maſter that I was an Engliſh man, which (as God would) was my good hap to heare: for if I had not heard it, it had coſt me my life. Notwithſtanding, I would not take any knowledge of it, and ſeemed to be merry, & pleaſant that we were all come ſo wel in ſafetie. Preſently after, licence came that we ſhould goe on ſhoare, and I preſſed to be gone with the firſt: howbeit, the M. came vnto me and ſaid, Sirra, you muſt goe with me to Siuil by water: I knew his meaning wel inough, & that he ment there to offer me vp as a ſacrifice to ꝑ Holy houſe. For the ignorant zeale of a nomber of theſe ſuperſtitious Spaniards is ſuch, that they thinke, that they haue done God good ſeruice, when they haue brought a Lutheran heretique to the fire to be burnt: For ſo do they accompt of vs. Well, I perceiuing all this, tooke vpon me not to ſuſpect any thing, but was ſtil iocund and merry: howbeit, I knew it ſtoode me vpon to ſhift for my ſelfe. And ſo wayting my time when the Maſter was in his cabbin aſleepe, I conueyed my ſelfe ſecretly downe by the ſhrowds into the ſhip boate, and made no ſtay but cut the rope wherewithal ſhe was moored, and ſo by the cable haled on ſhoare, where I lept on land & let the boate go whither it would. Thus by the helpe of God I eſcaped that day, & then neuer ſtaied at S. Lucar, but went all night by the way which I had ſeene other take toward Siuil: ſo that the next

next morning I came to Siuill, and ſought me out a worke maſter, that I might fall to my ſcience, which was weauing of taffataes, and being intertained I ſet my ſelf cloſe to my worke, and durſt not for my life once to ſtirre abroad for feare of being knowen, and being thus at my worke, within 4. dayes after I heard one of my felowes ſay, that he heard there was great inquirie made for an Engliſhman that came home in the fleete: what an heretique Lutheran (quoth I) was it, I would to God I might knowe him, ſurely I would preſent him to the Holy houſe. And thus I kept ſtill within doores at my worke, and fained my ſelfe not well at eaſe, & that I would labor as I might to get me new clothes. And continuing thus for the ſpace of 3. moneths I called for my wages, and bought me all things newe, different from the apparel that I did weare at ſea, and yet durſt not be ouerbolde to walke abroad: and after vnderſtanding that there were certaine Engliſh ſhips at S. Lucar bound for England, I tooke a boate and went aboord one of them, and deſired the Maſter that I might haue paſſage with him to goe into England, and told him ſecretly that I was one of thoſe which Captaine Hawkins did ſet on ſhoare in the Indies: he very courteouſly prayed mee to haue him excuſed, for he durſt not meddle with me, & prayed mee therefore to returne from whence I came. Which when I perceiued, with a ſorowful heart God knoweth I tooke my leaue of him, not without wattie cheeks. And then I went to S. Mary port, which is 3. leagues from S. Lucar, where I put my ſelf to be a ſouldier to go in the k. of Spaines Gallies, which were bound for Maiorca, and comming thither in the end of ꝑ Chriſtmas holydayes, I found there 2. Engliſh ſhips, the one of London, and the other of the Weſt countrey, which were ready fraighted and ſtayed but for a faire wind. To the M. of the one, which was of the Weſt countrey went I, and told him that I had bene 2. yeeres in Spaine to learne the language, and that I was nowe deſirous to go home and ſee my friends, for that I lacked maintenance: and ſo hauing agreed with him for my paſſage I tooke ſhipping. And thus through the prouidence of Almightie God, after 16. yeres abſence, hauing ſuſtained many and ſundry great troubles and miſeries, as by this diſcourſe appeareth, I came home to this my natiue countrey of England, in the yeere 1582. in the the moneth of February in the ſhippe called the Landret, and arriued at Poole.

The voyage of Robert Tomſon marchant, into Noua Hiſpania in the yere 1555. With diuers obſeruations concerning the ſtate of the Countrey: And certaine accidents touching himſelfe.

RObert Tomſon borne in the towne of Andouer in Hampſhire, begun his trauaile out of England in An. 1553. in the moneth of March, who departing out of ꝑ citie of Briſtol in a good ſhip called the Barke yong, in companie of other marchants of the ſaide citie, within 8. dayes after arriued at Lisbone in Portingal, where the ſaid Robert Tomſon remained 15. dayes, at the end of which he ſhipped himſelfe for Spaine in the ſaid ſhippe, and within 4. dayes arriued in the bay of Cadiz in Andaluſia, which is vnder the kingdome of Spaine, and from thence trauailed vp to the Citie of Siuil by land, which is 20. leagues, and there he repaired to one Iohn Fields houſe an Engliſh marchant, who had dwelt in ꝑ ſaid citie of Siuil 18. or 20. yeres maried with wife and children: In whoſe houſe the ſaid Tomſon remained by the ſpace of one whole yeere or there about, for 2. cauſes: The one to learne the Caſtilian tongue, The other to ſee the orders of the countrey, and the cuſtomes of the people. At the ende of which time hauing ſeene the fleetes of ſhips come out of the Indies to that citie, with ſuch great quantitie of golde and ſiluer, pearles, precious ſtones, ſugar, hides, ginger, and diuers other riche commodities, hee did determine with himſelfe to ſeeke meanes & opportunitie to paſſe ouer to ſee that rich countrey from whence ſuch great quantitie of rich cõmodities came. And it fel out that within ſhort time after the ſaid Field (where the ſaid Tomſon was lodged) did determine to paſſe ouer into the Weſt Indies himſelf, with his wife, children & familie, and at the requeſt of the ſaid Tomſon, he purchaſed a licence of the King to paſſe into the Indies, for himſelfe, his wife & children, & among them alſo for the ſaid Tomſon to paſſe with them: ſo that preſently they made preparation of victual & other neceſſary prouiſion for the voyage. But the ſhips which were prepared to performe the voyage being all ready to depart, vpon certaine conſiderations by the kings commandement were ſtayed & arreſted til further ſhould be knowen of the kings pleaſure. Whereupon the ſaid Iohn Field, with R. Tomſon and his company being departed out of Siuil & come downe to S. Lucar 15. leagues off, and ſeeing the ſtay made vpon the ſhips of the ſaid fleete, & being not aſſured when they would depart, determined to ſhippe themſelues for the ples of the Canaries, which is 250. leagues from S. Lucar, and there to ſtay till the ſaid fleete ſhould come thither: for that is continually their port to make ſtay at fiue or eight dayes, to take freſh water, bread, fleſh, and other neceſſaries.

So that in the moneth of Februarie in An. 1555. the said Rob. Tomson with the said Iohn Field and his company, shipped themselues out of the towne of S. Lucar in a caruel of the citie of Cadiz, and within 6. dayes they arriued at the port of the Grand Canaria, where at our cõming the ships that rode in the said port beganne to cry out of all measure with lowd voyces, in so much that the Castle which stoode fast by began to shoote at vs, and shot 6. or 8. shot at vs, and strooke downe our maine maste, before we could hoise out our boate to go on land, to know what the cause of the shooting was, seeing that we were Spanish ships, and comming into his countrey. So that being on land & complayning of the wrong and damage done vnto vs: they answered, that they had thought wee had bene French rouers, that had come into the said port, to do some harme to the shippes that were there. For that 8. dayes past, there went out of the said port a caruel much like vnto ours, laden with sugers and other marchandise for Spaine, and on the other side of the point of the said Iland, met with a Frenchman of warre, who tooke the said caruel, & vnladed out of her into the said Frenchship, both men & goods. And being demaunded of ỹ said Spaniards what other ships remained in the port whence they came, They answered that there remained diuers other ships, and one laden with sugars (as they were) & ready to depart for Spaine, vpõ the which newes the Frenchmen put 30. tall men of their ship wel appointed, into the said caruel that they had taken, and sent her backe againe to the said port from whence she had departed the day before. And somewhat late towards the euening came into the port, not shewing past 3. or 4. men, and so came to an ancre hard by the other ships ỹ were in the said port, & being seene by the castle & by the said ships, they made no reckoning of her, because they knew her, and thinking that she had found contrary winds at the sea, or had forgot some thing behinde them, they had returned backe againe for the same, & so made no accompt of her, but let her alone riding quietly among the other ships in the said port: So that about midnight the said caruel with the Frenchmen in her, went aboord the other ship that lay hard by laden with sugars, and droue the Spaniards that were in her vnder hatches, and presently let slip her cables and ancres, and set saile and caried her cleane away, & after this sort deceiued them: And they thinking or fearing that we were the like, did shoote at vs as they did. This being past, the next day after our arriual in the said port, we did vnbarke our selues and went on lande vp to the citie or head towne of the great Canaria, where we remained 18. or 20. dayes: and there found certaine Englishmen marchants seruants of one Anthony Hickman & Edward Castelin, marchants of the citie of London, that lay there in traffique, of whome wee receiued great courtesie and much good cheere. After the which 20. dayes being past, in the which we had seene the country, the people, and the disposition thereof, wee departed from thence, and sailed to the next yle of the Canaries 18. leages off, called Teneriffe, & being come on land, went vp to the citie called the La Laguna, where we remained 7. moneths, attending the comming of the whole fleete: which in the ende came, and there hauing taken that which they had neede off, we shipped our selues in a ship of Cadiz, being one of the said fleete, which was belonging to an Englishman maried in the citie of Cales in Spaine, whose name was Iohn Sweeting, and came in the saide ship for captaine also an Englishman maried in Cadiz, & sonne in law to the saide Iohn Sweeting, whose name was Leonard Chilton, and also came in the saide ship another Englishman which had bene a marchant of the citie of Exeter, one of 50. pecres or there about, whose name was Raph Sarre. So that we departed from the said Ilands in the moneth of October the foresaid peere 8. ships in our companie, and so directed our course towards the bay of newe Spaine, and by the way towardes the Iland of S. Domingo, otherwise called Hispaniola. So that within 42. dayes after wee departed from the yles of Canaries, we arriued with our ship at the port of S. Domingo, & went in ouer the barre where our ship knocked her keele at her entrie: and there our ship rid before ỹ towne, where we went on land and refreshed our selues 16. dayes, where we found no bread made of wheat, but bisket brought out of Spaine, and out of the bay of Mexico: for the countrey it selfe doeth yeeld no kinde of graine to make bread withall. But the bread they make there is certaine cakes made of rootes, called Cassaua, which is something substantiall, but it hath but an vnsauery taste in the eating thereof. Flesh of beefe and mutton they haue great store: for there are men that haue 10000. head of cattel, of oxen, bulls and kine, which they do keepe onely for the hides, for the quantitie of flesh is so great, that they are not able to spend the hundreth part. Hogs flesh is there good store, very sweete & sauery, and so holsome, that they giue it to sicke folkes to eat in stead of hennes and capons: although they haue good store of poultrie of that sort, as also of Guinycocks & Guiny hens. At the time of out being there, the citie of S. Domingo was not of aboue 500. houshoulds of Spaniards, but of the Indians dwelling in the suburbs there were more. The countrey is most part of the yere very hot, & very ful of a kind of flies or gnats with long bils, which do pricke & molest the people very much in the night when they are asleepe, in pricking their faces & hands, and other

parts

parts of their bodies ẏ lie vncouered, & make them to ſwel wõderfully. Alſo there is another kinde of ſmal worme which creepeth into the ſoles of mens feete & eſpecially of ẏ blacke Moores & children which vſe to go barefoot, and maketh their feete to grow as big as a mans head, & doth ſo ake that it would make one run mad. They haue no remedy for the ſame, but to open ẏ fleſh ſometimes 3. or 4. inches & ſo digge them out. The countrey yeeldeth great ſtore of ſuger, hides of oxen, buls and kine, ginger, Cana fiſtula & Salſa perillia: mines of ſiluer & gold there are none, but in ſome riuers there is found ſome ſmal quantitie of gold. The principal coine that they do trafique withall in that place, is black money made of copper & braſſe: and this they ſay they do vſe not for that they lacke money of golde and ſiluer to trade withall out of the other partes of India, but becauſe if they ſhould haue good money, the marchants that deale with them in trade, would cary away their gold & ſiluer, and let the countrey commodities lie ſtil. And thus much for S. Domingo. So wee were comming frõ the yles of Canaries to S. Domingo, and there ſtaying vntil the moneth of December, which was 3. moneths. About the beginning of January we departed thence towards the bay of Mexico and new Spaine, towarde which we ſet our courſe, and ſo ſayled 24. dayes till we came within 15. leagues of S. Iohn de Vllua, which was the port of Mexico of our right diſcharge: And being ſo neere our ſaid port, there roſe a ſtorme of Northerly winds, which came off from Terra Florida, which cauſed vs to caſt about into the ſea againe, for feare leaſt that night we ſhould be caſt vpon the ſhoare before day did breake, & ſo put our ſelues in danger of caſting away: the winde and ſea grew ſo foule and ſtrong, that within 2. houres after the ſtorme began, 8. ſhips that were together were ſo diſperſed, that we could not ſee one another. One of the ſhippes of our company being of the burthen of 500. tunne called ẏ hulke of Carion, would not caſt about to ſea as we did, but went that night with the land, thinking in the morning to purchaſe the port of S. Iohn de Vllua, but miſſing the port went with the ſhoare & was caſt away. There were drowned of that ſhip 75. perſons, men women and children, and 64. were ſaued that could ſwimme, and had meanes to ſaue themſelues: among thoſe that periſhed in that ſhip, was a gentleman who had bin preſent the yere before in S. Domingo, his wife and 4. daughters with the reſt of his ſeruants and houſhold. We with ẏ other 7. ſhips caſt about into the ſea, the ſtorme during 10. dayes with great might, boyſterous winds, fogs & raine: our ſhip being old & weake was ſo toſſed, that ſhe opened at the ſterne a fathom vnder water, & the beſt remedy we had was to ſtop it wᵗh beds & pilobiers, and for feare of ſinking we threw & lightned into the ſea al the goods we had or could come by: but that would not ſerue. Then we cut our maine maſt & threw all our ordinance into the ſea ſauing one piece, which early in a morning when we thought we ſhould haue ſunke, we ſhot off, & as pleaſed God there was one of the ſhips of our company nere vnto vs, which we ſaw not by meanes of the great fogge, which hearing the ſound of the piece, & vnderſtanding ſome of the company to be in great extremitie, began to make towards vs, & when they came within hearing of vs, we deſired them for ẏ loue of God to help to ſaue vs, for that we were al like to periſh. They willed vs to hoiſe our foreſaile as much as we could & make towards them, for they would doe their beſt to ſaue vs, and ſo we did: And we had no ſooner hoiſed our foreſaile, but there came a gale of winde & a piece of ſea, ſtrooke in the foreſaile, and caried ſaile and maſte all ouerboord, ſo that then wee thought there was no hope of life. And then we beganne to imbrace one another, euery man his friende, euery wife her huſbande, and the children their fathers and mothers, committing our ſoules to Almightie God, thinking neuer to eſcape aliue: yet it pleaſed God in the time of moſt neede when all hope was paſt, to aide vs with his helping hand, & cauſed the wind a litle to ceaſe, ſo that within 2. houres after, the other ſhip was able to come aboord vs, & tooke into her with her boate man, woman & childe, naked without hoſe or ſhoe vpon many of our feete. I do remember that the laſt perſon that came out of the ſhip into the boate, was a woman blacke Moore, who leaping out of the ſhip into the boat with a yong ſucking child in her armes, lept to ſhort and fel into the ſea and was a good while vnder the water before the boat could come to reſcue her, and with the ſpreding of her clothes roſe aboue water againe, and was caught by the coat & pulled into the boat hauing ſtil her childe vnder her arme, both of them halfe drowned, and yet her naturall loue towards her childe would not let her let the childe goe. And when ſhee came aboorde the boate, ſhee helde her childe ſo faſt vnder her arme ſtil, that two men were ſcant able to get it out. So we departed out of our ſhippe and left it in the ſea: it was worth foure hundreth thouſande ducats, ſhippe and goods when we left it. And within three dayes after wee arriued at our port of S. Iohn de Vllua in Newe Spaine. I do remember that in the great and boyſterous ſtorme of this foule weather, in the night, there came vpon the toppe of our maine yarde and maine maſte, a certaine litle light, much like vnto the light of a little candle, which the Spaniards called the Corpos ſancto, and ſaide it was ſaint Elmo, whome they take to be the aduocate of Sailers. At the which

sight the Spaniards fell downe vpon their knees and worshipped it, and praying God and saint Elmo to cease the torment, and saue them from the perill that they were in, with promising him that at their comming on lande, they would repaire vnto his Chappell, and there cause Masses to be saide, and other ceremonies to bee done. The Friers cast reliques into the sea, to cause the sea to be stil, and likewise saide Gospels, with other crossings and ceremonies vpon the sea to make the storme to cease: which (as they said) did much good to weaken the furie of the storme. But I could not perceiue it, nor gaue no credite to it, till it pleased God to sende vs the remedie and deliuered vs from the rage of the same, His Name be praised therefore. This light continued aboorde our shippe about 3. houres, flying from maste to maste, and from toppe to toppe: and sometime it would bee in two or three places at once. I informed my selfe of learned men afterward what that light should be, and they saide, that it was but a congelation of the winde and vapours of the sea congealed with the extremitie of the weather, and so flying in the winde, many times doeth chance to hit in the masts and shrowdes of the shippes that are at sea in foule weather. And in trueth I do take it to be so: for that I haue seene the like in other ships at sea, and in sundry ships at once. By this men may see how the Papists are giuen to beleeue and worship such vaine things and copes, as God, to whome all honour doth appertaine, and in their needs and necessities doe lett to call vpon the liuing God, who is the giuer all good things.

The 16. of Aprill in An. 1556. we arriued at the port of S. Iohn de Vllua in newe Spaine, very naked & distressed of apparel, & all other things, by meanes of the losse of our foresaid ship & goods, and from thence we went to the newe towne called Vera cruz, 5. leagues from the said port of S. Ioh. de Vllua, marching stil by ẏ sea side, where we found lying vpon the sands great quantitie of mightie great trees with rootes & al, some of them of 4, 5. & 6. cart load by our estimation, which as the people told vs, were in the great stormy weather which we dured at sea, rooted out of ẏ grou̇nd in Terra Florida, right against that place, which is 300. leagues ouer by sea, and brought thither. So that we came to the said towne of Vera cruz, where we remained a moneth: and there the said Iohn Field chanced to meet with an old friend of his acquaintance in Spaine, called Gonçalo Ruiz de Cordoua, a very riche man of the saide towne of Vera cruz: who hearing of his cōming thither with his wife & family, and of his misfortune by sea, came vnto him & receiued him and al his houshold into his house, & kept vs there a whole moneth, making vs very good cheere, & giuing vs good interteinment. & also gaue vs that were in al 8. persons of the said I. Fields house, double apparel newe out of the shop of very good cloth, coates, cloakes, hose, shirts, smocks, gownes for the women, hose, shoes, and al other necessary apparel, and for our way vp to the citie of Mexico, horse, moyles, & men, & money in our purses for the expences by the way, which by our accompt might amount vnto the summe of 400. crownes. So that after we were entred 2. dayes iourney into the countrey, I the said Robert Tomson fel sicke of an ague, so that the next day I was not able to sit on my horse, but was faine to be caried vpon Indians backs, from thence to Mexico. And when we came within half a dayes iourney of the citie of Mexico, the said I. Field also fel sicke, and within 3. dayes after we arriued at the said citie, he died: And presently sickened one of his children, and 2. more of his houshold people, and within 8. dayes died. So that within 10. dayes after we arriued at the citie of Mexico, of 8. persons that were of vs, of ẏ said company, there remained but 4. of vs aliue. & I the said Tomson at the point of death of the sicknes that I got vpon the way, which continued with me the space of 6. moneths. At the end of which time it pleased almighty God to restore me my health againe, although weake & greatly disabled. And being some thing strong, I purposed to seeke meanes to liue, & to seeke a way how to profit my self in ẏ countrey, seeing it had pleased God to send vs thither in safetie. Then by friēdship of one Th. Blake a Scotish man borne, who had dwelt & had bene maried in the said citie aboue 20. yeeres before I came to the saide Citie, I was preferred to the seruice of a gentleman a Spaniard dwelling there, a man of great wealth, and one of the first conquerers of the saide citie, whose name was Gonçalo Serezo, with whom I dwelt 12. moneths & a half. At the end of which I was maliciously accused by the holy house for matters of religion, & so apprehended and caried to prison, where I lay close prisoner 7. moneths, without speaking to any creature, but to ẏ Iailer that kept the said prison, when he brought me my meate & drinke. In the meane time was brought into the said prison one Augustin Boacio an Italian of Genoua also for matters of religion, who was taken at Sacatecas 80. leagues to the Southeastward of the citie of Mexico: At the ende of the sayde seuen moneths, wee were both caried to the high Church of Mexico, to doe open penance vpon an high Scaffolde, made before the high Altar, vpon a Sunday, in the presence of a very great nomber of people, who were at the least fiue or sixe thousande. For there were that came one hundreth mile off, to see the sayde Auto (as they call it:) for that there were neuer none before, that had done the like in the

saide

ſaide Countrey, nor could not tell what Lutheranes were, nor what it meant: for they neuer heard of any ſuch thing before. We were brought into the Church, euery one with a S. Benito vpon his backe, which is halfe a yard of yellow cloth, with a hole to put in a mans head in the midſt, and caſt ouer a mans heade: both flaps hange one before, and an other behinde, and in the middeſt of euery flap, a S. Andrewes croſſe, made of red cloth, ſowed on vpon the ſame, and that is called S. Benito. The common people, before they ſawe the penitents come into the Church, were giuen to vnderſtand, that we were Heretikes, Infidels, and people that did deſpiſe God, and his workes, and that we had bene more like deuils then men, and thought we had had the fauour of ſome monſters, or Heathen people. And when they ſaw vs come into the Church in our plaiers coates, the women & children began to cry out, and made ſuch a noiſe, that it was ſtrange to ſee and heare, ſaying, that they neuer ſaw goodlier men in all their liues, and that it was not poſſible that there could be in vs ſo much euil, as was reported of vs, and that we were more like Angels among men, then ſuch perſons of ſuch euil religion as by the prieſts and Friers we were reported to be, and that it was great pitie that we ſhould be ſo vſed for ſo ſmal an offence. So that being brought into the ſaide high Church, and ſet vpon the ſcaffold which was made before the high altar, in the preſence of al the people, vntil high Maſſe was done, and the ſermon made by a Frier, concerning our matter, and putting vs in all the diſgrace they could, to cauſe the people not to take ſo much compaſſion vpon vs, for that we were Heretikes, and people that were ſeduced of the deuill, and forſaken the faith of the Catholike Church of Rome, with diuers other reprochful words, which were too long to recite in this place. High Maſſe & ſermon being done, our offences, as they called them, were recited, euery man what he had ſaid and don, and preſently was the ſentence pronounced againſt vs. That was, that the ſaid Auguſtine Boacio was condemned to weare his S. Benito all the daies of his life, and put into perpetual priſon, where he ſhoulde fulfil the ſame, and all his goods confiſcated and loſt. And I the ſaid Tomſon to weare the S. Benito for 3. yeeres, and then to be ſet at libertie. And for the accompliſhing of this ſentence or condemnation, we muſt be preſently ſent downe from Mexico, to Vera Cruz, and from thence to S. Iohn de Vllua, and there to be ſhipped for Spaine, which was 65. leagues by land, with ſtrait commandement, that vpon paine of 1000. duckets, the Maſters euery one ſhould looke ſtraitly vnto vs, and carry vs to Spaine, and deliuer vs vnto the Inquiſitors of the Holy houſe of Siuill, that they ſhould put vs in the places, where we ſhould fulfil our penances that the Archbiſhop of Mexico had enioyned vnto vs, by his ſentence there giuen. For performance of the which, we were ſent downe from Mexico, to the ſea ſide, which was 65. leagues, with fetters vpon our feete, and there deliuered to the Maſters of the ſhips, to be caried for Spaine, as before is ſaid. And it was ſo, that the Italian fearing, that if he had preſented himſelfe in Spaine before the Inquiſitors, that they would haue burned him, to preuent that danger, when we were comming homeward, & were arriued at the Iſland of Tercera, one of the Iſles of the Azores: the firſt night that we came into the ſaid port to an anker, about midnight he found the meanes to get him naked out of the ſhip into the ſea, and ſwamme naked a ſhoare, and ſo preſently got him to the further ſide of the Iſland, where he found a litle Caruel ready to depart for Portingall, in the which he came to Lisbone, and paſſed into France, and ſo into England, where he ended his life in the Citie of London. And I for my part kept ſtill aboord the ſhip, and came into Spaine, and was deliuered to the Inquiſitors of the Holy houſe of Siuill, where they kept me in cloſe priſon, til I had fulfilled the 3. yeeres of my penance. Which time being expired, I was freely put out of priſon, and ſet at libertie: and being in the citie of Siuil a caſher of one Hugh Typton, an Engliſh merchant of great doing, by the ſpace of one yeere, it fortuned that there came out of the Citie of Mexico, a Spaniard, called Iohn de la Barrera, that had bene long time in the Indias, and had got great ſummes of gold and ſiluer, and with one only daughter ſhipped himſelfe for to come for Spaine, and by the way chanced to die, and gaue all that he had vnto his onely daughter, whoſe name was Marie de la Barrera, and being arriued at the Citie of Siuil, it was my chance to marry with her. The marriage was worth to me 2500. pounds in bars of golde and ſiluer, beſides iewels of great price. This I thought good to ſpeake of, to ſhewe the goodnes of God to all them that put their truſt in him, that I being brought out of the Indias, in ſuch great miſerie and infamie to the world, ſhould be prouided at Gods hande in one moment, of more then in all my life before, I could attaine vnto by my owne labour. After we departed from Mexico, our S. Benitoes were ſet vp in the high Church of the ſaid Citie, with our names written in the ſame, according to their vſe & cuſtome, which is and will be a monument and a remembrance of vs, as long as the Romiſh Church doth raigne in that Countrey. The ſame haue bene ſeene ſince by one Iohn Chilton, and diuers others of our nation, which were left in that Countrey long ſince, by ſir Iohn Hawkins. And becauſe it ſhalbe knowen wherefore it was that I was ſo puniſhed by the Clergies hand, as

before

before is mentioned, I will in briefe wordes declare the same.

It is so, that being in Mexico, at the table, among many principal people at dinner, they began to inquire of me being an Englishman, whether it were true, that in England they had ouerthrowen all their Churches, and houses of religion, and that all the images of the saints of heauen that were in them, were throwen downe and broken, and burned, and in some places stoned high waies with them, and denied their obedience to the Pope of Rome, as they had beene certified out of Spaine, by their friends. To whom I made answere, that it was so, that in deede they had in England put downe all the Religious houses of Friers, and Monkes, that were in England, and the images that were in their churches, & other places, were taken away, & vsed there no more: for that (as they say) ỳ making of them, and putting of them where they were adored, was cleane contrary to the expresse commandement of Almightie God, Thou shalt not make to thy selfe any grauen image, &c. & that for ỳ cause they thought it not lawful that they should stand in the church, which is the house of adoration. One that was at the declaring of these wordes, who was my Master, Gonsalo Ceresо answered and said, if it were against the commandement of God, to haue images in the churches, that then he had spent a great deale of money in vaine, for that 2. yeeres past, he had made in ỳ monastery of Santo Domingo, in ỳ said city of Mexico, an image of our Lady of pure siluer & gold, with pearles & pretious stones, which cost him 7000. & odde pesos, & euery peso is 6. s. 8. d. of our money, which in deede was true, for that I haue seene it many times my selfe where it stands. At the table was an other gentleman, who presuming to defend the cause, more then any other that was there, said, that they knew wel ynough that they were made but of stocks & stones, & that to them was no worship giuen, but that there was a certaine veneration due vnto them, after they were set vp in the church, & that they were set there to a good intent: the one, for that they were bookes for the simple people, to make them vnderstand the glory of the saints that were in heauen, & a shape of them, to put vs in remembrance to cal vpon them, to be our intercessors vnto God for vs, for that we are such miserable sinners, that we are not worthy to appeare before God, & that vsing deuotion to saints in heauen, they may obtaine at Gods hands the sooner, the thing that wee demand of him. As for example, said he, imagin that a subiect hath offended his king vpon ỳ earth, in any kind of respect, is it for the partie to go boldly to the king in person, & to demand pardon for his offences: no saith he, ỳ presumption were to great, & possibly he might be repulsed, & haue a great rebuke for his labour. Better it is for such a person to seeke some priuate man neere the King in his Court, & make him acquainted with his matter, and let him be a Mediator to his Maiestie, for him, & for the matter he hath to do with him, and so might he the better come to his purpose, & obtaine the thing which he doeth demande: euen so saith he, it is with God & his saintes in heauen, for we are wretched sinners, and not worthy to appeare, nor present our selues before the Maiestie of God, to demand of him the thing that we haue neede of: therefore thou hast neede to be deuout, and haue deuotion to the mother of God, and the saints of heauen, to be intercessors to God for ther, & so maist thou the better obtaine of God the thing that thou doest demand. To this I answered, & saide, sir, as touching the comparison you made of the intercessors to the king, how necessarie they were, I would but aske you this question. Set the case that this king you speake of, if he be so merciful, as, when he knoweth that one, or any of his subiects hath offended him, he send for him to his owne towne, or to his owne house, or place, & say vnto him, come hither, I know we that thou hast offended many lawes, if thou doest know therof, & doest repent thee of the same, with full intent to offend no more, I wil forgiue thy trespasse, & remember it no more: said I, if this be done by the kings owne person, what then hath this man neede to go seeke friendship at any of the kings priuat seruants handes, but goe to the principal, seeing that he is readier to forgiue thee, then thou art to demand forgiuenes at his hands. Euen so is it with our gratious God, who calleth & crieth out vnto vs throughout all the world, by the mouth of his Prophets, Apostles, & by his own mouth, saith, Come vnto me all ye that labour, & are ouer laden, & I wil refresh you, besides 1000. other offers & proffers which he doth make vnto vs in his holy Scriptures. What then haue we need of the saints helpe that are in heauen, wheras the Lord himself doth so freely offer himselfe vnto vs? At which sayings, many of the hearers were astonied, & said, that by that reason, I would giue to vnderstand, that the inuocation of saints was to be disanulled, & by the lawes of God not commanded. I answered, that they were not my words, but the words of God himself: looke into the scriptures your self, & you shal so find it. The talke was perceaued to be preiudiciall to the Romish doctrine, & therfore it was commanded to be no more entreated of, & al remained vnthought vpon, had it not bene for a villanous Portingal that was in the company, who said, Basta ser Ingles para saber todo esto y mas: who the next day, without imparting any thing to any body, went to the Bishop of Mexico, and his Prouisor, & saide, that in a place where he had bene the day before, was

m

an Engliſhman, who had ſaid, that there was no neede of ſaints in ẏ church, nor of any inuocation of Saints, vpon whoſe denomination I was apprehended for the ſame words here rehearſed, and none other thing, and thereupon was vſed, as before is written.

Now to ſpeake ſomewhat of the deſcription of the countrey, you ſhal vnderſtand, that the port of S. Iohn de Vllua, is a very litle Iſland low by the water ſide, the broadeſt or longeſt part thereof not aboue a bowe ſhoote ouer, and ſtandeth within two furlongs of the firme land. In my time there was but one houſe, and a litle Chappell to ſay Maſſe in, in all the Iſland: the ſide to the landwards, is made by mans hands, with free ſtone and grauel, and is 4. fathom deepe downe right, wherfore the great ſhips that come in there, doe ride ſo neere the ſhoare of the Iſland, that you may come and goe aland vpon their beake noſes. They vſe to put great chaines of yron in at their hallers, and an anker to the landward, and all litle ynough to moue well their ſhippes for feare of the northerly winds, which come off the coaſt of Florida, that ſometimes haue caried ſhips, and houſes, & all away to the ſhoare. The king was wont to haue 20. great mightie Negroes, who did ſeruice in nothing elſe, but onely to repaire the ſaid Iſland, where the foule weather doth hurt it. The Countrey al there about, is very plaine ground, & a mile from the ſea ſide a great wildernes, with great quantitie of red Deere in the ſame, ſo that when the marriners of the ſhips are diſpoſed, they go vp into the wildernes, & do kil of the ſame, and bring them aboord to eate, for their recreation.

From this port to the next towne, which is called Vera Cruz, are 5. leagues almoſt by the Sea ſide, til you come within one league of the place, and then you turne vp towards the land, into a wood, till you come to a litle riuer hard by the ſaid townes ſide, which ſometimes of the yeere is dry without water. The towne of Vera Cruz in my time, had not paſt 300. houſholds, and ſerued but for the folke of the ſhips, to buy and bring their goods aland, and deliuer it to their owners, as alſo the owners and their factors to receaue their goods of the Maſters of the ſhips. This towne ſtandeth alſo in a very plaine on the one ſide the riuer, and the other ſide is enuironed with much ſand blowen from the ſea ſide with the tempeſt of weather, many times comming vpon that coaſt. This towne alſo is ſubiect to great ſicknes, & in my time many of the marriners & officers of the ſhips did die with thoſe diſeaſes there accuſtomed, & eſpecially thoſe that were not vſed to the Country, nor knew the danger thereof, but would commonly go in the ſunne in the heat of the day, & did eat fruite of the Countrey, with much diſorder, & eſpecially gaue themſelues to womens company at their firſt comming: whereupon they were caſt into a burning ague, of the which fewe eſcaped.

Halfe a daies iourney from Vera Cruz, towards Mexico, is a lodging of 5. or 6. houſes, called the Rinconado, which is a place, where is a great pinacle made of lime & ſtone, faſt by a riuer ſide, where the Indians were wont to do their ſacrifices vnto their gods, which is a plaine & low ground betwixt that and Vera Cruz, and alſo ſubiect to ſickne: but afterward, halfe a daies iourney that you do begin to enter into the high land, you ſhal find as faire, good, and ſweete Countrey, as any in the world, & the farther you go, the goodlier and ſweeter the countrey is, til you come to Pueblo de los Angelos, which may be ſome 43. leagues from Vera Cruz, which was in my time a towne of 600. houſholds, or thereabout, ſtanding in a goodly ſoile. Betweene Vera Cruz & that, you ſhall come thorough many townes of the Indians, & villages, & many goodly fields of medow grounds, Riuers of freſh waters, foreſts, & great woods, very pleaſant to behold. From Pueblo de los Angelos, to Mexico, is 22. leagues of very faire way, & countrey, as before is declared. Mexico was a city in my time, of not aboue 1500. houſholds of Spaniards inhabiting there, but of India people in the Suburbs of the ſaid City, dwelt aboue 300000. as it was thought, and many more. This Citie of Mexico, is 65. leagues from the North ſea, and 75. leagues from the ſouth ſea, ſo that it ſtandeth in the midſt of the maine land, betwixt the one ſea & the other. It is ſituated in the middeſt of a lake of ſtanding water, & enuironed round about with the ſame, ſauing in many places, going out of the city, are many broad waies through the ſaid lake or water. This lake and city is enuironed alſo with great mountaines round about, which are in compaſſe aboue 30. leagues. & the ſaid city & lake of ſtanding water, doth ſtand in a great plaine in the midſt of it. This lake of ſtanding water doth proceede from the ſhedding of the raine, that falleth vpon the ſaid mountaines, & ſo gather themſelues together in this place. All the whole proportion of this city doth ſtand in a very plaine ground, & in the midſt of the ſaid city, is a ſquare place of a good bow ſhoote ouer from ſide to ſide: & in the midſt of the ſaid place, is the high church, very faire & wel builded al through, at that time not halfe finiſhed, & round about the ſaid place, are many faire houſes built: on the one ſide, are the houſes where Mutezuma the great king of Mexico that was, dwelt, & nowe there lie alwaies the Viceroyes that the king of Spaine ſendeth thither euery 3. yeeres. And in my time was there for Viceroy a gentleman of Caſtil, called Don Luis de Velaſco. And on the other ſide of ẏ ſaid place, euen againſt the ſame, is the Biſhops houſe, very faire built, and many other houſes of goodly building:

ding. And hard by the same, are also other very faire houses, built by the Marques de Valle, otherwise called Hernando Cortes, who was he that first conquered the said Citie and Countrey, who after the said conquest which he made with great labour and trauell of his person, and danger of his life, and being growen great in the Countrey, the King of Spaine sent for him, saying that he had some particular matters to impart vnto him. And when hee came home, he could not be suffered to returne backe againe, as the King before had promised him. With the which, for sorrowe that hee tooke, hee died, and this hee had for the rewarde of his good seruice. The said Citie of Mexico, hath the streetes made very broad, and right, that a man being in the high place, at the one ende of the streete, may see at the least a good mile forward, and in all the one part of the streetes of the North part of their Citie, there runneth a pretie lake of very cleere water, that euery man may put into his house, as much as he will, without the cost of any thing, but of the letting in. Also there is a great caue, or ditch of water, that commeth through the Citie, euen vnto the high place, where come euery morning at the breake of the day, 20. or 30. Canoas, or troughes of the Indians, which bring in them all manner of prouision for the Citie, which is made, and groweth in the Countrey, which is a very good commodity for the Inhabitants of that place. And as for victuals in the said Citie, of Beefe, Mutton, and Hennes, Capons, Quailes, Guinye Cocks, and such like, all are very good cheape: to say, the whole quarter of an Oxe, as much as a slaue can carry away from the Butchers, for 5. tomynes, that is, 5. Roials of plate, which is but 2. shillings and 6. pence, and a fat Sheepe at the Butchers, for 3. Roials, which is 18. pence, and no more. Bread is as good cheape as in Spaine, and all other kind of fruites, as Apples, Peares, Pomegranats, and Quinces, at a reasonable rate. The citie goeth wonderfully forwards in building of Friaries and Nunneries, and Chappels, and is like in time to come, to be the most populous Citie in the world, as it may be supposed. The weather is there alwaies very temperate, the day differeth but one howre of length all the yeere longe. The fieldes and the woods alwaies greene. The woods full of Popiniayes, and many other kind of birdes, that make such an harmonie of singing, and crying, that any man will reioyce to heare it. In the fieldes are such odoriferous smels of flowers and hearbs, that it giueth great content to the senses. About the Citie of Mexico 2. 3. or 4. leagues off, are diuers townes of Indians, some of 4000. or 6000. housholds, which doe stand in such a goodly soile, that if Christians had the inhabitation thereof, it would be put to a further benefite. In my time were dwelling and aliue in Mexico, many ancient men, that were of the Conquerors at the first conquest, with Hernando Cortes: for then it was about 36. yeeres agoe, that the said Countrey was conquered. About Mexico, there are diuers Mynes of siluer, and also in other places there about, but the principall Mynes that are in all New Spaine, are in Sacatecas, 80. leagues from Mexico, and the Mynes of S. Martines, 30. leagues, both to the eastward of Mexico, where is great store of gold and siluer. Also there is a place, called the Misteca, 50. leagues to the north west, which doth yeeld great store of very good silke, and cochinelio. Wine and oile there is none growing in the Countrey, but what commeth out of Spaine. Also there are many goodly fruites in that Countrey, whereof wee haue none such, as Plantanos, Guyanes, Sapotes, Tunes, and in the wildernes great store of black cheries, & other wholsome fruites. The Cochinelle is not a worme, or a Flye, as some say it is, but a berrie that groweth vpon certaine bushes in the wilde fielde, which is gathered in time of the yeere, when it is ripe. Also the Indico that doth come from thence to die blew, is a certaine hearbe that groweth in the wild fieldes, and is gathered at one time of the yeere, and burnt, and of the ashes thereof, with other confections put thereunto, the said Indico is made. Balme, salsa perilla, Cana fistula, suger, Oxe hides, and many other good & seruiceable things the Countrey doth yeeld, which are yeerely brought into Spaine, and there sold and distributed to many nations.

Robert Tomson.

A notable discourse of Master Iohn Chilton, touching the people, *manners, Mynes, Cities, riches, forces, and other memorable things of the* west Indias, seene and noted by himselfe in the time of his trauails, continued in those partes, the space of 17. or 18. yeeres.

IN the yeere of our Lord, 1561. in the moneth of July, I Iohn Chilton, went out of this Citie of London into Spaine, where I remained for the space of 7. yeeres, and from thence I sailed into Noua Hispania, and so trauelled there, and by the south sea, vnto Peru, the space of 17. or 18. yeres: & after ẏ time expired, I returned into Spaine, and so in the yeere, 1586. in the moneth of July, I arriued at the foresaide Citie of London, where perusing the notes which I had taken in the time of my trauell in those yeeres, I haue set downe,

wowne, as followeth.

In the yeere 1568. in the moneth of March, being deſirous to ſee the world, I embarked my ſelfe in the Baye of Cales in Andaluzia, in a ſhip bound for the Iſles of Canaries, where ſhe tooke in her lading, and ſet forth from thence for the voyage, in the moneth of June, the ſame yeere. Within a moneth after, we fell with the Iſle of S. Domingo, and from thence directly to Noua Hiſpania, and came into the port of S. Iohn de Vllua, which is a litle Iſland, ſtanding in the ſea, about 2. miles from the land, where the king maintaineth about 50. ſouldiers, and captaines, that keepe the Forts, and about 150. Negroes, who all the yeere long are occupied in carrying of ſtones for building, and other vſes, and to helpe to make faſt the ſhips that come in there, with their cables. There are built two bulwarkes at each ende of a wall, that ſtandeth likewiſe in the ſaid Iſland, where the ſhips vſe to ride, made faſt to ỹ ſaid wal, with their cables ſo neere, that a man may leape aſhoare. From this port I iourneied by land to a towne called Vera Cruz, ſtanding by a riuers ſide, where all the factors of the Spaniſh merchants dwell, which receaue the goods of ſuch ſhips as come thither, and alſo lade the ſame with ſuch treaſure, and merchandize, as they returne backe into Spaine. They are in number about 400. who onely remaine there, during the time that the Spaniſh fleete diſchargeth, and is loden againe, which is from the ende of Auguſt, to the beginning of Aprill following. And then for the vnwholeſomnes of the place, they depart thence, 16. miles further vp within the Countrey, to a towne called Xalapa, a very healthful ſoile. There is neuer any woman deliuered of child in this port, for ſo ſoone as they perceiue themſelues conceiued with child, they get them into the Countrey, to auoid the perill of the infected aire, although they vſe every morning to driue thorough the towne aboue 2000. head of cattell, to take away the ill vapours of the earth. From Xalapa 7. leagues, I came to another place, named Perota, wherein are certaine houſes builded of ſtraw, called by the name of Ventz, the Inhabitants whereof are Spaniards, who accuſtome to harbour ſuch trauellers, as are occaſioned to iourney that way vp into the land. It ſtandeth in a great wood of Pine, & Cedar trees, the ſoile being very cold, by reaſon of ſtore of ſnow, which lieth on the mountaines there, al the yeere long. There are in that place, an infinit number of Deere, of bignes like vnto great mules, hauing alſo hornes of great length. From Perota, 9. leagues, I came to the fontes of Ozumba, which fontes are ſpringes of water, iſſuing out of certaine rockes, into the middeſt of the high waies, where likewiſe are certaine rainges, and houſes, for the vſes before mentioned. Eight leagues off from this place, I came to the Citie of the Angels, ſo called by that name, of the Spaniards, which inhabite there, to the number of 1000. beſides a great number of Indians. This Citie ſtandeth in very plaine fieldes, hauing neere adioyning to it, many ſumptuous Cities, as namely the Citie of Tlaxcalla, a Citie of two hundreth thouſand Indians, Tributaries to the King, although he exacteth no other tribute of them, then a buſhell of wheate a peece, which amounteth to 13. thouſand Fanneges, yeerely, as hath appeared by the Kings bookes of accompt. And the reaſon why he contenteth himſelfe with this tribute, onely for them, is, becauſe they were the occaſion that he tooke the Citie of Mexico, with whom the Tlaxcallians had warre at the ſame time, when the Spaniards came into the Countrey. The Gouernour of this Citie, is a Spaniard, called among them, the Alcalde Maior, who adminiſtreth chiefeſt cauſes of iuſtice, both vnto the Chriſtians, and Indians, referring ſmaller and lighter vices, as drunkennes, and ſuch like, to the iudgement, and diſcretion of ſuch of the Indians, as are choſen euery yeere to rule amongſt them, called by the name of Alcaldes. Theſe Indians from 14. yeeres olde vpwards, pay vnto the King for their yeerely tribute, one ounce of ſiluer, and an hanege of Maiz, which is valued among them commonly, at 12. Rotals of place. The widowes among them, pay halfe of this. The Indians both of this Citie, and of the reſt, lying about Mexico, are cloathed with mantels of linnen cloth, made of cotton wooll, painted throughout with works of diuers and fine colours. It is diſtant from the Citie of the Angels, 4. leagues to the northward, and 14. from Mexico. There is another Citie a league from it, called Cholula, conſiſting of more then 60. thouſand Indians, tributaries, and there dwelleth not aboue 12. Spaniards there. From it, about two leagues, there is another, called Acaſſingo, of aboue 50000. Indians, and about 8, or 12. Spaniards, which ſtandeth at the foote of the Vulcan of Mexico, on the Eaſt ſide. There are beſides theſe, three other great Cities, the one named Tepiaca, a very famous Citie, Waxazingo, and Tlahamachalcho: all theſe in times paſt, belonged to the kingdom of Tlaxcal, and from theſe Cities, they bring all their Cutchanelio into Spaine. The diſtance from the Citie of the Angels, to the Citie of Mexico, is 20. leagues. This Citie Mexico, is the Citie of greateſt fame in all the Indias, hauing goodly, and coſtly houſes in it, builded all of lime and ſtone, and ſeuen ſtreetes in length, and ſeuen in breadth, with riuers running thorough euery ſecond ſtreete, by which they bring their prouiſion in Canoas. It is ſituated at the foote of certaine hils, which containe in compaſſe

Vulcan is a hill that continually burneth with fire.

Cutchanelio.

passe by estimation, aboue 20. leagues, compassing the said Citie on the one side, and a lake which is 14. leagues about on the other side. Upon which lake, there are built many notable and sumptuous Cities, as the City of Tescuco, where the Spaniards built 6. frigats, at that time when they conquered Mexico, and where also Fernando Cortes made his abode 5. or 6. moneths, in curing of the sicknes of his people, which they had taken at their comming into the countrey. There dwel in this Citie, about 60000. Indians, which pay tribute to the king. In this Citie the said Fernando built the finest Church that euer was built in the Indias, the name whereof is S. Peters. After I had continued 6. yeeres in this Citie, being desirous to see further the Countries, I imploied that which I had, and tooke my voyage towards the prouinces of the California, in the which was discouered a certaine Countrey, by a Byskaine, whose name was Diego de Guiara, and called it
New Biskay. after the name of his Countrey, New Biskaye, where I sold my merchandize for exchange of siluer, for there were there certaine rich Mynes discouered by the aforesaid Biskaine. Going from Mexico, I directed my voyage toward the south west, to certaine Mynes, called Tamascal Tepec, and so trauelled forwarde, the space of 20. daies, through desert places vnhabited, till I came to the valley of S. Bartholomew, which ioyneth to the prouince of New Biskaye. In all these places the Indians for the most part goe naked, and are wild people. Their common armour is bowes, and arrowes, they vse to eate vp such Christians as they come by. At my returne to Mexico, I came along by the coast of the South sea, through the prouince of Sacatula, from thence into the prouince of Coloa, where I imploied the siluer that I had, in a certaine graine, growing like an Almond, called amongst the Indians, Cacao, which in Noua Hispania is currant for money, to buy things of small value, as fruits, &c. for that they haue no small money there, and in which also they pay the King his tribute. They grinde this graine to a powder, and mingle it with water, and so is made both bread, and drinke vnto them, which is a prouision of great profite, and good strength. From hence departing, I came to another prouince, named Xalisco, and from thence to
The hauen where the ships of China and the Philippine arriue. the port of Nauidad, which is 66. leagues from Mexico, in which port arriue alwaies in the moneth of Aprill, all the ships that came out of the South sea, from China, and the Philippinz, and there they laie their merchandize a shoare. The most part wherof, is mantels made of cotton wool, waxe, and fine platters gilded, made of earth, and much gold. The next summer following, being in the yeere 1570. (which was the first yeere that the Popes Buls were brought into the Indias) I vndertooke another voyage towards the prouince of Sonsonate, which is in the kingdome of Guatimala, whether I carried diuers merchandize of Spaine, all by land, on Mules backes. The way thitherward from Mexico, is to the Citie of the Angels, and from thence to another Citie of Christians, 80. leagues off, called Guaxaca, in which there dwelt about 50. Spaniards, and many Indians. All the Indians of this prouince, pay their tribute in mantels of cotton wooll, and Cochonelio, whereof there groweth aboundance throughout this Countrey. Neere to this place
Aquatulca. there lieth a port in the South sea, called Aquatulca, in the which there dwelleth not about 3. or 4. Spaniards, with certaine Negroes, which the King maintaineth there: in which place, Sir Francis Drake arriued, in the yeere, 1579. in the moneth of Aprill, where I lost with his being there, aboue 1000. duckets, which he tooke away, with much other goods of other merchants of Mexico, from one Francisco Gomes Rangifa, factor there for all the Spanish merchants that then traded in the south sea: for from this port they vse to imbarke all their goods that goe for Peru, & to ỳ kingdom of Hunduras. From Guaxaca, I came to a towne named Nixapa, which standeth vpon certaine very high hils, in the prouince of Sapotecas, wherin inhabite about the number of 20. Spaniards, by the king of Spaines commandement to keepe that Countrey in peace, for ỳ the Indians are very rebellious: & for this purpose, he bestoweth on them the townes & cities that be within that prouince. From hence I went to a Citie, called Tecoantepec, which is the farthest towne to the Eastward in al Noua Hispania, which sometimes did belonge to the Marques De Valle, and because it is a very fit port, standing in the south sea, the king of Spaine, vpon a rebelion made by the said Marques against him, tooke it from him, and doth now possesse it as his owne. Here in ỳ yeere 1572. I saw a peece of Ordinance of brasse, called a Demy culuerin, which came out of a ship, called the Iesus of Lubecke, which Captaine Hawkins left in S. Iohn de Vllua, being in fight with the Spaniards, in the yeere, 1568. which peece they afterwardes caried 100. leagues by land, ouer mighty mountains to the said city, to be embarked there for the Philippinas. Leauing Tecoantepec, I went still along by the South sea, about 150. leagues in the desolate prouince of Soconusco, in which prouince there groweth Cacao, which the Christians carry from thence into Noua Hispania, for that it will not growe in any colde Countrey. The Indians of this Countrey, pay the King their tribute in Cacao, giuing him 400. Cargas, and euery Carge is 24000. Almonds, which Carge is worth in Mexico 30. peeces of roials of plate. They are men

men of great riches, and withall very prowd, and in all this prouince throughout, there dwell not 20. christians. I trauailed through another prouince called Suchetepec: & thence to ỳ prouince of Guaſacapan: in both which prouinces are very fewe people, the biggeſt towne therin hauing not about 200. Indians, the chiefeſt marchandize there is Cacao, and hence I went to the City of Guatimala, which is the chief city of all this kingdom. In this citie do inhabite about 80. Spanyards, & here the king hath his gouernors, & Counſell, to whom all the people of the kingdome repaire for Juſtice. This City ſtandeth from the coaſt of the South ſea, 14. leagues within the land, and is very riche by reaſon of the gold that they fetch out of the coaſt of Veragua. From this Citie to the Eaſtward 60. leagues, lyeth the prouince Sonſonate, where I ſold the marchandize I carryed out of noua Hiſpania. The chiefeſt Citie of this prouince is called S. Saluador, which lyeth 7. leagues from the coaſt of the South ſea, and hath a port lying by the Sea coaſt called Acaiutla, where the ſhips arriue with the marchãdize they bring from noua Hiſpania: & from thẽce take backe againe the Cacao there dwell here to the number of 60. Spanyards. From Sonſonate I trauailed to Nicoia, which is in the kingdome of Nicaragua, In which Port the king buildeth all the ſhipping that trauel out of the Indies to the Moluccaes. I went forward from thence to Coſtaricca, where the Indians both men and women goe all naked, & the lande lyeth betwern Panama, and the kingdom of Guatimala: and for that the Indians there liue as warriers, I durſt not paſſe by land, ſo that here in a towne called S. Saluador, I beſtowed that which I carryed, in annele (which is a kinde of thing to dye blew withall) which I carryed with mee to the Port of Cauallos, lying in the kindome of Hunduras, which Port is a mighty huge riuer, and at the comming in of the one ſide of it, there lyeth a Towne of little force without ordinance or any other ſtrength, hauing in it houſes of ſtrawe: at which Towne the Spanyards vſe yeerely in the moneth of Auguſt, to vnlade 4. ſhips, which come out of Spaine laden with riche Marchandize and returne againe here their lading of a kind of Marchandize called Annele and Cutchanelio (al, though it be not of ſuch value as that of noua Hiſpania) and ſiluer of the mines of Toma angua, and golde of Nicaragua, and hides, and Salſa perilla, the beſt in all the Indies, al which Marchandize they returne and depart from thence alwaies in the moneth of Apꝛill following, taking their courſe by the Iland of Iamaica, in which Iland there dwell on the Weſt ſide of it certaine Spanyardes of no great number. From this place they goe to the cape of S. Anthonie, which is the vttermoſt part of the Weſtward of the Iland of Cuba, and from thence to Hauana lying hard by, which is the chiefeſt Port that the king of Spaine hath in all the Countries of the Indies, and of greateſt importance: for all the ſhips, both from Peru, Hunduras, Portoricco, S. Domingo, Iamaica, & all other places in his Indies, arriue there at their returne to Spaine, for that in this Port they take in victuals, and water, and the moſt part of their lading: here they meete from all the ſaid places alwaies in the beginning of May by the kings commandement: at the entrance of this Port it is ſo narrow, that there can ſcarſe come in two ſhips together, although it be aboue 6. fadome deepe in the narroweſt place of it. In the North ſide of the comming in their ſtandeth a towne, in which there watcheth euery day a man, to deſcrie the Sailes of ſhips, which he can ſee in the Sea, and as many as he diſcouereth ſo many banners he ſetteth vpon the Tower that the people of the towne (which ſtandeth within the Port about a mile from the Towne) may vnderſtand thereof. Vnder this tower there lyeth a ſandy ſhore, where men may eaſely go a land, and by the Tower there runneth a hill along by the waters ſide, which eaſely with ſmall ſtore of ordinance ſubdueth the towne and Port. The Port within is ſo large that there may eaſely ride a Nauie of ſhips, without anker or cable, for no winde is able to hurt them. There inhabite within the towne of Hauana about 300. Spanyardes, and about 60. Souldiers, which the King maintaineth there for the keeping of a certaine Caſtell, which he hath of late erected, which hath planted in it about 12. peeces of ſmall ordinance, and is compaſſed rounde with a ſmall ditch, where through at their pleaſure, they may let in the ſea. About ti. leagues from Hauana, there lyeth another towne called Wanabacoa, in which there is dwelling, about 100. Indians, and from this place, 60. leagues, there lyeth another towne named Bahama, ſcituate on the Northſide of the Iland. The chiefeſt citie of this Iland of Cuba, (which is aboue 200. leagues in length) is alſo called Cuba, where dwelleth a Biſhop, and about 200. Spanyardes, which towne ſtandeth on the Southſide of the Iland, about C leagues from Hauana. All ỳ trade of this Iland is cattel which they kil only for the hyds ỳ are brought thẽce into Spaine: for which end the Spanyards maintaine there many Negroes to kil their cattel, & foſter a great number of hogges, which being killed, and cut into ſmall pieces, they dry in the ſunne, and ſo make it prouiſion for the ſhips, which come for Spaine. Hauing remained in this Iland ti. moneths, I tooke ſhipping in a Frigat, & went ouer to Nombre de Dios, and from thence by land to Panama, which ſtandeth vpon ỳ Southſea.

The diſcription of Hauana at large.

The ſmal force of Hauana.

The commodities of Cuba

From Nombre de Dios to Panama, it is 17. leagues distant. From which towne there runneth a riuer which is called the riuer of Chagre, which runneth within 5. leagues of Panama, to a place called Cruçes, through which riuer they carry their goods, & dismbarke it at the sayd Cruçes, and from thence it is conueyed on Mules backes to Panama by lande: where they againe imbarke it in certaine small ships in the Southsea for all the coast of Peru. In one of these ships, I went to Potossi, and from thence by lande to Cusco, and from thence to Paita. Heare I remained the space of seuen moneths, & then returned into the kingdome of Guatimall, and arriued in the prouince of Nicoia, and Nicaragua. From Nicaragua I trauelled by lande to a prouince called Nicamula (which lyeth towarde the North sea in certaine high mountaines) for that I could not passe thorough the kingdome of Guatimal at that time for waters, where with all the lowe Countries of the Prouince of Suconusco, lying by the South sea is drowned, with the raine that falleth alone in the mountaines enduring alwaies from Aprill to September: which season for that cause they call their winter. From this prouince, I came into another called de Vera Paz, in which the chiefest Citie is also called after that name, where there dwelleth a Bishop, and about fourtie Spaniards. Among the mountaines of this Countrie toward the North Sea, there is a Prouince called La candona, where are Indian men of warre which the king cannot subdue, for that they haue Townes and Fortes in a great lake of water aboue in the saide mountaines, the most part of them go naked, and some weare mantels of Cotten wooll. Distant from this about eighte leagues, I came into another Prouince called the Prouince of Chiapa, wherein the chiefest Citie is called Sacatlan, where there dwelleth a Bishop, and about a hundred Spaniards. In this Countrie there is great store of Cotton wooll, whereof the Indians make fine linnen cloth, which the Christians buye and carie into Noua Hispania. The people of this Prouince pay their tribute to the king all in Cotton wooll and Fethers. Fourteene leagues from this Citie, there is another called Chiapa, where are the finest Gennets in all the Indies, which are caried hence to Mexico, 300. leagues from it. From this Citie I trauayled still through hilles and mountaines, till I came to the ende of this Prouince, to a hill called Ecatepec, which in English signifieth the hill of wind: for that they say, it is the highest hill that euer was discouered: for from the toppe of it may be discouered both the North, and the South Seas, and it is in height supposed to be nine leagues. They which trauaile ouer it, lie alwayes at the foote of it ouernight, and begin their iourney about midnight, to trauell to the toppe of it before the Sunne rise the next day, because the winde bloweth with such force afterwardes, that it is impossible for any man to goe vp: from the foote of this hill, to Tecoantepec, the first Towne of Noua Hispania, are about fifteene leagues, and so from hence I iourneyed to Mexico. By and by after I came to Mexico (which was in the yeere 1572.) in the companie of another Spaniard, which was my companion in this iourney, we went together toward the Prouince of Panuco, which lieth vpon the coast of the North Seas, and within three dayes iourney we entred a Citie called Mestitlan, where there dwelt twelue Spaniards: the Indian inhabitants there were about thirtie thousand. This Citie standeth vpon certaine high mountaines, which are very thicke planted with Townes very holsome, and fruitfull, hauing plentifull fountaines of water running through them. The hie ways of these hilles are all set with fruites, and trees of diuers kindes, & most pleasant: in euery Towne as we passed through, the Indians presented vs with victuals. Within twentie leagues of this place, there is another Citie called Clanchinoltitpec, belonging to a Gentleman, where there inhabite about fourtie thousand Indians: and there are among them eight or nine Fryers of the order of Saint Augustine, who haue there a Monasterie. Within three dayes after we departed from this place, and came to a Citie called Guaxutla, where there is another Monasterie of Fryers of the same order: there dwell in this Towne about twelue Spaniards. From this place forwards beginneth a Prouince called Guastecan, which is al plaine grownds without any hils. The first Towne we came vnto is called Tanguialabe, in which there dwell many Indians high of stature, hauing all their bodies painted with blewe, and weare their haire long downe to their knees, tyed as women vse to doe with their hairelaces. When they goe out of their doores, they carrie with them their bowes and arrowes, being very great archers, going for the most part naked. In those Countries they take neither golde, nor siluer for exchange of any thing, but onely Salt, which they greatly esteeme, and vse it as a principall medicine for certaine wormes which breede in their lippes, and in their gummes. After nine dayes trauell from this place, we came to a Towne called Tampica, which is a port Towne vpon the Sea, wherein there dwell I thinke fourtie Christians, of which number whilest we abode there, the Indians killed fourteene, as they were gathering of Salt, which is all the trade that they haue in this place: it standeth vpon the entrie of the riuer of Panuco, which is a mightie great riuer, and were it not for a sand that lieth

Ecatepec a hill nine leagues high.

Salt a principall marchandize.

at the mouth of it, shippes of 500. tunne might goe vp into it aboue three score leagues. From hence we went to Panuco 14. leagues from Tampeca, which in times past had bene a goodly Citie, where the king of Spaine had his gouernour: but by reason that the Indians there destroyed the Christians, it lieth in a maner waste, conteyning in it not aboue 10. Christians with a Priest: In this towne I fell sicke where I lay 41. dayes, hauing no other sustenance, then fruite and water, which water I sent for aboue 6. leagues of within the countrie. Here I remained til my companion came to me, which had departed from me another way, retayning in my company onely a slaue, which I brought with me from Mexico. And the last day in Easter weeke my companion came to me, finding me in a very weake state, by reason of the vnholsomnes of the place. Notwithstanding my weakenes, I being set on a horse, & an Indian behind me to hold me, we went forward in our voyage all that day till night. The next day in the morning we passed ouer the riuer in a Canoa, and being on the other side, I went my selfe before alone, and by reason there met many wayes, traled by the wilde beastes, I lost my way, and so trauelled through a great wood about two leagues, and at length fell into the hands of certaine wilde Indians, which were there in certaine cottages made of strawe, who seeing me, came out to the number of 20. of them, with their bowes and arrowes, and spake vnto me in their language which I vnderstoode not: and so I made signes vnto them to helpe me from my horse, which they did by commandement of their lord which was there with them, and lighted downe, they carried me vnder one of their cottages, and laid me vpon a mat on the ground: and perceiuing that I could not vnderstand them, they brought vnto me a little Indian wench, of Mexico, of 15. or 16. yeres of age, whom they commaunded to aske me in her language from whence I came, and for what intent I came among them: for (sayth she) doest thou not know Christian, how that these people will kill and eate thee? to whom I answered, let them doe with me what they will, here nowe I am: she replied, saying, thou mayest thanke God thou art leane, for they feare thou hast the pocks, otherwise they would eate thee. So I presented to the king a little wine which I had with me in a bottel, which he esteemed aboue any treasure, for for wine they will sell their wiues, & children. Afterwards the wench asked me what I would haue, and whether I would eate any thing: I answered that I desired a little water to drinke, for that the countrie is very hotte, and she brought me a great Uenice glasse guilded full of water, and marueiling at the glasse, I demanded how they came by it: she told me that the Casique brought it from Shallapa, a great towne distant 30. leagues from this place on the hilles whereas dwelt certaine Christians, and certaine Fryers, of the order of S. Augustine, which this Casique with his people on a night slewe, & burning the Fryers Monasterie, among other things reserued this glasse, and from thence also brought me. Hauing now bene conuersant with them about three or foure houres, they bid her aske me if I would goe my way: I answered her, ꝑ I desired nothing els: so ꝑ Casique caused two of his Indians to leade me forward in my way, going before me with their bowes & arrowes naked, the space of three leagues, till they brought me into a hie way: & then making a signe vnto me, they signified ꝑ in short time I should come to a towne where Christians inhabited, which was called S. Iago de las villas, standing in plaine fields walled about with a mud wall, ꝑ number of ꝑ Christians ꝑ dwelt therein, were not aboue 4. or 5. & twentie, vnto which ꝑ king of Spaine giueth Indiãs, & townes to keepe ꝑ countries subiect vnto him. Here the Christians haue their mightie mules, which they carry for all the parties of ꝑ Indies, & into Peru, for that all their marchandize are caried by this meanes by land. In this towne aforesaid I found my cõpanie which I had lost before, who made no other accoũt of me but that I had bene slaine, & the Christians there likewise marueiled to heare ꝑ I came frõ those kinde of Indians aliue, which was a thing neuer seene nor heard of before: for they take a great pride in killing a Christian, & to weare any part of him where he hath any haire growing, hanging it about their neckes, & so are accounted for valiant men. In this towne I remained 18. dayes, til I recouered my health, & in the meane space there came one Don Francisco de Pago, whom the Uiceroy Don Henrico Manriques had sent for captaine generall, to open & discouer a certaine way frõ ꝑ sea side to ꝑ mines of Sacatecas, which was frõ this place 160. leagues, for to transport their marchãdize by ꝑ way, leauing ꝑ way by Mexico, which is 7. or 8. moneths trauel. To this captaine tooke me, & my companie with the rest of his souldiers to the number of 40. which he had brought wᵗ him, & 500. Indians which we tooke out of ꝑ two townes in this prouince called Tanchipa, & Tamadelipa, al good archers & naked men, & went thence to ꝑ riuer de las Palmas of great bignes, parting ꝑ kingdome of noua Hispania, & Florida, & going still along by this riuer the space of 3. daies seeking passage to passe ouer, & finding none, we were at length inforced to cut timber to make a Balsa, which when we had made we sate on it, & the Indians swimming in ꝑ water, & thrusting it before them to ꝑ other side: within 30. daies after trauayling through woods, hils & mountaines, we came to ꝑ mines of Sacatecas, which are ꝑ richest mines

Don Henrico Manriques viceroy of Mexico.

Rio de las Palmas.

Of raftes.

in all the Indies, and from thence they fetch most siluer: In which mines there dwelt aboue 300. Christians, and there our Captaine gaue vs leaue to depart. So we came to the valley of S. Michael towards Mexico, and from thence to Pueblo nouo, & from that place to the prouince of Mechuacan, after which name the chiefest Citie of that place is called, where there dwels a Bishop, and aboue 100. Spanyards in it. It abounds with all kinde of Spanish fruites, and hath woods full of nutt trees, and wilde vines: heare are many mines of copper, and great store of cattel: It lyeth 60. leagues from Mexico, whither we came within 4. daies after: the Indias of this Countrey are very mighty and bygge men. Afterwards I returned another way to the prouince of Sonsonate by Vera cruz, and so to Rio Aluarado, and from thence to the prouince of Campego, which lyeth on the Southside of the bay of Mexico: The chief towne of this prouince is called Merida, in which is a Bishop and almost C. Spanyardes. The Indians of this prouince pay all their tribute in mantles of cotten wooll and cacao. There is no port in all this prouince for a ship of a C. tunne to ryde in, but onely in the riuer of Tabasco, by which riuer this Citie of Merida standeth. The chiefest marchandize which they lade there in smal Frigats is a certaine wood called Campege, (wherewith they vse to dye) as also hydes and annyle. By this there lyeth the prouince Iucatan neere the Hundura by the North sea coast, where there is also another Bishop, and a towne likewise named Iuacatans where there dwell a fewe Spanyardes. They haue no force at all in all this coast to defende themselues withall, saue onely that the Land is low, and there is no Port to receiue any shipping, vnlesse they be Frigats, which carry from thence to the Port of S. Iohn de Vllua waxe, Cacao, hony, & also mantels of cotten wooll, whereof they make there great store, and of which kinde of Marchandize there is great trade thence to Mexico: of the same also they pay their tribute to the King. The king hath tribute brought him yeerely out of the Indies into Spaine betweene ix. and x. Millions of gold, and siluer: for he receiueth of euery Indian which is subiect vnto him, excepting those which doe belong to the Incommenderos (which are the childre of those Spanyards, who first conquered the land) to whom the king gaue, and graunted the gouernment of the Cities and townes subdued for three liues, twelue royals of plate, and a hannege of Mayis (which is a wheat of the Countrey, v. of them making a quarter of English measure) and of euery widow woman he hath vi. royals and halfe a hannege of Mayis, and so if any Infidell haue xx. childzen in his house he payeth for euery one of them being aboue xv. yeres old after that rate: this wheat being duely brought to the Gouernour of euery prouince and Citie, is solde in Mexico by the Kinges gouernours there euery yeere: so that the money receiued for it, is put into the kings Treasurie there, and so is yeerely carryed from thence into Spaine. Of the Spanyards which are owners of the mines of gold and siluer, he receiueth the fift part of it, which hee calleth his Quintas, which being taken out of the heape, there is his armes set on it, for otherwise it may not be brought out of the lande into Spaine, vnder paine of death. The marke of siluer which is 8. ounces, when it commeth out of the mines not hauing the Kinges Seale vpon it, is worth forty three royalles of plate, and so it is currant, and when they will bring it for Spayne, they carry it to the Kinges Treasure house, where his Seale is set vpon it, and so it is raysed in value thereby to three score and foure royals of plate, and so the king hath for his custome of euery marke of plate twenty and one royals. From the yeere of 70. which was the yeere, that the Popes Buls came into the Indies, as is afore mencioned, he hath receiued both of Indians which are tributaries vnto him, and also of all others belonging to the Incommenderos of euery one being aboue 12. yeeres of age, 4. royals of euery bull. Also they carry other pardons with them into the Indies for such as bee dead, although a 100. yeeres before the Spanyards came into the countrey: which pardons the Fryers in their preachings perswaded the poore Indians to take, telling them that with giuing 4. royals of plate for a Palle, they would deliuer their soules out of purgatory. Of the Christians likewise dwelling there he hath 14. royals for euery Bull, and there be certaine Buls brought thither for the Christians besides the former, which serue for pardoning all such faults wherein they haue trespassed either against the king by keeping backe his customes, or one against another by any other iniury, for euery hundred crownes whereof his conscience doth accuse him that hee hath deceiued the king or any other, he must giue 10. for a Bull and so after that rate for euery C which he hath any way stollen, and so is pardoned the fault. The reuenue of his Buls after this maner yeelded vnto his Treasurie yeerely aboue three Millions of gold as I haue bene credibly informed: although of late both the Spanyardes, and Indians do refuse to take the Buls, for that they perceiue he doth make a yeerely custome of it: onely the Indians take one pardon for all his household, whereas in former time euery Indian vsed to take one for euery person in his house, and teareth the same into small peeces, and giueth to euery one of his household a little piece,

Copper mines

The greatnes of the king of Spaines tribute out of the west Indies.

The Quinto.

peace, saying thus, they neede nowe no more, seeing in that which they bought the peere before, they had aboue 10000. peeres pardon. These pieces they sticke vp in the wall of the houses where they lie. Both the Christians and Indians are weary with these infinite taxes and customes, which of late he hath imposed vpon them, more then in the yeeres before. So as the people of both sortes did rebell twise in the time that I was among them, and would haue set vp an other King of them selues: For which cause the King hath commaunded vpon paine of death, that they should not plant either wine or oyle there, but should alwayes stand in neede of them to be brought out of Spaine, although there would more growe there in foure yeeres, then there groweth in Spaine in twentie, it is so fertile a countrey. And the King to keepe the countrey alwayes in subiection, and to his owne vse, hath straightly prouided by Law, vpon paine of death, and losse of goods, that none of these countries should traffike with any other nation, although the people themselues doe much nowe desire to trade with any other then with them, and would vndoubtedly doe, if they feared not the perill ensuing thereupon. Rebellions in Noua Hispania, by two great exactions.

About Mexico, and other places in Noua Hispania, there groweth a certaine plant called Nege, which yeeldeth Wine, vineger, Honey, and black Sugar, and of the leaues of it dried, they make hempe, ropes, shooes which they vse, and tyles for their houses: and at the ende of euery leafe, there groweth a sharpe poinct like an awle, wherewith they vse to bore or pearce through any thing.

Thus to make an ende, I haue here set downe the summe of all the chiefest things that I haue obserued, and noted in my 17. yeeres trauaile in those partes.

The first voyage, attempted and set foorth by the expert, and valiant Captaine M. Francis Drake himselfe, with a ship called the Dragon,

and another ship, and a Pinnesse, to Nombre de Dios, and Dariene, about the yeere 1572. Written, and recorded by one Lopez a Spaniard, in this maner folowing: which Spaniard, with the discourse about him, was taken at the Riuer of Plate by the Ships set forth by the Right Honourable the Earle of Cumberland, in the yeere 1586.

There was a certaine English man named Francis Drake, who hauing intelligence howe the Towne of Nombre de Dios in Noua Hispania, had but small store of people remaining there, came on a night, & entred the Porte with foure Pinnesses, and landed about 150. men, and leauing 70. men with a trumpet, in a Forte which was there, with the other 80. he entred the Towne, without doing any harme, till hee came to the market place, and there discharged his caliuers, and sounded a trumpet very loude, and the other which he had left in the Forte answered him after the same maner, with the discharging their caliuers, and sounding their trumpets: the people hereupon not thinking of any such matter, were put in great feare, and waking out of their sleepe fled all into the mountaines, inquiring one of another what the matter should be, remaining as men amazed, not knowing what that vprore was which happened so suddenly in the Towne. But fourteene or fifteene of them ioyning together with their harquebusses, went to the market place to knowe what they were that were in the Towne, and in a corner of the market place they did discouer the English men, and seeing them to be but fewe, discharged their caliuers at those English men: their fortune was such that they killed the Trumpetter, and shot one of the principall men thorow the leg, who seeing himselfe hurt, retyred to the Forte, where the rest of their company was left: they which were in the Forte sounded their trumpet, and seeing that they in the Towne did not answere them, and hearing the caliuers, thought that all they in the Towne had bene slaine, and thereupon fled to their Pinnesses: The English Captaine comming to the Forte, and not finding his men which he left there, hee and his were in so great feare, that leauing their furniture behinde them, and putting off their hose, swamme, and rowed all to their Pinnesses, and so went with their shippes againe out of the Porte.

This this English Captaine called Francis Drake departed from Nombre de Dios, and sawe onely one man in the Towne which was looking out of a windowe to see what the matter was, and of his men had onely his Trumpetter slaine.

But hee being discontented with the repulse which he had receiued there, came to the sound of Dariene, & hauing conference with certaine Negroes which were fled from their masters of Panama, and Nombre de Dios, the Negroes did tell him, that certaine Mules came laden with golde and siluer from Panama to Nombre de Dios, who in companie of these Negroes went thereupon

The valiant exployte of M. Francis Drake betwixt Panama and Nombre de Dios.

thereupon on land, and staied in the way where the treasure should come with 100. shot, and so tooke two companies of mules, which came onely with their driuers mistrusting nothing, and he caried away the golde only, for they were not able to carrie the siluer though the mountaines. And two dayes after he came to the house of Crosses, where hee killed sixe or seuen marchants, but found no golde nor siluer but much marchandize: so he fired the house, where was burnt aboue 200000. Duckets in marchandize, and so went to his shippe againe: and within halfe an houre after he was a shipborde, there came downe to the sands 300. shot of the Spaniards in the sight of his shippes, of purpose to seeke him, but hee cared litle for them being out of their reach, and so departed with his treasure.

Sr. Francis Drake burnt the house of Crosses.

The voyage of Iohn Oxnam of Plymmouth, to the West India, *and ouer the Straight of Dariene into the South* Sea. Anno 1575. Written by the foresayd Lopez in the same discourse.

There was another English man, who hearing of the spoyle that Francis Drake had done vpon the coast of Noua Hispania, and of his good aduenture and safe returne home, was thereby prouoked to vndertake the like enterprise, with a ship of 140. tunnes, and 70. men, and came thither, and had also conference with the foresayde Negroes: and hearing that the golde and siluer which came vpon the Mules from Panama to Nombre de Dios, was nowe conducted with souldiers, he determined to doe that which neuer any man before enterprised: and landed in that place where Francis Drake before had had his conference with the Negroes. This man couered his ship after he had brought her aground with boughes of trees, and hid his great Ordinance in the ground, and so not leauing any man in his shippe, hee tooke two small pieces of ordinance, and his caliuers, and good store of victuals, & so went with the Negroes about twelue leagues into the maine land, to a Riuer that goeth to the South sea, and there hee cut wood and made a Pinnesse, which was 45. foote by the keele, and hauing made this Pinnesse, hee went into the South sea, carying sixe Negroes with him to be his guides, & so went to the Iland of Pearles, which is 25. leagues from Panama, which is in the way that they come from Peru to Panama, and there he was ten dayes without shewing himselfe to any man, to see if he might get any ship that came from Peru: At last, there came a small Barke by, which came from Peru from a place called Quito, which he tooke, and found in her 60. thousand waight of golde, and much victuals. But not contenting himselfe with this prise, hee staied long without sending away his prise or any of the men, and in the ende of sixe dayes after, he tooke another Barke which came from Lima, in which he tooke 100. thousande waight of siluer in barres, with the which hee thought to haue gone, and entred the Riuer, but first hee went into the Ilands to see if he could finde any Pearles: Where he found a fewe, and so returned to his Pinnesse againe, and so saying to the Riuer from whence he came, and comming neere to the mouth of the sayd Riuer, he sent away the two prises that he tooke, and with his Pinnesse he went vp the Riuer. The Negroes that dwelt in the Iland of Pearls, the same night that he went from them, went in Canoas to Panama, and the Gouernour within two dayes sent foure Barks with 100. men, twentie fiue men in euery one, and Negroes to rowe with the Captaine, Iohn de Ortega, which went to the Ilands of Pearles, and there had intelligence, which way the English men were gone, and following of them, hee met by the way the ships which the English men had taken, of whome hee learned, that the English men were gone vp the Riuer, and he going thither, when he came to the mouth of the Riuer, the Captaine of Panama knew not which way to take, because there were three partitions in the Riuer to goe vp in, and being determined to goe vp the greatest of the three Riuers, he sawe comming downe a lesser Riuer many feathers of hennes, which the English men had pulled to eate, and being glad thereof, he went vp that Riuer where he sawe the feathers, and after that he had bene in that Riuer foure dayes, he discried the English mens Pinnesse vpon the sands, and comming to her, there were no more then sixe English men, whereof they killed one, and the other fiue escaped away, and in the Pinnesse hee found nothing but victuals: But this Captaine of Panama not herewith satisfied determined to seeke out the Englishmen by land, and leauing twentie men in his Pinnesses, he with 80. shot went vp the countrey: hee had not gone halfe a league, but hee found a house made of boughs, where they found all the English mens goods, and the gold and siluer also, and carying it backe to their Pinnesses, the Spaniards were determined to goe away, without following the English men any further.

The Iland of Pearles 25. leagues from Panama.

But

But at the ende of three dayes, the English Captaine came to the Riuer with all his men, and aboue 200. Negroes, and set vpon the Spaniards with great furie: But the Spaniards hauing the aduantage of trees which they stoode behinde, did easely preuaile, and killed eleuen English men, and fiue Negroes, & tooke other seuen English men aliue, but of the Spaniards, two were slaine and fiue sore hurt. A skirmish betweene the English men, and the Spaniards.

Among other thinges, the Spaniards enquired of the English men which they tooke, why they went not away in fifteene dayes libertie which they had. They answered, that their Captaine had commaunded them to carry all that golde and siluer which they had, to the place where they had left their shippe, and they had promised him to carry it, although they made three or foure iourneys of it, for he promised to giue them part of it besides their wages, but the mariners would haue it by and by, and so their Captaine being angry because they would not take his word, fell out with them, and they with him, in so much that one of the companie would haue killed the Captaine, so that the Captaine would not haue them to carry the treasure, but sayd hee would seeke Negroes to carry it, and so he went, and sought for Negroes, and bringing those Negroes to cary it, he met with the fiue English men that he had left in his Pinnesse which ran from the Spaniards, and the rest also which ran from the house, & they tolde him what the Spaniards had done, and then making friendship with all his men, he promised them halfe of all the treasure if they got it from the Spaniards, and the Negroes promised to helpe him with their bowes and arrowes, and thereupon they came to seeke the Spaniards, and now that some of his companie were killed and taken, he thought it best to returne to his ship, & so to passe backe for England. The Spanish Captaine hearing this, hauing buried the dead bodies, & hauing gotten all things into his Barks, and taking the English men and their Pinnes with him, he returned to Panama: so the voyage of that English man did not prosper with him, as hee thought it would haue done.

Nowe when the foure Barks were come to Panama, they sent aduise also to Nombre de Dios, and they of Nombre de Dios, sent also from them other foure Barks (which, as the Spaniards say) found the English ship where she was hid, and brought her to Nombre de Dios: and that the Viceroy of Peru, not thinking it good to suffer fiftie English men to remaine in the country, sent a seruant of his called Diego de Frees, with 150. shot into the mountaines to seeke them out, who found them making of certaine canoas to go into the North sea, and there to take some Barke or other: some of them were sicke, and were taken, and the rest fled with the Negroes, who in the ende betrayed them to the Spaniards, so that they were brought to Panama. The English betrayed to the Spaniards. And the Iustice of Panama asked the English Captaine whether hee had the Queenes licence, or the licence of any other Prince or Lorde for his attempt. And he answered he had none, whereupon he and all his company were condemned to dye, and so were all executed, sauing the Captaine, the Master, the Pilote, and fiue boyes which were carried to Lima, and there the Captaine was executed with the other two, but the boyes be yet liuing. The death of Iohn Oxnam.

The King of Spaine hauing intelligence of these matters, sent 300. men of warre against those Negroes which had assisted those English men, which before were slaues vnto the Spaniards, and, as before is sayd, fled from their masters into those mountaines, and so ioyned themselues to the English men, to the end they might the better reuenge themselues on the Spaniards.

At the first comming of these 300. souldiers, they tooke many of the Negroes, and executed great iustice vpon them: But after a season, the Negroes grewe wise and wary, and preuented the Spaniards, so that none of them could be taken.

The Spaniards of that Countrey marueiled much at this one thing, to see that since the conquering of this land, there hath bene many French men, that haue come to those Countries, but neuer saw English men there but onely those two of whom I haue spoken. And although there haue many French men bene on the coast, yet neuer durst they put foote vpon land, onely those two English men aduentured it, and did such exployts, as are before remembred.

All these things comming to the hearing of the King of Spaine, he prouided two Gallies well appointed to keepe those coasts: and the first yeere, they tooke sixe or seuen French ships. And after that this was knowen, there were no more English men or French men of warre that durst aduenture to approch the coast, vntill this present yeere 1586. that the aforesayd Francis Drake, with a strong Fleete of 24. shippes arriued there, and made spoyle of S. Domingo, Carthagena, and S. Augustine, things that are knowen to all the world. But it is likely that if the King of Spaine liue, he will in time prouide sufficient remedy, to keepe his Countries, and subiects from the inuasion of other nations. The English mens counting to the Indies, caused the king of Spaine to build Gallies to keepe the Seas.

A discourse

A discourse written by Sir Humfrey Gilbert Knight, to prooue *a Passage by the Northwest to Cathaia and the East Indies.*

The Table of the matters conteined in euery Chapter of this discourse.

Capitulo 1.

TO prooue by authoritie a passage to be on the Northside of America, to goe to Cataia, China, and to the East India.

Capitulo 2.

To prooue by reason a passage to be on the North side of America, to go to Cataia, Molluccæ, &c.

Capitulo 3.

To prooue by experience of sundry mens trauailes the opening of this Northwest passage, whereby good hope remaineth of the rest.

Capitulo 4.

To prooue by circumstance, that the Northwest passage hath bene sayled throughout.

Capitulo 5.

To prooue that such Indians as haue bene driuen vpon the coasts of Germanie came not thither by the Southeast, and Southwest, nor from any part of Afrike or America.

Capitulo 6.

To prooue that the Indians aforenamed came not by the Northeast, and that there is no thorowe passage nauigable that way.

Capitulo 7.

To prooue that these Indians came by the Northwest, which inducth a certaintie of this passage by experience.

Capitulo 8.

What seuerall reasons, were alleaged before the Queenes Maiestie, and certaine Lordes of her Highnesse priuie Counsel, by M. Ienkinson a Gentleman of great trauaile and experience, to prooue this passage by the Northeast, with my seuerall answeres then alleaged to the same.

Capitulo 9.

Howe that this passage by the Northwest, is more commodious for our traffike, then the other by the Northeast, if there were any such.

Capitulo 10.

What commodities would ensue, this passage being once discouered.

To prooue by authoritie a Passage to be on the North side of A- *merica, to goe to Cathaia, and the East India.*

Chapter 1.

WHen I gaue my selfe to the studie of Geographie, after I had perused and diligently scanned the descriptions of Europe, Asia, and Afrike, and conferred them with the Mappes and Globes both Antique and Moderne: I came in fine to the fourth part of the world, commonly called America, which by all descriptions I found to be an Island enuironed round about with the Sea, hauing on the Southside of it, the frete, or straight of Magellan, on the West side Mare de sur, which Sea runneth towards the North, separating it from the East partes of Asia, where the Dominions of the Cathaians are. On the East part our West Ocean, and on the North side the Sea that seuereth it from Groneland, thorowe which Northren Seas, the Passage lyeth, which I take nowe in hand to discouer.

Plato in Timæo, and in the Dialogue called Critias, discourseth of an incomparable great Iland, then called Atlantis, being greater then all Affrike, and Asia, which lay Westward from the Straights of Gibralter, nauigable round about: affirming also that the Princes of Atlantis, did aswell enioy ꝑ gouernance of all Affrike, & the most part of Europe, as of Atlantis it selfe.

Also to prooue Platoes opinion of this Iland, and the inhabiting of it in auncient time, by them of Europe, to be of the more credite: Marinæus Siculus, in his Chronicle of Spaine, reporteth that there hath bene found by the Spaniards, in the Golde Mines of America, certaine pieces of Money, ingraued with the Image of Augustus Cæsar: which pieces were sent to the Pope, for a testimonie of the matter, by Iohn Rufus, Archbyshop of Consentinum.

Moreouer, this was not only thought of Plato, but by Marsilius Ficinus, an excellent Florentine Philosopher,

Philosopher, Crantor the Græcian, Proclus, also Philo the famous Iewe, (as appeareth in his booke De Mundo, and in the Commentaries vpon Plato) to be ouerflowen, and swallowed vp with water, by reason of a mighty earthquake, and streaming down of the heauenly Fludgates. The like whereof happened vnto some part of Italie, when by the forciblenes of the Sea, called Supertum, it cut of Sicilia from the Continent of Calabria, as appeareth in Iustine, in the beginning of his fourth booke. Also there chaunced the like in Zeland a part of Flanders. Proclus pag. 24. Iustine Lib. 4.

And also the cities of Pyrrha, and Antissa, about Meotis palus: and also, the citie Burys, in the Corynthian bosome, commonly called Sinus Corinthiacus, haue bene swallowed vp with the sea, and are not at this day to bee discerned: By which accident, America grew to bee vnknowen of long time, vnto vs of the later ages, and was lately discouered againe, by Americus Vespucius, in the yere of our Lord, 1497. which some say to haue bene first discouered, by Christophorus Columbus a Genuois, Anno. 1492. Plinie.

The same calamitie happened vnto this Isle of Atlantis 600. and odde yeres before Plato his time, which some of the people of the southeast partes of the world accompted as 9000. yeres: for the manner then was to reckon the moone her Period of the Zodiak for a yeere, which is our vsuall moneth, depending à Luminari minore.

So that in these our dayes there can no other mayne or Islande be found or iudged to bee parcell of this Atlantis, then those Westerne Islands, which beare now the name of America: countervailing thereby the name of Atlantis, in the knowledge of our age.

Then, if when no part of the said Athlantis was oppressed by water, & earthquake, the coasts round about the same were nauigable: a farre greater hope nowe remaineth of the same by the Northwest, seeing the most part of it was, since that time, swallowed vp with water, which could not vtterly take away the old deepes and chanels, but rather, be an occasion of the inlarging of the olde, and also an inforcing of a great many newe: why then shoulde we nowe doubt of our Northwest passage & nauigation from England to India? &c. seeing that Athlantis nowe called America, was euer knowen to be an Island, and in those dayes nauigable round about, which by accesse of more water coulde not be diminished. A minore a maius.

Also Aristotle in this booke de Mundo, and the learned Germaine, Simon Gryneus in his annotations vpon the same, saith that the whole earth (meaning thereby as manifestly doeth appeare, Asia, Africk, and Europe, being all the countries then knowen) to be but one Island, compassed about with the reach of the Sea Atlantine: which likewise approueth America to bee an Island, and in no part adioyning to Asia, or the rest.

Also many Auncient writers, as Strabo and others, called both the Ocean sea (which lieth East of India) Atlanticum pelagus, and that Sea also on the West coastes of Spayne and Afrik, Mare Atlanticum: the distance betweene the two coastes, is almost halfe the compasse of the earth. Strabo lib. 15.

So that it is incredible, as by Plato appeareth manifestly, that the East Indian Sea had the name Atlanticum pelagus, of the mountaine Atlas in Africk, or yet the Sea adioyning to Afrik, or yet the Sea adioyning to Afrik had name Oceanus Atlanticus, of the same mountaine: but that those Seas and the mountaine Atlas, were so called of this great Island Atlantis, and that the one and the other, had their names for a memoriall of the mightie prince Atlas, sometime King thereof, who was Iaphet youngest sonne to Noah, in whose time the whole earth was deuided betweene the three brethren, Sem, Cam, and Iaphet. Valerius Anselmus in Catago annorum et principum. fol. 8. Gen. 9. 10.

Wherefore I am of opinion that America by the Northwest, will be founde fauourable to this our enterprise, and am the rather imboldened to beleeue the same, for that I finde it not only confirmed by Plato, Aristotle, and other ancient Philosophers: but also by all the best moderne Geographers, as (Gemma Frisius, Munsterus, Appianus. Hunterus, Gastaldus, Guyccardinus, Michael Tramesinus, Franciscus Demongenitus, Barnardus Puteanus, Andreas Vauasor, Tramontanus, Petrus Martyr, and also Ortelius) who doth coast out in his generall Mappe (set out Anno 1569. all the countreys and capes, on the Northwestside of America, from Hochelega to C. De Paramantia: describing likewise the sea coastes of Cataia and Grondland, towards any part of America, making both Grondland and America, Islands disioyned by a great sea, from any part of Asia.

All which learned men and painefull trauellers haue affirmed, with one consent and voice, that America was an Island: and that there lyeth a great Sea betweene it, Cataia, and Grondland, by the which any man of our country, that will giue the attempt, may with smal danger passe to Cataia, the Molucæ, India, and all other places in the East, in much shorter time, then either the Spaniard, or Portingale doeth, or may doe, from the neerest parte of any of their countreis

treis within Europe.

We ought by reasons right to haue a true rent opinion of worthy men.

What mooued these learned men to affirme thus much, I know not, or to what end so many and sundry trauellers, of both ages, haue allowed the same: But I coniecture that they would neuer haue so constantly affirmed, or notified their opinions therein to the world, if they had not had great good cause, and many probable reasons, to haue lead them thereunto.

How Lorde Burleigh high Treasurer of England.

A Nauigation of one Ochther made in king Alfreds time.

Now least you should make smal accompt of ancient writers or of their experiences which trauelled long before our times, reckoning their authoritie amongst fables of no importance: I haue for the better assurance of those proofes, set downe some part of a discourse, written in the Saxon tongue, and translated into English by M. Nowel seruant to Maister Secretarie Cecill, wherein there is described a Nauigation, which one Ochther made, in the time of King Alfred, King of Westsaxe Anno, 871. the wordes of which discourse were these: He sailed right North, hauing alwaies the desert land on the Starborde, and on the Larbord the mayne sea, continuing his course, vntill he perceiued that the coast bowed directly towardes the East, or else the Sea opened into the lande he could not tel how far, where he was compelled to stay vntil hee had a westerne winde, or somewhat vpon the North and sayled thence directly East, alongst the coast, so farre as he was able in foure dayes, where he was againe inforced to tary vntill he had a North winde, because the coast there bowed directly towards the South, or at least opened he knew not how far into the land, so that he sayled thence along the coast continually ful South, so far as he could trauel in the space of fiue dayes, where he discouered a mightie riuer, which opened far into the lande, and in the entrie of this riuer he turned backe againe.

A perfect description of our Muscouia voyage.

Whereby it appeareth, that he went the very same way, that we now do yerely trade by S. Nicholas into Muscouia, which way no man in our age knew, for certaintie to be sea, vntil it was since discouered by our English men, in the time of King Edward the first: but thought before that time that Groneland had ioyned to Normoria Byarmia, & therefore was accompted a new discouerie, being nothing so in deede, as by this discourse of Ochthers it appeareth.

By Sir Hugh Wyllouhby, knight, Chancellor and Borough.

Neuertheless if any man should haue taken this voiage in hand, by the incouragment of this onely author, he shoulde haue bene thought but simple: considering that this Nauigation was written so many yeres past, in so barbarous a tongue by one onely obscure author, and yet wee in in these our dayes finde by our owne experiences, his former reports to be true.

Howe much more then, ought we to beleeue this passage to Cataia to be, being verified by the opinions of all the best, both Antique, and Moderne Geographers, and plainly set out in the best and most allowed Mappes, Charts, Globes, Cosmographical tables, and discourses of this our age, and by the rest not denyed, but left as a matter doubtfull.

To proue by reason, a passage to be on the Northside *of* America: *to goe to* Cataia, *&c.*

CHAP 2.

Experimented by our english fishers.

FIrst, all seas are maineteined by the abundance of water, so that the neerer the ende, any Riuer, Baye or Hauen is, the shallower it waxeth, (although by some Accidental barre, it is sometime found otherwise) But the farther you saile West, from Island, towards the place, where this fretis thought to be, the more deeper are the seas: which giueth vs good hope, of continuance of the same sea, with Mare del Sur, by some frete that lyeth betweene America, Groneland, and Cataia.

2 Also, if that America were not an Islande, but a part of the continent adioyning to Asia, either the people which inhabite Mangia, Anian, and Quinzay, &c. being borderers vpon it, would before this time, haue made some roade into it: hoping to haue found some like commodities to their owne:

Neede makes the old wife to trotte.

3 Or els the Scythians, and Tartarians (which often times heretofore, haue sought far & nere, for new seats, driuen thereunto, through the necessitie of their colde, and miserable countreys) would in all this time, haue found the way to America, and entred the same, had the passages bene neuer so straite, or difficult: the countrie being so temperate, pleasant and fruitful, in comparison of their own. But there was neuer any such people found there, by any of the Spaniards, Portingals, or Frenchmen, who first discouered the Inland of that Countrie: which Spaniards, or Frenchmen, must then of necessitie, haue seene some one Ciuil man in America, considering how ful of ciuil people Asia is: But they neuer sawe so much as one token, or signe, that euer any man of the known part of the world, had beene there.

4 Furthermore,

4 Furthermore, it is to be thought, that if by reason of mountaines, or other craggy places, the people neither of Cataia, or Tartarie coulde enter the countrie of America, or they of America, haue entred Asia, if it were so ioyned: yet some one sauage, or wandring beast would in so many yeeres, haue passed into it: but there hath not any time bene found any of the beasts proper to Cataia, or Tartarie &c. in America: nor of those proper to America, in Tartarie, Cataia, &c. or any part of Asia. Which thing proueth America, not only to be one Island, and in no part adioyning to Asia, But also that the people of those Countreys, haue not had any traffyke with eache other.

5 Moreouer at the least some one of those paineful trauellers, which of purpose haue passed the Confines of both countreis, with intent only to discouer, would, as it is most likely haue gone from the one to the other: if there had bene any piece of land, or Isthmos, to haue ioyned them together, or else haue declared some cause to the contrary.

6 But neither Paulus venetus, who lyued, and dwelt a long time, in Cataia, euer came into America, and yet was at the Sea coastes of Mangia, ouer against it, where he was imbarked, and performed a great Nauigation along those Seas: Neither yet Verarzanus, or Franciscus vasques de Coronado, who trauelled the North parte of America by lande, euer found entry from thence by land, to Cataia, or any part of Asia.

7 Also it appeareth to be an Island, insomuch as the Sea runneth by nature circularly, from the East to the West, following the Diurnal motion of Primum Mobile, and carieth with it all inferiour bodies moueable, aswel celestial, as elementall: which motion of the waters, is most euidently seene in the Sea, which lyeth on the Southside of Afrik, where the currant that runneth from the East to the West, is so strong (by reason of such motion) that their Portingals in the voyages, Eastward to Callecute, in passing by Cap. De buona sperança, are enforced to make diuers courses, the currant there being so swift, as it striketh from thence, all along Westward, vpon the fret of Magellan, being distant from thence, neere the fourth part of the longitude of the earth: and not hauing free passage and entrance, thorow that fret towardes the West, by reason of the narrownes of the said straite of Magellan, it ruuneth to salue this wrong (Nature not yelding to accidentall restraints) all along the Easterne coasts of America, Northwardes, so farre as Cap. Fredo, being the farthest knowen place of the same continent, towards the North: which is about, 4800. leagues, reconing therewithal the trending of the land.

The Sea hath three motions.
1 Motum ab oriente in occidentem.
2 Motum fluxus & refluxus.
3 Motum circularem.
Ad celi motum elementa omnia (excepta terra) mouentur.

8 So that this Currant, being continually mainteined with such force, as Iaques Cartier affirmeth it to be, who met with the same being at Baccalaos, as he sailed alongst the coastes of America, then, either it must of necessitie, haue way to passe from Cap Fredo, thorowe this frete, Westward towardes Cataia, being knowen to come so farre, onely to salue his former wrongs, by the authoritie before named: or els it must needes strike ouer, vpon the coast of Island, Lappia, Finmarke, and Norway, (which are East from the said place, about 360. Leagues) with greater force, then it did from Cap. de buona Sperança, vpon the fret of Magellan or from the frete of Magellan to Cap. Fredo, vpon which coastes, Iaques Cartier mette with the same, considering the shortnesse of the Cut, from the saide C. Fredro, to Island, Lappia, &c. And so the cause Efficient remaining, it would haue continually followed along our coasts, through the narrowe seas, which it doth not, but is disgested about the North of Labrador, by some through passage there, thorow this fret.

Posita causa, ponitur effectus.

The like course of the water, in some respect, happeneth in the Mediterrane Sea (as affirmeth Conterenus) whereas the currant, which commeth from Tanais, & the Euxinus, running along all the coasts of Greece, Italie, France and Spaine, and not finding sufficient way out through Gibralter, by meanes of the straitnesse of the fret, it runneth backe againe, alongst the coasts of Barbarie, by Alexandria, Natolia, &c.

Conterenus.

It may (peraduenture) bee thought that this course of the sea, doth sometime surcease, and thereby impugne this principle, because it is not discerned all along the coast of America, in such sort as Iaques Cartier found it: Whereunto I answere this: that albeit, in euery part of the Coast of America, or els where, this Currant is not sensibly perceiued, yet, it hath euermore such like motion, either the vppermost, or nethermost part of the sea: as it may bee proued true, if ye sinke a sayle by a couple of ropes, neere the grounde, fastening to the nethermost corners, two gunne chambers or other weights: by the vsing whereof you shall plainely perceiue, the course of the water, and Currant, running with such like course in the bottome.

An Obiection answered. The Sea doth euermore performe this circular motion, either in Suprema, or concaua superficie aquæ.

By the like experiment, you may finde the ordinarie motion of the sea, in the Ocean: howe farre soeuer you be off the land.

9 Also there commeth another Currant from out the Northeast from the Sythian Sea (as

M. Ienkinson

M. Ienkinson a man of rare vertue, great trauaile and experience, told me, which runneth Westward towardes Labrador, as the other did, which commeth from the South: so that both these Currants, must haue way thorow this our frete, or else incounter together and runne contrary courses, in one line, but no such conflictes of streames, or contrary courses are found about any part of Labrador, or Terra noua, as witnesse our yeerely fishers, and other saylers that way, but is there digested, as aforesaid, and founde by the experience of Barnard de la Torre, to fall into Mare del Sur.

10 Furthermore, the Currant in the great Ocean, coulde not haue beene maintained to runne continually one way, from the beginning of the world, vnto this day, had there not beene some thorow passage by the frete aforesaide, and so by circular motion, bee brought againe to maintaine it selfe: For the Tides, and courses of the Sea are maintained by their interchangeable motions: as freshriuers are by springes, by ebbing and flowing, by rarifaction and condensation.

The flowing is occasioned by reason that the peate of the moone dopleth, and maketh the water thinne by way of rarefaction.

So that it resteth not possible (so farre as my simple reason can comprehend) that this perpetuall currant, can by any meanes be maintained, but onely by continuall reaccesse of the same water, which passeth thorow the fret, and is brought about thither againe, by such Circular motion as aforesaid. And the certaine falling therof by this fret into Mare del Sur, is proued by the testimonie & experience, of Barnarde del la Torre, who was sent from P. del la Natiuidad to the Molluccæ, Anno domini 1542. by commaundement of Anthonie Mendoza, then Viceroy of Noua Hispania, which Barnarde, sayled 750. Leagues, on the Northside of the Æquator, and there met with a currant, which came from Northeast the which droue him backe againe to Tidore.

An experience to proue the falling of this Currant, into Mare del sur.

Wherefore, this currant being proued to come from C. de buona Speranca, to the fret of Magellan, and wanting sufficient entrance there, by narrownes of the straite, is by the necessitie of natures force, brought to Terra de Labrador, where Iacques Cartier met the same, and thence certainly knowen, not to strike ouer vpon Island, Lappia, &c. and found by Barnard de la Torre, in Mare del Sur, on the backeside of America, therefore this currant (hauing none other passage) must of necessity, fal out thorow this our fret into Mare del Sur, and so trending by the Molluccæ, China, and C. De buona speranza, maintaineth it selfe by circular motion, which is all one in nature, with Motus ab Oriente in Occidentem.

So that it seemeth, we haue now more occasion to doubt of our returne, then whether there be a passage that way, yea or no: which doubt, hereafter shalbe sufficiently remooued. Wherefore, in mine opinion, reason it self, grounded vpon experience, assureth vs of this passage, if there were nothing els to put vs in hope thereof. But least these might not suffice, I haue added in this Chapter following, some further proofe hereof, by the experience of such as haue passed some part of this discouerie: and in the next adioyning to that the authoritie of those, which haue sayled wholy, thorow euery part thereof.

To proue by experience of sundrie mens trauels, the opening *of some part of this Northwest passage: whereby good hope* remaineth of the rest.

CHAP. 3

PAulus Venetus, who dwelt many yeeres in Cataia, affirmed that he sailed 1500 myles, vpon the coastes of Mangia, and Anian, towardes the Northeast: alwayes finding the Seas open before him, not onely as farre as he went: but also as farre as he could discerne.

2 Also Franciscus Vasques de Coronado passing from Mexico by Ceuola, through the countrey of Quiuir, to Sierra Neuada, found there a great Sea, where were certaine Shippes laden with Merchandise, the mariners wearing on their heads the pictures of certaine birds, called Alcatrarzi, part wherof were made of golde, and part of siluer: who signified by signes, that they were thirtie dayes comming thither: which likewise proueth America by experience to bee disioyned from Cataia, on that part, by a great Sea, because they could not come from any part of America, as Natiues therof: for that, so farre as is discouered, there hath not bene founde there any one Shippe of that countrey.

Baros lib. 9. Of his first Decas. cap. 1.

3 In like maner, Iohan. Baros, testifieth that the Cosmographers of China (where hee himselfe

ſide had bene) affirme that the Sea coaſt, trendeth from thence Northeaſt, to 50. degrees of Septentrionall lacitude, being the farthest part that way, which the Portingals had then knowledge of: And that the ſaide Coſmographers knewe no cauſe to the contrary, but that it might continue further.

By whoſe experiences, America is proued to be ſeparate from thoſe partes of Aſia, directly againſt the ſame. And not contented with the iudgements of theſe learned men onely, I haue ſearched what might be further ſaid for the confirmation hereof.

4 And I found that Franciſcus Lopes de Gomara affirmeth, America to be an Iland, and likewiſe Grondland: and that Grondland is diſtant from Lappia 40. leagues, and from Terra de Labrador, 50.

5 Moreouer, Aluarus Nunnius a Spaniard, and learned Coſmographer, and Iacobus Cartier, who made two voyages into thoſe partes, and ſayled 500. myles vpon the Northeaſt coaſtes of America.

6 Likewiſe Hieronimus Fracaſtorius, a learned Italian, and trauailer in the North partes of the ſame land.

7 Alſo Iaques Cartier hauing done the like, heard ſay at Hochelaga in Noua Francia, howe that there was a great Sea at Saguinay, whereof the end was not knowen: which they preſuppoſed to be the paſſage to Cataia.

Furthermore, Sebaſtian Cabota, by his perſonal experience and trauell hath ſet foorth, and deſcribed this paſſage in his Charts, which are yet to be ſeene in the Queenes Maieſties priuie Gallerie at Whitehall, who was ſent to make this diſcouerie by king Henrie the ſeuenth, and entred the ſame feet: affirming, that he ſayled very farre Weſtward, with a quarter of the North, on the Northſide of Terra de Labrador, the elleuenth of June, vntill he came to the Septentrionall latitude of 67. & a halfe degrees, and finding the Seas ſtill open, ſaid, that he might, and would haue gone to Cataia, if the mutinie of the Maſter and Mariners had not bene. Written in the diſcourſes of Hamgarton.

Now as theſe mens experience hath proued ſome part of this paſſage: ſo the chapter following ſhall put you in full aſſurance of the reſt, by their experiences which haue paſſed through euery part thereof.

To prooue by circumſtance that the Northweſt paſſage *hath bene ſailed throughout.*

Cap. 4.

THe diuerſitie betweene bruite beaſtes and men, or betweene the wiſe and the ſimple is, that the one iudgeth by ſenſe onely, and gathereth no ſkuertie of any thing that he hath not ſeene, feale, heard, taſted, or ſmelled: And the other not ſo onely, but alſo findeth the certaintie of things by reaſon, before they happen to be tryed. Wherefore I haue added proofes of both ſortes, that the one and the other might thereby be ſatisfied.

Quinque ſenſus.
1 Viſus.
2 Auditus.
3 Olfactus.
4 Guſtus.
5 Tactus.
Singularia ſenſu, vniuerſalia vero mente percipiuntur.

1 Firſt, as Gemma Friſius reciteth, there went from Europe three brethren through this paſſage: whereof it tooke the name of Fretum trium fratrum.

2 Alſo Plinie affirmeth out of Cornelius Nepos, (who wrote 57. yeeres before Chriſt) that there were certaine Indians driuen by tempeſt, vpon the coaſt of Germanie which were preſented by the king of Sueuia, vnto Quintus Metellus Celer, then Proconſull of France.

3 And Plinie vpon the ſame faith, that it is no maruell though there be Sea by the North, where there is ſuch abundance of moiſture: which argueth, that he doubted not of a nauigable paſſage that way, through which thoſe Indians came. lib. 2. cap. 66.

4 And for the better proofe that the ſame authoritie of Cornelius Nepos, is not by me miſled, to proue my opinion of the Northweſt paſſage: you ſhall finde the ſame affirmed more plainely in that behalfe, by the excellent Geographer Dominicus Marius Niger, who ſheweth howe many wayes the Indian Sea ſtretcheth it ſelfe, making in that place recital of certaine Indians, that were likewiſe driuen through the North Seas from India, vpon the coaſtes of Germanie, by great tempeſt, as they were ſayling in trade of merchandize. Pag. 590.

5 Alſo whiles Frederic Barbaroſſa reigned Emperour, Anno Do. 1160. there came certaine other Indians vpon the coaſt of Germanie. Auouched by Franciſcus Lopes de Gomara in his hiſtorie of India, lib. 1. cap. 10.

6 Likewiſe Othon, in the ſtorie of the Gothes affirmeth, that in the time of the Germane Emperours, there were alſo certaine Indians caſt by force of weather, vpon the coaſt of the

said countrey, which foresaid Indians could not possibly haue come by the Southeast, Southwest, nor from any part of Affrike or America, nor yet by the Northeast: therefore they came of necessitie by this our Northwest passage.

To prooue that these Indians aforenamed, came not by the Southeast, Southwest, nor from any other part of Affrike, or America,

Cap. 5.

FIrst, they could not come from the Southeast by Cape de buona Speranza, because the roughnesse of the Seas there is such (occasioned by the currants and great winds in that part) that the greatest Armadoes the king of Portingal hath, cannot without great difficultie passe that way, much lesse then a Canoa of India could liue in those outragious seas without ship wracke (being a vessell but of very small burden) and haue conducted themselues to the place aforesayd, beyng men vnexpert in the Arte of nauigation.

2 Also, it appeareth plainly that they were not able to come from alongst the coast of Affrike aforesaid, to those partes of Europe, because the windes doe (for the most part) blow there Easterlie off from the shore, and the currant running that way in like sort, should haue driuen them Westward vpon some part of America, for such windes and tides could neuer haue led them from thence to the said place where they were found, nor yet could they haue come from any of the countries aforesaid, keeping the seas alwayes, without skilfull mariners to haue conducted them such like courses as were necessarie to performe such a voiage.

3 Presuppoling also, if they had bene driuen to the West (as they must haue bene, comming that way) then they should haue perished, wanting supplie of victuals, not hauing any place (once leauing the coast of Affrike) vntill they came to America, nor from America, vntill they arriued vpon some part of Europe, or the Islands adioining to it to haue refreshed themselues.

4 Also, if (notwithstanding such impossibilities) they might haue recouered Germanie, by comming from India by the Southeast, yet must they without all doubt haue striken vpon some other part of Europe before their arriuall there, as the Iles of Madera, Portingall, Spaine, France, England, Ireland, &c. which if they had done, it is not credible that they should or would haue departed vndiscouered of the inhabitants: but there was neuer found in those dayes any such ship or men, but onely vpon the coasts of Germanie, where they haue bin sundry times and in sundrie ages cast a land: neither is it like that they would haue committed themselues againe to sea, if they had so arriued, not knowing where they were, nor whither to haue gone.

Why the Indians could not come by the Southwest.

5 And by the Southwest it is vnpossible, because the currant aforesaid which commeth from the East, striketh with such force vpon the fret of Magellan, and falleth with such swiftnesse and furie into Mare de Zur, that hardly any ship (but not possible a Canoa, with such vnskilfull mariners) can come into our Westerne Ocean through that fret, from the West seas of America, as Magellans experience hath partly taught vs.

That the Indians could not be natiues either of Affrica, or of America.

6 And further, to prooue that these people so arriuing vpon the coast of Germanie, were Indians, and not inhabiters of any part either of Affrica or America, it is manifest, because the natiues both of Affrica and America, neither had, or haue at this day (as is reported) other kind of boates then such as do beare neither maste nor saile, (except onely vpon the coasts of Barbarie and the Turkes ships) but do carie themselues from place to place neere the shore, by the oze onely.

To prooue that those Indians came not by the Northeast, and that there is no thorow Nauigable passage that way.

Cap. 6.

IT is likely that there should be no thorow passage by the Northeast, whereby to goe round about the world, because all Seas (as aforesayd) are maintained by the abundance of water, waxing more shallow and shelfie towards the ende, as we find, it doeth by experience, in Mare Glaciali, towards the East, which breedeth small hope of any great continuance of that sea, to be nauigable towards the East, sufficient to saile thereby round about the world.

2 Also

2 Alſo, it ſtandeth ſcarcely with reaſon, that the Indians dwelling vnder Torrida Zona, could endure the iniurie of the cold ayre, about the Septentrionall latitude of 80. degrees, vnder which eleuation, the paſſage by the Northeaſt, cannot bee (as the often experience had of all the South parts of it ſheweth) ſeeing that ſome of the inhabitants of this cold climate (whoſe Sommer is to them an extreme Winter) haue bene ſtroken to death, with the cold damps of the aire, about 72 degrees, by an accidentall miſhap, and yet the aire in ſuch like Eleuation is alwayes cold, and too cold for ſuch as the Indians are. Quicquid naturali loco poſitum, quam citiſſimè corrumpitur. Qualis cauſa, talis effectus.

3 Furthermore, the piercing cold of the groſſe thicke aire ſo neere the Pole, will ſo ſtiffen and freeze the ſailes and ſhip tackling, that no mariner can either hoiſe or ſtrike them (as our experience farre neerer the South, then this paſſage is preſuppoſed to bee, hath taught vs) without the vſe whereof no voiage can be performed.

4 Alſo, the aire is ſo darkened with continuall miſtes and fogs ſo neere the Pole, that no man can well ſee, either to guide his ſhip, or direct his courſe.

5 Alſo the compaſſe at ſuch eleuation doeth very ſuddenly varie, which things muſt of force haue bene their deſtructions, although they had bene men of much more ſkill then the Indians are.

6 Moreouer, all Baies, Gulfes and Riuers doe receiue their increaſe vpon the flood, ſenſiblie to be diſcerned on the one ſide of the ſhore or the other, as many wayes as they be open to any main Sea, as Mare Mediterraneum, Mare Rubrum, Sinus Perſicus, Sinus Bodicus, Thameſis, and all other knowen hauens or riuers in any part of the world, and each of them opening but on one part to the maine ſea, doe likewiſe receiue their encreaſe vpon the flood the ſame way, and none other, which Mare Glaciale doeth, onely by the Weſt (as M. Jenkinſon affirmed vnto me) and therefore it followeth that this Northeaſt ſea, receiuing increaſe but onely from the Weſt, cannot poſſiblie open to the maine Ocean by the Eaſt. Similium ſimilis eſt ratio.

7 Moreouer, the farther you paſſe into any ſea towards the end of it, on that part which is ſhut vp from the maine Sea (as in all thoſe abone mentioned) the leſſe and leſſe the tides riſe and fall. The like whereof alſo happeneth in Mare Glaciale, which proueth but ſmall continuance of that Sea toward the Eaſt.

8 Alſo, the further ye goe toward the Eaſt in Mare Glaciale, the leſſe ſalt the water is: which could not happen, if it were open to the ſalt Sea towards the Eaſt, as it is to the Weſt onely, ſeeing (Euery thing naturally ingendereth his like) and then muſt it bee like ſalt throughout, as all the ſeas are, in ſuch like climate and eleuation. Quicquid corrumpitur à contrario corrumpitur.

And therefore it ſeemeth that this Northeaſt ſea is maintained by the riuer Ob, and ſuch like freſhets as Mare Ponticum, and Mare Mediterraneum, in the vppermoſt parts thereof by the riuer Nilus, Danubius, Neper, Tanais, &c. Omne ſimile gignit ſui ſimile.

9 Furthermore, if there were any ſuch Sea at that eleuation, or like it ſhould be alwayes froſen throughout (there being no tides to hinder it) becauſe the extreme coldneſſe of the aire in the vppermoſt part, and the extreme coldneſſe of the earth in the bottome, the ſea there being but of ſmall depth, where by the one accidentall coldneſſe doeth meet with the other, and the Sunne not hauing his reflection ſo neere the Pole, but at very blunt angles, it can neuer bee diſſolued after it is froſen, notwithſtanding the great length of their day: for that the ſunne hath no heate at all in his light or beames, but proceeding onely by an accidentall reflection, which there wanteth in effect.

10 And yet if the Sunne were of ſufficient force in that eleuation, to preuaile againſt this ice, yet muſt it be broken before it can be diſſolued, which cannot bee but through the long continuance of the ſunne aboue their Horizon, and by that time the Sommer would be ſo farre ſpent, and ſo great darkenes and cold enſue, that no man could be able to endure ſo cold, darke, and diſcomfortable a nauigation, if it were poſſible for him then, and there to liue.

11 Further, the Ice being once broken, it muſt of force ſo driue with the windes and tides, that no ſhippe can ſaile in thoſe ſeas, ſeeing our Fiſhers of Iſland, and the New found land, are ſubiect to danger through the great Iſlands of Ice which fleete in the Seas (to the ſailers great danger) farre to the South of that preſuppoſed paſſage.

12 And it cannot be that this Northeaſt paſſage ſhould bee any neerer the South, then before written, for then it ſhould cut of Ciremiſſi, and Turbi, Tartarij, with Vzeſucani, Chiſani, and others from the Continent of Aſia, which are knowen to be adioining to Scythia, Tartaria, &c. with the other part of the ſame Continent.

And if there were any thorow paſſage by the Northeaſt, yet were it to ſmall ende and purpoſe for our traffique, becauſe no ſhippe of great burden can Nauigate in ſo ſhallow a Sea:

and ships of small burde are very vnfit and vnprofitable, especially towards the blustering North, to performe such a voiage.

To proove that the Indians aforenamed, came onely by the *Northwest, which induceth a certaintie of our passage* by experience.

Cap. 7.

IT is as likely that they came by the Northwest, as it is vnlikely that they should come either by the Southeast, Southwest, Northeast, or from any other part of Africa or America, and therefore this Northwest passage hauing bene alreadie so many wayes prooued, by disprooving of the others, &c. I shall the lesse need in this place, to vse many wordes otherwise then to conclude in this sort, That they came onely by the Northwest from England, hauing these many reasons to lead me thereunto.

1 First, the one halfe of the windes of the compasse might bring them by the Northwest, bearing alwayes betweene two sheats, with which kinde of sayling the Indians are onely acquainted, not hauing any vse of a bowe line, or quarter winde, without the which no shippe can possibly come either by the Southeast, Southwest or Northeast, hauing so many sundry Capes to double, whereunto are required such change and shift of windes.

2 And it seemeth likely that they should come by the Northwest, because the coast whereon they were driuen, lay East from this our passage, And all windes doe naturally drive a ship to an opposite point from whence it bloweth, not being otherwise guided by Arte, which the Indians do vtterly want, and therefore it seemeth that they came directly through this our fret, which they might doe with one wind.

True, both is ventis obliquè flantibus, as also in ventis ex diametro spirantibus.

3 For if they had come by Cape de buona Sperança, then must they (as aforesaid) haue fallen vpon the South partes of America.

4 And if by the fret of Magellan, then vpon the coasts of Affrike, Spaine, Portingall, France, Ireland or England.

5 And if by the Northeast, then vpon the coasts of Ceremissi, Tartarij, Lappia, Island, Terra de Labrador, &c. and vpon these coasts (as aforesaid) they haue neuer bene found.

So that by all likelihood they could neuer haue come without shipwracke vpon the coastes of Germanie, if they had first striken vpon the coastes of so many countries, wanting both Arte and shipping to make orderly discourrie, and altogether ignorant both in the Arte of Nauigation, and also of the Rockes, Flats, Sands or Hauens of those parts of the world, which in most of these places are plentifull.

6 And further it seemeth very likely, that the inhabitaunts of the most part of those countries, by which they must haue come any other way besides by the Northwest, being for the most part Anthropophagi, or men eaters, would haue deuoured them, slaine them, or (at the least wise) kept them as wonders for the graze.

So that it plainly appeareth that those Indians (which as you haue heard in sundrie ages were driuen by tempest vpon the shore of Germanie) came onely through our Northwest passage.

7 Moreouer, the passage is certainely prooued by a Nauigation that a Portingall made, who passed through this fret, giuing name to a Promontorie farre within the same, calling it after his owne name, Promontorium Corterialis, neere adioyning vnto Polisacus fluuius.

8 Also one Scolmus a Dane, entred and passed a great part thereof.

9 Also there was one Salua Terra, a Gentleman of Victoria in Spaine, that came by chance out of the West Indias, into Ireland, Anno 1568. who affirmed the Northwest passage from vs to Cataia, constantly to be beleeued in America nauigable. And further said in the presence of sir Henry Sidney (then lord Deputie of Ireland) in my hearing, that a Frier of Mexico, called Andro Vrdaneta, more then eight yeeres before his then comming into Ireland, told him there, that he came frō Mare del Sur into Germanie through this Northwest passage, and shewed Salua Terra (at that time being then with him in Mexico) a Sea Card made by his owne experience and trauell in that voiage, wherein was plainly set downe and described this Northwest passage, agreeing in all points with Ortelius mappe.

And

And further, this Frier tolde the king of Portingall (as hee returned by that countrey homeward) that there was (of certaintie) ſuch a paſſage Northweſt from England, and that he meant to publiſh the ſame: which done, the king moſt earneſtly deſired him not in any wiſe to diſcloſe or make the paſſage knowen to any nation: For that (ſayde the king) if England had knowledge and experience thereof, it would greatly hinder both the king of Spayne and me. This Frier (as Salua Terra reported) was the greateſt Diſcouerer by ſea, that hath bene in our age. Alſo Salua Terra, being perſwaded of this paſſage by the frier Vrdaneta, and by the common opinion of the Spaniards inhabiting America, offered moſt willingly to accompanie mee in this Diſcouerie, which of like he would not haue done if he had ſtood in doubt thereof.

The words of the king of Portugall, to Andrie Vrdaneta a Frier, touching the concealing of this Northweſt paſſage from England to Cataia.

And now as theſe moderne experiences cannot be impugned, ſo, leaſt it might be obiected that theſe things (gathered out of ancient writers, which wrote ſo many yeeres paſt) might ſerue little to proue this paſſage by the North of America, becauſe both America and India were to them then vtterly vnknowen: to remooue this doubt, let this ſuffiſe: That Ariſtotle, (who was 300. yeeres before Chriſt) named Mare Indicum. Alſo Beroſus (who liued 330. yeeres before Chriſt) ſaith theſe woordes, Ganges in India. Alſo in the firſt chapter of Heſter bee theſe woordes, In the dayes of Aſſuerus which ruled from India to Aethiopia, which Aſſuerus liued 580. yeeres before Chriſt. Alſo Quintus Curtius (where hee ſpeaketh of the Conqueſts of Alexander) mentioneth India. Alſo, Arianus Philoſtratus, and Sidrach in his diſcourſes of the warres of the king of Bactria, and of Garaab, who had the moſt part of India vnder his gouernment. All which aſſureth vs, that both India and Indians were knowen in thoſe dayes.

An obiection.

Ariſtotle lib. de mundo, cap. 2. Beroſus lib. 3.

Theſe things conſidered, we may (in my opinion) not onely aſſure our ſelues of this paſſage by the Northweſt, but alſo that it is nauigable both to come and goe, as hath bene proued in part and in all, by the experience of diuers, as Sebaſtian Cabota, Corterialis, the three brethren aboue named, the Indians, and Vrdaneta the Frier of Mexico, &c.

And yet notwithſtanding all which, there be ſome that haue a better hope of this paſſage to Cataia by the Northeaſt then by the Weſt, whoſe reaſons with my ſeuerall anſweres enſue in the chapter following.

Certaine reaſons alleaged for the prouing of a paſſage by the Northeaſt, before the Queenes Maieſtie, and certaine Lordes of the Counſell, by Maſter Anthonie Ienkinſon, with my ſeuerall anſweres then vſed to the ſame.

Cap. 8.

BEcauſe you may vnderſtand as well thoſe things alleaged againſt mee, as what doth ſerue for my purpoſe, I haue here added the reaſons of M. Anthonie Jenkinſon a worthie gentleman, and a great trauceller, who conceiued a better hope of the paſſage to Cataia from vs, to be by the Northeaſt, then by the Northweſt.

He firſt ſaid that hee thought not to the contrary, but that there was a paſſage by the Northweſt, according to mine opinion: but aſſured he was, that there might be found a Nauigable paſſage by the Northeaſt from England, to goe to all the Eaſt parts of the world, which he endeuoured to proue three wayes.

The Northweſt paſſage aſſented vnto.

The firſt was that he heard a Fiſherman of Tartaria ſay in hunting the Morce, that he ſailed very farre towards the Southeaſt, finding no ende of the Sea: whereby he hoped a thorow paſſage to be that way.

The firſt reaſon.

Whereunto I anſwered, that the Tartarians were a barbarous people, and vtterly ignorant in the Arte of Nauigation, not knowing the vſe of the Sea Carde, Compaſſe or Scarre, which hee confeſſed true: and therefore they could not (ſaid I) certainly know the Southeaſt from the Northeaſt, in a wide ſea, and a place vnknowen from the ſight of the land.

The anſwer or reſolution.

Or if he ſailed any thing neere the ſhore, yet hee (being ignorant) might bee deceiued by the doubling of many points and Capes, and by the rounding of the land, albeit he kept continually alongſt the ſhore.

And further, it might be that the poore Fiſherman through ſimplicitie, thought that there was nothing that way but Sea, becauſe hee ſawe no land: which proofe (vnder correction) giueth ſmall aſſurance of a Nauigable Sea by the Northeaſt, to goe rounde about the world, For that hee iudged by the eye onely, ſeeing wee in this our cleare ayre doe account twentie miles a ken at Sea.

Viſus nonnunquam fallitur in ſuo obiecto.

The second reason of allegation.

His second reason is, that there was an Unicornes horne found vpon the coast of Tartaria, which could not come (sayd he) thither by any other meanes then with the tides, through some streit in the Northeast of Mare Glaciale, there being no Unicorne in any part of Asia, sauing in India and Cataia, which reason (in my simple iudgement) foreeth as litle.

The answer of resolution.

First, it is doubtfull whether those barbarous Tartarians do know an Unicornes horne, yea, or no: and if it were one, yet it is not credible that the Sea could haue driuen it so farre, being of such nature that it will not swimme.

Also the tides running too & fro, would haue driuen it as farre backe with the ebbe, as it brought it forward with the flood.

There is also a beast called Asinus Indicus (whose horne most like it was) which hath but one horne like an Unicorne in his forehead, whereof there is great plentie in all the North parts thereunto adioining, as in Lappia, Noruegia, Finmarke, &c. as Iacobus Zeiglerus writeth in his historie of Scondia.

And as Albertus saieth, there is a fish which hath but one horne in his forehead like to an Unicorne, and therefore it seemeth very doubtfull both from whence it came, and whether it were an Unicornes horne, yea, or no.

The third and last reason of assertion.

His third and last reason was, that there came a continuall streame or currant, through Mare Glaciale, of such swiftnesse (as a Colmax told him) that if you cast any thing therein, it would presently be caried out of sight towards the West.

The answer of resolution.

Wherunto I answered, that there doth the like from Mæotis Palus, by Pontus Euxinus, Sinus Bosphorus, and along the coast of Græcia, &c. As it is affirmed by Contarenus, and diuers others that haue had experience of the same: and yet that Sea lieth not open to any maine Sea that way, but is maintained by freshets as by Tanais, Danubius, &c.

In like maner is this currant in Mare Glaciale increased and maintained by the Dwina, the riuer Ob, &c.

Now as I haue here briefly recited the reasons alleaged, to proue a passage to Cataia by the Northeast, with my seuerall answeres thereunto: so will I leaue it to your iudgement, to hope or dispaire of either at your pleasure.

How that the passage by the Northwest is more commodious for our traffique, then the other by the East, if there were any such.

Cap. 9.

FIrst, by the Northeast (if your windes doe not giue you a marueilous speedie and luckie passage) you are in danger (being so neere the Pole) to bee benighted almost the one half of the yeere, and what danger that were, to line so long comfortlesse, void of light, (if the cold killed you not) each man of reason or vnderstanding may iudge.

2 Also Mangia, Quinzai, and the Molluccæ, are neerer vnto vs by the North west, then by the Northeast, more then two fiue parts, which is almost by the halfe.

3 Also we may haue by the West a yeerely returne, it being at all times nauigable, whereas you haue but 4. moneths in the whole yeere to goe by the Northeast: the passage, being at such a leuation as it is formerly expressed, for it cannot be any neerer the South.

4 Furthermore, it cannot be finished without diuers wintrings by the way, hauing no hauens in any temperate climate to harbour in there: for it is as much as wee can well saile from hence to S. Nicholas, in the trade of Postrouia, and returne in the nauigable season of the yeere, and from S. Nicholas to Cerimissi Tartarij, which standeth at 80. degrees of the Septentrional latitude, it is at the least 400. leagues, which amounteth scarce to the third part of the way, to the ende of your voiage by the Northeast.

5 And yet after you haue doubled this Cape, if then there might be found a nauigable Sea to carie you Southeast according to your desire, yet can you not winter conueniently, vntil you come to 60. degrees, and to take vp one degree running Southeast, you must saile 24. leagues and three foure partes, which amounteth to 495. leagues.

6 Furthermore, you may by the Northwest saile thither with all Easterlie windes, and returne with any Westerly windes, whereas you must haue by the Northeast sundrie windes, and those proper, according to the lying of the coast and Capes, you shall bee inforced to double, which

which windes are not alwayes to be had, when they are looked for: whereby your iourney should be greatly prolonged, and hardly endured so neere the Pole. As we are taught by sir Hugh Willoughbie, who was frozen to death farre neerer the South.

7 Moreouer, it is very doubtfull, whether we should long inioy that trade by the Northeast, if there were any such passage that way, the commodities thereof once knowne to the Vulcouite, what priuilege soeuer he hath granted, seeing pollicie with the maze of excellius gaine, to the inriching (so greatly) of himselfe and all his dominions, would perswade him to presume the same, hauing so great opportunitie, to beter the commodities of those countries by the Narue.

But by the Northwest, we may safely trade without danger, or annoyance of any prince liuing, Christian or Heathen, it being out of all their trades.

8 Also the Queenes Maiesties dominions are neerer the Northwest passage then any other great princes that might passe that way, and both in their going and returne, they must of necessitie succour themselues and their shippes vpon some part of the same, if any tempestuous weather should happen.

Further, no princes nauie of the world, is able to incounter the Queenes Maiesties nauie, as it is at this present: and yet it should be greatly increased by the traffike insuing vpon this discouery, for it is the long voyages that increase and maintaine great shipping.

Now it seemeth necessarie, to declare what commodities would growe thereby, if all these things were, as we haue heeretofore presupposed, and thought them to be: which next adioyning artificly declared.

What commodities would ensue, this passage once *discouered.*

Chap. 10.

FIrst, it were the onely way for our princes, to possesse the wealth of all the East parts (as they terme them) of the world, which is infinite: as appeareth by the experience of Alexander the great, in the time of his conquest of India, and other the East partes of the world, alleged by Quintus Curtius, which would be a great aduancement to our countrey, woonderfull inriching to our prince, and vnspeakable commodities to all the inhabitants of Europe.

2 For though the shortnesse of the voyage, we should be able to sell all maner of merchandize, bought from thence, farre better cheape then either the Portingall or Spanyard doth or may doe. And further, share with the Portingall in the East, and the Spanyard in the West, by trading to any part of America, thorow Mare del Sur, where they can no maner of way offend vs.

3 Also we sayle to diuers maruellous rich countreys, both ciuill and others, out of both their iurisdictions, trades and traffikes, where there is to be found great abundance of golde, siluer, precious stones, cloth of golde, silkes, all maner of spices, grocery wares, and other kindes of merchandize of an inestimable price, which both the Spanyard and Portingall, though the length of their iournies, can not well attaine vnto.

4 Also we might inhabite some part of those countreys, and settle there such needie people of our countrey, which now trouble the common wealth, and though want be here at home, are inforced to commit outragious offences, whereby they are dayly consumed with the gallowes.

5 Moreouer, we might from all the aforesaid places haue a yeerely returne, inhabiting for our staple some conuenient place of America, about Sierra Neuada, or some other part, whereas it shall serue best for the shortning of the voyage.

6 Beside vttering of our countrie commodities, which the Indians, &c. much esteeme: as appeareth in Hester, where the pompe is expressed of the great king of India, Assuerus, who matched the coloured clothes, where with his houses and tents were apparelled, with golde and siluer, as part of his greatest treasure: not mentioning either veluets, silkes, cloth of golde, cloth of siluer, or such like, being in those countreys most plentifull: whereby it plainely appeareth in what great estimation they would haue the clothes of this our countrey, so that there would be found a farre better vent for them by this meanes, then yet this realme euer had: and that without depending either vpon France, Spayne, Flanders, Portingall, Hamborow, Emden, or any other part of Europe.

7 Also

7 Also, heere we shall increase, both our shippes and mariners, without burthening of the state.

8 And also haue occasion to set poore meng children to learne handie crastes, and thereby to make trifles and such like, which the Indians and those people do much esteeme: by reason whereof, there should be none occasion to haue our country combred with loiterers, vagabonds, and such like idle persons.

All these commodities would grow by following this our discouery, without iniury done to any Christian prince, by crossing them in any of theyr vsed trades, whereby they might take any iust occasion of offence.

Thus haue I briefly shewed you some part of the grounds of mine opinion, trusting that you will no longer iudge me fantastike in this matter: seeing I haue conceiued no hope of this voyage, but am persuaded thereunto by the best Cosmographers of our age, the same being confirmed both by reason and certaine experiences.

Also this discouery, hath beene diuers times heeretofore by others, both offered, attempted and performed.

This discouery offered.

It hath beene offered by Stephan Gomes vnto Carolus the fift Emperour, in the yeere of our Lord God 1527, as Alphonso Vllua testifieth in the story of Carolus life: who would haue set him forth in it (as the story mentioneth) if the great want of money, by reason of his long warres had not caused him to surceasse the same.

And the king of Portingall, fearing lest the Emperour would haue persewered in this his enterprise, gaue him, to leaue the matter vnattempted, the summe of 350000 crownes: and it is to be intended that the king of Portingall would not haue giuen to the Emperour such summes of money for egges in moonshine.

This discouery attempted.

It hath beene attempted by Corterialis the Portingall, Scolmus the Dane, and by Sebastian Cabota in the time of king Henry the seuenth.

This discouery performed.

And it hath beene performed by the three heathen, the Indians aforesaid, and by Vrdaneta the frier of Mexico.

Also diuers haue offered the like vnto the French king, who hath sent two or three times to haue discouered the same: The discouerers, spending & consuming their victualles, in searching the gulfes and bayes betweene Florida and Terra de Labrador, whereby the ile is broken to the after commers.

So that the right way may now easily be found out in short time: and that with little iourney and lesse expences.

The labour of this discouerie shortned by other mens trauell.

For America is discouered so farre towards the North, as Cape Fredo, which is at 62 degrees, and that part of Grondland next adioyning, is known to stand but at 72 degrees. So that we haue but 10 degrees to saile North and South, to put the world out of doubt heereof: and it is likely that the king of Spaine, and the king of Portingall would not haue sat out all this while, but that they are sure to possesse to themselues, all that trade they now vse, and feare to deale in this discouerie, least the Queenes Maiestie, hauing so good opportunitie, and finding the commoditie which thereby might ensue to the common wealth, would cut them off, and enioy the whole traffique to her selfe, and thereby the Spanyardes and Portingalles, with their great charges, should beate the bushe, and other men catch the birds: which thing they foreseeing, haue commanded, that no pilot of theyrs, vpon paine of death, shoulde seeke to discouer to the Northwest, or plat out in any Sea card any thorow passage that way by the Northwest.

Why the kings of Spaine and Portingall would not persener in this discouery.

Now, and if you will indifferently compare the hope that remayneth, to animate me to this enterprise, with those likelihoodes which Columbus alleged before Ferdinando the king of Castile, to proone that there were such Ilands in the West Ocean, as were after by him and others discouered, to the great commoditie of Spaine and all the world: you will thinke then this Northwest passage to be most worthy trauell therein.

For Columbus had none of the West Ilands set forth vnto him, either in globe or card, neither yet once mentioned of any writer (Plato excepted, and the commentaries vpon the same) from 942 yeeres before Christ, vntill that day.

Moreouer, Columbus himselfe had neither seene America nor any other of the Ilands about it, neither vnderstood he of them, by the report of any other that had seene them, but onely comforted himselfe with this hope, that the land had a beginning where the Sea had an ending: for as touching that which the Spanyards doe write of a Biscaine, which should haue taught him the way thither, it is thought to be imagined of them, to depriue Columbus of his honour, being none of their countrey man, but a stranger borne.

And

And if it were true of the Biſcane, yet did her but roue at the matter, or (at the leaſt) gathered the knowledge of it, by coniectures onely.

And albeit, my ſelfe haue not ſeene this paſſage, or any part thereof, but am ignorant of it as touching experience (as Columbus was before his attempt made) yet haue I both the report, relation, and authoritie of diuers moſt credible men, which haue both ſeene and paſſed through ſome and euery part of this diſcouerie, beſides ſundry reaſons for my aſſurance thereof: all which Columbus wanted.

Theſe things conſidered, & indifferently weighed together, with the wonderfull commodities which this diſcouerie may bring, eſpecially to this realme of England: I muſt needes conclude with learned Baptiſta Ramuſius, and diuers other learned men, who ſaid, that this diſcouerie hath beene reſerued for ſome noble prince or worthie man, thereby to make himſelfe rich, and the world happie: deſiring you to accept in good part this briefe and ſimple diſcourſe, written in haſte, which if I may perceiue that it ſhall not ſufficiently ſatisfie you in this behalfe, I will then impart vnto you a large diſcourſe, which I haue written onely of this diſcouery.

And further, becauſe it ſufficeth not, onely to know that ſuch a thing there is, without abilitie to performe the ſame, I will at leaſure make you partaker of another ſimple diſcourſe of nauigation, wherein I haue not a little trauelled, to make my ſelfe as ſufficient to bring theſe things to effect, as I haue beene readie to offer my ſelfe therein.

And therein I haue deuiſed to amend the errors of vſuall ſea cards, whoſe common fault is, to make the degrees of longitude in euery latitude of one like bigneſſe.

And haue alſo deuiſed therin a Sphericall inſtrument, with a compaſſe of variation for the perfect knowing of the longitude.

And a preciſe order to pricke the ſea card together, with certaine infallible rules for the ſhortning of any diſcouery, to know at the firſt entring of any freet, whether it lie open to the Ocean more wayes then one, how farre ſoeuer the ſea ſtretcheth it ſelfe into the land.

Deſiring you hereafter neuer to miſlike with me, for the taking in hand of any laudable and honeſt enterpriſe: for if though pleaſure or idleneſſe we purchaſe ſhame, the pleaſure vaniſheth, but the ſhame remaineth for euer.

And therefore to giue me leaue without offence, alwayes to liue and die in this minde, That he is not woorthie to liue at all, that for feare, or danger of death, ſhunneth his countrey ſeruice, and his owne honour: ſeeing death is ineuitable, and the fame of vertue immortall. Wherefore in this behalfe, Mutare vel timere ſperno. Peress qui vnquam bras timas.

Certaine other reaſons, or arguments to prooue a paſſage by the Northweſt, learnedly written by M. Richard Willes Gentleman.

FOure famous wayes there be ſpoken of to thoſe fruitfull and wealthie Ilands, which we do vſually call Molucaes, continually haunted for gaine, and dayly trauelled for riches therein growing. Theſe Ilandes, although they ſtand Eaſt from the Meridian, diſtant almoſt halfe the length of the world, in extreame heate, vnder the Equinoctiall line, poſſeſſed of Infidelles and Barbarians: yet by our neighbours great abundance of wealth there is painefully fought in reſpect of the voyage derely bought, and from thence dangerouſly brought home vnto vs. Our neighbours I call the Portingalles in compariſon of the Molucchians for neerenesſe vnto vs, for like ſituation Weſtward as we haue, for they vſuall trade with vs, for that the farre Southeaſterlinges doe know this part of Europe by no other name then Portingall, not greatly acquainted as yet with the other Nations thereof. They voyage is very well vnderſtood of all men, and the Southeaſterne way rounde about Affrike by the cape of Good hope, more ſpoken of, better knowen and trauelled, then that it may ſeeme needfull to diſcourſe thereof any further. 1. By the Southeaſt.

The ſeconde way lyeth Southweſt, betweene the Weſt Indie or South America, and the South continent, though that narrow ſtraight where Magellanus firſt of all men that euer we doe reade of, paſſed theſe latter yeeres, leauing thereunto thereof his name. This way no doubt the Spanyards would commodiouſly take, for that it lyeth neere vnto their dominions there, could the Eaſterne currant and leuant windes as eaſily ſuffer them to returne, as ſpeedily therewith they may be carryed thither: for the which difficultie, or rather impoſſibility of ſtriuing 2. By the Southweſt.

againſt

against the force both of winde and streame, this passage is little or nothing vsed, although it be very well knowne.

3. By the Northeast. The third way by the Northeast, beyond all Europe and Asia, that worthy and renowmed knight Syr Hugh Willoughbie sought to his perill, enforced there to end his life for colde, congealed and frozen to death. And truely this way consisteth rather in the imagination of Geographers, then allowable either in reason, or approoued by experience, as well it may appeare by the dangerous trending of the Scythish Cape set by Ortelius vnder the 80 degree North, by the vnlikely sailing in that Northerne sea alwaies clad with ise & snow, or at the least continually pestred therewith, if happely it be at any time dissolued: besides bayes and shelfes, the water waxing more shallow towards the East, that we say nothing of the foule mists and darke fogs in the colde clime, of the little power of the Sunne to cleare the ayre, of the vncomfortable nights, so neere the Pole, fiue moneths long.

Ortel. tab. Asiæ. 1.

4. By the Northwest. A fourth way to go vnto these aforesaid happy Ilands Moluccæ, Syr Humfrey Gilbert a learned and valiant knight, discourseth of at large in his new passage to Cathayo. The enterprise of it selfe being vertuous, the fact must doubtlesse deserue high praise, and whensoeuer it shall be finished, the fruits therof can not be small: where vertue is guide, there is fame a follower, and fortune a companion. But the way is dangerous, the passage doubtfull, the voyage not throughly knowne, and therfore gainsaid by many, after this maner.

Ob. 1. First, who can assure vs of any passage rather by the Northwest then by the Northeast: doe not both wayes lye in equall distance from the North Pole: stande not the North Capes of either continent vnder like eleuation: Is not the Ocean Sea beyonde America farther distant from our Meridian by thirtie or fortie degrees West, then the extreame poyntes of Cathayo Eastwarde, if Ortelius generall Carde of the woylde be true. In the Northeast that noble Knight Syr Hugh Willoughbie perished for colde: and can you then promise a passenger any better happe by the Northwest: who hath gone for triall sake, at any time, this way out of Europe to Cathayo.

In Theatro.

Ob. 2. If you seeke the aduise herein of such as make profession in Cosmographie, Ptolome the father of Geographie, and his eldest children, will answere by their mappes with a negatiue, concluding most of the sea within the land, and making an end of the woyld Northward, neere the 63 degree. The same opinion, when learning chiefly florished, was receiued in the Romans time, as by their Poets writings it may appeare: Et te colet vltima Thule, said Virgil, being of opinion, that Island was the extreame part of the woyld habitable toward the North. Ioseph Moletius an Italian, and Mercator a Germane, for knowledge men able to be compared with the best Geographers of our time, the one in his halfe Sphearcs of the whole woyld, the other in some of his great globes, haue continued the West Indies land, euen to the North Pole, and consequently, cut off all passage by sea that way.

The same doctors, Mercator in other of his globes and mappes, Moletius in his sea carde, nuertheless doubting of so great continuance of the former continent, haue opened a gulfe betwixt the West Indies and the extreame Northerne land: but such a one, that either is not to be trauelled for the causes in the first obiection alleged, or cleane shut vp from vs in Europe by Groenland: the South end whereof Moletius maketh firme land with America, the North part continent with Lappeland and Norway.

Ob. 3. Thirdly, the greatest fauourers of this voyage, can not deny but that if any such passage be, it lyeth subiect vnto ise and snow for the most part of the yere, whereas it standeth in the edge of the frostie Zone. Before the Sunne hath warmed the ayre, and dissolued the ise, eche one well knoweth that there can be no sailing: the ise once broken though the continuall abode the Sunne maketh a certaine season in those parts: how shall it be possible for so weake a vessell as a shippe is, to bolte out amid whole Ilands, as it were of ise continually beating on eche side, and at the mouth of that gulfe, tilting downe furiously from the North safely to passe, when whole mountaines of ise and snow shall be tombled downe vpon her.

Ob. 4. Well, grant the West Indies not to continue continent vnto the Pole, grant there be a passage betweene these two lands, let the gulfe lye neerer vs then commonly in cardes we finde it set, namely, betweene the 61 and 64 degrees North, as Gemma Frisius in his mappes and globes imagineth it, and so left by our country man Sebastian Cabot in his table which the Earle of Bedford hath at Theinies: Let the way be voyde of all difficulties, yet doeth it not follow that we haue free passage to Cathayo. For examples sake: You may trend all Norway, Finmarke, and Lappeland, and then bow Southward to Saint Nicholas in Moscouia: you may likewise in the Mediterranean Sea fetch Constantinople, and the mouth of Tanais: yet is there no

passage

passage by Sea through Moscouia into Pont Euxine, now called Mare Maggiore. Againe, in the aforesaid Mediterranean sea, we saile to Alexandria in Egypt, the Barbarians bring their pearle and spices from the Moluccaes by the red sea and Arabian goulph to Sues, scarsly three dayes iourney from the aforesayd hauen: yet haue we no way by sea from Alexandria to the Moluccaes, for that Isthmos or little straight of land betweene the two seas. In like manner although the Northerne passage be free at 61 degrees latitude, and the West Ocean beyond America, vsually called Mar del Zur, knowen to be open at 40 degrees eleuation, for the Island Giapan, yea three hundred leagus Northerly aboue Giapan: yet may there be lande to hinder the knowe passage that way by Sea, as in the examples aforesayde it falleth out, Asia and America there being ioyned together in one continent. Ne can this opinion seeme altogether friuolous vnto any one that diligently perviseth our Cosmographers doinges. Iosephus Moletius is of that minde, not onely in his plaine Hemispheres of the worlde, but also in his Sea card. The French Geographers in like maner, be of the same opinion, as by their mappe cut out in forme of a Hart you may perceiue: as though the West Indies were part of Asia. Which sentence well agreeth with that olde conclusion in the Schooles: Quidquid præter Africam & Europam est, Asia est. Whatsoeuer land doth neither appertaine vnto Afrike nor to Europe, is part of Asia.

Furthermore it were to small purpose to make so long, so painefull, so doubtfull a voyage by suche a newe found way, if in Cathayo you shoulde neither be suffered to lande for silkes and siluer, nor able to fetche the Molucca spices and pearle for piracie in those Seas. Of a late denying all Aliens to enter into China, and forbidding all the inhabiters vnder a great penaltie to let in any stranger into those countryes, shall you reade in the report of Galeotto Perera there imprisoned with other Portingalles: as also in the Giaponish letters, howe for that cause the worthie traueller Xauierus bargened with a Barbarian merchant for a great summe of pepper to be brought into Canton, a port in Cathayo. The great and daungerous piracie vsed in those Seas, no man can beignorant of, that listeth to reade the Giaponish and East Indian hystorie. Obj.5.

Finally, all this great labour would be lost, all these charges spent in vaine, if in the end our trauellers might not be able to returne againe, and bring safely home into their owne native country, that wealth and riches, they in forren regions with aduenture of goods, and danger of their lines, haue sought for. By the Northeast there is no way, the Southeast passage the Portingalles dor holde, as the Lords of those Seas. At the Southwest Magellanus experience hath partly taught vs, and partly we are perswaded by reason, how the Easterne currant striketh so furiously on that straight, and falleth with such force into that narrow goulph, that hardly any ship can returne that way into our West Ocean out of Mar del Zur. The which, if it be true, as truely it is, then we may say that the aforesaid Easterne currant or leuant course of waters continually following after the heauenly motions, looseth not altogether his force, but is doubled rather by an other currant from out the Northeast, in the passage betweene America and the North land, whither it is of necessitie carryed: hauing none other way to maintaine it selfe in circular motion, and consequently the force and fury thereof to be no lesse in the straight of Anian, where it striketh South into Mar del Zur, beyond America (if any such straight of Sea there be) then in Magellans free, both straights being of like breath: as in Belognine Zalterius table of new France, and in Don Diego Hermano de Toledo his card for nauigation in that region we do finde precisely set downe. Obj.6.

Neuertheless to approoue that there lyeth a way to Cathayo at the Northwest, from out of Europe, we haue experience, namely of three brethren that went that iourney, as Gemma Frisius recordeth, and left a name vnto that straight, whereby nowe it is called Fretum trium Fratrum. We dor reade againe of a Portingall that passed this straight, of whome Maister Furbisher speaketh, that was imprisoned therefore many yeeres in Lisbone, to verifie the olde Spanish prouerbe, I suffer for doing well. Likewise An. Vrdaneta a fryer of Mexico came out of Mar del Zur this way into Germanie: his Carde, for he was a great discourer, made by his owne experience and trauell in that voyage, hath beene seene by Gentlemen of good credit.

Now if the obseruation and remembrance of things breedeth experience, and of experience proceedeth arte, and the certaine knowledge we haue in all faculyes, as the best Philosophers that euer were do affirme: truely the voyage of these aforesaid trauellers that haue gone out of Europe into Mar del Zur, and returned thence at the North west, do most euidently conclude that way to be nauigable, and that passage free. So much the more we are to thinke, for that the Cic. 1. de orat. Arist. pri. Metaph.

first

first principle and chiefe ground in all Geographie, as Ptolome saith, is the history of trauell, that is, reports made by trauellers skilfull in Geometrie and Astronomie, of all such things in their iourney as to Geographie do belong. It onely then remaineth, that we now answere to those arguments that seemed to make against this former conclusion.

Lib. 1. Geog. cap. 2.

Sol. 1. The first obiection is of no force, that generall table of the world set foorth by Ortelius or Mercator, for it greatly skilleth not, being vnskilfully drawen for that point: as manifestly it may appeare vnto any one that conferreth the same with Gemma Frisius his vniuersall mappe, with his rounde quartered carde, with his globe, with Sebastian Cabota his table, and Ortelius his generall mappe alone, worthily preferred in this case before all Mercator and Ortelius other doinges: for that Cabota was not onely a skilfull Sea man, but a long traueller, and such a one as entred personally that straight, sent by king Henry the seuenth to make this aforesaid discouery, as in his owne discourse of nauigation you may reade in his carde drawen with his owne hand, that the mouth of the Northwesterne straight lyeth neere the 318 Meridian, betweene sixe one and sixtie foure degrees in the elevation, continuing the same breadth about tenne degrees West, where it openeth Southerly more and more, vntill it come vnder the tropike of Cancer, and so runneth into Mar del Zur, at the least eighteene degrees more in breadth there then it was where it first begaune: otherwise I coulde as well imagine this passage to be more vnlikely then the voyage to Moscouia, and more impossible then it for the farre situation and continuance thereof in the frostie clime: as now I can affirme it to be very possible and most likely in comparison thereof, for that it neither coasteth so farre North as the Moscouian passage doeth, neither is this straight so long as that, before it bowe downe Southerly towardes the Sunne againe.

The second argument concludeth nothing. Ptolome knew not what was about sixtene degrees South beyond the Equinoctiall line, he was ignorant of all passages Northward from the elevation of sixtie three degrees, he knew no Ocean sea beyond Asia, yet haue the Portingals trended the cape of Good hope at the South point of Afrike, and trauelled to Giapan an Iland in the East Ocean, betweene Asia and America: our merchants in the time of king Edward the first discouered the Moscouian passage farther North then Thule, and shewed Groenland not to be continent with Lappeland and Norway: the like our Northwesterne trauellers haue done, declaring by their nauigation that way, the ignorance of all Cosmographers that either doe ioyne Groenland with America, or continue the West Indies with that frostie region vnder the North pole. As for Virgil he sang according to the knowledge of men in his time, as an other Poet did of the hot Zone:

Ouid. 1. Met. Quarum quæ media est, non est habitabilis æstu. Imagining, as most men then did, Zonam torridam, the hot Zone, to be altogether vnhabited for heat, though presently we know many famous and worthy kingdomes and cities in that part of the earth, and the Iland of S. Thomas neere Aethiopia, & the wealthie Ilands for the which chiefly all these voyages are taken in hand, to be inhabited euen vnder the equinoctiall line.

Sol. 3. To answere the third obiection, besides Cabota and all other trauellers nauigations, the onely credit of M. Frobisher may suffice, who lately though all these Ilands of ise, and mount aines of snowe, passed that way, euen beyonde the guilfe that tumbleth downe from the North, and in some places though he drew one inch thicke ise, as he returning in August did, came home safely againe.

Sol. 4. The fourth argument is altogether frivolous and vaine, for neither is there any isthmos or straight of lande betweene America and Asia, nor can these two landes ioyntly be one continent.

Lib. Geog. The first part of my answere is manifestly allowed of by Homer, whom that excellent Geographer Strabo followeth, yeelding him in this faculty the price. The author of that booke likewise ὁδὸς κόσμου to Alexander, attributed vnto Aristotle, is of the same opinion that Homer and Strabo bee of, in two or three places. Dionisius in περιηγήσει hath this verse ὠκεανὸς ἀπείριτος ἀπείριτον ἔνθεν ἀνάγει. So doeth the Ocean Sea runne round about the world: speaking onely of Europe, Afrike, and Asia, as then Asia was trauelled and knowen. With these

Plotz. Doctours may you ioyne Pomponius Mela. capit. 2. lib. 1. Plinius lib. 2. capit. 67. and Pius 2. cap. 2. in his description of Asia. All the which writers doe no lesse confirme the whole Easterne side of Asia to be compassed about with the Sea, then Plato doeth affirme in Timæo, vnder the name Atlantis, the West Indies to be an Iland, as in a speciall discourse thereof R. Eden writeth, agreeable vnto the sentence of Proclus, Marsilius Ficinus, and others. Out of Plato it is gathered that America is an Iland. Homer, Strabo, Aristotle, Dionisius, Mela, Plinie, Pius 2. affirme the continent of Asia, Afrike, and Europe, to be

enuironed with the Ocean. I may therefore boldly say, (though later intelligences thereof had me none at all) that Asia and the West Indies be not tied together by any Isthmos or straight of lande, contrary to the opinion of some newe Cosmographers, by whome doubtfully this matter hath bene brought in controuersie. And thus much for the first part of my answere vnto the fourth obiection.

The second part, namely that America and Asia cannot be one continent, may thus be proued, ὅτι ἡ γῆ καὶ ὁ τόπος ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ τοιοῦτος ἐστὶν. The most Riuers take downe that way their course, where the earth is most hollowe and deepe, writeth Aristotle: and the Sea, (saith hee in the same place,) as it goeth further, so is it founde deeper. Into what gulfe doe the Moscouian riuers Onega, Duina, Ob, powre out their streames? Northward out of Moscouia into the sea. Which way doeth that sea strike? The South is maine lande, the Easterne coast waxeth more and more shalowe: from the North, either naturally, because that part of the earth is higher Aristot. 2. Met. cap. 1. or of necessitie, for that the forcible influence of some Northerne starres causeth the earth there to shake off the Sea, as some Philosophers doe thinke: or finally for the great store of waters engendred in that frostie and colde climate, that the bankes are not able to holde them, Alber. in 2. Meteo. cap. 6. From the North I say, continually falleth downe great abundance of water. So that this Northeasterne currant must at the length abruptly bowe towarde the South on the West side of Finmarke and Norway: or else strike downe South west aboue Groneland, or betwixt Groneland and Iseland, into the North west straight wee speake of, as of congruence it doeth, if you marke the situation of that Region, and by the report of M. Frobisher, experience teacheth vs. And M. Frobisher the further hee trauailed in the former passage, as hee told me, the deeper alwayes he found sea. Lay you now the summe hereof together. The riuers runne where the chanels are most hollowe, the sea in taking his course waxeth deeper, the sea waters fall continually from the North Southward, the Northeasterne currant striketh downe into the straight we speake of, and is there augmented with whole mountaines of yce and snowe, falling downe furiously out from the land vnder the North pole. Where store of water is, there is it a thing impossible to want sea, where sea not onely doeth not want, but waxeth deeper, there can be discouered no land. Finally, whence I pray you came the contrary tide, that M. Frobisher mette withal after that hee had sailed no small way in that passage, if there be any Isthmos or straight of land betwixt the aforesaid North westerne, gulfe and Mar del Zur, to ioyne Asia and America together? That conclusion frequented in scholes Quidquid præter, &c. was ment of the partes of the world then known, and so is it of right to be vnderstoode.

Lib. 1. Meteor. cap. 13.

Plin. lib. 2. cap. 67.

The fift obiection requireth for answere, wisedome and policie in the trauailer, to winne the Barbarians fauour by some good meanes: and so to arme and strengthen himselfe, that when he shall haue the repulse in one coast, he may safely trauaile to an other, commodiously taking his conuenient times, and discreetely making choise of them with whome hee will thoughly deale. To force a violent entrie, would for vs Englishmen be very hard, considering the strength and valour of so great a Nation, farre distant from vs, and the attempt thereof might bee most perillous vnto the doers, vnlesse their part were very good. Sol. 5.

Touching their lawes against strangers, you shall reade neuertheleese in the same relations of Galeotto Perera, that the Cathaian king is wont to graunt free accesse vnto all forreiners that come into his Countrey for Marchandise, and a place of libertie for them to remaine in: as the Moores had, vntil such time as they had brought the Loutea or Lieutenant of that coast to be a circumcised Saracene: wherefore some of them were put to the sword, the rest were scattered abroad: at Fuquien, a great citie in China, certaine of them are yet this day to be seene. As for the Giapans they bee most desirous to bee acquainted with strangers. The Portingals though they were finely handled there at the first, yet in the ende they founde great fauour at the Prince his handes, insomuch that the Loutea or president that misused them, was therefore put to death. The rude Indian Canoa halleth those seas, the Portingals, the Saracenes, and Moores trauaile continually vp and downe that reache from Giapan to China, from China to Malacca, from Malacca to the Moluccaes: and shall an Englishman, better appointed then any of them al (that I say no more of our mate) feare to saile in that Ocean? What seat at all doe want piracie? what Nauigation is there voyde of perill?

To the last argument. Our trauellers needs not to seeke their returne by the Northeast, neither shall they be constrained, except they list, either to attempt Magellane straight at the Southwest, or to be in danger of the Portingals for the Southeast: they may returne by the Northwest, the same way they doe goe sooth, as experience hath shewed. Sol. 6.

The reason alleadged for proofe of the contrary, may be disproued after this maner. And first,

it may be called in controuerſie, whether any currant continually be forced by the motion of Primum mobile, round about the world, or no: for learned men doe diuerſly handle that queſtion. The naturall courſe of all waters is downeward, wherefore of congruence they fall that way where they finde the earth moſt lowe and deepe: in reſpect whereof, it was erſt ſaide, the ſeas do ſtride from the Northren landes Southerly. Violently the ſeas are tolled and troubled diuers wayes with the windes, encreaſed and diminiſhed by the courſe of the Moone, hoiſed vp & downe through the ſundry operations of the Sunne and the ſtarres: finally, ſome be of opinion, that the ſeas bee caried in part violently about the world, after the daily motion of the higheſt moueable heauen, in like maner as the elements of aire and fire, with the reſt of the heauenly ſpheres are, from the Eaſt vnto the Weſt. And this they doe call their Eaſterne currant, or leuant ſtreame. Some ſuch currant may not be denied to be of great force in the hot Zone, for the neerenelle thereof vnto the centre of the Sunne, and bluſtring Eaſterne windes violently driuing the ſeas Weſtward: howbeit, in the temperate climes, the Sunne being further off, and the windes more diuers, blowing as much from the North, the Weſt and South, as from the Eaſt, this rule doeth not effectually withholde vs from trauailing Eaſtward, neither be wee kept euer backe by the aforeſayde Leuant windes and ſtreame. But in Magellans ſtreight wee are violently driuen backe Weſtward: Ergo, though the Northweſterne ſtraight or Anian frette ſhall wee not be able to returne Eaſtwarde? it followeth not. The firſt, for that the Northweſterne ſtraight hath more ſea roome at the leaſt by one hundreth Engliſh miles, then Magellans fret hath, the onely want whereof cauſeth all narrowe paſſages generally to be moſt violent. So would I ſay in Anian gulfe, if it were ſo narrowe as Don Diego and Zalterius haue painted it out, any returne that way to bee full of difficulties, in reſpect of ſuch ſtreightnelle thereof, not for the neerenelle of the Sunne, or Eaſterne windes, violently forcing that way any leuant ſtreame: But in that place there is more ſea rome by many degrees, if the Cardes of Cabota, and Gemma Friſius, and that which Tramezine imprinted, be true.

Lucan. lib. 1. Pharſal.

What the Eaſterne currant is.

And hitherto reaſon ſee I none at all, but that I may as well giue credite vnto their doings, as to any of the reſt. It muſt be Peregrinationis hiſtoria, that is, true reportes of skilful trauailers, as Ptolome writeth, that in ſuch controuerſies of Geographie muſt put vs out of doubt. Ortelius in his vniuerſall tables, in his particuler Mappes of the Weſt Indies, of all Aſia, of the Northren kingdomes, of the Eaſt Indies, Mercator in ſome of his globes, and generall Mappes of the world, Moletius in his vniuerſall table of the Globe diuided, in his ſea Carde, and particuler tables of the Eaſt Indies, Zalterius and Don Diego, with Fernando Bertely, and others, doe ſo much differ both from Gemma Friſius and Cabota, among themſelues, and in diuers places from themſelues, concerning the diuers ſituation and ſundry limits of America, that one may not ſo raſhly, as truely ſurmiſe, theſe men either to be ignorant in thoſe points touching the aforeſaide region, or that the Mappes they haue giuen out vnto the worlde, were collected onely by them, and neuer of their owne drawing.

Lib. 1. Geog. Cap. 2.

The firſt voyage of M. Martine Frobiſher, to the Northweſt *for the ſearch of the ſtraight or paſſage to China, written by* Chriſtopher Hall, and made in the yeere of our Lord 1576.

May.

VPon Munday the 13. of May the Barke Gabriel was launched at Redriffe, and vpon the 27. day following ſhe vailed from Redriffe to Ratcliffe.

June.

The 7. of June being Thurſday, the two barkes, viz. the Gabriel, the Michael, and our pinneſſe ſet ſaile at Ratcliffe, and bare downe to Detford, and there we ancred: the cauſe was, that our pinneſſe burſt her bouliſprit, and foremaſt aboard of a ſhippe that rode at Detford, elſe wee ment to haue paſt that day by the Court then at Greenewiche.

M. Matthew Kinderſlye was Captaine of the Michael.

The 8. day being Friday, about 12. of the clocke we wayed at Detford, and ſet ſaile all three of vs, and bare downe by the Court, where we ſhotte off our ordinance, and made the beſt ſhewe wee could: Her Maieſtie beholding the ſame commended it, and bade vs farewell with ſhaking her hand at vs out of the window we. Afterward ſhe ſent a Gentleman a boorde of vs, who declared that her Maieſtie had good liking of our doings, and thanked vs for it, and alſo willed our Captaine to come the next day to the Court to take his leaue of her.

The ſame day towards night M. Secretarie Woolly came aboorde of vs, and declared to the

compani

companie, that her Maieſtie had appointed him to giue them charge to be obedient, and diligent to their Captaine, and gouernours in all things, and wiſhed vs happie ſucceſſe.

The ninth day about noone the winde being Weſterly, hauing our ancres aboorde ready to ſet ſaile to depart, wee wanted ſome of our companie, and therefore ſtayed, and moared them againe.

Sunday the 10. of June, wee ſet ſaile from Blackewall at a South weſt, and by Weſt ſunne, the winde being at North Northweſt, and ſailed to Grauеſend, and ancred there at a Weſt northweſt ſunne, the winde being as before.

The 12. day being ouer againſt Grauеſend, by the caſtle or blockehouſe we obſerued the latitude, which was 51. degrees 33. min. And in that place the variation of the Compaſſe is 11. degrees and a halfe. This day we departed from Grauеſend, at a Weſt South weſt ſunne, the winde at North and by Eaſt a faire gale, and ſailed to the Weſt part of Tilberie hope, & ſo turned downe the Hope, and at a Weſt ſunne the winde came to the Eaſt Southeaſt, and wee ancred in 7. fathome being lowe water.

The 13. day wee ſet ſaile at a Northeaſt ſunne, the winde at Weſt Southweſt, and ſailed downe the Sweane and ouer the Spits, and at a South ſouthweſt ſunne, the winde came to the Eaſt Northeaſt, then we turned downe to the Naze and ſo ouer the Naze, & in the traling ground, and ſo came to ancre.

The 14. day we waped at 3. of the clocke afternoone, the winde at Southeaſt, and ſailed downe by Orfordneſſe, and there ancred being litle winde, and the floud in hand.

The 15. we waped at 2. a clocke in the morning being litle winde at North northweſt, and ſailed down to Alborough, and thwart of Alborough the wind came to the Northnortheaſt, we turned downe to Solde, and there ancred at 9. a clocke in 5. fathoms, and rode all the floud, and at a high water being a ſtiffe gale at North Northeaſt wee waped and put roome with Harwiche at a ſouthweſt ſunne, being 9. a clocke at night.

The 16. day wee waped and ſet ſaile at 3. of the clocke afternoone the winde at South ſouthweſt, & ſailed to Alborough. And at that preſent the winde came to the Northnorthweſt, and North a ſtiffe gale. We put roome with Orfordneſſe, and there rode all the night.

The 17. day we waped at Orfordneſſe at a Southeaſt, & by Eaſt ſunne, the winde at Northweſt and by North, a good gale, and put roome with Harwich, and ancred there at a South, and by Eaſt ſunne, and did obſerue the latitude of the place which was 51. deg. 54. min.

The 18. day we waped at Harwich, at a Northeaſt ſunne, the winde at Weſt ſouthweſt, and ſailed out of Harwich Hauſe. Their departure from Harwich the 18. of June.

The 19. day wee ſet ſaile from Yarmouth roade at a Southweſt ſunne, the winde at Eaſt Southeaſt, and ſailed betwixt the Cockle and the maine in three fathome, and a halfe at three quarters floud. From 7. to 10. a clocke at night the winde at South Southeaſt, the ſhippe ſailed ſouthweſt three leagues.

From tenne a clocke at night to 2. of the clocke in the morning the winde at South ſoutheaſt, a faire gale, the ſhippe ſailed Northweſt 4. leagues.

The 20. day in the morning from 2. of the clocke to ſixe a clocke, the winde at South Southeaſt a faire gale, the ſhippe ſailed Northweſt foure leagues. From 6. a clocke to tenne of the clocke in the forenoone, the winde at South Southeaſt a faire gale, the ſhippe ſailed Northweſt eight glaſſes, foure leagues. From tenne a clocke to two a clocke foure leagues more. And from two to eight ſixe leagues: from eight to midnight we ſailed North Northweſt fiue leagues, we ſounded hauing 30. fathome, and fine ſande with blackes among and one ſhell. From midnight to 4. a clocke in the morning, the ſhippe ſailed with all ſailes 6. leagues, and that watch out we ſounded hauing 37. fathomes, and fine gray ſand.

From 4. a clocke in the morning to 8. in the forenoone, being the 21. day, the winde at South Southeaſt, a faire gale, the ſhippe ſailed North Northweſt 8. glaſſes, 5. leagues, then Northnorthweſt 6. leagues, the maine yard a croſſe: we ſounded hauing 40. fathome, and fine ſand. And at that preſent we obſerued the latitude, which was 54. degr. 41. min.

The 22. day from 4. a clocke in the morning till 4. a clocke the next morning we ſailed with a faire Southeaſt winde, 38. leagues. This day from 4. to 8. of the clocke the winde as before the ſhippe ſailed North Northweſt ſixe leagues, ſounded 50. fathome, and fine ſand. From 8. a clocke till 12. a clocke at noone, the winde at South litle winde with fogge, the ſhip ſailed North Northweſt 3. leagues. I ſounded hauing 54. fathome, and fine ſand like ooze. The 23. day.

From 12. to foure of the clocke, the winde at South Southweſt litle winde, the ſhippe ſailed North 1. league with great fogge. At the end of y watch ſounded, hauing 55. fathome & ſmal ſand.

From 4. to 8. a clocke the winde at West Northwest, litle winde with fogge, the ship went North 2. leagues. Sounded hauing 50. fathome, and browne sande. From 8. to midnight, the winde at Northwest litle winde & fog, the ship went Northnortheast 3. leagues. Frō midnight to 4. a clock in the morning ẏ wind at Northwest, & by North, smooth waters, ẏ ship went Northeast 3. leagues.

The 24. day from 4. to 8. a clocke in the forenoone, the wind at North northwest, faire weather, the sea smoothe, the ship went West, 3. leagues and a halfe, and at the end of this watche sounded, hauing 60. fathome, and ozie sand, & litle white shels. From 8. to 12. a clocke at noone, the winde at Northwest and by North, a faire gale, the sea smooth, the ship went West 3. leagues and a halfe: sounded hauing 53. fathome, and streame ground with litle shels. From 12. to 4. in the afternoone the winde at North northwest, the ship went Northnortheast 4. leagues.

Fare Island. At 2. of the clocke after noone I had sight of Faire yle, being from vs 6. leagues North, and by East, and when I brought it Northwest and by North, it did rise at the Southermost ende with a litle hommocke, and swampe in the middes.

From 4. a clocke at afternoone to 8. a clocke litle wind, ẏ ship sailed Northnortheast 2. leagues, I sounded hauing 60. fathomes, & streamie ground with shels, 4. leagues from the land. From 8. a clocke to midnight calme, and without accompt. From midnight to 4. a clocke in the morning, the winde Northwest, and by North litle winde, the ship sailed Northnortheast 1. league.

The 25. day from 4. to 8. a clocke in the forenoone, the winde at Northwest, and by North a Shotland. fresh gale, I cast about to the Westward, the Southermost head of Shotland called Swinborne head Northnorthwest from me, and the land of Fare yle, West Southwest from me. I sailed directly to the Northhead of that said land sounding as I ranne in, hauing 60, 50. and 40. fathoms, and gray redde shels: and within halfe a mile of that Island, there are 36. fathoms, for I sailed in that Island to see whether there were any rodstreede for a Northwest winde, and I founde by my sounding hard rockes, and foule ground, and deepe water within two cables length of the shoare, 28. fathome, and so did not ancre but plied to and fro with my foresaile, and mizen till it was high water vnder the Island. The tide setteth there Northwest and Southeast: the floud setteth Southeast, and the ebb Northwest.

Fowlay Island. The 26. day I hauing the winde at South a faire gale, sayling from Fare yle to Swinborne head, I did obserue the latitude, being the Island of Fowlay West Northwest frō me 6. leagues, and Swinborne head East southeast from me, I found my eleuation to be 37. degr. and my declination 22. degr. 46. min. So that my latitude was 59. degr. 46. min. At that present being neere to Swinborne head, hauing a leake which did trouble vs, as also to take in fresh water, I plyed S. Tronions. roome with a sound, which is called S. Tronions, and there did ancre in seuen fathoms water, and faire sande. You haue comming in the sounds mouth in the entring 17. 15. 12. 10. 9. 8. and 7. fathoms, and the sound lyeth in North Northwest, and there roade to a West sunne, and stopped our leake, and hauing refreshed our selues with water, at a North Northwest sunne, I set saile from S. Tronions the winde at South Southeast, and turned out till wee were cleare of the sound, and so sailed West to go cleare of the Island of Fowlay. And running off toward Fowlay, I sounded, hauing fiftie fathome, and streamie ground, and also I sounded Fowlay, being North from me one league off that Island, hauing fiftie fathome at the South head, and streamie grounde, like broken otmell, and one shell being redde and white like mackerell.

Here they begin to saile Northwest. Latitude 59. deg. 59. min. The 27. day at a South sunne I did obserue the latitude, being the Islande of Fowlay, from mee two leagues East Northeast: I founde my selfe to be in latitude 59. degrees, 59. min. truely obserued, the winde at South Southwest: I sailed West, and by North.

From 12. to foure a clocke afternoone, the winde at South, a faire gale the shippe sailed West and by North 6. leagues, and at the ende of this watch, I sounded hauing 60. fathome, with litle stones and shels, the Island from vs 8. leagues East.

From 4. to 8. a clocke the winde at South a good gale, the shippe sailed West and by North 6. leagues.

From 8. a clocke to midnight, the winde at South Southeast, a good gale, the ship sailed west, and by North 7. leagues, I sounded hauing 65. fathoms. In hailing vp the lead the line brake, and so we lost our lead.

From midnight to 4. a clocke in the morning, the winde at Southeast a good gale, our maine saile ferled our maine topsaile, foresaile, and spreetsaile abroad, the ship sailed West and by North 8. leagues.

The 28. day from 4. to eight a clocke, the winde at Southeast a good gale, the shippe sailed West and by North eight leagues: from eight to 12. a clocke, the winde at East Southeast a fresh gale, the shippe sailed West and by North eight leagues.

From

From 12. to 4. a clocke at afternoone, the winde at East Southeast, a freſh gale, the ſhip ſailed East and by North 8. leagues.

From 4. to 8. a clocke at night, the winde at East Southeast a freſh gale, the ſhip ſailed West 8. leagues. I did ſound, and could not get ground at 70. fathome.

From 8. to midnight the winde at East Southeast a good gale, the ſhip ſailed West 8. leagues.

From midnight to 4. a clocke in the morning, the winde at East Northeast, a freſh gale the ſhip ſailed West 8. leagues and a halfe.

From 4. to 8. a clocke the 29. day the winde at East Northeast a good gale, the ſhippe ſailed West 8. leagues. 29.

From 8. to 12. a clocke at noone, the winde at East Northeast, the ſhip ſailed West 8. leagues.

From 12. to 4. a clocke in the afternoone the winde at East Northeast a faire gale, the ſhip ſailed West 6. leagues, and at the ende of this watche I did ſounde, and could get no ground at 100. fathome.

From 4. to 8. a clocke at night, we ſailed West 5. leagues.

From 8. to midnight 4. leagues.

From midnight to 4. a clocke in the morning 4. leagues West.

The 30. day from 4. to 8. a clocke in the forenoone, we ſailed West 3. leagues. 30.

From 8. to 12. a clocke 3. leagues.

From 12. to 4. a clocke at afternoone West 5. leagues. And at the ende of this watch I ſounded hauing 100. fathome and no ground.

From 4. to 8. a clocke 6. leagues.

From 8. to midnight, we ſailed West 8. leagues.

From midnight to 4. a clocke in the morning 8. leagues.

The firſt of July, from 4. to 8. a clocke, we ſailed West 4. glaſſes 4. leagues, and at that preſent we had ſo much winde that we ſpooned afore the ſea Southwest 2. leagues. July the firſt.

From 8. to 12. at noone West and by North 6. leagues.

From 12. to 4. a clocke 6. leagues.

From 4. to 8. foure miles.

From 8. to midnight we ſailed with 2. coarſes 4. leagues West.

From midnight to 4. a clocke in the morning 6. leagues.

The ſecond day from 4. to 8. a clocke, 6. leagues and a halfe West. 2.

From 8. to 12. West 7. leagues. From 12. to 4. at afternoone West 7. leagues more. And at the ende of this watch I ſounded hauing 100. fathome, and no ground.

From 4. to 8. at night 7. leagues. From 8. to midnight West, and by North 7. leagues.

From midnight to 4. a clocke in the morning weſt and by North 6. leagues.

The 3. day we found our Compaſſe to bee varied one point to the Weſtwards: this day from 4. to 8. a clocke we ſailed West, and by North 6. leagues. 3.

From 8. to 12. a clocke at noone West, and by North 4. leagues. At that preſent I found our Compaſſe to be varied 11. deg. and one 4. part to the Weſtwards which is one point. The Compaſſe harping Weſtwards one point.

From 12. to 4. a clocke at afternoone West and by North, one league.

From 4. to 8. West, and by North one league.

From 8. to midnight West, and by North 2. leagues.

From midnight to 4. a clocke in the morning West, and by North 3. leagues.

The 4. day from 4. to 8. the winde at Northweſt and by North 4. leagues. 4.

From 8. to 12. at noone West and by North 2. leagues. And at that preſent we ſent off our pinneſſe from the Gabriel to fiſh being calme.

From 12. to 4. a clocke at afternoone calme, and without accompt.

From 4. to 8. a clocke at night, West and by North 2. leagues.

From 8. to midnight West, and by North 7. leagues.

From midnight to 4. a clocke in the morning 9. leagues.

The 5. day from 4. to 8. a clocke West and by North 8. leagues. 5.

From 8. to 12. hauing raine and fogge, West and by North 6. leagues.

From 12. to 4. at afternoone West and by North 5. leagues. From 4. to 8. North Northweſt 6. leagues. From 8. to midnight North and by West 4. leagues.

From midnight to 6. a clocke in the morning wee hulled by the winde, and went West and by North 5. leagues.

The 6. day from 8. to 12. at noone, West and by North 5. leagues. 6.

From 12. to 4. a clocke West and by North 5. leagues.

7. From 8. at night to 8. in the morning 4. leagues.
From 12. to 4. a clocke at afternoone, North Northwest 4. leagues.
From 4. to 8. at night North Northwest 4. leagues.
From 8. to midnight, North two leagues.
From midnight to 8. a clocke calme, and without accompt.

8. The 8. day from 8. to 12. at noone, 3. leagues West.
From 12. to 4. a clocke West, 6. leagues.
From 4. to 8. eight leagues.
From 8. to midnight wee tooke in all our sailes, and spooned afore the sea because of our pinnesse, and at that present came fogge and mist, and so we lost sight of her. Wee sailed West fiue leagues.
From midnight to 4. a clocke, West southwest 4. leagues, with very much winde.

9. From 4. to 8. in the forenoone, the sea being mightily growne, 4. leagues.
From 8. to 12. Southwest afore the sea 4. leagues.
From 12. to 4. a clocke, West Southwest 5. leagues.

10. From that time to 8. a clocke the next day I layd the ship a hul, her way was south 4. leagues.
From 8. to 4. a clocke calme, and without accompt.
From 4. to 8. sixe leagues. From 8. to midnght 7. leagues.
From midnight to 4. a clocke, North 8. leagues.

11. From 4. to 8. a clocke, West and by south 5. leagues. From 8. to 12. a clocke at noone West, and by south 4. leagues, & at the southeast sunne we had sight of the land of Friseland bering from vs West northwest 16. leagues, and rising like pinacles of steeples, and all couered with snow. I found my selfe in 61. degr. of latitude. We sailed to the shoare & could finde no ground at 150. fathome, we hoised out our boate, & the Captaine with 4. men rowed to the shoare to get on land, but the land lying full of yce they could not get on land, and so they came aboorde againe: We had much adoe to get cleare of the yce by reason of the fogge. Yet from Thursday 8. a clocke in the morning to Friday at noone we sailed Southwest 20. leagues.

The Iland of Friseland.

12. The 13. day, a Northeast wind cleared vs of the thicke mist, & we sailed southwest 5. leagues.

13. The 14. day the vehemencie of the winde brake our foreyarde, and bore ouer boord our mysen masse, so we put our spreet saile yard, with the spreetsaile coarse to our foremast, and spooned afore the sea Southwest 15. leagues, till it was Sunday.

14. This day from 4. in ꝑ afternoone to 8. we sailed Southwest 2. leagues. From thence to Munday morning 4. of the clocke, calme, and without accompt.

15. The 16. day from 4. to 8. the winde at South southwest, we sailed 6. leagues and a half. From 8. to 12. 5. leagues and a halfe, and from 12. to 4. 6. leagues. At the ende of this watch, the head of our maine mast, maine topmaste, with the topsaile brake, and fel into the sea altogether.
From 4. to 8. we ranne somewhat a drift, because we layd vp the ropes of our maine mast, and set our maine saile againe. From 8. to midnight, Northwest and by West 3. leagues.

16. The 17. day from 4. to 8. 3. leagues. From 8. to 12. two leagues, from 12. to 4. at afternoone 3. leagues, from 4. to 8. a clocke 2. leagues, in our old course I prooued to sounde but founde no ground. From 8. to midnight, West and by South 2. leagues, from midnight to 4. a clocke in the morning 2. leagues.

Very deepe seas.

17. From 4. to 8. three leagues, from 8. to 12. at noone 3. leagues, and here at a Southeast sunne, I found the sunne to be eleuated 33. deg. And at a Southsoutheast 40. deg. So I obserued it till I founde it at the highest, and then it was eleuated 52. degr. I iudged the variation of the Compasse to be 2. points and a halfe to the Westward.

The variation of the needle, two points and a halfe to the West.

From 12. to 4. three leagues, from 4. to 8. three leagues, from 8. to midnight 2. leagues. From midnight to 4. a clocke one league, being litle winde.

18. From 4. to 8. North, 4. leagues, from 8. to 12. 8. leagues, from 12. to 4. foure leagues, from 4. to 8. 4. leagues, and at the end of this watch we cast about to the Eastwards. From 8. to midnight 3. leagues, from midnight to 4. a clocke East and by North 3. leagues.

19. From 4. to 8. 3. leagues, from 8. to 12. 3. leagues, from 12. to 4. 4. leagues. From 4. to 8. three leagues, from 8. to midnight 4. leagues. From midnight to 4. a clocke 4. leagues. From 8. to 12.

20. Northnortheast 4. leagues. From 12. to 4. 4. leagues, from 4. to 8. 4. leagues, from 8. to midnight foure leagues Northeast. From midnight to 4. a clocke, Northeast foure leagues, and at the ende of this watch we had sight of a great drift of yce, seeing a firme land, and we cast Westward to be cleare of it.

A great drift of yce.

21. From 4. to 8. southwest 3. leagues, from 8. to 12. 2. leagues, from 12. to 6. 3. leagues, from 6. at night

night to ſire the next morning, northeaſt fiue leagues.

From 6. to 12. weſt fiue leagues, from 12. to 4. northnorthweſt, 6. leagues: from 4. to 8. north northeaſt, 8. leagues: from 8. to midnight, 7. leagues: from midnight to 4. of the clocke, North northweſt, 7. leagues. 23

From 4. to 8, 7. leagues: from 8. to 12. 7. leagues more: from 12. to 4, 5. leagues: from 4. to 8, 5. leagues: from thence to midnight, 6. leagues: from midnight to 4. of the clocke in the morning, weſt, northweſt, 6. leagues. 24

From 4. to 8, 7. leagues: from 8. to 12. 7. leagues: from 12 to 4, 8. leagues: from 4. to 8, 8. leagues: from 8. to midnight, 4. leagues, weſt, northweſt, and with fogge: from midnight to 4. of the clocke, 4. leagues. 25

This day was litle wind, and we tried with both our courſes: we had ſight of a land of yce: the latitude was 62. degrees, two minuts. We ran from 12. to 4, 4. miles. 26 The latitude of 62. de. 2. mi.

From 4. to 8, 4. miles: from 8. to 4. calme, and fogge: from thence to 4. of the clocke in the morning calme, and foggie alſo. 27

From 4. to 8, 4. leagues: from 8. to 12, 3. leagues: from 12. to 4. northweſt and by weſt, ſixe leagues, but very foggie: from thence to 8. of the clocke in the morning, litle wind: but at the cleering vp of the fogge, we had ſight of lande, which I ſuppoſed to be Labrador, with great ſtore of yce about the land: I ran in towards it, and ſounded, but could get no ground, at 100. fathom, and the yce being ſo thicke, I could not get to the ſhoare, and ſo lay off, and came cleare of the yce. 28 Sight of land ſuppoſed to haue bene Labrador.

Vpon Sunday, we came within a mile of the ſhoare, and ſought a harborowe: all the ſound was full of yce, and our boate rowing a ſhoare, could get no ground, at 100. fathom, within a Cables length of the ſhoare: then we ſailed Eaſt northeaſt along the ſhoare, for ſo the lande lieth, and the currant is there great, ſetting northeaſt, and ſouthweſt: and if we could haue gotten anker ground, we would haue ſeene with what force it had runne, but I iudge a ſhip may driue a league and a halfe, in one howre, with that tide.

This day, at 4. of the clocke in the morning, being faire and cleere, we had ſight of a head land, as we iudged, bearing from vs north, and by Eaſt, and we ſailed Northeaſt, and by North to that lande, and when wee came thither, wee could not gette to the lande for yce: for the yce ſtretched along the coaſte, ſo that we could not come to the land, by fiue leagues. 31

Wenſday the firſt of Auguſt, it calmed, and in the after noone, I cauſed my boate to be hoyſed out, being hard by a great Iſland of yce, and I and foure men rowed to that yce, and ſounded within two cables length of it, and had ſtreteene fathome, and litle ſtones, and after that ſounded againe within a Minion ſhotte, and had ground, at an hundreth fathome, and faire ſand: we ſounded the next day a quarter of a myle from it, and had ſixtie fathome rough grounde, and at that yeſene being aboord, that great Iſland of yce fell one part from another, making a noyce as if a great cliffe had fallen into the Sea. And at foure of the clocke, I ſounded againe, and had 90. fathome, and ſmall blacke ſtones, and little white ſtones, like pearles. The tide here did ſet to the ſhoare. Auguſt. 1 2

We ſailed this day ſouth ſoutheaſt of ward, and layd it a trie. 3

The next day was calme and thicke, with a great ſea. 4

The next day we ſailed South, and by Eaſt, two leagues, and at eight of the clocke in the foore noone we caſt about to the Eaſtwards. 5

The firſt day it cleered, and we ranne northweſt into the ſhoare, to get a harborough, and being towards night, we notwithſtanding kept at ſea. 6

The ſeuenth day we plied roome with the ſhoare, but being neere it, it waxed thicke, and we bare off againe. 7

The eight day we bended in towards the ſhoare againe. 8

The ninth day we ſounded, but could gette no grounde at 130. fathome: the weather was calme. 9

The tenth I tooke foure men, and my ſelfe, and rowed to ſhoare to an Iſland one league from the maine, and there the floode ſetteth Southweſt alongeſt the ſhoare, and it floweth as neere as I could iudge ſo too, I could not carry to proue it, becauſe the ſhippe was a great way from me, and I feared a fogge: but when I came a ſhoare, it was a lowe water. I went to the toppe of the Iſland, and before I came backe, it was hiey a foote water, and ſo without carrying, I came aboord. 10

The 11. we found our latitude to be 63. degrees, and eight minutes, and this day entred the ſtraight. 11

The 12. we ſet ſaile towardes an Iſland, called the Gabriels Iſland, which was 10. leagues 12

then

then from vs.

13 We espied a sownd, and bare with it, and came to a sandie Baye, where we came to an anker, the lande bearing East southeast of vs, and there we rode all night in 8. fathome water. It sowerh there at a Southeast Moone. We called it Priors sownd, being from the Gabriels Island, tenne leagues.

14 The 14. we waied, and ranne into another sownde, where we ankered in 8. fathome water, faire sand, and blacke oaze, and there calked our ship, being weake from the wales vpward, and tooke in fresh water.

15 The 15. day we waied, and sailed to Priors Baye, being a mile from thence.

16 The 16. day was calme, and wee rode still, without yce, but presently within two howres it was frozen round about the shippe, a quarter of an ynche thicke, and that daye very faire, and calme.

17 The 17. day we waied, and came to Thomas Williams Island.

18 The 18. day, we sailed north northwest, and ankered againe in 23. fathome, and tought oaze, vnder Burchers Island, which is from the former Island, ten leagues.

19 The 19. day in the morning, being calme, and no winde, the Captaine and I, tooke our boate, with eight men in her, to rowe vs a shoare, to see if there were there any people, or no, and going to the toppe of the Island, we had sight of seuen boates, which came rowing from the East side, toward that Island: whereupon we returned aboord againe: at length we sent our boate with fiue men in her, to see whither they rowed, and so with a white cloth brought one of their boates with their men along the shoare, rowing after our boate, till such time as they sawe our shippe, and then they rowed a shoare: then I went on shoare my selfe, and gaue euery of them a threaden point, and brought one of them aboord of me, where he did eate and drinke, and then carried him on shoare againe. Whereuppon all the rest came aboord with their boates, being nineteene persons, and they spake, but we vnderstoode them not. They be like to Tartars, with long blacke haire, broad faces, and flatte noses, and tawnie in colour, wearing Seale skinnes, and so doe the women, not differing in the fashion, but the women are marked in the face with blewe streekes downe the cheekes, and round about the eies. Their boates are made all of Seale skins, with a keele of wood within the skinne: the proportion of them is like a Spanish shallop, saue only they be flat in the bottome, and sharpe at both endes.

Sight of the Countrey people.

The description of the people.

20 The twentieth day, wee waied, and went to the East side of this Island, and I and the Captaine, with foure men more went on shoare, and there wee sawe their houses, and the people espying vs, came rowing towardes our boate: whereuppon wee plied to our boate: and wee being in our boate, and they ashoare, they called to vs, and wee rowed to them, and one of their company came into our boate, and wee carried him aboord, and gaue him a Bell, and a knife: so the Captaine and I willed fiue of our men to set him a shoare at a rocke, and not among the company, which they came from, but their wilfulnes was such, that they would goe to them, and so were taken themselues, and our boate lost.

5. of our men taken by the people.

21 The next daye in the morning, wee stoode in neere the shoare, and shotte of a fauconet, and sownded our trumpet, but wee coulde heare nothing of our men: this sownde wee called the fiue mens sownde, and plyed out of it, but ankered againe in thirtie fathome, and oaze: and riding there all night, in the morning, the snowe laye a foote thicke vppon our hatches.

22 The two and twentieth daye in the morning, we waied, and went againe to the place where wee lost our men, and our boate. Wee had sight of fourescore boates, and some came neere to vs, but we coulde learne nothing of our men: among the rest, we intised one in a boate to our shippes side, with a Bell, and in giuing him the Bell, wee tooke him, and his Boate, and so kept him, and so rowed downe to Thomas Williams Island, and there ankered all night.

26 The 26. day we waied, to come homeward, and by 12. of the clocke at noone, we were thwart of Trumpets Island.

27 The next day, we came thwart of Gabriels Island, and at 8. of the clocke at night, we had the Cape Labradore West from vs, ten leagues.

28 The 28. day we went our course Southeast.

29 We sailed Southeast, and by East, 22. leagues.

September. The first day of September in the morning, we had sight of the land of Friseland, being eight
1 leagues from vs, but we could not come neerer it, for the monstrous yce that lay about it. From this day, till the sixth of this Moneth, wee ranne along Island, and had the South

past

part of it at eight of the clocke, Eaſt from vs ten leagues.

The ſeuenth day of this moneth, we had a very terrible ſtorme, by force whereof, one of our men was blowen into the ſea out of our waſte, but he caught holde of the foreſaile ſheate, and there held, till the Captaine pluckt him againe into the ſhip. 7

The 25. day of this moneth, we had ſight of the Iſland of Orknye, which was then Eaſt from vs. 25

The firſt day of October, we had ſight of the Sheld, and ſo ſailed along the coaſt, and ankered at Yarmouth, and the next day we came into Harwiche. October. 1 The Sheld.

The language of the people of *Meta incognita.*

Argotteyt, a hand.
Cangnawe, a noſe.
Arered, an eye.
Keiotot, a tooth.
Mutchatet, the head.
Chewat, an eare.
Comagaye, a legge.
Atoniagay, a foote.
Callagay, a paire of breeches.
Attegay, a coate.
Polleuetagay, a knife.
Accaskay, a ſhippe.
Coblone, a thumbe.
Teckkere, the foremoſt finger.
Ketteckle, the middle finger.
Mekellacane, the fourth finger.
Yackettone, the little finger.

The ſecond voyage of Maſter Martin Frobiſher, made to the *Weſt, and Northweſt Regions, in the yeere, 1577. With a deſ-* cription of the Countrey, and people: Written by Dioniſe Settle.



IN Whitſunday, being the ſixe and twentieth of May, in the yeere of our Lorde God, 1577. Captaine Frobiſher departed from Blacke Wall, with one of the Queenes Maieſties ſhippes, called The Aide, of nine ſcore tunne, or thereabouts: and two other little Barkes likewiſe, the one called The Gabriel, whereof Maiſter Fenton, a Gentleman of my Lord of Warwikes, was Captaine: and the other, The Michael, whereof Maiſter Yorke, a Gentleman of my Lord Admirals was Captaine, accompanied with ſeuen ſcore Gentlemen, ſouldiers, and ſailers, well furniſhed with victuals, and other proviſion neceſſarie for one halfe yeere, on this his ſecond voiage, for the further diſcouering of the paſſage to Cathay, and other countries thereunto adiacent, by weſt and northweſt nauigations: which paſſage or way, is ſuppoſed to be on the north & northweſt parts of America: and the ſaide America to be an Iſland enuironed with the Sea, where through our Merchants might haue courſe and recourſe with their merchandize, from theſe our Vttermoſt parts of Europe, to thoſe Orientall coaſtes of Aſia, in much ſhorter time, and with greater benefite then any others, to their no little commoditie and profite that doe or ſhall trafficke the ſame. Our ſaid Captaine and General of this preſent voyage and companie, hauing the yeere before, with two little pinneſſes, to his great danger, and no ſmall commendations, giuen a worthy attempt towards the performance thereof, is alſo yeelt (when occaſion ſhall be miniſtred, to the benefite of his Prince, and native Countrey) to aduenture himſelfe further therein. As for this ſecond voyage, it ſeemeth ſufficient, that he hath better explored and ſearched the commodities of thoſe people, and Countreis, with ſufficient commoditie vnto the aduenturers, which in his firſt voyage the yeere before, he had found out.

Vpon which conſiderations, the day and yeere before expreſſed, we departed from Blacke Wall to Harwiche, where making an accompliſhment of things neceſſarie, the laſt of May we hoiſed vp ſailes, and with a merrie winde the 7. of June, we arriued at the Iſlands, called Orchades, or vulgarly Orkney, being in number 30. ſubiect and adiacent to Scotland, where we made proviſion The Iſlands Orchades, or Orkney.

of

of fresh water: in the doing whereof, our General licenced the Gentlemen and souldiers, for their recreation, to goe on shoare. At our landing, the people fled from their poore cottages, with shrikes and alarms, to warne their neighbours of enemies, but by gentle perswasions we reclaimed them to their houses. It seemeth they are often frighted with Pirats, or some other enemies, that moue them to such sudden feare. Their houses are very simply builded with Pibble stone, without any chimneis, the fire being made in the middest thereof. The good man, wife, children, and other of their familie, eate and sleepe on the one side of the house, and their cattell on the other, very beastly and rudely, in respect of ciuilitie. They are destitute of wood, their fire is turffes and Cow shardes. They haue corne, bigge, and oates, with which they pay their Kings rent, to the maintenance of his house. They take great quantitie of fishe, which they drie in the winde, and Sunne. They dresse their meate very filthily, and eate it without salt. Their apparell is after the rudest sort of Scotland. Their money is all base. Their Church and religion is reformed according to the Scots. The fisher men of England, can better declare the disposition of those people then I: wherefore I remit other their vsages to their reports, as yeerely repairers thither, in their course to & from Island for fishe.

The Orchadians vpon final occasion flee their home.

No wood in Orkney.

Fisher men of England haue daily traffike to Orkney.

We departed herehence, the 8. of June, and followed our course betweene West and Northwest, vntill the 4. of Julie: all which time, we had no night, but that easily, and without any impediment, wee had when wee were so disposed, the fruition of our bookes, and other pleasures to passe away the time: a thing of no small moment, to such as wander in vnknowen seas, and long nauigations, especially, when both the windes and raging surges, do passe their common and wonted course. This benefite endureth in those parts not 6. weekes, whilest the sunne is neere the Tropike of Cancer: but where the Pole is raised to 70. or 80. degrees, it continueth the longer.

In June and July no night in those west and northwest regions.

All along these seas, after we were sixe daies sailing from Orkney, we met floting in the Sea, great Firre trees, which as we iudged, were with the furie of great floods rooted vp, and so driuen into the sea. Island hath almost no other wood nor fuell, but such as they take vp vpon their coastes. It seemeth, that these trees are driuen from some part of the New found lande, with the current that setteth from the West to the East.

The 4. of July, we came within the making of Friseland. From this shoare 10. or 12. leagues, we met great Islands of yce, of halfe a mile, some more, some lesse in compasse, shewing aboue the sea, 30. or 40. fathoms, and as we supposed, fast on ground, where, with our lead we could scarce sound the bottome, for depth.

Here, in place of odoriferous and fragrant smels of sweete gums, & pleasant notes of musicall birds, which other Countreis in more temperate Zone do yeeld, we tasted the most boisterous Boreal blasts, mixt with snow & haile, in the moneths of June & July, nothing inferior to our vnctemperate winter: a sudden alteration, and especially in a place or Paralele, where the Pole is not eleuate aboue 61. degrees: at which height other Countreis more to the North, yea, vnto 70. degrees, shew themselues more temperate then this doth.

Yce snow, and haile in June and July.

All along this coast yce lieth, as a continual bulwarke, & so defendeth the Countrey, that those which would land there, incur great danger. Our General 3. daies together, attempted with the ship boate to haue gone on shoare, which, for that without great danger he could not accomplish, he deferred it vntil a more conuenient time. All along the coast lie very high mountaines, couered with snow, except in such places, where, though the steepenes of the mountaines, of force it must needes fall. Foure daies coasting along this land, we found no signe of habitation. Little birds, which we iudged to haue lost the shoare, by reason of thicke fogges, which that Countrey is much subiect vnto, came flying to our ships, which causeth vs to suppose, that the Countrey is both more tollerable, and also habitable within, then the outward shoare maketh shewe or signification.

Friseland subiect to fogge.

From hence we departed the eight of Julie: and the 16. of the same, wee came with the making of land, which land our Generall, the yeere before, had named The Queenes foreland, being an Island, as we iudge, lying neere the supposed continent with America: and on the other side, opposite to the same, one other Island, called Halles Isle, after the name of the Master of the ship, neere adiacent to the firme land, supposed continent with Asia. Betweene the which two Islands there is a large entrance, or streight, called Frobishers streight, after the name of our Generall, the first finder thereof. This said streight, is supposed to haue passage into the sea of Sur, which I leaue vnknowen as yet.

Frobishers streight.

It seemeth that either here, or not farre hence, the sea should haue more large entrance, then in other parts, within the frozen or vntemperate Zone: and that some contrary tide, either from the East or West, with maine force casteth out that great quantitie of yce, which commeth flowing from this coast, euen vnto Friseland, causing that Countrey to seeme more vntemperate then o-

ther

thers, much more northerly then the ſame.

I cannot iudge, that any temperature vnder the Pole, being the time of the Sunnes Northern declination, halfe a yeere together, and one whole day, (conſidering, that the Sunnes elcuation ſurmounteth not 23. degrees, and 30. minuts.) can haue power to diſſolue ſuch monſtrous and huge yce, comparable to great mountaines, except by ſome other force, as by ſwift currents and tides, with the helpe of the ſaid day of halfe a yeere. Iſlands of yce comparable to mountaines.

Before we came within the making of theſe lands, we taſted cold ſtormes, in ſo much that it ſeemed, we had changed ſummer with winter, if the length of the dayes had not remooued vs from that opinion.

At our firſt comming, the ſtreights ſeemed to be ſhut vp with a long mure of yce, which gaue no little cauſe of diſcomfort vnto vs all: but our Generall, (to whoſe diligence imminent dangers, and difficult attempts ſeemed nothing, in reſpect of his willing minde, for the commoditie of his Prince, and Countrey,) with two little Pinneſſes prepared of purpoſe, paſſed twiſe thorough them to the Eaſt ſhoare, and the Iſlands thereunto adiacent: and the ſhip, with the two Barkes, lay off and on ſomething further into the ſea, from the danger of the yce. Captain Frobiſher his ſpeciall care and diligence for the benefite of his Prince and Countrey.

Whileſt he was ſearching the Countrey neere the ſhoare, ſome of the people of the Countrey ſhewed themſelues, leaping and dauncing, with ſtrange ſhrikes, and cries, which gaue no little admiration to our men. Our Generall deſirous to allure them vnto him by faire meanes, cauſed knives, and other things, to be proffered vnto them, which they would not take at our handes: but being laid on the ground, and the partie going away, they came and tooke vp, leauing ſome thing of theirs to counteruaile the ſame. At the length, two of them leauing their weapons, came downe to our Generall and Maſter, who did the like to them, commanding the reſt of his companie to ſtay, and went vnto them: who, after certaine dumbe ſignes, and mute congratulations, began to lay handes vpon them, but they deliuerly eſcaped, and ranne to their bowes and arrowes, and came fiercely vpon them, (not reſpecting the reſt of our companie, which were ready for their defence) but with their arrowes hurt diuers of them: we tooke the one, and the other eſcaped. The order of the people appearing on ſhoare. Fierce and bold people. One taken.

Whileſt our Generall was buſied in ſearching the Countrey, and thoſe Iſlands adiacent on the Eaſt ſhoare, the ſhip and barkes hauing great care, not to put farre into the ſea from him, for that he had ſmal ſtore of victuals, were forced to abide in a cruell tempeſt, chancing in the night, amongſt and in the thickeſt of the yce, which was ſo monſtrous, that euen the leaſt of a thouſand had bene of force ſufficient, to haue ſhiuered our ſhip and barkes into ſmal portions, if God (who in all neceſſities, hath care vpon the infirmitie of man) had not prouided for this our extremitie a ſufficient remedie, though the light of the night, whereby wee might well diſcerne to flee from ſuch imminent dangers, which we auoided with 14. Bourdes in one watch the ſpace of 4. howres. If we had not incurred this danger amongſt theſe monſtrous Iſlands of yce, we ſhould haue loſt our Generall and Maſter, and the moſt of our beſt ſailers, which were on the ſhoare deſtitute of victuals: but by the nature of our Maſter Gunner, Maſter Iackman, and Andrew Dier, the Maſters Mates, men expert both in nauigation, and other good qualities, wee were all content to incurre the dangers afore rehearſed, before we would, with our owne ſafetie, runne into the ſeas, to the deſtruction of our ſaid Generall, and his companie. Richard Core, Maſter Gunner. Maſter Iackman. Andrew Dier.

The day following, being the 19. of Julie, our Captaine returned to the ſhippe, with good newes of great riches, which ſhewed it ſelfe in the bowels of thoſe barren mountaines, wherwith we were all ſatiſfied. A ſudden mutation. The one part of vs being almoſt ſwallowed vp the night before, with cruell Neptunes force, and the reſt on ſhoare, taking thought for their greedie paunches, how to find the way to New found land: at one moment we were all wrapt with ioy, forgetting both where we were, and what we had ſuffered. Behold the glorie of man, to night contemning riches, and rather looking for death then otherwiſe: and to morrow we deuiſing howe to ſatiſfie his greedie appetite with golde. New found land.

Within foure dates after we had bene at the entrance of the ſtreights, the northweſt and Weſt winds diſperſed the yce into the ſea, and made vs a large entrance into the ſtreights, that without any impediment, on the 19. of Julie, we entred them, and the 20. thereof, our General and Maſter, with great diligence, ſought out and ſounded the Weſt ſhoare, and founde out a faire Harborough for the ſhippe and barkes to ride in, and named it after our Maſters name, Iackmans ſound, and brought the ſhip, barkes, and all their companie to ſafe anker, except one man, which died by Gods viſitation. Iackmans ſound.

At our firſt arriuall, after the ſhip rode at anker, our Generall, with ſuch companie as could well be ſpared from the ſhippes, in marching order entred the lande, hauing ſpeciall care by exhortation, that at our entrance thereinto, we ſhould all with one voice, kneeling vpon our knees, chiefly

thanke

thanke God for our safe arriuall: secondly, beseech him, that it would please his diuine Maiestie, long to continue our Queene, for whome he, and all the rest of our companie, in this order tooke possession of the Countrey: and thirdly, that by our Christian studis and endeuour, those barbarous people trained vp in Paganrie, and infidelitie, might be reduced to the knowledge of true religion, and to the hope of saluation in Christ our Redeemer. With other woordes very apt to signifie his willing mind, and affection towards his Prince, and Countrey: whereby all suspicion of an vndutifull subiect, may credibly be iudged to be vtterly exempted from his mind. All the rest of the Gentlemen, and other, deserue worthily herein, their due praise and commendation.

Possession taken.

These things in this order accomplished, our Generall commanded all the companie to be obedient in things needefull for our owne safegard, to Master Fenton, Master Yorke, and Master Beast, his Lieutenant, while he was occupied in other necessary affaires, concerning our comming thither.

After this order we marched through the Countrey, with Ensigne displaied, so farre as was thought needefull, and now and then heaped vp stones on high mountaines, and other places, in token of possession, as likewise to signifie vnto such as hereafter may chance to arriue there, that possession is taken in the behalfe of some other Prince, by those which first found out the country.

Yce needfull to be regarded of seafaring men.

Who so maketh nauigations to these Countreis, hath not onely extreame windes, and furious seas, to encounter withall, but also many monstrous and great Islands of yce: a thing both rare, wonderfull, and greatly to be regarded.

We were forced sundry times, while the ship did ride here at anker, to haue continual watch, with boates & men ready with hallers, to knit fast vnto such yce, which with the ebbe & flood were tossed to & fro in the harborough, & with force of oares to hale them away, for endangering ỳ ship.

Our Generall, certaine daies searched this supposed continent with America, and not finding the commoditie to answere his expectation, after hee had made triall thereof, hee departed thence with two little barkes, and men sufficient, to the East shoare, being the supposed continent of Asia, and left the ship with most of the Gentlemen, souldiers, and sailers, vntill such time as he, either thought good to send, or come for them.

Stones glister with sparckles like gold.

The stones of this supposed continent with America, be altogether sparkled, and glister in the Sunne like gold: so likewise doth the sand in the bright water, yet they verifie the old Prouerbe:

A common prouerbe.

All is not golde that glistereth.

On this West shoare we found a dead fishe floating, which had in his nose a horne streight and torquet, of length two yardes lacking two inches, being broken in the top, where we might perceiue it hollowe, into which some of our sailers putting Spiders, they presently died. I saw not the triall hereof, but it was reported vnto me of a trueth: by the vertue whereof, we supposed it to be the sea Unicorne.

The sea Unicorne.

After our Generall had found out good harborough for the ship and barkes to anker in, and also such store of gold ore, as he thought himselfe satisfied withall, he returned to the Michael, whereof Master Yorke aforesaid, was Captaine, accompanied with our Master, and his Mate: who coasting along the West shoare, not farre from whence the ship rode, they perceiued a faire harborough, and willing to sound the same, at the entrance therof they espied two tents of Seale skins, vnto which the Captaine, our said Master, and other companie resorted. At the sight of our men, the people fled into the mountaines: neuertheless, they went to their tents, where leauing certaine trifles of ours, as glasses, bels, knives, & such like things, they departed, not taking any thing of theirs, except one dogge. They did in like manner leaue behind them, a letter, pen, incke, and paper, whereby our men, whome the Captaine lost the yeere before, and in that peoples custodie, might (if any of them were aliue) be aduertised of our presence, and being there.

The people fled at the sight of our men.

On the same day, after consultation had, all the Gentlemen, and others like wise, that could be spared from the ship, vnder the conduct and leading of Master Philpot, (vnto whome, in our Generall his absence, and his Lieutenant Master Beast, all the rest were obedient) went a shoare, determining to see, if by faire meanes we could either allure them to familiaritie, or otherwise take some of them, & so attein to some knowledge of those men, whom our General lost ỳ yeere before.

Master Philpot.
Master Beast.

At our comming backe againe to the place where their tents were before, they had remoued their tents further into the land vpon Bowne, where they might, if they were driuen from the land, flee with their boates into the sea. Wee parting our selues into two companies, and compassing a mountaine, came suddenly vpon them by land, who espying vs, without any tarying, fled to their boates, leauing the most part of their oares behind them for haste, and rowed downe the bay, where our two Pinnesses met them, and droue them to shore: but, if they had had all their oares, so swift are they in rowing, it had bene long time to haue chased them.

When

When they were landed, they fiercely assaulted our men with their bowes and arrowes, who wounded three of them with our arrowes: and perceiuing themselues thus hurt, they desperatly leapt off the Rocks into the Sea, and drowned themselues: which if they had not done, but had submitted themselues, or if by any meanes we could haue taken aliue (being their enemies as they iudged) we would both haue saued them, and also haue sought remedie to cure their wounds receiued at our hands. But they, altogether voyde of humanitie, and ignorant what mercy meaneth, in extremities looke for no other then death: and perceiuing they should fal into our hands, thus miserably by drowning rather desired death, then otherwise to bee saued by vs: the rest, perceiuing their fellowes in this distresse, fled into the high mountaines. Two women, not being so apt to escape as the men were, the one for her age, and the other being incombred with a yong childe, we tooke. The olde wretch, whom diuers of our Saylers supposed to be either a diuell, or a witch, had her buskins plucked off, to see if she were clouen footed, and for her ougly hewe and deformitie, we let her goe: the yong woman and the childe, we brought away. We named the place where they were slaine, Bloudie point: and the Bay or Harborough, Yorkes sound, after the name of one of the Captaines of the two Barkes.

A fierce assault of a few.

Hauing this knowledge both of their fiercenesse and cruelty, and perceiuing that faire meanes, as yet, is not able to allure them to familiaritie, we disposed our selues, contrary to our inclination, something to be cruel, returned to their tents, and made a spoyle of the same: where we found an olde shirt, a doublet, a girdle, and also shooes of our men, whom we lost the peere before: on nothing else vnto them belonging could we set our eyes.

Faire meanes not able to allure them to familiaritie.

Their riches are not gold, siluer or precious Drapery, but their said tents and boates, made of the skins of red Deare and Seale skins: also, dogges like vnto woolues, but for the most part black, with other trifles, more to be wondred at for their strangenesse, then for any other commoditie needefull for our vse.

Boates of skinnes.

Thus returning to our ship the 3. of August, we departed from the west shoare, supposed firme with America, after we had anchored there 13. dayes: and so, the 4. thereof, we came to our Generall on the East shoare, and anchored in a faire Harborough named Anne Warrwickes sound, vnto which is annexed an Iland both named after the Countesse of Warwicke, Anne Warrwicks sound and Isle.

Our departure from the west shoare.

In this Isle, our Generall thought good, for this voyage, to fraight both the ships and barkes, with such Stone or gold mine all, as he iudged to counteruaile the charges of his first, & this his seconde Nauigation to these countries, with sufficient interest to the venturers, whereby they might both be satisfied for this time, and also in time to come (if it please God and our Prince) to expect a much more benefite, out of the bowels of those Septentrionall Paralels, which long time hath concealed it selfe, till at this present, through the wonderfull diligence, and great danger of our Generall and others, God is contented with the reuealing thereof. It riseth so abundantly, that from the beginning of August, to the 22. thereof (euery man following the diligence of our General) we raysed aboue ground 200. tunne, which wee iudged a reasonable fraight for the ship and two barkes, in the sayd Anne Warrwickes Isle.

In the meane time of our abode here, some of the countrie people, came to shewe themselues vnto vs, sundrie times on the maine shoare, neere adiacent to the said Isle. Our General, desirous to haue some newes of his men, whom he lost the peere before, with some company with him repaired with the ship boat, to common, or signe with them for familiaritie, whereunto he is persuaded to bring them. They, at the first shewe, made tokens, that three of his fiue men were aliue, and desired penne, yncke, and paper, and that within three or foure daies, they would returne, and (as we iudged) bring those of our men, which were liuing, with them.

The countrie people shewe themselues vnto vs.

They also made signes or tokens of their King, whom they called Cacough, & how he was caried on mens shoulders, & a man farre surmounting any of our company, in bignesse & stature.

With these tokens and signes of writing, penne, ynke, and paper was deliuered them, which they would not take at our hands, but being layd vpon the shoare, and the partie gone away, they tooke vp: which likewise they do, when they desire any thing for change of theirs, laying for that which is left, so much as they thinke wil counteruaile the same, and not comming neare together. It seemeth they haue bene vsed to this trade or traffique, with some other people adioyning, or not farre distant from their Countrie.

Their vsage in traffique or exchange.

After 4. daies, some of them shewed themselues vpon the firme land, but not where they were before. Our General very glad thereof, supposing to heare of our men, went from the Iland, with the boate, and sufficient company with him. They seemed very glad, and allured him, about a certaine point of the land: behind which they might perceiue a companie of the craftie villains to lye

The people shewe themselues the third time.

lurking, whom our Generall would not deale withall, for that he knew not what company they were, & so with few signes dismissed them, & returned to his company.

The people shewe them selues againe on firme land.

An other time, as our said General was coasting the countrie, with two little Pinisses, whereby at our returne he might make the better relation thereof, three of the craftie villains, with a white skin allured vs to them. Once againe, our Generall, for that he hoped to heare of his men, went towards them: at our comming neare the shoare, whereon they were, we might perceiue a number of them lie hidden behinde great stones, & those three in sight labouring by al meanes possible, that some would come on land: & perceiuing we made no hast by words nor friendly signes, which they vsed by clapping of their hands, and being without weapon, and but three in sight, they sought further meanes to prouoke vs thereunto. One alone layd flesh on the shoare, which wee tooke vp with the Boate hooke, as necessary victuals for the releiuing of the man, woman, and child, whom we had taken: for that as yet, they could not digest our meate: whereby they perceiued themselues deceiued of their expectation, for all their craftie allurements. Yet once againe, to make (as it were) a full shewe of their craftie natures, and subtile sleights, to the intent thereby to haue intrapped and taken some of our men, one of them counterfeited himselfe impotent and lame of his legges, who seemed to descend to the water side, with great difficultie: & to couer his crafte the more, one of his fellowes came downe with him, and in such places, where hee seemed vnable to passe, he tooke him on his shoulders, set him by the water side, and departed from him, leauing him (as it should seeme) all alone, who playing his counterfeite pageant very wel, thought thereby to prouoke some of vs to come on shoare, not fearing, but that one of vs might make our partie good with a lame man.

Their first meanes to allure vs to shoare.

Their second meanes.

Their third and craftiest allurement.

Compassion to cure a craftie lame man.

Our Generall, hauing compassion of his impotencie, thought good (if it were possible) to cure him therof: wherefore, he caused a souldiour to shoote at him with his Caleuer, which grased before his face. The counterfeit villeine deliuerly fled, without any impediment at all, and gott him to his bowe and arrowes, and the rest from their lurking holes, with their weapons, bowes, arrowes, slings, and darts. Our Generall caused some calecuers to be shot off at them, wherby some being hurt, they might hereafter stand in more feare of vs.

This was all the answere, for this time, we could haue of our men, or of our Generals letter. Their craftie dealing, at these three seuerall times, being thus manifest vnto vs, may plainely shewe, their disposition in other things to be correspondent. We iudged, that they vsed these stratagemmes, thereby to haue caught some of vs, for the deliuering of the man woman and childe whom we had taken.

They are men of a large corporature, and good proportion: their colour is not much vnlike the Sunne burnt Countrie [illegible] who laboureth daily in Sunne for his liuing.

They weare their h[illegible] long, and cut before, either with stone or knife, very disorderly. Their women w[illegible] long, and knit vp with two loupes, shewing forth on either side of their faces, and the rest tolled vpon a knot. Also, some of their women race their faces proportionally, as chinne, cheekes, and forehead, and the wristes of their hands, whereupon they lay a colour, which continueth darke azurine.

They eate their meate all rawe, both flesh, fish, and foule, or something perboyled with bloud and a little water, which they drinke. For lacke of water, they wil eate yce, that is hard frosen, as pleasantly as we will doe Sugar, Candie, or other Sugar.

If they, for necessities sake, stand in neede of the premisses, such grasse as the countrie yeelds they plucke vpp, and eate, not delintily, or sallet wise to allure their stomaches to appetite: but for necessities sake, without either salt, oyles, or washing, like brute beasts deuouring the same. They neither vse table, stoole, or table cloth for comelines: but when they are imbrued with bloud, knuckle deepe, and their kniues in like sort, they vse their tongues as apt instrumentes to licke them cleane: in doing whereof, they are assured to loose none of their victuals.

Doggs like vnto wolues.

They frank or keepe certeine doggs, not much vnlike Wolues, which they yoke together, as we do oxen & horses, to a sled or traile: and so carrie their necessaries ouer the yce and snow, from place to place: as the captiue, whom we haue, made perfect signes. And when those doggs are not apt for the same vse: or when with hunger they are constrained for lacke of other victuals, they eate them: so that they are as needful for them, in respect of their bignesse, as our oxen are for vs.

They eate doggs flesh.

They apparell themselues in the skinnes of such beastes as they kill, sewed together with the sinewes of them. All the fowle which they kill, they skin, and make thereof one kinde of garment or other, to defend them from the cold.

Hoods and tailes to their apparel.

They make their apparel with hoods and tailes, which tailes they giue, when they thinke to gratifie any friendshippe shewed vnto them: a great signe of friendshippe with them. The men haue

haue them not ſo ſyde as the women.

The men and women weare their hoſe cloſe to their legges, from the waſt to the knee, without any open before, as well the one kind as the other. Upon their legges they weare hoſe of leather, with the furre ſide inward, two or three paire on at once, and eſpecially the women. In thoſe hoſe, they put their kniues, needles, and other things needefull to beare about. They put a bone within their hoſe, which reacheth from the foote to the knee, whereupon they drawe their ſaid hoſe, and ſo in place of garters, they are holden from falling downe about their feete.

They dreſſe their ſkinnes very ſoft and ſouple with the haire on. In cold weather or Winter, they weare the furre ſide inward: and in Summer outward. Other apparell they haue none, but the ſaid ſkinnes.

Thoſe beaſtes, fiſhes, and fowles, which they kill, are their meate, drinke, apparel, houſes, bedding, hoſe, ſhooes, tyed, and ſailes for their boates, with many other neceſſaries, wherof they ſtand in neede, and almoſt all their riches.

Their houſes are tents, made of Seale ſkins, pitched vp with 4. Firre quarters, foure ſquare, meeting at the toppe, and the ſkinnes ſewed together with ſinewes, and layd thereupon: they are ſo pitched vp, that the entrance into them, is alwaies South, or againſt the Sunne. *Their houſes of Seale ſkins and Furre.*

They haue other ſortes of houſes, which we found, not to be inhabited, which are raiſed with ſtones and Whale bones, and a ſkinne layd ouer them, to withſtande the raine, or other weather: the entrance of them being not much vnlike an Ouens mouth, whereto I thinke, they reſort for a time to fiſhe, hunt, and foule, and ſo leaue them vntill the next time they come thether againe.

Their weapons are bowes, arrowes, darts, and ſlinges. There bowes are of wood, of a yard long, ſinewed on the back with ſtrong ſinewes, not glued too, but faſt girded and tyed on. Their bowe ſtringes are likewiſe ſinewes. Their arrowes are three peeces, nocked with bone, and ended with bone, with thoſe two endes, and the wood in the middeſt, they paſſe not in length halfe a yard or little more. They are fethered with two fethers, the penne end being cutt away, and the fethers layd vpon the arrow with the broad ſide to the wood: in ſomuch that they ſeeme, when they are tyed on, to haue foure fethers. They haue likewiſe three ſorts of heades to thoſe arrowes: one ſort of ſtone or pyon, proportioned like to a heart: the ſecond ſort of bone, much like vnto a ſtopte head, with a hooke on the ſame: the third ſort of bone likewiſe, made charpe at both ſides, and charp pointed. They are not made very faſt, but lightly tyed to, or elſe ſet in a nocke, that vpon ſmall occaſion, the arrowe leaueth theſe heads behinde them: and they are of ſmall force, except they be very neere, when they ſhoote. *Their weapons of defence.* *Three ſorts of heads to their arrowes.*

Their Darts are made of two ſorts: the one with many forkes of bones in the fore ende, and likewiſe in the middeſt: their proportions are not much vnlike our toaſting pyons but longer: theſe they caſt out of an inſtrument of wood, very readily. The other ſort is greater then the firſt aforeſayd, with a long bone made charp on both ſides, not much vnlike a Rapier, which I take to bee their moſt hurtfull weapon. *Two ſortes of darres.*

They haue two ſorts of boats made of leather, ſet out on the inner ſide with quarters of wood, artificially tyed together with thongs of the ſame: the greater ſort are not much vnlike our wherries, wherein ſixteene or twenty men may ſitte: they haue for a ſayle, dreſt the guttes of ſuch beaſts as they kill, very fine and thinne, which they ſewe together: the other boate is but for one man to ſitte and rowe in, with one oare. *Two ſortes of Boats made of Leather.*

Their order of fiſhing, hunting, and fowling are with theſe ſayd weapons: but in what ſort, or how they vſe them, we haue no perfect knowledge as yet. *They vſe to foule, fiſhe, and hunte.*

I can ſuppoſe their abode or habitation not to be here, for that neither their houſes or apparel, are of ſuch force to withſtand the extremity of colde, that the countrie ſeemeth to be infected with altogether doe I ſee any ſigne likely to perſuade the ſame. *It is to be ſuppoſed that their inhabiting is elſwhere.*

Thoſe houſes, or rather dennes, which ſtand there, haue no ſigne of footway, or any thing elſe trodden, which is one of the chiefeſt tokens of habitation. And thoſe tentes, which they bring with them, when they haue ſufficiently hunted and fiſhed, they remoue to other places: and when they haue ſufficiently ſtored them of ſuch victuals, as the country yeldeth, or bringeth forth, they returne to their Winter ſtations or habitations. This coniecture do I make, for the infertilitie, which I perceiue to be in that countrie.

They haue ſome pyon, whereof they make arrowe heades, kniues, and other little inſtrumentes, to worke their boates, bowes, arrowes, and dartes withall, which are very vnapt to doe any thing withall, but with great labour. *Their vſe of pyon.*

It ſeemeth, that they haue converſation with ſome other people, of whom for exchaunge, they

should receiue the same. They are greatly delighted with any thing that is bright, or giueth a sound.

What knowledge they haue of God, or what Idol they adore, we haue no perfect intelligence. Anthropophagi. I thinke them rather Anthropophagi, or deuourers of mans flesh, then otherwise: for that there is no flesh or fishe, which they finde dead (smell it neuer so filthily) but they will eate it, as they finde it, without any other dressing. A loathsome thing, either to the beholders, or hearers.

Signes of gold ore. There is no maner of creeping beast hurtfull, except some Spiders (which, as many affirme, are signes of great store of Gold:) and also certeine stinging Gnattes, which bite so fiercely, that the place where they bite, shortly after swelleth, and itcheth very sore.

Signes of gold from other people. They make signes of certaine people, that weare bright plates of gold in their foreheades, and other places of their bodies.

Description of the Countries. The Countries, on both sides the streights, lye very high with rough stonie mountaines, and great quantitie of snowe thereon. There is very little plaine grounde, and no grasse, except a little, which is much like vnto mosse that groweth on soft ground, such as we get Turfes in. There is no wood at all. To be briefe, there is nothing fitte, or profitable for the vse of man, which that Countrie with roote yeeldeth or bringeth forth: Howbeit, there is great quantity of Deere, whose skinnes are like vnto Asses, their heads or hornes doe farre exceede, as well in length as also in breadth, any in these our partes or Countrie: their feete likewise, are as great as our oxens, which we measured to be seuen or eight inches in breadth. There are also hares, wolues, fishing beares, and Sea foule of sundry sortes.

As the Countrie is barren and vnfertile, so are they rude & of no capacitie to culture the same, to any perfection: but are contented by their hunting, fishing, and fowling, with rawe flesh and warme blood, to satisfie their greedie panches, which is their onely glorie.

A signe of Earthquakes or thunder. There is great likelyhood of Earthquakes, or thunder: for that there are huge & monsterous mounteines, whose greatest substance are stones, and those stones so shaken with some extraordinarie meanes, that one is separated from another, which is discordant from al other Quarries.

No riuers, but such as the Sunne doeth cause to come of snowe. There are no riuers, or running springes, but such, as through the heate of the Sunne, with such water as discendeth from the mountaines and hilles, whereon great drifts of snowe doe lie, are ingendred.

A probability, that there should be neither spring or riuers in the ground. It argueth also, that there should be none: for that the earth, which with the extremitie of the Winter, is so frosen within, that that water, which should haue recourse within the same, to mainteine Springs, hath not his motion, whereof great waters haue their originall, as by experience is seene other where. Such valleies, as are capable to receiue the water, that in the Summer time, by the operation of the Sunne, descendeth from great abundance of snowe, which continually lyeth on the mounteines, and hath no passage, sinketh into the earth, and so vanisheth away without any runnell aboue the earth, by which occasion, or continual standing of the said water, the earth is opened, and the great frost yeldeth to the force thereof, which in other places, foure or fiue fathoms within the ground for lacke of the said moysture, the earth: (euen in the very Summer time) is frosen, and so combineth the stones together, that scarcely instruments, with great force, can vnknit them.

Also, where the water in those vallies can haue no such passage away, by ꝑ continuance of time, in such order as is before rehearsed, the yeerely descent from the mountaines, filleth them full, that at the lowest banke of the same, they fall into the next vallie, and so continue, as fishing ponds or Stagnes in Summer time full of water, and in the Winter hard frosen: as by skarres, that remaine thereof in Summer, may easily be perceiued: so that, the heate of Summer, is nothing comparable or of force, to dissolue the extremitie of colde, that commeth in Winter.

Neuertheless, I am assured that belowe the force of the frost, within the earth, the waters haue recourse, and emptie themselues out of sight into the sea, which though the extremitie of the frost, are constrayned to doe the same: by which occasion, the earth within is kept the warmer, and springes haue their recourse, which is the onely nutriment of Golde and Minerals within the same.

Springs nourish gold.

There is much to be said of the commodities of these Countries, which are couched within the bowels of the earth, which I let passe till more perfect triall be made thereof.

An end of coniecturing till further trueth and triall. Thus coniecturing, till time, with the earnest industrie of our Generall and others (who by all diligence remaine prest to explore the truth of that which is vnexplored, as he hath to his euerlasting praise founde out that which is like to yeelde an innumerable benefite to his Prince and countrie) offer further triall, I conclude.

The

The 23. of Auguſt, after we had ſatiſfied our mindes with fraight ſufficient for our veſſels, though not our couetous deſires, with ſuch knowledge of the country, people, and other commodities as are before rehearſed, the 24. thereof we departed therehence: the 17. of September we fell with the lands end of England, and ſo to Milford Hauen, from whence our Generall rode to the Court for order, to what Porte or Hauen to conduct the ſhippe.

Shippes ſatiſfied with burthen, but mens mindes not contented.

We loſt our two Barkes in the way homeward, the one, the 29. of Auguſt, the other, the 31. of the ſame moneth, by occaſion of great tempeſt and fogge. Howbeit, God reſtored the one to Briſtowe, and the other making his courſe by Scotland, to Yermouth. In this Voyage we loſt two men, one in the way by Gods viſitation, and the other homewarde caſt ouer boorde with a ſurge of the Sea.

Our departure frō thoſe countries.

How, & when, we loſt our 2. Barks, which God neuertheleſſe reſtored.

I Could declare vnto the Readers, the Latitude and Longitude of ſuch places and regions, as we haue bene at, but not altogether ſo perfectly as our maſters and others, with many circumſtances of tempeſts and other accidents incident to Sea faring men, which ſeeme not altogether ſtrange, but I let them paſſe to their reportes as men moſt apt to ſet foorth and declare the ſame. I haue alſo left the names of the Countries on both the ſhores vntouched, for lacke of vnderſtanding the peoples language: as alſo for ſundry reſpects, not needfull as yet to bee declared.

The concluſion.

Countries newe explored, where commoditie is to be looked for, doe better accorde with a newe name giuen by the explorers, then an vncertaine name by a doubtfull Authour.

Our General named ſundry Iſlands, Mountaines, Capes, and Harborroughs after the names of diuers Noble men, & other gentlemen his friends, as wel on the one ſhore, as alſo on the other.

The third and laſt voyage into Meta Incognita, made by *M. Martin Frobiſher, in the yeere* 1578. *VVritten* by Thomas Ellis.

THeſe are to let you knowe, that vpon the 25. of May, the Thomas Allen, being Viceadmirall, whoſe Captaine was M. Yorke, M. Gibbes Maſter, M. Chriſtopher Hall Pilot, accompanied with the Reareadmiral named the Hopewel, whoſe Captaine was M. Henrie Carewe, the M. Andrewe Dier, and certaine other ſhippes, came to Graueſend, where we ankred and abode the comming of certaine other of our Fleete, which were not yet come.

Maſter Yorke. Chriſtopher Hall. The Hopewel. Captaine Carew. Andrew Dier.

The 27. of the ſame moneth, our Fleete being nowe come together, and all things preſt in a readineſſe, the winde fauouring, and tide ſeruing, we being of ſailes in nomber eight, waied ankers, and hoyſed our ſailes toward Harwich, to meete with our Admirall, and the reſidue, which then and there abode our arriuall: where we ſafely arriued the 28. thereof, finding there our Admirall, whom we, with the diſcharge of certaine pieces, ſaluted (according to order and duetie) and were welcomed with the like courteſie: which being finiſhed, we landed: where our Generall continued muſtring his Souldiers and Miners, and ſetting things in order appertaining to the voyage, vntill the laſt of the ſayd moneth of May, which day we hoyſed our ſailes, and committing our ſelues to the conducting of Almightie God, we ſet forward toward the Weſt country, in ſuch luckie wiſe, and good ſucceſſe, that by the fift of June, we paſſed the Durſies, being the vtmoſt part of Ireland, to the Weſtward.

Harwich. Durſies. Ireland.

And here it were not much amiſſe, nor farre from our purpoſe, if I ſhould a litle diſcourſe and ſpeake of our aduentures and chances by the way, as our landing at Plymmouth, as alſo the meeting of certaine poore men, which were robbed and ſpoyled of all that they had, by Pirates and Rouers: amongſt whom was a man of Briſtowe, on whom our General vſed his liberalitie, and ſent him away with letters into England.

Plymmouth. Briſtowe.

But becauſe ſuch things are impertinent to the matter, I will returne (without any more mentioning of the ſame) to that, from the which I haue digreſſed, and ſwarued, I meane our ſhippes now ſailing on the ſurging Seas, ſometime paſſing at pleaſure with a wiſhed Eaſterne winde, ſometime hindered of our courſe againe by the Weſterne blaſtes, vntill the 20. day of the ſayd moneth of June, on which day in the morning we fell with Frizeland, which is a very hie and cragged land, and was almoſt cleane couered with ſnowe, ſo that we might ſee nought but craggie rockes, and the tops of high and huge hilles, ſometimes (and for the moſt part) all couered with foggie miſtes. There might we alſo perceiue the great Iſles of yce lying on the ſeas,

Frizeland.

like mountaines, some small, some big, of sundry kindes of shapes, and such a number of them, that we could not come neere the shore for them.

Thus sailing alongst the coast, at the last we sawe a place somewhat voyde of yce, where our Generall, (accompanied with certaine other) went a shoare, where they sawe certaine tentes made of beasts skins, and boats much like vnto theirs of Meta incognita. The tents were furnished with flesh, fish, skins, and other trifles: amongst the which was found a boxe of nailes: whereby we did coniecture, that they had either Artificers amongst them, or els a traffike with some other nation. The men ranne away, so that we could haue no conference or communication with them. Our Generall (because he would haue them no more to flee, but rather encouraged to stay through his courteous dealing) gaue commaundement, that his men should take nothing away with them, sauing onely a couple of white Dogs, for which he left pins, poynts, kniues, and other trifling things, and departed, without taking or hurting any thing, and so came a boord, and hoysed saples, and passed forwards.

The courtesie of our Generall.

But being scarse out of the sight thereof, there fel such a fogge and hidious mist, that we could not see one another: whereupon we stroke our drums, and sounded our trumpets, to the ende we might keepe together: and so continued all that day and night, till the next day, that the mist brake vp: so that we might easily perceiue all the ships thus sayling together all that day, vntill the next day, being the 22. of the same: on which day wee sawe an infinite number of yce, from the which we cast about to shun the danger thereof.

But one of our small Barkes, named the Michael, whose Captaine was Master Kinderslie, the Master Bartholomewe Bull, lost our companie, insomuch that we could not obteine the sight of her many dayes after, of whom I meane to speake further anon, when occasion shall be ministred, and opportunitie serue. Thus we continued on our course, vntill the second of July, on which day we fell with the Queenes foreland, where wee sawe so much yce, that we thought it vnpossible to get into the Straights: yet at the last we gaue the aduenture, and entred the yce.

Master Kenderslie. Bartholomew Bull.

The Michael. The Iudith. M. Fenton. Charles Iackman.

Being in amongst it, we sawe the Michael, of whome I spake before, accompanied with the Iudith, whose Captaine was Master Fenton, the Master Charles Iackman, bearing into the foresayd yce, farre distant from vs, who in a storme that fell, that present night, (whereof I will at large, God willing, discourse hereafter) were seuered from vs, and being in, wandred vp and downe the Straights, amongst the yce, many dayes, in great perill, till at the last, (by the prouidence of God) they came safely to harbor in their wished Porte, in the Countesse of Warwicks sound, the 20. of July aforesayd, ten dayes before any of the other shippes: who going on shoare found where the people of the Countrey had bene, and had hid their prouision in great heapes of stones, being both of flesh, and fish, which they had killed: whereof we also found great store in other places after our arriuall. They found also diuers engins, as bowes, slings, and darts. They found likewise certaine pieces of the Pinnesse which our Generall left there the yeere before, which Pinnesse he had sonke, minding to haue it againe the next yeere.

The Countesse of Warwicks sound.

Now, seeing I haue entreated so much of the Iudith, and the Michael: I will returne to the rest of the other shippes, and wil speake a little of the storme which fell, with the mishaps that we had, the night that we put into the yce: whereof I made mention before.

Our entrance & passage, &c.

At the first entrie into the yce, in the mouth of the Straights, our passage was very narrowe, and difficill: but being once gotten in, we had a fayre open place without any yce, for the most part: being a league in compasse, the yce being round about vs, and inclosing vs, as it were within the pales of a parke. In which place, (because it was almost night) we minded to take in our saples, and lie a hull all that night. But the storme so increased, and the waues beganne to mount aloft, which brought the yce so neere vs, and comming on so fast vpon vs, that we were faine to beare in and out, where we might espie an open place. Thus the yce comming on vs so fast, we were in great danger, looking euery houre for death. And thus passed we on in that great danger, seeing both our selues, and the rest of our ships so troubled and tossed amongst the yce, that it would make the strongest heart to relent.

Bark Dionyse

At the last, the Barke Dionyse, being but a weake ship, and hoysed afore amongst the yce, being so leake that she no longer could carry aboue ꝑ water, sanke without sauing any of the goods which were within her: which sight so abashed the whole Fleete, that wee thought verily wee should haue tasted of the same sauce. But neuertheless, we seeing them in such danger, manned our boates, and saued all the men, in such wise, that not one perished, (God be thanked.)

Narrow shifts for safetie.

The storme still increased, and the yce inclosed vs, that wee were faine to take downe top and top masts: for the yce had so enuironed vs, that we could see neither land, nor sea, as farre as we could kenne: so that we were faine to cut our cables, to hang ouer boorde for fenders, somewhat

what to ease the shippes sides, from the great and dyrie strokes of the yce: some Capstan barres, some fending off with oares, some with plancks of two ynches thicke, which were broken immediatly with the force of the yce, some going out vpon the yce to beare it off with their shoulders from the ships. But the rigorousnesse of the tempest was such, and the force of the yce so great, that not onely they burst and spoyled the foresayd prouision: but likewise so rased the sides of the ships, that it was pitifull to beholde, and caused the hearts of many to faint.

Thus continued we all that dismal and lamentable night, plunged in this perplexitie, looking for instant death: but our God, (who neuer leaueth them destitute which faithfully call vpon him) although hee often punisheth, for amendments sake, in the morning caused the windes to cease: and the fogge, which all that night lay on the face of the water, to cleare: so that wee might perceiue, about a mile from vs, a certaine place cleare from any yce, to the which with an easie breath of winde, which our God sent vs, we bent our selues. And furthermore, hee prouided better for vs then we deserued, or hoped for: for when we were in the foresayd cleare place, hee sent vs a fresh gale at West, or at West Southwest, which set vs cleare without all the yce. And further, he added more: for he sent vs so pleasant a day, as the like we had not of a long time before, as after punishment, consolation. Gods prouidence.

Thus we ioyfull wights, being at libertie, tooke in all our sailes, and lay a hull, praysing God for our deliuerance: and staied to gather together our Fleete: which once being done, wee seeing that none of them had any great hurt, neither any of them wanted, sauing onely they of whom I spake before, and the ship which was lost, then at the last we hoised our sailes, and lay bulting off and on, till such time as it would please God to take away the yce, that wee might get into the Straights.

And as we thus lay off and on, we came by a maruellous huge mountaine of yce, which surpassed all the rest that euer wee sawe: for wee iudged it to be neere foure score fathoms aboue water, and we thought it to be a ground for any thing that wee coulde perceiue, being there nine score fathoms deepe, and of compasse about halfe a mile. A mountaine of yce appearing in sundry figures.

Also the fift of July, there fell a hidious fogge and mist, that continued till the nineteenth of the same: so that one shippe could not see another. Therefore we were faine to beare a small sayle, and to obserue the time: but there ran such a currant of Tide, that it set vs to the Northwest of the Queenes foreland, the backside of all the Straights: where (through the contagious fogge hauing no sight either of Sunne or Starre) we scarse knew where we were. In this fogge the tenth of July, wee lost the companie of the Viceadmirall, the Anne Francis, the Busse of Bridgewater, and the Francis of Foy. A fog of long continuance.

The sixteenth day, one of our small Barks, named the Gabriel, was sent by our Generall to beare in with the land, to descrie it, where being on land, they met with the people of the Countrey, which seemed very humane and ciuill, and offered to traffike with our men, proffering them foules, and skins, for kniues, and other trifles: whose courtesie caused vs to thinke, that they had small conuersation with the other of the Straights. The Gabriel. The people offer to traffike with vs.

Then we bare backe againe, to goe with the Queenes foreland: and the eighteenth day wee came by two Islands, whereon we went on shoare, and found where the people had bene: but we sawe none of them. This day we were againe in the yce, and like to be in as great perill as we were at the first. For through the darkenes and obscuritie of the foggie mist, we were almost runne on rockes and Islands, before we sawe them: But God (euen miraculously) prouided for vs, opening the fogges, that we might see clearely, both where, and in what danger we presently were, and also the way to escape: or els, without faile, wee had ruinously runne vpon the rockes.

When we knewe perfectly our instant case, we cast about, to get againe on Sea boyde, which (God be thanked) by night we obteined, and praised God. The cleare continued scarse an houre, but the fogge fell againe as thicke as euer it was.

Then the Reareadmirall, and the Beare got them selues cleare without danger of yce and rocks, strooke their sayles, and lay a hull, staying to haue the rest of the Fleete come forth: which as yet had not found the right way to cleare themselues from the danger of rockes and yce, vntill the next morning, at what time the Reareadmirall discharged certaine warning pieces to giue notice that she had escaped, and that the rest (by following of her) might set themselues free, which they did that day. Warning pieces of safe passage discharged.

Then hauing gathered our selues together, we proceeded on our purposed voyage, bearing off, and keeping our selues distant from the coast, till the 19. day of July: at which time the fogges brake vp and dispersed, so that wee might plainely and clearely beholde the pleasant ayre, which

which so long had bene taken from vs, by the obscuritie of the foggie mistes: and after that time, we were not much encombred therewith, vntill we had left the confines of the countrey.

A faire sound betweene the Queenes foreland & Jackmans sound.

Then we espying a fayre sound, supposed it to go into the Straights, betweene the Queenes foreland, & Jackmans sound, which proued, as we imagined. For our Generall sent forth againe the Gabriel, to discouer it, who passed through with much difficultie: for there ran such an extreme currant of a tide, with so horrible a gulfe, that with a fresh gale of winde they were scarse able to stemme it: yet at the length with great trauaile they passed it, and came to the Straights, where they met with the Thomas Allen, the Thomas of Ipswich, and the Busse of Bridgewater: who all together aduentured to beare into the yce againe, to see if they could obteine their wished Porte. But they were so encombred, that with much difficultie they were able to get out againe, yet at the last they escaping, the Thomas Alline, and the Gabriel bare in with the Westerne shore, where they found harbour, and there moared their shippes, vntill the fourth of August, at which time they came to vs in the Countesse of Warwicks sound. The Thomas of Ipswich caught a great leake, which caused her to call againe to Sea bord, and so was mended.

We sailed along still by the coast, vntil we came to the Queenes foreland, at the point whereof we met with part of the gulfe aforesayd, which place or gulfe (as some of our Masters do credibly report) doeth flowe nine houres, and ebs but three. At that point wee discouered certaine lands Southwarde, which neither time nor opportunitie would serue to search. Then being come to the mouth of the Straights, we met with the Anne Francis, who had laine bulting vp and downe euer since her departure alone, neuer finding any of her companie. We met then also the Francis of Foy, with whome againe we intended to venter and get in: but the yce was yet so thicke, that we were compelled againe to retyre and get vs on Sea borde.

An horrible snowe fell in July.

There fell also the same day, being the 26. of July, such an horrible snowe, that it lay a foote thicke vpon the hatches, which frose as fast as it fell.

We had also at other times, diuers cruell stormes, both of snowe and haile, which manifestly declared the distemperature of the Countrey: yet for all that we were so many times repulsed and put backe from our purpose, knowing that lingering delay was not profitable for vs, but hurtfull to our voyage, we mutualy consented to our valiant Generall once againe, to giue the onset.

The 28. day therefore of the same July we assayed, and with little trouble (God be praysed) we passed the dangers, by day light. Then night falling on the face of the earth, we bulled in the cleare, til the cheare full light of the day had chased away the noysome darkenes of the night: at which time we set forward towards our wished port: by the 30. day we obteined our expected desire, where we found the Iudith, and the Michael: which brought no small ioy vnto the Generall, and great consolation to the heaute hearts of those wearied wights.

The time of our setting forward, &c.

The 30. day of July we brought our ships into the Countesse of Warwicks sound, and moared them, namely these ships, the Admirall, the Reareadmiral, the Francis of Foy, the Beare, Armenel, the Salomon, and the Busse of Bridgwater: which being done, our Generall commaunded vs all to come a shore, vpon the Countesse Iland, where he set his Miners to worke vpon the Mine, giuing charge with expedition to dispatch with their lading.

Our Generall himselfe, accompanied with his Gentlemen, diuers times made rodes into sundry partes of the Countrey, as well to finde new Mines, as also to finde out and see the people of the Countrey. He found out one Mine, vpon an Iland by Beares sound, and named it the Countesse of Sussex Iland. One other was found in Winters Foynace, with diuers others, to which the ships were sent sunderly, to be laden. In the same rodes hee met with diuers of the people of the Countrey, at sundry times, as once at a place called Dauids sound: who shot at our men, and very desperately gaue them the onset, being not aboue three or foure in number, there being of our Countrey men aboue a dosen: but seeing themselues not able to preuaile, they tooke themselues to flight: whom our men pursued, but being not vsed to such craggy cliffes, they soone lost the sight of them, and so in vaine returned.

The Countesse of Sussex Iland.
Winters Foynace.
Dauids sound.

The policie of the people for safetie of themselues.

We also saw of them at Beares sound, both by Sea and land, in great companies: but they would at all times keepe the water betwene them and vs. And if any of our ships chanced to be in the sound, (as they came diuers times) because the harbor was not very good, the ship laded, & departed againe: then so long as any ships were in sight, the people would not be seene. But when as they perceiued the ships to be gone, they would not only shew themselues standing vpon high cliffes, and call vs to come ouer vnto them: but also would come in their botes, very neere to vs, as it were to brag at vs: whereof our Generall hauing aduertisement, sent for the Captaine and Gentlemen of the shippes, to accompanie and attende vpon him, with the Captaine also

of

of the Anne Francis, who was but the night before come vnto vs. For they, and the fleebote hauing loſt vs the 26. day, in the great ſnowe, put into an harbour in the Queenes forelande, where they found good oare, wherewith they laded themſelues, and came to ſeeke the Generall: ſo that nowe we had all our ſhippes, ſauing one Barke, which was loſt, and the Thomas of Ipſewiche, (who compelled by what furie I know not,) forſooke our companie, and returned home without lading.

Their ſperdie flight at our Generals arriuall.

Our Generall accompanied, with his Gentlemen, (of whome I ſpake) came altogether to the Counteſſe of Suſſex Iſland, neere to Beares ſound: where he manned out certaine Pinniſſes, and went ouer to the people: who perceiuing his arriuall, fledde away with all ſpeede, and in haſt left certaine dartes and other engines behind them, which we found: but the people wee could not finde.

The next morning our Generall perceiuing certaine of them in bote vpon the Sea, gaue chaſe to them, in a Pinniſſe vnder ſaile, with a freſh gale of winde, but could by no meanes come neere vnto them: for the longer he ſailed, the further off he was from them: which well ſhewed their cunning and actiuitie. Thus time wearing away, and the day of our departure approching, our Generall commanded to lade with all expedition, that wee might be againe on Sea boord with our ſhip: for whileſt we were in the countrie, we were in continual danger of freeſing in: for often ſnow and haile often the water was ſo much froſen and congealed in the night, that in the morning we could ſcarce rowe our boates or Pinniſſes, eſpecially in Diers ſound, which is a calme and ſtill water: which cauſed our Generall to make the more haſte, ſo that by the 30. day of Auguſt we were all laden, and made all things readie to depart.

Gentlemen ſhould haue inhabited the Countrie.

But before I proceede any further herein, to ſhewe what fortune befell at our departure, I will turne my penne a litle to M. Captaine Fenton, and thoſe Gentlemen, which ſhould haue inhabited all the peere in thoſe countries, whoſe valiant mindes were much to bee commended, that neither feare of force, nor the cruel nipping ſtormes of the raging winter, neither the intemperature of ſo vnhealthfull a country, neither the ſauageneſſe of the people, neither the ſight and ſhewe of ſuch and ſo many ſtrange Meteores, neither the deſire to returne to their native ſoile, neither regarde of friendes neither care of poſſeſſions and inheritances: finally, not the loue of life (a thing of all other moſt ſweete) neither the terrour of dreadfull death it ſelfe, might ſeeme to be of ſufficient force, to withdrawe their proneſſe, or to reſtraine from that purpoſe, thereby to haue profited their countrey: but that with moſt willing hearts, venturous minds, ſtout ſtomacks, and ſingular manhood they were content there to haue tarried for the time, among a barbarous and vnciuill people, Infidels and miſcreants to haue made their dwelling, not terrified with the manifold and imminent dangers which they were like to runne into: and ſeeing before their eyes ſo many caſualties, whereto their life was obiect, the leaſt whereof would haue made a milkſop Therſites aſtoniſhed and vtterly diſcomfited: being I ſay thus minded and purpoſed, they deſerue ſpeciall commendation: For doubtleſſe, they had done as they intended, if lucke had not withſtood their willingneſſe, and if that fortune had not ſo frowned vpon their intents.

Deſerued praiſe & commendation.

For the Barke Dionyſe, which was loſt, had in her much of their houſe, which was prepared and ſhould haue ben builded for them, with many other implements. Alſo the Thomas of Ipſewitch, which had moſt of their prouiſion in her, came not into the Streights at al: neither did we ſee her, ſince the day we were ſeparated in the great ſnow, (of which I ſpeake before.) For theſe cauſes, hauing not their houſe, nor yet prouiſion, they were diſapointed of their pretence to tarie, and therefore laded their ſhips, and ſo came away with vs.

An houſe tricked and garniſhed with diuerſe trinkets.

But before we tooke ſhipping, we builded a litle houſe in the Counteſſe of Warwicks Iſland, and garniſhed it with many kinds of trifles, as Pinnes, Points, Laces, Glaſſes, Rombes, Babes on horſebacke and on foote, with innumerable other ſuch fanſies and toyes: thereby to allure and entice the people to ſome familiaritie againſt other yeres.

An outragious tempeſt.

Thus hauing finiſhed all things we departed the countrie, (as I ſaide before:) but becauſe the Buſſe had not lading enough in her, ſhe put into Beares ſound to take in a litle more. In the meane while, the Amirall, and the reſt, without the Sea, ſtaied for her. And that night befell ſuch an outragious tempeſt, beating on our ſhips, with ſuch vehement rigor, that anchor and cable auailed nought: for we were driuen on rockes and Iſlandes of yce, inſomuch that (had not the great goodnes of God bene miraculouſly ſhewed to vs,) we had bene caſt away euery man. This danger was more doubtful and terrible, then any that preceeded or went before: for there was not any one ſhippe, (I thinke) that eſcaped without damage. Some loſt anchor and alſo gables, ſome botes, ſome Pinniſſes: ſome anchor, gables, botes, and Pinniſſes.

This boyſtrous ſtorme ſo ſeuered vs one from another, that one ſhippe knewe not what was become

become of another. The Admirall knew not where to finde the Viceadmirall or Reareadmiral, or any other ship of our companie. Our Generall being on land in Beares sound, could not come to his shippe, but was compelled to goe a boorde the Gabriel, where hee continued all the way homeward: for the boysterous blastes continued so extreamely and so long a time, that it sent vs homewarde (which was Gods fauour towardes vs) will we, nill we, in such haste, as not any one of vs were able to keepe in companie of other, but were separated. And if by chaunce any one ship did ouertake other, by swiftnesse of saile, or mette (as they often did:) yet was the rigour of the winde so hidious, that they coulde not continue companie together the space of one whole night.

Our entring the coastes dangerous.

Thus our iourney outwarde was not so pleasaunt, but our comming thither entering the coastes and countrie, by narrow streights, perilous yce, and swift tides, our times of aboade there in snowe, and stormes, and our departure from thence, the 3. of August, with daungerous blustering windes and tempests, which that night arose, was as vncomfortable: separating vs so, as we sailed, that not any of vs met together, vntil the 28. of September, which day we fell on the Englishe coastes, betweene Sylley and the landes ende, and passed the channell, vntill our arriual, in the riuer of Thames.

The report of Thomas Wiars, passenger in the Emanuel, otherwise called the Busse of Bridgewater, wherein Iames Leeche was Master, one of the shippes in the last voyage of Master. Martin Frobisher, 1578. concerning the discouerie of a great Island in their way homeward the 12. of September.

THe Busse of Bridgewater, was left in Bears sounde at Meta incognita, the second day of September behinde the Fleete, in some distresse, though much winde ryding neere the Lee shoare, and forced there to ride it out vpon the hazard of her cables and ankers, which were all aground but two. The thirde of September being fayre weather, and the wind North northwest she set sayle, and departed thence and fell with Frisland, on the 8. day of September, at 6. of the clocke at night, and then they set off from the Southwest poynt of Frisland, the winde being at East, and East southeast, but that night the winde beared Southerly, and shifted oftentimes that night: but on the tenth day in the morning, the wind at west northwest fayre weather, they steered southeast, and by south, and continued that course vntill the 12. day of September, when about 11. a clocke before noone, they descryed a lande, which was from them about fiue leagues, and the Southermost part of it was Southeast by East from them, and the Northermost next, North Northeast, or Northeast. The master accompted that Frisland, the Southeast poynt of it, was from him at that instant, when hee first descryed this newe Island, North-

The Island in length 25. leagues.

west by North, 50. leagues. They account this Island to be 25. leagues long, and the longest way of it Southeast, and Northwest. The Southerne part of it is in the latitude of 57. degrees

This Iland is in the latitude of 57. degrees and 1. second part.

and 1. second part, or thereabout. They continued in sight of it, from the 12. day at 11. of the clocke, till the 13 day three of the clocke in the after noone, when they left it: and the last part they saw of it, bare from them, Northwest by North. There appeared two harboroughs vpon that coast: the greatest of them seuen leagues to the Northwardes of the Southermost poynt, the other but foure leagues. There was verie much yce neere the same lande, and also twentie or thirtie leagues from it, for they were not cleare of yce, till the 15. day of September, after noone. They plied their voyage homewards, and fell with the west part of Ireland about Galway, and had first sight of it on the 25. day of September.

Notes

Notes framed by M. Richard Hakluit of the middle Temple Eſquire, *giuen to certaine Gentlemen that went with M. Frobiſher in his* Northweſt diſcouerie, for their directions: And not vnfit to be committed to print, conſidering the ſame may ſtirre vp conſiderations of theſe and of ſuch other things, not vnmeete in ſuch newe voyages as may bee attempted hereafter.



That the firſt Seate be choſen on the ſeaſide ſo as (if it may be) you may haue your owne Naule within Bay, riuer or lake, within your ſeate ſafe from the enemie: and ſo as the enemie ſhalbe forced to lie in open rode abroade without, to be diſperſed with all windes and tempeſts that ſhall ariſe. Thus ſeated you ſhall bee leaſt ſubiect to annoy of the enemie, ſo may you by your Naule within, paſſe out to all partes of the world, and ſo may the ſhippes of England haue acceſſe to you to ſupply al wants, ſo may your commodities be caried away alſo. This ſeate is to bee choſen in temperate Climat, in ſweete ayre, where you may poſſeſſe alwayes ſweete water, wood, ſeacoles, or turfe, with fiſh, fleſh, graine, fruites, herbes and rootes, or ſo many of thoſe, as may ſuffice very neceſſitie for the life of ſuch as ſhall plant there. And for the poſſeſſing of mines of golde, of ſiluer, copper, quickſiluer, or of any ſuch precious thing, the wantes of thoſe needeful things may be ſupplied from ſome other place by ſea, &c.

Stone to make Lyme of,
Slate ſtone to tile withall or ſuch clay as maketh tyle,
Stone to wal wall, if Bricke may not bee made,
Timber for buylding eaſely to be conueied to the place,
Reede to couer houſes or ſuch like, if tile or ſlate be not,

} are to be looked for as things without which no Citie may be made nor people in ciuil ſort be kept together.

The people there to plant and to continue are eyther to liue without trafficke, or by trafficke and by trade of marchandiſe. If they ſhall liue without ſea trafficke, at the firſt they become naked by want of linen and woollen, and very miſerable by infinite wants that will otherwiſe enſue, and ſo will they be forced of themſelues to depart, or elſe eaſely they will be conſumed by the Spaniards, by the Frenchmen, or by the naturall inhabitants of the countrey, and ſo the interprice becomes reprochfull to our nation, and a let to many other good purpoſes that may be taken in hande.

And by trade of marchandiſe they can not liue, except the ſea or the lande there may peelde commoditie. And therefore you ought to haue moſt ſpeciall regard of that poynt, and ſo to plant, that the naturall commodities of the place and ſeate, may drawe to you acceſſe of Nauigation for the ſame, or that by your owne Nauigation you may carie the ſame out, and fetch home the ſupply of the wants of the ſeate.

Such nauigation ſo to bee employed, ſhall beſides the ſupply of wants, bee able to encounter with forreyne force.

And for that in the ample vent of ſuch things as are brought to you out of England by ſea, ſtandeth a matter of great conſequence, it behoueth that all humanitie and curteſie and much forbearing of reuenge to the inland people be vſed, ſo ſhall you haue firme amitie with your neyghbours, ſo ſhall you haue their inland commodities to maintaine traffike, and ſo ſhall you ware rich and ſtrong in force. Diuers and ſeuerall commodities of the inland are not in great plenty to be brought to your hands, without the ayde of ſome portable or Nauigable ryuer, or ample lake, and therefore to haue the helpe of ſuch a one is moſt requiſite: And ſo is it of effect for the diſperſing of your owne commodities in exchange into the inlands.

Nothing is more to be indeuoured with the Inland people then familiaritie. For ſo may you beſt diſcouer all the naturall commodities of their countrey, and alſo all their wants, all their ſtrengths, all their weakeneſſe, and with whome they are in warre, and with whome confederate in peace and amitie, &c. which knowen you may worke many great effects of greateſt conſequence.

And

And in your planting the consideration of the climate and of the soyle be matters that are to be respected. For if it bee so that you may let in the salt sea water, not mixed with the fresh into flats, where the sunne is of the heate that it is at Rochel, in the Bay of portingal, or in Spaine, then may you procure a man of skil, and so you haue wonne one noble commodity for the fishing, and for trade of marchandize by making of Salt.

Or if the soyle and clymate bee such as may yeelde you the Grape as good as that at Burdeux, as that in Portingale, or as that about Siuil in spaine, or that in the Ilands of the Canaries, then there resteth but a workman to put in execution to make wines, and to dresse Reisons of the sunne and other, &c.

Or if ye finde a soyle of the temperature of the South part of Spaine or Barbarie in which you finde the Oliue tree to growe: Then you may be assured of a noble marchandize for this realme, considering that our great trade of clothing doth require oyle, and weying howe deere of late it is become by the vent they haue of that commoditie in the West Indies, and if you find the wilde Oliue there it may be grafted.

Or if you can find ỳ berrie of Cochenile with which we colour Stammelles, or any Roote, Berrie, Fruite, wood or earth fitte for dying, you winne a notable thing fitte for our state of clothing. This Cochenile is naturall in the west Indies on that firme.

Or if you haue hides of beasts fit for sole Lether, &c. It wilbe a marchandize right good & the sauages there yet can not tanne Lether after our kind, yet excellently after their own maner.

Or if the soyle shal yeeld Figges, Almonds, Sugar Canes, Quinces, Orenges, Lemonds, potatos, &c. there may arise some trade & trafficke, by figs, almõds, sugar, marmelade, sucket &c.

Or if great woods be found, if they be of Cypres, chests may be made, if they be of some kinde of trees, pitch and tarre may be made, if they bee of some other then they may yeeld Rosin, Turpentine, &c. and all for trade and trafficke, and Caskes for wine and oyle may be made, likewise ships and houses, &c.

And because trafficke is a thing so material, I wish ỳ great obseruation be taken what euery soyle yeeldeth naturally, in what cõmoditie soeuer, & what it may be made to yeeld by indeuour, & to send vs notice home, ỳ therupõ we may deuise what means may be thought of to raise trades.

Now admit that we might not be suffered by the sauages to enioy any whole countrie or any more then the scope of a citie, yet if we might enioy trafficke & be assured of the same, we might be much inriched, our Naule might be increased, and a place of safetie might there bee founde, if change of religion or ciuil wars should happen in this realme, which are things of great benefit. But if we may enioy any large territorie of apt soyle, we might so vse the matter, as we should not depend vpon Spaine for oyles, sacks, resigns, orenges, lemons, spanish skins. &c. Nor vpon Fraunce for woad, bayesalt, and gascoyne wines, nor on Estland for flaxe, pitch, tarre, masts, &c. So we should not so exhaust our treasure, and so exceedingly inrich our doubtful friends, as we do, but should purchase the commodities that we want for halfe the treasure that now we do: but should by our owne industries and the benefits of the soile there cheaply purchase oyles, wines, salt, fruits, pitch, tarre, flaxe, hempe, masts, boords, fish, gold, siluer, copper, tallow hides & many commodities: besides if there be no flatts to make salt on, if you haue plentie of wood you may make it in sufficient quantitie for common vses at home there.

If you can keepe a safe hauen, although you haue not the friendship of the neere neighbours, yet you may haue trafficke by sea vpon one shore or other, vpon that firme in time to come if not present.

If you find great plentie of tymber on the shore side or vpon any portable riuer, you were best to cut downe of the same the first winter, to be seasoned for ships, barks, botes and houses.

And if neere such wood there be any riuer or brooke vpon the which a sawing mil may be placed, it would doe great seruice, and therefore consideration would be had of such place.

And if such port & chosen place of setling were in possession & after fortified by art, although by the land side our Englishmen were kept in, and might not enioy any traffick with the next neighbours, nor any vittuals: yet might they vittel themselues of fishe to serue very necessitie, and enter into amitie with the enemies of their next neighbours, and so haue vent of their marchandize of England & also haue vittel, or by meanes herevpon to be vsed to force the next neighbours to amitie. And keeping a naule at the setling place, they should finde out along the tract of the land to haue trafficke, and at diuers Ilands also. And so this first seat might in time become a stapling place of the commodities of many countreys and territories, and in time this place might become of all the prouinces round about the only gouernour. And if the place first chosen should not so wel please our people, as some other more lately found out: There might be an easie

remoue

remoue, and that might be raſed, or rather kept for others of our nation to auoid an ill neighbor.

If the ſoiles adioyning to ſuch conuenient hauen and ſetling places be found marſhie and boggie, then men ſkilfull in drayning are to be carryed thither. For arte may worke woonderfull effects therein, and make the ſoile rich for many vſes.

To plant vpon an Iſland in the mouth of ſome notable riuer, or vpon the point of the land entring into the riuer, if no ſuch Iſland be, were to great end. For if ſuch riuer were nauigable or portable farre into the land, then would ariſe great hope of planting in fertill ſoiles, and traffike on the one or on the other ſide of the riuer, or on both, or the linking in amitie with one or other pettie king contending there for dominion.

Such riuers found, both barges & boats may be made for the ſafe paſſage of ſuch as ſhall pierce the ſame. Theſe to be couered with doubles of courſe linnen artificially wrought, to defend the arrow or the dart of the ſauage from the rower.

Since euery ſoile of the world by arte may be made to yeeld thinges to feed and to cloth man, bring in your returne a perfect note of the ſoile without and within, and we ſhall deuiſe if neede require to amend the ſame, and to draw it to more perfection. And if you finde not fruites in your planting place to your liking, we ſhall in fiue dayes furniſh you with ſuch kindes of plants to be carryed thither the winter after your planting, as ſhall the very next ſummer following yeeld you ſome fruit, and the yeere next following, as much as ſhall ſuffice a towne as big as Calice, and that ſhortly after ſhall be able to yeeld you great ſtore of ſtrong durable good ſider to drinke, and theſe trees ſhall be able to increaſe you within leſſe then ſeuen yeeres as many trees preſently to beare, as may ſuffice the people of diuers pariſhes, which at the firſt ſetling may ſtand you in great ſtead, if the ſoile haue not the commoditie of fruites of goodneſſe already. And becauſe you ought greedily to hunt after things that yeeld preſent reliefe, without trouble of carriage thither, therefore I make mention of theſe, thus ſpecially, to the end you may haue it ſpecially in minde.

A letter written to M. Richard Stapers by Iohn Whithall *from Braſill, in Santos the 26 of Iune.* 1578

WOrſhipfull ſir, and welbeloued friend M. Stapet, I haue me moſt heartely recommended vnto you, wiſhing your health euen as mine owne.

Theſe few words may be to let you vnderſtand, that, whereas I wrote vnto you not many dayes paſt, by the way of Liſbone, how that I determined to be with you very ſhortly, it is in this countrey offered me to marry, and to take my choice of three or foure: ſo that I am about three dayes ago conſorted with an Italian gentleman to marrie with his daughter within theſe foure dayes. This my friend and father in law Signior Ioſſo Dore is borne in the citie of Genua in Italie: his kinded is well knowen amongſt the Italians in London: alſo he hath but onely this childe which is his daughter, which he hath thought better beſtowed vpon me then on any Portingall in all the country, and doth giue with her in marriage to me part of an Ingenio which he hath, that doth make euery yeere a thouſand roues of ſugar. This my marriage will be worth to me two thouſand duckets, little more or leſſe. Alſo Signior Ioſſo Dore my father in law doth intend to put into my handes the whole Ingenio with ſixtie or ſeuentie ſlaues, and thereof to make me factor for vs both. I giue my liuing Lord thanks for placing me in ſuch honor and plentifulneſſe of all things.

Alſo certaine dayes paſt I talked with the prouedor and the captaine, and they haue certified me few dayes paſt, that they haue diſcouered certaine mines of ſiluer and golde, and looke euery day for maiſters to come to open the ſaid mines: which when they be opened will inrich this countrey very much. This place is called Saint Vincent, and is diſtant from you two thouſand leagues, and in twenty foure degrees of latitude on the South ſide of the equinoctiall line, and right vnder the tropike of Capricorne. A countrey it is very healthfull without ſickneſſe. *Mines of golde & ſiluer newly diſcouered at S. Vincent.*

Moreouer, I haue talked with the captaine and prouedor, and my father in law, who rule all this countrey, for to haue a ſhippe with goods to come from London hither, which haue promiſed me to giue me licence, ſaying that now I am free denizen of this countrey. To cauſe a ſhippe to come hither with ſuch commodities as would ſerue this countrey, would come to great gaines, God ſending in ſafetie the profit and gaines. In ſuch wares and commodities as you may ſhippe hither from London is for euery one commoditie deliuered heere three for one, and then after the ſame ſaced may be imployed in white ſugar at foure hundred reis the roue. *The voyage to S. Vincent woorth three for one.*

I meane also to haue a friend in London to send me a shippe of 60 or 70 tunnes, little more or lesse, with such commodities as I shall giue aduice for. This voyage is as good as any Peru voyage. If you and maister Osborne will deale here, I will deale with you before any other, because of our olde friendly friendshippe in time past. If you haue any stomacke thereto, in the name of God doe you espie out a fine barke of seuentie or eightie tunnes, and send her hither with a Portingall pilot to this port of saint Vincent in Brasill, bordering vpon the borders of Peru.

Note.

Also I herewith write vnto you in what forme and maner you shall furnish this voyage both in commodities and otherwise.

In what maner a voyage to S. Vincent with a shippe of 70 or 80 tunes to be sent.

First you must lade in the said shippe certaine Hampshire and Deuonshire karsies: for the which you must let her depart from London in October, and to touch in the Canaries, and there to make sale of the said karsies, and with the proceed thereof to lade fiftene tunnes of wines that be perfect and good, and sixe dozen of cordouan skinnes of these colours, to wit, orenge tawnie, yellow, red, and very fine blacke. I thinke you shall not finde such colours there. Therefore you must cause them that shall go vpon this voyage, to take saffron with them, to cause the same skinnes to be put into the said colours. Also I thinke you shall finde oyles there. Three hogsheads of sweet oyle for this voyage is very necessary, or a hundred and fiftie iarres of oyle.

Also in London you may lade in the said shippe these parcels of commodities or wares, as followeth:

In primis, Foure pieces of hollands of middle sort.

Item, One piece of fine holland.

Foure hundred elles of osenbriges very fine.

Foure dozen of sizzors of all sorts.

Sixteene kintals of pitch of the Canaries.

Twentie dozen of great kniues which be made in Sardies, of a lowe price.

Foure dozen of a small sort.

Sixe pieces of bayes of the lowest sort.

One very fine piece of bayes.

Foure hundred elles of Manchester cottons, most blacke, greene, some yellow.

Eight or tenne dozen of hats, the one halfe trimmed with taffeta, the other plaine, with the bands of Cypresse.

Sixe dozen of course shirts.

Three dozen of doublets of canuas.

Three dozen of doublets of stitched canuas.

One piece of fine Millan fustian barred.

Sixe dozen of locks for doores and chests.

Sixe thousand of all maner of fish hookes.

Foure dozen reames of paper.

Two dozen of glasses of diuers sorts.

Two dozen of Uenice glasses, the one halfe great, the other middle sort.

Two dozen of mantles of frize of the lowest price that can be.

Three dozen of frize gownes.

Foure hundred pound of tinne of the vse of Portingall, most small dishes and trenchers.

Foure pound of silke of all colours.

Twentie pound of spices, cloues, cinamom, pepper, and saffron.

Two kintals of white sope.

Three pound of threed, white, blacke, and blew.

Three pound of fine white threed.

Item, halfe a dozen of Northerne karsies of diuers colours.

Foure sorting cloches, blew, red, yellow, and greene.

Sixe Northerne dozens of diuers colours.

One fine blew cloth of eight pound.

One fine stamell of tenne or twelue pound.

One fine sheeps coloured cloth of twelue pound.

One fine blacke karsie.

One fine stamell karsie.

Sixe yards of blacke veluet.

Three barrels of nailes for chests.

Two barrels of nailes for shippes and barks.

Sixe

Sixe kintalles of occom.
Two dozen of veluet girdles without hangers.
Foure yards of taffata red, blacke, and blew, with ſome greene.
Two dozen of leather girdles.
Sixe dozen of axes, hatchets, and ſmall billes to cut wood.
Foure males of gittorne ſtrings.
Foure hundred or fiue hundred elles of ſome linnen cloth that is of a lowe price to make ſhirts and ſheets.
Foure tunne of pron.

Theſe be ſuch ſort of wares as I would you ſhould ſend. If you meane to deale or ſend any ſhip hither, haue you no doubt, but by the helpe of God I ſhall put all things in good order according to your contentment and profit: for my father in law with the captaine and Mouedor doe rule this countrey.

My father in law and I ſhall (God willing) make a good quantity of ſugar euery yeere, which ſuger we intend to ſhippe for London from hencefoorth, if we can get a truſtie and good friend as you to deale with vs in this matter. I pray you preſently after the receit of this my letter to write me anſwere thereof, and ſend your letter to M. Holder to Liſbone, and he will conuey it to me out of hand.

Beſides the premiſſes ſend ſixe yardes of ſkarlet, parchment lace of diuers colours.
Sixe yards of crimoſin veluet.
Sixe yards of crimoſin ſatten.
Twelue yards of fine puke blacke.

Heere in this countrey in ſtead of John Whithall they haue called me John Leitoan: ſo that they haue vſed this name ſo long time, that at this preſent there is no remedie but it muſt remaine ſo. When you write vnto me let the ſuperſcription be vnto John Leitoan.

Thus I commit you with all yours to the Holy ghoſt for euer.

If you ſend this ſhippe, I would haue you giue order that ſhe touch in no part of the coaſt of Guinie nor any other coaſt, but to come directly hither to the port of S. Vincent, and from the Canaries let her be diſpatched in my name, to wit, John Leitoan.

Alſo a dozen of ſhirts for my wearing let be ſent if you ſend the ſhippe.

Item, ſixe or eight pieces of ſayes for mantles for women, which is the moſt neceſſarie thing that can be ſent. Note.

By your aſſured friend
Iohn Whithall.

A copie of the letters of the Aduenturers for Braſill ſent to Iohn *VVhithall dwelling in Santos, by the Minion of London.*

Anno 1580 the 24 of October in London.

MAiſter Whithall, as vnacquainted we commend vs vnto you, &c. vnderſtanding by your friends, M. John Bird, M. Robert Walkaden, & your brother James Whithall of certaine letters that they haue receiued of yours frõ Santos, which we haue ſeene and read, wherein from time to time you doe require, and deſire them to ſend a good ſhippe to Santos, with ſuch wares and commodities as you did write for, whereby you did not onely promiſe that they ſhould haue good intertainment, but alſo ſhould ſell the ſaid commodities to make three of one outward at the leaſt in euery thing, and that for to relade their ſhippe backe, they ſhould haue of the beſt, fineſt, and whiteſt ſugers 32 pound of our weight for a ducket at the moſt. The premiſes conſidered, with the great credit that they and we do giue to your writing and promiſe, haue cauſed vs, whoſe names be heerunder written, to ioyne our ſelues in company together, and to be at great charges purpoſely to ſend this good ſhippe the Minion of London, not onely with ſuch merchandizes as you wrote for, but alſo with as many other things as we thought might any wayes pleaſure you, or profit the countrey. And we craue of you, that we and our factours may haue ſo much credit of you, as we haue in you and of your letters, which is to beleue vs that we haue taken this voyage vpon vs, with no other minde or purpoſe then to deale faithfully and truely in the trade by ſea and land, ſo as you ſhall not only haue cauſe to reioyce, and deſerue thanks for our comming, but alſo you will procure the magiſtrates there to be bound, as they vſe in Galizia, that we may be preſerued and defended

from all repressals and imbargements of princes or subiects for any causes or matters whatsoeuer, wherby we may be incouraged by them, giuing vs this security of good intertainement, to continue the trade peerely hencefoorth: and for our parts we promise vpon our credits and fidelities, to commit no outrage at the sea nor land, nor suffer any to be done in our company that we may let, but rather to defend and protect all other peaceable merchantes as we are with theyr shippes and goodes.

And to the end that you and others shall know that we meane as we say, we haue giuen order to our factours to giue you good hostages for your assurance of our good fidelities: and further we haue sent a testimoniall of our owne true meaning in writing vnder the seales of this honourable citie of London, which we will not discredit by our behauiours for all the treasure that you haue, and so we haue written to your magistrates of your port, and others in Spanish, the copy wherof we send you heerwith closed in English. And if the time should fall out so contrary to our expectations, that there should not be fine white sugar sufficient to lade our said shippe in due time at Santos, then we pray you direct our factours where they may go with the shippe in saferie to supply their want, and helpe them to a good sure pilot for that purpose, and write your letters to your friends where the best sugar is made in theyr fauors, and helpe our factours to haue a testimoniall from Santos, that they and you traded together friendly, and so departed in good and perfect amity, and shew them that the iust cause of our comming is to trade as merchants peaceably, and not as pirats to commit any offence to one or other.

Also we pray you if there be any store of warr, or salt peeter, whereby the price there may yeeld vs as much profit as the white sugars at a ducket the roue, or any other commodity of like profit, then to procure that we may lade it without danger of law, be it eure of golde or siluer or whatsoeuer els.

We haue sent you copper cauldrons for your engenios with iron, and all other necessaries for your purpose, and artificers to set the same: and as we haue at your request beene at great charges in sending these men, so we pray you let vs haue lawfull fauor in like courtesie to fauor all our causes. And if any of our mariners or passengers should in any respect of displeasure against their company, or in hope of preferment of mariage or otherwise, would procure to tary and dwell there, and leaue his charge & office, that then you will be a meane to the iustice that such fugitiues should be sent aboord the shippe as prisoners: for as you know, without our men we can not bring home our shipppe.

We haue giuen order to our factours to vse your counsell and helpe in theyr affayres, and to gratifie you for the same as to your courtesie and faithfull friendshippe shall appertaine to your good liking: and in the meane time for a token of our good willes towards you, we haue sent you a field bed of walnut tree, with the canopy, valens, curtaines, and gilt knops. And if there be any commodity els that may pleasure you or your friends, we haue giuen order that they shall haue the refusing of it before any other, giuing for it as it is worth.

And thus to conclude, promising to performe all the foresayd things on our parts in euery condition, we commit you to God, who euer preserue you with all his blessings.

Your louing friends { Christopher Hodsdon. / Anthonie Garrard. / Thomas Bramlie. / Iohn Bird. / William Elkin.

Certaine notes of the voyage to Brasill with the Minion of *London aforesaid, in the yeere 1580, written by* Thomas Grigges Purser of the said shippe.

M. Christoph. Hare was captaine in this voyage.

November.

December.

THe third day of November in the yeere abouesaid we departed in the Minion of London from Harwich, from which time no great thing worth the knowledge or regard of others happened vntill the 22 of December the next moneth, which day for our owne learning & vse we obserued the setting of the sunne, which was West south west, we then being vnder the line equinoctiall, where we found the aire very temperate, and the wind for the most part Southeast & East southeast.

The same day we also obserued the rising of the moone, being one day after the full, which rose at East northeast.

The

The first land that we fell with vpon the coast of Brasill was the Island of S. Sebastian, where we arriued the 14 day of January, in the yeere 1581. January.

The 16 day Thomas Babington, and others in our pinnesse, went a shoare to Guaybea, where they met with John Whithall his father and mother in law, who hauing receiued letters from thence to be deliuered at Santos, came aboord, and then we weyed and set saile, and the 28 day we arriued at the Island of Santa Catelina, neere the entrance of Santos.

Our course from S. Sebastians was South west and by West, and betwixt the South west and by West, and West south west.

This Island of Catelina seemeth at the first to be a part of the Island of Girybia. We ankered at nine fathome blacke ose ground.

Vpon the Island there growe many Palmito trees, but no fresh water is there to be found.

The third day of Februarie we arriued before the towne of Santos, and were there well receiued and intertained of the captaine, the kings officers, and all the people. February.

The fourth day we tooke into our shippe a liefe aliue, which serued for the victualling of the shippe, and the refreshing of our men, and to make vs the merrier at Shroouetide.

The eight day we deliuered to M. John Whithall a bedsted with the appurtenances, which were sent to him from our merchants of London.

The 18 day the captaine of Santos came aboord our ship, by whom we had knowledge of foure great French shippes of warre, that had bene at the riuer Genero, which there tooke three canoas, but were driuen from thence by theyr castles & forts, and were looked for heere at Santos. Whereupon the captaine requested vs to lend them some armor and artillery, and we lent them twenty caliuers, and two barrels of powder.

The 19 day our skiffe which we had sent to Alkatrarses, and had beene away sixe dayes, came againe, and brought good store of great and good fish, and tolde vs that there was good store of fish to be taken there by the hooke, and as much wood as we would haue of the Palmito tree.

The 20 day at night, Nicholas Gale, one of our company, fell ouer our shippes sides, and was drowned in the port of Santos before the towne, where our shippe rode at anker.

The 22 day two of the canoas which the Frenchmen tooke in the riuer of Genero, returned to Santos, and reported that the foure French shippes were past to the Southwards as they thought by the straights of Magellan, and so into the South sea.

The 23 day the aforesaid Nicholas Gale, who fell ouerboord two dayes before, was founde againe, and taken vp three miles from our shippe, & our company went to his buriall in the church at Santos.

This day the captaine and iustices of Santos wished vs to tarry in theyr road till the last of Aprill, for they had sent a barke of Santos to Bayea at the kings charges, to know whether we should haue trade there or no, and this barke could not returne before that time.

About this time there arriued at Fernanbucke a shippe from Portingall, which brought newes that the Islands, Indies, & Portingall it selfe was molested and troubled by the Spanyards, and that the Portingalles had both English & Frenchmen to Lisbone to defend them against Spaine.

The 25 day we sent two of our men, namely Thomas Michaell & Simon Thorne to Bayea in a barke that went thither from Santos.

The 22 day of Aprill our maister and Thomas Babington hauing some talke and conference with the Padrez of Santos, they (our men being ready to go to the riuer Genero) tolde them that they were sorry for our banishment from the church, which was by the Ministrador written from Rio Genero, that forasmuch as this 20 yeres or more the English nation had denied the church of Rome and her proceedings, therefore the Ministrador commanded that none of vs should come to theyr church: the Padrez willed vs herein to haue patience, and to take it in good part, and promised to stand our friends in theyr word & writing, both to the Ministrador and to the bishop at Bayea, and further requested all our English company to haue no ill opinion of them. Aprill.

The 28 of Aprill we laded sugars into our shippe.

The 21 of May we tooke in fresh victualles from Santos. May.

The 10 day of June we gratified one Iohn Thorne, dwelling in Santos, with some of our English victualles, and intertained him in good sort in our shippe, and this day we were promised to haue a pilot at Santos to carry vs to Bayea. June.

The 11 day we went to fish, to make prouision for our shippe & men, and from that time till the eighteenth day we set water, and cut wood for our fire, and trimmed our shippe of the barnes and leakes which the wormes had made in her while we ridde at the Island of S. Sebastians, and in the meane time wee departed from before the towne of Santos. Our Maister sent his Leake in the Pinnes made by wormes.

skiffe from the barre of Santos, thinking to haue brought Thomas Babington and William Euet, with the pilot, which we had tarryed for three dayes, and as the skiffe was going William Euet being by the riuers side, called to our pinnesse, & sent a letter to our maister, which Thomas Babington had written, wherein was no newes, but that the Ministrador was arriued at Santos from the riuer Genero, and would speake with our maister, but he willed that whatsoeuer Thomas Babington did write, no credit should be giuen to it. And further wished vs presently to depart for S. Sebastians, and there to dispatch our businesse, and then to send backe for Babington and himselfe to Guaybea, where he (if he were well) would giue his attendance & come aboord.

§ Whose name was Christopher Hare.

As we rid two leagues a sea boord the barre of Santos, we broke a cable in the open sea, which hapned the 15 day of this moneth.

We arriued at S. Sebastians the 15 day, and there shifted our balast, and had in stones, and halled our shippe a ground to stoppe our leaks, and carryed our caske a shoare to be hooped for water, which in deed might better haue beene done in Santos, before the Ministrador came thither: yet we finished all things pertaining to our shippe, by the 22 of this moneth, at S. Sebastians.

Julie. The first day of July Thomas Babington came aboord with William Euet, in our pinnesse, and the rest of our men that went for them: but there was no pilot brought according to promise, to carry vs to Bayea.

The things that we obserued and noted in the time of our being at Santos, were these.

All such wares and merchandizes as owe no custome in Brasill, they vse is, to set a price vpon the same, how it shalbe solde: which is done by the magistrates of the towne, according to the ordinances of their king.

But for all such merchandizes as do owe custome there, the merchants are to sell them according as they may, to the greatest profit and aduantage that they can.

Concerning the prouince of Peru, we learned that one part of it by land and water is but twelue dayes iourney from the towne of Santos, and from thence it may be about foure or fiue dayes iourney by water to the maine riuer of Plate.

From the head of the riuer of Plate, and from their chiefe townes there, they do trade & traffike by land into Peru by waggons, and horses or mules.

The said riuer of Plate is so full of sands and dangers, and the freth so fierce sometimes, that no shipping dares to deale with it, small barks to their knowledge may go vp it, and not els.

The Portingalles heere can not be suffered to vse their mines of treasure in these parts, vpon paine of death, the contrary being commanded by the king, and the Viceroy, who is as their king in place of authority.

About 20 leagues from Santos, there is a certaine kinde of wilde Sauages, lying in the mountaines, which are in friendshippe with the Portingalles, and they haue continuall warres with certaine other Sauages that dwell about the borders of Peru, which is distant from Santos about 40 or 50 leagues. Those Sauages of Peru haue store of golde and siluer, but they know not the vse of it.

Looke what Sauages of their enemies they take, they sell them to the Portingals for knines, combes, axes or hatchets, and other trifles: they will sell one for a penny knife to a Portingall, and after two yeeres they are worth twenty or thirty duckets to a Portingall.

This people haue also continuall warres with the Spanyards: and this was tolde vs by one of those Sauages, which hath dwelt among the Portingalles these seuen yeeres, with his maister called Senior Manoel Veloso. And this fellow we would willingly haue come with vs for England.

There are certaine rocks that lie off betwene Alcatrarses and S. Sebastians, about two leagues, which are to be taken heed of, which a farre off in fayre weather shew like the sailes of shippes.

There are other rocks that lie off S. Catelina also fiue leagues to the East and by South into the sea off the Island.

At our comming vp to Santos we found foure fathome & a halfe water in the shallowest place, and the like we found within a league after we were departed from S. Catelina, little more or lesse, but after you haue runne in the depth of foure fathome & a halfe, about a mile or lesse, then you shall haue it deeper againe more and more.

Before the towne of Santos we rode in eight and tenne fathome water.

Instructions

The famous voyage of Sir Francis Drake into the South Sea, and there hence about the whole Globe of the Earth,

begun in the yeere of our Lord, 1577.

THe 15. day of November, in the yeere of our Lord, 1577. M. Francis Drake, with a fleete of fiue ships and barkes, and to the number of 164. men, Gentlemen and Sailers, departed Plimmouth, giuing out his pretended voyage for Alexandria: but the winde falling contrary, he was forced the next morning to put into Falmouth hauen in Cornewall, where such and so terrible a tempest tooke vs, as few men haue seene the like, and was in deed so vehement, that all our ships were like to haue gone to wracke, but it pleased God to preserue vs from that extremitie and to afflict vs only for that present with these two particulars: The masse of our Admiral which was the Pellican, was cut ouer boord for the safegard of the ship, and the Marygold was driuen a shore, & some what bruised, for the repairing of which damages we returned againe to Plimmouth, and hauing recouered those harmes, and brought the ships againe to good state, we set forth the second time from Plimmouth, and set saile the 13. day of December following.

The 25. day of the same moneth we fell with the Cape Cantine, vpon the coast of Barbarie, and coasting along, the 27. day we found an Iland called Magador, lying one mile distant from the maine, betweene which Iland and the maine, we found a very good and safe harbour for our ships to ride in, as also very good entrance, and void of any danger. The Isle of Magador on the coast of Barbarie.

On this Iland our Generall erected a pinnase, whereof he brought out of England with him foure already framed. While these things were in doing, there came to the waters side some of the inhabitaunts of the countrey, shewing foorth their flags of truce, which being seene of our Generall, he sent his ships boate to the shore, to know what they would: they being willing to come aboord, our men left there one man of our companie for a pledge, and brought two of theirs aboord our shippe, which by signes shewed our Generall, that the next day they would bring some prouision, as Sheepe, Capons and Hennes and such like, whereupon our Generall bestowed amongst them some linnen cloth and shoes, and a taueling, which they very ioyfully receiued, and departed for that time.

The next morning they failed not to come againe to the waters side, and our Generall againe setting out our boate, one of our men leaping ouer rashly a shore, and offering friendly to imbrace them, they set violent hands on him, offering a dagger to his throte if hee had made any resistance, and so laying him on a horse, caried him away, so that a man cannot bee too circumspect and warie of himselfe among such miscreants.

Our pinnase being finished, we departed from this place the thirtieth and last day of December, and coasting along the shore, we did descrie, not contrary to our expectation, certaine Canters which were Spanish fishermen, to whom we gaue chase and tooke 3. of them, and proceeding further we met with 3. Caruels and tooke them also.

The 17. day of January we arriued at Cape Blanko, where we found a ship riding at anker, within the Cape, and but two simple Mariners in her, which ship we tooke and caried her further into the harbour where we remained 4. dayes, and in that space our Generall mustered, and trayned his men on land in warlike maner, to make them fit for all occasions. Januarie.

In this place we tooke of the Fishermen such necessaries as wee wanted, and they could yeld vs, and leauing here one of our litle barkes called the Benedict, wee tooke with vs one of theirs which they called Canters, being of the burden of 40. tunnes or thereabouts.

All these things being finished, we departed this harbour the 22. of Januarie, carying along with vs one of the Portingall Caruels which was bound to the Ilands of Cape de Verde for sale, whereof good store is made in one of those Ilands.

The master or Pilot of that Caruell, did aduertise our Generall that vpon one of those Ilands called Mayo, there was great store of dried Cabaritas, which a few inhabitaunts there dwelling, did priuely make readie for such of the kings ships as did there touch, being bound for his countrey of Brasile or elsewhere. We fell with this Iland the seuen and twentieth of Januarie, but the inhabitants would in no case traffique with vs, being thereof forbidden by the kings Edict: yet the next day our Generall sent to view the Iland, and the likelihoods that might be there of prouision of victuals, about three score & two men vnder the conduct & gouernment of M. Winter and master Doughtie, and marching towards the chiefe place of habitation in this Iland (as by the Portingall wee were informed) hauing trauelled to the mountains the space of three miles, and arriuing there somewhat before the day breake, wee arrested our selues to see day The Isle of Mayo.

before vs, which appearing, we found the inhabitaunts to bee fled: but the place by reason that it was manured, we found to bee more fruitfull then the other part, especially the valleys among the hils.

Ripe grapes in Winter.

Here we gaue our selues a little refreshing, as by very ripe and sweete grapes, which the fruitfulnesse of the earth at that season of the yeere yelded vs: and that season being with vs the depth of Winter, it may seeme straunge that those fruites were then there growing: but the reason thereof is this, because they being betweene the Tropike and the Equinoctiall, the Sunne passeth twise in the yeere through their Zenith ouer their heads, by meanes whereof they haue two Sunnes, and being so neere the heate of the line, they neuer lose the heate of the Sunne so much, but the fruites haue their increase and continuance in the midst of Winter. The Iland is wonderfully stored with goates and wilde hennes, and it hath salt also without labour, saue onely that the people gather it into heapes, which continually in great quantitie is increased vpon the sands by the flowing of the sea, and the receiuing heate of the Sunne kerning the same, so that of the increase thereof they keepe a continuall traffique with their neighbours.

The description of the tree that beareth Cocos.

Amongst other things we found here a kind of fruit called Cocos, which because it is not commonly knowen with vs in England, I thought good to make some description of it.

The tree beareth no leaues nor branches, but at the very top the fruit groweth in clusters, hard at the top of the stemme of the tree, as big euery seuerall fruite as a mans head: but hauing taken off the vttermost barke, which you shall find to bee very full of strings or sinowes, as I may terme them, you shall come to a hard shell which may hold of quantitie in liquor a pint commonly, or some a quart, and some lesse: within that shell of the thicknesse of halfe an inch good, you shall haue a kind of hard substance and very white, no lesse good and sweete then almonds: within that againe a certaine cleere liquor, which being drunke, you shall not onely find it very delicate and sweete, but most comfortable and cordiall.

*Or goates.

After wee had satisfied our selues with some of these fruites, wee marched further into the Iland, and sawe great store of * Cabaritas aliue, which were so chased by the inhabitaunts, that we could doe no good towards our prouision, but they had laied out as it were to stop our mouths withall certayne old dried Cabaritas, which being but fil, and small and few, wee made no account of.

The Isle of S. Iago.

Being returned to our ships, our Generall departed hence the 31. of this moneth, and sayled by the Iland of S. Iago, but farre inough from the danger of the inhabitaunts, who shot and discharged at vs three pieces, but they all fell short of vs and did vs no harme. The Iland is fayre and large, and as it seemeth rich and fruitfull, and inhabited by the Portingals, but the mountains and high places of the Iland, are sayd to be possessed by the Moores, who hauing bene slaues to the Portingals, to ease themselues, made escape to the desart places of the Iland, where they abide with great strength.

Being before this Iland, we espied two ships vnder sayle, to the one of which we gaue chase, and in the end boorded her with a ship boate without resistance, which we found to be a good prize, and yelded vnto vs good store of wine, which prize our Generall committed to the custodie of M. Doughtie, and retayning the Pilot, sent the rest away with his pinnase, giuing them a Butt of wine and some victuals, and their wearing clothes, and so they departed.

A prize, and a Portingall Pilot taken.

The Isle of Fogo.

The same night we came with the Iland called by the Portingals, Ila del fogo, that is, the burning Iland: in the Northside whereof is a consuming fire, the matter is sayd to bee of Sulphure, but notwithstanding it is like to bee a commodious Iland, because the Portingals haue built, and doe inhabite there.

Vpon the Southside thereof lieth a most pleasaunt and sweete Iland, the trees whereof are alwayes greene and faire to looke vpon, in respect whereof they call it Ila del Braua, that is, the braue Iland. From the banks thereof into the sea doth run in many places reasonable streames of fresh waters easie to be come by, but there was no conuenient road for our ships: for such was the depth, that no ground could be had for ankering, and it is reported, that ground was neuer found in that place, so that the tops of Fogo burne not so high in the ayre, but the roots of Braua are quenched as low in the sea.

Being departed from these Ilands, we drew towards the line, where wee were becalmed the space of 3. weekes, but yet subiect to diuers great stormes, terrible lightenings and much thunder: but with this miserie we had the commoditie of great store of fish, as Dolphin, Bonitas, and flying fishes, whereof some fell into our shippes, where hence they could not rise againe for want of moisture, for when their wings are drie, they cannot flie.

From the first day of our departure from the Ilands of Cape Verde, wee sayled 54. dayes with-

without sight of land, and the first land that we fell with was the coast of Brasil, which we sawe the 17. of Aprill in the height of 33. degrees towards the pole Antarctike, and being discouered at sea by the inhabitaunts of the countrey, they made vpon the coast great fires for a sacrifice (as we learned) to the deuils, about which they vse conjurations, making heapes of sands and other ceremonies, that when any ship shall goe about to stay vpon their coast, not onely sands may bee gathered together in shoales in euery place, but also that stormes and tempests may arise, to the casting away of ships and men, whereof (as it is reported) there haue bene diuers experiments. Aprill. 33. degrees.

The seuenth day in a mightie great storme both of lightening, rayne and thunder, wee lost the Canter which wee called the Christopher: but the eleuenth day after, by our Generals great care in dispersing his ships, we found her agayne, and the place where we met our Generall called the Cape of Ioie, where euery ship tooke in some water. Here wee found a good temperature and sweete aire, a very faire and pleasaunt countrey with an exceeding fruitfull soile, where were great store of large and mightie Deere, but we came not to the sight of any people: but trauelling further into the countrey, we perceiued the footing of people in the clay ground, shewing that they were men of great stature. Being returned to our shippes we wayed anker, and came somewhat further and harboured our selues betweene a rocke and the maine, where by meanes of the rocke that brake the force of the sea, we rid very safe, and vpon this rocke wee killed for our prouision certaine sea wolues, commonly called with vs Seales. The Cape of Ioy.

From hence we went our course to six and thirtie degrees, and entered the great riuer of Plate, and ranne into 54. and 53. fadomes and a halfe of fresh water, where we filled our water by the ships side: but our Generall finding here no good harborough as he thought her should, bare out againe to sea the 27. of Aprill, and in bearing out we lost sight of our Flie boate wherein master Doughtie was, but wee sayling along, found a fayre and reasonable good Baie wherein were many and the same profitable Islands, one whereof had so many Seales as would at the least haue laden all our ships, and the rest of the Islands are as it were ladē with fowles which is wonderfull to see, and they of diuers sortes. It is a place very plentifull of victuals, and hath in it no want of fresh water. Their entrance into the riuer of Plate. Abundance of Seales.

Our Generall after certaine dayes of his abode in this place, being on shore in an Island, the people of the countrey shewed themselues vnto him, leaping and dauncing, and entered into traffique with him, but they would not receiue any thing at any mans hands, but the same must bee cast vpon the ground. They are of cleane, comely, and strong bodies, swift on foote, and seeme to be very active.

The eighteenth day of May our Generall thought it needfull to haue a care of such shippes as were absent, and therefore indeuouring to seeke the Flie boate wherein master Doughtie was, he shifted her againe the next day: and whereas certaine of our ships were sent to discouer the coast and to search an harbour, the Marygold and the Canter being imployed in that businesse, came into vs and gaue vs vnderstanding of a safe harbour that they had found, wherewith all our ships here and entred it, where we watered and made new prouision of victuals, as by seales, whereof we slew to the number of 200. in the space of an hower. May.

Here our Generall in the Admirall rid close aboord the Flie boate, and tooke out of her all the prouision of victuals and what els was in her, and hauing her to the land, set fire to her, and burnt her to saue the iron worke, which being a doing, there came downe of the countrey certayne of the people naked, sauing onely about their waste the skinne of some beast with the furre side on, and something also wreathed on their heads: their faces were painted with diuers colours, and some of them had on their heads the similitude of hornes, euery man his bowe which was an ell in length, and a couple of arrowes. They were very agill people and quicke to deliuer, and seemed not to be ignorant in the feates of warres, as by their order of ranging a few men might appeare. These people would not of a long time receiue any thing at our hands, yet at length our Generall being a shore and they dauncing after their accustomed maner about him, and hee once turning his backe towards them, one leapt suddenly to him, and tooke his cap with his gold band off his head, and ran a little distance from him and shared it with his fellow, the cap to the one, and the band to the other. The Flie boat cast off and burnt. The people of the countrey.

Hauing dispatched all our businesse in this place, wee departed and set sayle, and immediately vpon our setting foorth we lost our Canter which was absent three or foure dayes, but when our Generall had her agayne, he tooke out the necessaries, and so gaue her ouer neere to the Cape of Good hope. Cape Good hope.

The next day after being the twentieth of June, wee harboured our selues agayne in a very June.

Port S. Iulian. good harborough, called by Magellan Port S. Iulian, where wee found a gibbet standing vpon the maine, which we supposed to be the place where Magellan did execution vpon some of his disobedient and rebellious company.

The two and twentieth day our Generall went a shore to the maine, and in his company, Iohn Thomas and Robert Winterhie, Oliuer the master gunner, Iohn Brewer, Thomas Hood, and Thomas Drake, and entring on land, they presently met with two or three of the country people, and Robert Winterhie hauing in his hands a bow and arrowes, went about to make a shoot of pleasure, and in his draught his bow string brake, which the rude Sauages taking as a token of warre, began to bend the force of their bowes against our company, and driue them to their shifts very narowly.

In this port our Generall began to enquire diligently of the actions of M. Thomas Doughtie, and found them not to be such as he looked for, but tending rather to contention or mutinie, or some other disorder, whereby (without redresse) the successe of the voyage might greatly haue bene hazarded: whereupon the companie was called together and made acquainted with the particulars of the cause, which were found partly by master Doughties owne confession, and partly by the euidence of the fact to be true: which when our Generall saw, although his priuate affection to M. Doughtie (as hee then in the presence of vs all sacredly protested) was great, yet the care hee had of the state of the voyage, of the expectation of her maiestie, and of the honour of his country did more touch him, (as in deed it ought) then the priuate respect of one man, so that the cause being throughly heard, and all things done in good order as neere as might be to the course of our lawes in England, it was concluded that M. Doughtie should receiue punishment according to the qualitie of the offence: and he seeing no remedie but patience for himselfe, desired before his death to receiue the communion, which hee did at the hands of M. Fletcher our Minister, and our Generall himselfe accompanied him in that holy action: which being done, and the place of execution made readie, he hauing embraced our Generall and taken his leaue of all the companie, with prayer for the Queens maiestie and our realme, in quiet sort laied his head to the blocke, where he ended his life. This being done, our Generall made diuers speaches to the whole company perswading vs to vnitie, obedience, loue, and regard of our voyage, and for the better confirmation thereof, willed euery man the next Sunday following to prepare himselfe to receiue the communion as Christian brethren and friends ought to do, which was done in very reuerent sort, and so with good contentment euery man went about his busines.

M. Thomas Doughtie executed.

August. The 17. day of August we departed the port of S. Iulian, & the 20. day we fell with the streight or freat of Magellan going into the Southsea, at the Cape or headland whereof, we found the bodie of a dead man, whose flesh was cleane consumed.

The streight of Magellan.

The 21. day we entred the streights which we found to haue many turnings, and as it were shuttings vp, as if there were no passage at all, by meanes whereof we had the wind often against vs, so that some of the fleete recouering a Cape or point of land, others should be forced to turne backe againe, and to come to an anker where they could.

In this streight there be many faire harbors, with store of fresh water, but yet they lacke their best commoditie: for the water is there of such depth, that no man shall find ground to anker in, except it be in some narow riuer or corner, or between some rocks, so that if any extreme blasts or contrary winds doe come (whereunto the place is much subiect) it casteth with it no small danger.

The land on both sides is very huge and mountanous, the lower mountains whereof although they be monstrous and wonderfull to looke vpon for their height, yet there are others which in height exceed them in a strange manner reaching themselues aboue their fellowes so high, that betweene them did appeare three regions of cloudes.

These mountaines are couered with snow: at both the Southerly and Easterly parts of the streight there are Islands, among which the sea hath his intraught into the streights, euen as it hath in the maine entrance of the freat.

This streight is extreme cold, with frost and snow continually, the trees seeme to stoope with the burden of the weather, and yet are greene continually, and many good and sweete herbes doe very fruitfully grow and increase vnder them.

The breadth of the streight is in some place a league, in some other places 2. leagues, and three leagues, and in some other 4. leagues, but the narowest place hath a league ouer.

Abundance of foule in the streight. The 24. of August we arriued at an Island in the streights, where we found great store of foule which could not flie, of the bignesse of geese, whereof we killed in lesse then one day 3000. and victualled our selues throughly therewith.

September. The 6. day of September we entred the South sea at the Cape or head shore.

The

The seuenth day wee were driuen by a great storme from entering into the South sea two hundred leagues and odde in longitude, and one degree to the Southward of the streight, in which height and so many leagues to the Westward, the fifteenth day of September fell out the Eclipse of the Moone at the houre of six of the clocke at night, but neither did the Ecliptical conflict of the Moone impaire our state, nor her clearing againe amend vs a whit, but the accustomed Eclipse of the seas continued in his force, wee being darkened more then the Moone seuen fold.

From the Baie (which we called the Baie of seuering of friends) wee were driuen backe to the Southward of the streights in 55. degrees and a terce: in which height wee came to an anker among the Islands, hauing there fresh and very good water, with herbes of singuler vertue. Not farre from hence we entred another Baie, where we found people both men and women in their Canoas, naked, and ranging from one Island to another to seeke their meate, who entred traffike with vs for such things as they had. 572. leagues. 55. degrees and a terce of Southerly latitude

Wee returning hence Northward againe, found the 3. of October three Islands, in one of which was such plentie of birdes as is scant credible in report. Wee had by proofe in this place, as also at the furthermost Islands, that the sunne being at the least 8. degrees from the Tropike of Capricorne, the night was but two howers long, and scant that, so that we perceiued that when the sunne should be in the Tropike, there would be no night at all. October.

The 8. day of October we lost sight of one of our Consorts wherein M. Winter was, who as then we supposed was put by a storme into the streights againe, which at our returne home wee found to be true, and he not perished as some of our company feared. M. Winter separated and returned.

Thus being come into the height of the streights againe, we ran, supposing the coast of Peru to lie as the generall Maps haue described it, namely Northwest, which we found to lie and trend to the Northeast and Eastwards, whereby it appeareth that this part of Peru hath not bene truly hitherto discouered, or at the least not truly reported for the space of 12. degrees at the least, be it wone either of purpose to deceiue, or of ignorant coniecture.

We continuing our course, fell the 29. of Nouember, with an Island called la Moucha, where we cast anker, and our Generall hoysing out our boate, went with ten of our company to shore, where wee found people, whom the cruell and extreme dealings of the Spaniards haue forced by their owne safetie and libertie to flee from the maine, and to fortifie themselues in this Island. We being on land, the people came downe to vs to the water side with shew of great curtesie, bringing to vs potatoes, rootes, and two very fat sheepe, which our Generall receiued and gaue them other things for them, and had promise to haue water there: but the next day repayring againe to the shore, and sending two men a land with barrels to fill water, the people taking them by Spaniards (to whom they vse to shew no fauour if they take them) laied violent handes on them, and as we thinke slew them. November. The Isle la Moucha in 38 deg. of latitude

Our Generall seeing this, staied here no longer, but waied anker, and set saile towards the coast of Chile, and drawing towards it we met neere to the shore an Indian in a Canoa, who thinking vs to haue bene Spaniards, came to vs and told vs, that at a place called S. Iago, there was a great Spanish ship laden from the kingdome of Peru, for which good newes our Generall gaue him diuers trifles, whereof he was glad, and went along with vs and brought vs to the place which is called the port of Valparizo. S. Iago. The port of Valparizo.

When we came thither, we found in deed the ship riding at anker, hauing in her eight Spaniards and three Negroes, who thinking vs to haue bene Spaniards and their friends, welcommed vs with a drumme, and made ready a Buttizo of wine of Chile to drinke to vs: but as soone as we were entered, one of our company called Thomas Moone began to lay about him, and strake one of the Spaniards, and sayd vnto him, Abaxo Perro, that is in English, goe downe dog. One of these Spaniards seeing persons of that qualitie in those seas, all to crossed, and blessed himselfe: but to be short we stowed them vnder hatches all saue one Spaniard, who suddenly and desperately lept ouer boord into the sea, and swamme a shore to the towne of S. Iago, to giue them warning of our arriuall. Wine of Chile

They of the towne being not aboue 9. housholds, presently fled away and abandoned the towne. Our Generall manned his boate, and the Spanish ships boate, and went to the Towne, and being come to it, we rifled it, and came to a small chappell which we entered, and found therein a siluer chalice, two cruets, and one altar cloth, the spoyle whereof our Generall gaue to M. Fletcher his minister.

We found also in this towne a warehouse stored with wine of Chile, & many boords of Cedar wood, all which wine we brought away with vs, and certaine of the boords to burne for fire wood:

and so being come aboord, we departed the hauen, hauing first set all the Spaniards on land, sauing one Iohn Grego a Greeke borne, whom our General caried with him for his Pilot to bring him into the hauen of Lima.

John Grego a Pilot taken.

When we were at sea, our Generall rifled the ship, and found in her good store of the wine of Chile, and 25000. pezoes of very pure and fine gold of Baldiuia, amounting in value to 37000. duckets of Spanish money and aboue. So going on our course, we arriued next at a place called Coquimbo, where our Generall sent 14. of his men on land to fetch water: but they were espied by the Spaniards who came with 300. horsemen and 200. footemen, and slew one of our men with a piece, the rest came aboord in safetie, and the Spaniards departed: wee went on shore againe, and buried our man, and the Spaniards came downe againe with a flag of truce, but we set sayle and would not trust them.

Coquimbo.

Tarapaza.

From hence we went to a certaine port called Tarapaza, where being landed, wee found by the sea side a Spaniard lying a sleepe, and had lying by him 13. barres of siluer, which waighed 4000. duckets Spanish, we tooke the siluer and left the man.

Arica.

Here hence we sailed to a place called Arica, and being entred the porte, we found there three small barkes which we rifled, and found in one of them 57. wedges of siluer, each of them waighing about 20. pound waight, and euery of these wedges were of the fashion and bignesse of a brickbat. In all these 3. barkes we found not one person: for they mistrusting no strangers, were all gone a land to the Towne, which consisteth of about twentie houses, which wee would haue ransacked if our company had bene better and more in number. But our Generall contented with the spoile of the ships, left the Towne and put off againe to sea and set sayle for Lima, and by the way met with a small barke, which he boorded, and found in her good store of linnen cloth, whereof taking some quantitie, he let her goe.

Februarp. Lima.

To Lima, we came the 13. day of Februarp, and being entred the hauen, we found there about twelue sayle of ships lying fast moored at an anker, hauing all their sayles caried on shore, for the masters and merchaunts were here most secure, hauing neuer bene assaulted by enemies, and at this time feared the approch of none such as wee were. Our Generall rifled these shippes, and found in one of them a chest full of roials of plate, and good store of silkes & linnen cloth, and tooke the chest into his owne ship, and good store of the silkes and linnen. In which ship hee had newes of another ship called the Cacafuego which was gone towards Paita, and that the same ship was laden with treasure, whereupon we staied no longer here, but cutting all the cables of the ships in the hauen we let them driue whither they would, either to sea or to the shore, and with all speed we followed the Cacafuego toward Paita, thinking there to haue found her, but before wee arriued there, she was gone from thence towards Panama, whom our Generall still pursued, and by the way met with a barke laden with ropes and tackle for ships, which he boorded and searched, and found in her 80. li. waight of gold, and a crucifixe of gold with goodly great Emeraudes set in it which he tooke, and some of the corbage also for his owne ship.

From hence we departed still following the Cacafuego, and our Generall promised our company that whosoeuer could first descrie her, should haue his chaine of gold for his good newes. It fortuned that Iohn Drake going vp into the top, descried her about three of the clocke, and about fiue of the clocke we came to her and boorded her, and shotte at her three peeces of ordinaunce, and strake downe her Millen, and being entered, we found in her great riches, as iewels and pretious stones, thirteene chestes full of roials of plate, foure score pound waight of gold, and fiue and twentie tunne of siluer. The place where we tooke this prize, was called Cape Francisco, about 150. leagues from Panama.

The rich ship called the Cacafuego taken.

Cape Francisco.

The Pilots name of this ship was Don Francesco, and amongst other plate that our Generall found in this ship, he found two very faire guilt boules of siluer, which were the Pilots: to whom our Generall sayd: Segnior Pilot, you haue here two siluer cups, but I must needes haue one of them, which the Pilot because he could not otherwise chuse, yelded vnto and gaue the other to the steward of our Generals ships.

When this Pilot departed from vs, his boy sayd thus vnto our Generall, Captaine, our ship shall bee called no more the Cacafuego, but the Cacaplata, and your shippe shall bee called the Cacafuego, which pretie speach of the Pilots boy minstred matter of laughter to vs, both then and long after.

When our Generall had done what hee would with this Cacafuego, he cast her off, and wee went on our course still towards the West, and not long after met with a ship laden with linnen cloth and fine China dishes of white earth, and great store of China silks, of all which things wee tooke as we listed.

China silks.

The

The owner himſelfe of this ſhippe was in her, who was a Spaniſh Gentleman, from whome our Generall tooke a Fawlcon of golde, with a great emraude in the breaſt thereof, and the Pilot of the ſhippe he tooke alſo with him, and ſo caſt the ſhippe off.

This Pilot brought vs to the hauen of Guatulca, the towne whereof as he told vs, had but 17. Spaniards in it. Aſſoone as we were entred this hauen wee landed, and went preſently to the towne, and to the Towne houſe, where we found a Iudge ſitting in iudgement, he being aſſociate with three other officers, vpon three Negroes that had conſpired the burning of the Towne: both which Iudges, and priſoners we tooke, and brought them a ſhipboord, and cauſed the chiefe Iudge to write his letter to the Towne, to command all the Townelmen to auoid, that we might ſafely water there. Which being done, and they departed, we ranſaked the Towne, and in one houſe we found a pot of the quantitie of a buſhell, full of royals of plate, which we brought to our ſhippe. Guatulca.

And here one Thomas Moone one of our companie, tooke a Spaniſh Gentleman as he was flying out of the towne, and ſearching him, he found a chaine of golde about him, and other iewels, which he tooke, and ſo let him goe.

At this place our Generall among other Spaniards, ſet a ſhoare his Portingall Pilot, which he tooke at the Iſlands of Cape Verde, out of a ſhippe of S. Marie porte of Portingal, and hauing ſet them a ſhoare, we departed hence, and ſailed to the Iſland of " Canon, where our General landed, and brought to ſhoare his owne ſhip, and diſcharged her, mended, and graued her, and furniſhed our ſhippe with water and wood ſufficiently. The Portingall Pilot ſet on land. " The Iſland of Cockles.

And whiles we were here, we eſpied a ſhippe, and ſet ſaile after her, and tooke her, and founde in her two Pilots, and a Spaniſh Gouernour, going for the Iſlands of the Philippinas: we ſearched the ſhippe, and tooke ſome of her marchandizes, and ſo let her goe. Our Generall at this place, and time, thinking himſelfe both in reſpect of his priuate iniuries receiued from the Spaniards, as alſo of their contempts and indignities offered to our countrey and Prince in generall, ſufficiently ſatiſfied, and reuenged: and ſuppoſing that her Maieſtie at his returne would reſt contented with this ſeruice, purpoſed to continue no longer vpon the Spaniſh coaſts, but began to conſider and to conſult of the beſt way for his Countrey. A ſhip with a gouernour for the Iſlands of Philippinas. A purpoſe in Sir Francis to returne by the Northweſt paſſage.

He thought it not good to returne by the Streights, for two ſpeciall cauſes: the one, leaſt the Spaniards ſhould there waite, and attend for him in great number and ſtrength, whoſe hands he being left but one ſhippe, could not poſſibly eſcape. The other cauſe was the dangerous ſituation of the mouth of the Streights in the ſouth ſide, where continuall ſtormes raining and bluſtering, as he found by experience, beſides the ſhoales, and ſands vpon the coaſt, he thought it not a good courſe to aduenture that way: he reſolued therefore to auoide theſe hazards, to goe forward to the Iſlands of the Moluccaes, and therehence to ſaile the courſe of the Portingals by the Cape of Bona Speranza.

Vpon this reſolution, he began to thinke of his beſt way to the Moluccaes, and finding himſelfe where he nowe was becalmed, he ſawe, that of neceſſitie he muſt be forced to take a Spaniſh courſe, namely to ſaile ſomewhat Northerly to get a winde. Wherefore ſet ſaile, and ſailed in longitude 600. leagues at the leaſt for a good winde, and thus much we ſailed from the 16. of April, till the 3. of June.

The 5. day of June, being in 42. degrees towards the pole Arctike, we found the aire ſo colde, that our men being greeuouſly pinched with the ſame, complained of the extremitie thereof, and the further we went, the more the colde increaſed vpon vs. Whereupon we thought it beſt for that time to ſeeke the land, and did ſo, finding it not mountanous, but lowe plaine land, & clad, and couered ouer with ſnowe, ſo that we dyed we backe againe without landing, till we came within 38. degrees towards the line. In which height it pleaſed God to ſend vs into a faire and good Baye, with a good winde to enter the ſame. June. Sir Francis Drake ſailed on the backe ſide of America to 42 deg. of Northerly latitude. 38. degrees.

In this Baye we ankered, and the people of the Countrey, hauing their houſes cloſe by the waters ſide, ſhewed themſelues vnto vs, and ſent a preſent to our Generall.

When they came vnto vs, they greatly wondred at the things that we brought, but our Generall (according to his naturall and accuſtomed humanitie) curteouſly intreated them, and liberally beſtowed on them neceſſarie things to couer their nakednes, whereupon they ſuppoſed vs to be gods, and would not be perſwaded to the contrarie: the preſents which they ſent to our Generall, were feathers, and cals of network. A deſcription of the people and Countrey of Noua Albion.

Their houſes are digged round about with earth, and haue from the vtermoſt brimmes of the circle, clifts of wood ſet vpon them, ioyning cloſe together at the toppe like a ſpire ſteeple, which by reaſon of that cloſenes are very warme.

Their beds in the ground with rushes ſtrowed on it, and lying about the houſe, haue the fire in the

the middest. The men goe naked, the women take bulrushes, and kembe them after the manner of hempe, and thereof make their loose garments, which being knit about their middles, hang downe about their hippes, hauing also about their shoulders a skinne of Deere, with the haire vpon it. These women are very obedient and seruiceable to their husbands.

After they were departed from vs, they came and visited vs the second time, and brought with them feathers and bags of Tabacco for presents: And when they came to the top of the hill (at the bottome whereof we had pitched our tents) they staied themselues: where one appointed for speaker, wearied himselfe with making a long oration, which done, they left their bowes vpon the hill, and came downe with their presents.

A long oration

In the meane time, the women remaining on the hill, tormented themselues lamentably, tearing their flesh from their cheekes, whereby we perceiued that they were about a sacrifice. In the meane time, our Generall, with his companie, went to prayer, and to reading of the Scriptures, at which exercise they were attentiue, & seemed greatly to be affected with it: but when they were come vnto vs, they restored againe vnto vs those things which before we bestowed vpon them.

The newes of our being there, being spread through the Countrey, the people that inhabited round about came downe, and amongst them the King himselfe, a man of a goodly stature, & comely personage, with many other tall, and warlike men: before whose comming were sent two Ambassadors to our Generall, to signifie that their King was comming, in doing of which message, their speech was continued about halfe an howre. This ended, they by signes requested our Generall to send some thing by their hand to their King, as a token that his comming might be in peace: wherein our Generall hauing satisfied them, they returned with glad tidings to their King, who marched to vs with a princely maiestie, the people crying continually after their manner, and as they drewe neere vnto vs, so did they striue to behaue themselues in their actions with comelines.

In the fore front was a man of a goodly personage, who bare the scepter, or mace before the King, whereupon hanged two crownes, a lesse and a bigger, with three chaines of a marueilous length: the crownes were made of knit worke wrought artificially with fethers of diuers colours: the chaines were made of a bonie substance, and few be the persons among them that are admitted to weare them: and of that number also the persons are limited, as some ten, some 12. &c. Next vnto him which bare the scepter, was the King himselfe, with his Garde about his person, clad with Conie skins, & other skins: after them followed the naked cõmon sort of people, euery one hauing his face painted, some with white, some with blacke, and other colours, & hauing in their handes one thing or another for a present, not so much as their children, but they also brought their presents.

In the meane time, our Generall gathered his men together, and marched within his fenced place, making against their approching, a very warlike shewe. They being trooped together in their order, and a generall salutation being made, there was presently a generall silence. Then he that bare the scepter before the King, being informed by another, whome they assigned to that office, with a manly and lustie voice, proclaimed that which the other spake to him in secret, continuing halfe an howre: which ended, and a generall Amen as it were giuen, the King with the whole number of men, and women (the children excepted) came downe without any weapon, who descending to the foote of the hill, set themselues in order.

In comming towards our bulwarks and tents, the scepter bearer began a song, obseruing his measures in a daunce, and that with a stately countenance, whom the King with his Garde, and euery degree of persons following, did in like manner sing and daunce, sauing onely the women which daunced, & kept silence. The Generall permitted them to enter within our bulwarke, where they continued their song and daunce a reasonable time. When they had satisfied themselues, they made signes to our General to sit downe, to whom the King, and diuers others made seuerall orations, or rather supplications, that he would take their prouince & kingdome into his hand, and become their King, making signes that they would resigne vnto him their right and title of the whole land, and become his subiects. In which, to perswade vs the better, the King and the rest, with one consent, and with great reuerence, ioyfully singing a song, did set the crowne vpon his head, inriched his necke with all their chaines, and offred vnto him many other things, honouring him by the name of Hioh, adding thereunto as it seemed, a signe of triumph: which thing our Generall thought not meete to reiect, because he knewe not what honour and profite it might be to our Countrey. Wherefore in the name, and to the vse of her Maiestie, he tooke the scepter, crowne, and dignitie of the said Countrey into his hands, wishing that the riches & treasure thereof might so conueniently be transported to the inriching of her kingdome at home, as it aboundeth in ỹ same.

The King resignes his crowne and kingdome to Sir Francis Drake.

The common sorte of people leauing the King, and his Garde with our Generall, scattered themselues together with their sacrifices among our people, taking a diligent viewe of euery

person:

perfon: and ſuch as pleaſed their fancie, (which were the yongeſt) they incloſing them about offred their ſacrifices vnto them with lamentable weeping, ſcratching, and tearing the fleſh from their faces with their nailes, whereof iſſued abundance of bloode. But wee vſed ſignes to them of miſliking this, and ſtaied their hands from force, and directed them vpwards to the liuing God, whome onely they ought to worſhippe. They ſhewed vnto vs their wounds, and craued helpe of them at our hands, whereupon wee gaue them lotions, plaiſters, and ointments agreeing to the ſtate of their griefes, beſeeching God to cure their diſeaſes. Euery thirde day they brought their ſacrifices vnto vs, vntill they vnderſtoode our meaning, that we had no pleaſure in them: yet they could not be long abſent from vs, but daily frequented our companie to the houre of our departure, which departure ſeemed ſo greeuous vnto them, that their ioy was turned into ſorrow. They intreated vs, that being abſent we would remember them, and by ſtelth prouided a ſacrifice, which we miſliked.

Our neceſſarie buſines being ended, our Generall with his companie trauailed vp into the Countrey to their villages, where wee found heardes of Deere by 1000. in a companie, being moſt large, and fat of bodie. Great heards of Deere.

We found the whole Countrey to be a warren of a ſtrange kinde of Connies, their bodies in bignes as be the Barbarie Connies, their heads as the heads of ours, the feete of a Want, and the taile of a Rat being of great length: vnder her chinne on either ſide a bagge, into the which ſhe gathereth her meate, when ſhe hath filled her bellie abroad. The people eate their bodies, and make great accompt of their ſkinnes for their Kings coate was made of them. Abundance of ſtrange conies

Our Generall called this Countrey, Noua Albion, and that for two cauſes: the one in reſpect of the white bankes and cliffes, which lie towards the ſea: and the other, becauſe it might haue ſome affinitie with our Countrey in name, which ſometime was ſo called. Noua Albion.

There is no part of earth here to be taken vp, wherein there is not a reaſonable quantitie of golde or ſiluer. Gold and ſiluer in the earth of Noua Albion.

At our departure hence our Generall ſet vp a monument of our being there, as alſo of her Maieſties right and title to the ſame, namely a plate, nailed vpon a faire great poſte, whereupon was ingrauen her Maieſties name, the day and yeere of our arriuall there, with the free giuing vp of the prouince and people into her Maieſties hands, together with her highnes picture and armes, in a peece of fiue pence of currant Engliſh money vnder the plate, where vnder was alſo written the name of our Generall.

It ſeemeth that the Spaniards hitherto had neuer bene in this part of the Countrey, neither did euer diſcouer the lande by many degrees, to the South wards of this place.

After we had ſet ſaile from hence, we continued without ſight of land till the 13. day of October following, which day in the morning we fell with certaine Iſlands 8. degrees to the North-ward of the line, from which Iſlands came a great number of Canoas, hauing in ſome of them 4. in ſome 6. and in ſome alſo 14. men, bringing with them coquos, and other fruites. Their Canoas were hollowe within, and cut with great arte, and cunning, being very ſmooth within and without, and bearing a glaſſe as if it were a home daintily burniſhed, hauing a prowe, and a ſterne of one ſorte, yeelding in ward circle wiſe, being of a great heigth, and full of certaine white ſhels for a bauerie, and on each ſide of them lie out two peeces of timber about a yard and a halfe long, more or leſſe, according to the ſmalnes, or bignes of the boate. October. Certaine Iſlands in 8. degrees. Strange Canoas.

This people haue the nether part of their eares cut into a round circle, hanging downe very low vpon their cheekes, whereon they hang things of a reaſonable weight. The nailes of their hands are an inche long, their teeth are as blacke as pitch, and they renew them often, by eating of an herbe with a kinde of powder, which they alwaies carrie about them in a cane for the ſame purpoſe.

We leauing this Iſland the night after we fell with it, the 18. of October, we light vpon diuers others, ſome whereof made a great ſhewe of Inhabitants. Iſlands.

We continued our courſe by the Iſlands of Tagulada, Zelon, and Zewarra, being ſubiect to the Portingals, the firſt whereof hath growing in it great ſtore of Sinnamon.

The 14. of November we fell with the Iſlands of Molucca, which day at night (hauing diuerted our courſe to runne with Tydore) in coaſting along the Iſland of Mutyr, belonging to the King of Ternate, his Deputie or Viceking ſeeing vs at ſea, came with his Canoa to vs without all feare, and came aboord, and after ſome conference with our Generall, willed him in any wiſe to runne in with Ternate, and not with Tydore, aſſuring him that the King would be glad of his comming, and would be ready to doe what he would require, for which purpoſe he himſelfe would that night be with the King, and tell him the newes, with whome if he once deale, he ſhould finde November. The Iſle of Ternate.

finde that as he was a King, so his word should stand: adding further, that if he went to Tydore before he came to Ternate, the King would haue nothing to doe with vs, because he held the Portingall as his enemie: whereupon our Generall resolued to runne with Ternate, where the next morning early we came to anker, at which time our Generall sent a messenger to the king with a veluet cloke for a present, and token of his comming to be in peace, and that he required nothing but traffike, and exchange of merchandize, whereof he had good store in such things as he wanted.

In the meane time, the Vicking had beene with the King according to his promise, signifying vnto him what good things he might receiue from vs by traffike: whereby the King was moued with great liking towards vs, and sent to our Generall with speciall message, that he should haue what things he needed, and would require, with peace, and friendship, and moreouer that he would yeelde himselfe, and the right of his Iland to be at the pleasure and commandement of so famous a Prince as we serued. In token whereof he sent to our Generall a signet, and within short time after came in his owne person, with boates, and Canoas to our ship, to bring her into a better and safer roade then she was in at that present.

The king of Ternate offereth him selfe and his kingdome to the seruice of the Queene of England.

In the meane time, our Generals messenger being come to the Court, was met by certaine noble personages with great solemnitie, and brought to the King, at whose handes he was most friendly and graciously intertained.

The King purposing to come to our shippe, sent before 4. great and large Canoas, in euery one whereof were certaine of his greatest states that were about him, attired in white lawne of cloth of Calicut, hauing ouer their heads from the one ende of the Canoa to the other, a couering of thinne perfumed mats, borne vp with a frame made of reedes for the same vse, vnder which euery one did sit in his order according to his dignitie, to keepe him from the heate of the Sunne, diuers of whome being of good age, and grauitie, did make an ancient and fatherly shewe. There were also diuers yong and comely men attired in white, as were the others: the rest were souldiers, which stoode in comely order round about on both sides, without whome sate the rowers in certaine galleries, which being three on a side all along the Canoas, did lie off from the side thereof 3. or 4. yardes, one being orderly builded lower then another, in euery of which galleries, were the number of 4. score rowers.

The great and strange Canoas of the King of Ternate.

These Canoas were furnished with warlike munition, euery man for the most part hauing his sworde, and target, with his dagger, beside other weapons, as launces, caleuers, darts, bowes, and arrowes: also euery Canoa had a small cast base mounted at the least one full yarde vpon a sticke set vpright.

Thus comming neere our shippe, in order they rowed about vs, one after another, and passing by, did their homage with great solemnitie, the great personages beginning with great grauitie & fatherly countenances, signifying that ỳ king had sent them to conduct our ship into a better road.

The king of Ternate came to visite Sir Franc. Drake.

Soone after, the King himselfe repaired, accompanied with 6. graue and ancient persons, who did their obeisance with maruelous humilitie. The King was a man of tall stature, and seemed to be much delighted with the sound of our musicke, to whome as also to his nobilitie, our Generall gaue presents, where with they were passing well contented.

At length the King craued leaue of our Generall to depart, promising the next day to come aboord, and in the meane time to send vs such victuals, as were necessarie for our prouision: for the same night we receiued of them meale, which they call Sago, made of the tops of certaine trees, tasting in the mouth like sowre curds, but melteth like sugar, whereof they make certaine cakes, which may be kept the space of ten yeeres, and yet then good to be eaten. Wee had of them store of rice, hennes, vnperfect and liquid sugar, sugar canes, and a fruite which they call Figo, with store of cloues.

Sago a kind of meale.

The King hauing promised to come aboord, brake his promise, but sent his brother to make his excuse, and to intreate our Generall to come on shoare, offring himselfe pawne aboord for his safe returne. Whereunto our Generall consented not, vpon mislike conceiued of the breach of his promise, the whole companie also vtterly refusing it. But to satisfie him, our General sent certaine of his Gentlemen to the Court, to accompanie the Kings brother, reseruing the Vicking for their safe returne. They were receiued of another brother of the kings, and other states, and were conducted with great honour to the Castle. The place that they were brought vnto, was a large and faire house, where were at the least 1000. persons assembled.

A castle in Ternate.

The King being yet absent, there sate in their places 60. graue personages, all which were said to be of the kings Counsell. There were besides 4. graue persons, apparelled all in red, downe to the ground, and attired on their heads like the Turkes, and these were said to be Romanes, and Ligiers there to keepe continual traffike with the people of Ternate. There were also two Turkes

Romans and Turks Ligiers in Ternate.

Ligiers

Ligiers in this place, and one Italian. The king at last came in garded with 12. launces couered ouer with a rich canopie, with embossed golde. Our men accompanied with one of their Captaines called Moro, rising to meete him, he gratiously did welcome, and intertaine them. He was attired after the manner of the Countrey, but more sumptuously then the rest. From his waste downe to the ground, was all cloth of golde, and the same very riche: his legs were bare, but on his feete were a paire of shoes, made of Cordouan skinne. In the attire of his head were finely wreathed looped rings of golde, and about his necke he had a chaine of perfect golde, the linkes whereof were great, and one folde double. On his fingers hee had sixe very faire iewels, and sitting in his chaire of estate, at his right hand stoode a page with a fanne in his hand, breathing and gathering the aire to the King. The fanne was in length two foote, and in breadth one foote, set with 8. saphyres, richly imbrodered, and knit to a staffe 3. foote in length, by the which the Page did hold, and moue it. Our Gentlemen hauing deliuered their message, and receiued order accordingly, were licensed to depart, being safely conducted backe againe by one of the Kings Councell. The maiestie of the King.

This Island is the chiefest of all the Islands of Molucca, and the King hereof is king of 70. Islands besides. The king with his people are Moores in religion, obseruing certaine newe Moones, with fastings: during which fasts, they neither eate nor drinke in the day, but in the night.

After that our Gentlemen were returned, and that we had here by the fauour of the king receiued all necessarie things that the place could yeelde vs: our General considering the great distance, and how farre he was yet off from his Countrey, thought it not best here to linger the time any longer, but waying his ankers, set out of the Island, and sailed to a certaine litle Island to the Southwards of Selebes, where we graued our ships, and continued there in that and other businesse, 26. daies. This Island is throwly grown with wood of a large and high growth, very streight and without boughes, saue onely in the head or top, whose leaues are not much differing from our broome in England. Amongst these trees night by night, through the whole land, did shew themselues an infinite swarme of fierie wormes flying in the aire, whose bodies being no bigger then our common English flies, make such a shew, and light, as if euery twig or tree had bene a burning candle. In this place breedeth also wonderfull store of Bats, as bigge as large hennes: of Crayfishes also here wanted no plentie, and they of exceeding bignes, one whereof was sufficient for 4. hungrie stomacks at a dinner, being also very good, and restoring meate, whereof we had experience: and they digge themselues holes in the earth like Conies. A litle Island to the Southward of Selebes. Fiery wormes Bats. Crayfishes.

When we had ended our busines here, we waied, and set saile to runne for the Moluccaes: but hauing at that time a bad winde, and being amongst the Islands, with much difficultie we recouered to the Northward of the Island of Selebes, where by reason of contrarie windes not able to continue our course to runne Westwards, we were inforced to alter the same to the Southward againe, finding that course also to be very hard and dangerous for vs, by reason of infinite shoales which lie off, and among the Islands: whereof we had too much triall to the hazard and danger of our shippe and liues. For of all other daies vpon the 9. of Januarie, in the yeere 1579. wee came suddenly vpon a rocke, where we stucke fast from 8. of the clocke at night, til 4. of the clocke in the afternoone the next day, being in deede out of all hope to escape the danger: but our Generall as he had alwaies hitherto shewed himselfe couragious, and of a good confidence in the mercie and protection of God: so now he continued in the same, and lest he should seeme to perish wilfully, both he, and we did our best indeuour to saue our selues, which it pleased God so to blesse, that in the ende we cleared our selues most happily of the danger. Januarie 9. anno 1579. Their danger vpon a rocke.

We lightned our shippe vpon the rockes, of 3. tunne of cloues, 8. peeces of ordinance, & certaine meale and beanes: and then the winde (as it were in a moment by the speciall grace of God,) changing from the starre boord to the larboord of the shippe, wee hoised our sailes, and the happie gale droue our shippe off the rocke into the sea againe, to the no litle comfort of all our hartes, for which we gaue God such praise and thanks, as so great a benefite required. Cloues. The helpe of a current in the deliuerie.

The 8. day of Februarie following, we fell with the fruitful Island of Baratene, hauing in the meane time suffered many dangers by windes and shoalds. The people of this Island are comely in body, and stature, and of a ciuill behauiour, iust in dealing, and curteous to strangers, whereof we had the experience sundry waies, they being most glad of our presence, and very readie to relieue our wants in those things which their Countrey did yeelde. The men goe naked, sauing their heads and priuities, euery man hauing some thing or other hanging at their eares. Their women are couered from the middle downe to the foote, wearing a great number of bracelets vpon their armes, for some had 8. vpon each arme, being made some of bone, some of horne, and some of shalle, the lightest whereof by our estimation waied two ounces apeece. Februarie. Baratene Island.

With this people linnen cloth is good marchandize, and of good request, whereof they make rols

rols for their heads, and girdles to weare about them.

Their Iland is both riche and fruitfull: riche in golde, siluer, copper, and sulphur, wherin they seeme skilfull and expert, not onely to trie the same, but in working it also artificially into any forme and fashion that pleaseth them.

Their fruites be diuers, and plentiful, as nutmegs, ginger, long pepper, lemmons, cucumbers, coquos, figu, sagu, with diuers other sortes: and among all the rest, we had one fruite, in bignes, forme, and huske, like a baye berrie, hard of substance, and pleasant of taste, which being sodden, becommeth soft, and is a most good and wholsome victuall, whereof we tooke reasonable store, as we did also of the other fruites and spices: so that to confesse a trueth, since the time that we first set out of our owne Countrey of England, we happened vpon no place, (Ternate onely excepted) wherin we found more comfortes and better meanes of refreshing.

Commendation of the Iland of Barateue.

Iana maior.

At our departure from Barateue, we set our course for Iaua maior, where arriuing, wee founde great courtesie, and honorable entertainment. This Iland is gouerned by 5. Kings, whom they call Raiah: as Raiah Donaw, and Raiah Mang Bange, and Raiah Cabuccapollo, which liue as hauing one spirite, and one minde.

Of these fiue we had foure a shipboord at once, and two or three often. They are wonderfully delighted in coloured clothes, as red and greene: their vpper parts of their bodies are naked, saue their heads, whereupon they weare a Turkish roll, as doe the Moluccians: from the middle downward, they weare a pintado of silke, trailing vpon the ground, in colour as they best like.

The manners of the people of Iaua.

The Moluccians hate that their women should be seene of strangers: but these offer them of high curtesie, yea the kings themselues.

The people are of goodly stature, and warlike, well prouided of swordes and targets, with daggers, all being of their owne worke, and most artificially done, both in tempering their mettall, as also in the forme, whereof we bought reasonable store.

They haue an house in euery village for their common assemblie: euery day they meete twise, men, women, and children, bringing with them such victuals as they thinke good, some fruites, some rice boiled, some hennes roasted, some sagu, hauing a table made 3. foote from the ground, whereon they set their meate, that euery person sitting at the table may eate, one reioycing in the companie of another.

A strange fashion of boiling rice.

They boile their rice in an earthen pot, made in forme of a sugar loafe, being full of holes, as our pots which we water our gardens withall, and it is open at the great ende, wherein they put their rice drie, without any moisture. In the meane time they haue readie another great earthen pot, set fast in a fornace, boiling full of water, whereinto they put their pot with rice, by such measure, that they swelling become soft at the first, and by their swelling stopping the holes of the pot, admit no more water to enter, but the more they are boiled, the harder and more firme substance they become, so that in the ende they are a firme and good bread, of the which with oile, butter, sugar, and other spices, they make diuers sortes of meates very pleasant of taste, and nourishing to nature.

The French pocks.

The French pocks is here very common to all, and they helpe themselues, sitting naked from ten to two in the Sunne, whereby the venemous humour is drawne out. Not long before our departure, they told vs, that not farre off there were such great ships as ours, wishing vs to beware: vpon this our Captaine would stay no longer.

From Iaua Maior we sailed for the Cape of Good Hope, which was the first land we fel with all: neither did we touch with it, or any other land, vntill we came to Sierra Leona, vpon the coast of Guinea: not withstanding we ranne hard aboord the Cape, finding the report of the Portingals to be most false, who affirme, that it is the most dangerous Cape of the world, neuer without intollerable stormes and present danger to trauailers, which come neere the same.

The Cape of Bona Speranza not so dangerous as the Portingals haue giuen out.

This Cape is a most stately thing, and the fairest Cape we sawe in the whole circumference of the earth, and we passed by it the 18. of June.

Sierra Leona. Diuers trees.

From thence we continued our course to Sierra Leona, on the coast of Guinea, where we arriued the 22. of July, and found necessarie prouisions, great store of Elephants, Diuers vpon trees of one kinde, spawning and increasing infinitely, the Diuer suffering no budde to growe. We departed thence the 24. day.

We arriued in England the third of Nouember 1580. being the third yeere of our departure.

Instructions

Inſtructions giuen by the honourable, the Lordes of the Counſell, to Edward Fenton Eſquire, for the order to be obſerued in the voyage recommended to him for the Eaſt Indies and Cathay. Aprill 9. 1582.

FIrſt you ſhall enter as captaine Generall, into the charge and gouernement of theſe ſhippes, viz. the Beare Gallion, the Edward Bonauenture, the Barke Francis, and the ſmall Frigate or Pinneſſe.

2 Item you ſhall appoint for the furniſhing of the veſſels in the whole, to the number of 200. able perſons, accompting in that number the Gentlemen and their men, the Miniſters, Chirurgians, Factors, &c. which ſaid number is no way to be exceeded, whereof as many as may be, to be ſea men, and ſhal diſtribute them into euery veſſell, as by aduiſe here before your going ſhall be thought meete: Prouided that you ſhall not receiue vnder your charge & gouernement, any diſordered or mutinous perſon, but that vpon knowledge had, you ſhall remoue him before your departure hence, or by ẏ way as ſoone as you can conueniently auoide him, and receiue better in their places.

3 Item, for the more and better circumſpect execution, and determination in any waighty cauſes incident in this voyage, we will that you ſhall take vnto you for aſſiſtances, captaine Hawkins, captaine Ward, M. Nicholas Parker, M. Maddox, M. Walker, Euans, Randolph, Shaw, Barbew Talboys, with whom you ſhall conſult and conferre in all cauſes, matters, and actions of importance, not prouided for in theſe inſtructions touching this ſeruice now in hand. And in all ſuch matters ſo handled, argued, and debated, we thinke it conuenient that alwayes to be executed, which you ſhall thinke meeteſt with the aſſent alſo of any 4. of them, the matter hauing bene debated, and ſo aſſented vnto, in the preſence of your ſaid Aſſiſtants. And in caſe that if ſuch conference and debating the opinions of the aforeſaide Aſſiſtants be founde in effect any way to differ, then it is thought meete, that all ſuch matters ſo argued vpon, ſhall reſt to be put in execution in ſuch ſort, as you ſhall thinke moſt meeteſt, hauing the aſſent of any 4. of them as aforeſaide. And if any of theſe Aſſiſtants ſhall die, then the number of the one halfe of the Suruiuours to ioyne with the General Captaine for conſent in all things aforeſaid.

4 Of all which your aſſemblies and conſultations, for the matters aforeſaid, we thinke it very conuenient, that a particular and true note ſhould be kept, for which cauſe we appoint maſter Maddox miniſter, and if he ſhould deceaſe, then the Generall with halfe the Aſſiſtants Suruiuours, to name one to keepe a booke of all ſuch matters as ſhall be brought in conſultation, and of all ſuch reaſons as ſhall be propounded by any perſon, either on the one ſide, or on the other: what was reſolued on, and by whoſe conſent, who diſſented therefrom, and for what cauſes. In which booke he ſhall in the beginning of the note of euery ſuch aſſemblie, ſet downe particularly the day, and the place, if it may be, the names of the perſons then preſent, and vpon what occaſion the ſaid conſultation was appointed or holden, and ſhall haue to euery acte, the hands of the Generall, and of all, or ſo many of the ſaid Aſſiſtants as will ſubſcribe: which booke the ſaid maſter Maddox, or the other vpon his deceaſe appointed in his place ſhall keepe ſecrete, and in good order to be exhibited vnto vs, at your returne home.

5 Item, if there happen any perſon or perſons imployed in this ſeruice, of what calling or condition he or they ſhall be, ſhould conſpire, or attempt priuately or publikely, any treaſon, mutinie, or other diſcord, either touching the taking away of your owne life, or any other of authoritie vnder you, whereby her Maieſties ſeruice in this voiage might thereby be ouerthrowne, or impugned: we will therefore, that vpon iuſt proofe made of any ſuch treaſon, mutenie, or any other diſcord attempted as aforeſaid, the ſame ſhall be puniſhed by you, or your Liuetenant, according to the qualitie and enormitie of the facte. Prouided alwayes, and it ſhall not be lawfull neither for you, nor for your Liuetenant to exceede the puniſhment of any perſon, by loſſe of life or limme, vnleſſe the partie ſhall be iudged to haue deſerued it by the reſt of your Aſſiſtants, as is before expreſſed, or at the leaſt by foure of them. And that which ſhall concerne life to be by the verdict of twelue men, of the companie employed in this voyage, to be impanelled for that purpoſe, with the obſeruation of the forme of our Countrie lawes in that behalfe, as neere as you may. Prouided, if it ſhall not appeare, that the forbearing of the execution by death, ſhall miniſter cauſe to increaſe the facte of the offendour, then it were better to conuince the partie of his facte, by the othes of 12. indifferent perſons, and to commit him to hard impriſonment, vntil the returne. And aſwell of the factes committed by any, as alſo of the proofe thereof, and of the opinions of you, and your Aſſiſtants, and the maner of the puniſhment, the Regiſter ſhall make a particuler and true note, in the booke of your conſultation, as is before appointed.

6 Item

M. Carlile vpon occasion went not in the voyage.

6 Item, you shall not remoue captaine William Hawkins your lieutenant, master captaine Luke Ward your Viceadmirall, or captaine of the Edward Bonauenture, nor captaine Carlile from his charge by land, whō we will not to refuse any such seruice as shall be appointed to him by the Generall and the councell, nor any captaine of other vessels from their charges, but vpon iust cause dulie prooued, and by consent of your Assistants, or 4. of them at the least.

7 Item, for the succession of the Generall gouernour of this whole voyage, if it should please God to take him away, it is thought meete that there should bee the names of such Gentlemen seuerally set downe to succeed in his place one after the other, which are seuerally written in parchment, included in bals of Waxe, sealed with her Maiesties signet, put into two coffers locked with three seuerall locks, whereof one key is to be in the custodie of captaine Luke Ward, the other of William Hawkins, the third of master Maddox the minister, and the same two coffers to bee put into two seuerall shippes, videlicet, the one coffer in the Gallion, in the custodie of the Generall, the other in the Edward Bonauenture in the custodie of the Viceadmirall, the same two coffers vpon any such casualtie of the Generals death by consent of the Assistants which shall ouerliue, to be opened, and the partie therein named to succeed in the place, who shall thereupon take vpon him the charge in the said voiage according to these instructions, in such sort as if they had bene specially directed vnto him, and the rest of the companie so to take and repute him in euery respect, as they will answer to the contrarie. But if it shall so fall out, (as we hope it will) that there shall bee no such need, but that the Generall doe continue still, then shall you at your returne deliuer backe the sayd coffers and bals of waxe sealed in such sort as they be, without opening them, vnlesse it be in the case aforesayd.

8 You shall make a iust and true inuentorie in euery ship and vessell appointed for this voyage of all the tackle, munition, and furniture belonging to them at their setting foorth hence, and of all the prouisions whatsoeuer, and one copie therof vnder your hand, & vnder the hands of your Viceadmirall and lieutenant, to be deliuered to the Erle of Leicester, and the other to the Gouernour of the companie for them before your departure hence, and the like to be done at your returne home of all things then remaining in the said shippes and vessels, with a true certificate how and by what means any parcell of the same shall haue bene spent or lost.

9 Item, you shal vse all diligence possible to depart from Southhampton with your said ships and vessels, before the last of this present moneth of Aprill, and so goe on your course by Cape de bona Sperança, not passing by the streight of Magellan, either going or returning, except vpon great occasion incident, that shall be thought otherwise good to you, by the aduise and consent of your said Assistants, or 4. of them at the least.

10 Item, you shall not passe to the Northeastward the fortie degree of latitude at the most, but shall take your right course to the Isles of Moluccaes, for the better discouerie of the Northwest passage, if without hinderance of your trade, and within the same degree you can get any knowledge touching that passage, whereof you shal do well to bee inquisitiue as occasion in this sort may serue.

11 Itē, you shall haue speciall regard after your departure from the coast of England, so to order your course as that your shippes and vessels loose not one another, but keepe company together both outward and homeward. And least they happen to seuer the one from the other by tempest or otherwise, it shal not be amisse that you appoint to the captains and masters, certain places wherein you will stay certaine daies. And euery ship passing aforehand, and not knowing what is become of the other ships to leaue vpon euery Promontorie or Cape, a token to stand in sight with a writing lapped in lead to declare the day of their passage. And if any wilfulnesse or negligence in this behalfe shall appeare in any person or persons that shall haue charge of any of the ships or vessels aforesayd, or if they or any of them shall doe otherwise then to them appertaineth, you shall punish such offenders sharply to the example of others.

12 Item, we do straightly enioine you, and consequently all the rest imployed in this voiage in any wise, and as you and they will answere the contrary at your comming home by the lawes of this realme, that neither going, tarying abroad, nor returning, you doe spoile or take any thing frō any of the Queens Maiesties friends or allies, or any christians, without paying iustly for ꝑ same, nor that you vse any maner of violence or force against any such, except in your owne defence, if you shall be set vpon, or otherwise be forced for your owne safegard to do it.

13 Itē, we will that you deale altogether in this voiage like good and honest merchants, trafficquing & exchanging ware for ware, with all curtesie to ꝑ nations you shall deale with, as wel Ethniks as others, & for that cause you shal instruct al those ꝑ shal go with you, that whensoeuer you or any of you shal happen to come in any place to conference wᵗ the people of those parts, ꝑ in all your doings

doings and theirs, you and they so behaue your selues towards the said people, as may rather procure their friendship & good liking toward you by courteousnesse, then to moue them to offence, or mislyking, & especially you shal haue great care of ỹ performance of your word, & promise to them.

14 Item we will, that by the aduise of your Assistants, in places where you and they shall thinke most fitte, you settle if you can, a beginning of a further trade to be had hereafter: and from such places doe bring ouer with you some fewe men, and women, if you may, and doe also leaue same one or two, or more, as to you, and your Assistants shall seeme conuenient of our nation with them for pledges, and to learne the tongue, and secrets of the Countries, hauing diligent care, that in deliuering, and taking of hostages, you deliuer not personages of more value then you receiue, but rather deliuer meane persons vnder colour of men of value, as the Infidels doe for the most part vse. Prouided that you stay not longer to make continuance of further trade, then shalbe expedient in good exchange of the wares presently caried with you. Strange people to be brought home.

15 Item you shall haue care, and giue generall warning, that no person of what calling soeuer he be, shall take vp, or keepe to himselfe and his priuate vse, any stone, pearle, golde, siluer, or other matter of commoditie to be had or found in places where you shall come, but he the said person so stayed of such stone, pearle, golde, siluer, or other matter of commoditie, shall with all speede, or so soone as he can detect the same, and make deliuerie thereof to your selfe, or your Viceadmirall, or Lieuetenant, and the Factor appointed for this voyage, vpon paine of forfaiture of all the recompense he is to haue for his seruice in this voyage by share, or otherwise: and further to receiue such punishmẽt, as to you, & your Assistants, or the more part of them shal seeme good, & otherwise to be punished here at his returne, if according to the qualitie of his offence, it shal be thought needfull.

16 Item, if the Captaines, Marchants, or any other, shall haue any apparell, iewels, chaines, armour, or any other thing whatsoeuer, which may be desired in Countries where they shall traffique, that it shal not be lawful for them, or any of them to traffique, or sell any thing thereof for their priuate accompt: but the same shall be praysed by the most of those that shalbe in commission in the places where the same may be so required, rated at such value, as it may bee reasonably worth in England, and then solde to the profite of the whole voyage, and to goe as in aduenture for those to whom it doeth appertaine.

17 Item you your selfe shall in the Gallion keepe one booke, and the Factors appointed for the same ship another, wherein shalbe a iust accompt kept, as well of the marchandize caried hence, as of those you shall bring home. And as well at your setting forth, as frõ time to time, as exchange shalbe made, you shall set your hand to their booke, and they theirs to yours, and the like order shall you see that the Captaine, and the Factors in the Edward Bonauenture, shall vse in their shippe, and the other Captaines and Factors in eache other vessell.

18 Item you shall giue straight order to restraine, that none shal make any Cartes, or descriptions of the said voyage, but such as shalbe deputed by you the Generall, which said Carts and descriptions, we thinke meete that you the Generall shall take into your hands, at your returne to this our coast of England, leauing with them no coppie, & to present them vnto vs at your returne: the like to be done if they finde any Cartes, or Mappes in those Countries.

19 Item you shall at your returne so direct your course, that all the shippes vnder your gouernment may come home together, and arriue here in the riuer of Thames, if it may conueniently be. And whersoeuer in this Realme you, or any of the shippes shall arriue, you shall giue special and straighe order, that no person of what condition so euer he be, shall vnlade, or bring on lande, or forth of the vessels in which it came, any part or parcell of marchandize, or matter of commoditie bought in any of the said vessels, vntill we being certified of your, or their arriuall, shall giue further order and direction therein, vnder the penalties and forfaitures expressed in the 15. article, against such as shall retayne any thing to their priuate vse, as in the saide article is further expressed.

20 Item to the intent that all such persons, as shall goe with you in this voyage may better vnderstand, what they ought to doe, and what to auoyde, we thinke it requisite, that aswell out of these, as otherwise with the aduise of your Assistants, and masters of the ships, you shall cause some conuenient order to be set downe in writing for their better gouernment both at Sea, and land, if they shall happen to goe on land any where. And the same to be openly read, and made knowen vnto them, to the intent they may vnderstand how to behaue themselues, and vpon any fault committed, not to haue any excuse to pretend ignorance, and so to auoide such punishment, as it is requisite to haue ministred, for the keeping of them in good order.

21 And to the end God may blesse this voyage with happy and prosperous successe, you shall haue an especiall care to see that reuerence and respect be had to the ministers appointed to accompanie you in this voyage, as appertaineth to their place and calling, and to see such good orders

as

as by them shalbe set downe for reformation of life and maners, onely obeyed and performed, by causing the transgressours and contemners of the same to be seuerely punished, and the ministers to remoue sometime from one vessell to another.

22 Prouided alwayes, that the whole direction and gouernment of the people, life and limme excepted, as in the fifth article, and the course of this voyage shalbe wholy at your disposition, except in the course by the Streight of Magellan, either outward or homeward, and in your passage by the Northward of 40. degrees in latitude, wherein you shall followe direction set downe in the 9. and 10. articles, as also in the displacing of the Captaine of the Edward Bonauenture, & other captaines, wherein you shal followe the order appointed in the 6. article: Prouided that we meane not by this article to derogate any thing to the authoritie of your Assistants established in the third article, or in any other article of these instructions.

23 Item, in all occasions and enterprises that may fall out to be vpon the land, wee will that captaine Carlile shall haue the generall and chiefe charge thereof.

24 And finally wee require you and euery of you to haue a due regard to the obseruation and accomplishment of these our instructions, and of all such other things, as may any kind of way tend to the furtherance and benefite of this seruice committed to your charge.

The voyage intended towards China, wherein M. Edward Fenton was appointed Generall, written by master Luke Ward his Vice-admirall, and Captaine of the Edward Bonauenture, begun Anno Dom. 1582.

THe second of Aprill I departed with the Edward Bonauenture from Blackewall, and the 19. of the same arriued in Nettle rode at Hampton, where I found riding the Gallion Leicester, and so remaining there till the first of May, wee set saile thence in the forenoone, being of vs in the whole Fleete 4. saile.

1 The Gallion Leicester of 400. tunnes Admirall, whereof was Generall, captaine Edward Fenton and William Hawkins the ponger lieutenant Generall in her, and Christopher Hall, master.

2 The Edward Bonauenture of 300. tunnes Viceadmirall, whereof was Captaine Luke Ward, and Thomas Perrie master.

3 The Francis of 40. tunnes, whereof was captaine John Drake, and William Parkam master.

4 The Elizabeth of 50. tunnes, whereof was Captaine Thomas Skeuington and Rafe Crane master.

We spent by meanes partly of businesse, and partly of contrary winds, the moneth of May vpon the coast, and then leauing the land we put off to sea, and proceeded on our voiage intended by the grace of God for China: vntill the moneth of August following, nothing fell out much worthy the knowledge of the world, which is not common to all Nauigants, but about the beginning of August aforesayd, being somewhat neere the coast of Guinie, vpon the shooting off of a peece & the putting out of a flag in the Admiral, I went on boord, & M. Walker, M. Shaw, M. Geffries, our master & pilot with me, where the generall counsel was assembled to consider of two points, viz.

The first, whether it were necessarie to water presently or not, which was thought very needfull of all men, and so concluded.

The 2. where the best and aptest place was to water in, which was thought of the greater number to be at Sierraleona, on the coast of Guinie, which was also concluded, and by the Master, and Pilotes agreed to goe hence Southeast, which determined, we returned aboord, and left Nicholas Allen, my master Carpenter aboord the Gallion, and his boye to take physike.

The 2. day of August, we went all day, and all night Southeast: the forenoone in staying our foremast with a send of the Sea hauing the top saile, and all abrode, we cracked the same within 3. yardes vnder the toppe, since which time we were in great feare of it.

The 3. day at noone master Hall, and Edward Silman, with others came aboord, and brought our master Carpenter, and one of their Carpenters with him, to mend our maste which we meaned not with hall: and after some conference they went aboord againe. We went al this day Southeast and East Southeast, till 6. a clocke at night, that we saw the lande of Guinie, which bare Northeast of vs about 12. leagues off, which seene, we sounded, and had no ground: then went I, and our Master and Pilote aboord the Admirall, & after many debatements, concluded to runne in Northeast by East, and at 11. at night we came aboord againe, and went all night Northeast by East.

The 4 at 8. in ꝑ forenoone, we were within 2. leagues of ꝑ land which bare of vs northeast, which

rest

roſe like a high hill full of woodes, and of each ſide lowe land, we being perſwaded by our Pilots that it was the entrance into Sierraleona, went in Northeaſt vntil we were within an halfe league of the ſhore, and had brought the South point Southeaſt by Eaſt of vs. At 11. a clocke we finding it a baie, and not Sierraleona, brought our tacks aboord and ſtood along Weſt by North and Weſt larboord tacked.

In this time our Admirals pinnace rowed in, and went on land vpon the South ſide of the baie, and the Elizabeths boate with her. They found houſes of boughes, and in one of the houſes the tongue of a beaſt, and a bullocks tongue freſh killed. Alſo a lake with plentie of freſh water, and freſh water fiſh in it hard by the ſea ſide: they found vpie pomegranates, and peaſe like nuts, with other vnknowen fruites vnder the trees. The Elizabeth ranne in, and brought the South point South by Weſt of her, and ankred within Faulcon ſhot of the ſhore in 7. fadome oze, where they take fiſh with hookes, while he ſtaied for the boates.

The 4. all the afternoone we ran along the coaſt (which lieth Northweſt by North, and Southeaſt by South) Weſt, and within a point one way or the other, ſeeing the land vnder our Lee, 3. or 4. leagues off, and all night likewiſe.

The 5. day at 6. in the morning wee went Weſt northweſt, and Northweſt by Weſt with a ſtanke gale, the Northermoſt land bearing Northweſt off vs, 12. leagues, & the Northeaſt land vnder our Lee within 3. leagues. So we ran along till 12. at noone: then the wind ſhifted vpon vs to the North northweſt, till 3. afternoone, all which time it blew litle but rained much. I went off with our ſkiffe, and ankred in 18. fadome with a grapnell, and found the currant to ſet to the Eaſtwards. At 3. the wind came againe to South a franke gale, ſo we went along within 3. leagues of the ſhore Weſt by South larboord tacked. At 6. at night wee ſhaped our courſe off as neere as we could lie Weſt next hand, and ſo went all night.

The 6. day at 6. a clocke in the fooreneone, being 5. leagues off the ſhore, we went in Northweſt, and ſo the ſhips ſtood along. At 7. a clocke I went aboord the Elizabeth, and ran into the ſhore Northweſt and by North, till we were within a league and a halfe of the land, and ſaw a breach of hallow water vnder our Lee, then we tacked of Weſt being in 7. fadome ſand at 9. a clocke: and ſo running along, we ſaw as we thinke two Iſlands, but durſt not put in with them, leaſt the ſhips ſhould follow vs and be on the Lee ſhore. About 11. a clocke we brought ꝑ Weſtermoſt land North of vs, and ſo we edged off after our ſhips, and at one afternoone I got aboord the Edward againe, and ſtood hence larboord tacked, Weſt & Weſt northweſt, till 8. a clocke at night, that we came to anker in 10. fadome lacke a fourth part, grey ſand, and there rid all night. During which time, we found a tide to run very ſtrong, which runneth in the floud North northeaſt, and the ebbe ſetteth out South southweſt.

The 7. of Auguſt about 7. afternoone, M. Hawkins came aboord vs, with whom my ſelfe, our maſter & pilot had ſome conference what was beſt for vs to do, and how to ſeeke a harbour being on a ſhallow vnknowen to vs all. In the end we thought good at 9. a clocke to weie, & ſend the Francis afore, and to get into deeper water if we could, & when it were cleare to ſeeke the harbour. At 10. a clocke the ebbe was come, & although it were thicke and rainie weather, we weied, and ran North northweſt, and Northweſt til noone, and then ſeeing the miſerable weather of raine & fog, we ankred in 9. and a half fadome, hauing gone before betweene 12. fadome, to 4. fadome, 3. parts ſand without ſight of land. At 4. in the afternoone it cleared vp, and we had ſight of the Elizabeth, and of a ſmall Iſland very high, like the pike of Tenerif, 6. leagues off vs, Northeaſt, then waxing thicke and rainie againe. The 8. after 9. a clocke afore noone, wee weied, and went hence Northweſt, vntill 12. at noone, and from noone till 6. at night we went North next hand to ſeeke the ſhore which we had ſight of at 5. in the afternoone, and bare northeaſt of vs being high land. The round Iſle and two ſmall Iſlands which we ſaw by it, bare Eaſt. and to the Southwards at 5. at night. After 6. at night the Elizabeth came vp and told vs, ſhe loſt an anker and a cable, and was put to Leewards into 17. foote water by truſting to an old cable.

Then the Gallion came roome, and we all ankred at 7. a clocke in 14. fadome ſand: Our ſhip taped vpon the floud Weſt ſouthweſt.

The 9. at 3. in the morning our Admirall ſhot off a peece, and at 4. wee weied and went hence Northeaſt. At 5. in the morning we ſaw the land along, and the Iſland which wee ſaw the night before and diuers other Iſlands about it, and ſo ran in Northeaſt vntill we had brought our ſelues thwart of the riuer, and then ran in Eaſt about 6. at night, being a league within the riuer. Our Admirall ſhot off a piece, and there we ankred in eight fadome ſand. Being at anker, I manned our boat and would haue gone aboord the Admirall, but could not the floud was bent ſo ſtrong, and ſhe rid halfe a mile beneath vs in the tide, but we had no tide.

The

The 10. in the morning at 5. a clocke I sent our skiffe with our pilot in her to find the rode, and watring place: in the meane time at 6. a clocke, we set saile with our ship, and being calme wee towed with our boat vntill 10. and then ankered a mile short of the watering place. After dinner I went a land with my skiffe to finde timber to fish our masse, and searching along the shore wee found a good watring place: and further seeking in the wood, which all the countrey is ful of, and of diuers sortes, we found Limmon trees ful of fruits: also trees growing by the water side with the stalkes hung full of oisters and great periwinckles and crabbes among st them: wee found dyie pomegranates with many other fruits vnknowen to vs. In the meane time our Admirall and the Edward, with the barkes, hauing a gale at West, set saile, and ran vp and ankred in the rode before the accustomed watring place.

About 5. afternoone I came aboord, & brought 6. barricoes of water with me: after, I went and supped aboord with the Generall, where we conferred, and about 8. at night I came aboord again and rid quietly all night.

The 11. day our long boat with the master and pilot, went aland & caried all our water caske, which they washed and filled to season, & our Cooper repaired part of the same. In the meane time I with our carpenters & others went in our skiffe, and found a tree to fish our foremast, which we felled, but not able to carie it away because it would not swim, we left it till a better meane were made to boie it. After I with my companie went vp into a prettie riuer of fresh water, a mile into the countrey, which was full of oisters growing vpon trees, and very fresh water, which done, we gathered some Limmons and came aboord. The 12. being Sunday, we had a generall communion in both the ships. After dinner I went aboord to the generall, and spent the afternoone with him in conference, and supped aboord, and diuers strangers with me.

The 13. of August, we were assembled aboord the Admirall, for the desciding of controuersies, betweene the Captaine, Master, and companie of the Elizabeth: by proofe it appeared vnto vs, that the Master Ralfe Crane, had in speech deserued some punishment, so that we by generall consent agreed, that he should be put into the Bilbowes, which was done: but within halfe an howre, at mine, and others request, he was vpon his submission released. Which done, we dined al with the General, and after dinner, with my boate and skiffe, we went and brought the tree for fishes for our masse into a sandie Baye, by our watring place, to haue it squared, which done with our washers, at night we returned aboord.

The 14. in the forenoone, we washed our ship, and scraped off the Barnackles, the Generall came aboord, and dined with me, and Captaine Drake, Master Hall, and others. After dinner wee went to the old watring place. From thence I went aboord the Elizabeth, and brought diuers things away: then we carried part of our water caske to the other watring place, & there I met with M. Hawkins, M. Maddox, M. Walker, M. Lewes, and diuers others, which al supped aland there with sodden Oysters, & a fresh Mullet, and Rice potage, and came late aboord of all hands.

The 15. day we romaged, and got vp our strong beere out of the foremost roome, and placed it by the maine masse.

The 16. day in the forenoone, we stricke downe most of our Ordinance, and bestowed most of our things abaft masse in hold: and in the afternoone, we tooke in 4. tunnes of water, and certain things, which I fetched out of the Elizabeth of ours.

The 17. wee romaged, and tooke in water, and I kept my cabbin, being sicke: the Generall came aboord, and supped with me.

The 18. day we tooke in water, & romaged our ship all the forenoone. About noone there came downe the riuer a canow with 3. Portingals in it, with whom I had conference aboord ẏ Admiral.

The 19. of August being Sunday, it rained all the night before, and all the day, till 2. a clocke after noone: then I manned our long boat and skiffe, and went a land into the oister baie, where I met captaine Hawkins, captaine Parker, captaine Drake, with all our boats, and 130. men which came all to gather oisters, wherewith we laded our boats, and sent them aboord with the greatest number of our men: and we with the rest went ouer land through the Limmon garden, and gathered many which we caried aboord with vs, and so parted to our charges. The 20. day our company stowed our pinnace, and fetched certaine things from aboord the Elizabeth: the carpenters set vp one sith of our foremast, our Cooper repaired some of ẏ caske which the spring tide had broken.

The master, pilot and I in our skiffe went along the riuer to the vttermost baie, at the comming in at the West end, where we found a flat baie, yet a crooked chanell in it: and we went a league vp a fresh riuer, which at the vpper end was so thicke of oister trees, that wee could not get to the head of it, so we returned backe againe to the West point, and there I obserued the sunne: which done, we felled two Palmito trees and came to the bathing place, where we washed, and refreshed

our

our ſelues, and came aboorde, where wee had prayer, and ſupped, and ſo went to bedde: but before morning we had much winde and raine.

The 21. day in the morning I went aboord the Admirall to viſite him, and found him gone vp the riuer in his pinneſſe, then I brake my faſte with Captaine Hawkins and the reſt: which done, with our newe made nettes we went a fiſhing into the Oyſter bay, where wee pitched our nettes, meaning to haue made a draught: and as wee waded with our nettes, wee ſawe in the water among vs a Crocodile or Alligato, which we aſſaulted, and within 3. houres after many wounds with fiſgigs, pikes, and ſhot, we ſlew him, and brought him aboorde the Admirall, where hee was opened, and flayed, in whoſe body we found many ſmall ſtones, and of Palmito nuts. An Alligato killed.

This day alſo we went a hunting, and being wearie we brought ſome oyſters aboorde the Admirall, and there M. Walker, M. Lewis and I ſupped: which done we came aboord.

The 22. day the Portingals which had bene with vs before, came downe and brought ſome other Portingals and Negroes with them in a ſhippe boate, wherein they brought vs 80. mewes of rice, 500. and odde waight of Oliphants teeth, and a boy Negro, which boy they gaue the Generall, and the rice and teeth for the Elizabeth which wee ſolde them, with all her tackle, and ſailes, hauing neede of the rice, becauſe our meale which we brought out of England, was decayed and naught, whereof we had into the Edward 30. buſhels, which is a mew and a halfe: the Francis had 5. buſhels, and the Gallion had the reſt. And wee had 200. waight of Oliphants teeth, and the Gallion 300. and a halfe, and 6. li. During this time wee ſent our ſkiffe with the Admirals pinneſſe vp the riuer to meete with a Gondall, which the Portingals had ſent for freſh victuals for vs: who not finding her, returned at night: All this day I with M. Walker remained aboorde with the Admirall, and after their dinner and ſupper we ended our buſineſſe, and returned aboord, hauing had many good ſpeaches with the Portingals. Their traffique here with the Portingals.

The 23. day I remained romaging aboorde, in which time the Maſter with the Carpenters, and others went on lande and felled more wood for fiſhes for our maſte, and cut a boates lading of firewood, and brought it aboord.

The 24. day in the forenoone our Generall and Captaine Parker came aboorde, where wee paſſed the forenoone in talke, and after Seruice I ſent for M. Hall, and M. Maddox to dine with them. After dinner Captaine Parker and I, our boates full of men went on lande, and gathered limmons for the companie, which done, wee returned aboorde our ſhippes: in the meane time our boate was brought full of wood aboord, and the Carpenter squared timber.

The 25. day of Auguſt I was ſent for to the Generall about furniſhing vp of the Elizabeth, which was fully accompliſhed and deliuered to the Portingals. Out of her our boate brought peaſe, wood, hoopes, and many other ſuch neceſſaries. The Portingals dined with mee: after dinner I rooted my iarre, placed him, and filled him with water: and this day Iohn Iohnſon brought of the ſettles in my cabbin.

The 26. day being Sunday, Captaine Hawkins, M. Maddox, M. Hall, M. Banniſter, Captaine Drake, M. Euans, M. Hoode, and others came aboorde and heard the Sermon, and dined with me: after dinner we went on ſhoare to the lower point where wee followed the footing of an Oliphant, but ſawe him not, and ſo ſpent the time to and fro till ſupper time, & then came aboorde, and ſupped together, which done, eche man departed to his abode.

This night I was very ſicke, (and ſo were all they that were on ſhoare with mee,) with eating of a fruite of the Countrey, which wee founde on trees like nuttes: Whereof ſome did eate foure, ſome fiue, ſome ſixe, and more, but wee vometted and ſcoured vpon it without reaſon. Sickenes by eating ſome fruite in Guinea.

The 27. day in the afternoone, the olde Greeke Franciſco, came aboorde to mee, with requeſt that hee might haue the Francis boate to goe vp for his owne boate, which was not come downe, with whome I talked of this Countrey and Countrey people, vntill fiue of the clocke at night, that the flood was come, and then I went aboorde to the Admirall, and got his conſent, and ſent themſelues in her: viz. Ferdinando the Portingall Maſter, and his Negro: In the meane time I ſent 4. of my men to watch in the Elizabeth all night.

The 28. day in the morning at 4. a clocke, I ſent my ſkiffe with the Admirals pinneſſe downe to the Weſt point to fiſh, who came aboorde againe at one in the afternoone, and brought as much fiſh as all our companies could eate.

During the time that our boates were a fiſhing, came downe the riuer a Canow & the Portingals former boate, with hennes, orenges, plantans, which they preſented the Generall and mee with: and alſo the reſt of the rice due to vs for the paiment of the Elizabeth. For the partitions whereof I went aboord the Admirall, where I dined. After dinner, M. Euans beganne to barter away The Portingals preſents. M. Euans one of our Marchants.

away certaine of the ships commodities with the Negroes, without acquainting the Generall or any other vntil he had done, whereof grew more words then profit, as by the bookes of Marchandise appeareth. Which done I came aboord, and had 2. of the Portingals to supper with me. About 2. a clocke in the morning we had a Tornado, and much raine.

They search the Countrey.

The 29. about 4. in the morning, I in my skiffe, and Captaine Parker in his pinnesse, went downe to the West point, and there wee landed with 11. men in all well furnished, and searched the woods, plaines and plashes, after an Oliphant, finding the haunt, footing and soyle of many newly done, yet we sawe none of them. We saw hogs, goates, or fawns, and diuers soyts of foules very wilde: and hauing trauailed about two leagues, about noone wee returned to the point, where we landed, and met our boates which had bene at sea, and taken plentie of good fish: there wee refreshed our selues with such victuals as wee had, and came aboorde our seuerall shippes, where I found the Portingals and Negroes, who had dined, and after supped aboorde with me.

After supper I bartred with them certaine linnen cloth, and gaue them 2. redde cappes for 3. Oliphants teeth, as by the notes thereof appeareth.

The 3. day in the morning at three a clocke I sent my pinnesse to sea a fishing, and after our long boate to bee mended and trimmed, which both returned about three in the afternoone: the Generall, Captaine Parker, and Captaine Drake, came aboorde mee at Seruice time, and after examined certaine of the Portingals and Negroes for things by them bought of our companies, and especially for a stolne cloake, which would not be heard of: which done we supped aboorde together, and after they returned to their charges.

The last of August I went on lande, and obserued the sunne, and made proofe of other Instruments, and had the Master, and others with mee: after wee drewe fishe with our nette. In this time Master Shawe, and M. Euans sawe a bullocke and shotte at him: Wee ranged a great deale of grounde, but coulde see none, and so returned aboorde, where supped with mee three of the Portingals. At two of the clocke in the morning, our skiffe went to sea a fishing, and had foule weather.

September.

The first of September about fiue of the clocke in the morning wee set saile, and got downe with little winde at Northeast, to the Westwards two miles: then being calme at 9. a clocke wee ancred.

After Seruice, and dinner, in our long boate, the Master, M. Walker, M. Geffreys and others, went on lande into a bay with our nette, where wee drewe aboue 70. fishes, and cut a palmetter. The General being abroade a fishing with his pinnesse came into me, to whom I gaue part of our fish, and returned aboord where wee found plentie of fish taken in our skiffe, for which wee thanked God, and supped. About 7. at night wee had a sudden flawe of winde, raine, and lightning, till 9. a clocke: after, a faire night.

The 2. we set saile at 6. in the morning, and went out West, betwene 7. and 10. fathome, with a prettie gale at East till 8. then it waxed calme, wee being shotte out of the harbour a league and a halfe. It continued calme this day till one in the afternoone, and then it blew vp at West south west, a good gale, so we stood of North Northwest, and Northwest, til 5. in the afternoone, then we ancred in 12. fathome, being 6. leagues off the point West by North.

This afternoone Captaine Hawkins came aboord to me and brought the samples of cloches, which he desired to haue put into the aduenture, and to haue our Marchants praise them, which to do the better I sent them aboord the Admirall, to conferre with the Generall and the rest. Where they supped, and returned without taking them into the venture, for that they could not agree to Captaine Hawkins liking.

They returne to Sierra leona againe.

The 3. day about 8. a clocke in the forenoone the Generall came aboorde to mee, complayning that his maine crosse trees were broken, and therefore determined to goe into Sierra leona againe when the winde blew: at 12. at noone we set saile, and went in East southeast, and Southeast, and Southsoutheast, being carried to the Northwarde with the floud. And at 7. at night wee ancred in 8. fathome 3. leagues of the entrance, West Northwest.

All this day the General remained aboord with me, dinner supper, and Seruice, til we ancred, which time we discoursed, &c.

The 4. day about 11. at noone we set saile, and stood in Southeast with the ebb vntill we were within a mile of the entrance, and then finding it calme wee ancred in 14. fathome 2. mile of the West point: in comming to ancre, our quarter Masters, let slip an ancre, and ne we cable, ende for ende through negligence: Captaine Drake being a shoare with his boat a fishing, put off thinking to recouer his barke but could not, and with much paine got aboorde me where he supped, and his companie, and stayed all night.

The

The 5. of September in the forenoone about 8. a clocke we ſweeped, & dragged for our ancre, and cable, but found it not: likewiſe at 3. in the afternoone till 4. then wee ſet ſaile, and went into the riuer, and ranne in Southeaſt from 4. fathomes and a halfe, to 14. fathome, and moared by our Admirall thwart of the Oyſter bay in 8. fathome at 5. a clocke at night, hauing left a barrell boy where we ridde, for a marke to finde our ancre. The oyſter bay.

About 6. came the olde Portingall, and 3. more with him, and brought me Orenges, and Plantans, and ſupped with me. After ſupper they went aboord the barke.

The 6. before day, both our boates went downe with the Admirals boates to fiſhe, and dragge for our ancre and cable, and found it not: after our ſkiffe went a fiſhing, and tooke plentie. I being aboord at dinner, the Portingals came and dined with me. After dinner, in the boate I went aboord the Generall, and there left my Carpenter: my ſelfe, with M. Walker, M. Maddox, and others, with our net drew good plentie of fiſh, whereof I carried part aboord the General and ſupped with him. After ſupper M. Walker and I came aboord.

The 7. day in the morning I ended many ordinarie buſineſſes: after dinner I called the General, and went downe with the net into the accuſtomed bay, & there drew 120. fiſh, whereof were ſome great mullets. The Generall went aboorde to ſuppe with Captaine Drake in the Francis: I ſtayed late on ſhoare, and ſupped aboord with our companie, all ſauing M. Walker, who ſupped and remained all night with the Generall aboorde Captaine Drake in the Francis.

The 8. day our companies of all handes went on ſhoare, and ſet vp a Smiths forge, and an ouen to bake bread: I went in to the Cockle bay with our net, and finding no plentie of fiſh there, went to the other bay, and brought aboord plentie of fiſh, and Captaine Drake with mee whome I met there without a boate, and 4. men with him. A Smiths forge and an ouen ſet vp in Sierra leona.

The 9. day being Sunday, M. Walker went aboorde the Francis to miniſter the Communion to that companie, and there he dined: I went aboorde the Admirall, and there heard Seruice, and there dined: after dinner moſt part of our people went on land, with the Generall to plaſh trees, and make place for the Carpenters and Smithes on ſhoare: and I in my ſkiffe went downe and woke fiſh in our nette for ſupper, and returned before night, and ſent the Generall part for his ſupper. Certaine of our men lay on lande to keepe watche with Captaine Parker, to garde the Smiths and Carpenters. Watch on land.

The 10. day at 4. a clocke in the morning I went downe in our ſkiffe, and ſtoode till 11. at noone to kill a Pellicane, but coulde not: in the meane time our long boate went along with the net, and at noone with both the boates we returned aboord well fiſhed, where I founde M. Maddox, Captaine Hawkins, and M. Hall, who eate there, and at night went aboord their ſhippe: after ſupper I ſent 6. men to watch on ſhoare with Captaine Parker.

The 11. day at 6. a clocke in the morning I went downe with my boate, & the Admirals boat, and dragged for our ancre, but found no hope thereof, and returned aboord at 3. in the afternoone: at 5. came M. Walker in our ſkiffe, and brought the Generall, and M. Maddox aboord with him, where we ſupped and were merry together: after ſupper eche returned to his place: about 11. a clocke at night, we had a great ſtorme of winde, and raine at Eaſt Southeaſt.

The 12. day about 8. in the forenoone came downe the riuer a boat with three other Portingals with whome the Generall bargained, to let them haue 3. barrels of ſalt, for 5. barrels of rice, and after that rate to exchange for 40. barrels, which hee acquainted mee with: afterwards I dined among the Portingals with him, after dinner I went on ſhoare to the ouen, and to the Carpenters. After I had bene on ſhoare and ſeene the worke there, I returned aboord, & there ſupped with me the General, M. Maddox, Captaine Hawkins, and 7. Portingals, after ſupper eche returned to his place. Immediatly after it rained and blew much at Northnortheaſt. About one a clocke after midnight we had a tornado, which continued 3. houres at Eaſt next hand. Traffique with 3. other Portingals. viz. 1. Lewis Henriques a dweller here about 20. yeres. 2. Matthew Fernandos Captaine. 3. Pedro Vaz pilot.

The 13. in the afternoone, the Portingals came againe aboord me, and brake their faſt with me: after I ſent by them by the riuer in my ſkiffe 12. barrels of ſalt, and gaue them a bottle of wine for one of the ſauage Queenes. The Carpenters felled a tree, and squared it for planke and board. The M. had our foreſaile on land, and began to binde it, but not hauing time to mende the ſame, brought it aboord, where we ſupped with fiſh, which came from the nette.

The 14. day after drinking our boate went on land with our foreſaile, and men to pit and ſawe the tree, felled & hewed the day before: they came aboord to dinner, & after dinner they went againe and ended the ſaile, and cut a boate full of wood and at night returned aboord.

The 15. after dinner, the Maſter, M. Walker, and I, accompanied, with 12. other trauelled ouer a great deale of ground to finde ſome cattle, but founde none: & comming home thorow the Oyſter bay, I founde of my company and of the Admirals together roſting oyſters: and going from They enter vp to ſearch the Country.

them, Thomas Russell one of my companie sawe a strange fishe named Vtelif, which had fought with a Crocodile, and being hurt came neere the shoare where he waded in, and by the taile drew him a lande, and there slewe him, and sent the Generall the hinder halfe of him: the head part I kept, in whose nose is like a sword a bone of two foote long, with 23. pyckes of a side, sharpe and strange: The body we did eate, and was like a sharke.

A sword fish killed.

The 16. day being Sunday we all kept aboorde till after Seruice, and dinner, then M. Walker and I with others, went aboorde the Admirall, where I had diuers debatements with the Generall about our affaires, and there supped, about 8. a clocke we returned aboord.

The 17. day in the morning I sent Nicholas Allen, and two more of my Carpenters to helpe the Admirall about their maine maste: I sent our Cooper, and men to helpe him to cut hoopes in the wood. After dinner with my long boate, and the Master with me, we went aboord the Admirall, and there tooke in the nette, and Captaine Parker and the Master Hall, and went ouer to the sande to the Northwards, in the riuer a mile aboue the roade. And sounding when we went of the Southside, had 14. fathome, and sholded by litle and litle, to halfe a fathome and a foote water, on the sand, which is bare two mile long at quarter ebb, hard sand: we dyd we there with our nett, but tooke little fish, and so turned aboord.

The 18. day we begame a newe fishing nette for our selues, and remained busie about it all day aboorde: our Cooper cut hoopes, and the Baker baked bread on lande: M. Walker supped aboord the Admirall.

Pellicane bay.

The 19. day before 3. in the morning, I went downe in the Admirals pinnesse, which went with the net to fish. They landed me besides Pellicane bay, and there I tooke vp my standing vntil 3. afternoone: in which time I sawe a crane, a martine, and diuers other foules, but shot at none but one hearne, which I killed: after came aboorde the Edward, where the General, M. Maddox, M. Cotton, and Captaine Parker supped with me.

The 20. day after dinner, I sent my boate with the Master, and companie with him to dragge for our ancre & cable, who could neither finde the same nor see our boop, which wee left riding by a small cagger, for a marke for the other greater ancre, so I accompt all lost. By the way in their going downe the riuer they put me a lande by the Pellicane bay, and there I stood till their returne about 5. at afternoone, and came backe againe with them, and Hooker killed a monkie with a piece. At my returne aboord I found the Portingals caruel come downe the riuer at ancre by our ships.

A Portingal caruel.

The 21. day in the morning the Generall sent for me and M. Walker, who went aboord them, where hee acquainted vs with the faultes founde in his maine maste, perished in the parteners, which to mende I sent him two of my Carpenters, and two ancre stockes to fishe the same: Also hee opened before vs two and M. Maddox, Captaine Hawkins, and Captaine Parker, certaine wordes which happened betweene him and the Master Hall, howe Hall saide vnto him among other speaches, that hee was there appointed Master, as hee was Generall, and that hee would be Master, though hee said nay: the which wordes the Master confessed not to speake in effect, but vnfit speaches passed betweene them. Whereupon hee demaunded our opinions, whether he might displace him or not, which wee graunted hee might vpon so iust a cause, but intreated the Generall rather to accept his submission, which Hall willingly yeelded vnto, which followed presently. At Seruice the Master openly before the whole companie acknowledged to haue ouershotte himselfe in vndecent speaches, and craued pardon of the Generall, who willingly forgaue the offence as though it had not bene committed. After dinner I went on lande, the Master, and M. Walker with me, to ouersee the Baker, the carpenters, the smith, and our ropemakers, al which were at worke on land.

After I had bene on land, comming aboord, and captaine Parker with me, we went aboord the caruel, and there sawe 30. or 40. slaues fettred together, the men: but the women and children went loose. After the view of them, their behauiour & other trifles there seene, I went aboord. At supper came certaine of the Portingals to me & dranke with me, & after vsed long talke, and so departed.

The 22. day in the morning I sent my workmen ashoare, and about 8. a clocke, I and M. Walker, with others went downe in my boat to the Pellicane bay, but got nothing: in the meane time they in the boat went downe to the point, & gathered a good many of great oysters, and so returned aboorde about 6. at night well wet with raine, and stonge with Bees.

Bees in Guinea.

The 23. day being Sunday, while we were at the Sermon came the Portingal Captaine Mathew Fernandos, & brought me a Negro boy of 7. yeeres old, which he gaue me, whose name was Iohn Primero. After he had dined with me, came captaine Hawkins, captaine Drake, M. Hoode, M. Faireweather, M. Taileboyes, and M. Bannister, with many others to visite me: after we had talked

talked a while together, I went aboorde the Admirall and M. Walker, where wee agreed that the Portingall Captaine shoulde goe to the riuer for our skiffe, who was contented to goe: after many debatements with the Generall, and supper with him I came aboorde.

The 24. day we rommaged to take vp some of our ordinance, & perusing our water caske, which was filled not 20. dayes before, stowed with greene wood cut in this place found the same to bee eaten with wormes, which caused the greater part of the water to leake out, which troubled vs much. M. Blackoller, & Robert Rose went downe in our boate to dragge for our ancre & cables but found them not: we tooke vp 7. pieces of ordinance, filled some water, and amended some part of our caske. This afternoone the Generall came aboord to me, & conferred about, &c. About 5. a clocke afternoone, among others I went on lande to the buriall of William Marcham M. of the Francis, who died the same afternoone before. Greene wood subiect to wormes. The death of William Marcham.

The 26. we filled water, mended our caske and stowed many things in hold, & ended the corke, and lead, and all things to the net belonging: this afternoone the king Fatama, sent our Generall a monkie, and an Oliphants toothe, by a messenger a Negro of some accompt. Presents sent to our men by K. Fatama.

The 27. day at 3. a clocke in the morning the Master and I, well accompanied went downe in my long boate to the fishing bay, where seeing the footing of many cattle, we drew a rope thwart the necke of the land, & placed men to gard the straight: the rest went into the wood to driue downe the cattle, who came so fast vpō our men that one of them ouerthrew W. Towrson, that he lay dead in a quarter of an houre, and being recouered in 2. houres hee knewe not what he did. Thus we wearied our selues not being able to kill any of them, although we gaue them many stripes, and so returned to our fishing againe, where we tooke more fish then we could eate.

This morning came the same messenger aboorde, to present mee with an Oliphants toothe, which came to the General from king Fatama, but finding me absent, receiued such intertainment as the Marchants and M. Walker gaue him, & so went aboord the Admirall, taking the tooth with him. There he receiued of the General to present the king as much scarlet clothe as would make him a cloake, & certaine camas: and for ỳ Queene a wrought Moscouy smocke, & a looking glasse.

The 28. day in the morning came M. Maddox and other aboord mee: after breakefast we went downe a fishing with our net, & returned aboord to supper, and when we had supped, they went aboord. The 29. day after dinner M. Walker and I went aboord the Admirall, and grew in argument concerning our going roome to the yles of Cape Verde, or whether it were better to proceed forwards with the prouision we now haue. At this conference was the General, Captaine Hawkins, Captaine Parker, M. Maddox, M. Walker and I: after sundry debatements we concluded to proceede, and with this conclusion we supped there together. After supper by the same consent, I went aboord the Elizabeth and the caruel, and brought their sailes aboord the Admirall, fearing they would saile away, and deceiue me of my boate and salt: which done, I imparted to the Master, the pilot, M. Shaw, and M. Geffreis, what had bene determined, and left 6. of my men aboord the Portingals to looke to them.

The 30. and last day of September, the Francis Cooke came aboorde about 7. a clocke in the afternoone from fishing with my net, and brought among other fishe, a sea calfe (as wee called it) with haire and lympits, and barnacles vpon him, being 7. foote long, 4. foote 9. inches about: which to see I sent for the Generall, and such as pleased to come see it out of the Admirall, who came and brought with him M. Maddox, Captaine Hawkins, Captaine Parker, and most part of his companie, who hauing viewed the beast, which was ougly being aliue, it being flayed, opened, and dressed, prooued an excellent, faire, and good meate, broyled, rosted, sodde and baked, and sufficed all our companies for that day. A strange fish taken.

This day during the time that our dinner was dressing, the Generall assembled vs before named in Commission into my cabbin, where he propounded diuers questions and doubts touching our going forwards, all which being answered, it was agreed to proceed for the straights of Magellan: and being in the South sea, to deale as occasion should be giuen. In this conference grew many hotte, and disdainfull speaches and comparisons betweene Captaine Hawkins, and Captaine Parker, and also the Generall, as offended with Captaine Hawkins, vsed speaches to him very displeasant, which with much adoe was all in the ende pacified, and so went to Seruice, and after to dinner: then ashoare, and aboord againe to Seruice, and supper, so that we passed the latter part of this day in much good fellowship, the more, because my skiffe came downe with another great boate laden with rice for our salt, whereof we tooke in part.

The 1. day of October in the morning, we tooke in to make vp our full complement of rice 20. barrels for the 12. barrels of salt, deliuered ỳ Portingal, Lewis Henriques before. About 7. a clocke in the morning ỳ General sent for me & M. Walker, touching certaine speaches, that Miles Euans October.

one of our Marchants vsed at dinner aboorde the Gallion in the absence of the Generall, which was set downe in Articles, and hee charged with them, whereof hee confessed a great part, which seemed so odious, and vnhonest, that M. Walker, M. Maddox, M. Parker, the Lieutenant, and I, concluded with the Generall that he might displace him, which thing Euans earnestly often desired, saying that he would go into England well ynough, as from hence in the Elizabeth with the Portingals, with whom in the afternoone he made freight, and carried his chest, a barrel, & 2. packs aboord, which I, M. Parker, and Lieutenant Hawkins searched by the Generals order.

Miles Euans departed from the company, promising to remaine with the Portingals.

Hauing done these things, wee found that the Portingals had not brought vs rice for so much salt, as they promised the Generall, who sent Captaine Parker and others to searche for the same in the Elizabeth and the caruell, where was found good store which wee tooke part of, and payed them salt according to our bargaine. Further wee found searching for rice a boye Negro bigger then my boy Iohn Primero, which I changed him for: and by the Generals order we tooke foure men Negroes, 2. for the Edward, and 2. for the Admirall, for which wee gaue the owners certaine carsey, and other things, as pease, biket, &c.

The 2. day about sixe in the morning wee set saile hauing little winde: the Captaine with the Master, and other of their companie of the Portingals came aboorde mee complaining that the carsey by them receiued for the foure Negroes of the Generall was not sufficient for their payment, whereupon I gaue them scarlet caps, and other things to their content, who finding themselues well pleased, departed away in the Gondall, and we hauing litle winde, got downe thwart of the fishing bay, and there came to ancre about nine a clocke the same forenoone.

About one a clocke I sent my skiffe with the nette a fishing, which came aboorde, and brought fish for supper plentie.

Their 2. departure from Guinea, where they remained from the 4. of August.

The 3. day about two a clocke in the morning wee set saile, and went hence Southwest by West till two in the afternoone then being litle winde: at 5. we ancred sixe leagues East South east of the Southermost part of the lande in fifteene fathome, and there wee ridde till eight a clocke at night, and then set saile with a stiffe gale at Northeast, which sometime blewe, and sometime was litle winde, and so continued all night. This afternoone Captaine Hawkins, and M. Cotton came to supper with me, and before we could set them aboord came a ternado, so that they taried all night aboord with me.

At 7. at night a great Ternado at Northeast.

The fourth day about eight a clocke in the forenoone wee set Captaine Hawkins, and master Cotton aboord the Admirall, and went Southwest by West till two afternoone, then being litle winde, we made small way, or none at all till the next day: in the afternoone we tooke in our boate and skiffe, and at night shifted our companie because some were dead, and wee had taken in more men out of the Elizabeth.

The 5. day it was calme all day till sixe at night, wee lay to and fro driuing, which I can make no allowance of: at sixe at night wee went South by West with a small gale til one at midnight, then wee mette the winde at South Southwest, and went West by North, till three a clocke following: then came a pretie gale at Northeast, with which we went South Southwest til six in the morning.

The 6. day at 6. in the morning wee had a small gale at West, and went starre boord tacked South a while there being litle winde: we went Southwest by South til 8. a clocke, from 8. we went Southsouthwest, with a small gale all day, and all night.

The 7. day litle winde or none but lay still among great shoales of foules, and sculls of fish all day and night: by our ordinary Compasse in this place the sunne rose at East, and by South, and to the Southwards, and set West by South to the southwards.

The eight day little winde, or none: all day and night wee laye driuing among fishe and foule.

The 9. day we had in the forenoone some raine, and a small gale at Northeast, which continued not long, but was calme till midnight, then we had a Ternado of winde, Northeast and raine: after that a small gale at East and southeast all night.

Winde East Southeast.

The tenth day wee went all the forenoone South Southwest starre-boorde tacked, after the winde shrinking to the Southeast by South, wee went South, till fiue afternoone: this afternoone the Generall in his long boate, accompanied with M. Maddox, Captaine Hawkins, Captaine Parker, M. Cotton, M. Hoode and others came aboorde to see mee: after drinking departed away againe: but when they were in the boate, their shippe not comming roome for them, I was faine to shoote off two minions to make them looke out. After fiue a clocke in the afternoone it continued calme till after midnight, then had wee a Ternado, and after a small gale for 3. houres, at East Northeast, with which we went South southwest.

The

The 11. day it was calme, till 2. of the clocke afternoone, then it began to blowe a ſmall gale. At 6. it blewe more, and ſo it continued all night large.

The 12. day we had raine at noone: all the reſt of the day, and night, we went as the wind did ſuffer vs, ſometime Weſt, ſometime Southweſt, and ſometime South.

The 13. day we had litle wind all day, and all night, but went our courſe South Southweſt, and ſometime South by Weſt.

The 14. day we had litle wind, or none. In the afternoone came Captaine Hawkins, and other from the Gallion, and Captaine Drake, who brought me a peece of a Porpoſe with him, which we eate to ſupper: after ſupper they departed aboord the Francis: all the night following, it was in manner calme. This day was Iohn Roberts, and Iohn Hillarde whipped at the maſte, for fighting at dinner.

The 15. day it was calme all day, and night, except two houres. In the morning it rained, & blew a ſmall gale, at Northeaſt. This forenoone Captaine Drake ſent for Maſter Walker, and me, to dinner, where we met Captaine Hawkins, and others. After dinner we returned aboord againe, and Captaine Hawkins went aboord the Admirall. Wind northweſt.

The 16. day it was calme, till 7. at night, then we had a prettie gale at Southweſt, with which we went Weſt, and ſometime Weſt northweſt, till 2. of the clocke in the morning, then was it calme all the reſt of the night. This day were Robert Parker, Marke Thoughts, Iohn Roberts, and Iohn Collyns, brought to the capſtone, and there whipped naked, for ſtealing certaine victuall out of the Stewards roome, the Sunday night before. Correction.

The 17. day at ten of the clocke, we had a prettie gale, at Eaſt northeaſt, which laſted till 4. afternoone, then had we leſſe wind at Southeaſt, which continued all night: ſo we went ſometime Southſoutheaſt, and ſometime Southweſt by South, and Southweſt.

The 18. day it was a ſmall gale all daye, and all night, ſo that wee went our courſe South ſouthweſt.

The 19. day we went our courſe South ſouthweſt, till midnight, then being in manner calme, we went but litle all night.

The 20. day it was calme, till ten of the clocke afternoone, then we went Southweſt, with a ſmall gale, at Eaſt ſoutheaſt, with which we went South ſouthweſt till midnight, there being calme, we went litle all night.

The 21. it was calme, til ten afternoone, then a gale till 12. at noone, then calme againe, till 3. afternoone, then it blewe a ſmall gale at Southeaſt, with which we went South ſouthweſt, and Southweſt among til midnight, but then it was calme all the reſt of the night.

The 22. it was calme in maner all day, and night, ſauing at 2. of the clocke after midnight, we had an extreme Ternado of wind, raine, thunder, and lightning. The wind laſted not an howre, but the raine and a calme continued till day.

The 23. day we had much raine, calme, and thicke weather, ſo that being ſeparated the night before in a Ternado, from our Admirall we loſt the ſight of him many times: yet when it cleered vp, we ſawe each other, but hauing no winde, could not come neere together by two leagues. All this night we bare a good ſaile, and had a reaſonable gale, with which wee went betweene the South by Weſt, and the Southweſt. In the morning wee ſawe the Admirall to Leewardes, ſo farre as wee might deſcrye her ſayles, with whome the Francis, and wee went roome. Wind Eaſt Southeaſt.

The 24. day in the forenoone, we went roome to our Admirall, Weſt ſouthweſt, and Weſt, till ten of the clocke. After dinner we hailed her, and went from ten in the forenoone, ſouth ſouthweſt next hand, all day and night following, with a franke gale.

The 25. day we went Southweſt next hand, all day, and night, with a franke gale.

The 26. day and night, we went with a prettie gale, betweene the South ſouthweſt, and the Weſt ſouthweſt, but might haue beene nearer the winde, but for going roome with the Admirall.

The 27. day we went Weſt ſouthweſt, and ſouthweſt by Weſt among, with a prettie gale, and ſometime ſouthweſt all day, and night.

The 28. day after dinner, our Admirall laye by the Lee, to ſtoppe a leake in his bowes, and was faine to ſlinge three men ouer boord to doe it: in the meane tyme we came vppe, and hayled them: they tolde vs that if the winde ſcanted one point more, they meant to caſt about, which we thought not beſt, for certaine cauſes. Wherevpon we tooke in our ſprit ſaile, and hayled aft our ſheetes cloſe, ſo that whereas all day before we went Southweſt, and little better, nowe we went next hand South ſouthweſt, but alwaies better then Southweſt by South all night following.

This

This euening I set the Sunne at his going downe, hee set more then halfe a point to the South of West by South.

The next morning, I obserued the Sunnes rising, which was to the Southwards, a little of East by South.

The 29. day after dinner, the Francis boate with her Master, and Master Dore, came aboord of vs, for a hogshead of porke by the Generals order, which was deliuered them. All this day and night we went next hand, southwest by south.

The 30. daye wee went next hande Southsouth West all daye, and all night, with a pretie gale.

The 31. day, and last of October, we went all day, and all night, south southwest, and Southwest by south among, sauing two watches, which were calme in the night, after the raine.

Nouember. The first day of Nouember, in the forenoone, we tooke in our maine saile, to mende it: in the meane time, the Admirall came vp by vs, and desiring me, with my Master, and Master Blackcoller, to come aboord to him, about certaine conference, hee sent his boate for vs, where by him was propounded, whether it were best for vs to stande on with the coast of Brasile, as we did, or els to stande about starboord tacked to the Eastwards: whereupon diuers of their Charts and reckonings were shewed: by some it appeared, we were 115. leagues, by some 150. leagues, by some 140. leagues, and some a great deale further shoot of Brasile, next hand northeast of vs: but all agreed to be within 20. minutes of the line, some in the line, some to the north, some to the south of the line.

After many debatements, it was agreed by most consent to stande on for the coast of Brasile, except the wind changed, and there to doe, as weather should compell vs. In this consultation, we had speeches of courses, and places of meeting, if by misfortune we should be separated, wherein was no full order concluded, but that we should speake euery night with the Admirall, if we conueniently might, and so to appoint our course from time to time, if wee lost companie, to stape 15. daies in Riuer de Plate, and from thence to goe for the Streights, and there to ride, and water, and trimme our shippes (in no certaine place named.)

After dinner, we returned aboord our shippe, Captaine Drake, and his Master, to their barke, and went hence as neere as we could lie south southwest, and southwest by south all night following, with a fresh gale.

The second day and night, we went next hand south by west, and sometime south southwest among, with a franke gale.

The third day, we went south by west next hand, all day and all night.

The fourth day in like manner.

The fift day wee went South by west all daye, and all night wee went South with a franke gale.

The sixt day we went south next hand all day, and night, and south by west among.

The seuenth day we went south, and south by west all day and night, with a franke gale.

The eight day we went south, and south by west all day, and night, with a franke gale.

The ninth day we went south next hand all day, and night, with a franke gale.

The 10. day we went south next hand, and south by west, all day and night, lesse wind.

The 11. day being Sunday, in the forenoone, Captaine Hawkins, and Captaine Drake, came aboord, and dined with me. After dinner came the General, Master Maddox, Master Parker, Master Bannister, Master Cotton, and diuers others, to visite Master Walker, who sickened the Friday before of a Callentura. After they had drunke, and eate some iunkets, they all departed to their charges. We went all day, and all night, south, and south by west among.

M. Walker sicke of a Callentura.

The 12. in the afternoone, Master Maddox, Master Hall, Master Bannister, and other, came aboord to visite Master Walker. After a time of abode with him, they returned to the Gallion all againe, except Master Maddox, who remained with Master Walker here aboord.

This night Master Maddox, and I, beheld many constellations in the firmament, and sixe downe certaine new starres, raised to the southwards. All day and night, we went south, and south by East among.

Obseruation of the south Hemisphere.

The 13. at 6. in the morning, our misen tie brake, and the yard fell downe, many men being neere the same, yet God be thanked, it hurt no man, but it brake in peeces, and was spliced, and vp againe before noone.

This forenoone the General, M. Bannister, Captaine Parker, M. Tailboyes, and others came aboord, & visited M. Walker, and went aboord the Gallion againe, & M. Maddox with them, leauing M. Bannister with vs, til afternoone that ꝑ boate brought M. Maddox againe: then departed

Master

Master Bannister, Captaine Hawkins, and all, except Master Maddox, who still remained with Master Walker, who made his Will, this afternoone. We went all this day and night South by East, with a flawne sheete, and a franke gale. M. Walkers will made.

The 14. day afternoone, Master Walker was let blood againe: afterward, about 9. of the clocke, Master Maddox, and Master Bannister, went aboord the Gallion againe. Also the same afternoone, came the Master, and others of the Francis, to see master Walker, and in the afternoone Master Maddox, and Master Bannister, came againe to visite him. All this day, and night, wee went south by East, with a franke gale. Wind East northeast.

The 15. day afternoone, came Master Maddox, and Master Bannister, aboord, and brought a potion to Master Walker. Afternoone the Generall, Captaine Hawkins, Captaine Parker, Master Maddox, and others, came aboord to visite Master Walker, &c. All this daye, and night, wee went south by East our course, with a flowne sheete, all sailes drawing.

The 16. day we went our course south by East, till noone, and then by the Sunne finding our selues in vpwards of 17. degrees, we shaped our course south, and so went till next morning, with a large and franke gale. This morning the Sunne rose East by south, and to the southwards, and set the same night betweene the southwest by West, and the West southwest, rather to the southwards.

The 17. day afternoone, we shot off three peeces of Ordinance, in honour of our Queenes Natiuitie, whome God preserue, and grant her a long life, and prosperous raigne ouer the Realme of England, and all other of vs her subiects. This day after dinner came Master Maddox, and Captaine Drake, with others, to take their leaue of Master Walker, as I, with all my companie had done before, supposing him past hope of recouerie. At 4. of the clocke, finding our selues in 19. degrees to the southwards of the line, and cleere of the shoales, called by vs Powles, we went hence south southwest all night following. 19. degrees of southerly latitude.

The 18. day, being Sunday, after dinner, the Generall, Master Maddox, Captaine Parker, & many other, came aboord, and visited Master Walker: which done, they thanke, & departed aboord againe. All this day, and night, we went our course southwest by south, with a franke gale.

The 19. day, about noone, the Sunne was our Zenith, being declined to the southwards, 21. degrees, and 33. minuts, where we found the aire fresh, and temperate, as in England in June, when a fresh gale of winde doth blow in the heate of the day, but the euening, the night, and the morning, are more fresh, and colder here, then it is in England, either in June, or Julie. All this day, and night, we went our course southwest by south, with a good gale: the afternoone Master Bannister brought Master Walker a potion, and Captaine Hawkins came with him: there past speeches betwixt Master Bannister, and me. Cold euenings

The 20. day we went all day, and all night, southwest by south our course, with a fresh gale, and coole weather, wind sometime northeast, and sometime East northeast.

The 21. day afternoone, we brought our best maine top saile to the yard, and cut thole for many vses: also we began to make a newe maine coyle and bonnet, and fitted our stancions for our lights, vpon the vpper decks, as afte maste. This day and night, we went our course, with a franke gale, southwest by south.

The 22. day we went our course, southwest by south, till 8. of the clocke at night: then the wind shifted to the south southeast, so that we could lie but southwest by west, till 12. al night, with a good gale: the rest till day, was in a manner calme.

The 23. in the morning, it was raine, and calme, till 8. of the clocke, then we went West, with a small gale, till noone, and from noone, till the next morning, we went southwest by south, & southwest among, our course. Wind northeast.

The 24. day we went our course all day, and night, southwest, with a small gale.

The 25. being Sunday, in the morning, the Generall, and Captaine Parker, with Master Maddox, came aboord to visite Master Walker: which done, we perused our Masters and Pilots plats, and reckonings, and after I went aboord, and dined with the Generall, where after dinner, we also perused the Master, and Pilots charts and reckonings, aboord the Gallion, where by wee founde our selues farre off the lande, and thought good to edge in with the shoare Southwest, least our water should faile vs, and then being becalmed farre of, might be for want distressed. After this determination, I returned aboord againe, and went all day, and night, our course Southwest.

The 26. day we went our course all day, and night, southwest: this euening the Admirall hailed vs, and told vs he would put into the Riuer De Plate.

The 27. day we went our course all day, and night, southwest next hand.

The

The 28. day little wind all the forenoone, at noone the wind shifted to the South, with raine, til 3. of the clocke afternoone: then it blewe at East southeast, till 4. in the morning: at 4. it changed to the East northeast. All this time we went our course southwest, except sometime we had a lache to the westwards, after the Admirall.

The 29. day at noone, wee altered our course to the West southwest, and so haled in with the land all night, being cleere weather, and a faire night, but a stoute gale all night.

Great cold in the latitude of 28. degrees.

The 30. being S. Andrewes day, and the last of Nouember, at 5. of the clocke in the morning, we had much wind at South, and south by West, and very colde weather, which chooke vs into a coarse, and bonnet of each. At 4. of the clocke afternoone, the wind changed to the southwest, and blew very much, and rained, being so cold, that we were glad to put on winter apparell. So wee stood close by northwest, and west northwest all night.

December.

The first of December, about sixe of the clocke in the morning, wee sawe lande on the coast of Brasile, in the height of 28. degrees, or there abouts, which bare northwest, and was 8. leagues from vs very high land. We stoode in with it, being much winde, and comming neere, found diuers Ilands: and seeing the Francis, would not come roome, nor runne a heade vs, we stoode in with the shoare, and sounded in 30. fathome oaze, three leagues off the lande, bearing from the West northwest to the north northwest of vs, and so stoode in till it shoalded orderly into seuen fathome, within a mile of a head lande: then perceauing a breach ouer our bowe, and no hope of a good harbour in that place, we bare vp roome, and our Admirall after vs, whome we haled: then he tolde vs he would seeke harbour to Leewards, requiring me to goe a heade. Then seeing the barke was a sterne, I hoised out my skiffe, and sette her masse and saile, taking her ging, and Tobias, one of my Masters Mates with me, and ranne before the shippe, sounding in 15. fathom faire sand, leauing a ledge of rockes a sea boord of vs: so the shippes, and the barke looked vp vnder a head land, and ankered in eight fathome, halfe a mile off the land, hauing brought the head land, which lieth in 27. degrees, 50. minuts, south southeast of them, and the North land northeast of them.

The latitude of 27. degrees, 50. minuts.

I stoode on with the skiffe, hoping to find a better harbour to Leeward three leagues, but it proued not so: wherefore I returned, and in my way aboord, I met with a rocke in the sea, where we landed, and killed good store of fowle, and after I went aboord the Admirall, where I presented him with fowle, and returned aboord to supper.

In this time our boates had bene aland, and found water, ballaste, and two decaied houses, as they told me, and our men aboord hooked fresh fishe. This night we rid quietly.

The second being Sunday, in the morning, our Generall, Captaine Hawkins, Master Maddox, and others, came aboord to visite Master Walker: during his being here aboord, a sudden quawme came ouer his stomake, which made him scowre vp, and downward: then I sent for Master Parker, and with him came Master Bannister: after he began to be a little better, we all, except the Generall, which remained sicke in my cabbin, went aboord the Gallion to dinner, which was appointed the night before. This forenoone our Masters moared our shippes further into the Baye. We brought the South point southeast of vs, and the northland northeast, and so rid.

A Baye.

Wels made by our men.

After dinner, Captaine Parker, with my boate, and company, went a lande, and there placed pipes, and made three Wels. In the meane time, I accompanied with Master Hawkins, Master Maddox, Master Cotton, and diuers of mine owne people landed farther within the Baye, and found two riuers of fresh water, and a good fishing place. Presently I sent a boord for my net, with which at one draught, we drew 600. great Mullets, and fiue great Balles, the like draught was neuer seene with so small a net: with which we went aboord, giuing to the Admirall 240. to the Francis 80. and the rest our companie spent, and gaue Almightie God thankes for his great goodnes.

An exceeding great draught of fishe.

The woods set on fire by our men.

All this while was captaine Parker, and others, gone into the land, and fired the woods, which burned extremely: at length we all met, and supped aboord the Edward with mee, and after supper departed aboord to their charges. All this night we had faire weather.

The third day in the morning, our Carpenter calked without board, and the Master, and others, tooke vp all the merchandize in the sterne sheetes to the keele, and there put downe a boates loding of stone: and seeing the merchandize well conditioned, stowed the same againe: in the meane time, my selfe, and others in our boates, scraped off the wormes, and washed the ruder, and part of one side of our ship.

After dinner, the Master, Pilot, and I, went a shoare, and obserued the Sunne at noone, which being past, with our net wee drewe plentie of diuers sortes of fishes, and went from that Baye to the watering place: from thence, aboord the Generall, which had taken Phisicke, and gaue them

them and the Francis fiſhe for their companies, and ſo went aboord, where our companie had ro-maged a foremaſt, ſo that this afternoone we tooke in two boates more lading of ſtones afore-maſte.

The 4. day in the morning, I ſent 30. men aland, ſome to cut hoopes, ſome to cut fire wood, and ſome to mend our maine ſaile: the reſt aboord emptied our caſke, which was filled with ſalt water, to ſtiffen the ſhippe, and with Ordinance, and all our meanes trimmed her ouer to port, and lightned her ſtemme, that the Carpenter might the better come to the leake. After dinner we ſcra-ped and waſhed all her ſtarboord ſide, and tooke in a boates loding of ſtones.

This afternoone the Generall ſent for me to goe aland with him in his Pinneſſe, with whome I went, and tooke my nette with mee, and there tooke good ſtore of fiſhe, eſpecially fiſhes called Dores: after we went to the watring place, and came aboord the ſooner, becauſe the General found himſelfe ſicke, whome I ſet aboord in my ſkiffe, and went aboord my ſelfe, and ſent for our people from ſhoare, and gaue God thankes, and ſupped late. *The neceſſarie vſe of nets.*

The 5. day betimes in the morning, we ſent our ſaile menders a ſhoare, and trimmed ouer our ſhippe to ſtarboord, and waſhed the other ſide. In the meane while, our Cooper, and others, trim-med our caſke, and others placed it in holde. Alſo we tooke in 2. boates loding more of ſtones, and ſome water, we ſtocked a ſheate anker, and bent a newe cable, for it was very much winde, which hindred our buſines greatly.

The 6. daye in the morning, before 6. of the clocke, wee ſawe a ſaile which went towards the ſouthwards the Admirall not hauing knowledge thereof: I went aboord, and certified him, who appointed me to goe and bring her in, and to take Captaine Parker, and ſome of the Gallions men into the Frauncis, and the Admirals ſkiffe with vs: ſo wee gaue her chaſe, and tooke her ſixe leagues to the Leewards of the place we rode in. Then not being able to fetch the roade againe, we ankered in the ſea. I, intending to come away in the Pinneſſe, and leaue the Francis, and the prize together, being readie to depart, the winde blewe at South, a ſtoute gale, and raine, ſo that about ſixe of the clocke, we ankered in the roade where our ſhips rode in. *A ſaile ſeene and taken.*

After we had taken them, and that Captaine Parker, and I, were aboord, we had much talke with them, before they came to the ſhippes, and being ankered there, the chiefe men were carri-ed aboord the Generall, which was a Gentleman, named Don Franciſco de Vera, Nephew to the Gouernour of the Riuer De Plate, named Don Iohn de Torre Vera.

We founde an Engliſhman, named Richard Carter, borne in Limehouſe, who had bene out of England foure and twentie yeeres, and hath bene neere twelue yeeres dwelling in the Riuer of Plate, at a Towne named Aſcenſion, three hundreth leagues vp in the Riuer, whither they were nowe determined to goe, and inhabite, hauing two women, and two yong children, ſeuen Friers, the reſt boyes, and ſaylers, to the number of 21. perſons. *Richard Carter an Engliſh man taken in the prize.*

The olde Frier was had in great reuerence among the reſt: inſomuch that they called him the holie Father, he was abiding in no place, but as Viſitor, he went viſiting from Monaſterie to Monaſterie. *The number of 21. in the prize.*

The ſubſtance of all the ſpeeches was, that the Spaniſh Fleete was before at the Streights of Magellan, as they thought, for they were departed ſixe weekes paſt from the Riuer of Ge-nero, where they had bene ſeuen moneths to refreſh and winter. And that theſe were not of that companie, but came out of Spaine, the 26. of Maye, 1582. in a Barke of foure ſcore tunne, and foure ſcore perſons of purpoſe, for the Riuer of Plate: the Friers beeing eighteene in num-ber, could not agree, and their Barke was a ground at Spirito ſanto, like to be loſt: therefore the olde Frier bought this ſmall barke of 46. tunne, at a port, named Spirito ſanto in Braſile, and ſo ruided themſelues, and comming from thence, loſt companie at ſea, but they thought they were before at Riuer de Plate. After his ſpeeches, I went, and appointed (by the Generals order) men to remaine aboord the prize, with Captaine Parker, and brought one of the Portingals ſayles away with me, and came aboord, where I founde that our men had filled water all day.

The 7. day in the morning, the Generall ſent for me, where he ſhewed me, and Maſter Mad-don, certaine articles, which the Friers, and marriners Spaniards were examined of, which ren-der altogether to the knowledge of the Spaniſh fleetes intent, and of the meanes whereby wee might be diſcouered by way of Riuer de Plate, by land to Peru. In this time came the reſt, after whoſe comming was debated, whether it were beſt to take the boate, and people with vs, or not, which was not determined, but referred till further examination.

Then was determined to paſſe by the ſtreights, notwithſtanding the Spaniards were there, but not to ſet vp forge, nor to build pinneſſe, but water, and ſo thorough.

Further

Further, it was determined that Captaine Hawkins, Master Tailboys, Master Geffries, Master Hoode, Master Blackcoller, and two sailers of each shippe, should romage the prize: about the appointment of whome, grewe vnkinde, and hot speeches, betweene the Generall, and Master Parker, against me, concerning authoritie, and gouernment, and also Captaine Hawkins finding himselfe iniuried, was plaine with them both: so that we were beyond the termes of Commissioners, and fell to plaine brawling, and bragging: the circumstances I omit, as too long, and vnfit to be written. Time being thus spent, the Generall called for wine, and ended all contentions, and so we dined there with him.

After dinner they searched the barke, and found in her diuers trifles, which are noted in a paper by themselues. I went a fishing, and came aboord, from whence the Generall fetched me, and went aboord to the old Frier in the barke: after we had talked with him, we came aboord, and there supped in the Edward with me, the Generall, M. Maddox, Captaine Parker, and Master Hall: wee debated of diuers causes before, and after supper, and so departed, with promise to dine with the Generall the next day.

This day also we tooke vp all the rest of our Ordinance, and placed them, and tooke in a boates lading of stones, and filled water all day.

The 8. day afore noone, Master Walker, and I, went aboord the Admiral to dinner, where was determined to discharge the Spanish barke, named our Ladie of pitie, and all the men except Richard Carter, the English man, and Iohn Pynto, a Portingall, which dwelled at Riuer de Plate.

The Spanish barke dismissed.

After dinner, the Generall appointed me, and Captaine Hawkins, to see them all set aboord their ship, and to receaue from them certaine necessaries, which willingly they imparted with vs, and to leaue them satisfied. Which done, I returned aboord, and hauing deuided the necessaries to each ship his part, we entred into consultation, where Master Walker propounded certaine questions to the Generall of vnkindnes, by me conceaued against him, which moued him to some cholerike termes with me, which I answered: and in the ende, all matters almost being agreed betweene vs, then began he to question with Captaine Hawkins, which contention was tedious, and not fully ended before supper, & began againe after supper: so that about 10. of the clocke after supper, we came aboord.

In this morning before my going foorth, we trimmed our shippe ouer to port, and came to our leakes, and not being able to stop the same without boord, we stopped the same within boord, and after our men filled all our water caske, laded, and placed all our Ordinance, and made all things ready to goe hence.

The 9. day being Sunday, in the morning, I sent master Shawe, and master Geffries, aboord the Admirall, to peruse the Spaniards letters wherein they found the estate of the Fleete, which was in the Streights of Magellane, as by this note thereof appeareth.

About ten of the clocke, the Generall, master Maddox, Captaine Hawkins, and Captaine Parker, came aboord of me, the Generall began to reproue my Quarter master, for grudging of victuall for the Francis, which was answered, and he wel satisfied. Then sent I for the old Frier, and Don Francisco, who all dined with me, and after dinner, the Spaniards hauing receaued the Canow which was sunke a land, and stones to ballast them, with my boate carried them, and all other things to their liking, and content, they departed from mee: the Generall also departed, and his companie, who being gone, I deuided the suger, and ginger among my people, which the Spaniards gaue vs, and after spent the day in ordinarie busines.

Spanish presents.

The 10. day in the morning, our skiffe went a fishing, whereof we eate as much to supper, as serued the companie, the rest we salted for store, and to proue if they would take salt or not. In the afternoone our skiffe went againe to fishe, and tooke good store: the rest of our people tooke their ease, some aboord, and some on shoare.

The 11. day, betimes in the morning, our skiffe went againe to fishe, & tooke great plentye. About 7. of the clocke, I went a land, taking with me the M. & others of our best men, to the number of 22. persons, & traueled to ꝑ place, where our people before had found many great iars of earth, & decaied habitations of the Indians, & trees being dead, and withered, of sweete wood. From that place, we saw ouer the tops of a narrow wood, a faire plaine, which at the request of the M. and the rest, I went with them to see. We passed through a thicke & perillous wood, before we came to the supposed plaine: & when we came to it, wee found the lowest part thereof higher then any of our heads, and so mossie vnder foote, that we slipped to the knees many steps, which so wearied vs, that for my part, I was very sicke, and so hasted aboord, leauing the Master with 15. men, which cut a tree of sweete wood, and brought many peeces thereof aboord.

Things found in the Iland.

About 3. afternoone, M. Walker, and many of our men being a shoare, the winde came faire, and

and we layd out a warpe to the Northeast, and began to winde a hedd: after we layd out another warpe with a bende, and wound to the platt, and so ridde by it one anker all night.

The 12. day about 5. a clocke in the morning, we set saple, and as we ranne out betweene the ledge of rockes, & the mayne in 8. fadom water, as we were catting our anker, the cattrope, stopper and all brake, so that we were glad to let slip all the cable, and cast off our boate, and skiffe to way the same: after we had stood out a good way, the Admirall was vnder saple, then cast we about, and went roome with the Admiral which weaned vs, who sent in his pinnesse, and the Frenchis to helpe out our boats, so by the helpe of the Admirals pinnesse, with her saple, wee had our boate the sooner, and about 12. a clocke at noone taken in the anker, cable, our long boate, skiffe, and all, and put out all our saples bearing after the Admirall, which went hence South by east. About 6. a clocke at night being thick weather we lost sight of ỹ land, being 4. leagues off or there about, all night it was but litle winde, yet went we our course South by west.

The 13. day about 7. a forenoone the wind blewe at South southeast, & was very fogge, with which gale we stood in larboord tacked west, till 10. a clock the same forenoone: then had we sight of the land a hedd, all along (for it waxed cleere weather) it sheweth a farre off, like white cleeues, but is all sandy hilles, and bayes along the sea side: at one a clocke afternoone we were in 16. fadom water and within halfe a league of the shoare, where we saw seuerall fires made by the Indians to giue warning to the other people within the land as we supposed: then we cast about, and stood off, Southeast by east till midnight, that the wind came large: then went wee our course, South by west til next morning.

The 14 day we went our course South by west hauing sight of the land at 6. a clocke in the morning about 7. leagues off, and so went till 6. at night that we saw lande againe, 7. leagues off west, and the wind shifted to the South: then we cast about and stood off East southeast at 7. at night for a while, then came vp the wind at Northwest and blew a good.

This day at 8. a clocke at night we had a prety gale and went our course with it til 12. after, it was in maner calme all night.

The 15. day in the morning, the Admirall was a hedd, as farre as we could almost see her, by whose default I know not, & being litle wind we could not get to her, till 4. a clocke afternoone, then we hayled her, and stood in betweene the South southwest, and the southwest til 6. at night that the wind was variable, and foule weather: then we cast about, and sounded in 23. fadom soft ooze, and stood off a while Northeast: and presently cast about againe, and went south by east larboord tacked, and south southeast among all night: at 4 in the morning 15. fadom sande.

The 16. day being Sunday we saw the land within 3. leagues of vs at 6. a clocke in the morning, at 8. a clocke we cast about and went Northeast till 11. the same forenoone, then wee stood along south by west til within 3. or 4. leagues of the shoare, and in 12. fadom water, sand about 2. a clocke, the wind larged, so we went south by east: at 6. a clocke we were 6. leagues off the lande which bare west southwest of vs, and was in the 23. fadom, after the wind came vp at Northeast: so we went all night South with our sheats hayled of: a cleere night of starres but cold weather. The Sunne set this night at southwest by west, and to the Northwards a litle, and rose the next morning East by south, and to the Southwards.

The 17. day we went our course South til 11. a clocke afternoone: then the wind scanting we lay betweene the Southeast, and the East southeast, til the next day morning with litle winde.

The 18. day aforenoone, being calme yet a boysting sea, we tooke in all our saples, and mended them, and riued newe mayne tides, and repaired many decayes, as a Ramme head &c. at 7. a clocke at night it began to blowe at southeast, & so we lay by larboord tacked, southwest by south, and South southwest all night with a good gale.

The 19. day we stood in next hand southwest all day and night.

The 20. day about 10. a clocke aforenoone, we went aboord the Admirall: viz. Master Walker the Master, the Pylot, the two Marchants, and my selfe, being directed so to do by the Generall: vpon our comming the Generall was going to dinner where we also dyned with him: hauing dyned, the General called vs his Assistants into his cabben, and there deliuered to vs in writing two demands, to bee by vs considered vpon, and he to haue our opinions therein.

The effect of the demands were these.

1. Whether it was best for vs to aduenture our selues to passe the Streights of Magelan or not, considering the force of the enemy, which we knew to be there before vs: and also that our determination was there to set vp our pinnesse, make vpon hoopes, carrene our ships, and do all our necessary businesses for the full accomplishment of our voyage.

2. Demand was, if that course were not thought best, which way were meetest for vs to take.

To the first we were of opinion, that it were good to heare the opinions of Captaine Hawkins, Captaine Drake, & the 2. pylots, which had passed the streights, and knew the harbors, and likest places to be fortified, & inhabited or not, who were called, and the 3. Masters with them: their opinions were as diuers as their names, & asmuch differed, as before this time they weare wont vsually to do: only they all agreed in this one point, ỳ it was impossible for vs to passe ỳ streights without seeing, and incountring with the ships although the fortification of the lande did not annoy vs, which being long and throughly debated, and their opinions with the 3. Masters demanded, which accorded not scant any one with other, they were dismissed.

Then the General receiued the opinions of vs his Assistants: beginning with the yongest in aucthority first, which when he had harde them all ouer, & being set downe in writing vnder our hands, he tooke deliberation till after supper to giue his determination.

When we had all supped then he sent for vs downe into his cabben and deliuered in writing his determination, which was) to victuall, and furnish our selues on this coast before he proceded any further, and named 2. places Riuer de Plate, or S. Vincent to be chosen.

Richard Carter the English man taken in the pule. caried along with them.

For the better deciphering of Riuer de Plate, and the commoditis therof, was called before vs Richard Carter, which doth dwel there, who could not assure vs of any wine except we could stay 4. moneths for it, but other victuals plenty: the riuer shoale & dangerous, ỳ road 7. leagues from any towne, or place of commoditie: which considered with the treacherie that might from thence be vsed, into the Streights by sea, & into Peru by land, we all concluded to go to S. Vincent, which place is inhabited with Portingals, and where in honest sort we might conueniently haue all our busines done.

They returne in the latitude of 33.

With this resolution we tooke our leaues about 8. a clocke at night, & being come aboord presently bare vp, & went roome, hauing all the day before beate vp the winde larboord tacked East southeast til at night: after it was a litle winde all night, we went North nert hande.

The 21. day after seruice, I declared vnto my company, the intent of our returne to the Port of S. Vincent, where with they were wel satisfied being before doubtfull that we should not proceede, but returne without performance of our voyage. It continued calme all day till 6. at night, then we went Northwest by west, till 8 at night: and then we cast about, and stood off East southeast, and East by South all night with a good gale.

John Drake in the Francis went to the riuer of Plate wherein his ship was cast away, but the men gatt to land, and lined 15. moneths among the Sauages.

The 22. day in the morning, we missed the Francis, which by all presumption went roome in the beginning of the night.

About sixe afternoone we cast about, and stood in Northwest, till sixe a clocke at night: then we went about, and stood of East by South, and East Southeast among all night, till foure a clocke next morning.

The 23. day at foure a clocke in the morning, we cast about, and stood in West northwest, and West by north, till twelue at noone: Then we stoode about larboord tacked a while, and presently the winde came large, so we went North by east, & North northeast all day & night following.

The 24. day we went North northeast, and North by east, til one a clocke after midnight: then we cast about, and stood of East southeast, and Southeast by east, all the rest of the night.

The 25. day being Christmas day, it was little winde in the forenoone till ten a clocke, then it blewe a fresh gale, with which we went our course North northeast: in the afternoone it was lesse winde: yet went we our course North by east, and North northeast and North and North by west till midnight. Then being in shoaled water, wee cast about, and lay South southeast, and Southeast by south an houre, & seeing our Admiral came not after vs, we cast about back againe & presently met him, so we went both together next hand South southeast, al the rest of the night.

Infinite number of fishe.

This afternoone we saw the skimme of fishes so thicke in the sea, that it seemed a water troubled with trampling of horses, which was thicke, and slimy, for we had taken vp some of it.

The 26. day at 7. afternoone we cast about, and stood in North by west, and North northwest: about 11. at noone we saw the Land which lay Northwest of vs 4. leagues, at one a clocke wee cast about, and stood of Southeast with a South gale all night.

The 27. day we stood off into the sea between the Southeast, and the East by North all day and night with a foule gale of wind at North.

The 28. day it was calme all the forenoone till 12. a clocke then we went West northwest: during this calme we tooke in our mayne Sayle and toppe sayles, and mended them: all the day and night following much winde.

The 29. day we went West northwest with a south gale, till 6. a clocke at night: then it thundred, lightned and rained, the winde almost calme and shifting, wherewith we went all night, betweene the East, and the North northeast.

The

The 30. day being Sunday, after Sermon, dinner, and obseruation of the Sunne at noone, we hoysed out our skiffe: the Master, M. Walker, and I went aboord the Admirall where wee had a banket of sweete meates: after that ended, the General and I fell into familiar conference seueral by our selues of the state of our voyage, & debated long of the same in good sort: then being neere 4. of the clocke we tooke our leaues, & came aboord, & tooke in our skiffe, and went North northwest till 8. at night, then we cast about, and went southeast, and southeast by south al night smooth sea, much fogge.

The 21. & last of Decēber at 6. afternoone we cast about, & stood in northeast til 5. afternoone: then seeing the land 3. leagues off vs, we cast about, & stood off east southeast al night w̄ litle wind.

The first day of January, we had litle wind all day and night, but we layd our course withall nere hand North northeast. January.

The 2. day, our foretoppmast being perished, we tooke it downe, & the cap of ỹ Mast, which the Carpēter wrought vpon al day, & night: we wēt our course nere hand, north northeast litle wind.

The 3. day we went our course till 11. a clocke at night North by east, then the wind scanted, & we stood off East southeast till 4. next morning.

The 4. day at 4. a clocke afternoone we went North next hand, till 5. a clocke at night, hauing runne in sight of land all day, then being in 15. fadom water within 2. mile of the shoare, we cast about and stood of South southeast, and Southeast all night, with a reasonable gale.

This afternoone we set vp our foretopmast againe, being wel mended.

The 5. day at 9. a clocke afternoone, we cast about: & whereas all the morning before we went Southeast by east now we went North till 5. afternoone: then being in sight of land, 3. leagues short of the place were we were the day before at that time we cast about, and went Southeast all night with a stout gale of wind. This afternoone our mainetoppsayle split from the boltropes, and was greatly torne wich we got downe, and began to mende.

The 6. day after dinner we gatt vp our mainetoppsaile againe, and went all day and night, betweene the southeast, and the East by south with much winde.

The 7. day we went between the east by south, & the east all the day & night with a stoute gale.

The 8. day we went next hand, East til 5. a clocke afternoone, then we cast about, and stood in Northwest, and betweene that and the West all night.

The 9. day after we had stricken and mended our mainesayle we went north by east, litle wind for a while, but afternoone it blew a stout gale: so we went our course all day, and night next hand North northeast.

The 10. day we went all day and night our course North northeast with a stout gale of wind.

The 11. day we went our course North, and North by east all day, and night with a stout gale of winde.

The 12. day we went betweene the north, and the Northwest till 12. at midnight: then we being neere the land cast about, and stood of East northeast till 4. in the morning.

The 13. day we went about after 4. a clocke in the morning, and stood in west hauing sight of the lande West by north till one a clocke afternoone: then being within 4. leagues of the shoare: where we saw a white pinnacle like a watch towre, which bare West northwest of vs: we cast about and stood off east, till 10. a clocke at night litle winde.

About 3. a clock this afternoone I hoysed out my skyffe and sent her with the Master, & Pylot aboord the Admiral, to conferre with them there, who shewing them that I was not well at ease, caused the General, M. Maddox, and Captaine Parker, to come aboord and visit me, where they supped: & hauing had some coufrence with him about our dealings at S. Vincent &c. he departed and the skiffe brought the Master & Pylot aboord againe who supped aboord the Gallion.

At 10. a clocke the winde came large and we went all night betweene the Northeast by east, and the Northeast to goe cleare of the land we saw ouer night.

The 14. day in the morning it was hayse and thicke weather, so we sawe not the land till 9. a clocke in the forenoone, vntill which time we halled in West northwest: but then seeing lande beare North northwest of vs we stood hence east northeast til 7. a clocke at night: then our Admirall would needs come to anker vpon the bed land, but I thought it not best and lay close by all night, so that at 6. a clocke in the morning we were 4. myles to wyndward of her.

The 15. day we plyed off and on in the entrance of the bay, and got litle or nothing all day and night, but kept sight of our Admiral which rode at anker till 12. at noone: then set sayle, and lay close by the wind as we did.

The 16. day hauing turned to winde wards all night before, we found our selues in the morning a league to leewards of the place, where we were ouernight by the shiftings of the winds to

our disaduantage, this forenoone about tenne a clocke we mett a change of waters, which runne out South southeast into the sea which wee supposed to be some freshet which came out of the Bay, and lyeth along the coast North northeast and South southwest with a great difference both of couler and rypling.

This afternoone we stoode in North northeast, into eight fadomes and a halfe on the West side of the Bay, and about 4. a clocke we stood out againe South southeast, in hope to see our Admiral, whose sight we lost the night before, but seeing we went so fast to leewards we ankred at 7. a clocke vnder a small Iland, a myle off West: our ship caped East northeest, & Northeast most part of the night, which we iudge was some streame which came ỳ way, for it was litle wind.

A smal Iland which our men called Faulcon Isle.

The 17. day about 7. a clocke the Master, master Blaccoller, and I went in our skiffe and rowed, and sounded round about the Ile, and found 16. fadomes within a stones cast hard aboorde the shoare, and faire ground: after we landed, and found nothing but woods and bushes, and strange wormes: we saw a faulcon, and one other small birde, and therefore named it Faulcon Ile: it is ample about, with a rocke on the East side, which lyeth close to it, and it is in sight without danger, after we came aboord, and dyned, at two a clocke, we set saile with winde Southeast, & ranne in Northeast a while till the winde skanted: then we went in North northeast, till we were in 7. fadome and a halfe of water, within a league of the shoare: then we cast about, and stood off south southeast all night till 6. a clocke next morning.

Citron Isle.

The 18. day at 6. a clocke a forenoone we cast about and stood in North by east, North northeast, and sometime Northeast, being sometime a gale, sometime calme: about three a clocke afore day we saw our Admirall againe, and kept her company till day.

The 19. day being within a league of the Citron Ile about 8. a clocke a forenoone we went aboorde the Generall viz. M. Walker, the Master, the Pylot, and my selfe reioycing of our good meeting, who tolde me of their euil roade, where they lost an anker, a cable and a hawser: and how the day before their Pynnesse was a shoare on the same Iland and found fowle, and water there, whither now they had sent their boate, and Pinnesse for more water, where I knowe they had small store.

Their arriuall at S. Vincent.

I also taking captaine Parker, the Master, and M. Wilkes with me went a shoare, & trauelled to the top of the Ile, which is wooded, & high gras, but euil water, & litle on it, but pong fowle plenty, & dangerous comming to them. By this time I hauing set the Isles, & bed lands about in sight with a compasse, came a smal gale, at South southeast, then our Admiral shot off a peece for the boats & hence he went, & I dyned aboorde with him: & came after aboorde, and went in North northeast and Northeast til morning, at which time we were within a league of the Isle, entring before S. Vincent, but knew not how much water was vpon the barre to goe ouer.

3. Canowes of Portingals and Indians.

The 20. day in the morning being calme, the Generals pinnesse came into the shoare, with intent to sound the entrance, but seeing 3. Canowes with each at the least 20. men, wherof the greater part were naked Indians which rowed, the rest Portingals, they returned aboorde againe: the Canowes came with a flagge of truce vnto calling of our ship, & we shewed them the like, asking what we weare & of what nation, at length one Portingall went aboorde the Admiral, by whom the General sent a letter to the Gouernor craning a Pylot to bring in our ship of curtesie and to haue traffike. About noone hauing the wind at South we bare in Northwest, & so to the Northeast as the chanel trended: but cõming into 7. fadom water we ankred, vntil our boats had sounded the barre. During which time I wẽt aboord ỳ Admiral to conferre wth him about our proceedings.

A Canow with 10. Indians and 11. christians wherof one was an old Genouese.

After I had staied a while aboord the Admiral the General came aboord with me, where wee published vnto all my company very good rules for their behauior & profit, to their great satisfaction: after he went downe into my cabbin, where with al his assistants he conferred of diuers particulers of our voyage: by which time the boate being returned from sounding, we departed, & set saile following our skiffes, and with our ships got within the barre into 7. fadome, then being becalmed ankred againe before a sandy bay, wherein standes a Castle and houses: wee rode within musket shot of it: and ankred about 4. a clocke afternoone.

Then went I forwards with my skiffe vntill a farther point, sounding along: before my returne, the General had sent for me to supper, & thither I went: but being reddy to sit downe there came out to vs a Canow wherein were 10. Indians and 11. christians, the one an auncient Genoa the other a Portingal, who came aboord, & there receiued a smal banket, declaring their comming was to vnderstand our intents and what we sought, who being satisfied departed with a farewell of three great peeces from each ship.

Then went we to supper, and after I got me aboord being weary, but before I went to bedde came diuers cõplaints vnto me of the euil speeches & practises vsed by Thomas Russell, which I partly

partly examined before Maſter Walker, the Maſter, and M. Ieffries, and finding cauſe of correction, I committed him to the bilbowes, vntill further leaſure to examine the cauſe: ſo placing a carefull watch with charge to haue care of the ſande, we paſſed ỹ night very wel, God be prayſed.

The 21. day betimes in the morning, I went aland in the ſkiffe, and tooke good plentie of freſh fiſh on the North ſide: for we prooued on the South ſide and found litle or none. At nine a clocke after ſeruice, I ſent to bury Robert Reſe, one of the Maſters mates, which died this morning: and alſo after dinner died Griffyn who was there buried.

After dinner I conferred with the Maſter and Pilot about the choyſe of another Mate for them, but concluded that father Kyd ſhould be aſſiſtant in the watch, but no Maſters mate more.

Alſo in the preſence of the Maſter, M. Walker, the Pilot, M. Ieffries, M. Shawe, and Tobias the Maſters mate, was Thomas Ruſſell examined, and his accuſers, which examinations were written by M. Walker, and reſt to be further conſidered of hereafter.

About three a clocke after noone, came a Canoa, with the old Genouoys, named Ioſeph Dory, a Fleming named Paul Badeues, and Steuen Repoſe a Portingale, and brought a letter from the Generall, and withall anſwere of feare and doubtes of vs, &c. After many ſpeeches and requeſts a banket was made them, and the Generall in his Pinneſſe with his muſike, and trumpets, and I in my Skiffe with trumpets, drum and fife, and tabor, and pipe, accompanied them a mile vp the riuer: at going off, ſaluted them with a volye of three great peeces out of eche ſhip: and after vs came Captaine Parker with the Admirals long boat, and certaine ſhot in the ſame, to attende on the Generall. So we returned aboorde the Edwarde, and then ſupped together, and made our ſelues merry, and after ſupper they departed. John Whitſalle an Engliſhman which dwelleth at Santos, hath married this Ioſeph Dories daughter.

The 22. day betimes in the morning, I went abooard the Admirall to conferre about the ſending of ſome token and preſent to the Gouernour, which was by all the Aſſiſtants determined to ſend him three yards of fine ſkarlet, and three yards of fine murrie cloth, and to Ioſeph Dory the old Genouoys, Steuen Repoſe the Portingale, & to Paul Badeues the Fleming, eche of them three yards of fine blacke cloth, which our marchants went vp to Santos withall, in the Admirals Skiffe, about nine a clocke afternoone. Santos.

Alſo this afternoone we being minded to goe vp higher with our ſhippes into harbor, I aduiſed them to goe view the place, and ſound the road before we went vp, which we did, where were found the place both vnconuenient, and the road worſe, and ſo we returned and left the firſt determination. This day we tooke downe our maine tops, and top maſte, and all the ſhrowds.

About two a clocke afternoone our marchants returned with their preſents, not hauing bene at the Towne becauſe Steuen Repoſe by the way met them on the Riuer, and aduiſed them to ſtay vntill there had bene worde ſent to the Gouernour, who was vnwilling to ſpeake with them yet, but ſhortly would ſend their anſwere.

The reſt of this afternoone, wee ſpent in communication about the appointing of a Purſer, for the Edward. Alſo we ſigned an aſſent for comming to this place: about which thing grewe foule ſpeeches betweene the Generall, and his Lieutenant after the olde cuſtome. After being at leaſure I reuealed vnto him Ruſſels offences.

Then went we to ſupper, and being at ſupper, certaine Indians came aboorde, and brought the Generall a ſtrange Crowe, and Potatos, and Sugar canes, to whom he gaue looking glaſſes, great pins, and biſket, and ſo we departed being late. Alſo this afternoone I ranne ouer towards Saint Vincent, and ſounded the Bay a league ouer, and found the chanell and flats and returned aboorde againe within two houres, hauing a good gale of winde. The Indians preſents. The chanell of S. Vincent ſounded.

The 23. day our Skiffe went a ſhoare to fiſh, and tooke prettie ſtore: we ſent our mayne top a ſhoare to be mended, and many of our men to waſh their clothes: alſo I went my ſelfe with them aland, to take order, that no man ſhould any wayes offend the Indians. In the meane time the Generall with all the reſt of the chiefeſt Gentlemen, came a ſhoare, and viewed the place, and appointed out the fitteſt roome, to ſet vp our ſmithes forge, and ouens to bake our biſket, & place for our coopers to trim our water caſke.

After the well peruſing of the place, and ſome familiar conference with the Indians, the Generall, M. Parker, M. Walker and I came aboorde, and dyned in the Edward: after dinner wee had ſome priuate conference, and about one a clocke they went aboorde the Gallion: I ſpent the reſt of this day in putting many things in order.

The 24. day at foure a clocke before day, we heard one call for a boate on the North ſhoare, to whome I ſent my Skiffe, who brought aboorde one named Iohn Whitehall an Engliſh man, which is married here in this place, and with him two of his Indians: whom I interteined vntil I ſent worde to the Generall to prepare himſelfe to receiue him, in which time he and I talked of John Whitehall.

many seuerall particulers.

About sixe a clocke I conueyed him aboorde the Admirall: there he discouered vnto vs, what had bene done at the Towne, as fortification, and sending their wiues away, &c. aduising vs to receiue no more delayes, but to come vp presently before the Towne with our shippes.

Good counsell by the forelaid Englishman giuen to our men.

About ten a clocke, came a canoa, and brought downe Ioseph Dory, and Steuen Repose, who tolde vs that on Saturday the Gouernour would meete our Generall, and talke with him, praying vs in the meane time to vse our ordinarie businesse of cooperage, carpenters worke, filling water, fishing, and washing, &c. but not to set vp forge, nor ouen, vntill speech had with our Gouernour. After this answere we dyned together aboorde the Gallion: After dinner we left the Messengers sitting in the cabbin, and went vpon the poop, where the Generall demaunded the aduise of his assistants, whether it were not best to stay these men while we had them or not, or whether it were best to goe vp with our ships to the Towne or no.

Whereunto eche man paused to make answere: wherefore I deliuered my opinion, which was, that we were forbidden to vse violence to any nation for trade.

The Minion of London some time in Brasil for traffike.

Secondly, I considered that diuers of our nation worshipfull marchants, and nowe aduenturers in this voyage, had set out the Minion hither, and begun a trade, which with our forcible dealing might be spoyled, and our nation brought in hatred.

Lastly, that with force we were not like to attaine to so much commoditie, as we were in possibilitie to haue with courtesie.

Hereupon all was concluded, and they suffered to passe away: to whome the Generall gaue the three cloke clothes, to Ioseph Dory, to Paul Baudeuese, and to Steuen Repose, to eche of them one, which were before cut out for them: and so friendly we and they departed about two a clocke afternoone: which done, I went aboorde, and prepared for the entertainement of certaine of the Gallions men, which determined to sup with me.

Three Spanish ships discouered.

About foure a clocke this afternoone we sawe three sayle of ships come bearing in about the point, which assoone as they sawe vs, ankred vpon the barre, and put themselues in readines, sending from one ship to another with their boats, and blowing off their ordinance, meaning to take vs: and we before night, getting our men and other necessaries from the shoare which were busie aland, armed our ships to defend our selues. Then went I aboord ꝑ Admiral to know what he meant to doe: who determined to set his watch in warlike sort, and so hee did, for after the trumpets and drumme had sounded he shot off a great piece, as they before had done: And presently the Viceadmirall shot at me, whome I answered with another, and so ceased. We then set vp our mayne top, and top maste rigged before 11. clocke the same night: In the meane while they let slip their ankers and cables, and came driuing and towing with their boats in vpon vs meaning to haue boarded vs: and being neere our Admirall he hailed them, who refused to tell of whence they were, thinking by spending of time to get aboorde of him, to whome I called still to beware, and to shoote at them in time. At length he let flee at them, yet was glad to let an anker and cable slip to anoyde them: then came they all driuing downe thwart my hawse, so that I was faine to let slip an anker and cable to shun the Gallion: all this while the ordinance & small shot plyed of all parts, and I was faine to send the Gallion my Skiffe with a hawser to ride by, for she was loose, and with the flood draue vp within me. Then was the Viceadmirall on my broad side who was well payde before, yet I left not gawling of him, till I thought our pouder spent in vaine to shoote at him, he was so torne and broken downe by vs. About foure a clocke it rayned so fast, that we could scant discerne one the other the Moone being gone downe, yet ryd the Admirall, and the Reareadmirall, but a little ahead of vs: during which time we pused, and made ready all our munition.

The fight betwixt the English & Spanish ships at S. Vincent.

The Spanish Viceadmirall sunke by the English.

The 25. day, by day light, we sawe the Viceadmiral sunke hard by vs, so that his yards which were hoysed acrosse, and his tops, and that ouer head was aboue water: most of their men were gotten away in their boats, sauing about fourtie persons which hung in the shrowds, and tops, whom I aduised our Generall to send for away, and had made ready, and well manned our Pinnesses: but being vpon the way going, the General called them backe, and would not suffer them to goe: there were three of their boats also going for them from their shippes, at whome I shot, and made them to retyre and leaue them vpon the shrowds. At length our Generall sent for two of the men away, which his Pinnesse brought to him, the one was heaued ouer boorde because he was sore hurt not like to liue, and he was a Marsillian, the other was a Greeke borne in Zante, boatswaine of the Viceadmirall: the rest of the men, some swamme away vpon rafts, some were drowned, and some remained still hanging on her. By this time it was fayre day light,

This Greeke tolde the Generall, that there were 600. and odde in the three Spanish ships

and

and I called to our Generall to waye, and drive downe to them, who required mee to goe first and anker on their quarter, and hee would followe, and anker on their bowes. I waied, and went downe, & ankred by them, yet not so nere as I meant, for the ebbe put me off to the Northwards. There ryd I alone spending shot at them, and they both at mee foure houres, before our Admirals anker would come vp, during which time I had some spoyle done, but when our Admirall came, she had her part, and eased me very well.

At length our Admiral began to warpe away, and being come without mee set sayle, and began to stand out into the Sea: I went aboarde of him to knowe his pleasure, who determined to get out of shot, but could not because the winde scanted on them: the Edward before she could get vp her ankers endured many more shot, after the Gallion was further off a good way then thee, and sometime the Gallion had two or three: thus we ended about two a clocke afternoone. The rest of this day and part of the night we spent in mending, fitting, and putting our ordinance and furniture in order for the next morning, thinking they would haue bene with vs.

The 26. day in the morning wee could not see them, because they were gone vp the River: wee manned our boats, and Pinnesses, and waped two ankers, and one cable that they let slippe the night before: as our men were waying the third anker, the booyrope brake, and so wee lost that anker. Our Admirall had an anker of twelue hundreth, and a good cable of eleuen inches, and wee had an anker about sixe hundreth, with a piece of a basse cable, and booyrope nothing worth.

After dinner I went aboarde the Admirall, to conferre with him, who determined to goe off to Sea, and thither I carried Senior Pinto, to interprete the Indian language, with an Indian named Peter, which fledde from the Bay where wee ryd in a canoa, and brought with him a Spaniards caliuer, flaske, and touchboxe, to goe with vs, whome our Admirals boate met, and brought him aboarde to the Admirall. Hee tolde vs that the Spaniards had brought many dead men on lande and buryed them, and also landed many hurt men in their Bay, and that there were certaine Spaniards gone ouer thorowe the woods to looke after vs. Then the Generall, Captaine Hawkins, and Master Maddox came aboarde of mee to viewe my hurt men, and harmes of my shippes, both men, shippe, and tackle, and I also went aboarde him to peruse his hurtes, who had but one man a sayler slaine.

The 27. day wee set sayle, and ran South by east, and sometime North by east.

The 28. day in the morning dyed Lancelot Ashe of a hurt, who departed very godly. This day we stoode to the Northwards, and in getting in our ankers and skiffe, wee were put three leagues to leewarde of Fiddle Ile, but the Gallion ryd still.

The 29. day in the morning, seeing my selfe put to sea from the Admiral, I assembled Master Walker, Master Shawe, Master Ieffries, the Master, the Masters mate, and the Pilote, to whome I shewed, that I was desirous to goe backe to seeke our Admirall, whereunto the master Pilot, and Masters mate answered directly, that we could not fetch the Ile where wee left them, and to meete them in going backe it was very vnlikely and to vs dangerous many wayes, aswell for falling into the laps of the Spaniards, as to bee put on a lee shoare: Whereupon all the rest aduised mee to stand off into Sea, whereunto I assented, remembring withall, that time spent consumed victuall, and howe long we had beaten vp and downe in the same Bay before, to get in with calmes and contrary windes. Here the Gallion and the Edward Bonauenture were seuered, and neuer met afterward.

Thus we concluded that Master Walker should set downe each mans opinion, and we set to our hands, and from henceforth he to keepe a Register of all our proceeding, as Master Maddox doth aboord the Admirall.

The 30. day our Carpenters wrought in repairing the sides of our ship, which were somewhat bruised, and torne with shot.

The 31. day the like was done, and we went East southeast.

The first day of February, we went East by south, and East southeast with a stout gale: and went the same course the 3. 4. and 5. dayes following. Februarie.

The 5. day about 10. a clocke in the forenoone Master Walker dyed, who had bene weake and sicke of the bloody flix 6. dayes, wee tooke a view of his things, and prised them, and heaued him ouer boord, and shot a piece for his knell. M. Walker the preacher dieth.

From the 6. day to the 11. day we went Northeast and North northeast.

The 12. day hauing considered the lacke of water, the company were contented to haue the pease boyled, with three iacks of freshe water, and two iacks of salte water, for the prolonging of the same.

The

The 13. day we went North with a sweete gale.

The 14. day I called into my cabbin the two marchants, the Master and the Pilot shewing them our wants of victuals and other necessaries, whereupon they and I concluded, that it was best for vs to returne to our Countrey, with as little losse of time and expense of virtuals as might be, being without hope of relieFe vpon this coast, and yet to keepe the coast of Bazill to friende for feare of extremitie.

The 15. and 16. dayes we went our course Northeast.

The 17. day in the morning hauing much raine, we saued aboue two tunne of water, of which we were very glad.

Variation of the compasse. The 18. day I obserued the variation of the compasse, which varied one point, and a halfe to the Southwards, by our ordinarie compasse of London.

From the 19. day to the 27. we went our course Northeast, and North, as the winde serued.

The 27. day, I allowed a certaine portion of wine to our men, to wit, halfe a canne of wine to euery sixe men euery night at eight of the clocke, at the setting of the watche, to strengthen their weakenesse.

M. Wylks dyeth. The 28. day M. William Wylks hauing bene sick of the flixe a moneth before, grewe impatient and outragious in his disease, but by prayer and good perswasions we recouered him to his former good and quiet minde, and at night after nine a clocke he meekely departed the seruant of God.

March. The 1. of March wee heaued him ouer boorde, and gaue him a piece.

The 2. day the Master, Pilot, and I, agreed to fetch the Ile of Fernando Lorona.

From the 3. day to the 10. day we went West, and by South, and ran in for the shoare.

The 10. day we sawe the land, which was sandy hilles with woods on it.

The 11. day seeking to goe a shoare, we sawe foure men, which weaued to vs with a white shirte, and we weaued to them with a flag of truce: At length one of them swamme to our boats side, and there lay in the sea talking with vs, almost an houre: in the ende, being partly perswaded by Pinto, who talked with them in the Indian tongue, and partly entised with such trifles as I shewed him, he came into our Skiffe, and called to his companions on shoare, who came aboorde swimming: we deliuered them certaine barricos to fetch vs them full of fresh water: after, there came downe 40. Indians, boyes, women, and men, and with them a French boy, but the former Indians deceiued vs of our barrecos. Whereupon Pinto and Russell swamme a shoare to seeke water, but found none.

The same day we sayled to a place where boats might land, and I went a land in my Skiffe, and found the Indians, and Frenchman which were with me the day before, and they brought our three barricos ful of fresh water: for which I rewarded them with some trifles. In ỳ meane time our boate went a shoare, and our men with some of the Indians brought vs twentie barricos more of fresh water, and I my selfe went to shoare and brought 23. hennes of India.

The 12. day betimes in the morning, we manned our boate and Skiffe, & tooke some trifling things to shoare, and barricos: at our first arrinall the rude Indians flocked together, wading to the Skiffe wherein I was, begging, and wondring about vs: First I caused them to fetch 27. barricos of water, whom I rewarded with small belles, &c. In the meane time they brought hens to me, wading to the Skiffe, for I kept my selfe alwayes a float, and for their hens I gaue them a knife, and a small looking glasse. All this while M. Blackcoller our Pilot, Thomas Russell, Marke Thawghts were still on shoare, and would not tarry aboord: In the ende, fearing some treacherie, because all the Indians were slipped on shoare from me, I called our men away, and suddenly they laide hands on our men a shoare, & with their bowes shot thicke at vs in the boats, and waded into the water to vs, laying hands on our Skiffe, yet God of his mercy deliuered vs from their hands, with the losse of fiue men slaine, and others hurt.

Treason of the Indians.

Thus we got aboorde with fourtie Hens, Ducks, Turkies, and Parrats, and three hogsheads of water: and I carried a Frenchman aboorde with me, named Iaques Humfrey, who was by chance in the boate with me when this fray began.

Iaques Humfrey a Frenchman saued.

The 13. day we set sayle, and went Northeast.

The 14. day, the Master shaped our course North northeast, to recouer the coast of Guyny, then the next shoare to vs.

The 15. day we went the same course.

The 16. day it rained, and we saued a butte of water.

The 17. day we tooke three sharks in the morning.

From that day to the first of Aprill, we went our course, sometime with raine, and sometime with

with variable winds, and so til the 4. of April, which day wee saw foure byrds with long tailes, which houered about the ship, and in the afternoone we sawe and tooke vp many weedes which graue thicke in the sea, which wee iudged to bee driuen with the East windes from the yles of Cape verde.

From this day till the 11. day wee went our course sometime Northeast, sometime Northwest according to the winds: vpon this 11. day George Cope one of our carpenters, hauing the night before broken vp the hold, and stolen wine, and drunken himselfe drunke, being taken in the roome, lept ouerboord out of the beake heade, and so drowned himselfe: this day and night we went betwixt the North by West, and the North with much winde. A desperate act.

The 12 day wee lipped our foremast to bee perished in the hownes, and durst not beare our foretop saple vpon him but went hence with our saples, next hand, North all day, and night.

From hence to the 20. day wee went Northeast, and by North. This day I obserued the variation of the compasse: and I noted that the south poynt of the compasse caried more then halfe a poynt to the Westwardes. Variation of the compasse.

From this day to the 25. wee went our course North northeast, with a reasonable gale of winde: this 25 day was little winde stirring.

The 26 day it was in a manet calme, till seuen a clock at night, then it began to blowe a good gale at East southeast all night, with which wee went Northeast, and Northeast by east, and at night betweene the Northeast, and the Northeast by east.

The 28 day about 10 a clocke in the forenoone, our mayne yarde brake in sunder in the middest and split our saple with being put to great tresse, which wee got in and all the saple, and tackle, without the hurt of any man God be thanked. After dinner our Carpenters wrought vpon it, who were fayne to take our dowet, and anker stocke, the boats masts, pinnes thawts, capston barres, &c. So we went all day & night following with our foresaple, and misen betweene the Northeast, and the Northeast by east, with a stoute gale.

The 29. day, our carpenter wrought all day, we went with our foresaple, and misen next hand North northeast, lesse winde then before, and rayne.

The 30 day with great labour in the rayne, about 6. a clocke afternoone, wee set our mayne course which was mended, and other of our saples hauing made small way, or none the day before: after we went all night betweene the North northeast, and the Northeast thicke and moyst weather.

The first day of May, it was a great fogge calme, and thicke myste till 4. afternoone, then the winde blewe a stiffe gale at East, and still scanted to the Northwards, that we could lye all night but North, and North by weast, with much winde and fogge. May.

The 2. day it continued very foggie, and much winde, so that at 9. a clocke afternoone wee tooke off our bonnets: at 12. at noone wee cast about, and went larboorde tacked betwene the East Southeast, and the Southeast all day, and night.

The 3. day wee continued in the morning our course with much winde, and went betweene the East Northeast, and the East all day, and night.

The 4. day it was lesse winde, so that betimes in the morning, wee laced on our bonnets, and put abroade all our other saples, and went East Northeast till 8. at night, then hauing the winde large, and a good gale we went all night our course East by North.

The 5. day being Sunday wee had a stout gale till 5. a clocke afternoone, then it was lesse winde but large, with which we went our course all day, and night East by North.

The 6. day it was foggie, and blewe a stiffe gale, with which wee went our course East by North, all day and night.

The 7. day and night we went our course East by North, with a stoute gale.

The 8. day and night, wee went our course East by North with a franke gale, but all the day was foggie, and sometime raine, the winde shifting betweene Southwest, and the West Southwest.

The 9. day it rayned till noone, and blewe a stout gale, at West southwest till 12 a clocke at nighe with which wee went our course East by North, then it shifted to the East, and East Northeast with which wee went the rest of the night, betweene the North, and the North Northeast.

The 10. day it rained, and blewe much aforenoone: about 9. a clocke we cast about, and went East Southeast larboord tacked, at 12. at noone with bearing ouer much saple, wee brake our spritsaple yarde, and with much paine saued the peeces, and the toyne saple: so wee went all day and night following East Northeast, and sometime East by North, and sometime East with

our

our foꝛecoarſe, and the mayne coarſe, and bonnet.

The 11. day it was leſſe winde and dꝛy weather till noone: then it blewe a good gale, and in the night very much winde, and colde weather: all this day wee made ſhyft, and made another ſpꝛitſayle yarde of our Top gallant maſte, our Myſſen topmaſt, our mayne Flagſtaffe, oars, &c. and went our courſe Eaſt by Noꝛth, all day and night.

The 12. being ſunday, it was hayzie afoꝛenoone and much winde, ſo that hauing out our topſayles, and ſpꝛitſayles, wee tooke them in at noone, and went all day and night our courſe Eaſt by Noꝛth with a ſtoute gale.

The 13. day in the moꝛning it was ſomewhat leſſe winde, and we tooke off, and mended our foꝛebonnet, which was toꝛne the night befoꝛe, and at noone bꝛought it to the yarde againe, and after dinner put out our topſayles, being litle winde and rayne, ſo went all day, and night our courſe Eaſt by Noꝛth with a ſmall gale.

The 14. day we went our courſe Eaſt by Noꝛth, till 12. at midnight with a pꝛetty gale, then was it ſtarke calme.

The 15. day it was calme till 9. a clocke afoꝛenoone, then it blewe a ſmal gale, at Eaſt ſoutheaſt, with which we went Noꝛtheaſt till noone, then came vp the winde, at South ſoutheaſt, and at midnight blewe ſo much, that wee meaning to haue ſhaken of our bonnets, tooke in all our ſayles, and ſeeing the winde ſtill increaſed, we lay a hull from midnight till 6. next moꝛning hauing gone beſoꝛe Eaſt noꝛtheaſt, and Eaſt by Noꝛth, and Eaſt amongſt: this afternoone we ſaw a ſayle but ſpake not with them.

The 16 at 6. afoꝛenoone we ſet ſayle with much winde at South ſouthweſt, and went Eaſt our courſe, with a coarſe and bonnet of each, all day and night with very much winde.

The 17. day about 8. at night wee ſounded, and had no ground, in 160 fathome, ſo wee kept our courſe on Eaſt till 12 at midnight, then the winde began to ſcant, ſo we went betweene the Eaſt noꝛtheaſt, and the Eaſt by Noꝛth, all the reſt of the night.

The 18. day at 8 at night we ſounded againe, but had no ground, ſo we went all day & night, betweene the Noꝛtheaſt, and the Noꝛth by Eaſt with a ſkant winde.

The 19. being Sunday at 6. afoꝛenoone, the wind came to the Southeaſt, ſo we went Eaſt Noꝛtheaſt til 8. at night, then it was flat calme, and all night litle winde at Noꝛth, with which wee went next hand Eaſt ſoutheaſt fayꝛe weather.

The 20. day it was little wind all the foꝛenoone at Noꝛth, then it changed to the Noꝛth noꝛtheaſt, and blewe but little: ſo we were all day, and night betweene the Eaſt by South, and the Southeaſt with a ſmall gale fayꝛe weather.

The 21. day was fayꝛe weather and litle winde betweene the Eaſt and the Noꝛtheaſt with which we went all day and night betweene the Southeaſt by South, and the South by Eaſt til ſhifting: this day wee ſaw a Turtle doue.

The 22. day it was a pꝛettie gale, and fayꝛe weather: wee went all day till 8. at night Eaſt ſoutheaſt, then the winde being ſomewhat larger, wee went all night Eaſt.

The 23. day wee went Eaſt by Noꝛth till 8. at night, then hauing ſounding in 66. fathome fine ſande, we ſhaped our courſe Noꝛtheaſt, but would not lye ſo neere, but as we might, went all night betweene the Noꝛtheaſt by Eaſt, and the Eaſt noꝛtheaſt.

The 24. day we went Eaſt noꝛtheaſt, & Eaſt by Noꝛth, till 7. at afternoone, then we ſounded and had 65. fathome gray ſand, hauing ſayled by many weedes, & burton beds all day beſoꝛe: after we went all night as the day beſoꝛe Eaſt noꝛtheaſt, and Eaſt by Noꝛth with litle winde.

The 25. day we went betweene the Eaſt noꝛtheaſt, and the Noꝛtheaſt with a ſmall gale till 5. a clock afternoone: then had we ſight of land, which roſe ragged to the Noꝛthwards like bꝛoken land, we being about 5. leagues off: that Ile, bare Noꝛtheaſt by Noꝛth of vs, and the Noꝛthermoſt part bare Noꝛth by Eaſt of vs, with a rock a ſea booꝛd: we then ſounded, & had 55. fathome grey ſande, and maze great ſtoꝛe in it: ſo we ſtood in Noꝛtheaſt till 8. a clocke, and then beheld it againe being vvin 4. leagues of it, bearing as beſoꝛe, but we could not make it, foꝛ ſome thought it to be the foꝛeland of Fontenay, ſome iudged it the Ile of Vſſant: then wee ſownded againe, in 55. fathome bꝛowne ſand, and little maze in it: at 8. a clocke at night we went about, and ſtoode of South ſouthweſt one watche, then the winde ſhrinked to the Southweſt, that we could lye but South ſouthweſt 6. glaſſes, ſo that at 3. a clock we caſt about, and lay Noꝛthweſt 6. glaſſes, and Noꝛth noꝛthweſt a watche being then 8. a clocke the next day.

The 26. day we lay as nigh as we could betweene the Noꝛth and the Noꝛth noꝛtheaſt, and ſawe the ſame land againe, and made it to be the foꝛelande of Fontenay, and the raggꝛes to bee the Seames, which bare nowe Eaſt Noꝛtheaſt of vs: and wee ſtoode on till 10. a clocke, then being

being within two leagues of the rockes and lesse, we cast about and stoode of southwest, because we could not dubble the vttermost rockes: when we were about wee drawe to the Southwardes very faste, for the ebbe set vs West southwest, and being spring tydes, it horled vs a pace to leewardes, for the space of on houre: then with the flood which was come, we drawe againe to windwards: at twelue at noone it was calme, till 6. afternoone, then we stoode about larboord tacked, South southwest one watche, then at midnight wee cast about and stood ouer Northe till foure afternoone.

The 27 day, hauing brought the lande East southeast of vs, wee made it to be Sylly being before deemed, and went hence East by north to dubble Grymsbie, leauing the Bishop, and his clearkes to the Southwestwards, which wee before tooke to be the Seames. The yle of Sylly.

At 7. a clocke afternoone wee sawe the landes ende of England, which bare East by North of vs, and is 7. leagues off from Sylly.

Abaut 9. a clocke, we shewing our flags, and ensigne, and shoting of a peece, there came two boats aboord vs, of whome we bought fish, and some other trifling fresh victuals, with refreshed our men though it were but little.

But hearing newes of them of the health of our Queenes maiestie, and our country in peace, we gaue God thankes, and stoode hence East by South hauing brought the Island of Sylly, West, and West by South 3. leagues off vs. At eight at night wee had brought the lands ende North by West, and the Lyzard bare East of vs 6. leagues, so wee stoode along all night East, being little winde. The Lyzard.

The 28. wee had brought the Lyzzarde West Northwest of vs, a league and a halfe of, wee hoysed out our skiffe at 8. in the morning, and went along Northeast by East: at 12 a clocke at noone wee had brought Helforde, and the Manacles rockes which lye two miles of the mayne North of vs, passing by Falmouth: at 2, a clocke afternoone, wee brought Dudman North of vs 2. leagues of.

Then we had sight of Ramme head, and stoode on Northeast by east, and sometime Northeast, with little winde all day and night following.

This night about 2, a clocke after Midnight dyed Robert Webbe, and Master Skeuington of the Skuruie.

The 29. day at 6. afternoone wee had brought the Ramhead North of vs, and weare within a league of it, and went in Northeast next hande, being thicke and foggie, and little winde: so that at eleuen of clocke wee got in within the Island, and their by mistaking of a sounding, our ship came aground betweene the yle, and the mayne, and there sate till 4. a clocke afternoone that it was halfe flodde. Wee came to Plymmouth.

In the meane time I sent M. Blaccoller, and Johnson a shore to prouide men, and fresh victuall, and necessaries for our present neede.

The Maior, M. Bronkorne, M. Martyn, and many other of the towne, came aboorde to visite me, and dyned with mee about 5. a clocke the ship being mored in 7. fadom water, the castle in the yle being South by East of vs, I went a lande and sawe M. Skeuington, and Robert Webbe buried in the Churchyard, and supped with M. Geffryes, and Master Symberbe, at Master Bronckhornes, and not hauing a boate to come aboorde, I lay a shore all night at that house.

The 30. day about 9. a clocke, with much a doe I furnished away M. Jeffries, M. Symberbe, and William Towreson with letters, after dyned at M. Blaccollers, and made many salutations with diuers gentlemen.

Betimes this morning I sawe a cable bought, tymber for a Dauet, and anker stocke, and dispatched many businesses and at 12. a cloke I came aboord, and set a cooper to worke, and other things were done: a great many of our weake men went a shore, to refresh themselues, and to lye a shoare.

The 31. I wrought aboorde all day, and put our ship, and things in order: Afternoone I hauing pittie of some poore men of Mylbrooke which were robbed the night before by a Pyrat named Purser, which rid in Cawson bay, I consented to go out with the Edward in companie of a small ship, which they had furnished to be their Master, so about 5. afternoone, came 100. tunne of theirs aboord of mee: about 12. a clocke we set sayle, and by 3. afore day wee were gotten to windwards of him, then he set sayle, and went hence to the Eastwards, and outsayled vs, because our consort would not come neere him: after a small chase which we gaue him to no effect we returned into our old roade, and there moared the ship about 9. afternoone, and hence went all the Mylbrooke men againe a shore from mee, and thus I ended a troublesome voyage.

An

An extract out of the diſcourſe of one Lopez a Spaniard before ſpoken of, touching the foreſayd fight of M. Fenton with the Spaniſh ſhips together with a report of the proceeding of M. Iohn Drake after his departing from him.

VPon the relation of Pedro Sarmiento concerning the Streights, and for that the king hard, that there were ſhippes in England preparing for the ſame Streights, hee commanded Diego Flores de Valdes a noble man of Spaine, to paſſe thither with 23. ſhips, and 3500. men to ſtoppe the paſſage of the Engliſh men.

There went in this fleete the gouernour of Chile with 500. olde Souldiers ỳ came out of Flanders: but this fleete was the vnhappieſt ſhips that euer went out of Spayne: for before they came from the coaſt of Spaine a ſtorme tooke them, and caſt away 5. of the fleete, and in them aboue 800. men, and the reſt came into Cales. But the king ſent them worde that they ſhould proceede: and ſo there went out on the voyage 16. of the ſhips, for 2. more of their fleete were much ſpoyled by the ſtorme which they had.

5. Ships of this fleete caſt away on the coaſt of Spaine.

In theſe 16. ſhips, Pedro Sarmiento was ſent to bee gouernour in the ſtreights, & had aſſigned vnto him 500. men to ſtay there with him, and he carried with him all kinde of Artificers to make him forts, and other neceſſaries, with great ſtore of ordinance and other munition.

This Fleete becauſe it was late, did winter on the coaſte of Braſill, in the riuer of Genero: and from thence they went when the winter was paſte, and about the height of 42. degrees they had a ſudden ſtorme, ſo that Diego Flores beat it vp and downe 22. dayes, in which time he loſt one of the beſt ſhips that he had, which had in her 300 men, and 20. women, that went to inhabite the ſtreights: and in this ſhippe alſo was moſt part of the munition which ſhould haue bene left in the ſtreights, ſo in the end the ſtorme grewe to be ſo great, that the ſhips were not able to endure it at any longer, but were put backe vnto an Iſland, called Sancta Catelina: and there hee found a barke wherein were ſome Fryers going for the riuer of Plate: which Fryers tolde him of two great Engliſh ſhippes, and a Pynneſſe, which had taken them, but tooke nothing from them, nor did them any harme, but onely aſked them for the king of Spaynes ſhips.

M. Fenton tooke theſe Fryers.

Hereupon Diego Flores, knowing that theſe Engliſh ſhips would goe for the Streights, determined to goe thither although it was in the moneth of Februarie, and chooſing 10. ſhippes of the 15. that were left, he left two ſhips which were not in caſe to goe to ſea at the Iſland, and the other three ſhips which were old, and ſhaken with the ſtorme he put into them all the women, and ſicke men, in all the fleete, and ſent them to the riuer of Genero, and he with the other 10. returned againe for the Streights.

The 3. ſhips in which the ſicke men and women were, went to Braſill, and there they founde with in the port of S. Vincent the two Engliſh ſhips before mentioned.

A fight betwixt our 2. Engliſh ſhips & three Spaniſh ſhips

They would haue had the Engliſh men to haue gone out of the harbour, and thereupon they fell to fight, and becauſe that theſe 3. ſhips were weake with the ſtorme, and the men that they had were the worſt in all the Fleete, the Engliſh men eaſely put them to the worſte, and ſuncke one of them, and might haue ſunke another, if the Engliſh men would: but they minded not the deſtruction of any man: for that is the greateſt vertue that can be in a man, that when he may do hurt, yet hee will not doe it: ſo the Engliſh men went from this port to Spirito Sancto, where they had victuals for their Marchandiſe, and ſo they went backe for England, without doing of any harme in the country.

The cauſe why theſe Engliſh ſhippes vnder the conduct of Maſter Fenton went not to the ſtreights, I know not: but ſome ſay that they were put backe by foule weather: other ſome ſay that it was for feare of the kings ſhips.

But the pynneſſe of theſe two ſhips went from them, in which was Captaine Iohn Drake: the cauſe why they parted I know not, but the Pinneſſe came into the riuer of Plate, and within 5. leagues of ſcale Iſland, not far from the place where the Earle of Cumberlands ſhips did take in freſh water, ſhe was caſt away vpon a ledge of rocks: but the men were ſaued in their boate, which were in number 18. who went a ſhoare on the Northſide, and went a daies iourney into the land, and met with the Sauages, which are no men eaters, but take all the Chriſtians that they can, and make them ſlaues.

But the Engliſh men fought with them, and the ſauages ſlew 5. of them, and tooke 13 aliue, which were with the Sauages about 15. moneths. But the Maſter of the pynneſſe, whoſe name was Richard Fayreweather being not willing to indure the miſery that hee was in, and hauing knowledge that there was a towne of Chriſtians on the other ſide of the riuer, he in a night cal-

led.

led Iohn Drake, and another yong man which was with them, & tooke a very litle Canow, which had but two oares, and ſo paſſed to the other ſide of the riuer, which is about 9. leagues broad, and were 3. dayes before they could get ouer without meate, and comming to land, they hit vpon an high way that went towards the chriſtians: and ſeeing the footing of horſes, they followed it, and at laſt came to an houſe where there was corne ſowed, and there they met with Indians ſeruaunts vnto the Spaniards, which gaue them to eate, and clothes to couer them, for they were all naked, and one of the Indians went to the towne, and told them of the Engliſhmen: ſo the captaine ſent 4. horſemen, and brought them to the towne behind them.

This captain clothed them, and prouided lodging for them, and Iohn Drake dieted at the captains table, and they were all very well intreated, the captaine purpoſing to ſend thē for Spaine. But the Viceroy of Peru hauing newes hereof, ſent for them, and ſo Iohn Drake was ſent to him, but the other two were kept there, becauſe they were maried in the countrey, ſo that I know no more of their affaires.

Iohn Drake ſent to the Viceroy of Peru.

Vpon this comming of the Engliſhmen, there were prepared 50. horſemen to goe ouer the riuer to ſeeke the reſt of the Engliſhmen, and alſo certain Spaniards that were among the ſauage people, but I am not certaine whether they went forward or not.

A letter written to M. Richard Hakluyt of the middle Temple,

conteining a report of the true ſtate and commodities of New found land, by M. Anthonie Parkhurſt Gentleman, 1578.

MAſter Hakluyt, after moſt heartie commendations, with like thankes for your manifold kindneſſe to me ſhewed, not for any merites that hitherto haue bene mine, but wholy proceeding, I muſt needs confeſſe, of your owne good nature, which is ſo readie preſt to benefit your country and al ſuch poore men as haue any ſparke in them of good deſires, that you do not onely become their friend, but alſo humble your ſelfe as a ſeruant in their affaires: for which I would to God I were once in place where I might cauſe your burning zeale to bee knowen to thoſe that haue authoritie, power, and abilitie to recompence your trauelling mind and pen, wherwith you ceaſe not day nor night to labour and trauell to bring your good and godly deſires to ſome paſſe, though not poſſible to that happy ende that you moſt thirſt for: for ſuch is the malice of wicked men, the diuels inſtruments in this our age, that they cannot ſuffer any thing (or at leaſt few) to proceed and proſper, that tendeth to the ſetting forth of Gods glory, & the amplifying of the chriſtian faith, wherein hitherto princes haue not bene ſo diligent as their calling required. Alas, the labourers as yet are few, the harueſt great, I truſt God hath made you an inſtrument to increaſe the number, and to moue men of power, to redeeme the people of New found land, and thoſe parts from out of the captiuitie of that ſpirituall Pharao, the diuell.

Now to anſwer ſome part of your letter touching the ſundry nauies that come to New found land, or Terra noua, for fiſh: you ſhall vnderſtand that ſome fiſh not neere the other by 200. leagues, and therefore the certaintie is not knowen, & ſome yeeres come many more then other ſome, as I ſee the like among vs: who, ſince my firſt trauell being but 4. yeeres, are increaſed from 30. ſayle to 50. which commeth to paſſe chiefly by the imagination of the Weſterne men, who thinke their neighbors haue had greater gaines then in very deed they haue, for that they ſee me to take ſuch paines yerely to go in proper perſon, they alſo ſuppoſe that I find ſome ſecret commoditie by reaſon that I do ſearch the harbors, creekes and hauens, and alſo the land much more then euer any Engliſhman hath done. Surely I am glad that it ſo increaſeth, whereof ſoeuer it ſpringeth. But to let this paſſe, you ſhall vnderſtand that I am informed that there are aboue 100. ſaile of Spaniards that come to take Cod (who make all wet, and doe dry it when they come home) beſides 20. or 30. more that come frō Biſkaie, to kil Whale for traine. Theſe be better appointed for ſhipping and furniture of munition, then any nation, ſauing the Engliſhmen, who commonly are lodes of the harbors where they fiſh, and do vſe all ſtrangers helpe in fiſhing if need require, according to an old cuſtome of the country, which thing they do willingly, ſo that you take nothing from them more then a boat or twaine of ſalt, in reſpect of your protection of them againſt rouers or other violent intruders, who do often put them from good harbour, &c. As touching their tunnage, I thinke it may be well neere fiue or ſixe thouſand: but of Portingals there are not lightly aboue 50. ſaile, and they make all wet in like ſorte, whoſe tunnage may amount to three thouſand tunnes and vpwarde. Of the French nation and Buttons, are about one hundred and fiftie ſailes, the moſt of their ſhipping is very ſmall, not paſt fortie tunne, among which ſome are great and reaſonably well appointed, better then the Portingals, and not ſo well as the Spaniards, and the

burden of them may be some 7000. tunne. Their shipping is from all partes of Fraunce and Britaine, and the Spaniards from most parts of Spaine, the Portingals from Auciro and Viana, and from 2. or 3. portes more. The trade that our nation hath to Island, maketh that the English are not there in such numbers as other nations.

Now to certifie you of the fertilitie and goodnesse of the countrey, you shall vnderstand that I haue in sundry places sowen Wheate, Barlie, Rie, Oates, Beanes, Pease and seedes of herbes, kernels, plumstones, nuts, all which haue prospered as in England. The country yeelderh many good trees of fruite, as Filberds in some places, but in all places Cherie trees, and a kind of peare tree meete to graffe on. As for Roses, they are as common as Brambles here: Strawberies, Dewberies, and Raspis, as common as grasse. The timber is most Firre, yet plentie of Pinapple trees: few of these two kindes meete to maste a ship of three score and ten: but neere the grand baie or Cape Britton big, and sufficient for any ship. There bee also okes and thornes, there is in all the countrey plentie of Birch and Alder, which be the meetest wood for cole, and also Willow which will serue for many other purposes. As touching the kindes of fish beside Cod, there are Herrings, Salmons, Thornebacke, Plase, or rather wee should call them Flounders, Dog fish, and another most excellent of taste, called of vs a Cat, Oisters, & Muskles, in which I haue found pearles aboue 40. in one Muskle, and generally all haue some, great or small. I heard of a Portingall that found one worth 300. duckets: There are also other kinds of Shel fish, as limpets, cockle, wilkes, lobsters, and crabs: also a fish like a *Smelt which commeth on shore, and another that hath the like propertie called a Squid: these be the fishes, which (when I please to bee merie with my old companions) I say, doe come on shore when I commaund them in the name of the 5. ports, and coniure them by such like words: These also bee the fishes which I may sweepe with broomes on a heape, and neuer wet my foote, onely pronouncing two or three wordes whatsoeuer they be appointed by any man, so they heare my voyce: the vertue of the wordes bee small, but the nature of the fish great and strange. For the Squid, whose nature is to come by night as well as by day, I tell them, I set him a candle to see his way, with which he is much deligted, or els commeth to wonder at it, as doe our fresh water fish, the other commeth also in the night, but chiefly in the day, being forced by the Cod that would deuour him, and therefore for feare comming so neere the shore, is driuen drie by the surge of the Sea on the pibble and sands. Of these being as good as the Smelt, you may take vp with a shoue net, as plentifully as you doe Wheate in a shouell, sufficient in three or foure howers for a whole Citie. There bee also other fishes which I tell those that are desirous of strange newes that I take as fast as one would gather vp stones, and them I take with a long pole and hooke. Yea marrie say they, wee beleeue so, and that you catch all the rest you bring home in that sort, from Portingals and Frenchmen. No surely, but thus I doe: with three hookes stretched foorth in the ende of a pole, I make as it were an Eele speare, with which I pricke those Flounders as fast as you would take vp fritters, with a sharpe pointed sticke, and with that toole I may take vp in lesse then halfe a day Lobsters sufficient to finde three hundred men for a dayes meate. This pastime ended, I shew them that for my pleasure I take a great Saltiue I haue, and say no more to him then thus: Goe fetch me this rebellious fish that obeieth not this Gentleman that commeth from Kent and Christendome, bringing them to the high water marke, and when hee doubteth that any of those great Coddes by reason of sheluing ground bee like to tumble into the Sea againe, hee will warily take heede and carrie him vp backe to the heape of his fellowes. This doeth cause my friendes to wonder, and at the first hearing to iudge them notorious lies, but they laugh and are merie when they heare the meanes how each tale is true.

*Called by the Spaniards Anchouas, and by the Portingals Capelinas.

I told you once I doe remember how in my trauell into Affrica and America, I found trees that bare Oisters, which was strange to you, till I told you that their boughes hung in the water, on which both Oisters and Muskles did sticke fast, as their propertie is to stakes and timber.

Now we to let these merie tales passe, and to come to earnest matters againe, you shall vnderstand that New found land is in a temperate Climate, and not so colde as foolish Mariners doe say, who finde it colde sometimes when plentie of Iles of Ice lie neere the shore: but vp in the land they shall finde it hotter then in England in many partes of the countrey toward the South. This colde commeth by an accidentall meanes, as by the Ice that commeth fleeting from the North partes of the worlde, and not by the situation of the countrey, or nature of the Climate. The countrey is full of litle small riuers all the yeere long proceeding from the mountaines, ingendered both of snow and raine: few springs that euer I could finde or heare of, except it bee towards the South: in some places or rather in most places, great lakes with plentie of fish, the countrey

trey most couered with woods of firre, yet in many places indifferent good grasse, and plentie of Beares euery where, so that you may kill of them as oft as you list: their flesh is as good as yong beefe, and hardly you may know the one from the other, if it be poudered but two dayes. Of Otters we may take like store. There are Sea Guls, Murres, Duckes, wilde geese, and many other kind of birdes store, too long to write, especially at one Iland named Penguin, where wee may driue them on a planke into our ship as many as shall lade her. These birdes are also called Penguins, and cannot flie, there is more meate in one of these, then in a goose: the Frenchmen that fish neere the grand baie, doe bring small store of flesh with them, but victuall themselues alwayes with these birdes. Now againe, for Venison plentie, especially to the North about the grand baie, and in the South neere Cape Race, and Pleasance: there are many other kind of beasts, as Luzarnes and other mightie beastes like to Camels in greatnesse, and their feete clouen, I did see them farre off not able to discerne them perfectly, but their steps shewed that their feete were clouen, and bigger then the feete of Camels, I suppose them to be a kind of Buffes which I read to bee in the countreys adiacent, and very many in the firme land. There bee also to the Northward, Hares and Foxes in all partes so plentifully, that at noone dayes they take away our flesh before our faces, within lesse then halfe a paire of buts length, where foure and twentie persons were turning of drie fish, and two dogges in sight, yet stoode they not in feare till wee gaue shoot and set the dogges vpon them: the Beares be also as bold, which will not spare at middaie to take your fish before your face, and I beleeue assuredly would not hurt any bodie vnlesse they be forced.

Now to shew you my fansie what places I suppose meetest to inhabite in those partes discouered of late by our nation: There is neere about the mouth of the grand baie, an excellent harbour called of the Frenchmen Chasteau, and one Iland in the very entrie of the streight called Bell Isle, which places if they be peopled and well fortified (as there are stone and things meete for it throughout all New found land) we shall be lordes of the whole fishing in small time, if it doe so please the Queenes maiestie, and from thence send wood and cole with all necessaries to Labrador lately discouered: but I am of opinion, and doe most stedfastly beleeue that we shall finde as rich Mines in more temperate places and Climates, and more profitable for fishing then any yet we haue vsed, where we shall haue not farre from thence plentie of salt made by fire vndoubtedly, and very likely by the heate of the Sunne, by reason I finde salte kerned on the rockes in nine and fortie and better: these places may bee found for salte in three and fortie. I know more touching these two commodities last remembred, then any man of our nation doth: for that I haue some knowledge in such matters, and haue most desired the finding of them by painefull trauell, and most diligent inquirie. Now to be short, for I haue bene ouerlong by master Butlers means, who cried on mee to write at large, and of as many things as I call to minde woorthy of remembraunce: wherefore this one thing more. I could wish the Iland in the mouth of the riuer of Canada, should be inhabited, and the riuer searched, for that there are many things which may rise thereof, as I will shew you hereafter. I could find in my heart to make proofe whether it be true or no that I haue red and heard of Frenchmen and Portingals to bee in that riuer, and about Cape Britton. I had almost forgot to speake of the plentie of wolues, & to shew you that there be Foxes, black, white & gray: other beastes I know none saue those before remembred. I found also certaine Mines of iron and copper in S. Johns, and in the Iland of Iron, which things might turne to our great benefite, if our men had desire to plant thereabout, for proofe whereof I haue brought home some of the oare of both sortes. And thus I ende assuring you on my faith, that if I had not bene deceiued by the vile Portingals, descending of the Iewes and Judas kind, I had not failed to haue searched this riuer, and all the coast of Cape Britton, what might haue bene found to haue benefited our countrey: but they breaking their bands, and falsifying their faith and promise, disappointed me of the salt they should haue brought me in part of recompence of my good seruice in defending them two yeeres against French Rouers that had spoyled them, if I had not defended them.

By meanes whereof they made me loose not onely the searching of the countrey, but also forced me to come home with great losse aboue, 600. li. for recompence whereof I haue sent my man into Portingall, to demaund iustice at the kings hand, if not, I must put vp my supplication to the Queenes maiestie & her honourable counsell, to grant me leaue to stay here so much of their goods as they haue damnified mee, or els that I may take of them in New found land, as much fishe as shall be worth, 600. li. or as much as the salte might haue made. I pray you aduertise mee what way I were best to take, and what hope there may be of a recompence if I follow the suite: many there are that doe comfort mee, and doe bidde mee proceede, for that her Maiestie and the

counsell doe tender poore fishermen, who with me haue sustained 300. pound losse in that voyage. And to conclude, if you and your friend shall thinke me a man sufficient and of credite, to seeke the Isle of S. Iohn, or the riuer of Canada, with any part of the firme land of Cape Britton, I shall giue my diligence for the true and perfect discouerie, and leaue some part of mine owne businesse to further the same, and thus I end committing you to God. From Bristow the 13. of November, 1578.

Yours to vse and commaund,
Anthonie Parkhurst.

The Letters Patents graunted by her Maiestie to Sir Humfrey Gilbert knight, for the inhabiting and planting of our people in America.

ELIZABETH by the grace of God, Queene of England, &c. To all people to whom these presents shal come, greeting. Know ye that of our especiall grace, certaine science and meere motion, we haue giuen and granted, and by these presents for vs, our heires and successours, doe giue and graunt to our trustie and welbeloued seruaunt sir Humfrey Gilbert of Compton in our Countie of Deuonshire knight, and to his heires and assignes for euer, free libertie and licence from time to time, and at all times for euer hereafter, to discouer, finde, search out, and view such remote, heathen and barbarous lands, countries and territories not actually possessed of any Christian prince or people, as to him, his heires and assignes, and to euery or any of them, shall seeme good, and the same to haue, hold, occupie and enioy to him, his heires and assignes for euer, with all commodities, iurisdictions and royalties both by sea and land: and the said sir Humfrey and all such as from time to time by licence of vs, our heires and successours, shall goe or trauell thither, to inhabite or remaine there, to build and fortifie at the discretion of the sayd sir Humfrey, and of his heires and assignes, the statutes or actes of parliament made against Fugitiues, or against such as shall depart, remaine or continue out of our Realme of England without licence, or any other acte, statute, lawe, or matter whatsoeuer to the contrary in any wise not withstanding. And we doe likewise by these presents, for vs, our heires and successours, giue full authoritie and power to the sayd sir Humfrey, his heires and assignes, and euery of them, that he and they, and euery, or any of them, shall and may at all and euery time and times hereafter, haue, take, and lead in the same voyages, to trauel thitherward, or to inhabite there with him, and euery or any of them, such, and so many of our Subiects as shall willingly accompany him and them, and euery or any of them with sufficient shipping, and furniture for their transportations, so that none of the same persons, nor any of them be such as hereafter shall be specially restrained by vs, our heires and successours. And further, that hee the sayd sir Humfrey, his heires and assignes, and euery or any of them shall haue, hold, occupie and enioy to him, his heires or assignes, and euery of them for euer, all the soile of all such landes, countries and territories so to bee discouered or possessed as aforesayd, and of all Cities, Castles, Townes and villages, and places in the same, with the rites, royalties and iurisdictions, as well marine as other, within the sayde landes or countries of the Seas thereunto adioyning, to be had or vsed with full power to dispose thereof, and of euery part thereof in fee simple or otherwise, according to the order of the lawes of England, as neere as the same conueniently may bee, at his, and their will and pleasure, to any person then beyng, or that shall remaine within the allegiance of vs, our heires & successors, paying vnto vs for all seruices, duties & demands, the fift part of all the oare of gold & siluer, that from time to time, & at all times after such discouerie, subduing and possessing shall be there gotten: all which lands, countries and territories, shall for euer be holde by the sayd sir Humfrey, his heires and assignes, of vs, our heires and successours by homage, and by the sayd paiment of the sayd fift part before reserued onely for all seruices.

And moreouer, we doe by these presents for vs, our heires and successours, giue and graunt licence to the sayde sir Humfrey Gilbert, his heires or assignes, & to euery of them, that hee and they, and euery or any of them shall, and may from time to time, and all times for euer hereafter, for his and their defence, encounter, expulse, repell, and resist, as well by Sea as by land, and by all other wayes whatsoeuer, all, and euery such person and persons whatsoeuer, as without the speciall licence and liking of the sayd sir Humfrey, and of his heires and assignes, shall attempt to inhabite within the sayd countries, or any of them, or within the space of two hundreth leagues

neere

neere to the place or places within such countries as aforesayd, if they shall not bee before planted or inhabited within the limites aforesaid, with the subiects of any christian prince, being in amitie with her Maiestie, where the said sir Humfrey, his heires or assignes, or any of them, or his or their, or any of their associates or companies, shall within sixe yeeres next ensuing, make their dwellings and abidings, or that shall enterprise or attempt at any time hereafter vnlawfully to annoy either by Sea or land, the said sir Humfrey, his heires or assignes, or any of them, or his or their, or any of their companies: giuing and graunting by these presents, further power and authoritie to the said sir Humfrey, his heires and assignes, and euery of them from time to time, & at all times for euer hereafter to take and surprise by all maner of meanes whatsoeuer, all and euery person and persons, with their shippes, vessels, and other goods and furniture, which without the licence of the said sir Humfrey, or his heires or assignes, as aforesayd, shall be found trafficquing into any harborough or harboroughs, creeke or creekes, within the limites aforesayde, (the subiectes of our Realmes and dominions, and all other persons in amitie with vs, being driuen by force of tempest or shipwracke onely excepted) and those persons and euery of them with their ships, vessels, goods, and furniture, to detaine and possesse, as of good and lawfull prize, according to the discretion of him the sayd sir Humfrey, his heires and assignes, and of euery or any of them. And for vniting in more perfect league and amitie of such countreys, landes and territories so to bee possessed and inhabited as aforesayde, with our Realmes of England and Ireland, and for the better incouragement of men to this enterprise: wee doe by these presents graunt, and declare, that all such countreys so hereafter to bee possessed and inhabited as aforesayd, from thencefoorth shal bee of the allegiance of vs, our heires, and successours. And we doe graunt to the said sir Humfrey, his heires and assignes, and to all and euery of them, and to all and euery other person and persons, being of our allegiance, whose names shall be noted or entred in some of our courts of Record within this our Realme of England, and that with the assent of the sayd sir Humfrey, his heires or assignes, shall now in this iourney for discouerie, or in the second iourney for conquest hereafter, trauel to such lands, countries and territories as aforesaid, and to their and euery of their heires, that they and euery or any of them being either borne within our said realmes of England, or Ireland, or within any other place within our allegiance, and which hereafter shall be inhabiting within any the lands, countries and territories, with such licence as aforesaid, shall, and may haue, and enioy all the priuiledges of free denizens and persons natiue of England, and within our allegiance, any law, custome, or vsage to the contrary notwithstanding.

And forasmuch as vpon the finding out, discouering, and inhabiting of such remote lands, countries and territories as aforesayd, it shall be necessarie for the safetie of all men that shall aduenture themselues in those iourneis or voiages, to determine to liue together in Christian peace and ciuill quietnesse each with other, whereby euery one may with more pleasure and profit, enioy that whereunto they shall attaine with great paine and perill: we for vs, our heires and successours are likewise pleased and contented, and by these presents doe giue and graunt to the said sir Humfrey and his heires and assignes for euer, that he and they, and euery or any of them, shal and may from time to time for euer hereafter within the said mentioned remote lands and countreys, and in the way by the Seas thither, and from thence, haue ful and meere power and authoritie to correct, punish, pardon, gouerne and rule by their, and euery or any of their good discretions and pollicies, as well in causes capitall or criminall, as ciuill, both marine, and other, all such our subiects and others, as shall from time to time hereafter aduenture themselues in the said iournies or voiages habitatiue or possessiue, or that shall at any time hereafter inhabite any such lands, countreys or territories as aforesayd, or that shall abide within two hundred leagues of any the said place or places, where the said sir Humfrey or his heires, or assignes, or any of them, or any of his or their associates or companies, shall inhabite within sixe yeeres next ensuing the date hereof, according to such statutes, lawes and ordinances, as shall be by him the said sir Humfrey, his heires and assignes, or euery, or any of them deuised or established for the better gouernment of the said people as aforesayd: so alwaies that the said statutes, lawes and ordinances may be, as neere as conueniently may, agreeable to the forme of the lawes, & pollicie of England: and also, so as they be not against the true christian faith or religiõ now professed in the church of England, nor in any wise to withdraw any of the subiects or people of those lands or places from the allegiance of vs, our heires or successors, as their immediate soueraignes vnder God. And further we do by these presents for vs, our heires and successors, giue and graunt ful power and authoritie to our trustie and welbeloued counseller, sir William Cicill knight, lord Burleigh, our high treasurer of England, and to the lord treasurer of England, of vs for the time being, and to the priuie counsell of vs, our heires and successours, or any foure of them for the time being, that hee, they, or any foure of them, shall, and may from

time to time and at all times hereafter, vnder his or their handes or seales by vertue of these presents, authorise and licence the sayd sir Humfrey Gilbert, his heires and assignes, and euery or any of them by him and themselues, or by their or any of their sufficient attornies, deputies, officers, ministers, factors and seruants, to imbarke and transport out of our realmes of England and Ireland, all, or any of his or their goods, and all or any the goods of his or their associates and companies, and euery or any of them, with such other necessaries and commodities of any our Realmes, as to the sayd lord Treasurer or foure of the priuie counsell of vs, our heyres or successors for the time being, as aforesaid, shall be from time to time by his or their wisdoms or discretions thought meete and conuenient for the better reliefe and supportation of him the sayde sir Humfrey, his heires and assignes, and euery or any of them, and of his and their, and euery or any of their said associates and companies, any acte, statute, law, or other thing to the contrarie in any wise notwithstanding.

Prouided alwayes, and our will and pleasure is, and wee doe hereby declare to all Christian kings, princes and states, that if the sayd sir Humfrey, his heires or assignes, or any of them, or any other by their licence or appointment, shal at any time or times hereafter robbe or spoile by Sea or by land, or doe any acte of vniust and vnlawfull hostilitie to any of the subiects of vs, our heires, or successors, or any of the subiectes of any king, prince, ruler, gouernour or state being then in perfect league and amitie with vs, our heires or successours, and that vpon such iniurie, or vpon iust complaint of any such prince, ruler, gouernour or state, or their subiectes, we, our heyres or successours shall make open proclamation within any the portes of our Realme of England commodious, that the sayd Sir Humfrey, his heires or assignes, or any other to whom these our letters patents may extend, shall within the terme to be limited by such proclamations, make full restitution and satisfaction of all such iniuries done, so as both wee and the sayd princes, or others so complaining, may hold vs and themselues fully contented: And that if the sayd sir Humfrey, his heires and assignes, shall not make or cause to bee made satisfaction accordingly, within such time so to bee limited: that then it shall be lawfull to vs, our heires & successors, to put the sayd sir Humfrey, his heires and assignes, and adherents, and all the inhabitants of the said places to bee discouered as is aforesaid, or any of them out of our allegiance and protection, and that from and after such time of putting out of protection the sayde sir Humfrey, and his heires, assignes, adherents and others so to be put out, and the sayd places within their habitation, possession and rule, shall bee out of our protection and allegiance, and free for all princes and others, to pursue with hostilitie as being not our subiects, nor by vs any way to bee aduowed, maintained or defended, nor to be holden as any of ours, nor to our protection, dominion or allegiaunce any way belonging, for that expresse mention, &c. In witnesse whereof, &c. Witnesse our selfe at Westminster the 11. day of June, the 20. yeere of our raigne. Per ipsam Reginam, &c.

A report of the voyage and successe thereof, attempted in the yeere of our Lord, 1583. by Sir Humfrey Gilbert knight, with other Gentlemen assisting him in that action, intended to discouer and to plant Christian inhabitants in place conuenient, vpon those large and ample countries extended Northward from the Cape of Florida, lying vnder very temperate Climes, esteemed fertile and rich in Minerals, yet not in the actuall possession of any Christian prince, written by M. Edward Haies Gentleman, and principal actor in the same voyage, who alone continued vnto the end, and by Gods speciall assistance returned home with his retinue safe and entire.

MAny voiages haue bene pretended, yet hitherto neuer any throughly accomplished by our nation, of exact discouerie into the bowels of those maine, ample, and vast countries, extended infinitely into the North from 30. degrees, or rather from 25. deg. of Septentrionall latitude, neither hath a right way bin taken of planting a Christian habitation and regiment vpon the same, as well may appeare both by the litle we yet do actually possesse therein, and by our ignorance of the riches and secrets within those landes, which vnto this day we know chiefly by the trauel & report of other nations, & most of the French, whoalbeit they cannot challege such right and interest vnto the said countries, as we, neither these many yeeres haue had opportunitie nor meanes so great, to discouer & to plant (being vexed with the calamities of intestine warres) as we haue had by the inestimable benefit of our long & happy peace: yet haue they both waies performed more, & had long since attained a sure possession and setled gouernment of many prouinces in those Northerly parts of America, if their many attempts into those forren and remote landes had not bene impeached by their garboils at home.

The

The first discouery of these coasts (neuer heard of before) was well begun by John Cabot the father, and Sebastian his sonne, an Englishman borne, who were the first finders out of all that great tract of land stretching from the cape of Florida vnto those Ilands which we now call the Newfoundland: all which they brought and annexed vnto the crowne of England. Since when, if with like diligence the search of Inland countries had beene followed, as the discouery vpon the coast, and out parts thereof was performed by those two men: no doubt her Maiesties territories and reuenue had beene mightily inlarged and aduanced by this day. And which more is: the seed of Christian religion had beene sowed amongst those pagans, which by this time might haue brought forth a most plentifull haruest and copious congregation of Christians. Which must be the chiefe intent of such as shall make any attempt that way: or els whatsoeuer is builded vpon other foundation shall neuer obtaine happy successe nor continuance.

The coasts frō Florida northward, first discouered by the English natiō.

And although we can not precisely iudge (which onely belongeth to God) what haue beene the hinders of men stirred vp to great attempts of discouering & planting in those remote countries: yet the euents do shew that either Gods cause hath not beene chiefly preferred by them, or els God hath not permitted so abundant grace as the light of his word and knowledge of him to be yet reuealed vnto those Infidels before the appointed time.

But most assuredly, the onely cause of religion hitherto hath kept backe, and will also bring forward at the time assigned by God, an effectuall and complet discouery and possession by Christians both of those ample countries and the riches within them, hitherto concealed: whereof notwithstanding God in his wisedome hath permitted to be reuealed, from time to time, a certaine obscure and milky knowledge, by little and little, to allure the mindes of men that way (which els will be dull enough in the zeale of his cause) and thereby to prepare vs vnto a readinesse for the execution of his will against the due time ordained, of calling those pagans vnto Christianity.

In the meane while, it behoueth euery man of great calling, in whom is any instinct of inclination vnto this attempt, to examine his owne motions: which if the same proceed of ambition or auarice, he may assure himselfe it commeth not of God, and therefore can not haue confidence of Gods protection and assistance against the violence (els irresistable) both of sea, and infinite perils vpon the land: whom God yet may vse an instrument to further his cause and glory some way, but not to build vpon so bad a foundation.

A fit consideration.

Otherwise, if his motiues be deriued from a vertuous & heroycall minde, preferring chiefly the honor of God, compassion of poore Infidels captiued by the deuill, tyrannizing in most woonderfull and dreadfull maner ouer their bodyes and soules: aduancement of his honest and well disposed countreymen, willing to accompany him in such honourable actions: relefe of sundry people within this realme distressed: All these be honorable purposes, imitating the nature of the munificent God, wherewith he is well pleased, who will assist such an actour beyonde expectation of man:

And the same, who feeleth this inclination in himselfe, by all likelyhood, may hope, or rather confidently repose in the predordinance of God, that in this last age of the world (or likely neuer) the time is complet of receiuing also these Gentils into his mercy: And that God will raise him an instrument to effect the same. It seeming probable by euent of precedent attempts made by the Spanyardes and French sundry times: that the countryes lying North of Florida, God hath reserued the same to be reduced vnto Christian ciuilitie by the English nation.

Probable coniectures by these lands north of Florida, are reserued for the English natiō to possesse.

For not long after that Christopher Columbus had discouered the Ilands and continent of the West Indies for Spaine, John and Sebastian Cabot made discouery also of the rest from Florida Northwards, to the behoofe of England.

And whensoeuer afterwards the Spanyards (very prosperous in all their Southerne discoueries) did attempt any thing into Florida and those regions inclining towards the North: they proued most vnhappy, and were at length discouraged vtterly by the hard and lamentable successe of many both religious and valiant in armes, endeuoring to bring those Northerly regions also vnder the Spanish iurisdiction: as if God had prescribed limits vnto the Spanish nation which they might not exceed: as by their owne gests recorded may be aptly gathered.

The Spanyards prosperous in the Southerne discoueries, yet vnhappy in these Northerne.

The French, as they can pretend lesse title vnto these Northerne parts then the Spanyard, by how much the Spanyard made the first discouery of the same continent so farre Northward as vnto Florida, and the French did but renew that before discouered by the English nation, vsurping vpon our right, and imposing names vpon countryes, riuers, bayes, capes, or headlands, as if they had beene the first finders of those coasts, which iniurie we offered not vnto the Spanyards, but left off to discouer when we approched the Spanish limits: euen so God hath not hitherto permitted them to establish a possession permanent vpon an others right, notwithstanding their manifold

The French are but vsurpers vpon our right.

The French also vnfortunat in those North parts of America.

manifolde attempts, in which the issue hath beene no lesse tragicall then that of the Spanyards, as by their owne reports is extant.

A good incouragement for the English nation, to proceed in the conquests of the North of America.

Then seeing the English nation onely hath right vnto these countryes of America from the cape of Florida Northward by the priuilege of first discouery, vnto which Cabot was authorised by regall authority, & set forth by the expence of our late famous king Henry the seuenth: Which right also seemeth strongly defended on our behalfe, by the powerfull hand of almighty God, withstanding the enterprises of other nations: It may greatly incourage vs, vpon so iust ground, as is our right, and vpon so sacred an intent, as to plant religion (our right and intent being meet foundations for the same:) to prosecute effectually vnto a full possession of those so ample & pleasant countries appertaining vnto the crowne of England: the same (as is to be coniectured by infallible arguments of the worlds end approching) being now arriued vnto the time by God prescribed of their vocation, if euer their calling vnto the knowledge of God may be expected. Which also is very probable by the reuolution and course of Gods word and religion, which from the beginning hath mooued from the East, towards, and at last vnto the West, where it is like to end, vnlesse the same begin againe where it did in the East, which were to expect a like world againe. But we are assured of the contrary by the prophesie of Christ, whereby we gather, that after his word preached throughout the world, shall be the end. And as the Gospell when it descended Westward beganne in the South, and afterward spred into the North of Europe: euen so, as the same hath begunne in the South countries of America, no lesse hope may be gathered that it will also spred into the North.

The due time approcheth by all likelihood of calling these heathens vnto Christianity.

The word of God mooueth circularly.

These considerations may helpe to suppresse all dreads rising of hard euents in attempts made this way by other nations, as also of the heauie successe and issue in the late enterprise made by a worthy gentleman our country man sir Humfrey Gilbert knight. who was the first that of our nation carried people to erect an habitation and gouernement in those Northerly countries of America. About which, albeit he had consumed much substance, and lost his life at last, his people also perishing for the most part: yet the mystery thereof we must leaue vnto God, and iudge charitably both of the cause (which was iust in all pretence) and of the person, who was very zealous in prosecuting the same, deseruing honourable remembrance for his good minde, and expence of life in so vertuous an enterprise. Whereby neuertheless, least any man should be dismaid by example of other folks calamity, and misdeeme that God doth resist all attempts intended that way: I thought good, so farre as my selfe was an eye witnesse, to deliuer the circumstance and maner of our proceedings in that action: in which the gentleman was so infortunately incombred with wants, and wofully matched with many ill disposed people, that his rare iudgement and regiment premeditated for those affayres, was subiected to tollerate abuses, & in sundry extremities to holde on a course, more to vpholde credit, then likely in his owne conceit, happely to succeed.

The planting of Gods word must be handled with reuerence.

The issue of such actions being alwayes miserable, not guided by God, who abhorreth confusion and disorder, hath left this for admonition (being the first attempt by our nation to plant) vnto such as shall take the same cause in hand hereafter, not to be discouraged from it: but to make men well aduised how they handle his so high and excellent matters, as the carriage is of his word into those very mighty and vaste countryes. An action doubtlesse not to be intermedled with base purposes, as many haue made the same but a colour to shadow actions, otherwise scarse iustifiable: which doth excite Gods heauy iudgements in the end, to the terrifying of weake minds from the cause, without pondering his iust proceedings: and doth also incense forren princes against our attempts how iust soeuer, who can not but deeme the sequele very dangerous vnto their state (if in those parts we should grow to strength) seeing the very beginnings are entred with spoile.

Ill actions coloured by pretence of planting vpon remote lands.

And with this admonition denounced vpon zeale towards Gods cause, also towards such in whom appeareth disposition honorable vnto this action of planting Christian people and religion in those remote and barbarous nations of America (vnto whom I wish all happinesse) I will now proceed to make relation briefly, yet particularly, of our voyage vndertaken with sir Humfry Gilbert, begun, continued, and ended aduersly.

The first and great preparation of sir H. Gilbert.

When first sir Humfry Gilbert vndertooke the Westerne discouery of America, and had procured from her Maiesty a very large commission to inhabit, and possesse at his choise all remote and heathen lands not in the actuall possession of any Christian prince, the same commission exemplified with many priuileges, such as in his discretion he might demand: Very many gentlemen of good estimation drew vnto him, to associate him in so commendable an enterprise, so that the preparation was expected to grow vnto a puissant fleet, able to encounter a kings power by sea: neuertheless, amongst a multitude of voluntary men, their dispositions were diuers, which bred a farre,

and

and made a diuision in the end, to the confusion of that attempt euen before the same was begunne, and when the shipping was in a maner prepared, & men ready vpon the coast to go aboord: at what time some brake consort, and followed courses degenerating from the voyage before pretended. Others failed of their promises contracted, and the greater number were dispersed, leauing the generall with few of his assured friends, with whome he aduentured to sea: where hauing tasted of no lesse misfortune, he was shortly driuen to retyre home with the losse of a tall shippe, and (more to his griefe) of a valiant gentleman Piles Morgan.

A constant resolution of sir H. Gilbert.

Hauing buryed onely in a preparation a great masse of substance, wherby his estate was impaired, his minde yet not dismaid, he continued his former designment and purpose to reuiue this enterprise, good occasion seruing. Upon which determination standing long, without meanes to satisfie his desire: at last he granted certaine assignemẽts out of his commission to sundry persons of meane ability, desiring the priuiledge of his grant, to plant and fortifie in the North parts of America about the riuer of Canada, to whom if God gaue good successe in the North parts (where then no matter of moment was expected) the same (he thought) would greatly aduance the hope of the South, and be a furtherance vnto his determination that way. And the worst that might happen in that course, might be excused without preiudice vnto him by the former supposition, that those North regions were of no regard: but chiefly a possession taken in any parcell of those heathen countries by vertue of his grant, did inuest him of territories extending euery way two hundred leagues: which induced sir Humfrey Gilbert to make those assignements, desiring greatly their expedition, because his commission did expyre after sixe yeeres, if in that space he had not gotten actuall possession.

A second preparation of sir H. Gilbert.

Time went away without any thing done by his assignes: insomuch at last he must resolue himselfe to take a voyage in person, for more assurance to keepe his patent in force, which then almost was expired or within two yeeres.

In furtherance of his determination, amongst others, sir George Beckam knight shewed himselfe very zealous to the action, greatly aiding both by his aduise and in the charge. Other gentlemen to their abilitie ioyned vnto him, resolued to aduenture their substance and liues in the same cause. Who beginning their preparation from that time, both of shipping, munition, victuall, men, and things requisite, some of them continued the charge two yeeres complet, without intermission. Such were the difficulties and crosse accidents, opposing these proceedings, which tooke not end in lesse then two yeeres: many of which circumstances I will omit.

The last place of our assembly, before we left the coast of England, was in Causet bay, neere vnto Plymmouth: then resolued to put vnto the sea with shipping and prouision, such as we had, before our store yet remayning, but chiefly the time and season of the yeere were too farre spent. Nevertheless it seemed first very doubtfull, by what way to shape our course, and to beginne our intended discouery, either from the South Northward, or from the North Southward.

Consultation about our course.

The first (that is beginning South) without all controuersy was the likeliest, wherein we were assured to haue commodity of the currant, which from the cape of Florida setteth Northward, and would haue furthered greatly our nauigation, discouering from the foresaid cape along towards cape Britton, and all those lands lying to the North.

Commodities in discouering from South Northward.

Also the yeere being farre spent, and arriued to the moneth of June, we were not to spend time in Northerly courses, where we should be surprised with timely winter: but to couet the South, which we had space enough, then to haue attained: and there might with lesse detriment haue wintred that season, being more milde and short in the South then in the North, where winter is both long and rigorous.

These & other like reasons alleged in fauor of the Southerne course, first to be taken, to the contrary was inferred: that forasmuch as both our victuals, and many other needfull prouisions were diminished and left insufficient for so long a voyage, and for the wintring of so many men, we ought to shape a course most likely to minister supply: and that was to take the Newfound land in our way, which was but seuen hundred leagues from our English coast. Where being vsually at that time of the yeere, and vntill the fine of August, a multitude of shippes repayring thither for fish: we should be relieued abundantly with many necessaries, which after the fishing ended, they might well spare, and freely impart vnto vs.

Cause why we began our discouery frõ the North. Incommodities in beginning North.

Not staying long vpon that New land coast, we might proceed Southward, and follow still the Sunne, vntill we arriued at places more temperate to our content.

By which reasons we were the rather induced to follow this Northerly course, obeying vnto necessitie, which must be supplyed. Other wise, we doubted that sudden approch of winter, bringing with it continuall fogge, and thicke mists, tempest and rage of weather: also contrarietie of

currants

currants descending from the cape of Florida vnto cape Britton and cape Rase, would fall out to be great and irresistable impediments vnto our further proceeding for that yeere, and compell vs to winter in those North and colde regions.

Wherefore suppressing all obiections to the contrary, we resolued to beginne our course Northward, and to follow directly as we might, the trade way vnto Newfound land: from whence after our refreshing and reparation of wants, we intended without delay (by Gods permission) to proceed into the South, not omitting any riuer or bay, which in all that large tract of land appeared to our view worthy of search. Immediatly we agreed vpon the maner of our course and orders to be obserued in our voyage: which were deliuered in writing vnto the captaines and maisters of euery shippe a copie in maner following.

Euery shippe had deliuered two bollets or scrowles, the one sealed vp in ware, the other left open: in both which were included seuerall watchwords: that open, seruing vpon our owne coast or the coast of Ireland: the other sealed, was promised on all hands not to be broken vp vntill we should be cleere of the Irish coast: which from thencefoorth did serue vntill we arriued and met altogether in such harbours of the Newfound land as were agreed for our Rendevous. The said watchwords being requisite to know our consorts, whensoeuer by night, either by fortune of weather, our fleet dispersed should come together againe: or one should hale another: or if by ill watch and stearedge one shippe chance to fall aboord of another in the darke.

The reason of the bollet sealed, was to keepe secret that watchword while we were vpon our owne coast, least any of the company, stealing from the fleete, might bewray the same: which knowen to an enemy, he might boord vs by night without mistrust, hauing our owne watchword.

Orders agreed vpon by the Captaines and Maisters to be *obserued by the fleet of sir Humfrey Gilbert.*

FIrst the Admirall to carry his flagge by day, and his light by night.

2 Item, if the Admirall shall shorten his saile by night, then to shew two lights vntill he be answered againe by euery shippe shewing one light for a short time.

3 Item, if the Admirall after his shortning of saile, as afore said, shall make more saile againe: then he to shew three lights one aboue another.

4 Item, if the Admirall shall happen to hull in the night: then to make a wauering light ouer his other light, wauering the light vpon a pole.

5 Item, if the fleet should happen to be scattered by weather, or other mishap, then so soone as one shall descry another, to hoise both toppe sailes twise, if the weather will serue, and to strike them twise againe: but if the weather serue not, then to hoise the maine toppe saile twise, and forthwith to strike it twise againe.

6 Item, if it shall happen a great fogge to fall, then presently euery shippe to beare vp with the admirall, if there be winde: but if it be a calme, then euery shippe to hull, and so to lie at hull till it be cleare. And if the fogge do continue long, then the Admirall to shoot off two pieces euery euening, and euery shippe to answere it with one shot: and euery man bearing to the shippe, that is to leeward so neere as he may.

7 Item, euery maister to giue charge vnto the watch to looke out well, for laying aboord one of another in the night, and in fogges.

8 Item, euery euening euery shippe to haile the Admirall, and so to fall astearne him, saying through the Ocean: and being on the coast, euery shippe to haile him both morning and euening.

9 Item, if any shippe be in danger any way, by leake or otherwise, then she to shoot off a piece, and presently to hang out one light, whereupon euery man to beare towards her, answering her with one light, for a short time, and so to put it out againe, thereby to giue knowledge that they haue seene her token.

10 Item, whensoeuer the Admirall shall hang out her ensigne in the maine shrowds, then euery man to come aboord her, as a token of counsell.

11 Item, if there happen any stormе or contrary winde to the fleete after the discouery, whereby they are separated: then euery shippe to repayre vnto their last good port, there to meete againe.

Our

Our courſe agreed vpon.

THe courſe firſt to be taken for the diſcouery is to beare directly to cape Raſe the moſt Southerly cape of Newfound land. And there to harbor our ſelues either in Rogneux or Fermous, being the firſt places appointed for our Rende vous, and the next harbors vnto the Northward of cape Raſe. And therefore euery ſhippe ſeparated from the fleet, to repayre to that place ſo faſt as God ſhall permit, whether you ſhall fall to the Southward, or Northward of it: and there to ſtay for the meeting of the whole fleet the ſpace of tenne dayes, and when you ſhall depart, to leaue marks.

A direction of our courſe vnto the New found land.

BEginning our courſe from Silley, the neereſt is by Weſt ſouthweſt (if the winde ſerue) vntill ſuch time as we haue brought our ſelues in the latitude of 43 or 44 degrees, becauſe the Ocean is ſubiect much to Southerly windes in June and July. Then to take trauerſe from 45 to 47 degrees of latitude, if we be inforced by contrary windes: and not to go to the Northward of the height of 47 degrees of Septentrional latitude by no meanes, if God ſhall not inforce the contrary: but to do your indeuor to keepe in the height of 46 degrees, ſo neere as you can poſſibly, becauſe cape Raſe lyeth about that height.

Notes.

IF by contrary windes we be driuen backe vpon the coaſt of England, then to repayre vnto Silley for a place of our aſſembly and meeting.

If we be driuen backe by contrary windes, that we can not paſſe the coaſt of Ireland: then the place of our aſſembly to be at Beare hauen or Baltimore hauen.

If we ſhall not happen to meet at cape Raſe, then the place of Rende vous to be at cape Britton, or the neereſt harbor vnto the Weſtward of cape Britton.

If by meanes of other ſhipping we may not ſafely ſtay there, then to reſt at the very next ſafe port to the Weſtward, euery ſhippe leauing their marks behinde them for the more certaintie of the after comners to know where to finde them.

The marks that euery man ought to leaue in ſuch a caſe, were of the Generals priuate deuice, written by himſelfe, ſealed alſo cloſe in waxe, and deliuered vnto euery ſhippe one ſcroule, which was not to be opened vntill occaſion required, whereby euery man was certified what to leaue for inſtruction of after comners: and euery of vs comming into any harbour or riuer, might know who had beene there, or whether any were ſtill there vp higher into the riuer, or departed, and which way.

Orders thus determined, and promiſes mutually giuen to be obſerued, euery man withdrew himſelfe vnto his charge, the ankers being already weyed, and our ſhippe vnder ſaile, hauing a ſoft gale of winde, we began our voyage vpon Tueſday the eleuenth day of June, in the yeere of our Lord 1583, hauing in our fleet (at our departure from Cauſet bay) theſe ſhippes, whoſe names and burthens, with the names of the captaines and maiſters of them, I haue alſo inſerted, as followeth: Beginning of the voyage.

1 The delight (aliàs) the George, of burthen 120 tunnes, was Admirall: in which went the Generall, and William Winter captaine in her, and part owner, and Richard Clearke maiſter.

2 The Barke Rawley, ſet foorth by M. Walter Rawley, of the burthen of 200 tunnes, was then Vice admirall: in which went M. Butler captaine, and Robert Dauis of Briſtoll maiſter.

3 The Golden hinde, of burthen 40 tunnes, was then Reare admirall: In which went Edward Hayes captaine and owner, and William Coxe of Limehouſe maiſter.

4 The Swallow, of burthen 40 tunnes: in her was captaine Maurice Browne.

5 The Squirill, of burthen tenne tunnes: in which went captaine William Andrewes, and one Cade maſter.

We were in number in all, about 260 men: among whom we had of euery faculty good choice, as Shipwrights, Maſons, Carpenters, Smithes, and ſuch like, requiſit to ſuch an action: alſo Minerall men and Refiners. Beſides, for ſolace of our people, and allurement of the Sauages, we were prouided of Muſike in good variety: Not omitting the leaſt toyes, as Morris dancers, Hobby horſſe, and Maylike conceits to delight the Sauage people, whom we intended to winne by Our fleet conſiſted of fiue ſailes, in which we had about 260 men. Prouiſions fit for ſuch diſcoueries.

by all fayre meanes possible. And to that end we were indifferently furnished of all petty haberdashrie wares to barter with those simple people.

June 11. In this maner we set forward, departing (as hath beene said) out of Causon bay the eleuenth day of June, being Tuesday, the weather and winde fayre and good all day, but a great storme of thunder and winde fell the same night.

June 13. Thursday following, when we hailed one another in the euening (according to the order before specified) they signified vnto vs out of the Vice admirall, that both the captaine, and very many of the men were fallen sicke. And about midnight the Vice admirall forsooke vs, notwithstanding we had the winde East, fayre and good. But it was after credibly reported, that they were infected with a contagious sickenesse, and arriued greatly distressed at Plymmouth: the reason I could neuer vnderstand. Sure I am, no cost was spared by their owner M. Ralegh, in setting them forth: Therefore I leaue it vnto God.

Obserue.

By this time we were in 48 degrees of latitude, not a little grieued with the losse of the most puissant shippe in our fleet: after whose departure, the Golden hinde succeeded in the place of Vice admirall, and remooued her flagge from the mizon vnto the fore toppe.

June 25. From Saturday the 15 of June vntill the 28, which was vpon a Friday, we neuer had fayre day without fogge or raine, and windes bad, much to the West northwest, whereby we were driuen Southward vnto 41 degrees scarse.

About this time of the yere the windes are commonly West to wards the Newfound land, keeping ordinarily within two points of West to the South or to the North, whereby the course thither falleth out to be long and tedious after June, which in March, Aprill & May, hath beene performed out of England in 22 dayes and lesse. We had winde alwayes so scant from West northwest, and from West southwest againe, that our trauerse was great, running South vnto 41 degrees almost, and afterward North into 51 degrees.

July 20. Great fogges vpon the Ocean sea Northward.

Also we were incumbred with much fogge and mists in maner palpable, in which we could not keepe so well together, but were disseuered, losing the company of the Swallow and the Squirill vpon the 20 day of July, whom we met againe at seuerall places vpon the Newfound land coast the third of August, as shalbe declared in place conuenient.

July 27 Saturday the 27 of July, we might descry not farre from vs, as it were, mountaines of ile driuen vpon the sea, being then in 50 degrees, which were carried Southward to the weather of vs: whereby may be coniectured that some currant doth set that way from the North.

The banke in length vnknowen, stretcheth from North into South, in bredth 10 leagues, in depth of water vpon it 30 fathome.

Before we come to Newfound land about 50 leagues on this side, we passe the banke, which are high grounds rising within the sea, and vnder water, yet deepe enough, and without danger, being commonly not lesse then 25 and 30 fathome water vpon them: the same (as it were some vaine of mountaines within the sea) doe runne along, and from the Newfound land, beginning Northward about 52 or 53 degrees of latitude, & do extend into the South infinitly. The breach of this banke is somewhere more, and somewhere lesse: but we found the same about 10 leagues ouer, hauing sounded both on this side thereof, and the other toward Newfound land, but found no ground, with almost 200 fathome of line, both before and after we had passed the banke. The Portingalles, and French chiefly, haue a notable trade of fishing vpon this banke, where are sometimes an hundred or more sailes of shippes: who commonly begunne the fishing in Aprill, and haue ended by July. That fish is large, alwayes wet, hauing no land neere to drie, and is called Corre fish.

A great fishing vpon ꝑ banke.

During the time of fishing, a man shall know without sounding when he is vpon the banke, by the incredible multitude of sea fowle houering ouer the same, to pray vpon the offalles and garbish of fish throwen out by fisher men, and floting vpon the sea.

Abundance of fowles.

Upon Tuesday the 11 of June, we forsooke the coast of England. So againe Tuesday the 30 of July (seuen weeks after) we got sight of land, being immediatly embayed in the Grand bay, or some other great bay: the certeinty whereof we could not iudge, so great hase and fogge did hang vpon the coast, as neither we might discerne the land well, nor take the Sunnes height. But by our best computation we were then in 51 degrees of latitude.

July 30.

First sight of land.

Forsaking this bay and vncomfortable coast (nothing appearing vnto vs but hideous rocks and mountaines, bare of trees, and void of any greene herbe) we followed the coast to the South, with weather fayre and cleere.

Iland and a fowle named Penguin.

We had sight of an Iland named Penguin, of a fowle there breeding in abundance, almost incredible, which can not flie, their wings not able to carry their body, being very large (not much lesse then a goose) and exceeding fat: which the French men vse to take without difficulty vpon that Iland, and to barrell them vp with salt. But for lingering of time we had made vs there the like prouision.

Trending

Trending this coaſt, we came to the Iſland called Baccaleu, the ſame not paſt 2. leagues from the maine: to the South wherof lieth Cape S. Francis, 5. leagues diſtant from Baccaleu, betwene which goeth in a great bay, by the vulgar ſort called the bay of Conception. Here me met with the Swallow againe, whome we had loſt in the fogge, and all her men altered into other apparell: wherof it ſeemed their ſtore was ſo amended, that for ioy & cõgratulation of our meeting, they ſpared not to caſt vp into the aire and ouerboord, their caps and hats in good plentie. The Captaine albeit himſelfe was very honeſt and religious, yet was he not appointed of men to his humor and deſert: who for the moſt part were ſuch as had bene by vs ſurpriſed vpon the narrow ſeas of England, being pirats, and had taken at that inſtant certaine Frenchmen laden, one barke with wines, and another with ſalt. Both which we reſcued, & tooke the man of warre with all her men, which was the ſame ſhip now called the Swallow, following ſtill their kinde ſo oft, as (being ſeparated from the General) they found opportunitie to robbe and ſpoile. And becauſe Gods iuſtice did follow the ſame companie, euen to deſtruction, and to the ouerthrow alſo of the Captaine (though not conſenting to their miſdemeanor:) I wil not conceale any thing that maketh to the manifeſtation and approbation of his iudgements, for examples of others, perſwaded that God more sharpely woke reuenge vpon them, and hath tollerated longer as great outrage in others: by howe much theſe went vnder protection of his cauſe and religion, which was then pretended.

An Iſland called Baccaleu, of the fiſh taken there.

Therfore vpõ further enquirie it was knowen, how this company met with a barke returning home after the fiſhing with his fraight: and becauſe the men in the Swallow were very neere ſcanted of victual, and chiefly of apparel, doubtful withal where or when to finde and meete with their Admiral, they beſought the captaine they might go aboord this Newlander, only to borow what might be ſpared, the rather becauſe the ſame was bound homeward. Leaue giuen, not without charge to deale fauorably, they came aboord the fiſherman, whom they prifled of tackle, ſailes, cables, traiſles, and the men of their apparel: not ſparing by torture (winding cords about their heads) to draw out elſe what they thought good. This done with expedition (like men ſkilfull in ſuch miſchiefe) as they tooke their cocke boat to goe aboord their owne ſhip, it was ouerwhelmed in the ſea, and certaine of theſe men there drowned: the reſt were preſerued euen by thoſe ſeely ſoules whom they had before ſpoiled, who ſaued and deliuered them aboord the Swallow. What became afterward of the poore Newlander, perhaps deſtitute of ſailes & furniture ſufficient to carry them home (whither they had not leſſe to runne then 750. leagues) God alone knoweth, who tooke vengeance not long after of the reſt that eſcaped at this inſtant, to reuelle the fact, and iuſtifie to the world Gods iudgements inflicted vpon them, as ſhalbe declared in place conuenient.

Miſdemeanor not of them in the Swallow.

Thus after we had met with the Swallow, we held on our courſe Southward, vntil we came againſt the harbor called S. Iohns, about 5. leagues from the former Cape of S. Francis: where before the entrance into the harbor, we found alſo the frigate or Squirril lying at ancre. Whome the Engliſh marchãts (that were & alwayes be Admirals by turnes interchangeably ouer the fleetes of fiſhermen within the ſame harbor) would not permit to enter into the harbor. Glad of ſo happy meeting both of the Swallow and frigate in one day (being Saturday the 3. of Auguſt) we made ready our fights, & prepared to enter the harbor, any reſiſtance to the contrary notwithſtanding, there being within of all nations, to the nomber of 36. ſailes. But firſt the General diſpatched a boate to giue them knowledge of his comming for no ill intent, hauing Commiſſion from her Maieſtie for his voyage he had in hand. And immediatly we folowed with a ſlacke gale, and in the very entrance (which is but narrow, not aboue 2. buts length) the Admiral fell vpon a rocke on the lareboord ſide by great ouerſight, in that the weather was faire, the rocke much aboue water ſalt by the ſhoare, where neither went any ſea gate. But wee found ſuch readineſſe in the Engliſh Marchants to helpe vs in that danger, that without delaye there were brought a nomber of boates, which towed off the ſhip, and cleared her of danger.

Engliſh ſhips are the ſtrongeſt and Admirals of other fleetes, fiſhing vpon the South parts of Newfound land.

Hauing taken place conuenient in the road, we let fall ancres, the Captaines & maſters repairing aboord our Admiral: whither alſo came immediatly the Maſters and owners of the fiſhing fleete of Engliſhmen, to vnderſtand the Generals intent & cauſe of our arriual there. They were all ſatisfied when the general had ſhewed his cõmiſſion, & purpoſe to take poſſeſſion of thoſe lands to the behalfe of ỳ crowne of England, & the aduancement of Chriſtian religion in thoſe paganiſh regions, requiring but their lawful ayd for repairing of his fleete, & ſupply of ſome neceſſaries, ſo farre as conueniently might be afoarded him, both out of that & other harbors adioyning. In lieu wherof, he made offer to gratifie them with any fauor & priuiledge, which vpon their better aduiſe they ſhould demaund, ỳ like being not to be obteined hereafter for greater price. So craning expedition of his demaund, minding to proceed further ſouth wbout long detention in thoſe parts, he diſmiſſed them, after promiſe giuẽ of their beſt indeuour to ſatiſfie ſpeedily his ſo reaſonable requeſt.

The marchants with their Maſters departed, they cauſed forthwith to be diſcharged all the great Ordinance of their fleete in token of our welcome.

Good ordr: taken by Engliſh marchats for our ſupply in New found land.

It was further determined, that euery ſhip of our fleete ſhould deliuer vnto the marchants and Maſters of that harbour, a note of all their wants: which done, the ſhips aſwell Engliſh as ſtrangers, were tared at an eaſie rate to make ſupply. And beſides, Commiſſioners were appointed, part of our owne company, and part of theirs, to goe into other harbours adioyning, (for our Engliſh marchants commaund all there) to leauie our prouiſion: whereunto the Portingals (aboue other nations) did moſt willingly and liberally contribute. Inſomuch as we were preſented (aboue our allowance) with wines, marmalads, moſt fine ruſke or biſket, ſweet oyles, and ſundry delicacies. Alſo we wanted not of freſh ſalmons, troutes, lobſters, and other freſh fiſh brought daply vnto vs. Moreouer, as the maner is in their fiſhing, euery weeke to chooſe their Admirall a new, or rather they ſucceed in orderly courſe, and haue weekely their Admirals feaſt ſolemnized: euen ſo the General, Captaines and maſters of our fleete, were continually inuited and feaſted. To growe ſhort, in our abundance at home, the intertainment had bene delightful, but after our wants and tedious paſſage through the Ocean, it ſeemed more acceptable and of greater contentation, by how much the ſame was vnexpected in that deſolate corner of the worlde: where at other times of the yeere, wilde beaſtes and birds haue onely the fruition of all thoſe Countreis, which now ſeemed a place very populous and much frequented.

Good entertainment in New found land.

No Sauages in the South part of Newe found land.

August 4.

The next morning being Sunday & ỳ 4. of Auguſt, the General & his company were brought on lande by Engliſh marchants, who ſhewed vnto vs their accuſtomed walkes vnto a place they cal the Garden. But nothing appeared more then Nature it ſelfe without art: who confuſedly hath brought foorth roſes abundantly, wilde, but odoriferous, and to ſenſe very comfortable. Alſo the like plentie of raſpis berries, which do grow in euery place.

August 5.

Munday following, the General had his tent ſet vp, who being accompanied with his owne followers, ſummoned the marchants, and maſters, both Engliſh and ſtrangers to be preſent at his taking poſſeſſion of thoſe Countreis. Before whom openly was read & interpreted vnto the ſtrangers, his Commiſſion: by vertue whereof he tooke poſſeſſion in the ſame harbour of S. Iohns, and 200. leagues euery way, inueſted the Queenes Maieſtie with the title and dignitie thereof, had deliuered vnto him (after the cuſtome of England) a rod and a turffe of the ſame ſoile, entring poſſeſſion alſo for him, his heires and aſſignes for euer: And ſignified vnto al men, that from that time forward, they ſhould take the ſame lande as a territorie appertaining to the Queene of England, and himſelfe authorized vnder her Maieſtie to poſſeſſe and enioy it. And to ordeine lawes for the gouernment thereof, agreeable (ſo neere as conueniently might be) vnto the lawes of England: vnder which all people comming thither hereafter, either to inhabite, or by way of traffique, ſhould be ſubiected and gouerned. And eſpecially at the ſame time for a beginning, he poſed and deliuered three lawes to be in force immediatly. That is to ſay: the firſt for Religion, which in publique exerciſe ſhould be according to the Church of England. The 2. for maintenance of her Maieſties right and poſſeſſion of thoſe territories, againſt which if any thing were attempted preiudiciall, the partie or parties offending, ſhould be adiudged and executed as in caſe of high treaſon, according to the lawes of England. The 3. if any perſon ſhould vtter words ſounding to the diſhonour of her Maieſtie, he ſhould looſe his eares, and haue his ſhip and goods confiſcate.

Poſſeſſion taken.

Three Lawes.

Theſe contents publiſhed, obedience was promiſed by general voice & conſent of the multitude aſwel of Engliſhmen as ſtrangers, praying for cõtinuance of this poſſeſſion & gouernment begun. After this, the aſſembly was diſmiſſed. And afterward were erected not farre from that place the Armes of England ingrauen in lead, & infixed vpon a pillar of wood. Yet further & actually to eſtabliſh this poſſeſſion taken in the right of her Maieſtie, & to the behoofe of ſir Humfrey Gilbert knight, his heires and aſſignes for euer: the General graunted in fee farme diuers parcels of land lying by the water ſide, both in this harbor of S. Iohns, & elſwhere, which was to ỳ owners a great commoditie, being therby aſſured (by their proper inheritance) of grounds conuenient to dreſſe and to drie their fiſh, whereof many times before they did faile, being preuented by them that came firſt into the harbor. For which grounds they did couenant to pay a certaine rent and ſeruice vnto ſir Humfrey Gilbert, his heires or aſſignes for euer, and peerely to maintaine poſſeſſion of the ſame, by themſelues or their aſſignes.

Actuall poſſeſſion maintened in Newe found land.

Now remained only to take in prouiſion graunted, according as euery ſhippe was tared which did fiſh vpon the coaſt adioyning. In the meane while, the Generall appointed men vnto their charge: ſome to repaire and trim the ſhips, others to attend in gathering together our ſupply and prouiſions: others, to ſearch the cõmodities and ſingularities of the countrey, to be found by ſea or land, & to make relation vnto the General what either themſelues could knowe by their owne trauaile

Men appointed to make ſearch.

uaile and experience, or by good intelligence of men Engliſh or ſtrangers, who had longeſt frequented the ſame coaſt. Alſo ſome obſerued the elcuation of the pole, and drewe plattes of the coūtrey exactly graded. And by that I could gather by eche mans ſeuerall relation, I haue drawen a briefe deſcription of the New found land, with the commodities by ſea or lande already made, and ſuch alſo as are in poſſibilitie and great likelyhoode to be made: Neuertheleſſe the Cards and plats that were drawing, with the due gradation of the harbors, bayes, & capes, did periſh with the Admiral: wherefore in the deſcription following, I muſt omit the particulers of ſuch things.

A briefe relation of the New found land and commodities thereof.

That which we do call the Newfound land, and the Frenchmen Bacalaos, is an Iſland, or rather (after the opinion of ſome) it conſiſteth of ſundry Iſlands & broken lands, ſituate in the North regions of America, vpon the gulfe & entrance of the great riuer called S. Laurence in Canada. Into the which, nauigation may be made both on the South and North ſide of this Iſland. The land lieth South & North, containing in length betwene 3. and 400. miles, accompting from Cape race (which is in 46. deg. 25. min.) vnto the Grand bay in 52. deg. of Septentrional latitude. The Iſland round about hath very many goodly bayes and harbors, ſafe roades for ſhips, the like not to be found in any part of the knowen world. *Newfound land is of Iſlands or broken lands.* *Goodly roads and harbors.*

The cōmon opinion that is had of intemperature & extreeme cold that ſhould be in this coūtrey, as of ſome part it may be verified, namely the North, where I grant it is more cold then in countries of Europe, which are vnder the ſame elcuation: euen ſo it cannot ſtand with reaſon & nature of the clime, that the South parts ſhould be ſo intemperat as the bruit hath gone. For, as they ſame do lie vnder the climats of Britton, Aniou, Poictou in France, betwene 46. & 49. deg. ſo can they not ſo much differ from the temperature of thoſe countreis: vnleſſe vpon the outcoaſts lying open vnto the Ocean & ſharpe winds, it muſt in deede be ſubiect to more colde, then further within the land, Where the mountaines are interpoſed, as walles and bulwarkes, to defende and to reſiſt the aſperitie and rigor of the ſea and weather. Some holde opinion, that the Newfound land might be the more ſubiect to cold, by how much it lieth high and neere vnto the middle region. I graunt, that not in Newfound land alone, but in Germany, Italy & Affricke, euen vnder the Equinoctial line, the mountaines are extreeme cold, and ſeldome vncouered of ſnow, in their culme & higheſt tops, which commeth to paſſe by the ſame reaſon that they are extended towards the middle region: yet in the countreis lying beneath them, it is found quite contrary. Euen ſo al hilles hauing their diſcents, the valleis alſo and low grounds muſt be likewiſe hot or temperate, as the clime doeth giue in Newfound land: though I am of opinion that the Sunnes reflection is much cooled, and cannot be ſo forcible in the Newfound land, nor generally throughout America, as in Europe or Affricke: by howe much the Sunne in his diurnal courſe from Eaſt to Weſt, palleth ouer (for the moſt part) dry land and ſandie countries, before hee arriueth at the Weſt of Europe or Affricke, whereby his motion increaſeth heate, with litle or no qualification by moyſt vapours. Where, on the contrary, he paſſeth from Europe and Affricke vnto America ouer the Ocean, from whence it draweth and carieth with him abundance of moyſt vapours, which do qualifie and infeeble greatly the Sunnes reuerberation vpon this countrey chiefly of Newfound land, being ſo much to the Northward. Neuertheles (as I ſaid before) the cold cānot be ſo intollerable vnder the latitude of 46. 47. and 48. (eſpecially within land) that it ſhould be vnhabitable, as ſome doe ſuppoſe, ſeeing alſo there are very many people more to the North by a great deale. And in theſe South parts there be certaine beaſts, ounces or leopards, & birds in like maner, which in the Sommer we haue ſeene, not heard of in countreis of extreeme and vehement coldneſſe. Beſides, as in the moneths of June, July, Auguſt & September, the heate is ſomewhat more then in England at thoſe ſeaſons: ſo men remayning vpon the South parts neere vnto Cape Race, vntil after Hollantide, haue not found the cold ſo extreeme, nor much differing from the temperature of Englands. Thoſe which haue arriued there after Nouember & December, haue found the ſnowe exceeding deepe, whereat no marueile, conſidering the ground vpon the coaſt, is rough & vneuen, and the ſnow is driuen into the places moſt declining, as the like is to be ſeene with vs. The like depth of ſnow happily ſhall not be found within lande vpon the plainer countreis, which alſo are defended by the mountaines, breaking off the violence of winds & weather. But admitting extraordinary colde in thoſe South parts, aboue that with vs here: it can not be ſo great as in Sweueland, much leſſe in Moſcouia or Ruſſia: yet are the ſame countreis very populous, and the rigor of colde is diſpenſed with by the commoditie of Stoues, warme clothing, meates and drinkes: all which neede not to be wanting in the Newfound land, if we had intent there to inhabite. *Newfound land habitable.* *Cold by accidental meanes.*

Commodities

In the South parts we found no inhabitants, which by all likelyhoode haue abandoned those coastes, the same being so much frequented by Christians: But in the North are sauages altogether harmelesse. Touching the commodities of this Countrey, seruing either for sustentation of inhabitants, or for maintenance of traffique, there are & may be made diuers: that it seemeth Nature hath recompensed that only desert and incommoditie of some sharpe cold, by many benefits:

Fish of sea and fresh water.

viz. With incredible quantitie, and no lesse varietie of kindes of fish in the sea and fresh waters, as trouts, salmons & other fish to vs vnknowen: Also codde, which alone draweth many nations thither, and is become the most famous fishing of the world. Abundance of whales, for which also is a very great trade in ꝑ bayes of Placentia & Grandbay, where is made Trane oyles of the whale: Herring the largest that haue bene heard of, and exceeding the Walstrond herring of Norway: but hitherto was neuer benefit taken of the herring fishing. There are sundry other fish very delicate, namely the Bonito, lobsters, turbut, with others infinite not sought after: Oysters hauing pearle but not orient in colour: I tooke it by reason they were not gathered in season.

Concerning the inland commodities, aswell to be drawen from this land, as from the exceeding large Countries adioyning: there is nothing which our East and Northerly countreis of Europe doe yeeld, but the like also may be made in them as plentifully by time and industrie: Namely, rosen, pitche, tarre, soapeashes, dealboord, mastes for shippes, hides, furres, flaxe, hempe, corne, cables, cordage, linen cloth, mettals and many more. All which the Countries will aboarde, and the soyle is apt to yeelde.

The trees for the most in those South parts, are firretrees, pine and Cypresse, all yeelding gumme and turpentine.

Cherrie trees bearing fruit no bigger then a small pease. Also peare trees but fruitelesse. Other trees of some sortes to vs vnknowen.

The soyle along the coast is not deepe of earth, bringing foorth abundantly pease small, yet good feeding for cattle. Roses passing sweete, like vnto our muske roses in forme, raspases, a berrie we call hurts, good and holesome to eate. The grasse and hearbe doth fat sheepe in very short space, proued by English marchants which haue caried sheepe thither for fresh vitaile, & had them raised exceeding fat in lesse then 3. weekes. Pease which our countreymen haue sowen in the time of May, haue come vp faire, & bene gathered in the beginning of August, of which our Generall had a present acceptable for the rarenesse, being the first fruits comming vp by art and industrie in that desolate and inhabited land.

Lakes or pooles of fresh water, both on the toppes of mountaines and in the valleis. In which are said to be muskels not vnlike to haue pearle, which I had put in triall, if by mischance falling vnto me, I had not bene letted from that and other good experiments I was minded to make.

Foule both of water & land in great plentie and diuersitie. Al kinde of greene foule: Others as bigge as bustards, yet not the same. A great white foule called of some a Gaunt.

Upon the land diuers sorts of haukes, as faulcons, and others by report: Partridges most plentifully larger then ours, gray and white of colour, and rough footed like doues, which our men after one flight did kil with cougels, they were so fat and vnable to flie. Birds some like blackbirds, linnets, canary birds, and others very small. Beasts of sundry kinds, red deare, buttolses or a beast it seemeth by the tract and foote very large in maner of an oxe. Beares, ounces or leopards, some greater & some lesser, wolfes, foxes, which to the Northward a litle further are blacke, whose furre is esteemed in some Countreis of Europe very rich. Otters, beuers, marternes: And in the opinion of most men that saw it, the General had brought vnto him a Sable aliue, which he sent vnto his brother Sir Iohn Gilbert knight of Deuonshire: but it was neuer deliuered, as after I vnderstood. We could not obserue the hundreth part of creatures in those vnhabited landes: but these mentioned may induce vs to glorifie the magnificent God, who hath superabundantly replenished the earth with creatures seruing for the vse of man, though man hath not vsed the fift part of the same, which the more doth aggrauate the fault and foolish slouth in many of our nation, chusing rather to liue indirectly, and very miserably to liue and die within this Realme pestered with inhabitants, then to aduenture as becommeth men, to obteine a habitation in those remote landes, in which Nature very prodigally doth minister vnto mens endeuors, and for art to worke vpon.

New found land doth minister commodities abundantly for art and industrie.

For besides these already recounted and infinite moe, the mountaines generally make shewe of mineral substance: Iron very common, lead, & some where copper. I wil not auere of richer mettals: albeit, by the circumstance following, more then hope may be conceiued thereof.

For amongst other charges giuen to inquire out the singularities of this countrey, the General was most curious in the search of mettals, commanding the mineral man and refiner especially to be diligent. The same was a Saxon borne, honest, and religious, named Daniel. Who after

after search brought at first some sorts of oare, seeming rather to be vpon then other mettall. The next time he found oare, which with no small shew of contentment he deliuered vnto the Generall, vsing protestation, that if siluer were the thing which might satisfie the Generall & his followers, there it was, aduising him to seeke no further: the peril whereof hee vndertooke vpon his life (as deare vnto him as the Crowne of England vnto her Maiestie, that I may vse his owne words) if it fell not out accordingly. Siluer oare brought vnto the Generall.

My selfe at this instant liker to die then to liue, by a mischance, could not follow this confident opinion of our refiner to my owne satisfaction: but afterward demanding our Generals opinion therein, and to haue some part of the oare, he replied: Content your selfe, I haue seene enough, and were it but to satisfie my priuate humor, I would proceed no further. The promise vnto my friends, and necessitie, to bring also the South countreis within compasse of my Patent (neere expired) as we haue already done these North parts, do onely perswade me further. And touching the oare, I haue sent it aboorde, whereof I would haue no speach to be made so long as we remaine within harbor: being here both Portingals, Biscayes and Frenchmen not farre off, from whome must be kept any bruite or muttering of such matter. When we are at sea proofe shalbe made if it be to our desire, we may returne the sooner hither againe. Whose answere I iudged reasonable, and contenting me well: wherewith I will conclude this narration and description of the New found-land, and proceede to the rest of our voyage, which ended tragically. Reasons why no further search was made for the siluer mine.

WHile the better sort of vs were seriously occupied in repairing our wants, and contriuing of matters for the commoditie of our voyage: others of an other sort & disposition, were plotting of mischiefe. Some casting to steale away our shipping by night, watching opportunitie by the Generals and captaines lying on the shoare: whose conspiracies discouered, they were preuented. Others drew together in company, and caried away out of the harbors adioyning, a ship laden with fish, setting the poore men on shoare. A great many more of our people stole into the woods to hide themselues, attending time and meanes to returne home by such shipping as daily departed from the coast. Some were sicke of flixes, and many dead: and in briefe, by one meanes or other our company was diminished, and many by the Generall licensed to returne home. Insomuch as after we had reuiewed our people, resolued to see an ende of our voyage, we grewe scant of men to furnish all our shipping: it seemed good therefore vnto the Generall to leaue the Swallowe with such prouision as might be spared for transporting home the sicke people. Misdemeanors in our company.

The Captaine of the Delight or Admirall returned into Englande, in whose steade was appointed Captaine, Maurice Browne, before Captaine of the Swallowe: who also brought with him into the Delight, all his men of the Swallowe, which before haue bene noted of outrage perpetrated and committed vpon fishermen there mette at sea. God brought together these men into the ship, ordained to perish, who before had committed such outrage.

The Generall made choise to goe in his frigate the Squirrell, (whereof the Captaine also was amongst them that returned into England,) the same frigate being most conuenient to discouer vpon the coast, and to searche into euery harbour or creeke, which a great shippe could not doe. Therefore the frigate was prepared with her nettings and sights, and ouer charged with bases and such small Ordinance, more to giue a shewe, then with iudgement to foresee vnto the safetie of her and the men, which afterward was an occasion also of their ouerthrow. Why Sr H. Gilbert went in the frigate.

Nowe hauing made ready our shipping, that is to say, the Delight, the golden Hinde, and the Squirrell, and put aboorde our prouision, which was wines, bread or ruske, fishe wette and drie, sweete oyles: besides many other, as marmalades, figs, lymmons, barrelled and such like: Also wee had other necessary prouisions for trimming our shippes, nettes and lines to fishe withall, boates or pinnesses fit for discouerie. In briefe, wee were supplied of our wants commodiously, as if we had bene in a Countrey or some Citie populous and plentifull of all things. Liberalitie of the Portingals.

We departed from this harbour of S. Iohns vpon Tuesday the twentieth of August, which we found by exact obseruation to be in 47. degrees 40. minutes. And the next day by night we were at Cape Race, 25. leagues from the same harborough. August 20. S. Iohns in 47. deg. 40. min.

This Cape lyeth South South west from S. Iohns: it is a low land, being off from the Cape about halfe a league: within the sea, riseth vp a rocke against the point of the Cape, which thereby is easily knowen: It is in latitude 46. deg. 25. min. Cape Race in 46. deg. 25. min.

Vnder this Cape we were becalmed a small time, during which we layde out hookes and lines to take codde, and drew in lesse then two houres, fishe so large and in such abundance, that many dayes after we fedde vpon no other prouision. Fish large and plentiful.

From hence we shaped our course vnto the Island of Sabla, if conueniently it would so fall out, also directly to Cape Britton.

Cattel in the Iſle of Sabla.

Sabla lieth to the Seaward of Cape Britton about 25. leagues, whither we were determined to goe vpon intelligence wee had of a Portingall, (during our abode in S. Iohns,) who was himſelfe preſent, when the Portingals (about 30. yeeres paſt) did put into the ſame Iſlande both Neat and ſwine to breede, which were ſince exceedingly multiplied. This ſeemed vnto vs very happy tidings, to haue in an Iſlande lying ſo neere vnto the maine, which wee intended to plant vpon, ſuch ſtore of cattel, whereby we might at al times conueniently be relieued of victual, and ſerued of ſtoare for breed.

In this courſe wee trended along the coaſt, which from Cape Race ſtretcheth into the North-weſt, making a baye, which ſome called Trepaſſa. Then goeth out againe towarde the Weſt, and maketh a point, which with Cape Race lie in maner Eaſt and Weſt. But this point inclineth to the North: to the Weſt of which goeth in the bay of Placentia. We ſent men on land to take view

Good ſoile.

of the ſoyle along this coaſt, whereof they made good report, and ſome of them had will to be planted there. They ſawe growing peaſe in great abundance euery where.

The diſtance betweene Cape Race, and Cape Britton is 100. leagues. In which Nauigation we ſpent 8. dayes: hauing many times the wind indifferent good, yet could we neuer attaine ſight of any land all that time, ſeeing we were hindered by the currant. At laſt we fel into ſuch flats and dangers, that hardly any of vs eſcaped: where neuertheleſſe we loſt our Admiral with all the men and prouiſion, not knowing certainly the place. Yet for inducing men of ſkill to make coniecture, by our courſe and way we held from Cape Race thither, And thereby the flats and dangers may be inſerted in ſea Cards, for warning to others that may follow the ſame courſe hereafter: I haue ſet downe the beſt reckonings that were kept by expert men, William Coxe Maſter of the Hind, and Iohn Paul his mate, both of Limehouſe.

Reckonings kept in our courſe from Cape Race towards *the Iſland of Sabla, or Cape Britton, to the time and* place where we loſt our Admirall.

Auguſt 22.	Weſt,	14. leagues.
	Weſt and by South,	25.
	Weſt Northweſt,	25.
	Weſt Northweſt,	9.
	South Southweſt,	10.
	Southweſt,	12.
	South Southweſt,	10.
Auguſt 29.	Weſt Northweſt,	12. Here we loſt our Admirall.

Summe of theſe leagues, 117.

The reckoning of Iohn Paul Maſters mate, *from Cape Race.*

Auguſt 22.	Weſt,	14. leagues.
23.	Northweſt and by Weſt,	9.
24.	Southweſt & by South,	5.
25.	Weſt and by South,	40.
26.	Weſt and by North,	7.
27.	Southweſt,	3.
28.	Southweſt,	9.
	Southweſt,	7.
	Weſt Southweſt,	7.
29.	Northweſt and by Weſt,	20. Here we loſt the Admiral.

Summe of all theſe leagues 121.

Our courſe we helde in clearing vs of theſe flats was Eaſt Southeaſt, and South-eaſt, and South 14. leagues with a maruelous ſcant winde.

The

The manner how our Admirall was loſt.

VPon Tewſdaye the 27. of Auguſt, toward the euening, our Generall cauſed them in his frigat to ſownd, who found white ſande at 35. fathome, being then in latitude about 44. degrees. August. 27.

Wenſday towards night, the winde came South, and we bare with the lande all that night, 28
Weſt northweſt, contrarie to the minde of Maſter Coxe: neuertheles wee followed the Admirall, depriued of power to auoide a miſchiefe, which by no contradiction could be brought to holde other courſe, alleaging they could not make the ſhippe to worke better, nor to lye otherwaies.

The euening was faire, and pleaſant, yet not without token of ſtorme to enſue, and moſt part of this Wenſday night, like the Swanne that ſingeth before her death, they in the Admirall, or Delight, continued in ſounding of Trumpets, with Drummes, and Fifes: alſo winding the Cornets, Haughtboyes: and in the ende of their iolitie, left with the batell and ringing of dolefull knels. Predictions before the wracke.

Towards the euening alſo, we caught in the Golden Hinde a very mightie Porpoſe, with a harping yron, hauing firſt ſtriken diuers of them, and brought away part of their fleſh, ſticking vpon the yron, but could recouer onely that one. Theſe alſo paſſing through the Ocean, in heardes, did portend ſtorme. I omit to recite friuolous reportes by them in the Frigat, of ſtrange voyces, the ſame night, which ſcarred ſome from the helme.

Thurſday the 29. of Auguſt, the winde roſe, and blewe vehemently at South and by Eaſt, 29
bringing withall raine, and thicke miſte, that wee could not ſee a Cable length before vs. And Loſſe of our Admirall.
betimes in the morning, wee were altogether runne and folded in amongeſt flats and ſandes, amongeſt which, wee found ſhoale and deepe in euery three or foure ſhippes length, after wee beganne to ſownd: but firſt wee were vpon them vnwares, vntill Maſter Coxe looking out, diſcerned (in his iudgement) white cliffs, crying (lande) wythall, though we could not afterward deſcry any land, it being very likely the breaking of the ſea white, which ſeemed to be white cliffes, though the haſe and thicke weather.

Immediatly tokens were giuen vnto the Delight, to cal about to Seaward, which, being the greater ſhippe, and of burden 120. tunnes, was yet foremoſt vpon the breach, keeping ſo ill watch, that they knewe not the danger, before they felt the ſame, too late to recouer it: for preſently the Admirall ſtroke a grounde, and had ſoone after her ſterne and hinder partes beaten in peeces: whereupon the reſt (that is to ſay, the Frigat, in which was the Generall and the Golden Hinde) cal about Eaſt ſoutheaſt, bearing to the South, euen for our liues into the windes eye, becauſe that way carried vs to Seaward. Making out from this danger, we ſownded one while ſeuen fathome, then fiue fathome, then foure fathome and leſſe, againe deeper, immediatly foure fathome, then but three fathome, the ſea going mightily and high. At laſt we recouered (God be thanked) in ſome deſpaire, to ſea roome enough.

In this diſtreſſe, wee had vigilant eie vnto the Admirall, whom we ſawe caſt away, without power to giue the men ſuccour, neither could wee eſpie any of the men that leaped ouer boord to ſaue themſelues, either in the ſame Pinneſſe or Cocke, or vppon rafters, and ſuch like meanes, preſenting themſelues to men in thoſe extremities: for we deſired to ſaue the men by euery poſſible meanes. But all in vaine, ſith God had determined their ruine: yet all that day, and part of the next, we beate vp and downe as neere vnto the wracke as was poſſible for vs, looking out, if by good hap we might eſpie any of them.

This was a heauie and grieuous euent, to loſe at one blowe our chiefe ſhippe fraighted with great prouiſion, gathered together with much trauell, care, long time, and difficultie. But more was the loſſe of our men, which periſhed, to the number almoſt of a hundreth ſoules. Amongeſt whome was drowned a learned man, an Hungarian, borne in the Citie of Buda, called thereof Budæus, who of pietie and zeale to good attemptes, aduentured in this action, minding to record in the Latine tongue, the geſts and things worthy of remembrance, happening in this diſcouerie, to the honour of our nation, the ſame being adorned with the eloquent ſtile of this Orator, and rare Poet of our time. Budæus a Hungarian.

Here alſo periſhed our Saxon Refiner and Diſcouerer of ineſtimable riches, as it was left amongſt ſome of vs in vndoubted hope. Daniel a refiner of metals.

No leſſe heauie was the loſſe of the Captaine Mawrice Browne, a vertuous, honeſt, and diſcreete Gentleman, ouerſeene onely in libertie giuen late before to men that ought to haue bene reſtrained, who ſhewed himſelfe a man reſolued, and neuer vnprepared for death, as by his laſt act

of

of this tragedie appeared, by report of them that escaped this wracke miraculously, as shall be hereafter declared. For when all hope was past of recouering the shippe, and that men began to giue ouer, and to saue themselues, the Captaine was aduised before to shift also for his life, by the Pinnesse at the sterne of the shippe: but refusing that counsell, would not giue example with the first to leaue the shippe, but vsed all meanes to exhort his people not to despaire, nor so to leaue off their labour, chosing rather to die, then to incurre infamie, by forsaking his charge, which then might be thought to haue perished through his default, shewing an ill president vnto his men, by leauing the shippe first himselfe. With this minde he mounted vpon the highest decke, where he attended imminent death, and vnauoidable: how long, I leaue it to God, who withdraweth not his comfort from his seruants at such times.

A wonderfull escape and deliuerance.
A great distresse.
A desperate resolution.

In the meane season, certaine, to the number of foureteene persons, leaped into a small Pinnesse (the bignes of a Thames barge, which was made in the New found land) cut off the rope wherewith it was towed, and committed themselues to Gods mercie, amiddest the storme, and rage of sea and windes, destitute of foode, not so much as a droppe of fresh water. The boate seeming ouercharged in foule weather with companie, Edward Headly a valiant souldier, and well reputed of his companie, preferring the greater to the lesser, thought better that some of them perished then all, made this motion to cast lots, and them to be throwen ouer board vpon whom the lots fell, thereby to lighten the boate, which otherwaies seemed impossible to liue, offered himselfe with the first, content to take his aduenture gladly: which neuertheles Richard Clarke, that was Master of the Admirall, and one of this number, refused, aduising to abide Gods pleasure, who was able to saue all, as well as a fewe.

The boate was carried before the winde, continuing sixe daies and nights in the Ocean, and arriued at last with the men (aliue, but weake) vpon the New found land, sauing that the foresaide Headly, (who had bene late sicke) and an other called of vs Brasile, of his trauell into those Countries, died by the way, famished, and lesse able to holde out, then those of better health. For such was these poore mens extremitie, in colde and wette, to haue no better sustenance then their owne vrine, for sixe daies together.

Two men famished.

Thus whome God deliuered from drowning, hee appointed to be famished, who doth giue limits to mans times, and ordaineth the manner and circumstance of dying: whome againe he will preserue, neither Sea, nor famine, can confound. For those that arriued vpon the Newe founde land, were brought into France by certaine French men, then being vpon that coast.

After this heauie chance, we continued in beating the sea vp & downe, expecting when the weather would cleere vp, that wee might yet beare in with the land, which we iudged not farre off, either the continent or some Island. For we many times, and in sundry places, found ground at 50. 45. 40. fathomes, and lesse. The ground comming vpon our lead, beeing sometimes oazie sande, and otherwhile a broad shell, with a little sand about it.

Causes inforcing vs to returne home againe.

Our people lost courage daily after this ill successe, the weather continuing thicke and blustering, with increase of colde, Winter drawing on, which tooke from them all hope of amendment, setling an assurance of worse weather to growe vpon vs euery day. The Leeside of vs laye full of flatts and daungers inevitable, if the winde blewe harde at South. Some againe doubted we were ingulfed in the Baye of S. Laurence, the coast full of dangers, and vnto vs vnknowen. But aboue all, prouision waxed scant, and hope of supply was gone, with losse of our Admirall.

Those in the Frigat were already pinched with spare allowance, and want of clothes chiefly: Whereupon they besought the Generall to returne for England, before they all perished. And to them of the Golden Hinde they made signes of their distresse, pointing to their mouthes, and to their clothes thinne and ragged: then immediatly they also of the Golden Hinde, grewe to be of the same opinion and desire to returne home.

The former reasons hauing also moued the Generall to haue compassion of his poore men, in whome he sawe no want of good will, but of meanes fitte to performe the action they came for, resolued vpon retire: and calling to the Captaine and Master of the Hinde, he peeled them many reasons inforcing this vnexpected returne, withall protesting himselfe greatly satisfied with that he had seene, and knew already.

Reiterating these wordes, Be content, we haue seene enough, and take no care of expence past: I will set you foorth royally the next Spring, if God send vs safe home. Therefore I pray you let vs no longer striue here, where we fight against the elements.

Omitting circumstance, how vnwillingly the Captaine & Master of the Hind condescended to

this

this motion, his owne companie can teſtifie: yet comforted with the Generals promiſes, of a ſpeede returne at Spring, and induced by other apparant reaſons, proouing an impoſſibilitie, to accompliſh the action at that time, it was concluded on all hands to returne.

So vpon Saturday in the afternoone the 31. of Auguſt, we chaunged our courſe and returned backe for England, at which very inſtant, euen in winding about, there paſſed alongſt betweene vs and towards the land we now forſooke, a very lion to our ſeeming, in ſhape, haire and colour, not ſwimming after the maner of a beaſt by mooving of his feete, but rather ſliding vpon the water with his whole body (excepting the legs) in ſight, neither yet diuing vnder, and againe riſing aboue the water, as the maner is, of Whales, Dolphins, Tunie, Porpoſes, and all other fiſh: but confidently ſhewing himſelfe aboue water without hiding: Notwithſtanding, we preſented our ſelues in open view and geſture to amaſe him, as all creatures will be commonly at a ſudden gaze and ſight of men. Thus he paſſed along turning his heade to and fro, pawning and gaping wide, with ougly demonſtration of long teeth, and glaring eies, and to bidde vs a fare well (comming right againſt the Hinde) he ſent forth a horrible voyce, roaring or bellowing as doeth a lion, which ſpectacle we all beheld ſo farre as we were able to diſcerne the ſame, as men prone to wonder at euery ſtrange thing, as this doubtleſſe was, to ſee a lion in the Ocean ſea, or fiſh in ſhape of a lion. What opinion others had thereof, and chiefly the generall himſelfe, I forbeare to deliuer: But he tooke it for Bonum Omen, reioycing that he was to warre againſt ſuch an enemie, if it were the diuell. August. 31. A monſter of the ſea.

The wind was large for England at our returne, but very high, and the ſea rough, inſomuch as the Frigat wherein the Generall went, was almoſt ſwalowed vp.

Sunday in the after noone we paſſed in ſight of Cape Race, hauing made as much way in little more then two dayes and nights back againe, as before we had done in eight dayes from Cape Race, vnto the place where our ſhip periſhed. Which hinderance thitherward, and ſpeed backe againe, is to be imputed vnto the ſwift currant, as well as to the windes, which we had more large in our returne. September 2.

This Sunday the Generall came aboord the Hind, to haue the Surgeon of the Hind to dreſſe his foote, which he hurt by treading vpon a naile: At what time we comforted each other with hope of hard ſucceſſe to be all paſt, and of the good to come. So agreeing to carry out lights alwaies by night, that we might keepe together: he departed into his Frigat, being by no meanes to be entreated to tarry in the Hind, which had bene more for his ſecuritie. Immediatly after, followed a ſharpe ſtorme, which we ouerpaſſed for that time. Praiſed be God.

The weather faire, the Generall came aboord the Hinde againe, to make merrie together with the Captaine, Maſter, and companie, which was the laſt meeting, and continued there from morning vnto night. During which time, there paſſed ſundry diſcourſes, touching affaires paſt, and to come, lamenting greatly the loſſe of his great ſhippe, more of the men, but moſt of all, of his bookes and notes, and what els I know not, for which he was out of meaſure grieued, the ſame doubtles being ſome matter of more importance then his bookes, which I could not drawe from him: yet by circumſtance gathered, the ſame to be the oare which Daniel the Saxon had brought vnto him in the Newe found land. Whatſoeuer it was, the remembrance touched him ſo deepe, as not able to containe himſelfe, he beate his boy in great rage, euen at the ſame time, ſo long after the miſcarrying of the great ſhip, becauſe vpon a faire day, when we were becalmed vpon the coaſt of New found land, neere vnto Cape Race, he ſent his boye aboord the Admirall, to fetch certaine things: amongſt which, this being chiefe, was yet forgotten and left behind. After which time, he could neuer conueniently ſend againe aboord the great ſhip, much leſſe he doubted her ruine ſo neere at hand. Our laſt conference with our Generall. Circumſtances to be well obſerued in our Generall, importing the oare to be of a ſiluer Mine.

Herein my opinion was better confirmed diuerſly, and by ſundry coniectures, which maketh me haue the greater hope of this riche mine. For whereas the Generall had neuer before good conceite of theſe north partes of the world: now his minde was wholly fixed vpon Newe founde land. And as before he refuſed not to grant aſſignements liberally to them that required the ſame into theſe north partes, Now he became contrarily affected, refuſing to make any ſo large grants, eſpecially of S. Iohns, which certaine Engliſh merchants made ſuite for, offering to employ their money and trauell vpon the ſame: yet neither by their owne ſuite, nor of others of his owne companie, whome he ſeemed willing to pleaſure, it could be obtained.

Alſo laying downe his determination in the Spring following, for diſpoſing of his voyage then to be reattempted: he aſſigned the Captaine and Maſter of the Golden Hind, vnto the ſouth diſcouerie and reſerued vnto himſelfe the north, affirming that this voyage had wonne his heart from the ſouth, and that he was now become a northen man altogether.

Laſt

Last, being demanded what meanes he had at his arriuall in England, to compasse the charges of so great preparation, as he intended to make the next Spring: hauing determined vpon two secretes, one for the South, another for the North: Leaue that to me (he replied) I will aske a pennie of no man. I will bring good tidings vnto her Maiestie, who will be so gratious, to lende me 10000. pounds, willing vs therefore to be of good cheere: for he did thanke God (he said) with all his heart, for that he had seene, the same being enough for vs all, and that wee needed not to seeke any further. And these last words he would often repeate, with demonstration of great feruencie of mind, being himselfe very confident, and setled in beliefe of inestimable good by this voyage: which the greater number of his followers neuertheless mistrusted altogether, not being made partakers of those secretes, which the Generall kept vnto himselfe. Yet all of them that are liuing, may be witnesses of his wordes and protestations, which sparingly I haue deliuered.

Wilfulnes in the Generall.

Leauing the issue of this good hope vnto God, who knoweth the trueth only, and can at his good pleasure bring the same to light: I will hasten to the ende of this tragedie, which must be knit vp in the person of our Generall. And as it was Gods ordinance vpon him, euen so the vehement perswasion and intreatie of his friends could nothing anaile, to diuert him from a wilfull resolution of going through in his Frigat, which was ouercharged vpon their deckes, with fightes, nettings, and small artillerie, too cumbersome for so small a boate, that was to passe through the Ocean sea at that season of the yeere, when by course we might expect much stormie and foule weather, whereof in deede we had enough.

A token of a good mind.

But when he was intreated by the Captaine, Master, and other his well willers of the Hinde, not to venter in the Frigat, this was his answere: I will not forsake my little companie going homeward, with whome I haue passed so many stormes, and perils. And in very trueth, hee was vrged to be so ouer hard, by hard reports giuen of him, that he was afraid of the sea, albeit this was rather rashnes, then aduised resolution, to preferre the winde of a vaine report to the weight of his owne life.

Seeing he would not bend to reason, he had prouision out of the Hinde, such as was wanting aboord his Frigat. And so we committed him to Gods protection, and let him aboord his Pinnesse. We being more then 300. leagues onward of our way home.

By that time we had brought the Ilands of Asores South of vs, yet we then keeping much to the North, vntill we had got into the height and eleuation of England: we met with very foule weather, and terrible seas, breaking short and high Pyramid wise. The reason whereof seemed to proceede either of hilly grounds high and lowe within that sea, (as we see hils and dales vpon the land) vpon which the seas doe mount and fall: or else the cause proceedeth of diuersitie of winds, shifting often into sundry points: al which hauing power to moue the great Ocean, which againe is not presently setled, so many seas doe encounter together, as there had bene diuersitie of windes. Howsoeuer it commeth to passe, men which all their life time had occupied the Sea, neuer sawe more outragious Seas. We had also vpon our maine yarde, an apparition of a little fire by night, which Sea men doe call Castor and Pollux. But we had onely one, which they take an euill signe of more tempest: the same is vsuall in stormes.

A resolute and Christianlike saying in a distresse.

Sunday the ninth of September, in the afternoone, the Frigat was neere cast away, oppressed by waues, yet at that tyme recouered: and giuing foorth signes of ioye, the Generall sitting abaft with a booke in his hande, cryed out vnto vs in the Hinde (so oft as wee did approche within hearing:) Wee are as neere to heauen by Sea, as by lande. Reiterating the same speeche, well beseeming a souldier, resolute in Iesus Christ, as I can testifie her was.

Sir Humfrey Gilbert drowned.

The same Sunday night, about twelue of the clocke, or not long after, the Frigat being a heade of vs in the Golden Hinde, suddenly her lights were out, whereof as it were in a moment, wee lost the sight, and withall our watch cryed, the Generall was cast away, which was too true. For in that moment, the Frigat was deuoured and swallowed vppe of the Sea, yet still wee looked out all that night, and euer after, vntill wee arriued vppon the coast of Englande: Omitting no small saile at Sea, vnto which wee gaue not the tokens betweene vs, agreed vppon, to haue perfect knowledge of each other, if wee shoulde at any time bee separated.

Arriuall in England of the Golden Hind.

In great torment of weather, and perill of drowning, it pleased God to send safe home the Golden Hind, which arriued in Falmouth, the 22. day of September, being Sunday, not without as great danger escaped in a flawe, comming from southeast, with such thicke mist, that we could not discerne land, to put in right with the hauen.

From Falmouth we went to Dartmouth, and lay there at anker before the range, while ỹ captaine

taine went a land, to inquire if there had bene any newes of the Frigat, which ſailing well, might happily haue bene before vs. Alſo to certifie Sir Iohn Gilbert, brother vnto the Generall, of our hard ſucceſſe, whome the Captaine deſired (while his men were yet aboord him, and were witneſſes of all occurrents in that voyage,) It might pleaſe him to take the examination of euery perſon particularly, in diſcharge of his and their faithfull endeuour. Sir Iohn Gilbert refuſed ſo to doe, holding himſelfe ſatiſfied with report made by the Captaine: and not altogether deſpairing of his brothers ſafetie, offered friendſhippe and curteſie to the Captaine, and his companie, requiring to haue his Barke brought into the harbour: in furtherance whereof, a boate was ſent to helpe to towher in. A fit motion of the Captain vnto ſir Humfrey Gilbert.

Neuertheles, when the Captaine returned aboord his ſhip, he founde his men bent to depart, euery man to his home: and then the winde ſeruing to proceede higher vpon the coaſt: they demanded money to carry them home, ſome to London, others to Harwiche, and elſe where, (if the barke ſhould be carried into Dartmouth, and they diſcharged, ſo farre from home:) or elſe to take benefite of the wind, then ſeruing to drawe neerer home, which ſhould be a leſſe charge vnto the Captaine, and great eaſe vnto the men, hauing els farre to goe.

Reaſon accompanied with neceſſitie perſwaded the Captaine, who ſent his lawfull excuſe and cauſe of his ſudden departure vnto ſir Iohn Gilbert, by the boate of Dartmouth, and from thence the Golden Hind departed, and tooke harbour at Waimouth. All the men tired with the tedioſunes of ſo vnprofitable a voyage to their ſeeming: in which their long expence of time, much toile and labour, hard diet, and continuall hazard of life was vnrecompenſed: their Captaine neuertheles, by his great charges, impaired greatly thereby, yet comforted in the goodnes of God, and his vndoubted prouidence following him in all that voyage, as it doth alwaies thoſe at other times, whoſoeuer haue confidence in him alone. Yet haue we more neere feeling and perſeuerance of his powerfull hand and protection, when God doth bring vs together with others into one ſame peril, in which he leaueth them, and deliuereth vs, making vs thereby the beholders, but not partakers of their ruine. An ill recompenſe.

Euen ſo, amongeſt very many difficulties, diſcontentments, mutinies, conſpiracies, ſickneſſes, mortalitie, ſpoilings, and wracks by ſea, which were afflictions, more then in ſo ſmall a Fleete, or ſo ſhort a time may be ſuppoſed: albeit true in euery particularitie, as partly by the former relation may be collected, and ſome I ſuppreſſed with ſilence, for their ſakes liuing, it pleaſed God to ſupport this companie, (of which onely one man died of a maladie inueterate, and long infeſted:) the reſt kept together in reaſonable contentment and concord, beginning, continuing, and ending the voyage, which none els did accompliſh, either not pleaſed with the action, or impatient of wants, or preuented by death.

Thus haue I deliuered the contents of the enterpriſe and laſt action of ſir Humfrey Gilbert knight, faithfully, for ſo much as I thought meete to be publiſhed: wherein may alwaies appeare, (though he be extinguiſhed) ſome ſparkes of his vertues, he remaining firme and reſolute in a purpoſe by all pretence honeſt and godly, as was this, to diſcouer, poſſeſſe, and to reduce vnto the ſeruice of God, and Chriſtian pietie, thoſe remote and heathen Countries of America, not actually poſſeſſed by Chriſtians, and moſt rightly appertaining vnto the Crowne of England: vnto the which, as his zeale deſerueth high commendation: euen ſo, he may iuſtly be taxed of temeritie and preſumption (rather) in two reſpects. Conſtancie in ſir Humfrey Gilbert.

Firſt, when yet there was onely probabilitie, not a certaine and determinate place of habitation ſelected, neither any demonſtration of commoditie there in eſſe, to induce his followers: neuertheles, he both was too prodigall of his owne patrimonie, and too careles of other mens expences, to imploy both his and their ſubſtance vpon a ground imagined good. The which failing, very like his aſſociats were promiſed, and made it their beſt reckoning to be ſaued ſome other way, which pleaſed not God to proſper in his firſt and great preparation. His temeritie and preſumption.

Secondly, when by his former preparation he was enfeebled of abilitie and credite, to performe his deſignements, as it were impatient to abide in expectation better opportunitie and meanes, which God might raiſe, he thruſt himſelfe againe into the action, for which he was not fitte, preſuming, the cauſe pretended on Gods behalfe, would carry him to the deſired ende. Into which, hauing thus made reentrie, he could not yeeld againe to withdraw, though he ſawe no encouragement to proceede, leaſt his credite foiled in his firſt attempt, in a ſecond ſhould vtterly be diſgraced. Betweene extremities, hee made a right aduenture, putting all to God and good fortune, and worſt, refuſed not to entertaine euery perſon and meanes whatſoeuer, to furniſh out this expedition, the ſucceſſe whereof hath bene declared.

But ſuch is the infinite bountie of God, who from euery euill deriueth good. For beſides that fruite

fruite may growe in time of our trauelling into those northwest lands, the crosses, turmoiles, and afflictions, both in the preparation and execution of this voyage, did correct the intemperate humors, which before we noted to be in this Gentleman, and made vnsauorie, and lesse delightfull his other manifold vertues.

Afflictions needefull in the children of God.

Then as he was refined, and made neerer drawing vnto the image of God: so it pleased the diuine will, to resume him vnto himselfe, whither both his, and euery other high and noble minde, haue alwaies aspired.

Ornatissimo viro, Magistro Richardo Hakluyto Oxonij in *Collegio ædis Christi, artium, & Philosophiæ Magistro, amico,* & fratri suo.

S. Non statueram ad te scribere, cùm in mentem veniret promissum literarum tuarum. Putabas te superiore iam Iunio nos subsecuturum. Itaque de meo statu ex doctore Humfredo certiorem te fieri iusseram. Verùm sic tibi non esset satisfactum. Itaque scribam ad te ijsdem ferè verbis, quia noua meditari & συνουσίαν mihi hoc tempore non vacat. Vndecimo Iunij ex Anglia reuera tandem & seriò soluimus, portu & terra apud Plemuthum simul relictis. Classis quinque nauibus constabat, maxima, quam "frater Amiralij accommodauerat, ignotum quo cõsilio, statim tertio die à nobis se subduxit. Reliqui perpetuò coniunctim nauigauimus ad 23. Iulij, quo tempore magnis nebulis intercepto aspectu alii aliam viam tenuimus: nobis seorsim prima terra apparuit ad Calendas Augusti, ad gradum circiter 50. cùm vltrà 41. paucis antè diebus descendissemus spe Australium ventorum, qui tamen nobis suo tempore nunquam spirauêre. Insula est ea, quam vestri Penguin vocant, ab auium eiusdem nominis multitudine. Nos tamen nec aues vidimus, nec insulam accessimus ventis aliò vocantibus. Cæterùm conuenimus omnes in eundem locum paulò ante portum in quem communi consilio omnibus veniendum erat, idque intra duas horas, magna Dei benignitate & nostro gaudio. Locus situs est in Newfoundlandia, inter 47. & 48. gradum, diuum Ioannem vocant. Ipse Admiralius propter multitudinem hominum, & angustiam nauis paulò afflictiorem comitatum habuit, & iam duos dysentericis doloribus amisit: de cæteris bona spes est. Ex nostris (nam ego me Mauricio Browno verè generoso iuueni me coniunxeram) duo etiam casu quodam submersi sunt. Cæteri salui & longè firmiores. Ego nunquam sanior. In hunc locum tertio Augusti appulimus: quinto autem ipse Admiralius has regiones in suam & regni Angliæ possessionem potestatemq; vendicauit, latis quibusdam legibus de religione & obsequio Reginæ Angliæ. Reficimur hoc tempore paulò hilarius & lautius. Certè enim & qualibus ventis vsi simus, & quàm fessi esse potuerimus tam longi temporis ratio docuerit, proinde nihil nobis deerit. Nam extra Anglos, 20. circiter naues Lusitanicas & Hispanicas nacti in hoc loco sumus: eæ nobis impares non patientur nos esurire. Angli etsi satis firmi, & à nobis tuti, authoritate regii diplomatis omni obsequio & humanitate prosequuntur. Nunc narrandi erant mores, regiones, & populi. Cæterùm quid narrem mi Hakluyte, quando præter solitudinem nihil video? Piscium inexhausta copia: inde huc commeantibus magnus quæstus. Vix hamus fundum attigit, illicò insigni aliquo onustus est. Terra vniuersa "montana & syluestris: arbores vt plurimùm pinus: eæ partim consenuêre, partim nunc adolescunt: magna pars vetustate collapsa, & aspectum terræ, & iter euntium ita impedit, vt nusquam progredi liceat. Herbæ omnes proceræ; sed rarò à nostris diuersę. Natura videtur velle niti etiam ad generandum frumentum. Inueni enim gramina, & spicas in similitudinem secales: & facilè cultura & satione in vsum humanum assuefieri posse videntur. Rubi in syluis vel potiùs fraga arborescentia magna suauitate. Vrsi circa tuguria non nunquam apparent, & conficiuntur: sed albi sunt, vt mihi ex pellibus coniicere licuit, & minores quàm nostri. Populus an vllus sit in hac regione incertum est: Nec vllum vidi qui testari posset. (Et quis quęso posset, cùm ad longum progredi non liceat?) nec minùs ignotum est an aliquid metalli subsit montibus. Causa eadem est, etsi aspectus eorũ mineras latentes præ se ferat. Nos Admiralio authores fuimus syluas incendere, quo ad inspiciendam regionẽ spaciũ pateret: nec displicebat illi consilium, si non magnũ incommodum allaturum videretur. Confirmatum est enim abidoneis hominibus, cum casu quopiam in alia nescio qua statione id accidisset, septẽnium totũ pisces non comparuisse, ex acerbata maris vnda ex terebynthina, quę cõflagrantibus arboribus per riuulos defluebat. Cœlum hoc anni tempore ita feruidum est, vt nisi pisces, qui arefiunt ad solem, assidui inuertantur, ab adustione defendi non possint. Hyeme quàm

"Dominus Ralegh.

"In the south side of Newefound land, there is store of plaine and champion Countrey, as Richard Clark found.

The great heate of the sunne in summer.

quam frigidum ſit, magnæ moles glaciei in medio mari nos docuere. Relatum eſt a comitibus menſe Maio ſexdecim totos dies interdum ſe inter tantam glaciem hęſiſſe, vt 60. orgyas altę eſſent inſulę: quarum latera ſoli oppoſita cum liqueſcerent, libratione quadam vniuerſam molem ita inuerſam, vt quod antè pronum erat, ſupinum euaderet, magno pręſentium diſcrimine, vt conſentaneum eſt. Aer in terra mediocriter clarus eſt: ad orientem ſupra mare perpetuę nebulę: Et in ipſo mari circa Bancum (ſic vocant locum vbi quadraginta leucis à terra fundus attingitur, & piſces capi incipiunt) nullus ferme dies abſque pluuia. Expeditis noſtris neceſſitatibus in hoc loco, in Auſtrum (Deo iuuante) progrediemur, tantò indies maiori ſpe, quò plura de iis quas petimus regionibus commemorantur. Hęc de noſtris. Cupio de vobis ſcire: ſed metuo ne incaſſum. Imprimis autem quomodo Vntonus meus abſentiam meam ferat, pręter modum intelligere velim: Habebit noſtrum obſequium & officium paratum, quamdiu vixerimus. Reuera autem ſpero, hanc noſtram peregrinationem ipſius inſtituto vſui futuram. Nunc reſtat, vt me tuum putes, & quidem ita tuum, vt neminem magis. Iuuet dei filius labores noſtros eatequs, vt tu quoque participare poſsis. Vale amiciſsime, ſuauiſsime, ornatiſsime Hakluyte, & nos ama. In Newfundlandia apud portum Sancti Iohannis 6. Auguſti 1583.

Stephanus Parmenius
Budeius, tuus.

¶ *The ſame in Engliſh.*

To the worſhipfull, Maſter Richard Hakluyt at Oxforde in *Chriſts church, Maſter of Art, and Philoſophie, his friend* and brother.

I Had not purpoſed to write to you, when the promiſe of your letters came to my mind: You thought in June laſt to haue followed vs your ſelfe, and therefore I had left order that you ſhould be aduertiſed of my ſtate, by Maſter Doctor Humfrey: but ſo you would not be ſatiſfied: I will write therefore to you almoſt in the ſame words, becauſe I haue no leaſure at this time, to meditate new matters, and to vary or multiply words.

The 11. of June we ſet ſaple at length from Englande in good earneſt, and departed, leauing the hauen and lande behinde vs at Plymmouth: our Fleete conſiſted of fiue ſhippes: the greateſt, which the Admirals brother had lent vs, withdrew her ſelfe from vs the third day, wee knowe not vpon what occaſion: with the reſt wee ſayled ſtill together till the three and twentie of July: at which time our viewe of one another beeing intercepted by the great miſtes, ſome of vs ſayled one way, and ſome another: to vs alone the firſt lande appeared, the firſt of Auguſt, about the latitude of fiftye degrees, when as before wee had deſcended beyonde 41. degrees in hope of ſome Southerly windes, which notwithſtanding neuer blewe to vs, at any fitte time.

It is an Ilande which your men call Penguin, becauſe of the multitude of birdes of the ſame name. Yet wee neither ſawe any birdes, nor drewe neere to the lande, the windes ſeruing for our courſe directed to another place, but wee mett all together at that place a little before the Hauen, whereunto by common Counſell wee had determined to come, and that within the ſpace of two houres by the great goodneſſe of God, and to our great ioy. The place is ſituated in Newfound lande, betweene fortie ſeuen and fortie eight degrees, called by the name of Saint Iohns: the Admirall him ſelfe by reaſon of the multitude of the men, and the ſmalneſſe of his ſhippe, had his company ſomewhat ſickly, and had all ready loſt two of the ſame company, which died of the Flixe: of the reſt wee conceiue good hope. Of our company (for I ioyned my ſelfe with Maurice Browne, a very proper Gentleman) two perſons by a miſchance were drowned, the reſt are in ſafetie, and ſtrong, and for myne owne part I was neuer more healthy. Wee arriued at this place the third of Auguſt: and the fift the Admirall tooke poſſeſſion of the Country, for himſelfe and the kingdome of England: hauing made and publiſhed certaine Lawes, concerning religion, and obedience to the Queene of England: at this time our fare is ſomewhat better, and daintier, then it was before: for in good ſooth, the experience of ſo long time hath taught vs what contrary windes wee haue founde, and

what great trauell we may endure hereafter: and therefore we will take such order, that wee will want nothing, for we founde in this place, about twenty Portingale, and Spanishe shippes, besides the shippes of the Englishe: which being not able to matche vs, suffer vs not to be hunger starued: the Englishe although they were of them selues stronge ynough, and safe from our force, yet seeing our auctoritie, by the Queenes letters patentes, they shewed vs all manner of dutie and humanitie.

The manner of this Countrey, and people remayne nowe to bee spoken of. But what shall I say, my good Haklupt, when I see nothing but a very wildernesse? of fishe here is incredible abundance, whereby great gayne growes to them, that trauell to these partes: the hooke is no sooner throwne out, but it is eftsoones drawne vp with some goodly fishe: the whole lande is full of hilles and woodes. The trees for the most part are Pynes and of them some are very olde, and some yong: a great part of them beeing fallen by reason of their age, doth so hynder the sighte of the Lande, and stoppe the way of those that seeke to trauell, that they can goe no whither: all the grasse here is long, and tall, and little differeth from ours. It seemeth also that the nature of this soyle is fitt for corne: for I founde certayne blades and eares in a manner bearded, so that it appeareth that by manuring and sowing, they may easelie bee framed for the vse of man: here are in the woodes bushe berries, or rather strawe berries growing vp like trees, of great sweetenesse. Beares also appeare about the fishers stages of the Countrie, and are sometimes killed, but they seeme to be white, as I coniectured by their skinnes, and somewhat lesse then ours. Whether there bee any people in this Countrey I know not, neither haue I seene any to witnesse it. And to say trueth who can, when as it is not possible to passe any whither? In like sort it is vnknowne, whether any mettals lye vnder the hilles: the cause is all one, although the very colour and hue of the hilles seeme to haue some mynes in them: we moued the Admirall to set the woods a fire, that so we might haue space, and entrance to take view of the Countrey, which motion did nothing displease him, were it not for feare of great inconuenience that might thereof insue: for it was reported and confirmed by verie credible persons, that when the like happened by chance in another Port, the fishe neuer came to the place about it, for the space of 7. whole yeres after, by reason of the waters made bytter by the turpentyne, and rosen of the trees, which ranne into the ryuers vpon the firing of them. The weather is so hot this time of the yeere, that except the very fish, which is layd out to be dryed by the sunne, be euery day turned, it cannot possibly be preserued from burning: but how cold it is in the winter, the great heapes, and mountaines of yce, in the middest of the Sea haue taught vs: some of our company report, that in May, they were sometimes kept in, with such huge yce, for 16. whole dayes together, as that the Islands thereof were threescore fathomes thicke, the sides whereof which were towarde the Sunne, when they were melted, the whole masse or heape was so inuerted and turned in manner of balancing, that that part which was before downeward rose vpwarde, to the great perill of those that are neere them, as by reason we may gather. The ayre vpon land is indifferent cleare, but at Sea towardes the East there is nothing els but perpetual mistes, and in the Sea it selfe, about the Banke (for so they call the place where they find ground at fourty leagues distant from the shoare, and where they began to fishe) there is no day without rayne. When we haue serued, and supplyed our necessitie in this place, we purpose by the help of God to passe towards the south, with so much the more hope euery day, by how much greater the thinges are, that are reported of those Countries, which we go to discouer. Thus much touching our estate.

Now I desire to know somewhat concerning you, but I feare in vaine, but specially I desire out of measure to know how my Patrone Master Henry Umpton doth take my absence: my obedience, and dutie shall alwaies be readie towardes him as long as I liue: but in deede I hope, that this iourney of ours shalbe profitable to his intentions. It remayneth that you thinke me to be still yours, and so yours as no mans more. The sonne of God blesse all our labors, so farre, as that you your selfe may be partaker of our blessing. Adieu, my most friendly, most sweete, most vertuous Haklupt: In Newfound lande, at Saint Iohns Port, the sixt of August. 1583.

Steuen Parmenius of
Buda, yours.

A relation of Richard Clarke of Weymouth, maſter of the ſhippe called the Delight, going for the diſcouerie of Norumbega with Sir Humfrey Gilbert 1583. Written in excuſe of that fault of caſting away the ſhippe and men imputed to his ouerſight.

DEparting out of Saint Iohns Harborough in the Newfound land the twentith of Auguſt vnto Cape Raz, from thence we directed our courſe vnto the Iſle of Sablon or the Iſle of Sande, which the generall Sir Humfrey Gilbert woulde willingly haue ſeene. But when wee came within twenty leagues of the Iſle of Sablon, wee fell to controuerſie of our courſe. The General came vp in his Frigot and demaunded of me Richard Clarke Maſter of the Admiral what courſe was beſt to keepe: I ſaid that weſt ſouthweſt was beſt: becauſe the wind was at ſouth & night at hand and vnknowen ſands lay off a great way from the land. The General commaunded me to go weſt northweſt. I tolde him agayne that the Iſle of Sablon was Weſt northweſt and but fifteene leagues off, and that he ſhoulde bee vpon the Iſland before day if hee went that courſe. The Generall ſayd my reckoning was vntrue and charged mee in her Maieſties name, and as I would ſhewe my ſelfe in her Countrey to followe him that night. I fearing his threatnings, becauſe hee preſented her Maieſties perſon, did followe his commaundement, and about ſeuen of the clocke in the morning the ſhippe ſtrooke on ground, where ſhee was caſt away. Then the Generall went off to Sea, the courſe that I would haue had them gon before and ſawe the ſhippe caſt away men and all, and was not able to ſaue a man, for there was not water vpon the ſande for eyther of them much leſſe for the Admirall that drewe fourteene foote. Nowe as God woulde the day before it was very calme, and a Souldier of the ſhippe had killed ſome foule with his piece, and ſome of the company deſired me that they might hoyſe out the boate to recouer the foule, which I graunted them: and when they came aboorde they did not hoyſe it in againe that night. And when the ſhippe was caſt away the boate was aſterne being in burthen one tunne and an halfe: there was left in the boate one oare and nothing els. Some of the company could ſwimme and recouered the boate and did hale in out of the water as many men as they could: among the reſt they had a care to watch for the Captaine or the Maſter: They happened on my ſelfe being the maſter, but could neuer ſee the Captaine: Then they halled into the boate as many men as they could in number 16. whoſe names hereafter I will rehearſe. And when the ſixteene were in the boate, ſome had ſmale remembrance, and ſome had none: for they did not make account to liue, but to prolong their liues as long as it pleaſed God, and looked euery moment of an howre when the Sea would eate them vp, the boate being ſo litle and ſo many men in her, and ſo foule weather, that it was not poſſible for a ſhippe to brooke halfe a coarſe of Sayle. Thus while wee remayned two dayes and two nights, and that wee ſawe it pleaſed God our boate liued in the Sea, (although wee ha" "o-thing to helpe vs with all but one oare, which wee kept vp the boate withall vpon the and ſo went euen as the Sea would driue vs) there was in our companie one Maſter [illegible] that put foorth this queſtion to mee the maſter. I do ſee that it doth pleaſe God that our boate lyueth in the Sea, and it may pleaſe God that ſome of vs may come to the lande if our boate were not ouer laden. Let vs make ſixteene lottes, and thoſe foure that haue the foure horeſt lottes wee will caſt ouer boord, preſeruing the Maſter among vs all. I replyed vnto him ſaying, no, wee will liue and dye together. Maſter Hedly aſked mee if my remembrance were good: I aunſwered I gaue God prayſe it was good, and knewe howe farre I was off the lande, and was in hope to come to the lande within two or three dayes, and ſayd they were but threeſcore leagues from the lande, (when they were ſeuentie) all to put them in comfort. Thus wee continued the third and fourth day without any ſuſtenance, ſaue onely the weedes that ſwame in the Sea, and ſalt water to drinke. The fifth day Hedly died and another moreouer: then we deſired all to die: for in all theſe fiue dayes and fiue nights we ſawe the Sunne but once & the ſtarre but one night, it was ſo foule weather. Thus we did remaine the 6. day: then we were very weake and wiſhed all to die ſauing only my ſelfe which did comfort them and promiſed they ſhoulde come ſoone to land by the helpe of God: but the company were verie impor-

20. leagues from the Iſle of Sablon.

15. leagues from the Iſle of Sablon.

Sherem Clarke vntruely chargeth Sir Humfrey Gilbert.

The ſhip caſt away on thurſday being the 29 of Auguſt 1583.

Sixteene gate into the ſhip boate.

Maſter Hedleyes vngodly propoſition.

importunate, and were in doubt they should neuer come to land, but that I promised them the seuenth day they should come to shoare or els they shoulde cast me ouer boord: which did happen true the seuenth day, for at eleuen of the clocke we had sight of the land, and at three of the clocke at afternoone we came on lande. All these seuen dayes and seuen nights the wind kept continually South. If the winde had in the meane time shifted vpon any other point, we had neuer come to land: we were no sooner come to the land, but the winde came cleane contrary at North within halfe an houer after our arriuall. But we were so weake that one could scarcely helpe another of vs out of the boate, yet with much a doo being come all on shoare we kneeled downe vpon our knees and gaue God praise that he had dealt so mercifully with vs. Afterwards those which were strongest holpe their fellowes vnto a fresh brooke, where wee satisfied our selues with water and berries very well. There were of all sortes of berries plentie, and as goodly a countrey as euer I saw: we found a very faire plaine Champion ground that a man might see very farre euery way: by the Sea side was here and there a litle wood with goodly trees as good as euer I saw any in Norway, able to mast any shippe, of pyne trees, spruse trees, firre, and very great birch trees. Where we came on land we made a litle house with boughes, where we rested all that night. In the morning I deuided the company three and three to goe euery way to see what foode they could find to sustayne themselues, and appointed them to meete there all againe at noone with such food as they could get. As we went aboord wee found great store of pease as good as any wee haue in England: a man would thinke they had ben sowed there. We rested there three daies and three nights and liued very well with pease and berries, wee named the place Saint Laurence, because it was a very goodly riuer like the riuer of S. Laurence in Canada, and we found it very full of Salmons. When we had well rested our selues wee rowed our boate along the shoare, thinking to haue gon to the Grande Bay to haue come home with some Spaniards which are yerely there to kill the Whale: And when wee were hungry or a thirst we put our boate on land and gathered pease and berries. Thus we rowed our boate along the shore fiue daies: about which time we came to a very goodly ryuer that ranne farre vp into the countrey and sawe very goodly growen trees of all sortes. There we happened vpon a ship of Saint Iohn de Luz, which ship brought vs into Biskay to an harborough called The Passage. The Master of the Shippe was our great friend or els we had bene put to death if he had not kept our counsayle. For when the visitors came aboorde, as it is the order in Spaine, they demaunding what we were, he sayd we were poore fishermen that had cast away our ship in Newfoundland, and so the visitours inquired no more of the matter at that time. Assoone as night was come he put vs on land and bad vs shift for our selues. Then had wee but tenne or twelue myles into France, which we went that night, and then cared not for the Spanyard. And so shortly after we came into England toward the end of the yeere 1583.

They came on land the 7. day after their ship wracke.

The fruitefulnes of the south part of Newfound land.

Fourteene of our men brought out of Newfound land in a ship of S. Iohn de Luz.

A true Report of the late discoueries, and possession taken in the *right of the Crowne of England of the Newfound Lands, By that valiant* and worthy Gentleman, Sir Humfrey Gilbert Knight.

Wherein is also briefely set downe, her highnesse lawfull Title thereunto, and the great & manifold commodities, that are likely to grow therby, to the whole Realme in generall, and to the Aduenturers in particular, Together with the easines and shortnes of the Voyage.

Written by Sir George Pecham Knight, the chiefe aduenturer, and furtherer of Sir Humfrey Gilbertes voyage to Newfound Land.

The first Chapter, wherein the Argument of the Booke is contained.

Master Edward Hayes.

IT was my fortune (good Reader) not many dayes past, to meete with a right honest and discreete Gentleman, who accompanied that valiant and worthy Knight Sir Humfrey Gilbert, in this last iourney for the Westerne discoueries, and is owner and Captaine of the onely vessell which is as yet returned from thence.

By

By him I did vnderſtand, that Syr Humfrey departed the coaſt of England the eleuenth of June laſt paſt, with fiue ſayle of ſhippes from Cauſhenbay neere Plymmouth, whereof one of the beſt ioyſooke his companie, the thirteenth day of the ſame moneth, and returned into England.

The other foure (through the aſſiſtance of Almighrie God) did arriue at Saint Johns Hauen, in Newfound land, the third of Auguſt laſt. Vpon whoſe arriuall all the Maſters and chiefe Mariners of the Engliſh Fleete, which were in the ſayd Hauen before, endeuouring to fraught themſelues with fiſh, repaired vnto Sir Humfrey, whom he made acquainted with the effect of his Commiſſion: which being done, he promiſed to intreate them and their goods well and honourably as did become her Maieſties Lieutenant. They did all welcome him in the beſt ſort that they could, and ſhewed him and his, all ſuch courteſies as the place could affoord or yeelde.

Sir Humfrey Gilbert did arriue at Saint Johns Hauen in Newfound land, the 3. of Auguſt. Anno 1583.

Then he went to viewe the Countrey, being well accompanied with moſt of his Captaines and ſouldiers. They found the ſame very temperate, but ſomewhat warmer then Englande at that ſeaſon of the yeere, replenished with Beaſts and great ſtore of Foule of diuers kindes: And Fiſh of ſundry ſortes, both in the ſalt water and in the freſh, in ſo great plentie as might ſuffice to victuall an Armie, and they are very eaſily taken. What ſundry other commodities for this Realme right neceſſarie, the ſame doeth yeelde, you ſhall vnderſtand in this treatiſe hereafter, in place more conuenient.

Among theſe there was found the ract of a beaſt of 7. inches and a halfe ouer.

On Munday being the firſt of Auguſt, the Generall cauſed his tent to be ſet vpon the ſide of an hill, in the viewe of all the Fleete of Engliſh men and ſtrangers, which were in number betweene thirtie and fourtie ſayle: then being accompanied with all his Captaines, Maſters, Gentlemen and other ſouldiers, he cauſed all the Maſters, and principall Officers of the ſhips, aſwel Engliſhmen as Spaniards, Portingales, and of other nations, to repayre vnto his tent: And then and there, in the preſence of them all, he did cauſe his Commiſſion vnder the great Seale of England to be openly and ſolempnely read vnto them, whereby were graunted vnto him, his heires, and aſſignes, by the Queenes moſt excellent Maieſtie, many great and large royalties, liberties, and priuiledges. The effect whereof being ſignified vnto the ſtrangers by an Interpreter, he tooke poſſeſſion of the ſayd land in the right of the Crowne of England by digging of a Turfe and receiuing the ſame with an Haſel wande, deliuered vnto him, after the maner of the Lawe and cuſtome of England.

Sir Humfrey tooke poſſeſſion of the Newfound land in right of the Crowne of England.

Then he ſignified vnto the companie both ſtrangers and others, that from thenceforth, they were to liue in that land, as the Territories apperteining to the Crowne of England, and to be gouerned by ſuch Lawes as by good aduiſe ſhould be ſet downe, which in all pointe (ſo neere as might be) ſhould be agreeable to the Lawes of England: And for to put the ſame in execution, preſently he ordeined and eſtabliſhed three Lawes.

Three lawes eſtabliſhed there by Sir Humfrey.

Firſt, that Religion publiquely exerciſed, ſhould be ſuch, and none other, then is vſed in the Church of England.

The ſecond, that if any perſon ſhould be lawfully conuicted of any practiſe againſt her Maieſtie, her Crowne and dignitie, to be adiudged as traitors according to the Lawes of England.

The third, if any ſhould ſpeake diſhonourably of her Maieſtie, the partie ſo offending, to looſe his eares, his ſhip and goods, to be confiſcate to the vſe of the Generall.

All men did very willingly ſubmit themſelues to theſe Lawes. Then he cauſed the Queenes Maieſties Armes to be ingraued, ſet vp, & erected, with great ſolemnitie. After this, diuers Engliſh men, made ſute vnto Sir Humfrey to haue of him by inheritance, their accuſtomed ſtages, ſtandings & dryying places, in ſundry parts of that land for their fiſh, as a thing that they do make great accompt of, which he graunted vnto them, in fee farme. And by this meanes, he hath poſſeſſion mainteined for him, in many parts of that Countrey. To be briefe, he did let, ſet, giue and diſpoſe of many things, as abſolute Gouernor there, by vertue of her Maieſties letters patents.

Sundry perſons, became Tenants to Sir Humfrey, and doe maintaine poſſeſſion for him in diuers places there.

And after their ſhippes were repaired, whereof one bee was driuen to leaue behinde, both for want of men ſufficient to furniſh her, as alſo to carrie home ſuch ſicke perſons as were not able to proceede any further, He departed from thence the 20. of Auguſt, with the other three, namely, the Delight, wherein was appointed Captaine in M. William Winters place, (that thence returned immediatly for England) M. Maurice Browne: the Golden Hinde, in which was Captaine and owner, M. Edwarde Hay: and the little Frigat where the Generall himſelfe did goe, ſeeming to him moſt fit to diſcouer and approch the ſhoare.

The 21. day they came to Cape Race, toward the South partes whereof, lying a while becalmed, they tooke Cod in largenes and quantitie, exceeding the other parts of Newfoundland, where any of them had bene. And from thence, trending the coaſt Weſt, toward the Bay of Placentia, the Generall ſent certaine men a ſhoare, to viewe the Countrey, which to them as

they sayled along, seemed pleasant. Whereof his men at their returne gaue great commendation, liking so well of the place, as they would willingly haue stayed and wintred there. But hauing the winde fayre and good, they proceeded on their course towardes the firme of America, which by reason of continuall fogs, at that time of the yeere especially, they could neuer see, till Cor Walter of the Golden Hinde did discerne land, and presently lost sight thereof againe, at what time they were all vpon a breach in a great & outragious stormе, hauing vnder 3. fathome water. But God deliuered the Frigat & the Golden Hind, from this great danger. And the Delight in the presence of them all was lost, to their vnspeakeable griefe, with all their chiefe victuall, munition, and other necessary prouisions, and other things of value not fit here to be named. Whereupon, by reason also that Winter was come vpon them, & foule weather increased with fogs and mistes that so couered the land, as without danger of perishing they could not approch it: Sir Humfrey Gilbert & M. Hays, were compelled much against their willes to retyre homewards: And being 300. leagues on their way, were afterwards by tempestuous weather, separated the one from the other, the ninth of September last, since which time, M. Hays with his Barke, is safely arriued, but of Sir Humfrey as yet, we heare no certaine newes.

Upon this report (together with my former intent, to write some briefe discourse in the commendation of this so noble and worthy an enterprise) I did call to my remembrance, the Hist. Plutarch. rie of Themystocles the Grecian, who (being a right noble and valiant Captaine) signified vnto his Countrey men the citizens of Athens, that he had inuented a deuise for their common wealth very profitable: but it was of such importance and secrecie, that it ought not to be reuealed, before priuate conference had with some particular prudent person of their choyse.

The Athenians knowing Aristides the Philosopher, to be a man indued with singular wisedome and vertue, made choyse of him to haue conference with Themystocles, and thereupon to yeelde his opinion to the Citizens concerning the sayd deuise: which was, that they might set on fire the Nauie of their enemies, with great facilitie as he had layde the plot: Aristides made relation to the Citizens, that the stratageme (deuised by Themystocles) was a profitable practise for the common wealth but it was dishonest. The Athenians (without further demaund what the same was) did by common consent reiect and condemne it, preferring honest and vpright dealing before profite.

By occasion of this Historie, I drewe my selfe into a more deepe consideration, of this late vndertaken voyage, whether it were as well pleasing to almightie God, as profitable to men: as lawfull, as it seemed honourable: as well gratefull to the Sauages, as gainefull to the Christians. And vpon mature deliberation, I found the action to be honest and profitable, and therefore allowable by the opinion of Aristides if he were nowe aliue, which being by me herein sufficiently prooued, (as by Gods grace I purpose to doe) I doubt not but that all good minds, will endeuour themselues to be assistants to this so commendable an enterprise, by the valiant and worthy Gentlemen our Countrey men already attempted and vntertaken.

‖ Englishmen. Walter Iohn Hawkins. Sir Francis Drake. M. William Winter. M. John Chester. M. Martin Frobisher. Anthony Parkhurst. Willm Watts. John Lowel. Dauid Ingram. Strangers French. Sir John Kibault. Jaques Cartier. Andrew Thevet. Monnsieur Gourgos. Monnsieur Popellynere. Italians. Christopher Columbus. John Veratzanus.

Nowe whereas I doe vnderstand that Sir Humfrey Gilbert his adherents, associates and friends doe meane with a conuenient supply (with as much speede as may be) to maintaine, pursue and folow this intended voyage already in part performed, and by the assistance of almightie God) to plant themselues and their people in the continent of the hither part of America, betweene the degrees of 30. and 60. of septentrionall latitude: (Within which degrees by computation Astronomicall and Cosmographicall are doubtlesse to be found, all things that be necessarie, profitable, or delectable for mans life: The climate mylde and temperate, neither too hote nor too colde, so that vnder the cope of heauen there is not any where to be found a more conuenient place to plant and inhabite in: which many notable Gentlemen, both ‖ of our owne nation and strangers, (who haue bene trauailers) can testifie: and that those Countries are at this day inhabited with Sauages (who haue no knowledge of God:) Is it not therefore (I say) to be lamented, that these poore Pagans, so long liuing in ignorance & idolatrie, and in sort thirsting after Christianitie, (as may appeare by the relation of such as haue trauailed in those partes) that our hearts are so hardened, that fewe or none can be found which wil put to their helping hands, and applie themselues to the relieuing of the miserable and wretched estate of these sillie soules.

Whose Countrey doeth (as it were with arme aduanced) aboue the climates both of Spaine and Fraunce, stretch out it selfe towards England only: In maner praying our ayde & helpe, as it is not onely set forth in Mercators generall Mappe, but it is also found to be true by the discouerie of our nation, and other strangers, who haue often times trauailed vpon the same coasts.

Christophe. Columbus of famous memorie, the first instrument to manifest the great glory

and

and mercy of Almighty God in planting the Christian fayth, in those so long vnknowen regions, hauing in purpose to acquaint (as he did) that renoumed Prince, the Queenes Maiesties graundfather, King Henry the seuenth, with his intended voyage for the Westerne discouries, was not onely derided and mocked generally euen here in England, but afterwarde became a laughing stocke to the Spaniards themselues, who at this day (of all other people) are most bounden to laude and prayse God, who first stirred vp the man to that enterprise.

God doeth not alwaies begin his greatest woorkes by the greatest persons.

And while hee was attending there to acquaint the King of Castile (that then was) with his intended purpose, by howe many wayes and meanes was he derided? Some scorned the pildnes of his garments, some tooke occasion to iest at his simple and silly lookes, others asked if this were he, that lowts so lowe, which did take vpon him to bring men into a Countrey that aboundeth with Golde, Pearle, and Precious stones? If he were any such man (sayde they) hee would carry another maner of countenance with him, and looke somewhat loftier. Thus some iudged him by his garments, and others by his looke and countenance, but none entred into the consideration of the inward man.

His custome was to bowe himselfe very lowe in making of courtesie.

In the ende, what successe his voyage had, who list to reade the Decades, the Historie of the West Indies, the conquest of Hernando Cortes about Mexico, and those of Francisco Pizare in Peru about Casamalcha and Cusco, may knowe more particularly. All which their discouries, trauailes, and conquests, are extant to be had in the English tongue. This deuise was then accounted a fantasticall imagination, and a drowsie dreame.

Hernando Cortes. Francisco Pyzarr.

But the sequel thereof, hath since awaked out of dreames thousand of soules to knowe their Creator, being thereof before that time altogether ignorant: And hath since made sufficient proofe, neither to be fantasticke, nor vainely imagined.

Withall, howe mightily hath it inlarged the dominions of the Crowne of Spaine, and greatly enriched the subiects of the same, let all men consider. Besides, it is wel knowne, that sithence the time of Columbus his first discouerie, through their planting, possessing, and inhabiting those partes, there hath bene transported and brought home into Europe, greater store of Golde, Siluer, Pearle, and Precious stones, then heretofore hath bene in all ages, since the creation of the worlde.

I doe therefore hartily wish, that seeing it hath pleased almighty God, of his infinite mercy at the length, to awake some of our worthy Countrey men, out of that drowsie dreame, wherein we all haue so long slumbered:

That wee may nowe not suffer it to quaile for want of maintenance, that by these valiant Gentlemen our Countrey men is so nobly begun and enterprised. For which purpose, I haue taken vpon me to write this simple short treatise, hoping that it shalbe able to perswade such as haue bene, and yet doe continue detractors and hinderers of this iourney, (by reason perhaps that they haue not deliberately and aduisedly entred into the iudgement of the matter) that yet now vpon better consideration they will become fauourable furtherers of the same. And that such as are already well affected thereunto, wil continue their good disposition: And withall, I most humbly pray all such as are no niggards of their purses in buying of costly and rich apparel, and liberall Contributors in setting forth of games, pastimes, feastings and banquets, (whereof the charge being past, there is no hope of publique profite or commoditie) that henceforth they will bestowe and employ their liberalitie (heretofore that way expended) to the furtherance of these so commendable purposed proceedings.

A reasonable request.

And to this ende haue I taken pen in hand, as in conscience thereunto mooued, desiring much rather, that of the great multitude which this Realme doeth nourish, farre better able to handle this matter then I my selfe am, it would haue pleased some one of them to haue vndertaken the same. But seeing they are silent, and that it falleth to my lotte to put pen to the paper, I will endeuour my selfe, and doe stand in good hope (though my skill and knowledge be simple, yet through the assistance of almighty God) to prooue that the voyage, late enterprised for trade, traffike, and planting in America, is an action tending to the lawfull enlargement of her Maiesties Dominions, commodious to the whole Realme in general, profitable to the aduenturers in particular, beneficiall to the Sauages, and a matter to be attained without any great danger or difficultie.

The argument of the booke.

And lastly (which most of all is) A thing likewise tending to the honour and glory of almighty God: And for that the lawfulnesse to plant in those Countries, in some mens iudgements seemeth very doubtfull, I will beginne the proofe of the lawfulnesse of trade, traffike, and planting.

The

The seconde Chapter sheweth that it is lawfull and necessarie to trade and traffike with the Sauages: And to plant in their Countries: And deuideth planting into two sortes.

AND first for traffike, I say that the Christians may lawfully trauell into those Countries and abide there, whom the Sauages may not iustly impugne and forbid in respect of the mutuall societie and felowship betweene man and man prescribed by the Lawe of Nations.

For from the first beginning of the creation of the world and from the renuing of the same after Noes flood, all men haue agreed, that no violence should be offered to Ambassadours: That the Sea with his Hauens should bee common: That such as should fortune to be taken in warre, should be seruants or slaues: And that strangers should not be driuen away from the place or Countrey whereunto they doe come.

If it were so then, I demaund in what age, and by what Lawe is the same forbidden or denied since? For who doubteth but that it is lawfull for Christians to vse trade and traffike with Infidels or Sauages, carrying thither such commodities as they want, & bringing from thence some part of their plentie.

A thing so commonly and generally practised, both in these our dayes, and in times past, beyonde the memorie of man, both by Christians and Infidels, that it needeth no further proofe.

And for as much as the vse of trade and traffike (be it neuer so profitable) ought not to bee preferred before the planting of Christian fayth: I will therefore some what entreate of planting (without which, Christian Religion can take no roote, be the Preachers neuer so careful and diligent) which I meane to deuide in two sortes.

The principal causes why this voyage is vndertaken.

The first, when Christians by the good liking and willing assent of the Sauages, are admitted by them to quiet possession.

The second, when Christians being vniustly repulsed, doe seeke to attaine and mainteine the right for which they doe come.

The first kinde of planting.

And though in regarde of the establishment of Christian Religion, either of both may bee lawfully and iustly exercised: (Whereof many examples may be found, as well in the time of Moyses and Iosua, and other Rulers before the birth of Christ, as of many vertuous Emperours and Kings sithence his incarnation:) yet doe I wish, that before the second be put in practise, a proofe may be made of the first, sauing that for their safetie as well against the Sauages, as all other forraigne enemies, they should first well and strongly fortifie themselues: which being done, then by all fayre speeches, & euery other good meanes of perswasion to seeke to take away all occasions of offence.

As letting them to vnderstand, howe they came not to their hurt, but for their good, and to no other ende, but to dwell peaceably amongst them, and to trade and traffike with them for their owne commoditie, without molesting or grieuing them any way, which must not be done by wordes onely but also by deedes.

For albeit, to maintaine right and repel iniurie, be a iust cause of warre: yet must there hereof be heedefull care had, that whereas the Sauages be fearefull by nature, and fonde otherwise, the Christians should do their best endeuour to take away such feare as may grow vnto them by reason of their straunge apparel, Armour, and weapon, or such like, by quiet and peaceable conuersation, and letting them liue in securitie, and keeping a measure of blamelesse defence, with as little discommoditie to the Sauages as may bee: for this kinde of warre would be onely defensiue and not offensiue.

And questionles there is great hope & likelyhode that by this kind of meanes, we should bring to passe all effects to our desired purposes: Considering that all creatures, by constitution of nature, are rendred more tractable and easier wonne for all assayes, by courtesie and mildnesse, then by crueltie or roughnes: and therefore being a principle taught vs by naturall reason, it is first to be put in vre.

For albeit as yet the Christians are not so throughly furnished with the perfectnesse of their language, either to expresse their mindes to them, or againe to conceiue the Sauages intent: Yet for the present opportunitie, such policie may bee vsed by friendly signes, and courteous tokens towardes them, as the Sauages may easily perceiue, (were their sences neuer so grosse) an assured friendship to bee offered them, and that they are encountered with such a nation, as bringes them benefite, commoditie, peace, tranquillity and safetie. To further this, and to accomplish it in deedes, there must bee presented vnto them gratis, some kindes of our pettie marchandizes

chandiſes and trifles: As looking glaſſes, Bels, Beads, Bracelets, Chaines, or collers of Bewgie, Chriſtall, Amber, Iet, or Glaſſe &c. For ſuch be the things, though to vs of ſmall value, yet accounted by them of high price and eſtimation: and ſooneſt will induce their Barbarous natures to a liking and a mutual ſociety with vs.

Moreouer, it ſhal be requiſite, either by ſpeeche, if it be poſſible, either by ſome other certaine meanes, to ſignifie vnto them, that once league of friendſhip with all louing conuerſation, being admitted betweene the Chriſtians and them: that then the Chriſtians from thence forth will alwayes bee ready with force of Armes to aſſiſt & defende them in their iuſt quarrels, from all inuaſions, ſpoyles and oppreſſions, offered them by any Tyrannts, Aduerſaries, or their next borderers: and a benefit is ſo much the more to be eſteemed, by howe much the perſon vpon whome it is beſtowed ſtandeth in neede thereof.

For it appeareth by the relation of a countreman of ours, namely Dauid Ingram, (who trauelled in thoſe countries xi. moneths and more) That the Sauages generally for the moſt part, are at continuall warres with their next adioyning neighbours, and eſpecially the Cannibals, being a cruel kinde of people, whoſe foode is mans fleſh, and haue teeth like dogges, and do purſue them with rauenous mindes to eate their fleſh, and deuoure them.

And it is not to be doubted, but that the Chriſtians may in this caſe iuſtly and lawfully ayde the Sauages againſt the Cannibals. So that it is very likelie, that by this meanes we ſhall not onely mightely ſtirre and inflame their rude mindes gladly to embrace the louing company of the Chriſtians, proffering vnto them both commodities, ſuccour, and kindnes: But alſo by their franke conſents ſhall eaſily enioy ſuch competent quantity of Lande, as euery way ſhall be correſpondent to the Chriſtians expectation, & contentation, conſidering the great aboundance that they haue of Lande, and howe ſmall account they make thereof, taking no other fruites thereby then ſuch as the ground of it ſelfe dooth naturally yeelde. And thus much concerning the firſt ſort of planting, which as I aſſuredly hope, ſo I moſt hartelie pray may take effect and place.

But if after theſe good and fayre meanes vſed, the Sauages neuertheleſſe will not bee herewithall ſatiſfied, but barbarouſly will go about to practiſe violence either in repelling the Chriſtians from their Ports & ſafe landings or in withſtanding them afterwards to enioy the rights for which both painfully and lawfully they haue aduentured themſelues thither: The ſecond kinde of planting.

Then in ſuch a caſe I holde it no breach of equitie for the Chriſtians to defende themſelues, to purſue reuēge with force, and to do whatſoeuer is neceſſarie for the attayning of their ſafety: For it is allowable by al Lawes in ſuch diſtreſſes, to reſiſt violence with violence: And for their more ſecuritie to increaſe their ſtrength by building of fortes, for auoyding the extremitie of iniurious dealing.

Wherein if alſo they ſhal not be ſuffered in reaſonable quietnes to continue, there is no barre (as I iudge) but that in ſtoute aſſemblies, the Chriſtians may iſſue out, and by ſtrong hand purſue their enemies, ſubdue them, take poſſeſſion of their Townes, Cities, or Villages, (and in auoyding murtherous tyrannie) to vſe the Lawe of Armes, as in like caſe among all nations at this day is vſed: and moſt eſpecially to the ende they may with ſecuritie holde their lawfull poſſeſſion, leaſt happily after the departure of the Chriſtians, ſuch Sauages as haue bene conuerted, ſhould afterwards through compulſion and enforcement of their wicked Rulers, returne to their horrible idolatrie (as did the children of Iſrael, after the deceaſe of Ioſhua) and continue their wicked cuſtome of moſt vnnaturall ſacrificing of humane creatures.

And in ſo doing, doubtleſſe the Chriſtians ſhall no whit at all tranſgreſſe the bonds of equitie or ciuilitie, for as much as in former ages, (yea before the incarnation of Chriſt) the like hath bene done by ſundrye Kings and Princes, Gouernours of the children of Iſrael: chiefly in reſpect to begin their planting, for the eſtabliſhment of Gods worde: as alſo ſince the Natiuitie of Chriſt, mightie and puiſſant Emperours and Kings haue performed the like, I ſay to plant, poſſeſſe, and ſubdue. For proofe whereof, I will alleadge you examples of both kindes.

We reade in the olde Teſtament, howe that after Noes flood was ceaſed, reſtoration of mankinde began onely of thoſe fewe of Noes children and familie as were by God preelected to be ſaued in the Arke with him, whoſe ſeede in proceſſe of time, was multiplied to infinite numbers of nations, which in diuers ſortes deuided themſelues to ſundry quarters of the earth. And forasmuch as all their poſteritie being mightily encreaſed followed not the perfect life of Noe their predeceſſour, God choſe out of the multitude, a peculiar people to himſelfe, to whome afterwards being vnder the gouernement of Moſes in Mount Synay, hee made a graunt to inherite the Land of Canaan, called the land of promiſe, with all the other rich and fertile Countries

tries next adioyning therunto. Neuertheleſſe, before they came to poſſeſſion therof, hauing bene afflicted with many greeuous punishments and plagues for their ſinnes they fell in diſpayre to enioy the ſame.

But beeing encouraged and comforted by their Rulers, (men of Iud) they proceeded, arming themſelues with all patience, to ſuffer whatſoeuer it ſhould pleaſe God to ſende: and at laſt attaining to the lande, they were encountered with great numbers of ſtrong people and mighty Kings.

Ioſua 4. Notwithſtanding, Ioſua their leader replenished with the ſpirite of God, being aſſured of the iuſtneſſe of his quarrell, gathered the chiefe ſtrength of the children of Iſrael together, to the number of 40000. with whome he ſafely paſſed the huge riuer Iordan, and hauing before ſent

Ioſua 6. priuie ſpies for the diſcouerie of the famous citie Ierico, to vnderſtand the certaintie of the Citizens eſtate, he forthwith came thither, and enuironed it rounde about, with his whole power the ſpace of ſeuen dayes.

In which reſpite, perceiuing none of the Gentiles diſpoſed to yeld or call for mercie, he then commanded (as God before had appointed) that both the citie Iericho ſhould be burned, yea, and all the inhabitants, as well olde as young, with all their cattell ſhoulde bee deſtroyed onely excepted Rahab, her kindred and familie, becauſe ſhe before had hid ſecretly the meſſengers of Ioſua, that were ſent thither as ſpies. As for all their golde, ſiluer, precious ſtones, or veſſels of braſſe, they were reſerued and conſecrated to the Lords treaſurie.

Ioſua 8. In like maner hee burned the citie Hay, ſlew the inhabitants thereof, and hanged vp their King. But for ſo much as the Gebionites (fearing the like euent) ſent Ambaſſadours vnto Io-

Ioſua 9. ſua, to intreate for grace, fauour, & peace: he commanded that all their liues ſhould be ſaued, and that they ſhould be admitted to the company of the children of Iſrael. Yet vnderſtanding afterwards they wrought this by a pollicie, he vſed them as drudges to hewe wood & to carie water, and other neceſſaries for his people. Thus began this valiant Captaine his conqueſt, which he

Iudg. 11. 13. purſued & neuer left til he had ſubdued all the Hethites, Amorites, Cananites, Pereſites, Heuites, and Iebuſites, with all their Princes and Kings, being thirtie and one in number, and diuers other ſtrange nations, beſides whoſe lands & dominions, he wholie deuided among Gods people.

After that Ioſua was deceaſed, Iuda was conſtituted Lord ouer the Armie, who receiuing like charge from God purſued the proceedings of the holie captaine Ioſua, and vtterly vanquiſhed many Gentiles, Idolaters, and aduerſaries to the children of Iſrael, with all ſuch Rulers or

Iudg. 1. Kings, as withſtoode him, and namely Adonibezek, the moſt cruell tyraunt: whoſe thombes and great toes, he cauſed to be cut off, for ſo much as hee had done the like before vnto ſeuentie Kings, whome being his priſoners, he forced to gather vp their victuals vnderneath his Table. In this God ſhewed his iuſtice to reuenge tyranny. Wee reade likewiſe, that Gedeon a moſt

A good note for al Conquerers to be mercifull. Iudg. 6. 7. puiſſant and noble warriour, ſo behaued himſelfe in following the worthy acts of Ioſua & Iuda that in ſhort time he not only deliuered the children of Iſrael from the hands of the multitude of the fierce Madianites, but alſo ſubdued them, and their Tyrants, whoſe landes he cauſed Gods people to poſſeſſe and inherite.

I could recite diuers other places out of the Scripture, which aptly may be applied hereunto were it not I do endeuour my ſelfe by all meanes to be briefe. Now in like maner will I alledge ſome few of Inductions out of the autenticall writings of the Eccleſiaſticall Hiſtoriographers, all tending to the like argument. And firſt to begin with all, we doe reade: That after our Sauiour Jeſus Chriſt had ſuffered his paſſion, the Apoſtles being inſpired with ỹ holy ghoſt, and the knowledge of all ſtraunge languages, did immediatly diſpearſe themſelues to ſundry partes of the world, to the preaching of the Goſpel. Yet not in ſo generall a maner, but that there remained ſome farre remote countries vnuiſited by them, among the which it is reported that India the great, called the vttermoſt India, as yet had receiued no light of the word. But it came to paſſe, that one Metrodorus, a verie learned and wiſe Philoſopher in that age, being deſirous to ſearch out vnknowne landes, did firſt diſcouer the ſame, finding it wonderfull populous and rich, which vpon his returne being publiſhed, and for certaine vnderſtood, there was another graue Philoſopher of Tyrus called Meropius, being a chriſtian, who did reſolue himſelfe (following the example of Metrodorus) to trauaile thither, and in a ſhort time aſſiſted but with a fewe, in a ſmall Veſſel arriued there, hauing in his company two young youthes, Edeſius, and Frumentius, whome (being his ſchollers) hee had thoughly inſtructed, both in liberall Sciences and chriſtian Religion. Nowe after that Meropius ſomewhile ſtaying there, had (as he thought) ſufficient vnderſtanding of the Indians whole eſtate: He determined to depart, and to bring notice thereof vnto the Emperour, whome he meant to exhort to the conqueſt of the ſame.

But

But by misfortune he was preuented, for being in the middest of his course on the Sea homeward, a sore tempest arose, and perforce droue him backe againe, to an vnknowne Port of the saide land: where he by the most cruel barbarous Indians on the suddaine was slaine with all his company, except the two young schollers aforesaid, whome the barbarous Indians, by reason they were of comely stature and beautifull personages, tooke, and forthwith presented them to their King and Queene: which both being very well liked of, the King courteously entreated, and ordeined Edesius to be his Butler, and Frumentius his Secretarie, and in few yeres by reason of their learning and ciuill gouernment, they were had in great fauour, honour, and estimation with the Princes. But the King departing this life, left the Queene his wife with her yong sonne to gouerne, and gaue free scope and lybertie to the two christians, at their best pleasure to passe to their natiue soyles, allowing them all necessaries for the same. Yet the Queene who highly fauoured them was verie sorowfull they should depart, and therefore most earnestlie intreated them to tarie and assist her in the gouernement of her people, till such time as her yeung sonne grewe to ripe yeres, which request they fulfilled.

Meropius slaine.

Edesius and Frumentius preferred by the Indians.

And Frumentius excelling Edesius farre in all wisedome, ruled both the Queene and her subiects at his discretion, whereby hee tooke occasion to put in practise priuily, that the foundation of christian religion might be planted in the hearts of such as with whome hee thought his perswasion might best preuaile, and that soonest woulde giue eare vnto him: which being brought to passe accordingly, he then with his fellowe Edesius, tooke leaue of the Queene to returne to his natiue countrie. And so soone as he was arriued there, he reuealed to the Emperour Constantine, the effect of all those euents: who both commending his deedes and wholie allowing thereof, by the aduise and good liking of Athanasius then Bishop of Alexandria, did arme and set forth a conuenient power for the aide of Frumentius, in this his so godlie a purpose. And by this meanes came the Emperour afterwards by faire promises, and by force of armes together, vnto the possession of all the Indians countrie. The author of this storie Rufinus, receiued the trueth hereof, from the verie mouth of Edesius companion to Frumentius.

Frumentius in great fauour with ỳ Queene of the Indis.

An other great work of God begun by a man of meane birth.

Ruffinus the Author of this storie.

Moreouer Eusebius in his Historie Ecclesiasticall in precise termes, and in diuers places maketh mention how Constantine the great, not onely enlarged his Empire by the subduing of his next neighbours, but also endeuoured by all meanes, to subiect all such remote Barbarous and heathen nations, as then inhabited the foure quarters of the world. For (as it is written) the Emperour throughly aided with a puisant armie of valiaunt souldiers whom he had before perswaded to christian religion, in proper person himselfe, came euen vnto this our country of England, then called the Iland of Brittaines, bending from him full west, which he wholie conquered, made tributarie, and setled therein christian faith, and left behinde him such Rulers thereof, as to his wisedome seemed best. From thence he turned his force towardes the North coast of the world, and there vtterly subdued the rude and cruell Nation of the Scythians, whereof part by friendly perswasions, part by maine strength, he reduced the whole to Christian faith. Afterwardes hee determined with himselfe to search out what strange people inhabited in the vttermost parts of the South. And with great hazard and labour, making his iourney thither, at last became victour ouer them all, euen to the countrey of the Blemmyans, and the remote Ethiopians, that nowe are the people of Presbyter Iohn, who yet till this day, continue and beare the name of christians.

Euſt. in his ecclesiasticall historie testifieth how ỳ Constantine the great did enlarge his dominions by subduing of Infidels and Idolatrous nations.

Eusebius lib. 1. de vita Constant. Cap 4. et cap. 9.

Euseb. eod. lib. cap. 39.

In the East likewise, what Nation soeuer at that time hee coulde haue notice of, hee easily wonne and brought in subiection to the Empire. So that to conclude, there was no region in any part of the world, the inhabitaunts whereof being Gentiles, though vnknowne vnto him, but in time he ouercame and vanquished.

This worthie beginning of Constantine, both his sonnes succeeding his roome, and also diuers other Emperours afterward to their vttermost endeuour followed and continued, which all the bookes of Eusebius more at large sette forth. Theodoretus likewise in his Ecclesiasticall historie maketh mention how Theodosius the vertuous Emperour, employed earnestly all his time, as well in conquering the Gentiles to the knowledge of the holy gospel, vtterly subuerting the prophane Temples and abhominable Idolatry, as also in extinguishing of such vsurping tyraunts, as with Paganisme withstood the planting of christian religion. After whose decease his sonnes, Honorius, and Arcadius, were created Emperours, the one of the East, the other of the West, who with all stout godlinesse, most carefully imitated the foresteps of their Father, eyther in enlarging their territories, or increasing the christian flocke.

Theodoret in eccle. lib. 5. cap. 20.

Theodoretus cap. 26. eodem lib.

Moreouer, it is reported by the said author, that Theodosius Iunior the Emperour, no whit inferiour in vertuous life to any of the aboue named Princes, with great studie & zeale pursued,

and

and prosecuted the Gentiles, subdued their tyrants & countries, and vtterly destroyed all their idolatrie, conuerting their soules to acknowledge their onely Messias and Creator, and their Countries to the enlargement of the Empire. To be briefe, who so lusteth to read Eusebius Pamphilus, Socrates Scholasticus, Theodoritus, Hermia, Sozomen, & Euagrius Scholasticus, which all were most sage Ecclesiasticall writers, shall finde great store of examples of the worthy liues of sundry Emperours, tending all to the confirmation of my former speeches.

And for like examples of latter time (yea euen in the memorie of man) I shall not neede to recite any other then the conquest made of the West and East Indies, by the Kings of Spaine and Portingale, whereof there is particular mention made in the last Chapter of this booke. Herein haue I vsed more copy of examples, then otherwise I would haue done, sauing that I haue bene in place where this maner of planting the Christian faith, hath bene thought of some to be scarce lawfull, yea, such as doe take vpon them to be more then meanely learned. To these examples could I ioyne many moe, but whosoeuer is not satisfied with these fewe, may satisfie himselfe in reading at large the Authours last aboue recited. Thus haue I (as I trust) prooued that we may iustly trade and traffike with the Sauages, and lawfully plant and inhabite their Countries.

The third Chapter doeth shewe the lawfull title, which the *Queenes most excellent Maiestie hath vnto those Countries, which* through the ayde of almightie God are meant to be inhabited.

1170. Owen Gwyneth, was then Prince of Northwales. Nullum tempus occurrit Regi.

AND it is very euident that the planting there shall in time right amply enlarge her Maiesties Territories and Dominions (or I might rather say) restore her to her Highnesse auncient right and interest in those Countries, into the which a noble and worthy personage, lineally descended from the blood royall, borne in Wales, named Madock ap Owen Gwyneth, departing from the coast of England, about the yeere of our Lord God 1170. arriued and there planted himselfe and his Colonies, and afterwarde returned himselfe into England leauing certaine of his people there, as appeareth in an auncient Welsh Chronicle, where hee then gaue to certaine Ilands, beastes, and foules sundry Welsh names, as the Ilands of Pengwin, which yet to this day beareth the same.

This Iland was discouered by Sir Humfrey and his company, in this his last iourney.

There is likewise a Foule in the sayd Countreys, called by the same name at this day, and is as much to say in English, as Whitehead, and in trueth, the sayd foules haue white heads.

There is also in those Countries a fruit called Gwynethes which is likewise a Welsh word. Moreouer, there are diuers other Welsh wordes at this day in vse, as Dauid Ingram aforesayd reporteth in his relations. All which most strongly argueth, the sayd Prince with his people to haue inhabited there. And the same in effect is confirmed by Mutezuma that mighty Emperour of Mexico, who in an Oration vnto his subiects for the better pacifying of them, made in the presence of Hernando Cortes, vsed these speeches following.

Mutezumas his Oration to his subiects in presence of Hernando Cortese. which Oration was made about the yere. 1520.

My kinsmen, friends, and seruants, you doe well knowe that eighteene yeeres I haue bene your King, as my Fathers and Graundfathers were, and alwayes I haue bene vnto you a louing Prince, and you vnto me good and obedient subiects, and so I hope you will remaine vnto me all the dayes of my life. You ought to haue in remembrance, that either you haue heard of your Fathers, or else our Diuines haue instructed you that we are not naturally of this Countrey, nor yet our Kingdome is durable, because our forefathers came from a farre Countrey, and their King and Captaine who brought them hither, returned againe to his naturall Countrey, saying, that he would send such as should rule and gouerne vs, if by chaunce hee himselfe returned not, &c.

These be the very wordes of Mutezuma, set downe in the Spanish Chronicles, the which being throughly considered, because they haue relation to some strange noble person, who long before had possessed those Countries, doe all sufficiently argue, the vndoubted title of her Maiestie: Forasmuch as no other Nation can truely by any Chronicles they can finde, make prescription of time for themselues, before the time of this Prince Madoc. Besides all this, for further proofe of her Highnes title sithence the arriuall of this noble Britton into those parts (that is to say) in the time of the Q. Maiesties graundfather, of worthy memory, King Henry the seuenth, Letters patents were by his Maiestie graunted to Iohn Cabota an Italian, to Lewis, Sebastian, and Sanius, his three sonnes, to discouer remote, Barbarous and Heathen Countries, which discouerie, was afterwards executed to the vse of the Crowne of England, in ỹ said Kings time,

by

by Sebastian and Santius his sonnes, who were borne heere in England: In true testimony wherof, there is a fayre hauen in Newfound land, knowen, and called vntill this day by the name of Santius hauen, which proueth that they first discouered vpon that coast, from the height of 63 vnto the cape of Florida, as appeareth in the Decades. M. Oliuer Dalbonp. M. Edward Krow. M. R. P. M. I. R.

And this may stand for another title to her Maiestie: but any of the foresaid titles is as much or more then any other Christian prince can pretend to the Indies, before such time as they had actuall possession thereof, obteined by the discouery of Christopher Columbus, & the conquest of Vasques Nunnes de Balboa, Hernando Cortes, Francisco Pysarro, and others. And therefore I thinke it needlesse to write any more touching the lawfulnesse of her Maiesties title.

The fourth chapter sheweth how that the trade, traffike, and planting in those countryes, is likely to proue very profitable to the whole realme in generall.

NOw to shew how the same is likely to proue very profitable and beneficiall generally to the whole realme: It is very certaine, that the greatest iewell of this realme, and the chiefest strength and force of the same, for defence or offence in martiall matter and maner is the multitude of shippes, maisters & mariners, ready to assist the most stately and royall nauy of her Maiesty, which by reason of this voyage shall haue both increase & maintenance. And it is well knowne, that in sundry places of this realme ships haue beene built and set forth of late dayes, for the trade of fishing only: yet notwithstanding the fish which is taken & brought into England by the English nauie of fishermen, will not suffice for the expence of this realme foure moneths, if there were none els brought of strangers. And the chiefest cause why our English men do not go so far Westerly, as the especiall fishing places do lie, both for plenty & greatnesse of fish, is for that they haue no succor and knowen safe harbor in those parts. But if our nation were once planted there, or nere therabouts: whereas they now fish but for two moneths in the yeere, they might then fish so long as pleased themselues, or rather at their comming finde such plenty of fish readie taken, salted & dried, as might be sufficient to fraught them home without long delay (God granting that salt may be found there) whereof Dauid Ingram (who trauelled in those countryes as aforesaid) saith that there is great plenty: & withall the climate doth giue great hope, that though there were none naturally growing, yet it might aswell be made there by art, as it is both in Rochell & Bayon, or els where. Which being brought to passe, shall increase the number of our ships and mariners, were it but in respect of fishing only: but much more in regard of the sundry merchandizes and commodities which are there found and had in great abundance. For the maister.

Moreouer, it is well knowen that all Sauages, aswell those that dwell in the South, as those that dwell in the North, so soone as they shall beginne but a little to taste of ciuillity, will take marueilous delight in any garment, be it neuer so simple: as a shirt, a blew, yellow, red, or greene cotten cassocke, a cappe or such like, and will take incredible paines for such a trifle.

For I my selfe haue heard this report made sundry times, by diuers of our countreymen, who haue dwelt in the Southerly parts of the West Indies, some twelues yeeres together, and some lesse time: that the people in those parts are easily reduced to ciuility both in maners and garments. Which being so, what vent for our English clothes will thereby ensue, and how great benefit to all such persons & artificers whose names are noted in the margent, I do leaue to the iudgement of such as are discreet. Clothiers. Woolmen. Carders. Spinners. Weauers. Fullers. Sherrmen. Dyers. Drapers. Clothiers. Cappers. Hatters. &c.

And questionlesse heereby it will also come to passe, that all such townes and villages, as both haue beene, and now are vtterly decayed and ruinated (the poore people thereof being not set on worke, by reason of the transportation of raw wooll of late dayes, more excessiuely then in times past) shal by this meanes be restored to their pristinate wealth and estate, all which do likewise tend to the inlargement of our nauie, and maintenance of our nauigation. And many decayed townes repayred.

To what end need I endeuor my selfe by arguments to proue, that by this voyage our nauie and nauigation shalbe inlarged, when as there needeth none other reason then the manifest & late example of the neere neighbors to this realme, the kings of Spaine and Portingall, who since the first discouery of the Indies, haue not onely mightily inlarged their dominions, greatly inriched themselues and their subiects: but haue also by iust account trebled the number of their shippes, maisters and mariners, a matter of no small moment and importance?

Besides this, it will proue a generall benefit vnto our countrey, that though this occasion, not onely a great number of men which do now liue idely at home, and are burthenous, chargeable, & vnprofitable to this realme, shall heereby be set on worke, but also children of twelue or fourteene The idle persons of this realme shall by occasion of this iourney be well employed, and set on worke.

yeres of age, or vnder, may be kept from idlenesse, in making of a thousand kindes of trifling things, which will be good merchandize for that countrey. And moreouer, our idle women (which the realme may well spare) shall also be employed on plucking, dying, and sorting of feathers, in pulling, beating, and working of hempe, and in gathering of cotton, and diuers things right necessary for dying. All which things are to be found in those countryes most plentifully. And the men may imploy themselues in dragging for pearle, working for mines, and in matters of husbandry, and likewise in hunting the Whale for traine, and making casks to put the same in: besides in fishing for cod, salmon, and herring, drying, salting, and barrelling the same, and selling of trees, hewing and sawing of them, and such like worke, meet for those persons as are no men of art or science.

Hempe doth grow neere S. Laurence riuer naturally.

Many other things may be found to the great relieue and good employments of no small number, of the naturall subiects of this realme, which do now liue heere idlely to the common annoy of the whole state. Neither may I heere omit the great hope and likelihood of a passage by the Grand bay, into the South seas, confirmed by sundry authors to be found leading to Cataia, the Moluccaes and Spiceries, whereby may ensue as generall a benefit to the realme, or greater then yet hath beene spoken of, without either such charges, or other inconueniences, as by the tedious tract of time and perill, which the ordinary passage to those parts at this day doth minister.

Read the beginning of the booke intituled, Diuers voyages touching the discouery of America.

And to conclude this argument withall, it is well knowne to all men of sound iudgement, that this voyage is of greater importance, and will be found more beneficiall to our countrey, then all other voyages at this day in vse and trade amongst vs.

The fift chapter sheweth, that the trading and planting in those countryes is likely to proue to the particular profit of all aduenturers.

I Will now according to my promise shew forth some probable reasons, that the aduenturers in this iourney are to take particular profit by the same. It is therefore conuenient that I do diuide the aduenturers into two sorts: the noblemen & gentlemen by themselues, and the merchants by themselues. For as I do heare, it is meant that there shall be one society of the noblemen and gentlemen, and another society of the merchants. And yet not so diuided, but that eche society may freely and frankly trade and traffike one with the other.

And first to bend my speech to the noblemen and gentlemen, who do chiefly seeke a temperate climate, wholesome ayre, fertile soile, and a strong place by nature, whereupon they may fortifie, and there either plant themselues, or such other persons as they shall thinke good to send to be lords of that place and countrey: to them I say that all these things are very easy to be found within the degrees of 30 and 60 aforesaid, either by South or North, both in the Continent, and in Islands thereunto adioyning at their choise: but the degree certaine of the elcuation of the pole, and the very climate where these places of force and fertility are to be found, I omit to make publike, for such regard as the wiser sort can easily coniecture: the rather because I do certainly vnderstand, that some of those which haue the managing of this matter, know it as well or better then I my selfe, and do meane to reueale the same when cause shall require, to such persons whom it shall concerne, and to no other: so that they may seat and settle themselues in such climate as shall best agree with their owne nature, disposition, and good liking: and in the whole tract of that land, by the description of as many as haue beene there, great plenty of minerall matter of all sorts, and in very many places, both stones of price, pearle and christall, and great store of beasts, birds, and fowles both for pleasure and necessary vse of man are to be found.

Beasts for pleasure.

And for such as take delight in hunting, there are Stagges, Wilde boares, Foxes, Hares, Cunnies, Badgers, Otters, and diuers other such like for pleasure. Also for such as haue delight in hauking, there are hauks of sundry kindes, and great store of game, both for land and riuer, as Fezants, Patridges, Cranes, Heronshawes, Ducks, Mallards, and such like. There is also a kinde of beast, much bigger then an Oxe, whose hide is more then eighteene foot long, of which sort a countrey man of ours, one Walker a sea man, who was vpon that coast, did for a truth report in the presence of diuers honourable and worshipfull persons, that he and his company did finde in one cottage aboue two hundred and forty hides, which they brought away and solde in France for forty shillings an hide: and with this agreeth Dauid Ingram, and describeth that beast at large, supposing it to be a certaine kinde of Buffe: there are likewise beasts and fowles of diuers kinds, which I omit for breuities sake, great store of fish both in the salt water and in the fresh, plentie of grapes as bigge as a mans thumbe, and the most delicate wine of the Palme tree, of which wine there be diuers of good credit in this realme haue tasted: and there is also a kinde of graine called

Hides solde for forty shillings a piece.

Great grapes. Wine of the Palmetree.

Maize

Maize, Potato roots, and sundry other fruits naturally growing there: so that after such time as they are once setled, they shall need to take no great care for victuall.

And now for the better contentation and satisfaction of such worshipfull, honest minded, and well disposed merchants, as haue a desire to the furtherance of euery good and commendable action, I will first say vnto them, as I haue done before to the noblemen and gentlemen, that within the degrees aboue said, is doubtlesse to be found the most wholesom and best temperature of ayre, fertility of soile, and euery other commodity or merchandize, for the which, with no small perill we do trauell into Barbary, Spaine, Portingall, France, Italie, Moscouie & Danske. All which may be either presently had, or at the least wise in very short time, procured from thence with lesse danger then now we haue them. And yet to the end my argument shall not altogether stand vpon likelihoods and presumptions, I say that such persons as haue discouered and trauelled those parts, do testifie that they haue found in those countreys all these things following, namely:

Of beasts for furres.
Marterns.
Beauers.
Foxes, blacke and white.
Leopards.

Of Wormes.
Silke wormes great & large

Of Birds.
Hawkes.
Bitters.
Curlewes.
Herons.
Partridges.
Cranes.
Mallards.
Wilde geese.
Stocke dooues.
Margaus.
Blacke birds.
Parrots.
Pengwins.

Of Fishes.
Codde.
Salmon.
Seales.
Herrings.

Of Trees.
Palme trees yeelding sweet wines.
Cedars.
Firres.
Sasafras.
Oake.
Elme.
Popler.

And sundry other strange Trees, to vs vnknowen.

Of Fruites.
Grapes very large.
Muskemellons.
Limmons.
Dates great.
Orrenges.
Figges.
Proines.
Raisins great and small.
Pepper.
Almonds.
Citrons.

Of Mettals.
Golde.
Siluer.
Copper.
Lead.
Tinne.

Of Stones.
Turkies.
Rubies.
Pearls great & faire.
Marble, of diuers kindes.
Iasper.
Christall.

Sundry other commodities of all sorts.
Rosen.
Pitch.
Tarre.
Turpentine.
Frankensence.
Honny.
Waxe.
Rubarbe.
Oile Oliue.
Traine oile.
Muske codde.
Salt.
Tallow.
Hides.
Hempe.
Flaxe.
Cochenello & dies of diuers sorts.
Feathers of sundrie sorts, as for pleasure and filling of Featherbeds.

And seeing that for small costs, the truth of these things may be vnderstood (whereof this intended supply will giue vs more certaine assurance) I doe finde no cause to the contrary, but that all well minded persons should be willing to aduenture some conuenient portion for the furtherance of so good an enterprise.

Now for the triall hereof, considering that in the articles of the society of the aduentures in this voyage, there is prouision made, that no aduenturer shall be bound to any further charge then his first aduenture: and yet notwithstanding keepe still to himselfe, his children, his apprentises and seruants, his and their freedome for trade and traffike, which is a priuiledge that aduenturers in other voyages haue not: and in the said articles it is likewise prouided, that none other then such as haue aduentured in the first voyage, or shall become aduenturers in this supply, at any time hereafter are to be admitted in the said society, but as redemptionaries, which will be very chargeable: therefore generally I say vnto all such according to the olde prouerbe, Nothing venture, nothing haue. For if it do so fall out, according to the great hope and expectation had (as by Gods grace it will) the gaine which now they reape by traffike into other far countries, shall by this trade returne with lesse charge, greater gaine, & more safety: Lesse charge I say, by reason of the ample & large deepe riuers at the very banke, wherof there is many, whereby both easily & quietly they may transport frō ỹ innermost parts of the main land, all kinde of merchandize, yea in vessels of great burde, & that three times, or twise in the yere at the least. But let vs omit all presuptions how we behoue to ouer, & dwell vpon ỹ certeinty of such cōmodities as were discouered by sir Humfry Gilbert, & his assistants in Newfould land in August last. For there may be very easily made, Pitch, Tar, Rosen, Commodities found in August last.

Sope ashes, in great plenty, yea, as it is thought, inough to serue the whole realme of euery of these kindes: And of Trane oile such quantity, as if I should set downe the value that they doe esteeme it at, which haue beene there, it would seeme incredible.

It is hereby intended, that these commodities in this abundant maner, are not to be gathered from thence, without planting and setling there. And as for other things of more value, and that of more sorts and kindes then one or two (which were likewise discouered there) I doe holde it for some respects, more meet for a time to be concealed then vttered.

Of the fishing I do speake nothing, because it is generally knowen: and it is not to be forgotten, what trifles they be that the Sauages do require in exchange of these commodities: yea, for pearle, golde, siluer, and precious stones. All which are matters in trade and traffike of great moment. But admit that it should so fall out, that the aboue specified commodities shall not happily be found out within this first yeere: Yet it is very cleere that such and so many may be found out as shall minister iust occasion to thinke all cost & labor well bestowed. For it is very certaine, that there is one seat fit for fortification, of great safety, wherin these commodities following, especially are to be had, that is to say, Grapes for wine, Whales for oyle, Hempe for cordage, and other necessary things, and fish of farre greater size, and plenty, then that of Newfound land, and of all these so great store, as may suffice to serue our whole realme.

Besides all this, if credit may be giuen to the inhabitants of the same soile, a certaine riuer doth thereunto adioyne, which leadeth to a place abounding with rich substance: I do not hereby meane the passage to the Moluccaes, whereof before I made mention.

And it is not to be omitted, how that about two yeres past, certaine merchants of S. Mallowes in France, did hyre a shippe out of the Iland of Jersey, to the end that they would keepe that trade secret from their countreymen, and they would admit no mariner, other then the ship boy belonging to the said shippe, to go with them, which shippe was about 70 tunne. I do know the shippe and the boy very well, and am familiarly acquainted with the owner, which voyage proued very beneficiall.

To conclude, this which is already said, may suffice any man of reasonable disposition, to serue for a taste, vntill such time as it shall please almighty God through our owne industrie, to send vs better tidings. In the meane season, if any man well affected to this iourney, shall stand in doubt of any matter of importance touching the same, he may satisfie himselfe with the iudgement and liking of such of good calling and credit, as are principall dealers herein. For it is not necessary in this treatise, publikely to set forth the whole secrets of the voyage.

The sixt chapter sheweth that the traffike and planting in those countries, shall be vnto the Sauages themselues very beneficiall and gainefull.

NOw to the end it may appeare, that this voyage is not vndertaken altogether for the peculiar commodity of our selues, and our country (as generally other trades and iournies be) it shall fall out in proofe, that the Sauages shall hereby haue iust cause to blesse the houre, when this enterprise was vndertaken.

First and chiefly, in respect of the most happy and gladsome tidings of the most glorious Gospell of our Sauiour Iesus Christ, whereby they may be brought from falshood to trueth, from darkenesse to light, from the bie way of death to the path of life, from superstitious idolatry to sincere Christianity, from the deuill to Christ, from hell to heauen. And if in respect of all the commodities they can yeeld vs (were they many moe) that they should but receiue this only benefit of Christianity, they were more then fully recompenced.

But hereunto it may be obiected, that the Gospell must be be freely preached, for such was the example of the Apostles: vnto whom although the authorities and examples before alleged of Emperours, Kings, and Princes, as well before Christes time as since, might sufficiently satisfie: yet for further answere, we may say with S. Paul: If we haue sowen vnto you heauenly things, 1. Cor. 9. do you thinke it much that we should reape your carnall things? And withall, The workman is woorthie of his hire. These heauenly tidings which those labourers our countreymen (as messengers of Gods great goodnesse and mercy) will voluntarily present vnto them, doe farre exceed their earthly riches. Moreouer, if the other inferior worldly & temporall things, which they shall receiue from vs, be waied in equall ballance, I assure my selfe, that by equall iudgement of any indifferent person, the benefits which they then receiue, shall farre surmount those which they shall depart withall vnto vs. And admit that they had (as they haue not) the knowledge to put their land to some vse: yet being brought from brutish ignorance to ciuility and knowledge, and trade

made them to vnderstand how the tenth part of their land may be so manured and employed, as it may yeeld more commodities to the necessary vse of mans life, then the whole now doth: What iust cause of complaint may they haue? And in my priuate opinion, I doe verily thinke that God did create land, to the end that it should by culture and husbandry, yeeld things necessary for mans life.

But this is not all the benefit which they shall receiue by the Christians: for, ouer and beside the knowledge how to till and dresse their grounds, they shall be reduced from vncomely customes to honest maners, from disordered riotous routs and companyes to a well gouerned common wealth, and withall shalbe taught mecanicall occupations, arts, and liberall sciences: and which standeth them most vpon, they shalbe defended from the cruelty of their tyrannicall and bloud sucking neighbors the Canibals, whereby infinite number of their liues shall be preserued. And lastly, by this meanes many of their poore innocent children shalbe preserued from the bloudy knife of the sacrificer, a most horrible and detestable custome in the sight of God and man, now and euer heeretofore vsed amongst them. Many other things could I heere allege to this purpose, were it not that I feare least I haue already more then halfe tired the reader.

This bargen can not be vniust, where both parties are gainers.

The seuenth chapter sheweth that the planting there, is not a matter of such charge or difficultie, as many would make it seeme to be.

NOw therefore for proofe, that the planting in these parts is a thing that may be done without the aide of the princes power and purse, contrary to the allegation of many malicious persons, who will neither be actors in any good action themselues, nor so much as afoord a good word to the setting forward thereof: and that worse is, they will take vpon them to make molehilles seeme mountaines, and flies elephants, to the end they may discourage others, that be very well or indifferently affected to the matter, being like vnto Esops dogge, which neither would eat hay himselfe, nor suffer the poore hungry asse to feed thereon:

I say and affirme that God hath prouided such meanes for the furtherance of this enterprise, as doe stand vs in stead of great treasure: for first by reason that it hath pleased God of his great goodnesse, of long time to holde his mercifull hand ouer this realme, in preseruing the people of the same, both from slaughter by the sword, and great death by plague, pestilence, or otherwise, there are at this day great numbers (God he knoweth) which liue in such penury and want, as they could be contented to hazard their liues, and to serue one yeere for meat, drinke and apparell only, without wages, in hope thereby to amend their estates: which is a matter in such like iournyes, of no small charge to the prince. Moreouer, things in the like iournyes of greatest price and cost, as victuall (whereof there is great plenty to be had in that countrey without money) and powder, great artillery, or corselets, are not needfull in so plentifull and chargeable maner, as the shew of such a iourney may present: for a small quantity of all these to furnish the fort onely, will suffice vntill such time as diuers commodities may be found out in those parts, which may be thought well worthy a greater charge. Also the peculiar benefit of archers which God hath blessed this land withall before all other nations, will stand vs in great stead amongst those naked people.

Another helpe we haue also, which in such like cases is a matter of marueilous cost, and will be in this iourney procured very easily (that is to say) To transport yeerely as well our people, as all other necessaries needfull for them into those parts by the fleet of merchants, that yeerely venture for fish in Newfound land, being not farre distant from the countrey meant to be inhabited, who commonly go with empty vessels in effect, sauing some little fraught with salt. And thus it appeareth that the souldiors wages, and the transportation may be defrayed for farre lesse summes of money then the detractors of this enterprise haue giuen out. Againe, this intended voyage for conquest, hath in like maner many other singular priuileges wherewith God hath, as it were, with his holy hand blessed the same before all others. For after once we are departed the coast of England, we may passe straight way thither, without danger of being driuen into any the countryes of our enemies, or doubtfull friends: for commonly one winde serueth to bring vs thither, which seldome failerh from the middle of Januarie to the middle of May, a benefite which the mariners make great account of, for it is a pleasure that they haue in few or none of other iourneyes. Also the passage is short, for we may goe thither in thirtie or fortie dayes at the most, hauing but an indifferent winde, & returne continually in twenty or foure & twenty dayes at the most. And in the same our iourny, by reason it is in the Ocean, & quite out of the way from the intercourse of other countryes, we may safely trade and traffike without perill of piracy: neither shall our ships, people, or goods there, be subiect to arrest or molestation of any Pagan potentate, Turkish tyrant, yea, or Christian prince, which heeretofore, sometimes vpon slender occasion in other parts, haue

stayed our shippes and merchandizes, whereby great numbers of our countrymen haue beene vterly vndone, diuers put to ransome, yea, and some lost their liues: a thing so fresh in memory as it needeth no proofe, and well worthy of consideration.

Besides, in this voyage we do not crosse the burnt line, whereby commonly both beuerage and victuall are corrupted, and mens health very much impayred, neither doe we passe the frozen seas, which yeeld sundry extreme dangers: but haue a temperate climate at all times of the yere, to serue our turnes. And lastly, there need no delayes by the way, for taking in of fresh water and fewell, (a thing vsually done in long iournies) because as I said aboue, the voyage is not long, and the fresh waters taken in there, our men heere in England, at their returne home, haue found so wholesom and sweet, that they haue made choise to drinke it before our beere and ale.

Beholde heere, good countrey men, the manifolde benefits, commodities and pleasures heere-tofore vnknowne, by Gods especiall blessing not onely reuealed vnto vs, but also as it were infused into our bosomes, who though hitherto like dormice haue slumbered in ignorance thereof, being like the cats that are loth for their pray to wet their feet: yet if now therefore, at the last we would awake, and with willing mindes (setting friuolous imaginations aside) become industrious instruments to our selues, questionlesse we should not onely heereby set forth the glory of our heauenly father, but also easily attaine to the end of all good purposes, that may be wished or desired.

And may it not much encourage vs to hope for good successe in the countrey of these Sauages, being a naked kinde of people, voyd of the knowledge of the discipline of warre, seeing that a noble man, being but a subiect in this realme (in the time of our king Henrie the second) by name Strangbowe, then earle of Chepstow in South Wales, by himselfe and his allies and assistants, at their owne proper charges, passed ouer into Ireland, and there made conquest of the now countrey, and then kingdome of Lynester, at which time it was very populous and strong, which history our owne chronicles do witnesse: And why should we be dismayed more then were the Spaniards, who haue beene able within these few yeeres to conquer, possesse and enioy so large a tract of the earth, in the West Indies, as is betweene the two tropikes of Cancer and Capricorne, not onely in the maine firme land of America, which is 47 degrees in latitude from South to North, and doth containe 2820 English miles at the least, that the king of Spaine hath there in actuall possession, besides many goodly and rich Ilands, as Hispaniola, now called S. Domingo, Cuba, Iamaica, and diuers other, which are both beautifull and full of treasure, not speaking any whit at all, how large the said land is from East to West, which in some places is accounted to be 1500 English miles at the least, from East to West, betweene the one sea and the other.

1. Decad. lib. 5. fol. 77. of the West Indies, in English. Canoas is a kinde of boat.

Or why should our noble nation be dismaid, more then was Vasques Nunnes de Valboa, a priuate gentleman of Spaine, who with the number of 70 Spaniards at Tichiri, gaue an ouerthrow vnto that mighty king Chemacchus, hauing an armie of an hundred canoas and 5000 men, and the said Vasques Nunnes not long after, with his small number, did put to flight king Chiapes his whole armie.

3. Decad. lib. 1. fol. 97. About the yere of our Lord 1511.

Likewise Hernando Cortes, being also but a priuate gentleman of Spaine, after his departure from the Ilands of Cuba and Acusamill, and entring into the firme of America, had many most victorious & triumphant conquests, as that at Cyntla, where being accompanyed with lesse then 500 Spanish footmen, thirteene horsemen, and sixe pieces of ordinance onely he ouerthrew 40000 Indians. The same Cortes with his said number of Spaniards, tooke prisoner that mighty Emperour Mutezuma in his most chiefe and famous citie of Mexico, which at that instant had in it aboue the number of 500000 Indians at the least, and in short time after obteined not onely the quiet possession of the said citie, but also of his whole Empire.

Conquest of the West Indies. fol. 433 45 English.

And in like maner in the countrey of Peru, which the king of Spaine hath now in actuall possession, Francisco Pysarro, with the onely ayd of Diego de Almagro, and Hernando Luche, being all three but priuate gentlemen, was the principall person that first attempted discouerie and conquest of the large and rich countrey of Peru, which through the ayde of the almighty, he brought to passe and atchieued in the Tambo of Cassiamalcha, (which is a large place of ground, enclosed with walles) in which place he tooke the great and mightie prince Attabalipa prisoner, amidst the number of 60000 Indians his subiects, which were euer before that day accounted to be a warlike kinde of people, which his great victory it pleased God to grant vnto him in the yere of our Lord God 1533, he not hauing in his company aboue the number of 210 Spaniards, whereof there were not past threescore horsemen in all: after the taking of which prince Attabalipa, he offered vnto Pyzarro for his ransome, to fill a great large hall full of golde and siluer, and such golde and siluer vessels as they then vsed, euen as high as a man might reach with his arme.

A marueilous victory.

And

And the sayd prince caused the same hall to be marked round about at the sayd height, which raunsome Pyzarro granted to accept. And after, whē as this mightie prince had sent to his vassals and subiects to bring in gold and siluer for the filling of the hall, as aforesaid, as namely to the cities or townes of Quito, Paciacama and Cusco, as also to the Caloa of Lima, in which towne as their owne writers doe affirme, they found a large and faire house, all slated and couered with gold: and when as the said hall was not yet a quarter ful, a mutinie arose amongst the Spaniards, in which it was commonly giuen out, that the said prince had politikely offered this great raunsome vnder pretence to raise a much more mightie power, whereby the Spaniards should be taken, slain and ouerthrowen: whereupon they grew to this resolution, to put the sayd prince to death, and to make partition of the golde and siluer alreadie brought in, which they presently put in execution. And comming to make perfect Inuentorie of the same, as well for the emperour then king of Spaine, his fift part, as otherwise, there was found to be alreadie brought in into the sayd hall, the number of 132425. pound weight of siluer and in gold the number of 1828125. pezoes, which was a riches neuer before that nor since seene of any man together, of which there did appertaine to the emperour for his fift part of golde 365625. pezoes, and for his fift part of siluer, 26485. pound waighe, and to euery horseman eight thousand pezoes of gold, and 67. pound waight of siluer. Euery souldiour had 4550. pezoes of gold, and 280. pound waight of siluer. Euery captain had, some 30000. some 20000. pezoes of gold and of siluer, proportionally answerable to their degrees and calling, according to the rate agreed vpon amongst them.

Francis Pizarro as their generall, according to his degree and calling proportionally, had more then any of the rest, ouer and besides the massie table of gold which Attabalipa had in his Litter, which waighed 25000. pezoes of golde: neuer was there before that day souldiours so rich in so small a time, and with so litle daunger. And in this iourney for want of iron, they did shoe their horses, some with golde, and some with siluer. This is to bee seene in the generall historie of the West Indies, where as the doings of Pizarro, & the conquest of Peru is more at large set forth.

To this may I adde the great discoueries and conquests which the princes of Portingall haue made round about the West, the South, and the East partes of Affrica, and also at Calicute, and in the East Indies, and in America, at Brasile and elsewhere in sundry Islands, in fortifying, peopling and planting all along the said coastes and Islands, euer as they discouered, which being rightly weied and considered, doeth minister iust cause of incouragement to our countrymen, not to account it so hard and difficule a thing for the subiects of this noble realme of England, to discouer, people, plant and possesse the like goodly lands and rich countries not farre from vs, but neere adioining and offering it selfe vnto vs (as is aforesaid) which haue neuer yet heretofore, bene in the actuall possession of any other Christian prince, then the princes of this realme. All which (as I thinke) should not a litle animate and encourage vs to looke out and to aduenture abroad, vnderstanding what large countries and Islands the Portingals with their small number haue within these few yeeres discouered, peopled and planted, some part whereof I haue thought it not amisse, briefly in particular to name both the townes, countries and Islands, so neere as I could vpon the sudden call them to remembrance: for the rest I doe referre the Reader to the histories, where more at large the same is to be seene. First, they did winne and conquere from the princes of Barbarie the Island of Geisera and towne of Arzilla, not past 140. mile distant from their Metropolitane & chiefe citie of Fesse: and after that they wonne also from the said princes the townes of Tangier, Seuta, Mazigam, Azamore, and Azaffie, all alongst the Sea coasts. And in the yeere of our Lord, 1455. Alouis de Cadamosta a gentleman Uenetian, was he that first discouered for their vse Cape Verd, with the Islands adioining, of which he then peopled and planted those of Bonauista and San Iago discouering also the riuer Senega, otherwise called Niger and Cape Rouge & Sierra Leone, and in a few yeeres after they did discouer the coast of Guinea, and there peopled and built the castle of Mine: then discouered they further to the countries of Melegettes, Benin, and Manicongo, with the Islands of Principe, Anobon, S. Mathew, and S. Thomas vnder the Equinoctiall line, which they peopled and built in the said Island of S. Thomas, the hauen towne or port of Pauosan. After that, about the yeere of our Lord, 1494. one Bartholomew Dias was sent foorth, who was the first man that discouered and doubled that great and large Cape called Bon Esperance, and passing the currants that run vpon the said coast, on the South-east part of Affrica, betweene the said maine land and the Island of S. Lawrence, otherwise called of the ancients, Madagascar, he discouered to the harbor named the riuer of Infants. After that since the yeere of our Lord God, 1497. and before the ful accomplishment of the yeere of Christ, 1510. through the trauails and discoueries of Vasques de Game, Peter Aluares, Thomas Lopes, Andrew Corsale, Iohn de Empoli, Peter Sinter, Pancho Detoar, and that noble and worthy gentleman

Ceffala accounted to be the place where the noble and wise king Salomon did fetch his gold.

man Alonso de Albuquerque, they did discouer people, and plant at Ceffala, being vpon the East side of Affrica, in twentie degrees of latitude of the South pole, and direct West from the Island of S. Laurence (at which port of Ceffala, diuers doe affirme that king Salomon did fetch his gold) as also vpon the said East side of Affrica, they did afterward discouer, people, and plant at Mozambique, Quiloa, Monbaza and Melinde, two degrees of Southerly latitude, and so vp to the streight of Babel-Mandell at the entring of the red sea, all vpon the East coast of Affrica, from whence they put off at the Cape of Garda Fu, and past the great gulfe of Arabia, or Indian Sea East to Sinus Persicus, and the Island of Ormus, and so passing the large and great Riuer Indus, where he hath his fall into the maine Ocean, in 23. degrees and an halfe, vnder the tropike of Cancer, of Septentrionall latitude, they made their course againe directly towards the South, and began to discouer people, and plant vpon the West side of the hither India at Goa, Mangallor, Cananor, Calecute and Cochin, and the Island of Zeilam.

And here I thinke good to remember to you, that after their planting vpon this coast, their forces grew so great that they were able to compell all the Moores, the subiectes of the mightie Emperour of the Turkes to pay tribute vnto them, euer as they passed the gulfe of Arabia, from the port of Mecca in Arabia felix, where Mahomet lieth buried, or any of the other portes of the sayd land, euer as they passed to and from the hauens of Cochin, Calecute and Cananor, and by their martiall maner of discipline practised in those partes, the great and mightie prince the Sophie Emperour of the Persians, and professed enemie to the Turke, came to the knowledge and vse of the Caliuer shot, and to enterlace and ioyne footemen with his horsemen, sithence which time the Persians haue growen to that strength and force, that they haue giuen many mightie and great ouerthrowes to the Turke, to the great quiet of all Christendome.

And from the Island of Zeilam aforesayd, they also discouered more East in passing the gulfe of Bengala, and so passed the notable and famous Riuer of Ganges, where hee hath his fall into the maine Ocean, vnder the tropike of Cancer, and to the Cape of Malaca, and vnto the great and large Islands of Sumatra, Iaua maior, Iaua minor, Mindano, Palobane, Celebes, Gilolo, Tidore, Mathin, Borneio, Machian, Terrenate, and all other the Islands of Molucques and Spiceries, and so East alongst the coasts of Cathaia, to the portes of China, Zaiton and Quinsay, and to the Island of Zipango and Iapan, situate in the East, in 37. degrees of Septentrionall latitude and in 195. of longitude. Their noble and worthy discoueries here also is not to bee forgotten, that in the yeere of our Lord, 1501. that famous & worthy gentleman Americus Vespucius, did discouer, people, and plant to their vse the holds and fortes which they haue in Brasill, of whom (he being but a priuate Gentleman) the whole countrey or firme land of the West Indies, is commonly called and knowen by the name of America.

These are the furthest parts of the world from England.

At these Islands hath sir Francis Drake bene, where the fame of the Queenes most excellent Maiestie was renowmed.

I doe greatly doubt least I seeme ouertedious in the recitall of the particular discoueries and conquests of the East and West Indies, wherein I was the more bold to vrge the patience of the Reader, to the end it might most manifestly and at large appeare, to all such as are not acquainted with the histories, how the king of Portingal, whose countrey for popularitie and number of people, is scarce comparable to some three shires of England, and the king of Spaine likewise, whose naturall countrey doeth not greatly abound with people, both which princes by meanes of their discoueries within lesse then 90. yeeres past, haue as it appeareth both mightily and marueilously enlarged their territories and dominions through their owne industrie by the assistance of the omnipotent, whose aide we shall not need to doubt, seeing the cause and quarell which we take in hand tendeth to his honour and glory, by the enlargement of the Christian faith.

To conclude, since by christian dutie we stand bound chiefly to further all such acts as doe tend to the encreasing the true flocke of Christ by reducing into the right way those lost sheepe which are yet astray: And that we shall therein follow the example of our right vertuous predecessors of renowmed memorie, and leaue vnto our posteritie a deuine memorial of so godly an enterprise: Let vs I say for the considerations alleaged, enter into iudgement with our selues, whether this action may belong to vs or no, the rather for that this voiage through the mightie assistance of the omnipotent God, shall take our desired effect (whereof there is no iust cause of doubt). Then shall her Maiesties dominions be enlarged, her highnesse auncient titles iustly confirmed, all odious idlenes from this our realme vterly banished, diuers decayed townes repaired, and many poore and needie persons relieued, and estates of such as now liue in want shall be embettered, the ignorant and barbarous idolaters taught to know Christ, the innocent defended from their bloodie tyrannicall neighbours, the diabolicall custome of sacrificing humane creatures abolished.

All which (no man doubteth) are things gratefull in the sight of our Sauiour Christ, and tending to the honour and glory of the Trinitie. Bee of good cheere therefore, for hee that cannot

erre

erre hath ſayd: That before the ende of the world, his word ſhall be preached to all nations. Which good worke I truſt is reſerued for our nation to accompliſh in theſe partes: Wherefore my deare countreymen, be not diſmaied, for the power of God is nothing diminiſhed, nor the loue that he hath to the preaching and planting of the Goſpell any whit abated. Shall wee then doubt he will be leſſe ready moſt mightily and miraculouſly to aſſiſt our nation in this quarell, which is chiefly and principally vndertaken for the enlargement of the Chriſtian faith abroad, and the baniſhment of idolatrie at home, then he was to Columbus, Vaſques Nunnes, Hernando Cortes, and Francis Pizarro in the Weſt: & Vaſques de Gama, Peter Aluares, and Alonſo de Albuquerque in the Eaſt? Let vs therefore with cheerefull mindes and courageous hearts, giue the attempt, and leaue the ſequell to almightie God: for if he be on our part, what forceth it who be againſt vs? Thus leauing the correction and reformation vnto the gentle Reader, whatſoeuer is in this treatiſe too much or too little, or otherwiſe vnperfect, I take leaue, and ſo end.

A letter written from M. Thomas Aldworth merchant, and then Maior of the citie of Briſtow, to the right hononrable Sir Francis Walſingham principall Secretarie to her Maieſtie, concerning a Weſterne voiage intended for diſcoueries in America.

RIght honourable, vpon the receit of your letters directed vnto mee and deliuered by the bearers hereof M. Richard Hakluyt and M. Stecuenton, bearing date the 11. of March, I preſently conferred with my friends in priuate, whom I know moſt affectionate to this godly enterpriſe, eſpecially with M. William Salterne deputie of our companie of merchants: whereupon my ſelfe being as then ſicke, with as conuenient ſpeed as he could, he cauſed an aſſemblie of the merchants to be gathered, where after dutifull mention of your honourable diſpoſition for the benefite of this citie, he by my appointment cauſed your letters being directed vnto me priuatly, to be read in publike, & after ſome good light giuen by M. Hakluyt vnto thē that were ignorant of the country and enterpriſe, and were deſirous to be reſolued, the motion grew generally ſo well to bee liked, that there was eſtſoones ſet down by mens owne hands then preſent, and apparantly knowen by their owne ſpeach, and very willing offer, the ſumme of 1000. markes and vpward: which ſumme if it ſhould not ſuffice, we doubt not but otherwiſe to furniſh out for this Weſterne diſcouerie, a ſhip of three ſcore, and a barke of 40. tunne, to be left in the countrey vnder the direction and gouernment of your ſonne in law M. Carlile, of whom we haue heard much good, if it ſhal ſtand with your honours good liking and his acceptation. In one of which barks we are alſo willing to haue maſter Stecuenton your honors meſſenger, and one well knowen to vs, as captaine. And here in humble maner, deſiring your honor to vouchſafe vs of your further direction by a general letter to my ſelfe, my brethren, and the reſt of the merchants of this citie, at your honors beſt and moſt conuenient leiſure, becauſe we meane not to deferre the finall proceeding in this voiage, any further then to the end of Aprill next comming, I ceaſe, beſeeching God long to bleſſe and proſper your honourable eſtate. Briſtow. March 27. 1583.

A briefe and ſummarie diſcourſe vpon the intended voyage to the hithermoſt parts of America: written by captaine Carlill in Aprill, 1583. for the better inducement to ſatiſfie ſuch Merchants of the Moſcouian companie and others, as in diſburſing their money towards the furniture of the preſent charge, doe demaund forthwith a preſent returne of gaine, albeit their ſaid particular diſburſements are required but in very ſlender ſummes, the higheſt being 25. li. the ſecond at 12. li. 10. s. and the loweſt at 6. pound fiue ſhillings.

WHen the Goldſmith deſireth to finde the certaine goodneſſe of a peece of gold, which is newly offered vnto him, he preſently bringeth the ſame to the Touchſtone, where, by comparing the ſhew or touch of this new piece with the touch or ſhew of that which he knoweth of old, he ſoonest with is able to iudge what the value is of that, which is newly offered vnto him. After the example whereof I haue thought it good to make ſome briefe repetition of the particular eſtate of many other forren voiages and trades already frequented and knowen vnto vs, whereby you may be the better able to conceiue and iudge what certaine likelyhood of good there is to be expected in the voiage, which is preſently recommended vnto your knowledge and reſolution.

And

Moscouie. And first to lay downe that of Moscouia, whose beginning is yet in the remembrance of many: It is well knowen, that what by the charges of the first discouerie, and by the great gifts bestowed on the Emperour and his Nobilitie, together with the lewd dealing of some of their seruaunts, who thought themselues safe enough from orderly punishment, it cost the companie aboue foure score thousand pounds, before it could bee brought to any profitable reckoning. And now that after so long a patience and so great a burthen of expences, the same began to frame to some good course and commoditie: It falleth to very ticklish termes, and to as slender likelyhood of any further goodnesse as any other trade that may be named.

For first the estate of those countreys and the Emperours dealings, are things more fickle then are by euery body vnderstood.

Dutchmen. Next, the Dutchmē are there so crept in, as they daily augment their trade thither, which may well confirme that vncertaintie of the Emperors disposition to keepe promise with our nation.

Thirdly, the qualitie of the voiage, such as may not be performed but once the yeere.

Fourthly, the charges of all Ambassadours betweene that Prince and her Maiestie, are alwayes borne by the merchants stocke.

Denmarke. And lastly, the danger of the king of Denmarke, who besides that presently he is like to enforce a tribute on vs, hath likewise an aduantage vpon the ships in their voiage, either homewards or outwards whensoeuer he listeth to take the opportunitie.

Easterlings. The badde dealings of the Easterlings are sufficiently knowen to bee such towards our merchaunts of that trade, as they doe not onely offer them manie iniuries ouerlong to bee written, but doe seeke all the meanes they can, to deprriue them wholy of their occupying that way: and to the same purpose haue of late cleane debarred them their accustomed and auncient priuiledges in all their great townes.

Turkie. The traffique into Turkie, besides that by some it is thought a hard point to haue so much familiaritie with the professed and obstinate enemie of Christ: It is likewise a voyage which can not be made but at the deuotion, and as it were in the daunger of many states, who for sundry respects are apt to quarell with vs vpon sudden occasions, and the presents to be giuen away in Turkie this yeere, cost little lesse then two thousand pounds.

Tenant. As for the trades into all the partes of Italie, it may easilie be considered by euery one of iudgement, that the same stande in the like termes touching the passages, as that of Turkie, and that many times our Shippes being taken in the way by the Gallies of Barbarie, our poore Mariners after the losse of their goods and trauell, are set at such excessiue raunsomes before they can bee freed of their slauerie, as for the most part they are no way able to discharge. As for example, at this instant there are some prisoners, poore ordinarie Mariners, for whose releasing there must bee paied two hundred Duckets the man, for some three hundred, yea, foure or fiue hundred Duckets the man for some of them. And how enuiously they doe alreadie oppose themselues against our frequenting into their partes, may appeare by the late customs which they haue imposed as well vpon our English merchandize which we bring them, as also vpon such their merchandize which we fetch from them.

Barbarie. The trade into Barbarie groweth likewise to worse termes then before times, and when it was at the best, our merchants haue bene in danger of all their goods they had there, whensoeuer it happened the king to die. For vntill a new were chosen, the libertie of all disordered persons is such, as they spoile and wrong whom they list, without any redresse at all.

Spaine. Portingall. Touching Spaine and Portingall, with whom we haue very great trade, and much the greater, by means of their venting a good part of our wares into their Indies, as also of the prouision they haue from the same, where with are made many of our returnes from them againe: It falleth out that twise the yeere ordinarily we send our Fleetes into those parts: So that whensoeuer the king of Spaine listeth to take the opportunitie, hee may at these seasons deprriue vs not onely of a great number of our very good ships, but also of our honestest and ablest sort of Mariners that are to bee found in our whole Realme agayne, which is a matter of no small consequence: for it is to be noted, that when hee shall take a quarell in hand, though it bee but his owne particularly, yet hath he the meanes to put in hazard as well those our shippes which are in his owne Countries of Spaine and Portingall, as also all others which shall be bound to any the partes of all Italie or of Turkie either. And further whosoeuer hee bee that is but so meanely affected in Religion, as of necessitie becommeth euery ordinarie man and good Christian to be, cannot but be agrieued in his heart to consider, that his children and seruaunts whom hee desireth to haue well brought vp, are in these trades of Spaine and Portingall, and all Italie, forced to denie their owne profession, and made to acquaint themselues with that which the Parents and Masters doe vtterlie

denie

denie and refuse, yea which many of them doe in their owne hearts abhorre as a detestable and most wicked doctrine.

But who shall looke into the qualitie of this voyage, being directed to the latitude of fortie degrees or thereaboutes, of that hithermost part of America, shall find it hath as many points of good moment belonging vnto it, as may almost be wished for.

1 As first it is to be vnderstood, that it is not any long course, for it may be performed too and fro in foure moneths after the first discouerie thereof. Commodities of this voyage in shortnesse.

2 Secondly, that one wind sufficeth to make the passage, where as most of your other voyages of like length, are subiect to 3. or 4. windes.

3 Thirdly, that it is to be performed at all times of the yeere.

4 Fourthly, that the passage is vpon the high sea, whereby you are not bound to the knowledge of dangers, on any other coast, more then of that countrey, and of ours here at home.

5 Fiftly, that those partes of England and Ireland, which lie aptest for the proceeding outward or homeward vpon this voyage, are very well stored of goodly harbors.

6 Sixtly, that it is to be accounted of no danger at all as touching ỳ power of any forren prince or state, when it is compared with any the best of all the other voiages before recited.

7 And to the godly minded, it hath this comfortable commoditie, that in this trade their Factours, bee they their seruauntes or children, shall haue no instruction or confessions of Idolatrous Religion enforced vpon them, but contrarily shall bee at their free libertie of conscience, and shall finde the same Religion exercised, which is most agreeable vnto their Parentes and Masters.

As for the merchaundising, which is the matter especially looked for, albeit, that for the present, wee are not certainely able to promise any such like quantitie, as is now at the best time of the Moscouian trade brought from thence: So likewise is there not demaunded any such proportion of daily expences, as was at the first, and as yet is consumed in that of Moscouia and other. Commodities of the country more then those of Moscouie.

But when this of America shall haue bene haunted and practised thirtie yeeres to an ende, as the other hath bene, I doubt not by Gods grace, that for the tenne shippes that are now commonly employed once the yeere into Moscouia, there shall in this voyage twise tenne be imployed well, twise the yeere at the least. And if for the present time there doe fall out nothing els to bee found then the bare Fishing, yet doubt I not after the first yeeres planting, but by that matter onely to serue halfe a dozen of your best sort of ships, although my supply of people doe not follow me so substantially, as in all reason may be well looked for.

But when it is asked what may bee hoped from thence after some yeeres, it is first to bee considered, that this situation in fourtie degrees, shall bee very apte to gather the commodities either of those partes which stande to the Southward of it, as also of those which are to the Northward. The generall merchandise.

In the Northerlie may bee expected not onely an especiall good Fishing for Salmon, Codde, and Whales, but also any other such commodities, as the Easterne countreys doe yeeld vs nowe: as Pitche, Tarre, Hempe, and thereof Cordage, Maskes, Lolhe hides, riche Furres, and other such like, without beyng in any sort beholding to a king of Denmarke, or other prince or state that shall be in such sort able to commaund our ships at their pleasure, as those doe at this day, by meanes of their straight passages and strong shipping.

As for those partes which lie West and to the Southwardes, it may well bee hoped they will yeeld Wines with a small helpe, since the grapes doe growe there of themselues alreadie very faire and in great aboundaunce. Olives beyng once planted, will yeeld the like Oyle as Spaine, Prouince and Italie. The countrey people beyng made to know, that for Ware and honie, we will giue them such trifling things as they desire of vs, and shewing them once the meanes how to prouide the same, the labour thereof beyng so light, no doubt but in short time they will earnestly care to haue the same in good quantitie for vs. Besides, what great likelyhood there is of good meanes to make Salte, which may serue for the fishing of those partes, may well enough appeare vnto them, who can iudge the qualitie of such places as are required to make the same in. A lake of salt in Vaignes this voyage.

Thus much for the beginning because they may bee had with an easie kind of trauell, but when it may haue pleased God to establish our people there any such time as they may haue planted amongst them in sundrie partes of the Countrey, and that by gentle and familiar entreating them, they bee made to see what is better for them then they doe as yet vnderstand of, and that in so many sortes of occasions as were infinite to bee set downe. It is to bee assuredly hoped, that

that they will daily by litle and litle forsake their barbarous and sauage liuing, and growe to such order and ciuilitie with vs, as there may bee well expected from thence no lesse quantitie and diuersitie of merchaundize then is now had out of Dutchland, Italie, Fraunce or Spaine. And as the bordering neighbours are commonly the apteſt to fall out with vs, so these partes being somewhat remote, are the liker to take, or giue lesse occasion of disquiet. But when it is considered that they are our owne kindred, and esteemed our owne countrey nation which haue the gouernment, meaning by those who shall be there planted, who can looke for any other then the dealing of most louing and most assured friends?

There are further to bee considered these two pointes of good importaunce, concerning the matter of trade. The one is, that by the good prospering of this action, there must of necessitie fall out, a very liberall vtteraunce of our English Clothes into a maine Countrey, described to bee bigger then all Europe, the larger part whereof bending to the Northward, shall haue wonderfull great vse of our sayde English Clothes, after they shall once come to knowe the commoditie thereof. The like will be also of many other things, ouermany to bee reckoned, which are made here by our Artificers and labouring people, and of necessitie must bee prouided from hence.

The other is, if there bee any possible meanes to finde a Sea passage or other Fresh water course, which may serue in some reasonable and conuenient sort, to transport our merchandize into the East Indian Sea, though any of these Northerly partes of America, it shall be soonest and most assuredly performed by these who shall inhabite and first growe into familiaritie with the Inland people.

What Minerall matter may fall out to bee found, is a thing left in suspence, vntill some better knowledge, because there bee many men, who hauing long since expected some profites herein, vpon the great promises that haue bene made them, and beyng as yet in no point satisfied, doe thereupon conceiue that they bee but woordes purposely cast out for the inducing of men to bee the more readie and willing to furnish their money towardes the charge of the first discouerie.

But nowe to answere some others who begin with an other obiection, saying: That it is not for the merchaunts purse to continue the charges of transporting and planting: and that since these hundred men which are now to bee planted, will cost foure thousand pound: It is then to bee thought, that the charge of a farre greater number, will bee also a farre greater summe of money.

Wherevnto I answere, that in all attempts vnknowen, especially such a one as is this, wherewith wee are presently in hande, the first charges are commonly aduentured in more desperate kinde, then those that follow vpon some better knowledge: and therewith it falleth out, that whereas one aduentureth in the first enterprise, an hundred for that one will of themselues bee willing and desirous to aduenture in the next, if there bee neuer so litle more apparance, that the entended matter is by some knowledge of our owne, found true in some points of our first presumption.

The ewer of mettall brought by M. Frobisher, caused two seuerall supplies, the two yeeres next following, whereof the latter was of fourteene tall ships.

The examples are many, and may easily be remembred by those who bee merchants, euen in their ordinarie and daily trades, as well as in extraordinarie attempts, which of late yeeres haue fallen into those termes of some likelyhood, as is aboue sayde. So then no doubt, but when certaine reportes shall be brought by them who directly come from thence, that such a Countrey and people they haue themselues seene, as is by vs spoken of, but that then there will come forward a greater number of those, who now neither haue heard any thing of the matter, as also of others, who presently make such friuolous scruple, and will not otherwise be satisfied, then by the report of Saint Thomas. I speake not this by the merchaunts whom for their freedomes of trade I would not haue pressed to any further charge then this first preparation, but rather by such as haue great affection to hazard the changing of their estates, and would be well content to goe in the voyage if they might onely be assured that there is such a countrey, and that their mony should not be wasted to nothing in the preparations.

The right examination of this point must bee the contrary sequell of the common Prouerbe that is vsed, Nothing venture, nothing haue: so on the other side by venturing, many great good profites are found out, to the wonderfull benefite of the Common weale, and to those especiallie in priuate, who take on the hazarde of their life and trauell, or substaunce in the first attempts: and therefore I would wishe that they, who (God bee thanked) are well able to spare that which is required of eache one towardes the vndertakyng of this aduenture, bee well content and willing to employe the same, since the sequell in good and substanciall

reason

reason doth promise, not onely a great commoditie in particuler to the marchant, who shall here at home exercise the trade of Marchandise: but also to an infinite nomber of other, who presently liue in poore estate, and may by taking the opportunitie of this discouerie, alter the same to a farre better degree. Wherefore to make some conclusion vpon this point of the Marchants misdoubt, who suspecteth least this first disburssement, without returne of present gaine, should not be all his charge, but that afterwardes hee might yet further be vrged to continue the like againe, as hath happened in the discouerie of the Moscouian trade: It may suffice to consider, that this is not an action, which concerneth onely the Marchants particulerly, but a great deale more the generall sort of people throughout all England: And that when such relation shall bee returned, as that it may be founde a matter worthy the following, the whole generalitie will not refuse to contribute towards the furtherance thereof, rather then it should sticke, for want of any reasonable supply.

But as it is a very little time, since I haue bene throughly resolued, to trie my fortune in the matter, so is it more then time, the preparation were in hande already, and therefore no fitte time nowe, to make any nomber of ignorant men to vnderstande with reason, the circumstance that belongeth to a matter of so great consideration and importance.

To those who haue any forwarde mindes in well doing to the generalitie of mankinde, I say this much more, that Christian charitie doeth as greatly perswade the furtherance of this action, as any other that may bee layed before vs, in as much as thereby, wee shall not onely doe a most excellent worke, in respect of reducing the sauage people to Christianitie and ciuilitie, but also in respect of our poore sort of people, which are very many amongst vs, liuing altogether vnprofitable, and often times to the great disquiet of the better sort. For who knoweth not, howe by the long peace, happie health, and blessed plentifulnesse, wherewith God hath endued this Realme, that the people is so mightily encreased, as a great nomber being brought vp, during their youth in their parents houses, without any instruction howe to get their liuings, after their parents decease, are driuen to some necessitie, whereby very often, for want of better education they fall into sundry disorders, and so the good sort of people, as I sayde before, are by them ordinarily troubled, and themselues leadde on, to one shamefull ende or other, whereas if there might bee founde some such kinde of implopment, as this woulde bee, no doubt but a greater part of them would bee withholde, from falling into such vile deedes: and in steade thereof, proue greatly seruiceable in those affaires, where they might be so imploped.

This I speake of mine owne experience, hauing seene diuers come ouer to the warres of the lowe Countreis, during my residence in the same, who here had bene very euill and idle liuers, and by some litle continuance with vs, haue growen to be very industrious in their faculties, which I can assure you, was a more painefull maner of liuing, then in this action is like to fall out, and withall to a purpose of farre lesse valew, in respect of their particuler recompence, then with an assured kinde of good hope is looked for in this.

Thus you see in euery point, that may bee wished for, in a good action and voyage, there is matter and reason enough to satisfie the well disposed. But nowe to growe somewhat neere the quicke, and to shewe you some greater apparaunce, then hath bene yet spoken of touching the trade which is the onely subiect wherewith I doe meane to entermeddle at this time, because my addresse hereby is chiefly to men of such like faculties: you may vnderstande by that which followeth, the circumstance of a little discourse, which doeth concerne these matters very directly.

In the yeere 1534. Iames Carthier of S. Malo, made his first discouerie of those partes of America, which lye to the Westwardes, and as it were on the backe side of Newfoundland. In which voyage his principall intention was to seeke out the passage, which hee presumed might haue bene founde out, into the East Indian sea, otherwise called the passage to Cathayo, but this yere he went no higher then the Islande of the Assumption in the great bay of S. Laurence, and so returned backe into Fraunce.

The next yeere following hee went with greater prouision into the Grand bay againe, where hee keeping the Northerly shoare, ranne vp the great Riuer that comes downe from Canada and other places, vntill at last with his small pinnasses, (hauing left his great shipping by the way, hee arriued at Hochelaga towne, being three hundreth leagues within the entrance of the Grand bay. In which trauaile hee had spent so much of the yeere, that it was nowe the moneth of October, and therefore thought it conuenient, for the better enfourming himselfe at large in this discouerie, to Winter it out in those partes, which hee did at a place called by himselfe Holy Crosse. This Winter fell out to be a very long and hard winter, as many times the like happeneth with vs in these partes, and the sauage people, who for the most part

make but a slender kinde of prouision, euen as it were from hande to mouth fell into some scarcitie of victuals; yet did they not refuse to serue the Frenchmen, with any thing they had all the Winter long, albeit at somewhat higher prices towardes the ende, when the neede was most, as with our selues the like happeneth at such times.

But when the French had had their wantes serued all the yeere, and that as yet they sawe not any apparance of their entended matter, which was the discouerie of the passage, & yet imagining by the signes wherewith the willing people, endeuoured to declare their knowledge in that point, that some good matter might bee had from them, if they might haue bene well vnderstoode, they resolued with themselues, to take some of the sufficientest men of that Countrey home into Fraunce, and there to keepe them so long, as that hauing once atchieued the Frenche tongue, they might declare more substantially their minde, and knowledge in the sayde passage, concluding this to be the meane of least charge, of least trauaile, and of least hazard.

And when they came to bethinke themselues, who might bee meetest for it, they determined to take the King, as the person who might be best enfourmed of such partes, as were somewhat remote from his owne Countrey, as also that for the respect of him, the people would bee alwayes readie, and content to doe them any further seruice, when it should happen them to returne thither againe about the discouerie.

Thus the poore king of the Countrey, with two or three others of his chiefe companions comming aboarde the Frenche shippes, being required thither to a banquet, was traiterously caried away into France, where hee liued foure yeeres, and then died a Christian there, as Theuet the French kings Cosmographer doeth make mention. This outrage and iniurious dealing, did put the whole Countrey people into such dislike with the French, as neuer since they would admit any conuersation, or familiaritie with them, vntill of late yeeres, the olde matter beginning to
The yeere 1581. growe out of minde, and being the rather drawen on by giftes of many trifling thinges, which were of great value with them, they are (as I saide) within these two or three yeeres content againe to admit a trafique, which two yeeres since, was begonne with a small barke of thirtie tunnes, whose returne was founde so profitable, as the next yeere following, being the last yeere, by those Marchants, who meant to haue kept the trade secret vnto themselues, from any others of their owne Countrey men, there was hired a shippe of foure score tunnes out of the Isle of Iersey, but not any one Mariner of that place, sauing a shipboy. This shippe made her returne in such sort, as that this yeere they haue multiplied three shippes, to wit, one of nine score tunnes, an other of an hundreth tunnes, and a thirde of foure score tunnes: which report is giuen by very substantiall and honest men of Plimmouth, who sawe the saide shippes in readinesse to depart on their voyage, and were aboord of some of them.

Here is at this instant in the towne a man of Gernesey, Lewis de Vicke, who reporteth to haue credibly heard, that by this last yeeres voyage the Frenchmen gotte foureteene or fifteene hundreth for euery one hundreth: But howe soeuer it be, it carieth good likelyhoode of some notable profite, in asmuch as they doe so greatly, and thus suddenly encrease the burthen and nomber of their shippes this present yeere.

Nowe, if in so litle as two yeeres times this voyage of the Northerne partes bee growne to such good passe as hath bene declared vnto you: it is worth the thinking on to consider what may be hoped for, from the Southerne part: which in all reason may promise a great deale more. And so as one who was neuer touched with any indirect meaning, I presume to wish and perswade you to some better taking of this matter to heart, as a thing which I doe verely thinke will turne to your greater and more assured commoditie, then you receiue by any other voyage, as yet frequented of so short and safe a course as this hath: dealing herein no otherwise with you for your seuerall small summes, then I doe with my selfe, both for more of mine owne, then is required of any one of you: besides the hazard and trauaile of my person, and the totall imployment of my poore credite, which (I thanke God) hath hitherto passed cleare and vnspotted in matters of greater importance and difficultie, then is like to fall out in this betweene you and me.

Articles

Articles set downe by the Committies appointed in the behalfe of the Companie of Moscouian Marchants, to conferre with Master Carleil, vpon his entended discoueries and attempt into the hithermost partes of America.

The names of the Committies.

Master Alderman Hart.
Master Alderman Spencer.
Master Hoddesden.
Master William Burrough.
Master Slany.
Master Towerson.
Master Stapers.
Master Iohn Castelin.
Master Leake.

FIrst, the Committies are well perswaded that the Countrey whereunto this action pretendeth is very fruitfull, inhabited with sauage people of a milde and tractable disposition. And that of all other places which are vnfrequented at this day, it is the only most fitte and most commodious for vs to entermeddle withall.

The conuenientest maner of attempting this enterprise, is thought to bee thus: That there should be one hundreth men conueyed thither to remaine there one whole yere: who with friendly entreatie of the people, may enter into better knowledge of the particular estate of the Countrey, and thereby gather what commoditie may be hereafter, or presently looked for.

The charge to transport these hundreth men, to victuall them, and to furnish them of munition and other needefull things, will not be lesse then foure thousand poundes: whereof hath bene very readily offered by the Citie of Bristoll one thousande poundes, the residewe being three thousande pounds, remaineth to be furnished by this Citie of London: or any others who will aduenture their money in this first preparation.

The Committies thinke it conuenient that a priuiledge should be procured by Master Carleil from her Maiestie, by vertue whereof these conditions and Articles following, may be effectually prouided for.

First, that they who shall disburse their money for the first preparation, shall be named Aduenturers, and shall haue the one halfe of all such landes, territories, townes, mines of golde and siluer, and other mettals whatsoeuer, that shall be found, gotten, obtained, and conquered by this discouerie: yeelding to her Maiestie one fift part of all their part golde and siluer, as shall happen to be had out of any mines that so shall be found.

That those parties which doe employe themselues personally in the present discouerie, shall be named Enterprisers, and shall haue the other halfe of all the landes, territories, townes, mines of Golde and siluer, and other mettalles, yeelding to her Maiestie the fift part of the Golde and siluer, as the Aduenturers doe: The same to bee distributed by the Generall, with the consent of the greatest part of twelue discreete persons to bee chosen out of the whole nomber of Enterprisers.

Also, that all trade of marchandise which shall bee vsed to and from those partes, which by this discouerie shall be found out, shall appertaine onely to the Aduenturers which first shall disburse their money for this discouerie, with prohibition to all other her Maiesties subiects, and other Marchants to deale in the saide partes, without the consent of the first Aduenturers, vpon losse of shippe and goods, and punishment of their persons, that so shall aduenture in trade of marchandise: or otherwise by imprisonment at the Companies pleasure.

That no person shall hereafter aduenture in this discouerie, as Aduenturers for the profites mentioned in the first Articles, but such onely as doe disburse their money in this first preparation: and they shall not aduenture hereafter any greater summe, then ratably according to their proportion of this their first aduenture.

Alſo, the profite which by this diſcouerie ſhall be attained vnto, either by lande which may bee conquered, or otherwiſe gotten: as alſo ſuch profite which by this diſcouerie ſhall bee obtained by mines, or otherwiſe gotten, that eche one ſhall haue his part rate and rate like: according to the proportion of their firſt aduenture, and not otherwiſe.

The aduenturers in this firſt preparation, ſhall at their owne free will and libertie, choole whether they will ſupply hereafter any further charge or not: if there doe fall out any ſuch occaſion to require the ſame. And yet withall ſhall for euer holde to them the freedome of the trade, which ſhall growe in any of theſe partes: Notwithſtanding their ſaide refuſall to beare any further charge.

That in the Patent which is to be obtained, bee granted, that all her Maieſties ſubiects, may tranſport themſelues thither that ſhall be contented to goe. And that the patentee or his aſſignes may ſhippe thither from time to time, ſo many and ſuch perſons, men, women and children, as they ſhall thinke meete. And the ſame perſons to inhabite or remaine there at their pleaſure, any lawe to the contrary notwithſtanding, with expreſſe prohibition as is mentioned in the thirde article, againſt all others, which ſhall goe thither without the licence of the patentee or his aſſignes firſt obtained.

That it ſhall not be lawful for any of her Maieſties ſubiects, or any other to inhabite or trafique within two hundred leagues any way of the place, where the Generall ſhall haue ſettled his cheefeſt being or reſidence.

The letters patents, graunted by the Queenes Maieſtie *to M. Walter Ralegh now knight, for the diſcouering* and planting of new lands and Countreis, to continue the ſpace and time of 6. yeeres and no more.

ELizabeth by the grace of God of England, Fraunce and Ireland Queene, defender of the faith, &c. To all people to whome theſe preſents ſhall come, greeting. Knowe yee that of our eſpecial grace, certaine ſcience, and meere motion, we haue giuen and graunted, and by theſe preſents for vs, our heires and ſucceſſors, doe giue and graunt to our truſtie and welbeloued ſeruant Walter Ralegh Eſquire, and to his heires and aſſignes for euer, free libertie and licence from time to time, and at all times for euer hereafter, to diſcouer, ſearch, finde out, and viewe ſuch remote, heathen, and barbarous lands, Countreis, and territories, not actually poſſeſſed of any Chriſtian Prince, nor inhabited by Chriſtian people, as to him, his heires and aſſignes, and to euery or any of them ſhall ſeeme good, and the ſame to haue, holde, occupie and enioy to him, his heires and aſſignes for euer, with all prerogatiues, commodities, iuriſdictions, royalties, priuiledges, franchiſes, and preheminences, thereto or thereabouts both by ſea and land, whatſoeuer we by our letters patents may graunt, and as we or any of our noble progenitors haue heretofore graunted to any perſon or perſons, bodies politique or corporate: and the ſaid Walter Ralegh, his heires and aſſignes, and all ſuch as from time to time, by licence of vs, our heires and ſucceſſors, ſhall goe or trauaile thither to inhabite or remaine, there to build and fortifie, at the diſcretion of the ſaide Walter Ralegh, his heires and aſſignes, the ſtatutes or acte of Parliament made againſt fugitiues, or againſt ſuch as ſhall depart, remaine or continue out of our Realme of England without licence, or any other ſtatute, acte, lawe, or any ordinance whatſoeuer to the contrary in any wiſe notwithſtanding.

And we do likewiſe by theſe preſents, of our eſpecial grace, meere motion, and certaine knowledge, for vs, our heires and ſucceſſors, giue and graunt full authoritie, libertie and power to the ſaid Walter Ralegh, his heires and aſſignes, and euery of them, that he and they, and euery or any of them, ſhall and may at all and euery time, and times hereafter, haue, take, and leade in the ſaide voyage, and trauaile thitherward, or to inhabite there with him, or them, and euery or any of them, ſuch, and ſo many of our ſubiects as ſhall willingly accompanie him or them, and euery or any of them: and to whom alſo we doe by theſe preſents, giue full libertie and authoritie in that behalfe, and alſo to haue, take and employ, and vſe ſufficient ſhipping and furniture for the tranſportations, and Nauigations in that behalfe, ſo that none of the ſame perſons or any of them, be ſuch as hereafter ſhall be reſtrained by vs, our heires or ſucceſſors.

And further that the ſaide Walter Ralegh, his heires, and aſſignes, and euery of them, ſhall haue,

haue, holde, occupie and enioye to him, his heires and assignes, and euery of them for euer, all the soile of all such landes, territories, and Countreis, so to bee discouered and possessed as aforesaide, and of all such Cities, castles, townes, villages, and places in the same, with the right, royalties, franchises, and iurisdictions, as well marine as other within the saide landes, or Countreis, or the seas thereunto adioyning, to be had, or vsed, with full power to dispose thereof, and of euery part in fee simple or otherwise, according to the order of the lawes of England, as neere as the same conueniently may bee, at his, and their will and pleasure, to any persons then being, or that shall remaine within the allegiance of vs, our heires, and successors: reseruing alwayes to vs, our heires, and successors, for all seruices, duties, and demaundes, the first part of all the oare of golde and siluer, that from time to time, and at all times after such discouerie, subduing and possessing, shalbe there gotten and obtained: All which landes, Countreis, and territories, shall for euer be holden of the said Walter Ralegh, his heires and assignes, of vs, our heires and successors, by homage, and by the said paiment of the said fift part, reserued onely for all seruices.

And moreouer, we doe by these presents, for vs, our heires and successors, giue and graunt licence to the said Walter Ralegh, his heires, and assignes, and euery of them, that he, and they, and euery or any of them, shall & may from time to time, and at all times for euer hereafter, for his and their defence, encounter and expulse, repell and resist as well by sea as by lande, and by all other wayes whatsoeuer, all, and euery such person and persons whatsoeuer, as without the especiall liking and licence of the saide Walter Ralegh, and of his heires and assignes, shall attempt to inhabite within the said Countreis, or any of them, or within the space of two hundreth leagues neere to the place or places within such Countreis as aforesaid (if they shall not bee before planted or inhabited within the limits as aforesaide with the subiects of any Christian Prince being in amitie with vs) where the saide Walter Ralegh, his heires, or assignes, or any of them, or his, or their or any of their associats or company, shall within sixe yeeres (next ensuing) make their dwellings or abidings, or that shall enterprise or attempt at any time hereafter vnlawfully to annoy, either by sea or lande, the saide Walter Ralegh, his heires or assignes, or any of them, or his or their, or any of his or their companies: giuing, and graunting by these presents further power and authoritie, to the said Walter Ralegh, his heires and assignes, and euery of them from time to time, and at all times for euer hereafter, to take and surprise by all maner of meanes whatsoeuer, all and euery those person or persons, with their shippes, vessels, and other goods and furniture, which without the licence of the saide Walter Ralegh, or his heires, or assignes, as aforesaide, shalbe founde trafiquing into any harbour, or harbors, creeke, or creekes, within the limits aforesaide, (the subiects of our Realmes and Dominions, and all other persons in amitie with vs, trading to the Newfound lands for fishing as heretofore they haue commonly vsed, or being driuen by force of a tempest, or shipwracke onely excepted:) and those persons, and euery of them, with their shippes, vessels, goods, and furniture to detaine and possesse as of good and lawfull prize, according to the discretion of him the saide Walter Ralegh, his heires, and assignes, and euery, or any of them. And for vniting in more perfect league and amitie, of such Countreis, landes, and territories so to bee possessed and inhabited as aforesaide with our Realmes of Englande, and Ireland, and the better incouragement of men to these enterprises: we do by these presents, graunt and declare that all such Countreis, so hereafter to be possessed and inhabited as is aforesaide, from thencefoorth shall bee of the allegiance of vs, our heires and successours. And wee doe graunt to the saide Walter Ralegh, his heires, and assignes, and to all, and euery of them, and to all, and euery other person, and persons being of our allegiance, whose names shall bee noted or entred in some of our Courtes of recorde within our Realme of Englande, that with the assent of the saide Walter Ralegh, his heires or assignes, shall in his iourneis for discouerie, or in the iourneis for conquest, hereafter trauaile to such lands, countreis and territories, as aforesaide, and to their, and to euery of their heires, that they, and euery or any of them, being either borne within our saide Realmes of Englande, or Ireland, or in any other place within our allegiance, and which hereafter shall be inhabiting within any the lands, Countreis, and territories, with such licence, (as aforesaide) shall and may haue all the priuiledges of free Denizens, and persons natiue of England, and within our allegiance in such like ample maner and fourme, as if they were borne and personally resident within our said Realme of England, any lawe, custome, or vsage to the contrary notwithstanding.

And for asmuch as vpon the finding out, discouering, or inhabiting of such remote lands, countreis, & territories as aforesaid, it shalbe necessary for the safetie of al men, that shal aduenture themselues in those iourneis or voyages, to determine to liue together in Christian peace, & ciuil quietnes ech with other, wherby euery one may with more pleasure & profit enioy that whereunto they

shall attaine with great paine and perill, we for vs, our heires and successors, are likewise pleased and contented, and by these presents do giue and graunt to the said Walter Ralegh, his heires and assignes for euer, that hee and they, and euery or any of them, shall and may from time to time for euer hereafter, within the said mentioned remote landes and Countreis in the way by the seas thither, and from thence, haue full and meere power and authoritie to correct, punish, pardon, gouerne, and rule by their and euery or any of their good discretions and pollicies, as well in causes capital, or criminall, as ciuil, both marine and other, all such our subiects as shall from time to time adventure themselues in the said iourneis or voyages, or that shall at any time hereafter inhabite any such landes, countreis, or territories as aforesaide, or that shall abide within 200. leagues of any of the saide place or places, where the saide Walter Raleigh, his heires or assignes, or any of them, or any of his or their associats or companies, shall inhabite within 6. yeeres next ensuing the date hereof, according to such statutes, lawes and ordinances, as shall bee by him the saide Walter Raleigh his heires and assignes, and euery or any of them deuised, or established, for the better gouernement of the said people as aforesaid. So alwayes as the said statutes, lawes, and ordinances may be as neere as conueniently may be, agreeable to the forme of the lawes, statutes, gouernement, or pollicie of England, and also so as they be not against the true Christian faith, now professed in the Church of England, nor in any wise to withdrawe any of the subiects or people of those landes or places from the allegiance of vs, our heires and successours, as their immediate Soueraigne vnder God.

And further, wee doe by these presents for vs, our heires and successors, giue and graunt full power and authoritie to our trustie and welbeloued counsailer sir William Cicill knight, Lorde Burghley, our high Treasourer of England, and to the Lorde Treasourer of England, for vs, our heires and successors for the time being, and to the priuie Counsell, of vs, our heires and successours, or any foure or more of them for the time being, that hee, they, or any foure or more of them, shall and may from time to time, and at all times hereafter, vnder his or their handes or seales by vertue of these presents, authorise and licence the saide Walter Ralegh, his heires and assignes, and euery or any of them by him, and by themselues, or by their, or any of their sufficient Atturneis, deputies, officers, ministers, factors, and seruants, to imbarke and transport out of our Realme of England and Ireland, and the Dominions thereof all, or any of his, or their goods, and all or any the goods of his and their associats and companies, and euery or any of them, with such other necessaries and commodities of any our Realmes, as to the saide Lorde Treasourer, or foure or more of the priuie Counsaile, of vs, our heires and successors for the time being (as aforesaide) shalbe from time to time by his or their wisdomes, or discretions thought meete and conuenient, for the better releefe and supportation of him the saide Walter Ralegh, his heires, and assignes, and euery or any of them, and of his or their or any of their associats and companies, any acte, statute, lawe, or other thing to the contrary in any wise notwithstanding.

Prouided alwayes, and our will and pleasure is, and wee doe hereby declare to all Christian kings, princes and states, that if the saide Walter Ralegh, his heires or assignes, or any of them, or any other by their licence or appointment, shall at any time or times hereafter, robbe or spoile by sea or by lande, or doe any acte of vniust or vnlawfull hostilitie, to any of the subiects of vs, our heires or successors, or to any of the subiects of any the Kings, Princes, Rulers, Gouernors, or estates, being then in perfect league and amitie with vs, our heires and successors, and that vpon such iniurie, or vpon iust complaint of any such Prince, Ruler, Gouernour or estate, or their subiects, wee, our heires and successours, shall make open proclamation within any the portes of our Realme of England, that the saide Walter Ralegh, his heires and assignes, and adherents, or any to whome these our letters patents may extende, shall within the termes to bee limited, by such proclamation, make full restitution, and satisfaction of all such iniuries done, So as both we and the said Princes, or other so complayning, may holde vs and themselues fully contented. And that if the saide Walter Ralegh, his heires and assignes, shall not make or cause to be made satisfaction accordingly, within such time so to bee limitted, that then it shall bee lawfull to vs, our heires and successors, to put the saide Walter Ralegh, his heires and assignes, and adherents, and all the inhabitants of the saide places to be discouered (as is aforesaide) or any of them out of our allegiance and protection, and that from and after such time of putting out of protection of the said Walter Ralegh, his heires, assignes and adherents, & others so to be put out, & the said places within their habitation, possession and rule, shalbe out of our allegeance and protection, and free for all Princes and others, to pursue with hostilitie, as being not our subiects, nor by vs any way to be auouched, maintained, or defended, nor to be holden as any of ours, nor to our protection, or dominion, or allegiance any way belonging, for that expresse mention of the cleere yeerely value

of

of the certaintie of the premiſſes, or any part thereof, or of any other gift, or grant by vs, or any our progenitors, or predeceſſors to the ſaid Walter Ralegh, before this time made in theſe preſents be not expreſſed, or any other grant, ordinance, prouiſion, proclamation, or reſtraint to the contrarye thereof, before this time, giuen, ordained, or prouided, or any other thing, cauſe, or matter whatſoeuer, in any wiſe notwithſtanding. In witnes whereof, we haue cauſed theſe our letters to be made patents. Witneſſe our ſelues, at Weſtminſter the 25. day of March, in the ſixe and twentieth yeere of our Raigne.

The firſt voyage made to the coaſtes of America, with two barkes, wherein were Captaines Maſter Philip Amadas, and Maſter Arthur Barlowe, who diſcouered part of the Countrey, now called Virginia, Anno 1584: Written by one of the ſaid Captaines, and ſent to ſir Walter Raleigh, knight, at whoſe charge, and direction, the ſaid voyage was ſet foorth.

THe 27. day of Aprill, in the yeere of our redemption, 1584. we departed the weſt of England, with two barkes, well furniſhed with men and victuals, hauing receiued our laſt, and perfect directions by your letters, confirming the former inſtructions, and commandements deliuered by your ſelfe at our leauing the riuer of Thames. And I thinke it a matter both vnneceſſarie, for the manifeſt diſcouerie of the Countrey, as alſo for tediouſnes ſake, to remember vnto you the diurnall of our courſe, ſailing thither, and returning: onely I haue preſumed to preſent vnto you this briefe diſcourſe, by which you may iudge how profitable this land is likely to ſucceede, as well to your ſelfe, (by whoſe direction and charge, and by whoſe ſeruants this our diſcouerie hath beene performed) as alſo to her Highnes, and the Common wealth, in which we hope your wiſdome will be ſatiſfied, conſidering, that as much by vs hath bene brought to light, as by thoſe ſmall meanes, and number of men we had, could any way haue bene expected, or hoped for.

The tenth of May, we arriued at the Canaries, and the tenth of June in this preſent yeere, we were fallen with the Iſlands of the Weſt Indies, keeping a more ſoutheaſterly courſe then was needefull, becauſe we doubted that the current of the Baye of Mexico, diſbagging betweene the Cape of Florida, and the Hauana, had bene of greater force then afterwards we found it to be. At which Iſlands we found the aire very vnwholſome, and our men grewe for the moſt part ill diſpoſed: ſo that hauing refreſhed our ſelues with ſweete water, and freſh victuall, we departed the twelfth daye after our arriuall there. Theſe Iſlands, with the reſt adioyning, are ſo well knowen to your ſelfe, and to many others, as I will not trouble you, with the remembrance of them.

The ſecond of July, we found ſhole water, which ſmelt ſo ſweetely, and was ſo ſtrong a ſmell, as if we had bene in the midſt of ſome delicate garden, abounding with all kinde of odoriferous flowers, by which we were aſſured, that the land could not be farre diſtant: and keeping good watch, and bearing but ſlacke ſaile, the fourth of the ſame moneth, we arriued vpon the coaſt, which we ſuppoſed to be a continent, and firme lande, and wee ſailed along the ſame, a hundred and twentie Engliſh miles, before we could finde any entrance, or riuer, iſſuing into the Sea. The firſt that appeared vnto vs, we entred, though not without ſome difficultie, and caſt anker about three harquebuſhot within the hauens mouth, on the left hande of the ſame: and after thankes giuen to God for our ſafe arriuall thither, we manned our boates, and went to viewe the lande next adioyning, and to "take poſſeſſion of the ſame, in the right of the Queenes moſt excellent Maieſtie, as righefull Queene, and Princeſſe of the ſame, and after deliuered the ſame ouer to your vſe, according to her Maieſties grant, and letters patents, vnder her Highnes great Seale. Which being performed, according to the ceremonies vſed in ſuch enterpriſes, wee viewed the lande about vs, being whereas we firſt landed, very ſandie, and lowe towards the water ſide, but ſo full of grapes, as the very beating, and ſurge of the Sea ouerflowed them, of which we founde ſuch plentie, as well there, as in all places elſe, both on the ſande, and on the greene ſoile on the hils, as in the plaines, as well on euery little ſhrubbe, as alſo climing towardes the toppes of the high Cedars, that I thinke in all the world the like aboundance is not to be founde: and my ſelfe hauing ſeene thoſe partes of Europe that moſt abound, finde ſuch difference, as were incredible to be written.

" July. 13. poſſeſſions taken.

We

We passed from the Sea side, towardes the toppes of those hils next adioyning, being but of meane heigth, and from thence wee beheelde the Sea on both sides to the North, and to the South, finding no ende any of both waies. This lande laye stretching it selfe to the West, which after wee founde to be but an Iland of twentie leagues long, and not aboue sixe miles broade. Under the banke or hill, whereon we stoode, we beheelde the vallies replenished with goodly Cedar trees, and hauing discharged our harquebushot, such a flocke of Cranes (the most part white) arose vnder vs, with such a crye redoubled by many Ecchoes, as if an armie of men had shouted all together.

This Iland had many goodly woods, and full of Deere, Conies, Hares, and Fowle, euen in the middest of Summer, in incredible aboundance. The woods are not such as you finde in Bohemia, Moscouia, or Hyrcania, barren, and fruitlesse, but the highest, and reddest Cedars of the world, farre bettering the Cedars of the Açores, of the Indias, or of Lybanus, Pynes, Cypres, Sassaphras, the Lentisk, or the tree that beareth the Mastick, the tree that beareth the rinde of blacke Sinamon, of which Master Winter brought from the Streights of Magellane, and many other of excellent smell, and qualitie. We remained by the side of this Iland two whole daies, before we sawe any people of the Countrey: the third daye we espied one small boats rowing towards vs, hauing in it three persons: this boate came to the landes side, foure harquebushot from our shippes, and there two of the people remaining, the third came along the shoare side towards vs, and we being then all within boord, he walked vp and downe vppon the point of the lande next vnto vs: then the Master, and the Pilot of the Admirall, Simon Ferdinando, and the Captaine Philip Amadas, my selfe, and others, rowed to the lande, whose comming this fellowe attended, neuer making any shewe of feare, or doubt. And after he had spoken of many things not vnderstoode by vs, we brought him with his owne good liking, aboord the shippes, and gaue him a shirt, a hatte, and some other things, and made him taste of our wine, and our meate, which he liked very well: and after hauing viewed both barkes, he departed, and went to his owne boate againe, which hee had left in a little Coue, or Creeke adioyning: assoone as he was two bowe shoote into the water, hee fell to fishing, and in lesse then halfe an howre, hee had laden his boate as deepe, as it could swimme, with which he came againe to the point of the lande, and there he deuided his fishe into two partes, pointing one part to the shippe, and the other to the Pinnesse: which after he had (as much as he might,) requited the former benefits receaued, he departed out of our sight.

The next day there came vnto vs diuers boates, and in one of them the Kings brother, accompanied with foortie or fiftie men, very handsome, and goodly people, and in their behauiour as mannerly, and ciuill, as any of Europe. His name was Granganimeo, and the King is called Wingina, the Countrey Wingandacoa, (and nowe by her Maiestie, Virginia,) the manner of his comming was in this sorte: hee left his boates altogether, as the first man did a little from the shippes by the shoare, and came along to the place ouer against the shippes, followed with foortie men. When hee came to the place, his seruants spread a long matte vppon the grounde, on which he sate downe, and at the other ende of the matte, foure others of his companie did the like: the rest of his men stoode round about him, somewhat a farre off: when wee came to the shoare to him with our weapons, he neuer mooued from his place, nor any of the other foure, nor neuer mistrusted any harme to be offered from vs, but sitting still, he beckoned vs to come, and sitte by him, which wee performed: and beeing sette, hee makes all signes of ioy, and welcome, striking on his head, and his breast, and afterwardes on ours, to shewe we were all one, smiling, and making shewe the best hee could, of all loue, and familiaritie. After hee had made a long speech vnto vs, wee presented him with diuers thinges, which hee receaued very ioyfully, and thankefully. None of his companye durst to speake one worde all the tyme: onely the foure which were at the other ende, spake one in the others eare very softly.

The King is greatly obeyed, and his brothers, and children reuerenced: the King himselfe in person was at our beeing there sore wounded, in a fight which he had with the King of the next Countrey, called Wingina, and was shotte in two places through the bodye, and once cleane thorough the thigh, but yet he recouered: by reason whereof, and for that hee laye at the chiefe Towne of the Countrey, beeing sixe dayes iourneye off, wee sawe him not at all.

After wee had presented this his brother, with such things as we thought he liked, we likewise gaue somewhat to the other that sate with him on the matte: but presently he arose, and tooke all from them, and put it into his owne basket, making signes and tokens, that all

all things ought to be deliuered vnto him, and the reſt were but his ſeruants, and followers. A daye or two after this, we fell to trading with them, exchanging ſome thinges that we had for Chammoys, Buffe, and Deere ſkinnes: when we ſhewed him all our packet of merchandize, of all things that he ſaw, a bright tinne diſhe moſt pleaſed him, which he preſently tooke vp, & clapt it before his breaſt, & after made a hole in the brimme thereof, & hung it about his necke, making ſignes, that it would defende him againſt his enemies arrowes: for thoſe people maintaine a deadlie and terrible warre, with the people and King adioyning. We exchanged our tinne diſhe for twentie ſkinnes, worth twentie Crownes, or twentie Nobles: and a copper kettle for fiftie ſkinnes, worth fiftie Crownes. They offered vs very good exchange for our hatchets, and axes, and for knives, and would haue giuen any thing for ſwordes: but we would not depart with any. After two or three daies, the Kings brother came aboord the ſhippes, and dranke wine, and ate of our meate, and of our bread, and liked exceedingly thereof: and after a few daies ouerpaſſed, he brought his wife with him to the ſhippes, his daughter, and two or three little children: his wife was very well fauoured, of meane ſtature, and very bashfull: ſhe had on her backe a long cloke of leather, with the furre ſide next to her bodie, and before her a peece of the ſame: about her forehead, ſhe had a broad bande of white Coxrall, and ſo had her huſband many times: in her eares ſhe had bracelets of pearles, hanging downe to her middle, (whereof we deliuered your Worſhip a little bracelet) and thoſe were of the bignes of good peaſe. The reſt of her women of the better ſorte, had pendants of copper, hanging in euery eare, and ſome of the children of the Kings brother, and other Noble men, haue fiue or ſixe in euery eare: he himſelfe had vpon his head, a broad plate of golde, or copper, for being vnpoliſhed, we knew not what mettall it ſhould be, neither would he by any meanes ſuffer vs to take it off his head, but feeling it, it would bowe very eaſily. His apparell was as his wiues, onely the women weare their haire long on both ſides, and the men but on one. They are of colour yellowiſh, and their haire blacke for the moſt, and yet we ſawe children that had very fine aburne, and cheſtnut colour haire.

After that theſe women had bene there, there came downe from all parts great ſtore of people, bringing with them leather, coxrall, diuers kindes of dies very excellent, and exchanged with vs: but when Granganimeo, the kings brother was preſent, none durſt to trade but himſelfe, except ſuch as weare redde peeces of copper on their heades, like himſelfe: for that is the difference betweene the Noble men, and Gouernours of Countries, and the meaner ſort. And we both noted there, and you haue vnderſtood ſince by theſe men, which we brought home, that no people in the worlde carry more reſpect to their King, Nobilitie, and Gouernours, then theſe doe. The Kings brothers wife, when ſhe came to vs, as ſhe did many times, ſhee was followed with fortie or fiftie women alwaies: and when ſhe came into the ſhippe, ſhe left them all on lande, ſauing her two daughters, her nurce, and one or two more. The Kings brother alwaies kept this order, as many boates as he would come withall to the ſhippes, ſo many fires would he make on the ſhoare a farre off, to the ende wee might vnderſtand with what ſtrength, and companie he approched. Their boates are made of one tree, either of Pine, or of Pitch trees: a wood not commonly knowen to our people, nor found growing in England. They haue no edge tooles to make them withall: if they haue any, they are very fewe, and thoſe it ſeemes they had twentie yeeres ſince, which as thoſe two men declared, was out of a wracke which happened vpon their coaſt of ſome Chriſtian ſhippe, being beaten that way by ſome ſtorme, and outragious weather, whereof none of the people were ſaued, but onely the ſhippe, or ſome part of her, being caſt vpon the lande, out of whoſe ſides they drewe the nailes, and ſpikes, and with thoſe they made their beſt inſtrumentes. Their manner of making their boates, is this: they burne downe ſome great tree, or take ſuch as are winde fallen, and putting myrrhe, and roſen vpon one ſide thereof, they ſette fire into it, and when it hath burnt it hollowe, they cutte out the coale with their ſhels, and euer where they would burne it deeper or wider, they laye on their gummes, which burneth away the timber, and by this meanes they faſhion very fine boates, and ſuch as will tranſport twentie men. Their oares are like ſcoopes, and many times they ſette with long poles, as the depth ſerueth.

The Kings brother had great liking of our armour, a ſworde, and diuers other things, which we had: and offered to laye a great baye of pearle in gage for them: but wee refuſed it for this time, becauſe we would not make them knowe, that wee eſteemed thereof, vntill we had vnderſtoode in what places of the Countrey the pearle grewe: which nowe your Worſhippe doth very well vnderſtand.

He was very iuſt of his promiſe: for many times wee deliuered him merchandize vppon his worde, but euer he came within the daye, and performed his promiſe. Hee ſent vs euery daye a braſe or two of fatte Buckes, Conies, Hares, Fiſhe, the beſt of the worlde. Hee ſent vs diuers

kindes

kindes of fruites, Melons, Walnuts, Cucumbers, Gourdes, Peale, and diuers rootes, and fruites very excellent good, and of their Countrey corne, which is very white, faire, and well tasted, and groweth three times in fiue moneths: in May they sowe, in July they reape: in June they sowe, in August they reape: in July they sowe, in September they reape: onely they cast the corne into the ground, breaking a little of the soft turfe with a woodden mattocke, or pickeaxe: our selues prooued the soile, and put some of our Peake into the ground, and in tenne daies they were of fourteene ynches high: they haue also Beanes very faire, of diuers colours, and wonderfull plentie: some growing naturally, and some in their gardens, and so haue they both wheat and oates.

The soile is the most plentifull, sweete, fruitfull, and wholsome of all the world: there are aboue fourteene seuerall sweete smelling timber trees, and the most part of their vnderwoods are Bayes, and such like: they haue those Okes that we haue, but farre greater, and better. After they had bene diuers times aboord our shippes, my selfe, with seuen more, went twentie mile into the Riuer, that runneth toward the Citie of Skicoake, which Riuer they call Occam: and the euening following, we came to an Iland, which they call Roanoak, distant from the harbour by which we entred, seuen leagues: and at the North ende thereof, was a village of nine houses, built of Cedar, and fortified round about with sharpe trees, to keepe out their enemies, and the entrance into it made like a turne pike very artificially: when we came towards it, standing neere vnto the waters side, the wife of Grangyno, the Kings brother, came running out to meete vs very cheerefully, and friendly, her husband was not then in the village: some of her people she commanded to drawe our boate on the shoare, for the beating of the billoe: others shee appointed to carry vs on their backes to the dry ground, and others to bring our oares into the house, for feare of stealing. When we were come into the vtter roome, hauing fiue roomes in her house, she caused vs to sitte downe by a great fire, and after tooke off our clothes, and washed them, and dried them againe: some of the women pulled off our stockings, and washed them, some washed our feete in warme water, and shee her selfe tooke great paines to see all thinges ordered in the best manner shee coulde, making great haste to dresse some meate for vs to eate.

After we had thus dried our selues, shee brought vs into the inner roome, where shee set on the boord standing along the house, some wheate like furmentie, sodden Venison, and roasted, fishe sodden, boyled, and roasted, Melons rawe, and sodden, rootes of diuers kindes, and diuers fruites: their drinke is commonly water, but while the grape lasteth, they drinke wine, and for want of caskes to keepe it all the yeere after, they drinke water, but it is sodden with Ginger in it, and blacke Sinamon, and sometimes Sassaphras, and diuers other wholesome, and medicinable hearbes and trees. We were entertained with all loue, and kindnes, and with as much bountie, after their manner, as they could possibly deuise. Wee found the people most gentle, louing, and faithfull, void of all guile, and treason, and such as liued after the manner of the golden age. The earth bringeth foorth all things in aboundance, as in the first creation, without toile or labour. The people onely care to defend them selues from the cold, in their short winter, and to feede themselues with such meate as the soile affoordeth: their meate is very well sodden, and they make broth very sweete, and sauorie: their vessels are earthen pots, very large, white, and sweete: their dishes are woodden platters of sweete timber: within the place where they feede, was their lodging, and within that their Idoll, which they worship, of which they speake vncredible things. While we were at meate, there came in at the gates, two or three men with their bowes, and arrowes, from hunting, whome when we espied, we beganne to looke one towardes another, and offered to reach our weapons: but assoone as she espied our mistrust, she was very much moued, and caused some of her men to runne out, and take away their bowes, and arrowes, and breake them, and withall beate the poore fellowes out of the gate againe. When we departed in the euening, and would not tarry all night, she was very sorie, and gaue vs into our boate our supper halfe dressed, pots, and all, and brought vs to our boates side, in which wee laye all night, remouing the same a prettie distance from the shoare: shee perceiuing our icalousie, was much grieued, and sent diuers men, and thirtie women, to sitte all night on the bankes side by vs, and sent vs into our boates fine mattes to couer vs from the rayne, vsing very many wordes to intreate vs to rest in their houses: but because wee were fewe men, and if wee had miscarried, the voyage had beene in very great daunger, wee durst not aduenture any thing, although there was no cause of doubt: for a more kinde, and louing people, there can not be found in the world, as farre as we haue hitherto had triall.

Beyonde this Iſlande, there is the maine lande, and ouer against this Iſlande falleth into this

this spatious water, the great riuer called Occam, by the Inhabitants, on which standeth a Towne called Pemeoke, and sixe daies iourney further vpon the same is situate their greatest citie, called Schycoake, which this people affirme to be very great: but the Sauages were neuer at it, onely they speake of it, by the report of their Fathers, and other men, whome they haue heard affirme it, to be aboue one daies iourney about.

Into this riuer falleth another great riuer, called Cipo, in which there is found great store of the Muscels, in which there are pearles: likewise there descendeth into this Occam, another riuer, called Nomopana, on the one side whereof standeth a great Towne, called Chowanoake, and the Lord of that Towne and Countrey, is called Pooneno: this Pooneno is not subiect to the King of Wingandacoa, but is a free Lorde. Beyonde this Countrey, is there another King, whome they call Menatoan, and these three Kinges are in league with eache other. Towards the Sunne set, foure daies iourney, is situate a Towne called Sequotan, which is the Westermost Towne of Wingandacoa, neere vnto which, sixe and twentie yeeres past, there was a shippe cast away, whereof some of the people were saued, and those were white people, whom the Countrey people preserued.

And after ten daies, remaining in an out Iland vnhabited, called Wococan, they with the helpe of some of the dwellers of Sequotan, fastened two boates of the Countrey together, and made mastes vnto them, and sailes of their shirtes, and hauing taken into them such victuals as the Countrey yeelded, they departed after they had remained in this out Iland three weekes: but shortly after, it seemed they were cast away, for the boates were found vppon the coast, cast aland in another Iland adioyning: other then these, there was neuer any people apparelled, or white of colour, either seene, or heard of amongst these people, and these aforesaide were seene onely of the Inhabitants of Sequotan: which appeared to be very true, for they wondred meruelously when we were amongest them, at the whitenes of our skinnes, euer coueting to touch our breastes, and to view the same: besides they had our shippes in maruelous admiration, and all things els was so strange vnto them, as it appeared that none of them had euer seene the like. When we discharged any peece, were it but a harquebush, they would tremble thereat for very feare, and for the strangenes of the same: for the weapons which themselues vse, are bowes and arrowes: the arrowes are but of small canes, headed with a sharpe shell, or tooth of a fishe sufficient enough to kill a naked man. Their swordes are of wood hardened: likewise they vse woodden breastplates for their defense. They haue besides a kinde of clubbe, in the ende whereof they fasten the sharpe homes of a stagge, or other beast. When they goe to warres, they carry with them their Idoll, of whome they aske counsell, as the Romanes were woont of the Oracle of Apollo. They sing songes as they march towards the battell, in steede of drummes, and trumpets: their warres are very cruell, and bloodie, by reason whereof, and of their ciuill dissentions, which haue happened of late yeeres amongest them, the people are maruelously wasted, and in some places, the Countrey left desolate.

Adioyning vnto this Towne aforesaide, called Sequotan, beginneth a Countrey called Ponouike, belonging to another King, whome they call Piemacum, and this King is in league with the next King, adioyning towardes the setting of the Sunne, and the Countrey Neiosioke, situate vppon the side of a goodly Riuer, called Neus: these Kings haue mortall warre with Wingina, King of Wingandacoa, but about two yeeres past, there was a peace made betweene the King Piemacum, and the Lorde of Sequotan, as these men which we haue brought with vs into England, haue made vs vnderstande: but there remaineth a mortall malice in the Sequotanes, for many iniuries and slaughters done vppon them by this Piemacum. They inuited diuers men, and thirtie women, of the best of his Countrey, to their Towne to a feast: and when they were altogether merrie, and praying before their Idoll, which is nothing else, but a meere illusion of the Deuill: the Captaine or Lorde of the Towne came suddenly vpon them, and slewe them euery one, reseruing the women, and children: and these two haue oftentimes since perswaded vs to surprise Piemacum his Towne, hauing promised, and assured vs, that there will be founde in it great store of commodities. But whether their perswasion be to the ende they may be reuenged of their enemies, or for the loue they beare to vs, we leaue that to the triall hereafter.

Beyond this Iland, called Croonoake, are many Ilands, very plentifull of fruites, and other naturall increases, together with many Townes, and villages, along the side of the continent, some bounding vpon the Ilands, and some stretching vp further into the land.

When we first had sight of this Countrey, some thought the first lande we sawe, to be the continent: but after wee entred into the Hauen, wee sawe before vs another mightie long Sea: for there

there lieth along the coast a tracte of Islands, two hundreth miles in length, adioyning to the Ocean sea, and betweene the Islands, two or three entrances: when you are entred betweene them (these Islands being very narrowe, for the most part, as in most places sixe miles broad, in some places lesse, in fewe more,) then there appeareth another great Sea, containing in breath in some places, fortie, and in some fiftie, in some twentie miles ouer, before you come vnto the continent: and in this inclosed Sea, there are about a hundreth Islands of diuers bignesses, whereof one is fifteene miles long, at which we were, finding it to be a most pleasant, and fertile ground, replenished with goodly Cedars, and diuers other sweete woods, full of Currans, of flaxe, and many other notable commodities, which we at that time had no leasure to view. Besides this Island, there are many, as I haue saide, some of two, of three, of foure, of fiue miles, some more, some lesse, most beautifull, and pleasant to behold, replenished with Deere, Conies, Hares, and diuers beastes, and about them the goodliest and best fishe in the world, and in greatest aboundance.

Thus Sir, we haue acquainted you with the particulars of our discouerie, made this present voyage, as farre forth, as the shortnes of the time we there continued, would afford vs to take view of: and so contenting our selues with this seruice at this time, which we hope hereafter to inlarge, as occasion and assistance shall be giuen, we resolued to leaue the Countrey, and to apply our selues to returne for England, which we did accordingly, and arriued safely in the West of England, about the middest of September.

And whereas we haue aboue certified you of the Countrey, taken in possession by vs, to her Maiesties vse, and so to yours, by her Maiesties grant, wee thought good for the better assurance thereof to recorde some of the particular Gentlemen, and men of accompt, who then were present, as witnesses of the same, that thereby all occasion of cauill to the title of the Countrey, in her Maiesties behalfe, may be preuented, which otherwise, such as like not the action may vse, and pretend, whose names are:

Master Philip Amadas, } Captaines.
Master Arthur Barlowe, }

William Greeneuile, }
Iohn Wood, }
Iames Browewich, }
Henrie Greene, }
Beniamin Wood, } Of the companie.
Simon Ferdinando, }
Nicholas Petman, }
Iohn Hewes, }

The voyage made by Sir Richard Greenuile, for Sir Walter *Ralegh, to Virginia, in the yeere*, 1585.

THe 19. day of Maye, in the yeere aboue saide, wee departed from Plymmouth, our fleete consisting of the number of seuen sailes, to wit, the Tyger, of the burden of seuen score tunnes: a Flie boate called the Roe Bucke, of the like burden: the Lyon of a hundred tunnes, or thereabouts: the Elizabeth, of fiftie tunnes, and the Dorothie, a small barke, whereunto were also adioyned for speedie seruices, 2. small Pinnesses. The principall Gentlemen of our companie, were, Master Ralfe Lane, Master Thomas Candishe, Master Iohn Arundell, Master Raimund, Master Stukely, Master Bremige, Master Vincent, and Master Iohn Clarke, and diuers others, whereof some were Captaines, and other some Assistants for counsell, and good directions in the voyage.

The 14. day of Aprill, we fell with Lançacota, and Forte Ventura, Isles of the Canaries, and from thence we continued our course for Dominica, one of the Antiles of the West India, wherewith we fell the 7. day of Maye, and the 10. day following, we came to an anker at Cotesa, a little Island situate neere to the Island of S. Iohn, where wee landed, and refreshed our selues all that day.

The 15. day of Maye, we came to an anker, in the Baye of Muskito, in the Island of S. Iohn, within a Fawlcon shot of the shoare: where our Generall Sir Richard Greenuill, and the most part of our companie landed, and began to fortifie, very neere to the sea side: the riuer ranne by the one side of our forte, and the other two sides were enuironed with woods.

The

The 13. day we began to builde a new pinnesse within the Fort, with the timber that we then felled in the countrey, some part whereof we fet three myle vp in the land, and brought it to our Fort vpon trucks, the Spaniards not daring to make or offer resistance.

The 16. day, there appeared vnto vs out of the woods 8. horsemen of the Spaniards, about a quarter of a myle from our Fort, staying about halfe an hower in viewing our forces: but as soone as they saw x. of our shot marching towards them, they presently retyred into the woodes.

The 19. day, Master Candish, who had bene seperated from our fleete in a storme in the Bay of Portingal arriued at Cotesa, within the sight of the Tiger: we thinking him a farre off to haue ben either a Spaniard or French man of warre thought it good to waigh ankers, and to goe roome with him, which the Tyger did, and discerned him at last to be one of our Consorts, for ioy of whose comming, our ships discharged their ordinance, and saluted him, according to the manner of the Seas.

The 22. day, 20. other Spanishe horsemen shewed them selues to vs vpon the other side of the riuer: who being seene, our General dispatched 20. footemen towards them, and two horsemen of ours, mounted vpon Spanish horses, which wee before had taken in the time of our being on the Iland: they shewed to our men a flagge of truce, and made signes to haue a parle with vs: whereupon two of our men went halfe of the way vpon the sands, and two of theirs came and met them: the two Spaniards offred very great salutations to our men, but began according to their Spanish proud humors, to expostulate with them, about their arriual, and fortifying in their countrie, who notwithstanding by our mens discrete answers were so cooled, that whereas they were told, that our principal intention was onely to furnish our selues with water, and victuals, and other necessaries whereof we stood in neede, which we craued might be yelded vs with faire, and friendly means, otherwise our resolution was to practise force, and to releeue our selues by the sworde: the Spaniards in conclusion, seeing our men so resolute, yelded to our requestes with large promises of all curtesie, and great fauor, and so our men and theirs departed.

The 23. day our pinnesse was finished, and lanched, which being done, our Generall with his Captaines, and Gentlemen, marched vp into the Country about the space of 4. myles, where in a plaine marsh, they staied expecting the comming of the Spanyards according to their promise, to furnish vs with victuals: who keeping their old custome for periurie and breache of promise came not, whereupon our General fired the woods thereabout, and so retired to our Fort, which the same day was fired also, and each man came aboord to be ready to set saile the next morning.

The 29. day we set saile from Saint Iohns, being many of vs sloong before vpon shoare with the Muskitoes: but the same night we tooke a Spanish Frigat, which was forsaken by the Spanyards vpon the sight of vs, and the next day in the morning very early, wee tooke another Frigat, with good and rich fraight, and diuers Spaniards of accompt in her, which afterwards we ransomed for good round summes, and landed them in Saint Iohns.

The 26. day our Lieutenant Master Ralfe Lane, went in one of the Frigats which we had taken, to Roxo bay vpon the South west side of Saint Iohns, to fetch salt, being thither conducted by a Spanish Pilot: as soone as he arriued there, he landed with his men, to the number of 20. and intrenched him selfe vpon the sandes immediatly, compassing one of their salt hils within the trench: who being seene of the Spanyards, there came downe towards him two or three troopes of horsemen, and footemen, who gaue him the looking, and gazing on, but durst not come neere him to offer any resistance, so that Master Lane mauger their troopes, caried their salt aboord and laded his Frigat, and so returned againe to our fleete the 29. day, which road at Saint Germans Bay. The same day we all departed, and the next day arriued in the Iland of Hispaniola.

Iune.

THe 1. day of June we ankered at Isabella, in the North side of Hispaniola.

The 3. day of June, the Gouernor of Isabella, and Captaine of the Port de Plata, beeing certified by the reports of sundry Spanyards, who had bene wel intertained aboord our shippes by our General, that in our fleete were many braue, and gallant Gentlemen, who greatly desired to see the Gouernor aforesaid, he thereupon sent gentle commendations to our Generall, promising within few daies to come to him in person, which he performed accordingly.

The 5. day the foresaid gouernor, accompanied with a lusty Frier, & xx. other Spaniards, with their seruants, & Negroes, came downe to the sea side, where our ships road at anker, who being seene, our General manned immediatly the most part of his boats wt the chiefe men of our fleete, euery man appointed, and furnished in the best sort: at the landing of our Generall, the Spanishe Gouernor receiued him very curteously, and the Spanish Gentlemen saluted our English Gentlemen, and their inferiour sort did also salute our Souldiers and Sea men, liking our

men, and likewise their qualities, although at the first, they seemed to stand in feare of vs, and of so many of our boats, whereof they desired that all might not land their men, yet in the end, the curtesies that passed on both sides were so great, that all feare and mistrust on the Spanyardes part was abandoned.

In the meane time while our English Generall and the Spanish Gouernor discoursed betwixt them of diuers matters, as of the state of the Country, the multitude of the Townes and people, and the commodities of the Iland, our men prouided two banquetting houses couered with greene boughs, the one for the gentlemen, the other for the seruants, and a sumptuous banquet was brought in serued by vs all in Plate, with the sound of trumpets, and consort of musick wherewith the Spanyards were more then delighted. Which banquet being ended, the Spanyardes in recompense of our curtesie, caused a great heard of white buls, and kyne, to be brought together from the Mounteines, and appointed for euery Gentleman and Captaine that would ride, a horse ready sadled, and then singled out three of the best of them to be hunted by horsemen after their manner, so that the pastime grew very pleasant, for the space of three houres, wherein all three of the beasts were killed, whereof one tooke the sea, and there was slaine with a musket. After this sport, many rare presents and gifts were giuen and bestowed on both partes, and the next day we plaied the Marchants in bargaining with them by way of trucke and exchange for diuers of their commodities, as horses, mares, kyne, buls, goates, swine, sheepe, bul hydes, sugar, ginger, pearle, tabacco, and such like commodities of the Iland.

The 7. day we departed with great good will from the Spanyardes from the Iland of Hispaniola: but the wiser sort do impute this great shew of friendship, and curtesie vsed towardes vs by the Spanyards rather to the force that we were of, and the vigilancie, and watchfulnes that was amongst vs, then to any harty good will, or sure freindly intertainment: for doubtlesse if they had bene stronger then wee, we might haue looked for no better curtesie at their handes, then Master Iohn Hawkins receiued at saint Iohn de Vllua, or Iohn Oxnam neere the streights of Dariene, and diuers others of our Countrymen in other places.

The 8. day we ankred at a small Iland to take Seales which in that place were vnderstood to haue bene in great quantitie, where the Generall and certaine others with him in the pinnesse, were in very great danger to haue bene all cast away, but by the helpe of God they escaped the hazard, and returned aboord the Admirall in safetie.

The 9. day we arriued and landed in the Isle of Caycos, in which Islande we searched for salt pondes, vpon the aduertisment, and information of a Portingall: who in deede abused our Generall and vs, deseruing a halter for his hire, if it had so pleased vs.

The 12. we ankered at Guanema, and landed.

The 15. and 16. we ankered and landed at Sygateo.

The 20. we fell with the mayne of Florida.

The 23. wee were in great danger of a Whacke on a breache called the Cape of Feare.

The 24. we came to anker in a harbor where we caught in one tyde so much fishe as would haue yelded vs 50. pounds in London: this was our first landing in Florida.

The 26. we came to anker at Wocokon.

The 29. wee waighed anker to bring the Tyger into the harbour, where though the vnskilfulnesse of the Master whose name was Fernando, the Admirall strooke on grounde, and sunke.

Iuly.

The 3. we sent word of our arriuing at Wococon, to Wingino at Roanocke.

The 6. M. Iohn Arundell was sent to the mayne, and Manteio with him: and Captayne Aubry, and Captaine Boniten the same day were sent to Croatoan, where they found two of our men left there, with 30. other by Captaine Reymond, some 20. daies before.

The 8. Captaine Aubry, and Captaine Boniten returned with two of our men found by them to vs at Wocokon.

The 11. day the Generall accompanied in his Tilt boate with Master Iohn Arundell, Master Stukelye, and diuers other Gentlemen, Master Lane, Master Candish, Master Harriot, and 20. others in the newe pinnesse, Captaine Amadas, Captaine Clarke, with tenne others in a ship boate, Francis Brooke, and Iohn White in another ship boate passed ouer the water from Ococon to the mayne land victualled for eight dayes, in which voyage we first discouered the townes of Pomioke, Aquascogoc and Secota, and also the great lake called by the Sauages Paquype, with

with diuers other places, and so returned with that discouery to our Fleete.

The 12. we came to the Towne of Pomeioke.

The 13. we passed by water to Aquascococke.

The 15. we came to Secotan and were well intertayned there of the Sauages.

The 16. we returned thence, and one of our boates with the Admirall was sent to Aquascocke to demaund a siluer cup which one of the Sauages had stolen from vs, and not receiuing it according to his promise, we burnt, and spoyled their corne, and Towne, all the people being fledde.

The 18. we returned from the discouery of Secotan, and the same day came aboord our fleete ryding at Wocokon.

The 21. our fleete ankering at Wokocon, we wayed anker for Hatoraske.

The 27. our fleete ankered at Hatoraske, and there we rested.

The 29. Grangino, brother to king Wingino, came aboord the Admirall, and Manteo with him.

August.

The 2. The Admirall was sent to Weapemeoke.

The 5. Master Iohn Arundell was sent for England.

The 25. our Generall wayed anker, and set saile for England.

About the 31. he tooke a Spanish ship of 300. tunne richly loaden, boording her with a boate made with boards of chests, which fell a sunder, and sunke at the shippes side, assoone as euer hee and his men were out of it.

September.

The 10. of September, by foule weather the Generall then shipped in the pisse lost sight of the Tyger.

October.

The first the Tyger fell with the landes ende, and the same day came to an anker at Falmouth.

The 18. the Generall came with the pisse to Plymmouth, and was courteously receiued by diuerse of his worshipfull friends.

The names of all those as well Gentlemen as others, *that remained one whole yeere in Virginia, vnder the Gouernement of Master Ralfe Lane.*

Master Philip Amades, Admirall of the countrie.
Master Hariot.
Master Acton.
Master Edward Stafford.
Thomas Luddington.
Master Maruyn.
Master Gardyner.
Captaine Vaughan.
Master Kendall.
Master Prideox.
Robert Holecroft.
Rise Courtney.
Master Hugh Rogers.
Master Thomas Haruie.
Master Snelling.
Master Anthony Russe.
Master Allyne.
Master Michel Polyson.
Iohn Cage.
Thomas Parre.
William Randes.
Geffery Churchman.
William Farthowe.
Iohn Taylor.
Philippe Robyns.
Thomas Phillippes.
Valentine Beale.

Thomas Foxe,
Edward Nugen.
Darby Glande.
Edward Kelle.
Iohn Gostigo.
Erasmus Clefs.
Edward Ketcheman.
Iohn Linsey.
Thomas Rottenbury.
Roger Deane,
Iohn Harris
Frauncis Norris.
Mathewe Lyne.
Edward Kettell,
Thomas Wisse.
Robert Biscombe.
William Backhouse.
William White,
Henry Potkin.
Dennis Barnes.
Ioseph Borges.
Doughan Gannes.
William Tenche.
Randall Latham.
Thomas Hulme.
Walter Myll.
Richard Gilbert.
Steuen Pomarie,
Iohn Brocke.
Bennet Harrye.
Iames Steuenson.
Charles Steuenson.
Christopher Lowde.
Ieremy Man.
Iames Mason.
Dauid Salter.
Richard Ireland.
Thomas Bookener.
William Philippes.
Randall Mayne.
Iames Skinner.
George Eseuen.
Iohn Chaundeler.
Philip Blunt.
Richard Poore.
Robert Yong.
Marmaduke Constable.
Thomas Hesket.
William Wasse.
Iohn Feuer.
Daniel.
Thomas Taylor.
Richard Humfrey.
Iohn Wright.
Gabriell North.
Bennet Chappell.
Richard Sare.
Iames Lasie.
Smolkin.
Thomas Smart.
Robert
Iohn Euans.
Roger Large.
Humfrey Garden.
Frauncis Whitton.
Rowland Griffyn.
William Millard.
Iohn Twyt.
Edwarde Seklemore.
Iohn Anwike.
Christopher Marshall.
Dauid Williams.
Nicholas Swabber.
Edward Chipping.
Sylvester Beching.
Vincent Cheyne.
Haunce Walters.
Edward Barecombe.
Thomas Skeuelabs.
William Walters.

An account of the particularities of the imployments of the English men left in Virginia by Sir Richard Greeneuill vnder the charge of Master Ralfe Lane Generall of the same, from the 17. of August, 1585. vntill the 18. of Iune 1586. at which time they departed the Countrie: sent, and directed to Sir Walter Ralegh.

2. Parts of this discourse.

That I may proceed with order in this discourse, I thinke it requisite to deuide it into two partes. The first shall declare the particularities of such partes of the Country within the mayne, as our weake number, and supply of things necessary did inable vs to enter into the discouery thereof.

The second part, shall set downe the reasons generally mouing vs to resolue on our departure at the instant with the General Sir Frauncis Drake, and our common request for passage with him, when the barkes, pinnesses, and boates with the Masters and Mariners ment by him to bee left in the Countrie for the supply of such, as for a further time ment to haue stayed there were caried away with tempest, and foule weather: In the beginning whereof shalbe declared the conspiracie of Pemisapan, with the Sauages of the mayne to haue cutt vs off.

The

The firſt part declaring the particularities of the Countrey of Virginia.

FIrſt therefore touching the particularities of the Countrey, you ſhal vnderſtand our diſcouery of the ſame hath bene extended from the Iland of Roanoak, (the ſame hauing bene the place of our ſettlement or inhabitation) into the South, into the North, into the Northweſt, and into the Weſt.

The vttermoſt place to the Southward of any diſcouerie was Secotan, being by eſtimation foure ſcore miles diſtant from Roanoak. The paſſage from thence was thorowe a broad ſound within the mayne, the ſame being without kenning of land, and yet full of flats and ſhoales: we had but one boate with foure oares to paſſe through the ſame, which boat could not carry aboue fifteene men with their furniture, baggage, and victuall for ſeuen dayes at the moſt: and as for our Pinneſſe, beſides that ſhe drewe too deepe water for that ſhalow ſound, ſhe would not ſtirre for an oare: for theſe and other reaſons (winter alſo being at hand) we thought good wholy to leaue the diſcouery of thoſe partes vntill our ſtronger ſupplie.

To the Northwarde our furtheſt diſcouerie was to the Cheſepians, diſtant from Roanoak about 130. miles, the paſſage to it was very ſhalow and moſt dangerous, by reaſon of the breadth of the ſound, and the litle ſuccour that vpon any flawe was there to be had.

But the Territorie and ſoyle of the Cheſepians (being diſtant fifteene miles from the ſhoare) was for pleaſantnes of ſeate, for temperature of Climate, for fertilitie of ſoyle, and for the commoditie of the Sea, beſides multitude of beares (being an excellent good victuall, with great woods of Saſſafras, and Wall nut treees) is not to be excelled by any other whatſoeuer. The excellency of the ſeate of Cheſepiok.

There be ſundry Kings, whom they call Weroances, and Countries of great fertilitie adioyning to the ſame, as the Mandoages, Tripanicks, and Opoſsians, which all came to viſit the Colonie of the Engliſh, which I had for a time appointed to be reſident there.

To the Northweſt the fartheſt place of our diſcouerie was to Choanoke diſtant from Roanoak about 130. miles. Our paſſage thither lyeth through a broad ſound, but all freſh water, and the chanell of great depth, nauigable for good ſhipping, but out of the chanell full of ſhoales.

The Townes about the water ſide ſituated by the way, are theſe following: Pyſhokonnok, The womans Towne, Chipanum, Weopomiok, Muſcamunge, and Matraquen: all theſe being vnder the iuriſdiction of the king of Weopomiok, called Okiſco: from Muſcamunge we enter into the Riuer, and iuriſdiction of Choanoke: There the Riuer beginneth to straighten vntill it come to Choanoke, and then groweth to be as narrowe as the Thames betweene Weſtminſter, and Lambeth.

Betweene Muſcamunge and Choanoke vpon the left hand as we paſſe thither, is a goodly high land, and there is a Towne which we called the blinde Towne, but the Sauages called it Ooanoke, and hath a very goodly corne field belonging vnto it: it is ſubiect to Choanoke.

Choanoke it ſelfe is the greateſt Prouince and Seigniorie lying vpon that Riuer, and the very Towne it ſelfe is able to put 700. fighting men into the fielde, beſides the forces of the Prouince it ſelfe. The Towne of Choanoak able to make 700. men of warre.

The King of the ſayd Prouince is called Menatonon, a man impotent in his lims, but otherwiſe for a Sauage, a very graue and wiſe man, and of very ſingular good diſcourſe in matters concerning the ſtate, not onely of his owne Countrey, and the diſpoſition of his owne men, but alſo of his neighbours round about him as wel farre as neere, and of the commodities that eche Countrey yeeldeth. When I had him priſoner with me, for two dayes that we were together, he gaue me more vnderſtanding and light of the Countrey then I had receiued by all the ſearches and ſaluages that before I or any of my compante had had conference with: it was in March laſt paſt 1586. Amongſt other things he tolde me, that going three dayes iourney in a canoa vp his Riuer of Choanoke, and then deſcending to the land, you are within foure dayes iourney to paſſe ouer land Northeaſt to a certaine Kings countrey, whoſe Prouince lyeth vpon the Sea, but his place of greateſt ſtrength is an Iland ſituate as he deſcribed vnto me in a Bay, the water round about the Iland very deepe. An Iland in a Bay.

Out of this Bay hee ſignified vnto mee, that this King had ſo great quantitie of Pearle, and doeth ſo ordinarily take the ſame, as that not onely his owne ſkins that he weareth, and the better ſort of his gentlemen and followers, are full ſet with the ſayd Pearle, but alſo his beds, and houſes are garniſhed with them, and that hee hath ſuch quantitie of them, that it is a wonder to ſee. Pearles in exceeding quantitie.

He shewed me that the sayd King was with him at Choanoak two yeeres before, and brought him certaine Pearle, but the same of the worst sort, yet was hee faine to buy them of him for copper at a deere rate, as he thought: He gaue me a rope of the same Pearle, but they were blacke, and naught, yet many of them were very great, and a fewe amongst a number very orient and round, all which I lost with other things of mine, comming aboorde Sir Francis Drake his Fleete: yet he tolde me that the sayd King had great store of Pearle that were white, great, and round, and that his blacke Pearle his men did take out of shalowe water, but the white Pearle his men fished for in very deepe water.

It seemed to mee by his speech, that the sayde king had traffike with white men that had clothes as we haue for these white Pearle, and that was the reason that he would not depart with other then with blacke Pearles, to those of the same Countrey.

The king of Choanoak promised to giue me guides to goe ouer land into that kings Countrey whensoeuer I would: but he aduised me to take good store of men with mee, and good store of victuall, for he sayd, that king would be loth to suffer any strangers to enter into his Countrey, and especially to meddle with the fishing for any Pearle there, and that hee was able to make a great many of men into the fielde, which he sayd would fight very well.

Hereupon I resolued with my selfe, that if your supplie had come before the end of April, and that you had sent any store of boats, or men, to haue had them made in any reasonable time, with a sufficient number of men, and victuals to haue found vs vntill the new corne were come in, I woulde haue sent a small Barke with two Pinnesses about by Sea to the Northwarde to haue found out the Bay he spake of, and to haue sounded the barre if there were any, which shoulde haue ridden there in the sayd Bay about that Iland, while I with all the small boats I could make, and with two hundreth men would haue gone vp to the head of the Riuer of Choanoak, with the guides that Menatonon would haue giuen, which I would haue bene assured should haue bene of his best men, (for I had his best beloued sonne prisoner with me) who also should haue kept me companie in an handlocke with the rest foote by foote all the voyage ouer land.

My meaning was further at the head of the Riuer in the place of my descent where I would haue left my boates to haue raysed a sconse with a small trench, and a pallisado vpon the top of it, in the which, and in the garde of my boates I would haue left fiue and twentie, or thirtie men, with the rest would I haue marched with as much victuall as euery man could haue carried, with their furniture, mattocks, spades and axes, two dayes iourney. In the ende of my marche vpon some conuenient plot would I haue raysed another sconse according to the former, where I would haue left 15. or 20. And if it would haue fallen out conueniently, in the way I woulde haue raised my sayd sconse vpon some corne fielde, that my companie might haue liued vpon it.

Whether Master Ralph Lane meant to remoone.

And so I would haue holden this course of insconsing euery two dayes march, vntill I had bene arriued at the Bay or Porte he spake of: which finding to be worth the possession, I would there haue raised a mayne forte, both for the defence of the harborroughs, and our shipping also, and would haue reduced our whole habitation from Roanoak and from the harborough and port there (which by proofe is very naught) vnto this other before mentioned, from whence, in the foure dayes marche before specified could I at all times returne with my companie backe vnto my boats ryding vnder my sconse, very neere whereunto directly from the West runneth a most notable Riuer, and in all those partes most famous, called the Riuer of Morotico. This Riuer openeth into the broad sound of Weopomiok: And whereas the Riuer of Choanoak, and all the other sounds, and Bayes, salt and fresh, shewe no currant in the world in calme weather, but are mooued altogether with the winde: This Riuer of Morotico hath so violent a currant from the West and Southwest, that it made me almost of opinion that with oares it would scarse be nauigable: it passeth with many creeks and turnings, and for the space of thirtie miles rowing, and more, it is as broad as the Thames betwixt Greenwich, and the Ile of dogges, in some place more, and in some lesse: the currant runneth as strong being entred so high into the Riuer, as at London bridge vpon a vale water.

And for that not onely Menatonon, but also the Sauages of Morotico themselues doe report strange things of the head of that Riuer, and that from Morotico it selfe, which is a principall Towne vpon that Riuer, it is thirtie dayes as some of them say, and some say fourtie dayes voyage to the head thereof, which head they say springeth out of a maine rocke in that abundance, that forthwith it maketh a most violent streame: and further, that this huge rocke standeth nere vnto a Sea, that many times in stormes (the winde comming outwardly from the Sea) the waues thereof are beaten into the said fresh streame, so that the fresh water for a certaine space, groweth salt and brackish:

I tooke

I tooke a reſolution with my ſelfe, hauing diſmiſſed Menatonon vpon a ranſome agreed for, and ſent his ſonne into the Pinneſſe to Roanoak, to enter preſently ſo farre into that Riuer with two double wherries, and fourtie perſons one or other, as I could haue victuall to carrie vs, vntill we could meete with more either of the Moratiks, or of the Mangoaks which is another kinde of Sauages, dwelling more to the Weſtwarde of the ſayd Riuer: but the hope of recouering more victuall from the Sauages made me and my company as narowly to eſcape ſtaruing in that diſcouerie before our returne, as euer men did that miſſed the ſame.

For Pemiſapan, who had changed his name of Wingina vpon the death of his brother Granganimo, had giuen both the Choaniſts, & Mangoaks word of my purpoſe touching them, I hauing bin inforced to make him priuie to ỹ ſame, to be ſerued by him of a guide to the Mangoaks, and yet he did neuer reſt to ſolicite continually my going vpon them, certifying me of a generall aſſembly euen at that time made by Menatonon at Choanoak of all his Weroances, & allyes to the number of 3000. bowes preparing to come vpon vs at Roanoak and that the Mangoaks alſo were ioyned in the ſame confederacie, who were able of themſelues to bring as many more to the enterpriſe: And true it was, that at that time the aſſembly was holden at Choanoak about vs, as I found at my comming thither, which being vnlooked for did ſo diſmay them, as it made vs haue the better hand at them. But this confederacie againſt vs of the Choaniſts and Mangoaks was altogether and wholly procured by Pemiſapan himſelfe, as Menatonon confeſſed vnto me, who ſent them continuall worde that our purpoſe was fully bent to deſtroy them: on the other ſide he tolde me that they had the like meaning towards vs. Wingina changeth his name

Wee in like ſort hauing ſent worde to the Mangoaks of mine intention to paſſe vp into their Riuer, and to kill them (as he ſayd) both they and the Moratiks, with whome before we were entred into a league, and they had euer dealt kindely with vs, abandoned their Townes along the Riuer, and retyred themſelues with their ‖ Crenepoes, and their corne within the mayne: inſo- ‖ Their wome much as hauing paſſed three dayes voyage vp the Riuer, we could not meete a man, nor finde a graine of corne in any their Townes: whereupon conſidering with my ſelfe, that wee had but two dayes victuall left, and that wee were then 160. miles from home, beſides caſualtie of contrarie windes or ſtormes, and ſuſpecting treaſon of our owne Sauages in the diſcouerie of our voyage intended, though we had no intention to be hurtfull to any of them, otherwiſe then for our copper to haue had corne of them: I at night vpon the corps of garde, before the putting foorth of centinels, aduertiſed the whole companie of the caſe wee ſtoode in for victuall, and of mine opinion that we were betrayed by our owne Sauages, and of purpoſe drawen foorth by them, vpon vaine hope to be in the ende ſtarued, ſeeing all the Countrey fledde before vs, and therefore while we had thoſe two dayes victuall left, I thought it good for vs to make our returne homewarde, and that it were neceſſarie for vs to get the other ſide of the ſound of Weopomiok in time, where we might be relieued vpon the weares of Chypanum, and the womans Towne, although the people were fled.

Thus much I ſignified vnto them, as the ſafeſt way: neuertheleſſe, I did referre it to the greateſt number of voyces, whether we ſhould aduenture the ſpending of our whole victuall in ſome further viewe of that moſt goodly Riuer in hope to meete with ſome better hap, or otherwiſe to retyre our ſelues backe againe. And for that they might be the better aduiſed, I willed them to deliberate all night vpon the matter, and in the morning at our going aboorde to ſet our courſe according to the deſires of the greateſt part. Their reſolution fully and wholly was (and not three found to be of the contrary opinion) that whiles there was left one halfe pinte of corne for a man, that we ſhould not leaue the ſearch of that Riuer, and that there were in the companie two maſtiues, vpon the pottage of which with ſaſſafras leaues (if the worſt fell out) the companie would make ſhift to liue two dayes, which time would bring them downe the currant to the mouth of the Riuer, and to the entrie of the ſound, and in two dayes more at the fartheſt they hoped to croſſe the ſounde and to bee relieued by the weares, which two dayes they would faſt rather then be drawen backe a foote till they had ſeene the Mangoaks, either as friends or foes. This reſolution of theirs did not a little pleaſe mee, ſince it came of them ſelues, although for miſtruſt of that which afterwards did happen, I pretended to haue bene rather of the contrary opinion.

And that which made me moſt deſirous to haue ſome doings with the Mangoaks either in friendſhip or otherwiſe to haue had one or two of them priſoners, was, for ỹ is it a thing moſt notorious to all ỹ countrey, that there is a Prouince to the which the ſayd Mangoaks haue recourſe and traffike vp that Riuer of Morattico, which hath a maruellous and moſt ſtrange Minerall. This Mine is ſo notorious amongſt them, as not onely to the Sauages dwelling vp the ſayde riuer, A marueilous Mineral in the countrey of Chaunis Temoatan.

riuer, and also to the Sauages of Choanoke, and all them to the westward, but also to all them of the mayne: the countries name is of fame, and is called Chaunis Temoatan.

The mineral they say is Wassador, which is copper, but they call by the name of Wassador euery mettall whatsoeuer: they say it is of the couler of our copper, but our copper is better then theirs: and the reason is for that it is redder and harder, whereas that of Chaunis Temoatan is very soft, and pale: they say that they take the sayd mettall out of a riuer that falleth very swift from hie rocks, and hyls, and they take it in shallowe water: the manner is this. They take a great bowle by their discription as great as one of our targets, and wrap a skinne ouer the hollowe part thereof, leauing one part open to receiue in the mineralI: that done, they watch the comming downe of the currant, and the change of the couler of the water, and then suddenly chop downe the sayd bowle with the skin, and receiue into the same as much oare as will come in, which is euer as much as their bowle wil hold, which presently they cast into a fire, and forthwith it melteth, and doeth yeelde in 5. partes, at the first melting, two parts of metall for three partes of oare. Of this metall the Mangoaks haue so great store, by report of all the sauages adioyning, that they beautifie their houses with great plates of the same: and this to be true, I receiued by report of all the country, and particularly by yong Skiko, the king of Choanokes sonne my prisoner, who also himselfe had bene prisoner with the Mangoaks, and set downe all the particularities to mee before mentioned: but hee had not bene at Chawnis Temoatan himselfe: for he sayd, it was twentie dayes iourney ouerlande from the Mangoaks, to the saide minerall country, and that they passed though certaine other territories betweene them and the Mangoaks, before they came to the said country.

Upon reporte of the premisses, which I was very inquisitiue in all places where I came to take very particular information of, by all the sauages that dwelt towards those parts, and especially of Menatonon himselfe, who in euery thing did very particularly informe mee, and promised mee guides of his owne men, who shoulde passe ouer with mee, euen to the sayde country of Chaunis Temoatan, (for ouer lande from Choanok to the Mangoaks is but one dayes iourney from sunne rysing to sunne setting, whereas by water it is 7. daies with the soonest:) These things I say, made me verie desirous by all meanes possible to recouer the Mangoaks, & to get some of that their copper for an assay, and therefore I willingly yeelded to their resolution: But it fell out very contrarie to all expectation, and likelyhood: for after two dayes trauell, and our whole victual spent, lying on shoare all night, wee could neuer see man, onely fires wee might perceiue made alongst the shoare where we were to passe, and vp into the countrie vntill the very last day. In the euening whereof, about three of the clocke we heard certaine sauages call as we thought, Manteo, who was also at that time with mee in boate, whereof we all being verie glad, hoping of some friendly conference with them, and making him to answere them, they presently began a song, as we thought in token of our welcome to them: but Manteo presently betooke him to his peece, and tolde mee that they ment to fight with vs: which word was not so soone spoken by him, and the light horseman ready to put to shoare, but there lighted a vollie of their arrowes amongst them in the boate, but did no hurt God be thanked to any man. Immediatly, the other boate lying ready with their shot to skoure the place for our hand weapons to land vpon, which was presently done, although the lande was very high and steepe, the Sauages forthwith quitted the shoare, and betooke themselues to flight: we landed, and hauing sayre and easily followed for a smal time after them, who had wooded themselues we know not where: the sunne drawing then towards the setting, and being then assured that the next day, if wee would pursue them, though wee might happen to meete with them, yet we should bee assured to meete with none of their victuall, which we then had good cause to thinke of, therefore choosing for the companie a conuenient grounde in safetie to lodge in for the night, making a strong corps of garde, and putting out good centinels, I determined the next morning before the rising of the sunne to be going backe againe, if possibly wee might recouer the mouth of the riuer into the broade sownde, which at my first motion I found my whole companie ready to assent vnto: for they were nowe come to their dogs porredge, that they had bespoken for themselues, if that befell them which did, and I before did mistrust we should hardly escape. The ende was, we came the next day by night to the riuers mouth within 4. or 5. miles of the same, hauing rowed in one day downe the currant, as much as in 4. dayes we had done against the same: we lodged vpon an Illande, where wee had nothing in the worlde to eate but pottage of sassafras leaues, the like whereof for a meate was neuer vsed before as I thinke. The broad sownde wee had to passe, the next day all fresh and fasting: that day the winde blewe so strongly, and the billowes so great, that there was no possibilitie of passage without sinking of our boates. This was vpon Easter eue, which

A conflict begun by the Sauages.

The great currant of the Riuer of Moyotico.

which was faſted very truly. Upon Eaſter day in the morning the wind comming very calme, wee entred the ſownde, and by 4. of the clocke we were at Chipanum, where all the Sauages that wee had left there were fled, but their weares did yeelde vs ſome fiſh, as God was pleaſed not vtterly to ſuffer vs to be loſt: for ſome of our compaine of the light horſemen were far ſpent. The next morning we arriued at our home Roanoake.

I haue ſet downe this voyage ſomewhat particularly, to the ende it may appeare vnto you, (as true it is) that there wanted no great good will from the moſt to the leaſt amongſt vs, to haue perfited this diſcouerie of the mine: for that the diſcouery of a good mine, by the goodneſſe of God, or a paſſage to the Southſea, or ſomeway to it, and nothing els can bring this country in requeſt to be inhabited by our nation. And with the diſcouery of any of the two aboue ſhewed, it wilbe the moſt ſweete, and healthfulleſt climate, and there withall the moſt fertile ſoyle, being manured in the world: and then will Saſſafras, and many other rootes & gummes there found make good Marchandiſe and lading for ſhipping, which otherwiſe of themſelues will not bee worth the fetching.

Prouided alſo, that there be found out a better harborough then yet there is, which muſt bee to the Northward, if any there be, which was mine intention to haue ſpent this ſummer in the ſearch of, and of the mine of Chawnis Temoatan: the one I would haue done, if the barks that I ſhould haue had of S. Francis Drake, by his honorable curteſie, had not bene driuen away by ſtorme: the other if your ſupply of more men, and ſome other neceſſaries had come to vs in any conuenient ſufficiencie. For this riuer of Moratico promiſeth great things, and by the opinion of M. Harriots the heade of it by the deſcription of the country, either riſeth from the bay of Mexico, or els from very neere vnto the ſame, that openeth out into the South ſea.

And touching the Minerall, thus doth M. Vaughan affirme that though it be but copper, ſeeing the Sauages are able to melt it, it is one of the richeſt Minerals in the worlde.

Wherefore a good harborough founde to the Northward, as before is ſayd, and from thence foure dayes ouerland, to the riuer of Choanoak ſconſes being rayſed, from whence againe ouerlande through the prouince of Choanoak one dayes voyage to the firſt towne of the Mangoaks by the riuer of Moratico by the way, as alſo vpon the ſayd riuer for the defence of our boats like ſconſes being ſet, in this courſe of proceeding you ſhall cleare your ſelfe from all thoſe dangers and broad ſhallowe ſownds before mentioned, and gayne within foure dayes trauell into the heart of the mayne 200. myles at the leaſt, and ſo paſſe your diſcouerie into that moſt notable, and to the likelieſt partes of the mayne, with farre greater felicitie then otherwiſe can bee performed.

Thus ſir, I haue though ſimply, yet truely ſet downe vnto you, what my labour with the reſt of the gentlemen, and poore men of our company, (not without both payne, and perill which the lorde in his mercy many wayes deliuered vs from) could yeelde vnto you, which might haue bene performed in ſome more perfection, if the lorde had bene pleaſed that onely that which you had prouided for vs had at the firſt bene left with vs, or that he had not in his eternall prouidence now at the laſt ſet ſome other courſe in theſe things, then the wiſedome of man could looke into, which truely the carying away, by a moſt ſtrange, & vnlooked for ſtorme all our proviſion, with barks, maſter, Carryners, and ſundrie alſo of mine owne company, all hauing bene ſo curteouſly ſupplyed by the Generall S. Francis Drake, the ſame hauing bene moſt ſufficient to haue performed the greateſt part of the premiſſes, muſt euer make me to thinke, the hand of God only, for ſome his good purpoſe to my ſelfe yet vnknowne, to haue bene in the matter.

The ſecond part touching the conſpiracy of Pemiſapan, the diſcouerie of the ſame, and at the laſt, of our requeſt to depart with S. Francis Drake for England.

ENſenore a ſauage father to Pemiſapan being the only frend to our nation that we had amongſt them, and about the king, vpon the 20. of Aprill, 1586. hee alone, had before oppoſed himſelfe in their conſultations againſt al matters propoſed againſt vs, which both the king, and all the reſt of them after Grangemoes death, were very willing to haue preferred. And he was not onely by the meere prouidence of God during his life, a meane to ſaue vs from hurt, aſpoyſonings and ſuch like, but alſo to doe vs very great good, and ſingularly in this.

The king was aduiſed and of himſelfe diſpoſed, as a ready meane to haue aſſuredly brought

vs

vs to runne in the moneth of March, 1586. himselfe also with all his Sauages to haue runne away from vs, and to haue left his ground in the Island vnsowed, which if he had done, there had bene no possibilitie in common reason, (but by the immediate hand of God) that we could haue bene preserued from staruing out of hand. For at that time wee had no weares for fishe, neither could our men skill of the making of them, neither had wee one grayne of corne for seede to put into the ground.

In mine absence on my voyage that I had made against the Chaonists, and Mangoaks, they had raised a bruite among themselues, that I and my company were part slayne, and part starued by the Chaonists, and Mangoaks. One part of this tale was too true, that I and mine were like to be starued, but the other false.

Neuertheless vntill my returne, it tooke such effect in Pemisapans breast, and in those against vs, that they grew not onely into contempt of vs, but also (contrary to their former reuerend opinion in shew, of the almightie God of heauen, and Jesus Christ, whome wee serue and worship, whome before they woulde acknowledge and confesse the onely God:) nowe they began to blaspheme, and flatly to say, that our Lord God was not God, since hee suffered vs to sustaine much hunger, and also to be killed of the Renapoaks, for so they call by that generall name, all the inhabitants of the whole mayne, of what prouince soeuer. Insomuch as olde Ensenore, nether any of his fellowes, coulde for his sake haue no more credite for vs: and it came so farre that the King was resolued to haue presently gone away as is aforesaid.

But euen in the beginning of this bruite I returned, which when hee saw contrarie to his expectation, and the aduertisement that he had receiued: that not only my selfe, and my company were al safe, but also by report of his owne 3. sauages, which had bene with mee besides Manteo in that voyage, that is to say, Tetepano, his sisters husband Eracano, and Cosine, that the Chaonists, and Mangoaks, (whose name, and multitude besides their valour is terrible to al the rest of the prouinces) durst not for the most part of them abide vs, and that those that did abide vs were killed, and that we had taken Menatonon prisoner, and brought his sonne that he best loued to Roanoak with me, it did not a little asswage all deuises against vs: on the other side, it made Ensenors opinions to be receiued againe with greater respects. For hee had often before tolde them, and then renewed those his former speeches, both to the king and the rest, that wee were the seruants of God, and that wee were not subiect to be destroyed by them: but contrariwise, that they amongst them that sought our destruction, should finde their owne, and not be able to worke ours, and that we being dead men were able to doe them more hurt, then now we coulde do being aliue: an opinion very confidently at this day holden by the wisest amongst them, and of their olde men, as also, that they haue bene in the night, beeing 100. myles from any of vs in the ayre shot at, and stroken by some men of ours, that by sicknesse had dyed among them: and many of them holde opinion, that wee be dead men returned into the worlde againe, and that we doe not remayne dead but for a certaine time, and that then we returne againe.

All these speeches then againe grew in ful credite with them, the King and all touching vs, when hee saw the small troupe returned againe, and in that sort from those whose very names were terrible vnto them: but that which made vp the matter on our side for that time, was an accident, yea rather, (as all the rest was) the good prouidence of the Almightie for the sauing of vs, which was this.

Within certaine dayes after my returne from the said iourney, Menatonon sent a messenger to visite his sonne the prisoner with me, and sent me certaine pearle for a present, or rather as Pemisapan told me, for the ransome of his sonne, and therefore I refused them: but the greatest cause of his sending then, was to signifie vnto me, that hee had commaunded Okisko king of Weopomiok, to yelde himselfe seruant, and homager, to the great Weroanza of England, and after her to Sir Walter Raleigh: to performe which commandement receiued from Menatonon, the sayd Okisko ioyntly with this Menatonons messenger, sent foure and twentie of his principallest men to Roanoak to Pemisapan, to signifie that they were readie to performe the same, and so had sent those his men to let me knowe, that from that time forwarde hee, and his successours were to acknowledge her Maiestie their onely Soueraigne, and next vnto her, as is aforesayde.

All which being done, and acknowledged by them all, in the presence of Pemisapan his father, and all his Sauages in counsel then with him, it did for the time, thorowly (as it seemed) change him in disposition toward vs: Insomuch as forthwith Ensenore wan this resolution of him, that out of hand he should goe about, & withall, to cause his men to set vp weares forthwith for vs: both which he, at that present went in hand withal & did so labour the expedition of it, that

that in the end of April, he had sowed a good quantitie of ground, so much as had bene sufficient, to haue fed our whole company (God blessing the grouth) and that by the belly for a whole yere: besides that he gaue vs a certaine plot of grounde for our selues to sowe. All which put vs in marueilous comfort, if we could passe from Aprill, vntill the beginning of July, (which was to haue bene the beginning of their harueſt,) that then a newe supplie out of Englande or els our owne store would well inough maintayne vs: All our feare was of the two moneths betwixt, in which meane space, if the Sauages should not helpe vs with Cassada, and Chyna, and that our weares should fayle vs, (as often they did,) wee might very well starue, notwithstanding the growing corne, like the staruing horse in the stable, with the growing grasse as the prouerbe is, which we very hardly had escaped but onely by the hande of God, as it pleased him to try vs. For within few dayes after, as before is sayde Ensenore our friende dyed, who was no sooner dead, but certaine our great enemies about Pemisapan, as Osocan a Weroance, Tanaquiny and Wanchese most principally, were in hand again to put their old practises in vre against vs, which were readily imbraced, & al their former deuises against vs renewed, & new brought in question.

The beginning of their harueſt in Iulie.

But that of staruing vs, by their forbearing to sowe, was broken by Ensenore in his life, by hauing made the king all at one instant to sowe his grounde not onely in the Iſlande but also at Addesmocopeia in the mayne, within two leagues ouer against vs. Neuertheleſſe there wanted no store of mischeuous practises among them, and of all they resolued principally of this following.

The conſpiracie of Pemiſapan.

Firſt that Okisko, king of Weopomiok, with the Mandoages, should bee moued, and with great quantitie of copper intertayned to the number of seuen, or 800 bowes to the enterprise the matter thus to be ordred. They of Weopomiok should be inuited to a certaine kind of moneths minde which they do vse to solemnise in their Sauage maner for any great personage dead, and should haue bene for Ensenore. At this instant also should the Mandoaks, who were a great people with the Chesepians, and their friends to the number of 700. of them to be armed at a day appointed to the mayne of Addesmocopeio, and there lying close at the signe of fyers, which should interchangeably be made on both sides, whē Pemisapan w his troup aboue named should haue executed me, and some of our Weroances (as they called all our principall officers,) the mayne forces of the reſt should haue come ouer into the Iland where they ment to haue dispatched the reſt of the company, whome they did imagine to finde both dismaied and dispersed aboade in the Iſlande seeking of crabs, and fish to liue withall. The manner of their enterprise was this.

Tarraquine and Andacon two principall men about Pemisapan, and very luſtie fellowes with twentie more appointed to them had the charge of my person to see an order taken for the same, which they ment should in this sort haue bene executed. In the dead time of the night they would haue beset my house, and put fire in the reedes, that the same was couered with: meaning (as it was likelye) that my selfe woulde haue come running out of a sudden amazed in my shirt without armes, vpon the instant whereof they woulde haue knocked out my braynes.

The ſufficiencye of our men to deale against the Sauages, 10. to 100.

The same order was giuen to certaine of his fellowes, for M. Herriots: so for all the reſt of our better sort, all our houses at one instant being set on fire as afore is sayde, and that as well for them of the sorte, as for vs at the towne. Now to the end that we might be the fewer in number together, and so be the more eaſilie dealt withall (for in deede ten of vs with our armes prepared, were a terrour to a hundred of the beſt sort of them,) they agreed and did immediatly put it in practise, that they should not for any copper, sell vs any victuals whatsoeuer: besides that in the night they should send to haue our weares robbed, and also to cause them to be broken and once being broken neuer to be repayred againe by them. By this meanes the King stood assured, that I must bee enforced for lacke of sustenance, there to disband my company into sundry places to liue vpon shell fishe, for so the Sauages themselues doe, going to Ottorasko, Crotoan, and other places fishing and hunting, while their grounds be in sowing, and their corne growing, which fayled not his expectation. For the famine grewe so extreeme among vs, our weares fayling vs of fish, that I was enforced to send captaine Stafford with 20. with him to Crotoan my lord Admirals Iſland to serue two turnes in one, that is to say to feede himselfe, and his company, and also to keepe watch, if any shipping came vpon the coaſt to warne vs of the same. I sent master Prior with the Pynneſſe to Otteraſco, and ten with him, with the Prouoſt Marshal to liue there, and also to wayte for shipping: also I sent euery weeke 16. or 20. of the reſt of the companie to the mayne ouer against vs, to liue of Casada, and oysters.

The ſauages liue by fishing and hunting, till harueſt.

In the meane whi'e Pemisapan went of purpose to Addesmocopeio for 3. causes, the one, to see his grounds there broken vp, and sowed for a second croppe: the other to withdrawe himſelfe

selfe from my dayly sending to him for supply of victuall for my company, for hee was afrayde to denye me any thing, neither durst he in my presence but by colour, and with excuses, which I was content to accept for the time, meaning in the ende as I had reason, to giue him the iumpe once for all: but in the meane whiles, as I had euer done before, I and mine bare all wrongs, and accepted of all excuses.

My purpose was to haue relyed my selfe with Menatonon, and the Chaonists, who in truth as they are more valiant people and in greater number then the rest, so are they more faithfull in their promises, and since my late being there, had giuen many tokens of earnest desire they had to ioyne in perfect league with vs, and therefore were greatly offended with Pemisapan and Weopomiok for making him beleeue such tales of vs.

The third cause of his going to Addesmacopeio was to dispatch his messengers to Weopomiok, and to the Mandoages, as aforesaid, al which he did with great impresse of copper in hand, making large promises to them of greater spoyle.

The answere within fewe dayes after, came from Weopomiok, which was deuided into two parts. First for the King Okisko, who denyed to be of ꝑ partie for himselfe, or any of his especial followers, and therefore did immediatly retyre himselfe with his force into the mayne: the other was concerning the rest of the sayd prouince who accepted of it: and in like sort the Mandoags receiued the impresse.

The day of their assembly aforesayd at Roanoak, was appointed the 10. of July: all which the premises were discouered by Skyco, the king Menatonon his sonne my prisoner, who hauing once attempted to run away, I laid him in the bylboes, threatning to cut off his head, whome I remitted at Pemisapans request: whereupon he being perswaded that he was our enemie to the death, he did not only feede him with himselfe, but also made him acquainted with all his practises. On the other side, the yong man finding himself as well vsed at my hand, as I had meanes to shew, and that all my companie made much of him, he flatly discouered al vnto me, which also afterwards was reuealed vnto me by one of Pemisapans owne men, ꝑ night before he was slaine.

These mischiefes being al instantly vpon mee, and my companie to be put in execution, stood mee in hand to study how to preuent them, and also to saue all others, which were at that time as aforesaid so farre from me: whereupon I sent to Pemisapan to put suspition out of his heade, that I ment presently to goe to Croatoan, for that I had heard of the arriual of our fleete, (though I in trueth had neither heard nor hoped for so good aduenture,) and that I meant to come by him, to borrow of his men to fish for my company, and to hunt for me at Croatoan, as also to buy some foure dayes prouision to serue for my voyage.

He sent mee word that he would himselfe come ouer to Roanoak, but from day to day hee deferred, only to bring the Weopomioks with him, and the Mandoags, whose time appointed was within 8. dayes after. It was the last of May, 1586. when all his owne sauages began to make their assembly at Roanoak, at his commandement sent abroad vnto them, and I resolued not to stay longer vpon his comming ouer, since he ment to come with so good company, but thought good to go, and visite him with such as I had, which I resolued to do the next day: but that night I ment by the way to giue them in the Iland a Canuisado, and at the instant to seaze vpon all the Canoas about the Iland to keepe him from aduertisements.

But the towne tooke the allarum, before I ment it to them: the occasion was this. I had sent the Master of the light horsemen with a few with him, to gather vp all the Canoas in the setting of the sunne, & to take as many as were going from vs to Adesmocopeio, but to suffer any that came from thence to land: he met with a Canoa, going from the shoare, and ouerthrew the Canoa, and cut off 2. sauages heads: this was not done so secretly but hee was discouered from the shoare, whereupon the cry arose: for in trueth they, priuie to their owne villanous purposes against vs, held as good espial vpon vs, both day and night, as we did vpon them.

The slaughter, and surprise of the Sauages.

The allarum giuen, they tooke themselues to their bowes, and we to our armes: some three or foure of them at the first were slayne with our shot, the rest fled into ꝑ woods: The next morning with the light horseman, & one Canoa, taking 25. with the Colonel of the Chesepians, and the Seriant maior, I went to Adesmocopeio, and being landed sent Pemisapan word by one of his owne sauages that met me at the shore, that I was going to Croatoan, and ment to take him in the way to complaine vnto him of Osocon, who the night past was conueying away my prisoner, whom I had there present tied in an handlocke: hereupon the king did abide my comming to him, and finding my selfe amidst 7. or 8. of his principal Weroances, & followers, (not regarding any of the common sort) I gaue the watchword agreed vpon, (which was Christ our victory,) and immediatly those his chiefe men, and himselfe, had by the mercie of God for our deliuerance,

uerance, that which they had purpoſed for vs. The king himſelfe being ſhot thorow by the Colonell with a piſtoll lying on the ground for dead, & I looking as watchfully for the ſauing of Manteos friends, as others were buſie that none of the reſt ſhould eſcape, ſuddenly he ſtarted vp, and ran away as though he had not bene touched, inſomuch as he ouerran all the companie, being by the way ſhot thwart the buttocks by mine Iriſh boy with my Petronell. In the end an Iriſh man ſeruing me, one Nugent and the deputie prouoſt vndertooke him, and following him in the woods ouertooke him, and I in ſome doubt leaſt we had loſt both the king, and my man by our owne negligence to haue bene intercepted by the Sauages, we met him returning out of the woods with Pemiſapans head in his hand. Pemiſapan ſlaine.

This fell out the firſt of June, 1586. and the 8. of the ſame came aduertiſement to me from captaine Stafford, lying at my lord Admirals Iſland, that he had diſcouered a great Fleete of 23. ſailes: but whether they were friends or foes, he could not yet diſcerne, he aduiſed me to ſtand vpon as good gard as I could.

The 9. of the ſaid moneth, he himſelfe came vnto me, hauing that night before, and that ſame day trauelled by land 20. miles, and I muſt truly report of him from the firſt to the laſt, he was the gentleman that neuer ſpared labour or perill either by land or water, faire weather or foule, to performe any ſeruice committed vnto him.

He brought me a letter from the Generall ſir Francis Drake, with a moſt bountifull and honourable offer for the ſupplie of our neceſſities to the performance of the action, we were entered into, and that not onely of victuals, munition and clothing, but alſo of barkes, pinnaces and boates, they alſo by him to be victualled, manned, and furniſhed to my contentation. A letter from ſir Francis Drake.

The 10. day hee arriued in the road of our bad harborough, and comming there to an anker, the 11. day I came to him, whom I found in deeds moſt honourably to performe that which in writing and meſſage he had moſt curteouſly offered, he hauing aforehand propounded the matter to all the captains of his Fleete, and got their liking and conſent thereto.

With ſuch thanks vnto him and his captaines for his care both of vs and of our action, not as the matter deſerued, but as I could both for my companie and my ſelfe, I (being aforehand) prepared what I would deſire, craued at his hands that it would pleaſe him to take with him into England a number of weake, and vnfit men for my good action, which I would deliuer to him, and in place of them to ſupply me of his company, with oare men, artificers, and others. 1

That he would leaue vs ſo much ſhipping and victuall, as about Auguſt then next following, would carry me and all my companie into England, whē we had diſcouered ſomwhat that for lacke of needfull prouiſion in time left with vs as yet remained vndone. 2.

That it would pleaſe him withall to leaue ſome ſufficient maſters not onely to carry vs into England when time ſhould be, but alſo to ſearch the coaſt for ſome better harborow if there were any, and eſpecially to helpe vs to ſome ſmall boats and oare men. 3

Alſo for a ſupplie of calieuers, handweapons, match and lead, tooles, apparell, and ſuch like. 4

He hauing receiued theſe my requeſts according to his vſuall commendable maner of gouernement (as it was told me) calling his captaines to counſell, the reſolution was that I ſhould ſend ſuch of my officers of my companie, as I vſed in ſuch matters, with their notes to goe aboord with him, which were the maſter of the victuals, the keeper of the ſtore, and the Vicetreaſurer, to whom he appointed forthwith for me the Francis, being a very proper barke of 70. tunnes, and tooke preſent order for bringing of victuall aboord her for 100. men for foure moneths withall my other demaunds whatſoeuer, to the vttermoſt.

And further appointed for me two fine pinnaces, and 4. ſmall boats, and that which was to performe all his former liberalitie towards vs, was that he had gotten the full aſſents of two of as ſufficient experimented maſters as were any in his fleete, by iudgement of them that knewe them, with very ſufficient gings to tarie with mee, and to employ themſelues moſt earneſtly in the action, as I ſhould appoynt them, vntill the terme which I promiſed of our returne into England agayne. The names of one of thoſe maſters was Abraham Kendall, the other Griffith Herne.

While theſe things were in hand, the prouiſion aforeſayd being brought, and in bringing aboord, my ſayd maſters being alſo gone aboord, my ſayd barkes hauing accepted of their charge, and mine owne officers with others in like ſort of my company with thē, all which was diſpatched by the ſaid Generall the 12. of the ſaid moneth: the 13. of the ſame there aroſe ſuch an vnwonted ſtorme, and continued foure dayes that had like to haue driuen all on ſhore, if the Lord had not held his holy hand ouer them, and the generall very prouidently foreſeene the worſt himſelfe, then about my diſpatch putting himſelfe aboord: but in the ende hauing driuen ſundry of the Fleete to

put to sea the Francis also with all my prouisions, my two masters, and my companie aboord, shee was seene to be free from the same, and to put cleare to sea.

This storme hauing continued from the 13. to the 16. of the moneth, and thus my barke put away as aforesayd, the Generall comming a shore, made a new proffer to me, which was a shippe of 170. tunnes, called the Barke Bonner, with a sufficient master and guide to carie with mee the time appointed, and victualled sufficiently to carie mee and my companie into England with all prouisions as before: but hee tolde mee that hee would not for any thing vndertake to haue her brought into our harbour, and therefore hee was to leaue her in the roade, and to leaue the care of the rest vnto my selfe, and aduised mee to consider with my companie of our case, and to deliuer presently vnto him in writing, what I would require him to doe for vs: which being within his power, hee did assure me as well for his Captaines, as for himselfe should be most willingly performed.

Hereupon calling such Captaines and Gentlemen of my companie as then were at hand, who were all as priuie as my selfe to the Generals offer, their whole request was to mee, that considering the case that we stood in, the weakenesse of our companie, the small number of the same, the carying away of our first appointed barke, with those two especiall masters, with our principall prouisions in the same, by the very hand of God as it seemed, stretched out to take vs from thence: considering also, that his second offer, though most honourable of his part, yet of ours not to be taken, insomuch as there was no possibilitie for her with any safetie to be brought into the harbour: Seeing furthermore our hope for supplie with sir Richard Greenuill so vndoubtedly promised vs before Easter, not yet come, neither then likely to come this yeere considering the doings in England for Flaunders, as also for America, that therefore I would resolue my selfe, with my companie to goe into England in that Fleete, and accordingly to make request to the Generall in all our names, that he would bee pleased to giue vs present passage with him. Which request of ours by my selfe deliuered vnto him, hee most readily assented vnto, and so hee sending immediately his pinnaces vnto our Iland for the fetching away of fewe that there were left with our baggage, the weather was so boysterous, and the pinnaces so often on ground, that the most of all wee had, with all our Cardes, Bookes and writings, were by the Saylers cast ouer boord, the greater number of the Fleete being much agrieued with their long and daungerous abode in that miserable road.

From whence the Generall in the name of the Almightie, waying his ankers (hauing bestowed vs among his Fleete) for the reliefe of whom hee had in that storme sustained more perill of wracke then in all his former most honourable actions against the Spaniards, with praises vnto God for all, set saile the 19. of June, 1586. and arriued in Portesmouth, the of July the same yeere.

The third voyage made by a Ship, sent in the yeere 1586.

to the relief of the Colonie planted in Virginia, at the sole charges of Sir Walter Raleigh.

IN the yeere of our Lord, 1586. sir Walter Raleigh at his owne charge prepared a ship of 100. tunnes, fraighted with all maner of things in most plentiful maner for the supplie and relief of his Colonie then remaining in Virginia: but before they set saile from England, it was after Easter, so that our Colonie halfe dispaired of the comming of any supplie, wherefore euery man prepared for himself, determining resolutely to spend the residue of their life time in that countrey, and for the better performaunce of this their determination, they sowed, planted, and set such things as were necessarie for their relief in so plentifull a maner, as might haue suffised them two yeeres without any further labor: thus trusting to their owne harueft they passed the summer till the tenth of June, at which time their corne which they had sowed was within one fortnight of reaping, but then it happened, that Sir Frauncis Drake in his prosperous returne from the sacking of Saint Domingo, Cartagena, and Saint Augustines determined in his way homeward to visit his countrymen the English Colonie then remayning in Virginia: so passing along the coastes of Florida, he fell with the partes, where our English Colony inhabited, and hauing espyed some of that company, there he ankered, and went alande where he conferred with them of their state and welfare, and howe thinges had past with them: they answered him that they liued all, but hitherto in some scarsitie, and as yet coulde here of no supplye out of England: therefore they requested him that he would leaue with them some two or three shippes, that if in

some

ſome reaſonable time they heard not out of England, they might then return themſelues: which hee agreed to: whileſt ſome were then writing their letters to ſend into England, and ſome others making repoꝛtes of the accidentes of their trauels each to other, ſome on lande, ſome on booꝛd, a great ſtoꝛme aroſe, and dꝛoue the moſt of their fleete from their ankers to Sea, in which ſhippes, at that inſtant were the chiefeſt of the Engliſh Colony: the reſt on land perceiuing this, haſted to thoſe thꝛee ſayles which were appointed to be left there, and foꝛ feare they ſhould be left behinde, left all thinges ſo confuſedly, as if they had bene chaſed from thence by a mightie armie, and no doubt ſo they were, foꝛ the hande of God came vpon them foꝛ the crueltie, and outrages committed by ſome of them againſt the natiue inhabitantes of that Countrie.

Immediatly after the departing of our Engliſh Colonie out of this paradiſe of the woꝛlde, the ſhippe aboue mentioned ſent, and ſet foꝛth at the charges of Sir VValter Ralegh, and his direction, arriued at Hatoraſk, who after ſome time ſpent in ſeeking our Colony vp in the Countrie, and not finding them, returned with all the afoꝛeſayd pꝛouiſion into England. June.

About fourteene oꝛ fifteene daies after the departure of the afoꝛeſayd ſhippe, Sir Richard Grindfield Generall of Virginia, accompanied with thꝛee ſhippes well appointed foꝛ the ſame voyage arriued there, who not finding the afoꝛeſaid ſhip according to his expectation, noꝛ hearing any newes of our Engliſh Colony, there ſeated, and left by him, Anno 1585. him ſelfe trauailing vp into diuers places of the Countrey, as well to ſee if he could here any newes of the Colony left there by him the yere befoꝛe, vnder the charge of Maſter Lane his deputie, as alſo to diſcouer ſome places of the Countrie: but after ſome time ſpent therein not hearing any newes of them, and finding the place which they inhabited deſolate, yet vnwilling to looſe the poſſeſſion of the Countrie, which Engliſhmen had ſo long holde: after good deliberation he determined to leaue ſome men behinde to retaine poſſeſſion of the Country: whereupon he landed 15. men in the Ile of Roanoake furniſhed plentifully with all maner of pꝛouiſion foꝛ two yeeres, and ſo departed foꝛ England. Sir Richard Grindfield his voyage.

Not long after he fell with the Iſles of Açores, on ſome of which Ilandes he landed, and ſpoyled the Townes of all ſuch thinges as were woꝛth cariage, where alſo he tooke diuers Spanyardes: with theſe, and many other exploytes done by him in this voyage, as well outwarde as homeward, he returned into England.

A briefe and true report of the new found land of Virginia: of the *commodities there found and to be raiſed, as well merchantable as others*:

Written by Thomas Harriot, ſeruaunt to Sir Walter Raleigh, a member of the Colonie, and there imployed in diſcouering, a full twelue moneth.

Rafe Lane one of her Maieſties Equieres and Gouernour of the Colonie in Virginia aboue mentioned for the time there reſident, To the gentle Reader, wiſheth all happineſſe in the Lord.

ALbeit (gentle Reader) the credite of the reports in this treatiſe contained, can litle be furthered by the teſtimonie of one as my ſelfe, through affection iudged partiall, though without deſert: Neuertheleſſe, foꝛſomuch as I haue bene requeſted by ſome my particular friends, who conceiue more rightly of me, to deliuer freely my knowledge of the ſame, not onely for the ſatisfying of them, but alſo for the true information of any other who ſoeuer, that comes not with a preiudicate minde to the reading thereof: Thus much vpon my credite I am to affirme, that things vniuerſally are ſo truely ſet downe in this treatiſe by the authour thereof, an Actor in the Colonie and a man no leſſe for his honeſtie then learning commendable, as that I dare boldly auouche, it may very well paſſe with the credite of trueth euen amongſt the moſt true relations of this age. Which as for mine owne part I am readie any way with my worde to acknowledge, ſo alſo (of the certaintie thereof aſſured by mine owne experience) with this my publique aſſertion, I doe affirme the ſame. Farewell in the Lord.

To the Aduenturers, Fauourers, and Welwillers of the enterpriſe for the inhabiting and planting in Virginia.

SInce the firſt vndertaking by ſir Walter Ralegh to deale in the action of diſcouering of that Countrey which is now called and knowen by the name of Virginia, many voiages hauing bene thither made at ſundry times to his great charge, as firſt in the yeere 1584. and afterwards in the yeeres 1585, 1586. and now of late this laſt yeere of 1587. There haue bene diuers and variable reportes, with ſome ſlaunderous and ſhamefull ſpeaches bruited abroad by many that returned from thence. Eſpecially of that diſcouerie which was made by the Colonie tranſported by Sir Richard Greenuill in the yeere 1585. being of all the others the moſt principall and as yet of moſt effect, the time of their abode in the countrey being a whole yeere, when as in the other voiage before they ſtaied but ſixe weekes, and the others after were onely for ſupplie and tranſportation, nothing more being diſcouered then had bene before. Which reports haue not done a litle wrong to many that otherwiſe would haue alſo fauoured and aduentured in the action, to the honour and benefite of our nation, beſides the particular profite and credite which would redound to themſelues the dealers therein, as I hope by the ſequell of euents to the ſhame of thoſe that haue auouched the contrary ſhall be manifeſt, if you the aduenturers, fauourers and welwillers doe but either increaſe in number, or in opinion continue, or hauing bene doubtfull, renew your good liking and furtherance to deale therein according to the worthineſſe thereof alreadie found, and as you ſhall vnderſtand hereafter to be requiſite. Touching which worthineſſe through cauſe of the diuerſitie of relations and reports, many of your opinions could not be firme, nor the mindes of ſome that are well diſpoſed, be ſetled in any certaintie.

I haue therefore thought it good beyng one that haue bene in the diſcouerie, and in dealing with the naturall inhabitaunts ſpecially imployed: and hauing therefore ſeene and knowen more then the ordinarie, to impart ſo much vnto you of the fruits of our labours, as that you may know how iniuriouſly the enterpriſe is ſlaundered, and that in publique maner at this preſent, chiefly for two reſpects.

Firſt, that ſome of you which are yet ignorant or doubtfull of the ſtate thereof, may ſee that there is ſufficient cauſe why the chiefe enterpriſer with the fauour of her Maieſtie, notwithſtanding ſuch reportes, hath not onely ſince continued the action by ſending into the countrey againe, and replanting this laſt yeere a new Colonie, but is alſo readie, according as the times and means will afforde, to folow and proſecute the ſame.

Secondly, that you ſeeing and knowing the continuance of the action, by the view hereof you may generally know and learne what the countrey is, and thereupon conſider how your dealing therein if it proceed, may returne you profite and gaine, be it either by inhabiting and planting, or otherwiſe in furthering thereof.

And leaſt that the ſubſtance of my relation ſhould be doubtfull vnto you, as of others by reaſon of their diuerſitie, I will firſt open the cauſe in a few words wherefore they are ſo different, referring my ſelf to your fauourable conſtructions, and to be adiudged of as by good conſideration you ſhall find cauſe.

Of our companie that returned ſome for their miſdemeanour and ill dealing in the countrey, haue bene there worthily puniſhed, who by reaſon of their bad natures, haue maliciouſly not onely ſpoken ill of their Gouernours, but for their ſakes ſlaundered the countrey it ſelfe. The like alſo haue thoſe done which were of their conſort.

Some being ignorant of the ſtate thereof, notwithſtanding ſince their returne amongſt their friends and acquaintance, and alſo others, eſpecially if they were in companie where they might not be gaineſayd, would ſeeme to know ſo much as no men more, and make no men ſo great trauellers as themſelues. They ſtoode ſo much, as it may ſeeme, vpon their credite and reputation, that hauing bene a twelue moneth in the countrey, it would haue bene a great diſgrace vnto them as they thought, if they could not haue ſayd much whether it were true or falſe. Of which ſome haue ſpoken of more then euer they ſawe, or otherwiſe knew to be there: Other ſome haue not bene aſhamed to make abſolute denial of that, which although not by them, yet by others is moſt certainly and there plentifully knowen, and other ſome make difficulties of thoſe things they haue no ſkill of.

The cauſe of their ignorance was, in that they were of that many, that were neuer out of the Iſland where wee were ſeated, or not farre, or at the leaſt wiſe in few places els, during the time of our abode in the countrey, or of that many, that after golde and ſiluer was not ſo ſoone

found,

found, as it was by them looked for, had litle or no care of any other thing but to pamper their bellies, or of that many which had litle vnderſtanding, leſſe diſcretion, and more tongue then was needfull or requiſite.

Some alſo were of a nice bringing vp, only in cities or townes, or ſuch as neuer (as I may ſay) had ſeene the world before. Becauſe there were not to be found any Engliſh cities, nor ſuch faire houſes, nor at their owne wiſh any of their old accuſtomed daintie food, nor any ſoft beds of downe or feathers, the countrey was to them miſerable, and their reports thereof according.

Becauſe my purpoſe was but in briefe to open the cauſe of the varietie of ſuch ſpeeches, the particularities of them, and of many enuious, malicious and ſlanderous reports and deuiſes els, by our owne countreymen beſides, as trifles that are not woorthie of wiſe men to bee thought vpon, I meane not to trouble you withal, but wil paſſe to the commodities, the ſubſtance of that which I haue to make relation of vnto you.

The treatiſe whereof for your more readie view and eaſier vnderſtanding, I will diuide into three ſpeciall partes. In the firſt I will make declaration of ſuch commodities there already found or to bee raiſed, which will not onely ſerue the ordinarie turnes of you which are and ſhall be the planters and inhabitaunts, but ſuch an ouerplus ſufficiently to be yeelded, or by men of ſkill to be prouided, as by way of traffique and exchaunge with our owne nation of England, will enrich your ſelues the prouiders: thoſe that ſhall deale with you, the enterpriſers in generall, and greatly profite our owne countrymen, to ſupplie them with moſt things which heretofore they haue bene faine to prouide either of ſtrangers or of our enemies, which commodities for diſtinction ſake, I call Merchantable.

In the ſecond, I will ſet downe all the commodities which we know the countrey by our experience doth yeeld of it ſelfe for victuall and ſuſtenance of mans life, ſuch as is vſually fed vpon by the inhabitants of the countreys, as alſo by vs during the time we were there.

In the laſt part I will make mention generally of ſuch other commodities beſides, as I am able to remember, and as I ſhall thinke behoouefull for thoſe that ſhall inhabite, and plant there to know of, which ſpecially concerne building, as alſo ſome other neceſſarie vſes: with a briefe deſcription of the nature and maners of the people of the countrey.

The firſt part of Marchantable commodities.

Silke of graſſe, or graſſe Silke. There is a kinde of graſſe in the countrey, vpon the blades whereof there groweth very good Silke in forme of a thinne glittering ſkinne to bee ſtript off. It groweth two foote and an halfe high or better: the blades are about two foote in length, and halfe inche broad. The like groweth in Perſia, which is in the ſelfe ſame climate as Virginia, of which very many of the Silke workes that come from thence into Europe are made. Hereof if it be planted and ordered as in Perſia, it cannot in reaſon bee otherwiſe, but that there will riſe in ſhort time great profite to the dealers therein, ſeeing there is ſo great vſe and vent thereof as well in our countrey as elſewhere. And by the meanes of ſowing and planting it in good ground, it will be farre greater, better, and more plentifull then it is. Although notwithſtanding there is great ſtore thereof in many places of the countrey growing naturally and wild, which alſo by proofe here in England, in making a piece of ſilke Grogran, we found to be excellent good.

Worme Silke. In many of our iourneys wee found Silke wormes faire and great, as big as our ordinarie Walnuts. Although it hath not bene our happe to haue found ſuch plentie as elſewhere to be in the countrey wee haue heard of, yet ſeeing that the countrey doeth naturallie breed and nouriſh them, there is no doubt but if Arte be added in planting of Mulberie trees and others fit for them in commodious places, for their feeding and nouriſhing, and ſome of them carefully gathered and husbanded in that ſort, as by men of ſkill is knowen to be neceſſarie: there will riſe as great profit in time to the Virginians, as thereof doeth now to the Perſians, Turkes, Italians and Spaniards.

Flaxe and Hempe. The truth is, that of Hempe and Flaxe there is no great ſtore in any one place together, by reaſon it is not planted but as the ſoyle doeth yeeld of it ſelfe: and how ſo euer the leafe and ſtemme or ſtalke doe differ from ours, the ſtuffe by iudgement of men of ſkill is altogether as good as ours. And if not, as further proofe ſhould finde otherwiſe, we haue that experience of the ſoyle, as that there cannot bee ſhewed any reaſon to the contrary, but that it will growe there excellent well, and by planting will bee yeelded plentifully, ſeeing there is ſo much ground whereof ſome may well bee applied to ſuch purpoſes. What benefite

hereof may grow in cordage and linnens who cannot easily vnderstand.

Allum. There is a veine of earth along the sea coast for the space of fortie or fiftie miles, whereof by the iudgement of some that haue made triall here in England, is made good Allum, of that kind which is called Roche Allum. The richnesse of such a commoditie is so well knowen, that I needs not to say any thing thereof. The same earth doeth also yeeld White Copresse, Nitrum, and Alumen plumeum, but nothing so plentifully as the common Allum, which be also of price and profitable.

Wapeih. A kind of earth so called by the naturall inhabitants, very like to Terra sigillata, and hauing bene refined, it hath bene found by some of our Phisitions and Chirurgions, to bee of the same kind of vertue, and more effectuall. The inhabitants vse it very much for the cure of sores and wounds: there is in diuers places great plentie, and in some places of a blew sort.

Pitch, Tarre, Rozen and Turpentine. There are those kindes of trees which yeeld them abundantly and great store. In the very same Iland where we were seated, being fifteene miles of length, and fiue or six miles in breadth, there are few trees els but of the same kind, the whole Iland being full.

Sassafras. Called by the inhabitants Winauk, a kinde of wood of most pleasaunt and sweete smell, and of most rare vertues in phisike for the cure of many diseases. It is found by experience to bee farre better and of more vses then the Wood which is called Guaiacum, or Lignum vitæ. For the description, the maner of vsing, and the manifold vertues thereof, I referre you to the Booke of Monardus, translated and entituled in English, The ioyfull newes from the West Indies.

Cedar. A very sweete wood and fine timber, whereof if nestes of chestes be there made, or timber thereof fitted for sweete and fine bedsteads, tables, deskes, lutes, virginals and many things els, (of which there hath bene proofe made alreadie) to make vp fraight with other principal commodities, will yeeld profite.

Wine. There are two kindes of grapes that the soile doeth yeeld naturally, the one is small and sowre of the ordinarie bignesse as ours in England, the other farre greater and of himselfe lushious sweete. When they are planted and husbanded as they ought, a principall commoditie of wines by them may be raised.

Oile. There are two sortes of Walnuts both holding oyle, but the one farre more plentifull then the other. When there are mils and other deuises for the purpose, a commoditie of them may be raised because there are infinite store. There are also three seuerall kindes of Berries in the fourme of Oke akornes, which also by the experience and vse of the inhabitaunts, wee finde to yeeld very good and sweete oyle. Furthermore, the Beares of the countrey are commonly very fat, and in some places there are many. Their fatnesse because it is so liquid, may well bee termed oyle, and hath many speciall vses.

Furres. All along the Sea coast there are great store of Otters, which being taken by weires and other engines made for the purpose, wil yeeld good profite. We hope also of Marterne furres, and make no doubt by the relation of the people, but that in some places of the country there are store, although there were but two skins that came to our hands. Luzarnes also wee haue vnderstanding of, although for the time we saw none.

Deere skinnes dressed after the maner of Chamoes or vndressed, are to be had of the naturall inhabitants thousands yeerely by way of traffique for trifles, and no more waste or spoile of Deere then is and hath bene ordinarily in time before.

Ciuet cats. In our trauels there was found one to haue bene killed by a saluage or inhabitant, and in another place the smell where one or more had lately bene before, whereby wee gather besides then by the relation of the people, that there are some in the countrey: good profite will rise by them.

Iron. In two places of the countrey specially, one about fourescore, and the other sixe score miles from the Forte or place where wee dwelt, wee founde neere the water side the ground to bee rockie, which by the triall of a Minerall man, was found to holde iron richly. It is found in many places of the countrey els, I know nothing to the contrarie, but that it may bee allowed for a good merchauntable commoditie, considering there the small charge for the labour and feeding of men: the infinite store of wood, the want of wood and deerenesse thereof in England, and the necessitie of ballasting of ships.

Copper. An hundred and fiftie miles into the maine, in two townes we found with the inhabitaunts diuers small plates of Copper, that had bene made as wee vnderstoode by the inhabitaunts that dwell further into the Countrey, where as they say are mountaynes and Riuers

that

that yeeld also white graines of mettall, which is to be deemed siluer. For confirmation whereof, at the time of our first arriuall in the country, I saw with some others with me, two small pieces of siluer grosly beaten, about the weight of of a testrone, hanging in the eares of a Wiroans or Chiefe Lord that dwelt about fourescore miles from vs: of whome through enquiry, by the number of dayes e the way, I learned that it had come to his hands from the same place or neere, where I after vnderstood the copper was made, and the white graines of mettall found. The aforesaid copper we also found by triall to holde siluer.

Pearle: Sometimes in feeding on muscles we found some pearle: but it was our happe to meet with ragges, or of a pide colour: not hauing yet discouered those places where we heard of better and more plenty. One of our company, a man of skill in such matters, had gathered together from among the Sauage people about fiue thousand: of which number he chose so many as made a kayre chaine, which for their likenesse and vniformity in roundnesse, orientnesse, and pidenesse of many excellent colours, with equalitie in greatnesse, were very kayre and rare: and had therefore beene presented to her Maiesty, had we not by casualty, and through extremity of a storme lost them, with many things els in comming away from the country.

Sweet gummes of diuers kindes, and many other Apothecary druggs, of which we will make speciall mention, when we shall receiue it from such men of skill in that kinde, that in taking reasonable paines shall discouer them more particularly then we haue done, and then now I can make relation of, for want of the examples I had prouided and gathered, and are now lost, with other things by casualty before mentioned.

Dies of diuers kindes: There is Shoemake well knowne, and vsed in England for blacke: the seed of an herbe called Wasebur, little small roots called Chappacor, and the barke of the tree called by the inhabitants Tangomockonomindge: which Dies are for diuers sorts of red: their goodnesse for our English clothes remaine yet to be prooued. The inhabitants vse them only for the dying of hayre, and colouring of their faces, and mantles made of Deere skinnes: and also for the dying of rushes to make artificiall works withall in their mats and baskets: hauing no other thing besides that they account of, apt to vse them for. If they will not prooue merchantable, there is no doubt but the planters there shall finde apt vses for them, as also for other colours which we know to be there.

Woad: a thing of so great vent and vses amongst English Diers, which can not be yeelded sufficiently in our owne country for spare of ground, may be planted in Virginia, there being ground enough. The growth thereof neede not to be doubted, when as in the Islands of the Azores it groweth plentifully, which is in the same climate. So likewise of Madder.

We caryed thither Suger canes to plant, which being not so well preserued as was requisite, and besides the time of the yeere being past for their setting when we arriued, we could not make that proofe of them as we desired. Notwithstanding, seeing that they grow in the same climate, in the South part of Spaine, and in Barbary, our hope in reason may yet continue. So likewise for Orenges and Limmons: there may be planted also Quinses. Whereby may grow in reasonable time if the action be diligently prosecuted, no small commodities in Sugers, Suckets, and Marmelades.

Many other commodities by planting may there also be raised, which I leaue to your discreet and gentle considerations: and many also may be there, which yet we haue not discouered. Two more commodities of great value, one of certainty, and the other in hope, not to be planted, but there to be raised, and in short time to be prouided and prepared, I might haue specified. So likewise of those commodities already set downe, I might haue said more: as of the particular places where they are found, and best to be planted and prepared: by what meanes, and in what reasonable space of time they might be raised to profit, and in what proportion: but because others then wellwillers might be therewithall acquainted, not to the good of the action, I haue wittingly omitted them: knowing that to those that are well disposed, I haue vttered according to my promise and purpose, for this part sufficient.

The

The ſecond part of ſuch commodities as Virginia is knowen to *yeeld, for victuall and ſuſtenance of mans life, vſually fed vpon by* the naturall inhabitants: as alſo by vs, during the time of our aboad. And firſt of ſuch as are ſowed and husbanded.

PAgatowr, a kinde of graine ſo called by the inhabitants: the ſame in the Weſt Indies is called Mayze: Engliſh men call it Guinney wheat, or Turkie wheat, according to the names of the countries from whence the like hath bene brought. The graine is about the bignelle of our ordinary Engliſh peaze, and not much different in forme and ſhape: but of diuers colours: ſome white, ſome red, ſome yellow, and ſome blew. All of them yeeld a very white and ſweete flowre: being vſed according to his kinde, it maketh a very good bread. We made of the ſame in the countrey ſome mault, whereof was brued as good ale as was to be deſired. So likewiſe by the helpe of hops, thereof may be made as good beere. It is a graine of maruellous great increaſe: of a thouſand, fifteene hundred, and ſome two thouſand folde. There are three ſorts, of which two are ripe in eleuen and twelue weeks at the moſt, ſometimes in tenne, after the time they are ſet, and are then of height in ſtalke about ſixe or ſeuen foot. The other ſort is ripe in fourteene, and is about tenne foot high, of the ſtalks, ſome beare foure heads, ſome three, ſome one, and two: euery head conteining fiue, ſixe, or ſeuen hundred graines, within a few more or leſſe. Of theſe graines, beſides bread, the inhabitants make victuall, either by parching them, or ſeething them whole vntill they be broken: or boiling the flowre with water into a pappe.

Okindgier, called by vs Beanes, becauſe in greatneſſe and partly in ſhape they are like to the beanes in England, ſauing that they are flatter, of more diuers colours, and ſome pide. The leafe alſo of the ſtemme is much different. In taſte they are altogether as good as our Engliſh peaze.

Wickonzowr, called by vs Peaze, in reſpect of the beanes for diſtinction ſake, becauſe they are much leſſe, although in forme they little differ: but in goodneſſe of taſte much like, and are farre better then our Engliſh peaze. Both the beanes and peaze are ripe in tenne weeks after they are ſet. They make them victuall either by boiling them all to pieces into a broth, or boiling them whole vntill they be ſoft, and begin to breake, as is vſed in England, either by themſelues, or mixtly together: ſometime they mingle of the wheat with them: ſometime alſo, being whole ſodden, they bruſe or punne them in a morter, and thereof make loaues or lumps of do wiſh bread, which they vſe to eat for variety.

Macocquer, according to their ſeuerall formes, called by vs Pompions, Mellions, and Gourds, becauſe they are of the like formes as thoſe kindes in England. In Virginia ſuch of ſeuerall formes are of one taſte, and very good, and do alſo ſpring from one ſeed. There are of two ſorts: one is ripe in the ſpace of a moneth, and the other in two moneths.

There is an herbe which in Dutch is called Melden. Some of thoſe that I deſcribe it vnto, take it to be a kinde of Orage: it groweth about foure or fiue foot high: of the ſeed thereof they make a thicke broth, and pottage of a very good taſte: of the ſtalke by burning into aſhes they make a kinde of ſalt earth, wherewithall many vſe ſometimes to ſeaſon their broths: other ſalt they know not. We our ſelues vſed the leaues alſo for potherbs.

There is alſo another great herbe, in forme of a Marigolde, about ſixe foot in height, the head with the floure is a ſpanne in breadth. Some take it to be Planta Solis: of the ſeeds hereof they make both a kinde of bread and broth.

All the aforeſaid commodities for victuall are ſet or ſowed, ſometimes in grounds apart and ſeuerally by themſelues, but for the moſt part together in one ground mixtly: the maner therof, with the meſſing and preparing of the ground, becauſe I will note vnto you the fertility of the ſoile, I thinke good briefly to deſcribe.

The ground they neuer fatten with mucke, doong, or any other thing, neither plow nor digge it as we in England, but onely prepare it in ſort as followeth. A few dayes before they ſowe or ſet, the men with woodden inſtruments, made almoſt in forme of mattocks or hoes with long handles: the women with ſhort peckers or parers, becauſe they vſe them ſitting, of a foot long and about fiue inches in breadth, doe onely breake the vpper part of the ground to rayſe vp the weedes, graſſe, and olde ſtubbes of corne ſtalkes with their roots. The which after a day or twoes drying in the Sunne, being ſcrapt vp into many ſmall heaps, to ſaue them labour for carrying them away, they burne into aſhes. (And whereas ſome may thinke that they vſe the aſhes for to better

better the groũd: I ſay that then they would either diſperſe the aſhes abroad, which we obſerued they do not, except the heaps be too great: or els would take ſpeciall care to ſet their corne where the aſhes lie, which alſo we finde they are careleſſe of.) And this is all the huſbanding of their ground that they vſe.

Then their ſetting or ſowing is after this maner. Firſt for their corne, beginning in one corner of the plot, with a pecker they make a hole, wherein they put foure graines, with that care they touch not one another (about an inch aſunder) and couer them with the moulde againe: and ſo throughout the whole plot, making ſuch holes, and vſing them after ſuch maner: but with this regard, that they be made in ranks, euery ranke differing from other halfe a fathome or a yard, and the holes alſo in euery ranke, as much. By this meanes there is a yard ſpare ground betweene euery hole: where according to diſcretion heere and there, they ſet as many beanes and peaze: in diuers places alſo among the ſeeds of Macocquer, Melden, and Planta ſolis.

The ground being thus ſet according to the rate, by vs experimented, an Engliſh acre conteining fortie pearches in length, and foure in breedth, doth there yeeld in croppe or encrome of corne, beanes and peaze, at the leaſt two hundreth London buſhels: beſides the Macocquer, Melden, and Planta ſolis: when as in England fortie buſhels of our wheat yeelded out of ſuch an acre, is thought to be much.

I thought alſo good to note this vnto you, that you which ſhall inhabite, and plant there, may know how ſpecially that countrey corne is there to be preferred before ours: Beſides, the manifolde wayes in applying it to victuall, the increaſe is ſo much, that ſmall labor and paines is neceſſary in reſpect that muſt be vſed for ours. For this I can aſſure you, that according to the rate we haue made proofe of, one man may prepare and huſband ſo much ground (hauing once borne corne before) with leſſe then foure and twentie houres labour, as ſhall yeeld him victuall in a large proportion for a twelue moneth, if he haue nothing elſe but that which the ſame ground will yeeld, and of that kinde onely which I haue before ſpoken of: the ſayd ground being alſo but of fiue and twentie yards ſquare. And if need require, but that there is ground enough, there might be raiſed out of one and the ſelfeſame ground two harueſts or encromes: for they ſow or ſet, and may at any time when they thinke good, from the midſt of March vntill the end of June: ſo that they alſo ſet when they haue eaten of their firſt croppe. In ſome places of the countrey notwithſtanding they haue two harueſts, as we haue heard, out of one and the ſame ground.

For Engliſh corne neuertheleſſe, whether to vſe or not to vſe it, you that inhabite may do as you ſhall haue farther cauſe to thinke beſt. Of the growth you need not to doubt: for barly, oats, and peaze, we haue ſeene proofe of, not being purpoſely ſowen but fallen caſually in the worſt ſort of ground, and yet to be as fayre as any we haue euer ſeene heere in England. But of wheat, becauſe it was muſty, and had taken ſalt water, we could make no triall: and of rie we had none. Thus much haue I digreſſed, and I hope not vnneceſſarily: now will I returne againe to my courſe, and intreat of that which yet remaineth appertaining to this chapter.

There is an herbe which is ſowed apart by it ſelfe, and is called by the inhabitants Vppowoc: In the Weſt Indies it hath diuers names, according to the ſeuerall places and countreyes where it groweth, and is vſed: the Spanyards generally call it Tobacco. The leaues thereof being dried and brought into powder: they vſe to take the fume or ſmoke thereof, by ſucking it through pipes made of clay, into their ſtomacke and head: from whence it purgeth ſuperfluous fleame and other groſſe humors, and openeth all the pores and paſſages of the body: by which meanes the vſe thereof not onely preſerueth the body from obſtructions, but alſo (if any be, ſo that they haue not beene of too long continuance) in ſhort time breaketh them: whereby their bodyes are notably preſerued in health, and know not many grieuous diſeaſes, wherewithall we in England are oftentimes afflicted.

This Vppowoc is of ſo precious eſtimation amongſt them, that they thinke their gods are maruellouſly delighted therewith: whereupon ſometime they make hallowed fires, and caſt ſome of the powder therein for a ſacrifice: being in a ſtorme vpon the waters, to pacifie their gods, they caſt ſome vp into the ayre and into the water: ſo a weare for fiſh being newly ſet vp, they caſt ſome therein and into the ayre: alſo after an eſcape of danger, they caſt ſome into the ayre likewiſe: but all done with ſtrange geſtures, ſtamping, ſometime dancing, clapping of hands, holding vp of hands, and ſtaring vp into the heauens, vttering therewithall, and chattering ſtrange words and noiſes.

We our ſelues during the time we were there, vſed to ſucke it after their maner, as alſo ſince our returne, and haue found many rare and wonderfull experiments of the vertues thereof: of which the relation would require a volume by it ſelfe: the vſe of it by ſo many of late, men and

women

women of great calling as else, and some learned Physicians also, is sufficient witnesse.

And these are all the commodities for sustenance of life that I know and can remember they vse to husband: all else that follow are found growing naturally or wilde.

Of Roots.

OPenauk are a kinde of roots of round forme, some of the bignesse of walnuts, some farre greater, which are found in moist and marish grounds growing many together one by another in ropes, or as though they were fastened with a string. Being boiled or sodden they are very good meat.

Okeepenauk are also of round shape, found in drie grounds: some are of the bignesse of a mans head. They are to be eaten as they are taken out of the ground, for by reason of their drinesse they will neither roste nor seethe. Their taste is not so good as of the former roots, notwithstanding for want of bread, and sometimes for variety the inhabitants vse to eat them with fish or flesh, and in my iudgement they do as well as the houshold bread made of rie heere in England.

Kaishucpenauk a white kinde of roots about the bignesse of hennes egges, and neere of that forme: their taste was not so good to our seeming as of the other, and therefore their place and maner of growing, not so much cared for by vs: the inhabitants notwithstanding vsed to boyle and eat many.

Tsinaw a kinde of root much like vnto that which in England is called the China root brought from the East Indies. And we know not any thing to the contrary but that it may be of the same kinde. These roots grow many together in great clusters, and do bring foorth a brier stalke, but the leafe in shape farre vnlike: which being supported by the trees it groweth nerest vnto, will reach or climbe to the top of the highest. From these roots while they be new or fresh, being chopt into small peeces, and stampt, is strained with water a iuice that maketh bread, and also being boyled, a very good spoonemeat in maner of a gelly, and is much better in taste if it be tempered with oile. This Tsinaw is not of that sort, which by some was caused to be brought into England for the China root, for it was discouered since, & is in vse as is aforesaid: but that which was brought hither is not yet knowen, neither by vs nor by the inhabitants to serue for any vse or purpose, although the roots in shape are very like.

Coscushaw, some of our company tooke to be that kinde of root which the Spaniards in the West Indies call Cassauy, whereupon also many called it by that name: it groweth in very muddie pooles, and moist grounds. Being vsed according to the countrey maner, it maketh a good bread, and also a good spoonemeat, and is vsed very much by the inhabitants: the iuice of this root is poison, and therefore heed must be taken before any thing be made therewithall: either the roots must be first sliced and dried in the Sunne, or by the fire, and then being punned into floure, will make good bread: or els while they are greene they are to be pared, cut into peeces, and stampt: loaues of the same to be laid neere or ouer the fire vntill it be sowre, and then being well punned againe, bread, or spoonemeat very good in taste and wholesome may be made thereof.

Habascon is a root of hote taste, almost of the forme and bignesse of a parsnip, of it selfe it is no victuall, but onely a helpe being boiled together with other meats.

There are also Leeks, differing little from ours in England, that grow in many places of the countrey, of which, when we came in places where they were, we gathered and eat many, but the naturall inhabitants neuer.

Of Fruites.

CHestnuts, there are in diuers places great store: some they vse to eat raw, some they stampe and boile to make spoonemeat, and with some being sodden, they make such a maner of dow bread as they vse of their beanes before mentioned.

Walnuts: there are two kindes of walnuts, and of them infinite store: in many places where are very great woods for many miles together, the third part of trees are walnut trees. The one kinde is of the same taste and forme, or little differing from ours of England, but that they are harder and thicker shelled: the other is greater, and hath a very ragged and hard shell: but the kernell great, very oily and sweet. Besides their eating of them after our ordinarie maner, they breake them with stones, and punne them in mortars with water, to make a milke which they vse to put into some sorts of their spoonemeat: also among their sod wheat, peaze, beanes and pompions which maketh them haue a farre more pleasant taste.

Medlars,

Medlars a kinde of very good fruit, ſo called by vs chiefly for theſe reſpects: firſt in that they are not good vntill they be rotten: then in that they open at the head as our medlars, and are about the ſame bigneſſe: otherwiſe in taſte and colour they are farre different: for they are as red as cheries, and very ſweet: but whereas the cherie is ſharpe ſweet, they are luſhious ſweet.

Metaqueſunnauk, a kinde of pleaſant fruit almoſt of the ſhape and bigneſſe of Engliſh peares, but that they are of a perfect red colour as well within as without. They grow on a plant whoſe leaues are very thicke, & full of prickles as ſharpe as needles. Some that haue bin in the Indies, where they haue ſeene that kinde of red die of great price, which is called Cochinele, to grow, do deſcribe his plant right like vnto this of Metaqueſunnauk, but whether it be the true Cochenile or a baſtard or wilde kinde, it can not yet be certified: ſeeing that alſo as I heard, Cochenile is not of the fruit, but found on the leaues of the plant: which leaues for ſuch matter we haue not ſo ſpecially obſerued.

Grapes there are of two ſorts, which I mentioned in the merchantable commodities.

Straberies there are as good and as great as thoſe which we haue in our Engliſh gardens.

Mulberies, Applecrabs, Hurts or Hurtleberies, ſuch as we haue in England.

Sacquemummener a kinde of berries almoſt like vnto capers, but ſomewhat greater, which grow together in cluſters vpon a plant or herbe that is ſolid in ſhallow waters: being boiled eight or nine houres according to their kinde are very good meat and wholeſome, otherwiſe if they be eaten they will make a man for the time frantike or extremely ſicke.

There is a kinde of Reed which beareth a ſeed almoſt like vnto our rie or wheat, and being boiled is good meat.

In our trauels in ſome places we found Wilde peaze like vnto ours in England, but that they were leſſe, which are alſo good meat.

Of a kinde of fruit or berry in forme of Acornes.

There is a kinde of berrie or acorne, of which there are fiue ſorts that grow on ſeuerall kindes of trees: the one is called Sagatemener, the ſecond Oſamener, the third Pummuckoner. Theſe kinde of acornes they vſe to dry vpon hurdles made of reeds, with fire vnderneath, almoſt after the maner as we dry malt in England. When they are to be vſed, they firſt water them vntill they be ſoft, and then being ſod, they make a good victuall, either to eat ſo ſimply, or els being alſo pounded to make loaues or lumps of bread. Theſe be alſo the three kindes, of which I ſaid before the inhabitants vſed to make ſweet oile.

Another ſort is called Sapummener, which being boiled or parched, doth eat and taſte like vnto cheſtnuts. They ſometime alſo make bread of this ſort.

The fifth ſort is called Mangummenauk, and is the acorne of the ſixt kinde of Oake, the which being dried after the maner of the firſt ſorts, and afterward watered, they boile them, and their ſeruants, or ſometime the chiefe themſelues, either for variety or for want of bread, do eat them with their fiſh or fleſh.

Of Beaſts.

Deere, in ſome places there are great ſtore: neere vnto the ſea coaſt they are of the ordinarie bigneſſe as ours in England, and ſome leſſe: but further vp into the countrey, where there is better food, they are greater: they differ from ours onely in this, their tailes are longer, and the ſnags of their hornes looke backward.

Conies, Thoſe that we haue ſeene, and all that we can heare of are of a grey colour like vnto hares: in ſome places there are ſuch plenty that all the people of ſome townes make them mantles of the furre or flue of the ſkinnes of thoſe they vſually take.

Saquenuckot and Maquowoc, two kindes of ſmall beaſts, greater then conies, which are very good meat. We neuer tooke any of them our ſelues, but ſometime eat of ſuch as the inhabitants had taken and brought vnto vs.

Squirels which are of a grey colour, we haue taken and eaten.

Beares which are all of blacke colour. The beares of this country are good meat: the inhabitants in time of winter do vſe to take and eat many, ſo alſo ſometime did we. They are taken commonly in this ſort. In ſome Iſlands or places where they are, being hunted for, as ſoone as they haue ſpiall of a man, they preſently runne away, and then being chaſed, they clime and get vp the next tree they can, from whence with arrowes they are ſhot downe ſtarke dead, or with thoſe woods

that

that they may after easily be killed: we sometime shot them downe with our caliuers.

I haue the names of eight and twenty seuerall sorts of beasts, which I haue heard of to be here and there dispersed in the countrey, especially in the maine: of which there are onely twelue kindes that we haue yet discouered, and of those that be good meat we know only them before mentioned. The inhabitants sometime kill the Lyon, & eat him: and we sometime as they came to our hands of their Woolues or Wooluish dogges, which I haue not set downe for good meat, least that some would vnderstand my iudgement therein to be more simple then needeth, although I could allege the difference in taste of those kindes from ours, which by some of our company haue beene experimented in both.

Of Foule.

TVrkie cocks and Turkie hennes: Stockdoues: Partridges: Cranes: Hernes: and in winter great store of Swannes and Geese. Of all sorts of foule I haue the names in the country language, of foure score and sixe, of which number, besides those that be named, we haue taken, eaten, and haue the pictures as they were there drawen, with the names of the inhabitants of seuerall strange sorts of water foule eight, and seuentéene kindes more of land foule, although we haue seene and eaten of many more, which for want of leasure there for the purpose, could not be pictured: and after we are better furnished and stored vpon further discouery, with their strange beasts, fish, trees, plants, and herbs, they shall be also published.

There are also Parrots, Faulcons, and Marlin hauks, which although with vs they be not vsed for meat, yet for other causes I thought good to mention.

Of Fish.

FOr foure moneths of the yeere, February, March, Aprill and May, there are plenty of Sturgeons: And also in the same moneths of Herrings, some of the ordinary bignesse as ours in England, but the most part farre greater, of eighteene, twentie inches, and some two foot in length and better: both these kindes of fish in those moneths are most plentifull, and in best season, which we found to be most delicate and pleasant meat.

There are also Trouts: Porpoises: Rayes: Oldwines: Mullets: Plaice: & very many other sorts of excellent good fish, which we haue taken and eaten, whose names I know not but in the countrey language: we haue of twelue sorts more the pictures, as they were drawen in the countrey, with their names.

The inhabitants vse to take them two maner of wayes, the one is by a kinde of weare made of reeds, which in that countrey are very strong. The other way, which is more strange, is with poles made sharpe at one end, by shooting them into the fish after the maner as Irish men cast darts, either as they are rowing in their boats, or els as they are wading in the shallowes for the purpose.

There are also in many places plenty of these kindes which follow:

Sea crabbes, such as we haue in England.

Oisters, some very great, and some small, some round, and some of a long shape: they are found both in salt water and brackish, and those that we had out of salt water are far better then the other as in our countrey.

Also Muscles: Scalops: Periwinkles: and Creuises.

Seekanauk, a kinde of crusty shell fish, which is good meat, about a foot in breadth, hauing a crustie taile, many legges like a crab, and her eyes in her backe. They are found in shallowes of waters, and sometime on the shoare.

There are many Tortoyses both of land and sea kinds, their backs and bellies are shelled very thicke, their head, feet, and taile, which are in appearance, seeme ougly, as though they were members of a serpent or venemous beasts: but notwithstanding they are very good meat, as also their egges. Some haue beene found of a yard in breadth and better.

And thus haue I made relation of all sorts of victuall that we fed vpon for the time we were in Virginia, as also the inhabitants themselues, as farre forth as I know and can remember, or that are specially worthy to be remembred.

The

The third and laſt part of ſuch other things as are behouefull *for thoſe which ſhall plant and inhabite to know of, with a de-* ſcription of the nature and maners of the people of the Countrey.

Of commodities for building and other neceſſary vſes.

THoſe other things which I am moſt to make rehearſall of, are ſuch as concerne building, and other mechanicall neceſſarie vſes, as diuers ſorts of trees for houſe and ſhippe timber, and other vſes els: Alſo lime, ſtone, and bricke, leaſt that being not mentioned ſome might haue bene doubted of, or by ſome that are malitious reported the contrary.

Okes, there are as faire, ſtraight, tall, and as good timber as any can be, and alſo great ſtore, and in ſome places very great.

Walnut trees, as I haue ſaid before very many, ſome haue bene ſeene excellent faire timber of foure and fiue fathome, and aboue foureſcore foote ſtreight without bough.

Firre trees fit for maſts of ſhips, ſome very tall and great.

Rakiock, a kinde of trees ſo called that are ſweete wood, of which the inhabitants that were nerre vnto vs doe commonly make their boates or Canoes of the forme of crowes, onely with the helpe of fire, hatchets of ſtones, and ſhels: we haue knowen ſome ſo great being made in that ſort of one tree that they haue carried well 20. men at once, beſides much baggage: the timber being great, tall, ſtreight, ſoft, light, and yet tough ynough I thinke (beſides other vſes) to be fit alſo for maſts of ſhips.

Cedar, a ſweete wood good for ſeelings, cheſts, boxes, bedſteads, lutes, virginals, and many things els, as I haue alſo ſaid before. Some of our companie which haue wandered in ſome places where I haue not bene, haue made certaine affirmation of Cyprus which for ſuch and other excellent vſes, is alſo a wood of price and no ſmall eſtimation.

Maple, and alſo Wich-hazle, whereof the inhabitants vſe to make their bowes.

Holly a neceſſary thing for the making of birdlime.

Willowes good for the making of weares and wheles to take fiſhe after the Engliſh maner, although the inhabitants vſe onely reedes, which becauſe they are ſo ſtrong as alſo flexible, do ſerue for that turne very well and ſufficiently.

Beech and Aſhe, good for caſke hoopes: and if neede require, plowe worke, as alſo for many things els.

Elme.

Saſſafras trees.

Aſcopo a kinde of tree very like vnto Lawrel, the barke is hot in taſte and ſpicie, it is very like to that tree which Monardus deſcribeth to be Caſſia Lignea of the Weſt Indies.

There are many other ſtrange trees whoſe names I know not but in ỹ Virginian language, of which I am not notable, neither is it ſo conuenient for the preſent to trouble you with particular relation: ſeeing that for timber and other neceſſary vſes I haue named ſufficient. And of many of the reſt, but that they may be applied to good vſe, I know no cauſe to doubt.

Now for ſtone, bricke and lime, thus it is. Neere vnto the Sea coaſt where wee dwelt, there are no kinde of ſtones to be found (except a fewe ſmall pebbles about foure miles off) but ſuch as haue bene brought from further out of the maine. In ſome of our voyages wee haue ſeene diuers hard raggie ſtones, great pebbles, and a kinde of grey ſtone like vnto marble, of which the inhabitants make their hatchets to cleeue wood. Upon inquirie wee heard that a little further vp into the Countrey were of all ſortes very many, although of quarries they are ignorant, neither haue they vſe of any ſtone whereupon they ſhould haue occaſion to ſeeke any. For if euery houſhold haue one or two to cracke nuts, grinde ſhels, whet copper, and ſometimes other ſtones for hatchets, they haue ynough: neither vſe they any digging, but onely for graues about three foote deepe: and therefore no marueile that they knowe neither quarries, nor lime ſtones, which both may be in places neerer then they wot of.

In the meane time vntil there be diſcouerie of ſufficient ſtore in ſome place or other conuenient, the want of you which are ỹ ſhalbe the planters therin may be as well ſupplied by bricke: for the

making whereof in diuers places of the Countrey there is clay both excellent good, and plentie, and also by lime made of oyster shels, and of others burnt, after the maner as they vse in the Iles of Tenet and Shepy, and also in diuers other places of England: Which kinde of lime is well knowen to be as good as any other. And of oyster shels there is plentie ynough: for besides diuers other particuler places where are abundance, there is one shallowe sounde along the coast, where for the space of many miles together in length, & two or three miles in breadth, the ground is nothing els, being but halfe a foote or a foote vnder water for the most part.

Thus much can I say further more of stones, that about 120. miles from our fort neere the water in the side of a hil, was found by a Gentleman of our company, a great veine of hard ragge stones, which I thought good to remember vnto you.

Of the nature and maners of the people.



TResteth I speake a worde or two of the naturall inhabitants, their natures and maners, leauing large discourse thereof vntill time more conuenient hereafter: nowe onely so farre forth, as that you may knowe, howe that they in respect of troubling our inhabiting & planting, are not to be feared, but that they shall haue cause both to feare and loue vs, that shall inhabite with them.

They are a people clothed with loose mantles made of deere skinnes, and aprons of the same round about their middles, all els naked, of such a difference of statures onely as we in England, hauing no edge tooles or weapons of yron or steele to offend vs withal, neither knowe they howe to make any: those weapons that they haue, are onely bowes made of Witchhazle, and arrowes of reedes, flat edged truncheons also of wood about a yard long, neither haue they any thing to defend themselues but targets made of barks, and some armours made of sticks wickered together with thread.

Their townes are but small, and neere the sea coast but fewe, some containing but tenne or twelue houses: some 20. the greatest that wee haue seene, hath bene but of 30. houses: if they bee walled, it is onely done with barkes of trees made fast to stakes, or els with poles onely fixed vpright, and close one by another.

Their houses are made of small poles, made fast at the tops in rounde forme after the maner as is vsed in many arbories in our gardens of England, in most townes couered with barkes, and in some with artificial matts made of long rushes, from the tops of the houses downe to the ground. The length of them is commonly double to the breadth, in some places they are but 12. and 16. yards long, and in other some we haue seene of foure and twentie.

In some places of the Countrey, one onely towne belongeth to the gouernment of a Wiroans or chiefe Lorde, in other some two or three, in some fiue, eight, and more, the greatest Wiroans that yet we had dealing with, had but eighteene townes in his gouernment, & able to make not aboue seuen or eight hundreth fighting men at the most. The language of euery gouernment is different from any other, and the further they are distant, the greater is the difference.

Their maner of warres amongst themselues, is either by sudden surprising one an other most commonly about the dawning of the day, or moone light, or els by ambushes, or some subtile deuises. Set battels are very rare, except it fall out where there are many trees, where either part may haue some hope of defence, after the deliuerie of euery arrowe, in leaping behinde some or other.

If there fall out any warres betweene vs and them, what their fight is likely to bee, wee hauing aduantages against them so many maner of wayes, as by our discipline, our strange weapons and deuises els, especially ordinance great and small, it may easily be imagined, by the experience we haue had in some places, the turning vp of their heeles against vs in running away was their best defence.

In respect of vs they are a people poore, and for want of skill and iudgement in the knowledge and vse of our things, doe esteeme our trifles before thinges of greater value: Notwithstanding, in their proper maner (considering the want of such meanes as wee haue,) they seeme very ingenious. For although they haue no such tooles, nor any such crafts, Sciences and artes as wee, yet in those thinges they doe, they shewe excellencie of wit. And by howe much they vpon due consideration shall finde our maner of knowledges and crafts, to exceede theirs in perfection, and speede for doing or execution, by so much the more is it probable that they should desire our friendships and loue, and haue the greater respect for pleasing and obeying vs. Whereby may

be

be hoped, if meanes of good gouernement be vsed, that they may in short time be brought to ciuilitie, and the imbracing of true religion.

Some religion they haue alreadie, which although it be farre from the trueth, yet being as it is, there is hope it may be the easier and sooner reformed.

They beleeue that there are many Gods, which they call Mantoac, but of different sorts and degrees, one onely chiefe and great God, which hath bene from all eternitie. Who, as they affirme, when hee purposed to make the worlde, made first other gods of a principall order, to bee as meanes and instruments to be vsed in the creation and gouernement to followe, and after the Sunne, Moone, and Starres, as petrie gods, and the instruments of the other order more principall. First (they say) were made waters, out of which by the gods was made all diuersitie of creatures that are visible or inuisible.

For mankinde they say a woman was made first, which by the working of one of the goddes, conceiued and brought forth children: And in such sort they say they had their beginning.

But how many yeeres or ages haue passed since, they say they can make no relation, hauing no letters nor other such meanes as we to keepe recordes of the particularities of times past, but onely tradition from father to sonne.

They thinke that all the gods are of humane shape, and therefore they represent them by images in the formes of men, which they call Kewasowok, one alone is called Kewas: them they place in houses appropriate or temples, which they call Machicomucke, where they worship, pray, sing, and make many times offering vnto them. In some Machicomuck wee haue seene but one Kewas, in some two, and in other some three. The common sort thinke them to bee also gods.

They beleeue also the immortalitie of the soule, that after this life as soone as the soule is departed from the body, according to the workes it hath done, it is either caried to heauen the habitacle of gods, there to enioy perpetuall blisse and happinesse, or els to a great pitte or hole, which they thinke to be in the furthest partes of their part of the world towarde the Sunne set, there to burne continually: the place they call Popogusso.

For the confirmation of this opinion, they tolde mee two stories of two men that had bene lately dead and reuiued againe, the one happened but fewe yeeres before our comming into the Countrey of a wicked man, which hauing bene dead and buried, the next day the earth of the graue being seene to moue, was taken vp againe, who made declaration where his soule had bene, that is to say, very neere entring into Popogusso, had not one of the gods saued him, and gaue him leaue to returne againe, and teache his friendes what they shoulde doe to auoyde that terrible place of torment.

The other happened in the same yeere we were there, but in a towne that was threescore miles from vs, and it was tolde mee for strange newes, that one being dead, buried, and taken vp againe as the first, shewed that although his body had lien dead in the graue, yet his soule was aliue, and had trauailed farre in a long broade way, on both sides whereof grewe most delicate and pleasant trees, bearing more rare and excellent fruites, then euer hee had seene before, or was able to expresse, and at length came to most braue and faire houses, neere which hee metre his father, that had bene dead before, who gaue him great charge to goe backe againe, and shewe his friends what good they were to doe to enioy the pleasures of that place, which when he had done he should after come againe.

What subtilitie soeuer be in the Wiroances and priestes, this opinion worketh so much in many of the common and simple sort of people, that it maketh them haue great respect to their Gouernours, and also great care what they doe, to auoyde torment after death, and to enioy blisse, although notwithstanding there is punishment ordeined for malefactours, as stealers, whoremongers, and other sorts of wicked doers, some punished with death, some with forfeitures, some with beating, according to the greatnesse of the factes.

And this is the summe of their Religion, which I learned by hauing special familiaritie with some of their priestes. Wherein they were not so sure grounded, nor gaue such credite to their traditions and stories, but through conuersing with vs they were brought into great doubes of their owne, and no small admiration of ours, with earnest desire in many, to learne more then wee had meanes for want of perfect vtterance in their language to expresse.

Most things they sawe with vs, as Mathematicall instruments, sea Compasses, the vertue of the lodestone in drawing yron, a perspective glasse whereby was shewed many strange sights, burning glasses, wilde fireworkes, gunnes, bookes, writing and reading, spring clockes that

seeme to goe of themselues, and many other things that wee had, were so strange vnto them, and so farre exceeded their capacities to comprehend the reason and meanes how they should be made and done, that they thought they were rather the workes of gods then of men, or at the least wise they had bene giuen and taught vs of the gods. Which made many of them to haue such opinion of vs, as that if they knewe not the trueth of God and religion alreadie, it was rather to bee had from vs, whome God so specially loued then from a people that were so simple, as they found themselues to be in comparison of vs. Whereupon greater credite was giuen vnto that we spake of, concerning such matters.

Many times and in euery towne where I came, according as I was able, I made declaration of the contents of the Bible, that therein was set foorth the true and onely God, and his mightie workes, that therein was conteined the true doctrine of saluation through Christ, with many particularities of Miracles and chiefe pointes of Religion, as I was able then to vtter, and thought fit for the time. And although I tolde them the booke materially and of it selfe was not of any such vertue, as I thought they did conceiue, but onely the doctrine therein conteined: yet would many bee glad to touche it, to embrace it, to kisse it, to holde it to their breastes and heades, and stroke ouer all their body with it, to shewe their hungrie desire of that knowledge which was spoken of.

The Wiroans with whome we dwelt called Wingina, and many of his people would be glad many times to be with vs at our prayers, and many times call vpon vs both in his owne towne, as also in others whither he sometimes accompanied vs, to pray and sing Psalmes, hoping thereby to be partaker of the same effects which we by that meanes also expected.

Twise this Wiroans was so grieuously sicke that hee was like to die, and as he lay languishing, doubting of any helpe by his owne priestes, and thinking he was in such danger for offending vs and thereby our God, sent for some of vs to pray and bee a meanes to our God that it would please him either that hee might liue, or after death dwell with him in blisse, so likewise were the requests of many others in the like case.

On a time also when their corne began to wither by reason of a drought which happened extraordinarily, fearing that it had come to passe by reason that in some thing they had displeased vs, many would come to vs and desire vs to pray to our God of England, that hee would preserue their corne, promising that when it was ripe we also should be partakers of the fruite.

There could at no time happen any strange sickenesse, losses, hurtes, or any other crosse vnto them, but that they would impute to vs the cause or meanes thereof, for offending or not pleasing vs.

One other rare and strange accident, leauing others, will I mention before I ende, which mooued the whole Countrey that either knewe or heard of vs, to haue vs in wonderfull admiration.

There was no towne where we had any subtile deuise practised against vs, we leauing it vnpunished or not reuenged (because we sought by all meanes possible to win them by gentlenesse) but that within a fewe dayes after our departure from euery such towne, the people began to die very fast, and many in short space, in some townes about twentie, in some fourtie, and in one sixe score, which in trueth was very many in respect of their nombers. This happened in no place that we could learne, but where we had bene, where they vsed some practise against vs, and after such time. The disease also so strange, that they neither knew what it was, nor how to cure it, the like by report of the oldest men in the Countrey neuer happened before, time out of minde. A thing specially obserued by vs, as also by the naturall inhabitants themselues.

Insomuch that when some of the inhabitants which were our friends, and especially the Wiroans Wingina, had obserued such effects in foure or fiue townes to followe their wicked practises, they were perswaded that it was the worke of our God through our meanes, & that we by him might kil and slay whom we would without weapons, and not come neere them.

And thereupon when it had happened that they had vnderstanding that any of their enemies had abused vs in our iourneys, hearing that we had wrought no reuenge with our weapons, and fearing vpon some cause the matter should so rest: did come and intreate vs that wee would be a meanes to our God that they as others that had dealt ill with vs might in like sort die, alleadging how much it would be for our credite and profite, as also theirs, and hoping furthermore that we would doe so much at their requests in respect of the friendship we professed them.

Whose entreaties although we shewed that they were vngodly, affirming that our God would not subiect himselfe to any such prayers and requests of men: that in deede all thinges haue bene and were to be done according to his good pleasure as hee had ordained: and that we to shewe our

selues

ſelues his true ſeruants ought rather to make petition for the contrary, that they with them might liue together with vs, be made partakers of his trueth and ſerue him in righteouſneſſe, but notwithſtanding in ſuch ſort, that wee referre that as all other things, to bee done according to his diuine will and pleaſure, and as by his wiſedome he had ordained to be beſt.

Yet becauſe the effect fell out ſo ſuddenly and ſhortly after according to their deſires, they thought neuertheleſſe it came to paſſe by our meanes, and that wee in vſing ſuch ſpeaches vnto them, did but diſſemble the matter, and therefore came vnto vs to giue vs thankes in their maner, that although wee ſatisfied them not in promiſe, yet in deedes and effect wee had fulfilled their deſires.

This marueilous accident in all the Countrey wrought ſo ſtrange opinions of vs, that ſome people could not tel whether to thinke vs gods or men, and the rather becauſe that all the ſpace of their ſickenes, there was no man of ours knowen to die, or that was ſpecially ſicke: they noted alſo that we had no women amongſt vs, neither that we did care for any of theirs.

Some therefore were of opinion that wee were not borne of women, and therefore not mortall, but that wee were men of an olde generation many yeeres paſt, then riſen againe to immortalitie.

Some would likewyſe ſeeme to prophecie, that there were more of our generation yet to come, to kill theirs and take their places, as ſome thought the purpoſe was, by that which was alreadie done.

Thoſe that were immediatly to come after vs they imagined to be in the ayre, yet inuiſible and without bodies, and that they by our intreatie and for the loue of vs, did make the people to die in that ſort as they did, by ſhooting inuiſible bullets into them.

To confirme this opinion, their Phiſitions (to excuſe their ignorance in curing the diſeaſe,) would not bee aſhamed to ſay, but earneſtly make the ſimple people beleeue, that the ſtrings of blood that they ſucked out of the ſicke bodies, were the ſtrings wherewithall the inuiſible bullets were tied and caſt.

Some alſo thought that we ſhotte them our ſelues out of our pieces, from the place where wee dwelt, and killed the people in any ſuch towne that had offended vs as we liſted, how farre diſtant from vs ſoeuer it were.

And other ſome ſaide, that it was the ſpeciall worke of God for our ſakes, as wee our ſelues haue cauſe in ſome ſort to thinke no leſſe, whatſoeuer ſome doe, or may imagine to the contrary, ſpecially ſome Aſtrologers, knowing of the Eclipſe of the Sunne which we ſawe the ſame yeere before in our voyage thitherward, which vnto them appeared very terrible. And alſo of a Comet which beganne to appeare but a fewe dayes before the beginning of the ſaide ſickenes. But to exclude them from being the ſpeciall cauſes of ſo ſpecial an accident, there are further reaſons then I thinke fit at this preſent to be alleadged.

Theſe their opinions I haue ſet downe the more at large, that it may appeare vnto you that there is good hope they may be brought through diſcreete dealing and gouernement to the imbracing of the trueth, and conſequently to honour, obey, feare and loue vs.

And although ſome of our companie towards the ende of the yeere, ſhewed themſelues to fierce, in ſlaying ſome of the people, in ſome townes, vpon cauſes that on our part, might eaſily ynough haue bene borne withall: yet notwithſtanding, becauſe it was on their part iuſtly deſerued, the alteration of their opinions generally and for the moſt part concerning vs is the leſſe to be doubted. And whatſoeuer els they may be, by carefulneſſe of our ſelues neede nothing at all to be feared.

The beſt neuertheleſſe in this, as in all actions beſides is to bee endeuoured and hoped, and of the worſt that may happen notice to bee taken with conſideration, and as much as may bee eſchewed.

The Concluſion.

NOwe I haue (as I hope) made relation not of ſo fewe and ſmall thinges, but that the Countrey (of men that are indifferent and well diſpoſed) may bee ſufficiently liked: If there were no more knowen then I haue mentioned, which doubteleſſe and in great reaſon is nothing to that which remaineth to bee diſcouered, neither the ſoyle, nor commodities. As wee haue reaſon ſo to gather by the difference wee founde in our trauailes, for although all which I haue before ſpoken of, haue bene diſcouered and experimented not farre from the Sea coaſt, where was our abode and moſt of

our trauailing: yet ſometimes as wee made our iourneis further into the maine and Countrey, we found the ſoile to be fatter, the trees greater and to growe thinner, the grounde more firme and deeper mould, more and larger champions, finer graſſe, and as good as euer we ſaw any in England; in ſome places rockie and farre more high and hillie ground, more plentie of their fruites, more abundance of beaſtes, the more inhabited with people, and of greater pollicie and larger dominions, with greater townes and houſes.

Why may we not then looke for in good hope from the inner partes of more and greater plentie, as well of other thinges, as of thoſe which wee haue alreadie diſcouered? Unto the Spaniards happened the like in diſcouering the maine of the Weſt Indies. The maine alſo of this Countrey of Virginia, extending ſome wayes ſo many hundreth of leagues, as otherwiſe then by the relation of the inhabitants wee haue moſt certaine knowledge of, where yet no Chriſtian prince hath any poſſeſſion or dealing, cannot but yeelde many kindes of excellent commodities, which we in our diſcouerie haue not yet ſeene.

What hope there is els to bee gathered of the nature of the climate, being anſwerable to the Iſland of Iapan, the land of China, Perſia, Iury, the Iſlands of Cyprus & Candy, the South parts of Greece, Italy, and Spaine, and of many other notable and famous Countreis, becauſe I meane not to be tedious, I leaue to your owne conſideration.

Whereby alſo the excellent temperature of the aire there at all ſeaſons, much warmer then in England, and neuer ſo vehemently hot, as ſometimes is vnder and betweene the Tropikes, or neere them, cannot be knowen vnto you without further relation.

For the holſomneſſe thereof I neede to ſay but thus much: that for all the want of proviſion, as firſt of Engliſh victual, excepting for twentie dayes, we liued onely by drinking water, and by the victual of the Countrey, of which ſome ſortes were very ſtrange vnto vs, and might haue bene thought to haue altered our temperatures in ſuch ſort, as to haue brought vs into ſome grieuous and dangerous diſeaſes: Secondly the want of Engliſh meanes, for the taking of beaſtes, fiſh, and foule, which by the helpe onely of the inhabitants and their meanes, could not be ſo ſuddenly and eaſily prouided for vs, nor in ſo great nomber and quantities, nor of that choiſe as otherwiſe might haue bene to our better ſatisfaction and contentment. Some want alſo wee had of clothes. Furthermore, in all our trauailes which were moſt ſpeciall and often in the time of winter, our lodging was in the open aire vpon the ground. And yet I ſay for all this, there were but foure of our whole companie (being one hundreth and eighte) that died all the yeere and that but at the latter ende thereof and vpon none of the aforeſaide cauſes. For all foure, eſpecially three were feeble & weake, and ſickly perſons before euer they came thither, and thoſe that knewe them, much maruelled that they liued ſo long being in that caſe, or had aduentured to trauaile.

Seeing therefore the ayre there is ſo temperate and holſome, the ſoile ſo fertile, and yeelding ſuch commodities, as I haue before mentioned, the voyage alſo thither to and fro being ſufficiently experimented, to be performed twiſe a yeere with eaſe, and at any ſeaſon thereof: And the dealing of Sir Walter Ralegh ſo liberall in large giuing and graunting lande there, as is alreadie knowen, with many helpes and furtherances elſe: (The leaſt that he hath graunted hath bene fiue hundreth acres to a man only for the aduenture of his perſon) I hope there remaines no cauſe whereby the action ſhould be miſliked.

If that thoſe which ſhall thither trauaile to inhabite and plant, be but reaſonably prouided for the firſt yeere, as thoſe are which were tranſported the laſt, and being there, doe vſe but that diligence and care, as is requiſite, and as they may with eaſe: There is no doubt, but for the time following, they may haue victuals that are excellent good and plentie enough, ſome more Engliſh ſortes of cattell alſo hereafter, as ſome haue bene before, and are there yet remayning, may, and ſhall be (God willing) thither tranſported. So likewiſe, our kinde of fruites, rootes, and hearbes, may be there planted and ſowed, as ſome haue bene alreadie, and prooue well: And in ſhort time alſo they may rayſe of thoſe ſortes of commodities which I haue ſpoken of, as ſhall both enriche themſelues, as alſo others that ſhall deale with them.

And this is all the fruite of our labours, that I haue thought neceſſary to aduertiſe you of at this preſent: What elſe concerneth the nature and maners of the inhabitants of Virginia, the nomber with the particularities of the voyages thither made, and of the actions of ſuch as haue bene by Sir Walter Ralegh therein, and there imployed, many worthy to be remembred, as of the firſt diſcouerers of the Countrey: of our Generall for the time Sir Richard Greinuile, and after his departure of our Gouernour there Maſter Rafe Lane, with diuers other directed and imployed vnder their gouernement: Of the Captaines and Maſters of the voyages made ſince for tranſportation, of the Gouernour and aſſiſtants of thoſe already tranſported,

ted, as of many perſons, accidents, and things els, I haue ready in a diſcourſe by it ſelfe, in manner of a Chronicle, according to the courſe of times: and when time ſhall be thought conuenient, ſhall be alſo publiſhed.

Thus referring my relation to your fauourable conſtructions, expecting good ſucceſſe of the action, from him which is to be acknowledged the author and gouernour, not onely of this, but of all things els, I take my leaue of you, this moneth of Februarie, 1588.

The fourth voyage made to Virginia, with three ſhippes, in the yeere, 1587. *Wherein was tranſported the ſecond Colonie.*

IN the yeere of our Lorde, 1587. Sir Walter Ralegh intending to perſeuere in the planting of his Countrey of Virginia, prepared a newe Colonie of one hundred and fiftie men to be ſent thither, vnder the charge of Iohn White, whom he appointed Gouernour, and alſo appointed vnto him twelue Aſſiſtants, vnto whome he gaue a Charter, and incorporated them by the name of Gouernour, and Aſſiſtants of the Citie of Ralegh in Virginia.

Aprill.

OVr Fleete being in number three ſaile, viz. the Admirall, a ſhippe of one hundred and twentie tunnes: a Flie boate, and a Pinneſſe, departed the fiue and twentieth of Aprill from Porteſmouth, and the ſame day came to an anker at the Cowes, in the Iſle of Wight, where we ſtaied eight daies.

Maye.

THe 5. of Maye, at nine of the clocke at night, we came to Plymmouth, where we remained the ſpace of two daies.

The 8. we waied anker at Plymmouth, and departed thence for Virginia.

The 16. Simon Ferdinando Maſter of our Admirall, lewdly forſooke our Flie boate, leauing her diſtreſſed in the Baye of Portingall.

Iune.

THe 19. we fell with * Dominica, and the ſame euening we ſailed betweene it, and Guadalupe: the 21. the Flie boate alſo fell with Dominica.

* One of the Iſles of the Indias, inhabited with Sauages.

The 22. we came to an anker at an Iſle, called Santa Cruz, where all the planters were ſet on land, ſtaying there till the 25. of the ſame moneth. At our firſt landing on this Iſland, ſome of our women, and men, by eating a ſmall fruite, like greene apples, were fearefully troubled with a ſudden burning in their mouthes, and ſwelling of their tongues ſo bigge, that ſome of them could not ſpeake. Alſo a child by ſucking of one of thoſe womens breaſt, had at that inſtant his mouth ſet on ſuch a burning, that it was ſtrange to ſee how the infant was tormented for the time: but after 24. howres, it ware away of it ſelfe.

Alſo the firſt night of our being on this Iſland, we tooke fiue great Tortoſes, ſome of them of ſuch bignes, that ſixteene of our ſtrongeſt men were tired with carrying of one of them but from the Sea ſide, to our cabbins. In this Iſland we found no watring place, but a ſtanding ponde, the water whereof was ſo euill, that many of our companie fell ſicke with drinking thereof: and as many as did but waſh their faces with that water, in the morning before the Sunne had drawen away the corruption, their faces did ſo burne, and ſwell, that their eies were ſhut vp, and could not ſee in fiue or ſixe daies or longer.

The ſecond day of our abode there, we ſent forth ſome of our men to ſearch the Iſland for freſh water, three one way, and two another way. The Gouernour alſo, with ſixe others, went vp to the toppe of an high hill, to view the Iſland, but could perceaue no ſigne of any men, or beaſtes, nor any goodnes, but Parots, and trees of Guiacum. Returning backe to our Cabbins another way, he found in the deſcent of a hill, certaine potſheards of ſauage making, made of the earth of that Iſland: whereupon it was iudged, that this Iſland was inhabited with Sauages, though Fernando had tolde vs for certaine, the contrarie. The ſame day at night, the reſt of our companie

nie very late returned to the Gouernour. The one companie affirmed, that they had seene in a valley, eleuen Sauages, and diuers houses halfe a mile distant from the steepe, or toppe of the hill where they staied. The other companie had found running out of a high rocke, a very faire spring of water, whereof they brought three bottles to the companie: for before that time, wee drunke the stinking water of the pond.

The same second day at night, Captaine Stafford, with the pinnesse, departed from our fleete, riding at Santa Cruz, to an Island, called Beake, lying neere S. Iohns, being so directed by Ferdinando, who assured him he should there finde great plentie of sheepe. The next day at night, our planters left Santa Cruz, and came all aboord, and the next morning after, being the 25. of June, we waied anker, and departed from Santa Cruz.

The seuen and twentieth we came to anker at Cottea, where we found the pinnesse riding, at our comming.

The 28. we waied anker at Cottea, and presently came to anker at S. Iohns in Musketas Bay, where we spent three daies vnprofitably, in taking in fresh water, spending in the meane time more beere, then the quantitie of the water came vnto.

Iulie.

"Musketas Baye, is a harbour vpon the South side of S. Iohns Island, where we take in fresh water.

The first we waied anker at "Muskitoes Baye, where were left behind two Irish men of our companie, Darbie Glauen, and Denice Carrell, bearing along the coast of S. Iohns, till euening, at which time we fell with Rosse Baye. At this place Fernando had promised wee should take in salt, and had caused vs before, to make and prouide as many sackes for that purpose, as we could. The Gouernour also, for that he vnderstoode there was a Towne in the bottome of the Baye, not farre from the salt hils, appointed thirtie shotte, ten pikes, and ten targets, to man the pinnesse, and to goe a land for salt. Fernando perceauing them in a readines, sent to the Gouernour, vsing great perswasions with him, not to take in salt there, saying that he knewe not well, whether that the same were the place or not: also, that if the pinnesse went into the Bay, she could not without great danger come backe, till the next day at night, and that if in the meane time any storme should rise, the Admirall were in danger to be cast away. Whilest he was thus perswading, he caused the lead to be cast, and hauing craftily brought the shippe in three fathome, and a halfe water, he suddenly began to sweare, and teare God in peeces, dissembling great danger, crying to him at the helme, beare vp hard, beare vp hard: so we went off, and were disappointed of our salt, by his meanes.

"A pleasant and fruitfull Countrey, lying on the west ende of S. Johns Island where groweth plentie of Oringes, Lemmons, Plantons, and Pynes.

The next day, sailing along the West ende of S. Iohns, the Gouernour determined to goe a land in S. Germans "Baye, to gather yong plants of Oringes, Pines, Mameas, and Platonos, to set at Virginia, which we knewe might easily be had, for that they growe neere the shoare, and the places where they growe, well knowen to the Gouernour, and some of the planters: but our Simon denied it, saying: he would come to an anker at Hispaniola, and there lande the Gouernour, and some other of the Assistants, with the pinnesse, to see if he could speake with his friend Alanson, of whome he hoped to be furnished both of cattell, and all such thinges as wee woulde haue taken in at S. Iohns: but hee meant nothing lesse, as it plainely did appeare to vs afterwards.

The next day after, being the third of Iulie, wee sawe Hispaniola, and bare with the coast all that day, looking still when the pinnesse should be prepared to goe for the place where Fernando his friend Alanson was: but that day passed, and we sawe no preparation for landing in Hispaniola.

The 4. of Iulie, sailing along the coast of Hispaniola, vntill the next day at noone, and no preparation yet seene for the staying there, we hauing knowledge that we were past the place where Alanson dwelt, and were come with Isabella: hereupon Fernando was asked by the Gouernour, whether he meant to speake with Alanson, for the taking in of cattell, and other things, according to his promise, or not: but he answered, that he was now past the place, and that Sir Walter Ralegh to de him, the French Ambassador certified him, that the king of Spaine had sent for Alanson into Spaine: wherefore he thought him dead, and that it was to no purpose to touch there in any place, at this voyage.

The next day, we left sight of Hispaniola, and haled off for Virginia, about 4. of the clocke in the afternoone.

The first of Iulie, wee came to the Islande Caycos, wherein Fernando saide were two salt pondes, assuring vs if they were drie, wee might finde salt to shift with, vntill the next

supplie,

ſupplie, but it prooued as true as the finding of ſheepe at Beake. In this Iſland, whileſt Ferdinando ſolaced himſelfe a ſhoare, with one of the company, in part of the Iſland, others ſpent the latter part of that day in other parts of the Iſland, ſome to ſeeke the ſalt ponds, ſome fowling, ſome hunting Swannes, whereof we caught many. The next daye, earely in the morning, we waied anker, leauing Caycos, with good hope, the firſt lande that wee ſawe next, ſhould be Virginia.

About the 16. of July, we fell with the maine of Virginia, which Simon Fernando tooke to be the Iſland of Croatoan, where we came to an anker, and rode there two or three daies: but finding himſelfe deceaued, he waied, and bare along the coaſt, where in the night, had not Captaine Stafforde bene more carefull in looking out, then our Simon Fernando, wee had beene all caſt away vpon the breache, called the Cape of Feare, for wee were come within two cables length vpon it: ſuch was the careleſnes, and ignorance of our Maſter.

The two and twentieth of Julie, we arriued ſafe at Hatoraske, where our ſhippe and pinneſſe ankered: the Gouernour went aboord the pinneſſe, accompanied with foure of his beſt men, intending to paſſe vp to Roanoake foorthwith, hoping there to finde thoſe fifteene Engliſhmen, which Sir Richard Greenuill had left there the yeere before, with whome he meant to haue conference, concerning the ſtate of the Countrey, and Sauages, meaning after he had ſo done, to returne againe to the fleete, and paſſe along the coaſt to the Baye of Cheſepiok, where we intended to make our ſeate and forte, according to the charge giuen vs among other directions in writing, vnder the hande of Sir Walter Ralegh: but alſoone as we were put with our pinneſſe from the ſhippe, a Gentleman by the meanes of Fernando, who was appointed to returne for England, called to the ſailers in the pinneſſe, charging them not to bring any of the planters backe againe, but leaue them in the Iſland, except the Gouernour, and two or three ſuch as he appooued, ſaying that the Summer was farre ſpent, wherefore hee would land all the planters in no other place. Unto this were all the ſailers, both in the pinneſſe, and ſhippe, perſwaded by the Maſter, wherefore it booted not the Gouernour to contend with them, but paſſed to Roanoake, and the ſame night, at Sunne ſet, went aland on the Iſland, in the place where our fifteene men were left, but we found none of them, nor any ſigne, that they had bene there, ſauing onely we found the bones of one of thoſe fifteene, which the Sauages had ſlaine long before.

The 23. of July, the Gouernour, with diuers of his companie, walked to the North ende of the Iſland, where Maſter Ralfe Lane had his forte, with ſundry neceſſarie and decent dwelling houſes, made by his men about it the yeere before, where wee hoped to finde ſome ſignes, or certaine knowledge of our fifteene men. When we came thither, wee found the forte raſed downe, but all the houſes ſtanding vnhurt, ſauing the neather roomes of them, and alſo of the forte, were ouergrowen with Melons of diuers ſortes, and Deere within them, feeding on thoſe Melons: ſo we returned to our companie, without hope of euer ſeeing any of the fifteene men liuing.

The ſame day order was giuen, that euery man ſhould be imployed for the repairing of thoſe houſes, which we found ſtanding, and alſo to make other newe Cottages, for ſuch as ſhoulde neede.

The 25. our Flie boate, and the reſt of our planters arriued all ſafe at Hatoraske, to the great ioye, and comfort of the whole companie: but the Maſter of our Admirall, Fernando grieued greatly at their ſafe comming: for he purpoſely left them in the Baye of Portingall, and ſtole away from them in the night, hoping that the Maſter therof, whoſe name was Edward Spicer, for that he neuer had beene in Virginia, would hardly finde the place, or elſe being left in ſo dangerous a place as that was, by meanes of ſo many men of warre, as at that time were aboord, they ſhould ſurely be taken, or ſlaine: but God diſappointed his wicked pretenſes.

The eight and twentieth, George Howe, one of our twelue Aſſiſtants was ſlaine by diuers Sauages, which were come ouer to Roanoake, either of purpoſe to eſpie our companie, and what number we were, or elſe to hunt Deere, whereof were many in the Iſland. Theſe Sauages beeing ſecretly hidden among high reedes, where oftentimes they finde the Deere aſleepe, and ſo kill them, eſpied our man wading in the water alone, almoſt naked, without any weapon, ſaue onely a ſmall forked ſticke, catching Crabs therewithall, and alſo being ſtraied two miles from his companie, ſhotte at him in the water, where they gaue him fifteene wounds with their arrowes: and after they had ſlaine him with their woodden ſwoordes, beat his head in peeces, and fled ouer the water to the maine.

On the thirtieth of Julie, Maſter Stafford, and twentie of our men, paſſed by water to the Iſland of Croatoan, with Manteo, who had his mother, and many of his kinred, dwelling in

that

in that Island, of whome we hoped to vnderstande some newes of our fifteene men, but especially to learne the disposition of the people of the Countrey towards vs, and to renew our olde friendshippe with them. At our first landing, they seemed as though they would fight with vs: but perceauing vs begin to marche with our shot towards them, they turned their backes, and fled. Then Manteo their countreyman, called to them in their owne language, whom, assoone as they heard, they returned, and threwe away their bowes, and arrowes, and some of them came vnto vs, embracing and entertaining vs friendly, desiring vs not to gather or spill any of their corne, for that they had but little. We answered them, that neither their corne, nor any other thing of theirs, should be diminished by any of vs, and that our comming was onely to renew the olde loue that was betweene vs, and them, at the first, and to liue with them as brethren, and friendes: which answere seemed to please them well, wherefore they requested vs to walke vp to their Towne, who there feasted vs after their manner, and desired vs earnestly, that there might be some token or badge giuen them of vs, whereby we might know them to be our friendes, when we met them any where out of the Towne or Island. They tolde vs further, that for want of some such badge, diuers of them were hurt the yeere before, being founde out of the Island by Master Lane his companie, whereof they shewed vs one, which at that very instant laye lame, and had lien of that hurt euer since: but they said, they knewe our men mistooke them, and hurt them in steede of Wingmoes men, wherefore they held vs excused.

August.

THe next day, we had conference further with them, concerning the people of Secota, Aquascogoc, & Pomiock, willing them of Croatoan, to certifie the people of those townes, that if they would accept our friendship, we would willingly receaue them againe, and that all vnfriendly dealings past on both partes, should be vtterly forgiuen, and forgotten. To this the chiefe men of Croatoan answered, that they would gladly doe the best they could, and within seuen daies, bring the Weroances, and chiefe Gouernours of those townes with them, to our Gouernour at Roanoak, for their answere. We also vnderstoode of the men of Croatoan, that our man Master Howe, was slaine by the remnant of Wingmoes men, dwelling then at Dasamongueponke, with whome Winchese kept companie: and also we vnderstood by them of Croatoan, how that the 15. Englishmen left at Roanoak the yeere before, by Sir Richard Greenuill, were suddenly set vpon, by 30. of the men of Secota, Aquascogoc, and Dasamongueponke, in manner following. They conueied themselues secretly behind the trees, neere the houses, where our men carelesly liued: and hauing perceaued that of those 15. they could see but 11. onely, two of those Sauages appeared to the 11. Englishmen, calling to them by friendly signes, that but two of their chiefest men should come vnarmed to speake with those two Sauages, who seemed also to be vnarmed. Wherefore two of the chiefest of our Englishmen, went gladly to them: but whilest one of those Sauages traitorously embraced one of our men, the other with his sword of wood, which he had secretly hidden vnder his mantell, stroke him on the head, and slewe him, and presently the other eighe and twentie Sauages shewed themselues: the other Englishman perceauing this, fled to his companie, whome the Sauages pursued with their bowes, and arrowes, so fast, that the Englishmen were forced to take the house, wherein all their victuall, and weapons were: but the Sauages foorthwith set the same on fire, by meanes whereof, our men were forced to take vp such weapons as came first to hand, and without order to runne foorth among the Sauages, with whome they skirmished aboue an howre. In this skirmish, another of our men was shotte into the mouth with an arrowe, whereof he died: and also one of the Sauages was shot into the side by one of our men, with a wild fire arrowe, whereof he died presently. The place where they fought, was of great aduantage to the Sauages, by meanes of the thicke trees, behinde which the Sauages through their nimblenes, defended themselues, and so offended our men with their arrowes, that our men being some of them hurt, retired fighting to the water side, where their boate lay, with which they fled towards Hatorask. By that time they had rowed but a quarter of a mile, they espied their foure fellowes comming from a creeke thereby, where they had bene to fetch Oysters: these foure they receaued into their boate, leauing Roanoake, and landed on a litle Island on the right hand of our entrance into the harbour of Hatorask, where they remained a while, but afterward departed, whither, as yet we knowe not.

Hauing nowe sufficiently dispatched our busines at Croatoan, the same day wee departed friendly, taking our leaue, and came aboord the fleete at Hatoraske.

The

The eight of Auguſt, the Gouernour hauing long expected the comming of the Weroanſes of Pomioake, Aquaſcoquos, Secota, and Daſamongueponke, ſeeing that the ſeuen daies were paſt, within which they promiſed to come in, or to ſend their anſwers by the men of Croatoan, and no tidings of them heard, being certainly alſo informed by thoſe men of Croatoan, that the remnant of Wingino his men, which were left aliue, who dwelt at Daſamongueponke, were they which had ſlaine George Howe, and were alſo at the ſlaying of our eleuen Engliſhmen from Roanoake, he thought to differre the reuenging thereof no longer. Wherefore the ſame night, about midnight, he paſſed ouer the water, accompanied with Captaine Stafford, and 24. men, whereof Manteo was one, whome wee tooke with vs to be our guide to the place where thoſe Sauages dwelt, where he behaued himſelfe toward vs as a moſt faithfull Engliſh man.

The next day, being the ninth of Auguſt, in the morning ſo early, that it was yet darke, wee landed neere the dwelling place of our enemies, and very ſecretly conueyed our ſelues through the woods, to that ſide, where we had their houſes betweene vs and the water: and hauing eſpied their fire, and ſome ſitting about it, we preſently ſette on them: the miſerable ſoules herewith amazed, fledde into a place of thicke reedes, growing faſt by, where our men perceauing them, ſhotte one of them through the bodie with a bullet, and there with wee entred the reedes, among which wee hoped to acquite their euill doing towards vs, but wee were deceaued: for thoſe Sauages were our friendes, and were come from Croatoan, to gather the corne, and fruite of that place, becauſe they vnderſtoode our enemies were fledde immediatly after they had ſlaine George Howe, and for haſte had left all their corne, Tabacco, and Pompions ſtanding in ſuch ſorte, that all had beene deuoured of the birdes, and Deere, if it had not beene gathered in time: but they had like to haue paide deerely for it: for it was ſo darke, that they beeing naked, and their men and women apparelled all ſo like others, we knewe not but that they were all men: and if that one of them, which was a Weroans wife, had not had her childe at her backe, ſhe had beene ſlaine in ſtede of a man, and as happe was, another Sauage knewe Maiſter Stafford, and ranne to him, calling him by his name, whereby he was ſaued. Finding our ſelues thus diſappointed of our purpoſe, wee gathered all the corne, Peaſe, Pumpions, and Tabacco, that we found ripe, leauing the reſt vnſpoiled, and tooke Menatoan his wife, with the yong childe, and the other Sauages with vs ouer the water to Roanoak. Although the miſtaking of theſe Sauages ſomewhat grieued Manteo, yet he imputed their harme to their owne follie, ſaying to them, that if their Weroans had kept their promiſe in comming to the Gouernour, at the day appointed, they had not knowen that miſchance.

The 13. of Auguſt, our Sauage Manteo, by the commandement of Sir Walter Ralegh, was chriſtened in Roanoak, and called Lord therof, and of Daſamongueponke, in reward of his faithfull ſeruice.

The 18. Elenora, daughter to the Gouernour, and wife to Ananias Dare, one of the Aſſiſtants, was deliuered of a daughter in Roanoak, and the ſame was chriſtened there the Sunday following, and becauſe this childe was the firſt Chriſtian borne in Virginia, ſhe was named Virginia. By this time our ſhippes had vnlanded the goods and victuals of the planters, and began to take in wood, and freſh water, and to newe caulke and trimme them for England: the planters alſo prepared their letters, and tokens, to ſend backe into England.

Our two ſhippes, the Lyon, and the Flieboate, almoſt ready to depart, the 21. of Auguſt, there aroſe ſuch a tempeſt at northeaſt, that our Admirall then riding out of the harbour, was forced to cut his cables, and put to Sea, where he laye beating off and on, ſixe dayes before hee coulde come to vs againe, ſo that wee feared hee had beene caſt away, and the rather, for that at the tyme that the ſtorme tooke them, the moſte, and beſt of their Saylers, were left aland.

At this time ſome controuerſies roſe betweene the Gouernour, and Aſſiſtants, about chooſing two out of the twelue Aſſiſtants, which ſhould goe backe as factors for the companie into England: for euery one of them refuſed, ſaue onely one, which all the other thought not ſufficient: but at length, by much perſwading of the Gouernour, Chriſtopher Cooper onely agreed to goe for England: but the next day, though the perſwaſion of diuers of his familiar friendes, he changed his minde, ſo that now the matter ſtoode as at the firſt.

The next day, the 22. of Auguſt, the whole companie, both of the Aſſiſtants, and planters, came to the Gouernour, and with one voice requeſted him to returne himſelfe into England, for the better and ſooner obtaining of ſupplies, and other neceſſaries for them: but he refuſed it, and alleaged many ſufficient cauſes, why he would not: the one was, that he could not ſo ſuddenly returne backe againe, without his great diſcredite, leaning the action, and ſo many, whome he partly had

procured

procured through his perswasions, to leaue their native Countrey, and vndertake that voyage, and that some enemies to him, and the action at his returne into England, would not spare to slander falsely both him, and the action, by saying he went to Virginia, but politikely, and to no other ende, but to leade so many into a Countrey, in which he neuer meant to stay himselfe, and there to leaue them behind him. Also he alleaged, that seing they intended to remoue 50. miles further vp into the maine presently, he being then absent, his stuffe, and goods, might be both spoiled, and most of it pilfered away in the carriage, so that at his returne, hee should be either forced to prouide himselfe of all such things againe, or els at his comming againe to Virginia, finde himselfe vtterly vnfurnished, whereof already he had found some proofe, being but once from them but three daies. Wherefore he concluded, that he would not goe himselfe.

The next day, not onely the Assistants, but diuers others, as well women, as men, beganne to renewe their requests to the Gouernour againe, to take vppon him to returne into England for the supplie, and dispatch of all such thinges, as there were to be done, promising to make him their bonde vnder all their handes, and seales, for the safe preseruing of all his goods for him at his returne to Virginia, so that if any part thereof were spoiled, or lost, they would see it restored to him, or his Assignes, whensoeuer the same should be missed, and demanded: which bonde with a testimonie vnder their handes, and seales, they foorthwith made, and deliuered into his hands. The copie of the testimonie, I thought good to set downe.

May it please you, her Maiesties Subiects of England, wee your friendes and Countrey men, the planters in Virginia, doe by these presents let you, and euery of you to vnderstande, that for the present and speedie supplie of certaine our knowen, and apparant lackes, and nedes, most requisite and necessarie for the good and happie planting of vs, or any other in this lande of Virginia, wee all of one minde, and consent, haue most earnestly intreated, and vncessantly requested Iohn White, Gouernour of the planters in Virginia, to passe into England, for the better and more assured helpe, and setting forward of the foresayde supplies: and knowing assuredly that he both can best, and will labour, and take paines in that behalfe for vs all, and her not once, but often refusing it, for our sakes, and for the honour, and maintenance of the action, hath at last, though much against his will, through our importunacie, yeelded to leaue his gouernment, and all his goods among vs, and himselfe in all our behalfes to passe into Englande, of whose knowledge, and fidelitie in handling this matter, as all others, wee doe assure our selues by these presents, and will you to giue all credite thereunto. the fiue and twentieth of August.

The Gouernour beeing at the last, though their extreame intreating, constrayned to returne into England, hauing then but halfe a daies respit to prepare him selfe for the same, departed from Roanoake, the seuen and twentieth of August in the morning: and the same daye about midnight, came aboord the Flie boate, who already had waied anker, and rode without the barre, the Admirall riding by them, who but the same morning was newly come thither againe. The same day, both the shippes waied anker, and sette saile for England: at this waying their ankers, twelue of the men which were in the Flieboate, were throwen from the Capestone, which by meanes of a barre that brake, came so fast about vpon them, that the other two barres thereof stroke and hurt most of them so sore, that some of them neuer recouered it: neuertheless they assaied presently againe to waigh their anker, but being so weakened with the first fling, they were not able to weigh it, but were throwen downe, and hurt the seconde time. Wherefore hauing in all but fifteene men aboord, and most of them by this infortunate beginning so bruised, and hurt, they were forced to cut their Cable, and leese their anker. Neuertheless, they kept companie with the Admirall, vntill the seuenteenth of September, at which time wee fell with Coruo, and Flores.

September.

The eighteenth, perceauing of all our fifteene men in the Flie boate, there remained but fiue, which by meanes of the former mischance, were able to stande to their labour: wherefore vnderstanding that the Admirall meant not to make any haste for England, but linger about the Islande of Tercera for purchase, the Flie boate departed for Englande with letters, where we hoped by the helpe of God to arriue shortly: but by that time wee had continued our course homeward, about twentie dayes, hauing had sometimes scarse, and variable windes, our fresh water also by leaking almost consumed, there arose such a storme at Northeast, which

for

for 6. dayes ceaſed not to blowe ſo exceeding, that we were driuen further in thoſe 6. then wee could recouer in thirteene daies: in which time others of our ſaylers began to fall very ſicke, and two of them dyed, the weather alſo continued ſo cloſe, that our Maſter ſometimes in foure daies together could ſee neither Sunne nor ſtarre, and all the beuerage we could make, with ſtinking water, dregges of beere, and lees of wine which remained, was but 3. gallons, and therefore now we expected nothing but by tampne to periſh at Sea.

October.

The 16. of October we made land, but we knew not what land it was, bearing in with the ſame land at that day: about Sunne ſet we put into a harbour, where we found a Hulke of Dublin, and a pynneſſe of Hampton ryding, but we knew not as yet what place this was, neither had we any boate to goe a ſhoare, vntill the pinneſſe ſent off their boate to vs with 6. or 8. men, of whom we vnderſtood we were in Smewicke in the weſt parts of Ireland: they alſo releeued vs preſently with freſh water, wyne, and other freſh meate.

The 18. the Gouernour, and the Maſter ryd to Dingen Cuſhe, 5. myles diſtant, to take order of the new victualling of our Flye boate for England, and for reliefe of our ſicke and hurt men, but within 4. dayes after the boatſwane, the ſteward, and the boatſwanes mate dyed abooard the flyeboate, and the 28. the Maſters mate and two of our chiefe Saylers were brought ſicke to Dingen.

Nouember.

The firſt the gouernour ſhipped him ſelfe in a ſhip called the Monkie, which at that time was readie to put to Sea from Dingen for England, leauing the Flyeboat and all his company in Ireland, the ſame day we ſet ſayle, and on the third day we fell with the Northſide of the lands end, and were ſhut vp the Seuerne, but the next day we doubled the ſame, for Mouts bay.

The 5. the Gouernour landed in England at Partaſew, neere Saint Michaels mount in Cornewall.

The 8. we arriued at Hampton, where we vnderſtood that our conſort the Admirall was come to Portſmouth, and had beene there three weekes before: and alſo that Fernando the Maſter with all his company were not onely come home without any purchaſe, but alſo in ſuch weakeneſſe by ſickneſs, and death of their cheefeſt men, that they were ſcarſe able to bring their ſhip into the harbour, but were forced to let fall anker wout, which they could not way againe, but might all haue periſhed there, if a ſmall barke by great hap had not come to them to helpe them. The names of the chiefe men that dyed are theſe, Roger Large, Iohn Mathew, Thomas Smith, and ſome other ther saylers, whoſe names I know not at the writing hereof. An. Do. 1587.

The names of all the men, women and Children, which ſafely arriued in *Virginia, and remained to inhabite there.* 1587.

Anno Regni Reginę Elizabethę. 29.

IOhn White.
Roger Bailie.
Ananias Dare.
Chriſtopher Cooper.
Thomas Steuens.
Iohn Sampſon.
Dyonis Haruie.
Roger Prat.
George Howe.
Simon Fernando.
Nicholas Iohnſon.
Thomas Warner.
Anthony Cage.
Iohn Iones.
William Willes.
Iohn Brooke.
Cutbert White.
Iohn Bright.
Clement Tayler.
William Sole.
Iohn Cotſmur.
Humfrey Newton.
Thomas Colman.
Thomas Gramme.
Marke Bennet.
Iohn Gibbes.
Iohn Stilman.
Robert Wilkinſon.

Iohn Tydway.
Ambrose Viccars.
Edmond English.
Thomas Topan.
Henry Berrye.
Richard Berrye.
Iohn Spendloue.
Iohn Hemmington.
Thomas Butler.
Edward Powell.
Iohn Burden.
Iames Hynde.
Thomas Ellis.
William Browne.
Michael Myllet.
Thomas Smith.
Richard Kemme.
Thomas Harris.
Richard Tauerner.
Iohn Earnest.
Henry Iohnson.
Iohn Starte.
Richard Darige.
William Lucas.
Arnold Archard.
Iohn Wright.
William Dutton.
Morris Allen.
William Waters.
Richard Arthur.
Iohn Chapman.
William Clement.
Robert Little.
Hugh Tayler.
Richard Wildye.
Lewes Wotton.
Michael Bishop.
Henry Browne.
Henry Rufoote.
Richard Tomkins.
Henry Dorrell.
Charles Florrie.
Henry Mylton.
Henry Payne.
Thomas Harris.
William Nicholes.
Thomas Pheuens.
Iohn Borden.
Thomas Scot.
Peter Little.
Iohn Wyles.
Brian Wyles.
George Martyn.
Hugh Pattenson.
Martyn Sutton.
Iohn Farre.
Iohn Bridger.
Griffen Iones.
Richard Shaberdge.
Iames Lasie.
Iohn Cheuen.
Thomas Hewet.
William Berde.

Women.

Elyoner Dare.
Margery Haruie.
Agnes Wood.
Wenefrid Powell.
Ioyce Archard.
Iane Iones.
Elizabeth Glane.
Iane Pierce.
Audry Tappan.
Alis Chapman.
Emme Merrimoth.
Colman.
Margaret Lawrence.
Ioan Warren.
Iane Mannering.
Rose Payne.
Elizabeth Viccars.

Iohn Sampson.
Robert Ellis.
Ambrose Viccars.
Thomas Archard.
Thomas Humfrey.
Tomas Smart.
George Howe.
Iohn Prat.
William Wythers.
} Boyes and Children.

Children borne in Virginia.

Virginia Dare.
Haruye.

Sauages.

Manteo. } That were in Englande and returned home into Virginia with them.
Towaye. }

The first voyage intended for the supply of the Colonie planted in *Virginia by Iohn White which being vndertaken in the yeere* 1588 by casualtie tooke no effect.

After the Gouernors returne out of Virginia the 20. of November 1587. he deliuered his letters and other aduertisments concerning his last voyage and state of the planters to Sir Walter Raleigh: whereupon he foorthwith appointed a pinnesse to be sent thither with all such necessaries as he vnderstood they stood in neede of: and also wrote his

his letters vnto them, wherein among other matters he comforted them with promise, that with all conuenient speede he would prepare a good supply of shipping and men with sufficience of all thinges needefull, which he intended, God willing, should be with them the Sommer following. Which pinnesse and fleete were accordingly prepared in the West countrey at Bidiford vnder the charge of Sir Richard Greeneuil. This fleete being now in a readinesse only staying but for a faire wind to put to Sea, at the same time there was spred throughout all England such report of the wonderfull preparation and inuincible fleetes made by the king of Spaine ioyned with the power of the Pope for the inuading of England, that most of the ships of warre then in a readines in any hauen in England were staied for seruice at home: And sir Richard Greeneuil was personally commanded not to depart out of Cornewall. The voyage for Virginia by these meanes for this yere thus disappointed, the Gouernour notwithstanding labored for the releife of the planters so earnestly, that he obtained two small pinnesses the one of them being of 30. tonnes called the Brave, the other of 25. called the Roe, wherein 15. planters and all their prouision, with certaine releife for those that wintered in the Countrie was to be transported.

Thus the 22. of Aprill 1588. we put ouer the barre at Bidiford in the edge of the Northside of Cornewal, and the same night we came to an anker vnder the Isle of Lundy, where some of our company went on land: After we had roade there about the space of three howers we waied anker againe and all that night we bare along the coast of Cornewall.

The next day being S. Georges day and the 23. of Aprill still bearing along the coast we gaue chase to 4. ships, & boyded them & forced them all to come to anker by vs in a final bay at the lands end, out of these ships we tooke nothing but 3. men, & the same night we weighed & put to Sea.

The 24. day we gaue chase to 2. ships, the one of them being a Scot the other a Breton. These we boyded also & tooke from them whatsoeuer we could find worth the taking, & so let them goe.

The 26. of April we eſcried a ship on sterne of vs, for whom we strooke our toppe saple, and staied for it. By that time he came with vs we saw in his flagge a redd crosse: whereupon we helde him for an Englishman, & gaue ouer our preparation to fight with him. But when he was come neere to vs we perceiued his flagge not to be a right S. George: whereupon we were somewhat amased hauing so farre mistaken, for it was a very tall ship, and excellently well appointed & now readie to clap vs aboord. And it was not now neede to bid euery man to bestirre himselfe, for each one prepared with al speed to fight. In the meane time we hayled them whence they were: They answered of Flushing, bound for Barbarie. And they perceiuing vs to be Englishmen of warre bare from vs and gaue vs a piece, and we gaue them two pieces and so departed.

The 27. day in the morning we were come with the heigth of cape Finister, the winde being still at Northeast.

The 28. day the wind shifted: about foure of the clocke in the afternoone the same day we eſcried a saple to the weather of vs, whom we kept so neere vnto vs as we could all that night.

The 29. in the morning we gaue chase to the same ship being then to the wind of vs almost as farre as we could ken. Assoone as our pinnes, came vp to them, the pinnes fought with the ship, & it was an Hulke of 200. tonnes & more, but after a few great shot bestowed on both sides, the pinnesse perceiuing her consort not able to come to ayd her left the Hulke & came roome with the Braue againe. At their comming they desired the Captaine & Master of the Braue to lend them some men and other things whereof they had neede. Which things put aboord the they returned againe to the chase of the Hulke earnestly, and with ful purpose to boord her. But the Hulke bare all night in with the coast of Spaine, and by morning were so neere land, that we fearing eyther change of wind or to be calmed gaue ouer the fight and put off to Sea againe.

May.

The first day of May being Wednesday the wind came large at Northeast.

The 3. being friday we gaue chase to another tal ship, but it was night before we spake with her: and the night grew darke sodenly in such sort, that we lost sight both of the great ship & of our consort also, hauing thus in the darke lost our pinnesse, & knowing our barke so bad of saple that we could neither take nor leue, but were rather to be taken or left of euery ship we met, we made our course for the Isle of Madera, hoping there to find our pinnesse abiding for vs.

The same day following being the 5. of May we spake with a man of warre of Rochel of 60. tons, very wel manned & brauely appointed being bound, as he said for Peru: hauing hailed each other, we parted frindly in outward shew, giuing each other a voley of shot & a great piece: but neuertheles we suspected ỳ which followed: for this Rocheller hauing take perfect view of our ship, men, &

ordinance, towards euening fell on sterne of vs: and assoone as it was darke left vs, and returned to his consort which was a tal ship of 100. tonne lying then on hull to weather of vs out of ken, hauing 84. men in her, whereof 50. were smal shot, and 12. muskets, and in the ship 10. peeces of ordinance. This ship being this night certified by her consort that viewed vs, of what force we were and how bad of sayle, this greater ship tooke in 20. of the chiefest men that were in the smalest ship, and presently gaue vs chase.

The next morning being Monday and the 6. of May, we escried them in the weather of vs, so that it was in vaine to seeke by flight, but rather by fight to helpe our selues. The same day about 2. of the clocke in the afternoone they were come with vs. We hayled them, but they would not answere. Then we waued them to leewardes of vs, and they waued vs with a sword a mayne, fitting their sailes to clappe vs aboord, which we perceiuing gaue them one whole side: with one of our great shot their Master gonners shoolder was stroken away, and our Master gonner with a smal bullet was shot into the head. Being by this time grappled and aboord each of other the fight continued without ceasing one houre and a halfe. In which fight were hurt & slaine on both sides 23. of the chiefest men, hauing most of them some 6. or 8. woundes, and some 10. or 12. woundes. Being thus hurt and spoiled they robbed vs of all our victuals, powder, weapons and prouision, sauing a smal quantity of biskuit to serue vs scarce for England. Our Master and his Mate were deadly wounded, so that they were not able to come forth of their beds. I my selfe was wounded twise in the head, once with a sword, and another time with a pike, and hurt also in the side of the buttoke with a shot. Three of our passengers were hurt also, whereof one had 10. or 12. woundes our Master hurt in the face with a pike and thrust quite through the head. Being thus put to our close fights, and also much pestred with cabbens and vnseruiceable folkes we could not stirre to handle our weapons nor charge a piece: againe hauing spent all the powder in our flaskes and charges which we had present for our defence, they cut downe our netting and entred so many of their men as could stand vpon our poope and forecastle, from whence they playd extreemely vpon vs with their shot. As thus we stood resolued to die in fight, the Captaine of the Frenchmen cried to vs to yeld and no force should be offred. But after we had yelded, they knowing so many of their best men to be hurt and in danger of present death, began to grow into a new furie, in which they would haue put vs to the sword had not their Captaine charged them, and perswaded them to the contrary. Being at length pacified they fell on all handes to rifling and carying aboord all the next day vntil 4. of the clock: at which time by ouer greedy lading both their owne boate and ours, they sunke the one and split the other by the ships side: by meanes whereof they left vs two cables and ankers, all our ordinance and most part of our sailes, which otherwise had ben taken away also. Furthermore they doubting the wind would arise, and night at hand, & a tal ship al that day by meanes of the calme in sight, they came aboord vs with their ship, and tooke in their men that were in vs, who left vs not at their departing any thing worth the carying away. Being thus ransacked and vsed as is aforesaid in all sorts, we determined (as our best shift in so hard a case) to returne for England, and caused all our able and vnhurt men, to fal to newe rigging & mending our sailes, tacklings, and such things as were spilled in our fight. By this occasion, God iustly punishing our former thecuerie of our euil disposed mariners, we were of force cõstrained to breake of our voyage intended for the relefe of our Colony left the yere before in Virginia, and the same night to set our course for England, being then about 50. leagues to the Northeast of Madera.

The 7. of May being Wednesday in the forenoone the wind came large at East northeast and we haled off as farre west and by north as we could vntill the 10. of May, fearing to meete with any more men of warre, for that we had no maner of weapons left vs.

The 11. the wind larged more, and thence forth we continued our due course for England.

The 17. of May we thrust our selues west of Vsshant, & sounded, but found no ground at 110 fathoms. The same day at night we sounded againe, and found ground at 80. fathoms.

The 20. being Sonday we fell with the coast of Ireland.

The 21. in the forenoone we saw the Northside of Cornewal at the lands end.

The 22. of May we came to an anker betweene Lunday and Harting point neere vnto Chatell key, where we road vntill the next tyde, and thence we put ouer the barre, and the same day landed at Biddeford.

Our other pinnesse whose company we had lost before the last cruell fight, returned also home into Cornwall within fewe weekes after our arrival, without performing our entended voyage for the relefe of the planters in Virginia, which thereby were not a litle distressed.

The

The Letters patents of the Queenes Maieſtie, graunted to Maſter *Adrian Gylbert and others, for the ſearch and diſcouerie of the* Northweſt Paſſage to China.

ELizabeth by the grace of God of England, Fraunce, & Ireland Queene, defender of the fayth, &c. To all, to whome theſe preſents ſhall come, greeting: Foraſmuch as our truſtie and welbeloued ſubiect Adrian Gylbert of Sandridge in the Countie of Deuon, Gentleman, to his great coſtes and charges, hath greatly & earneſtly trauailed and ſought, and yet doth trauel & ſeeke, & by diuers meanes indeuoureth & laboureth, that the Paſſage vnto China & the Iles of Molluccas, by the Northweſtward, Northeaſtwarde, or Northwarde, vnto which part or partes of the worlde, none of our Loyall ſubiects haue hitherto had any traffike or trade, may be diſcouered, knowen, & frequented by the ſubiects of this our Realme: Know ye therefore that for the conſiderations aforeſayd & for diuers other good conſiderations vs thereunto ſpecially mouing, We of our grace eſpeciall, certaine knowledge, and meere motion, haue giuen and graunted, and by theſe preſents for vs, our heires and ſucceſſors, doe giue and graunt free libertie, power, and full authoritie to the ſayd Adrian Gylbert, & to any other perſon by him or his heires to be aſſigned, and to thoſe his Aſſociates and aſſiſtants, whoſe names are written in a ſedule hereunto annexed, and to their heires, and to one aſſignee of eche of them, and ech of their heires at all times, and at any time or times after the date of theſe preſents, vnder our Banners and Enſignes freely, without let, interruption, or reſtraint of vs, our heires or ſucceſſors, any lawe, ſtatute, proclamation, patent, charter, or prouiſo to the contrary notwithſtanding, to ſayle, make voyage, and by any maner of meanes to paſſe and to depart out of this our Realme of Englande, or any our Realmes, Dominions, or Territories into all or any Iles, Countries, Regions, Prouinces, Territories, Seas, Riuers, Portes, Bayes, Creekes, armes of the Sea, and all Hauens, and all maner of other places whatſoeuer, that by the ſayd Northweſtward, Northeaſtward, or Northward, is to be by him, his aſſociates or aſſignes diſcouered, and for and in the ſayde ſayling, voyage, and paſſage, to haue and vſe ſo many ſhips, Barks, Pinneſſes, or other veſſels of any quantitie or burthen, with all the furniture of men, victuals, and all maner of neceſſary prouiſion, armour, weapons, ordinance, targets, and appurtenances whatſoeuer, as to ſuch a voyage ſhall or may be requiſite, conuenient or commodious, any lawe, ſtatute, ordinance or prouiſo to the contrarie thereof notwithſtanding. And alſo we doe giue and graunt to the ſayde Adrian Gylbert, and his ſayd aſſociates, and to ſuch aſſignee of him, & his heires, and to the heires & one aſſignee of euery of his ſayde aſſociates for euer, full power and abſolute authoritie to trade and make their reſiance in any of the ſayd Iles, Countries, Regions, Prouinces, Territories, Seas, Riuers, Portes, Bayes, and Hauens, and all maner of other places whatſoeuer, with all commodities, profites, and emoluments in the ſayd place or any of them, growing and ariſing, with all maner of priuileges, prerogatiues, iuriſdictions and royalties both by ſea and land whatſoeuer, yeelding and paying therefore vnto vs, our heires and ſucceſſors, the tenth part of all ſuch golde and ſiluer oare, pearles, iewels, and precious ſtones, or the value thereof, as the ſayd Adrian Gylbert and his ſayd aſſociates, their heires and aſſignes, ſeruants, factors, or workemen, and euery or any of them ſhall finde, the ſayd tenth to be deliuered duely to our Cuſtomer, or other officers by vs, our heires or ſucceſſors thereunto aſſigned, in the Portes of London, Dartmouth, or Plymmouth, at which three places onely the ſayd Adrian Gylbert, and his ſayd aſſociates, their ſayd heires and aſſignes, ſhall lade, charge, arriue, and diſcharge all maner of wares, goods, and marchandizes whatſoeuer to the ſayd voyage, and newe trade belonging or appertaining. And moreouer, we haue giuen, graunted, and authorized, and by theſe preſents for vs, our heires and ſucceſſors, of our grace eſpeciall, certaine knowledge, and meere motion, doe giue, graunt, and authorize the ſayd Adrian Gylbert, and his ſayd aſſociates for euer, their heires, and their ſayde aſſignes and euery of them, that if the aforeſayd Iles, Countries, Regions, Prouinces, Territories, Seas, Riuers, Portes, Bayes, or Hauens, or any other of the premiſſes by the ſayd Adrian Gylbert or his aſſociates, their heires and their ſayd aſſignes, or any of them to be found by them diſcouered and traffiked vnto by any trade as aforeſayde, ſhall be by any other our ſubiects viſited, frequented, haunted, traded vnto or inhabited by the wayes aforeſayd, without the ſpeciall licence in writing of the ſayd Adrian Gylbert and his aſſociates, and their heires and aſſignes for euer, or by the moſt part of them, ſo that the ſayd Adrian Gylbert, his heires or aſſignes be one of them, that then aſwell their ſhippe, or ſhippes in any ſuch voyage or voyages vſed, as all

and singular their goods, wares, and marchandizes, or any other things whatsoeuer, from or to any of the places aforesaid transported, that so shal presume to visit, frequent, haunt, trade vnto, or inhabite, shalbe forfaited and confiscated, ipso facto, the one halfe of the same goods and marchandizes, or other things whatsoeuer, or the value thereof to be to the vse of vs, our heires or successours, and the other moytie thereof to be to the vse of the said Adrian Gylbert, and his said associates, their heires and assignes for euer: and vnto the said Adrian Gylbert and his said associates, their heires and assignes wee impose, giue, assigne, create and confirme this name peculiar to be named by, to sue and to be sued by, that is to wit, by the name of the Colleagues of the fellowship for the discouerie of the Northwest passage, and them for vs, our heires and successours by that name doe incorporate, and do erect and create as one body corporate to haue continuance for euer. Moreouer vnto the sayd Adrian Gylbert, and his sayd associates, and vnto their heires and their sayd assignes for euer, by name of the Colleagues of the fellowship, for the discouerie of the Northwest passage, we haue giuen, graunted, & confirmed, and doe by these presents giue, graunt, and confirme full power and authoritie from time to time, and at all times hereafter, to make order, decree, and enact, constitute and ordeine, and appoint all such ordinances, orders, decrees, lawes, and acts, as the sayd newe corporation or body politique, Colleagues of the felowship for the discouerie of the Northwest passage, shal thinke meete, necessary, & conuenient, so that they or any of them be not contrary to the lawes of this realme, & of this our present graunt.

And wee by our Royall prerogatiue, and fulnesse of our authoritie of our grace especiall, certaine knowledge and meere motion, doe establish, confirme and ratifie all such ordinances, orders, decrees, lawes and acts to be in so full and great power and authoritie, as we, our heires or successours may or can in any such case graunt, confirme, or ratifie. And further for the better incouragement of our louing subiects in this discouerie, wee by our Royall prerogatiue, and fulnesse of authoritie for vs, our heires and successours, doe giue, graunt, establish, confirme, ordeine, ratifie and allowe by these presents, to the sayd Adrian Gylbert and to his associates, and to the heires and assignes of them and euery of them for euer, and to all other person or persons of our louing subiects whatsoeuer that shall hereafter trauell, saple, discouer, or make voyage as aforesayd to any the Iles, Mainelands, Countries or Territories whatsoeuer, by vertue of this our graunt to be discouered, that the heires and assignes of them and euery of them being borne within any of the Iles, Mainelands & Countries, or Territories whatsoeuer before mentioned, shall haue and inioy all the priuileges of free Denizens, as persons natiue borne within this our Realme of England, or within our allegiance for euer, in such like ample maner and forme, as if they were or had bene borne and personally resiant within our sayde Realme, any lawe, statute, proclamation, custome or vsage to the contrarie hereof in any wise notwithstanding. Moreouer, for the consideration aforesayde by vertue hereof, wee giue and graunt vnto the sayde Adrian Gylbert, his heires and assignes for euer, free libertie, licence and priuilege, that during the space of fiue yeeres next & immediatly ensuing the date hereof, it shal not be lawfull for any person or persons whatsoeuer, to visite, haunt, frequent, trade, or make voyage to any Iles, Mainelands, Countries, Regions, Prouinces, Territories, Seas, Riuers, Portes, Bayes, and Hauens, nor to any other Hauens or places whatsoeuer hitherto not yet discouered by any of our subiects by vertue of this graunt to be traded vnto, without the speciall consent and good liking of the sayd Adrian Gylbert, his heires or assignes first had in writing. And if any person or persons of the associates of the sayde Adrian, his heires or assignes, or any other person or persons whatsoeuer, free of this discouerie, shall doe any act or acts contrary to the tenour and true meaning hereof, during the space of the sayde fiue yeeres, that then the partie and parties so offending, they and their heires for euer shall loose (ipso facto) the benefite and priuilege of this our graunt, and shall stand and remaine to all intents and purposes as persons exempted out of this graunt: And further by vertue hereof, we giue & graunt for vs, our heires and successours at all times during the space of fiue yeeres next ensuing the date hereof, free libertie and licence, and full authoritie to the sayd Adrian Gylbert, and his heires and assignes, that if it shall happen any one or moe in any shippe or shippes sayling on their sayde voyage, to become mutinous, seditious, disorderly, or any way vnruly to the preiudice or hinderance of the hope for successe in the attempt or prosecuting of this discouerie or trade intended, to vse or execute vpon him or them so offending, such punishment, correction, or execution as the cause shall be found in iustice to require by the verdit of twelue of the companie swoorne thereunto, as in such a case appertaineth: That expresse mention of the certaintie of the premises, or of other giftes or graunts by vs to the sayde Adrian Gylbert and his associates before this time made is not mentioned in these presents, or any other lawe, act, statute, prouiso, graunt, or proclamation

tion heretofore made or hereafter to be made to the contrary hereof in any wise notwithstanding. In witnesse whereof, we haue caused these our Letters to be made patents: Witnesse our selfe at Westminster, the first day of Februarie, in the fiue and twentie yeere of our Reigne.

The first voyage of Master Iohn Dauis, vndertaken in Iune 1585. for the Discouerie of the Northwest Passage,

Written by Iohn Ianes Marchant, seruant to the worthipfull M. William Sanderson.

CErtaine Honourable personages and worthy Gentlemen of the Court and Countrey, with diuers worshipfull Marchants of London and of the West Countrey, mooued with desire to aduance Gods glory and to seeke the good of their native Countrey, consulting together of the likelihood of the Discouerie of the Northwest passage, which heretofore had bene attempted, but vnhappily giuen ouer by accidents vnlooked for, which turned the enterprisers from their principall purpose, resolued after good deliberation, to put downe their aduentures to prouide for necessarie shipping, and a fit man to be chiefe Conductour of this so hard an enterprise. The setting foorth of this action was committed by the aduenturers, especially to the care of M. William Sanderson Marchant of London, who was so forward therein, that besides his trauaile which was not small, hee became the greatest aduenturer with his purse, and commended vnto the rest of the company one M. Iohn Dauis, a man very well grounded in the principles of the arte of Nauigation, for Captaine and chiefe Pilot of this exploit.

Thus therefore all things being put in a readines, wee departed from Dartmouth the seuenth of June, towards the discouerie of the aforesayd Northwest passage, with two Barks, the one being of 50. tunnes, named the Sunneshine of London, and the other being 35. tunnes, named the Moonesshine of Dartmouth. In the Sunneshine we had 23. persons, whose names are these following, M. Iohn Dauis Captaine, William Eston Master, Richard Pope Masters mate, Iohn Iane Marchant, Henry Dauie gunner, William Crosse boatswayne, Iohn Bagge, Walter Arthur, Luke Adams, Robert Coxworthie, Iohn Ellis, Iohn Kelly, Edward Helman, William Dicke, Andrew Maddocke, Thomas Hill, Robert Wats Carpenter, William Russel, Christopher Gorney boy: Iames Cole, Francis Ridley, Iohn Russel, Robert Corniſh, Musicians.

The Moonesshine had 19. persons, William Bruton Captaine, Iohn Ellis Master, the rest Mariners.

The 7. of June the Captaine and the Master drewe out a proportion for the continuance of our victuals.

The 8. day the winde being at Southwest and West southwest, wee put in for Falmouth, where we remained vntill the 13.

The 13. the winde blewe at North, and being fayre weather we departed.

The 14. with contrarie winde we were forced to put into Sylley.

The 15. we departed thence, hauing the winde North & by East moderate and fayre weather.

The 16. we were driuen backe againe, and were constrained to arriue at newe Gymsbie at Sylley: here the winde remained contrary 12. dayes, and in that space the Captaine, the Master and I went about all the Ilands, and the Captaine did platte out and describe the situation of all the Ilands, rockes and harboroughs to the exact vse of Nauigation, with lynes and scale thereunto conuenient.

The 28. in Gods name we departed the winde being Easterly, but calme. They depart from Sylly.

The 29. very foggie.

The 30. foggie.

The first of July we sawe great store of Porpoſes, The Master called for an harping yron, and shot twise or thrise: sometimes he missed, and at last shot one and strooke him in the side, and wound him into the shippe: when we had him aboorde, the Master sayd it was a darlie head. July.

The 2. we had some of the fish sodden, and it did eate as sweete as any mutton.

The 3. we had more in sight, and the Master went to shoote at them, but they were so great, that they burst our yrons, and we lost both fish, yrons, pastime and all: yet neuertheleſſe, the Master shot at them with a pike, and had welnigh gotten one, but he was so strong that he burst off the barres of the pike and went away: then hee tooke the boat hooke, and hit one with that, but all would not preuaile, so at length we let them alone.

The

The firſt we ſawe a very great Whale, and euery day after we ſawe Whales continually.

The 16. 17. 18. we ſawe great ſtore of Whales.

The 19. of July we fell into a great whirling and huſtling of a tyde, ſetting to the Northwards: and ſayling about halfe a league wee came into a very calme Sea, which bent to the South ſouthweſt: Here we heard a mighty great roaring of the Sea as if it had bene the breach of ſome ſhoare, the ayre being ſo foggie and full of thicke miſt, that wee could not ſee the one ſhip from the other being a very ſmall diſtance aſunder: ſo the Captaine and the Maſter being in diſtruſt howe the tyde might ſet them, cauſed the Mooneſhine to hoyſe out her boate and to ſound, but they could not finde ground in 300. fathoms and better. Then the Captaine, Maſter, and I went towards the breach, to ſee what it ſhould be, giuing charge to our gunners that at euery glaſſe they ſhould ſhoote off a muſket ſhot, to the intent we might keepe our ſelues from looſing them: Then comming nere to the breach, we met many Ilands of yce flocing, which had quickly compaſſed vs about: then we went vpon ſome of them, and did perceiue that all the roaring which we heard, was cauſed onely by the rouling of this yce together: Our company ſeeing vs not to returne according to our appointment, left off ſhooting muſkets, and began to ſhoote faukonets, for they feared ſome miſhap had befallen vs, but before night we came aboyde againe with our boat laden with yce, which made very good freſh water. Then wee bent our courſe towarde the North, hoping by that meanes to double the land.

The rouling of the yce together made a great roaring.

Yce turned into water.

The 20. as we ſayled along the coaſt the fogge brake vp, and wee diſcouered the land, which was the moſt deformed rocky and mountainous land that euer we ſawe: The firſt ſight whereof did ſhewe as if it had bene in forme of a ſugar loafe, ſtanding to our ſight aboue the cloudes, for that it did ſhewe ouer the fogge like a white liſte in the ſkye, the tops altogether couered with ſnowe, and the ſhoare beſet with yce a league off into the Sea, making ſuch yrkſome noyſe as that it ſeemed to be the true patterne of deſolation, and after the ſame our Captaine named it, The land of Deſolation.

The land of Deſolation.

The 21. the winde came Northerly and ouerblewe, ſo that we were conſtrained to bend our courſe South againe, for we perceiued that we were runne into a very deepe Bay, where wee were almoſt compaſſed with yce, for we ſawe very much toward the North northeaſt, Weſt and Southweſt: and this day and this night we cleared our ſelues of the yce, running South ſouthweſt along the ſhoare.

Upon Thurſday being the 22. of this moneth, about three of the clocke in the morning, wee hoyſed out our boate, and the Captaine with ſixe ſaylers went towards the ſhoare, thinking to finde a landing place, for the night before we did perceiue the coaſt to be voide of yce to our iudgement, and the ſame night we were all perſwaded that wee had ſeene a canoa rowing along the ſhoare, but afterwards we fell in ſome doubt of it, but we had no great reaſon ſo to doe. The Captaine rowing towards the ſhoare, willed the Maſter to beare in with the land after him, and before he came neere the ſhore by the ſpace of a league, or about two miles, hee found ſo much yce, that he could not get to land by any meanes. Here our mariners put to their lines to ſee if they could get any fiſh, becauſe there were ſo many ſeales vpon the coaſt, and the birds did beate vpon the water, but all was in vaine: The water about this coaſt was very blacke and thicke, like to a filthy ſtanding poole, we ſounded and had ground in 120. fathoms. While the Captaine was rowing to the ſhoare, our men ſawe woods vpon the rocks like to the rocks of Newfoundland, but I could not diſcerne them, yet it might be ſo very well: for we had wood floting vpon the coaſt euery day, and the Mooneſhine tooke vp a tree at Sea not farre from the coaſt being ſixtie foote of length and fourteene handfuls about, hauing the roote vpon it: After, the Captaine came aboyde the weather being very calme and fayre we bent our courſe toward the South, with intent to double the land.

Very blacke water.

Floting wood

The 23. we coaſted the land which did lye Eaſt northeaſt and Weſt ſouthweſt.

The 24. the winde being very faire at Eaſt, we coaſted the land which did lie Eaſt & Weſt, not being able to come neere the ſhoare by reaſon of the great quantitie of yce. At this place, becauſe the weather was ſomewhat colde by reaſon of the yce, & the better to encourage our men, their alowance was increaſed: The Captaine and the Maſter tooke order that euery meſſe being fiue perſons, ſhould haue halfe a pound of bread and a kan of beere euery morning to breakfaſt. The weather was not very colde, but the ayre was moderate like to our Aprill weather in England: when the winde came from the land or the yce it was ſomewhat colde, but when it came off the ſea it was very hotte.

Colde by reaſon of yce.

They ſayle Northweſtward aboue foure dayes.

The 25. of this moneth wee departed from ſight of this land, at ſixe of the clocke in the morning, directing our courſe to the Northweſtwarde, hoping in Gods mercy to finde our deſired paſſage,

passage, and so continued aboue foure dayes.

The 29. of July, we discouered land in 64. degrees 15. mi. of latitude, bearing Northeast from vs. The winde being contrary to goe to the Northwestwards, we bare in with this land to take some view of it, being vtterly voyde of the perfect of yce, and very temperate. Comming neere the coast, we found many fayre sounds & good roads for shipping, and many great inlets into the land, whereby wee iudged this land, to be a great number of Ilands standing together. Here hauing moyed our barke in good order, we went on shoare vpon a small Ilande, to seeke for water and wood. Upon this Iland we did perceiue that there had bene people: for we found a small shoe and pieces of leather sowed with sinewes, and a piece of furre, and wooll like to Beuer. Then we went vpon another Iland on the otherside of our ships: And the Captaine the Master and I, being got vp to the top of an high rocke, the people of the country hauing espied vs, made a lamentable noyse, as we thought, with great outcryes and shreechings: wee hearing them, thought it had bene the howling of wolues. At last I hallowed againe, and they likewise cryed. Then we perceiuing where they stood, some on the shoare, and one rowing in a Canoa about a smal Iland fast by them, we made a great noyse partly to allure them to vs, and partly to warne our company of them. Whereupon M. Bruton, and the master of his ship with others of their company, made great haste towards vs, and brought our Musicians with them from our shippe, purposing either by force to rescue vs, if neede should so require, or with curtesie to allure the people. When they came vnto vs, we caused our Musicians to play, our selues dauncing, and making many signes of friendship. At length there came 10. Canoas from the other Ilands, and two of them came so neere the shoare where we were, that they talked with vs, the other being in their boats a pretie way off. Their pronounciation was very hollow through the throate, and their speach such as we could not vnderstand: onely we allured them by friendly imbracings and signes of curtesie. At length one of them pointing vp to the sunne with his hande, would presently strike his brest so hard, that we might here the blowe. This he did many times, before he would any way trust vs. Then John Ellis the master of the Mooneshine, was appointed to vse his best policie to gaine their friendshippe: who strooke his breast and pointed to the sunne after their order: which when he had diuerse times done, they began to trust him, and one of them came on shoare, to whome we threwe our caps, stockings and gloues, and such other things as then we had about vs, playing with our musicke, and making signes of ioy, and dancing. So the night comming we bade them fareweell, and went aboord our barks.

Land in 64. degrees 15. mi.

The sounde where our ships did ride, was called Culberts sound.

Musicians.

The people of the country came and conferre with our men.

The next morning being the 30. of July, there came 37. Canoas rowing by our shippes, calling to vs to come on shoare: Wee not making any great haste vnto them, one of them went vp to the top of the rocke, and lept and daunced as they had done the day before, shewing vs a seales skinne, and another thing made like a timbrel, which he did beate vpon with a sticke, making a noyse like a small drumme. Whereupon we manned our boats and came to them, they all playing in their Canoas: wee came to the water side where they were: and after we had sworne by the sunne after their fashion, they did trust vs. So I shooke hands with one of them, and hee kissed my hand, and we were very familier with them. We were in so great credit with them vpon this single acquaintance, that wee could haue any thing they had. We bought fiue Canoas of them: we bought their clothes from their backs, which were all made of seales skins and birdes skinnes: their buskins, their hose, their gloues, all being commonly sowed and well dressed: so that we were fully perswaded, that they haue diuers artificers among them. Wee had a paire of buskins of them full of fine wooll like beuer. Their apparell for heate, was made of birds skinnes with their feathers on them. We sawe among them leather dressed like glouers leather, and thicke thongs like white leather of a good length. Wee had of their darts and oares, and found in them that they would by no meanes displease vs, but would giue vs whatsoeuer we asked of them, and would be satisfied with whatsoeuer we gaue them. They tooke great care one of an other: for when we had bought their boates, then two other would come and carie him away betweene them that had soulde vs his. They are a very tractable people, voyde of craft or double dealing, and easie to be brought to any ciuilitie or good order: but wee iudge them to bee Idolaters and to worship the Sunne.

Their musick.

Great familiaritie with the Sauages.

During the time of our abode among these Ilands, we found reasonable quantitie of wood, both firre, spruse and iuniper: which whither it came floting any great distance to these places where we found it, or whither it grew in some great Ilands neere the same place by vs not yet discouered, we know not. But wee iudge that it groweth there further into the lande then wee were, because the people had great store of darts & oares, which they made none accompt of, but gaue them to vs for small trifles, as poynts and pieces of paper. Wee sawe about this coaste

Diuers sorts of Wood.

marueilous

They may make much trayne, if they had meanes how to vse it.

Moscouie glasse.

A fruite like Corinthes.

maruellous great abundance of seales skulking together like skuls of smal fish. Wee found no fresh water among these Ilands, but only snow water, whereof we found greate pooles. The cliffes were al of such oare as M. Frobisher brought from meta Incognita. Wee had diuerse shewes of studie or Muskouie glasse shining not altogether vnlike to Christal. Wee founde an herbe growing vpon the rocks, whose fruite was sweete, full of red iuyce, & the ripe ones were like corinths. We found also birch & willow growing like shrubs low to the ground. These people haue great store of furs as we iudge. They made shewes vnto vs ỳ 30. of this present, which was the second time of our being with them, after they perceiued we would haue skins, & furs, that they would goe into the country & come againe the next day, with such things as they had: but this night the wind comming faire the Captaine & the master would by no meanes detract the purpose of our discouery. And so the last of this moneth about 4. of the clocke in the morning, in Gods name wee set saile, and were al that day becalmed vpon the coaste.

August. Land in 66. degre. 40. mi.

The 1. of August we had a faire wind & so proceeded towards the northwest for our discouerie.

The 6. of August we discouered land in 66. de. 40. mi. of latitude altogether voyd from ỳ perill of yce: we ankered in a very faire rode, vnder a very braue mount, the cliffes whereof were as orient as gold. This mount was named mount Raleigh: the rode where our ships lay at anker was called Totnes Rode. The sounde which did compasse the mount was named Exeter sound: the foreland towards the North, was called Dyers Cape. The foreland toward the south was named Cape Walsingham. So soone as we were come to an anker in Totnes Rode vnder mount Raleigh, we espied 4. white beares at the foote of the mount. We supposing them to bee goates or wolues, manned our boats and went towards them: but when wee came neere the shore, wee found them to be white beares of a monstruous bignesse: we being desirous of fresh victual and the sport, began to assault them, & I being on land one of them came down the hil right against me: my piece was charged with haileshot and a bullet, I discharged my piece and shot him in the necke: hee roared a litle and tooke the water straight, making smal account of his hurt. Then we followed him w̄ our boate, & killed him w̄ boare speares, & two more that night. We found nothing in their mawes, but we iudged by their dung, that they fed vpon grasse, because it appeared in al respects like the dung of an horse, wherein we might very plainely see the very strawes.

The 7. we went on shoare to another beare which lay alnight vpon the top of an Iland vnder mount Raleigh, & when we came vp to him he lay fast a sleepe. I leueled at his head, & the stone of my peece gaue no fire, with that he looked vp and laid down his head againe: then I shot being charged with 2. bullets and strooke him in the head: he being but amazed fel backewardes, whervpon we ran al vpon him with horsespeares and thrust him in the bodie: yet for all that he gript away our horsespeares and went towards the water, and as he was going downe he came backe againe. Then our master shot his horsespeare and strooke him in the head, and made him to take the water, and swimme into a coue fast by, where we killed him and brought him aborde. The breadth of his forefoote from one side to the other, was 14. inches ouer. They were very fat so as we were constrayned to cast the fat away. We saw a rauen vpon mount Raleigh We found withies also growing lowe like shrubs and flowers like primroses in the same place. The coast is very mountaynous, altogether without wood, grasse or earth, and is only huge mountaines of stone, but the brauest stone that euer we sawe. The ayre was very moderate in this country.

The 8. we departed from mount Raleigh coasting along the shoare, which lyeth south southwest, and east northeast.

The 9. our men fel in dislike of their allowance, because it was to small as they thought. Whereupon we made a newe proportion: euery messe being fiue to a messe should haue 4. pound of bread a day: 12. wine quarts of bere: 6. newland fishes: and the flesh dayes a gill of pease more: so we restrayned them from their butter and cheese.

The eleuenth we came to the most southerly cape of this lande, which we named the Cape of Gods mercy: as being the place of our first entrance for the discouery. The weather being very foggie we coasted this Northland: at length when it brake vp, we perceiued that we were shotte into a very fayre entrance or passage, being in some places 20. leagues broade, and in some 30. altogether voyde of any perill of yce, the weather very tollerable, and the water of the very colour, nature and qualitie of the mayne ocean, which gaue vs the greater hope of our passage. Hauing sayled Northwest sixtie leagues in this entrance wee discouered certaine Ilandes standing in the middest thereof, hauing open passage on both sides. Whereupon our shippes deuided themselues, the one sayling on the Northside, the other on the southside, of the sayde Isles, where wee stayed fiue dayes hauing the winde at Southeast very foggie and foule weather.

The

The 14. we went on ſhoare and found ſignes of people, for we found ſtones layde vp together like a wall, and ſaw the ſkull of a man or a woman.

The 15. we heard dogs houle on the ſhoare, which we thought had bene Wolues, and therefore we went on ſhoare to kil them. When we came on lande, the dogs came preſently to our boate very gently, yet we thought they came to pray vpon vs, and therefore we ſhot at them and killed two: and about the necke of one of them we found a letheren coller, whereupon we thought them to be tame dogs. There were twentie dogs like maſtiues with pricke eares and long buſh tayles: we found a bone in the prizels of their dogs. Then wee went farther and founde two ſleads made like ours in Englande. The one was made of firre, ſpruſe and oken boards, ſawen like inch boards: the other was made all of whale bone, and there hung on the toppes of the ſleds three heads of beaſts, which they had killed. We ſaw here, larkes, rauens, and partriges. Timber ſawen. Fowle.

The 17. we went on ſhoare, and in a litle thing made like an ouen with ſtones, I found many ſmal trifles, as a ſmall canoa made of wood, a piece of wood made like an image, a bird made of bone, beads hauing ſmall holes in one end of them to hang about their necks, and other ſmall things. The coaſt was very barbarous without wood or graſſe. The rockes were very faire like marble full of vaynes of diuerſe coulors. We found a ſeale which was killed not long before, being fleane and hid vnder ſtones. An image.

Our Captaine and maſter ſearched ſtill for probabilities of the paſſage, and firſt found, ‖ that this place was all Iſlands with great ſounds paſſing betweene them. Probabilities for the paſſage.

Secondly, the water remained of one coulour with the mayne ocean without altering.

Thirdly we ſaw to the weſt of thoſe Iſles three or foure Whales in a ſkul, which they iudged to come from a weſterly ſea, becauſe to the Eaſtward, we ſaw not any whale. We neuer came into any bay before or after, but the waters colour was altered very blackiſh.

Alſo as we were rowing into a very great ſound lying ſouthweſt, from whence theſe whales came, vpon the ſuddayne there came a violent counter checke of a tide from the ſouthweſt againſt the flood which we came with, not knowing from whence it was maintayned.

Fiftly, in ſayling 20. leagues within the mouth of this entrance we had ſounding in 90. fathoms, fayre grap oſie ſand, & the further we ran into the weſtwards, the deeper was the water, ſo that hard aboord the ſhoare among theſe yles, we could not haue ground in 330. fathoms.

Laſtly, it did ebbe and flowe 6. or 7. fathome vp and downe, the flood comming from diuerſe parts, ſo as we could not perceiue the chiefe maintenance thereof.

The 18. and 19. our Captaine and Maſter determined what was beſt to doe, both for the ſafegarde of their credites and ſatiſfying of the aduenturers, and reſolued, if the weather brake vp, to make further ſearch.

The 20. the winde came directly againſt vs, ſo they altered their purpoſe, and reaſoned both for proceeding and returning.

The 21. the wind being Northweſt, we departed from theſe Iſlands, and as wee coaſted the ſouth ſhoze we ſawe many fayre ſounds, whereby we were perſwaded, that it was no firme land but Iſlands.

The 23. of this moneth the wind came ſoutheaſt very ſtormy and foule weather. So we were conſtrayned to ſeeke harborowe vpon the ſouthcoaſt of this entrance, where wee fell into a very fayre ſound, and ankered in 25. fathoms greene oſy ſand. Here we went on ſhoare, where we had manifeſt ſignes of people, where they had made their fire, and laide ſtones like a wall. In this place we ſawe 4. very faire faulcons, and M. Buton tooke from one of them his pray, which we iudged by the wings and legs to be a ſnyte, for the head was eaten off. Faulcons.

The 24. in the afternoone, the wind comming ſomewhat faire wee departed from this roade, purpoſing by Gods grace to returne for England. Their returne.

The 26. we departed from ſight of the Northlande of this entraunce, directing our courſe homewards, vntil the tenth of the next moneth.

The 10. of September we fell with The land of deſolation, thinking to goe on ſhoare, but we could get nener a good harborough. That night we put to ſea againe thinking to ſearch it the next day: but this night aroſe a very great ſtorme, and ſeparated our ſhips ſo that we loſt the ſight of the Mooneſhine. September.

The 13. about noone (hauing tryed al the night before with a gooſe wing) we ſet ſaile, & within two houres after, we had ſight of the mooneſhine againe: this day we departed from this land. They ſaile from the land of Deſolation to England, in 14. dayes.

The 27. of this moneth wee fell with ſight of Englande. This night wee had a marueilous ſtorme and loſt the Mooneſhine.

The 30. of September wee came into Dartmouth where wee found the Mooneſhine being come in not two houres before.

A true

The second voyage attempted by Master Iohn Dauis *with others, for the discouerie of the Northwest* passage, in Anno 1586.

THe seuenth day of May, I departed from the porte of Dartmouth for the discouery of the Northwest passage, with a ship of an hundred and twentie tunnes, named the Mermayde, a barke of 60. tunnes, named the Sunneshine, a barke of 35. tunnes named the moonelight, and a Pynace of ten tunnes named the North starre.

And the 15. of June I discouered land in the latitude of 60. degrees, and in longitude from the meridian of London westward 47. degrees, mightily pestered with yce, and snow, so that there was no hope of landing: the yce lay in some places 10. leagues, in some 20. and in some 50. leagues off the shore, so that we were constrayned to beare into 57. degr. to double the same, and to recouer a free sea, which through Goos fauourable mercy we at length obtayned.

The nine and twentieth of June, after many tempestuous stormes, wee againe discouered lande, in longitude from the Meridian of London, 58. degrees 30. minutes, and in latitude, 64. being East from vs: into which course sith it pleased God by contrary windes to force vs, I thought it very necessary to beare in with it, and there to set vp our Pynnace, prouided in the Mermayde to be our scout for this discouerie, and so much the rather, because the yeere before I had bene in the same place, and founde it very conuenient for such a purpose, well stored with flote woode, and possessed by a people of tractable conuersation: so that the nine and twentieth of this moneth wee arriued within the Iles which lay before this lande, lying North Northwest, and South Southeast, wee knowe not howe farre. This lande is very high, and mountainous, hauing before it on the West side a mightie companie of Iles full of fayre soundes, and harboroughs. This land was very little troubled with snowe, and the sea altogether voyd of yce.

The shippes being within the soundes we sent our boates to searche for shole water, where wee might anker, which in this place is very harde to finde: and as the boate went sounding and searching, the people of the country hauing espyed them, came in their Canoas towardes them with many shoutes and cryes: but after they had espied in the boate, some of our companie that were the yeere before heere with vs, they presently rowed to the boate, and tooke holde in the oare, and hung about the boate with such comfortable ioy, as woulde require a long discourse to be vttered: they came with the boates to our shippes, making signes that they knewe all those, that the yere before had bene with them. After I perceiued their ioy, and smal feare of vs, my selfe with the merchaunts, and others of the company went a shoare bearing with me twentie kniues: I had no sooner landed, but they lept out of their Canoas, and came running to mee, and the rest, and imbraced vs with many signes of hartie welcome: at this present there were eighteene of them, and to each of them I gaue a knife: they offered skinnes to mee for reward, but I made signes that it was not solde but giuen them of curtesie: and so dismissed them for that time, with signes that they shoulde returne againe after certaine houres.

The next day with all possible speede the Pynace was landed, vpon an Isle there to bee finished to serue our purpose for the discouerie, which Isle was so conuenient for that purpose, as that we were very well able to defend our selues against many enemies. During the time that the Pynace was there setting vp, the people came continually vnto vs, sometime an hundred Canoas at a time, sometime fourtie, fiftie, more and lesse, as occasion serued. They brought with them seale skinnes, stagge skinnes, white beares, seale fishe, samon peale, smal codde, dry caplin, with other fish, and hydes, such as the country did yeelde.

My selfe still desirous to haue a farther search of this place, sent one of the shipboates to one part of the land, and my selfe went to another parte to searche for the habitation of this people, with straight commaundement that there should be no iniurie offered to any of the people, neither any gunne shot.

The boates that went from me found the tents of the people made with seale skinnes set vp vpon timber, wherin they founde great store of dried Caplin, being a litle fish no bigger then a pilchard: they found bags of trayne oyle, many little images cut in wood, seale skinnes in tan tubs, with many other such trifles, whereof they diminished nothing.

They

They also found tenne miles within the snowy mountaines a plaine champion countrey, with earth and grasse, such as our moory and waste grounds of England are: they went vp into a riuer (which in the narrowest place is two leagues broad) about ten leagues, finding it still to continue they knew not how far: but I with my company tooke another riuer, which although at the first it offered a large inlet, yet it proued but a deepe bay, the end whereof in foure houres I attayned, and there leauing the boat well manned, went with the rest of my company three or foure miles into the country, but found nothing, nor saw any thing, saue onely gripes, rauens, and small birds, as larke and linnet. A goodly riuer.

The third of July I manned my boat, and went with fifty canoas attending vpon me vp into another sound, where the people by signes willed me to goe, hoping to finde their habitation: at length they made signes that I should go into a warme place to sleepe, at which place I went on shore, and ascended the toppe of an high hill to see into the country, but perceiuing my labor vaine, I returned againe to my boat, the people still following me, and my company very diligent to attend vs, and to helpe vs vp the rocks, and likewise downe: at length I was desirous to haue our men leape with them, which was done, but our men did ouerleape them: from leaping they went to wrestling, we found them strong and nimble, and to haue skill in wrestling, for they cast some of our men that were good wrestlers.

The fourth of July we launched our pinnesse, and had forty of the people to helpe vs, which they did very willingly: at this time our men againe wrestled with them, and found them as before, strong and skilfull. This fourth of July the maister of the Mermaid went to certaine Ilands to store himselfe with wood, where he found a graue with diuers buried in it, onely couered with seale skinnes, hauing a crosse laid ouer them. The people are of good stature, well in body proportioned, with small slender hands and feet, with broad visages, and small eyes, wide mouthes, the most part vnbearded, great lips, and close toothed. Their custome is as often as they go from vs, still at their returne to make a new truce, in this sort, holding his hand vp to the Sunne, with a lowd voice crieth Ylyaoute, and striketh his breast, with like signes being promised safetie, he giueth credit. These people are much giuen to bleed, and therefore stoppe their noses with deere hayre, or the hayre of an elan. They are idolaters, and haue images great store, which they were about them, and in their boats, which we suppose they worship. They are witches, and haue many kindes of inchantments, which they often vsed, but to small purpose, thanks be to God. A graue with a crosse layd ouer. The Tartars and people of Iapon are also small eyed.

Being among them at shore the fourth of July, one of them making a long oration, began to kindle a fire, in his maner: he tooke a piece of a board, wherin was a hole halfe thorow: into that hole he puts the end of a round sticke like vnto a bedstaffe, setting the end therof in traine, and in fashion of a turner, with a piece of lether, by his violent motion doth very speedily produce fire: which done, with turfs he made a fire, into which with many words, and strange gestures, he put diuers things, which we supposed to be a sacrifice: my selfe and diuers of my company standing by, they were desirous to haue me go into the smoke, I willed them like wise to stand in the smoke, in which they by no meanes would do. I then tooke one of them, and thrust him into the smoke, and willed one of my company to tread out the fire, & spurne it into the sea, which was done to shew them that we did contemne their sorcery. These people are very simple in all their conuersation, but maruellous theeuish, especially for iron, which they haue in great account. They began though our lenity to shew their vile nature: they began to cut our cables: they cut away the Moonlights boat from her sterne, they cut our cloth where it lay to ayre, though we did carefully looke vnto it, they stole our oares, a caliuer, a boare speare, a sword, with diuers other things, wherat the company and maisters being grieued, for our better security, desired me to dissolue this new friendship, and to leaue the company of these theeuish miscreants: whereupon there was a caliuer shot among them, and immediatly vpon the same a faulcon, which strange noise did sore amaze them, so that with speed they departed: notwithstanding their simplicity is such, that within ten houres after they came againe to vs to intreat peace: which being promised, we againe fell into a great league. They brought vs seale skinnes, and sammon peale, but seeing iron, they could in no wise forbeare stealing: which when I perceiued it did not minister vnto me an occasion of laughter, to see their simplicity, and willed that in no case they should be any more hardly vsed, but that our owne company should be the more vigilant to keepe their things, supposing it to be very hard in so short time to make them know their euils. They eat all their meat raw, they liue most vpon fish, they drinke salt water, and eat grasse and ice with delight: they are neuer out of the water, but liue in the nature of fishes, but onely when dead sleepe taketh them, and then vnder a warme rocke, laying his boat vpon the land, he lyeth downe to sleepe. Their weapons are all darts, but some of them haue bowe and arrowes, and slings. They make nets to take their fish, of the sinne of a whale: they

They haue manner of kindling fire like to theirs in America.

Great theeues

Their rude diet.

Their weapons. Strange nets.

do

do all theyr things very artificially: and it should seeme that these simple theeuish Islanders haue warre with those of the maine, for many of them are sore wounded, which wounds they receiued vpon the maine land, as by signes they gaue vs to vnderstand. We had among them copper oare, blacke copper, and red copper: they pronounce theyr language very hollow, and deepe in the throat: these words following we learned from them.

Copper oare.

Theyr language.

Kesinyoh, Eat some.	Conah, Leape.
Madlycoyte, Pulike.	Maatuke, Fish.
Aginyoh, Go fetch.	Sambah, Below.
Yliaoute, I meane no harme.	Maconmeg, Will you haue this
Ponameg, A boat.	Cocah, Go to him.
Paaotyck, An oare.	Aba, Fallen downe.
Asanock, A dart.	Icune, Come hither.
Sawygmeg, A knife.	Awennye, Powder.
Vderah, A nose.	Nugo, No.
Aoh, Iron.	Tucktodo, A fogge.
Blete, An eye.	Lechiksah, A skinne.
Vnuicke, Giue it.	Maccoah, A dart.
Tuckloak, A stagge or ellan.	Sugnacoon, A coat.
Panygmah, A needle.	Gounah, Come downe.
Aob, The sea.	Sasobneg, A bracelet.
Mysacoah, Wash it.	Vgnake, A tongue.
Lethicksaneg, A seale skinne.	Ataneg, A seale.
Canyglow, Kisse me.	Macuah, A beard.
Vgnera, My sonne.	Pignagogah, A thred.
Acu, Shot.	Quoysah, Giue it to me.

The seuenth of July, being very desirous to search the habitation of this countrey, I went my selfe with our new pinnesse into the body of the land, thinking it to be a firme continent, and passing vp a very large riuer, a great flaw of winde tooke me, whereby we were constrained to seeke succor for that night, which being had, I landed with the most part of my company, and went to the toppe of a high mountaine, hoping from thence to see into the countrey: but the mountaines were so many and so mighty as that my purpose preuailed not: whereupon I againe returned to my pinnesse, and willing diuers of my company to gather muscles for my supper, whereof in this place there was great store, my selfe hauing espyed a very strange sight, especially to me that neuer before saw the like, which was a mighty whirlewinde taking vp the water in very great quantity, furiously mounting it into the ayre, which whirlewinde was not for a puffe or blast, but continuall, for the space of three houres, with very little intermission, which sith it was in the course that I should passe, we were constrained that night to take vp our lodging vnder the rocks.

Muscles.

A strange whirlewinde.

The next morning the storme being broken vp, we went forward in our attempt, and sailed into a mighty great riuer directly into the body of the land, and in briefe, found it to be no firme land, but huge, waste, and desert Iles with mighty sounds, and inlets passing betweene sea and sea. Whereupon we returned towards our shippes, and landing to stoppe a sloud, we found the buriall of these miscreants, we found of theyr fish in bagges, plaices, and caplin dryed, of which we tooke onely one bagge, and departed. The ninth of this moneth we came to our shippes, where we found the people desirous in theyr fashion, of friendshippe and barter: our mariners complained heauily against the people, and said that my lenity and friendly vsing of them gaue them stomacke to mischiefe: for they haue stollen an anker from vs, they haue cut our cable very dangerously, they haue cut our boats from our sterne, and now since your departure, with slings they spare vs not with stones of halfe a pound weight: & will you still indure these iniuries? it is a shame to beare them. I desired them to be content, and said I doubted not but all should be well. The tenth of this moneth I went to the shore, the people following me in theyr canoas: I toyled them on shore, and vsed them with much curtesie, and then departed aboord, they following me, and my company. I gaue some of them bracelets, and caused seuen or eight of them to come aboord, which they did willingly, and some of them went into the toppe of our shippe: and thus curteously vsing them, I let them depart: the Sunne was no sooner downe, but they began to practise theyr deuilish nature, and with slings threw stones very fiercely into the Pooneright, & strake one of her men, the boatswaine that he ouerthrew withall: wherat being moued, I changed my curtesie, & grew to hatred, my selfe in

Great Islands

Slings.

my

my owne boat well manned, with shot, and the barks boat likewise pursued them, & gaue them diuers shot but to small purpose, by reason of their swift rowing: so small content we returned.

The 11 of this moneth there came fiue of them to make a new truce: the maister of the Admiral came to me to shew me of their comming, and desired to haue them taken, & kept as prisoners vntill we had his anker againe: but when he saw that the chiefe ringleader, & maister of mischiefe was one of the fiue, he then was vehement to execute his purpose, so it was determined to take him: he came crying Iliaout, & striking his brest offered a payre of gloues to sell, the maister offered him a knife for them: so two of them came to vs, the one was not touched, but the other was soone captiue among vs: then we pointed to him & his fellowes for our anker, which being had, we made signes that he should be set at liberty: within one houre that he came aboord, the winde came fayre, whereupon we weyed, and set saile, and so brought the fellow with vs: one of his fellowes still following our ship close aboord, talked with him, & made a kinde of lamentation, we still vsing him well, with Yliaout, which was the common course of curtesie. At length this fellow aboord vs spake foure or fiue words vnto the other, and claped his two hands vpon his face, whereupon the other doing the like, departed, as we suppose, with heauy chere. We iudged the couering of his face with his hands, and bowing of his body downe, signified his death. At length he became a pleasant companion among vs. I gaue him a new suite of frize after the English fashion, because I saw he could not indure the colde, of which he was very ioyfull, he trimmed vp his darts, and all his fishing tooles, and would make okam, and set his hand to a ropes end vpon occasion. He liued with the dry caplin that I tooke when I was searching in the pinnesse, and did eat dry Newland fish.

One of the people taken, which after died.

All this while, God be thanked, our people were in very good health, onely one young man excepted, who dyed at sea the fourteenth of this moneth, and the fifteenth according to the order of the sea, with praise giuen to God by seruice, was cast ouerboord.

The 17 of this moneth, being in the latitude of 63 degrees 8 minuts, we fel vpon a most mighty and strange quantity of ice, in one intyre masse, so bigge, as that we knew not the limits thereof, and being withall so very high, in forme of a land, with bayes and capes, and like high cliffe land, as that we supposed it to be land, and therfore sent our pinnesse off to discouer it: but at her returne we were certainely informed that it was onely ice, which bred great admiration to vs all, considering the huge quantity thereof, incredible to be reported in truth as it was, and therefore I omit to speake any further therof. This onely, I thinke that the like before was neuer seene, and in this place we had very stickle and strong currants.

We coasted this mighty masse of ice vntill the 30 of July, finding it a mighty barre to our purpose: the ayre in this time was so contagious, and the sea so pestered with ice, as that all hope was banished of proceeding: for the 24 of July all our shrowds, ropes, and sailes were so frosen, and compassed with ice, onely by a grosse fogge, as seemed to me more then strange, sith the last yeere I found this sea free and nauigable, without impediments.

The nature of fogges.

Our men through this extremity began to grow sicke & feeble, and withal hopelesse of good successe: wherupon very orderly, with good discretion they intreated me to regard the state of this businesse, and withall aduised me, that in conscience I ought to regard the safety of mine owne life, with the preseruation of theirs, & that I should not through my ouerbold nesse leaue their widowes and fatherlesse children to giue me bitter curses. This matter in conscience did greatly moue me to regard their estates: yet considering the excellency of the businesse, if it might be attained, the great hope of certainty by the last yeres discouery, & that there was yet a third way not put in practise, I thought it would grow to my great disgrace, if this action by my negligence should grow into discredit: wherupon seeking helpe from God the fountaine of all mercies, it pleased his diuine Maiesty to moue my heart to prosecute that which I hope shalbe to his glory, and to the contentation of euery Christian minde. Wherupon falling into consideration, that the Mermaid, albeit a very strong and sufficient ship, yet by reason of her burden, not so conuenient and nimble as a smaller barke, especially in such desperate hazzards: further hauing in account her great charge to the aduenturers, being at 100 li. the moneth: & that in doubtfull seruice, all the premises considered, with diuers other things, I determined to furnish the Moonelight with reuictualling & sufficient men, & to proceed in this action as God should direct me: wherupon I altered our course from the ice, & bare East southe all to recouer the next shore where this thing might be performed: so with fauorable winde it pleased God that the first of August we discouered the land in latitude 66 deg. 33 min. & in longitude from the meridian of London 70 deg. void of trouble without snow or ice. *August 1.*

The second of August we harboured our selues in a very excellent good road, where with all speed we graued the Moonelight, and reuictualled her: we searched this country with our pinnesse while the barke was trimming, which William Elton did: he found all this land to be only ilands,

with a sea on the East, a sea on the West, and a sea on the North. In this place we found it very
Great heat. hot, and we were very much troubled with a flie which is called Musketa, for they did sting grieuously. The people of this place at our first comming in caught a seale, and with bladders fast tied to him sent him vnto vs with the flood, so as he came right with our shippes, which we tooke as a friendly present from them.

The 5 of August I went with the two maisters and others to the toppe of a hill, and by the way William Elton espied three Canoas lying vnder a rocke, and went vnto them: there were in them skinnes, darts, with diuers superstitious toyes, whereof we diminished nothing, but left vpon euery boat a like point, a bullet of lead, and a pinne. The next day being the 6 of August, the people came vnto vs without feare, and did barter with vs for skinnes, as the other people did: they differ not from the other, neither in their canoas nor apparell, yet is their pronuntiation more plaine then the others, and nothing hollow in the throat. Our miscreant aboord vs kept himselfe close, and made shew that he would faine haue another companion. Thus being pounded, I departed from this land the twelfe of August, at 5 of the clocke in the morning, where I left the Mermaid at an anker: the fourteenth sailing West about fiftie leagues, we discouered land, being in latitude 66 degrees 19 minuts: this land is 70 leagues from the other from whence we came. This fourteenth day from nine a clocke at night till three a clocke in the morning, we ankered by an Iland of ice, twelue leagues off the shore, being moored to the ice.

The fifteenth day at three a clocke in the morning we departed from this land to the South, and the eighteenth of August we discouered land Northwest from vs in the morning, being a very fayre promontory, in latitude 65 degrees, hauing no land on the South. Heere we had great
Great hope of a passage. hope of a through passage.

This day at three a clocke in the afternoone we againe discouered land Southwest and by South from vs, where at night we were becalmed. The nineteenth of this month at noone, by obseruation, we were in 64 degrees 20 minuts. From the eighteenth day at noone vnto the nineteenth at noone, by precise ordinary care, we had sailed 15 leagues South and by West, yet by art
A great currant to the West. and more exact obseruation, we found our course to be Southwest, so that we plainely perceiued a great currant striking to the West.

This land is nothing in sight but Iles, which increaseth our hope. This nineteenth of August at 5 a clocke in the afternoone, it began to snow, and so continued all night with foule weather, and much winde, so that we were constrained to lie at hull all night fiue leagues off the shore: In the morning, being the twentith of August, the fogge and storme breaking vp, we bare in with the land, and at nine a clocke in the morning we ankered in a very fayre and safe road and locket for all weathers. At tenne of the clocke I went on shore, to the toppe of a very high hill, where I
Ilands. perceiued that this land was Ilands: at foure of the clocke in the afternoone we weyed anker, hauing a fayre North northeast winde, with very fayre weather: at six of the clocke we were cleere
Hope of a passage. without the land, and so shaped our course to the South, to discouer the coast, whereby the passage may be through Gods mercy found.

We coasted this land till the eight and twentith of August, finding it still to continue towards the South, from the latitude of 67 to 57 degrees: we found maruellous great store of birds, guls & mewes, incredible to be reported, whereupon being calme weather, we lay one glasse vpon the lee, to proue for fish, in which space we caught 100 of cod, although we were but badly prouided for fishing, not being our purpose. This eight and twentith, hauing great distrust of the weather, we arriued in a very fayre harbor in the latitude of 56 degrees, and sailed ten leagues into the same,
Faire woods. being two leagues broad, with very fayre woods on both sides: in this place we continued vntill the first of September, in which time we had two very great stormes. I landed, and went fiue miles by ghesse into the country, and found that the woods were firre, pineapple, alder, yew, withy, and birch: here we saw a blacke beare: this place yeeldeth great store of birds, as fezant, partridge, Barbary hennes, or the like, wilde geese, ducks, blacke birds, iayes, thrushes, with other kindes of small birds. Of the partridge and fezant, we killed great store with bowe and arrowes: in this
Store of cod. place, at the harborough mouth, we found great store of cod.

The first of September at tenne a clocke, wee set saile, and coasted the shore with very faire weather. The third day being calme, at noone we strooke saile, and let fall a cadge anker, to proue whether we could take any fish, being in latitude 54 degrees 30 minuts, in which place we found great abundance of cod, so that the hooke was no sooner ouerboord, but presently a fish was taken. It was the largest and best reset fish that euer I saw, and diuers fisher men that were with me sayd that they neuer saw a more snaule or better skull of fish in their lines: yet had they seene great abundance.

The

The fourth of September at fiue a clocke in the afternoone we ankered in a very good road among great ſtore of Iſles, the countrey low land, pleaſant, and very full of fayre woods. To the North of this place eight leagues, we had a perfect hope of the paſſage, finding a mighty great ſea paſſing betweene two lands Weſt. The South land to our iudgement being nothing but Iſles, we greatly deſired to go into this ſea, but the winde was directly againſt vs. We ankered in foure fathome fine land. In this place is foule and fiſh mighty ſtore. A perfect hope of the paſſage.

The firſt of September hauing a fayre North northweſt winde, hauing trimmed our barke, we purpoſed to depart, and ſent fiue of our ſailers yoong men a ſhore to an Iſland, to fetch certaine fiſh which we purpoſed to weather, and therefore left it all night couered vpon the Iſle: the brutiſh people of this countrey lay ſecretly lurking in the wood, and vpon the ſudden aſſaulted our men: which when we perceiued, we preſently let ſlippe our cables vpon the halſe, and vnder our foreſaile bare into the ſhoare, and with all expedition diſcharged a double muſket vpon them twiſe, at the noiſe wherof they fled: notwithſtanding to our very great griefe, two of our men were ſlaine with their arrowes, and two grieuouſly wounded, of whom at this preſent we ſtand in very great doubt, onely one eſcaped by ſwimming, with an arrow ſhot thorow his arme. Theſe wicked miſcreants neuer offered parly or ſpeech, but preſently executed their curſed fury. Two of our men ſlaine by the Sauages.

This preſent euening it pleaſed God further to increaſe our ſorrowes with a mighty tempeſtuous ſtorme, the winde being North northeaſt, which laſted vnto the tenth of this moneth very extreme. We vnrigged our ſhippe, and purpoſed to cut downe our maſts, the cable of our ſhut anker brake, ſo that we onely expected to be driuen on ſhoare among theſe Canibals for their prey. Yet in this deepe diſtreſſe the mighty mercy of God, when hope was paſt, gaue vs ſuccor, and ſent vs a fayre lee, ſo as we recouered our anker againe, and new moyed our ſhippe: where we ſaw that God manifeſtly deliuered vs: for the ſtraines of one of our cables were broken, we only road by an olde iunke. Thus being freſhly moyed, a new ſtorme aroſe, the winde being Weſt northweſt, very forcible, which laſted vnto the tenth day at night.

The eleuenth day with a fayre Weſt northweſt winde we departed with truſt in Gods mercy, ſhaping our courſe for England, and arriued in the Weſt countrey in the beginning of October.

Maiſter Dauis being arriued, wrote his letter to M. William *Sanderſon of London, concerning his voyage,* as followeth.

SIr, the Sunneſhine came into Dartmouth the fourth of this moneth: ſhe hath beene at Iſlaud, and from thence to Groenland, and ſo to Eſtotiland, from thence to Deſolation, and to our merchants, where ſhe made trade with the people, ſtaying in the countrey twenty dayes. They haue brought home fiue hundred ſeale ſkinnes, and an hundred and forty halſe ſkinnes, and pieces of ſkinnes. I ſtand in great doubt of the pinneſſe, God be mercifull vnto the poore men, and preſerue them if it be his bleſſed will.

I haue now full experience of much of the Northweſt part of the world, and haue brought the paſſage to that certainty, as that I am ſure it muſt be in one of foure places, or els not at all. And further, I can aſſure you vpon the perill of my life, that this voyage may be performed without further charge, nay with certaine profit to the aduenturers, if I may haue but your fauour in the action. Surely it ſhall coſt me all my hope of welfare, and my portion of Sandridge, but I will by Gods mercy, ſee an end of theſe buſineſſes. I hope I ſhall finde fauour with you to ſee your card. I pray God it be ſo true as the card ſhall be which I will bring to you: and I hope in God, that your ſkill in nauigation ſhall be gainefull vnto you, although at the firſt it hath not proued ſo. And thus with my moſt humble commendations I commit you to God, deſiring no longer to liue then I ſhall be yours moſt faithfully to command. From this 14 of October. 1586.

Yours with my heart, body and life to command IOHN DAVIS.

The relation of the courſe which the Sunſhine a barke of fiftie tunnes, and the Northſtarre a ſmall pinneſſe, being two veſſels of the fleet of M. Iohn Dauis held after he had ſent them from him to diſcouer the paſſage betweene Groenland and Iſland, written by Henry Morgan ſeruant to M. William Sanderſon of London.

May. THe ſeuenth day of May 1586 we departed out of Dartmouth hauen foure ſailes, to wit, the Mermaid, the Sunſhine, the Mooneſhine, and the Northſtarre. In the Sunſhine were ſixteene men, whoſe names were theſe: Richard Pope maiſter, Marke Carter maiſters mate, Henry Morgan purſer, George Dyward, Iohn Mandie, Hugh Broken, Philip Iane, Hugh Hemplon, Richard Boyden, Iohn Filpe, Andrew Madocke, William Wolcome, Robert Wagge carpenter, Iohn Bruſkome, William Aſhe, Simon Ellis.

Our courſe was Weſt northweſt the ſeuenth and eight dayes: and the ninth day in the morning we were on head of the Tarroſe of Syllie. Thus coaſting along the South part of Ireland the 11 day, we were on head of the Doyles: and our courſe was South ſouthweſt vntill ſix of the clocke the 12 day. The 13 day our courſe was Northweſt. We remained in the company of the Mermaid and the Mooneſhine vntill we came to the latitude of 60 degrees: and there it ſeemed beſt to our Generall M. Dauis to diuide his fleet, himſelfe ſailing to the Northweſt & to direct the Sunſhine, wherein I was, & the pinneſſe called the Northſtar, to ſeeke a paſſage Northward betweene Groenland and Iſland to the latitude of 80 degrees, if land did not let vs. So the ſeuenth day of June we departed from them: and the ninth of the ſame we came to a firme land of ice, which we coaſted along the ninth, the tenth, and the eleuenth dayes of June: and the eleuenth day at ſix of the clocke at night we ſaw land, which was very high, which afterward we knew to be Iſland: and the twelft day we harboyed there, and found many people: the land lyeth Eaſt and by North in 66 degrees.

M. Dauis diuideth his fleet into 2 parts.

June.

Iſlands deſcried.

Theyr commodities were greene fiſh, and Iſland lings, and ſtockfiſh, and a fiſh which is called catefiſh: of all which they had great ſtore. They had alſo kine, ſheepe, and horſes, and hay for theyr cattell, and for theyr horſes. We ſaw alſo of theyr dogges. Theyr dwelling houſes were made on both ſides with ſtones, and wood laid croſſe ouer them, which was couered ouer with turfs of earth, and they are flat on the toppes, and many of theſe ſtood hard by the ſhoare. Theyr boats were made with wood, and iron all along the keele like our Engliſh boats: and they had nailes for to naile them withall, and fiſh hooks and other things for to ketch fiſh as we haue heere in England. They had alſo braſen kettles, and girdles and purſes made of leather, and knoppes on them of copper, and hatchets and other ſmall tooles as neceſſarie as we haue. They dry theyr fiſh in the Sun, and when they are dry, they packe them vp in the toppe of their houſes. If we would go thither to fiſhing more then we do, we ſhould make it a very good voyage: for we got an hundreth greene fiſh in one morning. We found heere two Engliſh men with a ſhippe, which came out of England about Eaſter day of this preſent yeere 1586, and one of them came aboord of vs, and brought vs two lambs. The Engliſh mans name was M. Iohn Royden of Ipſwich, merchant: he was bound for London with his ſhippe. And this is the ſumme of that which I obſerued in Iſland. We departed from Iſland the ſixteenth day of June in the morning, and our courſe was Northweſt, and ſaw on the coaſt two ſmall barkes going to an harborough: we went not to them, but ſaw them a farre off. Thus we continued our courſe vnto the end of this moneth.

Theyr commodities.

Theyr dwellings.

Their boats.

M. Iohn Royden of Ipſwich.

They departed frō Iſland Northweſt.

July. The third day of July we were in betweene two firme lands of iſe, and paſſed in betweene them all that day vntill it was night: and then the maiſter turned backe againe, and ſo away we went towards Groenland. And the ſeuenth day of July we did ſee Groenland, and it was very high, and it looked very blew: we could not come to harborough into the land becauſe we were hindered by a firme land, as it were, of ice, which was along the ſhoares ſide: but we were within three leagues of the land, coaſting the ſame diuers dayes together. The ſeuenteenth day of July we ſaw the place which our captaine M. Iohn Dauis the yeere before had named The land of Deſolation, where we could not go on ſhoare for ice. The eightenth day we were likewiſe troubled with ice, and went in amongſt it at three of the clocke in the morning. After we had cleered our ſelues thereof, we ranged all along the coaſt of Deſolation vntill the end of the aforeſayd moneth.

Groenland diſcouered.

The land of Deſolation.

The

The third day of August we came in sight of Gilberts sound in the latitude of 64. deg. 15. min. which was the place where we were appointed to meete our generall and the rest of our Fleete. Here we came to an harborow at 6. of the clocke at night. August.

The 4. day in the morning the master went on shore with 10. of his men, and they brought vs foure of the people rowing in their boates aboord of the ship. And in the afternoone I went on shore with six of our men, and there came to vs seuen of them when we were on land. We found on shore three dead people, and two of them had their staues lying by them, and their olde skins wrapped about them, and the other had nothing lying by, wherfore we thought it was a woman. Wee also saw their houses neere the Sea side, which were made with pieces of wood on both sides, and crossed ouer with poles & then couered ouer with earth: we found Foxes running vpon the hils: as for the place, it is broken land all the way that we went, and full of broken Islands.

The 21. of August the master sent the boate on shore for wood, with sixe of his men, and there were one and thirtie of the people of the countrey which went on shore to them, and they went about to kill them as we thought, for they shot their dartes towards them, and we that were aboord the ship, did see them goe on shore to our men: whereupon the master sent the pinnace after them, and when they saw the pinnace comming towards them, they turned backe, and the master of the pinnace did shoote off a caliuer to them the same time, but hurt none of them, for his meaning was onely to put them in feare. Diuers times they did weaue vs on shore to play with them at the foot-ball, and some of our company went on shore to play with them, and our men did cast them downe as soone as they did come to strike the ball. And thus much of that which we did see and do in that harborow where we arriued first. Our men play at foot ball with the Sauages.

The 23. day we departed from the merchaunts where we had bene first, and our course from thence was South and by West, and the wind was Northeast, and we ran that day and night about 5. or 6. leagues, vntill we came to another harborow.

The 24. about eleuen of the clocke in the forenoone, wee entered into the aforesayd new harborow, and as we came in, we did see dogs running vpon the Islands. When wee were come in, there came to vs foure of the people which were with vs before in the other harborow, and where we rode, we had sandie ground. We saw no wood growing, but found small pieces of wood vpon the Islands, & some small pieces of sweete wood among the same. We found great Harts hornes, but could see none of the Stagges where we went, but we found their footings. As for the bones which we receiued of the Sauages, I cannot tell of what beasts they be. Sweete wood found.

The stones that we found in the countrey, were blacke and some white, as I thinke they bee of no value, neuertheles I haue brought examples of them to you.

The 30. of August we departed from this harborow towards England, & the wind tooke vs contrary, so that we were faine to goe to another harborow the same day at 11. of the clocke. And there came to vs 39. of the people, and brought vs 13. Seale skins, and after we receiued these skinnes of them, the master sent the carpenter to change one of our boates which we had bought of them before, and they would haue taken the boate from him perforce, and when they saw we they could not take it from vs, they shot with their dartes at vs, and stroke one of our men with one of their dartes, and John Filpe shot one of them into the brest with an arrow. And they came to vs againe, and foure of our men went into the shipboate, and they shot with their dartes at our men: but our men tooke one of their people in his boate into the shipboate, and he hurt one of them with his knife, but we killed three of them in their boates: two of them were hurt with arrowes in the brests, and he that was aboord our boat, was shot in with an arrow, and hurt with a sword, and beaten with staues, whom our men cast ouer boorde, but the people caught him and carried him on shore vpon their boats, and the other two also, and so departed from vs. And three of them went on shore hard by vs, where they had their dogs, and those three came away from their dogs, and presently one of their dogs came swimming towards vs hard aboord the ship, whereupon our master caused the Gunner to shoote off one of the great pieces towards the people, and so the dog turned backe to land, and within an houre after there came of the people hard aboord the ship, but they would not come to vs as they did come before. A skirmish betwixt the Sauages and our men.

The 31. of August we departed from Gilberts sound for England, and when we came out of the harborow, there came after vs 17. of the people looking which way we went.

The 2. of September we lost sight of the land at 12. of the clocke at noone. September.

The third day at night we lost sight of the Northstarre our pinnace in a very great storme, & lay a hull carying for them the 4. day, but could heare no more of them. Thus we shaped our course the 5. day South southeast, and sayling vntill the 27. of the sayd moneth we came in sight of Cape Clere in Ireland. The pinnace neuer returned home.

The

The 30. day we entred into our owne chanell.

The 2. of October we had ſight of the Iſle of Wight.

The 3. we coaſted all along the ſhore, and the 4. and 5.

The 6. of the ſayd moneth of October we came into the riuer of Thames as high as Ratcliffe in ſafetie God be thanked.

The third voyage Northweſtward, made by Iohn Dauis Gentleman, as chiefe Captaine and Pilot generall, for the diſcouerie of a paſſage to the Iſles of the Molucca, or the coaſt of China, in the yeere, 1587. Written by Iohn Ianes ſeruant to the aforeſayd M. William Sanderſon.

May.

THe 19. of this preſent moneth about midnight, we weighed our ankers, ſet ſaile and departed from Dartmouth with two barkes and a Clincher, the one named the Elizabeth of Dartmouth, the other the Sunne ſhine of London, and the Clincher called the Ellin of London: thus in Gods name we ſet forwards with the wind at Northeaſt a good freſh gale. About 3. howers after our departure, the night being ſomwhat thicke with darkneſſe, we had loſt the pinnace, the captaine imagining that the men had runne away with her, willed the maſter of the Sunne ſhine, to ſtand to Seawards, and ſee if we could deſcrie them, we bearing in with the ſhore for Plimmouth. At length we deſcried her, bare with her, and demanded what the cauſe was: They anſwered that the tiller of their helme was burſt. So ſhaping our courſe Weſt Southweſt, we went forward, hoping that a hard beginning would make a good ending, yet ſome of vs were doubtfull of it, falling in reckoning that ſhe was a Clincher, neuertheleſſe we put our truſt in God.

The 21. we met with the Red Lion of London, which came from the coaſt of Spaine, which was afraid that we had bene men of warre, but we hailed them, and after a litle conference, we deſtred the maſter to carie our letters for London, directed to my vncle Sanderſon, who promiſed vs ſafe deliuerie. And after we had heaued them a lead and a line, whereunto wee had made faſt our letters, before they could get them into the ſhip, they fell into the ſea, and ſo all our labour and theirs alſo was loſt, notwithſtanding they promiſed to certifie our departure at London, and ſo we departed, and the ſame day we had ſight of Sillie. The 22. the wind was at Northeaſt by Eaſt, with faire weather, and ſo the 23. and 24. the like. The 25. we laied our ſhippes on the Lee for the Sunne ſhine, who was a rommaging for a leake, they had 500. ſtrokes at the pumpe in a watch, the wind at Northweſt.

The 26. and 27. we had faire weather, but this 27. the pinnaces foremaſte was blowen ouerboord. The 28. the Elizabeth towed the pinnace, which was ſo much dragged of by the owners report before we came out of England, but at Sea ſhe was like to a cart drawen with oxen, Sometimes we towed her becauſe ſhe could not ſaile for ſcant wind.

The 31. day our captaine aſked if the pinnace were ſtanch, Peerſon anſwered that ſhe was as ſound and ſtanch as a cuppe. This made vs ſomething glad, when we ſawe ſhe would brooke the Sea, and was not leake.

Iune.

THe firſt 6. dayes we had faire weather: after that for 5. dayes we had fogge and rayne, the wind being South. The 12. we had cleare weather. The Mariners in the Sunne ſhine, and the maſter could not agree: the mariners would goe on their voyage a fiſhing, becauſe the yeere began to waſte: the maſter would not depart till hee had the companie of the Elizabeth, whereupon the maſter told our captaine that he was afrayd his men would ſhape ſome contrarie courſe while he was a ſleep, and ſo he ſhould looſe vs. At length after much talke and many threatnings, they were content to bring vs to the land which we looked for daily.

The 13. we had fogge and raine.

The 14. day we diſcouered land at fiue of the clocke in the morning, being very great and high mountaines, the tops of the hils being couered with ſnow. Here the wind was variable, ſometimes Northeaſt, Eaſt Northeaſt, and Eaſt by North: but wee imagined our ſelues to be 16. or 17. leagues off from the ſhore.

The 15. we had reaſonable cleare weather.

The 16. we came to an anker about 4. or 5. of the clocke after noone, the people came preſently

to

to vs after the old maner, with crying Il y a oute, and shewing vs Seale skinnes. The 17. we began to set vp the pinnace that Peerson framed at Dartmouth, with the boords which hee brought from London.

The 18. Peerson and the Carpenters of the ships, began to set on the plankes. The 19. as we went about an Island, were found blacke Pummise stones, and salt kerned on the rockes very white and glistering. This day also the master of the Sunne shine tooke one of the people, a very strong lustie yong fellow.

The 20. about two of the clocke in the morning, the Sauages came to the Island where our pinnace was built readie to bee launched, and toze the two vppet strakes, and caried them away onely for the loue of the iron in the boords. While they were about this practise, wee manned the Elizabeths boate to goe a shore to them: our men being either afrayd, or amazed, were so long before they came to shore, that our captaine willed them to staie, and made the Gunner giue fire to a Saker, and laied the piece leuell with the boate which the Sauages had turned on the one side, because we should not hurt them with our arrowes, and made the boate their bulwarke against the arrowes which wee shot at them. Our Gunner hauing made all things readie, gaue fire to the peece, and fearing to hurt any of the people, and regarding the owners profite, thought belike hee would saue a Sakers shot, doubting we should haue occasion to fight with men of warre, and so shot off the Saker without a bullet, we looking still when the Sauages that were hurt should run away without legs, at length wee could perceiue neuer a man hurt, but all hauing their legges could carie away their bodies: we had no sooner shot off the piece, but the master of the Sunneshine manned his boate, and came rowing towards the Island, the very sight of whom made each of them take that he had gotten, and flie away as fast as they could to another Island about two miles off, where they tooke the nayles out of the timber, and left the wood on the Ile. When we came on shore and saw how they had spoiled the boate, after much debating of the matter, we agreed that the Elizabeth should haue her to fish withall: wherupon she was presently caried aboord, and stowed.

Now after this trouble, being resolued to depart with the first wind, there fell out another matter worse then all the rest, and that was in this maner. John Churchyard one whom our captaine had appointed as Pilot in the pinnace, came to our Captaine, and master Buton, and told them that the good ship which we must all hazard our liues in, had three hundred strokes at one time as she rode in the harbour: This disquieted vs all greatly, and many doubted to goe in her. At length our captaine by whom we were all to be gouerned, determined rather to end his life with credite, then to returne with infamie and disgrace, and so being all agreed, we purposed to liue and die together, & committed our selues to the ship. Now the 21. hauing brought all our things aboord, about 11. or 12. of the clocke at night, we set saile and departed from those Iles, which lie in 64. degrees of latitude, our ships being now all at Sea, and wee shaping our course to goe, coasting the land to the Northwards vpon the Easterne shore, which we called the shore of our Merchants, because there we met with people which trafficked with vs, but here we were not without doubt of our ship. The 22. and 23. we had close fogge and raine.

The 24. being in 67. degrees, and 40. minutes, we had great store of Whales, and a kinde of sea birdes which the Mariners call Cortinous. This day about fiue of the clocke at night, we espied two of the countrey people at Sea, thinking at the first they had bene two great Seales, vntill we saw their oares glistering with the Sunne: they came rowing towardes vs, as fast as they could, and when they came within hearing, they held vp their oares, and cried Il y a oute, making many signes: and at last they came to vs, giuing vs birdes for bracelets, and of them I had a darte with a bone in it, or a piece of Unicorns horne, as I did iudge. This dart he made store of, but when he saw a knife, he let it go, being more desirous of the knife then of his dart: these people continued rowing after our ship the space of 3. howers.

The 25. in the morning at 7. of the clocke we descried 30. Sauages rowing after vs, being by iudgement 10. leagues off from the shore: they brought vs Salmon Peales, Birdes, and Caplin, and we gaue them pinnes, needles, bracelets, nailes, kniues, bels, looking glasses, and other small trifles, and for a knife, a naile or a bracelet, which they call Ponigmah, they would sell their boat, coates, or any thing they had, although they were farre from the shore. Wee had but few skinnes of them, about 20. but they made signes to vs that if wee would goe to the shore, wee should haue more store of Chichsanege: they staied with vs til 11. of the clocke, at which time we went to prayer, and they departed from vs.

The 26. was cloudie, the wind being at South.

The 27. faire with the same wind.

The

The 28. and 29. were foggie with clouds, the 30. day we tooke the heigth, and found our selues in 72. degrees and 12. min. of latitude both at noone and at night, the Sunne being 5. degr. aboue the horizon. At midnight the compasse set to the variation of 28. degr. to the Westward. Now hauing coasted the land which we called London coast, from the 21. of this present, til the 30. the sea open all to the Westwards and Northwards, the land on starboord side East from vs, the winde shifted to the North, whereupon we left that shore, naming the same Hope Sanderson, and shaped our course West, and ran 40. leagues and better, without the sight of any land.

72. deg. 12. mi.

London coast.

Iuly.

THe second we fell with a mighty banke of Ice West from vs, lying North and South, which banke we would gladly haue doubled out to the Northwards, but the winde would not suffer vs, so that we were faine to coast it to the Southwards, hoping to double it out that we might haue run so farre West till wee had found land, or els to haue bene thoroughly resolued of our pretended purpose.

The 3. we fell with the Ice againe, and putting off from it, we sought to the Northwards, but the wind crossed vs.

The 4. was foggie: so was the 5. also with much wind at North.

The 6. being very cleere, we put our barke with oares through a gappe in the Ice, seeing the Sea free on the West side as we thought, which falling out otherwise, caused vs to returne after we had staied there betweene the Ice. The 7. and the 8. about midnight, by Gods helpe we recouered the open sea, the weather being faire and calme, and so was the 9. The 10. we coasted the Ice. The 11. was foggie, but calme.

The 12. we coasted againe the Ice, hauing the wind at West northwest. The 13. bearing off from the Ice, we determined to goe with the shore and come to an anker, and to stay fiue or 6. daies for the dissoluing of the Ice, hoping that the sea continually beating it, and the sunne, with the extreme force of heate which it had alwayes shining vpon it, would make a quicke dispatch, that we might haue a further search vpon the Westerne shore. Now when we were come to the Easterne coast, the water something deepe, and some of our company fearefull withall, we durst not come to an anker, but bare off into sea againe. The poore people seeing vs goe away againe, came rowing after vs into the Sea, the waues being somewhat loftie. We truckt with them for a few skinnes and dartes, and gaue them beads, nailes, pinnes, needles and cardes, they pointing to the shore, as though they would shew vs great friendship: but we litle regarding their curtesie, gaue them the gentle farewell, and so departed.

The 14. we had the wind at South. The 15. there was some fault either in the barke, or the set of some currant, for we were driuē 6. points out of our course. The 16. we fell with ꝑ banke of Ice West from vs. The 17. and 18. were foggie. The 19. at one a clocke after noone, we had sight of the land which we called mount Raleigh, and at 12. of the clocke at night, wee were thwart the streights which we discouered the first yeere. The 20. wee trauersed in the mouth of the streight, the winde being at West, with faire and cleare weather. The 21. and 22. we coasted the Northerne coast of the streights. The 23. hauing sayled 60. leagues Northwest into the streights, at two a clocke after noone, we ankered among many Iles in the bottome of the gulfe, naming the same the erle of Cumberlands Iles, where riding at anker, a Whale passed by our ship and went West in among the Iles. Here the compasse set at 30. degrees Westward variation. The 24. we departed, shaping our course Southeast to recouer the Sea. The 25. we were becalmed in the bottome of the gulfe, the aire being extreme hote. Walter Buton and some of the Mariners went on shore to course dogs, where they found many Graues and Trane spilt on the ground, the dogs being so fat that they were scant able to runne.

The erle of Cumberlands Iles.

The 26. wee had a pretie storme, the wind being at Southeast. The 27. and 28. were faire. The 29. we were cleare out of the streights, hauing coasted the South shore, and this day at noone we were in 64. degrees of latitude. The 30. in the afternoone we coasted a banke of Ice, which lay on the shore, and passed by a great banke or inlet, which lay betweene 63. and 62. degrees of latitude, which we called Lumleis Inlet. We had oftentimes as we sailed alongst the coast, great rootes, the water as it were whirling and ouerfalling, as if it were the fall of some great water through a bridge. The 31. as we sayled by a head land, which wee named Warwikes Foreland, we fell into one of those ouerfals with a fresh gale of wind, and bearing all our sailes, we looking vpon an Iland of Ice betweene vs and the shore, had thought that our barke did make no way, which caused vs to take markes on the shore: at length we perceiued our selues to go very fast, and

My lord Lumleys Inlet.

Warwikes foreland.

the

the Iſland of Ice which we ſaw before was caried very forcibly with the ſet of the current faſter then our ſhip went. This day and night we paſſed by a very great gulfe, the water whirling and roring, as it were the meetings of tides.

Auguſt.

The firſt hauing coaſted a banke of Ice which was driuen out at the mouth of this gulfe, wee fell with the Southermoſt Cape of the gulfe, which we named Chidleis Cape, which lay in 6. degrees and 10. minutes of latitude. The 2. and 3. were calme and foggie, ſo were the 4. 5. and 6. The 7. was faire and calme: ſo was the 8. with a litle gale in the morning. The 9. was faire, and we had a litle gale at night. The 10. wee had a friſking gale at Weſt Northweſt. The 11. faire. The 12. we ſawe fiue Deere on the top of an Iſland, called by vs Darcies Iſland. And wee hoiſed out our boate, and went a ſhore to them, thinking to haue killed ſome of them. But when we came on ſhore and had courſed them twiſe about the Iſland, they tooke the Sea and ſwamme towards Iſlands diſtant from that 3. leagues. When wee perceiued that they had taken the Sea, we gaue them ouer becauſe our boat was ſo ſmall that it could not carie vs, and rowe after them, they ſwamme ſo faſt: but one of them was as big as a good pretie Cowe and very fat, their freete as big as Oxe freete. Here vpon this Iſland I killed with my peece a grey hare.

Chidleis Cape

The lord Darcies Iſland.

The 13. in the morning we ſaw 3. or 4. white Beares, but durſt not goe on ſhore to them for lacke of a good boat. This day we ſtroke a rocke, ſeeking for an harborow, and receiued .. leake, and this day we were in 54. deg. of latitude.

The 14. we ſtopt our leake in a ſtorme not very outragious, at noone.

The 15. being almoſt in 51. degrees of latitude, and not finding our ſhips, nor (according to their promiſe) any kind of marke, token or beacon, which we willed to ſet vp, and they proteſted to doe ſo vpon euery head land, Iſland or Cape, within 20. leagues euery way off from their fiſhing place, which our captaine appointed to be betweene 54. and 55. degrees: This 15. I ſay we ſhaped our courſe homewards for England, hauing in our ſhip but litle wood, and halfe a hogſhead of freſh water. Our men were very willing to depart, and no man more forward then Perſon, for he feared to be put out of his office of Stewardſhip: he was ſo inſaciate, that the allowance of two men was ſcant ſufficient to fill his greedie appetite: but becauſe euery man was ſo willing to depart, and conſidering our want, I doubted the matter very much, fearing that the ſeething of our mens victuall in ſalt water, would breed diſeaſes, and being but fewe (yet too many for the roome, if any ſhould be ſicke) and likely that all the reſt might bee infected therewith, wee conſented to returne for our owne countrey, and ſo we had the 16. faire with the winde at Southweſt.

The 17. wee met a ſhippe at Sea, and as farre as wee could iudge it was a Biſkaine: wee thought ſhe went a fiſhing for Whales, for in 52. degrees or thereabout, we ſaw very many.

The 18. was faire with a good gale at Weſt.

The 19. faire alſo, but with much wind at Weſt and by South.

And thus after much variable weather and change of windes, we arriued the 15. of September in Dartmouth, Anno 1587. giuing thanks to God for our ſafe arriuall.

A letter of the ſaid M. Iohn Dauis, written to M. Sanderſon of *London, concerning his forewritten voyage.*

GOod M. Sanderſon, with Gods great mercy I haue made my ſafe returne in health, with all my companie, and haue ſailed 60. leagues further then my determination at my departure. I haue bene in 73. degrees finding the Sea all open, and 40. leagues betweene land and land: The paſſage is moſt certaine, the execution moſt eaſie, as at my comming you ſhall fullie know. Yeſterday the 15. of September, I landed all wearie, therefore I pray you pardon my ſhortneſſe. Sandridge, this 16. of September, Anno 1587.

Yours equall as mine owne, which
by triall you ſhall beſt know,

Iohn Dauis.

An

An extract of M. Lanes letter, to M. Richard Hakluyt Esquire, and another gentleman of the middle Temple, from Virginia: the right place whereof is next before the Account of master Lane. Pagina 737.

IN the meane while you shall vnderstand that since sir Rich. Greenuils departure from vs, as also before, we haue discouered the maine to bee the goodliest soile vnder the cope of heauen, so abounding with sweete trees, that bring such sundry rich and most pleasant gummes, grapes of such greatnes, yet wild, as France, Spaine nor Italy hath no greater, so many sortes of Apothecarie drugs, such seuerall kindes of flaxe, and one kind like silke, the same gathered of a grasse, as common there as grasse is here. And now within these few dayes we haue found here a Guinie wheate, whose eare peeldeth cxxv. for head, 400. vpon one eare, and the Cane maketh very good and perfect suger, also Terra Samia, otherwise Terra sigillata. Besides that, it is the goodliest and most pleasing territorie of the world (for the soile is of an huge vnknowen greatnesse, and very wel peopled and towned, though sauagelie) and the climate so wholesome, that we haue not had one sicke, since we touched land here. To conclude, if Virginia had but Horses and Kine in some reasonable proportion, I dare assure my selfe being inhabited with English, no realme in Christendome were comparable to it. For this already we find, that what commodities soeuer Spaine, France, Italy, or the East parts do yeeld vnto vs in wines of all sortes, in oiles, in flaxe, in rosens, pitch, frankincence, currans, sugers, & such like, these parts do abound with ꝑ growth of them all, but being Sauages that possesse the land, they know no vse of the same. And sundry other rich commodities, that no parts of the world, be they West or East Indies, haue, here we finde great abundance of. The people naturally most curteous, & very desirous to haue clothes, but especially of course cloth rather then silke, course canuas they also like wel of, but copper carieth ꝑ price of all, so it be maddred. Thus good M. Hakluyt and master H. I haue ioyned you both in one letter of remembrance, as two that I loue dearely well, and commending me most hartily to you both, I commit you to ꝑ tuition of the almighty. Frō the new Fort in Virginia, this 3. Sept. 1585.

Your most assured friend, Ralfe Lane.

The voiage set out by the right honorable the Earle of Cumberland, in the yeere 1586. intended for the South Sea, but performed no farther then the latitude of 44. deg. to the South of the Equinoctiall, written by Iohn Sarracoll Merchant in the same voyage.

THe 26. day of June, in the yeere 1586. and in the 28. yeere of the Queens maiesties raigne, we departed from Grauesend in two ships, the Admirall called the Red dragon, and the other the barke Clifford, the one of the burden of 260. tunnes, with 130. men, and the other of the burden of 130. tunnes, with 70. men: the captaine of the Admirall was M. Robert Withyngton, of the Viceadmirall, M. Christopher Lister, both being furnished out at the costes and charges of the right honourable the Erle of Cumberland, hauing for their masters two brethren, the one Iohn Anthonie, and the other William Anthonie.

The 24. of July we came into the sound of Plimmouth, and being there constrained by Westerlie winds, to stay till the 17. of August, wee then departed with another ship also for our Rearadmirall called the Roe, whereof M. Hawes was captaine, and a fine pinnace also called the Dorothie, which was sir Walter Raleighs. We 4. being one in the sea, met the 20. of August, with 16. sailes of Hulkes in the fleete, who named themselues to be men of Hamborough, laden and come from Lisbone. Our Admirall hailed their Admirall with curteous wordes, willing him to strike his sailes, and to come aboord to him onely to know some newes of the conuerey, but hee refused to do so, only stroke his flag and tooke it in. The Viceadmirall of the hulkes being a head, would neither strike flag nor saile, but passed on without budging, whereupon our Admirall lent him a piece of ordinance, which they repaied double, so that we grew to some litle quarell, whereupon one of the sternemost hulkes, being as I suppose more afraid then hurt, stroke amaine, our Admirall being neere him, layd him aboord, and entred with certains of his men, how many I know not, for that we were giuing chase to the Vttermost men, thinking our Admirall would haue come vp againe to vs, to haue made them all to haue stroke: but the weather growing to be very thicke and foggie, with small raine, he came not vp but kept with another of the hulkes which captaine Hawes had boorded and kept all night, and tooke out of her some prouision that they best liked. They learned of the men that were in the Hulke, that there were 7. hulkes laden in Lisbone with Spaniards goods, and because their lading was very rich, they were determined to go about Ireland, and so they let her goe againe like a goose with a broken wing.

The

The next day after being the 21. day, we eſpied 5. ſailes more, which laye along to the Eaſtwards, but by reaſon of the night which then was neere at hand, we coulde hardly come to them. Yet at laſt we hailed one of the biggeſt of them, and they told vs that they were all of Hambrough: but another ſaid ſhe was of Denmarke, ſo that in deede they knewneither what to ſay, nor what to doe. Our Admirall being more deſirous to follow his courſe, then to linger by chaſing the hulkes, called vs from purſuing them with his trumpet, and a piece of Ordinance, or els wee would haue ſeene what they had bene, and where with they had bene laden.

The 22. day becauſe of contrary winde we put into Dartmouth all 4. of vs, and tarried there 7. dayes.

The 29. we departed thence and put out to ſea, and beganne our voyage, thinking at the firſt to haue runne along the coaſt of Spaine, to ſee if we could haue mette with ſome good prize to haue ſent home to my Lord: but our Captaine thought it not the beſt courſe at the laſt, but rather kept off in the ſea from the coaſt. And vpon Saturday the 17. of September we fell with the coaſt of Barbarie, and the 18. hailed in with the roade of Sancta Cruz. The 21. day wee fell with one of the Iſlands of the Canaries, called Forteuentura. In running alongſt this Iſland, we eſpied vpon a hill by the water ſide, one wauing with a white flagge, whereupon wee manned both our boates, and ſent them towards the ſhoare, to vnderſtand what newes. They found them to be two ragged knaues and one horſeman, and they tolde vs that Lancerote was taken, and ſpoyled in Auguſt by the Turkes: when we ſaw they had nothing elſe to ſay, we left them, and proceeded in our courſe, and fell againe with the coaſt of Barbarie.

September.

Lancerota ſpoiled by the men of Algiers.

The 25. day of September about 10. of the clocke we fell with Rio de Oro, ſtanding iuſt vnder our Tropike: we ancred in the mouth of it in 8. fathome, the entrance of it is about 2. leagues ouer. And the next day our Captaine with the boate ſearched the Riuer, and found it to be as broad 14. or 15. leagues vp, as at the entrie of it, but founde no towne nor habitation, ſauing that there came downe 2. poore men, & one of them ſpake good Spaniſh, and told our Captaine, that certaine Frenchmen vſed to come thither, and laded ſome ore hides, and goates hides, but other commoditie there was none. We departed thence the 27. day, and the laſt day of the moneth being calme we went aboorde our General, and there conſented to goe for Sierra Leona, to wood and water. From thence till the 10. of October we were much becalmed with extreeme hotte weather, much lightening, and great ſtore of raine. This 10. day we ſounded, finding a great currant as wee ſuppoſed by the ripling water, which after wee founde to be an ordinarie tide, the flood ſetting to the Northweſt, and the ebb Southeaſt, and here wee had but 18. fathome water, and no lande to be ſeene: it was on the ſouthermoſt part of the ſhowles that lye in about 11. degr. but halling South offagaine, it preſently deeped vnto 50. fathome, and after halling Southeaſt, and by Eaſt, and Eaſt Southeaſt, we ſounded, but had no ground in 120. fathome.

Rio del Oro, in 23. degr. and a halfe.

October.

The 21. of October we fell with lande vpon the coaſt of Guinea, in the height of 8. degrees, a very high land, but of no great length: it was the high land ouer Sierra Leona. Wee dyde into the land, and found neere the ſhoare more water then in the offing: at the Northen ende of the high land we ancred about a mile, and ſomewhat more from the ſhoare in 11. fathome. To goe into the harbour of Sierra Leona we did borrowe vpon the Southſide, hauing no ground in 10. fathome, halfe a mile from the ſhoare. Vpon the Northſide of this harbour is very ſhoale water, but on the Southſide no feare, more then is to be ſeene.

Sierra Leona.

The 23. day being Sunday wee came to an ancre in the Bay of freſh water, and going a ſhoare with our boate, wee ſpake with a Portingall, who tolde vs that not farre off there were Negroes inhabiting, and that in giuing to the king a Buttiſio of wine, and ſome linnen cloth, hee would ſuffer vs to water and wood at our pleaſure. But our Captaines thinking it not good to giue any thing for that which they might take freely, landed, and certaine of our men with them, whereupon the Portingall and the Negroes ranne all away into the woods. Then we returned againe into our boates, and preſently went and landed in another place, thinking to haue fetcht a walke, and ſo to come to our boates againe. But wandering through a little wood, wee were ſuddenly and vnawares vpon a towne of the Negroes, whereupon they ſtrooke vp their drumme, giuing withall a great ſhowt, and off went their arrowes as thicke as haile. We were in nomber about 30. caleeuers, and 20. with our weapons, which we alſo let flie into the woods among them, and what hurt wee did, we know not.

A towne of the Negroes.

Then wee returned to our boates, and tooke wood and water at our pleaſure, and reaſonable ſtore of fiſhe, and amongſt the reſt wee hailed vp a great foule monſter, whoſe head and backe were ſo harde, that no ſworde coulde enter it: But being thruſt in vnder the belly in diuers places, and much wounded, he bowed a ſworde in his mouth, as a man would doe a

girdle of lether about his hande, and likewise the yron of a boare speare: Hee was in length about nine foote, and had nothing in his bellie, but a certaine quantitie of small stones, to the value of a pottel.

November. The fourth of November wee went on shoare to a towne of the Negroes, which stoode on the Southeast side of the harbour, about a Sacar shotte from the roade, which wee founde to bee but lately built: it was of about two hundreth houses, and walled about with mightie great trees, and stakes so thicke, that a ratte could hardly get in or out. But as it chaunced, wee came directly vpon a port which was not shutte vp, where we entred with such fiercenesse, that the people fledde all out of the towne, which wee founde to bee finely built after their fashion, and the streetes of it so intricate, that it was difficult for vs to finde the way out, that we came in at. Wee founde their houses and streetes so finely and cleanely kept, that it was an admiration to vs all, for that neither in the houses nor streetes was so much dust to be founde, as would fill an egge shell. Wee founde little in their houses, except some matts, goards, and some earthen potts. Our men at their departure set the towne on fire, and it was burnt (for the most part of it) in a quarter of an houre, the houses being couered with reede and strawe.

Another great and fine towne of the Negroes.

After this we searched the Countrey about it, where we found in diuers plaines good store of rice in stackes, which our men did beate out, and brought aboord in the huske, to the quantitie of 14. or 15. tunnes in both our shippes.

The 17. day of November wee departed from Sierra Leona, directing our course for the Streight of Magellane. In this harbour diuers of our men fell sicke of a disease in the belly, which for the time was extreeme, but (God bee thanked) it was but of small continuance. Wee founde also in diuers places of the woods, images set vpon pinnes, with diuers thinges before them, as egges, meale, rice, rounde shot of stones, and diuers other thinges, such as the barbarous people had to offer vp.

When we came neere to the Line, wee found it nothing so hot as it is at Sierra Leona, by reason of the great winde and raine.

About the 24. day of November one or two of our men died, and others also were sicke of a Calentura.

January. The 2. day of Januarie wee had a little sight of lande, being about the height of 28. degr. to the Southward of the Line.

The 4. day we fell with the shoare high and bolde, being in 30. degrees, and a terse, little more or lesse. All of it to the Northward was a high land, but to the Southwarde it did presently faile, and was a very lowe land, and all sandie. About sixe leagues from the shoare wee sounded, and had about 15. or 16. fadome water, and blacke sandie ooze. Wee thought to haue gone to the shoare, and to haue watered, but we could not discerne any good harbour, and therefore wee cast off to seaward againe.

The 12. day wee found our selues in 32. degrees and 27. minutes. From the day of the Natiuitie of Christ, till the 13. day of this moneth, although the Sunne was very neere vnto vs, yet wee found no want of windes but variable as in England, and not so hotte but that a mans shoulders might well disgest a frise gowne, and his bellie the best Christmas cheere in England, yet we for our parts had no want, but such as might content honest men.

The tenth day being about 8. leagues from the shoare, and a little short of the Riuer of Plate, it was my good happe to espie a saile, which was a small Portingall bounde for the Riuer to a towne called Sancta Fee: and from thence by horse and cartes, the Marchants, and part of their goods were to be transported into Peru. This ship being about the burthen of 45. or 50. tunnes, we tooke that day about three of the clocke, wherein there was for Master or Pilote an Englishman called Abraham Cocke borne in Lee. We examined him and the rest concerning the state of the Riuer, and they tolde vs that there were in the Riuer 5. townes, some of 70. households, and some of more. The first towne was about 50. leagues vp the Riuer called Bonos Ayres, the rest some 40. some 50. leagues one from another, so that the vppermost towne is 230. leagues from the entrance of the Riuer, called Tuckaman. In the townes is great store of corne, cattell, wine, and sundry fruites, but no money of golde or siluer: they make a certaine kinde of slight cloth, which they giue in trucke of suger, rice, Marmalade, and Bucket, which were the commodities that this shippe had.

A Portingall ship taken, wherein was for Pilot Abraham Cocke an Englishman, left there before by the Minion of London 1581.

They had aboorde also 45. Negroes, whereof euery one in Peru yeelde 400. duckets a piece, and besides these, there were as passengers in her, two Portingall women and a childe.

Another Portingal taken.

The 11. day wee espied another saile, which was the consort of this Portingall, and to him also wee gaue chase, and tooke him the same day: Hee was of the burthen of the other, and had

had in her good store of suger, Marmalade, and Succats, with diuers other things, which we noted downe in our booke. In this shippe also we found about 35. Negro women, and foure or fiue friers, of which one was an Irish man, of the age of three or foure and twentie yeeres, and two Portingall women also, which were borne in the riuer of Genero. Both these shippes were bought in Brasile, by a yong man which was Factor for the bishop of Tuccaman, and the friers were sent for by that bishoppe to possesse a newe Monasterie, which the bishoppe was then a building. The bookes, beades, and pictures in her, cost (as one of the Portingals confessed) aboue 1000. duckats.

An Irish fryer taken.

Of these shippes wee learned, that M. Iohn Drake, who went in consort with M. Fenton, had his barke cast away a little short of the Riuer of Plate, where they were taken captiues by the Sauages, all sauing them which were slaine in the taking: the Sauages kept them for a time, and vsed them very hardly, yet at the last Iohn Drake and Richard Faireweather, and 2. or three more of their company with them got a Canoa, and escaped, and came to the first towne of the Spaniards. Faireweather is maried in one of the townes, but Iohn Drake was caried to Tuccaman by the Pilot of this shippe, and was liuing, and in good health the last yeere. Concerning this voyage of the Portingals they told vs that it was the thirde voyage that was made into the riuer of Plate these 30. yeeres.

The newes of M. Iohn Drake.

Richard Faireweather.

The 12. of Ianuarie we came to Seale Iland, and the 14. day to the Greene Iland, where going in wee founde hard aboord the maine 8. fathome, 7. and 6. and neuer lesse then 5. fathome. There lies a ledge of rocks in the faire way, betwixt the Iland and the maine, so that you must be sure to borrow we hard aboord the maine, and leaue the ledge on the larboord side.

One of the Portingals which wee carried along with vs in our shippe, seemed to be a man of experience, and I entred into speach with him concerning the state of the Riuer: hee tolde mee that the towne of Bonos Ayres, is from the Greene Iland about 70. leagues, standing on the South side of the Riuer, and from thence to Sancta Fee, is 100. leagues, standing on the same side also. At which towne their shippes doe discharge all their goods into small barkes, which rowe and towe vp the Riuer to another towne called Ascension, which is from Sancta Fee 150. leagues, where the boates discharge on shoare, and so passe all the goods by carres, and horses to Tuccaman, which is in Peru.

The towne of Ascension standes in a very fertile place, reaping corne twise in the yeere, with abundance of wine, cattell, and fruites. In the townes of Ascension, and Tuccaman, a rapier of 20. rials, is worth 30. duckats, a box of Marmalade 20. duckats: a looking glasse a foote ouer, is worth 30. li. pictures in tables of 14. inches, 30. and 40. li. a piece.

The 16. day wee went from Greene Iland to the watering place, which is about a league to the Westwarde, where wee tooke in about 18. tunnes of water, and the 22. day came againe to Seale Iland to make prouision of Seales, where a storme arose, which put vs in some danger, by the breaking of our ancres and cables, and the winde blew so colde, that we much maruelled at it, considering the height of the place. I must needes in this place finde fault with our selues and the whole company, that riding in this Riuer 16. dayes, the chanell was not sounded, nor the way made perfect.

The 29. day we tooke into our shippe one Miles, which was left in the West Indies by master Hawkins.

The 1. of Febuary I tooke the sunne in 38. degr. And the 3. day I tooke it againe & I found it to be 41. degrees.

Februarie.

The 7. day of Febuarie our Captaine M. Lister being in one of the pises, hoysed ouer boorde his Gundelo, and went aboorde the Admirall, and being there they sent their Gundelo aboord vs, for our Master, M. Collins, and my selfe, and at our comming wee were called into the Captaines cabbin, where were set in counsell for matters touching the state of our voyage, these men whose names are vnder written.

Master Robert Withrington Captaine of the Admiral.
M. Christopher Lister Captaine of the Barke Clifford.
Iohn Anthonie, Master of the Admirall.
Thomas Hoode Pilot for the Streights.
William Anthony, Master of the Barke Clifford.
Dauid Collins. } Tristram Gennings.
Master William Withrington.
Master Beumond Withrington.
Master Wasnes. } Master Norton.

Master Wilkes,
Master Harris.
Thomas Anthonie.
Nicholas Porter.
The Master Gunner:
Alexander Gundie his mate.
John Sarracol.

This companie being all assembled together, the Master of the Admirall declared that the cause of our assemblie was to determine after good aduice, what course or way were best and most likely to all mens iudgements to be taken. First for the good preferment of my Lordes voyage, then the health of our men, and lastly the safegard of our ships, and further shewed his minde to vs all in these wordes, as neere as I could carry them away.

My masters, my Lords determination touching this our voyage is not vnknowen vnto you all, hauing appointed it to be made, and by the grace of God to be performed by vs for the South sea. But for as much as we doe all see the time of the yeere to be farre spent, as also the windes to hang contrary, the weather drawes on colder and colder, the nights longer and longer, our bread so consumed that we haue not left aboue two moneths bisket, our drinke in a maner al spent, so that we haue nothing but water, which in so colde a Countrey as the Streights, if we should get in, and be forced there to winter, would no doubt be a great weakening to our men, and a hazard of the ouerthrowe of the voyage: these things considered, both our Captaine, Master Hood, and I, doe rather thinke it good for the wealth of our voyage, the health of our men, and safetie to our shippes, to goe roome with the coast of Brasill, where by Gods grace wee shall well victuall our selues, both with wine which is our greatest want, and other necessaries.

Besides, it is giuen vs here to vnderstande, by the Portingals which we haue taken, that there is no doubt, but that by Gods helpe and our endeuour, wee shall be able to take the towne of Bayea at our pleasure, which if wee doe put in practise, and doe not performe it, being somewhat aduised by them, they offer to loose their liues. And hauing by this meanes victualed our selues, wee may there spende vpon the coast some three or foure moneths, except in the meane time wee may happen vpon some good thing to content my Lorde, and to purchase our owne credits: otherwise, wee may take the Spring of the yeere, and so proceede, according to my Lords directions. And assure your selues (by the assistance of God) wee will not returne without such benefite by this voyage, as may redound to my Lords profite, and the honour of our Countrey. Now if there bee any of you, that can giue better course and aduise, then this which I haue deliuered, let him speake, and wee will not onely heare him, but thanke him for his counsell, and followe it.

To this speach of M. Anthonie, M. Lister our Captaine answered in this sort: M. Withrington, & M. Anthonie both, you know, that the last wordes that my Lord had with vs in such a chamber was, that in any case we should follow our voyage onely for the South sea, except by the way, we might perchance meete with such a purchase, as that we might returne with 6000. pounds: and therefore I see no safetie, howe wee may dare offer to goe backe againe, being so neere the Straights as we are: for my part I neither dare nor wil consent vnto it, except we be further forced, then yet we are. My accompt is this, that he that dieth for this yeere is excused for the next, and I rather choose death, then to returne in disgrace with my Lord.

Hereunto both the Captaine & M. of the Admirall replied that they were all of that minde: yet notwithstanding, that in going roome the voyage was in better possibilitie to be performed, then in wintring either in the Streights, or at Port S. Iulian, all things considered. And so agreeing, and concluding all in one, they were determined presently to beare vp.

The next day being the 8. of Febuarie, there fell out many and diuers speaches on eche part concerning the altering of our course, some would continue for the Straights, and othersome would not. Whereupon a viewe was taken in both shippes of victuals, and reasonable store was found for both companies: and the winde withall comming to the North, we determined to take out of the prizes the best necessaries that were in them, and so cast them off, and to plie for the Streights.

They returne being in the latitude of 44. degrees.

All this time we helde on our course, and the 15. day wee found our selues in the height of 44. degrees, but then the winde came to the South, with much raine, winde, colde, and other intemperate weather, continuing in that sort 5. or 6. dayes, in which time we hulled backe againe into the height of 42. degrees.

Sunday being the 20. of Febuarie, our Admirall being something to the leeward of vs,

and

and the ſtorme ſomewhat ceaſed, put abroade his flagge in the mizen ſhrowds, as a token that hee would ſpeake with vs, and thereupon wee bare roome with him, and hauing hailed one another, Captaine Withrington ſhewed the diſpoſition of all his companie, which was rather to go roome with the coaſt of Braſil, then to lie after that ſort in the ſea with foule weather, and contrary windes. Our Captaine on the other ſide, ſhewed the contrary diſpoſition of his men, and company, willing notwithſtanding to proceede: but in the ende, both the ſhippes fell aſunder, and our Captaine ſaid, Seeing then there is no remedie, I muſt be content, though againſt my wil.

The 21. day the weather grewe faire, and the winde good at the South for the Streights, yet our Admirall bare roome ſtill, we ſuppoſing he would haue taken the benefite of the time: whereupon our whole companie beganne to thinke of the inconueniences that would ariſe by deuiding our ſelues, and looſing our Admiral, being very willing to continue their courſe, and yet not without the company of the Admirall. And then wee beganne to caſt about after him, and at the laſt bare with him, and hee tolde vs, that vpon a ſecond viewe of the victuals, hee founde their ſtore ſo ſlender, and their want ſo great, that there was no remedie for them but to ſeeke ſome meanes to be relieued, which was the onely cauſe that hee bare Northward. This ſpeache made vs of the Barke, to enter into a newe conſultation: and wee founde many of our men weake, and all our caleuers not ſeruiceable, and the Smiths that ſhould mende them to be in the Admirall. Wee conſidered alſo, that by breaking of companie, eche ſhippe ſhoulde be the more weakened: we continued in this conſultation till the 24. day, and in all that time founde Maſter Captaine Liſter moſt deſirous to accompliſh, and to fulfill the voyage, and not willing in any caſe to turne his ſhippe, but that the deſire which we all had to continue in conſort with our Admirall, made vs to thinke wel of his companie, and in fine, an agreement and concluſion was thus made on all ſides, to follow the Admirall, without any more talke of the Streights till the Spring.

The 10. day of March, it fell out ſo vnfortunately, that Samuel Teller our Maſters mate, fell ouer boord, and ſo periſhed, we being not able by any meanes to recouer him. 5 March.

The 28. day being in the height of 21. degr. we eſpied a ſaile, which we iudged came out of the Streights, and had rich lading, but the night being at hand, wee loſt her very vnluckely, and the next day could haue no ſight of her.

The 5. day of April we fell with the lande of Braſilia, in the height as I iudge of 16. degrees and a terſe, and our Captaine went then aboorde the Admirall, where they concluded to ſende the pinneſſe and our boate a ſhoare for freſh water, becauſe wee ſtoode in neede of it, which did ſo with 18. good men, and three or foure tunne of water caſke. They were from vs, till the 8. day in the morning, at which time wee eſpied them againe, and that day wee came all together into the roade of Camanao, where there came a Canoa aboorde vs, and one of the chiefeſt Portingals that belonged to the place. Here wee tooke in beeſes, hogges, water and wood at our pleaſure, hauing almoſt no man able to reſiſt vs, but ſome of our Portingals ſtole from vs in the Canoa. 5 April.

The 11. day wee entred into the hauen of Bayea, where wee were receiued at the point comming in with two great pieces of Ordinance, which diſcharged bullets at vs 5. times a piece, but they loſt ſhotte and powder, and did vs no harme. After we had paſſed the point, wee hailed in for the roade as cloſe as the winde would permit vs, but could not come ſo neere as we deſired, and therefore we came to an ancre a faire birth off the towne, not without great ſtore of ſhotte from thence, but yet our harme was none at all for ought they could doe. They come into the riuer of Bayea.

At our comming in, wee founde in the roade eight ſhippes and one caruell, of the which one was a hulke or double flie boate of the burden of 250. tunnes, hauing in her 24. pieces of good Ordinance: ſhee with the reſt of the ſhippes, together with the towne, gaue vs ſhotte, and ſhotte, but not one touched ſo much as any of our ſailes. And leaſt wee ſhoulde ſeeme in the meane time to be idle, wee repayed for euery ſhot of theirs, two or three ſometimes at the ſhippes and the towne together.

The next day at night wee thought to haue hailed in with the ſhippes, and to haue fetched out ſome of them: but the winde blewe then off the ſhoare, ſo that we could not poſſibly doe it. And againe the next day at night we concluded to goe with our owne two boates, and two other boates of the Countrey which we had taken before, which went with caruel ſailes into the roade, and accordingly perfourmed the ſame, notwithſtanding the ſhotte of the enemie. The Moone did ſhine, and gaue very good light, and in wee went with our caruels and boates, and the ſhotte came about our eares as thicke as haile: but the Portingals and the reſt, perceiuing vs no whitte at all to ſhrinke or bee diſmayed, forſooke their ſhippes, and beganne to prouide to ſaue themſelues, ſome with their boates, ſome by ſwimming, and ſo wee entred the ſhippes with a great

ſhowte, and found few to reſiſt vs: but yet the ſhoare not being a cables length from vs, they did ſo plie both their great and ſmall ordinance at vs, that it much annoyed vs: But yet for all that we made light of their ſhotte, and our men of the Barke Clifforde entred the Admirall and Vice admirall, and our Admirals men entred two other ſhippes of the like burden, and preſently euery one cut the cables in the Hauſe, and ſo by the helpe of God in deſpight of them all, wee brought away foure of them. The leaſt whereof was of the burthen of one hundreth and thirtie Tunnes.

They take 4. ſhips out of the harbor of Bayea, notwithſtanding the ſhot of the enemie.

In this broile the hulke ſhotte at vs many times, but did no hurt at all: but at the laſt wee comming by the hulke towing our newe prizes, wee hailed them and demaunded whence they were. they anſwered vs of Flaſhing, and then we commaunded him to waye ancre, and to come after vs: And not daring to refuſe it, hee did ſo, and brought with him a caruell with fourtie or fiftie butts of wine in her, and another ſmall barke, which had little or nothing in her: and rode by vs as one of our companie, and was a ſhippe of the burthen of 250. tunnes. Our hard happe was to finde no great matter, either of Marchandiſe or victuals in theſe ſhippes, ſauing in one of them we found 4. butts of wine, in another 2. in another one, and ſome fiſh, and all the reſt of their lading was on ſhoare.

All this was done vpon Eaſter eue, and we gaue thankes to God, that wee had ſpedde ſo well: and that very night there came a boate from the Towne, with a Dutch Marchant, and one Portingal, to offer ſome ranſome for the ſhips, as they ſaid, but as I iudge rather to eſpie our ſtrength: we kept them that night aboord, and the next day we ſent them to our Admirall.

The next day being Eaſter day aroſe a very great ſtorme, inſomuch that our caruel which we firſt tooke brake from vs, and one of our newe prizes alſo, by meanes of the breaking of her cable, ſlipt away: whereupon, although the winde was great, and the ſea troubleſome, yet we ſent certaine of our men in our boate, to recouer them if they might, but we feare, that the rage of the weather hath cauſed vs to leeſe our men, and prizes to.

In the middeſt of this ſtorme, our two Spaniards which wee tooke in the Riuer of Plate, ſeeing vs all buſie about our prizes, beganne to thinke howe they might eſcape our handes, and ſuddenly ſlipt both out of one of the Cabbins windowes, and by ſwimming gotte a ſhoare, a thing which ſeemed to vs impoſſible, conſidering the outrage of the weather.

This ſtorme continued long, and preuented vs of making our intended attempt againſt the towne, hauing as much to doe as poſſibly we might, in keeping our ſhips and prizes from running a ſhoare, and falling into the hands of thoſe that ſtood gaping greedily for our ruine.

The 19. day the ſtorme being a litle ceaſed, wee all waied and came to an Iſlande that lyeth nere Northweſt from the Bay, and the 20. day wee went on ſhoare, and our Carpenters ſet vp our pinneſſe.

The 23. day the people of the Countrey came downe a maine vpon vs, and beſet vs rounde, and ſhot at vs with their bowes, and arrowes, but in ſhort time we cauſed them to retire, and many of them were caried away by the helpe of their fellowes, although wee had ſome of our men hurt with ſome of their arrowes.

The 24. day we receiued out of the caruell 12. butts of wine, and 4. barrels of oyle, and halfe a quarter.

The 26. of Aprill our pinneſſe was launched: and the ſame day came downe vnto vs a great number of Portingals and Indians, with whom we ſkirmiſhed the ſpace of 2. houres to their coſt.

The 2. day of May the Admirals boate went a ſhoare with 14. men to fill water, and preſently being on ſhoare, they were intrapped with two or 300. Indians which aſſaulted them, and ſlew one or two of our men, but the reſt eſcaped notwithſtanding the nomber of the enemie, and came ſafe againe with water to the ſhippe. We ſuffered this loſſe by meere negligence, and want of circumſpection.

The 5. day the Captaine of the Admiral himſelfe, tooke a ſmal barke, his owne litle caruel, our pinneſſe & the Dutchmans boate, & at night went to ſhoare to get victuals, amongſt the bullockes which were in the fields: and in the morning they were gone ſo farre, that they were out of ſight. Which being perceiued by ꝑ enemie, they preſently made ready their gally for Admirall, with 4. caruels, with as many men in them as poſſibly could thruſt in and ſtand one by another: and they bare ouer with the North ſhoare to meete with our pinneſſe & boats: whereupon our men fell into great danger, although M. Liſter our Captaine diſſwaded M. Withrington from that attempt, by laying before him the danger both of himſelfe & vs alſo, being ſo far one from the other. But being once gone, there was no remedy but they were to abide whatſoeuer might happen: we in the barke Clifford, although we were weakly left, yet perceiuing ꝑ gally to make after our men, we waied

and

and purſued the Gallie, as neere the ſhoare as we could conueniently come for want of water: the Hulke alſo waied, and came after vs, to followe the enemie, but the enemie with his oares gotte ſight of our Pinneſſe, and boates before we could, and bare directly with them: which being eſpied of our men, and they ſeeing no way to auoide them, made themſelues readie, (notwithſtanding the great odds) to fight it out like men, and to liue, and die together. The courſe that they tooke for their beſt aduantage vppon the ſudden, was this: they went all into the Pinneſſe, and made faſt the Dutchmans boate to one ſide, and the ſmall Caruell to the other ſide, and ſo waited the comming of the enemie, giuing them firſt of all a peece of Ordinance for their welcome, which they preſently repaied againe with a peece out of the prowe of the Gallie, and preſently after, with three or foure ſmall braſſe peeces, charged with haile ſhotte, and ſo giuing a mightie ſhoote, came all aboord together, crying, entra, entra, but our men receaued them ſo hotly, with ſmall ſhots and pikes, that they killed them like Dogges. And thus they continued aboord them, almoſt a quarter of an howre, thinking to haue deuoured our men, pinneſſe, and all. And ſurely to mans iudgement, no other thing was likely, in regard of their great number, and the fewnes of our men, for they at the firſt thought that all was their owne: but God, who is the giuer of all victories, ſo bleſſed our ſmal companie, & ſo ſtrengthned their armes, and minds to fight, that the enemie hauing receaued a mightie foile, was glad to ridde himſelfe from their handes: and whereas at their entrance, we eſteemed them to be no leſſe then betwixt two hundred, and three hundred men in the Gallie, we could ſcarſe perceaue twentie men at their departure ſtande on their legges, but the greater part of them was ſlaine, many deadly wounded, their oares broken, and ſhe departed from our men, hanging vpon one ſide, (as a Sowe that hath loſt her left eare) with the number of dead and wounded men, that lay one vpon another. And whereas their comming aboord was in a great brauado, with drumme, ſhooting, and crying, they departed without either noiſe of drumme, or ſpeech.

A marueilous deſeate of the Portingals by a few of our men.

We loſt in this conflict of our men three onely, which were Alexander the Maſter Gunners mate, Laurence Gambrell a proper yong man of Hampton, and another that was Maſter Benmans man. Some alſo were hurt with the arrowes of the enemie, but the wounds are curable: and thus it pleaſed Almightie God, of his great goodnes, to giue victorie to 50. or 60. Engliſhmen, againſt 6. or 700. Portingals and Indians, for which we ceaſed not to giue ſuch dutifull thankes to his Maieſtie, as ſo miraculous a victorie deſerued.

Now touching the purpoſe of our men, who made that attempt for freſh victuals, their labour was not hing loſt, but in deſpite of the enemie, they brought to our ſhips 16. or 17. yong bullocks, which was to our great comforts, and refreſhing. As for vs that were in our ſhip, we could not come neere them by two mile, or more, to giue them any aide, yet we ſuppoſe that the countenance of our ſhippes was an encouragement to our men, and ſome manner of feare to the enemie.

Now whereas our opinion concerning the number of the Portingals, and Indians, which were ſlaine, as aforeſaid, was grounded at that time vpon our probable coniecture, not being able other wiſe to come to the knowledge thereof: you ſhall vnderſtande, that the next night after the fight, there came aboord vs, two Indians vpon a Gyngatho, who were runne away from their Maſters: and they told vs for a very good trueth, that the Gallie went out from the Towne with 400. men in her, but there came not backe to the Towne againe aliue, aboue thirtie of them all: and I amongſt the reſt, being deſirous to knowe of one of them, what the newes was at the Towne, he anſwered me with great laughter: Todo eſta cacadoo en Terra.

The twelfth day, I was ſent for to come aboord the Admirall, about the Hulke: where vpon the complaint of the Dutch men, Maſter Withrington entred into bande to them for the payment of their fraight, but howe my Lorde will like that bande of debt at our returne, I knowe not. I gaue him my aduiſe, and counſell, to get his band againe into his hands.

The thirteenth day, our Captaine ſent out of our ſhippe certaine victuals vnto the Admirall, as one butte of bighe riſe, two cheſts of cleane riſe, one barrell of oatmeale, one barrell of peaſon, and one barrell of oyle, becauſe they were ſomewhat ſcanted of victuals, and we at this time are to haue out of the Admirall our part of fiue and twentie cheſts of fine ſuger, and more, of eight cheſts, and fiue cheſts that were taken in the Baye of Todos Santos, at the Engenios, more of one hundred and thirtie hats, and other diuers pillages, which were taken in the priſes, and at the ſhoare.

The 14 day, being Sunday, it was concluded amongſt vs all, not to leaue the Towne of Bayea ſo, but notwithſtanding the time that they had to ſtrengthen themſelues, and the Towne, yet to giue an attempt for the winning of it: and therefore we prounded our Pinneſſes, Caruels, and boates, for the enterpriſe: and as we were departing from our ſhippes, the winde turned directly

rectly contrarie to our courſe, ſo that our determination for that time was broken, and we returned againe to our ſhippes: and to ſay the trueth, if the weather and wind had ſerued, our attempt had bene very deſperate, conſidering the number of Portingals and Indians which were then gathered together, to be 7. or 8000. and their artillerie vpon the ſhoare, playing vpon vs: but neuertheleſſe, we had proceeded, if the windes had fauoured vs.

The 16. day we went to certaine Ingenios of the Portingals, where we found the people fled, and we entred their houſes without reſiſtance. We founde in their purging houſe 1000. pots of ſuger, ſome halfe purged, ſome a quarter, and ſome newly put into the pots: ſo that euery man tooke his pot of ſuger for their prouiſion, and ſet all the reſt on fire.

The 17. day we all waied to goe to another Ingenio, to ſee if we could finde there better ſuger, and in the way, we met with a pyſe, which was a Caruell, which we found driuing with the weather, and entred her, and had in her onely three Fawlcons of yron, which our pinneſſe brought away, and ſette the ſhippe on fire. Dalamor in the ſmall pyſe ranne ſo farre in, that he brought his ſhippe on ground, where ſhe laye three or foure howres, till ſuch time as there came from the Towne fiue Caruels full of men, which being perceaued of vs, our Captaine, with our men, went to him to aide him. The Caruels came within Fawlcon ſhot of vs, but durſt come no neerer, leaſt they might haue taſted of the like banket, that they receaued the laſt time. About halfe flood, came the Gally againe, and three Caruels more, but before they came, the barke was a floate, and ſet ſaile: and then they all went to gard their Ingenios, which we had purpoſed to viſite: but the night comming on, perſwaded vs to the contrary.

The 19. day we ſet ſaile to goe into the roade of Bayea againe, with our pinneſſes, and a flag of truce, to ſee if we could recouer our foure men, which remained aliue of thoſe ten, that periſhed in our boate, of whome we ſpake before, which foure were vnfortunately fallen into their hands: but they at our approching neere the towne, ſhot at vs, and we as ready as they, gaue them in all 17. ſhot, and ſo ankered a little from the Towne, to ſee what they would doe.

The 20. day riding ſtill before the Towne, our Admirall ſent a Negro a ſhoare, with letters from the Portingals, that wee had priſoners a boord: the effect of which letters, was, that if wee might haue our men releaſed, and deliuered vs, they ſhould haue theirs from our ſhips.

The next day in the morning, in ſteede of their bloodie flagge, they put vp two white flagges, and ſent a Gingatho off to vs with two Indians, with letters of anſwere from the Gouernour: but they would not conſent in any caſe that we ſhould haue our men, and willed their Portingals to take their captiuitie patiently, for they would not redeeme them: a motion they made in their letters, to buy againe one of their pyſes, which wee had taken out of the roade: but our Admirall anſwered them, no, ſeeing they detained our men, wee would keepe both their men, and ſhippes too. The ſame euening wee wayed, and came out of the Hauen, halfe a league to Seaward.

The 22. we ſet ſaile to ſea, and the 23. came to an Iſland 12. leagues to the Southward of Bayea, to wood, and water.

The 24. day being abroad with our pinneſſes, we met with a Canoa, wherein was one Portingall, and ſixe Indians: we ſhot at the Canoa, and killed an Indian, and tooke the Portingall, and one of the Indians, and brought them aboord our ſhippes: we there examined them, and the Portingall confeſſed that there was a ſhippe laden with meale, and other victuals, bound for Fernanbucke, but put into a creeke, becauſe ſhe durſt not goe along the coaſt, hearing of our ſhippes. Whereupon we manned both our pinneſſes, and tooke the Portingall with vs, to goe and ſeeke the ſame ſhippe, but that night we could not finde her.

The 26. day we went againe, and found her, being hailed vp into a creeke, where a man would haue thought a ſhippe boate could not haue entred: we found her in deede laden with meale principally: but ſhe had alſo in her fourteene cheſts of ſuger, of which two were in powder, and twelue in loaues. This ſhippe was of the burden of one hundred and twentie tunnes, and a new ſhippe, this being the firſt voyage that euer ſhe made, and as the Portingall confeſſed, ſhe was freighted for Fernanbucke, but the men of Bayea hauing great want of bread, bought both the ſhip and her lading, and ſo thought to ſtay her in this creeke, till wee were gone off the coaſt: but it was our good happe, to diſappoint their pretenſe, and to fetch her from thence, where they thought her as ſafe as if ſhe had bene at Lisbone.

The 28. day we deuided the meale amongſt vs, according to the want of euery ſhippe.

The 30. day, 16. or 17. Dutchmen went with their boate from the Hulke to ſhoare, to fill water: and vpon a ſudden they were aſſaulted with 50. or 60. Portingals, and ſo many more Indians armed with ſhot, and other weapons, and they ſlew their Maſter, & Purſer, and the reſt were hurt.

hurt,but yet escaped with their liues: a good warning for vs, to be circumspect, and carefull in our landing.

The last day of May,we cast off one of our prises, which we called the George, and our Admirall,and the Hulke tooke the men,and other necessaries out of her,into them. The same day the Portingals which had hurt the Dutch men,came to the shoare,and dared vs to come a land: wherevppon we went into our pinnesses with 40. shotte: but the cowardly villanes ranne all away to the hils,from the water side: but Walter Lister,with nine men, followed them, and they fled still before them,and durst not stay their approch: so they came backe againe, and wer filled water quietly,and at our pleasure.

The third day of June,our Captaine Walter Lister,hauing a great desire for the performance of this voyage according to my Lords direction,went to our Admirall,and requested him to giue him 6. buts of wine, 1. barrell of oile, 3. or 4. barrels of flesh,and to haue Thomas Hood,and 7. or 8. seamen,for some of our landmen, and by Gods helpe,he with the barke Clifford, would alone proceede for the south sea: but the Admirall mightily withstoode his motion, and would grant no iote of his particular requests. June.

The 7. of June,hauing no vse at all of our prises,we burnt one,and cast off another, and filled our owne shippes with the necessaries of them.

The 8. day we put off to sea,but yet with much adoe came againe to our ankring place,because of the weather.

The 10. day,the Admirall sent for vs to come aboord him, and being come,he opened a Carde before all the companie, and tolde vs, that my Lordes voyage for the South sea, was ouerthrowen for want of able men, and victuals, and that therefore he thought it best to plye for some of the Ilands of the West India, or the Azores, to see if they could meete with some good purchase, that might satisfie my Lorde. These wordes were taken heauily of all the companie, and no man would answer him, but kept silence,for very griefe to see my Lordes hope thus deceaued, and his great expenses and costs cast away. The common sort seeing no other remedie, were contented to returne as well as he.

The 16. day,we espied a saile,whereupon our pinnesse,and Dalamor gaue her chase, and put her a shoare vpon the Iland,where the men forsooke her,and ran away with such thinges as they could conueniently carry: our pinnesse boorded her, and found little in her: they tooke out of her 9. chests of suger,and one hogge,and 35. peeces of pewter, and so left her vpon the sands.

From this time forward,we began to ply northwards,and the first of July fel with the land a- July.
gaine,where we fished,and found reasonable good store. I tooke the latitude that day,and founde our selues in 10. deg. 22. minuts.

The 7. day we determined to fall with Fernanbucke, and we came so neere it, that Dalamor (as he told vs) espied some of the ships that were in the harbour: yet notwithstanding we all fel to leeward of the riuer,and could not after that, by any meanes recouer the height of it againe: but we ceased not on all parts,to endeuour the best we could, and oftentimes lost companie for a day or two,one of another,but there was no remedie,but patience, for to Fernanbucke wee could not come,hauing so much ouershot it to the northward,and the wind keeping at the south,& southwest.

The 20. day I tooke the Sunne in 5. deg. 50. minuts, which was 2. deg. to the northward of Fernanbucke,and the further we went,the more vntowardly did the rest of our ships worke,either to come into hauen,or to keepe companie one with another. And truly I suppose, that by reason of the froward course of the Admirall,he meant of purpose to lose vs: for I know not how the neerer we endeuoured to be to him,the further off would he beare from vs,and we seeing that,kept on our owne course,and looke to our selues as well as we could.

The 24. day,our whole companie was called together to consultation,for our best course: some would goe for the West India,some directly north for England, and in conclusion, the greater part was bent to plie for our owne Countrey,considering our necessaries of victuals, and freshe water,and yet if any place were offered vs in the way,not to omit it,to seeke to fill water.

The 26. day in the morning,we espied a lowe Iland,but we lost it againe,and could descry it no more. This day we found our selues in 3. deg. 49. minuts.

The 27. day we searched what water we had left vs, and found but 9. buts onely, so that our Captaine allowed but a pinte of water for a man a day,to preserue it as much as might be, wherwith euery man was content,and we were then in number 50. men and boyes.

The 1. of August,we found our selues 5. degrees to the Northward of the line, all which mo- August.
neth we continued our course homeward, without touching any where: toward the ende whereof,a sorrowfull accident fell out in our Hulke,which being deuided from vs in a calme,fel a fire by some

some great negligence, and perished by that meanes in the seas, we being not able any waies to helpe the shippe, or to saue the men.

The 4. day of September, we had brought our selues into the heigth of 41. degrees, 20. minuts, somewhat to the northwards of the Ilands of the Azores: and thus bulting vp and downe with contrarie windes, the 29. of the same moneth, we reached the coast of England, and so made an ende of the voyage.

A very exact and perfect description of the distances from place to place, from the riuer of Plate, till you come to Pette Guaras, northward, and beginning againe at the riuer of Plate, till you come to the ende of the Streights of Magellan, Southwards, with the degrees of latitude, wherein euery place standeth.

The riuer of Plate.

THe Riuer of Plate standeth in 35. degrees, 10. minuts, vpon the North side of the point there lieth an Iland, a league off the shoare.

Lobato.

From Lobato to the Cape Santa Maria, the land lieth northeast, and southwest, and betweene them are 55. leagues.

Santa Maria.

Southeast from the Cape of Santa Maria, there lieth an Iland two leagues off the shoare: and there is a good roade steede betweene it and the maine, and the maine land is lowe land.

The port of S. Pedro.

From the Cape of Santa Maria, to the port of Santo Pedro, you haue 42. leagues, and all low land, and the land lieth Northeast, and southwest: and on the South side of the port of Santo Pedro, there lieth a point of a sand, which lieth a good league off the shoare.

Martin de Souza. Laguna.

From the porte of Santo Pedro, to the port of Martin de Souza, you haue 52. leagues, and the land lieth Northeast, and Southwest, and from the porte of Martin de Souza, to the Laguna, you haue 42. leagues, and the land higher. The course is northeast, and by north, and Southwest, and by South: and there is an Iland 2. leagues off the shoare, where there is a good roade steede for ships.

Dunde Reca.

From the Laguna to the porte of Dunde Reca, you haue 5. leagues, and it is a very good roade for all windes, sauing a northeast wind: and from the porte of Dunde Reca, to the riuer of Patus, you haue 10. or 11. leagues, and the land lieth north, and south, and stands in 29. degrees.

The riuer of Patus. Santa Catherina.

The mouth of that riuer doth shut with an Iland, called S. Katherins Iland, which is a great Iland of 8. or 9. leagues long, which Iland lieth north, and South: and on the East side, it hath no roade, but one small Iland, which lieth at the south ende, and another at the north ende, called the Iland of Arburetso, which sheweth as a great Baye, going in betweene S. Katherins Iland, and the maine: in which Baye you may come to an anker, and there are many small Ilands: and the northern ende of S. Katherins Iland standes in 28. degrees.

The riuer of S. Francisco.

From S. Katherins Iland, to the riuer of S. Francisco, you haue 26. leagues, and the land lieth north, and south, and the riuer of S. Francisco hath a great mouth, and lieth vp East, and West, and hath three Ilands, where you may come to an anker, and the maine land is high, and ragged.

Cannanea.

From the riuer of S. Francisco to Cannanea, you haue 15. leagues, the lande lieth northeast, and southwest, and in the mouth, there is a small Iland, that riseth like a saddle, and is a good roade, and stands in 26. degrees, and the maine land is high, and ragged.

S. Vincent.

From Cannanea to S. Vincent, you haue 40. leagues, and the land lieth northeast, and by east, and southwest, and by west. S. Vincent stands in 23. degrees, 30. minuts, and hath a small Iland in the mouth, bearing west, northwest off you, and is called the Hennes gillard.

S. Sebastians Iland.

From S. Vincent to S. Sebastians Iland, you haue 12. leagues, and the course lieth east north east, and west southwest, and this Iland is a great Iland, and when you come out of the Sea, it sheweth like a Cape land, and southwest from that Iland, there lieth a small Iland, called the Iland of Alcatrarzes, and sheweth a high pinnacle.

The Iland of Alcatrarzes. Angra-deris.

From S. Sebastians Iland, to Angra-deris, you haue 16. leagues, and the land lieth east northeast, and west southwest, and from Angra-deris, to the riuer of Genero, you haue 18. leagues. The riuer of Genero stands in 23. degrees, and riseth with high hils, and one of the hils sheweth like the toppe of a shippe, and hath in the mouth many small Ilands, and a high pinnacle on the West side, and is called the suger loafe.

The riuer of Genero.

Cape Frio.

From the riuer of Genero, to Cape Frio, you haue 18. leagues, and the land lieth East, and west, and this Cape when you come out of the Sea, sheweth like an Iland, and round: and when you come neere, it sheweth like a rocke, with many white strokes in it, and in the highest part of it

it.

it riſeth broken, which is a good marke, and ſtands in 23. degrees, and to the Northward of the Cape, but two leagues from it is the Baye Formoſa, and hath in the mouth of it 4. or 5. ſmall Iſlands, and betweene the maine and them, is a good roade, and on the north ſide the Baye, there is a ſtone houſe by a ſmall riuer. The Baye Formoſa.

From Cape Frio, to the Baye of Saluador, you haue nine leagues, and on the South ſide of the ſame Baye, there are many Iſlands, and the land lieth north and ſouth, vntill you come to S. Iames Iſland, which is 12. leagues to the northward of the Cape. This Iſland of S. Iames, is two leagues off the ſhoare, and hath two Iſlands hard by it, that ſhewe all one thing, and there is a good roade betweene the maine, and the Iſland, a Fawlcon ſhot off the Iſland, and there is no danger, but that which you ſee. This Iſlande ſtands in 22. degrees, and 20. minuts, and hath vpon it wood, water, and fowle. The Baye of Saluador. The Iſland of S. Iaye.

From the Iſland of S. Iames, to the Cape of S. Thome, you haue 8. leagues, and the land lieth northeaſt, and ſouthweſt, and ſtands in 22. degrees. Cape S. Thome.

From the Cape of S. Thome, to Para yua, you haue 8. leagues, and the land lieth northeaſt, and ſouthweſt, and ſtands in 21. degrees, 40. minuts. Para yua.

From Para yua to Mannage, you haue 5. leagues, and the land lieth northeaſt, and ſouthweſt, and ſtands in 21. degrees. Mannage.

From Mannage to Tapemere, you haue 5. leagues, and the land lieth northeaſt, and ſouthweſt, and ſtands in 21. degrees. Tapemere.

From Tapemere to Gleretebe, you haue 4. or 5. leagues, and the land lieth northeaſt, and ſouthweſt, and the ſaid point of Gleretebe hath a ledge of rockes, which lieth a league and a half off into the ſea, and the point is lowe land, and ſtands in 20. degrees, 45. minuts. Gleretebe.

From the point of Gleretebe to Guarrapare, you haue 7. leagues, and the courſe lieth northeaſt, and ſouthweſt: this Guarrapare hath an Iſland lying off it, which is round, and is called Iſland Saluado, or barren, lying a league and a halfe off the ſhoare, and the maine lande is high hils, and ragged, which is a good marke, and ſtands in 20. degrees, 30. minuts, and to the northward of this Guarrapare, you haue 3. Iſlands, which lie about 3. leagues off the maine lande, and betweene the maine and them, halfe a league off the ſhoare is a good roade. Guarrapare.

From Guarrapare to Spiritus Santus, you haue 8. leagues, and the land lieth North and by Eaſt, and South, and by Weſt, and Spiritus Santus hath a ledge of rocks, lying off the northeaſt point: and from this point about two leagues vp into the lande, you ſhall ſee a round high hill, which ſtands alone by himſelfe, which is very ragged, which is called the hill of Maſter Alue, or Maſter Hill, and you ſhall ſee hence a great way off at ſea. This Spiritus Santus is a great Baye, and hath many ſmall Iſlands in the middes, or mouth, and the riuer lieth vp northeaſt, and ſouthweſt, and ſtands in 20. degrees large. Spiritus Santus.

From Spiritus Santus to the riuer Mangus, you haue 6. leagues, and the land lieth North, and South, and this riuer Mangus maketh vp in the land 3. hils, like round Iſlands, which is a good marke, and ſtands in 19. degrees, 40. minuts. The riuer Mangus.

From the riuer Mangus to the riuer Doulce, you haue 7. or 8. leagues, and the land lieth northeaſt, and ſouthweſt, and it is very flat, a league and a halfe off the ſhoare, and the land is lowe land, and vp in the land is a high hill, which lieth along, as the coaſt lieth, and this riuer ſtands in 19. degrees, 20. minuts. Rio Doulce.

From riuer Doulce to Crearere, you haue 17. leagues, and the land lieth North, and South, and this Crearere on the ſouth ſide, ſheweth as 4. openings a league one from another, and two of them high land, and the other two lowe land, and they are all ſo alike, that it ſheweth all one riuer, till you come neere it, and ſtands in 18. degrees, 45. minuts. Crearere.

From Crearere to Maranepe, you haue ten leagues, and the land lieth North, and by Eaſt, and South, and by Weſt, and hath in the mouth of the riuer a white cleefe, which ſheweth like a ſheete, which is a good marke, and ſtands in 18. degrees, 15. minuts. Maranepe.

From Maranepe to Parrewepe, you haue 5. leagues, and the land lieth northeaſt, and ſouthweſt, and off this Parrewepe, lieth a high point of land, with many trees on it, and becauſe it is all ſhoale to ſeaward, from the mouth of the harbour, you ſhall ſee the ſhoales of Aburalus, and when you goe from Parrewepe, you ſhall ſet a league off into the ſea, and then you ſhall goe northeaſt, becauſe of the Baye, which is very dangerous, and when you ſee the ſhoales to ſeaward, you ſhall runne in 6. or 7. fathom, and finde ſoft ſande: then are you in the channell directly, and when you come as high as the point of Parawepe, by the way that you haue made, you ſhall finde your ſelf a league off: and in finding your ſelfe more then a league off, hall neere in for feare of running on the ſhoales to ſeaward. Parrewepe. The ſhoales of Aburalus.

From

The riuer of Caruels. From Parrewepe to the riuer of Caruels, you haue 3. leagues, and the Channell will shewe you how you shall steere away, and you may boldly borrowe on the shoales to seaward, because the mouth of the riuer of Caruels is very shoald, and hath many sands.

The red cliffe. From the riuer of Caruels, to the ende of the red cliffe, you haue 5. or 6. leagues, and this way you haue no danger: but take heede of the breakings that you see: but as for the shoales of Goshow, they doe not breake, therefore looke well out.

The shoales of Goshowe.

The cliffe of Corebabo. From the ende of the red cliffe to Corebabo, you haue two leagues, and take heede that you go not aboue a league and a halfe off the shoare: for in all this way from the red cliffe to Corebabo, there lieth a point of sand, and assoone as you be past the point of the rockes, you shall steere right with the sand northeast, till you come within a stones cast of it, and then steere hence East, till you thinke the shoales are a sterne of you to seaward, and then turne to your way, about the coast, and this point of Corebabo, stands in 17. degrees.

Porte Seguro. From this point of Corebabo to porte Seguro, you haue 28. leagues, and the land lieth north, and south, and take heede when you come as high as porte Seguro, of the shoales to Seaward, which are very ill. This porte Seguro, hath great red cliffs which stand at the foote of the towne: and if you doe meane to goe into the harborough, bring your selfe East, and West off the cliffs, and then steere right with them, till you come within the point of the rockes, and then steere hence South: for the North side of the Riuer is all shoalde, and the Riuer stands in 16. degrees, 30. minuts.

Santa Cruz. From the riuer of porte Seguro, to Santa Cruz, you haue 3. leagues, and it is a good harborough for small ships: but take heede of the dangers that you see.

Rio Grande. From Santa Cruz, to the arme of the grand riuer, you haue 9. or 10. leagues, and take heede that in all this way you come not within 3. leagues of the shoare: for there lie many shoaldes in the way, and the land lieth North northeast, and South southwest, and ouer the arme of this Rio Grande, you shall see 3. hils of wood, which shewe like Islands, which is a very good marke, and stands in 15. degrees, 30. minuts.

Illeas. From Rio Grande to Illeas, or the Islands, you haue 18. leagues, and the land lieth north, and South, and in this way you haue no shoaldes, but 3. or 4. leagues off: and if you will goe into the Islands, keepe alwaies along the shoare, in sight of the sande, for otherwise you can not see the Islands, because they are litle, and assoone as you see them, steere right with the greatest of them, and betweene the shoare, and there is very good riding, and if you will goe into the riuer, the Channell lieth from the greatest Island to the mouth of the riuer, north, and south, and stands in 14. degrees 45. minuts.

The riuer of Contas. From the riuer Illeas, to the riuer of Contas, you haue 8. leagues, and the land lieth north, and south: this riuer hath many rockes lying in the mouth of it, and to seaward there lieth a small Iland, like a rocke: if you will goe into the riuer of Contas, borrow neere that rocke, for on the other side it is all flat.

Camamo. From the riuer of Contas to Camamo, you haue 6. leagues, and this Camamo hath a wide mouth, and off the point of the North shoare, you shall see an Island, which is called the Island of Cayepe: take heede you come not too neere it, for it hath many shoalds off it: but borrowe on the south side, for there goeth in the Channell, where you shall finde 5. or 6. fathome water: and from thence to Guepena, you haue 3. leagues.

The Island of Cayepe.

Guepena. From Guepena to Tenyere, you haue 4. leagues, and Tenyere on the south side sheweth a high hill, which bearing northwest of you, will rise like a Gallie, with his keele vpward, and if you will goe in, be bold to borrow on the south side, and you shall goe in 5. or 6. fathome, and stands in 13. degrees: this high hill is called the Moore of S. Pablo.

The Moore of S. Pablo. Bayea. From the Moore of S. Pablo to Bayea, you haue 12. leagues, and the course is northeast, and southwest, and if you see white sand, you are to the northward of Bayea, in the point of Lappeane, which point sheweth white peeces in the land, like cloth a dying. and Bayea stands in 12. degrees 30. minuts.

Riuer Royall. From Bayea to the riuer Royall, you haue 26. leagues, and the lande lieth Northeast, and southwest, and the point of Tapeane stands in 13. degrees. If you goe out of Bayea, for the northward, you must hall off east, and by north, till you be 30. or 40. leagues off from the currant.

The riuer of S. Francisco. From riuer Royall to the riuer of S. Francisco, you haue 17. leagues, and the lande lieth northeast, and southwest, and stands in 11. degrees large.

Gurra point. From the riuer of S. Francisco, to the point of Gurra, you haue 15. leagues, and the lande lieth north northeast, and south southwest, and stands in 10. degrees, 20. minuts.

Camare Guba From the point of Gurra, to the cleffs of Camare Guba, you haue 6. leagues, & these are great high

high cleeffs, which is a good marke, and it is a good road steede for all westerly winds and from these cleeffes to the riuer of Stones you haue 5. leagues, and the land lyeth north northeast, and south southwest.

From the riuer of Stones to the Cape Saint Augustine you haue 12. leagues, and the land lyeth north northeast, and south southwest, and this cape when you come out of the sea, seemeth a hill like a saddle, which standeth alone, lying next hand east and by north, and west and by south from the cape vp into the land, and comming along the coast the cape lyeth out, and sheweth as litle woods vpon it, and bushes in parts, and 5. leagues to the southward you shall see the Iland of Saint Alexo, which is a smal lowe Iland, which is a good marke, and the Cape of S. Augustin stands in 8. degrees, 30. minuts. Cape Saint Augustine. The Iland of Alexo. The Cape of S. Augustine.

From the Cape Saint Augustin to Fernambucke, you haue 8. leagues, & the land lyeth north and by east, and south and by west, and the marke of Fernambucke is the Towne it selfe, standing vpon a high hil by the water side, which sheweth like to ỹ cape it selfe, & stands in 8. degrees large. Phernambucke.

From Fernambucke to the Iland of Tamereca you haue 4. leagues, and it hath on the south point of the riuer redde cleeffes, and if you will goe into the riuer, bring your selfe northeast, and southwest by the red cleeffs, and so beare into the bay, whereas you shal haue 9. or 10. foote water. The land of Tamereca.

From the riuer of Tamereca to Parryba you haue 15. leagues, and the land lyeth north and by east, and south and by west, and stands in 6. degrees, 45. minuts. Parryba.

From Parryba to Tappoam you haue 10. leagues, & the land lyeth north northeast, and south southwest, and from Tappoam to the harborough of Munks you haue 7. leagues, and the land lyeth northwest and southeast, and the port of Munks stands in 5. degrees, 30. minuts. Tappoam. The harborow of monks

Here followeth the like description of the coast from the riuer of *Plate to the Streights of Magelan.*

CApe Saint Marie on the northside of the riuer of Plate stands iust in 35. degrees: from the same Cape Saint Marie to Cape Saint Anthony which is the South Cape of the riuer of Plate, you haue 28. leagues, and the said Cape stands in 56. degrees, 20. minuts: the course betweene them is south southwest, and north northeast. Cape S. Anthonie.

Note that East of the mouth of the riuer of Plate 25. leagues off, there lyeth a shoald, which they call Baxos de Castiliana: he that will shape his course from Cape Saint Marie to goe to the southward must hale off southeast, till he bee in 36. degrees, then south southeast hal a degree, for that you shall giue a birth to the said shoald, as also to the shoalds of Saint Anthony, and sounding in 40. or 41. fadom, you shall find russet sand, then hale away southwest, and by south till you come to 40. degrees, where you shall find great store of weeds, and you shall be 20. leagues off the shoare. Baxos de Castilliana.

From Cape Saint Anthony, to the cape of great sandy hilles is 48. leagues, they lye southwest and by south, and northeast and by north: 18. leagues off Saint Anthony lyeth a riuer called the riuer of Saint Anne, which hath in the mouth many flats and shoals, therfore you must come no neerer the shoare, then 40. fadom, to goe cleere of them.

From the Cape of the sand hilles to Cape Saint Andrewe, you haue 31. leagues, and halfe way betweene them both you haue bayes and riuers, which are ful of shoales: the both Capes lie southwest and by west, and northeast and by north. Cape Saint Andrewe.

From Cape S. Andrewe to the Sunken bay you haue 30. leagues, the said bay standeth in 39. degrees, 50. minuts, it lyes west south west, and east northeast. The Sunken bay.

From the said Sunken bay to the plaine point you haue 25. leagues, the point stands in 41. degrees, 30. minuts: they lye south southwest, and north northeast, and from this point to the deep water bay you haue 35. leagues: they lye west southwest and east northeast: the Deepe water bay stands in 42. degrees, 20. minuts. The plaine Point. The deepe water bay.

From the Deepe water bay to the harborough of Lyons you haue 37. leagues: the cape ouer the sandy bay lyeth south southeast, and north northwest: out of the said Deepe, you may saile hard aboord the shoare being bolde. From the riuer of Plate to the said bay you haue no harborough for any great ship. The harborough of Lions

From that bay to the harborough of Lyons a bould coast, with lowe land and white cleeffs: the said harborough stands in 44. degrees, when you come to 43. somwhat more, looke out for a ledge of rockes that lyeth on the north side of the harborough hard aboord the shoare.

From the said harborough of Lyons to ỹ cape with woods you haue 30. leagues: they lie south Cape of woods.

and by west, and North and by east, and halfe way betweene them both, there is a bay.

The round cape. 18. Leagues to the Northward of the round Cape you haue a riuer which lyeth in west, and is called the riuer of Crauises: you shall knowe when you are thwart of the riuer, by certaine redde streames that you shal find like tydegates, which are going streames. The coast lyeth from this harborough to the round Cape of woods, southeast and by south, and northwest, and by North: the said Cape of woods stands in 45. degrees, 30. minuts.

Cape Blanke. From the sayd cape of Woods, to cape Blanke, or the white Cape, you haue 32. leagues, the coast lyeth south and by west, and north and by east: the said white Cape stands in 45. degrees, and about 3. leagues to the northward of the Cape, the land lyeth north northwest all vp right white cleeffes, which be in number 6. and the last of them is the biggest, and broadest, and shewes like a saple: and in the head of the said Cape is a round hill, which sheweth like a cloud: about this cape lye certaine rockes, hard aboord the shoare, and 3. cables length off the shoare you shall haue 25. fadom, and ouer the white cleeffs, the lande is plaine, and among the cleeffs which the Sea hath made, the sea spoutes vp, like the spouting of Whales, and vpon the Cape there are some little woods, and here you haue people inhabiting, of whom take heede: the vpper part of the cape lyeth south and north a league in breth, and hath in the middle a ledge of rockes aboue water, and on the south side of this Cape, you haue a harborough where is good ankering, but in the middst there is a rocke of which take heede.

Port S. Iulia. From thence to Port Saint Iulian is 37. leagues: the course is south and by west, and north and by east: of this port Saint Iulian on the southside of the entering of the harborough lye rocks like Towres, he that goeth in there must borrowe on the northside of the harborough, and within the harborough you shal find two Ilands where you may anker hard by them: this harborough stands in 49. degrees.

The Ilands of Sampson. Betweene the harborough of port Saint Iulian and cape Blanke lye the Ilands of Sampson which are 8. in number.

The hill of S. Anne. From the port of Saint Iulian to the hill of Saint Anne, is 35. leagues: the coast lyeth southwest and northeast a very plaine land, but onely one hill, and to the Southwards, are smal Hammockes, which hammocks stand in 50. degrees 30. minuts.

The riuer of S. Anne. The riuer de Cruz. From the riuer of Saint Anne, to the riuer de Cruz, you haue 8. leagues. The Cruz is northeast, and southwest. To the northward of the riuer de Cruz, is a high land of two leagues long, and playne on the toppe which lyeth south and north, and falleth on either side like a saddle: This coast is shoald foure leagues off: but you may borrowe on the shoare in 20. fadom.

The riuer of Galgos. From the riuer de Cruz, to the riuer of Galgos, you haue 25. leagues: the course lieth northeast, and southwest, and it stands in 52. degrees, and 10. minuts, and for a marke of it, there is a hill, and on the highest of this hill it is plaine, and the northeast end is steepe vp and downe, and hath white and browne cleeffs, the vpper edge of them blacke: and vnder the hill on the east side it sheweth like a paire of staires, with a blacke point into the sea: halfe a league to the southward of this point is a bay, which is at the entring of the riuer Galgos, where it doth ebbe and flowe, 12. fadom water in the riuer, take heede you go not to farre in because it is dangerous, therefore goe no further in, then 18. fadom.

The streights of Magelan. Cape Virgin Marie. From the riuer Galgos to the entrie of the streights of Magelan, called the Cape of the Virgin Marie is 8. leagues, the course is, south southeast, and north northwest, and 4. leagues before you come to this Cape, you shall see high steepe cleeffs, and gray full of black scarres, the sea beating against them like the spowting of whales, but a very wholesome shoare, where you may anker for a Southwest wind: the highest of this cape is like to Cape Saint Vincent in Spaine: at the east side of this cape is a ledge of rockes, which hath a sand about it, which is full of pittes, where you shal haue deepe water and by and by ground: this sand sheweth it selfe at low water, therefore you must be sure to stemme the shoare halfe a myle till you haue brought the sayd Cape west northwest off you: then goe away southwest till you come to the lowest, where you shall haue 10. or 12. fadome water. This place is called the Purification: and halfe a league within this land, is a Towne called the name of Iesus: From this said Cape you shall haue a cleeffe come from the cape, at the end of this cleeffe the Towne stands, and is in altitude, 52. degrees, 30. minutes, and from the said Cape entring the Streights, on the northwest side within 14. leagues, it beginnes to be narrower, and narrower, till you come to the highest place of the narrowest entrie, which lyeth west northwest, and east southeast: and in the sayd streightes, goe a third part of the chanell to the north shoare, because there is a ledge of rockes on the south side, and also you shall see land there: therefore you must giue them a good birth: and hauing past this first streight, go away west southwest 8. leagues till you come to a cape called S. Gregorie, with a high cleeffe,

The purification. Nombre de Iesus which S. Candish found destroyed.

and

and a good road, from the northweſt to the ſouthweſt: truſt not the people of this Cape, for they are trecherous.

At this Cape begins the 2. ſtreight, and is called our Ladie of Grace: it lyeth weſt ſouthweſt, and eaſt northeaſt 3. leagues, and in comming off this ſtreight, you ſhall ſee 3. Ilands weſt off you, and you may ſayle in among them, hauing reſpect that you come not into the Bayes, for they are dangerous. From the 3. Ilands ſeeke the Chanel of the ſtreights weſt ſouthwards, till you come to the 53. degrees, 30. minuts: where you ſhall find a point called the point of Saint Anne, and northnorthweſt from thence, you ſhall ſee two or three plaines, in one of which ſtands a towne called the Towne of King Philip, and in paſſing the Bulwarke and a great tree, you may come to anker, where you may moore your ſhip in 4. fadoms.

A letter of Maſter Thomas Candiſh, to the right honorable the *Lord Chamberlaine, one of her Maieſties moſt honorable priuie Counſell* touching the ſucceſſe of his voyage about the world.

RIght honorable, as your fauour heretofore hath ben moſt greatly extended towards me, ſo I humbly deſire a continuance thereof: And though there be no meanes in me to deſerue the ſame, yet the vttermoſt of my ſeruices ſhal not be wanting, whenſoeuer it ſhall pleaſe your honour to diſpoſe thereof. I am humbly to deſire your honour to make knowne vnto her Maieſtie the deſire I haue had to do her Maieſtie ſeruice in the performance of this voyage. And as it hath pleaſed God to giue her the victorie ouer part of her enemies, ſo I truſt ere long to ſee her ouerthrowe them all. For the places of their welth, whereby they haue maintained and made their warres, are nowe perfectly diſcouered: And if it pleaſe her Maieſtie, with a verie ſmal power ſhe may take the ſpoyle of them all. It hath pleaſed the Almighty to ſuffer me to circumpaſſe the whole Globe of the world, entring in at the ſtreight of Magelan, and returning by the cape Bona Sperança. In which voyage I haue either diſcouered or brought certaine intelligence of al the rich places of the world that euer were knowne or diſcouered by any Chriſtian. I nauigated alongſt the coaſt of Chili, Peru, and Noua Spagna, where I made great ſpoyles: I burnt and ſunke 19. ſayles of ſhippes ſmall and great. All the villages and townes that euer I landed at, I burnt and ſpoyled: And had I not bene diſcouered vpon the coaſt, I had taken great quantitie of treaſure. The matter of moſt profit vnto me was a great ſhip of the Kings which I tooke at California, which ſhip came from the Philippinas, being one of the richeſt of Marchandiſe, that euer paſſed thoſe Seas, as the kings Regiſter and Marchants accompts did ſhew, for it did amount in value to * in Mexico to be ſold: which goods, (for that my ſhippes were not able to containe the leaſt part of them,) I was inforced to ſet on fire. From the cape of California, being the vttermoſt part of all Noua Hiſpania, I nauigated to the Ilandes of Philippinas hard vpon the coaſt of China, of which Countrie I haue brought ſuch intelligence as hath not bene heard of in theſe parts. The ſtatelines and riches of which countrie I feare to make report of, leaſt I ſhould not be credited. For if I had not knowne ſufficiently the incomparable welth of that countrey, I ſhould haue ben as incredulous thereof, as others will be that haue not had the like experience. I ſayled along the Ilands of Maluccas, where finding ſome of the heathen people I was well intreated, where our country men may haue trade as freely as the Portingals, if they will themſelues. From thence I paſſed by the cape of Bona Sperança, and found out by the way homeward the Iland of Saint Helena, where the Portingals vſe to releeue themſelues: And from that Iland God hath ſuffred me to returne into England. All which ſeruices with my ſelfe I humbly proſtrate at her Maieſties feete, deſiring the Almightie long to continue her raigne amongſt vs. For at this day ſhee is the moſt famous and victorious prince that liueth in the world. Thus humbly deſiring pardon of your honour for my tedioulnes, I leaue your Lordſhip to the tuition of the Almightie. Plimmouth this 9. of September 1588.

Your honours moſt humble to command,
Thomas Candiſh.

The worthy and famous voyage of Maſter Thomas Candiſhe *made round about the globe of the earth, in the ſpace of two yeeres* and leſſe then two monethes, begon in the yeere, 1586.



The worſhipful and worthy gentleman Maſter Thomas Candiſh of Suffolke hauing in the yeere 1585. Furniſhed out a ſhip wherein he went as Captaine with ſir Richard Greeneuill to Virginia, in which courſe he paſſed by the Canaries, and ſo to the Iſles of Dominica, Hiſpaniola, Saint Iohn de Porto ricco, the Lucaios, and Florida in the weſt Indies, thus fleſhed and ſomewhat hardened vnto the Sea, immediatly after his comming home began to take in hand a voyage into the South ſea, and conſequently round about the globe of the world, which he alſo perfourmed with inuincible courage with great good gouernement, and incredible celeritie, to the great admiration of all men of iudgement. Hauing therefore at his owne proper coſt new built from the keele and furnyſhed with all thinges neceſſarie for two yeeres prouiſion a haue ſhippe called the Deſire of a hundred and fortie, and a leſſer of threeſcore tunnes whoſe name was the Content, ioyning thereunto a Barke of 40. tunnes named the Hugh gallant, in which ſmall fleete were ſixe ſcore and fiue men, The 7. day of June 1586. he departed from London and came to Harewich, and ſayled from thence the 29. of the ſame moneth. He arriued at Plimmouth the 8. day of July, from whence he ſet ſayle the 21. thereof. Thus he proceeded on his voyage vntill the 25. day, at which time one Maſter Hope dyed which had bene grieuouſly wounded a litle before he went to Sea. The 26. day wee met with foure great Biſkaine ſhippes on which we beſtowed eighteene great ſhot and ſhrewdly tore that ſhip which we in the Admiral aſſayled: but we left her and the others, leſt we ſhould looſe the reſt of our conſorts, being nine of the clocke at night.

June the 10. 1586.

He departed from Plimmouth the 21. of July.

Auguſt.

The 6. day of Auguſt we fell with the Iſland of Forteuentura, & ſayled thence to cape Blank, and ſo to the coaſt of Guinea vnto a harborough called Sierra Leona, where hauing conference with the Negroes we fell at variance, ſo that threeſcore of our men went on ſhoare, and draue them from their towne, and ſacked their houſes, and burnt their dwellings. And the 29. of the ſame moneth we departed from them, where going fiue leagues from the place we came to an Iland called Inſula Verde, where we found plantans, and other fruites, and freſh water, being an Iſland of the Negroes huſbandrie.

September.

The firſt of September we burned here ſome 150. houſes becauſe of their bad dealing with vs and al Chriſtians: in this place we redeemed a Portingal whom by treaſon they had caught and held in very miſerable captiuitie. The 13. day we went from thence: the 30. we paſſed the Equinoctiall lyne.

October. Nouember.

Thus we ſayled forth vntill the 25. of October, at which time we came to the continent of Braſill, and coſting along vntill the end of that moneth, the firſt of Nouember we ankered vnder an Iſland called Saint Sebaſtians, where we road three and twenty daies betweene the mayne and it. There we ſtoyed our ſelues with freſh water and fuell, and built a newe pinneſſe of teene tunnes. On the nynth day died one Robert Smith of the diſeaſe called Scurbuto, which is an infection of the blood and the liuer.

December.

The 23. of Nouember we left this Iſland. On the firſt of December died one Robert Tates of the diſeaſe aforeſayd: and ſo coſting along vntill the 16. of this moneth wee diſcouered an harborough which we named the Port of Deſire, according to our ſhips name, being almoſt as bigge as the haborough of Plimmouth: In this place we had gulles, puets, penguyns, and ſeales in aboundance to all our comforts and great refreſhing: this Port is ſomewhat on this ſide of Port Saint Iulian. And ſayling from this harborough toward the Streights, before wee came to the entrance thereof, we eſpied certaine poore ſtaruen Spanyards trauayling ouer land toward the riuer of Plate: whereof we tooke one into our ſhip of whom we vnderſtood that of both the two Colonies planted in the ſtraight of Magelan by Pedro Sarmiento there were but 22. men onely left aliue, all the reſt being vtterly periſhed for hunger, to the number of fiue hundred perſons.

The port of Deſire.

January 1587.

On the firſt day of January we put into the Streight of Magelan, and on the 8. we came vnto two Iſlands named by Sir Frauncis Drake the one Bartholomewe Iſland, becauſe he came thither on that Saints day, and the other Pengin Iſland, on which we powdred three tunnes of Penguins for the victualing of our ſhippe: and on the 9. day we came vnto a towne of the Spanyardes erecting in March 1584. called by them the Citie of King Philippe, but by vs the

the Towne of famine, because we euidently sawe the inhabitants, all sauing the aforesayde 22. had bene most miserably starued: we tooke away with vs sixe pieces of their ordinance, whereof three were brasse, and three were yron, and were glad to hasten from this place for the most noysome stench and vile sauour wherewith it was infected through the contagion of the Spaniards pined and dead carkeises. The towne of king Philip in ꝑ straights ruined and abandoned.

Thus sayling through the Straights, the 20. day of Januarie in the midway we espied Sauages of a reasonable stature, and went to them, and conferred with them: but such was their brutishnes and their trecherie, that they would haue betraped vs vnder the shewe of amitie: but we espying their treason gaue the first onset, and euery shot of vs chose his man, and by that meanes slewe some, and hurt more, the rest escaped. So hauing many flawes of Southerly and Southwesterly winde, we were kept within the Straights vntill the 23. of Februarie. Trecherous Sauages in ꝑ Straights of Magellan. Februarie.

The same day we passed out of the Straights into the Sea called by Magelan, Mare pacificum, the peaceable or the calme Sea: Thus we plyed vp along the coast of Chili by the Iland of La mocha, which standeth in the Southerly latitude of 38. degrees vntill the 14. of March, where we rid vnder an Iland called Sancta Maria, on which Iland we landed 80. men armed in the morning betimes, and there came vnto vs the Countrey people which intreated our Generall very well, and presented him with many sortes of meates: for there we had at our commandement Spanish wheate, potatos, hogs, hens, dryed dogfish, and diuers other good things, to our contentment. Chili. March.

The 20. day we departed thence, running along vntill the 28. which day being at the Sea, we felt an earthquake in the latitude of 33. we were put into a Bay called the Bay of Quintera on the 30. of this moneth, where the first of April we had ten of our men slaine, and two taken captiues by the Spaniards: which great misfortune light vpon our men through their great reachlesnesse and want of circumspection, being suddenly surprised by the enemie when they little thought of him. But on the third day of the same moneth the Hugh went forth to Seaward, and found an Iland hauing great store of Pellicanes & Penguyns vpon it, whereof they brought good store vnto vs: and so furnishing our selues here with fresh water, which we tooke in despite of them all, we left them and their cruell Harborough, and put out of the Bay the fifth of April. The Bay of Quintera. April.

Thus ranging along, we haled in with a Porte called Mormorano, where we found a canoa and an Indian in it which was fishing, and had caught a very large Tony wherewith he presented vs, and in our conference with him, he shewed vs their Towne which was base and rude, but their gouernment and behauiour very strange: for when any of them dyeth they bury all his goods and stuffe with him, as hookes, nets, canoa, and other trifles. So sayling along that shore, one of our shippes called the Content, entred into a Bay, where a great deale of wine of Castilia was buried in Botisios in the sand, to the quantitie of some three hundreth tunnes, wherewith she laded her selfe hauing lost our companie, but they found vs againe at a Towne called Arica, where they gaue vs of their wine. In this Harborough we found a great ship, and foure Barks, which we tooke and kept vntill such time as wee had taken out of them the best things for our owne prouision: then we burned them all sauing one Barke which wee kept, and named it the George, because we tooke her on Saint George his day. The Porte of Mormorano. Arica. A great ship and 4. Barks taken & burnt.

The 25. day of April we went from Arica, sayling to the Seawards all night, and in the morning we espied a small Barke, and manning our Pinnesse, wee tooke her, wherein were three Spaniards, one Greeke, and one Dutch man: being examined, they confessed that they came from the Bay of Quintera, where we lost our foresayd twelue men, and that their intent was to goe for Lima to giue aduise to the Viceroy for to prouide force to cut vs off: but their pretence through Gods mercifull prouidence was preuented: one of these Spaniards was a reasonable Pilot for those Seas. Thus we continued our course alongst the coast of Peru vntill the fourth day of May, vpon which day our Spanish Pilote led vs into a Bay called Pisca, where wee would haue gone on shoare, but the Sea was so growen that we could not: yet on the Southermost side of the Bay there was a Village called Paraca, where seuen of our men went on land and found figs, pomegranates, and pomegranate wine. The Barke of aduise taken. May. Pisca Bay. Paraca a village.

And on the sixt of May we went from Paraca, and in our course we descried to Seaward two sayles, and gaue them chase, and tooke them: the one was laden with meale and marmalade, the other with marchants goods, as sapes of diuers sortes and colours, castle or white sope, a kinde of pease called garuanſaes, cordouan skins, montego de porco, which is hogs grease clarified or refined, and molasſos or sirrope of sugar, beanes, and one or two thousand hens aliue: Hereupon we gate vs into a Bay called Cheripa, where we laded our ships with part of these commodi- Two shippes taken. The Bay of Cheripa.

ties, and burnt the rest ships and all, hauing put the men that were in them on land, and departed from thence the tenth of May. Thus sayling forwarde wee haled into a Bay called Payto, where we tooke a Barke vnrigged & landed three score men, and tooke the Towne, out of which we driue about three hundreth persons which fled with bag and baggage, whome we pursued so fast, that they were forced to leaue their lodings behinde them: In the ende we set their Towne on fire, because they sought not to redeeme the same. And because wee found small store of treasure here, we came away the same night. On the second of May we went to the Iland of Puna, where we trimmed our ships and refreshed our men, though somewhat to our costes: for on the second day of June our men thinking themselues to be sure and safe ynough, foure score or an hundreth Spaniards, with two hundreth Indians (for there was a Towne of Indians in the Iland bigger then Graueseud) set vpon fifteene or sixteene of our men being halfe a sleepe and halfe awake, & slew fiue or sixe, and tooke two or three of them before any supply could come vnto them: at the comming whereof they all ran away like greyhounds, our men for reuenge burnt their Towne, and spoyled their fieldes and gardens, but first wee tooke the fruites of the Iland, as goats, hogs, hennes, figs, oranges, limons, besides other wholsome herbes in great quantitie. So after we had trimmed our Fleete wee came away: but for a farewell wee first set foure of their shippes on fire, whereof one was two hundreth tunnes, the rest an hundreth a piece, being all vpon the stocks in building: we also fired another of foure hundreth tunnes called the great Saint Luce riding before the Towne to be mended, because they haue neuer another so good a place to lying their shippes on ground as that is, on all the coast of Peru.

The Bay of Payto.

The towne of Payto burnt.

The Iland of Puna.

June.

The towne in the Ile of Puna burnt.

Fiue great ships burned.

After we had taken in fresh water we went from thence the 11. day of June, and the 12. day we passed the Equinoctiall line, continuing our course Northward all that moneth: About the beginning of July as we ranged along the backside of Noua Hispania neere vnto Guatimala (where there is an hill that burneth continually) we espried a newe shippe of 200. tunnes, wherein were two Spaniards, two Nassilians, two Venetians, and one Fleming: in which shippe was litle or nothing but her balast, we tooke her sayles, and ropes, and fire wood to serue our turns, set her on fire and kept the men, of which number we brought one called Michael Sancius a Pilot into England. On the next day we tooke another shippe, the men being escaped with their boate on land, which after wee had taken certaine victuals out of her, wee also set on fire: This was the shippe of Aduiso to giue warning of vs, sent from Lima to the coast of Noua Hispania.

They double the Equinoctiall line.

Another ship taken & burnt.

The second ship of Aduiso taken & burnt.

The 28. of July we came to the Porte of Aguatulco, in which we found a shippe laden with cacaos, a fruite like almonds much esteemed in those partes, and taking the spoyle thereof, we set the shippe and Towne on fire for company: the people ranne away at the sight of our little Pinnesse, our shippes lying three leagues off at that time: There were some foure score houses in this Towne being an Hauen that belongeth to Mexico. In this place we had great store of pitch, which stood vs in great stead for our shippes, and some quantitie of wine of Castilia as they call it.

The Towne of Aguatulco burnt.

August.

The fourth day of August we departed from this place, and comming foorth wee tooke a shee tortoyse, which had aboue foure hundreth and odde egs in her, which egs we eate and found them to be good meate. The 13. of August we fell with an Hauen of Noua Hispania called Puerto de Natiuidad, about the latitude of 19. degrees, where we had conference with foure Indians, and there we tooke the Poste of Aduiso that ranne by land on horse, whose horse wee slewe and tooke him prisoner. Wee burnt two shippes of two hundreth tunnes the piece, which were in building in the harborough: And sixe leagues from thence there was a litle Iland or rocke replenished with abundance of birds, whereof we gate good store to our great refreshing: there were also innumerable sort of parrots as big as hens: and in another Hauen hard by, called Puerto de Saint Iago, we dragged for pearles, and tooke some store. The third day of September we came away hauing newe trimmed our Pinnesse, which was wonderfull leake with wormes. The eight day of the same we came into a Bay called the Bay of Compostella, where our men went two leagues vp into the Countrey early in the morning, and tooke a Spaniarde and his wife, a Raguslean and his wife, with an Indian and his wife, and brought them away vnto our Generall, who set the women at libertie, and they redeemed their husbands with fruites, as plantans, mameias, pinceples, oranges, and limons, of all which is great abundance, as the Spaniarde sayd, tanto como tierra as great plentie as there is of earth. On the 12. of September wee came to an Iland two leagues from thence called S. Andrew, where we had foules, and seales, and guanos, of which we made very good victuall: howbeit they would scarcely take salt but for one night and a day only. The 16. of the same moneth wee came vnto a Bay called Massaclan, where

Port de Natiuidad.

The third post of Aduiso by land taken.

Two shippes more burnt.

Port de Saint Iago.

September.

The Bay of Compostella.

Fiue prisoners taken on the land.

The Ile of S. Andrewe.

The Bay of Massaclan.

where we had fruite and fish, but were in great danger of our enemies: Wee trauersed from thence vnto the Southermost cape of California, where beating vp and downe we discouered a Port called by the Spaniards Agua Segura, and found good store of fresh water: we lay off & on of this cape vntill the fourth of Nouember, on which day in the morning wee espied the goodly shippe comming from the Philippinas called Saint Anna the great, being of seuen hundreth tunnes: we chased her vntill noone, so fetching her vp, we gaue them fight to the losse of twelue or fourteene of their men, and the spoyle and hurt of many more of them, whereupon at last they yeelded vnto vs: In this conflict we lost onely two of our men. So on the first of the sayde Nouember we went into the Port of Agua Segura, where wee ankered and put nine score prisoners on land: and ransacking the great shippe, wee laded our owne two shippes with fourtie tunnes of the chiefest marchandise, and burnt all the rest aswell shippe as goods, to the quantitie of sixe hundreth tunnes of rich marchandise, because we were not able to bring it away: This was one of the richest vessels that euer sayled on the Seas, and was able to haue made many hundreths wealthie, if we had had meanes to haue brought it home.

Puerto de Agua Segura.
November.
The great S. Anna taken, rifled & burnt.
Nine score Spanish prisoners put on land.

At length hauing furnished our selues with water & wood, and made vs ready for the Sea, we set sayle the twentie of Nouember & came away. From Cape California, we shaped our course toward the Ilands of the Ladrones, and by the prouidence of God wee came vnto them in two and fourtie dayes, the distance being three and twentie hundreth leagues: The first Iland of the Ladrones where we touched is called Guana, the inhabitants are theeuish and trecherous: they met vs at Sea three leagues off in small canoas, admirable to beholde for their swiftnesse in sayling, with which people wee had some traffike vntill the euening, and so wee left them directing our course vnto the Ilands of the Philippinas vntill the fourteenth of Ianuarie, on which day we fell with an Iland called Tadaia: and from thence we passed by the Iland of Luçon or Manilla, vntill we came to an Iland called Capul, where wee had hens, hogs, potatos, cocos, and other fruites for traffike with the Indians, making our abode there vntill the 24. of the foresayde Ianuarie. Then proceeding on our voyage through the infinite nombers of Ilands towards those rich Ilands of Maluco, we passed by Mindanao, which is the last Iland that the Spaniards inhabite that way: So we ranne betweene Cebele or Batachina and Borneo vntill the twelfth day of Februarie.

The Ilands of Ladrones 2300. leagues from Cape California.
January 1588
Capul an Iland.
Februarie.

And on the 28. and last of the same we put through betweene the Straights of Iaua maior, and Iaua minor, and ankered vnder the Southwest part of Iaua maior, where the inhabitants being Gentiles brought vnto vs hennes, geese, hens egges, ducke egges, beeues, buffes, melons, plantans, and an hundreth sortes of fruites most strange and wonderfull for greatnesse and goodnesse, euen whole tuncks full being a kinde of barks made like vnto our barges: These people did intreate vs wonderfull well, and came as duely to traffike with vs in our ship as wee doe in our markets and shoppes, and brought from their King diuers presents to our Generall, and caried diuers rich gifts from our Generall to their King: The King sent many of his kinsmen and chiefe Courtiers a shipborde to entertaine him, being men of very good behauiour: they sit crosse legged, they would faine haue had our General come to their Kings chiefe towne, because he was not well able to come downe vnto our shippe being a man of great age, and as they reported, very neere an hundreth and fiftie yeeres olde, but our Generall excused himselfe and that with reason: Hee would haue sent his sonne in his owne steade, but that hee was at warre against another King in the Iland their enemie: This olde Kings name was Raia Bolamboam.

Iaua maior.
Our mens good entertainement at Iaua maior.
Raia Bolamboam king of Iaua.

The 16. of March we set sayle from Iaua maior toward the Cape of Bona Sperança: and on the 11. day of May we fell with the land of Aethiopia, neere vnto a place called Capo falso, being thirtie and odde leagues from the Cape of Bona Sperança. And on the 19. of May wee had sight of the Cape of Bona Sperança, which is the promontorie that all trauailers desire to double.

1587.

The seuenth of June wee fell with the Ilande of Saint Helena, and on the eight day wee ankered vnder it, where wee continued twelue dayes, finding it a place to our great contentment: for there we had goats, hogs, figs, oranges, limons, pomegranates, and many wholsome herbes for the gathering: But he that will haue of the cattell must trauaile a mile and an halfe vp into the steepie mountaine to kill them: we found a Church and thirtie or fourtie houses builded to lodge the Portingales, in their comming from the East Indies: There was one only banished man there which liued as an Hermite, but hee was dead before our arriuall. The twenty of June we departed from the Iland of Saint Helena shaping our course from thence for England.

June.
Our men stayed 12. dayes in the Iland of S. Helena.

The

July. The fourth of July 1588. we passed the equinoctiall line, which was the fourth time that we had trauersed the same in this our iourney. The 24. day of August wee had sight of two Ilands of ꝑ Asores the one called Flores, the other Coruo, and directed our way from them for the August. September. Lisard vntill the third of September, at which time we espied a Flemish Hulke that came from Portingale, which tolde vs the ioyful newes of our Fleets good successe against the huge armie of the Spaniards. And on the fift day we met with a ship of Southhampton, which had taken a Brasilian pryse, whose Captaine informed vs at large of the trueth of that which had passed: We tooke some refreshing of them, which was recompensed with treble curtesie, and so entred into the narrow Seas where we had as terrible a night as euer men endured: for all our sayles were blowen quite away: but making as good shift as we could with certaine olde sayles wee had within boorde, on the next morning being the ninth of September 1588. like wearied men through the fauour of the Almightie, we gate vnto Plymmouth: where the Townes men receiued vs with all humanitie. In this voyage we burnt twentie sayles of Spanish shippes, besides diuers of their Townes and Villages.

Their arrinall at Plymmouth the 9. of September

Written by N. H.

The names of the Kings or Princes of Iaua at the time of our *English mens being there.*

Raia	Donaw.	Raia	Tymbanton.
Raia	Rabacapala.	Raia	Mawgbange.
Raia	Bacabatra.	Raia	Patimara.

Certaine wordes of the naturall language of Iaua, learned *and obserued by our men there.*

Sabuck,	silke.	Gula,	blacke sugar.
Sagu,	bread of the Countrey.	Tadon,	a woman.
Larnike,	drinke.	Bebeck,	a ducke.
Paree,	ryce in the huske.	Aniange,	a deere.
Braas,	sodden ryce.	Popran,	oyntment.
Calapa,	coquos.	Coar,	the head.
Cricke,	a dagger.	Endam,	paine.
Catcha,	a looking glasse.	Ionge,	a shippe.
Arbo,	an oxe.	Chay,	the sea.
Vados,	a goate.	Sapelo,	ten in number.
Cabo,	golde.	Dopolo,	twentie.
Gardange,	a plantine.	Treda,	no.
Hiam,	a henne.	Lau,	vnderstand you.
Seuit,	linnen cloth.	Bayer,	goe.
Doduck,	blewe cloth.	Adadizano,	I will fetch it.
Totopps,	one of their caps.	Suda,	enough.

Certaine notes or references taken out of the large Mappe of *China, brought home by Master Thomas* Candish. 1588.

THe great kingdome of the Mogores, is vpon the Northwest and fals vpon Tanassacin beyond Mallaca, and ioynes vpon Bengala: they are men of warre, and vse no fight but on horsebacke, they goe in their apparel like Portingales.

2 A City wherein is Captaine a Chinian, a man very deformed, hauing vnder him many men of warre: he maketh warre both against the Tartarians, and the Mogores lying betweene them, and lyeth without the circuite of the wall.

3 Certaine hils beyond which the Tartarians do inhabite, who heretofore were great friends with the Chinians, and now maintaine continual warres against them, so great that sometimes there

there are slayne in a battaile, 100000. of men adioyning vpon Moscouie: and they haue in their warres all kinde of armour.

4 The prouince of Cansas hath 4. great cities, and twentie small cities, and 77. townes and Castles: it containeth in length, 55. leagues: it hath 362000. houses of great men that pay tribute, and 13900. men of warre: and hath 47000. horses which are the kings, kept for his defence.

5 The great citie of Paquyn where the king doth lye, hath belonging to it 8. great cities, and 18. small cities with 118. townes and Castles, it hath 418789. houses of great men which pay tribute: it hath horsemen for the warre, 258100. This citie is in the latitude of 50. degrees to the Northwards, being there as colde as it is vsually in Flanders.

6 The great citie of Canton, wherein are many men of warre, to keepe that passage from the Tartars.

7 The prouince of Soychin, hath 7. great cities, and 16. small: with 12. townes, and Castles, and one great citie, to which many doe repayre to fight against the Tartars. It hath seuentene leagues in length: and hath 164118. great houses which pay tribute, and 96000. men of warre.

8 The prouince of Santo, hath 6. great cities, and 14. small, with 90. Townes, and Castles: It is 82. leagues long, and hath 77555. great houses which pay tribute 63808. horsemen, and 31000. footemen of warre.

9 The prouince of Oyman hath 7. great cities, and 13. small, and 90. Townes, and Castles being 470. leagues long, and 132958. great houses that pay tribute: 82800. men of warre, out of this citie cometh Copper, quicksiluer, and blacke leade.

10 The prouince Cutchew hath 8. great Cities, and 12. small, and 83. Townes, which make armour to fight with the Iawes, which do inhabite beyond Cauchin china: It is 100. leagues broade, and hath 32920. horsemen, and footemen, with 405670. great houses which pay tribute, whereof the men of warre are payde.

11 The prouince of Languyn, hath 14. great cities and seuenteene small, and 95. Townes, and Castles, it is 120. leagues ouer, and hath 962818. great houses which pay tribute: it hath 208900. men of warre, whereof there are 52500. Tartar horsemen that take wages.

12 The prouince of Vquam hath fourteene great Cities, and 19. small, 150. Townes and Castles, and is 210. leagues broade, and 53161. houses that pay tribute, and 71600. men of warre.

13 The prouince of Som hath 7. great cities, and 11. small, and 105. townes and castles, and is 200. leagues broade, and houses that pay tribute 139567. and men of warre. 345632.

14 The prouince of Esiran hath 11. great cities and 75. small, and 80. townes, and castels, and is 440. leagues broade, and great houses that pay pay tribute 1242135. and 339000. men of warre.

15 This lake lieth behinde Siam, and before Champa, and doeth ioyne with the Lapyians, and from thence comes all the water that serues the kingdome of China, and the Indians of the Chinians doe report this lake to bee the whole worlde, and so they paynt the sea, the moone, and the starres within it.

16 The prouince of Cansay hath 13. cities, and a chiefe citie, and 73. Townes and Castles, and is 260. leagues broade, and hath great houses that pay tribute, 1393629. and 1270000 men of warre.

17 The prouince of Cuausa hath 12. great cities, 45. small, and 51. townes and Castles: it is 260. leagues broad, and hath great houses that pay tribute, 1306390. and men of warre both footemen, and horsemen, 100100.

18 The prouince of Vanam hath fourteene great cities, and 36. small and 34. townes and castles, and is 88. leagues broade, 589296. great houses that pay tribute, and 15100. men of warre.

19 The prouince of Suckin hath eight great cities, and one principall citie, and 54. townes, and Castles, and two great Cities of Garrizon, to keepe watch vpon the Iapons, and is 206. leagues broade, and hath, 5009532. great houses that pay tribute, and 4003225. men of the kings garde.

20 The prouince of Canton hath fourtie great cities, and seuen small, and 77. townes and Castles, and a Citie that putteth foorth hundreds of shippes, for the keeping of Cachew: China is 380. leagues in breadth and hath, 483383. great houses which pay tribute, and 39400 men of warre.

21 The Citie Champa standeth in foureteene degrees to the Northwarde of the Equinoctiall.

22 The port of Cochin China, standeth in the latitude of sixteene degrees and a halfe to the Northward.

23 The prouince of Enam, hath 7. great Cities, and 13. small, and 90 townes and Castles, and is 88. leagues broad, and hath 589296. great houses that pay tribute, & 15100. souldiers.

Horsemen	Footemen
454728.	7459057.

The totall summe.
7923785.

An assignement from Sir Walter Raleigh, to diuers Gentlemen, and Merchants of London, for the inhabiting, and planting of our people in Virginia.

THis Indenture made the 7. of March, in the 31. yeere of the raigne of our Soueraigne Lady Elizabeth by the grace of God of England, France, and Ireland Queene, defender of of the fayth &c. betweene the right worshipfull Sir Walter Raleigh, of Colaton Raleigh, in the county of Deuon knight, Lord warden of the Stanarie, and chiefe gouernour of Assamacomock alias Wingandacoia, alias Virginia, on the one partie, and Thomas Smith, William Sanderson, Walter Bayly, William Gamage, Edmund Neuil, Thomas Harding, Walter Parler, Thomas Martin, Gabriel Harris, William George, William Stone, Henry Fleetewood, John Gerrard, Robert Hacklyn, Richard Hakluyt, Thomas Hoode, Thomas Wade, Richard Wright, Edmund Walden, merchants of London, and aduenturers to Virginia aforesayd, John White, Roger Bayley, Ananias Dayre, Christopher Cooper, John Sampson, Thomas Stretuens, Roger Pyat, Dionise Harui, John Nichols, Humfrey Dimmocke, late of London gentlemen, of the other partie, witnesseth, that where Sir Water Raleigh knight by vertue of the Queenes Maiesties letters patents dated at Westminster, the 25. day of March, in the 26. yeere of her highnes raigne, vnto him the sayd Sir Water Raleigh, by the name of her Maiesties trustie, and welbeloued seruant, Water Raleigh Esquire, granted for the discouering, finding out, and planting of vnknowen and remote landes and countries, as by the sayd letters patents at large doeth, and may more plainely appeare: hath by this indenture of graunt bearing date after the computation of England the 7. day of Januarie in the yere of our Lorde God 1587. and in the 29. yeere of the raigne of our Soueraigne Lady Queene Elizabeth, made betwixt him the said Sir Water Raleigh knight of the one partie, and John White, Roger Bayley, Ananias Dayre, Christopher Cooper, John Sampson, Thoman Stretuens, William Fulwood, Roger Pyat, Dionise Harui, John Nichols, George Howe, James Platt, and Simon Ferdinando of London Gentlemen of the other partie, graunted vnto the said John White, Roger Bayley, and the rest, free libertie to carrie with them into the late discouered barbarous lande, and countrie called Assamacomock, alias Wingandacoia, alias Virginia, there to inhabite with them, such, and so many of her Maiesties subiects, as shall willingly accompany them, together with sufficient shipping and furniture for the same, and also diuers, and sundrie other prerogatiues, iurisdictions, royalties, and preheminences, as in, and by the said indenture of graunt, it doeth, and may more at large also appeare: Nowe the sayde Thomas Smith, William Sanderson, Walter Bayley, William Gamage, Edmund Neuill, Thomas Harding, Walter Parler, Thomas Martin, Gabriel Harris, William George, William Stone, Henry Fleetewood, John Gerard, Robert Hacklin, Richard Hakluyt, Thomas Hood, Thomas Wade, Richard Wright, Edmund Walden, and others, aduenturers as aforesayd purposing, and intending to be made free of the corporation, companie, and societie lately made by the sayd Sir Walter Raleigh, in the citie of Raleigh, intended to be erected & builded in Assamacomock, alias Wingandacoia, alias Virginia aforesaid, as by the said indenture made to the said John White, Roger Bayly, & the rest more at large it doth appeare, do vpon ye sealing, effecting, & confirmation of these patents aduenture diuers & sundry sums of money, in marchandises, shiping, munition, victual, and other commodities, into the said forraine and remote country

of

of Aſſamacomock alias Wingandacoia, alias Virginia afoꝛeſaid: in conſideratiõ alwel of which aduenture, as alſo foꝛ diuers, and ſundꝛy other good cauſes, and conſiderations him the ſayde Sir Walter Raleigh thereunto eſpecially mouing, The ſayd Sir Walter Raleigh hath giuen, graunted, couenanted, and pꝛomiſed, and by theſe pꝛeſents foꝛ himſelfe, his heyꝛes, and aſſignes and euery of them, doth giue, graunt, couenant, and pꝛomiſe, to & with the ſaid Thomas Smith, William Sanderſon, Walter Bayly, William Gamage, Edmund Neuill, Thomas Harding, Walter Parler, Thomas Martin, Gabꝛiel Harris, William Geoꝛge, William Stone, Henry Fleetewood, John Gerrard, Robert Packlyn, Richard Haklayt, Thomas Hoode, Thomas Wade, Richard Wꝛighe, Edmund Walden, and others aduenturers afoꝛeſayde, and vnto, and with the ſayd John White, Roger Bayly, Ananias Dayꝛe, Chriſtopher Cooper, John Samſon, Thomas Steeuens, Roger Pꝛat, Dioniſe Haruie, John Nichols, Humfrey Dimmocke, and euery of them, their heyꝛes, and aſſignes, and the heyꝛes, and aſſignes of euery of them, and their, and euery of their Deputies, Factoꝛs, oꝛ Appꝛentiſes, who ſhall ſeꝛue them, oꝛ any of them by the ſpace of ſeuen yeeres, that they, and euery, oꝛ any of them, ſhall from time to time and at all times foꝛ euer haue free trade, and traffique foꝛ all manner of Marchandiſe, oꝛ commodities whatſoeuer, vnto, in, and from all that part of America, called Aſamacomock, alias Wingandacoia, alias Virginia afoꝛeſayde, oꝛ vnto, oꝛ from any other part, oꝛ countrie, of, oꝛ in America afoꝛeſayde, where hee the ſayde Sir Walter Raleigh his heyꝛes oꝛ Aſſignes, oꝛ any other perſon oꝛ perſons clayming oꝛ pꝛetending any manner of right, title, oꝛ intereſt, oꝛ which hereafter ſhall oꝛ may claime, oꝛ pꝛetend any right, title, oꝛ intereſt, by, from, oꝛ vnder him the ſayde Sir Walter Raleigh, hath, chalengeth, claymeth, oꝛ may oꝛ ſhall hereafter, haue, chaleng, oꝛ clayme any intereſt, turiſdiction, title, rule, oꝛ pꝛiuiledge, by any conueiance, oꝛ diſcouerie heretofoꝛe made, oꝛ hereafter to be made, oꝛ by any other way oꝛ meanes whatſoeuer. And further the ſayde Sir Walter Raleigh, as well foꝛ, and in eſpeciall regard, and zeale of planting the chriſtian religion, in, and amongſt the ſayde barbarous and heathen countries, and foꝛ the aduancement and pꝛeferment of the ſame, and the common vtilitie and pꝛofite of the inhabitants therein, as alſo foꝛ the incouragement of the ſayde Thomas Smith, William Sanderſon, Walter Bayly, William Gamage, Edmund Neuill, Thomas Harding, Walter Parler, Thomas Martin, Gabꝛiel Harris, William Geoꝛge, William Stone, Henry Fleetewood, John Gerrard, Robert Packlin, Richard Haklupt, Thomas Hood, Thomas Wade, Richard Wꝛight, Edmund Walden, John White, John Nichols, and the other Aſſiſtants nowe lying in Virginia, and others aduenturers afoꝛeſayde, their heirs, and aſſignes, doth by theſe pꝛeſents, freely, and liberally diſpoſe, and giue vnto them, the ſayd Thomas Smith, William Sanderſon, and the reſt afoꝛeſayde, the ſumme of one hundꝛed pounds of lawful money of England, to bee by them aduentured and diſpoſed, in, and amongſt other their aduentures vnto the places, and countries beſoꝛe mentioned, To haue, holde, occupie, vſe, employ, poſſeſſe, enioy, and diſpoſe, as well the ſayde ſumme of 100. pound, giuen as afoꝛeſayd, as alſo all ſuch gayne, pꝛofite, commoditie, aduantage and increaſe, as they by Gods aſſiſtance, ſhall thereof make to their onely vſes and behooſes, and to the vſes and behooſes of the ſeuerall heyꝛes, executoꝛs, and Aſſignes of them and euery of them, without rendꝛing any account foꝛ the ſame, oꝛ any parcel thereof, to the ſayde Sir Water Raleigh, his heires, executoꝛs oꝛ aſſignes, oꝛ any of them. And the ſaid Sir Water Raleigh, foꝛ himſelfe his heyꝛs, and aſſignes, and euery of them, doth further couenant, and graunt, to, and with the ſayde Thomas Smith, William Sanderſon, Walter Bayly, William Gamage, Edmund Neuill, Thomas Harding, Walter Parler, and the reſt afoꝛeſayde, and to, and with the ſayde John White, Roger Bayly, Ananias Dayꝛe, Chriſtopher Cooper, John Samplon, Thoman Steeuens, Roger Pꝛat, Dioniſe Haruie, John Nichols, and Humfrie Dymmock, and the heyꝛes, and aſſignes of them, and euery of them by theſe pꝛeſents, to diſcharge, ſaue and keepe harmeleſſe, from time to time, and at all times foꝛ euer, them, and euery of them, their ſeuerall heyꝛes, and aſſignes, and euery of them, and the deputies, factoꝛs and ſeruants of them, and euery of them, and appꝛentiſes of them, and euery oꝛ any of them, who ſhall ſeꝛue them oꝛ any of them the ſpace of ſeuen yeeres, of, and from all rents, ſubſidies, cuſtoms, toles, taxes, tallages, and all other charges, ſeruices, duetties, and demaunds, whatſoeuer required oꝛ demaunded, oꝛ to be required oꝛ demanded, at any time oꝛ times hereafter, oꝛ foꝛ the trading, oꝛ tranſpoꝛting any commoditie oꝛ pꝛofite, into oꝛ from the ſayde countrie of Aſſamacomock, alias Wingandacoia, alias Virginia afoꝛeſayde, oꝛ any other countrey in America afoꝛeſayde, whereunto, oꝛ wherein, the ſayde Sir Walter Raleigh, his heyꝛes, oꝛ aſſignes, hath oꝛ may oꝛ ſhall haue any intereſt, right oꝛ title, by vertue of the ſayde letters patents, oꝛ by any diſcouerie, oꝛ other meanes whatſoeuer, oꝛ foꝛ any other matter, cauſe, oꝛ thing whatſoeuer: the fift part

of

of all the oare of golde, and siluer that from time to time, and at all times after such discouerie, subduing and possessing as aforesaide, shalbe there gotten, and obtained (alwaies reserued to the vse of the said Sir Water Raleigh his heyres, and assignes) onely excepted, and foreprised. And the sayd Sir Water Raleigh doeth further couenant, and graunt by these presents for him, his heyres, and assignes, to and with the sayd Thomas Smith, William Sanderson, and the rest aforesayd their heires & assignes, that he the said sir Water Raleigh, his heyres, or assignes, vpon sufficient & reasonable request made to him by the persons aforesayd, or any of them, their heires, or assignes, shal and wil at any time, or times hereafter, ratifie, affirme, and approue by his deede, or deedes, or by any other conueiance, or conueiances in lawe, the corporation heretofore made by him the sayde Sir Water Raleigh, consisting of one Gouernour, and twelue assistants, as by his sayd Indenture made to John White and others, more plainely doth appeare, for the more perfect, and better assurance, and sure making of the saide corporation, if any imperfection, and want in law thereof bee. And further, that hee the sayde Sir Water Raleigh, his heyres, and assignes, shall, and will, as much as in him or them lieth, procure, and indeuour to obtaine, the Queenes maiesties letters patents, for ratification, approbation, and more sure confirmation, of the sayde corporation, and societie with al prerogatiues, commodities, iurisdictions, royalties, priuiledges, and preheminences, whatsoeuer graunted, and couened by her Maiestie, to the saide Sir Water Raleigh, his heires or assignes, or by him the sayd Sir Walter Raleigh, to the said John white, and others, as by his said indenture of graunt made to the sayde John White, and others more plainely appeareth. In witnesse whereof, the parties to these presents, haue hereunto interchangeably put their hands, and seales, the day and yeere first aboue written.

A briefe remembrance, for want of further aduertisements as yet, of a voyage made this present yeere, 1589. by William Michelson Captaine, and William Mace of Ratliffe, Master of a shippe called the Dogge, to the bay of Mexico in the West India.

THe foresaide shippe called the Dogge, of the burden of threescore and ten tunnes was furnished, and armed forth with the number of 40. men: it departed from the coast of England in the moneth of May, directly for the west India: It fell with the Bay of Mexico, and there met with diuers Spanish ships at sundry times, whereof three fell into her lappes, and were forced to yeelde to the mercy of the English: the last that they met with in the Bay, was a Spanish man of warre, whome the English chased, and after three seuerall fightes, vpon three diuers dayes, pressed him so farre, that he intreated a parle, by putting out a flagge of truce: the parle was graunted, and certaine of the Spaniards came aboorde the English. Where after conference about those matters that had passed in fight betwixt them, they receiued reasonable intertaynment and a quiet farewel. The Spanish, as if they had ment to requite the English curtesie, inuited our men to their ship, who perswading themselues of good meaning in the Spanish, went aboord: but honest and friendly dealing, was not their purpose, suddenly they assaulted our men, and one with a dagger stabde the English pilot to the hart and slewe him, and others were serued with the like sauce, only william Mace the Master, and two others, notwithstanding all the prepared trappes of the enemie, lepe ouer boorde into the sea, and so came safe to their owne shippe: and directing his course for England, arriued at Plimmouth the 10. day of September last, laden with wines, pyon, Roans which is a kinde of linnen cloth, and other rich commodities, looking for the arriuall of the rest of his consorts, whereof one, and the principal, hath not long since obtayned his port. Thus much in generall termes onely, I haue as yet learned, and receiued touching this voyage, extracted out of letters sent from the foresayd William Mace, to Master Edward Wilkinson of Toure Hill in London. My principall intention by this example, is to admonish our nation of circumspection in dealing with that subtill enemie, and neuer to trust the Spanish further, then that their owne strength shalbe able to master them: for otherwise whosoeuer shall through simplicitie trust their curtesie, shall by trial taste of their assured crueltie.

The

The voyage ſet foorth by Maſter Iohn Newton, and Maſter Iohn *Bird Marchants of London to the kingdome and Citie of Benin in Affrica,* with a ſhip called the Richard of Arundell, and a pinneſſe in the yeere, 1588. briefely ſet downe in this letter following, written by the chiefe Factor in the voyage to the foreſaid Marchants at the time of the ſhips firſt arriual at Plymmouth.

WOrſhipfull Sirs, the diſcourſe of our whole proceeding in this voyage, will aſke more time and a perſon in better health then I am at this preſent, ſo that I truſt you will pardon me, till my comming vp to you: in the meane time let this ſuffice. Whereas we departed in the moneth of December from the coaſt of England with your good ſhip the Richard of Arundell and the pinneſſe, we held on our direct courſe towards our appointed port, and the 14. day of Febꝛuary following we arriued in the hauen of Benin, where we found not water ynough to carrie the ſhip ouer the barre, ſo that we left her without in the road, and with the pinneſſe, and ſhip boate into which we had put the chiefeſt of our marchandiſe, we went vp the riuer to a place called Goto, where we arriued the 20. of Febꝛuary, the foꝛeſaid Goto being ꝑ neereſt place that we could come to bywater, to goe foꝛ Benin. From thence we preſently ſent Negroes to the king, to certifie him of our arriuall, and of the cauſe of our comming thither: who returned to vs againe the 22. day with a noble man in their company to bring vs vp to the Citie, and with 200. Negroes to carrie our commodities: hereupon the 23. day we deliuered our Marchandiſe to the Kinges Factoꝛ, and the fiue and twentith day we came to the great Citie of Benin, where we were well intertained: The ſixe and twentith day wee went to the Court to haue ſpoken with the King, which (by reaſon of a ſolemne feaſt then kept amongeſt them) we could not doe: but yet wee ſpake with his Viadore, oꝛ chiefe man, that hath the dealing with the Chriſtians: and we conferred with him concerning our trading, who anſwered vs, that we ſhoulde haue all thinges to our deſire, both in pepper and Elephants teeth.

The firſt of March, we were admitted to the kings preſence, and he made vs the like curteous anſwere foꝛ our traffique: the next day we went againe to the Court, where the foꝛeſaid Viadore ſhewed vs one baſket of greene pepper, and another of dꝛie in the ſtalkes: we deſired to haue it pluckt from the ſtalkes, and made cleane, who anſwered, that it would aſke time, but yet it ſhould be done: and that againſt another yeere it ſhould be in better readines, and the reaſon why we found it ſo vnpꝛepaꝛed was, becauſe in this kinges time no Chriſtians had euer reſoꝛted thither, to lade pepper. The next day there were ſent vs 12. baſkets, and ſo a little euery day vntil the 9. of March at which time we had made vpon 94. ſerons of pepper, and 28. Elephantes teeth. In this time of our being at Benin, our natures at this firſt time not ſo well acquainted with that climate, we fell all of vs into the diſeaſe of the feuer, whereupon the Captaine ſent me downe with thoſe goods which we already had receiued, to the reſt of our men at Goto, where being arriued, I found all the men of our pinneſſe ſicke alſo, and by reaſon of their weakenes not able to comꝛey the pinneſſe and goods downe to the place where our ſhip roade: but by good happe within two houres after my comming to Goto, the boate came vp from the ſhip, to ſee how all things ſtood with vs, ſo that I put the goods into the boate, and went downe towards the ſhip: but by that time I was come aboꝛd, many of our men dyed: namely, Maſter Benſon, the Cowper, the Carpenter, and 3. or 4. moꝛe, and my ſelfe was alſo in ſuch a weake ſtate that I was not able to returne againe to Benin. Whereupon I ſent vp Samuel Dunne, and the Chiꝛurgian with him to our men that were aboue to let them blood, if it were thought needefull: who at their comming to Benin, found the Captaine and your ſonne William Bird dead, and Thomas Pennyſteeue very weake, who alſo dyed within two dayes after their comming thither. This ſoꝛowful accident cauſed them with ſuch pepper and teeth, as they could then finde, ſpeedely to returne to the ſhippe, as by the Cargaſon will appeare: at their comming away the Viadore told them, that if they could oꝛ would ſtay any longer time, he would vſe all poſſible expedition to bring in moꝛe commodities: but the common ſickneſs ſo increaſed, and continued amongſt vs all, that by the time our men which remayned were come aboaꝛde, wee had ſo many ſicke, and dead of our company, that wee looked all foꝛ the ſame happe, and ſo thought to looſe both our Shippe, life, Countrie and all. Very hardly and with much adoe could we get vp our ankers, but yet at the laſt by the mercie of God hauing gotten them vp, but leauing our pinnace behind vs, we got to ſea, and ſet ſayle, which

was vpon the 13. of Aprill. After which by litle and litle our men began to gather vp their crums and to recouer ſome better ſtrength: and ſo ſailing betwixt the Iſlands of Cape Verde, and the mayne, we came to the Ilandes of the Açores vpon the 25. of July, where our men began a freſh to growe ill, and diuers dyed, among whom Samuell Dunne was one, and as many as remained liuing, were in a hard caſe: but in the midſt of our diſtreſſe, it fell ſo well out, by Gods good prouidence, that we mett with your ſhippe the Barke burre, on this ſide the North cape, which did not onely keepe vs good company, but alſo ſent vs 6. freſh men aboord, without whoſe helpe, we ſhould ſurely haue taſted of many inconueniences. But by this good meanes, we are now at the laſt arriued in Plymmouth, this 9. day of September: and for want of better health at this time, I referre the further knowledge of more particularities, till my comming to London.

Yours to command
Anthonie Ingram.

Of Theodore. **The moſt ſolemne, and magnificent coronation of Pheodore Iuanowiche, *Emperor of Ruſsia &c. the* 10. *of Iune, in the yeere* 1584. *ſeene*** and obſerued by Maſter Ierom Horſey gentleman, and ſeruant to her Maieſtie, a man of great trauell, and long experience in thoſe partes: wherewith is alſo ioyned the courſe of his iourney ouer land from Moſco to Emden, the right place of which diſcourſe, is immediatly after the Embaſſage of Sir Ierom Bowes, in the ſecond part of this hiſtorie: which being fully printed, before this matter came to my hands, I am forced here to annexe it, leaſt ſo rare a thing ſhould be ſuppreſſed, and the diligent ſeruice of the foreſaid gentleman not knowne as well as others of the ſame nature.

WHen the old Emperor Iuan Vaſilewich dyed, (being about the 18. of Aprill, 1584. after our computation) in the Citie of Musko, hauing raigned 54. yeeres, there was ſome tumult, and vprore among ſome of the nobilitie, and comminaltie, which notwithſtanding was quickly pacified. Immediatly the ſame night, the Prince Boris Fedorowich Godonoua, Knez Iuan Fedorowich, Meſthis Slaſsky, Knez Iuan Petrowich Susky, Mekita Romanowich and Bodan Iacoulewich Belſkoy, being all noble men, and chiefeſt in the Emperors Will, eſpecially the Lord Boris, whom he adopted as his third ſonne, and was brother to the Empreſſe, who was a man very well liked of all eſtates, as no leſſe worthy for his valure and wiſedome, all theſe were appointed to diſpoſe, and ſettle his ſonne, Feodore Iuanowich, hauing one ſworne another, and all the nobilitie, and officers whoſoeuer. In the morning the dead Emperor was layd into the Church of Michael the Archangell, into a hewen ſepulcre, very richly decked with veſtures fit for ſuch a purpoſe: and preſent Proclamation was made, (Emperor Feodore Iuanowich of all Ruſſia &c.) Throughout all the Citie of Moſco, was great watch and ward, with ſouldyers, and gunners, good orders eſtabliſhed, and officers placed to ſubdue the tumulters, and mainteine quietnes: to ſee what ſpeede and pollicie was in this caſe vſed was a thing worth the beholding. This being done in Moſko, great men of birth and accompt, were alſo preſently ſent to the bordering Townes, as Smolensko Vobsko, Kaſan, Nouogorode &c. with freſh garriſon, and the old ſent vp. As vpon the 4. of May a parliament was held, wherein were aſſembled, the Petropolitane, Archbiſhops, Biſhops, Priors, and chiefe clergie men, and all the nobilitie whatſoeuer: where many matters were determined not pertinent to my purpoſe, yet all tended to a new reformation in the gouernement: but eſpecially the terme, and time was agreed vpon for the ſolemnizing of the new Emperors coronation. In the meane time the Empreſſe, wife to the old Emperor, was with her child the Emperors ſonne, Charewich Demetrie Iuanowich, of one yeres age or there abouts, ſent with her father Feodor Feodorowich Nagay, and that kindred, being 6. Brothers, to a Towne called Owglets, which was giuen vnto her, and the yong Prince her ſonne, with all the landes belonging to it in the ſhire, with officers of all ſortes appointed, hauing allowance of apparel, iewels, dyet, horſe &c. in ample maner belonging to the eſtate of a princeſſe. The time of mourning after their vſe being expired, called Sorachyn, or forte orderlie daies, the day of the ſolemnizing of this coronation, with great preparations, was come, being vpon the 10 day of June, 1584. and that day then Sunday, he being of the age of 25. yeeres: at which time, Maſter Ierom Horſey was orderly ſent for, and placed in a fit roome to ſee all the ſolemnitie. The Emperor comming out of his Pallace, there went before him, the Petropolitan,

tan, Archbishops, Bishops, and cheefest Monkes, and Clergie men, with very rich Copes, and Priestes garmentes vpon them, carying pictures of our Ladie &c. with the Emperors Angell, banners, censers, and many other such ceremonious things, singing all the way. The Emperor with his nobilitie in order entred the Church named Blaueshina, or Blessednes, where prayers, and seruice were vsed, according to the maner of their Church: that done, they went thence to the Church, called Michaell the Archangell, and there also vsed the like prayers, and seruice: and from thence to our Ladie Church, Prechista, beeing their Cathedrall Church. In the middest thereof was a chayre of maiestie placed, wherein his Auncestors vsed to sit at such extraordinarie times: his robes were then changed, and most riche and vnualuable garmentes put on him: being placed in this Princely seate, his nobilitie standing round about him in their degrees, his imperiall Crowne was set vpon his head by the Metropolitan, his Scepter globe in his right hand, his sword of Justice in his left of great riches: his 6. Crownes also, by which he holdeth his kingdoms were set before him, & the Lord Boris Pheodorowich was placed at his right hand: then the Metropolitan read openly a booke of a small volume, with exhortations to the Emperor to minister true Justice, to inioy with tranquilitie the Crowne of his auncestors, which God had giuen him, and vsed these words following.

Through the will of the almightie & without begining God which was before this world, whom we glorifie in the Trinitie, one onely God, the Father, the Sonne, and the holy Ghost, maker of all things, worker of all in all euery where, fulfiller of al things, by which wil, & working, he both liueth, & giueth life to man: that our only God which enspireth euery one of vs his only children with his word to discerne God through our Lord Iesus Christ, and the holy quickning spirit of life, now in these perilous times establish vs to keepe the right Scepter, and suffer vs to raigne of our selues to the good profit of the land, to the subduing of the people, together with the enemies, and the maintenance of vertue: and so the Metropolitan blessed and layd his crosse vpon him. After this, he was taken out of his chaire of Maiestie, hauing vpon him an vpper robe adorned with precious stones of all sortes, orient pearles of great quantitie, but alwaies augmented in riches: it was in waight 200. pounds, the traine, and parts thereof borne vp by 6. Dukes, his chiefe imperiall Crowne vpon his head very precious: his staffe imperiall in his right hand of an vnicornes horne of 3. foot and a halfe in length beset with riche stones, bought of Marchants of Ausburge by the old Emperor in An. 1581. and cost him 7000. Markes sterling. This Jewel M. Horsey kept somtimes, before the Emperor had it. His scepter globe was caried before him by ỳ prince Boris Pheodorowich, his rich cap beset with rich stones & pearles was caried before him by a Duke: his 6. Crownes also were caried by Demetrius Iuanowich Godonoua, the Emperors vncle, Mekita Romanowich the Emperors vncle, Steuan Vasiliwich, Gregory Vasiliwich, Iuan Vasiliwich brothers, of the blood roiall. Thus at last the Emperor came to the great Church doore, & the people cried, God saue our Emperor Pheodore Iuanowich of all Russia. His horse was there readie most richly adorned, with a couering of imbroodered pearle & precious stones, saddle, & all furniture agreeable to it, reported to be worth 300000. markes sterling.

There was a bridge made of 150. fadome in length, 3. manner of waies, 3. foote aboue ground and two fadome broad, for him to goe from one Church to the other with his Princes and nobles from the presse of the people, which were in number infinite, and some at that time pressed to death with the throng. As the Emperor returned out of the Churches, they were spred vnder foote with cloth of gold, the porches of the Churches with red veluet, the bridges with scarlet, & stammell cloth from one church to another: and as soone as the Emperor was passed by, the cloth of gold, veluet & scarlet was cut, and taken of those that could come by it, euery man desirous to haue a piece, to reserue it for a monument: siluer, and gold coyne, then mynted of purpose was cast among the people in great quantity. The lord Boris Pheodorowich was sumptuously, & richly attired, with his garments decked with great orient pearle, beset with all sorts of precious stones. In like rich manner were appareled al the family of the Godonouaes in their degrees, with the rest of the princes, & nobility, whereof one named Knez Iuan Michalowich Glynskie, whose robe, horse, & furniture, was in register found worth C. thousand markes sterling, beeing of great antiquity. The Empresse being in her pallace, was placed in her chaire of Maiestie also before a great open window: most precious, & rich were her robes, and shining to behold, with rich stones, & orient pearle beset, her crowne was placed vpon her head, accompanied with her Princesses, & Ladies of estate: then cried out the people, God preserue our noble Empresse Irenia. After al this the Emperor came into the Parliament house which was richly decked: there he was placed in his royal seate adorned as before: his 6. crownes were set before him vpon a table: the basin, and ewer royall of gold held by his knight of garde with his men standing two on each side in white apparel of cloth of siluer, called Kindy, with

scepters, and battle axes of gold in their hands: the Princes, and nobilitie were all placed according to their degrees all in their riche roabs.

The Emperor after a short oration, permitted euery man in order to kisse his hande: which being done, he remoued to a princely seate prepared for him at the table: where he was serued by his nobles in very princely order. The three out roomes being very great, and large were beset with plate of golde, and siluer round, from the ground vp to the vaults one vpon the other: among which plate were many barrels of siluer and golde: this solennitie, and triumphe lasted a whole weeke, wherein many royall pastimes were shewed and vsed: after which the chiefest men of the nobilitie were elected to their places of office, and dignitie, as the Prince Borris Fedorowich, was made chiefe Counsaylor to the Emperor, Master of the horse, had the charge of his person, Liuetenant of the Empire, and Warlike engins, Gouernour or Liuetenant of the Empire of Cazan, and Astracan and others: to this dignitie were by Parliament, and gift of the Emperor giuen him many reuenues, and rich landes, as there was giuen him, and his sor euer to inherite a prouince called Vaga, of 300. English myles in length, and 250 in bredth, with many townes and great villages populous and welthy, his yeerely reuenue out of that prouince, is 35. thousand markes sterling, being not the 5. part of his yeerely reuenue. Further, he and his house be of such authoritie, and power, that in 40. dayes warning they are able to bring into the field 100. thousand Souldiers wel furnished.

The conclusion of the Emperors Coronation was a peale of ordinance, called a peale royall two myles without the Citie, being 170. great pieces of brasse of all sortes, as faire as any can be made, these pieces were all discharged with shot against bulwarkes made of purpose: 20. thousand hargubusers standing in 8. rankes two myles in length, appareled all in veluet, coloured silke and stammels, discharged their shot also twise ouer in good order: and so the Emperor accompanied with all his princes and nobles, at the least 50. thousand horse departed through the Citie to his pallace. This royall coronation would aske much time, and many leaues of paper to bee described particularlie as it was performed: it shall suffice, to vnderstand that the like magnificence was neuer seene in Russia.

The coronation, and other triumphes ended, all the nobilitie, officers, and marchants according to an accustomed order euery one in his place, and degree brought rich presentes vnto the Emperor, wishing him long life, and ioy in his kingdome.

The same time also Master Ierom Horsey aforesaid, remayning as seruant in Russia for the Queenes most excellent Maiestie, was called for to the Emperor, as he sate in his imperiall seate, and then also a famous Marchant of Netherland being newely come to Mosco, (who gaue him selfe out to bee the king of Spaines subiect) called Iohn de Wale, was in like sort called for. Some of the nobilitie would haue preferred this subiect of the Spaniard before Master Horsey seruant to the Queene of England, whereunto Master Horsey would in no case agree, saying, he would haue his legges cutt off by the knees, before he would yeeld to such an indignitie offred to his Soueraigne the Queenes Maiestie of England, to bring the Emperor a present, in course after the King of Spaines subiect, or any other whatsoeuer. The Emperor, and the Prince Boris Fedorowiche perceiuing the controuersie, sent the Lord Treasorer Peter Iuanowiche Galauyn, and Vasilie Shalcan, both of the Counsell, to them, who deliuered the Emperor backe, Master Horseys speech: whereupon he was first in order (as good reason) admitted and presented the Emperor in the behalfe of the English Marchants trading thither, a present wishing him ioy, and long to raigne in tranquilitie, and so kissed the Emperours hand, he accepting the present with good liking, and auowching, that for his sisters sake Queene Elizabeth of England, he would be a gracious Lord to her Marchants, in as ample manner as euer his father had ben: and being dismissed, he had the same day sent him 70. dishes of sundry kinds of meats with 3. carts laden with all sorts of drinkes very bountifully. After him, was the foresaid subiect of the Spanish king admitted with his present, whom the Emperor willed to be no lesse faythfull and seruiceable vnto him, then the Queene of Englands subiects were and had ben, and then the king of Spaines subiects should receiue fauor accordingly.

Al these things thus in order performed praises were sung in all the churches. The Emperor, & Empresse very deuoutly resorted one foote, to many principal Churches in the Citie, and vpon Trinitie Sunday betooke them selues to a progresse, in order of procession, to a famous monasterie called Sergius, and the Trinitie, 60. myles distant from the Citie of Mosco, accompanied with a huge armie of noble men, gentlemen and others, mounted vpon goodly horse, with furniture accordingly.

The Empresse of deuotion tooke this iourney on foote all the way, accompanied with her Prin-

princesses, and ladyes, no smal number: her garde, and gunners were in number 20000. her chiefe Counseller or attendant was a noble man of the blood Royal her vncle of great authoritie, called Demetrie Iuanowich Godonoua.

All this progresse ended, both the Emperour, and Empresse returned to Mosco: shortly after the Emperour by the direction of the prince Boris Fedorowich, sent a power into the lande of Siberia, where all the rich Sables, and Furres, are gotten. This power conquered in one yeere and a halfe, 1500. myles. In the performance of this warre, there was taken prisoner the Emperour of the countrie called Chare Sibersky: and with him many other Dukes, and noble men, which were brought to Mosco, with a garde of souldiers, and gunners, who were received into the citie in very honourable maner, and do there remayne to this day.

Chare Siberskie prince of Siberia taken prisoner and brought to Mosco.

Hereupon the corrupt officers, Iudges, Iustices, Captaines, and Lieutenants though the whole kingdome were removed, and more honest men substituted in their places, with expresse commaundement, vnder seuere punishment to surceasse their old bribing, and extortion which they had vsed in the old Emperours time, and now to execute true iustice without respect of persons: and to the ende that this might bee the better done, their landes, and yerely stipends were augmented: the great tasks, customs, and dueties, which were before layd vpon the people in the old Emperours time, were now abated, and some wholy remitted, and no punishments commanded to be vsed, without sufficient and due proofe, although the crime were capital, deseruing death: many Dukes and noble men of great houses, that were vnder displeasure, and imprisoned 20. yeeres by the old Emperour, were now set at libertie and restored to their landes: all prisoners were set at libertie, and their trespasses forgiuen. In summe, a great alteration vniuersally in the gouernment followed, and yet all was done quietly, ciuilly, peaceably, without trouble to the Prince, or offence to the Subiect: and this hedde great assurance, and honour to the kingdome: and all was accomplished by the wisdome especially of Irenia the Empresse.

These things being reported & carryed to the eares of the kings, & princes that were borderers vpon Russia, they grew so fearefull and terrible to them, that the Monarch of all the Scythians called the Crimme Tartar or great Chan himselfe, named Sophet Keri Alli, came out of his owne country to the Emperour of Russia, accompanyed with a great number of his nobilitie well horsed, although to them that were Christians they seemed rude, yet they were personable men, and valiant: their comming was gratefull to the Emperour, and their intertaynement was honourable, the Tartar prince hauing brought with him his wiues also, receiued of the Russe Emperour, intertainement, and princely welcome according to their estates.

Sophet Keri Alli king of the Crimmes, arriuall at Mosco.

Not long after, 1200. Polish gentlemen, valiant Souldiers, and proper men came to Mosco offering their seruice to the Emperour, who were all intertayned: and in like sorte many Chirkasses, and people of other nations came and offered seruice. And, alsoone as the report of this newe created Emperour was spred ouer other kingdomes of Europe, there were sent to him sundry Ambassadours to wish him ioy, and prosperitie in his kingdome: thither came Ambassadours from the Turke, from the Persian, the Bogharian, the Crimme, the Georgian, and many other Tartar princes. There came also Ambassadours from the Emperour of Almaine, the Pole, the Swethen, the Dane, &c. And since his coronation no enemie of his hath preuailed in his attempts.

It fell out not long after, that the Emperour was desirous to send a message to the most excellent Queene of England, for which seruice he thought no man fitter then M. Ierom Horsie, supposing that one of the Queenes owne men and subiects would be the more acceptable to her. The summe of which message was, that the Emperour desired a continuance of that league, friendship, amitie and intercourse of traffique which was betweene his father, and the Queenes Maiestie and her subiects, with other priuate affayres besides, which are not to bee made common. M. Horsey hauing receiued the letters, and requests of the Emperour, prouided for his iourney ouer land, and departed from Mosko the 5. day of September, thence to Otuer, thence to Torshook, to great Nouogorode, to Vobskye, and thence to Nyhouse in Liuonia, to Wenden, and so to Riga: (where he was beset, & brought forth with before a Cardinal, called Rageuill, but yet suffered to passe in the ende:) From thence to Myto, to Golden, and Libou in Curland, to Memel, to Koningsburgh in Prussia, to Meluin, to Dantzike, to Stetine in Pomerland, to Rostok, to Lubek, to Hamborough, to Breame, to Emden, and by sea to London. Being arriued at her Maiesties royall court, and hauing deliuered the Emperours letters, with good fauour, and gratious acceptance, he was forthwith againe commanded to repasse into Russia, with other letters from her Maiestie to the Emperour, and Prince Boris Fedorowich, answering the Emperours letters, and withall requesting the fauour and friendship, which his father had yeelded to the English Merchants: and hereunto was he earnestly also solicited by the Merchants of London themselues of that company, to deale

The new Emperour Pheodor Iuanowich his letters and requests to the Queene.

M. Horseys voyage from Mosco to England ouerlande.

in their behalfe: being thus dispatched from London by sea, he arriued in Mosco the 20. of April 1586. and was very honorably welcommed. And for the merchants behoofe, obtayned all his requests, being therein specially fauoured by the noble prince Boris Fedorowich, who alwayes affected M. Horsey with speciall liking. And hauing obtayned priuiledges for the merchants, hee was recommended from the Emperour againe, to the Queene of Englande his mistresse, by whome the prince Boris, in token of his honorable, and good opinion of the Queenes Maiestie, sent her highnesse a royall present of Sables, Luzarns, cloth of golde, and other riche things. So that the company of English marchants, next to their thankfulnes to her Maiestie, are to account M. Horses paines their special benefite, who obtained for them those priuiledges, which in twentie yeeres before would not be granted.

The maner of M. Horseys last dispatch from the Emperour because it was very honourable, I thought good to record. He was freely allowed post horses for him, and his seruants, victuals, and all other necessaries for his long iourney: at euery towne that he came vnto from Mosco to Vologda, which is by lande 500. myles, hee receiued the like free, and bountifull allowances, at the Emperours charge. New victuall, & prouision were giuen him vpon the riuer Dwina at euery towne by the kings officers being 1000. of their miles in length. When he came to the new castle called Archangel he was receiued of the Duke Knez Vasili Andrewich Isuenogorodski by the Emperours commission into the Castle, gunners being set in ranks, after their vse, where he was sumptuously feasted: from thence he was dispatched with bountifull prouision, and allowance in the Dukes boate with 100. men to rowe him, 100 gunners in other boats to conduct him, with a gentleman captaine of the Gunners. Comming to the roade, where the English, Dutch, and French shippes ridde, the gunners discharged, and the ships shot in like maner 46. pieces of their ordinance, and so he was brought to his lodging at the English house vpon Rose Island.

And that which was the ful. and complet conclusion of the fauour of the Emperour and Boris Federowich toward M. Horsey, there were the next day sent him for his further prouision vpon the sea by a Gentilman and a Captaine the things following.

16. liue oxen,	2. swannes.
70. sheepe.	65. gallons of meade.
600. hennes.	40. gallons of Aquauitæ
25. fleeches of Bacon.	60. gallons of beare.
80. bushels of meale.	3. pong beares.
600. loaues of bread.	4. hawks.
2000. egges.	Store of onyons, and garlike.
10. geese.	10. fresh salmons.
2. cranes.	A wilde boare.

All these things were brought him downe by a gentleman of the Emperours, and another of prince Boris Fedorowich, and were receiued in order by Iohn Frese seruant to M. Horsey, together with an honorable present, and reward from the Prince Boris, sent him by Francis Cherry an Englishman: which present was a whole very rich peece of cloth of gold, and a fayre payre of Sables. This Gentleman hath obserued many other rare things concerning those parts, which hereafter (God willing) at more conuenient time, and leasure shall come to light.

Pheodor Iuanowich the newe Emperours gratious Letter of priuiledge to the English Marchants word for word: obtayned by M. Ierom Horsey. 1586.

THrough the wil of the almightie and without beginning God, which was before this world, whome we glorifie in the trinitie, one only God, the father, the sonne, and the holy ghost, maker of all thinges, worker of all in all euery where, fulfiller of all things, by which will and working, he both loueth, and giueth life to man, That our only God, which inspyreth euery one of vs his only Children with his woorde, to discerne God through our Lord Iesus Christ, and the holy quickning spirit of life now in these perilous times, Establish vs to keepe the right Septer, and suffer vs of our selues to raigne to the good profite of the land, and to the subduing of the people, together with the enemies, and to the maintenance of vertue.

We Pheodor, the of spring of Iohn, the great Lord, Emperour, King and great Prince of all Russia, of Volademeria, Moscouia, and Nouogorode, king of Kasan, king of Astracan, Lord of Plesko, & great prince of Smolenskay, of Twer, Yougoria, Perme, Vatkay, of Bolghaire and others, Lord and great Prince of the land of the lower Nouogorod, Chernegay, Rezan, Polotskay, Rostow, Yeroslaue, the white lake, Leifland, Owdor, Condence, and Ruler of all Seberia, and all the Northside, and Lord of many other Countries.

I haue gratified the marchants of England, to wit, S. Rowland Hayward, & Richard Martin Aldermen,

Aldermen, S. George Barnes, Thomas Smith Esquire, Jerom Horsey, Richard Saltonstall, with their fellowes.

I haue licensed them to saile with their ships into our dominyon, the lande of Dwina with all kind of commodities to trade freely and vnto our kingdome and the citie of Mosco and to all the cities of our Empire of Moscouia.

And the english merchants, S. Rowland Hayward, & his societie desired vs, that we would gratifie them to trade into our kingdome of Moscouia, & into our heritage of great Nouogorod, and Plesko, and into al parts of our kingdome, to bye, and sell, with their wares, without custome.

Therfore we for our sisters sake Queene Elizabeth, & also because that they aledge, that they had great losse & hinderance by the venture of the sea, & otherwise, haue gratified the said english merchants, S. Rouland Hayward & his societie, freely to come into our kingdome of Moscouia, & into all our dominions with al kind of commodities, to trade, trafficke freely, & at their pleasure with all kinde of their commodities: also I haue commanded not to take any maner of custome for their goods, nor other customs what soeuer, That is to say, neither for palling by any place by water, nor for launching, neither for palling thrugh any place by land, neither for the vessels or boates, nor for their heads, nor for palling ouer bridges, nor for ferying ouer at any place, neither for acknowledgement at any place where they shall come, nor any manner of custome or duety, by what name soeuer.

Only they shal not bring vnto them into our dominions, neither recarry out of our dominions, or father any other mens goods, but their owne, neither sell them, nor barter them away for them.

Also our naturall people shall not buy and sell for them, or from them, neither shall they retayne or keepe any of our naturall subiects goods, or pawnes by them to coulour them.

Also they shall not send any of their Russe seruants about into any citie to ingrosse, or buy vp commodities, but into what cittie they themselues shal come, they shall buye and sell, and shall sell their owne commodities and not ours.

And when they shall come into our inheritance of great Nouogorod, and Plesko and thrugh all our dominions with their commodities, then our noblemen and captaines, & euery one of our officers, shall suffer them to depart according to this our letter, & shall take no custome at all of them, for any of their commodities, neither for palling thrugh or palling by, nor for passage ouer any bridges, nor shall take of them any other dutie whatsoeuer name they haue.

Also into what places of our dominion, or when they shal happen to come, and to proceed to buy or sell, and whersoeuer they shall passe thrugh with goods not buying of any commodities, neither will sell their owne, then in those cities and townes they shall take no maner of custome or duetie of them, accordingly as before.

And I haue gratified them and giuen them free leaue to trafficke thrugh out all the dominions of our kingdome, in all cities with their goods to buy and sell al manner of commodities, without any duety or custome, whatsoeuer.

And the English merchants, where they are desirous to buy, or sell, or barter their wares with our merchants, whole wares for wares, they shal sell their commodities whole, and not by retaile: That is to say, neither by small weight, nor by the yard, to sell or barter in their own houses, & they shal sell and barter their wares wholy, Cloth by the packe, and by the whole cloth, and Dammaske and veluet by the peece, and not by the yard, and al maner of commodities that are to be sold by weight, not to sel by the smal weights, as by the pound, and ounce, but by whole sale: also they shal sell wines by the pype, and by the gallon, quart, or Stoope they shall not sell.

And they shal buye, sell, and exchange their owne commodities themselues, and the Russe merchants shall not make sales, or exchange for them or from them any of their commodities, neither shall they themselues conuay or carie thrugh any other mans goods at no place in stead of their owne: and which of the english merchants wil at any time sell his commodities at Colmogro or Vologda, or Yeroslaue they may, and of their commodities throughout al our cities and dominions, our noblemen, captaines, and euery of our officers shal take no manner of custome, according as it is written in this our gratious letter: and throughout all our dominions and cities they shall hire carriers, and vessels with men to labour, at their owne charge, to transporte their goods.

So likewise, whensoeuer the english merchants, are disposed to depart out of our kingdome into any other countrie or into their owne land, if our pleasure be, they shall take our goods with them from our Treasurie, and shal sell them, and exchange them for such commoditie as is commodious for our kingdome, and shall deliuer it into our Treasurie, & with those our commodities, our Noblemen and captaines, and euery of our officers shal let them passe thrugh all our cities also without custome according to these our letters.

Also

Also when so euer the English merchants shal haue sold their own goods, & bought themselues commodities, and will depart out of Mosco, then they shall manifest themselues to our chiefe Secretary, Andrew Sholkaloue, in the office where the Ambassadours are alwaies dispatched.

And if the English merchants comming, haue had any mischance by the sea, insomuch that the ship be broken, or if that ship do come to any part of our countrie: then we wil cause the goods to be sought out in true Iustice, and to be giuen to the English people, which at that time shalbe here resident in our countrie: and if so be that it so fall out that at that time there be no English men within our realme: then will we cause these goods to be laide vp in a place together, and when the people of England shall come into our realme, then we will commaund all those goods to be deliuered to the said English people.

Also wee haue gratified all the English merchants, with the house of one Vrie, here in the Mosco right ouer against S. Maximes church behind the market, and they shal dwell in the same house according as before time, and they shall keepe one alwaies in the house to keepe it, either a Russe, or one of their owne people.

Also the English merchants shal possesse their houses, to wit, at Yeroslaue, Vologday, Colmogro, and the house at the hauen of the sea, and they shall dwel in those houses, according as our goodnesse hath bene to them heretofore: and we haue commaunded, that there shal not be taken of them no yeerely rent, nor no maner of custome, taxe, rent or any other duetie whatsoeuer for those houses, neither shall pay any duetie, or taxe with any of the townes men of those places, and in euery one of those houses, to wit, at Yeroslaue, Vologday, and Colmogro, they shall haue men to keepe their houses, two or three of their owne countrie people, strangers, or else Russes, men of the meanest sort, which shalbe no marchants, that they may lay their goodes in those houses, and they may sell the commodities out of those their houses to whome they please, according to this our gratious letter: and those that keepe their houses shall not sell or buye no part of there commoditie, except they be there or giue order, whereby they be not deceiued by them.

So likewise I haue gratified them with their house at the sea hauen, at the mouth of Pawdazemskay, and we haue commaunded, that they shall not carrie their goods from thence to the new castell S. Michael tharchangel, but shall ariue, and do as they haue done heretofore with their wares at that their house, and shall vnlade their commodities out of their ships and shall lade them againe with Russe cõmodities, euen there at that their house without interruption: only they shall permit our officers of Colmogro & swome men to write vp those commodities, both the commodities of England, & those of Russeland, what the marchants shal declare themselues, and no otherwise, but they shal not ouerlooke their commodities, neither shall they vnbinde any of their packs.

And when the English merchants are disposed to sende into their owne countrie, to wit, any of their owne people on lande through any other kingdome whatsoeuer, they shall not sende their people without our kingly knowledge and commaundement, and which of their people so euer they do meane to send out of our kingdome, into their own country, then they shall send those their people, not without our kingly Maiesties knowledge, to wit, those that go of pleasure without carrying any commodities with them, and they shal haue a letter of passe giuen vnto them, out of the office where the Ambassadours haue alwayes their dispatch.

And who so euer hath any thing to doe with them in matters of controuersie, either concerning marchandize or iniuries, then they are to be iudged by our treasurers and Secretarie of the Ambassadours office to doe iustice betweene both parties, and to seeke out the trueth of matters in all things, and whatsoeuer cannot be found out by the Lawe, shalbe tryed by othe and lots: whose lot so euer is taken forth, him to haue right.

And in what place of all our kingdome, in what citie so euer, they or their people shalbe, and that there happen any matter of controuersie, either concerning marchandise, iniuries, or otherwise, that they haue occasion to set vpon any man by lawe, or that any seeke vpon them, concerning what matter so euer in all our kingdome and cities, then our lieutenants, captaines, and our officers shall giue them Iustice, and shall minister all true iustice betweene them, seeking out the truth: and what cannot be truly sought by law, shalbe sought out by othe and lot: whose lot soeuer is taken out, him to haue right accordingly as before, and the Iudges or Iustices shall take of them no kinde of dutie, for matters of law no where throughout all our Realmes. This letter is giuen in our princely Pallace within the cittie of Mosco, in the yeere from the foundation of the world, seuen thousand foure score and fiftene, in the moneth of Febuary.

FINIS.

A Table

A Table Alphabeticall, containing a compendious extract, of the principall names and matters compriſed in the whole *precedent worke: the numbers ſhewing the pages, where each particularitie is to be found.*

A



Abbie of S. Nicholas in Ruſſia, pagina 400. the number of 20. Monks in the ſaid Abbie. 400. Abbors and friers of England ſel their Chalices to redeeme K. Richard. 13. they obtaine licence of the Pope to celebrate with chalices of tinne and latton. 13

Abilfada Iſmael his Coſmographie. 208

Achon a citie of Iury. 11. it is ſurrendred by the Sarracens to the two kings of England, and of France. 11. the ſpoile of it deuided betwixt the kings. 11. the way by land and ſea from Conſtantinople to it. 28

Adrian Gilbert of Sandrige in Deuon. 774. his patent to diſcouer the northweſt paſſage. 774

Aegypt hath raine very ſeldome. 32

Aethiopia deſcribed. 47

Aetna the burning mountaine in Sicilia. 26

Africa deſcribed briefly. 84. 85

Africa, and the people thereof deſcribed more largely. 94. 95. 96

Albocore, a fiſhe that is enemie to the flying fiſhe. 161

Alcharon of the Turkes. 43. the time when that Alcharon was publiſhed. 43

Aleppo in Syria. 208. the proper commodities & merchandiſes of it. 208. the prices of thoſe commodities. 208. the charges of a iourney from Aleppo in Syria, to Goa in the Eaſt India. 218. the deſcription of Aleppo. 231. 232. the commodities of the Countrey about Aleppo. 232

Alexandria in Aegypt. 223. the deſcription of it. 223. the monuments to be ſeene there. 225. 226. the roade of it deſcribed. 151. notes cõcerning the trade of it. 191

Algier in the Leuant, vpon the coaſt of Africa. 189. the kings paſport giuen to Th. Shingleton, Engliſhman. 189. notes concerning the trade of Algier. 191

Amazonia Iſland. 64. the manner how the Amazonian women got the gouernment from the men. 64. their manners and education. 64

America from Florida northward, firſt of all diſcouered by the Engliſh. 680

Andrew Shalcan Chancelor to the Emperour of Ruſſia. 495. his abuſes offred there to S. Ierom Bowes. 495. the Emperours diſpleaſure is vpon him for thoſe abuſes 495. they are the cauſe that he loſeth his office. 497

Andrew Whiteman Abbot of the Abbey of Ramzey. 5. his trauell to Ieruſalem. 5

Anthony Ienkinſon preſent at Aleppo when the Great Turke paſſed with his armie into Perſia. 81. his ſafe conduct granted him by the Great Turke. 83. he is appointed Captaine of the fleete for Ruſſia. 332. he tranſporteth ouer the firſt Ruſſian Ambaſſador. 333. his entertainment at the Emperours Court in Perſia. 336. he paſſeth from Moſco in Ruſſia to Boghar in Bactria. 347. he paſſeth the Caſpian ſea. 350. 351. His conference with the prince of Mangoſlane. 352. His conference with Azim Cam prince of Sellizute 352. hee paſſeth in a Carauan towardes Boghar. 352. The diuers accidents in that iourney of his. 352. 353. A fight betwixt his Carauan, and theeuiſh troops of Tartars. 354. Hee arriueth at Boghar 355. He is honourably intertained of the king of Boghar. 356. Sixe ſeuerall Embaſſadours committed to his charge to paſſe into Ruſſia. 357. His dangers in the Caſpian ſea. 354. He preſenteth his 6. Ambaſſadours to the Emperour of Ruſſia. 358. Hee obtaineth leaue of the Emperour to paſſe into Perſia through his dominions. 366. Great riches, and many iewels of the Engliſh Marchants, committed to his charge. 363. He paſſeth the Caſpian ſea the third time. 366. He arriueth at the Court of the Sophie. 369. His cõming to the Sophies preſence. 370. The maner of his intertainement. 370. He deliuereth to the Sophie the Queenes Maieſties letters. 370. His cõference & talke with the Sophie. 370. 371. Hee paſſeth the Caſpian ſea the fourth time. 373. His memorie and good name remaineth to this day in Perſia. 383. He obtaineth newe priuiledges for the Engliſh marchants of the Emperour of Ruſſia. 397. His ſpeache and conference with the Emperour. 428. His requeſts preferred for the Engliſh marchants. 430. His requeſts anſwered by the Emperour. 433. A briefe rehearſall of all his trauailes. 436

Anthonie Anus Pinteado a Portingal. 85. one of the Captaines of the firſt Engliſh voyage to Guinea. 85. his troubles in that voyage. 86. his death. 87

Antiochian patriarche. 27. his authority againſt the authoritie of the biſhop of Rome. 27. the deſcription of the Citie of Antioche. 27

Aquaſcogoc, a part of the countrey of Virginia ſo called by the Sauages. 767

Arabians liuing like vagrants. 34. Their life and maners. 34

Ardowill a Citie of Perſia. 369. The ſepulchres of the Emperors of Perſia are there. 419

Ariſtotle the Philoſopher honored with an yerely feaſt of the Thracians. 27

Armenia maior. 46. The deſcription thereof. 63. 64

Arra a caſtle in Guinea pertayning to the king of Portingal. 90

Arrowes poyſoned vſed by the Negroes. 145

Arthour king of Britaine, and his conqueſts of the North Regions. 243. The kings of Gotland, Orkney, Norway, and Denmarke yeelde themſelues to his obedience. 243. 244. The right, and appendances of the crowne of Britaine in his time. 244. 245. The large extenſion of his dominions. 244

Arthour Edwards, ſeruant to the companie of Moſcouie marchants in London. 356. His ſeueral letters written to the companie out of Ruſſia, and Perſia. 376. 377. 380. 384. He obtaineth priuiledges of the Shawgh of Perſia for the Engliſh marchants. 381. A coppie of his obtained priuiledges. 384. His conference and ſpeach with the Sophie. 416. Hee dieth at Aſtracan. 447

Arthour Perte his commiſſion to diſcouer the Northeaſt paſſage. 453. His inſtructions for that diſcouerie. 456. 458. 459

Arzina Reca a riuer in Lapland where ſir Hugh Willoughby, and his companie periſhed. 335

Aſcopo a kinde of tree in Virginia like vnto Lawrel. 758

Aſtracan a towne in Ruſſia neere to the Caſpian ſea. 349. The deſcription of Aſtracan. 349. The towne ſtandeth in an Iſlande of twelue leagues long. 350. the commodities and marchandizes there to be bought. 350. 70000. Turkes and Tartars beſiege it. 419

Athelard a monke of the Abbie of Bathe. 5. His trauailes into Egypt, and Arabia. 5

Auguſta a Citie in Germanie. 179. The deſcription therof. 179. The commodities and pleaſures of Auguſta. 179

B

Babylon the name of two diuers cities. 30

Babylon in Aegypt deſcribed. 30

Babylon in Caldea. 209. the prices of commodities & merchandizes there. 209. the weights, meaſures, cuſtomes, and coines of that Babylon. 213, 214. The ruines of Olde Babylon. 232. The deſcription of New Babylon. 232, 233. The way from Cyprus or Ieruſalem to Babylon in Aegypt. 29

Bachow a port of the Caſpian ſea. 444. The captaine of Bachowes friendly intertainment of the Engliſh. 444

Baguare a ſtrong caſtle in Sicile wonne by king Richard the firſt. 7

Baldwine archbiſhop of Canturbury. 14. his trauell with king Richard the firſt into Paleſtina. 14. his death and buriall at Tyre. 14

Balme of India. 73. the deſcription and vertues of balme. 31. the counterfeitings of true balme. 31. the maner how to diſcerne true balme from that which is counterfeit. 31

Balſara citie. 213. The deſcription of Balſara. 233. The weights, meaſures, coines and cuſtomes of Balſara. 213, 214

Bartholomæus Columbus mappe made in London. 508. He is ſent by his brother Chriſtopher Columbus to offer the diſcouerie of the Weſt Indies to the king of England. 508. He preſenteth king Henry the ſeuenth with his mappe. 508. His offer for the diſcouery is accepted of king Henry. 508

Bateman a certaine weight ſo called, vſed in Perſia. 378. The value of that weight. 378

Bayea a towne in Braſill. 798. It is aſſaulted by the Engliſh. 728. The Engliſh perforce of all the force of the caſtle and city take foure ſhips out of the harbor. 799

Bebeck a ducke in the language of Iaua. 813

Benyn a city vpon the coaſt of Affrike. 86. Engliſh men arriue at Benyn. 86. The king of Benyns humanity towards the Engliſh. 87. The great reuerence that the people yeeld to the king of Benyn. 86. The king of Benyn skilfull in the Portingall tongue. 87. The kings care and diligence to furniſh the Engliſh with pepper. 87. The diſorder and death of the Engliſh at Benyn. 87

Berengaria the king of Nauars daughter eſpouſed to king Richard 9. She is driuen to Cyprus in a tempeſt. 9. Her ſhippe not ſuffered by the churliſh king of Cyprus to enter the port. 10. King Richard marryeth her in the Iſland of Cyprus. 10

Bethlem the towne of Iury. 35. The monuments of Bethlem. 35

Biſcaya noua in Noua Hiſpania. 589

Blaſphemie puniſhed by Gods iudgement vpon a Venetian in Tripolis. 196

Boghar a city of Bactria. 355. The deſcription thereof. 355. The gouernement, ſtate, and wealth of the Bogharians. 355. The king of Boghare a tyrant. 356. The commodities and merchandizes of Boghar. 356. Boghar beſieged by the king of Samercand. 357. The latitude of the city of Boghare. 359

Bona Speranſa the cape of Affrica. 161. Ordinarie ſignes about that cape. 161. Strange fowles in great number about that cape. 161. The foules of the cape diuerſly termed by the Portingalles. 161

Bores deuoured by foxes. 419

Boſerman the name of a Renegado in Perſia. 357. The maner how Chriſtians become Boſermen in Perſia, and deny their faith. 418. No law to be had againſt a Boſerman in Perſia. 418

Bracmania an Iſland. 73. The maners of the inhabitants of that Iſland. 73

Braſill coaſt exactly deſcribed. 803. A king of Braſill brought to London, and preſented to king Henry the eight. 520

Burboroata a towne in the Weſt Indies. 551

C

Cacao a fruite in Noua Hiſpania current in ſtead of coyne. 547

Caliphe the name of a prince in the Eaſt partes. 30. The ſignification of the word. 30. 3. Diuers Caliphes ſometime in the Eaſt parts. 50

Cambalu, a citie of China deſcribed. 55

Camelions how they liue. 72

Camels of great vſe for trauels and burdens in the Eaſt. 33. Camels indure long abſtinence from water. 33. The hard fare and yet conti-

ſtuall

nuall seruice of Camels. 233
Can the great Emperour of the East. 55. The description of his pallace. 55. The 4. solemne feasts kept in his court euery yeere. 57. The number of his horsemen, seruants, Physitions and officers. 57. The great armies attending vpon him in the time of his progresse. 59. The originall and reason of the name Grand Can. 60. The stile and royall title of the great Can. 61. The solemnities and ceremonies vsed at the buriall of the great Can. 62. The maner of creating a new great Can. 63. The largenesse of the great Cans empire. 64
Canibals of y West India very cruel people. 529
Canoues of Affrica. 526
Canton a great Citie of China. 814. The prouince of Canton. 814. The number of great and small Cities, Townes and Castles belonging to it. 814. The number of ships belonging to the citie. 814
Cansay, a citie of China. 53. The situation thereof. 53. The number of Cities, Townes and Castles belonging to it. 814. The breadth of it. 814. The tributarie houses and men of warre in it. 814
Cape de Monte in Guinie. 112
Cape Blanke, Mensurado, de las Barbas, de las Palmas, and Trepointes vpon the coast of Affrike. 89. 90
Captaines of all voyages ought to bee sworne. 266. The forme and maner of a Captaines othe. 266
Caruans in the East parts, their orders, maners, and gouernment in trauell. 233
Carbuncle stone. 52. A carbuncle stone of a foote in length. 52
Carthage in Affrike, and the ruines thereof. 233
Casbin a Citie of Persia with the description thereof. 422
Caspian sea with the length, breadth, and other circumstaunces thereof. 358. It is a shallow sea in many places. 377. It is frozen in some partes in the Winter. 451. brackish water far within the Caspian sea. 443
Cassaks outlawes of Russia. 421. They assault English merchants in the Caspian sea. 421. 24. of their Gunners slayne by the English. 421. they take great and rich commodities from the English, but are pursued, and diuers of them taken and slayne, and some goods recouered. 421
Casban a citie of Persia. 420. The good orders and gouernment in that citie. 420
Cathay with the description thereof. 54. the tribute of the Cathaians. 54. Silke, silkeworkes and spices, the commodities of Cathay. 54. The twelue prouinces of Cathay. 61. The number of cities in Cathay. 61. The apparell of the Cathayans. 61. the maner of their houses. 62. Their discipline in warre. 62. Their little eyes generally. 62. Seuerall wayes and passages ouer land from Russia to Cathaia. 387. 388, 389
Cattell fed with fish at Wardhouse in Norway. 334. great abundance of Cattell in the Isle of S. Domingo. 533
Cayro a citie in Egypt described. 30. 223. The Pyramides and other monuments to bee seene in Cayro. 226
Catan a cirie, whose king is subiect to the Emperor of Russia. 347. 348
Ceut, a citie in Barbarie, wonne to the Portingals by the ayde of English merchaunts. 79. The winning thereof was the occasion of all the Portingall discoueries that folowed. 79
Chaggi Memet a Persian merchants relation of the way from Tawris in Persia to Campion in Cathay. 389
Champa, a citie of China. 815. the latitude of Champa. 115
Champions try and end matters of controuersie in Russia. 290
Charles Iackmans commission to discouer towards the Northeast. 455. his instructions for that discouerie. 456. 457
Chesepiok a towne & great bay in Virginia so called by the Sauages. 738. the commodious and good situation thereof. 738
Chichemich a warlike Sauage people in America. 567
China prouince. 814. The length and breadth of it. 814. The tributarie houses and men of warre in it. 814. The ships of China vse but one style. 551
Choanoak a towne and prouince in Virginia. 738
Christians called Georgians. 39
Christians among the Saracens. 39. the diuersities of opinions among those Christians. 39
Christopher Burrough seruant to the company of Moscouie in London. 440
Christopher Carlile captaine of the Tyger going for Russia. 485. hee bringeth into England an ambassadour from Russia. 491. his discourse to incourage our nation to plant in America. 718
Christopher Columbus, his offer to king Henry the 7. for the discouerie of the West Indies. 507. His offer accepted of king Henry the 7. 507. The same offer and the acceptation thereof confirmed by Ferdinando Columbus. 509
Church of Greece agreeth not in opinion with the church of Rome. 27. The reason why the churches of Greece refuse obedience to the bishop of Rome. 27
Circumcision vsed among the Persians. 424
Clement Adams, the writer of Richard Chancelers first voyage to Russia in Latin. 289
Cloth made of the barke of trees. 101
Cochin, a citie in the East India. 217. The waights, measures, and mony currant in Cochin. 217
Cochin-China. 815. the latitude of the porte thereof. 815
Cola a riuer in Russia. 314. the latitude of it. 314
Cold may better be indured then heat. 97
Colmogro, a citie of Russia. 289. The commodities thereof. 289. The description thereof. 400. the inhabitaunts thereof very seruiteable to the English. 400
Colmak, a countrey so called. 351
Comania, a kingdome so called. 63
Constantine the sonne of Constantius king of Britaine. 2. His victories against the French, Almanes & Spaniards. 2. His continuall good successe in warre. 3. He planted Christian religion in Greece, Egypt, Persia, Asia, and the whole Romane Empire. 3. His great affection to learning and fauour to learned men. 3. He died at Constantinople. 3
Constantinople Citie described. 27. The way from England to Constantinople, ouer land and by Sea. 26. The monuments and sepulchres of famous men and women in Constantinople. 27
Consultation houses in all the Negroes townes of Guinie. 527
Corne growing and increasing twise a yeere in Noua Hispania. 546
Corrals growing in the Sea at the Cape of Bona Speranza in maner of stalkes. 161
Coldrus a Christian Emperour. 39
Cosmographers of Spayne and Portingall, partiall in their maps. 255
Cotton described, with the maner how it groweth. 72
Cozomomet, a noble man of Persia, a friend to English merchants. 378. 382
Crimmes, a people so called, bordering vpon Persia, and enemies to the Russes. 349
Crocodile described. 52. A Crocodile killed by the English in Guinie. 650
Cuausa a prouince of China. 814. The number of great and small cities, townes and castles in it. 814. The tributarie houses and men of warre in it. 814
Curasso an Island in the West India. 533. The store of cattell in the same Island. 533
Currans running to the North and Northeast at Sierra Leona in Guinie. 120, a currant setting to the East at the riuer of Sestos in Guinie. 100. The currant in the Northeast Sea runneth according to the wind. 470
Cutchew a prouince of China. 814. The number of great and small cities, townes, and villages in it. 814. The breadth of it. 814. The tributarie houses, and men of warre in it. 814
Cyprus Island taken by king Richard the first. 10. The princes of Cyprus acknowledge obedience to the kings of England. 11

D

Damasco city described. 41
Damiata a city, and port of Aegypt. 29
Danes enemies to the English merchants for theyr trade in Moscouie. 485
Dantiske hulks laden with French goods, taken by the English. 110
Dantiske rouers and pirats taken by the English. 426. Fiue of theyr ships taken. 426. The English send 82 of them to the Emperour of Russia. 426
Dauid Ingram one of M. Iohn Hawkins company set on land in the bay of Mexico. 557. His trauell from thence ouer land towards cape Breton. 557. The whitenesse of his skin woondered at by the Sauages. 557. His discourse of the maners of the Sauages, & commodities of the countrey. 557. The meanes of his comming home into England. 561
Derbent a city of Hyrcania. 367. The description therof. 367. The English mens good intertainement at Derbent. 446. The city of Derbent built by Alexander the great. 448. The latitude of Derbent. 448
Diago the generall name of a captaine among the Negroes. 102
Diamond stones, and theyr vertues. 47. The places where diamonds grow. 47. The counterfeiting of diamonds. 47. The way for triall of true diamonds. 47
Discention the ouerthrow of all good and worthy attempts. 359
Doctour Standish doctour of phisike in fauour with the Emperour of Russia. 339
Dogges that catch fish. 53
Dolgoietue Island in the Northeast sea. 317
Dosniks a kinde of boate vsed in Russia. 335
Drinks vsed in Russia. 347
Dunstans Island. 313
Dwina a famous riuer in Moscouie. 335, 390

E

Earle of Cumberlands voyage, set out for the South sea. 793. The discourse and proceedings of the same voyage. 793
Earth swimming aboue water like wood. 316
Ebaane king of the Negroes in Guinie. 118. his offer made to the English, of land & ground to build a Castle in. 118. His humanitie and good entertainment vsed to the English. 119. The ceremonies vsed by him, and his people, in drinking. 119
Ebbing and flowing vncertaine in the northeast sea. 319
Ecatepek a hill 9 leagues high in the West India. 591
Edgar king of Britaine. 245. His syrname Pacificus. 245. His nauie consisting of 4000. ships. the vses and imploiments of his nauie. 246. his conquests. 247. his royall stile and title. 248
Edmund Hoggan Marchant of London. 156. his ambassage from the Queenes Maiestie, to the Emperour of Marocco. 156. his arriuall at the port of Asafi. 157. his braue manner of landing. 157. his receiuing on land with Captaines and souldiers, for his conduct to the Emperour. 157. The merchants both Spanish and Portingall, commanded to meete him. 157. his honourable receiuing into the citie of Marocco. 157. hee hath a rich dagger bestowed vpon him by the Emperour. 158. He obtaineth priuiledges for the English merchants. 158. His dispatch and returne from Marocco. 159
Edward the Prince, sonne to king Edward the third. 20. His preparation for the releefe of the holie land. 20. His arriuall at Tunez with great hope to the Christian Princes there assembled. 20. His expostulation with the christian princes about the voyage. 20. he maketh a royall banket to all the Christian Princes. 20. He refuseth to accept any part of the monie receaued of the Sarracens. 20. His charitable releefe & succour yeelded to 200. Christians forsaken of the other Princes. 20. his

ships

ſhips preſerued, & ſaued in the ſtorme, wherin 120. ſhips of the other Princes perished. 20. He continueth his voyage, although all the reſt of the Chriſtian Princes refuſe it, and returne home. 21. He arriueth at the Citie of Acra, and there refreſheth himſelfe. 21. He taketh the towne of Nazareth. 21. He ſlaieth 1000. of the Sarracens, and taketh riche ſpoiles frō them. 21. He preuaileth more with the Noble men of Cyprus, then the king of Ieruſalem. 21. He groweth fearefull and terrible to the Sarracens. 21. He is wounded in the arme by a traiterous meſſenger ſent from the Prince of Ioppa. 21. He ſtriketh the villaine to the ground with his foote, and with his owne knife killeth him. 22. His great patience in ſuffering the dreſſing of his wound. 22. He is recouered of his wound in the ſpace of 15. daies. 22. He returneth from Paleſtina, and arriueth at Rome. 22. vpon the death of his father, he commeth into England, and is crowned king. 22. The time of Prince Edwards entring into Syria, noted by ſir Iohn Mandeuill, with the name of the Soldan that then raigned. 30

Edward Barton Gentleman, employed in the deliuering of Engliſh captiues at Tripolis. 197.

Edward Cotton of Southhampton. 187. His ſhip ſo called, ſet out vpon a voyage intended for Braſill. 187. The couenants betwixt him and the Captaine, Lieutenant, and others of the ſame ſhippe. 187. His ſpecial directions to the marchant for that voyage. 188. The ſhip caſt away vpon a ſand vpon the coaſt of Guinea. 188. The confeſſion of William Bends M. of the ſhippe concerning the ſhipwracke. 188. 189.

Edward Fenton, General of the intended voyage for China. 644. He is authoriſed in that place by the Lords of the Counſel 644. Hee receiueth inſtructions for his voyage from the ſaid Lords of the Counſell. 644. His arriual in the Riuer of S. Vincent in Braſile. 666. His fight in the Riuer with 3. Spaniſh ſhips. 667. He ſinketh the Spaniſh Vice Admirall, and taketh ſome of the men. 667

Edward Oſburne knight, & Alderman of London. 189. His letter written to the king of Algier. 189. 190

Edward Wilkinſon Captaine of the Marchant Royal in the fight at Pantalarea. 329

Elephants teeth of all quantities in Guinea. 93. The deſcription and properties of the Elephant. 93. Debate betwene the Elephant and the Dragon. 93. Three kinds of Eliphants 93. two Eliphants hunted, and aſſaulted by Engliſhmen in Guinea. 114

Elmo the Spaniſh ſailers Saint & Aduocat. 582

Engliſh Artificers ſent into Moſcouie. 319

Engliſh artillerie lent to the towne of Santos in Braſile. 642. The Engliſh brought into trouble at Tripolis by the lewd dealing of a Frenchman. 193. 194. The Engliſh Conſul at Argier. 226. the Engliſh Conſul at Tripolis in Syria. 231. The Engliſh Conſul at Aleppo in Syria. 234. The Engliſh houſe at Zante. 224. The Engliſh houſe at Alexandria. 225. the Engliſh houſe at S. Nicolas in Ruſſia 400. the Engliſh houſe at Shamakie in Media. 377. The Engliſh houſe with lands at Colmogro in Ruſſia. 400. The Engliſh flagge in the Caſpian ſea. 358. The Engliſh marchants priuiledges in Ruſſia. 302. The Engliſh marchants ſet 100. Ruſſes on worke in making of cables in Ruſſia. 387. Engliſh marchants aduentures vpon the Caſpian ſea. 450. 451. Engliſh men commit extreme negligence. 527. 528. 817. Fiftie Engliſh, defeate a Gallie, with 400. Portingals in it. 800. An hundreth Engliſhmen ſet on land in the bay of Mexico. 567. the Indians aſſault them. 567. The Spaniards take them. 568. They are caried to Panuco. 569. the gouernor of the towne taketh all their money and iewels frō them 569. They are caried to Mexico. 570. their hard intertainement, and imprisonment at Mexico. 571. the Inquiſition calleth them in queſtion. 572. the cruel iudgement of the Spaniſh Inquiſitours vpon them. 574. the cruell and bloodie execution of that iudgement. 575. One Engliſh ſhippe diſcomfiteth 7. Portingal ſhips neere Tercera. 149. Engliſh ſhips are alwayes the ſtrongeſt, and Admirals of other nations in Newfound lande. 686. The diſcouuries and plantings of Engliſhmen in Virginia. 738

Enſenore a Sauage in Virginia, a friende to the Engliſh. 743

Eſſal beck a Soltan of Perſia. 413

Euphrates a ſhallowe riuer 232. 2 iourney, of Engliſhmen downe the riuer of Euphrates. 232.

F

FAtama a king of Guyny. 654. Preſents ſent to him by the Engliſh. 654. Preſents receiued by the Engliſh from him. 654

Fight betweene the Engliſh and the Portingals vpon the coaſt of Guyny. 116. Another fight betweene them. 124

Fight betweene the Engliſh and the Negroes. 133

Fire forced of two ſticks. 552

Fiſhes that flie, and the deſcription of them. 161

Flemmings malicious and vnhoneſt dealing towards the Engliſh in Ruſſia. 288

Florida deſcribed. 539. The ſtate of the currant at the point of Florida. 538. The maner of kindling of fire in Florida. 539. Pieces of golde, ſiluer, and vnicornes hornes among the Floridians. 541

Foxes in great numbers & troops in the countrey of Shiruan. 419. 425

Francis Drake captaine of a ſhippe called the Iudith. 561. The great ſtirre and feare that was in Mexico vpon his being in the South ſea. 576. Men muſtered, and ſhips ſet out to go after him. 576. His arriuall at Aquatulco in the South ſea. 589. He entreth vpon the towne of Nombre de Dios in Noua Hiſpania. 594. He taketh two companies of mules laden with golde and ſiluer. 595. He burneth the houſes of croſſes, and much merchandize in it. 595. His arriuall at Virginia. 746. His curteſie and friendſhippe offered M. Ralph. Lane, and the Engliſh colonie in Virginia 746

Freebooters pirats ſo called in the Eaſterne ſea. 425. Foure of theyr ſhippes taken by the Engliſh 426

French men very proudly ſcorne the Engliſh. 18. The French enuy the Engliſh for theyr valour and good ſeruice. 18. They offer villanous abuſes to the Engliſh. 18. The French army fooliſhly and vnhappily diuided, to the aduantage of the Salladine. 19. The French army diſcomfited by the Salladine, and almoſt all of them ſlaine. 19. A French brauado. 113. Another French brauado and proud bragge. 120. The French admitted by the Engliſh into their cōpany, do moſt cowardly forſake them in the time of danger. 116 The French bridled by the Engliſh. 118 French goods ſeized by the Engliſh in the narrow ſeas. 128. The French mens trade at cape Verde. 123. A French ſhippe taken at Guiny by the Engliſh. 125. French men ranſomed by the Engliſh. 127. The names of the French taken and ranſomed. 127. Another French ſhippe taken by the Engliſh. 137 The goods thereof ſolde by the Engliſh at the Groine in Spaine. 137. A French ſhippe ſurpriſed by the Engliſh in Newfound land. 518. A French man of warre deceiueth the Spanyards at the Canaryes. 581. The French vſurpe the right of the Engliſh in America. 680. The French vnfortunate in their proceedings in America. 681

Fuego iſland. 148. A continuall burning hill in the ſayd Iſland. 148. The commodities of the ſame Iſland. 148

Furicanos, certaine ſtormes ſo called, rayning vpon the coaſt of Florida. 564

G.

GAbriel a Ruſſe of that name. 315. His courteſie to M. Stephen Burtough in his Northeaſterne Nauigation. 315

Ganges a Riuer of the Eaſt. 74

Gambil a kinde of ſpice in Syria. 44

Garamantes a people of Libya. 39

Geofrey Ducket an Agent for the company of Moſcouie in Perſia 419

George Fenner his voyage to Guinea. 142. His valiant fight with 7. Portingal ſhips. 149

Georgia a countrey of Armenia. 64. the deſcription thereof. 64. The obſcuritie and darkenes in ſome partes thereof. 64. The king thereof. 372.

George Killingworth the firſt Engliſh Agent in Moſcouie. 299. His letter written from Ruſſia to the companie in London. 299. His beard of a marueilous length. 501

George Turberuile Secretary to M. Randolfe Ambaſſador into Ruſſia. 408. His letters in verſe written out of Ruſſia concerning the ſtate of that countrey. 408 490. 411

Gerardus Mercators aduiſe for a Northeaſterne diſcouerie. 484. His honourable teſtimonie of the Engliſh nauigations to Moſcouie. 505

Giants of mighrie ſtature that are Canibals, or men eaters. 71

Gifts ſent to Queene Mary from the Emperour of Ruſſia. 325. The ſame gifts ſpoyled by the barbarous Scots. 325

Giftes ſent to the Emperour of Ruſſia from Queene Marie. 325

Giles Fletcher doctor of the ciuil law. 502. His Ambaſſage from her Maieſtie into Ruſſia. 502. 503. His hard intertainement at the firſt. 502. His honourable diſmiſſion at the laſt from the Emperour. 502. His requeſts on the behalfe of the Engliſh marchants granted by the Emperour. 502. 503. His booke written by himſelfe of the Ruſſe cōmon wealth. 503

Gillan a towne in Perſia. 375. The king of Gillan. 375

Ginger with the places where it groweth. 48

Goa a citie in the Eaſt India. 162. 212. the deſcription of the inhabitants of Goa, their habite, fruites, and maners. 162. The waights, meaſures and money currant in Goa 216

Godfrey de Bullion. 36. His tombe in Ieruſalem. 36

Gold ſold by the Negroes of Guinea to Engliſh marchants by ounces, and pounds. 109. 110. 111.

Gold, graines, and Eliphants teeth the commodities of Guinea. 92

Gold coynes not vſed in Ruſſia. 293

Gorod in the Ruſſe tongue, ſignifieth a caſtle. 348

Grozine a Countrey and towne in Armenia. 414. 422. The Inhabitants thereof are Chriſtians. 422

Guilielmus Neobrigenſis an Engliſhman, wrote in latine the voyage of king Richard to Ieruſalem. 13

Guilielmus Peregrinus an Engliſh poet, that accompanied king Richard into Syria, & wrote the kings voyage in Heroical verſe. 15

Guiny coaſt very vnwholeſome, by reaſon of the raine, lightnings, and thunders, whereunto it is ſubiect. 160. The firſt voyage of the Engliſh made to Guiny. 85. The ſecond Engliſh voyage to Guiny. 89. by whome it was ſet out. 89. The towns & houſes of Guiny deſcribed. 101. The great inconueniences by late ſtaying vpon the coaſt of Guiny. 129. The commodities and wares moſt deſired of the Negroes in Guiny. 130. The calme, & other accidents vpon the coaſt of Guiny. 160 The raine of Guiny turneth meat to wormes. 160. The fruites of Guiny vnwholeſome for our people 650. The wilde beaſts of Guiny. 651. A certaine thing ſwimming in the water called a ſhippe of Guiny. 160. The deſcription therof. 160. The fame is dangerous and poyſonous to be touched. 160

H

HAmmah a citie neere to the mountaines of Libanus. 231. The Turkes curſe the reedifying of Hammah. 231

Hanta a towne of Guinie. 115

Hatoraik an Iſland in Virginia. 748

Hauana the chiefeſt port of all the Weſt India. 590. The deſcription of Hauana at large. 590.

the

the small force that it is of. 590
Hebron that ancient citie. 34
Heilike Islands standing in 66. degrees of latitude. 334
Helena the Empresse a Britaine by birth. 1. 2. The mother of Constantine the great. 1. 2. Her vertuous and godly disposition. 1. 2. The persecutions of the Church ceased by her good meanes. 1. 2. Her trauell to Ierusalem. 1. 2. The place in Ierusalem, where she found the three crosses. 36. Her body diligently preserued at Venice to this day. 1. 2
Helena Iland discouered, and frequented by the Portingals. 222. The description, state, & commodious situation thereof. 222
Henrie the 7. king of England, accepeth the offer of Columbus, for the discouerie of the West India. 507. 508. His letters patents for discouerie granted to Iohn Cabot, and his 3. sonnes. 509. he sent out Sebastian Cabot with two shippes to discouer. 514
Henrie Roberts his ambassage frō the Queenes Maiestie, to the king of Marocco in Barbarie. 237
Henrie Sidney his oration to the marchants of the Moscouie companie, in commendation of Richard Chancelor. 281
Hircania described. 368
Hore his voyage to New found land, in the time of king Henrie the 8. 517
Horses white in colour, much esteemed of the Tartars. 60
Hospitall of S. Iohn in Ierusalem. 37
Hubert Walter Bishop of Sarum. 16. He was one of the cheefest that followed King Richard into Syria. 15. His great care and diligence to redeeme the king out of the handes of the Emperour. 16. He was created Archbishop of Canterburie. 16. He made an earnest oration to the people in the behalfe of King Iohn, and preuailed. 16
Hugh Willoughby Knight, Captaine Generall in the discouerie intended for Cathaia. 265 280. Sir Hugh Willoughby his land in 72. degrees. 269. He and his companie perished in the riuer of Arzina reca in Lapland. 270. his notes of the voyage found in the shippe, wherein he perished, written by him selfe. 265
Humfrey Gilbert knight. 597. His proofes of the northwest passage. 597. His letters patents receaued of her Maiestie, to plant in America. 677. His first preparation for that purpose. 681. His seconde preparation and voyage. 682. His fleete consisting of 5. sailes. 683. The orders obserued in his fleete. 683. He taketh possession of New found lande in the Queenes Maiesties behalfe. 687. He publisheth three lawes in New found land in the presence of the strangers. 687. His Admirall ship lost. 692. He perisheth at sea wilfully. 695. 696.
Humfrie Greensel Englishman burnt in the Inquisition at Ormus, by the Portingals. 420

I

IAgo an Iland and towne. 146
Iames Storie an English Painter. 211. He forsaketh the company of the English, and entereth into the monasterie at Goa. 211
Iaua Maior an Iland of the Moluccaes. 50. The description of Iaua by Mandeuil. 50. A latter description thereof by M. Candish. 812. The humanitie of the inhabitants to the English. 812. The commodities of the Iland. 812. The king of Iaua his name, and curtesies to the English. 812. The names of diuers kings of Iaua. 813. Certaine words of the language of Iaua. 813
Ierome Bowes knight. 487. His commission frō the Queenes Maiestie for his ambassage into Russia. 487. His departure from England, and arriuall in Russia. 491. His intertainment at Yeraslaue. 491. He receiueth a supper from the Emperour at his arriuall at Mosco. 491. His conference with certaine counsellers of the Emperor. 492. His seueral intertainments at the Emperours court. 493. 494 495. He is cauilled with by the Emperour. 494. The Emperours Councellers and officers abuse him. 495. He receiueth iustice of the Emperour vpon those that abused him. 495. The scroll of his diet allowed by the Emperour. 496. He receiueth much fauour, & the grant of his demaunds of the Emperour. 499. Hee departeth from Mosco. 499
Ierome Horsey Gentleman, her Maiesties seruant. 819. his discourse of the solemne coronation of the Emperour of Russia. 819. His commendable coastēion with Iohn de Wale a Dutch proud merchant. 821. He is preferred before Iohn de Wale by the Emperour. 821. His iourney ouer land from Russia to England. 822. His large and honourable allowance of victuals from the Emperour. 823 The Emperour his rich gifts bestowed vpon him. 823
Ierusalem. 181. The monuments that are at this day to be seene, in, and about Ierusalem. 181. 182
Iesus of London, a ship so called sent to Tripolis in Barbarie. 192. The effect and issue of that voyage. 193. 194. 195. the ship taken in the harbour, and the goods confiscated. 195. The ship and goods commaunded to be againe restored by the great Turke. 197
Iesus of Lubeck one of her Maiesties ships. 556. It is betrayed by the Spaniards, and left in the porte of S. Iohn de Vllua. 556
Iewes and their number in the citie of Venice. 179. Their habite, Synagogue, and maner of prayer. 179
India deuided into three parts. 47. India why so called. 47. Indians of America described. 584 The commodities of the East India, & from what place or places each particular commoditie doth come. 218. 219
Iohn Baptista Ramusius Secretarie to the state of Venice. 504. His honourable mention of the English navigations to Moscoue. 504. His opinion of the benefite of that nauigation, if it were continued to Cathaia. 504. His testimonie of Sebastian Cabots voyage out of England. 513
Iohn Cabot and his 3. sonnes entertained for discouerie by king Henry the 7. 509. 510. Iohn Cabot and his sonne Sebastians voyage. 511
Iohn Chilton his discourse of the West India. 587. his trauels throughout all Noua Hispania. 588. 589
Iohn Dauis his first voyage for the discouerie of the Northwest passage. 776. His second voyage for that purpose. 781. His third voyage. 789. His two letters to M. Sanderson touching that discouerie. 786. 792
Iohn Drake captaine of the barke Francis in M. Fentons voyage. 647. He proceedeth in his voyage to the River of Plate. 667. His barke cast away in that riuer. 673. He & his company encounter with the Sauages. 673. He breaketh from the Sauages, & commeth to the Spaniards. 674. He is sent ouer land to the Viceroy of Peru. 674.
Iohn Eldred his voyage to Tripolis in Syria, Babylon and Balsara. 331. &c.
Iohn Erigene. 4. His trauell to Athens. 4. His fauour with two of the French kings. 4. Hee was Schoolemaster to Alfred the king, and his sonnes. 4. Aristotles politiks translated by him into three tongues. 4. He is slaine in the Abbey of Malmesburie by some of his owne scholers. 4
Iohn Eusham his voyage into Egypt. 222. 223
Iohn Fox gunner in the ship called the Three halfe moones. 150. his imprisonment in Alexandria. 151. he inuenteth, and proposeth meanes to deliuer himselfe & the rest of the Christians there prisoners. 152. he killeth the keeper of the prison. 152. he openeth the prison, and leadeth out all the Christian prisoners. 153. he and the rest of the prisoners suddenly furnish vp a gallie, and escape to sea. 153. he arriueth with the gally at Gallipoly in Candie. 154. his sword reserued in the abby there for a monument. 154. he trauelleth by land to Rome. 154. The prior & friers of Gallipoly giue him a certificate for testimony of his great enterprise. 155. The The popes letter of commendation in his behalfe to all princes. 155. The king of Spaines letters, bestowing vpon him the roome of a gunner. 155. Certaine verses for further witnesse of the action written by A. M. 156
Iohn Hawkins now knight, and treasurer of her Maiesties nauy. 522. he taketh 300 Negroes vpon the coast of Guiny. 522. he saileth with them to Noua Hispania. 522. he traffiketh by force and sword in all the ports of Noua Hispania that he came to. 532. he entreth the riuer De la Hacha, and discomfiteth the Spanyards that resisted him. 534. he rangeth all the coast of Florida. 538. he relieueth the French men in Florida. 542. he taketh a towne in Guiny of 2000 Negroes. 553. he taketh the towne and bulwarks in Rio de la Hacha. 554. he taketh three Spanish shippes laden with passengers. 554. he is driuen by a storme to S. Iohn de Vllua. 554. The Spanish fleet arriue there at that time. 555. The conditions of peace betweene him and the Spanish Viceroy. 555. 564. he is betrayed by the periured Spanish Viceroy. 555. he putteth 100 of his men on land in the bay of Mexico. 556. 566. his misery and distresse. 556
Iohn Mandeuill knight, borne in the towne of S. Albans. 23. his life and commendation written by M. Bale. 23. his tombe epitaph, & other monuments of his in the city of Leege. 24. The table and contents of euery chapter of his booke. 24. 25. The dedication of his booke to king Edward the third. 25. he vseth two notable verses of the corruption of his time. 25. The cause why he vndertooke his trauell. 26. The continuance of his trauell for 33 yeeres. 26. A briefe commemoration of the particular countries, and places of his trauell. 26. His seruice of Melek Mandibron the Soldan of Aegypt in his warres. 30. 34. A great marriage offered him by the said Soldan. 30. his acquaintance in the court of the Soldan with a learned phisitian, whose helpe he confesseth to haue vsed in the making of his booke in the city of Leege. 76. 77. his reason why God suffered Palestina to be subdued, and possessed by diuers nations. 35. his disputation and reasons whether Ierusalem standeth in the mids of the earth, yea or no. 36. 37. his speech and conference with the Soldan. 44. 45. his desire for the amendment of the ill liues of the Christians. 44. his prayer for the conuersion of the Saracens to the true faith of Christ. 45. his notable persuasion to credit the varieties and diuersityes of the world. 45. his experience in diamond stones. 47. his trauels as farre as 33 degrees of Southerly latitude. 53. he remayned three whole yeeres in Cambalu a city of China. 57 The countryes through which he returned into England. 75. his booke written in the city of Leege. 76. An admonition to the reader by M. Richard Hakluyt, concerning the purging of the absurd and corrupt impressions of Mandeuill. 77. Certaine testimonies alleged out of Plinie agreeing with Mandeuill, touching the strange formes and shapes of men. 77. 78. 79. Magister Ioannes ad Barbam, the name of him that directed and helped Mandeuill in committing his trauels to writing. 77
Iohn Metellus Sequanus a strāger his testimony concerning the Northeast nauigations of the English. 505
Iohn Newbery his voyage ouer land into the East Indies. 238. his letter from Aleppo to M. Richard Hakluyt of Oxford. 208. his letter from Aleppo to M. Leonard Poore merchant of London. 208. another letter of his to the foresaid M. Poore, written from Babylon. 209. The imprisonment of him and of his company at Ormuz. 210. the causes of his imprisonment. 210. 211. his delinery out of the prison of Ormuz. 210. he is sent prisoner to Goa by the captaine of Ormuz. 211 Two Iesuites of the college of S. Paul in Goa, whereof one an English man labour in his behalfe. 211. The discourse and maner of his trouble,

trouble. 211,212
Iohn Oxnam of Plymmouth. 595. his notable aduenture in the South sea. 595. The Spanyards pursuit after him and his company. 295, 296
Iohn Tyntam & William Fabian Englishmen intended a voyage to Guiny in yeere 1481. 81
Iohn de Walea Dutch man traffiking in Russia. 439. he vanteth himselfe to be the king of Spaines subiect. 821. his ambitious desire in Russia to be preferred before the Queene of Englands subiect. 821. M. Ierome Horsey notwithstanding is preferred before him by the Emperour. 821
Iohn Whitehall an English man dwelling at Santos in Brasil. 638. his letter set to M. Draper of London from Santos. 638. his letter answered by certaine merchants of London. 640. a liberall reward & gift sent him by the sayd merchants. 641
Ioppa forsaken of the Sarracens for feare of king Richard. 12. The treason of the prince of Ioppa intended against prince Edward. 21 his messenger vnder pretence of deliuering letters woundeth the prince. 21. his forged message to excuse his villany. 22. The Bassha of Ioppa. 181
Isakius king of Cyprus. 10. he cruelly intreateth all the Englishmen driuen by tempest vpon his coasts. 10. his proud answere to king Richards honest request. 10. he is put to flight by king Richard. 10. his imperiall standerd taken by the Englishe. 10. hee yeeldeth himselfe to king Richard. 10. he is committed to certaine keepers. 10. he escapeth from his keepers, and defieth king Richard. 11. he is taken againe by king Richard, and kept in fetters of golde, and sent to Tripolis. 11
Italians great enemyes to the Englishs for theyr trade in the East. 212
Iustinian the Emperours image in Constantinople. 27

K

KEne an Island of Norway. 466
King Edwards letters sent by Sir Hugh Willoughby to the North, and East Princes. 263, 264
Kings of Cambaia and China written vnto by the Queenes Maiestie. 207
Kings of England acknowledged for Lordes of Cyprus. 21
King of Marocco in Barbarie. 238. His edict in fauour of the English marchants. 238. His letter written to the Earle of Leycester. 238
Kings of Spaine and Portingall, deuided the world betwixt them two. 255
Kings and great Lords called Weroances of the Sauages of Virginia. 738
Kissing vsed in Moscouie, as in all the Greeke Churches. 342

L

LAbassi the name of an Idolatrous Priest in the East. 75
Language of the Lappians, a northerne people. 329
Language of the people inhabiting about the northwest passage. 783
Lapland described. 335
Laudonier a French Captaine in Florida, relieued by Sir Iohn Hawkins. 539. 540. Laudonier his owne discourse, confessing the same reliefe and friendship. 544
Laurence Aldersey. 177. His voyage to the Cities of Ierusalem and Tripolis. 177. 178. 179. His second voyage to the Cities of Alexandria, and Cayro in Aegypt. 224
Laurence Chapman seruant to the Moscouie companie. 413. His letter written to the companie from Casbin in Persia. 413. He receaueth priuiledges for the companie of the Shawgh of Persia. 415
Lawes and ordinances appointed by King Richard for his nauie. 7
Lawyers not suffered nor maintained in Russia. 289. The manner of proceeding in Lawe in Russia. 289
League Geometricall defined in verse. 26
Leaues of trees of an exceeding length and bignes. 102
Leophares a people of Guinie. 525
Letters of conspiracie against King Richard, sent by the French King to Tancred, King of Sicilie, by the Duke of Burgundie. 9. The same letters produced and shewed to the French Kings face. 9
Lewes the French kings preparation for an expedition into Asia. 17
Libanus the mountaines. 231. The commodities and fruites of those mountaines. 231
Liccuris in great plentie. 349. It groweth vnder the ground like a roote. 349
Limpoid the Duke of Austria betraieth King Richard. 12. he selleth him to the Emperour. 13. The iust iudgement of God vpon him for that wicked fact. 13. at his death he repenteth it, and forgaue 50000. markes to King Richard, and sent home his hostages. 13
Limprem a porte towne in the Ile of Cyprus, forsaken by the Inhabitants, for feare of the Englishs. 10
Lionel Plumtree his prouision for a voyage to Cathay, out of Persia. 420
Lions of a huge bignes. 52
London famous in Persia, for the cloth that is brought thither. 380. London better knowen by name among the Princes of Persia, then the generall terme of England. 416
Longitudes of places hard to be found out. 255. The way how to finde out the longitudes & latitudes of places in the Mappe. 253
Loshacka a Russe so called. 318. His relation & familiar report to Stephen Burrough, touching the riuer of Ob. 318
Luke Ward Capeaine of the Edward Bonauenture in Master Fentons voiage. 647. He committeth the proceedings in that voyage to writing. 783

M

MAcham an Englishman, the first discouerer of the Island of Madera. 80. The port of Machico in Madera so called to this day according to his name. 80. A chappell built in the said Island by him 80. In a boate made of a tree, he sailed from Madera to the coast of Affricke. 80. The Moores take him, and present him for a miracle to the king of Castile. 80.
Madera the Island described. 89
Magellans Streights. 809. Two Islandes in the Streight named by sir Francis Drake Bartholomew and Penguin. 809. The towne of King Philip in the Streight. 809. The Englishmen call it the towne of famine, because they sould almost all the Spaniards starued. 810. Sixe pieces of Ordinance taken by M. Candish from the towne. 810. The noysome stench of the towne force the English to leaue it. 810. Treacherous Sauages in the Streight, slaine by the English. 810. A description of the Streight. 807. Another towne in the Streight called Nombre de Iesus. 807
Magicians in the Court of the Grand Can. 58
Mahomet the false prophet of the Turkes. 43. The meanes that hee vsed to aspire to the kingdome of Arabia. 43
Malacha a citie of the East India. 217. The waights, measures, and money currant there. 217.
Malgo king of England, and his conquests. 214
Malestrand a straunge whirlepoole vpon the coast of Norway. 314
Malta Island. 158. The gouernour thereof called the great Master of Malta. 185. His passport made to the Englishmen of the barke Raynolds. 185. 186
Manteo the name of a Sauage brought into England, and transported againe into Virginia. 767. His faithfull seruice to the English in Virginia. 741
Marchants of London assist the king of Portingall in the winning of Ceut in Barbarie. 79
Marchants among the Negroes in Guiny. 110
Meccha the place of Mahomets sepulchre. 32, 44. The description of his sepulchre. 44
Melinde kingdome. 95
Memnon a miraculous pond neere Achon. 26
Memphys ruines. 226
Messana a city of Sicile. 8. The citizens shut the English men out of theyr gates, being afrayd of them. 8. The fury of the English against the citizens. 8. The citizens of Messana put to flight by the English. 8. The city it selfe woonne by the English. 8
Michaell Stropeny an Italian the cause of M. Iohn Newbene his trouble at Ormuz. 210
Miles Philips his aduentures in Nona Hispania. 565, 569. he weareth the Benito in Mexico. 575. he learneth the faculty of silke weauing in Mexico. 575. he aduentureth to escape out of the West Indies. 577. The maner of his escaping. 577. 578
Mina a castle vpon the coast of Guiny, belonging to the king of Portingall. 90. the Portingalles in the castle inhabite the English, and will not permit theyr accesse to it. 140 they shoot all theyr ordinance against one small English boat, and yet hurt it not. 140
Monasterium Griffonum a strong holde in Sicile woonne by king Richard. 7
Monastery of sinay. 33. The counterfeit relikes of saints in the same monastery. 33
Monsons or seasonable times for shipping in the East Indies. 219. 220. 221
Morgiouets an harbour in Mare Glaciale. 317
Morsa a certaine fish of great estimation among the Russes. 289
Moscouie discouered by sea by the English going for Cathay. 280. The occasion of aduancing the discouerie of Moscouie. 280. The merchants of London the setters forward of the discouerie. 280. it is discouered by sea by Richard Chanceler. 283. The discription of Moscouie. 285. The chiefest riuers in Moscouie. 285. The sharpnes of the winter in Moscouie. 285. The description of Mosco the chiefe city. 286. 337. The maner of theyr building in Moscouie. 286. The castle in the city of Mosco described. 286, 336. The discipline of warre among the Moscouits. 287 They vse to ride with short sturrops. 287 The hard and miserable liuing of the Moscouites in the time of warre. 287. Moscouie hath no lawyers, but euery man is his owne lawyer. 289. The religion, seruice, ministerie, & other ecclesiasticall rites among the Moscouites. 290. The church of Moscouie obserueth the orders, ceremonies, customes & traditions of the Greeke church. 290. The fasts of the Moscouits are foure in number euery yeere. 290. Monasteries in Moscouie. 292 The maner of substituting a new abbat in the roome of an abbat deceased. 292. The ceremonyes and customes of the Moscouits at the time of death vsually obserued. 292. their apparell and forme therof. 292. The coines that are there currant, and the valuation of them. 293. The weights there vsed in buying and selling. 293. The commodities of Moscouie in generall. 294. The fluxe of Moscouie. 295. The riuer of Mosco hallowed euery yeere. 341. The Russes lent. 341. The metropolitane of Mosco. 342. The honor done to the metropolitane by the Emperour. 342 The metropolitans house led by the Emperour. 342. The religious men of Moscouie, and theyr maners. 344. The hospitality vsed in theyr monasteries. 341. No preachers in all Russia. 344. theyr moonks are merchants. 344. The ornaments of theyr churches. 344 Second marriages forbidden theyr priests. 345. theyr maner of baptisme. 345. theyr ridiculous maner of marriage. 345. The maner of theyr buriall. 346. The women paint their faces. 346
Moscouite Emperour. 286. 343. his letter sent to Richard Chanceler. 286. he entertaineth Richard Chanceler, and his company honorably. 286. The name of Emperour hath but lately beene vsed of the dukes of Moscouy. 343. The magnificence of the Emperors estate in the time of war. 287. The maner how the Emperour

Emperour recompenceth the valiant ſeruices of his ſubiects. 288. The goods of the rich men in Moſcouie are at the pleaſure of the Emperour, to take them when he pleaſeth 288. The pompe of the ambaſſadours ſent from the Emperour to ſoren princes. 288 The Emperour heareth and determineth of all controuerſies himſelfe. 289. The Emperours letters to king Edward. 292,293. The Emperour himſelfe a merchant. 295. his firſt priuileges granted to the Engliſh merchants. 302. his priuileges granted the 4 time of M Randolphs ambaſſage. 402. his more ſpeciall priuileges procured our merchants at M. Randolphs ſute. 406. The Maieſtie and ſtatelineſſe of the Emperour. 336,339. A yeerely triumph vſed by the Emperour, and the maner thereof. 340. The Emperours wardrobe. 342. his behauiour in time of peace and of warre. 343. Three ſpeciall things wherein the Emperour chiefly delighteth. 343

Moſcouie inland deſcribed. 400. The husbandrie vſed in Moſcouie. 410. The feaſts of the common people. 408. The attire of the common people. 410,411,412. theyr rudeneſſe and barbarouſneſſe. 413. theyr drunkeneſſe & adulteries. 408,409. An vniuerſall plague amongſt them. 427. The latitude of certaine places in Moſcouie. 389. Diſtances of certaine places in Moſcouie. 385,386. A ſpeciall houſe at Moſco in Ruſſia built for ambaſſadors. 401. The furniture, attyre, and maners of horſſemen in Moſcouie. 412

Mount of Oliues. 38

Murſe Smille a Tartar prince. 350

Murtezallie the great prophet whom the Perſians honor. 373. theyr fables concerning him. 423

Muſike requiſite for long voyages, to comfort and recreate the nauigants. 684. Muſike alſo neceſſary in voyages of diſcouery, to allure the rude Sauages. 684,776

N

NAgaians a people ſo called, bordering vpon Ruſſia. 348. The maner of their liuing. 349. They liue in hordes like paſturers. 349. ſome of that people aſſault the Engliſh vpon the riuer of Volga. 419. The fight betweene them and the Engliſh. 419. The Engliſh kill 220 of them. 419.

Natiuidad a porte of the South Sea, where the ſhippes of the Philippianaes arriue. 589

Nature is no piggard when ſhe giueth any thing 252

Nauie of king Richard in Cyprus conſiſted of 254. ſhips, and threeſcore galliots. 10

Nauigations of the Portingals being ſo long, breed many diſeaſes among ꝑ Nauigants. 162

Nailes of the hands ſuffered to grow very long. 76

Nazareth taken by prince Edward from the Saracens. 20

Negroes vſe to race their skinnes. 101. a prettie deuiſe of the Negroes in Guinie to deſerie the enimie. 118. Negroes ſlayne, and their towne burnt in Guinie by the Engliſh. 126. another towne of the Negroes burnt by the Engliſh in Guinie. 795. A Negro ſteales a ſhipboat in the night with merchandiſe from an Engliſh ſhips ſide. 132. No trueth in Negroes. 513. The deceitfull dealing of a Negro king. 563

Newfoundland firſt diſcouered by the Engliſh. 251,256. The deſcription of Newfoundland. 657. the abúdance & variety of fiſh there to be had. 657. The banke vpon the coaſt of Newfoundland. 683. The ſtate, nature, grounds and commodities of Newfoundland 688. Siluer oare in Newfoundland. 688. The number of French, Spaniſh and Portingall ſhips that frequent the fiſhing at Newfoundland. 674

New Iſlands diſcouered by the Engliſh. 253

Nicholas Chancellor the writer of Arthur Pet, and Charles Iackmans diſcouerie. 476

Nicholas Lambert one of the company in the firſt voyage to Guinie. 86

Nicholas de Linna a Franciſcan Frier, and a Mathematician of Oxford. 248. His voiage made to the regions vnder the North pole. 248. 249. A teſtimonie of M. Iohn Dee concerning his voyage. 249

Nilus the famous riuer of Egypt. 29. The maner how it is conueied to the citie of Alexandria. 29. where hence it ſpringeth, and how it runneth. 32. The time of the ſwelling and riſing of it. 32

Nine in number very acceptable to the Tartares 60. The reaſon thereof. 60

North parts of the world ſeeme to be left to be diſcouered by the Engliſh nation. 250

Northeaſt paſſage diſputed, Pro, and Con. 604. 606. 607

Northerne diſcouerie proſecuted, would proue very commodious to our kingdome. 257

Northweſt paſſage prooued by authoritie. 597. The ſame prooued by reaſon. 599. The ſame prooued in part by experience. 601. The ſame prooued by circumſtances. 602. The profit of the ſame paſſage 607. 608. The ſame paſſage prooued by M. Richard Wills. 610. The ſame paſſage called by the Spaniards the Engliſhmens Streight. 646. Probabilities of the paſſage by Iohn Dauis his diſcouerie. 780

Norway kingdome annexed to the crowne of Britaine. 245

Noua Zembla in the Northeaſt ſea yeelds wood and water, things neceſſarie for the diſcouerie of that paſſage. 477

Nouogrode a citie in Ruſſia. 288. The deſcription thereof. 288

O

OB, a famous riuer in the Northeaſt ſea. 318 Knowen familiarlie to the Ruſſe fiſhermen. 318. Certaine demonſtration thereof giuen by a Ruſſe to M. Stephé Burrough. 318

Obdolowcan king of Hircania. 367. his maieſtie and attire. 367. His pauilion, tents, or naments and maner of feaſting. 367. His honorable intertaining of M. Anthonie Ienkinſon 367. His Concubines 140. in number. 368. He beſtoweth a faire horſe with his furniture vpon M. Ienkinſon. 368. Hee writeth to the great Sophie of Perſia twiſe in M. Ienkinſons behalfe. 371. He granteth priuileges to the merchants of London. 374. A copie of thoſe priuileges. 374

Obſeruations, notes or iournals to be vſed in all nauigations. 259

Obſeruations made by the Engliſh of the Caſpian ſea. 443

Ogerus a captaine of Denmarke. 41. 49. 50. betrayed by the Templaries. 44

Oliuer Dawbeney his report concerning his voyage. 508

Olympus and the heigth thereof. 27

Onega a great lake in Ruſſia. 392

Orders for a Fleete ſet out in diſcouerie. 259

Ordinance of braſſe in Ruſſia. 340

Ormuz a citie of the Eaſt India. 210. 211. The ſituation therof in an Iſland. 47. The waights meaſures, moneys and cuſtomes of the kingdome of Ormuz. 214

Oſep Napea Ambaſſador from the Emperor of Moſcouie to Queene Mary. 321. His honourable receiuing and intertainment in the citie of London. 323. his dangerous ſhipwrack vpon the coaſt of Scotland. 322. Gifts giuen him by Queene Mary. 323. Gifts giuen him by the merchants. 326. His arriuall backe againe in Ruſſia. 338. His intertainment at Colmogro in Ruſſia. 338

Oſman Baſſha, the name of the captaine of Derbent. 448

Othe of fidelitie betwixt king Richard and the French king 7. The ſame oth broken on the French kings part. 8. The ſame oth renewed againe betweene the two kings. 8

Oth by the water of the Sea vſed by the Negroes. 104

Othes, ſwearing, and vngodly talke not to bee ſuffered at Sea. 260

Oxe, worſhipped in certaine Iſlands of the Eaſt India. 48. 51. The barbarous ceremonies vſed in that adoration. 48. 49

Oxus a great and famous riuer. 352

Oile iſſuing out of the ground. 425

P.

PAtent granted by her Maieſty for a trade to the riuer of Senega, & Gambia in Guiny. 241

Peace concluded betweene king Richard and Tancred king of Sicilie. 8. Peace concluded betweene them the ſecond time. 9

Pearles in great abundance in Rio de la Hacha in Noua Hiſpania. 553. The Iſland of pearles in the South ſea. 595

Pechincow monaſterie in Ruſſia. 334

Pechora a riuer and towne in Ruſſia. 314

Pelagius head of ꝑ college of Bangor in Wales. 3,4. his trauell into Aegypt, Syria, and other regions of the Eaſt. 3,4. his hereſie & baniſhment for the ſame. 3,4

Pemiſapun a Sauage king in Virginia. 740. his conſpiracy againſt the Engliſh. 744. he is ſlain by the Engliſh. 746

Penguin an Iſland. 508. the latitude therof. 508

Penguins birds of that name in great abúdance. 508

Pepper. 48. the maner how it groweth and increaſeth. 48. the ſeuerall kindes of pepper. 48 pepper growing at Benin in Africa. 87. greẽ pepper brought home in the late Benin voyage. 818

Perſia with the diuiſion and deſcription therof. 63,372. The chiefe city of Perſia called Caſbin. 372. The difference in opinion of religion betweene the Turkes and Perſians. 373 Perſia otherwiſe called Keſelbaſh. 375. The Perſian merchants very vnconſtant in theyr dealings. 414. The Perſians write vpon red paper. 418. The letters vſed by the Perſians, and the ſignification of them. 418. The maner of intertaining ſtrangers at the Sophies court in Perſia. 422. The religion of the Perſians. 422. The originall of theyr religion. 422. The Perſians opinion of Chriſt. 423 The coine of the Perſians. 423. The Perſians rudeneſſe in literature. 423. A Perſian offending his prince, both he, his children, & kinred are puniſhed for the ſame. 423. The religious men, faſts and preachings of the Perſian prieſts vpon the tops of theyr churches. 423. The Perſians pilgrimage to the ſepulchre of Mahomet. 424. The Perſians obſerue circumciſion. 424. their houſes and maner of eating. 424

Perſipolis, and the ruines therof in Perſia. 410

Peter Baker of Ratcliffe a pirate in the Leuant ſeas. 171. he taketh & ſpoyleth certaine Grecians. 171. A redreſſe of his diſorders is promiſed by the Queenes Maieſty in her letters to the great Turke. 171

Peter de Ponte gouernor of the Iſland of Teneriffe. 514

Peter Vnticaro a Spanyard. 152. his couetous deſire of a few duckets the cauſe of his ruine and death. 153

Pettillego bay in Scotland. 322

Pharao his needle a monument in Alexandria. 223

Pheodore Anderwich Spiſemakie ambaſſadour from the Emperor of Ruſſia to the Queenes Maieſty. 487

Philip the French king, and Richard the firſt king of England ioyne theyr forces together to paſſe into Syria againſt the Sarracens. 6,7

Philip the French king aſſiſteth not the Engliſh according to his othe. 8. his intended treaſon againſt the perſon of king Richard. 9. his treaſon reuealed, and he charged with it by Philip earle of Flanders. 9. his forged and cauilling anſwere to the ſame. 9. his malitious perſuaſion to the inhabitants of Tyrus not to let king Richard enter theyr city. 11. his ſhamefull returne from the city of Achon. 12. he ſtirreth vp rebellion againſt king Richard being returned. 12,13

Phoenix the bird deſcribed by ſir Iohn Mandeuill, who confeſſeth to haue ſeene the ſame twiſe. 32

Pilgrims in Mandeuils time went firſt to Babylon to obtaine ſafe conduct of the Soldan. 29

Planting and a diſcourſe thereof written by ſir George Peccham knight. 705

Planting of Chriſtians, in the countryes of heathen

then Sauages proued to be lawfull. 705
Planting diuided into two parts. 705. The commodityes that will arise to our English nation by planting in America. 710. The profit of planting to all aduenturers in particular. 711
Planting in America profitable to the Sauages, 713. This planting is no matter of great charge or difficulty. 714
Pleico a towne in Russia. 289. The commodities thereof. 289
Pole of Plymmouth a shippe so called. 530
Pompe of owners of mines in Mexico in the West Indies. 549
Pompey his pillar in Alexandria. 223
Pope reprehended for vndertaking to bestow all the East countryes vpon the kinges of Portingall. 255
Portingalles villany towards M. William Towerson. 109. theyr trechery towards him and his company the second time. 110. The Portingalles with a brigandine range the coast of Guiny, warning the Negroes not to deale with the English. 110. Two Portingals slain by the English in a fight. 118. Banished Portingals. 146. their knauery alway towards the English. 148. A fight betweene one Englishshippe and seuen Portingalles. 148, 149 The same seuen Portingall shippes discomfited by that one English shippe. 149. A Portingall shippe defended by the English from pirats. 150. The Portingalles nauigation by the cape of Bona Speranza described. 160, 161, 162. The Portingalles saile from Goa to Lisbone commonly in fiue monethes. 162 The king of Portingall a merchant in the trade of the East. 252. The king of Portingalles ambassage sent into England to hinder the voyage of two Englishmen intended for Guiny. 81
Poyson of the Sauages of America. 530
Prayer dayly most requisite in all voyages, and sea attempts. 260
Presbiter Iohn Emperor in Affrike. 65. The description of his pallace. 65. The magnificence and ornaments of the same pallace. 66. The reason of his name. 66. The largeneſſe and latitude of his Empire. 66. The diuision therof into prouinces. 66. Seuen kings alwayes attending vpon him in his court. 66. his discipline in warre, and his ensignes which are crosses. 67
Prince of Northwales called Madoc, the sonne of Owen Gwinneld. 506. his voyage to the West Indies with certaine ships prouided at his owne charge. 506. his second voyage to those parts. 506. The opinion of M. Doctour Powell and Humfrey Lloid concerning that voyage. 506
Pursers of shippes, and theyr duetie. 309. Instructions & directions for pursers. 309, 310
Pyramides certaine monuments in the city of Cayro in Aegypt. 223

Q

QVeene Elizabeth her gracious Maiestie that now is. 164. Her Maiesties seuerall letters written to the great Turke. 164. 171. 183. 199. Her Maiesties commission to M. Harebrowne Ambassadour in Turkie. 176. Her maiesties letters patents or priuileges giuen to Sir Edward Osburne and M. Richard Staper. 172. Her Maiesties letters to the great Turke to procure the restitution of an English ship called the Iesus. 199. Her Maiesties letters to the Emperour of Marocco. 219 Her Maiesties letter to the Emperour of Russia for M. Ienkinsons passage through Russia into Persia. 359. 360. Her Maiesties letters to the great Sophie of Persia. 361. Her maiesties Acte for the corporation of merchant Aduenturers. 394. Her Maiesties present to the Emperor of Russia, sent by M. Thomas Randolph 401. Her Maiesties letters and present sent to the sayd Emperour by M. Anthonie Ienkinson. 427. Her Maiesties letters to the Emperour sent by Sir Ierome Bowes. 489. Her Maiesties letters written to the king of Cambaia. 207. Her Maiesties letters written to the king of China. 207. Her Maiesties letters patents giuen to Sir Humfrey Gilbert for inhabiting in America. 677. Her Maiesties letters patents giuen to Sir Walter Raleigh, to discouer and plant in America. 725. Her Maiestie admired and honourably spoken of among the Turkes. 214. Her Maiesties title to all the countreyes of America lying North from Florida. 709
Queene Mary her letters patents granted to the Merchaunts of the Moscouie company in London. 304

R

RAfe Fitch one of M. Iohn Newberies companie at Goa. 112. His letter written to M. Leonard Poore of London frō Goa. 212
Rafe Lane Gentleman, gouernour of Virginia. 736. The names of those Englishmen that remained in Virginia vnder his gouernment. 736. His prudent and painefull gouernment described. 739. 740. 741. His requests to Sir Francis Drake at his arriuall in Virginia. 747. He obtaineth all his requests. 746. Hee leaueth Virginia, and with his company commeth for England. 747. His opinion of M. Thomas Harriots discourse touching Virginia. 748. His letter to M. Richard Hakluyt of the middle Temple, touching the state of Virginia. 793
Rafe Rutter a rebell to the Queenes Maiestie in Russia. 432. He is required to be sent into England by the Emperour of Russia. 432. The Emperour granteth it. 434
Rainulph Glanuil Earle of Chester. 17. He is sent with an armie to the siege of Damiata in Egypt. 17. His valure in that seruice commended by Polydore Virgil. 17
Reason, and cause of the name of the Sea called the red sea. 32
Reedes of a huge bignesse. 51
Religion must be the beginning and foundation of all discoueries and plantings. 680. The difference of religion in a countrey, is the cause of much mischiefe and bloudshed. 373. 419. 423
Richard the first king of England. 6. His preparation and expedition towards Ierusalem. 6. The occasion of his iourney. 6. Mony gathered in the Realme towards that iourney. 6. His most pompous and honourable entrance into the citie of Messana in Sicilie. 7. His exceeding bounteousnes and liberalitie towards the French king and others. 8. His liberalitie purchased him great loue and fauour. 8. Hee departeth from Messana in Sicilie toward Achon with 150. great ships, and 53. great gallies. 9. His nauie dispersed by a tempest. 9. He himselfe with a few ships driuen to the Isle of Creta. 9. He arriueth in Cyprus. 10. He intreateth the king to restore the goods of the English that he had taken away. 10. He, and his souldiours inuade the Isle of Cyprus. 10. He setteth vpon Isakius the king early in the morning, and taketh great spoiles. 10. Hee marieth Berengaria the king of Nauarres daughter at Limyzem in Cyprus. 10. He arriueth at Achon. 11. He with his wife entereth the citie of Achon, and lodgeth in the kings palace. 12. Hee beheadeth 2500. Sarracen prisoners. 12. Hee putteth the Salladine to flight, and slayeth many of his nobles & captains. 12. He passeth throughout all the land of Syria without resistance. 12. He concludeth peace with the Turkes for three yeeres. 12. He returneth from Palestina, and is by a tempest driuen to the partes of Histria. 12. He is betrayed by Limpoldi a duke of Austria 12. Hee is sold to the Emperour for 60000. markes. 13. The cause of malice for which Limpoldus tooke him. 13. He is ransomed for 104. thousand pounds. 13
Richardus Canonicus a Poet that went with king Richard into Syria, and describeth the things that happened in that voyage, calling his booke, *Itinerarium Regis Richardi*. 15
Richard Carter an Englishma dwelling in Brasil. 660. He is taken by M. Fenton⁹ ships vpon the coast of Brasil. 660
Richard Chancelor grand Pilot in the voyage intended for the discouerie of Cathay. 281. He is commended to the merchaunts of the Moscouie companie, by Sir Henry Sidney. 281. He discouereth Moscouie by Sea. 283. His intertainment with the Russes. 283. 284 His iourny by land from S. Nicholas to Mosco. 284. The Emperour of Moscouie his curteous letters written to him. 284. Hee arriueth at Mosco. 286. He deliuereth king Edwards letters to the Emperour. 286. His honourable intertainement and feasting at the Court. 286. His perishing vpon the coast of Scotland. 342
Richard Clarke master of Sir Humfry Gilberts Admirall ship. 700. He excuseth himselfe touching the losse of the ship. 700
Richard Greenuill knight his voyage to Virginia. 733. He buildeth a forte in the Iland of S. Iohn neere Hispanola. 734. He banqueteth the gouernour of Port de Plata in S. Iohns. 735. His valiant boording & taking of a rich Spanish ship, with a litle cocke boate. 736
Richard Hakluyt Esquire of Eyton in the Countie of Hereford. 454. His directions giuen to Morgan Hubblethorne Dier sent into Persia. 454. His instructions giuen to Arthur Pet and Charles Iackman for their intended discouerie. 460. M. Oliuer Dawbeney his report to him of M. Hores voyage in the time of king Henry 8. 518. The discourse of Henry Hawkes touching the West Indies, written vpon his motion and request. 545. His aduise and notes giuen to diuers gentlemē of M. Frobishers company. 636. A letter written to him out of Virginia by M. Rafe Lane concerning the state of that countrey. 793
Richard Hakluyt of Oxford. 77. His admonition to the Reader concerning his new impression of Mandeuil. 77. The historie of Laudonier translated out of French into English by him. 543. A letter written to him from Newfoundland concerning the state thereof by Stephanus Parmenius a learned Hungarian. 697. His good light giuen to the merchaunts of Bristow concerning the state of America. 718. A letter written to him by Gerardus Mercator from Duisburg in Cleue touching a Northeasterne discouerie. 483. He is one of the societie or company to whom Sir Walter Raleigh his assignment is made for prosecuting the discoueries and plantings in America. 815
Richard Staper merchant of London. 172. One of the company of merchaunts trading into Turkie. 172. A letter written to him frō Santos in Brasil by one Iohn Whitehall. 638
Roane in Fraunce vnder the obedience of Richard the first king of England. 7
Robert Baker his first voyage to Guinie. 130. His second voyage to Guinie. 135. His imprisonment in France. 130. 131. 142. His aduentures in Guinie & about the coasts therof. 137. 138
Robert, brother to Lewes the French king. 18. His foolish and presumptuous pride. 18. His proud and insolent answer to the wholesome counsell of the Templaries. 19. His proude scorne and contemptuous refusal of William Longwoorth his sober aduise. 19. His late repentance of his headie rashnes. 19. His cowardly flight from the battell. 19. He perisheth in the riuer Thasnis oppressed with harnesse. 19
Robert Curson a noble man of England a great traueller, & created Cardinal at Rome. 16. 17
Robert Gainsh M. of the Iohn Euangelist, in the 2. English voyage to Guinea. 89
Robert surnamed Ketenensis, an Englishman. 6. His trauell into Dalmatia, Greece & Asia. 6
Robert Tomson. 482. His trouble in Mexico in the West India for religion. 583. He is forced to weare the Benito in Mexico, 584. His description of Noua Hispania. 586
Robert Turneham a Diuine. 23. His trauel with prince Edward into Syria. 23
Robert Thorne merchant of Bristow. 250. His letter to king Henry the 8. incouraging him to discouer towards the North. 250. His discourse written to D. Leigh the kings Ambassador in Spaine touching the same discouerie.

352. His deſcription of the ſituation of the parties of the world in generall. 254. his epitaph in Latine verſe in the Temple church in London. 258

Roger Bodenham his voyage into the Weſt Indies. 522

Romane Soninga a French man turned Turke to ſaue his life in Tripolis in Barbarie. 195 he is hanged notwithſtanding, and dieth in the faith of a Turke. 195

S

SAba kingdome. 47

Saladine the Emperour of the Sarracens ſendeth gifts to king Richard. 12. The Saladine is put to flight by king Richard. 12

Salomons temple in Ieruſalem. 37

Salt Iſland at cape Verde. 128

Samboſes a people of Africa. 526

Samoides a people dwelling at the riuer Ob. 318. A deſcription of theyr maners. 318 They are a people of a Sauage and cruell nature. 319

Santa Cruz a towne in the iſland of Teneriffe. 143. Another towne of that name in the Iſland of Cuba in the Weſt Indies. 536

Sapies a people of Africa. 526

Sarracens baptized. 11. they reuolt againe, and forſake Chriſtianity. 11. The Sarracens breake theyr couenants. 12. The Sarracens forbidden to drinke wine. 35. The reaſon of that inhibition. 44. The conuerſion of the Sarracens how it is to be wrought. 43. The maners & religion of the Sarracens at large. 42. The common drinke of the Sarracens. 44. The errors of the Sarracens concerning the meanes of ſaluation. 44. A great ſhippe of the Sarracens taken by king Richard. 11

Sauages of America. 557. theyr kings, & maner of reuerence done to them. 557. Theyr houſes and townes. 558. theyr veſſels, furs, fruits, woods, and minerals. 559. theyr beaſts and birds. 560. theyr idols, burials and language. 561. The Sauages not to be vſed diſdainfully, or in any hard ſort. 261

Scots theft, and ſpoile of Engliſh goods. 322

Sea called the dead ſea. 40. The reaſon why it is ſo called. 40

Sebaſtian Cabot firſt gouernour of the Moſcouie company in London. 302, 305. his diſcouery of the Weſt Indies. 511. his ſecond voyage to Braſill. 512. The riuer of Plate in Braſill firſt diſcouered by him. 512. King Henry the ſeuenth ſet him forth to diſcouer. 514. Three Sauages brought by him into England. 515. His large penſion granted him by king Edward the ſixt. 519

Secoran a prouince in Virginia. 738

Sellizure a caſtle belonging to Azim Cam, a prince of Tartarie 352. The deſcription, and ſcituation of that caſtle. 352

Senega a riuer in Guiny. 94

Shally Murzey ſonne to the king of Hircania great friend to M. Ienkinſon in the Sophies court. 371

Shamakie a citie of Media. 358. The deſcription therof. 422

Shamma a towne in Guiny burnt by the Engliſh. 158

Shawgh or Sophie of Perſia. 420. his requeſt to the Engliſh merchants to haue mony of them by exchange, to offer to Mahomet. 420. The reaſon of that requeſt of his. 420. The reaſon of the word Shawgh. 422. his maner of liuing. 422. his cruelties to the nobilitie of the kingdome of Shiruan. 368. he ſendeth to the great Turke the head of his ſonne. 399. he beſtoweth a rich garment of cloth of golde vpon M. Ienkinſon. 371. he reputeth all ſtrangers vnholy people. 422

Shels of ſnailes very great. 51

Shippe called the Dominus vobiſcum. 517

Shippes without yron in the Perſian gulfe. 235 So alſo at Ormus, and in all the Eaſt Indian ſeas. 47. One hundred and twenty ſhippes of the Chriſtian princes broken, and drowned by a tempeſt, riding in the hauen of Trapez in Sicilia. 20. The ſorrow of the princes for the loſſe of thoſe ſhippes. 20

Sicilia, and the temperature therof. 16

Sierra Leona vpon the coaſt of Guiny a very contagious place. 528

Sigiſmundus ab Herberſten a large writer of the kingdome of Moſcouie. 413

Signes ordinary of the land of India to the nauigants in thoſe ſeas. 162

Silke graſſe growing in Virginia. 750. White ſilke in great abundance at Tripolis in Syria. 331

Siloe poole called Probatica Piſcina in Ieruſalem. 38

Sio an iſland. 225

Sion the mount, and the deſcription therof. 38

Sir George Pecham knight. 701. his learned diſcourſe of Weſterne planting. 701. his great zeale to the action of diſcouering and planting in America. 632. his aid and aſſiſtance in that behalfe yeelded to ſir Humfrey Gilbert. 628

Sleds vſed in Ruſſia. 284, 393. Two thouſand ſleds belonging to one towne in Ruſſia 393

Sloboda the Emperour of Ruſſia his houſe of recreation. 490

Shuda a certaine thing in Ruſſia which they vſe in windowes in ſted of glaſſe. 410

Soldan what it ſignifieth. 30. The deſcription of the pallace of the Soldan in Cayr in Aegypt. 30. The largenetle of his dominion. 30. The number, and names of the Soldans of Aegypt till ſir Iohn Mandeuils time. 30. The power, and number of men of armes that belong to the Soldan. 30. No meſſenger permitted to come to his preſence, without a garment of cloth of golde. 31. The maner of duty, and reuerence yeelded to him. 31. The ſafe conduct graunted by him to the Chriſtian pilgrims. 32. The forme of that conduct. 32 The reuerence of all officers yeelded therevnto when it is ſhewed. 32. The Soldans letters written in Mandeuils behalfe to all his officers. 32, 37. The meanes wherby the Soldan commeth to the knowledge of the ſtates of all Chriſtian kings and kingdomes. 45

Soliman the great Turke. 81. The maner of his entrance with his army into Aleppo in Syria. 81. his number of Nortans, Ianizaries pages of honour, Baſſaes and other men of armes with theyr habits, & armour at the ſame time. 81, 82. The totall number of that armie. 82. The rich preſents preſented to him at that time by his Baſſaes, & the Conſul of the Venetians in Tripolis. 82

Spaniſh fleet of the Weſt Indies conſiſting of nintereene ſailes. 122. The proud commandement of the Spaniſh Admirall to the Engliſh at the Iſlands. 122. The Spaniſh Admirall ſtoutly anſwered, and not obeyed by the Engliſh. 123. The Spaniſh merchants in Marocco commanded vppon paine of death to meet the Engliſh ambaſſador. 157. The king of Spaines indeuor to diſgrace the Queenes Maieſty, and her ambaſſador, with the Emperor of Marocco. 158. A Spaniſh price taken by the Engliſh, and ſolde at Argier. 226 Eleuen Spaniſh gallyes, and two frigats diſcomfited by fiue Engliſh ſhippes in the Leuant. 230. A proud Spaniſh Generall called Don Pedro de Leiua. 228. 229. his fooliſh bragge and threat to the Engliſh. 229. A Spaniſh ſlaue beaten to death by the king of Argiers commandement for abuſing an Engliſhman. 231. The Spanyards & Portingals at contention about the ſituation of places in the mappe 254, 256. Two Spanyards in Perſia deliuered from the hands of y Turks by the Engliſh, and brought by them into England. 449. The Spanyards in the Weſt Indies prohibited by the king from trafficking with Engliſh men. 529. Poore Spaniſh ſouldiers in S. Domingo. 529. The Spantards keepe alwayes horſſes ready ſadled in the Weſt Indies. 533. The Spanyards perfidie, villany, treachery and cruelty to the Engliſh. 556, 565. A Spaniſh hulke of fiue hundred tunnes caſt away. 581. A Spaniſh gouernour, his wife, daughters, and ſeruants drowned. 582. A rebellion in Nona Hiſpania by the Spanyards for the great exactions impoſed vpon them. 594. A Spaniſh pelle taken by the Engliſh vpon the coaſt of Braſill. 660 The number of one and twenty perſons taken in the ſame priſe. 660. A Spaniſh fleet ſent from Spaine to hinder the paſſage of the Engliſh through the ſtraight of Magellan. 660. Spaniſh friers taken by the Engliſh. 660 A Spaniſh ſhippe in Braſill ſunke by the Engliſh. 667. A Spaniſh viceroy called Don Martin Henriques. 555, 564. he falſifieth his promiſe, and periuriouſly breaketh his faith and word giuen to M. Iohn Hawkins. 555. A late example of Spaniſh periury, treacherie, and cruelty to our nation. 817

Springs of taire. 234

Starres once appearing are a ſigne of winter at hand in the North parts. 472

Stephanus Parmenius an Hungarian. 692. his letter touching the ſtate of Newfound land written from thence to M. Richard Hakluyt of Oxford. 697. he periſheth at ſea. 692

Steuen Burrough. 311. his nauigation towards the riuer of Ob. 311. The North cape ſo called firſt by him. 313

Stooues generally vſed in Ruſſia. 411

Sunne and moone honoured by the Sauages of America. 549

Sword fiſh killed by the Engliſh in Guiny. 653

T

TAbacco and the great vertue therof. 541

Tancred king of Sicilie. 8. his honorable intertainement of king Richard. 9. Fourt great ſhippes & fifteene gallies giuen by him towards the furtherance of king Richards enterprize. 9. he bewrayeth the intended treaſon & conſpiracy of the French king againſt king Richard. 9

Tangomangoes a people of Afrike. 529

Taprobana Iſland, with the deſcription therof. 75

Tartaria, and Tartars deſcribed, with theyr maners, habits, houſes, and other things. 61. Tartars call the Chriſtians Caphars. 351. Tartar haukes vſed to kill horſes. 353. Tartars diuining of things to come. 354. The maner of theyr diuinations. 354. A Tartarian prince called Sophet Kery Alli arriueth at Moſco in Ruſſia to ſee the new Emperour Pheodore. 822. The deſcription of that part of Tartarie called Tartaria prima. 29

Tauris the chiefe city of Perſia. 46. 369

Templaries giue wholeſome counſell to earle Robert the French kings brother. 19. theyr counſell ſcorned of him. 19. theyr prudent & valiant anſwere to his ſcorne. 19

Teneruke king of the country of Chricaſſi 372

Theodore the new Emperor of Ruſſia. 499. his royall coronation at Moſco obſerued by M. Ierom Horſey. 819

Thomas Alcocke ſeruant to the company of Moſcouie merchants. 375. he is murdered in the countrey of Hyrcania 375. The maner of his murder and cauſe therof. 378

Thomas Aldworth merchant and maior of Briſtoll. 718. his commendable forwardneſſe in diſcoueries and plantings. 718

Thomas Baniſter Agent for the Moſcouy company in Perſia. 419. he dyeth at Arraſh in Perſia. 420

Thomas Buts ſonne to ſir William Buts of Norfolke. 517

Thomas Candiſh gentleman. 734. he accompanieth ſir Richard Greenevill in his voyage to Virginia. 734. his preparation for a voyage into the South ſea. 809. his letter touching his voyage performed, written to my Lord Chamberlaine. 808. The diſcourſe and narration of his voyage. 809. The ſhippes taken by him in the South ſea. 810, 811. The great ſhippe of the Philippinaes called S. Anna taken by him. 812 his arriuall at the Iſle of Iaua. 812. The intertainement he had there. 812. his arriuall at the Iſland of S. Helena. 812

Thomas Pett knight, his voyage with Sebaſtian Cabot. 515. his faint heart ouerthrew the voyage. 515

Thomas Randolph ambaſſador from the Queene Maieſty to the Emperour of Ruſſia. 499. he obtaineth

obtaineth new and large priuileges of the Emperor for the English merchants. 402. A copie of those priuileges. 402. 403. his commission giuen for the discouery of the North-east sea to the riuer of Ob. 406
Thomas Sanders prisoner in Tripolis. 193. his discourse of the Turkish viage towards him and his company. 193. The meanes vsed for his deliuerie and the rest of the English captiues. 197, 198
Thomas Stevens an Englishe man resident at Goa in the East Indies. 160. his letter from Goa written to his father touching his voyage by the cape of Bona Speranza with the Portingals. 160. his friendly paines and trauell in the behalfe of M. Iohn Newbery imprisoned at Goa by the Portingals. 211
Timor Soltan the prince of Mangosiaue in Tartarie. 351
Townes of Sauages discouered by the English in Virginia. 738
Tortuga an Iland in the West Indies. 530
Trees bearing bombasine cotton. 418. Trees dropping water in Guiny. 324
Tribute of the king of Spaine in the West Indies. 559
Tripolis in Barburie. 198. The king of Tripolis and his people plagued diuerslie vpon theyr cruelty done to the English. 198
Tripolis in Syria. 231. The description thereof. 231
Tuberō a fish so called by the Portingals about the cape of Bona Speranza. 161. The description of that fish. 161
Tumen a certaine rate vsed in Persia. 378
The value of a Tumen. 378
Tunez. 223
Turks first letters to the Queenes Maiesty from Constantinople. 163. Those letters answered by the Queenes Maiesty. 164. his large priuileges granted to the English merchants of the Turkie company. 167, 168. The great Turks commandement for the quiet passage, & traffike of English merchants in his dominions. 200. his letter to the king of Tripolis in Barbary, commanding him to restore an English ship, men and goods. 201. The great Turks yeerely charge in his seraglio or court. 203 his chiefe officers. 205. The number of souldiers attending vpon his seuerall gouernours of prouinces. 206. The chiefe men in the Turks court about his person. 206. The great Turks yeerely reuenue. 206. his allowances giuen at Constantinople to the ambassadors of Christian kings. 207. The Turks eate not for their promises made to Christians. 195 Twenty Turks deliuered by sir Francis Drake from captiuity in the West Indies. 224. The Turks Lent. 226. Turkie merchants enemies to the English merchants trade in Persia. 413
A peace concluded betwene the great Turke and the Sophie of Persia. 369
Turquestan kingdome. 63
Tyberias, and the sea therof. 41
Tyre the city described. 8

V

VAigats Ilands in the Northeast sea. 318
Venetian women exceede in pompous apparell. 180. The duke, and seigniorie of the city of Venice. 180
Verste in Russia is three quarters of a mile English. 390
Victuals not to be wasted in voyages, but to be accounted for to the captaine. 260
Vincent a riuer in Brasill. 638. A proportion for an English voyage to that riuer with a shippe of seuentie or eightie tunne. 639. The profit that would arise by such a voyage. 638
Vincent a riuer also vpon the coast of Guinie. 101. The latitude thereof. 102. The language of the people inhabiting about it. 102
Virginia a part of America so named by the Queenes Maiestie. 728. 729. The first English voyage set foorth to Virginia. 728. Possession of the countrey taken to the vse of her Maiestie. 728. The aduentures of the English in their first voyage thither. 729. The people, townes, prouinces, & kings of Virginia. 738. 739. 740. How the countrey was brought into vnderseruice of slander. 749. Those slanders answered. 749. 750. The merchantable commodities that may be raised in Virginia. 750. Commodious meanes to raise victuall in Virginia. 753. the roots, fruits, beasts, fowles and fishes of Virginia. 755. The commodities there for building. 758. The maners and natures of the Sauages there. 759. The names of the first English colonie planted there. 736. The names of the second colonie both men and women. 770. 771
Vitelisee the place where Richard the king of England, and Philip the French king mette with their armies prepared for Syria. 67
Vnitie and concord a thing in all voyages and Sea attempts principally to be regarded. 359
Volga a famous riuer in Russia. 350. It hath 70. mouthes or fals into the Sea. 350. The same riuer suddenly frozen in the beginning of October, did cut in sunder the English boats vpon it, laden with goods. 421
Vologda a towne in Russia. 289. The commodities that towne yeelded. 289. 335
Vrgence a citie of Tartarie described. 352

W

WAlter Raleigh Knight. 725. His letters patents granted him by her Maiestie to discouer and plant in America. 725. The voyages to Virginia set out by him. 728. 733 764. 772. His assignement to diuers gentlemen and merchants of London, to continue the action of planting in Virginia. 815
Way and distance from S. Nicholas in Russia to the Caspian Sea. 386. The seuerall wayes from Russia to Cathay. 387. 388 389. The way from Tauris in Persia, to Campion in Cathay. 389. Two seuerall wayes to India beyond the Cape of good Hope. 162
Wardhouse, a castle vpon the extremities of Norway, belonging to the king of Denmark. 395. 334. The waights and measures there vsed in merchandise. 334
Water congealed to salt in the West India. 547
Weopomioke a broad sound in Virginia, so called by the Sauages. 739
West India offered to king Henry the 7. to bee discouered. 507
William Bats foolish and rash aduise to his company to land amongst the Negroes vnarmed. 144. He is taken wilfully by 7 Negroes. 145
William Burrough now Clarke of her Maiesties Nauie. 426, Captain of 13. English ships sent to the Narue. 425. Hee meeteth with Freebooters, and taketh 5. of their ships. 426 He writeth his letters to the Emperor of Russia touching the taking of them. 425. His notes of aduise touching the killing of the Whale. 438. His deposition to certayne Interrogatories ministred to him concerning the Narue and Kegor. 438. His reasons to dissuade a trade to the Narue by Sweden. 439
William Harebrowne her Maiesties Ambassadour in Turkie. 176. Hee is commended to the great Turke by her Maiesties letters. 183 His letter in Italian to the King of Tripolis for the restitution of the Iesus. 204
William Hawkins of Plimmouth, father to Sir Iohn Hawkins. 520. His voyage to Brasill in king Henry the 8. his time. 520. He bringeth a Brasilean king to London, and presenteth him to the king. 520
William Longespe or Longsword, a noble man of England. 18. His preparation for Syria with Lewes the French king. 18. He cōmeth to Damiata with a band of valiaunt English souldiours. 18. Hee surpriseth and taketh a strong hold of the Saracens neere to Alexandria. 18. He setteth vpon a rich Caruan of Saracen merchants, and taketh the spoile of them. 18. His sober answer to the French, offring him iniurie. 18. He complayneth to the French king of the iniurie. 18. Seeing no redresse, he nobly forsaketh the French kings campe. 18. The French king wanting his help tendeth agayne for him with large promises of contentation. 18. He passeth the riuer of Nilus against the Saracens. 18. His prudent aduise to Erle Robert the French kings brother. 19. His counsell scorned of that proud Earle. 19 His notable reply to that scorne. 19 His singular valure in the battell against the Soldine. 19. His continuance in the fight, though his legs were wounded & his horse killed. 19. His most valiant & worthy end. 19
William Towerson merchaunt of London. 98. his first voyage made to Guinie. 98. His second & third to the foresaid Guiny. 112. 120
William of Tyre an Englishman, Priour of a church in Ierusalem. 5 6. Archbishop after that of Tyre in Phœnice. 5 6
Windam captaine in the first English voyage to Guinie. 86. His furious gouernment in that voyage. 86. He dieth on ship boord in the riuer of Benin. 87
Women of Arabia, their apparell & ornaments 232. Women paint their faces in Moscouie, 346. Breasts of women very long. 102. Women deadly and hurtfull in their lookes. 71. The vndecent maner of riding vsed by the women of Moscouie 409. Women bought and sold, and let out to hire in Persia. 425. The maners of the yong women amongst the Sauages of America. 530
Wood, called Drift wood in Mare Glaciale. 317
Woords that a Christian is to speake, when he denyeth Christianitie, and receiues the religion of the Turks. 44
Wormes eating through the planks of shippes. 97.

Y.

YAke, a riuer falling into the Caspian Sea. 350.
Yauat a towne in Hircania. 369
Yelasin el Kubar the king of Cambaia. 207. 233. a letter written from the Queenes Maiestie to him by M. Iohn Newberie. 207
Yem a riuer falling into the Caspian sea. 35
Yeraslaue a towne in Russia. 289. the commodities that the countrie about it doth yeelde 289.

Z

ZAnte Islande. 224. the English house at Zante. 224.
Zeghan the cheefest towne in the countrie of Georgia. 422
Zeities certayne religious men about the great Sophie of Persia. 371

FINIS.

Imprinted at London by the
Deputies of Chriſtopher Barker, Printer to
the Queenes moſt excellent Maieſtie.

Anno Dom. 1589.

